



WORK ORDER NO. 1603164

CONTRACT NO. N4008518D0601

**SOF Marine Raider Regiment
Headquarters (P-1395)**

At the
MARSOC Camp Lejeune, North Carolina

Final Design Submittal

PREPARED BY:

HDR, Inc.
440 S. Church Street, Suite 1000
Charlotte, NC, 28202

Architectural: Alexandria Supino, RA
Civil: Joel Causey, PE
Structural: Randy Maccaferri, PE
Geotechnical: Aaron Zdinak, PE
Landscape Architecture: David West, PLA

Mechanical: Mark Dimoff, PE
Electrical: Edward Chinnis, PE
Fire Protection: Adam Senk, PE
Safety: Alexandria Supino, RA
Adam Senk, PE

Submitted By: Erik Dupilka, P.E.

Date: 06/22/2020

APPROVED BY:

Specifications:

For Commander, NAVFAC:
Date: 7/10/2020

James E. Dupilka, R.A.
A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read "James E. Dupilka".

UNCLASSIFIED/FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY



This page intentionally left blank.

SEALS PAGE

Project Manager: Erik H. Dupilka, PE



Architectural and Interiors: Alexandria Vann Supino, RA



Civil: Joel C. Causey, PE



Landscape
Architecture: David Howell West, LA



Structural: Randy Maccaferri, PE



Geotechnical: James Devereaux, PE



Mechanical &
Plumbing:

Mark D. Dimoff, PE



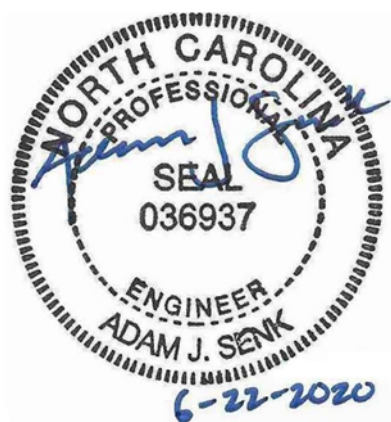
Electrical:

Edward Chinnis, Jr., PE



Fire Protection &
Life Safety:

Adam J. Senk, PE



This page intentionally left blank.

PROJECT TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 00 - PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

00 01 15 LIST OF DRAWINGS

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

01 11 00 SUMMARY OF WORK
01 14 00 WORK RESTRICTIONS
01 20 00.00 20 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES
01 30 00 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS
01 30 01.00 22 DESIGN, PROCUREMENT, AND INSTALLATION OF FURNITURE,
FIXTURES, AND EQUIPMENT
01 31 23.13 20 ELECTRONIC CONSTRUCTION AND FACILITY SUPPORT CONTRACT
MANAGEMENT SYSTEM
01 32 17.00 20 COST-LOADED NETWORK ANALYSIS SCHEDULES (NAS)
01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING
01 35 26 GOVERNMENTAL SAFETY REQUIREMENTS
01 42 00 SOURCES FOR REFERENCE PUBLICATIONS
01 45 00.00 20 QUALITY CONTROL
01 45 35 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS
01 50 00 TEMPORARY CONSTRUCTION FACILITIES AND CONTROLS
01 57 19 TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS
01 57 19.01 20 SUPPLEMENTAL TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS
01 58 00 PROJECT IDENTIFICATION
01 60 00.00 22 REQUIREMENTS FOR PESTICIDE AND HERBICIDE COORDINATION
01 74 19 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL
01 78 00 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA
01 78 24.00 20 FACILITY ELECTRONIC OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE SUPPORT
INFORMATION (eOMSI)
01 78 30.00 22 GIS DATA DELIVERABLES
01 91 00.15 22 TOTAL BUILDING COMMISSIONING

DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE

03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE
03 42 13.00 10 PLANT-PRECAST CONCRETE PRODUCTS FOR BELOW GRADE
CONSTRUCTION

DIVISION 04 - MASONRY

04 20 00 UNIT MASONRY

DIVISION 05 - METALS

05 40 00 COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING
05 50 13 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FABRICATIONS

DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

06 10 00 ROUGH CARPENTRY
06 41 16.00 10 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS
06 61 16 SOLID SURFACING FABRICATIONS

DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

07 05 23	PRESSURE TESTING AN AIR BARRIER SYSTEM FOR AIR TIGHTNESS
07 05 43	CLADDING SUPPORT SYSTEMS
07 13 00	SHEET APPLIED WATERPROOFING
07 21 13	BOARD AND BLOCK INSULATION
07 21 16	MINERAL FIBER BLANKET INSULATION
07 22 00	ROOF AND DECK INSULATION
07 27 10.00 10	BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM
07 27 26	FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS
07 42 13	METAL WALL PANELS
07 60 00	FLASHING AND SHEET METAL
07 84 00	FIRESTOPPING
07 92 00	JOINT SEALANTS

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

08 11 13	STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES
08 14 00	WOOD DOORS
08 31 00	ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS
08 34 19.10 20	ROLLING SERVICE DOORS
08 34 73	SOUND CONTROL DOOR ASSEMBLIES
08 41 13	ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS
08 56 63	DETENTION AND SECURITY WINDOWS
08 71 00	DOOR HARDWARE
08 81 00	GLAZING
08 88 53	DETENTION AND SECURITY GLAZING
08 91 00	METAL WALL LOUVERS

DIVISION 09 - FINISHES

09 22 00	SUPPORTS FOR GYPSUM BOARD
09 29 00	GYPSUM BOARD
09 30 10	CERAMIC, QUARRY, AND GLASS TILING
09 51 00	ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS
09 65 00	RESILIENT FLOORING
09 68 00	CARPETING
09 69 13	LOW PROFILE CABLE MANAGEMENT ACCESS FLOORING
09 90 00	PAINTS AND COATINGS

DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES

10 14 00.10	EXTERIOR SIGNAGE
10 14 00.20	INTERIOR SIGNAGE
10 21 13	TOILET COMPARTMENTS
10 26 00	WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION
10 28 13	TOILET ACCESSORIES
10 51 00	LOCKERS

DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS

12 24 13	ROLLER WINDOW SHADES
12 48 13	ENTRANCE FLOOR MATS AND FRAMES
12 93 00	SITE FURNISHINGS

DIVISION 13 - SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

13 34 19	METAL BUILDING SYSTEMS

DIVISION 21 - FIRE SUPPRESSION

21 13 13.00 20 WET PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEM, FIRE PROTECTION

DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING

22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE

DIVISION 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING (HVAC)

23 00 00 AIR SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION, AND EXHAUST SYSTEMS
23 03 00.00 20 BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS
23 05 15 COMMON PIPING FOR HVAC
23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC
23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS
23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC
23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC
23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING
CONTROL SYSTEMS
23 11 25 FACILITY GAS PIPING
23 21 13.00 20 LOW TEMPERATURE WATER (LTW) HEATING SYSTEM
23 21 23 HYDRONIC PUMPS
23 23 00 REFRIGERANT PIPING
23 52 00 HEATING BOILERS
23 64 10 WATER CHILLERS, VAPOR COMPRESSION TYPE
23 64 26 CHILLED, CHILLED-HOT, AND CONDENSER WATER PIPING SYSTEMS
23 81 00.00 20 UNITARY AIR CONDITIONING EQUIPMENT
23 82 00.00 20 TERMINAL HEATING UNITS

DIVISION 25 - INTEGRATED AUTOMATION

25 05 11.00 CYBERSECURITY FOR FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS
25 05 11.01 CYBERSECURITY FOR FIRE LIFE SAFETY (FLS) CONTROL SYSTEM

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

26 00 00.00 20 BASIC ELECTRICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS
26 08 00 APPARATUS INSPECTION AND TESTING
26 12 19.10 THREE-PHASE, LIQUID-FILLED PAD-MOUNTED TRANSFORMERS
26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM
26 24 13 SWITCHBOARDS
26 27 14.00 20 ELECTRICITY METERING
26 29 23 VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVE SYSTEMS UNDER 600 VOLTS
26 32 13.00 20 SINGLE OPERATION GENERATOR SETS
26 33 53.00 20 UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY (UPS)
26 36 23.00 20 AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES
26 41 00 LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEM
26 51 00 INTERIOR LIGHTING
26 56 00 EXTERIOR LIGHTING

DIVISION 27 - COMMUNICATIONS

27 10 00 BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEM

DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

28 31 76.22 INTERIOR COMBINATION EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK

31 05 19 GEOTEXTILE

31 11 00 CLEARING AND GRUBBING
31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL

DIVISION 32 - EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS

32 05 33 LANDSCAPE ESTABLISHMENT
32 11 23 AGGREGATE BASE COURSES
32 12 13 BITUMINOUS TACK AND PRIME COATS
32 12 16 HOT-MIX ASPHALT (HMA) FOR ROADS
32 13 13.06 PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE PAVEMENT FOR ROADS AND SITE
 FACILITIES
32 13 73 COMPRESSION JOINT SEALS FOR CONCRETE PAVEMENTS
32 16 19 CONCRETE CURBS, GUTTERS AND SIDEWALKS
32 17 23 PAVEMENT MARKINGS
32 31 13.53 HIGH-SECURITY CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES
32 92 23 SODDING
32 93 00 EXTERIOR PLANTS

DIVISION 33 - UTILITIES

33 11 00 WATER UTILITY DISTRIBUTION PIPING
33 11 23 NATURAL GAS AND LIQUID PETROLEUM PIPING
33 30 00 SANITARY SEWERAGE
33 40 00 STORM DRAINAGE UTILITIES
33 46 13 FOUNDATION DRAINAGE SYSTEM
33 51 15 NATURAL-GAS / LIQUID PETROLEUM GAS DISTRIBUTION
33 61 13.13 PREFABRICATED UNDERGROUND HYDRONIC ENERGY DISTRIBUTION
33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION
33 82 00 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTSIDE PLANT (OSP)

-- End of Project Table of Contents --

DOCUMENT 00 01 15

LIST OF DRAWINGS

02/11

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

This section lists the drawings for the project pursuant to contract clause "DFARS 252.236-7001, Contract Drawings, Maps and Specifications."

1.2 CONTRACT DRAWINGS

Contract drawings are as follows:

SHEET NUMBER	NAVFAC #	SHEET NAME
GENERAL		
G-000	12794220	COVER SHEET
G-001	12794221	LIST OF SHEETS
G-002	12794222	LIST OF SHEETS
G-003	12794223	CODE ANALYSIS
G-004	12794224	LIFE SAFETY PLAN-AREA A
G-005	12794225	LIFE SAFETY PLAN-AREA B
G-006	12794226	CODE COMPLIANCE SITE PLAN
GEOTECHNICAL		
B-100	12794227	FIELD EXPLORATION BORING LOCATION MAP AND PRELOADING REQUIREMENTS
B-101	12794228	BORING LEGEND AND LOGS
B-102	12794229	BORING LOGS
B-103	12794230	BORING LOGS
B-104	12794231	BORING LOGS AND LABORATORY TEST RESULTS
CIVIL		
C-001	12794232	CIVIL LEGEND
VF101	12794233	EXISTING SITE PLAN
CD101	12794234	DEMOLITION PLAN
CS101	12794235	OVERALL SITE PLAN AND KEY MAP
CS102	12794236	SITE LAYOUT AND CONTROLS PLAN 1
CS103	12794237	SITE LAYOUT AND CONTROLS PLAN 2
CS104	12794238	SITE LAYOUT AND CONTROLS PLAN 3
CG101	12794239	GRADING AND DRAINAGE PLAN 1
CG102	12794240	GRADING AND DRAINAGE PLAN 2
CG103	12794241	GRADING AND DRAINAGE PLAN 3
CG104	12794242	PRE-DEVELOPMENT DRAINAGE AREA MAP
CG105	12794243	POST-DEVELOPMENT DRAINAGE AREA MAP
CG106	12794244	POST-DEVELOPMENT SUBWATERSHED MAP
CG201	12794245	STORM SYSTEM PROFILES 1
CG202	12794246	STORM SYSTEM PROFILES 2
CS201	12794247	ACCESS ROADWAY PLAN AND PROFILE 1
CS301	12794248	ACCESS ROADWAY CROSS SECTIONS 1
CS302	12794249	ACCESS ROADWAY CROSS SECTIONS 2
CS303	12794250	ACCESS ROADWAY CROSS SECTIONS 3
CU101	12794251	UTILITY PLAN 1
CU102	12794252	UTILITY PLAN 2
CU103	12794253	UTILITY PLAN 3

CU201	12794254	WATER MAIN AND FORCE MAIN PROFILES
CE101	12794255	EROSION CONTROL PLAN PHASE 1 - PLAN 1
CE102	12794256	EROSION CONTROL PLAN PHASE 1 - PLAN 2
CE103	12794257	EROSION CONTROL PLAN PHASE 1 - PLAN 3
CE104	12794258	EROSION CONTROL PLAN PHASE 2 - PLAN 1
CE105	12794259	EROSION CONTROL PLAN PHASE 2 - PLAN 2
CE106	12794260	EROSION CONTROL PLAN PHASE 2 - PLAN 3
C-501	12794261	CIVIL SITE DETAILS
C-502	12794262	CIVIL SITE DETAILS
C-503	12794263	CIVIL SITE DETAILS
C-504	12794264	CIVIL SITE DETAILS
C-505	12794265	CIVIL SITE DETAILS
C-506	12794266	CIVIL SITE DETAILS
C-507	12794267	CIVIL SITE DETAILS
C-508	12794268	CIVIL SITE DETAILS
C-509	12794269	CIVIL SITE DETAILS
C-510	12794270	CIVIL SITE DETAILS
C-511	12794271	EROSION CONTROL DETAILS
C-512	12794272	EROSION CONTROL DETAILS
C-513	12794273	EROSION CONTROL DETAILS
C-514	12794274	EROSION CONTROL DETAILS
C-515	12794275	EROSION CONTROL DETAILS
LANDSCAPE		
L-101	12794276	LANDSCAPE - SITE PLAN - OVERALL SITE
L-401	12794277	LANDSCAPE - ENLARGEMENT - MAIN ENTRANCE
L-501	12794278	LANDSCAPE - FINISHES & DETAILS - SECTIONS
L-502	12794279	LANDSCAPE - DETAILS & SITE FURNISHINGS
LP101	12794280	LANDSCAPE - PLANTING PLAN - DRIVE & BMP
LP102	12794281	LANDSCAPE - PLANTING PLAN - MAIN BUILDING
LP601	12794282	LANDSCAPE - PLANTING SCHEDULE & DETAILS
STRUCTURAL		
S-001	12794283	GENERAL NOTES AND PLAN LEGEND
S-002	12794284	STRUCTURAL STANDARD DETAILS
S-003	12794285	STRUCTURAL STANDARD DETAILS
S-101	12794286	FOUNDATION AND GROUND FLOOR PLAN - OVERALL
S-102	12794287	FOUNDATION AND GROUND FLOOR PLAN - AREA A
S-103	12794288	FOUNDATION AND GROUND FLOOR PLAN - AREA B
S-501	12794289	STRUCTURAL SECTIONS & DETAILS
ARCHITECTURAL		
A-001	12794290	ARCHITECTURAL SYMBOLS, LEGENDS, ABBREVIATIONS AND NOTES
A-002	12794291	AIR BARRIER DIAGRAMS
A-003	12794292	ARCHITECTURAL SITE PLAN
A-100	12794293	FOUNDATION DRAINAGE AND RECESSED SLAB PLAN
A-101	12794294	OVERALL FLOOR PLAN
A-102	12794295	FLOOR PLAN - AREA "A"
A-103	12794296	FLOOR PLAN - AREA "B"
A-104	12794297	OVERALL REFLECTED CEILING PLAN
A-105	12794298	REFLECTED CEILING PLAN - AREA "A"
A-106	12794299	REFLECTED CEILING PLAN - AREA "B"
A-107	12794300	ROOF PLAN
A-108	12794301	GYPSON CEILING LOCATION PLAN
A-201	12794302	NORTH AND SOUTH ELEVATIONS
A-202	12794303	EAST AND WEST ELEVATIONS
A-301	12794304	BUILDING SECTIONS
A-302	12794305	BUILDING SECTIONS

A-310	12794306	WALL SECTIONS
A-311	12794307	WALL SECTIONS
A-312	12794308	WALL SECTIONS
A-313	12794309	WALL SECTION DETAILS
A-314	12794310	WALL SECTION DETAILS
A-315	12794311	WALL SECTIONS AND DETAILS
A-316	12794312	WALL SECTION DETAILS
A-317	12794313	WALL SECTION DETAILS
A-401	12794314	ENLARGED PLANS AND INTERIOR ELEVATIONS
A-402	12794315	ENLARGED PLANS AND INTERIOR ELEVATIONS
A-403	12794316	ENLARGED PLANS AND INTERIOR ELEVATIONS
A-404	12794317	ENLARGED REFLECTED CEILING PLANS AND DETAILS
A-405	12794318	TYPICAL MOUNTING HEIGHTS
A-501	12794319	EXTERIOR DETAILS
A-502	12794320	EXTERIOR DETAILS
A-503	12794321	EXTERIOR DETAILS
A-510	12794322	DETAILS
A-511	12794323	DETAILS
A-520	12794324	CEILING DETAILS
A-530	12794325	CASEWORK DETAILS
A-531	12794326	INTERIOR PARTITION SCHEDULE AND DETAILS
A-601	12794327	DOOR SCHEDULE AND DETAILS
A-602	12794328	DOOR DETAILS
A-603	12794329	WINDOW ELEVATIONS AND DETAILS
A-604	12794330	WINDOW DETAILS
A-605	12794331	PARTITION DETAILS
A-900	12794332	DUMPSTER ENCLOSURE

INTERIORS

I-605	12794333	OVERALL FF&E PLAN
I-606	12794334	FF&E PLAN - AREA A
I-607	12794335	FF&E PLAN - AREA B
I-609	12794336	INTERIOR FINISH LEGEND
I-610	12794337	FINISH SCHEDULE
I-611	12794338	FINISH PLAN - AREA A
I-612	12794339	FINISH PLAN - AREA B
I-613	12794340	INTERIOR DETAILS
I-614	12794341	FF&E PLAN - AREA A - MODULAR WALL SYSTEM
I-615	12794342	FF&E PLAN - AREA B - MODULAR WALL SYSTEM
I-616	12794343	MODULAR WALL SYSTEM DETAILS
I-617	12794344	MODULAR WALL SYSTEM ELEVATIONS
I-618	12794345	MODULAR WALL SYSTEM ELEVATIONS
I-619	12794346	MODULAR WALL SYSTEM ELEVATIONS
I-620	12794347	MODULAR WALL SYSTEM ELEVATIONS
I-621	12794348	COLLATERAL EQUIPMENT PLAN - AREA A - RAISED ACCESS FLOOR
I-622	12794349	COLLATERAL EQUIPMENT PLAN - AREA B - RAISED ACCESS FLOOR
I-623	12794350	SIGNAGE PLAN - AREA A
I-624	12794351	SIGNAGE PLAN - AREA B
I-625	12794352	SIGNAGE DETAILS

FIRE PROTECTION

FA001	12794353	LEGEND, ABBREVIATIONS AND NOTES
FA101	12794354	FIRE ALARM AND MASS NOTIFICATION PLAN-AREA A
FA102	12794355	FIRE ALARM AND MASS NOTIFICATION PLAN-AREA B
FA601	12794356	FIRE ALARM DIAGRAMS
FX101	12794357	FIRST FLOOR FIRE PROTECTION PLAN-AREA A
FX102	12794358	FIRST FLOOR FIRE PROTECTION PLAN-AREA B

FX501	12794359	FIRE PROTECTION DETAILS
FX502	12794360	FIRE PROTECTION RISER DIAGRAM, SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS

PLUMBING

P-001	12794361	LEGEND, ABBREVIATIONS AND NOTES
PL101	12794362	SANITARY AND SUPPLY FLOOR PLAN - AREA "A"
PL102	12794363	SANITARY AND SUPPLY FLOOR PLAN - AREA "B"
P-401	12794364	ENLARGED PLUMBING PLANS
P-402	12794365	ENLARGED PLUMBING PLANS
P-501	12794366	PLUMBING DETAILS
P-502	12794367	PLUMBING DETAILS
P-601	12794368	PLUMBING SCHEDULES
P-901	12794369	DOMESTIC WATER RISER
P-902	12794370	SANITARY RISER
P-903	12794371	PROPANE GAS RISER

MECHANICAL

M-001	12794372	LEGEND, ABBREVIATIONS AND NOTES
MS101	12794373	MECHANICAL SITE PLAN
MH101	12794374	DUCTWORK FLOOR PLAN - AREA "A"
MH102	12794375	DUCTWORK FLOOR PLAN - AREA "B"
MH103	12794376	ROOF PLAN
MP101	12794377	MECHANICAL PIPING FLOOR PLAN - AREA "A"
MP102	12794378	MECHANICAL PIPING FLOOR PLAN - AREA "B"
M-301	12794379	MECHANICAL SECTION
M-401	12794380	ENLARGED MECHANICAL PLANS
M-501	12794381	MECHANICAL DETAILS
M-502	12794382	MECHANICAL DETAILS
M-503	12794383	MECHANICAL DETAILS
M-504	12794384	MECHANICAL DETAILS
M-601	12794385	MECHANICAL SCHEDULES
M-602	12794386	MECHANICAL SCHEDULES
M-603	12794387	MECHANICAL SCHEDULES
M-604	12794388	OUTSIDE AIR AND DESIGN CONDITIONS
M-701	12794389	MECHANICAL CONTROLS - CHILLED WATER
M-702	12794390	MECHANICAL CONTROLS - HEATING WATER
M-703	12794391	MECHANICAL CONTROLS - ERU
M-704	12794392	MECHANICAL CONTROLS - FCU
M-705	12794393	MECHANICAL CONTROLS - MISC

ELECTRICAL

E-001	12794394	LEGEND, ABBREVIATIONS AND GENERAL NOTES
ES101	12794395	SITE PLAN - ELECTRICAL
EL101	12794396	FIRST FLOOR PLAN - LIGHTING - AREA A
EL102	12794397	FIRST FLOOR PLAN - LIGHTING - AREA B
EL501	12794398	LIGHTING DETAILS
EL502	12794399	LIGHTING DETAILS
EL503	12794400	LIGHTING DETAILS
EL601	12794401	LIGHTING FIXTURE & LIGHTING CONTROL STRATEGY SCHEDULES
EP101	12794402	FIRST FLOOR PLAN - POWER - AREA A
EP102	12794403	FIRST FLOOR PLAN - POWER - AREA B
EP103	12794404	FIRST FLOOR PLAN - MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT POWER - AREA A
EP104	12794405	FIRST FLOOR PLAN - MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT POWER - AREA B
EP105	12794406	FIRST FLOOR PLAN - AV EQUIPMENT POWER - AREA A

EP106	12794407	FIRST FLOOR PLAN - AV EQUIPMENT POWER - AREA B
EP401	12794408	ENLARGED PLANS
EP402	12794409	ENLARGED PLANS
EP501	12794410	POWER DETAILS
EP502	12794411	POWER DETAILS
EP503	12794412	POWER DETAILS
EP601	12794413	POWER RISER DIAGRAM
EP602	12794414	PANELBOARD SCHEDULES
EP603	12794415	PANELBOARD SCHEDULES
EP604	12794416	PANELBOARD SCHEDULES
EP605	12794417	PANELBOARD SCHEDULES
EP606	12794418	PANELBOARD SCHEDULES
ET001	12794419	TELECOMMUNICATIONS LEGEND, ABBREVIATIONS AND GENERAL NOTES
ET101	12794420	FIRST FLOOR PLAN - TELECOMMUNICATIONS - AREA A
ET102	12794421	FIRST FLOOR PLAN - TELECOMMUNICATIONS - AREA B
ET103	12794422	FIRST FLOOR PLAN - NETWORK OVERHEAD HORIZONTAL PATHWAYS - AREA A
ET104	12794423	FIRST FLOOR PLAN - NETWORK OVERHEAD HORIZONTAL PATHWAYS - AREA B
ET105	12794424	FIRST FLOOR PLAN - NETWORK BELOW FLOOR ROUTING - AREA A
ET106	12794425	FIRST FLOOR PLAN - NETWORK BELOW FLOOR ROUTING - AREA B
ET401	12794426	ENLARGED PLANS
ET501	12794427	TELECOMMUNICATIONS DETAILS
ET502	12794428	TELECOMMUNICATIONS DETAILS
ET503	12794429	TELECOMMUNICATIONS DETAILS
ET504	12794430	TELECOMMUNICATIONS DETAILS
ET601	12794431	TELECOMMUNICATIONS RISER DIAGRAMS
ET602	12794432	NETWORK CONNECTIONS SCHEDULE
EY101	12794433	FIRST FLOOR PLAN - AUXILIARY SYSTEMS - AREA A
EY102	12794434	FIRST FLOOR PLAN - AUXILIARY SYSTEMS - AREA B
EY501	12794435	AUXILIARY SYSTEMS DETAILS
EY601	12794436	AUXILIARY SYSTEMS RISER DIAGRAMS
EG101	12794437	LIGHTNING PROTECTION PLAN

AUDIO/VIDEO

TA000	12794438	AV DRAWING INDEX, SYMBOLS AND NOTES
TA100	12794439	OVERALL AV ROOM PLAN
TA101	12794440	AREA A AV FLOOR PLAN
TA102	12794441	AREA B AV FLOOR PLAN
TA201	12794442	AREA A AV REFLECTED CEILING PLAN
TA202	12794443	AREA B AV REFLECTED CEILING PLAN
TA400	12794444	OPS AREAS DISPLAY WALL ELEVATION
TA500	12794445	CONFERENCE ROOM SIGNAL FLOW LINE DIAGRAM
TA501	12794446	OPS AREAS SIGNAL FLOW LINE DIAGRAM
TA502	12794447	OFFICE/OPEN AREAS SIGNAL FLOW LINE DIAGRAM

1.3 Boring Logs

The Government does not guarantee that borings indicate actual conditions, except for the exact locations and the time that they were made.

1.4 Subsurface Data

Subsurface data, not specified or indicated, has been obtained by the Government at the station. The data is available for examination by prospective bidders and the soils report is included as part of the solicitation.

-- End of Document --

SECTION 01 11 00

SUMMARY OF WORK

08/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this section to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC IBC (2018) International Building Code

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

UFC 1-200-01 (2016) DoD Building Code (General Building Requirements)

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Salvage Plan; G

1.3 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

1.3.1 Project Description

The work includes the construction of a new approximately 30,000 square foot headquarters facilities. Includes miscellaneous supporting structures, utilities, parking, roadways, sidewalks, running trails, and sitework.

1.3.2 Location

The work is located at the Stone Bay, Camp Lejeune, NC, approximately as indicated. The exact location will be shown by the Contracting Officer.

1.4 BUILDING CODE

Except as indicated otherwise, or as modified by UFC 1-200-01, use ICC IBC as the building code for this project.

1.5 LOCATION OF UNDERGROUND UTILITIES

Obtain digging permits prior to start of excavation by contacting the Contracting Officer 15 calendar days in advance, and comply with

Installation requirements for locating and marking underground utilities. Contact local utility locating service a minimum of 48 hours prior to excavating, to mark utilities, and within sufficient time required if work occurs on a Monday or after a Holiday. Verify existing utility locations indicated on contract drawings, within area of work.

Identify and mark all other utilities not managed and located by the local utility companies. Scan the construction site with Ground Penetrating Radar (GPR), electromagnetic, or sonic equipment, and mark the surface of the ground or paved surface where existing underground utilities are discovered. Verify the elevations of existing piping, utilities, and any type of underground or encased obstruction not indicated, or specified to be removed, that is indicated or discovered during scanning, in locations to be traversed by piping, ducts, and other work to be conducted or installed. Verify elevations before installing new work closer than nearest manhole or other structure at which an adjustment in grade can be made.

1.5.1 Notification Prior to Excavation

Notify the Contracting Officer at least 15 days prior to starting excavation work.

1.6 GOVERNMENT TELECOMMUNICATIONS CONTRACTOR COORDINATION REQUIREMENTS

1.6.1 NMCI Contractor Access

Allow the Government Telecommunications Contractor access to the facility towards the end of construction (finishes 90 percent complete, rough-in 100 percent complete, Inside Plant (ISP)/Outside Plant (OSP) infrastructure in place) to provide equipment in the telecommunications rooms and make final connections. Coordinate efforts with the Government Telecommunications Contractor to facilitate joint use of building spaces during the final phases of construction. After the Contracting Officer has facilitated coordination meetings between the two contractors, within one week, incorporate the effort of additional coordination with the Government Telecommunications Contractor into the construction schedule to demonstrate a plan for maintaining the contract duration.

1.7 SALVAGE MATERIAL AND EQUIPMENT

Items designated by the Contracting Officer to be salvaged remain the property of the Government. Segregate, itemize, deliver and off-load the salvaged property at the Government designated storage area located within 50 miles of the construction site.

Provide a salvage plan, listing material and equipment to be salvaged, and their storage location. Maintain property control records for material or equipment designated as salvage. Use a system of property control that is approved by the Contracting Officer. Store and protect salvaged materials and equipment until disposition by the Contracting Officer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not used.

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not used.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 01 14 00

WORK RESTRICTIONS

11/11

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

List of Contact Personnel; G

1.2 SPECIAL SCHEDULING REQUIREMENTS

- a. Have materials, equipment, and personnel required to perform the work at the site prior to the commencement of the work.
- b. The nearby buildings and utilities will remain in operation during the entire construction period. The Contractor must conduct his operations so as to cause the least possible interference with normal operations of the activity.
- c. Permission to interrupt any Activity roads, railroads, or utility service must be requested in writing a minimum of 15 calendar days prior to the desired date of interruption.
- d. Government Telecommunications Contractor Access: The Government Telecommunications Contractor must be allowed access to the facility towards the end of construction (finishes 90 percent complete, rough-in 100 percent complete, Inside Plant (ISP)/Outside Plant (OSP) infrastructure in place) to provide equipment in the telecommunications rooms and make final connections. The Contractor will be required to coordinate their efforts with the Government Telecommunications Contractor to facilitate joint use of building spaces during the final phases of construction and work the coordination effort into the construction schedule. Requirements for Government Telecommunications are specified in Section 27 10 00 BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEM and Section 33 82 00 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTSIDE PLANT (OSP).

1.3 CONTRACTOR ACCESS AND USE OF PREMISES

1.3.1 Activity Regulations

Ensure that Contractor personnel employed on the Activity become familiar with and obey Activity regulations including safety, fire, traffic and security regulations. Keep within the limits of the work and avenues of ingress and egress. To minimize traffic congestion, delivery of materials must be outside of peak traffic hours (6:30 to 8:00 a.m. and 3:30 to 5:00 p.m.) unless otherwise approved by the Contracting Officer. Wear hard hats in designated areas. Do not enter any restricted areas unless required to

do so and until cleared for such entry. Mark Contractor equipment for identification.

1.3.1.1 Subcontractors and Personnel Contacts

Provide a list of contact personnel of the Contractor and subcontractors including addresses and telephone numbers for use in the event of an emergency. As changes occur and additional information becomes available, correct and change the information contained in previous lists.

1.3.1.2 Installation Access

Obtain access to Navy installations through participation in the Defense Biometrics Identification System (DBIDS). No fees are associated with obtaining a DBIDS credential.

Participation in the DBIDS is not mandatory, and Contractor personnel may apply for One-Day Passes at the Contractor Vetting satellite office located at the Piney Green Gate to access an installation.

1.3.1.2.1 Registration for DBIDS

Base access procedures and DBIDS registration info are provided at <https://www.lejeune.marines.mil/Base-Access>. Procedure includes:

- a. Present a letter or official award document (i.e. DD Form 1155 or SF 1442) from the Contracting Officer, that provides the purpose for access, to the base Contractor Vetting Office (CVO) representative.
- b. Provide a letter of authorization on company letterhead referencing the applicable contract(s) and identifying the requesting individual as an authorized employee of the awarded company along with the employee's required access days and times.
- c. Present two (2) valid forms of identification, such as a passport or Real ID Act-compliant state driver's license. All documents must be originals/certified.
- d. Provide completed SECNAV FORM 5512/1 to the base CVO representative to obtain a background check. This form is available for download from the base access website listed in 1.3.1.2.1.
- e. Provide vehicle registration and insurance. Contractors driving aboard the installation must provide an original vehicle registration document. Copies of registration are only accepted for company-owned fleet vehicles. Proof of insurance is also required. A declaration page is required for insurance originating outside the state of North Carolina. Out of state insurance must meet North Carolina minimums of \$30,000/person, \$60,000/accident, and \$25,000/property damage.
- f. Upon successful completion of the background check, the Government will complete the DBIDS enrollment process, which includes Contractor employee photo, finger prints, base restriction and several other assessments.
- g. Upon successful completion of the enrollment process, the Contractor employee will be issued a DBIDS credential, and will be allowed to proceed to worksite.

1.3.1.2.2 Denial of Access

Persons requesting access to Marine Corps sites will be denied if:

- a. Military or civilian police or VCO/CVO personnel are unable to verify the individual's claimed identity based on reasonable belief the person submitted fraudulent identity information in the attempt to gain access.
- b. The individual has a conviction for espionage, sabotage, sedition, treason, terrorism, armed robbery, or murder.
- c. The individual has a felony conviction for a firearms or explosives violation, regardless of the date of conviction.
- d. The individual has been convicted of crimes encompassing sexual assault or rape.
- e. The individual has been convicted of crime encompassing child molestation, or the possession or production of child pornography.
- f. The individual has been convicted of trafficking in persons.
- g. The individual is a registered sex offender.
- h. The individual has been convicted of drug possession with intent to sell or distribute.
- i. The individual has an active arrest warrant from Federal, state, local, or other civil law enforcement authorities, regardless of offense or violation.
- j. The individual has a felony conviction within the last 10 years, regardless of the offense or violation.
- k. The individual's name appears on any Federal or state agency watch list for criminal behavior or terrorist activity.
- l. The individual is debarred entry or access to a Marine Corps site, other DoD installations or facilities, or other Federal site or facility.
- m. The individual engaged in acts or activities designed to overthrow the U.S. Government by force.
- n. The individual is known to be or reasonably suspected of being a terrorist or belongs to an organization with known terrorism links/support.
- o. The individual is identified in the NCIC KST file, or the TSDB report as known to be, or suspected of being, a terrorist or belonging to an organization with known links to terrorism or support of terrorist activity. If an individual is identified on the NCIC KST files or TSDB, PMO/MCPD or other designated site security personnel will immediately call the NCIS Multiple Threat Alert Center (MTAC) for further coordination. The MTAC will coordinate with the Department of Justice or Federal Bureau of Investigation and provide handling instructions to PMO/MCPD or other designated site security personnel.

- p. The individual is illegally present in the U.S.
- q. The individual has knowingly submitted an employment questionnaire with false or fraudulent information.
- r. The individual is a prisoner on a work-release program or currently on felony probation/parole.
- s. The individual is pending any felony charge.
- t. The individual has been convicted of three or more misdemeanor violations, or attempted violations, within the previous 10 years of the following offenses:
 - 1. Sex crimes;
 - 2. Assaults;
 - 3. Larcenies;
 - 4. Drugs; or
 - 5. Weapons.
- u. The individual has criminal arrest information that the site commander determines the person presents a threat to the good order, discipline, or health and safety on the Marine Corps site.
- v. Any reason the Installation Commander deems reasonable for good order and discipline.

1.3.1.2.3 DBIDS Eligibility Requirements

Throughout the length of the contract, the Contractor employee must continue to meet background screen standards. Periodic background screenings are conducted to verify continued DBIDS participation and installation access privileges. DBIDS access privileges will be immediately suspended or revoked if at any time a Contractor employee becomes ineligible.

An adjudication process may be initiated when a background screen failure results in disqualification from participation in the DBIDS, and Contractor employee does not agree with the reason for disqualification. The Government is the final authority.

1.3.1.2.4 DBIDS Notification Requirements

- a. Immediately report instances of lost or stolen badges to the Contracting Officer.
- b. Immediately collect DBIDS credentials and notify the Contracting Officer in writing under the following circumstances:
 - (1) An employee has departed the company without having properly returned or surrendered their DBIDS credentials.
 - (2) There is a reasonable basis to conclude that an employee, or former employee, might pose a risk, compromise, or threat to the safety or security of the Installation or anyone therein.

1.3.1.2.5 One-Day Passes

Personnel applying for One-Day passes at the Piney Green Gate are subject to daily mandatory vehicle inspection, and will have limited access to the

installation. The Government is not responsible for any cost or lost time associated with obtaining daily passes or added vehicle inspections incurred by non-participants in the DBIDS.

1.3.1.2.6 Security Checks

Contractor personnel and vehicles must only be present in locations relevant to contract performance. All Contractor personnel entering the base must conform to all Government regulations and are subject to such checks as may be deemed necessary to ensure that violations do not occur. Employees will not be permitted on base when such a check reveals that their presence would be detrimental to the security of the base. Subject to security regulations, the Government will allow access to an area for servicing equipment and/or performing required services. Upon request, submit to the Contracting Officer questionnaires and other forms as may be required for security purposes.

1.3.2 Working Hours

Regular working hours must consist of an 8 1/2 hour period , between 7 a.m. and 5 p.m., Monday through Friday, excluding Government holidays.

1.3.3 Work Outside Regular Hours

Work outside regular working hours requires Contracting Officer approval. Make application 15 calendar days prior to such work to allow arrangements to be made by the Government, giving the specific dates, hours, location, type of work to be performed, contract number and project title. Based on the justification provided, the Contracting Officer may approve work outside regular hours. During periods of darkness, the different parts of the work must be lighted in a manner approved by the Contracting Officer. Make utility cutovers after normal working hours or on Saturdays, Sundays, and Government holidays unless directed otherwise.

1.3.4 Utility Cutovers and Interruptions

- a. Make utility cutovers and interruptions after normal working hours or on Saturdays, Sundays, and Government holidays. Conform to procedures required in the paragraph WORK OUTSIDE REGULAR HOURS.
- b. Ensure that new utility lines are complete, except for the connection, before interrupting existing service.
- c. Interruption to water, sanitary sewer, storm sewer, telephone service, electric service, air conditioning, heating, fire alarm, compressed air, are considered utility cutovers pursuant to the paragraph WORK OUTSIDE REGULAR HOURS. This time limit includes time for deactivation and reactivation.
- d. Operation of Station Utilities: The Contractor must not operate nor disturb the setting of control devices in the station utilities system, including water, sewer, electrical, and steam services. The Government will operate the control devices as required for normal conduct of the work. The Contractor must notify the Contracting Officer giving reasonable advance notice when such operation is required.
- e. Connection to Existing Sanitary Sewer Line: Provide positive verification that the existing line conveys sanitary sewer; verify line is not incorrectly connected to a storm drain. Obtain Installation's

Sanitary Sewer Connection Permit 2 weeks prior to connection and in accordance with Section 33 30 00 SANITARY SEWERS.

1.3.4.1 Location of Underground Utilities

Notification Prior to Excavation: Notify the Contracting Officer at least 15 days prior to starting excavation work.

Location and Protection of underground utilities shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. Where existing-to-remain piping, utilities, and underground obstructions of any type are indicated in locations to be traversed by new piping, ducts, and other excavations the elevations of the existing utilities and obstructions shall be determined before the new work is completed.

- a. In addition, the Contractor will be responsible for obtaining the services of a professional utility locator prior to digging. Contractor will provide documentation that the site has been surveyed and checked for underground utilities. All utilities must be located, including but not limited to power, water, sewer, storm drains, fiber optics, T.V. cable, telephone, and intrusion detection wiring. A set of known as-built drawings will be available in the ROICC/PWD office for review to assist the locator.
- b. It is mandatory that the Contractor also contact the Base Telephone Office (910-451-2531/3100) prior to accomplishing any digging at Camp Lejeune. A telephone office representative will assist in locating telephone lines.
- c. It is mandatory that the Contractor also contact Public Works Outside Plumbing (910-451-7190) prior to accomplishing any digging at Camp Lejeune, to ensure that all buried water and sanitary lines are identified
- d. It is mandatory that the Contractor also contact Charter Communications, cable TV service prior to accomplishing any digging at Camp Lejeune, to ensure that all buried cable lines are identified. Contact Mr. Nick Brown at 910-376-1785 for assistance.
- e. It is mandatory that the contractor secure a third party locator for identifying the base owned LP distribution system at MARSOC prior to any digging.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not Used

-- End of Section --

SECTION 01 20 00.00 20

PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES

11/11

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EP 1110-1-8

(2016) Construction Equipment Ownership
and Operating Expense Schedule

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Earned Value Report; G

1.3 EARNED VALUE REPORT

1.3.1 Data Required

This contract requires the use of a cost-loaded Network Analysis Schedule (NAS). The information required for the Schedule of Prices will be entered as an integral part of the Network Analysis Schedule. Within 15 calendar days of notice of award, prepare and deliver to the Contracting Officer an Earned Value Report (construction contract) as directed by the Contracting Officer. Provide a detailed breakdown of the contract price, giving quantities for each of the various kinds of work, unit prices, and extended prices. Costs shall be summarized and totals provided for each construction category.

1.3.2 Schedule Instructions

Payments will not be made until the Earned Value Report from the cost-loaded NAS has been submitted to and accepted by the Contracting Officer. Identify the cost for site work, and include incidental work to the 5 ft line. Identify costs for the building(s), and include work out to the 5 ft line. Work out to the 5 ft line shall include construction encompassed within a theoretical line 5 ft from the face of exterior walls and shall include attendant construction, such as pad mounted HVAC cooling equipment, cooling towers, and transformers placed beyond the 5 ft line.

1.3.3 Real Property Assets

Real Property Assets identified in Section 01 78 00 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS, paragraph "REAL PROPERTY RECORD", apply to work covered by this specification.

Cost data accumulated under this section are required in the preparation of DD Form 1354. Coordinate with Section 01 78 00 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS, paragraph "REAL PROPERTY RECORD".

NOTE: Real Property Unique Identifiers (RPUID's) will be provided by the Government but may not be available until later in the project schedule. Coordinate receipt of RPUID's with the Contracting Officer and the Real Property Accounting Officer. Temporary RPUID's may be required until the actual RPUID's can be provided.

The Government will provide the Draft DD Form 1354, Transfer and Acceptance of Military Real Property filled in with the appropriate Real Property Unique Identifiers (RPUID) and related construction Category Codes to summarize the designed real property assets that apply to this contract. The Contractor shall meet with the Contracting Officer and the Real Property Accounting Officer during the Pre Construction Meeting and the Project Closeout Meetings to modify and include any necessary changes to the DD Form 1354. The Contractor shall provide the Interim DD Form 1354 that uses the appropriate division of the RPUIDs/ Category Codes to represent the final constructed facility and include all associated cost. Coordinate the Contractor's Price and Payment structure with the structure of the RPUIDs/ Category Codes.

Divide detailed asset breakdown into the RPUIDs and related construction Category Codes and populate associated costs which represent all aspects of the work. Where assets diverge into multiple RPUID/ Category Codes, divide the asset and provide the proportion of the assets in each RPUID/ Category Code. Assets and related RPUID/ Category Codes may be modified by the Contracting Officer as necessary during course of the work. Coordinate identification and proportion of these assets with the Government Real Property Accounting Officer.

Cost data accumulated under this section are required in the preparation of DD Form 1354.

1.3.4 Schedule Requirements for HVAC TAB

The field work Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC shall be broken down in the Earned Value Report from the cost-loaded NAS by separate line items which reflect measurable deliverables. Specific payment percentages for each line item shall be determined on a case by case basis for each contract. The line items shall be as follows:

- a. Approval of Design Review Report: The TABS Agency is required to conduct a review of the project plans and specifications to identify any feature, or the lack thereof, that would preclude successful testing and balancing of the project HVAC systems. The resulting findings shall be submitted to the Government to allow correction of the design. The progress payment shall be issued after review and approval of the report.
- b. Approval of the pre-field engineering report: The TABS Agency submits a report which outlines the scope of field work. The report shall

contain details of what systems will be tested, procedures to be used, sample report forms for reporting test results and a quality control checklist of work items that must be completed before TABS field work commences.

- c. Season I field work: Incremental payments are issued as the TABS field work progresses. The TABS Agency mobilizes to the project site and executes the field work as outlined in the pre-field engineering report. The HVAC water and air systems are balanced and operational data shall be collected for one seasonal condition (either summer or winter depending on project timing).
- d. Approval of Season I report: On completion of the Season I field work, the data is compiled into a report and submitted to the Government. The report is reviewed, and approved, after ensuring compliance with the pre-field engineering report scope of work.
- e. Completion of Season I field QA check: Contract QC and Government representatives meet the TABS Agency at the jobsite to retest portions of the systems reported in the Season I report. The purpose of these tests are to validate the accuracy and completeness of the previously submitted Season I report.
- f. Approval of Season II report: The TABS Agency completes all Season II field work, which is normally comprised mainly of taking heat transfer temperature readings, in the season opposite of that under which Season I performance data was compiled. This data shall be compiled into a report and submitted to the Government. On completion of submittal review to ensure compliance with the pre-field engineering report scope, progress payment is issued. Progress payment is less than that issued for the Season I report since most of the water and air balancing work effort is completed under Season I.

1.4 CONTRACT MODIFICATIONS

In conjunction with the Contract Clause DFARS 252.236-7000 Modification Proposals-Price Breakdown, and where actual ownership and operating costs of construction equipment cannot be determined from Contractor accounting records, equipment use rates shall be based upon the applicable provisions of the [EP 1110-1-8](#).

1.5 CONTRACTOR'S INVOICE AND CONTRACT PERFORMANCE STATEMENT

1.5.1 Content of Invoice

Requests for payment will be processed in accordance with the Contract Clause FAR 52.232-27 Prompt Payment for Construction Contracts and FAR 52.232-5 Payments Under Fixed-Price Construction Contracts. The requests for payment shall include the documents listed below.

- a. The Contractor's invoice, on NAVFAC Form 7300/30 furnished by the Government, showing in summary form, the basis for arriving at the amount of the invoice. Form 7300/30 shall include certification by Contractor and Quality Control (QC) Manager.
- b. The Earned Value Report from the cost-loaded NAS, showing in detail: the estimated cost, percentage of completion, and value of completed performance for each of the construction categories stated in this contract. Use NAVFAC Form 43300/54 on NAVFAC contracts when a Monthly

Estimate for Voucher is required.

- c. Updated Project Schedule and reports required by the contract.
- d. Contractor Safety Self Evaluation Checklist.
- e. Other supporting documents as requested.
- f. Updated copy of submittal register.
- g. Invoices not completed in accordance with contract requirements will be returned to the Contractor for correction of the deficiencies.
- h. Contractor's Monthly Estimate for Voucher and Contractors Certification (NAVFAC Form 4330/54) with Subcontractor and supplier payment certification.
- i. Materials on Site.

1.5.2 Submission of Invoices

If DFARS Clause 5252.232-7006 is included in the contract, provide the documents listed in paragraph CONTENT OF INVOICE in their entirety as attachments in Wide Area Work Flow (WAWF) for each invoice submitted. The maximum size of each WAWF attachment is two megabytes, but there are no limits on the number of attachments. If a document cannot be attached in WAWF due to system or size restriction, provide it as instructed by the Contracting Officer.

Monthly invoices and supporting forms for work performed through the anniversary award date of the contract shall be submitted to the Contracting Officer within 5 calendar days of the date of invoice. For example, contract award date is the 7th of the month, the date of each monthly invoice shall be the 7th and the invoice shall be submitted by the 12th of the month.

1.5.3 Final Invoice

- a. A final invoice shall be accompanied by the certification required by DFARS 252.247.7023 Transportation of Supplies by Sea, and the Contractor's Final Release. If the Contractor is incorporated, the Final Release shall contain the corporate seal. An officer of the corporation shall sign and the corporate secretary shall certify the Final Release.
- b. For final invoices being submitted via WAWF, the original Contractor's Final Release Form and required certification of Transportation of Supplies by Sea must be provided directly to the respective Contracting Officer prior to submission of the final invoice. Once receipt of the original Final Release Form and required certification of Transportation of Supplies by Sea has been confirmed by the Contracting Officer, the Contractor shall then submit final invoice and attach a copy of the Final Release Form and required certification of Transportation of Supplies by Sea in WAWF.
- c. Final invoices not accompanied by the Contractor's Final Release and required certification of Transportation of Supplies by Sea will be considered incomplete and will be returned to the Contractor.

1.6 PAYMENTS TO THE CONTRACTOR

Payments will be made on submission of itemized requests by the Contractor which comply with the requirements of this section, and will be subject to reduction for overpayments or increase for underpayments made on previous payments to the Contractor.

1.6.1 Obligation of Government Payments

The obligation of the Government to make payments required under the provisions of this contract will, at the discretion of the Contracting Officer, be subject to reductions and suspensions permitted under the FAR and agency regulations including the following in accordance with FAR 32.503-6 Suspension or Reduction of Payments:

- a. Reasonable deductions due to defects in material or workmanship;
- b. Claims which the Government may have against the Contractor under or in connection with this contract;
- c. Unless otherwise adjusted, repayment to the Government upon demand for overpayments made to the Contractor; and
- d. Failure to provide up to date record drawings not current as stated in Contract Clause "FAC 5252.236-9310, Record Drawings."

1.6.2 Payment for Onsite and Offsite Materials

Progress payments may be made to the contractor for materials delivered on the site, for materials stored off construction sites, or materials that are in transit to the construction sites under the following conditions:

- a. FAR 52.232-5(b) Payments Under Fixed Price Construction Contracts.
- b. Materials delivered on the site but not installed, including completed preparatory work, and off-site materials to be considered for progress payment shall be major high cost, long lead, special order, or specialty items, not susceptible to deterioration or physical damage in storage or in transit to the construction site. Examples of materials acceptable for payment consideration include, but are not limited to, structural steel, non-magnetic steel, non-magnetic aggregate, equipment, machinery, large pipe and fittings, precast/prestressed concrete products, plastic lumber (e.g., fender piles/curbs), and high-voltage electrical cable. Materials not acceptable for payment include consumable materials such as nails, fasteners, conduits, gypsum board, glass, insulation, and wall coverings.
- c. Materials to be considered for progress payment prior to installation shall be specifically and separately identified in the Contractor's estimates of work submitted for the Contracting Officer's approval in accordance with Earned Value Report requirement of this contract. Requests for progress payment consideration for such items shall be supported by documents establishing their value and that the title requirements of the clause at FAR 52.232-5 Payments Under Fixed-Price Construction Contracts have been met.
- d. Materials are adequately insured and protected from theft and exposure.
- e. Provide a written consent from the surety company with each payment

request for offsite materials.

- f. Materials to be considered for progress payments prior to installation shall be stored in the Continental United States. Other locations are subject to written approval by the Contracting Officer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not Used

-- End of Section --

SECTION 01 30 00

ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

08/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1

(2014) Safety and Health Requirements
Manual

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

View Location Map; G

Progress and Completion Pictures; G

1.3 VIEW LOCATION MAP

Submit, prior to or with the first digital photograph submittals, a sketch or drawing indicating the required photographic locations. Update as required if the locations are moved.

1.4 PROGRESS AND COMPLETION PICTURES

Photographically document site conditions prior to start of construction operations. Provide monthly, and within one month of the completion of work, digital photographs, 1600x1200x24 bit true color minimum resolution in JPEG file format showing the sequence and progress of work. Take a minimum of 20 digital photographs each week throughout the entire project from a minimum of ten views from points located by the Contracting Officer. Submit with the monthly invoice two sets of digital photographs, each set on a separate compact disc (CD) or data versatile disc (DVD), cumulative of all photos to date. Indicate photographs demonstrating environmental procedures. Provide photographs for each month in a separate monthly directory and name each file to indicate its location on the view location sketch. Also provide the view location sketch on the CD or DVD as a digital file. Include a date designator in file names. Cross reference submittals in the appropriate daily report. Photographs provided are for unrestricted use by the Government.

1.5 MINIMUM INSURANCE REQUIREMENTS

Provide the minimum insurance coverage required by FAR 28.307-2 Liability, during the entire period of performance under this contract. Provide other insurance coverage as required by State law.

1.6 FIRST TIER CONTRACTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR SPACE TEMPERATURE CONTROL, HVAC TAB, AND APPARATUS INSPECTION

All contract requirements of Sections 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC, 23 09 23.02 BACnet DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL SYSTEMS FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS, 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC, Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING FOR HVAC, and Section 26 08 00 APPARATUS INSPECTION AND TESTING shall be accomplished directly by a first tier subcontractor. No work required by Section 23 09 00 and 23 09 23.02 shall be accomplished by a second tier subcontractor.

1.7 SUPERVISION

1.7.1 Minimum Communication Requirements

Have at least one qualified superintendent, or competent alternate, capable of reading, writing, and conversing fluently in the English language, on the job-site at all times during the performance of contract work. In addition, if a Quality Control (QC) representative is required on the contract, then that individual must also have fluent English communication skills.

1.7.2 Superintendent Qualifications

The project superintendent must have a minimum of 10 years experience in construction with at least 5 of those years as a superintendent on projects similar in size and complexity. The individual must be familiar with the requirements of EM 385-1-1 and have experience in the areas of hazard identification and safety compliance. The individual must be capable of interpreting a critical path schedule and construction drawings. The qualification requirements for the alternate superintendent are the same as for the project superintendent. The Contracting Officer may request proof of the superintendent's qualifications at any point in the project if the performance of the superintendent is in question.

1.7.2.1 Duties

The project superintendent is primarily responsible for managing and coordinating day-to-day production and schedule adherence on the project. The superintendent is required to attend NAVFAC Red Zone meetings, partnering meetings, and quality control meetings. The superintendent or qualified alternative must be on-site at all times during the performance of this contract until the work is completed and accepted.

1.7.3 Non-Compliance Actions

The Project Superintendent is subject to removal by the Contracting Officer for non-compliance with requirements specified in the contract and for failure to manage the project to insure timely completion. Furthermore, the Contracting Officer may issue an order stopping all or part of the work until satisfactory corrective action has been taken. No part of the time lost due to such stop orders is acceptable as the subject of claim for

extension of time for excess costs or damages by the Contractor.

1.8 PRECONSTRUCTION MEETING

After award of the contract but prior to commencement of any work at the site, meet with the Contracting Officer to discuss and develop a mutual understanding relative to the administration of the value engineering and safety program, preparation of the schedule of prices or earned value report, shop drawings, and other submittals, scheduling programming, prosecution of the work, and clear expectations of the "Interim DD Form 1354" Submittal. Major subcontractors who will engage in the work must also attend.

1.8.1 Cybersecurity of Control Systems

Discuss Cybersecurity of building control system requirements and submittals as required for Sections 25 05 11.00 and 25 05 11.01.

1.9 FACILITY TURNOVER PLANNING MEETINGS (NAVFAC Red Zone - NRZ)

Meet with the Government to identify strategies to ensure the project is carried to expeditious closure and turnover to the Client. Start the turnover process at the Pre-Construction Conference meeting with a discussion of the NAVFAC Red Zone (NRZ) process and convene at regularly scheduled NRZ Meetings. See attached NAVFAC Red Zone Facility Turnover Planning Meeting AGENDA for typical meeting agenda. Include the following in the facility Turnover effort:

1.9.1 NRZ Checklist

- a. Contracting Officer's Technical Representative (COTR) will provide the Contractor a copy of the NRZ Checklist template prior to 75 percent completion. See attached NRZ Checklist Items.
- b. Prior to 75 percent completion add/delete critical activities to the NRZ Checklist template as necessary to match the project scope, and schedule critical activities and insert planned completion dates in the NRZ checklist for each critical activity. Present the NRZ Checklist to COTR and review during a regularly scheduled QC Meeting.

1.9.2 Meetings

- a. Upon Government acceptance of the NRZ Checklist, the Project Superintendent is required to lead regular NRZ Meetings beginning at approximately 75 percent project completion, or three to six months prior to Beneficial Occupancy Date (BOD), whichever comes first.
- b. The Contracting Officer will determine the frequency of the meetings, which is expected to increase as the project completion draws nearer.
- c. Using the NRZ Checklist as a Plan of Action and Milestones (POAM) and basis for discussion, review upcoming critical activities and strategies to ensure work is completed on time.
- d. Coordinate with the COTR any upcoming activities that require Government involvement.
- e. Maintain the NRZ Checklist by documenting the actual completion dates

as work is completed and update the NRZ Checklist with revised planned completion dates as necessary to match progress. Distribute copies of the current NRZ Checklist to attendees at each NRZ Meeting.

1.9.3 Facility Turnover Planning Meeting Attendees

The following key personnel are to attend the Facility Turnover Meetings: Contractor QC Manager, Superintendent, Major Subcontractors, Designer-of-Record, Contracting Officer's Representative, Representative(s) of NAVFAC, the Facility Owner, and the Client.

1.10 PARTNERING

To most effectively accomplish this contract, the Government requires the formation of a cohesive partnership within the Project Team whose members are from the Government, the Contractor and their Subcontractors. Key personnel from the Supported Command, the End User (who will occupy the facility), the Government Design and Construction team and Subject Matter Experts, the Installation, the Contractor and Subcontractors, and the Designer of Record will be invited to participate in the Partnering process. The Partnership will draw on the strength of each organization in an effort to achieve a project that is without any safety mishaps, conforms to the Contract, and stays within budget and on schedule.

The Contracting Officer will provide Information on the Partnering Process and a list of key and optional personnel who should attend the Partnering meeting.

1.10.1 Informal Partnering

The Contracting Officer will organize the Partnering Sessions with key personnel of the project team, including Contractor personnel and Government personnel.

The Initial Partnering session should be a part of the Pre-Construction Meeting. Partnering sessions will be held at a location agreed to by the Contracting Officer and the Contractor (typically a conference room provided by the PWD FEAD/ROICC office or the Contractor). The Initial Informal Partnering Session will be conducted and facilitated using electronic media (a video and accompanying forms) provided by the Contracting Officer. The Partners will determine the frequency of the follow-on sessions, at no more than 3 to six month intervals.

1.11 ELECTRONIC MAIL (E-MAIL) ADDRESS

Establish and maintain electronic mail (e-mail) capability along with the capability to open various electronic attachments as text files, pdf files, and other similar formats. Within 10 days after contract award, provide the Contracting Officer a single (only one) e-mail address for electronic communications from the Contracting Officer related to this contract including, but not limited to contract documents, invoice information, request for proposals, and other correspondence. The Contracting Officer may also use email to notify the Contractor of base access conditions when emergency conditions warrant, such as hurricanes or terrorist threats. Multiple email addresses are not allowed.

It is the Contractor's responsibility to make timely distribution of all Contracting Officer initiated e-mail with its own organization including field office(s). Promptly notify the Contracting Officer, in writing, of

any changes to this email address.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not Used

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 01 30 01.00 22

DESIGN, PROCUREMENT, AND INSTALLATION OF FURNITURE, FIXTURES, AND EQUIPMENT
07/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

UFC 3-120-10

(2018) Interior Design

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Preliminary (Pre-Final) FF&E Package; G, ID NAVFAC MidLant Interior Design

Final FF&E Package; G, ID NAVFAC MidLant Interior Design

Best Value Determinations; G, ID NAVFAC MidLant Interior Design

Audio Visual Package; G

SD-04 Samples

Final FF&E Mock-Up; G, ID NAVFAC MidLant Interior Design

SD-07 Certificates

Contractor's Interior Designer's Qualifications; G, ID NAVFAC MidLant Interior Design

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Interior Photography; G, ID NAVFAC MidLant Interior Design

1.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Furnishings, Fixtures, and Equipment (FF&E) shall include, but is not limited to; furniture, shop equipment, specialty equipment, audio visual (A/V), appliances, soft window treatments (draperies, valances, and cornices), artwork, accessories, and other miscellaneous items to support facility functions. Weapon racks, drying cages, and lockers are not considered FF&E. FF&E and A/V shall be fully integrated with the building systems and finishes. FF&E may also include specialty items for which the customer activity shall be responsible for specifying.

The design and documentation of the FF&E and A/V shall be funded as the Interior Design Services Option and A/V Services Option. The purchase and installation of the FF&E Package and separate A/V Package shall be funded separately as the FF&E Planned Modification. The Government FF&E and A/V budgets on the Bid Schedule/Price Proposal Form for the FF&E and A/V Planned Modifications is \$3,593,702 and does NOT include the Contractor's Handling and Administration Rate (HAR). This Government FF&E estimate shall not be altered by Contractors during the bid process.

All FF&E items are subject to the Buy American Act.

1.4 INTERIOR DESIGN SERVICES OPTION

1.4.1 Qualifications and Affiliations

Per [UFC 3-120-10](#), The Interior Designer of Record, hereafter referred to as the Prime Contractor's Interior Designer, shall be certified by the National Council for Interior Design Qualification (NCIDQ). The Prime Contractor's Interior Designer, Design Firm owners, and any Specialists shall NOT have any affiliation with any furniture, fixture, or equipment products, any furniture dealership or manufacturers. Provide documentation of the Prime [Contractor's Interior Designer's qualifications](#) and significant interior design experience. The Government reserves the right to approve/disapprove the Prime Contractor's Interior Designer.

1.4.2 Concept FF&E package

A Concept FF&E package, prepared by the A/E's Interior Designer, indicating the salient characteristics of all required FF&E and A/V items and CADD drawings, will be provided to the Prime Contractor. As a separately priced option, the Prime Contractor shall provide the services of a Certified Interior Designer, other than the A/E's Interior Designer, to function as Prime Contractor's Interior Designer, to prepare and provide the Final, Best Valued FF&E Package and procurement data based on the Concept FF&E package.

All fixed and movable furnishings selections shall be closely coordinated with the final construction documents and interior finishes. The Prime Contractor's Interior Designer and A/V Specialist shall be required to validate all FF&E and A/V requirements with the Activity, make any necessary changes to the FF&E and interior building finishes. Per [UFC 3-120-10](#), the (FF&E) includes the design, selection, specification, color coordination, and procurement documentation of the required items necessary to meet the functional, operational, sustainability, and aesthetic needs of the facility. The FF&E package shall be fully integrated with the design, construction, and schedule of all building finishes and all building systems (HVAC, Plumbing, Fire Protection, Communications, Electrical, Data, Architecture, etc. All outlets, switches, fire extinguishers, thermostats, etc. shall be fully accessible. All sprinkler heads, ADA, etc. clearances shall be accommodated.

The Prime Contractor's Interior Designer shall also attend attend walk-throughs, coordinate mock-ups, and attend any and all required meetings to accomplish this task. The Contractor's Interior Designer and equipment specialists shall be responsible for designing and providing specifications for procurement of all FF&E, to include delivery and installation, for the facilities built under this contract as directed by the NAVFAC Interior Designer. FF&E specifications shall be based on NAVSUP

Blanket Purchase Agreements (BPA's), GSA schedules, and other Federal contracts and complying with priorities found in FAR Part 8.404. The utilization of the current NAVSUP BPA list is required for BVD Analysis Request for Pricing. The current NAVSUP BPA list is available at:

https://acquisition.navy.mil/rda/home/acquisition_one_source/strategic_sourcing/don_furniture_acquisition

1.4.3 Audio Visual (A/V) and/or other Specialty Furniture or Equipment

When A/V, or other specialty furniture or equipment, i.e. shop equipment, kitchen equipment, fitness equipment, high density storage, etc., is required in the project, the Contractor shall obtain the services of equipment specialists to provide design and specifications for the specialty equipment. A Certified Technology Specialist-Design (CTS-D) is required for the design and preparation of A/V packages. The Equipment Specialist shall provide separate [Best Value Determinations](#) (BVDs) for this equipment, if required by NAVFAC. This Final package shall be in accordance with the general interior design requirements in [UFC 3-120-10](#) and as required for all areas as developed during the client FF&E and A/V programming.

The [Audio Visual Package](#) must be prepared by the Contractor's ID and A/V Certified Technology Specialist-Design (CTS-D) as a separate package. If an A/V package is required, the design, procurement, and installation of the A/V package shall comply with all of the same requirements as those defined for the FF&E package in this specification section. Additionally provide A/V floor plans indicating equipment locations and A/V riser diagrams for all A/V systems, and coordinate equipment locations and power requirements with power plans. The A/V and specialty packages shall be fully integrated into the design, construction, and schedule of all building finishes and all building systems (HVAC, Plumbing, Fire Protection, Communications, Electrical, Data, Architecture, etc.) All outlets, switches, thermostats, fire extinguishers, etc. shall be fully accessible. All sprinkler heads, fire extinguishers, ADA, etc. clearances shall be accommodated.

1.5 FURNISHINGS, FIXTURES, AND EQUIPMENT (FF&E) SUBMITTALS FOR THE INTERIOR DESIGN SERVICES OPTION

Develop design as described and in accordance with the Activity requirements. Include in the design all loose furnishings required to produce an optimum functional facility, consistent with quality commercial design. This project also includes the preparation of specific detailed information for each selected item. Each submittal shall demonstrate thorough interaction with the Activity requirements and complete coordination with the facility design and the Structural Interior Design (SID).

- a. The Activity will supply the Contractor's Interior Designer with a complete list of all existing FF&E, to include sizes, utility requirements, weight, etc., to be relocated to the new facility
- b. For all projects, including fast track projects, the Prime Contractor shall be responsible for sufficiently scheduling all FF&E and A/V and any revisions to SID submittals early enough to obtain the required government approvals, and meet all ordering and installation lead times to complete the project by the contract completion date.

These are minimum requirements and the Prime Contractor shall be prepared

to provide any/all additional meetings and submittals that may be necessary to support the Interior Design effort/ and FF&E coordination.

1.5.1 FF&E Requirements (Interior Design Orientation) Meeting

This meeting shall occur at the Pre-Construction meeting prior to the FF&E "Over the Shoulder" Review and the development of the FF&E package. The NAVFAC Interior Designer will provide the Contractor's Interior Designer a sample format of the FF&E submittal, review the Best Value Determination (BVD) process, discuss the number of Best Value Determinations required and discuss Blanket Purchase Agreement (BPAs), GSA or other mandatory sources to consider. Minutes of this meeting shall be submitted to the NAVFAC Interior Designer within 7 business days.

1.5.2 FF&E "Over the Shoulder" Review

Prior to the FF&E Concept Presentation and Best Value Determination (BVD) Analysis, the Contractor's Interior Designer shall meet with the NAVFAC Interior Designer for an "over-the-shoulder" review to present preliminary FF&E options. These can be presented in a "loose" format for preliminary approval prior to the Activity presentation. The "over-the-shoulder" review meeting shall be held at NAVFAC, located in Norfolk, VA.

1.5.3 FF&E Concept Presentation

The Prime Contractor's Interior Designer shall present the NAVFAC approved Preliminary (Pre-final) FF&E package to the Activity, located at Camp Lejeune, for approval. This presentation shall include loose format samples and catalog cuts. Sample boards are not required.

1.5.4 Best Value Determination(BVD) Analysis "Over the Shoulder Review"

Prior to issuing the Best Value Determination (BVD) Analysis, the Prime Contractor's Interior Designer shall meet with the NAVFAC Interior Designer for an "over-the-shoulder" review of the solicitation package and request a copy of the most current NAVSUP BPA vendor list. The "over-the-shoulder" review meeting shall be held at NAVFAC MIDLANT, located in Norfolk, VA. The Contractor's Interior Designer must provide a copy of the BVD Analysis Request for Pricing cover letter to the Contractor for review and comment prior to the BVD Analysis "Over the Shoulder Review" meeting.

BVD Analysis Solicitation shall include the following;

- a. Copy of the BVD Analysis Request for Pricing cover letter.
- b. BVD Analysis Request for Pricing Spreadsheet/Questionnaire with "basis of design" item product numbers, photos & descriptions.
- c. Technical Specification to establish minimum acceptable FF&E requirements.
- d. Project Specific Room/Furniture Typical.
- e. Furniture Plans with Legends coded to the BVD Analysis RFP (PDF format).

1.5.5 BVD Submittal and "Over the Shoulder Review"

The Prime Contractor's Interior Designer shall submit one (1) copy of the Preliminary BVA BVD package to the NAVFAC Interior Designer and one (1)

copy to IDD/Base Property for Marine Corps projects. An electronic copy shall be sent to the NAVFAC Contracting Officer. The "over-the-shoulder" review meeting shall be held at NAVFAC, located in Norfolk, VA to review the results of the solicitation and determine a best value recommendation. The BVD Submittal shall be in a 3-ring binder and shall include the following items for review and approval:

- a. Cover Title Page (project name, project #, location, submittal date, submittal title)
- b. Table of Contents.
- c. Point of Contact List.
- d. Narrative of Interior Designer Objectives.
- e. BVD Analysis Request for Pricing Spreadsheet/Questionnaire completed by all bidders and completed Questionnaire.
- f. Copy of all information sent to bidders and documentation that all required sources were contacted.
- g. Back-up Information submitted by each bidder (cut sheets/highlighted pricing sheets/technical specifications, pricing, dealer and manufacturer qualification for each product showing that products meets all requirements). Provide in CD format and include within each binder.
- h. Response(s) from UNICOR.
- i. BVD Analysis Pricing Evaluation Spreadsheet comparing bidder quotes/responses.
- j. Contractor's Interior Designer recommendation for the Best Value vendor and justifications.

1.5.6 BVD Analysis FF&E Mock-Up

The Prime Contractor's Interior Designer shall coordinate a mock-up for best value review of IDENTIFY LIKELY REQUIRED FURNITURE TYPICAL(S) by at least the top three (3) BPA vendors submitting the highest rated FF&E proposals, as determined by NAVFAC. The reviewers shall include the NAVFAC Interior Designer, Contracting Officer, IDD/Base Property, and the Activity.

1.5.7 Preliminary FF&E Submittal

The Preliminary FF&E submittal shall be presented to the Activity and NAVFAC in loose format at a meeting to occur at the Activity, located at [Camp Lejeune](#). Five (5) submittals will be required; (1) for the NAVFAC Project Manager, (3) for the FEAD/ROICC and IDD/Base Property, and (1) for the Activity.

Submit the following in a 3-ring binder (with the exception of the 16x20 color boards for the Activity only) for review and approval:

- a. Cover Title Page (project name and number, submittal date and title).
- b. Table of Contents.
- c. Point of Contact List (includes contact info for recommended Best Value

BPA Holder(s) vendors and subcontractors).

- d. Preliminary FF&E list (Cost Summary) to include shipping, freight, handling, professional installation, project management, HAR and applicable sales tax.
- e. Preliminary Procurement Data Spec Sheets for each product indicating general appearance as well as proposed finish and fabric selections.
- f. Furniture placement plans coded to the FF&E list and Procurement Data Spec Sheets.
- g. Technical Specifications used in bid request for all furniture, fixtures and equipment etc.
- h. 16x20 inch color boards of furniture and finishes specified for Activity presentation to indicate overall design intent (1 copy required for Activity only).
- i. Final Finish/Fabric Selections and Samples attached to boards in 8" x 10" binder format using edge-reinforced, heavy-duty plastic sheet protectors for each board/sheet.
- j. Copy of Quote(s)/Bill of Materials (BOM) on letterhead from the vendor(s) determined to be the best value. Code BOM line items to FF&E Cost Summary Item Codes.
- k. 8x10 color photographs of the color boards.

1.5.8 Final FF&E Mock-Up

The Prime Contractor and his Interior Designer shall coordinate an on-site mock-up and review of IDENTIFY REQUIRED FURNITURE TYPICAL(s) with the selected, best-valued BPA vendor(s). Building finishes and fixtures shall be installed in the affected area(s) to the greatest extent practicable in order to assess building systems/fixture coordination. The reviewers shall include the NAVFAC Interior Designer and Construction Manager, The Prime Contractor's Interior Designer, IDD, Base Property, and the Activity. The BPA vendor(s) shall be available on-site to respond to questions. The mock-up exercise shall be completed prior to the submittal of the Final FF&E submittal and award of the modification for turnkey furniture procurement.

1.5.9 Final FF&E Submittal

The Final FF&E submittal shall be due 10 months prior to BOD following the receipt of review comments on the preliminary FF&E submittal and shall include furniture, furnishings, artwork, and equipment and shall be in the format described below or the format provided by the NAVFAC Interior Designer and the [UFC 3-120-10](#) Interior Design.

These are minimum requirements and the Contractor shall be prepared to provide any additional meetings and submittals that may be necessary to support the Interior Design effort and FF&E coordination.

The Final FF&E Submittal shall be submitted in a 3-ring binder for review and approval. The number of final submittals required shall be;

Three (3) total; One each for the NAVFAC Project Manager, the

FEAD/ROICC and the Activity.

The Final FF&E Submittal and shall include the following;

- a. Cover Title Page with project name, project #, submittal date, submittal title identified on binder cover and spine.
- b. Table of Contents.
- c. Point of Contact List which includes contact info for recommended Best Value BPA Holder(s) vendors and subcontractors.
- d. Final FF&E list (Cost Summary) to include shipping, handling, freight, professional installation, project management, HAR and any applicable sales tax.
- e. Final Procurement Data Spec Sheets for each product indicating final finish and fabric selections.
- f. Final Finish Selections and Memo Samples for the FF&E submitted in 8 x 10 binder format, using heavy-duty plastic sheet protectors.
- g. Copy of Final Quote(s)/Bill of Materials (BOM) on letterhead from the vendor(s) determined to be the Best Value. Code BOM line items to FF&E Cost Summary Item Codes.
- h. Best Value Determination Guidelines sheets; completed and signed by the Contactor's Interior Designer.
- i. Final Furniture Placement Plans coded to the FF&E list, Procurement Data Sheets and specifications.
- j. CD copy of the final FF&E binder.

1.5.10 Punch List:

See section 2.1.13 Punch List.

1.5.11 FF&E and Interior Finish Construction Submittals

Submit any revisions or deviations caused by discontinued items or NAVFAC required changes to the Contracting Officer for approval by the NAVFAC Interior Designer. All submittal due dates for the FF&E, A/V, and specialty equipment shall be reflected in the Contractor's construction schedule. Changes to the FF&E schedule shall be submitted to the government Interior Designer for approval. The [Final FF&E package](#) shall be submitted no later than 9 months prior to the contract completion date.

1.6 BEST VALUE DETERMINATION

A Best Value Determination (BVD) is required by FAR 8.404 when placing orders against Federal Supply Schedules for the selection of furniture and furnishings. Best Value is defined in FAR 2.101 as ensuring that the order to be placed under a Federal Supply Schedule results in the lowest overall cost alternative (considering price, special features, administrative costs and client's needs) to meet the government's needs.

- a. A (BVD) shall be performed on a minimum of three manufacturers for orders exceeding a total procurement of \$5,000 from an individual

manufacturer. Multiple BVDs may be required in order to complete the final FF&E and A/V packages.

- b. The required quantity of BVD's to be performed will be determined by the NAVFAC Interior Designer during the design phase and is dependent on the appropriate NAVSUP BPA category(s) to be utilized and specific project requirements.
- c. Documentation shall be provided to the Government with the final FF&E package. Specific Documentation is indicated in the Preliminary BVA Submittal and "Over the Shoulder Review." The BVD Statement shall be completed and signed by the contractor's interior designer.

The Prime Contractor's Interior Designer is responsible for the following written BVD justifications:

1.6.1 Total procurement greater than \$150,000

From all BPA holders under the applicable group for FF&E procurements greater than \$150,000, UNICOR must always be solicited. The Prime Contractor's Interior Designer shall develop performance criteria and project requirements based on a generic design for the BPA holders and UNICOR to develop a price and performance proposal. The BVD form must be completed and submitted for all FF&E procurements greater than \$150,000 and manufacturer's quotes and a summary of all proposals must be attached.

1.6.2 UNICOR

Federal Prison Industries (UNICOR) must be considered as part of all BVDs. This must be done by sending an email with the requirements and evaluation criteria. If they are not comparable in one or more areas of price, quality, and time of delivery, the designer can specify product under NAVSUP BPA or GSA schedule.

1.6.3 Evaluation Factors

The Best Value determination Determination shall address issues such as:

- a. Space planning; human factors data related to anthropometrics (reach, clearance, adjustability), space, and acoustics.
- b. Ergonomics.
- c. Product quality (including construction and materials); sustainability features, product warranties; history of the product and/or manufacturer.
- d. Ability to service products through dealers or others within a certain geographical range of the project.
- e. Price (including freight).
- f. Aesthetics.
- g. Appropriateness; and lighting, power and telecommunications systems management and/or coordination as related to the facility (when applicable); and other project specific factors as identified and/or required.

- h. Emphasis shall be to create a fully integrated design solution by providing quality products to meet the functional needs of the customer. Customer preferences shall be considered. The focus shall be on the best overall value. Use the NAVFAC Best Value Determination forms provided by the NAVFAC Interior Designer.

PART 2 FF&E TURNKEY EFFORT

2.1 FF&E PLANNED MODIFICATION

FF&E Planned Modification: As a planned modification, provide procurement and installation coordination of the complete and usable Final FF&E package. The FF&E Package must include shipping, freight, handling, installation and the Prime Contractor's FF&E Handling and Administration Rate (HAR) percentage as applied to the final FF&E total cost.

- a. The Audio Visual (AV) Equipment will be identified as a separate line item, priced separately from the FF&E and funded as a planned modification. The A/V Package must include shipping, freight, handling, installation, applicable state sales tax, and the Prime Contractor's A/V Handling and Administration Rate (HAR) percentage as applied to the final A/V total cost (excluding taxes).

2.1.1 Authorization

The Government will provide separate funding for procurement and installation coordination of the FF&E and A/V package. Construction funds will not be used. Upon receipt of required funding, the Prime Contractor shall be authorized by the Contracting Officer, as a planned modification to the construction contract, to procure and install all Final FF&E utilizing NAVSUP Blanket Purchase Agreements (BPA's), GSA schedules, and other Federal contracts and complying with priorities found in FAR Part 8.404. The Prime Contractor will be expected to procure and coordinate the installation of the approved Final FF&E package exactly as specified, or approved equal. The amount of the modification will be the actual cost of these items from the Federal Government price schedules (NAVSUP BPAs and/or GSA), including any freight and installation charges from the furniture supplier as well as the Prime Contractor's HAR and any applicable state sales tax. The HAR includes all of the Prime Contractor's effort related to storage, coordination, handling, administration of subcontractors, and all other associated costs and profit for the procurement of FF&E.

The Government will indicate the separate FF&E and A/V estimates based on the Concept Design in the contract solicitation Price Proposal Form (Bid Schedule). These Government estimates shall not be altered by Prime Contractors during the bid process.

Prime Contractors shall propose a Handling and Administration Rate (HAR) only. The Prime Contractor will propose the FF&E HAR in the contract solicitation. The Prime Contractor's proposed HAR may not exceed 5 percent of the total FF&E costs, as noted on the bid schedule. The HAR shall not include costs associated with the Interior Design Services required in the Interior Design Services Option.

FF&E items are subject to the Buy American Act.

2.1.2 Procurement and Installation

The Prime Contractor shall coordinate the building completion date with the

installation dealer(s) specified in the FF&E Package. The Prime Contractor shall anticipate possible manufacturer price increases if order placement is delayed. It is recommended to order the FF&E product once the planned modification is awarded and funds are received to avoid incurring additional costs. Delayed production and delivery dates can be noted at the time of order placement to coincide with the contract completion date. Any costs incurred due to manufacturer price increases will be the burden of the Prime Contractor.

2.1.3 Use of Blanket Purchase Agreements (BPA) and GSA Schedules

The Prime Contractor will receive a letter of authorization from the Contracting Officer citing the name of the furniture dealer(s) and other information to use when accessing the Federal Government supply sources.

2.1.4 Deposits

The Prime Contractor should anticipate providing a deposit of between 30 percent and 50 percent of the FF&E costs when placing the orders with the manufacturer's dealerships.

The Contractor shall also anticipate possible manufacturer price increases. Recommend ordering FF&E product once funds are received to avoid incurring additional cost. Delayed production and delivery dates can be noted at the time of order placement to coincide with building completion dates. Any cost incurred due to manufacturer price increases will be the burden of the Contractor.

2.1.5 Davis Bacon Wages

Davis Bacon wages do not apply to the FF&E installer from the Government supply sources. The workforce for the FF&E installation and delivery shall be separate and distinct from the labor workforce performing under the construction contract.

2.1.6 Sales Tax

The Prime Contractor shall take maximum advantage of all exemptions from State and Local taxation authorities whether available to it directly or available to the Prime Contractor based on an exemption afforded the Government. The responsibility for paying applicable taxes rests with the Prime Contractor. Any state and local taxes applicable to the FF&E shall be included within the FF&E Dealer's quote. Any items purchased as building materials such as carpet are taxable.

2.1.7 Bonds

FF&E items are not considered construction and the prime contractor shall not be required to secure any additional bond for the award of the FF&E line item unless otherwise indicated in the contract. If any additional bond is required for the FF&E line item it is to be included in the prime contractor's FF&E HAR.

2.1.8 Unique Item Identification (IUID) and Valuation

Unique item identification and valuation is a system of marking and valuing items delivered to DoD that enhances logistics, contracting, and financial business transactions. The IUID policy is mandatory for all DoD contracts that require the delivery of items. An item is a single article or a

single unit formed by a grouping of subassemblies, components, or constituent parts. The Prime Contractor shall provide DoD Unique item identification, valuation and delivery of data for all required FF&E items for which the government's unit acquisition cost is \$5,000 or more.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 Installation

The FF&E package includes the installation of all furniture and furnishings as specified in the FF&E package. The installation dealer(s) specified in the FF&E package shall receive, store as required, transport to the project site, off load, inside deliver, unpack, assemble, place/install, clean, and dispose of all the trash for all furniture and furnishings. It is the Prime Contractor's responsibility to coordinate the building completion, occupancy, and furniture installation dates with the installation dealer(s) specified in the FF&E package. Any costs associated with or delaying furniture shipments is the responsibility of the Prime Contractor.

The Prime Contractor shall provide and coordinate all Building Systems (HVAC, Plumbing, Fire Protection, Communications, Electrical, Data, Architectural, etc. with the furniture plans and furniture installation. All outlets, switches, thermostats, etc. shall be fully accessible. All sprinkler heads, fire extinguishers, ADA, etc., clearances shall be accommodated.

3.2 Installation Warranty

All movable furnishings shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and warranty requirements. All movable furnishings shall be level and aligned. All doors, drawers and accessories shall be level and aligned to open, close and otherwise operate smoothly and securely.

All furniture shall be installed by the furniture manufacturer's dealer of record and not the Prime Contractor. The Government reserves the right to approve/disapprove the Prime Contractor's FF&E installers. In addition, installation dealer(s) must be located within a 100 mile radius of the project site unless approved by the Government Interior Designer. The Prime Contractor shall repair, to the Government's satisfaction, any/all damage to any facility finish that is a result of the furniture installation and correct all punch list items for the furniture/furnishings. The Prime Contractor shall obtain services of equipment specialists to install the electrical equipment, to include but not limited to televisions, Video Teleconference Equipment, ceiling mounted projectors, and mission essential electronic equipment included in the FF&E package.

3.3 Ordering Documentation

After award of the FF&E and A/V packages, three CD copies and one binder copy for Marine Corps projects of all ordering documentation, including Factory Order number (FO) and warranty information for all products, shall be provided to the Contracting Officer at the final FF&E walk-thru.

3.4 Post Award Changes

After award of the FF&E turnkey modification, any request to change the FF&E items must be submitted to the Contracting Officer. The FF&E turnkey

modification will have been accepted, priced, and negotiated as detailed in the final package. Those items will have been agreed to considering color, specific type and quality of material, price, sustainability, life cycle, and dealership service. The Government will require the Prime Contractor to provide exactly those items. Should changes become necessary, careful consideration shall be essential to assure that equivalent quality, price and other aspects of the item are maintained. Otherwise, price adjustments must be negotiated. Coordination with building finishes and other FF&E items is required for all proposed and approved substitutions. The Prime Contractor shall obtain approval from the Contracting Officer and NAVFAC Interior Designer for any changes to the FF&E Package.

Post award FF&E manufacturer's price increases, beyond the pricing guarantee date, are the responsibility of the Prime Contractor and shall not be transferred to the Government.

3.5 Punch List

The Contractor, his Interior Designer (and A/V consultant or other specialty consultants, if applicable) shall attend at least one punch list site visit with the installation dealer(s), NAVFAC Interior Designer and the Base Representative/Activity Contact. The site visit shall identify all punch list items (at installation dealer's 98 percent completion).

3.6 Interior Photography Submittal

Upon completion of the FF&E installation, the Contractor shall provide professional [Interior Photography](#) of the completed interior. The photographer must be in the business of specializing in architectural and interior photography. The submittal shall be a minimum of 6 photos. "Before" and "After" photos are required for all renovation projects. Permission for publishing and using the photos by NAVFAC is required. Images to be submitted on a CD as a JPEG or PDF with a resolution of no less than 300 dpi as well as 8x10 matte photographs. The photographs shall be taken prior to occupancy and staged with accessories as needed. Additional lighting may be needed to ensure quality images.

3.7 Best Value Determination

A best value determination has been performed on the final FF&E package. A best value determination is required by FAR 8.404 when placing orders against Federal Supply Schedules for the selection of furniture and furnishings. Best Value is defined in FAR 2.101 as ensuring that the order to be placed under a Federal Supply Schedule results in the lowest overall cost alternative (considering price, special features, administrative costs and client's needs) to meet the government's needs.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 01 31 23.13 20

ELECTRONIC CONSTRUCTION AND FACILITY SUPPORT CONTRACT MANAGEMENT SYSTEM
05/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 CONTRACT ADMINISTRATION

Utilize the Naval Facilities Engineering Command's (NAVFAC's) Electronic Construction and Facility Support Contract Management System (eCMS) for the transfer, sharing and management of electronic technical submittals and documents. The web-based eCMS is the designated means of transferring technical documents between the Contractor and the Government. Paper media or e-mail submission, including originals or copies, of the documents identified in Table 1 are not permitted, except where eCMS is unavailable, non-functional or specifically requested in addition to electronic submission. Contact the Contracting Officer's Representative (COR) regarding availability of eCMS training and reference materials.

1.2 USER PRIVILEGES

The Contractor will be provided access to eCMS. All technical submittals and documents must be transmitted to the Government via the COR. Project roles and system roles will be established to control each user's menu, application, and software privileges, including the ability to create, edit, or delete objects.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

List of Contractor's Personnel; G

1.4 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS AND CONNECTIVITY

1.4.1 General

The eCMS requires a web-browser (platform-neutral) and Internet connection. Obtain from an approved vendor an External Certification Authority (ECA), Primary Key Infrastructure (PKI) certificate, or other similar digital identification to support two-factor authentication and access to eCMS. Provide and maintain computer hardware and software for the eCMS access throughout the duration of the contract for all Contractor-designated users. Provide connectivity, speed, bandwidth, and access to the Internet to ensure adequate functionality. Neither upgrading of the Contractor's computer system nor delays associated from the usage of the eCMS will be justification or grounds for a time extension or cost adjustment to the Contract.

1.4.2 Contractor Personnel List

Within 20 calendar days of contract award, provide to the Contracting Officer a [list of Contractor's personnel](#) who will have the responsibility for the transfer, sharing and management of electronic [design](#), technical submittals and documents and will require access to the eCMS. Project personnel roles to be filled in the eCMS include the Contractor's Project Manager, Superintendent, Quality Control (QC) Manager, and Site Safety and Health Officer (SSHO). Personnel must be capable of electronic document management. Notify the COR immediately of any personnel changes to the project. The Contracting Officer reserves the right to perform a security check on all potential users. Provide the following information:

First Name

Last Name

E-mail Address

Office Address

Project Role (e.g. Project Manager, QC Manager, Superintendent)

1.4.3 Field Administration

Within 30 days of Contract Award, provide a tablet computer with a Common Access Card (CAC) reader at the job site for Government use only. The tablet computer must have a web-browser, built-in camera, and cellular data connectivity. Provide tablet computer with a rugged case suitable for use in a construction environment. The tablet computer must be fully charged and made available at all times for Government use to facilitate the input of construction data at the job site. After completion of the work, reset the tablet computer to factory default settings. The tablet computer remains the property of the Contractor and must be removed from the site. There are restrictions on use of WIFI on military bases. Cellular data connectivity and availability, and use of WIFI requires coordination with and approval by the Contracting Officer.

1.5 SECURITY CLASSIFICATION

In accordance with Department of Navy guidance, all military construction contract data are unclassified, unless specified otherwise by a properly designated Original Classification Authority (OCA) and in accordance with an established Security Classification Guide (SCG). Refer to the project's OCA when questions arise about the proper classification of information.

The eCMS and tablet computer must only be used for the transaction of unclassified information associated with construction projects. In conformance with the Freedom of Information Act (FOIA), Department of Defense Manual 5200.01-V4: DoD Information Security Program: Controlled Unclassified Information (CUI), and DoD requirements, any unclassified project documentation uploaded into the eCMS must be designated either "U - UNCLASSIFIED" (U) or "FOUO - UNCLASSIFIED-FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY" (FOUO).

1.6 ECMS UTILIZATION

Establish, maintain, and update data and documentation in the eCMS throughout the duration of the contract.

Personally Identifiable Information (PII) transmittal is not permitted in the eCMS.

1.6.1 Information Security Classification/Identification

The eCMS must be used for the transmittal of the following documents. This requirement supersedes conflicting requirements in other sections, however, submittal review times in Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES remain applicable. Table 1 - Project Documentation Types provides the appropriate U and FOUO designations for various types of project documents. Construction documents requiring FOUO status must be marked accordingly. Apply the appropriate markings before any document is uploaded into eCMS. Markings are not required on U documents.

Table 1 also identifies which eCMS application is to be used in the transmittal of data (these are subject to change based on the latest software configuration). If a designated application is not functional within 4 hours of initial attempt, defer to the Submittal application and submit the required data as an uploaded portable document (e.g. PDF), word processor, spreadsheet, drawing, or other appropriate format. Hard copy or e-mail submission of these items is acceptable only if eCMS is documented to be not available or not functional. After uploading documents to the Submittal application, transmit the submittals and attachments to the COR via the Transmittal application. For Submittals, select the following:

Preparation by = Contractor personnel assigned to prepare the submittal
Approval by = Contracting Officer Representative (COR)
Returned by = Design Lead/Manager
Forwarded to = Contractor project manager

Table 1 - Project Documentation Types

SUBJECT/NAME	CLASS	REMARKS	ECMS APPLICATION
As-Built Drawings	U	Locations of sensitive areas must be labeled as either "Controlled Area" or "Restricted Area" and may be shown on unclassified documents with the approval from Site Security Manager	Submittals and Transmittals
Building Information Modeling (BIM)	U	1. Locations of sensitive areas must be labeled as either "Controlled Area" or "Restricted Area" and may be shown on unclassified documents with the approval from Site Security Manager 2. Design reviews will be performed in existing "Dr Checks"	Submittals and Transmittals
Construction Permits	U	Refer to rules of the issuing activity, state or jurisdiction	Submittals and Transmittals

SUBJECT/NAME	CLASS	REMARKS	ECMS APPLICATION
Construction Schedules (Activities and Milestones)	U	After the schedule submittal is approved by the COR, import the schedule file into the scheduling application, and select "Approve" to establish a new schedule baseline	Submittals, Transmittals and Scheduling App
Construction Schedules (Cost-Loaded)	FOUO	After the schedule submittal is approved by the COR, import the schedule file into the scheduling application, and select "Approve" to establish a new schedule baseline	Submittals, Transmittals and Scheduling App
Construction Schedules (3-Week Lookahead)	U	Import the schedule file into the scheduling application, and select "Approve" to establish a new schedule baseline	Scheduling App
DD 1354 Transfer of Real Property	U		Submittals and Transmittals
Daily Production Reports	FOUO	Provide weather conditions, crew size, man-hours, equipment, and materials information	Daily Report
Daily Quality Control (QC) Reports	FOUO	Provide QC Phase, Definable Features of Work Identify visitors	Daily Report
Designs and Specifications	U	1. Locations of sensitive areas must be labeled as either "Controlled Area" or "Restricted Area" and may be shown on unclassified documents with the approval from Site Security Manager 2. Design reviews will be performed in existing "Dr Checks"	Submittals and Transmittals
Environmental Notice of Violation (NOV), Corrective Action Plan	U	Refer to rules of the issuing activity, state or jurisdiction	Submittals and Transmittals
Environmental Protection Plan (EPP)	FOUO		Submittals and Transmittals

SUBJECT/NAME	CLASS	REMARKS	ECMS APPLICATION
Invoice (Supporting Documentation)	FOUO	Applies to supporting documentation only. Invoices are submitted in Wide-Area Workflow (WAWF)	Submittals and Transmittals
Jobsite Documentation, Bulletin Board, Labor Laws, SDS	U		Submittals and Transmittals
Meeting Minutes	FOUO		Meeting Minutes
Operations & Maintenance Support Information (OMSI/eOMSI), Facility Data Worksheet	U	1. Locations of sensitive areas must be labeled as either "Controlled Area" or "Restricted Area" and may be shown on unclassified documents with the approval from Site Security Manager 2. Design reviews will be performed in existing "Dr Checks"	Submittals and Transmittals
Photographs	U	Subject to base/installation restrictions	Submittals and Transmittals
QCM Initial Phase Checklists	FOUO		Checklists (Site Management)
QCM Preparatory Phase Checklists	FOUO		Checklists (Site Management)
Quality Control Plans	FOUO		Submittals and Transmittals
QC Certifications	U		Submittals and Transmittals
QC Punch List	U		Punch Lists (Testing Logs)
Red-Zone Checklist	U		Checklists (Site Management)
Rework Items List	FOUO		Punch Lists (Testing Logs)
Request for Information (RFI) Post-Award	FOUO		RFIs

SUBJECT/NAME	CLASS	REMARKS	ECMS APPLICATION
Safety Plan	FOUO		Daily Report
Safety - Activity Hazard Analyses (AHA)	FOUO		Daily Report
Safety - Mishap Reports	FOUO		Daily Report
SCIF/SAPF Accreditation Support Documents	FOUO	Note: Some Construction Security plans may be classified as Secret. Classified information must not be uploaded into eCMS. Refer to the Site Security Manager, as applicable.	Submittals and Transmittals
Shop Drawings	U	Locations of sensitive areas must be labeled as either "Controlled Area" or "Restricted Area" and may be shown on unclassified documents with the approval from Site Security Manager	Submittals and Transmittals
Storm Water Pollution Prevention (Notice of Intent - Notice of Termination)	U	Refer to rules of the issuing activity, state or jurisdiction	Submittals and Transmittals
Submittals and Submittal Log	U		Submittals and Transmittals
Testing Plans, Logs, and Reports	FOUO		Submittals and Transmittals
Training/Reference Materials	U		Submittals and Transmittals
Training Records (Personnel)	FOUO		Submittals and Transmittals
Utility Outage/Tie-In Request/Approval	FOUO		Submittals and Transmittals
Warranties/BOD Letter	FOUO		Submittals and Transmittals

SUBJECT/NAME	CLASS	REMARKS	ECMS APPLICATION
Quality Assurance Reports	FOUO		Checklists (Government initiated)
Non-Compliance Notices	FOUO		Non-Compliance Notices (Government initiated)
Other Government-prepared documents	FOUO		GOV ONLY
All Other Documents	FOUO	Refer to FOIA guidelines and contact the FOIA official to determine whether exemptions exist	As applicable

1.6.2 Markings on FOUO documents

- a. Only FOUO documents being electronically uploaded into the eCMS (.docx, .xlsx, .pptx and others as appropriate), and associated paper documents described in the paragraph CONTRACT ADMINISTRATION require FOUO markings as indicated in the subparagraphs below.
- b. FOUO documents that are originally created within the eCMS application using the web-based forms (RFIs, Daily Reports, and others as appropriate) will be automatically watermarked by the eCMS software, and these do not require additional markings.
- c. FOUO documents must be marked "UNCLASSIFIED//FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY" at the bottom of the outside of the front cover (if there is one), the title page, the first page, and the outside of the back cover (if there is one).
- d. FOUO documents must be marked on the internal pages of the document as "UNCLASSIFIED//FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY" at top and bottom.
- e. Where Installations require digital photographs to be designated FOUO, place the markings on the face of the photograph.
- f. For visual documentation, other than photographs and audio documentation, mark with either visual or audio statements as appropriate at both the beginning and end of the file.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Requested Government response dates on Transmittals and Submittals must be in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Contract. Requesting response dates earlier than the required review and response time, without concurrence by the Government COR, may be cause for rejection.

Incomplete submittals will be rejected without further review and must be resubmitted. Required Government response dates for resubmittals must reflect the date of resubmittal, not the original submittal date.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used.

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not Used.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 01 32 17.00 20

COST-LOADED NETWORK ANALYSIS SCHEDULES (NAS)

08/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 DEFINITIONS

The cost-loaded Network Analysis Schedule (NAS) is a tool to manage the project, both for Contractor and Government activities. The NAS is also used to report progress, evaluate time extensions, and provide the basis for progress payments.

For consistency, when scheduling software terminology is used in this section, the terms in Primavera's scheduling programs are used.

1.2 SCHEDULE REQUIREMENTS PRIOR TO THE START OF WORK

1.2.1 Preliminary Scheduling Meeting

Before preparation of the Project Baseline Schedule, and prior to the start of work, meet with the Contracting Officer to discuss the proposed schedule and the requirements of this section.

1.2.2 Project Baseline Schedule

Submit the Baseline NAS within 30 calendar days after contract award. Government review comments on the Contractor's schedule(s) do not relieve the Contractor from compliance with requirements of the Contract Documents. Only bonds may be paid prior to acceptance of the Baseline NAS. The acceptance of a Baseline NAS is a condition precedent to:

- a. The Contractor starting demolition work or construction stage(s) of the contract.
- b. Processing Contractor's invoices(s) for construction activities/items of work.
- c. Review of any schedule updates.

Submittal of the Baseline NAS, and subsequent schedule updates, is understood to be the Contractor's certification that the submitted schedule meets the requirements of the Contract Documents, represents the Contractor's plan on how the work will be accomplished, and accurately reflects the work that has been accomplished and how it was sequenced (as-built logic).

1.3 THREE-WEEK LOOK AHEAD SCHEDULE

1.3.1 Weekly CQC Coordination and Production Meeting

Deliver three hard copies and one electronic file of the 3-Week Look Ahead Schedule to the Contracting Officer no later than 8 a.m. each Monday, for review during the weekly CQC Coordination or Production Meeting.

1.3.2 Look Ahead Schedule Requirements

Prepare and issue a 3-Week Look Ahead schedule to provide a more detailed day-to-day plan of upcoming work identified on the Project Network Analysis Schedule. Requirements include:

- a. Key the work plans mapped to NAS activity numbers and updated each week to show the planned work for the current and following two-week period.
- b. Include upcoming outages, closures, field evaluation tests, preparatory meetings, and initial meetings.
- c. Identify critical path activities on the Three-Week Look Ahead Schedule.
- d. The detail work plans are to be bar chart type schedules, derived from but maintained separately from the Project NAS on an electronic spreadsheet program and printed on 8-1/2 by 11 inch sheets as directed by the Contracting Officer.
- e. Activities must not exceed 5 working days in duration and have sufficient level of detail to assign crews, tools and equipment required to complete the work.

1.4 MONTHLY NETWORK ANALYSIS

1.4.1 Monthly Network Analysis Updates

Meet with Government representatives at monthly intervals to review and agree on the information presented in the updated project schedule. The submission of an acceptable, updated schedule to the Government is a condition precedent to the processing of the Contractor's invoice. Submit an acceptable, updated schedule to the Government regardless of whether a Contractor's invoice is submitted for the given period. The Contractor and Government must consent to agree on unit quantities of work completed equating to a percentage of payment for each activity progressed during the update period. Monthly update schedules must incorporate as-built events as they occurred and provide ongoing status of anticipated finish dates. As-built events must correspond to contemporaneous records including but not limited to submittals, daily production reports and quality control reports.

Provide the following with each Schedule submittal:

- a. Time-Scaled Logic Diagram.
- b. Reports listed in paragraph REQUIRED TABULAR REPORTS.
- c. Data disks containing the project schedule. Include the back-up native .xer program files.

1.4.2 As-Built Schedule

As a condition precedent to the release of retention and making final payment, submit an "As-Built Schedule," as the last schedule update showing all activities at 100 percent completion. This schedule must reflect the exact manner in which the project was actually constructed.

1.5 CORRESPONDENCE AND TEST REPORTS

Reference Schedule activity IDs that are being addressed in each correspondence (e.g., letters, Requests for Information (RFIs), e-mails, meeting minute items, Production and QC Daily Reports, material delivery tickets, photographs) and test report (e.g., concrete, soil compaction, weld, pressure).

1.6 ADDITIONAL SCHEDULING REQUIREMENTS

References to additional scheduling requirements, including systems to be inspected, tested and commissioned, that are located throughout the remainder of the Contract Documents, are subject to the requirements of this section.

1.7 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Designated Project Scheduler; G

Baseline NAS; G

SD-07 Certificates

Monthly Network Analysis Updates; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

As-Built Schedule; G

1.8 SOFTWARE

Prepare and maintain project schedules using Primavera P6 software in a version compatible with Government's current version. Importing data into P6 using data conversion techniques or third party software is cause for rejection of the submitted schedule.

1.9 DESIGNATED PROJECT SCHEDULER

Submit to the Contracting Officer for approval an individual who will serve as the Designated Project Scheduler. Include a copy of the candidate's resume with qualifications. The Contracting Officer may remove the Designated Project Scheduler, and require replacement, if the scheduler does not effectively fulfill their duties in accordance with the contract requirements. Payment request will not be processed without an approved Designated Project Scheduler.

1.9.1 Qualifications

The designated Scheduler for the project shall have prepared and maintained at least 3 previous schedules of similar size and complexity as this

contract using Primavera P3, Primavera SureTrak, or Primavera P6. A resume outlining the qualifications of the Scheduler shall be submitted for acceptance to the Contracting Officer. Payment will not be processed until an acceptable Scheduler is provided.

1.10 NETWORK SYSTEM FORMAT

The system must include time-scaled logic diagrams and specified reports.

Prepare the schedule in accordance with the following Primavera P6 settings and parameters. Deviation from these settings and parameters, without prior consent of the Contracting Officer, is cause for rejection of schedule submission.

1.10.1 Diagrams

Provide 11 by 17 inch hard-copy of Time-scaled Logic Diagram in color and landscape-oriented. Clearly show activities on the longest path. Include the following information for each activity and include accompanying Gantt chart:

- a. Activity ID
- b. Activity Name
- c. Original Duration in Work Days
- d. Remaining duration in Work Days
- e. Physical Percent Complete
- f. Start Date
- g. Finish Date
- h. Total Float

1.10.2 Schedule Activity Properties and Level of Detail

1.10.2.1 Activity Identification and Organization

- a. Identify construction activities planned for the project and other activities that could impact project completion if delayed in the NAS.
- b. Identify administrative type activity/milestones, including all pre-construction submittal and permit requirements prior to demolition or construction stage.
- c. Include times for procurement, Contractor quality control and construction, acceptance testing and training in the schedule.
- d. Include the Government approval time required for the submittals that require Government Approval prior to construction, as indicated in Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.
- e. Create separate activities for each Phase, Area, Floor Level and Location the activity is occurring.
- f. Do not use construction category activity to represent non-work type

reference (e.g. Serial Letter, Request for Information) in NAS. Place Non-work reference within the P6 activity details notebook.

Activity categories included in the schedule are specified below.

1.10.2.2 Activity Logic

- a. With the exception of the Contract Award and Contract Completion Date (CCD) milestone activities, activity must not be open-ended; each activity must have predecessor and successor ties.
- b. Activities must not have open start or open finish (dangling) logic.
- c. Do not use lead or lag logic without Contracting Officer prior approval.
- d. Minimize redundant logic ties.
- e. Once an activity exists on the schedule it must not be deleted or renamed to change the scope of the activity and must not be removed from the schedule logic without approval from the Contracting Officer.
 - (1) While an activity cannot be deleted, where said activity is no longer applicable to the schedule, but must remain within the logic stream for historical record, change the activity to a milestone and clearly label "NO LONGER REQUIRED" after the activity name. Redistribute accordingly any remaining budget associated with that activity.
 - (2) Document any such change in the milestone's "Notebook," including a date and explanation for the change.
 - (3) The ID number for a "NO LONGER REQUIRED" activity must not be re-used for another activity.

1.10.2.3 Critical and Near Critical Activity Baseline Limitation

For P6 settings, critical activities are defined as being on the Longest Path. "Near Critical" is defined as having total float, of up to 14 days more, than the greatest float value found on the Longest Path. Longest Path (Critical) and Near Critical Activities must not make up more than 20 percent of all activity within the Baseline Schedule.

1.10.2.4 Assigned Calendars

All NAS activity must be assigned calendars that reflect required and anticipated non-work days.

1.10.2.5 Activity Categories

1.10.2.5.1 Pre-construction Activities

Examples of pre-construction activities include, but are not limited to, bond approval, permits, pre-construction submittals and approvals. Include pre-construction activities that are required to be completed prior to the Contractor starting the demolition or construction stage of work.

1.10.2.5.2 Procurement Activities

Examples of procurement activities include, but are not limited to:

Material/equipment submittal preparation, submittal and approval of material/equipment; material/equipment fabrication and delivery, and material/equipment on-site. As a minimum, separate procurement activities must be provided for critical items, long lead items, items requiring Government approval and material/equipment procurement for which payment will be requested in advance of installation. Show each delivery with relationship tie to the Construction Activity specifically for the delivery.

1.10.2.5.3 Government Activities

Government and other agency activities that could impact progress must be clearly identified. Government activities include, but are not limited to; Government approved submittal reviews, Government conducted inspections/tests, environmental permit approvals by State regulators, utility outages, and delivery of Government Furnished Material/Equipment.

1.10.2.5.4 Construction Quality Management (CQM) Activities

The Preparatory and Initial Phase meetings for each Definable Feature of Work identified in the Contractor's Quality Control Plan must be included in the Three-Week Look Ahead Schedule. Preparatory and Initial phase meetings are not required in the NAS, but can be represented by a start milestone linked to successor parent Construction Activity. The Follow-up Phase must be represented by the Construction Activities themselves in the NAS.

1.10.2.5.5 Construction Activities

No on-site construction activity may have a duration in excess of 20 working days. Contractor activities must be driven by calendars that reflect Saturdays, Sundays and all Federal Holidays as non-work days, unless otherwise defined in this contract.

1.10.2.5.6 Turnover and Closeout Activities

Include activities or milestones for items on the NAVFAC Red Zone Checklist/POAM that are applicable to this project. As a minimum, include required Contractor testing, required Government acceptance inspections on equipment, Pre-Final Inspection, Punch List Completion, Final Inspection and Acceptance. Add an unconstrained start milestone for the initial NAVFAC Red Zone - Facility Turnover Planning Meeting at approximately 75 percent construction contract completion or six months prior to Contract Completion Date (CCD), whichever is sooner.

1.10.2.5.7 Testing of HVAC - DALT, TAB, and PVT Activities

Include in the baseline schedule, activities and milestones associated with Government acceptance of Duct Air Leakage Test (DALT), Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing (TAB) and Performance Verification Test (PVT) as required and in accordance with Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING FOR HVAC and Section 23 09 23.02 BACnet DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS.

- a. Identify the general area or location(s) for Government Acceptance Testing of DALT, TAB and PVT.
- b. Incorporate into the baseline schedule, time periods required for advance notification of work, and Government submittal review in accordance with Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING FOR

HVAC, paragraph DALT AND TAB SUBMITTAL AND WORK SCHEDULE.

c. Include the following as schedule activities or milestones:

- (1) Pre-DALT/TAB/PVT Meeting
- (2) TAB Design Review Report, Government review
- (3) TAB Pre-Field Engineering Report, Government review
- (4) DALT Field Work
- (5) DALT Field Acceptance Testing
- (6) Certified Final DALT Report, Government review
- (7) Control Contractors PVT Plan, Government review
- (8) Equipment Suppliers PVT Plan, Government review
- (9) Season I TAB Field Work
- (10) Season I Certified Final TAB Report, Government review
- (11) Endurance Testing, Government review
- (12) PVT Field Work
- (13) PVT Report, Government review
- (14) Season I TAB Field Acceptance Testing
- (15) Season II TAB Field Work
- (16) Season II Certified Final TAB Report, Government review
- (17) Season II TAB Field Acceptance Testing

1.10.2.5.8 Commissioning Activities

Include in the baseline schedule activities and milestones associated with Commissioning.

- a. Identify the general area or location(s) of systems for Commissioning Inspection and Testing
- b. Incorporate into the baseline schedule time periods for Government submittal review

1.10.2.6 Contract Milestones and Constraints

1.10.2.6.1 Project Start Date Milestones

Include as the first activity on the schedule a start milestone titled "Contract Award," which must have a Mandatory Start constraint equal to the Contract Award Date.

1.10.2.6.2 NAVFAC Red Zone - Facility Turnover Planning Meeting Milestones

See paragraph TURNOVER AND CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES above.

1.10.2.6.3 Substantial Completion Milestone

Include an unconstrained finish milestone on the schedule titled "Substantial Completion." Substantial Completion is defined as the point in time the Government would consider the project ready for beneficial occupancy wherein by mutual agreement of the Government and Contractor, Government use of the facility is allowed while construction access continues in order to complete remaining items (e.g. punch list and other close out submittals). Include a separate Substantial Completion Milestone for each phase if the contract requires construction to be completed in phases.

1.10.2.6.4 DD-1354 Finish Milestone

Add unconstrained finish milestone, titled "DD-1354" and scheduled 30 calendar days prior to Substantial Completion, whenever a Form DD-1354 is required in accordance with Section 01 20 00.00 20 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES.

1.10.2.6.5 Projected Completion Milestone

Include an unconstrained finish milestone on the schedule titled "Projected Completion." Projected Completion is defined as the point in time all contract requirements are complete and verified by the Government with a successful Final Inspection in accordance with Section 01 45 00.00 20 QUALITY CONTROL. This milestone must have the Contract Completion Date (CCD) milestone as its only successor.

1.10.2.6.6 Contract Completion Date (CCD) Milestone

Last schedule entry must be an unconstrained finish milestone titled "Contract Completion (CCD: DD-MM-YY)." DD-MM-YYYY is the current contract completion date at data date, day-month-year corresponding to P6 Must Finish Date. NAS milestone updates of Project Completion finish date for longest path must reflect calculated float as positive or negative based on CCD. Calculation of schedule updates must be such that if the finish of the "Projected Completion" milestone falls after the contract completion date, then negative float is calculated on the longest path. If the finish of the "Projected Completion" milestone falls before the contract completion date, the float calculation must reflect positive float on the longest path.

1.10.2.7 Work Breakdown Structure & Activity Code

At a minimum, establish a Work Breakdown Structure (WBS) and provide activity codes identified as follows:

1.10.2.7.1 Work Breakdown Structure (WBS)

Group all activities and milestones within appropriate WBS categories including, at a minimum, the following:

a. Project Milestones:

(1) Management Milestones

- (2) Project Administrative Meetings
 - (3) Permits
 - b. Pre-Construction Phase:
 - (1) Submittals and Reviews
 - (2) Procurement
 - (3) Mobilization
 - c. Construction Phase: Create multiple sub-sections in accordance with project specific categories of work including in WBS descending order as follows:
 - (1) General Area
 - (a) Type of Work Item
 - 1. Location
 - d. Commissioning & Testing:
 - (1) Specific area/locations of commissioning
 - (2) Final Testing
 - (3) Training
 - d. Project Closeout: Include activity items such as Punchlist, Demobilization, O&M, As-built Drawings, Training, and As-built NAS.
 - e. Modifications: Create sub-category of Conformed and Non-Conformed under Modification WBS. Create multiple sub-sections as the project progresses identified by issue and Fragnet placed in Conformed for modifications issued prior data date, or Non-Conformed for issues not modified to contract prior data date.
 - f. Removed Activity: Activity "removed" by remaining within logic sequence and changing to Finish Milestone. Actualize finish date to date activity removed from schedule and provide reason(s) for removal explained in Activity Notebook.
- 1.10.2.7.2 Responsibility Code
- All activities in the project schedule must be identified with the party responsible for completing the task. Activities must not belong to more than one responsible party.
- 1.10.2.7.3 Activity Category Code
- Provide user defined "CAT" codes for Project Level activity codes. Use the following codes:
- a. Assign "Procure" to Procurement type activity
 - b. Assign "Construct" Construction type activity

- c. Assign "Close Out" to dedicated Commissioning, Testing & Close Out type activity.
- d. Assign "Other" to other activity not otherwise designated.

1.10.2.7.4 Construction Specification Institute (CSI) Masterformat Code

Identify all activities in the project schedule with its respective Specification Section number. Activities must not belong to more than one Section number. If an activity does not have an applicable CSI Code (e.g. Mobilize), the code must be "0000".

1.10.2.8 Anticipated Weather Lost Work Days

Use the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration's (NOAA) Summary of Monthly Normals report to obtain the historical average number of days each month with precipitation, using a nominal 30-year, greater than 0.10 inch precipitation amount parameter, as indicated on the Station Report for the NOAA location closest to the project site as the basis for establishing a "Weather Calendar" showing the number of anticipated non-workdays for each month due to adverse weather, in addition to Saturdays, Sundays and all Federal Holidays as non-work days.

Assign the Weather Calendar to any activity that could be impacted by adverse weather. The Contracting Officer will issue a modification in accordance with the contract clauses, giving the Contractor a time extension for the difference of days between the anticipated and actual adverse weather delay if the number of actual adverse weather delay days exceeds the number of days anticipated for the month in which the delay occurs and the adverse weather delayed activities are critical to contract completion. A lost workday due to weather conditions is defined as a day in which the Contractor cannot work at least 50 percent of the day on the impacted activity.

1.10.2.9 Cost Loading

The Project Network Analysis Schedule (NAS) must be cost-loaded and will provide the basis for progress payments. Earned Value Reports must be derived from and correspond to cost loaded NAS. Use the Critical Path Method (CPM) and the Precedence Diagram Method (PDM) to satisfy time and cost applications.

1.10.2.9.1 Cost Loading Activities

Assign Material and Equipment Costs, for which payment will be requested in advance of installation, to their respective procurement activity (i.e., the material/equipment on-site activity). Assign cost for material/equipment, paid for after installation; labor; and construction equipment to their respective Construction Activities. Provide breakdown of definable features of work for cost loaded activities comprising Mobilization and De-Mobilization (Lump sum not allowed). The value of commissioning, testing and closeout WBS section may not be less than 10 percent of the total costs for Procurement and Construction Activities. Evenly disperse overhead and profit to each activity over the duration of the project.

1.10.2.9.2 Partial Payment

Breakdown unit of measure and cost must be defined within P6 Activity Detail Expenses for partial payment of any cost loaded activity. Lump sum cost loaded activity will not be partially paid.

1.10.3 Schedule Software Settings and Restrictions

- a. Activity Constraints: Date/time constraint(s), other than those required by the contract, are not allowed unless accepted by the Contracting Officer. Identify any constraints proposed and provide an explanation for the purpose of the constraint in the Narrative Report as described in paragraph REQUIRED TABULAR REPORTS.
- b. Default Progress Data Disallowed: Actual Start and Actual Finish dates on the CPM schedule must match the dates on the Contractor Quality Control and Production Reports.
- c. Software Settings: Handle schedule calculations and Out-of-Sequence progress (if applicable) through Retained Logic, not Progress Override. Show all activity durations and float values in days. Show activity progress using Remaining Duration. Set default activity type to "Task Dependent".
- d. At a minimum, include the following settings and parameters in P6 Schedule preparation:
 - (1) General: Define or establish Calendars and Activity Codes at the "Project" level, not the "Global" level.
 - (2) Admin Drop-Down Menu, Admin Preferences, Time Periods Tab:
 - (a) Set time periods for P6 to 8.0 Hours/Day, 40.0 Hours/Week, 172.0 Hours/Month and 2000.0 Hours/Year.
 - (b) Use assigned calendar to specify the number of work hours for each time period: Must be checked.
 - (3) Admin Drop-Down Menu, Admin Preferences, Earned Value Tab:
 - (a) Earned Value Calculation: Use "Budgeted values with current dates".
 - (4) Project Level, Dates Tab:
 - (a) Set "Must Finish By" date to "Contract Completion Date", and set "Must Finish By" time to 05:00pm.
 - (5) Project Level, Defaults Tab:
 - (a) Duration Type: Set to "Fixed Duration & Units".
 - (b) Percent Complete Type: Set to "Physical".
 - (c) Activity Type: Set to "Task Dependent".
 - (d) Calendar: Set to "Standard 5 Day Workweek". Calendar must reflect Saturday, Sunday and all Federal holidays as non-work days. Alternative calendars may be used with Contracting Officer

approval.

(6) Project Level, Calculations Tab:

- (a) Activity percent complete based on activity steps: Must be Checked.
- (b) Reset Remaining Duration and Units to Original: Must be Checked.
- (c) Subtract Actual from At Completion: Must be Checked.
- (d) Recalculate Actual units and Cost when duration percent complete changes: Must be Checked.
- (e) Link Actual to Date and Actual This Period Units and Cost: Must be Checked.
- (f) Price/Unit: Set to "\$1/h".
- (g) Update units when costs change on resource assignments: Must be Unchecked.

(7) Project Level, Settings Tab:

- (a) Define Critical Activities: Check "Longest Path".

(8) Work Breakdown Structure Level, Earned Value Tab:

- (a) Technique for Computing Performance Percent Complete: "Activity percent complete" is selected.
- (b) Technique for Computing Estimate to Complete (ETC): "PF = 1" is selected.

1.10.4 Required Tabular Reports

Include the following reports with the Baseline, Monthly Update and any other required schedule submittals:

- a. Log Report: P6 Scheduling/Leveling Report.
- b. Narrative Report: Identify and justify:
 - (1) Progress made in each area of the project;
 - (2) Longest Path;
 - (3) Date/time constraint(s), other than those required by the contract
 - (4) Listing of all changes made between the previous schedule and current updated schedule include: added or deleted activities, original and remaining durations for activities that have not started, logic (sequence constraint lag/lead), milestones, planned sequence of operations, longest path, calendars or calendar assignments, and cost loading;
 - (5) Any decrease in previously reported activity Earned Amount;

- (6) Pending items and status thereof, including permits, changes orders, and time extensions;
- (7) Status of Contract Completion Date and interim milestones;
- (8) Current and anticipated delays (describe cause of delay and corrective actions(s) and mitigation measures to minimize);
- (9) Description of current and potential future schedule problem areas.

Each entry in the narrative report must cite the respective Activity ID and Activity Name, the date and reason for the change, and description of the change.

- c. Earned Value Report: Derive from and correspond to P6 cost loaded schedule. List all activities having a budget amount cost loaded. Compile total earnings on the project from notice to proceed to current progress payment request. Show current budget, previous physical percent complete, to-date physical percent complete, previous earned value, to-date earned value and cost to complete on the report for each activity.
- d. Schedule Variance Control (SVC) Diagram: With each schedule submission, provide a SVC diagram showing 1) Cash Flow S-Curves indicating planned project cost based on projected early and late activity finish dates and 2) Earned Value to-date. Revise Cash Flow S-Curves when the contract is modified, or as directed by the Contracting Officer.

1.11 CONTRACT MODIFICATION

1.11.1 Time Impact Analysis (TIA)

Submit a Time Impact Analysis with each cost and time proposal for a proposed change. TIA must illustrate the influence of each change or delay on the Contract Completion Date or milestones. No time extensions will be granted nor delay damages paid unless a delay occurs which consumes all available Project Float, and extends the Projected Completion beyond the Contract Completion Date.

- a. Each TIA must be in both narrative and schedule form. The narrative must define the scope and conditions of the change; provide start and finish dates of impact, successor and predecessor activity to impact period, responsible party; describe how it originated, and how it impacts the schedule. The schedule submission must consist of three native files:
 - (1) Fragnet used to define the scope of the changed condition
 - (2) Most recent accepted schedule update as of the time of the proposal or claim submission that has been updated to show all activity progress as of the time of the impact start date.
 - (3) The impacted schedule that has the fragnet inserted in the updated schedule and the schedule "run" so that the new completion date is determined.
- b. For claimed as-built project delay, the inserted fragnet TIA method must be modified to account for as-built events known to occur after

the data date of schedule update used.

- c. All TIAs must include any mitigation, and must determine the apportionment of the overall delay assignable to each individual delay. Apportionment must provide identification of delay type and classification of delay by compensable and non-compensable events. The associated narrative must clearly describe analysis methodology used, and the findings in a chronological listing beginning with the earliest delay event.

- (1) Identify and classify types of delay defined as follows:

- (a) Force majeure delay (e.g. weather delay): Any delay event caused by something or someone other than the Government or the Contractor, or the risk of which has not been assigned solely to the Government or the Contractor. If the force majeure delay is on the longest path, in absence of other types of concurrent delays, the Contractor is granted an extension of contract time, classified as a non-compensable event.

- (b) A Contractor-delay: Any delay event caused by the Contractor, or the risk of which has been assigned solely to the Contractor. If the contractor-delay is on the longest path, in absence of other types of concurrent delays, Contractor is not granted extension of contract time, and classified as a non-compensable event. Where absent other types of delays, and having impact to project completion, Contractor must provide to Contracting Officer a Corrective Action Plan identifying plan to mitigate delay.

- (c) A Government-delay: Any delay event caused by the Government, or the risk of which has been assigned solely to the Government. If the Government-delay is on the longest path, in absence of other types of concurrent delays, the Contractor is granted an extension of contract time, and classified as a compensable event.

- (2) Functional theory must be used to analyze concurrent delays, where: separate delay issues delay project completion, do not necessarily occur at same time, rather occur within same monthly schedule update period at minimum, or within same as-built period under review. If a combination of functionally concurrent delay types occurs, it is considered Concurrent Delay, which is defined in the following combinations:

- (a) Government-delay concurrent with contractor-delay: excusable time extension, classified non-compensable event.

- (b) Government-delay concurrent with force majeure delay: excusable time extension, classified non-compensable event.

- (c) Contractor-delay concurrent with force majeure delay: excusable time extension, classified non-compensable event.

- (3) Pacing delay reacting to another delay (parent delay) equally or more critical than paced activity must be identified prior to pacing. Contracting Officer will notify Contractor prior to pacing. Contractor must notify Contracting Officer prior to pacing. Notification must include identification of parent delay issue, estimated parent delay time period, paced activity(s) identity, and pacing reason(s). Pacing Concurrency is defined as

follows:

- (a) Government-delay concurrent with contractor-pacing: excusable time extension, classified compensable event.
- (b) Contractor-delay concurrent with Government-pacing: inexcusable time extension, classified non-compensable event
- d. Submit Data disks containing the narrative and the source schedule files used in the time impact analysis.
- e. All as-built and known planned activity must be included in NAS. Add cost loading or change Contract Completion Date to NAS in accordance to conformed contract modifications issued prior to Data Date of NAS update.

1.11.2 No Reservation of Rights

All direct costs, indirect cost, and time extensions will be negotiated and made full, equitable and final at the time of modification issuance.

1.12 PROJECT FLOAT

Project Float is the length of time between the Contractor's Projected Completion Milestone and the Contract Completion Date Milestone. Project Float available in the schedule will not be for the exclusive use of either the Government or the Contractor.

The use of Resource Leveling or other techniques used for the purpose of artificially adjusting activity durations to consume float and influence critical path is prohibited.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not used.

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not used.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 01 33 00

SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

08/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 DEFINITIONS

1.1.1 Submittal Descriptions (SD)

Submittal requirements are specified in the technical sections. Examples and descriptions of submittals identified by the Submittal Description (SD) numbers and titles follow:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Submittals that are required prior to or commencing with the start of work on site.

Preconstruction Submittals include schedules and a tabular list of locations, features, and other pertinent information regarding products, materials, equipment, or components to be used in the work.

Certificates Of Insurance

Surety Bonds

List Of Proposed Subcontractors

List Of Proposed Products

Baseline Network Analysis Schedule (NAS)

Submittal Register

Schedule Of Prices Or Earned Value Report

Work Plan

Quality Control (QC) plan

Environmental Protection Plan

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Drawings, diagrams and schedules specifically prepared to illustrate some portion of the work.

Diagrams and instructions from a manufacturer or fabricator for use in producing the product and as aids to the Contractor for integrating the product or system into the project.

Drawings prepared by or for the Contractor to show how multiple systems and interdisciplinary work will be coordinated.

SD-03 Product Data

Catalog cuts, illustrations, schedules, diagrams, performance charts, instructions and brochures illustrating size, physical appearance and other characteristics of materials, systems or equipment for some portion of the work.

Samples of warranty language when the contract requires extended product warranties.

SD-04 Samples

Fabricated or unfabricated physical examples of materials, equipment or workmanship that illustrate functional and aesthetic characteristics of a material or product and establish standards by which the work can be judged.

Color samples from the manufacturer's standard line (or custom color samples if specified) to be used in selecting or approving colors for the project.

Field samples and mock-ups constructed on the project site establish standards ensuring work can be judged. Includes assemblies or portions of assemblies that are to be incorporated into the project and those that will be removed at conclusion of the work.

SD-05 Design Data

Design calculations, mix designs, analyses or other data pertaining to a part of work.

SD-06 Test Reports

Report signed by authorized official of testing laboratory that a material, product or system identical to the material, product or system to be provided has been tested in accord with specified requirements. Unless specified in another section, testing must have been within three years of date of contract award for the project.

Report that includes findings of a test required to be performed on an actual portion of the work or prototype prepared for the project before shipment to job site.

Report that includes finding of a test made at the job site or on sample taken from the job site, on portion of work during or after installation.

Investigation reports

Daily logs and checklists

Final acceptance test and operational test procedure

SD-07 Certificates

Statements printed on the manufacturer's letterhead and signed by responsible officials of manufacturer of product, system or material attesting that the product, system, or material meets specification requirements. Must be dated after award of project contract and clearly name the project.

Document required of Contractor, or of a manufacturer, supplier, installer or Subcontractor through Contractor. The document purpose is to further promote the orderly progression of a portion of the work by documenting procedures, acceptability of methods, or personnel qualifications.

Confined space entry permits

Text of posted operating instructions

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Preprinted material describing installation of a product, system or material, including special notices and (SDS) concerning impedances, hazards and safety precautions.

SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Reports

Documentation of the testing and verification actions taken by manufacturer's representative at the job site, in the vicinity of the job site, or on a sample taken from the job site, on a portion of the work, during or after installation, to confirm compliance with manufacturer's standards or instructions. The documentation must be signed by an authorized official of a testing laboratory or agency and state the test results; and indicate whether the material, product, or system has passed or failed the test.

Factory test reports.

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Data provided by the manufacturer, or the system provider, including manufacturer's help and product line documentation, necessary to maintain and install equipment, for operating and maintenance use by facility personnel.

Data required by operating and maintenance personnel for the safe and efficient operation, maintenance and repair of the item.

Data incorporated in an operations and maintenance manual or control system.

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Documentation to record compliance with technical or administrative requirements or to establish an administrative mechanism.

Submittals required for Guiding Principle Validation (GPV) or Third Party Certification (TPC).

Special requirements necessary to properly close out a construction contract. For example, Record Drawings and as-built drawings. Also, submittal requirements necessary to properly close out a major phase of construction on a multi-phase contract.

1.1.1.2 Approving Authority

Office or designated person authorized to approve the submittal.

1.1.3 Work

As used in this section, on-site and off-site construction required by contract documents, including labor necessary to produce submittals, construction, materials, products, equipment, and systems incorporated or to be incorporated in such construction. In exception, excludes work to produce SD-01 submittals.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor QC approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability Notebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with this section.

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Submittal Register; G

1.3 SUBMITTAL CLASSIFICATION

1.3.1 Government Approved (G)

Within the terms of the Contract Clause SPECIFICATIONS AND DRAWINGS FOR CONSTRUCTION, submittals are considered to be "shop drawings."

1.3.2 For Information Only

Submittals not requiring Government approval will be for information only. Within the terms of the Contract Clause SPECIFICATIONS AND DRAWINGS FOR CONSTRUCTION, they are not considered to be "shop drawings."

1.3.3 Sustainability Reporting Submittals (S)

Submittals for Guiding Principle Validation (GPV) or Third Party Certification (TPC) are indicated with an "S" designation. These submittals are for information only and for use as specified in Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING.

Schedule submittals for these items throughout the course of construction as provided; do not wait until closeout.

1.4 FORWARDING SUBMITTALS REQUIRING GOVERNMENT APPROVAL

As soon as practicable after award of contract, and before procurement or fabrication, forward to the Commander, NAVFAC, Code CI4, submittals required in the technical sections of this specification, including shop drawings, product data and samples. In addition, forward a copy of the submittals to the Contracting Officer.

1.4.1 O&M Data

Submit data specified for a given item within 30 calendar days after the item is delivered to the contract site.

In the event the Contractor fails to deliver O&M data within the time limits specified, the Contracting Officer may withhold from progress payments 50 percent of the price of the items to which such O&M data apply.

1.4.2 Submittals Reserved for NAVFAC Approval

As an exception to the standard submittal procedure for Government Approval, submit the following to the Commander, NAVFAC, Code CI4:

- a. Section 21 13 13.00 20 WET PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEM, FIRE PROTECTION: All fire protection system submittals.
- b. Section 28 31 76.22 INTERIOR COMBINATION EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS: All fire alarm system submittals.
- c. Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING: All Submittals.
- d. Section 23 09 23.02 BACnet DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS: SD-06 field test report submittals.
- e. Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC: All submittals.
- f. Section 27 10 00 BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEM: All Submittals. Must be reviewed by Base Telephone via Contracting Office.
- g. Section 33 82 00 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTSIDE PLANT (OSP): All Submittals. Must be reviewed by Base Telephone via Contracting Office.

1.5 PREPARATION

1.5.1 Transmittal Form

Transmit each submittal, except sample installations and sample panels to the office of the approving authority using the transmittal form prescribed by the Contracting Officer. Include all information prescribed by the transmittal form and required in paragraph IDENTIFYING SUBMITTALS. Use the submittal transmittal forms to record actions regarding samples.

1.5.2 Identifying Submittals

The Contractor's Quality Control Manager must prepare, review and stamp submittals, including those provided by a subcontractor, before submittal to the Government.

Identify submittals, except sample installations and sample panels, with the following information permanently adhered to or noted on each separate component of each submittal and noted on transmittal form. Mark each copy of each submittal identically, with the following:

- a. Project title and location
- b. Construction contract number
- c. Dates of the drawings and revisions
- d. Name, address, and telephone number of Subcontractor, supplier, manufacturer, and any other Subcontractor associated with the submittal.
- e. Section number of the specification by which submittal is required
- f. Submittal description (SD) number of each component of submittal

g. For a resubmission, add alphabetic suffix on submittal description, for example, submittal 18 would become 18A, to indicate resubmission

h. Product identification and location in project.

1.5.3 Submittal Format

1.5.3.1 Format of SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

When the submittal includes a document that is to be used in the project, or is to become part of the project record, other than as a submittal, do not apply the Contractor's approval stamp to the document itself, but to a separate sheet accompanying the document.

Provide data in the unit of measure used in the contract documents.

1.5.3.2 Format for SD-02 Shop Drawings

Provide shop drawings not less than 8 1/2 by 11 inches nor more than 30 by 42 inches, except for full-size patterns or templates. Prepare drawings to accurate size, with scale indicated, unless another form is required. Ensure drawings are suitable for reproduction and of a quality to produce clear, distinct lines and letters, with dark lines on a white background.

- a. Include the nameplate data, size, and capacity on drawings. Also include applicable federal, military, industry, and technical society publication references.
- b. Dimension drawings, except diagrams and schematic drawings. Prepare drawings demonstrating interface with other trades to scale. Use the same unit of measure for shop drawings as indicated on the contract drawings. Identify materials and products for work shown.

Present shop drawings sized 8 1/2 by 11 inches as part of the bound volume for submittals. Present larger drawings in sets. Submit an electronic copy of drawings in PDF format.

1.5.3.2.1 Drawing Identification

Include on each drawing the drawing title, number, date, and revision numbers and dates, in addition to information required in paragraph IDENTIFYING SUBMITTALS.

Number drawings in a logical sequence. Each drawing is to bear the number of the submittal in a uniform location next to the title block. Place the Government contract number in the margin, immediately below the title block, for each drawing.

Reserve a blank space, no smaller than 3 inches on the right-hand side of each sheet for the Government disposition stamp.

1.5.3.3 Format of SD-03 Product Data

Present product data submittals for each section as a complete, bound volume. Include a table of contents, listing the page and catalog item numbers for product data.

Indicate, by prominent notation, each product that is being submitted;

indicate the specification section number and paragraph number to which it pertains.

1.5.3.3.1 Product Information

Supplement product data with material prepared for the project to satisfy the submittal requirements where product data does not exist. Identify this material as developed specifically for the project, with information and format as required for submission of SD-07 Certificates.

Provide product data in units used in the Contract documents. Where product data are included in preprinted catalogs with another unit, submit the dimensions in contract document units, on a separate sheet.

1.5.3.3.2 Standards

Where equipment or materials are specified to conform to industry or technical-society reference standards of such organizations as the American National Standards Institute (ANSI), ASTM International (ASTM), National Electrical Manufacturer's Association (NEMA), Underwriters Laboratories (UL), or Association of Edison Illuminating Companies (AEIC), submit proof of such compliance. The label or listing by the specified organization will be acceptable evidence of compliance. In lieu of the label or listing, submit a certificate from an independent testing organization, competent to perform testing, and approved by the Contracting Officer. State on the certificate that the item has been tested in accordance with the specified organization's test methods and that the item complies with the specified organization's reference standard.

1.5.3.3.3 Data Submission

Collect required data submittals for each specific material, product, unit of work, or system into a single submittal that is marked for choices, options, and portions applicable to the submittal. Mark each copy of the product data identically. Partial submittals will not be accepted for expedition of the construction effort.

Submit the manufacturer's instructions before installation.

1.5.3.4 Format of SD-04 Samples

1.5.3.4.1 Sample Characteristics

Furnish samples in the following sizes, unless otherwise specified or unless the manufacturer has prepackaged samples of approximately the same size as specified:

- a. Sample of Equipment or Device: Full size.
- b. Sample of Materials Less Than 2 by 3 inches: Built up to 8 1/2 by 11 inches.
- c. Sample of Materials Exceeding 8 1/2 by 11 inches: Cut down to 8 1/2 by 11 inches and adequate to indicate color, texture, and material variations.
- d. Sample of Linear Devices or Materials: 10 inch length or length to be supplied, if less than 10 inches. Examples of linear devices or materials are conduit and handrails.

- e. Sample Volume of Nonsolid Materials: **Pint**. Examples of nonsolid materials are sand and paint.
- f. Color Selection Samples: **2 by 4 inches**. Where samples are specified for selection of color, finish, pattern, or texture, submit the full set of available choices for the material or product specified. Sizes and quantities of samples are to represent their respective standard unit.
- g. Sample Panel: **4 by 4 feet**.
- h. Sample Installation: **100 square feet**.

1.5.3.4.2 Sample Incorporation

Reusable Samples: Incorporate returned samples into work only if so specified or indicated. Incorporated samples are to be in undamaged condition at the time of use.

Recording of Sample Installation: Note and preserve the notation of any area constituting a sample installation, but remove the notation at the final clean-up of the project.

1.5.3.4.3 Comparison Sample

Samples Showing Range of Variation: Where variations in color, finish, pattern, or texture are unavoidable due to nature of the materials, submit sets of samples of not less than three units showing extremes and middle of range. Mark each unit to describe its relation to the range of the variation.

1.5.3.5 Format of SD-05 Design Data

Provide design data and certificates on **8 1/2 by 11 inch** paper. **Provide a bound volume for submittals containing numerous pages.**

1.5.3.6 Format of SD-06 Test Reports

Provide reports on 8 1/2 by 11 inch paper in a complete bound volume.

By prominent notation, indicate each report in the submittal. Indicate the specification number and paragraph number to which each report pertains.

1.5.3.7 Format of SD-07 Certificates

Provide design data and certificates on **8 1/2 by 11 inch** paper. **Provide a bound volume for submittals containing numerous pages.**

1.5.3.8 Format of SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Present manufacturer's instructions submittals for each section **as a complete, bound volume**. Include the manufacturer's name, trade name, place of manufacture, and catalog model or number on product data. Also include applicable federal, military, industry, and technical-society publication references. If supplemental information is needed to clarify the manufacturer's data, submit it as specified for SD-07 Certificates.

Submit the manufacturer's instructions before installation.

1.5.3.8.1 Standards

Where equipment or materials are specified to conform to industry or technical-society reference standards of such organizations as the American National Standards Institute (ANSI), ASTM International (ASTM), National Electrical Manufacturer's Association (NEMA), Underwriters Laboratories (UL), or Association of Edison Illuminating Companies (AEIC), submit proof of such compliance. The label or listing by the specified organization will be acceptable evidence of compliance. In lieu of the label or listing, submit a certificate from an independent testing organization, competent to perform testing, and approved by the Contracting Officer. State on the certificate that the item has been tested in accordance with the specified organization's test methods and that the item complies with the specified organization's reference standard.

1.5.3.9 Format of SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Reports

Provide reports on 8 1/2 by 11 inch paper in a complete bound volume.

By prominent notation, indicate each report in the submittal. Indicate the specification number and paragraph number to which each report pertains.

1.5.3.10 Format of SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data (O&M)

Comply with the requirements specified in Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA for O&M Data format.

1.5.3.11 Format of SD-11 Closeout Submittals

When the submittal includes a document that is to be used in the project or is to become part of the project record, other than as a submittal, do not apply the Contractor's approval stamp to the document itself, but to a separate sheet accompanying the document.

Provide data in the unit of measure used in the contract documents.

1.5.4 Source Drawings for Shop Drawings

1.5.4.1 Source Drawings

The entire set of source drawing files (DWG) will not be provided to the Contractor. Request the specific Drawing Number for the preparation of shop drawings. Only those drawings requested to prepare shop drawings will be provided. These drawings are provided only after award.

1.5.4.2 Terms and Conditions

Data contained on these electronic files must not be used for any purpose other than as a convenience in the preparation of construction data for the referenced project. Any other use or reuse is at the sole risk of the Contractor and without liability or legal exposure to the Government. The Contractor must make no claim, and waives to the fullest extent permitted by law any claim or cause of action of any nature against the Government, its agents, or its subconsultants that may arise out of or in connection with the use of these electronic files. The Contractor must, to the fullest extent permitted by law, indemnify and hold the Government harmless against all damages, liabilities, or costs, including reasonable attorney's fees and defense costs, arising out of or resulting from the use of these

electronic files.

These electronic source drawing files are not construction documents. Differences may exist between the source drawing files and the corresponding construction documents. The Government makes no representation regarding the accuracy or completeness of the electronic source drawing files, nor does it make representation to the compatibility of these files with the Contractor hardware or software. The Contractor is responsible for determining if any conflict exists. In the event that a conflict arises between the signed and sealed construction documents prepared by the Government and the furnished source drawing files, the signed and sealed construction documents govern. Use of these source drawing files does not relieve the Contractor of the duty to fully comply with the contract documents, including and without limitation the need to check, confirm and coordinate the work of all contractors for the project. If the Contractor uses, duplicates or modifies these electronic source drawing files for use in producing construction data related to this contract, remove all previous indication of ownership (seals, logos, signatures, initials and dates).

1.6 QUANTITY OF SUBMITTALS

1.6.1 Number of SD-01 Preconstruction Submittal Copies

Unless otherwise specified, submit two sets of administrative submittals.

1.6.2 Number of SD-02 Shop Drawing Copies

Submit six copies of submittals of shop drawings requiring review and approval by a QC organization. Submit seven copies of shop drawings requiring review and approval by the Contracting Officer.

1.6.3 Number of SD-03 Product Data Copies

Submit in compliance with quantity requirements specified for shop drawings.

1.6.4 Number of SD-04 Samples

- a. Submit one sample, or one set of samples showing the range of variation, of each required item.
- b. Submit one sample panel or provide one sample installation where directed. Include components listed in the technical section or as directed.
- c. Submit one sample installation, where directed.
- d. Submit one sample of nonsolid materials.

1.6.5 Number of SD-05 Design Data Copies

Submit in compliance with quantity requirements specified for shop drawings.

1.6.6 Number of SD-06 Test Report Copies

Submit in compliance with quantity and quality requirements specified for shop drawings, other than field test results that will be submitted with QC reports.

1.6.7 Number of SD-07 Certificate Copies

Submit in compliance with quantity requirements specified for shop drawings.

1.6.8 Number of SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions Copies

Submit in compliance with quantity requirements specified for shop drawings.

1.6.9 Number of SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Report Copies

Submit in compliance with quantity and quality requirements specified for shop drawings other than field test results that will be submitted with QC reports.

1.6.10 Number of SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data Copies

Submit three copies of O&M data to the Contracting Officer for review and approval.

1.6.11 Number of SD-11 Closeout Submittals Copies

Unless otherwise specified, submit two sets of administrative submittals.

1.7 INFORMATION ONLY SUBMITTALS

Submittals without a "G" designation must be certified by the QC manager and submitted to the Contracting Officer for information-only. Approval of the Contracting Officer is not required on information only submittals. The Contracting Officer will mark "receipt acknowledged" on submittals for information and will return only the transmittal cover sheet to the Contractor. Normally, submittals for information only will not be returned. However, the Government reserves the right to return unsatisfactory submittals and require the Contractor to resubmit any item found not to comply with the contract. This does not relieve the Contractor from the obligation to furnish material conforming to the plans and specifications; will not prevent the Contracting Officer from requiring removal and replacement of nonconforming material incorporated in the work; and does not relieve the Contractor of the requirement to furnish samples for testing by the Government laboratory or for check testing by the Government in those instances where the technical specifications so prescribe.

1.8 PROJECT SUBMITTAL REGISTER AND DATABASE

A sample Project Submittal Register showing items of equipment and materials for when submittals are required by the specifications is provided as "Appendix A - Submittal Register."

1.8.1 Submittal Management

Prepare and maintain a submittal register, as the work progresses. Use an electronic submittal register program furnished by the Government. Do not change data that is output in columns (c), (d), (e), and (f) as delivered by Government; retain data that is output in columns (a), (g), (h), and (i) as approved. As an attachment, provide a submittal register showing items of equipment and materials for which submittals are required by the specifications. This list may not be all-inclusive and additional submittals may be required. The Government will provide the initial submittal register in electronic format with the following fields

completed, to the extent that will be required by the Government during subsequent usage.

Column (c): Lists specification section in which submittal is required.

Column (d): Lists each submittal description (SD Number. and type, e.g., SD-02 Shop Drawings) required in each specification section.

Column (e): Lists one principal paragraph in each specification section where a material or product is specified. This listing is only to facilitate locating submitted requirements. Do not consider entries in column (e) as limiting the project requirements.

1.8.2 Preconstruction Use of Submittal Register

Submit the submittal register. Include the QC plan and the project schedule. Verify that all submittals required for the project are listed and add missing submittals. Coordinate and complete the following fields on the register database submitted with the QC plan and the project schedule:

Column (a) Activity Number: Activity number from the project schedule.

Column (g) Contractor Submit Date: Scheduled date for the approving authority to receive submittals.

Column (h) Contractor Approval Date: Date that Contractor needs approval of submittal.

Column (i) Contractor Material: Date that Contractor needs material delivered to Contractor control.

1.8.3 Contractor Use of Submittal Register

Update the following fields in the Government-furnished submittal register program or equivalent fields in the program used by the Contractor with each submittal throughout the contract.

Column (b) Transmittal Number: List of consecutive, Contractor-assigned numbers.

Column (j) Action Code (k): Date of action used to record Contractor's review when forwarding submittals to QC.

Column (l) Date submittal transmitted.

Column (q) Date approval was received.

1.8.4 Approving Authority Use of Submittal Register

Update the following fields:

Column (b) Transmittal Number: List of consecutive, Contractor-assigned numbers.

Column (l) Date submittal was received.

Column (m) through (p) Dates of review actions.

Column (q) Date of return to Contractor.

1.8.5 Action Codes

1.8.5.1 Government Review Action Codes

"A" - "Approved as submitted"

"AN" - "Approved as noted"

"RR" - "Disapproved as submitted"; "Completed"

"NR" - "Not Reviewed"

"RA" - "Receipt Acknowledged"

1.8.6 Delivery of Copies

Submit an updated electronic copy of the submittal register to the Contracting Officer with each invoice request. Provide an updated Submittal Register monthly regardless of whether an invoice is submitted.

1.9 VARIATIONS

Variations from contract requirements require Contracting Officer approval pursuant to contract Clause FAR 52.236-21 Specifications and Drawings for Construction, and will be considered where advantageous to the Government.

1.9.1 Considering Variations

Discussion of variations with the Contracting Officer before submission will help ensure that functional and quality requirements are met and minimize rejections and resubmittals. When contemplating a variation that results in lower cost, consider submission of the variation as a Value Engineering Change Proposal (VECP).

Specifically point out variations from contract requirements in transmittal letters. Failure to point out variations may cause the Government to require rejection and removal of such work at no additional cost to the Government.

1.9.2 Proposing Variations

When proposing variation, deliver a written request to the Contracting Officer, with documentation of the nature and features of the variation and why the variation is desirable and beneficial to Government. Include the DOR's written analysis and approval. If lower cost is a benefit, also include an estimate of the cost savings. In addition to documentation required for variation, include the submittals required for the item. Clearly mark the proposed variation in all documentation.

1.9.3 Warranting that Variations are Compatible

When delivering a variation for approval, the Contractor warrants that this contract has been reviewed to establish that the variation, if

incorporated, will be compatible with other elements of work.

1.9.4 Review Schedule Extension

In addition to the normal submittal review period, a period of 14 calendar days will be allowed for the Government to consider submittals with variations.

1.10 SCHEDULING

Schedule and submit concurrently product data and shop drawings covering component items forming a system or items that are interrelated. Submit pertinent certifications at the same time. No delay damages or time extensions will be allowed for time lost in late submittals. .

- a. Coordinate scheduling, sequencing, preparing, and processing of submittals with performance of work so that work will not be delayed by submittal processing. The Contractor is responsible for additional time required for Government reviews resulting from required resubmittals. The review period for each resubmittal is the same as for the initial submittal.
- b. Submittals required by the contract documents are listed on the submittal register. If a submittal is listed in the submittal register but does not pertain to the contract work, the Contractor is to include the submittal in the register and annotate it "N/A" with a brief explanation. Approval by the Contracting Officer does not relieve the Contractor of supplying submittals required by the contract documents but that have been omitted from the register or marked "N/A."
- c. Resubmit the submittal register and annotate it monthly with actual submission and approval dates. When all items on the register have been fully approved, no further resubmittal is required.

Contracting Officer review will be completed within 7 calendar days after the date of submission.

- d. Except as specified otherwise, allow a review period, beginning with receipt by the approving authority, that includes at least 15 working days for submittals for QC manager approval and 20 working days for submittals where the Contracting Officer is the approving authority. The period of review for submittals with Contracting Officer approval begins when the Government receives the submittal from the QC organization.
- e. For submittals requiring review by a Government fire protection engineer, allow a review period, beginning when the Government receives the submittal from the QC organization, of 30 working days for return of the submittal to the Contractor.

1.10.1 Reviewing, Certifying, and Approving Authority

The QC Manager is responsible for reviewing all submittals and certifying that they are in compliance with contract requirements. The approving authority on submittals is the QC Manager unless otherwise specified. At each "Submittal" paragraph in individual specification sections, a notation "G" following a submittal item indicates that the Contracting Officer is the approving authority for that submittal item. Provide an additional copy of the submittal to the Government Approving authority

1.10.2 Constraints

Conform to provisions of this section, unless explicitly stated otherwise for submittals listed or specified in this contract.

Submit complete submittals for each definable feature of the work. At the same time, submit components of definable features that are interrelated as a system.

When acceptability of a submittal is dependent on conditions, items, or materials included in separate subsequent submittals, the submittal will be returned without review.

Approval of a separate material, product, or component does not imply approval of the assembly in which the item functions.

1.10.3 QC Organization Responsibilities

- a. Review submittals for conformance with project design concepts and compliance with contract documents.
- b. Process submittals based on the approving authority indicated in the submittal register.
 - (1) When the QC manager is the approving authority, take appropriate action on the submittal from the possible actions defined in paragraph APPROVED SUBMITTALS.
 - (2) When the Contracting Officer is the approving authority or when variation has been proposed, forward the submittal to the Government, along with a certifying statement, or return the submittal marked "not reviewed" or "revise and resubmit" as appropriate. The QC organization's review of the submittal determines the appropriate action.
- c. Ensure that material is clearly legible.
- d. Stamp each sheet of each submittal with a QC certifying statement or an approving statement, except that data submitted in a bound volume or on one sheet printed on two sides may be stamped on the front of the first sheet only.
 - (1) When the approving authority is the Contracting Officer, the QC organization will certify submittals forwarded to the Contracting Officer with the following certifying statement:

"I hereby certify that the (equipment) (material) (article) shown and marked in this submittal is that proposed to be incorporated with Contract Number _____ is in compliance with the contract drawings and specification, can be installed in the allocated spaces, and is submitted for Government approval.

Certified by Submittal Reviewer _____, Date _____
(Signature when applicable)

Certified by QC Manager _____, Date _____"
(Signature)

- (2) When approving authority is the QC manager, the QC manager will use the following approval statement when returning submittals to the Contractor as "Approved" or "Approved as Noted."

"I hereby certify that the (material) (equipment) (article) shown and marked in this submittal and proposed to be incorporated with Contract Number _____ is in compliance with the contract drawings and specification, can be installed in the allocated spaces, and is approved for use.

Certified by Submittal Reviewer _____, Date _____
(Signature when applicable)

Approved by QC Manager _____, Date _____"
(Signature)

- e. Sign the certifying statement or approval statement. The QC organization member designated in the approved QC plan is the person signing certifying statements. The use of original ink for signatures is required. Stamped signatures are not acceptable.
- f. Update the submittal register as submittal actions occur, and maintain the submittal register at the project site until final acceptance of all work by the Contracting Officer.
- g. Retain a copy of approved submittals and approved samples at the project site.
- h. For "S" submittals, provide a copy of the approved submittal to the Government Approving authority.

1.11 GOVERNMENT APPROVING AUTHORITY

When the approving authority is the Contracting Officer, the Government will:

- a. Note the date on which the submittal was received from the QC manager.
- b. Review submittals for approval within the scheduling period specified and only for conformance with project design concepts and compliance with contract documents.
- c. Identify returned submittals with one of the actions defined in paragraph REVIEW NOTATIONS and with comments and markings appropriate for the action indicated.

Upon completion of review of submittals requiring Government approval, stamp and date submittals. Two copies of the submittal will be retained by the Contracting Officer and the remaining copies of the submittal will be returned to the Contractor.

1.11.1 Review Notations

Submittals will be returned to the Contractor with the following notations:

- a. Submittals marked "approved" or "accepted" authorize proceeding with the work covered.
- b. Submittals marked "approved as noted" or "approved, except as noted,

resubmittal not required," authorize proceeding with the work covered provided that the Contractor takes no exception to the corrections.

- c. Submittals marked "not approved," "disapproved," or "revise and resubmit" indicate incomplete submittal or noncompliance with the contract requirements or design concept. Resubmit with appropriate changes. Do not proceed with work for this item until the resubmittal is approved.
- d. Submittals marked "not reviewed" indicate that the submittal has been previously reviewed and approved, is not required, does not have evidence of being reviewed and approved by Contractor, or is not complete. A submittal marked "not reviewed" will be returned with an explanation of the reason it is not reviewed. Resubmit submittals returned for lack of review by Contractor or for being incomplete, with appropriate action, coordination, or change.
- e. Submittals marked "receipt acknowledged" indicate that submittals have been received by the Government. This applies only to "information-only submittals" as previously defined.

1.12 DISAPPROVED SUBMITTALS

Make corrections required by the Contracting Officer. If the Contractor considers any correction or notation on the returned submittals to constitute a change to the contract drawings or specifications, give notice to the Contracting Officer as required under the FAR clause titled CHANGES. The Contractor is responsible for the dimensions and design of connection details and the construction of work. Failure to point out variations may cause the Government to require rejection and removal of such work at the Contractor's expense.

If changes are necessary to submittals, make such revisions and resubmit in accordance with the procedures above. No item of work requiring a submittal change is to be accomplished until the changed submittals are approved.

1.13 APPROVED SUBMITTALS

The Contracting Officer's approval of submittals is not to be construed as a complete check, and indicates only that [the general method of construction, materials, detailing, and other information are satisfactory](#).

Approval or acceptance by the Government for a submittal does not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for meeting the contract requirements or for any error that may exist, because under the Quality Control (QC) requirements of this contract, the Contractor is responsible for ensuring information contained within each submittal accurately conforms with the requirements of the contract documents.

After submittals have been approved or accepted by the Contracting Officer, no resubmittal for the purpose of substituting materials or equipment will be considered unless accompanied by an explanation of why a substitution is necessary.

1.14 APPROVED SAMPLES

Approval of a sample is only for the characteristics or use named in such approval and is not to be construed to change or modify any contract

requirements. Before submitting samples, provide assurance that the materials or equipment will be available in quantities required in the project. No change or substitution will be permitted after a sample has been approved.

Match the approved samples for materials and equipment incorporated in the work. If requested, approved samples, including those that may be damaged in testing, will be returned to the Contractor, at its expense, upon completion of the contract. Unapproved samples will also be returned to the Contractor at its expense, if so requested.

Failure of any materials to pass the specified tests will be sufficient cause for refusal to consider, under this contract, any further samples of the same brand or make as that material. The Government reserves the right to disapprove any material or equipment that has previously proved unsatisfactory in service.

Samples of various materials or equipment delivered on the site or in place may be taken by the Contracting Officer for testing. Samples failing to meet contract requirements will automatically void previous approvals. Replace such materials or equipment to meet contract requirements.

1.15 WITHHOLDING OF PAYMENT

Payment for materials incorporated in the work will not be made if required approvals have not been obtained.

1.16 STAMPS

Certify the submittal data as follows on Form ENG 4025: "I certify that the above submitted items had been reviewed in detail and are correct and in strict conformance with the contract drawings and specifications except as otherwise stated.

_____ NAME OF CONTRACTOR _____ SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR

CONTRACTOR	
(Firm Name)	
_____	Approved
_____	Approved with corrections as noted on submittal data and/or attached sheet (s)
SIGNATURE: _____	
TITLE: _____	
DATE: _____	

For Design-Build construction, both the Contractor QC manager and the DOR are to stamp and sign to certify that the submittal meets contract requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not Used

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASSIFICATION OR REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		01 11 00	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Salvage Plan	1.7	G												
		01 14 00	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			List of Contact Personnel	1.3.1.1	G												
		01 20 00.00 20	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Earned Value Report	1.3	G												
		01 30 00	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			View Location Map	1.3	G												
			Progress and Completion	1.4	G												
			Pictures														
		01 30 01.00 22	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Preliminary (Pre-Final) FF&E	1.5.3	G ID												
			Package														
			Final FF&E Package	1.5.11	G ID												
			Best Value Determinations	1.4.3	G ID												
			Audio Visual Package	1.4.3	G												
			SD-04 Samples														
			Final FF&E Mock-Up	1.5.8	G ID												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Contractor's Interior Designer's	1.4.1	G ID												
			Qualifications														
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Interior Photography	3.6	G ID												
		01 31 23.13 20	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			List of Contractor's Personnel	1.4.2	G												
		01 32 17.00 20	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		01 32 17.00 20	Designated Project Scheduler	1.9	G												
			Baseline NAS	1.2.2	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Monthly Network Analysis	1.4.1	G												
			Updates														
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			As-Built Schedule	1.4.2	G												
		01 33 00	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Submittal Register	1.8	G												
		01 33 29	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Preliminary High Performance	1.5.3.1	G												
			and Sustainable Building Checklist														
			Sustainability Action Plan	1.4.1	G												
			Preliminary Sustainability	1.5.3.1	G												
			eNotebook														
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Final High Performance and	1.5.3.1	G												
			Sustainable Building Checklist														
			Final Sustainability eNotebook	1.5.3.1	G												
			Amended Final Sustainability	1.5.3.1	G												
			eNotebook														
			Amended Final High	1.5.3.1	G												
			Performance and Sustainable														
			Building Checklist														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	APPROVING AUTHORITY				MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		01 33 29	Third Party Certification	3.2	G												
			Certificate, Assessment, or														
			Validation														
		01 35 26	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Accident Prevention Plan (APP)	1.7	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Notifications and Reports	1.12													
			Accident Reports	1.12.2	G												
			LHE Inspection Reports	1.12.3													
			Arc Flash Analysis	3.9.3.1	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Contractor Safety Self-Evaluation	1.4													
			Checklist														
			Crane Operators/Riggers	1.6.1.4													
			Standard Lift Plan	1.7.2.2	G												
			Critical Lift Plan	1.7.2.3	G												
			Activity Hazard Analysis (AHA)	1.8													
			Confined Space Entry Permit	1.9.1													
			Hot Work Permit	1.9.1													
			Certificate of Compliance	1.12.4													
			Arc Flash Analysis Qualifications	3.9.3.2	G												
			Contractor Electrical Energized	1.6.2.1	G												
			Work Permit														
			Contractor Electrical Energized	3.9.4	G												
			Work Permit														
		01 45 00.00 20	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASS SIFIC ATION	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		01 45 00.00 20	Construction Quality Control (QC) Plan	1.6.1	G												
			Indoor Air Quality (IAQ) Management Plan	1.17	G												
			Basis of Design and Design Intent	1.9.1													
			SD-05 Design Data														
			Design Review	1.9.2													
			Contract Document Review	1.9.3													
			SD-07 Certificates														
			CA Resume	1.5.2.2													
			Mechanical QC Specialist	1.5.5.1	G												
			Soils Testing/Pile Installation and Testing QC Specialist	1.5.5.2	G												
			Structural QC Specialist	1.5.5.3	G												
			Building Envelope QC Specialist	1.5.5.4	G												
			Electrical and Telecommunications Systems QC Specialist	1.5.5.5	G												
		01 45 35	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Written Practices	3.1.2													
			NDT Procedures and Equipment Calibration Records	3.1.2													
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Daily Reports	3.1.2													
			Biweekly Reports	3.1.1													

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR SIF IC AT ION R E V E W E R	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		01 45 35	SD-07 Certificates														
			Fabrication Plant	2.1													
			AC472 Accreditation	2.1													
			Certificate of Compliance	2.1													
			Special Inspector	1.5	G												
			Qualification Records	3.1.2													
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Comprehensive Final Report	3.1.2	G												
		01 50 00	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Construction Site Plan	1.3	G												
			Traffic Control Plan	3.4.1	G												
			Haul Road Plan	2.2.1	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Backflow Preventers	1.4	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Backflow Preventer Tests	2.5													
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Backflow Tester	1.4.1													
			Backflow Preventers	1.4													
		01 57 19	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Preconstruction Survey	1.6.1													
			Solid Waste Management Permit;														
			G														
			Regulatory Notifications; G														
			Environmental Protection Plan; G														
			Stormwater Notice of Intent	3.2.1.2													

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH #	GOVT OR CLASS SIFIC ATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		01 57 19	Dirt and Dust Control Plan; G														
			Employee Training Records; G														
			Environmental Manager														
			Qualifications; G														
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Inspection Reports	3.2.1.3													
			Solid Waste Management														
			Report; G														
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Employee Training Records; G														
			ECATTS Certificate Of														
			Completion; G														
			Erosion and Sediment Control	1.6.5													
			Inspector														
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Stormwater Pollution Prevention														
			Plan Compliance Notebook; G														
			Stormwater Notice of Termination	3.2.1.5													
			Waste Determination														
			Documentation; G														
			Disposal Documentation for														
			Hazardous and Regulated Waste;														
			G														
			Assembled Employee Training														
			Records; G														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH #	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		01 57 19	Solid Waste Management Permit; G														
			Solid Waste Management Report; G														
			Contractor Hazardous Material Inventory Log; G														
			Hazardous Waste/Debris Management; G														
			Regulatory Notifications; G														
			Sales Documentation; G														
			As-Built Topographic Survey	3.2.1.5													
			Vapor Intrusion Mitigation System														
			As-Built Drawings; G														
			O&M/Pm Documentation; G														
		01 58 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Preliminary One Line	1.3.1.1	G												
			Preliminary Drawing Indicating Layout And Text Content	1.4.1	G												
			SD-04 Samples														
			Final Rendering	1.3.1.2	G												
			Final Framed Rendering	1.3.1.3	G												
			Facility Recognition Plaque	1.3.2	G												
		01 60 00.00 22	SD-07 Certificates														
			Certificate of State Licensed Applicator	1.2.1	G												
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR SIF IC AT ION R E V E W E R	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		01 60 00.00 22	Field Pesticide/Herbicide Management Record Form	3.2	G												
		01 74 19	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Construction Waste Management Plan	1.7	G												
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Final Construction Waste Diversion Report	1.9	S												
		01 78 00	SD-03 Product Data														
			As-Built Record of Equipment and Materials	1.3.2													
			Warranty Management Plan	1.7.1													
			Warranty Tags	1.7.4													
			Final Cleaning	1.10													
			Spare Parts Data	1.4													
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Preventative Maintenance	1.5													
			Condition Monitoring (Predictive Testing)	1.5													
			Inspection	1.5													
			Instructions	1.7.1													
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data														
			Operation and Maintenance Manuals	1.9													
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR SIF IC ATT ION R	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		01 78 00	Record Drawings	1.3.1													
			NAVFAC Sustainable & Energy Data Record Card	1.13	G												
			Certification of EPA Designated Items	1.6	G												
			Preliminary Interim DD FORM 1354	1.11	G												
			Updated Interim DD FORM 1354	1.11	G												
		01 78 24.00 20	SD-07 Certificates														
			Qualifications of eOMSI Preparer	1.6	G												
			Qualifications of eOMSI Preparer	1.6	G												
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data														
			Training Plan	3.1.1	G												
			Training Plan	3.1.1	G												
			Training Plan	3.1.1	G												
			Training Outline	3.1.3	G												
			Training Content	3.1.2	G												
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			eOMSI, Preliminary Submittal	1.9.1	G												
			eOMSI, 100 percent, Prefinal Submittal	1.9.2	G												
			eOMSI, Final Submittal	1.9.3	G												
			Training Video Recording	3.1.4	G												
			Validation of Training Completion	3.1.6	G												
		01 78 30.00 22	SD-11 Closeout Submittals														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		01 78 30.00 22	GIS Data Deliverables	1.3.6	G												
		01 91 00.15 22	SD-06 Test Reports														
			Completed Building Envelope	3.1.4.2	G												
			Inspection Checklists														
			Completed Pre-Functional	3.1.4.3	G												
			Checklists														
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Certificate of Readiness	1.9	G												
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Training Plan	3.1.5	G												
			Training Attendance Rosters	3.1.5	G												
			Systems Manual	3.1.6	G												
		03 30 00	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Concrete Curing Plan	1.6.3.1													
			Quality Control Plan	1.6.5	G												
			Quality Control Personnel	1.6.6	G												
			Certifications														
			Quality Control Organizational	1.6.6													
			Chart														
			Laboratory Accreditation	1.6.8	G												
			Form Removal Schedule	1.6.2.1	G												
			SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Formwork	1.6.2.1													
			Reinforcing Steel	1.6.2.2	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	APPROVING AUTHORITY				MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		03 30 00	Joint Sealants	2.4.5													
			Joint Filler	2.4.4													
			Formwork Materials	2.1													
			Cementitious Materials	2.3.1													
			Vapor Retarder	2.4.6													
			Concrete Curing Materials	2.4.1													
			Reinforcement	2.6													
			Liquid Chemical Floor Hardeners	2.4.3.1													
			and Sealers														
			Admixtures	2.3.4													
			Mechanical Reinforcing Bar	2.6.2													
			Connectors														
			Biodegradable Form Release	2.2.2													
			Agent														
			Pumping Concrete	1.6.3.2													
			Finishing Plan	1.6.3.3													
			Nonshrink Grout	2.4.2													
			Crystalline Waterproofing	2.5.1													
			Additive														
			SD-05 Design Data														
			Concrete Mix Design	1.6.1.1	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Concrete Mix Design	1.6.1.1	G												
			Fly Ash	1.6.4.1													
			Pozzolan	1.6.4.1													
			Slag Cement	1.6.4.2													

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		03 30 00	Aggregates	1.6.4.3													
			Fiber-Reinforced Concrete	1.6.4.4	G												
			Tolerance Report	3.9.2.1													
			Compressive Strength Tests	3.13.2.3	G												
			Chloride Ion Concentration	3.13.2.5													
			Air Content	3.13.2.4													
			Slump Tests	3.13.2.1													
			Water	2.3.2													
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Reinforcing Bars	2.6.1													
			Welder Qualifications	1.7													
			VOC Content for Form Release	1.6.3.4													
			Agents, Curing Compounds, and														
			Concrete Penetrating Sealers														
			Safety Data Sheets	1.6.3.5													
			Field Testing Technician and	1.6.6.2													
			Testing Agency														
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Liquid Chemical Floor Hardeners	2.4.3.1													
			and Sealers														
			Joint Sealants	2.4.5													
			Curing Compound	2.4.1													
		03 42 13.00 10	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Quality Control Procedures	1.3.2.2													
			SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Standard Precast Units	2.1.1	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		03 42 13.00 10	Custom-Made Precast Units	2.1.2	G												
			Special Finishes	3.2.4.3													
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Standard Precast Units	2.1.1													
			Proprietary Precast Units	2.1.3													
			Embedded Items	3.1.3													
			Accessories	2.2.6													
			SD-05 Design Data														
			Design Calculations	2.1.2	G												
			Concrete Mix Proportions	2.1.5.1													
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Test Reports	1.3.2.4													
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Quality Control Procedures	1.3.2.2													
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Recycled content for fly ash and pozzolan	2.2.1	S												
			Recycled content for Ground Iron Blast-Furnace Slag	2.2.1	S												
			Recycled content for Silica Fume	2.2.1	S												
			Recycled content for Synthetic Fiber Reinforcement	2.2.1	S												
			Recycled content for steel	2.2.1	S												
		04 20 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Cut CMU	3.3.5.1	G												
			Detail Drawings	3.4.1.1	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASSIFICATION OR REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		04 20 00	SD-03 Product Data														
			Hot Weather Procedures	1.5.1	G												
			Cold Weather Procedures	1.5.2	G												
			Clay or Shale Brick	2.2.2	G												
			Cementitious Materials	2.4.1.1	G												
			SD-04 Samples														
			Mock-Up Panel	1.3.1.1	G												
			Clay or Shale Brick	2.2.2	G												
			Concrete Masonry Units (CMU)	2.2.3.2	G												
			Split Face Concrete Masonry Units (CMU)	2.2.3.3	G												
			Admixtures for Masonry Mortar	2.4.1.4	G												
			Anchors, Ties, and Bar Positioners	2.6.2	G												
			Joint Reinforcement	2.6.3	G												
			SD-05 Design Data														
			Masonry Compressive Strength	2.1.2	G												
			Bracing Calculations	3.2.5	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Efflorescence Test	2.2.2.1.4													
			Field Testing of Mortar	3.6.1.1													
			Field Testing of Grout	3.6.1.2													
			Prism Tests	3.6.1.4													
			Single-Wythe Masonry Wall	3.6.1.5													
			Water Penetration Test														
			SD-07 Certificates														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/	APPROVING AUTHORITY				MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		04 20 00	Special Masonry Inspector Qualifications	1.3.2													
			Clay or Shale Brick	2.2.2													
			Concrete Masonry Units (CMU)	2.2.3.2													
			Precast Concrete Units	2.2.4													
			Cementitious Materials	2.4.1.1													
			Admixtures for Masonry Mortar	2.4.1.4													
			Admixtures for Grout	2.4.3.2													
			Anchors, Ties, and Bar Positioners	2.6.2													
			Joint Reinforcement	2.6.3													
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Admixtures for Masonry Mortar	2.4.1.4													
			Admixtures for Grout	2.4.3.2													
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data														
			Take-Back Program	3.8													
		05 40 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Framing Components	1.5.1	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Studs, Joists	2.1													
			Recycled Content of Steel Products	2.1	S												
			SD-05 Design Data														
			Metal Framing Calculations	1.5.2	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/	APPROVING AUTHORITY				MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		05 40 00	Welds	3.1.1													
		05 50 13	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Structural Steel Door Frames	2.10	G												
			Floor Gratings	2.5	G												
			Roof Walkways	2.5	G												
			Bollards/Pipe Guards	2.6	G												
			Wheel Guards	2.11	G												
			Angles and Plates	2.8	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Corner Guards	2.4													
			Floor Gratings	2.5	G												
			Roof Walkways	2.5	G												
			Structural Steel Door Frames	2.10	G												
			Wheel Guards	2.11													
			Downspout Terminations	2.7	G												
			Recycled Content	2.1	S												
			Certificates of Compliance	2.1	G												
			Certified Mill	2.2	G												
		06 10 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Fabricated Structural Members	1.7.1	G												
			Modifications of Structural Members	1.7.2	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Plastic Lumber	2.1.1													
			Recycled Content for Plastic Lumber	2.1.1	S												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		06 10 00	SD-05 Design Data														
			Modifications of Structural Members	1.7.2	G												
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data														
			Plastic	1.4.2													
		06 41 16.00 10	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Shop Drawings	1.5.2													
			Shop Drawings	2.10													
			Installation	3.1													
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Wood Materials	2.1													
			Finish Schedule	2.10.8.3													
			Certification	1.5.3													
			SD-04 Samples														
			Plastic Laminates	2.3													
			Cabinet Hardware	2.6													
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Quality Assurance	1.5													
			Laminate Clad Casework	3.1													
		06 61 16	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Detail Drawings	1.5.2	G AE												
			Installation	3.1	G AE												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Solid Polymer Material	2.1													
			Qualifications	1.5.1													

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR SPEC REVIEW ACTION	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		06 61 16	Fabrications	2.3													
			Indoor air quality for solid surface	2.2.4	S												
			seam and sealant products														
			SD-04 Samples														
			Material	2.1	G AE												
			Counter and Vanity Tops	2.3.6	G AE												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Solid Polymer Material	2.1													
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Fabrications	2.3													
			Qualifications	1.5.1													
			Indoor Air Quality for solid	2.1	S												
			surface fabrication products														
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Clean-up	3.2													
		07 05 23	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Work Plan	1.4	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Thermal Imaging Camera	2.2	G												
			SD-05 Design Data														
			Envelope Surface Area	3.2	G												
			Calculations														
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Pressure Test Agency	1.6.2.1													
			Thermographer Qualifications	1.6.2.2													

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		07 05 23	Test Instruments	1.6.3													
			Date Of Last Calibration	1.6.3													
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Pressure Test Procedures	3.5	G												
			Air Leakage Test Report	3.5.6	G												
			Diagnostic Test Report	3.6.5	G												
		07 05 43	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Elevations		G												
			Installation and Attachment		G												
			Transitions and Terminations		G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Manufacturer's Product Data		G												
			Sheets														
			SD-05 Design Data														
			Calculations		G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Manufacturer Qualifications	1.4.1	G												
			Installer Qualifications	1.4.2	G												
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Warranty		G												
			Minutes of Preinstallation		G												
			Conference														
		07 13 00	SD-03 Product Data														
			Manufacturer's Standard Details	1.3	G												
			Waterproofing Sheet Material	2.2	G												
			Primers, Adhesives, and Mastics	1.4	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR SPEC ATTN REV WR	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		07 13 00	Primers, Adhesives, and Mastics	2.2	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Waterproofing Sheet Material	2.2	G												
			Field Quality Control	3.11	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Waterproofing Sheet Material	2.2													
			Primers, Adhesives, and Mastics	1.4	G												
			Primers, Adhesives, and Mastics	2.2	G												
			Special Warranties	1.8	G												
			Special Warranties	1.8	G												
			Certificates Of Compliance	2.1.1	G												
			Certificates Of Compliance	2.1.2	G												
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Primers, Adhesives, and Mastics	1.4	G												
			Primers, Adhesives, and Mastics	2.2	G												
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Certificates Of Compliance	2.1.1	G												
			Certificates Of Compliance	2.1.2	G												
		07 21 13	SD-03 Product Data														
			Manufacturer's Standard Details	1.3	G												
			Block or Board Insulation	2.1	G												
			Vapor Retarder	2.2	G												
			Pressure Sensitive Tape	2.3	G												
			Accessories	2.5	G												
			Recycled Content for Block or Board Insulation	2.1.5	S												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		07 21 13	SD-07 Certificates														
			Block or Board Insulation	2.1	G												
			Vapor Retarder	2.2	G												
			Special Warranties	1.8	G												
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Block or Board Insulation	2.1													
			Adhesive	2.5.1													
		07 21 16	SD-03 Product Data														
			Blanket Insulation	2.1													
			Recycled Content for Insulation	2.1.2	S												
			Materials														
			Accessories	2.4													
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Indoor Air Quality for Insulation	2.1.4	S												
			Materials														
			Indoor Air Quality for Adhesives	2.4.1	S												
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Insulation	3.3.1													
		07 22 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Insulation Board Layout	1.3	G												
			Verification of Existing Conditions	1.3	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Insulation	2.1	G												
			Cover Board	1.4	G												
			Fasteners	2.4	G												
			Moisture Control	2.3	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		07 22 00	SD-06 Test Reports														
			Flame Spread Rating	1.7.1	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Installer Qualifications	1.6	G												
			Certificates Of Compliance For	1.6	G												
			Felt Materials														
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Fasteners	2.4	G												
			Insulation	2.1	G												
		07 27 10.00 10	SD-04 Samples														
			Mock-Up	3.1.2	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Design Review Report	1.8	G												
			Testing and Inspection	3.1.3	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Air Barrier Inspector	1.7	G												
		07 27 26	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Qualifications of Manufacturer	1.9.1	G												
			Qualifications of Installer	1.9.2	G												
			SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Fluid-Applied Membrane Air	1.4	G												
			Barrier														
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Fluid-Applied Membrane Air	1.4	G												
			Barrier														
			Transition Membrane	2.3	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		07 27 26	Primers, Adhesives, and Mastics	2.2	G												
			Reinforcement	2.6	G												
			Safety Data Sheets	1.4.2	G												
			SD-04 Samples														
			Mockup	1.4.3	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Capillary Moisture Test	1.6	G												
			Field Peel Adhesion Test	1.4.4	G												
			Flame Propagation of Wall Assemblies	1.4.4	G												
			Flame Spread and Smoke Developed Index Ratings	1.4.4	G												
			Site Inspections	3.4.1	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barrier	1.4	G												
			Transition Membrane	2.3	G												
			Qualifications of Manufacturer	1.9.1	G												
			Qualifications of Installer	1.9.2	G												
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barrier	1.4	G												
			Transition Membrane	2.3	G												
			Primers, Adhesives, and Mastics	2.2	G												
		07 42 13	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Qualification of Manufacturer	1.5.3	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		07 42 13	Qualification of Installation Contractor	1.5.4	G												
			Qualification of Welders	1.5.4.1	G												
			Warranty	1.8	G												
			SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Installation Drawings	1.5.1.1	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Recycled Content;	2.1													
			Recycled Content;	2.3													
			Wall Panels	2.4.1	G												
			Wall Panels	2.4.2	G												
			Factory Color Finish	2.4.3													
			Closure Materials	1.5.5													
			Pressure Sensitive Tape	2.7.4.4													
			Sealants and Caulking	2.7.4.1													
			Galvanizing Repair Paint	1.5.3.1													
			Enamel Repair Paint	1.5.3.1													
			Accessories	1.5.5													
			Accessories	2.7													
			SD-04 Samples														
			Wall Panels	2.4.1	G												
			Wall Panels	2.4.2	G												
			Fasteners	1.5.3.1	G												
			Metal Closure Strips	2.7.3	G												
			Color chart	2.4.3.2	G												
			SD-05 Design Data														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		07 42 13	Wind load design analysis	1.5.1.2	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Leakage Tests	3.7.2	G												
			Wind Load Tests	1.3.2	G												
			Coating	2.4.3.3	G												
			Chalking	2.4.3.3	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Sustainability Documentation	1.5.6.1	G												
			Coil Stock	1.5.3.1	G												
			Fasteners	1.5.3.1	G												
			Galvanizing Repair Paint	1.5.3.1	G												
			Enamel Repair Paint	1.5.3.1	G												
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Installation	3.3	G												
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Warranty	1.8	G												
			Maintenance Instructions	1.5.6	G												
			20 year 'No Dollar Limit' warranty	1.8.1													
			for labor and material														
		07 60 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Sheet Metal	2.2	G												
			Drip Edges	3.1.1	G												
			Recycled Content	2.1	S												
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Quality Control Plan	3.4	G												
		07 84 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		07 84 00	Firestopping System	2.1	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Firestopping Materials	2.2	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Inspection	3.3	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Inspector Qualifications	1.5.2													
			Firestopping Materials	2.2													
			Installer Qualifications	1.5.1	G												
		07 92 00	SD-03 Product Data														
			Sealants	2.1	G												
			Primers	2.2	G												
			Bond Breakers	2.3	G												
			Backstops	2.4	G												
			Field Adhesion	3.1	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Indoor Air Quality For Interior	2.1.1	S												
			Sealants														
			Indoor Air Quality For Interior	2.1.3	S												
			Floor Joint Sealants														
			Indoor Air Quality For Interior	2.1.4	S												
			Acoustical Sealants														
			Indoor Air Quality For Interior	2.5	S												
			Caulking														
		08 11 13	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Doors	2.1	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		08 11 13	Doors	2.1	G												
			Frames	2.6	G												
			Frames	2.6	G												
			Accessories	2.4													
			Weatherstripping	2.7													
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Doors	2.1	G												
			Frames	2.6	G												
			Weatherstripping	2.7													
			SD-04 Samples														
			Factory-applied enamel finish	2.9.2	G												
		08 14 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Doors	2.1	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Doors	2.1	G												
			Accessories	2.2													
			Water-resistant Sealer	2.3.7													
			Sound Transmission Class	2.1.3	G												
			Rating														
			SD-04 Samples														
			Doors	2.1													
			Door Finish Colors	2.3.6.2	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Certificates of Grade	1.3.1													
		08 31 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Access Doors And Panels	1.3	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR SIFIC ATION REV WR	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		08 31 00	SD-03 Product Data														
			Access Doors And Panels	1.3	G												
			Hardware	1.3.2	G												
			Accessories	2.2.8	G												
			Recycled Content	2.1	S												
			SD-04 Samples														
			Finishes	2.5	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Fire-rating(s) of Assemblies	1.3.1	G												
			Acoustical Ratings of Assemblies	1.3.1	G												
		08 34 19.10 20	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Rolling service doors	2.1	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Rolling service doors	2.1	G												
			Motors	2.4.2	G												
			Controls	2.4.3	G												
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Rolling service doors	2.1													
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Rolling service doors	2.1													
		08 34 73	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Hollow Metal Sound Retardant	2.1	G												
			Doors														
			Wood Sound Retardant Doors	2.1	G												
			Door Frames	2.1	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH #	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		08 34 73	SD-03 Product Data														
			Hollow Metal Sound Retardant Doors	2.1	G												
			Wood Sound Retardant Doors	2.1	G												
			Door Frames	2.1	G												
			Door Hardware	2.1	G												
			Vision Panels	2.1	G												
			Intumescent Seals and Gasketing	2.1	G												
			Thresholds	2.1	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Acoustical Tests	2.4.4	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Hollow Metal Sound Retardant Doors	2.1	G												
			Wood Sound Retardant Doors	2.1	G												
			Door Frames	2.1	G												
			Intumescent Seals,Gasketing and	1.3.1.2													
			Door Bottoms														
			Thresholds	2.1	G												
		08 41 13	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Sample Warranty	1.2.1	G												
			List of Product Installations	1.2.1	G												
			SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Installation Drawings	3.3	G												
			Fabrication Drawings	2.2	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR SPEC A/E REVIEW ATTORNEY	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		08 41 13	Manufacturer's Catalog Data	1.2.1	G												
			Finish	2.2.3	G												
			Recycled Content of Aluminum	2.1.1.2	S												
			Material														
			SD-04 Samples														
			Finish and Color Samples	1.2.1	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Certified Test Reports	1.2.1	G												
			Deflection	3.4.3													
			Air Infiltration	3.4.1													
			Condensation Resistance and	3.4.4													
			Thermal Transmittance														
			Water Infiltration	3.4.5													
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Manufacturer's Instructions	3.3													
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Manufacturer's Product Warranty	3.6													
		08 56 63	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Window units	2.2													
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Window units	2.2													
			Fasteners	2.3.2													
			Accessories	2.6													
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Mullion and transom bar wind	1.3.1.1													
			load														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	APPROVING AUTHORITY				MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		08 71 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Manufacturer's Detail Drawings	1.3	G												
			Verification of Existing Conditions	1.3	G												
			Hardware Schedule	1.5	G												
			Keying System	2.3.6	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Hardware Items	2.3	G												
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Installation	3.1													
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Hardware Schedule	1.5	G												
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Key Bitting	1.6.1													
		08 81 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Installation	3.3.1													
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Insulating Glass	1.6.1													
			Glazing Accessories	1.3													
			SD-04 Samples														
			Insulating Glass	1.6.1													
			Glazing Compound	2.3.2													
			Sealant	2.3.3.1													
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Insulating Glass	1.6.1													
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		08 81 00	Setting and Sealing Materials	2.3													
			Glass Setting	3.2													
		08 88 53	SD-03 Product Data														
			Glazing materials	2.2													
			SD-04 Samples														
			Glazing materials	2.2													
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Glass setting	3.3													
		08 91 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Wall louvers	1.4													
			Wall louvers	1.5													
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Metal Wall Louvers	2.2													
			SD-04 Samples														
			Wall louvers	1.4	G												
			Wall louvers	1.5	G												
		09 22 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Metal Support Systems	2.1	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Metal Support Systems	2.1													
			Recycled Content for Metal	2.1	S												
			Support Systems														
		09 29 00	SD-03 Product Data														
			Cementitious Backer Units	2.1.5													
			Glass Mat Water-Resistant	2.1.3													
			Gypsum Tile Backing Board														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		09 29 00	Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board	2.1.2													
			Glass Mat Covered or Reinforced Gypsum Sheathing	2.1.4													
			Glass Mat Covered or Reinforced Gypsum Sheathing Sealant	2.1.4.1													
			Accessories	2.1.9													
			Gypsum Board	2.1.1													
			VOC Content of Joint Compound	2.1.6	S												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Asbestos Free Materials	2.1	G												
			Indoor Air Quality for Gypsum Board	2.1.1	S												
			Indoor Air Quality for Non-aerosol Adhesives	2.1.8	S												
			Indoor Air Quality for Aerosol Adhesives	2.1.8	S												
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Safety Data Sheets	2.1													
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data														
			Manufacturer Maintenance Instructions	2.1													
		09 30 10	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Detail Drawings	3.2	G AE												
			SD-03 Product Data														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH #	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		09 30 10	Porcelain Tile	2.1.1	G AE												
			Recycled Content for Porcelain Tile	2.1.1	S												
			Setting-Bed	2.2	G AE												
			Mortar, Grout, and Adhesive	2.4	G AE												
			Reinforcing Wire Fabric	2.2.6													
			SD-04 Samples														
			Tile	2.1	G AE												
			Accessories	2.1	G AE												
			Transition Strips	2.1	G AE												
			Transition Strips	2.6	G AE												
			Grout	2.4.3	G AE												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Indoor Air Quality for Adhesives	2.4	S												
			Indoor Air Quality for Sealants	2.4.7	S												
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Maintenance Instructions	3.7													
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Installation	3.2	G AE												
		09 51 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Approved Detail Drawings	2.1	G AE												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Acoustical Ceiling Systems	1.9	G AE												
			Recycled Content for Type III Ceiling Tiles	2.2.1.1	S												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS SIFIC ATION REV WR	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		09 51 00	Recycled Content for Suspension Systems	2.3	S												
			SD-04 Samples														
			Acoustical Units	2.2	G AE												
			Acoustical Ceiling Tiles	2.2.1.1	G AE												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Indoor Air Quality for Type III Ceiling Tiles	2.2.1.1	S												
			Indoor Air Quality for Sealants	2.7	S												
		09 65 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Resilient Flooring and Accessories	2.7	G AE												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Resilient Flooring and Accessories	2.7	G AE												
			Adhesives	2.3													
			Luxury Vinyl Tile	2.1													
			Wall Base	2.2													
			SD-04 Samples														
			Resilient Flooring and Accessories	2.7	G AE												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Moisture, Alkalinity and Bond Tests	3.3	G AE												
			SD-07 Certificates														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS SIFIC ATION REV WR	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		09 65 00	Indoor Air Quality for Luxury Vinyl Tile	2.1	S												
			Indoor Air Quality for Wall Base	2.2	S												
			Indoor Air Quality for Adhesives	2.3	S												
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Surface Preparation	3.2	G AE												
			Installation	3.1	G AE												
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Resilient Flooring and Accessories	2.7	G AE												
		09 68 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Installation Drawings	3.4	G AE												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Carpet	2.1	G AE												
			Recycled Content for Carpeting	2.1.1	S												
			Moldings	2.4	G AE												
			Indoor Air Quality for Aerosol Adhesives	2.3	S												
			Indoor Air Quality for Non-Aerosol Adhesives	2.3	S												
			Indoor Air Quality for Concrete Primer	2.3	S												
			SD-04 Samples														
			Carpet	2.1	G AE												
			Moldings	2.4	G AE												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR SPEC A/E REVIEW ACTION	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		09 68 00	SD-06 Test Reports														
			Moisture and Alkalinity Tests	3.2	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Indoor Air Quality for Carpet	2.1.1	S												
			Indoor Air Quality for Carpet	2.1.2	S												
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Surface Preparation	3.1													
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Cleaning and Protection	3.5													
			Maintenance Service	3.6.2													
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Warranty	1.6													
		09 69 13	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Detailed Installation Drawings	2.3.2	G												
			Fabrication Drawings	2.3.1	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Access Flooring System	2.2	G												
			Access Flooring System	2.5	G												
			SD-04 Samples														
			Floor Panels	2.3	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Factory Tests	2.6													
			Concentrated Load	2.2.1													
			Uniform Live Load	2.2.1													

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS SPEC ATTN OR REV WR	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		09 69 13	SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data														
			Operation and Maintenance Manuals	3.3	G												
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Recycled Content of Access Flooring System	2.1.1	S												
		09 90 00	SD-03 Product Data														
			Coating	2.1	G AE												
			Sealant	3.3.5													
			SD-04 Samples														
			Color	1.10	G AE												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Applicator's Qualifications	1.4													
			Indoor Air Quality for Paints and Primers	2.1													
			Indoor Air Quality for Consolidated Latex Paints	2.1													
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Mixing	3.8.2													
			Manufacturer's Safety Data	1.7.2													
			Sheets														
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data														
			Coatings	2.1	G												
		10 14 00.10	SD-02 Shop Drawings														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR A/E REVIEW N	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		10 14 00.10	Approved Detail Drawings	3.1	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Installation	3.1													
			Exterior Signage	1.2	G												
			SD-04 Samples														
			Exterior Signage	1.2	G												
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Protection and Cleaning	3.1.1	G												
		10 14 00.20	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Detail Drawings	1.4.2	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Installation	3.1	G												
			Warranty	1.6	G												
			SD-04 Samples														
			Interior Signage	1.4.1	G												
			Software	1.3	G												
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Approved Manufacturer's	3.1	G												
			Instructions														
			Protection and Cleaning	3.1.2	G												
		10 21 13	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Fabrication Drawings	2.1													
			Installation Drawings	3.2	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR SPEC ATTN	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		10 21 13	Cleaning and Maintenance	2.1													
			Instructions														
			Colors And Finishes	2.8													
			Sound-Deadening Cores	2.2.1													
			Anchoring Devices and	2.2.2													
			Fasteners														
			Hardware and Fittings	2.2.4													
			Brackets	2.2.3													
			Door Hardware	2.2.5													
			Toilet Enclosures	2.3.1													
			Urinal Screens	2.3.2													
			Pilaster Shoes	2.6													
			Finishes	2.2.4.2	G												
			Recycled content for plastic	2.3	S												
			partitions and screens														
			SD-04 Samples														
			Colors and Finishes	2.8	G												
			Hardware and Fittings	2.2.4													
			Anchoring Devices and	2.2.2													
			Fasteners														
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Warranty	1.6													
			Indoor air quality for solid	2.3	S												
			phenolic partitions and screens														
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH #	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		10 21 13	Plastic Identification	2.1.1	G												
		10 26 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Corner Guards	2.2	G AE												
			Door Protectors	2.3	G AE												
			Wall Covering/Panels	2.4	G AE												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Corner Guards	2.2	G AE												
			Door Protectors	2.3	G AE												
			Wall Covering/Panels	2.4	G AE												
			Recycled content for aluminum component of corner guards	2.2.1	S												
			SD-04 Samples														
			Finish	2.6	G AE												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Corner Guards	2.2													
			Door Protectors	2.3													
			Wall Covering/Panels	2.4													
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Corner Guards	2.2													
			Door Protectors	2.3													
			Indoor air quality for wall covering/panels	2.4	S												
			Indoor air quality for adhesives	2.7	S												
		10 28 13	SD-03 Product Data														
			Finishes	2.1.2	G												
			Accessory Items	2.2	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH #	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEWER	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		10 28 13	SD-04 Samples														
			Finishes	2.1.2	G												
			Accessory Items	2.2													
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Accessory Items	2.2													
		10 51 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Lockers	2.1	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Manufacturer's Data Sheets	1.7	G												
			SD-04 Samples														
			Locker Color	2.3	G												
			Bench Top Color	2.5	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Recycled Content	1.5.1	S												
			Regional Materials	1.5.2	S												
		12 24 13	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Installation	3.3	G AE												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Window Shades	2.1	G AE												
			Recycled Content for various fiber components	2.1	S												
			SD-04 Samples														
			Window Shades	2.1	G AE												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Window Shades	2.1													
			SD-07 Certificates														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEWER	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		12 24 13	Indoor Air Quality for roller window shades	2.1	S												
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions Window Shades	2.1													
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data														
			Window Shades	2.1													
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Warranty	1.7	G												
		12 48 13	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Installation Drawings	3.2	G AE												
			Detail Drawings	3.2	G AE												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Entrance Floor Mats and Frames	2.1.1	G AE												
			Adhesives and Concrete Primers	2.1.2	G AE												
			SD-04 Samples														
			Entrance Floor Mats and Frames	2.1.1	G AE												
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Manufacturer's Instructions	3.2													
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Protection, Maintenance, and	3.2													
			Repair Information														
		12 93 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Benches	2.5	G												
			Bicycle Racks	2.6	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	APPROVING AUTHORITY				MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		12 93 00	Waste Receptacles	2.7	G												
			Entrance (Contoured) Signage		G												
			Assembly Instruction Drawings	1.3.3													
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Benches	2.5	G												
			Bicycle Racks	2.6	G												
			Waste Receptacles	2.7	G												
			Ash Receptacles	2.7	G												
			SD-04 Samples														
			Finish	2.3.3	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Testing	3.3	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Primer Certificate	1.3.4	G												
			Powder Coatings Certificate	1.3.5	G												
		13 34 19	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Manufacturer's Qualifications	1.6.3	G												
			SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Detail Drawings	1.2.1.7	G												
			Detail Drawings	1.6.1	G												
			Erection Plan	1.2.8	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			sustainable acquisition	2.4.2	G												
			compliance														
			Manufacturer's Catalog Data	1.6.1	G												
			SD-04 Samples														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASS SIFIC ATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		13 34 19	Coil Stock	1.6.1	G												
			Coil Stock	2.1.8	G												
			Roof Panels	1.2.1.9	G												
			Fasteners	2.5.2	G												
			Metal Closure Strips	2.7.1	G												
			Vapor Barrier	1.6.10	G												
			Manufacturer's Color Charts and Chips	2.4.3	G												
			SD-05 Design Data														
			Manufacturer's Descriptive and Technical Literature	1.6.1	G												
			Manufacturer's Building Design Analysis	1.6.1	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Test Reports	1.6.1	G												
			Coatings and Base Metals	1.6.1	G												
			Factory Color Finish Performance Requirements	1.6.1	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			System Components	1.6.1	G												
			Coil Stock	1.6.1	G												
			Coil Stock	2.1.8	G												
			Aluminized Steel Repair Paint	1.6.1	G												
			Galvanizing Repair Paint	1.6.1	G												
			Enamel Repair Paint	1.6.1	G												
			Qualification of Manufacturer	1.6.1	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR SIF IC ATT ION REV WR	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		13 34 19	Qualification of Erector	1.6.1	G												
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Installation of Roof panels	1.6.2	G												
			Shipping, Handling, and Storage	1.7	G												
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Manufacturer's Warranty	3.11.1	G												
			Contractor's Warranty for	3.11.2	G												
			Installation														
		21 13 13.00 20	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Shop Drawings	1.5.2	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Pipe	2.2.1	G												
			Fittings	2.2.1	G												
			Alarm valves	2.2.7	G												
			Valves	2.2.5	G												
			Sprinklers	2.2.4	G												
			Pipe hangers and supports	2.2.6	G												
			Sprinkler Alarm Switches	2.3.1	G												
			Fire department connections	2.2.8	G												
			Mechanical couplings	2.2.1	G												
			Backflow Prevention Assembly	2.2.9	G												
			SD-05 Design Data														
			Hydraulic Calculations	1.3	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			request to schedule Preliminary	3.6	G												
			Tests														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH #	GOVT OR CLASS SIFIC ATION REVIEW R	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		21 13 13.00 20	Preliminary Test Report	3.6	G												
			request to schedule Final	3.7	G												
			Acceptance Test														
			Final Acceptance Test Report	3.7	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Inspection by Fire Protection	3.1	G												
			Engineer														
			Fire Protection Engineer	1.5.1	G												
			Sprinkler System Installer	1.5.2	G												
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Operating and Maintenance	3.8													
			Instructions														
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			As-built drawings	3.7													
			On-site training	3.8													
		22 00 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Plumbing System	3.7.1	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Recycled Content for Steel Pipe	2.1	S												
			Recycled Content for Cast Iron	2.1	S												
			Pipe														
			Fixtures	2.4													
			Flush Valve Water Closets	2.4.1													
			WaterSense Label for Flush	2.4.1	S												
			Valve Water Closet														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	APPROVING AUTHORITY				MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		22 00 00	Flush Valve Urinals	2.4.2													
			WaterSense Label for Urinal	2.4.2	S												
			Countertop Lavatories	2.4.4													
			WaterSense Label for Lavatory	2.4.4	S												
			Faucet														
			Kitchen Sinks	2.4.5													
			Drinking-Water Coolers	2.4.6	G												
			Energy Star Label for Wheelchair	2.4.6	S												
			Electric Water Cooler														
			Precast Terrazzo Shower	2.4.7													
			WaterSense Label for	2.6.2	S												
			Showerhead														
			Water Heaters	2.8	G												
			Energy Star Label for Propane	2.8.1.1	S												
			Storage Water Heater														
			Pumps	2.9	G												
			Backflow Prevention Assemblies	3.7.1.1	G												
			Shower Faucets	2.6.2	G												
			Welding	1.5.1													
			Plumbing System	3.7.1													
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Tests, Flushing and Disinfection	3.7													
			Test of Backflow Prevention	3.7.1.1	G												
			Assemblies														
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Materials and Equipment	1.3													

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		22 00 00	Bolts	2.1.1													
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Plumbing System	3.7.1	G												
		23 00 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Detail Drawings	1.4.4	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Insulated Nonmetallic Flexible	2.8.1.1													
			Duct Runouts														
			Duct Connectors	2.8.1.1													
			Duct Access Doors	2.8.2	G												
			Manual Balancing Dampers	2.8.3	G												
			Diffusers	2.8.5.1													
			Grilles	2.8.5.4													
			Louvers	2.8.6													
			Air Vents, Penthouses, and	2.8.7													
			Goosenecks														
			In-Line Centrifugal Fans	2.9.1.1													
			Air Handling Units	2.10	G												
			Room Fan-Coil Units	2.11.1	G												
			Variable Volume and Constant	2.11.2.1	G												
			Volume, Single Duct Terminal														
			Units														
			Energy Recovery Devices	2.10.1.2	G												
			Indoor Air Quality for Duct	2.8.1	S												
			Sealants														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH #	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		23 00 00	SD-06 Test Reports														
			Performance Tests	3.12	G												
			Damper Acceptance Test	3.10	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Ozone Depleting Substances	1.4.3													
			Technician Certification														
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Manufacturer's Installation	3.2													
			Instructions														
			Operation and Maintenance	3.14.2													
			Training														
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Operation and Maintenance	3.14.1	G												
			Manuals														
			Manual Balancing Dampers	2.8.3	G												
			In-Line Centrifugal Fans	2.9.1.1	G												
			Air Handling Units	2.10	G												
			Room Fan-Coil Units	2.11.1	G												
			Variable Volume and Constant	2.11.2.1	G												
			Volume, Single Duct Terminal														
			Units														
			Energy Recovery Devices	2.10.1.2	G												
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Indoor Air Quality During	3.13	S												
			Construction														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	APPROVING AUTHORITY				MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		23 05 15	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Material, Equipment, and Fixture Lists	1.2	G												
			SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Record Drawings	1.2	G												
			Connection Diagrams	1.2	G												
			Coordination Drawings	1.2	G												
			Fabrication Drawings	1.2	G												
			Installation Drawings	3.1	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Pipe and Fittings	2.2	G												
			Piping Specialties	2.3	G												
			Valves	2.4	G												
			Miscellaneous Materials	2.5	G												
			Supporting Elements	2.6	G												
			Equipment Foundation Data	1.2	G												
			SD-04 Samples														
			Manufacturer's Standard Color Charts	1.2	G												
			SD-05 Design Data														
			Pipe and Fittings	2.2	G												
			Piping Specialties	2.3	G												
			Valves	2.4	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Hydrostatic Tests	3.1	G												
			Air Tests	3.1	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR SPEC A/E REVIEW NO	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		23 05 15	Valve-Operating Tests	3.1	G												
			Drainage Tests	3.1	G												
			Pneumatic Tests	3.1	G												
			Non-Destructive Electric Tests	3.1	G												
			System Operation Tests	3.1	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Record of Satisfactory Field Operation	1.4.2	G												
			List of Qualified Permanent Service Organizations	1.4.3	G												
			Listing of Product Installations	1.2	G												
			Surface Resistance	3.1	G												
			Shear and Tensile Strengths	3.1	G												
			Temperature Ratings	3.1	G												
			Bending Tests	3.1	G												
			Flattening Tests	3.1	G												
			Transverse Guided Weld Bend Tests	3.1	G												
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data														
			Operation and Maintenance Manuals	3.12	G												
		23 05 93	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Independent TAB Agency and Personnel Qualifications	1.5.1	G												
			TAB Design Review Report	1.5.3.1	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR A/E REVIEW SECTION	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		23 05 93	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			TAB Schematic Drawings and Report Forms	1.3.3	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Equipment and Performance Data	1.3	G												
			TAB Related HVAC Submittals	1.5.1.3	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Completed Pre-Final DALT Report	3.2.5	G												
			Certified Final DALT Report	3.2.8	G												
			Prerequisite HVAC Work Checkout List	1.5.3.2	G												
			Prerequisite HVAC Work Checkout List	1.5.3.2	G												
			Prerequisite HVAC Work Checkout List	1.5.3.2	G												
			Proportional Balancing	3.3.5.1	G												
			Proportional Balancing	3.6	G												
			Season 1	3.3.5.2	G												
			Season 1	3.6	G												
			Season 2	3.3.5.2	G												
			Season 2	3.6	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Independent TAB Agency and Personnel Qualifications	1.5.1	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	APPROVING AUTHORITY				MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		23 05 93	DALT and TAB Submittal and Work Schedule	1.5.3.1	G												
			TAB Pre-Field Engineering Report	1.5.3.2	G												
			Instrument Calibration Certificates	1.5.5	G												
			DALT and TAB Procedures Summary	3.6	G												
			Completed Pre-Final DALT Work Checklist	3.6	G												
			Advance Notice of Pre-Final DALT Field Work	3.2.2	G												
			Proportional Balancing	3.3.5.1	G												
			Proportional Balancing	3.6	G												
			Season 1	3.3.5.2	G												
			Season 1	3.6	G												
			Season 2	3.3.5.2	G												
			Season 2	3.6	G												
		23 07 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			MICA Plates	3.2.2.4	G												
			Pipe Insulation Systems	2.3													
			Pipe Insulation Systems	3.2													
			Duct Insulation Systems	3.3													
			Equipment Insulation Systems	3.4													
			Recycled content for insulation materials	2.3.1	S												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR SPEC REVIEW ACTION	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		23 07 00	SD-03 Product Data														
			Pipe Insulation Systems	2.3	G												
			Pipe Insulation Systems	3.2	G												
			Duct Insulation Systems	3.3	G												
			Equipment Insulation Systems	3.4	G												
			SD-04 Samples														
			Thermal Insulation	2.2.1.2	G												
			Display Samples	3.1.1	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Indoor air quality for adhesives	2.2.1	S												
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Pipe Insulation Systems	2.3	G												
			Pipe Insulation Systems	3.2	G												
			Duct Insulation Systems	3.3	G												
			Equipment Insulation Systems	3.4	G												
		23 09 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			DDC Contractor Design Drawings	3.2	G												
			Draft As-Built Drawings	3.2	G												
			Final As-Built Drawings	3.2	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Programming Software	1.8.3	G												
			Controller Application Programs	1.8.4	G												
			Configuration Software	1.8.1	G												
			Controller Configuration Settings	1.8.2	G												
			Manufacturer's Product Data	2.2	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR SIF IC AT ION R	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		23 09 00	Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway Backups	1.8.5	G												
			Niagara Framework Engineering Tool	1.8.6	G												
			SD-05 Design Data														
			Boiler Or Chiller Plant Gateway Request	1.9													
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Start-Up Testing Report	3.4.2	G												
			PVT Report	3.5.9	G												
			Pre-Construction Quality Control (QC) Checklist	1.10.1	G												
			Post-Construction Quality Control (QC) Checklist	1.10.2	G												
			Bus Waveform Report	3.5.10													
			Control Contractor's Performance Verification Testing Plan	3.5.5	G												
			Equipment Supplier's Performance Verification Testing Plan	3.5.3.1	G												
			Endurance Testing Results	3.5.8.3	G												
			Performance Verification Test Report	3.5.9	G												
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR A/E REVIEW N	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		23 09 00	Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Instructions	3.6	G												
			Training Documentation	3.8.1	G												
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Enclosure Keys	2.5	G												
			Password Summary Report	3.1.6.1	G												
			Closeout Quality Control (QC) Checklist	1.10.3	G												
		23 11 25	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Gas Piping System	1.5.3	G												
			Gas Piping System	2.2	G												
			Gas Piping System	3.3	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Pipe and Fittings	1.6.1	G												
			Gas Equipment Connectors	1.5.3	G												
			Gas Piping System	1.5.3	G												
			Gas Piping System	2.2	G												
			Gas Piping System	3.3	G												
			Pipe Coating Materials	2.1	G												
			Pressure Regulators	2.6	G												
			Risers	2.4	G												
			Transition Fittings	2.2.8	G												
			Valves	2.3	G												
			Warning and Identification Tape	2.2.5	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Testing	3.18	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		23 11 25	Pressure Tests	3.18.1	G												
			Pressure Tests for Liquified Petroleum Gas	3.18.2	G												
			Test with Gas	3.18.3	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Welders Procedures and Qualifications	1.5.1	G												
			Assigned Number, Letter, or Symbol	1.5.1	G												
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			PE Pipe and Fittings	1.5.2	G												
			Pipe Coating Materials	2.1	G												
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data														
			Gas Facility System and Equipment Operation	1.3.1	G												
			Gas Facility System Maintenance	1.3.2	G												
			Gas Facility Equipment Maintenance	1.3.3	G												
		23 21 13.00 20	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Hot water heating system	1.3.1													
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Expansion tanks	2.3.2													
			External air separation tanks	2.3.3													
			Hot water heating pipe	2.1.1													
			SD-06 Test Reports														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR A/E REVIEW ACTION	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		23 21 13.00 20	Hydrostatic test of piping system	3.3.1													
			Auxiliary equipment and	3.3.2													
			accessory tests														
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Welding procedures	1.5.2.1													
			Welder's qualifications	1.5.2.2													
		23 21 23	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			System Coordination	2.1.2	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Instructions	2.2.2	G												
			Equipment Data	2.2.5	G												
			Training Period	3.5.2	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Field Quality Control	3.3													
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Manufacturer's Representative	1.3.1													
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Operation and Maintenance	3.5.1	G												
			Manuals														
			Training	3.5.2	G												
		23 23 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Refrigerant Piping System	2.3	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Refrigerant Piping System	2.3													
			Spare Parts	1.5.2													

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH #	GOVT OR CLASS SIFIC ATION REV WR	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		23 23 00	Refrigerant Piping Tests	3.3													
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Refrigerant Piping Tests	3.3													
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Service Organization	2.1													
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Maintenance	1.5	G												
		23 52 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Detail Drawings	1.5													
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Materials and Equipment	2.1.1													
			Spare Parts	1.5													
			Water Treatment Systems	2.9													
			Fuel System Tests	3.6													
			Welding	1.3													
			Field Instructions	3.5													
			Tests	3.2													
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Fuel System Tests	3.6													
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Operation and Maintenance	3.5	G												
			Instructions														
		23 64 10	SD-03 Product Data														
			Water Chiller	2.4	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR SPEC ATTN	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		23 64 10	System Performance Tests	3.5													
			Demonstrations	3.6													
			Refrigerant	2.5.1													
			Water Chiller - Field Acceptance	3.4.1													
			Test Plan														
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Field Acceptance Testing	3.4													
			Water Chiller - Field Acceptance	3.4.2													
			Test Report														
			System Performance Tests	3.5													
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Refrigeration System	3.1.6	G												
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Water Chiller - Installation	3.1	G												
			Instructions														
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Operation and Maintenance	3.6	G												
			Manuals														
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Indoor Air Quality During	3.3	S												
			Construction														
		23 64 26	SD-03 Product Data														
			Automatic Flow Control Valves		G												
			Pressure Relief Valve														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASS SPEC ATTN	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		23 64 26	Combination Pressure and Temperature Relief Valves														
			Combination Strainer and Pump Suction Diffuser	2.4.3													
			Expansion Tanks	2.6													
			Air Separator Tanks	2.7													
			Water Treatment Systems	2.8	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Piping Welds NDE Report	3.1.1.3													
			Pressure Tests Reports	3.4.2	G												
			One-Year Inspection Report For Cooling Water	3.6	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Employer's Record Documents (For Welding)	3.1.1.1													
			Welding Procedures and Qualifications	3.1.1.2													
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Lesson plan for the Instruction Course	3.5	G												
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data														
			Water Treatment Systems	2.8	G												
			Automatic Flow Control Valves		G												
			Pressure Relief Valve		G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION						CONTRACTOR											
SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters																	
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR SPEC ATTN	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		23 64 26	Combination Pressure and Temperature Relief Valves		G												
			Combination Strainer and Pump Suction Diffuser	2.4.3	G												
			Expansion Tanks	2.6	G												
			Air Separator Tanks	2.7	G												
		23 81 00.00 20	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Control System Wiring Diagrams	1.4.2													
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Heat Pumps	2.1													
			Energy Star Label for Heat Pump Product	2.1.1	S												
			Air Conditioners	2.2													
			Energy Star Label for Split-System Type Air Conditioners	2.2.1	S												
			Refrigerant	1.5													
			Coatings for Finned Tube Coils	2.4													
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Salt-Spray Tests	2.7.1													
			Start-Up and Initial Operational Tests	3.5.3													
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Ozone Depleting Substances Technician Certification	1.4.6													
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Heat Pumps	2.1													

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		23 81 00.00 20	Air Conditioners	2.2													
			Filters	2.3													
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Heat Pumps	2.1													
			Air Conditioners	2.2													
			Filters	2.3													
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Posted Operating Instructions	1.4.4													
			Indoor Air Quality During	3.3	S												
			Construction														
		23 82 00.00 20	SD-03 Product Data														
			Unit Heaters	2.1													
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Unit Heaters	2.1													
		25 05 11.00	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Wireless Communication	3.1.5.3	G												
			Request														
			Device Account Lock Exception	3.1.2.2	G												
			Request														
			Multiple IP Connection Device	3.9	G												
			Request														
			Contractor Computer	1.9.1.4	G												
			Cybersecurity Compliance														
			Statements														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR A/E REVIEW R	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		25 05 11.00	Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements	1.9.6	G												
			SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			User Interface Banner Schedule	3.1.3.1	G												
			Network Communication Report	1.7.1	G												
			Cybersecurity Riser Diagram	1.7.4	G												
			Control System Inventory Report	1.7.2	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Control System Cybersecurity Documentation	1.7.5	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Wireless Communication Test Report	3.1.5.4	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Software Licenses	1.8	G												
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Password Summary Report	3.5.2.2.5	G												
			Software Recovery And Reconstitution Images	1.7.3	G												
			Device Audit Record Upload	3.2.2.1	G												
			Software														
		25 05 11.01	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Device Account Lock Exception Request	3.1.2.2	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASS SIFIC ATION REV WR	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		25 05 11.01	Multiple IP Connection Device Request	3.9	G												
			Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements	1.8.1.4	G												
			Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements	1.8.5	G												
			SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			User Interface Banner Schedule	3.1.3.1	G												
			Network Communication Report	1.7.1	G												
			Cybersecurity Riser Diagram	1.7.4	G												
			Control System Inventory Report	1.7.2	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Control System Cybersecurity Documentation	1.7.5	G												
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Password Summary Report	3.5.2.2.5	G												
			Software Recovery And Reconstitution Images	1.7.3	G												
			Device Audit Record Upload	3.2.2.1	G												
			Software														
		26 08 00	SD-06 Test Reports														
			Acceptance tests and inspections	3.1	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Qualifications	1.4.1	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH #	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		26 08 00	Acceptance test and inspections procedure	1.4.3	G												
		26 12 19.10	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Pad-mounted Transformer Drawings	1.5.1	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Pad-mounted Transformers	2.2	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Acceptance Checks and Tests	3.6.1	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Transformer Efficiencies	2.2.2.1	G												
			SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Reports														
			Transformer Test Schedule	2.8.1	G												
			Design Tests	2.8.2	G												
			Routine and Other Tests	2.8.3	G												
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data														
			Transformer(s)	1.6.1	G												
		26 20 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Panelboards	2.11	G												
			Transformers	2.14	G												
			Cable trays	2.3	G												
			Wireways	2.24	G												
			Marking strips	3.1.9.1	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH #	GOVT OR CLASS SIFIC ATION REVIEW R	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		26 20 00	Receptacles	2.10	G												
			Circuit breakers	2.11.3	G												
			Switches	2.9	G												
			Transformers	2.14	G												
			Enclosed circuit breakers	2.12	G												
			Motor controllers	2.16	G												
			Grounding Busbar	2.19.3	G												
			Surge protective devices	2.25	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			600-volt wiring test	3.5.2	G												
			Grounding system test	3.5.5	G												
			Transformer tests	3.5.3	G												
			Ground-fault receptacle test	3.5.4	G												
			SD-09 Manufacturer's Field														
			Reports														
			Transformer factory tests	2.27.1													
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Electrical Systems	1.5.1	G												
		26 24 13	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Switchboard Drawings	1.5.2	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Switchboard	2.2	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Switchboard Design Tests	2.5.2	G												
			Switchboard Production Tests	2.5.3	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		26 24 13	Acceptance Checks and Tests	3.5.1	G												
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Switchboard Operation and	1.6.1	G												
			Maintenance														
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Assembled Operation and	1.6.2	G												
			Maintenance Manuals														
			Equipment Test Schedule	2.5.1	G												
			Required Settings	3.5	G												
			Service Entrance Available Fault	2.7	G												
			Current Label														
		26 27 14.00 20	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Installation Drawings	1.4.1	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Electricity meters	2.1.3	G												
			Current transformer	2.1.2	G												
			communications	2.2	G												
			Configuration Software	3.1.1	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Acceptance checks and tests	3.2.1	G												
			System functional verification	3.2.2	G												
			Meter configuration template	2.1.1	G												
			Meter configuration report	3.2.1	G												
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		26 27 14.00 20	Electricity Meters and Accessories	1.5.1	G												
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			System functional verification	3.2.2	G												
		26 29 23	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Schematic Diagrams	1.5.1	G												
			Interconnecting Diagrams	1.5.2	G												
			Installation Drawings	1.5.3	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Variable Frequency Drives	2.1	G												
			Wires and Cables	2.3													
			Equipment Schedule	1.5.4													
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			VFD Test	3.2.1													
			Performance Verification Tests	3.2.2													
			Endurance Test	3.2.3													
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Installation instructions	1.5.5													
			SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Reports														
			VFD Factory Test Plan	2.5.1	G												
			Factory test results	1.5.6													
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data														
			Variable Frequency Drives	2.1													
		26 32 13.00 20	SD-02 Shop Drawings														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		26 32 13.00 20	Engine-Generator Set and Auxiliary Equipment	1.5.1.1	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Engine-Generator Set Data	1.3.1	G												
			Engine-Generator Set Efficiencies	1.3.2	G												
			Diesel Engine Data	1.3.3	G												
			Generator and Exciter Data	1.3.4	G												
			Diesel Engine-Generator Set	2.1	G												
			Auxiliary Systems and Equipment	2.2	G												
			Remote Alarm Annunciator	2.2.7	G												
			SD-05 Design Data														
			Capacity Calculations for Engine-Generator Set	1.3.5	G												
			Torsional Vibration Stress Analysis Computations	1.3.6	G												
			Capacity Calculations For Batteries	1.3.7	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Acceptance Checks and Tests	3.5.1	G												
			Functional Acceptance Tests	3.5.2	G												
			Functional Acceptance Test Procedure	3.4.5	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Vibration Isolation System	1.5.2	G												
			Fuel System	1.5.3	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR A/E REVIEW R	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		26 32 13.00 20	Start-Up Engineer	3.3	G												
			Instructor's	3.6.1	G												
			SD-09 Manufacturer's Field														
			Reports														
			Engine Tests	2.6.1	G												
			Generator Tests	2.6.2	G												
			Assembled Engine-Generator Set	2.6.3	G												
			Tests														
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Diesel Engine-Generator Set	2.1	G												
			Auxiliary Systems and Equipment	2.2	G												
			Preliminary Assembled Operation	3.4.4	G												
			and Maintenance Manuals														
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Posted Operating Instructions	1.8.2	G												
			Training Plan	3.6.2	G												
		26 33 53.00 20	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			UPS Drawings	1.6.1	G												
			UPS Installation	1.6.2	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			UPS Module	2.3	G												
			Factory Testing	2.12													
			UPS System	2.2													

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR S I F I C A T I O N R E V I E W R	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		26 33 53.00 20	Energy Star Label for Battery Charging Systems and AC-DC/AC-AC Power Supply Products	2.1	S												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Work Plan	1.6.3	G												
			Factory Test Plan	1.6.4	G												
			Performance Test Plan	1.6.5	G												
			Factory Tests	2.12	G												
			Performance Tests Report	1.6.7	G												
			Factory Tests Report	1.6.6	G												
			SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Reports														
			Initial Inspection and Tests	3.2.2	G												
			Performance Tests	3.2.3	G												
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data														
			UPS Operation and Maintenance	1.10.1	G												
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Installation	3.1													
		26 36 23.00 20	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Automatic Transfer Switch Drawings	1.4.2	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Automatic Transfer Switches	2.1	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR A/E REVIEW R	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		26 36 23.00 20	Acceptance Checks and Tests	3.3.1	G												
			Functional Acceptance Tests	3.3.2	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Proof of Listing	1.4.1	G												
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Automatic Transfer Switches	2.1	G												
		26 41 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Overall lightning protection	1.4.1.1	G												
			system														
			Each major component	1.4.1.2	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Lightning Protection and	1.4.3	G												
			Grounding System Test Plan														
			Lightning Protection and	3.5.1	G												
			Grounding System Test														
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Lightning Protection System	1.2.3	G												
			Installers Documentation														
			Component UL Listed and	1.4.2	G												
			Labeled														
			Lightning protection system	1.4.4	G												
			inspection certificate														
			Roof manufacturer's warranty	3.1.1	G												
		26 51 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Luminaire Drawings	1.5.1	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR SIF IC AT ION R E V E W R	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		26 51 00	Occupancy/Vacancy Sensor Coverage Layout	1.5.2	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Luminaires	2.2	G												
			Light Sources	2.4	G												
			Drivers	2.3	G												
			LED Luminaire Warranty	1.6.1	G												
			Luminaire Design Data	1.5.4	G												
			Vacancy Sensors	2.5.3.2	G												
			Dimming Controllers (Dimmers)	2.5.2	G												
			Exit Signs	2.6.1	G												
			Emergency Lighting Unit (EBU)	2.6.2	G												
			LED Emergency Drivers	2.6.3	G												
			Occupancy Sensors	2.5.3.1	G												
			Lighting Control Panel	2.5.4	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			LED Luminaire - IES LM-79 Test Report	1.5.5	G												
			LED Light Source - IES LM-80 Test Report	1.5.6	G												
			LED Light Source - IES TM-21 Test Report	1.5.7	G												
			Occupancy/Vacancy Sensor Verification Tests	1.5.8	G												
			Energy Efficiency	1.5.11.3	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER												CONTRACT NO.					
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		26 51 00	Luminaire Useful Life Certificate	1.6.1.1	G												
			LED Driver and Dimming Switch	1.5.3	G												
			Compatibility Certificate														
		26 56 00	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Photometric Plan	1.5.2	G												
			LED Luminaire Warranty	1.7.1	G												
			SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Luminaire Drawings	1.5.1.1	G												
			Poles	1.5.1.2	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			LED, Luminaires	2.2	G												
			Luminaire Light Sources	2.2.2	G												
			Luminaire Power Supply Units	2.2.3	G												
			(Drivers)														
			Photocell	2.3.1	G												
			Concrete Poles	2.4.1	G												
			Brackets	2.5													
			SD-05 Design Data														
			Design Data for Luminaires	1.5.3	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			LED Luminaire - IES LM-79 Test	1.5.4	G												
			Report														
			LED Light Source - IES LM-80	1.5.5	G												
			Test Report														
			Operating Test	3.2													
			SD-07 Certificates														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		26 56 00	Luminaire Useful Life Certificate	1.7.1	G												
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Concrete Poles	2.4.1													
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Operational Service	1.8													
		27 10 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Telecommunications drawings	1.6.1.1	G												
			Telecommunications Space	1.6.1.2	G												
			Drawings														
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Telecommunications cabling	2.4	G												
			Patch panels	2.5.6	G												
			Telecommunications	2.6	G												
			outlet/connector assemblies														
			Equipment support frame	2.5.2	G												
			Connector blocks	2.5.3	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Telecommunications cabling	3.5.1	G												
			testing														
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Telecommunications Contractor	1.6.2.1	G												
			Key Personnel	1.6.2.2	G												
			Manufacturer Qualifications	1.6.2.3	G												
			Test plan	1.6.3	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		27 10 00	SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Reports														
			Factory reel tests	2.11.1	G												
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data														
			Telecommunications cabling and pathway system	1.10.1	G												
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals Record Documentation	1.10.2	G												
		28 31 76.22	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Qualifications for Fire Alarm System Subcontractor	1.6.1.1	G												
			On Staff Fire Alarm System Designer(s)	1.6.1.1.1	G												
			Supervising Fire Alarm Technician	1.6.1.1.2	G												
			Installing Technicians	1.6.1.1.3	G												
			Testing Personnel	1.6.1.1.4	G												
			SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Wiring Diagrams	3.3.1	G												
			System Layout		G												
			System Operation	2.29	G												
			Notification Appliances	2.19	G												
			Amplifiers	2.6	G												
			As-Built Drawings	3.7.2													
			SD-03 Product Data														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASS SIFIC ATION	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		28 31 76.22	Technical Data And Computer Software	1.4.2													
			Fire alarm control unit	2.3													
			Autonomous control unit	2.3													
			Combination emergency communications system panel	2.3													
			Local operating consoles	2.4													
			Amplifiers	2.6													
			Digitalized voice generators	2.6													
			Digitalized voice generators	2.6													
			Remote annunciator	2.9													
			Installation-wide mass notification system transceiver	2.12.2													
			Digital alarm communicator transmitter (DACT)	2.13.1													
			Batteries	2.14.1													
			Battery chargers	2.14.2													
			Wiring	2.15													
			Surge protection	2.16													
			Ceiling bridges	2.17													
			Back boxes and conduit	2.18													
			Terminal cabinets	3.3.2													
			Notification appliances	2.19													
			LED Text Displays	2.19.6													
			LED text display control panels	2.19.6.1													
			Addressable monitor module	2.20													

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH #	GOVT OR CLASS IFICATION REVIEW R	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		28 31 76.22	Addressable control/relay module	2.21													
			Isolation module	2.22													
			Manual stations	2.23													
			Smoke detectors	2.24													
			Carbon monoxide detector	2.25													
			Tamper switches	2.27													
			Manufacturer's installation and maintenance manuals	1.8													
			SD-05 Design Data														
			System Operation	2.29	G												
			Battery power														
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Field Quality Control	3.7													
			Testing Procedures	3.7.1													
			Smoke detector testing	2.24.2													
			Carbon monoxide detector testing	2.25.1													
			SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Reports														
			Combination emergency communications system panel	2.3													
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data														
			Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Instructions	1.8													

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/	APPROVING AUTHORITY				MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		28 31 76.22	Instruction of Government Employees	3.8													
		31 05 19	SD-03 Product Data														
			Thread	2.1.2													
			Manufacturing Quality Control	2.2													
			Sampling and Testing														
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Geotextile	2.1.1													
		31 23 00.00 20	SD-06 Test Reports														
			Borrow Site Testing	1.6	G												
			Settlement Plate Readings		G												
			Fill and backfill	3.14.2.1													
			Select material	3.14.2.2													
			Porous fill	3.14.2.3													
			Density tests	3.14.2.4													
			Moisture Content Tests	3.14.2.5													
		32 05 33	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Integrated Pest Management	2.4	G												
			Plan														
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Fertilizer	2.1	G												
			Mulches Topdressing	2.3	G												
			Organic Mulch Materials	2.3.2	G												
			Inorganic Mulch Materials		G												
			Irrigation Bags		G												
			SD-07 Certificates														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR SIFIC ATION REVIEW R	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		32 05 33	Maintenance Inspection Report	3.5.1	G												
			Plant Quantities	3.5.2	G												
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Maintenance	1.6	G												
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals														
			Tree Staking and Guying	3.5.3	G												
			Removal														
			Irrigation Bag Removal		G												
		32 11 23	SD-03 Product Data														
			Plant, Equipment, and Tools	1.4	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Initial Tests	2.3.1	G												
			In-Place Tests	3.12.1	G												
		32 12 13	SD-03 Product Data														
			Local/Regional Materials	2.2.4													
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Sampling and Testing	3.6													
		32 12 16	SD-03 Product Data														
			Mix Design	2.4	G												
			Quality Control	3.10	G												
			Material Acceptance	3.11	G												
			SD-04 Samples														
			Asphalt Cement Binder	2.3													
			Aggregates	2.2													
			SD-06 Test Reports														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		32 12 16	Aggregates	2.2	G												
			QC Monitoring	3.10.3.10													
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Asphalt Cement Binder	2.3	G												
			Testing Laboratory	3.6													
		32 13 13.06	SD-03 Product Data														
			Curing Materials	2.1.6	G												
			Admixtures	2.1.4	G												
			Dowel		G												
			Reinforcement	2.1.5	G												
			Cementitious Materials	2.1.1	G												
			Aggregate	2.1.3	G												
			Albedo	2.2.2													
			SD-05 Design Data														
			Mix Design	2.3	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Aggregate	2.1.3	G												
			Concrete Slump Tests	3.7.2	G												
			Air Content Tests	3.7.4	G												
			Flexural Strength Tests	3.7.3	G												
			Cementitious Materials	2.1.1	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Ready-mixed Concrete Plant	1.6.1	G												
			Batch Tickets	1.6.4	G												
			Cementitious Materials	2.1.1	G												
		32 13 73	SD-03 Product Data														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		32 13 73	Equipment	2.1													
			Manufacturer's Instructions	3.1.1													
			SD-04 Samples														
			Compression Seals	2.2	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Test Requirements	2.1.3													
		32 16 19	SD-03 Product Data														
			Concrete	2.1													
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Field Quality Control	3.8													
		32 17 23	SD-03 Product Data														
			Surface Preparation Equipment	2.1.1.1	G												
			List														
			Application Equipment List	2.1.2	G												
			Safety Data Sheets	1.3.1	G												
			Reflective media for roads	2.2.5.1	G												
			Waterborne Paint	2.2.1	G												
			Waterborne Paint	2.2.1	G												
			Waterborne Paint	3.3.1.1	G												
			Waterborne Paint	3.3.1.1	G												
			Solventborne Paint	2.2.2	G												
			Solventborne Paint	2.2.2	G												
			Solventborne Paint	3.3.1.2	G												
			Solventborne Paint	3.3.1.2	G												
			Thermoplastic compound	2.2.4	G												
			Thermoplastic compound	3.3.2	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	APPROVING AUTHORITY				MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		32 17 23	SD-07 Certificates														
			Qualifications	1.3.2	G												
			Reflective Media for Roads	2.2.5.1													
			Waterborne Paint	2.2.1													
			Waterborne Paint	3.3.1.1													
			Solventborne Paint	2.2.2													
			Solventborne Paint	3.3.1.2													
			Volatile Organic Compound	1.3.1	G												
			Thermoplastic Compound	2.2.4													
			Thermoplastic Compound	3.3.2													
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Waterborne Paint	2.2.1	G												
			Waterborne Paint	3.3.1.1	G												
			Solventborne Paint	2.2.2	G												
			Solventborne Paint	3.3.1.2	G												
			Thermoplastic Compound	2.2.4	G												
			Thermoplastic Compound	3.3.2	G												
		32 31 13.53	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Fence Installation	1.3.2													
			Fence Installation	3.1													
			Installation Drawings	1.3.2													
			Location of gate, corner, end, and pull posts	1.3.2													
			Gate Assembly	1.3.2													
			Gate Assembly	2.7.1													
			Gate Assembly	2.7.1													

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		32 31 13.53	Gate Hardware and Accessories	1.3.2													
			Gate Hardware and Accessories	2.7.3													
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Fence Installation	1.3.2													
			Fence Installation	3.1													
			Gate Assembly	1.3.2													
			Gate Assembly	2.7.1													
			Gate Assembly	2.7.1													
			Gate Hardware and Accessories	1.3.2													
			Gate Hardware and Accessories	2.7.3													
			SD-04 Samples														
			Fabric	2.1.1													
			Posts	2.2													
			Post Caps	2.2.2													
			Braces	2.3													
			Top Rail	2.3													
			Bottom Rail	2.3													
			Tension Wire	2.2.2													
			Barbed Wire	2.4.2													
			Barbed Wire Supporting Arms	2.2.2													
			Barbed Tape	2.5													
			Stretcher Bars	2.1.1													
			Gate Posts	2.1.1													
			Gate Hardware and Accessories	1.3.2													
			Gate Hardware and Accessories	2.7.3													
			Wire Ties	2.4.1													

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	APPROVING AUTHORITY				MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		32 31 13.53	SD-06 Test Reports														
			zinc coating	1.3.1													
			Aluminum Alloy Coating	1.3.1													
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Chain Link Fence	2.2.1													
			Reports	1.3.1													
			Reports	1.3.1													
			Zinc Coating	1.3.1													
			aluminum alloy coating	1.3.1													
			Fabric	2.1.1													
			Barbed Wire	2.4.2													
			Stretcher Bars	2.1.1													
			Gate Hardware and Accessories	1.3.2													
			Gate Hardware and Accessories	2.7.3													
			Concrete	2.6													
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Fence Installation	1.3.2													
			Fence Installation	3.1													
			Gate Assembly	1.3.2													
			Gate Assembly	2.7.1													
			Gate Assembly	2.7.1													
			Hardware Assembly	3.7													
			Accessories	1.3.1													
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH #	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEWER	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		32 31 13.53	operating and maintenance instructions	3.7													
		32 92 23	SD-03 Product Data														
			Fertilizer	2.4	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Topsoil composition tests	2.2.3	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			sods	2.1	G												
		32 93 00	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			State Landscape Contractor's License	1.4.3	G												
			Time Restrictions and Planting Conditions	1.6	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Peat	2.3.5	G												
			Composted Derivatives	2.3.8	G												
			Rotted Manure	2.3.11	G												
			Organic Mulch Materials	2.7.2	G												
			Gypsum		G												
			Inorganic Mulch		G												
			Ground Stakes		G												
			Fertilizer	2.5	G												
			Weed Control Fabric	2.6	G												
			Root Control Barrier	2.11	G												
			Staking Material	2.8.1	G												
			Metal Anchors		G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		32 93 00	Antidesiccants	2.10	G												
			Erosion Control Materials		G												
			Photographs	1.4.4	G												
			SD-04 Samples														
			Mulch	2.7	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Topsoil Composition Tests	2.2.4	G												
			Percolation Test	1.4.5	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Nursery Certifications	2.1.1	G												
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Plastic Identification	1.8	G												
		33 11 00	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Connections	3.1.1	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Pipe, Fittings, Joints and	2.1.1	G												
			Couplings														
			Valves	2.1.2	G												
			Valve Boxes	2.1.2.4	G												
			Fire Hydrants	2.1.3.1	G												
			Pipe Restraint	2.2.1	G												
			Tapping Sleeves	2.2.3	G												
			Backflow Preventer	1.4.2.1.1	G												
			Disinfection Procedures	3.2.4	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		33 11 00	Backflow Preventer Tests	3.3.1.5	G												
			Bacteriological Samples	3.3.1.4	G												
			Hydrostatic Sewer Test	3.2.1.1.6													
			Leakage Test	3.3.1.3													
			Hydrostatic Test	3.3.1.1													
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Pipe, Fittings, Joints and Couplings	2.1.1													
			Lining for Fittings	2.1.1.1.1.2													
			Valves	2.1.2													
			Fire Hydrants	2.1.3.1													
			Backflow Prevention Training Certificate	1.4.2.1.1.2													
			Backflow Tester	1.4.2.1.1.1													
			Fusion Technician Qualifications	1.4.2.2	G												
			Backflow Certificate	2.1.5													
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			PVC Piping	2.1.1.1.1.1													
			PVC Piping For Service Lines	2.1.1.1.2													
		33 11 23	SD-03 Product Data														
			Valve Box	2.5													
			Gas Equipment Connectors	2.4													
			Valves	3.1.3													
			Warning and Identification Tape	2.7													
			Risers	2.2.3													
			Transition Fittings	2.2.4													

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR S I F I C A T I O N R E V I E W R	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		33 11 23	Gas meter	2.3													
			LPG Containers and Accessories	2.14													
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Welder's Qualifications	1.4.1													
			PE Welder's Qualifications	1.4.2													
			Welder's Identification Symbols	1.4.1													
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			PE Pipe and Fittings	2.2.2													
		33 30 00	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals														
			Contractor's License	1.3.1	G												
			SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Installation Drawings	3.1.1	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Precast Concrete Manholes	2.2.6													
			Frames, Covers, and Gratings	2.2.9													
			Gravity Pipe	2.2.1													
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Hydrostatic Sewer Test	3.3.1.1	G												
			Infiltration Tests And Exfiltration Tests	3.3.1.2.1	G												
			Low-Pressure Air Tests	3.3.1.2.2	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Portland Cement	2.2.4													
			Pre-Installation Inspection Request	3.3.2.1	G												
			Post-Installation Inspection	3.3.2.2	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR A/E REVIEW ACTION	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		33 40 00	SD-04 Samples														
			Pipe for Culverts and Storm Drains	2.1													
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Resin Certification	2.1.2													
			Determination of Density	3.8.1.1													
			Frame and Cover for Gratings	2.4.6													
			Post-Installation Inspection Report	3.8.2.1.3													
			Placing Pipe	3.3													
			LID Verification Report	3.8.2.2	G												
		33 46 13	SD-04 Samples														
			Materials	2.1													
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Materials	2.1													
		33 51 15	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Pipe, Fittings, and Associated Materials	2.1													
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Materials and Equipment	2.1	G												
			Spare Parts	1.6	G												
			Pipe and Accessory Coatings	2.1	G												
			SD-05 Design Data														
			Connections to Existing Lines	1.4.2.2	G												
			Connections to Existing Lines	3.8	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR SPEC ATTN	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		33 51 15	Connection and Abandonment Plan	3.8.2	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Pressure and Leak Tests	3.9.2													
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Welder's training, qualifications and procedures	1.4.1.1													
			Jointing of Polyethylene Piping	1.4.1.2													
			Utility Work	3.8.1													
			EFV Design and Installation Guide	2.2.3													
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data														
			Gas Distribution System and Equipment Operation	3.10.1	G												
			Gas Distribution System Maintenance	3.10.2	G												
			Gas Distribution Equipment Maintenance	3.10.3	G												
		33 61 13.13	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Fabrication and Assembly Drawings	2.1													
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Support of the Equipment	2.1													
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Welding	1.4													

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT OR CLASSIFICATION REVIEW	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		33 61 13.13	Written Certification	2.1													
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance														
			Data														
			Maintenance	3.8	G												
		33 71 02	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Precast underground structures	1.5.1	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Medium voltage cable	2.5	G												
			Medium voltage cable joints	2.7	G												
			Medium voltage cable	2.6	G												
			terminations														
			Precast concrete structures	2.13.1.1	G												
			Sealing Material	2.13.1.4													
			Pulling-In Irons	3.4.2													
			Handhole frames and covers	2.13.3	G												
			Composite/fiberglass handholes	2.13.5	G												
			Cable supports	2.14	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Medium voltage cable	2.17.2	G												
			qualification and production tests														
			Field Acceptance Checks and	3.18.1	G												
			Tests														
			Arc-proofing test	2.17.1	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Cable splicer/terminator	1.5.2	G												
			Cable Installer Qualifications	1.5.3	G												

SUBMITTAL REGISTER											CONTRACT NO.						
TITLE AND LOCATION SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters						CONTRACTOR											
ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH	GOVT CLASS OR A/E REVIEW R	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION		APPROVING AUTHORITY						REMARKS
						SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		33 82 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings														
			Telecommunications Outside Plant	1.6.1.1	G												
			Telecommunications Entrance Facility Drawings	1.6.1.2	G												
			SD-03 Product Data														
			Wire and cable	2.8	G												
			Cable splices, and connectors	2.5	G												
			Closures	2.3	G												
			Building protector assemblies	2.2.1	G												
			Protector modules	2.2.2	G												
			Cross-connect terminal cabinets	2.4	G												
			Spare Parts	1.8.2	G												
			SD-06 Test Reports														
			Pre-installation tests	3.4.1	G												
			Acceptance tests	3.4.2	G												
			Outside Plant Test Plan	1.6.3	G												
			SD-07 Certificates														
			Telecommunications Contractor	1.6.2.1	G												
			Key Personnel	1.6.2.2	G												
			Manufacturer's Qualifications	1.6.2.3	G												
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions														
			Building protector assembly installation	2.2.1	G												
			Cable tensions	3.1.6.1	G												
			Fiber Optic Splices	3.1.7.2	G												

CONTRACT NO.

CONTRACTOR

[illegible][illegible]

SECTION 01 33 29

SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING

02/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 189.1 (2014) Standard for the Design of
High-Performance Green Buildings Except
Low-Rise Residential Buildings

COUNCIL ON ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY (CEQ) (WHITE HOUSE)

HPSB Guiding Principles (2016) Guiding Principles for Sustainable
Federal Buildings and Determining
Compliance with the Guiding Principles for
Sustainable Federal Buildings

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE (USDA)

FSRIA 9002 Farm Security and Rural Investment Act
Section 9002 (USDA BiopREFERRED Program)

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY (DOE)

Energy Star (1992; R 2006) Energy Star Energy
Efficiency Labeling System (FEMP)

U.S. GREEN BUILDING COUNCIL (USGBC)

GBCI GP Assessment (2016) Guiding Principles Assessment by
GBCI (DOD Version)

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

40 CFR 247 Comprehensive Procurement Guideline for
Products Containing Recovered Materials

1.2 SUMMARY

This specification includes general requirements and procedures for this project to be constructed and documented per the federally mandated High Performance and Sustainable Building or HPSB Guiding Principles (GP), Third Party Certification (TPC) requirements, UFC 1-200-02 High Performance and Sustainable Building Requirements, and other requirements identified in this specification.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to this section. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Preliminary High Performance and Sustainable Building Checklist; G

Sustainability Action Plan; G

Preliminary Sustainability eNotebook; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Final High Performance and Sustainable Building Checklist; G

Final Sustainability eNotebook; G

Amended Final Sustainability eNotebook; G

Amended Final High Performance and Sustainable Building Checklist;
G

Third Party Certification Certificate, Assessment, or Validation; G

1.4 GUIDING PRINCIPLES VALIDATION (GPV)

Provide construction related sustainability documentation to verify achievement of HPSB Guiding Principles Validation (GPV). Provide the following for GPV:

- a. Refer to HPSB Checklist at the end of this specification section. These requirements are based on legislative mandates that must be met by all projects. (Multiple checklists indicate multiple buildings that require HPSB tracking.)
- b. No variations to the HPSB Checklist are allowed without written consent from the Contracting Officer. Immediately bring to the attention of the Contracting Officer any changes that impact meeting the approved HPSB Guiding Principles Requirements for this project.
- c. All work, including "S" submittals, required to incorporate the applicable HPSB Guiding Principles Requirements indicated on the HPSB Checklist and in this contract.
- d. Sustainability Action Plan
- e. Construction related documentation for the project Sustainability eNotebook, and keep updated with regularly-scheduled construction meetings. Include construction related documentation containing the following components;
 - (1) HPSB Checklist
 - (2) Sustainability Action Plan

- (3) Documentation illustrating HPSB Guiding Principles Requirements compliance (including "S" submittals)

1.4.1 Sustainability Action Plan

Include the following information in the Sustainability Action Plan:

- a. Planned method to achieve each construction related GP requirement.
- b. For each designated construction related **HPSB Guiding Principles** Requirements that is applicable, as defined in UFC 1-200-02, provide justification narrative explaining what precludes achieving specific sustainability requirement or goal. Provide analysis of particular requirement and level to which project is able to comply. Final government-approved narrative(s) must be included with the HPSB Checklist submittal.
- c. Name and contact information for: Point of Contact (POC) responsible for ensuring sustainability goals are accomplished and documentation is assembled. For TPC that include on-site visit by third party representative, provide list of required attendees.
- d. Include the Indoor Air Quality plan with the Sustainability Action Plan.

1.4.2 Costs

Bear all costs associated with constructing, demonstrating, and documenting that project complies with approved **HPSB Guiding Principles** Requirements.

1.4.3 Calculations

Provide calculations, product data, labels and product certifications, required in this section to demonstrate compliance with the **HPSB Guiding Principles** Requirements.

1.4.4 Third Party Certification (TPC) Documentation

This project has been designed for, and must be constructed to attain a sustainability rating of **GBCI GP Assessment**. Project is already registered with the TPC Organization. Provide construction related sustainability documentation, in the format required by the TPC Organization, to the Contracting Officer for approval, and for final approval by the TPC organization. Third Party Certification is met when Government receives TPC organization certificate, assessment, or validation. Execute the following:

- a. Refer to TPC Checklist at the end of this specification section. (Multiple checklists indicate multiple buildings that require TPC.)
- b. Immediately bring to the attention of the Contracting Officer any project changes that impact meeting the approved TPC Requirements for this project.
- c. Complete all work required to incorporate the applicable TPC Requirements.
- d. Maintain the construction related information, and provide replacement

pages, in the Sustainability eNotebook pertaining to additions and changes to the approved sustainability requirements. Maintain the Sustainability eNotebook in electronic format. For more explanation, refer to paragraph SUSTAINABILITY eNOTEBOOK. Provide the following components in the Sustainability eNotebook, in addition to the GPV components above:

- (1) TPC Checklist
 - (2) Completed TPC documentation for each identified requirement. Forward to the Contracting Officer for approval. Upload onto the TPC Online documentation website.
 - (3) Copy of all correspondence with the TPC organization.
- e. Provide the following information in the Sustainability Action Plan. Provide this TPC information in addition to the GPV Action Plan items above:
- (1) Planned method to achieve each TPC requirement.
 - (2) For each TPC requirement that is attempted but not achieved, provide narrative explaining how mission or activity precludes achieving specific sustainability requirement or goal. Provide analysis of particular requirement and level to which project is able to comply.
 - (3) Provide name and contact information for: Sustainability Point of Contact (POC) and other names of sustainability professionals responsible for ensuring TPC sustainability goals are accomplished and documentation is assembled. Sustainability POCs are also responsible for ensuring GPV required in paragraph GUIDING PRINCIPLES VALIDATION (GPV) above.
- f. Bear all costs associated with constructing, demonstrating, and documenting that project complies with approved TPC requirements, including but not limited to:
- (1) TPC coordination with Government's AE and other consultants, TPC website requirements, and management for construction related documentation.
 - (2) Construction work required to incorporate TPC requirements.
 - (3) Submittals required to demonstrating compliance with Government approved TPC checklists.
 - (4) Documentation illustrating compliance with TPC requirements and additional documentation required by the TPC.
- g. Provide all calculations, product data, and certifications, assessments, or validations required in this contract to demonstrate compliance with the TPC Requirements of this section.

1.5 SUSTAINABILITY SUBMITTALS

Provide HPSB Checklist and other documentation in the Sustainability eNotebook to indicate compliance with the sustainability requirements of the project.

1.5.1 High Performance Sustainable Building (HPSB) Checklist

Provide construction documentation that provides proof of and supports compliance with the completed HPSB Checklist.

1.5.1.1 HPSB Checklist Submittals

Submit updated HPSB Checklist with each Sustainability eNotebook submittal. Attach final HPSB Checklist(s) to draft final DD1354 Real Property Record Submittal.

1.5.2 "S" Submittals for Sustainability Documentation

Submit the GPV and TPC sustainability documentation required in this specification as "S" submittals in all affected UFGS Sections.

- a. Highlight GPV and TPC compliance data in "S" submittal.
- b. Add "S" submittals to the Sustainability eNotebook only after submittal approval, and bookmark them as required in paragraph SUSTAINABILITY eNOTEBOOK below.
- c. Ensure all approved "S" submittals (the sustainability documentation requirements) are included in each Sustainability eNotebook submittal.

1.5.3 Sustainability eNotebook

The Sustainability eNotebook is an electronic organizational file that serves as a repository for all required sustainability submittals. To support documentation of compliance with an approved HPSB and TPC checklist, provide and maintain a comprehensive and current Sustainability eNotebook. Sustainability eNotebook must contain all required data to support full compliance with the **HPSB Guiding Principles** Requirements, including:

- a. HPSB checklist
- b. Sustainable Action Plan
- c. Calculations
- d. Labels
- e. "S" submittals (sustainability documentation requirements)
- f. Certifications, assessments, or validations
- g. TPC documentation required in paragraph THIRD PARTY CERTIFICATION (TPC) above.

Provide sustainability eNotebook in the form of an Adobe PDF file; bookmark each **HPSB Guiding Principles** Requirement, TPC requirement, and sub-bookmark at each document. Match format to **HPSB Guiding Principles** numbering system indicated herein. Maintain up-to-date information, spreadsheets, templates, and other required documentation with each current submittal. For TPC projects, provide a second Table of contents using TPC numbering system, for maintaining documentation unique to TPC.

Contracting Officer may deduct from the monthly progress payment accordingly if Sustainability eNotebook information is not current, until information is updated and on track per project goals.

1.5.3.1 Sustainability eNotebook Submittal Schedule

Provide Sustainability eNotebook Submittals at the following milestones of the project:

a. **Preliminary Sustainability eNotebook**

Submit preliminary Sustainability eNotebook for approval at the Pre-construction conference. Include **Preliminary High Performance and Sustainable Building Checklist** and TPC checklist.

b. **Construction Progress Meetings.** Provide up-to-date GP and TPC documentation in the Sustainability eNotebook and TPC Online tool for each meeting.

c. **Final Sustainability eNotebook**

Provide up-to-date Sustainability eNotebook at the Beneficial Occupancy Date (BOD). Final progress payment retainage may be held by Contracting Officer until final sustainability documentation is complete. Include **Final High Performance and Sustainable Building Checklist**.

d. **Amended Final Sustainability eNotebook**

Amend and resubmit the Final Sustainability eNotebook to include post-occupancy corrections, updates, and requirements. Include **Amended Final High Performance and Sustainable Building Checklist**. Final progress payment retainage may be held by Contracting Officer until amended final sustainability documentation is complete. Submit **three** final electronic copies of the Amended Final Sustainability eNotebook Submittal on DVDs to the Government no longer than 30 days after the GP, TPC designated data collection period.

1.6 DOCUMENTATION REQUIREMENTS

- a. Incorporate each of the following **HPSB Guiding Principles** Requirements into project construction; and provide documentation that proves compliance with each listed requirement. Items below are organized according to the **HPSB Guiding Principles**. For life-cycle cost analysis requirements, one document with all analyses is acceptable, with Contracting Officer approval.
- b. For each of the following paragraphs that require the use of products listed on Government-required websites, provide documentation of the process used to select products, or process used to determine why listed products do not meet project performance requirements.

1.6.1 Commissioning

Submit approved Final Commissioning Report required by Section **01 91 00.15** TOTAL BUILDING COMMISSIONING as proof of this tracking requirement.

1.6.2 Energy Efficient Products

Provide only energy-using products that are **Energy Star** rated, or have the Federal Energy Management Program (FEMP) recommended efficiency. Where **Energy Star** or FEMP recommendations have not been established, provide most efficient products that are life-cycle cost effective. Provide only energy using products that meet FEMP requirements for low standby power consumption. Energy efficient products can be found at:

<https://energy.gov/eere/femp/federal-energy-management-program> and <https://www.energystar.gov/>. Provide the following documentation:

Proof that products are labeled energy efficient and comply with the cited requirements.

1.6.3 Indoor Water Use

Provide only water-consuming products that are EPA WaterSense labeled, or the most efficient water fixtures available that meet the requirements of **ASHRAE 189.1** Section 6.3.2, when EPA WaterSense products are not available. Provide the following documentation:

For products available with EPA WaterSense labeling, proof that fixtures are labeled EPA WaterSense or **Energy Star**; for all other fixtures, proof they comply with the cited efficiency requirements.

1.6.4 Reduce Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC) (Low Emitting Materials)

Meet the requirements of Table 3-1 at the end of this specification. Provide the following documentation:

Provide certifications or labels that demonstrate compliance with cited requirements.

1.6.5 Indoor Air Quality During Construction

Prior to construction, create indoor air quality (IAQ) plan. Develop and implement the IAQ construction management plan during construction and flush building air before occupancy.

For new construction and for renovation of unoccupied existing buildings, indoor air quality plan must meet the requirements of **ASHRAE 189.1** Section 10.3.1.4. (Indoor Air Quality (IAQ) Construction Management), with maximum outdoor air consistent with achieving relative humidity no greater than 60 percent.

Provide documentation showing that after construction ends and prior to occupancy, HVAC filters were replaced and building air was flushed out in accordance with the cited standard.

1.6.6 Recycled Content

Comply with **40 CFR 247**. Refer to <https://www.epa.gov/smm/comprehensive-procurement-guideline-cpg-program> for assistance identifying products cited in **40 CFR 247**. Selected products must comply with non-proprietary requirements of the Federal Acquisition Regulation, and must meet performance requirements. Provide the following documentation:

a. Manufacturers' documents stating the recycled content by material, or

written justification for claiming one of the exceptions allowed on the cited website.

- b. Substitutions: Submit for Government approval, proposed alternative products or systems that provide equivalent performance and appearance and have greater contribution to project recycled content requirements. For all such proposed substitutions, submit with the Sustainability Action Plan accompanied by product data demonstrating equivalence.
- c. In order to complete compliance with FAR 52.223-9 Estimate of Percentage of Recovered Material Content for EPA Designated Items, refer to submittal requirement for recycled/recovered material content in Section 01 78 00.

1.6.7 Bio-Based Products

Provide products and material composed of the highest percentage of biobased materials (including rapidly renewable resources and certified sustainably harvested products), consistent with FSRIA 9002 USDA BioPreferred Program, to the maximum extent possible without jeopardizing the intended end use or detracting from the overall quality delivered to the end user. Use only supplies and materials of a type and quality that conform to applicable specifications and standards.

Comply with FSRIA 9002 USDA BioPreferred Program. Refer to <https://www.biopreferred.gov/BioPreferred/> for the product categories and BioPreferred Catalog. Selected products must comply with non-proprietary requirements of the Federal Acquisition Regulation, and must meet performance requirements. Provide the following documentation:

- a. USDA BioPreferred label for each product; for bio-based products used on project but not listed with BioPreferred program, provide bio-based content and percentage.
- b. In order to complete compliance with FAR 52.223-2 Affirmative Procurement of Biobased Products Under Service and Construction Contracts, refer to submittal requirement for biobased products in Section 01 78 00.

1.6.8 Waste Material Management (Recycling - Construction)

Divert construction debris from landfill disposal where markets or on-site recycling exists, and provide documentation in accordance with Section 01 74 19 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL.

1.6.9 Additional Sustainability Requirements

1.6.9.1 Validation and Certification Restrictions

Purchase of renewable energy certificates (RECs) specifically to meet project sustainability goals is prohibited.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not used.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 SUSTAINABILITY COORDINATION

3.1.1 Coordinating Sustainability Documentation Progress

Provide sustainability focus and coordination at the following meetings to achieve sustainability goals. The designated sustainability professional responsible for GP and TPC documentation must participate in the following meetings to coordinate documentation completion.

- a. Pre-Construction Conference: Discuss the following: TPC and HPSB Checklists, Sustainability Action Plan, Construction submittal requirements and schedule, individuals responsible for achieving each Guiding Principle Requirement and TPC prerequisite and credit.
- b. Construction Progress Meetings: Review GP and TPC sustainability requirements with project team including contractor and sub-contractor representatives. Demonstrate GP and TPC documentation is being collected and updated to the Sustainability eNotebook and TPC Online tool.
 - (1) For TPC that include on-site visit by third party representative, execute, coordinate, and facilitate the visit.
 - (2) Facility Turnover Meetings: Review Sustainability eNotebook, and TPC Online submission for completeness and identify any outstanding issues relating to final documentation requirements.
 - (3) Final Sustainability eNotebook Review

3.2 THIRD PARTY CERTIFICATION CERTIFICATE, ASSESSMENT, OR VALIDATION

Finalize the sustainability certification or validation process and obtain the TPC Certificate, assessment, or validation, indicating completion of the projects sustainability goals.

Provide one copy of original certificate, assessment, or validation, and deliver to Contractor Officer, unless otherwise instructed.

3.3 TABLE 3-1 VOLATILE ORGANIC COMPOUNDS (VOC) (LOW EMITTING MATERIALS) REQUIREMENTS

TABLE 3-1 Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC) (Low Emitting Materials) Requirements				
Source: ASHRAE 189.1 section 8.4.2 (Materials) (Interior Applications Only)				
MATERIAL CATEGORY	EMISSIONS REQUIREMENT		MATERIALS WITH ADDED VOC REQUIREMENT	MATERIAL CATEGORY
Adhesives and Sealants	CDPH/EHLB/Standard method V1.1 (California Section 01350) (Use "office" or "classroom" space limits for all applications)	or	Adhesives (carpet, resilient, wood flooring; panel; primers) Sealants (acoustical; firestop; HVAC Air duct; primers) Caulks	SCAQMD Rule 1168 (Use "other" category for HVAC duct sealant) (for firestop adhesive, UFC 3-600-01 overrides conflicting requirements)
			Aerosol adhesives	Section 3 of Green Seal Standard GS-36 (except: cleaners, solvent cements, and primers used with plastic piping and conduit in plumbing, fire suppression, and electrical systems; HVAC air duct sealants when the application space air temp is less than 40 F (4.5 C)).
Paints and Coatings	CDPH/EHLB/Standard method V1.1 (California Section 01350) (Use "office" or "classroom" space limits for all applications)	or	Flat and nonflat topcoats, primers, undercoaters, and anti-corrosive coatings	Green Seal Standard GS-11

TABLE 3-1 Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC) (Low Emitting Materials) Requirements				
Source: ASHRAE 189.1 section 8.4.2 (Materials) (Interior Applications Only)				
MATERIAL CATEGORY	EMISSIONS REQUIREMENT		MATERIALS WITH ADDED VOC REQUIREMENT	MATERIAL CATEGORY
Paints and Coatings	CDPH/EHLB/Standard method V1.1 (California Section 01350) (Use "office" or "classroom" space limits for all applications)	or	Concrete/masonry sealers (waterproofing concrete/masonry sealers), concrete curing compounds, dry fog coatings, faux finishing coatings, fire resistive coatings, floor coatings, graphic arts (sign) coatings, industrial maintenance coatings, mastic texture coatings, metallic pigmented coatings, multicolor coatings, pretreatment wash primers, reactive penetrating sealers, recycled coatings, shellacs (clear and opaque), specialty primers, stains, wood coatings (clear wood finishes), wood preservatives, and zinc primers	California Air Resources Board (CARB) Suggested Control Measure for Architectural Coatings or SCAQMD Rule 1113

TABLE 3-1 Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC) (Low Emitting Materials) Requirements				
Source: ASHRAE 189.1 section 8.4.2 (Materials) (Interior Applications Only)				
MATERIAL CATEGORY	EMISSIONS REQUIREMENT		MATERIALS WITH ADDED VOC REQUIREMENT	MATERIAL CATEGORY
Paints and Coatings	CDPH/EHLB/Standard method V1.1 (California Section 01350) (Use "office" or "classroom" space limits for all applications)	or	Basement specialty coatings, high-temperature coatings, low solids coatings, stone consolidants, swimming-pool coatings, tub- and tile-refining coatings, and waterproofing membranes	California Air Resources Board (CARB) Suggested Control Measure for Architectural Coatings
Floor Covering Materials	For carpet, all locations: CDPH/EHLB/Standard Method V1.1 (California Section 01350) or label for Section 9 of CDPH/EHLB/Standard Method V1.1 (California Section 01350)		none	none

TABLE 3-1 Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC) (Low Emitting Materials) Requirements				
Source: ASHRAE 189.1 section 8.4.2 (Materials) (Interior Applications Only)				
MATERIAL CATEGORY	EMISSIONS REQUIREMENT		MATERIALS WITH ADDED VOC REQUIREMENT	MATERIAL CATEGORY
Composite Wood, Wood Structural Panel, and Agrifiber Products particleboard medium density fiberboard (MDF) wheatboard strawboard panel substrates door cores no added urea-formaldehyde resins including laminating adhesives for composite wood and agrifiber assemblies	Third-party certification (approved by CARB) of California Air Resource Board's (CARB) regulation Airborne Toxic Control Measure to Reduce Formaldehyde Emissions from Composite Wood Products CDPH/EHLB/Standard method V1.1 (California Section 01350) (Use "office" or "classroom" space limits for all applications) (except: Structural panel components such as plywood, particle board, wafer board, and oriented strand board identified as "EXPOSURE 1," "EXTERIOR," or "HUD-APPROVED" are considered acceptable for interior use.)		none	none

TABLE 3-1 Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC) (Low Emitting Materials) Requirements				
Source: ASHRAE 189.1 section 8.4.2 (Materials) (Interior Applications Only)				
MATERIAL CATEGORY	EMISSIONS REQUIREMENT		MATERIALS WITH ADDED VOC REQUIREMENT	MATERIAL CATEGORY
Office Furniture Systems and Seating installed prior to occupancy	ANSI/BIFMA X7.1 ANSI/BIFMA X7.1: (95 percent of installed office furniture system workstations and seating units) Section 7.6.2 of ANSI/BIFMA e3 (50 percent of office furniture system workstations and seating units)		none	none
Ceiling and Wall Systems ceiling and wall insulation acoustical ceiling panels tackable wall panels gypsum wall board and panels wall coverings	CDPH/EHLB/Standard method V1.1 (California Section 01350) (Use "office" or "classroom" space limits for all applications)		none	none

-- End of Section --



Guiding Principles Assessment Project Information Form

New Construction and Renovation Projects Supporting the UFC 1-200-02 published December 2016

GBCI Project ID:	1000116625
Project Name:	NAVFAC, MILCON P-1395, SOF Marine Radier HQ
Application Phase:	Design - Preliminary Submission
Directions: Select the documentation path for each requirement. See the Technical Guide section for more information on documentation paths. Provide this form with the initial design and construction submissions to GBCI and if updates are necessary between review phases. The 'Team Management' tab will update accordingly.	

2-2 Employ Integrated Design Principles

2-2.1 Integrated Design - Design Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One
2-2.1.1 Integrated Planning - Design Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One
2-2.1.2 Evaluation for Design Strategies - Design Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One
2-2.1.3 Evaluation of the Site - Design Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path Two
2-2.1.4 Site Integration and Design of the Building - Design Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One
2-2.2 Commissioning - Construction Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One

2-3 Optimize Energy Performance

2-3.1.1 Commercial and Multi-Family High-Rise Residential Building - Design Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One
2-3.1.2 Low-Rise Residential Buildings - Design Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path Two
2-3.1.3 Renovations - Design Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path Two
2-3.1.4 Energy Efficient Products - Construction Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One
2-3.1.5 Standby Powered Device - Construction Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One
2-3.2 On-Site Renewable Energy - Design Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path Three
2-3.2.1 Solar Domestic Hot Water (SDHW) - Design Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path Two
2-3.4 Metering - Design Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One



Guiding Principles Assessment Project Information Form

New Construction and Renovation Projects Supporting the UFC 1-200-02 published December 2016

GBCI Project ID:	1000116625
Project Name:	NAVFAC, MILCON P-1395, SOF Marine Radier HQ
2-4 Protect and Conserve Water	
2-4.1 Indoor Water - Design Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One
2-4.1.1 Indoor Water Metering - Design Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One
2-4.2.1 Outdoor Water Landscaping - Design Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path Three
2-4.2 Outdoor Water Metering - Design Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path Three
2-4.3 Alternative Water- Design Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path Two
2-4.3.1 Stormwater Management - Design Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One
2-5 Enhance Indoor Environmental Quality	
2-5.1 Part 1 - Ventilation - Design Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One
2-5.1 Part 2 - Thermal Comfort - Design Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One
2-5.2 Daylighting & Lighting Controls - Design Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One
2-5.3.1 IAQ Moisture Control - Construction Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One
2-5.3.2 Reduce VOC Low-Emitting Materials - Construction Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One
2-5.3.3 Protect Indoor Air Quality During Construction - Construction Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One
2-5.4 Occupant Health and Wellness - Design Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One



Guiding Principles Assessment Project Information Form

New Construction and Renovation Projects Supporting the UFC 1-200-02 published December 2016

GBCI Project ID:	1000116625
Project Name:	NAVFAC, MILCON P-1395, SOF Marine Radier HQ
2-6 Reduce Environmental Impact of Materials	
2-6.1.1 Recycled Content - Construction Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One
2-6.1.2 Biologically-Based Products - Construction Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One
2-6.1.3 Ozone Depleting Substances - Construction Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One
2-6.2.1 Storage and Collection of Recyclables - Design Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One
2-6.2.2 Waste Diversion- Construction Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One
2-7 Address Climate Change Risk	
2-7 Address Climate Change Risk - Design Submittal	
Documentation Path:	Path One

v1.1

This page intentionally left blank.

Project Team Management		SUBMITTAL PHASE D: Design C: Construction	RESPONSIBLE PARTY P: Primary S: Secondary						DOCUMENTATION PATH: <i>fields will auto populate from the GP Info Form tab</i>	NOTES
Guiding Principles Assessment			A: Architect	ME: Mechanical Engineer	C: Civil	GC: General Contractor	CxA	Owner		
GBCI Project ID	1000116625									
Project Name	NAVFAC, MILCON P-1395, SOF Marine Radier HQ									
2-2 Employ Integrated Design Principles										
2-2.1 Integrated Design		D	P	S	S	S		S	Path One	The project team incorporated integrated design practices into the design process in alignment with ASHRAE 189.1 Section F1.1.1.
2-2.1.1 Integrated Planning		D	P	S	S	S		S	Path One	The project has used an integrative design approach and the team worked together during each design phase of the project to develop a high performance, sustainable building envelope and MEP systems to the greatest extent possible within the context of the project scope.
2-2.1.2 Evaluation for Design Strategies		D	P	S	S	S		S	Path One	Possible passive and natural strategies have been considered in each design phase, and incorporated where applicable.
2-2.1.3 Evaluation of the Site		D	P	S	S	S		S	Path Two	The project site has been determined by the client.
2-2.1.4 Site Integration and Design of the Building		D	P	S	S	S		S	Path One	The project team has considered site integration strategies, high performance and sustainable systems, applicable UFCs, and occupant wellness. The design reflects these considerations where possible per scope of work (SOW) and life-cycle cost analysis (LCCA).
2-2.2 Commissioning		C				S	P	S	Path One	The client is responsible for retaining a Commissioning Agent (CxA). The project commissioning will need to comply with the requirements of ASHRAE 189.1, Section 10.3.1.2 (Building Project Commissioning) in accordance with UFC 1-200-02 requirements.
2-3 Optimize Energy Performance										
2-3.1.1 Commercial and Multi-Family High-Rise Residential Building		D	S	P					Path One	The project is estimated to reduce modeled energy consumption by more than 30% compared to the ASHRAE 90.1-2013 baseline, and the current proposed HVAC system is lifecycle cost effective.
2-3.1.2 Low-Rise Residential Buildings		D	S	P					Path Two	Not applicable. The project is not a residential building.
2-3.1.3 Renovations		D	S	P					Path Two	Not applicable. The project is not a renovation.
2-3.1.4 Energy Efficient Products		C				P		S	Path One	The specific energy-consuming products and equipment have not been finalized. Given Federal procurement requirements in place, the project is anticipated to meet this requirement.

Project Team Management		SUBMITTAL PHASE D: Design C: Construction	RESPONSIBLE PARTY P: Primary S: Secondary						DOCUMENTATION PATH: <i>fields will auto populate from the GP Info Form tab</i>	NOTES
Guiding Principles Assessment			A: Architect	ME: Mechanical Engineer	C: Civil	GC: General Contractor	CxA	Owner		
GBCI Project ID	1000116625									
Project Name	NAVFAC, MILCON P-1395, SOF Marine Radier HQ									
2-3.1.5 Standby Powered Device		C				P		S	Path One	The specific energy-consuming products and equipment have not been finalized. Given Federal procurement requirements, the project is anticipated to meet this requirement.
2-3.2 On-Site Renewable Energy		D	S	P					Path Three	Not applicable. Renewable energy systems are not included in the project scope per the client's instructions.
2-3.2.1 Solar Domestic Hot Water (SDHW)		D	S	P					Path Two	Solar hot water heating systems have been evaluated in a lifecycle cost analysis. Since the resulting SIR is less than 1 year, the requirement is rated not applicable based on LCCE.
2-3.4 Metering		D		P					Path One	The project design includes connecting existing gas and electric meters to the base-wide monitoring and control system.
2-4 Protect and Conserve Water										
2-4.1 Indoor Water		D	S	P					Path One	The project includes low-flow fixtures and WaterSense-labeled products to meet the relevant water use reduction requirements of ASHRAE 189.1 for plumbing fixtures.
2-4.1.1 Indoor Water Metering		D		P					Path One	Indoor water meters are included, and meet the requirements of UFC 4-010-06.
2-4.2.1 Outdoor Water Landscaping		D		S	P				Path Three	Not applicable. Outdoor water use is not included in the project scope.
2-4.2 Outdoor Water Metering		D		S	P				Path Three	Not applicable. Outdoor water use is not included in the project scope.
2-4.3 Alternative Water		D		S	P				Path Two	Outdoor water use is not a part of the project scope. Systems to support other end uses for non-potable water like toilet flushing proved not to be LCCE.
2-4.3.1 Stormwater Management		D			P				Path One	The requirements of UFC 3-210-10 have been met to the extent feasible within the scope of this project. An LID Record Card has been completed for this project.
2-5 Enhance Indoor Environmental Quality										
2-5.1 Part 1 - Ventilation		D	S	P					Path One	The project complies with the ventilation requirements of ASHRAE Standard 62.1.
2-5.1 Part 2 - Thermal Comfort		D	S	P					Path One	The project complies with the thermal comfort requirements of ASHRAE Standard 55.

Project Team Management		SUBMITTAL PHASE D: Design C: Construction	RESPONSIBLE PARTY P: Primary S: Secondary						DOCUMENTATION PATH: <i>fields will auto populate from the GP Info Form tab</i>	NOTES
Guiding Principles Assessment			A: Architect	ME: Mechanical Engineer	C: Civil	GC: General Contractor	CxA	Owner		
GBCI Project ID	1000116625									
Project Name	NAVFAC, MILCON P-1395, SOF Marine Radier HQ									
2-5.2 Daylighting & Lighting Controls		D	P						Path One	Where feasible, regularly occupied spaces are located at exterior walls with daylight access. Illuminance levels comply with ASHRAE 189.1 Sections 8.5.1.2 for the majority of spaces. Automated lighting controls are incorporated in the design and meet the requirements of UFC 3-530-01.
2-5.3.1 IAQ Moisture Control		C	S	S		P			Path One	Compliance as required by the relevant sections of UFC 3-101-01, UFC 3-410-01, and ASHRAE 189.1 will be achieved to the greatest extent possible. Contractor must comply with ASHRAE 189.1 Section 10.3.1.5 (Moisture Control) to protect materials during construction.
2-5.3.2 Reduce VOC Low-Emitting Materials		C	S			P			Path One	The project will meet all low-emitting materials requirements. This requirement is outlined in Division 1 of the Project Specifications and the contractor will be responsible for ensuring its implementation.
2-5.3.3 Protect Indoor Air Quality During Construction		C				P			Path One	The project will meet the Construction IAQ Management standards of ASHRAE 189.1. This requirement is outlined in Division 1 of the Project Specifications and the contractor will be responsible for ensuring its implementation.
2-5.4 Occupant Health and Wellness		D	P						Path One	Occupant health and wellness has been considered and incorporated to the extent possible within the scope of the project. The program of the building, in conjunction with its location on an active military base, offers opportunities for physical activity.
2-6 Reduce Environmental Impact of Materials										
2-6.1.1 Recycled Content		C	S			P			Path One	The project specifies that products in relevant categories must be in compliance with the EPA's recycled content recommendations. This requirement will be outlined in Division 1 of the Project Specifications and the contractor will be responsible for ensuring its implementation.
2-6.1.2 Biologically-Based Products		C	S			P			Path One	The project specifies that products with a high percentage of bio-based content are used, where feasible and available. This requirement is outlined in Division 1 of the Project Specifications and the contractor will be responsible for ensuring its implementation.

Project Team Management		SUBMITTAL PHASE D: Design C: Construction	RESPONSIBLE PARTY P: Primary S: Secondary						DOCUMENTATION PATH: <i>fields will auto populate from the GP Info Form tab</i>	NOTES
Guiding Principles Assessment			A: Architect	ME: Mechanical Engineer	C: Civil	GC: General Contractor	CxA	Owner		
GBCI Project ID	1000116625									
Project Name	NAVFAC, MILCON P-1395, SOF Marine Radier HQ									
2-6.1.3 Ozone Depleting Substances		C		S		P			Path One	The project design incorporates environmentally preferable refrigerants, based on the EPA's Significant New Alternative Policy (SNAP), in any new equipment specified. Anticipated equipment will use R410A.
2-6.2.1 Storage and Collection of Recyclables		D	P						Path One	Space necessary to support the storage and collection of recyclables have been considered in the building interior layout during design and planning. To the extent that base-wide operations include recycling activities, the project will meet the requirements of AHSRAE 189.1 Section 9.3.4.1.
2-6.2.2 Waste Diversion		C				P			Path One	Construction and demolition recycling will be provided on-site and the project will target a diversion rate that meets or exceeds ASHRAE 189.1 standards. This requirement is outlined in Division 1 of the Project Specifications and the contractor will be responsible for ensuring its implementation.
2-7 Address Climate Change Risk										
2-7 Address Climate Change Risk		D	S		P				Path One	Projected sea level rise at Camp Lejeune is between 3.7 and 6.1 feet by 2100, although the building is not technically in a flood plain. The project team has incorporated mitigation efforts and exceeded minimum code requirements for runoff detention and infiltration.

NAVFAC HIGH PERFORMANCE AND SUSTAINABLE BUILDING CHECKLIST -- GOALS

PROJECT INFORMATION

Work Order No.: 1603164 FY 2020 MILCON P No. / Customer Reference No.: 1395
Project Title: SOF Marine Raider Regiment Headquarters
Location UIC/Name: Camp LeJune, NC
NAVFAC Project Manager: Rosie Shanks Project Design Level: 100%
Facility Area: _____ U/M: _____ Category Code: CC610-71 Facility #: _____
AE Contract # & T.O.: N4008518D0601 AE Firm Sustainability Coordinator: Eileen Gohr
AE Firm Name: HDR, Inc.
Project Phase: ☒ Design Start / PDA ☐ Solicitation Documents Complete
Construction Contract Award Date (P): _____ BOD (P): _____

SUSTAINABILITY DATA - GUIDING PRINCIPLES for SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT

Use this form to collect Design Goals information to be recorded on the Sustainable and Energy Tab in eProjects

NOTE: 1. Mark "N/A" only when at least one of the listed justifications is applicable, and mark those justifications. Otherwise, mark "Yes."
2. If project is for more than one building for which tracking is required, complete a separate form for each building.

PRELIMINARY PROJECT INFORMATION

- 1 How many buildings are included in this project? 1
- 2 Does at least one building meet one of the following: 1) new construction (new building or addition to existing);
- OR - 2) Renovation in an existing building, with construction cost greater than \$3M? ☒ Yes ☐ No
- 3 Identify the building to be tracked in this tab: P-1395

DESIGN DEVELOPMENT - DOCUMENTATION OF COMPLIANCE WITH GUIDING PRINCIPLES

I. Employ Integrated Design Principles

1 Integrated Design

Goals In Compliance ☒ Yes ☐ N/A
N/A due to
☐ Mission preclusion ☐ Building/site issue
☐ Not LCCE ☐ Renovation only: not part of scope
☐ Installation/region issue

2 Commissioning

Goals In Compliance ☒ Yes ☐ N/A
N/A due to
☐ Mission preclusion ☐ Building/site issue
☐ Not LCCE ☐ Renovation only: not part of scope
☐ Installation/region issue

(i) Systems commissioned HVAC, lighting, envelope, plumbing, water pumping/heating, meters

II. Optimize Energy Performance

3. Energy Efficiency

Goals In Compliance ☒ Yes ☐ N/A
N/A due to
☐ Mission preclusion ☐ Building/site issue
☐ Not LCCE ☐ Renovation only: not part of scope
☐ Installation/region issue

(i) Energy Savings Below Baseline % 41.80

(ii) Energy Standard

☐ ASHRAE 90.1-2004 (03JAN07-09AUG12)
☐ ASHRAE 90.1-2007 (10AUG12-08JUL14)
☐ ASHRAE 90.1-2010 (09JUL14-05NOV16)
☒ ASHRAE 90.1-2013 (06NOV16+)

☐ IECC
☐ OTHER:

C. Energy Efficient Products

Goals

In Compliance

☒ Yes ☐ N/A

N/A due to

☐ Mission preclusion

☐ Building/site issue

☐ Not LCCE

☐ Renovation only: not part of scope

☐ Installation/region issue

4. Renewable Energy

Goals

In Compliance

☐ Yes ☒ N/A

N/A due to

☐ Mission preclusion

☒ Building/site issue

☐ Not LCCE

☐ Renovation only: not part of scope

☐ Installation/region issue

A. Renewable energy technology types

☐ Geothermal

☐ Ground Source Heat Pumps

☐ Solar Photovoltaic

☐ Solar Thermal - domestic hot water

☐ Solar Thermal - space conditioning

☐ Daylighting (quantified passive)

☐ Mechanical (i.e., direct water pumping)

☐ Micro-hydro

☐ Concentrating (sterling)

☐ Wind

(i) Annual % of total load

(ii) System size (kwatts)

B. Solar Hot Water Percentage - 30% target

Goals

In Compliance

☐ Yes ☒ N/A

N/A due to

☐ Mission preclusion

☐ Building/site issue

☒ Not LCCE

☐ Renovation only: not part of scope

☐ Installation/region issue

(i) Annual % of total load

(ii) System size (kBtu/Year)

5. Metering (Measurement)

Goals

In Compliance

☒ Yes ☐ N/A

N/A due to

☐ Mission preclusion

☐ Building/site issue

☐ Not LCCE

☐ Renovation only: not part of scope

☐ Installation/region issue

6. Energy Use Intensity kBtu/Sq Ft/Year

(i) Total Design Energy Use Intensity (EUI): kBtu/Sq Ft/Year 18.1

III. Protect and Conserve Water

7. Indoor Water Use

A. Water-Efficient Products

<u>Goals</u>	In Compliance	☒ Yes	☐ N/A
		N/A due to	
		☐ Mission preclusion	☐ Building/site issue
		☐ Not LCCE	☐ Renovation only: not part of scope
		☐ Installation/region issue	

(i) Total Design Indoor Water Use Intensity (WUI): Gallons/Sq Ft/Year _____

B. Indoor Water Meter

<u>Goals</u>	In Compliance	☒ Yes	☐ N/A
		N/A due to	
		☐ Mission preclusion	☐ Building/site issue
		☐ Not LCCE	☐ Renovation only: not part of scope
		☐ Installation/region issue	

8. Outdoor Water Use

A. Outdoor Water Meter

(i) Is there a permanent irrigation system serving more than 25,000 SF of landscaping?

☐ Yes ☒ No

(ii) Water Meter

<u>Goals</u>	In Compliance	☒ Yes	☐ N/A
		N/A due to	
		☐ Mission preclusion	☐ Building/site issue
		☐ Not LCCE	☐ Renovation only: not part of scope
		☐ Installation/region issue	

B. Water-efficient landscape

<u>Goals</u>	In Compliance	☒ Yes	☐ N/A
		N/A due to	
		☐ Mission preclusion	☐ Building/site issue
		☐ Not LCCE	☐ Renovation only: not part of scope
		☐ Installation/region issue	

C. Reduce landscape potable water use

<u>Goals</u>	In Compliance	☒ Yes	☐ N/A
		N/A due to	
		☐ Mission preclusion	☐ Building/site issue
		☐ Not LCCE	☐ Renovation only: not part of scope
		☐ Installation/region issue	

(i) Percent potable water use is reduced _____

9. Alternative Water Use

<u>Goals</u>	In Compliance	☐ Yes	☒ N/A
		N/A due to	
		☐ Mission preclusion	☐ Building/site issue
		☒ Not LCCE	☐ Renovation only: not part of scope
		☐ Installation/region issue	

Methods Proposed:

☐ Air Handler Condensate Capture	☐ Reclaimed Water
☐ Grey Water	☐ Treated Wastewater
☐ Harvested Rainwater	☐ OTHER:

10. Stormwater Management - update the LID Data tab

IV. Enhance Indoor Environmental Quality

11. Ventilation and Thermal Comfort

A. Ventilation

Goals In Compliance ☒ Yes ☐ N/A
N/A due to
☐ Mission preclusion ☐ Building/site issue
☐ Not LCCE ☐ Renovation only: not part of scope
☐ Installation/region issue

B. Thermal Comfort

Goals In Compliance ☒ Yes ☐ N/A
N/A due to
☐ Mission preclusion ☐ Building/site issue
☐ Not LCCE ☐ Renovation only: not part of scope
☐ Installation/region issue

12. Daylighting and Lighting Controls

A. Daylight

Goals In Compliance ☒ Yes ☐ N/A
N/A due to
☐ Mission preclusion ☐ Building/site issue
☐ Not LCCE ☐ Renovation only: not part of scope
☐ Installation/region issue

B. Automatic dimming controls

Goals In Compliance ☒ Yes ☐ N/A
N/A due to
☐ Mission preclusion ☐ Building/site issue
☐ Not LCCE ☐ Renovation only: not part of scope
☐ Installation/region issue

13. Indoor Air Quality

A. Moisture Control

Goals In Compliance ☒ Yes ☐ N/A
N/A due to
☐ Mission preclusion ☐ Building/site issue
☐ Not LCCE ☐ Renovation only: not part of scope
☐ Installation/region issue

B. Low-Emitting Materials

Goals In Compliance ☒ Yes ☐ N/A
N/A due to
☐ Mission preclusion ☐ Building/site issue
☐ Not LCCE ☐ Renovation only: not part of scope
☐ Installation/region issue

C. Indoor Air Quality during Construction

Goals In Compliance ☒ Yes ☐ N/A
N/A due to
☐ Mission preclusion ☐ Building/site issue
☐ Not LCCE ☐ Renovation only: not part of scope
☐ Installation/region issue

14. Occupant Health and Wellness

<u>Goals</u>	In Compliance	☒ Yes	☐ N/A
		N/A due to	
		☐ Mission preclusion	☐ Building/site issue
		☐ Not LCCE	☐ Renovation only: not part of scope
		☐ Installation/region issue	

V. Reduce the Environmental Impact of Materials

15. Material Content and Performance

A. Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) Section 6002 (recycled content)

<u>Goals</u>	In Compliance	☒ Yes	☐ N/A
		N/A due to	
		☐ Mission preclusion	☐ Building/site issue
		☐ Not LCCE	☐ Renovation only: not part of scope
		☐ Installation/region issue	

B. Farm Security and Rural Investment Act (FSRIA) section 9002 (Biobased content)

<u>Goals</u>	In Compliance	☒ Yes	☐ N/A
		N/A due to	
		☐ Mission preclusion	☐ Building/site issue
		☐ Not LCCE	☐ Renovation only: not part of scope
		☐ Installation/region issue	

C. Ozone depleting Compounds

<u>Goals</u>	In Compliance	☒ Yes	☐ N/A
		N/A due to	
		☐ Mission preclusion	☐ Building/site issue
		☐ Not LCCE	☐ Renovation only: not part of scope
		☐ Installation/region issue	

16. Waste Management

<u>Goals</u>	In Compliance	☒ Yes	☐ N/A
		N/A due to	
		☐ Mission preclusion	☐ Building/site issue
		☐ Not LCCE	☐ Renovation only: not part of scope
		☐ Installation/region issue	

17. Waste Diversion - 60% target

<u>Goals</u>	In Compliance	☒ Yes	☐ N/A
		N/A due to	
		☐ Mission preclusion	☐ Building/site issue
		☐ Not LCCE	☐ Renovation only: not part of scope
		☐ Installation/region issue	

(i) Percent diverted _____

VI. Assess and Consider Climate Change Risks

18. Address Climate Change Risk

<u>Goals</u>	In Compliance	☒ Yes	☐ N/A
		N/A due to	
		☐ Mission preclusion	☐ Building/site issue
		☐ Not LCCE	☐ Renovation only: not part of scope
		☐ Installation/region issue	

THIRD PARTY CERTIFICATION INFORMATION

Does at least one building meet one of the following:

☒ Yes ☐ No

1) New construction with construction cost greater than \$3M? - **OR** -

2) In an existing building larger than 5,000 SF, renovation with construction cost greater than \$3M and 50% estimated replacement cost (ERC)?

Sustainability Third Party Certification Rating

Third Party Certification Rating System and Level

- ☐ USGBC LEED Certified
- ☐ USGBC LEED Silver
- ☐ USGBC LEED Gold
- ☐ USGBC LEED Platinum
- ☒ USGBC "Guiding Principles Assessment"
- ☐ OTHER

- ☐ GBI Green Globes 1 Globe
- ☐ GBI Green Globes 2 Globe
- ☐ GBI Green Globes 3 Globe
- ☐ GBI Green Globes 4 Globe
- ☐ GBI "Guiding Principles Compliance"

i. Third Party Certification Rating system - Other

SECTION 01 35 26

GOVERNMENTAL SAFETY REQUIREMENTS

11/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF SAFETY PROFESSIONALS (ASSP)

ASSP A10.22	(2007; R 2017) Safety Requirements for Rope-Guided and Non-Guided Workers' Hoists
ASSP A10.34	(2001; R 2012) Protection of the Public on or Adjacent to Construction Sites
ASSP A10.44	(2014) Control of Energy Sources (Lockout/Tagout) for Construction and Demolition Operations
ASSP Z359.0	(2012) Definitions and Nomenclature Used for Fall Protection and Fall Arrest
ASSP Z359.1	(2016) The Fall Protection Code
ASSP Z359.11	(2014) Safety Requirements for Full Body Harnesses
ASSP Z359.12	(2009) Connecting Components for Personal Fall Arrest Systems
ASSP Z359.13	(2013) Personal Energy Absorbers and Energy Absorbing Lanyards
ASSP Z359.14	(2014) Safety Requirements for Self-Retracting Devices for Personal Fall Arrest and Rescue Systems
ASSP Z359.15	(2014) Safety Requirements for Single Anchor Lifelines and Fall Arresters for Personal Fall Arrest Systems
ASSP Z359.2	(2017) Minimum Requirements for a Comprehensive Managed Fall Protection Program
ASSP Z359.3	(2017) Safety Requirements for Lanyards and Positioning Lanyards
ASSP Z359.4	(2013) Safety Requirements for Assisted-Rescue and Self-Rescue Systems, Subsystems and Components

ASSP Z359.6	(2016) Specifications and Design Requirements for Active Fall Protection Systems
ASSP Z359.7	(2011) Qualification and Verification Testing of Fall Protection Products
ASSP Z490.1	(2016) Criteria for Accepted Practices in Safety, Health, and Environmental Training

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME B30.20	(2013; INT Oct 2010 - May 2012) Below-the-Hook Lifting Devices
ASME B30.22	(2016) Articulating Boom Cranes
ASME B30.23	(2011) Personnel Lifting Systems Safety Standard for Cableways, Cranes, Derricks, Hoists, Hooks, Jacks, and Slings
ASME B30.26	(2015; INT Jun 2010 - Jun 2014) Rigging Hardware
ASME B30.3	(2016) Tower Cranes
ASME B30.5	(2014) Mobile and Locomotive Cranes
ASME B30.7	(2011) Winches
ASME B30.8	(2015) Floating Cranes and Floating Derricks
ASME B30.9	(2014; INT Feb 2011 - Nov 2013) Slings

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM F855	(2015) Standard Specifications for Temporary Protective Grounds to Be Used on De-energized Electric Power Lines and Equipment

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 1048	(2003) Guide for Protective Grounding of Power Lines
IEEE C2	(2017; Errata 1-2 2017; INT 1 2017) National Electrical Safety Code

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA Z535.2	(2011) Environmental and Facility Safety Signs

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 10	(2018; TIA 18-1) Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers

- NFPA 241 (2013; Errata 2015) Standard for Safeguarding Construction, Alteration, and Demolition Operations
- NFPA 51B (2014) Standard for Fire Prevention During Welding, Cutting, and Other Hot Work
- NFPA 70 (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2; TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6; TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10; TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA 17-14; TIA 17-15; TIA 17-16; TIA 17-17) National Electrical Code
- NFPA 70E (2018; TIA 18-1; TIA 81-2) Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace

TELECOMMUNICATIONS INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION (TIA)

- TIA-1019 (2012; R 2016) Standard for Installation, Alteration and Maintenance of Antenna Supporting Structures and Antennas
- TIA-222 (2005G; Add 1 2007; Add 2 2009; Add 3 2014; Add 4 2014; R 2014; R 2016) Structural Standards for Steel Antenna Towers and Antenna Supporting Structures

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

- EM 385-1-1 (2014) Safety and Health Requirements Manual

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

- 29 CFR 1910 Occupational Safety and Health Standards
- 29 CFR 1910.146 Permit-required Confined Spaces
- 29 CFR 1910.147 The Control of Hazardous Energy (Lock Out/Tag Out)
- 29 CFR 1910.333 Selection and Use of Work Practices
- 29 CFR 1915 Confined and Enclosed Spaces and Other Dangerous Atmospheres in Shipyard Employment
- 29 CFR 1915.89 Control of Hazardous Energy (Lockout/Tags-Plus)
- 29 CFR 1926 Safety and Health Regulations for Construction
- 29 CFR 1926.1400 Cranes and Derricks in Construction
- 29 CFR 1926.16 Rules of Construction

29 CFR 1926.450	Scaffolds
29 CFR 1926.500	Fall Protection
29 CFR 1926.552	Material Hoists, Personal Hoists, and Elevators
29 CFR 1926.553	Base-Mounted Drum Hoists
CPL 02-01-056	(2014) Inspection Procedures for Accessing Communication Towers by Hoist
CPL 2.100	(1995) Application of the Permit-Required Confined Spaces (PRCS) Standards, 29 CFR 1910.146

1.2 DEFINITIONS

1.2.1 Competent Person (CP)

The CP is a person designated in writing, who, through training, knowledge and experience, is capable of identifying, evaluating, and addressing existing and predictable hazards in the working environment or working conditions that are dangerous to personnel, and who has authorization to take prompt corrective measures with regards to such hazards.

1.2.2 Competent Person, Confined Space

The CP, Confined Space, is a person meeting the competent person requirements as defined in EM 385-1-1 Appendix Q, with thorough knowledge of OSHA's Confined Space Standard, 29 CFR 1910.146, and designated in writing to be responsible for the immediate supervision, implementation and monitoring of the confined space program, who through training, knowledge and experience in confined space entry is capable of identifying, evaluating and addressing existing and potential confined space hazards and, who has the authority to take prompt corrective measures with regard to such hazards.

1.2.3 Competent Person, Cranes and Rigging

The CP, Cranes and Rigging, as defined in EM 385-1-1 Appendix Q, is a person meeting the competent person, who has been designated in writing to be responsible for the immediate supervision, implementation and monitoring of the Crane and Rigging Program, who through training, knowledge and experience in crane and rigging is capable of identifying, evaluating and addressing existing and potential hazards and, who has the authority to take prompt corrective measures with regard to such hazards.

1.2.4 Competent Person, Excavation/Trenching

A CP, Excavation/Trenching, is a person meeting the competent person requirements as defined in EM 385-1-1 Appendix Q and 29 CFR 1926, who has been designated in writing to be responsible for the immediate supervision, implementation and monitoring of the excavation/trenching program, who through training, knowledge and experience in excavation/trenching is capable of identifying, evaluating and addressing existing and potential hazards and, who has the authority to take prompt corrective measures with regard to such hazards.

1.2.5 Competent Person, Fall Protection

The CP, Fall Protection, is a person meeting the competent person requirements as defined in EM 385-1-1 Appendix Q and in accordance with ASSP Z359.0, who has been designated in writing by the employer to be responsible for immediate supervising, implementing and monitoring of the fall protection program, who through training, knowledge and experience in fall protection and rescue systems and equipment, is capable of identifying, evaluating and addressing existing and potential fall hazards and, who has the authority to take prompt corrective measures with regard to such hazards.

1.2.6 Competent Person, Scaffolding

The CP, Scaffolding is a person meeting the competent person requirements in EM 385-1-1 Appendix Q, and designated in writing by the employer to be responsible for immediate supervising, implementing and monitoring of the scaffolding program. The CP for Scaffolding has enough training, knowledge and experience in scaffolding to correctly identify, evaluate and address existing and potential hazards and also has the authority to take prompt corrective measures with regard to these hazards. CP qualifications must be documented and include experience on the specific scaffolding systems/types being used, assessment of the base material that the scaffold will be erected upon, load calculations for materials and personnel, and erection and dismantling. The CP for scaffolding must have a documented, minimum of 8-hours of scaffold training to include training on the specific type of scaffold being used (e.g. mast-climbing, adjustable, tubular frame), in accordance with EM 385-1-1 Section 22.B.02.

1.2.7 Competent Person (CP) Trainer

A competent person trainer as defined in EM 385-1-1 Appendix Q, who is qualified in the material presented, and who possesses a working knowledge of applicable technical regulations, standards, equipment and systems related to the subject matter on which they are training Competent Persons. A competent person trainer must be familiar with the typical hazards and the equipment used in the industry they are instructing. The training provided by the competent person trainer must be appropriate to that specific industry. The competent person trainer must evaluate the knowledge and skills of the competent persons as part of the training process.

1.2.8 High Risk Activities

High Risk Activities are activities that involve work at heights, crane and rigging, excavations and trenching, scaffolding, electrical work, and confined space entry.

1.2.9 High Visibility Accident

A High Visibility Accident is any mishap which may generate publicity or high visibility.

1.2.10 Load Handling Equipment (LHE)

LHE is a term used to describe cranes, hoists and all other hoisting equipment (hoisting equipment means equipment, including crane, derricks, hoists and power operated equipment used with rigging to raise, lower or horizontally move a load).

1.2.11 Medical Treatment

Medical Treatment is treatment administered by a physician or by registered professional personnel under the standing orders of a physician. Medical treatment does not include first aid treatment even though provided by a physician or registered personnel.

1.2.12 Near Miss

A Near Miss is a mishap resulting in no personal injury and zero property damage, but given a shift in time or position, damage or injury may have occurred (e.g., a worker falls off a scaffold and is not injured; a crane swings around to move the load and narrowly misses a parked vehicle).

1.2.13 Operating Envelope

The Operating Envelope is the area surrounding any crane or load handling equipment. Inside this "envelope" is the crane, the operator, riggers and crane walkers, other personnel involved in the operation, rigging gear between the hook, the load, the crane's supporting structure (i.e. ground or rail), the load's rigging path, the lift and rigging procedure.

1.2.14 Qualified Person (QP)

The QP is a person designated in writing, who, by possession of a recognized degree, certificate, or professional standing, or extensive knowledge, training, and experience, has successfully demonstrated their ability to solve or resolve problems related to the subject matter, the work, or the project.

1.2.15 Qualified Person, Fall Protection (QP for FP)

A QP for FP is a person meeting the requirements of [EM 385-1-1](#) Appendix Q, and [ASSP Z359.0](#), with a recognized degree or professional certificate and with extensive knowledge, training and experience in the fall protection and rescue field who is capable of designing, analyzing, and evaluating and specifying fall protection and rescue systems.

1.2.16 Load Handling Equipment (LHE) Accident or Load Handling Equipment Mishap

A LHE accident occurs when any one or more of the eight elements in the operating envelope fails to perform correctly during operation, including operation during maintenance or testing resulting in personnel injury or death; material or equipment damage; dropped load; derailment; two-blocking; overload; or collision, including unplanned contact between the load, crane, or other objects. A dropped load, derailment, two-blocking, overload and collision are considered accidents, even though no material damage or injury occurs. A component failure (e.g., motor burnout, gear tooth failure, bearing failure) is not considered an accident solely due to material or equipment damage unless the component failure results in damage to other components (e.g., dropped boom, dropped load, or roll over). [Document an LHE mishap or accident using the NAVFAC prescribed Navy Crane Center \(NCC\) accident form.](#)

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation;

submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Accident Prevention Plan (APP); G

SD-06 Test Reports

Notifications and Reports

Accident Reports; G

LHE Inspection Reports

Arc Flash Analysis; G

SD-07 Certificates

Contractor Safety Self-Evaluation Checklist

Crane Operators/Riggers

Standard Lift Plan; G

Critical Lift Plan ; G

Activity Hazard Analysis (AHA)

Confined Space Entry Permit

Hot Work Permit

Certificate of Compliance

Arc Flash Analysis Qualifications; G

Contractor Electrical Energized Work Permit; G

1.4 CONTRACTOR SAFETY SELF-EVALUATION CHECKLIST

Contracting Officer will provide a "Contractor Safety Self-Evaluation checklist" to the Contractor at the pre-construction conference. Complete the checklist monthly and submit with each request for payment voucher. An acceptable score of 90 or greater is required. Failure to submit the completed safety self-evaluation checklist or achieve a score of at least 90 may result in retention of up to 10 percent of the voucher.

1.5 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

In addition to the detailed requirements included in the provisions of this contract, comply with the most recent edition of USACE EM 385-1-1, and the most recent federal, state, and local laws, ordinances, criteria, rules and regulations. Submit matters of interpretation of standards to the appropriate administrative agency for resolution before starting work. Where the requirements of this specification, applicable laws, criteria,

ordinances, regulations, and referenced documents vary, the most stringent requirements govern.

1.5.1 Subcontractor Safety Requirements

For this contract, neither Contractor nor any subcontractor may enter into contract with any subcontractor that fails to meet the following requirements. The term subcontractor in this and the following paragraphs means any entity holding a contract with the Contractor or with a subcontractor at any tier.

1.5.1.1 Experience Modification Rate (EMR)

Subcontractors on this contract must have an effective EMR less than or equal to 1.10, as computed by the National Council on Compensation Insurance (NCCI) or if not available, as computed by the state agency's rating bureau in the state where the subcontractor is registered, when entering into a subcontract agreement with the Prime Contractor or a subcontractor at any tier. The Prime Contractor may submit a written request for additional consideration to the Contracting Officer where the specified acceptable EMR range cannot be achieved. Relaxation of the EMR range will only be considered for approval on a case-by-case basis for special conditions and must not be anticipated as tacit approval. Contractor's Site Safety and Health Officer (SSHO) must collect and maintain the certified EMR ratings for all subcontractors on the project and make them available to the Government at the Government's request.

1.5.1.2 OSHA Days Away from Work, Restricted Duty, or Job Transfer (DART) Rate

Subcontractors on this contract must have a DART rate, calculated from the most recent, complete calendar year, less than or equal to 3.4 when entering into a subcontract agreement with the Prime Contractor or a subcontractor at any tier. The OSHA Dart Rate is calculated using the following formula:

$$(N/EH) \times 200,000$$

where:

N = number of injuries and illnesses with days away, restricted work, or job transfer

EH = total hours worked by all employees during most recent, complete calendar year

200,000 = base for 100 full-time equivalent workers (working 40 hours per week, 50 weeks per year)

The Prime Contractor may submit a written request for additional consideration to the Contracting Officer where the specified acceptable OSHA Dart rate range cannot be achieved for a particular subcontractor. Relaxation of the OSHA DART rate range will only be considered for approval on a case-by-case basis for special conditions and must not be anticipated as tacit approval. Contractor's Site Safety and Health Officer (SSHO) must collect and maintain self-certified OSHA DART rates for all subcontractors on the project and make them available to the Government at the Government's request.

1.6 SITE QUALIFICATIONS, DUTIES, AND MEETINGS

1.6.1 Personnel Qualifications

1.6.1.1 Site Safety and Health Officer (SSHO)

Provide an SSHO that meets the requirements of EM 385-1-1 Section 1. The SSHO must ensure that the requirements of 29 CFR 1926.16 are met for the project. Provide a Safety oversight team that includes a minimum of one (1) person at each project site to function as the Site Safety and Health Officer (SSHO). The SSHO or an equally-qualified Alternate SSHO must be at the work site at all times to implement and administer the Contractor's safety program and government-accepted Accident Prevention Plan. The SSHO and Alternate SSHO must have the required training, experience, and qualifications in accordance with EM 385-1-1 Section 01.A.17, and all associated sub-paragraphs.

If the SSHO is off-site for a period longer than 24 hours, an equally-qualified alternate SSHO must be provided and must fulfill the same roles and responsibilities as the primary SSHO. When the SSHO is temporarily (up to 24 hours) off-site, a Designated Representative (DR), as identified in the AHA may be used in lieu of an Alternate SSHO, and must be on the project site at all times when work is being performed. Note that the DR is a collateral duty safety position, with safety duties in addition to their full time occupation.

1.6.1.1.1 Additional Site Safety and Health Officer (SSHO) Requirements and Duties

The SSHO may also serve as the Quality Control Manager. The SSHO may not serve as the Superintendent.

The SSHO must have completed a 40 hour contract safety awareness course based on the content and principles of EM 385-1-1, and instructed in accordance with the guidelines of ASSP Z490.1, by a trainer meeting the qualifications of paragraph QUALIFIED TRAINER REQUIREMENTS. If the SSHO does not have a current certification, certification must be obtained within 60 days, maximum, of contract award.

1.6.1.2 Competent Person Qualifications

Provide Competent Persons in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Appendix Q and herein. Competent Persons for high risk activities include confined space, cranes and rigging, excavation/trenching, fall protection, and electrical work. The CP for these activities must be designated in writing, and meet the requirements for the specific activity (i.e. competent person, fall protection).

The Competent Person identified in the Contractor's Safety and Health Program and accepted Accident Prevention Plan, must be on-site at all times when the work that presents the hazards associated with their professional expertise is being performed. Provide the credentials of the Competent Persons(s) to the the Contracting Officer for information in consultation with the Safety Office.

1.6.1.2.1 Competent Person for Confined Space Entry

Provide a Confined Space (CP) Competent Person who meets the requirements of EM 385-1-1, Appendix Q, and herein. The CP for Confined Space Entry

must supervise the entry into each confined space in accordance with
EM 385-1-1, Section 34.

1.6.1.2.2 Competent Person for Scaffolding

Provide a Competent Person for Scaffolding who meets the requirements of
EM 385-1-1, Section 22.B.02 and herein.

1.6.1.2.3 Competent Person for Fall Protection

Provide a Competent Person for Fall Protection who meets the requirements
of EM 385-1-1, Section 21.C.04, 21.B.03, and herein.

1.6.1.3 Qualified Trainer Requirements

Individuals qualified to instruct the 40 hour contract safety awareness course, or portions thereof, must meet the definition of a Competent Person Trainer, and, at a minimum, possess a working knowledge of the following subject areas: EM 385-1-1, Electrical Standards, Lockout/Tagout, Fall Protection, Confined Space Entry for Construction; Excavation, Trenching and Soil Mechanics, and Scaffolds in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.450, Subpart L.

Instructors are required to:

- a. Prepare class presentations that cover construction-related safety requirements.
- b. Ensure that all attendees attend all sessions by using a class roster signed daily by each attendee. Maintain copies of the roster for at least five (5) years. This is a certification class and must be attended 100 percent. In cases of emergency where an attendee cannot make it to a session, the attendee can make it up in another class session for the same subject.
- c. Update training course materials whenever an update of the EM 385-1-1 becomes available.
- d. Provide a written exam of at least 50 questions. Students are required to answer 80 percent correctly to pass.
- e. Request, review and incorporate student feedback into a continuous course improvement program.

1.6.1.4 Crane Operators/Riggers

Provide Operators, Signal Persons, and Riggers meeting the requirements in EM 385-1-1, Section 15.B for Riggers and Section 16.B for Crane Operators and Signal Persons. Provide proof of current qualification.

1.6.2 Personnel Duties

1.6.2.1 Duties of the Site Safety and Health Officer (SSHO)

The SSHO must:

- a. Conduct daily safety and health inspections and maintain a written log which includes area/operation inspected, date of inspection, identified hazards, recommended corrective actions, estimated and actual dates of

corrections. Attach safety inspection logs to the Contractors' daily production report.

- b. Conduct mishap investigations and complete required accident reports. Report mishaps and near misses.
- c. Use and maintain OSHA's Form 300 to log work-related injuries and illnesses occurring on the project site for Prime Contractors and subcontractors, and make available to the Contracting Officer upon request. Post and maintain the Form 300A on the site Safety Bulletin Board.
- d. Maintain applicable safety reference material on the job site.
- e. Attend the pre-construction conference, pre-work meetings including preparatory meetings, and periodic in-progress meetings.
- f. Review the APP and AHAs for compliance with EM 385-1-1, and approve, sign, implement and enforce them.
- g. Establish a Safety and Occupational Health (SOH) Deficiency Tracking System that lists and monitors outstanding deficiencies until resolution.
- h. Ensure subcontractor compliance with safety and health requirements.
- i. Maintain a list of hazardous chemicals on site and their material Safety Data Sheets (SDS).
- j. Maintain a weekly list of high hazard activities involving energy, equipment, excavation, entry into confined space, and elevation, and be prepared to discuss details during QC Meetings.
- k. Provide and keep a record of site safety orientation and indoctrination for Contractor employees, subcontractor employees, and site visitors.
- l. Ensure an approved Contractor Electrical Energized Work Permit prior to starting any activity in energized electrical systems.

Superintendent, QC Manager, and SSHO are subject to dismissal if the above duties are not being effectively carried out. If Superintendent, QC Manager, or SSHO are dismissed, project work will be stopped and will not be allowed to resume until a suitable replacement is approved and the above duties are again being effectively carried out.

1.6.3 Meetings

1.6.3.1 Preconstruction Conference

- a. Contractor representatives who have a responsibility or significant role in accident prevention on the project must attend the preconstruction conference. This includes the project superintendent, Site Safety and Occupational Health officer, quality control manager, or any other assigned safety and health professionals who participated in the development of the APP (including the Activity Hazard Analyses (AHAs) and special plans, program and procedures associated with it).
- b. Discuss the details of the submitted APP to include incorporated plans, programs, procedures and a listing of anticipated AHAs that will be

developed and implemented during the performance of the contract. This list of proposed AHAs will be reviewed at the conference and an agreement will be reached between the Contractor and the Contracting Officer as to which phases will require an analysis. In addition, establish a schedule for the preparation, submittal, and Government review of AHAs to preclude project delays.

- c. Deficiencies in the submitted APP, identified during the Contracting Officer's review, must be corrected, and the APP re-submitted for review prior to the start of construction. Work is not permitted to begin until an APP is established that is acceptable to the Contracting Officer.

1.6.3.2 Safety Meetings

Conduct safety meetings to review past activities, plan for new or changed operations, review pertinent aspects of appropriate AHA (by trade), establish safe working procedures for anticipated hazards, and provide pertinent Safety and Occupational Health (SOH) training and motivation. Conduct meetings at least once a month for all supervisors on the project location. The SSHO, supervisors, foremen, or CDSOs must conduct meetings at least once a week for the trade workers. Document meeting minutes to include the date, persons in attendance, subjects discussed, and names of individual(s) who conducted the meeting. Maintain documentation on-site and furnish copies to the Contracting Officer on request. Notify the Contracting Officer of all scheduled meetings 7 calendar days in advance.

1.7 ACCIDENT PREVENTION PLAN (APP)

A qualified person must prepare the written site-specific APP. Prepare the APP in accordance with the format and requirements of EM 385-1-1, Appendix A, and as supplemented herein. Cover all paragraph and subparagraph elements in EM 385-1-1, Appendix A. The APP must be job-specific and address any unusual or unique aspects of the project or activity for which it is written. The APP must interface with the Contractor's overall safety and health program referenced in the APP in the applicable APP element, and made site-specific. Describe the methods to evaluate past safety performance of potential subcontractors in the selection process. Also, describe innovative methods used to ensure and monitor safe work practices of subcontractors. The Government considers the Prime Contractor to be the "controlling authority" for all work site safety and health of the subcontractors. Contractors are responsible for informing their subcontractors of the safety provisions under the terms of the contract and the penalties for noncompliance, coordinating the work to prevent one craft from interfering with or creating hazardous working conditions for other crafts, and inspecting subcontractor operations to ensure that accident prevention responsibilities are being carried out. The APP must be signed by an officer of the firm (Prime Contractor senior person), the individual preparing the APP, the on-site superintendent, the designated SSHO, the Contractor Quality Control Manager, and any designated Certified Safety Professional (CSP) or Certified Health Physicist (CIH). The SSHO must provide and maintain the APP and a log of signatures by each subcontractor foreman, attesting that they have read and understand the APP, and make the APP and log available on-site to the Contracting Officer. If English is not the foreman's primary language, the Prime Contractor must provide an interpreter.

Submit the APP to the Contracting Officer 15 calendar days prior to the date of the preconstruction conference for acceptance. Work cannot proceed

without an accepted APP. Once reviewed and accepted by the Contracting Officer, the APP and attachments will be enforced as part of the contract. Disregarding the provisions of this contract or the accepted APP is cause for stopping of work, at the discretion of the Contracting Officer, until the matter has been rectified. Continuously review and amend the APP, as necessary, throughout the life of the contract. Changes to the accepted APP must be made with the knowledge and concurrence of the Contracting Officer, project superintendent, SSHO and Quality Control Manager. Incorporate unusual or high-hazard activities not identified in the original APP as they are discovered. Should any severe hazard exposure (i.e. imminent danger) become evident, stop work in the area, secure the area, and develop a plan to remove the exposure and control the hazard. Notify the Contracting Officer within 24 hours of discovery. Eliminate and remove the hazard. In the interim, take all necessary action to restore and maintain safe working conditions in order to safeguard onsite personnel, visitors, the public (as defined by [ASSP A10.34](#)), and the environment.

1.7.1 Names and Qualifications

Provide plans in accordance with the requirements outlined in Appendix A of [EM 385-1-1](#), including the following:

- a. Names and qualifications (resumes including education, training, experience and certifications) of site safety and health personnel designated to perform work on this project to include the designated Site Safety and Health Officer and other competent and qualified personnel to be used. Specify the duties of each position.
- b. Qualifications of competent and of qualified persons. As a minimum, designate and submit qualifications of competent persons for each of the following major areas: excavation; scaffolding; fall protection; hazardous energy; confined space; health hazard recognition, evaluation and control of chemical, physical and biological agents; and personal protective equipment and clothing to include selection, use and maintenance.

1.7.2 Plans

Provide plans in the APP in accordance with the requirements outlined in Appendix A of [EM 385-1-1](#), including the following:

1.7.2.1 Confined Space Entry Plan

Develop a confined or enclosed space entry plan in accordance with [EM 385-1-1](#), applicable OSHA standards [29 CFR 1910](#), [29 CFR 1915](#), and [29 CFR 1926](#), OSHA Directive [CPL 2.100](#), and any other federal, state and local regulatory requirements identified in this contract. Identify the qualified person's name and qualifications, training, and experience. Delineate the qualified person's authority to direct work stoppage in the event of hazardous conditions. Include procedure for rescue by contractor personnel and the coordination with emergency responders. (If there is no confined space work, include a statement that no confined space work exists and none will be created.)

1.7.2.2 [Standard Lift Plan](#) (SLP)

Plan lifts to avoid situations where the operator cannot maintain safe control of the lift. Prepare a written SLP in accordance with [EM 385-1-1](#),

Section 16.A.03, using Form 16-2 for every lift or series of lifts (if duty cycle or routine lifts are being performed). The SLP must be developed, reviewed and accepted by all personnel involved in the lift in conjunction with the associated AHA. Signature on the AHA constitutes acceptance of the plan. Maintain the SLP on the LHE for the current lift(s) being made. Maintain historical SLPs for a minimum of 3 months.

1.7.2.3 Critical Lift Plan - Crane or Load Handling Equipment

Provide a Critical Lift Plan as required by EM 385-1-1, Section 16.H.01, using Form 16-3. In addition, Critical Lift Plans are required for the following:

- a. Lifts over 50 percent of the capacity of barge mounted mobile crane's hoist.
- b. When working around energized power lines where the work will get closer than the minimum clearance distance in EM 385-1-1 Table 16-1.
- c. For lifts with anticipated binding conditions.
- d. When erecting cranes.

1.7.2.3.1 Critical Lift Plan Planning and Schedule

Critical lifts require detailed planning and additional or unusual safety precautions. Develop and submit a critical lift plan to the Contracting Officer 30 calendar days prior to critical lift. Comply with load testing requirements in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 16.F.03.

1.7.2.3.2 Lifts of Personnel

In addition to the requirements of EM 385-1-1, Section 16.H.02, for lifts of personnel, demonstrate compliance with the requirements of 29 CFR 1926.1400 and EM 385-1-1, Section 16.T.

1.7.2.4 Multi-Purpose Machines, Material Handling Equipment, and Construction Equipment Lift Plan

Multi-purpose machines, material handling equipment, and construction equipment used to lift loads that are suspended by rigging gear, require proof of authorization from the machine OEM that the machine is capable of making lifts of loads suspended by rigging equipment. Written approval from a qualified registered professional engineer, after a safety analysis is performed, is allowed in lieu of the OEM's approval. Demonstrate that the operator is properly trained and that the equipment is properly configured to make such lifts and is equipped with a load chart.

1.7.2.5 Fall Protection and Prevention (FP&P) Plan

The plan must comply with the requirements of EM 385-1-1, Section 21.D and ASSP Z359.2, be site specific, and address all fall hazards in the work place and during different phases of construction. Address how to protect and prevent workers from falling to lower levels when they are exposed to fall hazards above 6 feet. A competent person or qualified person for fall protection must prepare and sign the plan documentation. Include fall protection and prevention systems, equipment and methods employed for every phase of work, roles and responsibilities, assisted rescue, self-rescue and evacuation procedures, training requirements, and monitoring methods.

Review and revise, as necessary, the Fall Protection and Prevention Plan documentation as conditions change, but at a minimum every six months, for lengthy projects, reflecting any changes during the course of construction due to changes in personnel, equipment, systems or work habits. Keep and maintain the accepted Fall Protection and Prevention Plan documentation at the job site for the duration of the project. Include the Fall Protection and Prevention Plan documentation in the Accident Prevention Plan (APP).

1.7.2.6 Rescue and Evacuation Plan

Provide a Rescue and Evacuation Plan in accordance with EM 385-1-1 Section 21.N and ASSP Z359.2, and include in the FP&P Plan and as part of the APP. Include a detailed discussion of the following: methods of rescue; methods of self-rescue; equipment used; training requirement; specialized training for the rescuers; procedures for requesting rescue and medical assistance; and transportation routes to a medical facility.

1.7.2.7 Excavation Plan

Identify the safety and health aspects of excavation, and provide and prepare the plan in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 25.A and Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL.

1.8 ACTIVITY HAZARD ANALYSIS (AHA)

Before beginning each activity, task or Definable Feature of Work (DFOW) involving a type of work presenting hazards not experienced in previous project operations, or where a new work crew or subcontractor is to perform the work, the Contractor(s) performing that work activity must prepare an AHA. AHAs must be developed by the Prime Contractor, subcontractor, or supplier performing the work, and provided for Prime Contractor review and approval before submitting to the Contracting Officer. AHAs must be signed by the SSHO, Superintendent, QC Manager and the subcontractor Foreman performing the work. Format the AHA in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 1 or as directed by the Contracting Officer. Submit the AHA for review at least 15 working days prior to the start of each activity task, or DFOW. The Government reserves the right to require the Contractor to revise and resubmit the AHA if it fails to effectively identify the work sequences, specific anticipated hazards, site conditions, equipment, materials, personnel and the control measures to be implemented.

AHAs must identify competent persons required for phases involving high risk activities, including confined entry, crane and rigging, excavations, trenching, electrical work, fall protection, and scaffolding.

1.8.1 AHA Management

Review the AHA list periodically (at least monthly) at the Contractor supervisory safety meeting, and update as necessary when procedures, scheduling, or hazards change. Use the AHA during daily inspections by the SSHO to ensure the implementation and effectiveness of the required safety and health controls for that work activity.

1.8.2 AHA Signature Log

Each employee performing work as part of an activity, task or DFOW must review the AHA for that work and sign a signature log specifically maintained for that AHA prior to starting work on that activity. The SSHO must maintain a signature log on site for every AHA. Provide employees

whose primary language is other than English, with an interpreter to ensure a clear understanding of the AHA and its contents.

1.9 DISPLAY OF SAFETY INFORMATION

1.9.1 Safety Bulletin Board

Within one calendar day(s) after commencement of work, erect a safety bulletin board at the job site. Where size, duration, or logistics of project do not facilitate a bulletin board, an alternative method, acceptable to the Contracting Officer, that is accessible and includes all mandatory information for employee and visitor review, may be deemed as meeting the requirement for a bulletin board. Include and maintain information on safety bulletin board as required by EM 385-1-1, Section 01.A.07. Additional items required to be posted include:

- a. Confined space entry permit.
- b. Hot work permit.

1.9.2 Safety and Occupational Health (SOH) Deficiency Tracking System

Establish a SOH deficiency tracking system that lists and monitors the status of SOH deficiencies in chronological order. Use the tracking system to evaluate the effectiveness of the APP. A monthly evaluation of the data must be discussed in the QC or SOH meeting with everyone on the project. The list must be posted on the project bulletin board and updated daily, and provide the following information:

- a. Date deficiency identified;
- b. Description of deficiency;
- c. Name of person responsible for correcting deficiency;
- d. Projected resolution date;
- e. Date actually resolved.

1.10 SITE SAFETY REFERENCE MATERIALS

Maintain safety-related references applicable to the project, including those listed in paragraph REFERENCES. Maintain applicable equipment manufacturer's manuals.

1.11 EMERGENCY MEDICAL TREATMENT

Contractors must arrange for their own emergency medical treatment in accordance with EM 385-1-1. Government has no responsibility to provide emergency medical treatment.

1.12 NOTIFICATIONS and REPORTS

1.12.1 Mishap Notification

Notify the Contracting Officer as soon as practical, but no more than twenty-four hours, after any mishaps, including recordable accidents, incidents, and near misses, as defined in EM 385-1-1 Appendix Q, any report of injury, illness, or any property damage. For LHE or rigging

mishaps, notify the Contracting Officer as soon as practical but not more than 4 hours after mishap. The Contractor is responsible for obtaining appropriate medical and emergency assistance and for notifying fire, law enforcement, and regulatory agencies. Immediate reporting is required for electrical mishaps, to include Arc Flash; shock; uncontrolled release of hazardous energy (includes electrical and non-electrical); load handling equipment or rigging; fall from height (any level other than same surface); and underwater diving. These mishaps must be investigated in depth to identify all causes and to recommend hazard control measures.

Within notification include Contractor name; contract title; type of contract; name of activity, installation or location where accident occurred; date and time of accident; names of personnel injured; extent of property damage, if any; extent of injury, if known, and brief description of accident (for example, type of construction equipment used and PPE used). Preserve the conditions and evidence on the accident site until the Government investigation team arrives on-site and Government investigation is conducted. Assist and cooperate fully with the Government's investigation(s) of any mishap.

1.12.2 Accident Reports

- a. Conduct an accident investigation for recordable injuries and illnesses, property damage, and near misses as defined in EM 385-1-1, to establish the root cause(s) of the accident. Complete the applicable NAVFAC Contractor Incident Reporting System (CIRS), and electronically submit via the NAVFAC Enterprise Safety Applications Management System (ESAMS). Complete and submit an accident investigation report in ESAMS within 5 days for mishaps defined in EM 385-1-1 01.D.03 and 10 days for accidents defined by EM 385-1-1 01.D.05. Complete an investigation report within 30 days for those mishaps defined by EM 385-1-1 01.D.04. Mishaps defined by EM 385-1-1 01.D.04 and 01.D.05 must include a written report submitted as an attachment in ESAMS using the following outline: (1) Mishap summary description to include process, findings and outcomes; (2) Root Cause; (3) Direct Factors; (4) Indirect and Contributing Factors; (5) Corrective Actions; and (6) Recommendations. The Contracting Officer will provide copies of any required or special forms.
- b. Near Misses: For Navy Projects, complete the applicable documentation in NAVFAC Contractor Incident Reporting System (CIRS), and electronically submit via the NAVFAC Enterprise Safety Applications Management System (ESAMS). Near miss reports are considered positive and proactive Contractor safety management actions.
- c. Conduct an accident investigation for any load handling equipment accident (including rigging accidents) to establish the root cause(s) of the accident. Complete the LHE Accident Report (Crane and Rigging Accident Report) form and provide the report to the Contracting Officer within 30 calendar days of the accident. Do not proceed with crane operations until cause is determined and corrective actions have been implemented to the satisfaction of the Contracting Officer. The Contracting Officer will provide a blank copy of the accident report form.

1.12.3 LHE Inspection Reports

Submit LHE inspection reports required in accordance with EM 385-1-1 and as specified herein with Daily Reports of Inspections.

1.12.4 Certificate of Compliance and Pre-lift Plan/Checklist for LHE and Rigging

Provide a FORM 16-1 Certificate of Compliance for LHE entering an activity under this contract and in accordance with EM 385-1-1. Post certifications on the crane.

Develop a Standard Lift Plan (SLP) in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 16.H.03 using Form 16-2 Standard Pre-Lift Crane Plan/Checklist for each lift planned. Submit SLP to the Contracting Officer for approval within 15 calendar days in advance of planned lift.

1.13 HOT WORK

1.13.1 Permit and Personnel Requirements

Submit and obtain a written permit prior to performing "Hot Work" (i.e. welding or cutting) or operating other flame-producing/spark producing devices, from the Fire Division. A permit is required from the Explosives Safety Office for work in and around where explosives are processed, stored, or handled. CONTRACTORS ARE REQUIRED TO MEET ALL CRITERIA BEFORE A PERMIT IS ISSUED. Provide at least two 20 pound 4A:20 BC rated extinguishers for normal "Hot Work". The extinguishers must be current inspection tagged, and contain an approved safety pin and tamper resistant seal. It is also mandatory to have a designated FIRE WATCH for any "Hot Work" done at this activity. The Fire Watch must be trained in accordance with NFPA 51B and remain on-site for a minimum of one hour after completion of the task or as specified on the hot work permit.

When starting work in the facility, require personnel to familiarize themselves with the location of the nearest fire alarm boxes and place in memory the emergency Fire Division phone number. REPORT ANY FIRE, NO MATTER HOW SMALL, TO THE RESPONSIBLE FIRE DIVISION IMMEDIATELY.

1.13.2 Work Around Flammable Materials

Obtain permit approval from a NFPA Certified Marine Chemist for "HOT WORK" within or around flammable materials (such as fuel systems or welding/cutting on fuel pipes) or confined spaces (such as sewer wet wells, manholes, or vaults) that have the potential for flammable or explosive atmospheres.

Whenever these materials, except beryllium and chromium (VI), are encountered in indoor operations, local mechanical exhaust ventilation systems that are sufficient to reduce and maintain personal exposures to within acceptable limits must be used and maintained in accordance with manufacturer's instruction and supplemented by exceptions noted in EM 385-1-1, Section 06.H

1.14 CONFINED SPACE ENTRY REQUIREMENTS

Confined space entry must comply with Section 34 of EM 385-1-1, OSHA 29 CFR 1926, OSHA 29 CFR 1910, OSHA 29 CFR 1910.146, and OSHA Directive CPL 2.100. Any potential for a hazard in the confined space requires a permit system to be used. Contractors entering and working in confined spaces while performing shipyard industry work are required to follow the requirements of OSHA 29 CFR 1915 Subpart B.

1.14.1 Entry Procedures

Prohibit entry into a confined space by personnel for any purpose, including hot work, until the qualified person has conducted appropriate tests to ensure the confined or enclosed space is safe for the work intended and that all potential hazards are controlled or eliminated and documented. Comply with EM 385-1-1, Section 34 for entry procedures. Hazards pertaining to the space must be reviewed with each employee during review of the AHA.

1.14.2 Forced Air Ventilation

Forced air ventilation is required for all confined space entry operations and the minimum air exchange requirements must be maintained to ensure exposure to any hazardous atmosphere is kept below its action level.

1.14.3 Sewer Wet Wells

Sewer wet wells require continuous atmosphere monitoring with audible alarm for toxic gas detection.

1.14.4 Rescue Procedures and Coordination with Local Emergency Responders

Develop and implement an on-site rescue and recovery plan and procedures. The rescue plan must not rely on local emergency responders for rescue from a confined space.

1.15 SEVERE STORM PLAN

In the event of a severe storm warning, the Contractor must:

- a. Secure outside equipment and materials and place materials that could be damaged in protected areas.
- b. Check surrounding area, including roof, for loose material, equipment, debris, and other objects that could be blown away or against existing facilities.
- c. Ensure that temporary erosion controls are adequate.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 CONFINED SPACE SIGNAGE

Provide permanent signs integral to or securely attached to access covers for new permit-required confined spaces. Signs for confined spaces must comply with NEMA Z535.2. Signs wording: "DANGER--PERMIT-REQUIRED CONFINED SPACE, DO NOT ENTER" in bold letters a minimum of one inch in height and constructed to be clearly legible with all paint removed. The signal word "DANGER" must be red and readable from 5 feet.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 CONSTRUCTION AND OTHER WORK

Comply with EM 385-1-1, NFPA 70, NFPA 70E, NFPA 241, the APP, the AHA, Federal and State OSHA regulations, and other related submittals and activity fire and safety regulations. The most stringent standard prevails.

PPE is governed in all areas by the nature of the work the employee is performing. Use personal hearing protection at all times in designated noise hazardous areas or when performing noise hazardous tasks. Safety glasses must be worn or carried/available on each person. Mandatory PPE includes:

- a. Hard Hat
- b. Long Pants
- c. Appropriate Safety Shoes
- d. Appropriate Class Reflective Vests

3.1.1 Worksite Communication

Employees working alone in a remote location or away from other workers must be provided an effective means of emergency communications (i.e., cellular phone, two-way radios, land-line telephones or other acceptable means). The selected communication must be readily available (easily within the immediate reach) of the employee and must be tested prior to the start of work to verify that it effectively operates in the area/environment. An employee check-in/check-out communication procedure must be developed to ensure employee safety.

3.1.2 Hazardous Material Use

Each hazardous material must receive approval from the Contracting Office or their designated representative prior to being brought onto the job site or prior to any other use in connection with this contract. Allow a minimum of 10 working days for processing of the request for use of a hazardous material.

3.1.3 Hazardous Material Exclusions

Notwithstanding any other hazardous material used in this contract, radioactive materials or instruments capable of producing ionizing/non-ionizing radiation (with the exception of radioactive material and devices used in accordance with EM 385-1-1 such as nuclear density meters for compaction testing and laboratory equipment with radioactive sources) as well as materials which contain asbestos, mercury or polychlorinated biphenyls, di-isocyanates, lead-based paint, and hexavalent chromium, are prohibited. The Contracting Officer, upon written request by the Contractor, may consider exceptions to the use of any of the above excluded materials. Low mercury lamps used within fluorescent lighting fixtures are allowed as an exception without further Contracting Officer approval. Notify the Radiation Safety Officer (RSO) prior to excepted items of radioactive material and devices being brought on base.

3.1.4 Unforeseen Hazardous Material

Contract documents identify materials such as PCB, lead paint, and friable and non-friable asbestos and other OSHA regulated chemicals (i.e. 29 CFR Part 1910.1000). If material(s) that may be hazardous to human health upon disturbance are encountered during construction operations, stop that portion of work and notify the Contracting Officer immediately. Within 14 calendar days the Government will determine if the material is hazardous. If material is not hazardous or poses no danger, the Government will direct the Contractor to proceed without change. If material is hazardous and

handling of the material is necessary to accomplish the work, the Government will issue a modification pursuant to FAR 52.243-4 Changes and FAR 52.236-2 Differing Site Conditions.

3.2 UTILITY OUTAGE REQUIREMENTS

Apply for utility outages at least 21 days in advance. At a minimum, the written request must include the location of the outage, utilities being affected, duration of outage, any necessary sketches, and a description of the means to fulfill energy isolation requirements in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 11.A.02 (Isolation). Some examples of energy isolation devices and procedures are highlighted in EM 385-1-1, Section 12.D. In accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 12.A.01, where outages involve Government or Utility personnel, coordinate with the Government on all activities involving the control of hazardous energy.

These activities include, but are not limited to, a review of HEC and HEC procedures, as well as applicable Activity Hazard Analyses (AHAs). In accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 11.A.02 and NFPA 70E, work on energized electrical circuits must not be performed without prior government authorization. Government permission is considered through the permit process and submission of a detailed AHA. Energized work permits are considered only when de-energizing introduces additional or increased hazard or when de-energizing is infeasible.

3.3 OUTAGE COORDINATION MEETING

After the utility outage request is approved and prior to beginning work on the utility system requiring shut-down, conduct a pre-outage coordination meeting in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 12.A. This meeting must include the Prime Contractor, the Prime and subcontractors performing the work, the Contracting Officer, and the Installation representative. All parties must fully coordinate HEC activities with one another. During the coordination meeting, all parties must discuss and coordinate on the scope of work, HEC procedures (specifically, the lock-out/tag-out procedures for worker and utility protection), the AHA, assurance of trade personnel qualifications, identification of competent persons, and compliance with HEC training in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 12.C. Clarify when personal protective equipment is required during switching operations, inspection, and verification.

3.4 CONTROL OF HAZARDOUS ENERGY (LOCKOUT/TAGOUT)

Provide and operate a Hazardous Energy Control Program (HECP) in accordance with EM 385-1-1 Section 12, 29 CFR 1910.333, 29 CFR 1915.89, ASSP A10.44, NFPA 70E, and paragraph HAZARDOUS ENERGY CONTROL PROGRAM (HECP).

3.4.1 Safety Preparatory Inspection Coordination Meeting with the Government or Utility

For electrical distribution equipment that is to be operated by Government or Utility personnel, the Prime Contractor and the subcontractor performing the work must attend the safety preparatory inspection coordination meeting, which will also be attended by the Contracting Officer's Representative, and required by EM 385-1-1, Section 12.A.02. The meeting will occur immediately preceding the start of work and following the completion of the outage coordination meeting. Both the safety preparatory inspection coordination meeting and the outage coordination meeting must occur prior to conducting the outage and commencing with lockout/tagout

procedures.

3.4.2 Lockout/Tagout Isolation

Where the Government or Utility performs equipment isolation and lockout/tagout, the Contractor must place their own locks and tags on each energy-isolating device and proceed in accordance with the HECF. Before any work begins, both the Contractor and the Government or Utility must perform energy isolation verification testing while wearing required PPE detailed in the Contractor's AHA and required by EM 385-1-1, Sections 05.I and 11.B. Install personal protective grounds, with tags, to eliminate the potential for induced voltage in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 12.E.06.

3.4.3 Lockout/Tagout Removal

Upon completion of work, conduct lockout/tagout removal procedure in accordance with the HECF. In accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 12.E.08, each lock and tag must be removed from each energy isolating device by the authorized individual or systems operator who applied the device. Provide formal notification to the Government (by completing the Government form if provided by Contracting Officer's Representative), confirming that steps of de-energization and lockout/tagout removal procedure have been conducted and certified through inspection and verification. Government or Utility locks and tags used to support the Contractor's work will not be removed until the authorized Government employee receives the formal notification.

3.5 FALL PROTECTION PROGRAM

Establish a fall protection program, for the protection of all employees exposed to fall hazards. Within the program include company policy, identify roles and responsibilities, education and training requirements, fall hazard identification, prevention and control measures, inspection, storage, care and maintenance of fall protection equipment and rescue and evacuation procedures in accordance with ASSP Z359.2 and EM 385-1-1, Sections 21.A and 21.D.

3.5.1 Training

Institute a fall protection training program. As part of the Fall Protection Program, provide training for each employee who might be exposed to fall hazards. Provide training by a competent person for fall protection in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 21.C. Document training and practical application of the competent person in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 21.C.04 and ASSP Z359.2 in the AHA.

3.5.2 Fall Protection Equipment and Systems

Enforce use of personal fall protection equipment and systems designated (to include fall arrest, restraint, and positioning) for each specific work activity in the Site Specific Fall Protection and Prevention Plan and AHA at all times when an employee is exposed to a fall hazard. Protect employees from fall hazards as specified in EM 385-1-1, Section 21.

Provide personal fall protection equipment, systems, subsystems, and components that comply with EM 385-1-1 Section 21.I, 29 CFR 1926.500 Subpart M, ASSP Z359.0, ASSP Z359.1, ASSP Z359.2, ASSP Z359.3, ASSP Z359.4, ASSP Z359.6, ASSP Z359.7, ASSP Z359.11, ASSP Z359.12, ASSP Z359.13, ASSP Z359.14, and ASSP Z359.15.

3.5.2.1 Additional Personal Fall Protection

In addition to the required fall protection systems, other protection such as safety skiffs, personal floatation devices, and life rings, are required when working above or next to water in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Sections 21.0 through 21.0.06. Personal fall protection systems and equipment are required when working from an articulating or extendible boom, swing stages, or suspended platform. In addition, personal fall protection systems are required when operating other equipment such as scissor lifts. The need for tying-off in such equipment is to prevent ejection of the employee from the equipment during raising, lowering, travel, or while performing work.

3.5.2.2 Personal Fall Protection Harnesses

Only a full-body harness with a shock-absorbing lanyard or self-retracting lanyard is an acceptable personal fall arrest body support device. The use of body belts is not acceptable. Harnesses must have a fall arrest attachment affixed to the body support (usually a Dorsal D-ring) and specifically designated for attachment to the rest of the system. Snap hooks and carabiners must be self-closing and self-locking, capable of being opened only by at least two consecutive deliberate actions and have a minimum gate strength of 3,600 lbs in all directions. Use webbing, straps, and ropes made of synthetic fiber. The maximum free fall distance when using fall arrest equipment must not exceed 6 feet, unless the proper energy absorbing lanyard is used. Always take into consideration the total fall distance and any swinging of the worker (pendulum-like motion), that can occur during a fall, when attaching a person to a fall arrest system. All full body harnesses must be equipped with Suspension Trauma Preventers such as stirrups, relief steps, or similar in order to provide short-term relief from the effects of orthostatic intolerance in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 21.I.06.

3.5.3 Fall Protection for Roofing Work

Implement fall protection controls based on the type of roof being constructed and work being performed. Evaluate the roof area to be accessed for its structural integrity including weight-bearing capabilities for the projected loading.

a. Low Sloped Roofs:

- (1) For work within 6 feet of an edge, on a roof having a slope less than or equal to 4:12 (vertical to horizontal), protect personnel from falling by use of personal fall arrest/restraint systems, guardrails, or safety nets. A safety monitoring system is not adequate fall protection and is not authorized. Provide in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.500.
- (2) For work greater than 6 feet from an edge, erect and install warning lines in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.500 and EM 385-1-1, Section L.

- #### b. Steep-Sloped Roofs:
- Work on a roof having a slope greater than 4:12 (vertical to horizontal) requires a personal fall arrest system, guardrails with toe-boards, or safety nets. This requirement also applies to residential or housing type construction.

3.5.4 Horizontal Lifelines (HLL)

Provide HLL in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 21.I.08.d.2. Commercially manufactured horizontal lifelines (HLL) must be designed, installed, certified and used, under the supervision of a qualified person, for fall protection as part of a complete fall arrest system which maintains a safety factor of 2 (29 CFR 1926.500). The competent person for fall protection may (if deemed appropriate by the qualified person) supervise the assembly, disassembly, use and inspection of the HLL system under the direction of the qualified person. Locally manufactured HLLs are not acceptable unless they are custom designed for limited or site specific applications by a Registered Professional Engineer who is qualified in designing HLL systems.

3.5.5 Guardrails and Safety Nets

Design, install and use guardrails and safety nets in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 21.F.01 and 29 CFR 1926 Subpart M.

3.5.6 Rescue and Evacuation Plan and Procedures

When personal fall arrest systems are used, ensure that the mishap victim can self-rescue or can be rescued promptly should a fall occur. Prepare a Rescue and Evacuation Plan and include a detailed discussion of the following: methods of rescue; methods of self-rescue or assisted-rescue; equipment used; training requirement; specialized training for the rescuers; procedures for requesting rescue and medical assistance; and transportation routes to a medical facility. Include the Rescue and Evacuation Plan within the Activity Hazard Analysis (AHA) for the phase of work, in the Fall Protection and Prevention (FP&P) Plan, and the Accident Prevention Plan (APP). The plan must comply with the requirements of EM 385-1-1, ASSP Z359.2, and ASSP Z359.4.

3.6 WORK PLATFORMS

3.6.1 Scaffolding

Provide employees with a safe means of access to the work area on the scaffold. Climbing of any scaffold braces or supports not specifically designed for access is prohibited. Comply with the following requirements:

- a. Scaffold platforms greater than 20 feet in height must be accessed by use of a scaffold stairsystem.
- b. Ladders commonly provided by scaffold system manufacturers are prohibited for accessing scaffold platforms greater than 20 feet maximum in height.
- c. An adequate gate is required.
- d. Employees performing scaffold erection and dismantling must be qualified.
- e. Scaffold must be capable of supporting at least four times the maximum intended load, and provide appropriate fall protection as delineated in the accepted fall protection and prevention plan.
- f. Stationary scaffolds must be attached to structural building components to safeguard against tipping forward or backward.

- g. Special care must be given to ensure scaffold systems are not overloaded.
- h. Side brackets used to extend scaffold platforms on self-supported scaffold systems for the storage of material are prohibited. The first tie-in must be at the height equal to 4 times the width of the smallest dimension of the scaffold base.
- i. Scaffolding other than suspended types must bear on base plates upon wood mudsills (2 in x 10 in x 8 in minimum) or other adequate firm foundation.
- j. Scaffold or work platform erectors must have fall protection during the erection and dismantling of scaffolding or work platforms that are more than 6 feet.
- k. Delineate fall protection requirements when working above 6 feet or above dangerous operations in the Fall Protection and Prevention (FP&P) Plan and Activity Hazard Analysis (AHA) for the phase of work.

3.6.2 Elevated Aerial Work Platforms (AWPs)

Workers must be anchored to the basket or bucket in accordance with manufacturer's specifications and instructions (anchoring to the boom may only be used when allowed by the manufacturer and permitted by the CP). Lanyards used must be sufficiently short to prohibit worker from climbing out of basket. The climbing of rails is prohibited. Lanyards with built-in shock absorbers are acceptable. Self-retracting devices are not acceptable. Tying off to an adjacent pole or structure is not permitted unless a safe device for 100 percent tie-off is used for the transfer.

Use of AWPs must be operated, inspected, and maintained as specified in the operating manual for the equipment and delineated in the AHA. Operators of AWPs must be designated as qualified operators by the Prime Contractor. Maintain proof of qualifications on site for review and include in the AHA.

3.7 EQUIPMENT

3.7.1 Material Handling Equipment (MHE)

- a. Material handling equipment such as forklifts must not be modified with work platform attachments for supporting employees unless specifically delineated in the manufacturer's printed operating instructions. Material handling equipment fitted with personnel work platform attachments are prohibited from traveling or positioning while personnel are working on the platform.
- b. The use of hooks on equipment for lifting of material must be in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions. Material Handling Equipment Operators must be trained in accordance with OSHA 29 CFR 1910, Subpart N.
- c. Operators of forklifts or power industrial trucks must be licensed in accordance with OSHA.

3.7.2 Load Handling Equipment (LHE)

The following requirements apply. In exception, these requirements do not

apply to commercial truck mounted and articulating boom cranes used solely to deliver material and supplies (not prefabricated components, structural steel, or components of a systems-engineered metal building) where the lift consists of moving materials and supplies from a truck or trailer to the ground; to cranes installed on mechanics trucks that are used solely in the repair of shore-based equipment; to crane that enter the activity but are not used for lifting; nor to other machines not used to lift loads suspended by rigging equipment. However, LHE accidents occurring during such operations must be reported.

- a. Equip cranes and derricks as specified in EM 385-1-1, Section 16.
- b. Notify the Contracting Officer 15 working days in advance of any LHE entering the activity, in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 16.A.02, so that necessary quality assurance spot checks can be coordinated. Prior to cranes entering federal activities, a Crane Access Permit must be obtained from the Contracting Officer. A copy of the permitting process will be provided at the Preconstruction Conference. Contractor's operator must remain with the crane during the spot check. Rigging gear must comply with OSHA, ASME B30.9 Standards safety standards.
- c. Comply with the LHE manufacturer's specifications and limitations for erection and operation of cranes and hoists used in support of the work. Perform erection under the supervision of a designated person (as defined in ASME B30.5). Perform all testing in accordance with the manufacturer's recommended procedures.
- d. Comply with ASME B30.5 for mobile and locomotive cranes, ASME B30.22 for articulating boom cranes, ASME B30.3 for construction tower cranes, ASME B30.8 for floating cranes and floating derricks, ASME B30.9 for slings, ASME B30.20 for below the hook lifting devices and ASME B30.26 for rigging hardware.
- e. When operating in the vicinity of overhead transmission lines, operators and riggers must be alert to this special hazard and follow the requirements of EM 385-1-1 Section 11, and ASME B30.5 or ASME B30.22 as applicable.
- f. Do not use crane suspended personnel work platforms (baskets) unless the Contractor proves that using any other access to the work location would provide a greater hazard to the workers or is impossible. Do not lift personnel with a line hoist or friction crane. Additionally, submit a specific AHA for this work to the Contracting Officer. Ensure the activity and AHA are thoroughly reviewed by all involved personnel.
- g. Inspect, maintain, and recharge portable fire extinguishers as specified in NFPA 10, Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers.
- h. All employees must keep clear of loads about to be lifted and of suspended loads, except for employees required to handle the load.
- i. Use cribbing when performing lifts on outriggers.
- j. The crane hook/block must be positioned directly over the load. Side loading of the crane is prohibited.
- k. A physical barricade must be positioned to prevent personnel access where accessible areas of the LHE's rotating superstructure poses a

risk of striking, pinching or crushing personnel.

- l. Maintain inspection records in accordance by EM 385-1-1, Section 16.D, including shift, monthly, and annual inspections, the signature of the person performing the inspection, and the serial number or other identifier of the LHE that was inspected. Records must be available for review by the Contracting Officer.
- m. Maintain written reports of operational and load testing in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 16.F, listing the load test procedures used along with any repairs or alterations performed on the LHE. Reports must be available for review by the Contracting Officer.
- n. Certify that all LHE operators have been trained in proper use of all safety devices (e.g. anti-two block devices).
- o. Take steps to ensure that wind speed does not contribute to loss of control of the load during lifting operations. At wind speeds greater than 20 mph, the operator, rigger and lift supervisor must cease all crane operations, evaluate conditions and determine if the lift may proceed. Base the determination to proceed or not on wind calculations per the manufacturer and a reduction in LHE rated capacity if applicable. Include this maximum wind speed determination as part of the activity hazard analysis plan for that operation.
- p. On mobile cranes, lifts where the load weight is greater than 90 percent of the equipment's capacity are prohibited.

3.7.3 Machinery and Mechanized Equipment

- a. Proof of qualifications for operator must be kept on the project site for review.
- b. Manufacture specifications or owner's manual for the equipment must be on-site and reviewed for additional safety precautions or requirements that are sometimes not identified by OSHA or USACE EM 385-1-1. Incorporate such additional safety precautions or requirements into the AHAs.

3.7.4 Base Mounted Drum Hoists

- a. Operation of base mounted drum hoists must comply with EM 385-1-1 and ASSP A10.22.
- b. Rigging gear must comply with applicable ASME/OSHA standards
- c. When used on telecommunication towers, base mounted drum hoists must comply with TIA-1019, TIA-222, ASME B30.7, 29 CFR 1926.552, and 29 CFR 1926.553.
- d. When used to hoist personnel, the AHA must include a written standard operating procedure. Operators must have a physical examination in accordance with EM 385-1-1 Section 16.B.05 and trained, at a minimum, in accordance with EM 385-1-1 Section 16.U and 16.T. The base mounted drum hoist must also comply with OSHA Instruction CPL 02-01-056 and ASME B30.23.
- e. Material and personnel must not be hoisted simultaneously.
- f. Personnel cage must be marked with the capacity (in number of persons)

and load limit in pounds.

- g. Construction equipment must not be used for hoisting material or personnel or with trolley/tag lines. Construction equipment may be used for towing and assisting with anchoring guy lines.

3.7.5 Use of Explosives

Explosives must not be used or brought to the project site without prior written approval from the Contracting Officer. Such approval does not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for injury to persons or for damage to property due to blasting operations.

Storage of explosives, when permitted on Government property, must be only where directed and in approved storage facilities. These facilities must be kept locked at all times except for inspection, delivery, and withdrawal of explosives.

3.8 EXCAVATIONS

Soil classification must be performed by a competent person in accordance with 29 CFR 1926 and EM 385-1-1.

3.8.1 Utility Locations

Provide a third party, independent, private utility locating company to positively identify underground utilities in the work area in addition to any station locating service and coordinated with the station utility department. Any markings made during the utility investigation must be maintained throughout the contract.

3.8.2 Utility Location Verification

Physically verify underground utility locations, including utility depth, by hand digging using wood or fiberglass handled tools when any adjacent construction work is expected to come within 3 feet of the underground system.

3.8.3 Utilities Within and Under Concrete, Bituminous Asphalt, and Other Impervious Surfaces

Utilities located within and under concrete slabs or pier structures, bridges, parking areas, and the like, are extremely difficult to identify. Whenever contract work involves chipping, saw cutting, or core drilling through concrete, bituminous asphalt or other impervious surfaces, the existing utility location must be coordinated with station utility departments in addition to location and depth verification by a third party, independent, private locating company. The third party, independent, private locating company must locate utility depth by use of Ground Penetrating Radar (GPR), X-ray, bore scope, or ultrasound prior to the start of demolition and construction. Outages to isolate utility systems must be used in circumstances where utilities are unable to be positively identified. The use of historical drawings does not alleviate the Contractor from meeting this requirement.

3.8.4 Location of Underground Utilities

Location and Protection of underground utilities shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. Where existing-to-remain piping,

utilities, and underground obstructions of any type are indicated in locations to be traversed by new piping, ducts, and other evacuations, the elevations of the existing utilities and obstructions shall be determined before the new work is completed.

- a. In addition, the Contractor shall be responsible for obtaining the services of a professional utility locator prior to digging. Contractor shall provide documentation that the site has been surveyed and checked for underground utilities. All utilities shall be located, including but not limited to power, water, sewer, storm drains, fiber optics, T.V. cable, telephone, and intrusion detection wiring. A set of unknown utility drawings will be available in the OICC office for review to assist locator.
- b. It is mandatory that the Contractor also contact the Base Telephone Office at (910) 451-2531 prior to accomplishing any digging at Camp Lejeune. A telephone office representative will assist in locating telephone lines.
- c. It is mandatory that the Contractor also contact Charter Communications, cable TV service, prior to accomplishing any digging at Camp Lejeune, to ensure that all buried cable lines are identified. Contact Mr. Olin Criswell at (910) 353-8677 for assistance.
- d. It is mandatory that the Contractor also contact the North Carolina One-Call Center to coordinate the location of underground natural gas infrastructure. North Carolina 811, Inc. can be reached at 811 on a touch-tone phone in the state of North Carolina or toll-free at 1-800-632-4949 if calling from out of state. Work request may also be submitted online at www.nc811.org.

3.8.4.1 The Locations of Underground Utilities

The locations of underground utilities shown are only approximate and the information provided may be incomplete. Contractor shall attempt to ascertain locations of existing underground utilities prior to and during digging operations.

3.8.4.2 Damage to Underground Utilities

Immediate notice shall be delivered to the Contracting Officer of any damage. The Contractor shall make temporary repairs immediately and shall provide repairs as soon as practicable.

3.9 ELECTRICAL

Perform electrical work in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Appendix A, Sections 11 and 12.

3.9.1 Conduct of Electrical Work

As delineated in EM 385-1-1, electrical work is to be conducted in a de-energized state unless there is no alternative method for accomplishing the work. In those cases obtain an energized work permit from the Contracting Officer. The energized work permit application must be accompanied by the AHA and a summary of why the equipment/circuit needs to be worked energized. Underground electrical spaces must be certified safe for entry before entering to conduct work. Cables that will be cut must be positively identified and de-energized prior to performing each cut.

Attach temporary grounds in accordance with [ASTM F855](#) and [IEEE 1048](#). Perform all high voltage cable cutting remotely using hydraulic cutting tool. When racking in or live switching of circuit breakers, no additional person other than the switch operator is allowed in the space during the actual operation. Plan so that work near energized parts is minimized to the fullest extent possible. Use of electrical outages clear of any energized electrical sources is the preferred method.

When working in energized substations, only qualified electrical workers are permitted to enter. When work requires work near energized circuits as defined by [NFPA 70](#), high voltage personnel must use personal protective equipment that includes, as a minimum, electrical hard hat, safety shoes, insulating gloves and electrical arc flash protection for personnel as required by [NFPA 70E](#). Insulating blankets, hearing protection, and switching suits may also be required, depending on the specific job and as delineated in the Contractor's AHA. Ensure that each employee is familiar with and complies with these procedures and [29 CFR 1910.147](#).

3.9.2 Qualifications

Electrical work must be performed by QP personnel with verifiable credentials who are familiar with applicable code requirements. Verifiable credentials consist of State, National and Local Certifications or Licenses that a Master or Journeyman Electrician may hold, depending on work being performed, and must be identified in the appropriate AHA. Journeyman/Apprentice ratio must be in accordance with State, Local requirements applicable to where work is being performed.

3.9.3 Arc Flash

Conduct a hazard analysis/arc flash hazard analysis whenever work on or near energized parts greater than 50 volts is necessary, in accordance with [NFPA 70E](#).

All personnel entering the identified arc flash protection boundary must be QPs and properly trained in [NFPA 70E](#) requirements and procedures. Unless permitted by [NFPA 70E](#), no Unqualified Person is permitted to approach nearer than the Limited Approach Boundary of energized conductors and circuit parts. Training must be administered by an electrically qualified source and documented.

3.9.3.1 Arc Flash Analysis

Contractor shall provide and Arc Flash Analysis in accordance with [NFPA 70E](#) for all locations where workers may be exposed to arc flash hazard (work on energized electrical equipment). The Arc Flash Analysis shall be sealed and signed by a qualified professional engineer.

In addition to the Arc Flash Analysis required for safety during construction, provide an Arc Flash Analysis for the entire electrical distribution system as constructed. Provide equipment labels as required by [NFPA 70E](#).

3.9.3.2 Arc Flash Analysis Qualifications

Contractor shall engage the services of a qualified organization to provide Arc Flash Analysis of the electrical distribution system. Organization shall be independent of the supplier, manufacturer, and installer of the equipment. The organization shall be a first tier subcontractor. The work

shall not be performed by a second tier subcontractor.

- a. Submit name and qualifications of organization. Organization shall have been regularly engaged in providing Arc Flash Analysis for a minimum of 5 years.
- b. Submit name and qualifications of the professional engineer performing the analysis. Include a list of three comparable jobs performed by the engineer with specific names and telephone numbers for reference.

3.9.4 Contractor Electrical Energized Work Permit

All work on energized electrical systems must have an approved/signed Contractor Electrical Energized Work Permit. The results of the Arc Flash Analysis shall be included in the "Contractor Electrical Energized Work Permit" request. Flame-resistant (FR) clothing and personal protective equipment (PPE) shall be rated for a minimum of 8 calories per square centimeter even if the flash hazard analysis indicates a lower value. A blank copy of the permit request is attached. An editable version may be obtained from the Contracting Officer.

3.9.5 Grounding

Ground electrical circuits, equipment and enclosures in accordance with [NFPA 70](#) and [IEEE C2](#) to provide a permanent, continuous and effective path to ground unless otherwise noted by [EM 385-1-1](#).

Check grounding circuits to ensure that the circuit between the ground and a grounded power conductor has a resistance low enough to permit sufficient current flow to allow the fuse or circuit breaker to interrupt the current.

3.9.6 Testing

Temporary electrical distribution systems and devices must be inspected, tested and found acceptable for Ground-Fault Circuit Interrupter (GFCI) protection, polarity, ground continuity, and ground resistance before initial use, before use after modification and at least monthly. Monthly inspections and tests must be maintained for each temporary electrical distribution system, and signed by the electrical CP or QP.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

CONTRACTOR ELECTRICAL ENERGIZED WORK PERMIT

PART I: TO BE COMPLETED BY THE REQUESTER: CONTRACT NUMBER: _____

JO/DO NUMBER _____

DATE OF REQUEST: _____

ANTICIPATED DATE WORK IS TO BE PERFORMED: _____

(1) Description of circuit/equipment/job location: _____

(2) Description of work to be done: _____

(3) Justification of why the circuit/equipment cannot be de-energized or the work deferred until the next scheduled outage: _____

NOTE: ATTACHED COPY OF OUTAGE REQUESTS INCLUDING REASONS FOR DENIAL

Requester/Title

Date

PART II: TO BE COMPLETED BY THE ELECTRICALLY QUALIFIED PERSONS DOING THE WORK:

**Check when
Complete**

(1) Detailed job description procedure to be used in performing the above detailed work: _____

☐

(2) Description of the Safe Work Practices to be employed: _____

☐

(3) Results of the Shock Hazard Analysis: _____

☐

(4) Determination of the Shock Protection Boundaries: _____

☐

(5) Results of the Arc Flash Hazard Analysis: _____

☐

Determination of the Arc Flash Protection Boundary: _____

☐

(6) Necessary personnel protective equipment to safely perform the assigned task: _____

☐

(7) Means employed to restrict the access of unqualified persons from the work area: _____

☐

(8) Evidence of completion of a Job Briefing including discussion of any job – related hazards: _____

☐

(10) Do you agree the above described work can be done safely?

☐ Yes☐ No

(If no, return to requester)

PART III: RECOMMEND APPROVAL(S) TO PERFORM THE WORK WHILE ELECTRICALLY ENERGIZED:

OICC SIGNATURE

CI SIGNATURE

OPS SIGNATURE

NAVFAC MIDLANT CONTRUCTION SAFETY MANAGER

PART IV: FINAL APPROVAL:

NAVFAC MILANT COMMANDING OFFICER

NOTE: COMPLETED FORM WILL BE KEPT ON FILE BY MIDLANT CONSTRUCTION SAFETY MANAGER

SECTION 01 42 00

SOURCES FOR REFERENCE PUBLICATIONS
02/19

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

Various publications are referenced in other sections of the specifications to establish requirements for the work. These references are identified in each section by document number, date and title. The document number used in the citation is the number assigned by the standards producing organization (e.g. ASTM B564 Standard Specification for Nickel Alloy Forgings). However, when the standards producing organization has not assigned a number to a document, an identifying number has been assigned for reference purposes.

1.2 ORDERING INFORMATION

The addresses of the standards publishing organizations whose documents are referenced in other sections of these specifications are listed below, and if the source of the publications is different from the address of the sponsoring organization, that information is also provided.

ACOUSTICAL SOCIETY OF AMERICA (ASA)
1305 Walt Whitman Road, Suite 300
Melville, NY 11747-4300
Ph: 516-576-2360
Fax: 631-923-2875
E-mail: asa@acousticalsociety.org
Internet: <https://acousticalsociety.org/>

AIR BARRIER ASSOCIATION OF AMERICA (ABAA)
1600 Boston-Providence Hwy
Walpole, MA 02081
Ph: 1-866-956-5888
Fax: 1-866-956-5819
Internet: <https://www.airbarrier.org/>

AIR MOVEMENT AND CONTROL ASSOCIATION INTERNATIONAL, INC. (AMCA)
30 West University Drive
Arlington Heights, IL 60004-1893
Ph: 847-394-0150
Fax: 847-253-0088
E-mail: communications@amca.org
Internet: <http://www.amca.org>

AIR-CONDITIONING, HEATING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE (AHRI)
2111 Wilson Blvd, Suite 400
Arlington, VA 22201
Ph: 703-524-8800
Internet: <http://www.ahrinet.org>

ALUMINUM ASSOCIATION (AA)
1400 Crystal Drive
Suite 430

Arlington, VA 22202
Ph: 703-358-2960
E-Mail: info@aluminum.org
Internet: <https://www.aluminum.org/>

AMERICAN ARCHITECTURAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (AAMA)
1900 E Golf Rd, Suite 1250
Schaumburg, IL 60173
Ph: 847-303-5664
E-mail: customerservice@aamanet.org
Internet: <https://aamanet.org/>

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS
(AASHTO)
444 North Capital Street, NW, Suite 249
Washington, DC 20001
Ph: 202-624-5800
Fax: 202-624-5806
E-Mail: info@ashto.org
Internet: <https://www.transportation.org/>

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF TEXTILE CHEMISTS AND COLORISTS (AATCC)
1 Davis Drive
P.O. Box 12215
Research Triangle Park, NC 27709-2215
Ph: 919-549-8141
Fax: 919-549-8933
Internet: <https://www.aatcc.org/>

AMERICAN BEARING MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (ABMA)
330 N. Wabash Ave., Suite 2000
Chicago, IL 60611
Ph: 202-367-1155
E-mail: info@americanbearings.org
Internet: <https://www.americanbearings.org/>

AMERICAN CONCRETE INSTITUTE INTERNATIONAL (ACI)
38800 Country Club Drive
Farmington Hills, MI 48331-3439
Ph: 248-848-3700
Fax: 248-848-3701
Internet: <https://www.concrete.org/>

AMERICAN CONCRETE PIPE ASSOCIATION (ACPA)
8445 Freeport Parkway, Suite 350
Irving, TX 75063-2595
Ph: 972-506-7216
Fax: 972-506-7682
E-mail: info@concrete-pipe.org
Internet: <https://www.concretepipe.org/>

AMERICAN CONFERENCE OF GOVERNMENTAL INDUSTRIAL HYGIENISTS (ACGIH)
1330 Kemper Meadow Drive
Cincinnati, OH 45240
Ph: 513-742-2020
Fax: 513-742-3355
Internet: <https://www.acgih.org/>

AMERICAN FOREST FOUNDATION (AFF)
American Tree Farm System
2000 M Street, NW, Suite 550
Washington, DC 20036
Ph: 202-765-3660
Fax: 202-827-7924
Email: info@forestfoundation.org
Internet: <https://www.treefarmssystem.org>

AMERICAN GAS ASSOCIATION (AGA)
400 North Capitol Street, NW
Suite 450
Washington, D.C. 20001
Ph: 202-824-7000
Internet: <https://www.aga.org/>

AMERICAN HARDBOARD ASSOCIATION (AHA)
1210 West Northwest Highway
Palatine, IL 60067
Ph: 847-934-8800
Fax: 847-934-8803
E-mail: aha@hardboard.org
Internet: <http://domensino.com/AHA/>

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION (AISC)
130 East Randolph, Suite 2000
Chicago, IL 60601
Ph: 312-670-5444
Fax: 312-670-5403
Steel Solutions Center: 866-275-2472
E-mail: solutions@aisc.org
Internet: <https://www.aisc.org/>

AMERICAN IRON AND STEEL INSTITUTE (AISI)
25 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 800
Washington, DC 20001
Ph: 202-452-7100
Internet: <https://www.steel.org/>

AMERICAN LUMBER STANDARDS COMMITTEE (ALSC)
7470 New Technology Way, Suite F
Frederick, MD 21703
Ph: 301-972-1700
Fax: 301-540-8004
E-mail: alsc@alsc.org
Internet: <http://www.alsc.org>

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)
1899 L Street, NW, 11th Floor
Washington, DC 20036
Ph: 202-293-8020
Fax: 202-293-9287
E-mail: storemanager@ansi.org
Internet: <https://www.ansi.org/>

AMERICAN PETROLEUM INSTITUTE (API)
1220 L Street, NW
Washington, DC 20005-4070
Ph: 202-682-8000

Internet: <https://www.api.org/>

AMERICAN RAILWAY ENGINEERING AND MAINTENANCE-OF-WAY ASSOCIATION
(AREMA)

4501 Forbes Blvd., Suite 130
Lanham, MD 20706
Ph: 301-459-3200
E-mail: info@arema.org
Internet: <https://www.arema.org>

AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR NONDESTRUCTIVE TESTING (ASNT)

P.O. Box 28518
1711 Arlingate Lane
Columbus, OH 43228-0518
Ph: 800-222-2768 or 614-274-6003
Fax: 614-274-6899
E-mail: tjones@asnt.org
Internet: <https://www.asnt.org/>

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF CIVIL ENGINEERS (ASCE)

1801 Alexander Bell Drive
Reston, VA 20191
Ph: 800-548-2723; 703-295-6300
Internet: <https://www.asce.org/>

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

1791 Tullie Circle, NE
Atlanta, GA 30329
Ph: 404-636-8400 or 800-527-4723
Fax: 404-321-5478
E-mail: ashrae@ashrae.org
Internet: <https://www.ashrae.org/>

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF SAFETY ENGINEERS (ASSE/SAFE)

520 N. Northwest Hwy
Park Ridge, IL 60068
Ph: 847-699-2929
E-mail: customerservice@.org

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF SAFETY PROFESSIONALS (ASSP)

520 N. Northwest Highway
Park Ridge, IL 60068
Ph: 847-699-2929
Internet: <https://www.assp.org/>

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF SANITARY ENGINEERING (ASSE)

18927 Hickory Creek Drive, Suite 220
Mokena, IL 60448
Ph: 708-995-3019
Fax: 708-479-6139
Internet: <http://www.asse-plumbing.org>

AMERICAN WATER WORKS ASSOCIATION (AWWA)

6666 W. Quincy Avenue
Denver, CO 80235 USA
Ph: 303-794-7711 or 800-926-7337
Fax: 303-347-0804

Internet: <https://www.awwa.org/>

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)
8669 NW 36 Street, #130
Miami, FL 33166-6672
Ph: 800-443-9353
Internet: <https://www.aws.org/>

AMERICAN WOOD COUNCIL (AWC)
222 Catoctin Circle SE, Suite 201
Leesburg, VA 20175
Ph: 800-890-7732
Fax: 412-741-0609
E-mail: publications@awc.org
Internet: <https://www.awc.org/>

AMERICAN WOOD PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (AWPA)
P.O. Box 361784
Birmingham, AL 35236-1784
Ph: 205-733-4077
Fax: 205-733-4075
Internet: <http://www.awpa.com>

AmericanHort (AH)
2130 Stella Court
Columbus, OH 43215
Ph: 614-487-1117 OH
Ph: 202-789-2900 DC
Internet: <https://www.americanhort.org/>

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)
Two Park Avenue
New York, NY 10016-5990
Ph: 800-843-2763
Fax: 973-882-1717
E-mail: customercare@asme.org
Internet: <https://www.asme.org/>

ASPHALT INSTITUTE (AI)
2696 Research Park Drive
Lexington, KY 40511-8480
Ph: 859-288-4960
Fax: 859-288-4999
E-mail: info@asphaltinstitute.org
Internet: <http://www.asphaltinstitute.org>

ASSOCIATED AIR BALANCE COUNCIL (AABC)
1220 19th St NW, Suite 410
Washington, DC 20036
Ph: 202-737-0202
Fax: 202-315-0285
E-mail: info@aabc.com
Internet: <https://www.aabc.com/>

ASSOCIATION OF EDISON ILLUMINATING COMPANIES (AEIC)
600 North 18th Street
P.O. Box 2641
Birmingham, AL 35291
Ph: 205-257-3839

Fax: 205-257-2540
Internet: <https://aeic.org/>

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)
100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700
West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959
Ph: 610-832-9500
Fax: 610-832-9555
E-mail: service@astm.org
Internet: <https://www.astm.org/>

BACNET INTERNATIONAL (BTL)
BACnet Testing Laboratories
1827 Powers Ferry Road
Building 14, Suite 100
Atlanta, GA 30339
Ph: 770-971-6003
Fax: 678-229-2777
E-mail: info@bacnetinternational.org
Internet: <https://www.bacnetlabs.org/>

BUILDERS HARDWARE MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (BHMA)
355 Lexington Avenue, 15th Floor
New York, NY 10017
Ph: 212-297-2122
Fax: 212-370-9047
Internet: <https://www.buildershardware.com/>

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)
PO Box 997377, MS 0500
Sacramento, CA 95899-7377
Ph: 916-558-1784
Internet: <https://www.cdph.ca.gov/>

CALIFORNIA ENERGY COMMISSION (CEC)
Media and Public Communications Office
1516 Ninth Street, MS-29
Sacramento, CA 95814-5512
Ph: 916-654-5106
E-mail: appliances@energy.ca.gov
Internet: <https://www.energy.ca.gov/>

CARPET AND RUG INSTITUTE (CRI)
P.O. Box 2048
Dalton, GA 30722-2048
Ph: 706-278-3176
Fax: 706-278-8835
Internet: <https://carpet-rug.org/>

CAST IRON SOIL PIPE INSTITUTE (CISPI)
2401 Fieldcrest Drive
Mundelein, IL 60060
Ph: 224-864-2910
Internet: <https://www.cispi.org/>

CONCRETE REINFORCING STEEL INSTITUTE (CRSI)
933 North Plum Grove Road
Schaumburg, IL 60173-4758

Ph: 847-517-1200
Fax: 847-517-1206
Internet: <http://www.crsi.org/>

COPPER DEVELOPMENT ASSOCIATION (CDA)
Internet: <https://www.copper.org/>

COUNCIL ON ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY (CEQ) (WHITE HOUSE)
722 Jackson Place
Washington DC 20506
Internet: <https://www.whitehouse.gov/administration/eop/ceq>

CSA GROUP (CSA)
178 Rexdale Blvd.
Toronto, ON, Canada M9W 1R3
Ph: 416-747-4044
Fax: 416-747-2510
E-mail: member@csagroup.org
Internet: <https://www.csagroup.org/>

DOOR AND ACCESS SYSTEM MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (DASMA)
1300 Sumner Avenue
Cleveland, OH 44115-2851
Ph: 216-241-7333
Fax: 216-241-0105
Internet: <https://www.dasma.com/>

ELECTRONIC COMPONENTS INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION (ECIA)
310 Maxwell Road, Suite 200
Alpharetta, GA 30009
Ph: 678-393-9990
Fax: 678-393-9998
E-mail: emikoski@ecianow.org
Internet: <https://www.ecianow.org>

FLUID CONTROLS INSTITUTE (FCI)
1300 Sumner Avenue
Cleveland, OH 44115
Ph: 216-241-7333
Fax: 216-241-0105
E-mail: fcf@fluidcontrolsintitute.org
Internet: <https://fluidcontrolsintitute.org/>

FM GLOBAL (FM)
270 Central Avenue
Johnston, RI 02919-4949
Ph: 401-275-3000
Fax: 401-275-3029
Internet: <https://www.fmglobal.com/>

FOREST STEWARDSHIP COUNCIL (FSC)
708 First Street North, Suite 235
Minneapolis, MN 55401
Ph: 612-353-4511
E-mail: info@us.fcs.org
Internet: <https://us.fsc.org/>

FOUNDATION FOR CROSS-CONNECTION CONTROL AND HYDRAULIC RESEARCH
(FCCCHR)
USC Foundation Office
Research Annex 219
Los Angeles, CA 90089-7700
Ph: 866-545-6340
Fax: 213-740-8399
E-mail: fccchr@usc.edu
Internet: <https://fccchr.usc.edu/>

GLASS ASSOCIATION OF NORTH AMERICA (GANA)
National Glass Association
1945 Old Gallows Rd., Suite 750
Vienna, VA 22182
Ph: 866-342-5642
Ph: 703-442-4890
Fax: 703-442-0630
Internet: <http://www.glasswebsite.com>

GREEN SEAL (GS)
1001 Connecticut Avenue, NW
Suite 827
Washington, DC 20036-5525
Ph: 202-872-6400
Fax: 202-872-4324
E-mail: green SEAL@green SEAL.org
Internet: <https://www.green SEAL.org/>

GYPSUM ASSOCIATION (GA)
962 Wayne Ave., Suite 620
Silver Spring, MD 20910
Ph: 301-277-8686
Fax: 301-277-8747
E-mail: info@gypsum.org
Internet: <https://www.gypsum.org/>

HYDRAULIC INSTITUTE (HI)
6 Campus Drive, First Floor North
Parsippany, NJ 07054-4405
Ph: 973-267-9700
Fax: 973-267-9055
Internet: <http://www.pumps.org>

HYDRONICS INSTITUTE DIVISION OF AHRI (HYI)
2311 Wilson Blvd, Suite 400
Arlington, VA 22201
Ph: 703-524-8800
Internet: <http://www.ahrinet.org>

ILLUMINATING ENGINEERING SOCIETY (IES)
120 Wall Street, Floor 17
New York, NY 10005-4001
Ph: 212-248-5000
Fax: 212-248-5018
E-mail: membership@ies.org
Internet: <https://www.ies.org/>

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)
445 and 501 Hoes Lane

Piscataway, NJ 08854-4141
Ph: 732-981-0060 or 800-701-4333
Fax: 732-981-9667
E-mail: onlinesupport@ieee.org
Internet: <https://www.ieee.org/>

INSULATED CABLE ENGINEERS ASSOCIATION (ICEA)
P.O. Box 493
Miamitown, OH 45041-9998
E-mail: info@icea.net
Internet: <https://www.icea.net/>

INSULATING GLASS MANUFACTURERS ALLIANCE (IGMA)
27 N. Wacker Dr. Suite 365
Chicago, IL 60606-2800
Ph: 613-233-1510
Fax: 613-482-9436
E-mail: enquiries@igmaonline.org
Internet: <https://www.igmaonline.org/>

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)
500 New Jersey Avenue, NW
6th Floor, Washington, DC 20001
Ph: 800-786-4452 or 888-422-7233
Fax: 202-783-2348
E-mail: order@iccsafe.org
Internet: <https://www.iccsafe.org/>

INTERNATIONAL CONCRETE REPAIR INSTITUTE (ICRI)
1000 Westgate Drive, Suite 252
St. Paul, MN 55114
Ph: 651-366-6095
Fax: 651-290-2266
E-mail: info@icri.org
Internet: <https://www.icri.org/>

INTERNATIONAL ELECTRICAL TESTING ASSOCIATION (NETA)
3050 Old Centre Ave. Suite 101
Portage, MI 49024
Ph: 269-488-6382
Fax: 269-488-6383
Internet: <https://www.netaworld.org/>

INTERNATIONAL ELECTROTECHNICAL COMMISSION (IEC)
3, rue de Varembe, 1st floor
P.O. Box 131
CH-1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland
Ph: 41-22-919-02-11
Fax: 41-22-919-03-00
E-mail: info@iec.ch
Internet: <https://www.iec.ch/>

INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATION FOR STANDARDIZATION (ISO)
ISO Central Secretariat
BIBC II
Chemin de Blandonnet 8
CP 401 - 1214 Vernier, Geneva
Switzerland
Ph: 41-22-749-01-11

E-mail: central@iso.ch
Internet: <https://www.iso.org>

L.H. BAILEY HORTORIUM (LHBH)
Plant Biology Units
The L.H. Bailey Hortorium and Herbarium
440 Mann Library Building
Ithaca, NY 14853
Ph: 607-255-1052
Fax: 607-254-5407
Internet: <https://plantbio.cals.cornell.edu/hortorium/>

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS
INDUSTRY (MSS)
127 Park Street, NE
Vienna, VA 22180-4602
Ph: 703-281-6613
E-mail: info@msshq.org
Internet: <http://msshq.org>

MASTER PAINTERS INSTITUTE (MPI)
2800 Ingleton Avenue
Burnaby, BC CANADA V5C 6G7
Ph: 1-888-674-8937
Fax: 1-888-211-8708
E-mail: info@paintinfo.com or techservices@mpi.net
Internet: <http://www.mpi.net/>

METAL BUILDING MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (MBMA)
1300 Sumner Avenue
Cleveland, OH 44115-2851
Ph: 216-241-7333
Fax: 216-241-0105
Internet: <https://www.mbma.com/>

MIDWEST INSULATION CONTRACTORS ASSOCIATION (MICA)
16712 Elm Circle
Omaha, NE 68130
Ph: 402-342-3463 or 800-747-6422
Fax: 402-330-9702
Internet: <https://www.micainsulation.org/>

NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF ARCHITECTURAL METAL MANUFACTURERS (NAAMM)
800 Roosevelt Road, Bldg C, Suite 312
Glen Ellyn, IL 60137
Ph: 630-942-6591
Fax: 630-790-3095
E-mail: info@naamm.org
Internet: <http://www.naamm.org>

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL CONTRACTORS ASSOCIATION (NECA)
3 Bethesda Metro Center, Suite 1100
Bethesda, MD 20814
Ph: 301-657-3110
Fax: 301-215-4500
Internet: <https://www.necanet.org/>

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)
1300 North 17th Street, Suite 900

Arlington, VA 22209
Ph: 703-841-3200
Internet: <https://www.nema.org>

NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL BALANCING BUREAU (NEBB)
8575 Grovemont Circle
Gaithersburg, MD 20877
Ph: 301-977-3698
Fax: 301-977-9589
Internet: <http://www.nebb.org>

NATIONAL FENESTRATION RATING COUNCIL (NFRC)
6305 Ivy Lane, Suite 140
Greenbelt, MD 20770
Ph: 301-589-1776
Fax: 301-589-3884
E-Mail: info@nfrc.org
Internet: <http://www.nfrc.org>

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)
1 Batterymarch Park
Quincy, MA 02169-7471
Ph: 800-344-3555
Fax: 800-593-6372
Internet: <https://www.nfpa.org>

NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF STANDARDS AND TECHNOLOGY (NIST)
100 Bureau Drive
Gaithersburg, MD 20899
Ph: 301-975-2000
Internet: <https://www.nist.gov/>

NATIONAL PRECAST CONCRETE ASSOCIATION (NPCA)
1320 City Center Drive, Suite 200
Carmel, IN 46032
Ph: 800 366 7731
Fax: 317-571-0041
Internet: <https://precast.org/>

NATIONAL ROOFING CONTRACTORS ASSOCIATION (NRCA)
10255 West Higgins Road, Suite 600
Rosemont, IL 60018-5607
Ph: 847-299-9070
Fax: 847-299-1183
Internet: <http://www.nrca.net>

NSF INTERNATIONAL (NSF)
789 North Dixboro Road
P.O. Box 130140
Ann Arbor, MI 48105
Ph: 734-769-8010 or 800-NSF-MARK
Fax: 734-769-0109
E-mail: info@nsf.org
Internet: <http://www.nsf.org>

ORGANISATION FOR ECONOMIC CO-OPERATION AND DEVELOPMENT (OECD)
2, rue Andre Pascal
75775 Paris Cedex 16, France
Ph: + 33 1 45 24 82 00

Fax: 33 1 45 24 85 00
Internet: <http://www.oecd.org>
U.S. Contact Center
OECD Washington Center
1776 I Street, NW, Suite 450
Washington, DC 20006
Ph: 202-785-6323
E-mail: washington.contact@oecd.org

PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE INSTITUTE (PDI)
800 Turnpike Street, Suite 300
North Andover, MA 01845
Ph: 978-557-0720 or 800-589-8956
E-Mail: pdi@PDIONline.org
Internet: <http://www.pdionline.org>

PORCELAIN ENAMEL INSTITUTE (PEI)
PO Box 920220
Norcross, GA 30010
Ph: 770-676-9366
Fax: 770-409-7280
E-mail: penamel@aol.com
Internet: <http://www.porcelainenamel.com>

PROGRAMME FOR ENDORSEMENT OF FOREST CERTIFICATION (PEFC)
10, Route de l'Aéroport
Case Postale 638
1215 Geneva - Switzerland
Ph: +41 (22) 799-4540
Fax: +41 (22) 799-4550
Internet: <https://www.pefc.org/>

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)
2000 Powell Street, Suite 600
Emeryville, CA 94608
Ph: 510-452-8000
Fax: 510-452-8001
E-mail: info@SCSglobalservices.com
Internet: <https://www.scsglobalservices.com/>

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION
(SMACNA)
4201 Lafayette Center Drive
Chantilly, VA 20151-1219
Ph: 703-803-2980
Fax: 703-803-3732
Internet: <https://www.smacna.org/>

SOCIETY FOR PROTECTIVE COATINGS (SSPC)
800 Trumbull Drive
Pittsburgh, PA 15205
Ph: 877-281-7772 or 412-281-2331
Fax: 412-444-3591
E-mail: customerservice@sspc.org
Internet: <http://www.sspc.org>

SOCIETY OF AUTOMOTIVE ENGINEERS INTERNATIONAL (SAE)
400 Commonwealth Drive
Warrendale, PA 15096

Ph: 877-606-7323 or 724-776-4841
Fax: 724-776-0790
E-mail: customerservice@sae.org
Internet: <https://www.sae.org/>

SOCIETY OF CABLE TELECOMMUNICATIONS ENGINEERS (SCTE)
140 Philips Road
Exton, PA 19341-1318
Ph: 800-542-5040 or 610-363-6888
Fax: 610-884-7237
E-Mail: info@scte.org
Internet: <https://www.scte.org/>

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)
21865 Copley Drive
Diamond Bar, CA 91765
Ph: 909-396-2000
E-mail: webinquiry@aqmd.gov
Internet: <http://www.aqmd.gov>

STEEL DOOR INSTITUTE (SDI/DOOR)
30200 Detroit Road
Westlake, OH 44145
Ph: 440-899-0010
Fax: 440-892-1404
E-mail: info@steeldoor.org
Internet: <https://www.steeldoor.org/>

STEEL WINDOW INSTITUTE (SWI)
1300 Sumner Avenue
Cleveland, OH 44115-2851
Ph: 216-241-7333
Fax: 216-241-0105
E-mail: swi@steelwindows.com
Internet: <https://www.steelwindows.com/>

SUSTAINABLE FOREST INITIATIVE (SFI)
2121 K Street NW
Suite 750
Washington, DC 20037
Ph: 202-596-3450
Fax: 202-596-3451
E-mail: info@sfiprogram.org
Internet: <http://www.sfiprogram.org>

TECHNICAL ASSOCIATION OF THE PULP AND PAPER INDUSTRY (TAPPI)
15 Technology Parkway South, Suite 115
Peachtree Corners, GA 30092
Ph: 800-332-8686 or 770-446-1400
Fax: 770-446-6947
E-mail: memberconnection@tappi.org
Internet: <http://www.tappi.org>

TELECOMMUNICATIONS INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION (TIA)
1320 North Courthouse Road, Suite 200
Arlington, VA 22201
Ph: 703-907-7700
Fax: 703-907-7727
E-mail: marketing@tiaonline.org

Internet: <https://www.tiaonline.org/>

THE MASONRY SOCIETY (TMS)
105 South Sunset Street, Suite Q
Longmont, CO 80501-6172
Ph: 303-939-9700
Fax: 303-541-9215
E-mail: info@masonrysociety.org
<https://masonrysociety.org/>

TILE COUNCIL OF NORTH AMERICA (TCNA)
100 Clemson Research Boulevard
Anderson, SC 29625
Ph: 864-646-8453
Fax: 864-646-2821
E-mail: info@tileusa.com
Internet: <https://www.tcnatile.com/>

TREE CARE INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION (TCIA)
136 Harvey Road, Suite 101
Londonderry, NH 03053
Ph: 603-314-5380 or 800-733-2622
Fax: 603-314-5386
Internet: <https://tcia.org/>

TRIDIUM, INC (TRIDIUM)
3951 Westerre Parkway, Suite 350
Richmond, VA 23233
Ph: 804-747-4771
Fax: 804-747-5204
E-mail: support@tridium.com
Internet: <https://www.tridium.com/>

TURFGRASS PRODUCERS INTERNATIONAL (TPI)
444 E. Roosevelt Road
#346
Lombard, IL 60148
Ph: 800-405-8873 or 847-649-5555
Fax: 847-649-5678
E-mail: info@turfgrasssod.org
Internet: <http://www.turfgrasssod.org>

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)
CRD-C DOCUMENTS available on Internet:
<http://www.wbdg.org/ffc/army-coe/standards>
Order Other Documents from:
Official Publications of the Headquarters, USACE
E-mail: hqpublications@usace.army.mil
Internet: <http://www.publications.usace.army.mil/>
or
<https://www.hnc.usace.army.mil/Missions/Engineering-Directorate/TECHINFO/>

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE (USDA)
Order AMS Publications from:
AGRICULTURAL MARKETING SERVICE (AMS)
Seed Regulatory and Testing Branch
801 Summit Crossing Place, Suite C
Gastonia, NC 28054-2193
Ph: 704-810-8884

E-mail: PA@ams.usda.gov
Internet: <https://www.ams.usda.gov/>
Order Other Publications from:
USDA Rural Development
Rural Utilities Service
STOP 1510, Rm 5135
1400 Independence Avenue SW
Washington, DC 20250-1510
Phone: (202) 720-9540
Internet:
<https://www.rd.usda.gov/about-rd/agencies/rural-utilities-service>

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)
Order DOD Documents from:
Room 3A750-The Pentagon
1400 Defense Pentagon
Washington, DC 20301-1400
Ph: 703-571-3343
Fax: 215-697-1462
E-mail: customerservice@ntis.gov
Internet: <https://www.ntis.gov/>
Obtain Military Specifications, Standards and Related Publications
from:
Acquisition Streamlining and Standardization Information System
(ASSIST)
Department of Defense Single Stock Point (DODSSP)
Document Automation and Production Service (DAPS)
Building 4/D
700 Robbins Avenue
Philadelphia, PA 19111-5094
Ph: 215-697-6396 - for account/password issues
Internet: <https://assist.dla.mil/online/start/>; account
registration required
Obtain Unified Facilities Criteria (UFC) from:
Whole Building Design Guide (WBDG)
National Institute of Building Sciences (NIBS)
1090 Vermont Avenue NW, Suite 700
Washington, DC 20005
Ph: 202-289-7800
Fax: 202-289-1092
Internet:
<https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-criteria-ufc>

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY (DOE)
1000 Independence Avenue Southwest
Washington, D.C. 20585
Ph: 202-586-5000
Fax: 202-586-4403
E-mail: The.Secretary@hq.doe.gov
Internet: <https://www.energy.gov/>

U.S. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA)
1200 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W.
Washington, DC 20004
Ph: 202-564-4700
Internet: <https://www.epa.gov>
--- Some EPA documents are available only from:
National Technical Information Service (NTIS)
5301 Shawnee Road

Alexandria, VA 22312
Ph: 703-605-6060 or 1-800-363-2068
Fax: 703-605-6880
TDD: 703-487-4639
E-mail: info@ntis.gov
Internet: <https://www.ntis.gov/>

U.S. FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION (FAA)
Order for sale documents from:
Superintendent of Documents
U.S. Government Publishing Office (GPO)
732 N. Capitol Street, NW
Washington, DC 20401
Ph: 202-512-1800 or 866-512-1800
Bookstore: 202-512-0132
Internet: <https://www.gpo.gov/>
Order free documents from:
U.S. Department of Transportation
Federal Aviation Administration
800 Independence Avenue, SW
Washington, DC 20591
Ph: 866-835-5322
Internet: <https://www.faa.gov/>

U.S. FEDERAL COMMUNICATIONS COMMISSION (FCC)
445 12th Street SW
Washington, DC 20554
Ph: 888-225-5322
TTY: 888-835-5322
Fax: 866-418-0232
Internet: <https://www.fcc.gov/>
Order Publications From:
Superintendent of Documents
U.S. Government Publishing Office (GPO)
732 N. Capitol Street, NW
Washington, DC 20401
Ph: 202-512-1800 or 866-512-1800
Bookstore: 202-512-0132
Internet: <https://www.gpo.gov/>

U.S. FEDERAL HIGHWAY ADMINISTRATION (FHWA)
1200 New Jersey Ave., SE
Washington, DC 20590
Ph: 202-366-4000
E-mail: ExecSecretariat.FHWA@dot.gov
Internet: <https://www.fhwa.dot.gov/>
Order from:
Superintendent of Documents
U.S. Government Publishing Office (GPO)
732 N. Capitol Street, NW
Washington, DC 20401
Ph: 202-512-1800 or 866-512-1800
Bookstore: 202-512-0132
Internet: <https://www.gpo.gov/>

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)
General Services Administration
1800 F Street, NW
Washington, DC 20405

Ph: 1-844-472-4111
Internet: <https://www.gsaelibrary.gsa.gov/ElilibMain/home.do>
Obtain documents from:
Acquisition Streamlining and Standardization Information System
(ASSIST)
Internet: <https://assist.dla.mil/online/start/>; account
registration required

U. S. GREEN BUILDING COUNCIL (USGBC)
2101 L St NW, Suite 500
Washington, DC 20037
Ph: 202-828-7422
Internet: <https://new.usgbc.org/>

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)
8601 Adelphi Road
College Park, MD 20740-6001
Ph: 866-272-6272
Internet: <https://www.archives.gov/>
Order documents from:
Superintendent of Documents
U.S. Government Publishing Office (GPO)
732 N. Capitol Street, NW
Washington, DC 20401
Ph: 202-512-1800 or 866-512-1800
Bookstore: 202-512-0132
Internet: <https://www.gpo.gov/>

UL ENVIRONMENT (ULE)
2211 Newmarket Parkway, Suite 106
Marietta, GA 30067
Ph: 888-485-4733
E-mail: environment@ul.com
Internet: <https://industries.ul.com/environment/>

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)
2600 N.W. Lake Road
Camas, WA 98607-8542
Ph: 877-854-3577 or 360-817-5500
E-mail: CustomerExperienceCenter@ul.com
Internet: <https://www.ul.com/>
UL Directories available through IHS at <https://ihsmarkit.com/>

UNI-BELL PVC PIPE ASSOCIATION (UBPPA)
Corporate Headquarters
2711 LBJ Freeway, Suite 1000
Dallas, TX 75234
Ph: 972-243-3902
Fax: 972-243-3907
E-mail: info@uni-bell.org
Internet: <https://www.uni-bell.org/>

WINDOW AND DOOR MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (WDMA)
2025 M Street, NW, Suite 800
Washington, DC 20036-3309
Ph: 202-367-1157
or
330 N Wabash Avenue, Suite 2000
Chicago, IL 60611

SOF Marine Raider Regiment HQ P-1395
MARSOC Camp Lejeune, NC

Final Design Submittal

Ph: 312-321-6802
E-mail: membersupport@wdma.com
Internet: <https://www.wdma.com/>

WOODWORK INSTITUTE (WI)
3188 Industrial Blvd.
West Sacramento, CA 95691
Ph: 916-372-9943
Fax: 916-372-9950
E-mail: info@woodinst.com
Internet: <https://woodworkinstitute.com>

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not used

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not used

-- End of Section --

SECTION 01 45 00.00 20

QUALITY CONTROL

11/11

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 52.2 (2012) Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D6245 (2012) Using Indoor Carbon Dioxide Concentrations to Evaluate Indoor Air Quality and Ventilation

ASTM D6345 (2010) Standard Guide for Selection of Methods for Active, Integrative Sampling of Volatile Organic Compounds in Air

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC IBC (2018) International Building Code

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION (SMACNA)

ANSI/SMACNA 008 (2007) IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction, 2nd Edition

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1 (2014) Safety and Health Requirements Manual

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Construction Quality Control (QC) Plan; G

Submit a Construction QC Plan prior to start of construction.

Indoor Air Quality (IAQ) Management Plan; G

Basis of Design and Design Intent

SD-05 Design Data

Design Review

Contract Document Review

SD-07 Certificates

CA Resume

Special Inspections Certification, Mechanical QC Specialist; G

Special Inspections Certification, Soils Testing/Pile Installation
and Testing QC Specialist; G

Special Inspections Certification, Structural QC Specialist; G

Special Inspections Certification, Building Envelope QC Specialist;
G

Special Inspections Certification, Electrical and
Telecommunications Systems QC Specialist; G

1.3 INFORMATION FOR THE CONTRACTING OFFICER

Prior to commencing work on construction, the Contractor can obtain a single copy set of the current report forms from the Contracting Officer. The report forms will consist of the Contractor Production Report, Contractor Production Report (Continuation Sheet), Contractor Quality Control (CQC) Report, CQC Report (Continuation Sheet), Preparatory Phase Checklist, Initial Phase Checklist, Rework Items List, and Testing Plan and Log.

Deliver the following to the Contracting Officer during Construction:

- a. CQC Report: Mail or hand-carry the original (wet signatures) and one copy by 10:00 AM the next working day after each day that work is performed and for every seven consecutive calendar days of no-work.
- b. Contractor Production Report: Mail or hand-carry the original (wet signatures) and one copy by 10:00 AM the next working day after each day that work is performed and for every seven consecutive calendar days of no-work, attached to the CQC Report.
- c. Preparatory Phase Checklist: Original attached to the original CQC Report and one copy attached to each QC Report copy.
- d. Initial Phase Checklist: Original attached to the original CQC Report and one copy attached to each QC Report copy.
- e. QC Specialist Reports: Mail or hand-carry the original (wet signatures) and one copy by 10:00 AM the next working day after each day that work is performed.

- f. Field Test Reports: Mail or hand-carry the original within two working days after the test is performed, attached to the original CQC Report and one copy attached to each QC Report copy.
- g. Monthly Summary Report of Tests: Mail or hand-carry the original attached to the last QC Report of the month.
- h. Testing Plan and Log: Mail or hand-carry the original attached to the last CQC Report of each month and one copy attached to each CQC Report copy. Provide a copy of the final Testing Plan and Log to the OMSI preparer for inclusion into the OMSI documentation.
- i. Rework Items List: Mail or hand-carry the original attached to the last CQC Report of each month and one copy attached to each CQC Report copy.
- j. CQC Meeting Minutes: Mail or hand-carry the original within two working days after the meeting is held, attached to the original CQC Report and one copy attached to each CQC Report copy.
- k. QC Certifications: As required by the paragraph entitled "QC Certifications."
- l. Special Inspection Report: Submit the Special Inspection reports, in the same manner as the CQC Report.

1.4 QC PROGRAM REQUIREMENTS

Establish and maintain a QC program as described in this section. This QC program is a key element in meeting the objectives of NAVFAC Commissioning. The QC program consists of a QC Organization, QC Plan, QC Plan Meeting(s), a Coordination and Mutual Understanding Meeting, QC meetings, three phases of control, submittal review and approval, testing, completion inspections, QC certifications, independent Special Inspections in accordance with Section 01 45 35 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS, and documentation necessary to provide materials, equipment, workmanship, fabrication, construction and operations which comply with the requirements of this Contract. The QC program must cover on-site and off-site work and be keyed to the work sequence. No construction work or testing may be performed unless the QC Manager is on the work site. The QC Manager must report to an officer of the firm and not be subordinate to the Project Superintendent or the Project Manager. The QC Manager, Project Superintendent and Project Manager must work together effectively. Although the QC Manager is the primary individual responsible for quality control, all individuals will be held responsible for the quality of work on the job.

1.4.1 Commissioning

Commissioning (Cx) is a systematic process of ensuring that all building systems meet the requirements and perform interactively according to the Contract. The QC Program is a key to this process by coordinating, verifying and documenting measures to achieve the following objectives:

- a. Verify and document that the applicable equipment and systems are installed in accordance with the design intent as expressed through the Contract and according to the manufacturer's recommendations and industry accepted minimum standards.

- b. Verify and document that equipment and systems receive complete operational checkout by the installing contractors.
- c. Verify and document proper performance of equipment and systems.
- d. Verify that Operation and Maintenance (O&M) documentation is complete.
- e. Verify the Training Plan and training materials are accurate and provide correct instruction and documentation on the critical elements of the products, materials, and systems in the constructed facility. Verify that all identified Government operating personnel are trained.
- f. Verify and document that all contract requirements for LEED fundamental commissioning are met.

1.4.2 Acceptance of the Construction Quality Control (QC) Plan

Acceptance of the QC Plan is required prior to the start of construction. The Contracting Officer reserves the right to require changes in the QC Plan and operations as necessary, including removal of personnel, to ensure the specified quality of work. The Contracting Officer reserves the right to interview any member of the QC organization at any time in order to verify the submitted qualifications. All QC organization personnel are subject to acceptance by the Contracting Officer. The Contracting Officer may require the removal of any individual for non-compliance with quality requirements specified in the Contract.

1.4.3 Preliminary Construction Work Authorized Prior to Acceptance

The only construction work that is authorized to proceed prior to the acceptance of the QC Plan is mobilization of storage and office trailers, temporary utilities, and surveying.

1.4.4 Notification of Changes

Notify the Contracting Officer, in writing, of any proposed changes in the QC Plan or changes to the QC organization personnel, a minimum of 10 work days prior to a proposed change. Proposed changes are subject to acceptance by the Contracting Officer.

1.4.5 Special Inspections

Perform all required Special Inspections per Section 01 45 35 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS, the statement of Special Inspections and the Schedule of Special Inspections.

1.5 QC ORGANIZATION

1.5.1 QC Manager

1.5.1.1 Duties

Provide a QC Manager at the work site to implement and manage the QC program, and may serve as the Site Safety and Health Officer (SSHO) as detailed in Section 01 35 26 GOVERNMENTAL SAFETY REQUIREMENTS. The QC Manager is required to attend the partnering meetings, QC Plan Meetings, Coordination and Mutual Understanding Meeting, conduct the QC meetings, perform the three phases of control except for those phases of control designated to be performed by QC Specialists, perform submittal review and approval, ensure

testing is performed and provide QC certifications and documentation required in this Contract. The QC Manager is responsible for managing and coordinating the three phases of control and documentation performed by the QC Specialists, testing laboratory personnel and any other inspection and testing personnel required by this Contract. The QC Manager is the manager of all QC activities. The QC manager is responsible for notifying the Special Inspector of activities which require their review. The QC manager is responsible for coordinating the Special Inspection activities, see paragraph QUALITY CONTROL MANAGER, in Section 01 45 35 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS.

1.5.1.2 Qualifications

An individual with a minimum of 10 years combined experience in the following positions: Project Superintendent, QC Manager, Project Manager, Project Engineer or Construction Manager on similar size and type construction contracts which included the major trades that are part of this Contract. The individual must have at least two years experience as a QC Manager. The individual must be familiar with the requirements of EM 385-1-1, and have experience in the areas of hazard identification, safety compliance, and sustainability.

1.5.2 Commissioning Authority

1.5.2.1 Duties

Provide a Commissioning Authority (CA) as key person for the Cx and documentation thereof, who is subordinate to the QC Manager. The CA directs and coordinates Cx activities and submits Cx reports to the Contracting Officer to meet the submittal and reporting requirements of Commissioning and develops the commissioning plan. The CA coordinates the actions of the QC Specialists, Testing Laboratory personnel, eOMSI Preparer, and other inspection and testing personnel required by this Contract for building Cx.

1.5.2.2 Qualifications

The CA must be certified as a commissioning professional by the Associated Air Balance Council (AABC) Commissioning Group (ACG), the Association of Energy Engineers (AEE), the American Society of Heating, Refrigeration, and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE), the Commissioning Process Management Professional (CPMP), the Building Commissioning Association (BCA), the National Environmental Balancing Bureau (NEBB), or the University of Wisconsin - Madison (UWM). CA resume is required, providing education, experience and management capabilities on at least two similar size and type contracts. The CA may not have been involved with the project design, construction management, or supervision, and must be with a third-party firm that is not on the design team.

1.5.3 Construction Quality Management Training

In addition to the above experience and education requirements, the QC Manager must have completed the course entitled "Construction Quality Management (CQM) for Contractors." If the QC Manager does not have a current certification, they must obtain the CQM for Contractors course certification within 90 days of award. This course is periodically offered by the Naval Facilities Engineering Command and the Army Corps of Engineers. Contact the Contracting Officer for information on the next scheduled class.

1.5.4 Alternate QC Manager Duties and Qualifications

Designate an alternate for the QC Manager at the work site to serve in the event of the designated QC Manager's absence. The period of absence may not exceed two weeks at one time, and not more than 30 workdays during a calendar year. The qualification requirements for the Alternate QC Manager must be the same as for the QC Manager.

1.5.5 QC Specialists Duties and Qualifications

Provide a separate QC Specialist at the work site for each of the areas of responsibilities, specified in Part 3, Execution, of the technical sections, who must assist and report to the QC Manager and who may perform production related duties but must be allowed sufficient time to perform their assigned quality control duties. QC Specialists are required to attend the QC meetings and be physically present at the construction site to perform the three phases of control and prepare documentation for each definable feature of work in their area of responsibility at the frequency specified below.

1.5.5.1 Mechanical QC Specialist

Provide ICC IBC Special Inspections Certification from the following specialist(s):

<u>Qualification/Experience in Area of Responsibility</u>	<u>Area of Responsibility</u>	<u>Frequency</u>
Plumbing Inspector International Conference of Building Officials (ICBO) Certified / 5 Years Minimum	Installation and Testing of Rainwater Reclamation System	Minimum 2 times a week during installation and full-time during testing
Mechanical Inspector, International Conference of Building Officials (ICBO) Certified / 5 Years Minimum	Installation and Testing of Boilers and Chillers	Minimum 3 times a week during installation and full-time during testing and TABs
Certified Elevator Inspector, certified by an organization accredited by ASME / 5 years minimum	Pretesting to ensure safety code, specification, and building code compliance; provide testing verification report prior to beginning final acceptance test	Once every two weeks during installation, full-time during pre-testing
Registered Mechanical Engineer (PE) / QC Specialist	Testing of Installed Mechanical Systems	Full-time during testing and TABs

1.5.5.2 Soils Testing/Pile Installation and Testing QC Specialist

Provide ICC IBC Special Inspections Certification from the following specialist(s):

<u>Qualification/Experience in Area of Responsibility</u>	<u>Area of Responsibility</u>	<u>Frequency</u>
Registered Engineer (PE) or under the supervision of a PE	Soil testing, Pile Installation and testing	As required in ICC IBC Chapter 17

1.5.5.3 Structural QC Specialist

Provide ICC IBC Special Inspections Certification from the following specialist(s):

<u>Qualification/Experience in Area of Responsibility</u>	<u>Area of Responsibility</u>	<u>Frequency</u>
Registered Engineer (PE) or under the supervision of a PE	As required in ICC IBC Chapter 17	As required in ICC IBC Chapter 17

1.5.5.4 Building Envelope QC Specialist

Provide ICC IBC Special Inspections Certification from the following specialist(s):

<u>Qualification/Experience in Area of Responsibility</u>	<u>Area of Responsibility</u>	<u>Frequency</u>
Roofing Manufacturer's Technical Representative / 5 years minimum with roofing system used	Installation and Testing of Roofing	Once a week during installation, two times a week during flashing installation and full-time during roof testing

1.5.5.5 Electrical and Telecommunications Systems QC Specialist

Provide ICC IBC Special Inspections Certification from the following specialist(s):

<u>Qualification/Experience in Area of Responsibility</u>	<u>Area of Responsibility</u>	<u>Frequency</u>
Electrical Inspector Crew Supervision for 10 years minimum, Master Electrician licensed in North Carolina	Electrical Systems, All Division 26 Sections, and Division 23 Elec. Sections	Full-time during installation and testing all systems
Telecommunications Systems Installation Specialist 10 years minimum experience in telecommunications systems installation	Telecommunications Systems, All Division 27, 28 Sections and Division 33 Outside Plant (OSP) work	Full-time during systems installation and testing

1.5.6 Special Inspector

The Special Inspector (SI) must be an independent third party hired directly by the Prime Contractor. The SI must not be a company employee of the Contractor or any Sub-Contractor performing the work to be inspected. The qualifications of the SI are defined in Section 01 45 35 SPECIAL INSPECTION.

1.6 QUALITY CONTROL (QC) PLAN

1.6.1 Construction Quality Control (QC) Plan

1.6.1.1 Requirements

Provide, for acceptance by the Contracting Officer, a Construction QC Plan submitted in a three-ring binder that includes a table of contents, with major sections identified with tabs, with pages numbered sequentially, and that documents the proposed methods and responsibilities for accomplishing quality control commissioning activities during the construction of the project:

- a. QC ORGANIZATION: A chart showing the QC organizational structure.
- b. NAMES AND QUALIFICATIONS: Names and qualifications, in resume format, for each person in the QC organization. Include the CQM for Contractors course certifications for the QC Manager and Alternate QC Manager as required by the paragraphs entitled "Construction Quality Management Training" and "Alternate QC Manager Duties and Qualifications".
- c. DUTIES, RESPONSIBILITY AND AUTHORITY OF QC PERSONNEL: Duties, responsibilities, and authorities of each person in the QC organization.
- d. OUTSIDE ORGANIZATIONS: A listing of outside organizations, such as architectural and consulting engineering firms, that will be employed by the Contractor and a description of the services these firms will provide.
- e. APPOINTMENT LETTERS: Letters signed by an officer of the firm appointing the QC Manager and Alternate QC Manager and stating that

they are responsible for implementing and managing the QC program as described in this Contract. Include in this letter the responsibility of the QC Manager and Alternate QC Manager to implement and manage the three phases of control, and their authority to stop work which is not in compliance with the Contract. Letters of direction are to be issued by the QC Manager to all other QC Specialists outlining their duties, authorities, and responsibilities. Include copies of the letters in the QC Plan.

- f. SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES AND INITIAL SUBMITTAL REGISTER: Procedures for reviewing, approving, and managing submittals. Provide the name(s) of the person(s) in the QC organization authorized to review and certify submittals prior to approval. Provide the initial submittal of the Submittal Register as specified in Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.
- g. TESTING LABORATORY INFORMATION: Testing laboratory information required by the paragraphs entitled "Accreditation Requirements", as applicable.
- h. TESTING PLAN AND LOG: A Testing Plan and Log that includes the tests required, referenced by the specification paragraph number requiring the test, the frequency, and the person responsible for each test. Use Government forms to log and track tests.
- i. PROCEDURES TO COMPLETE REWORK ITEMS: Procedures to identify, record, track, and complete rework items. Use Government forms to record and track rework items.
- j. DOCUMENTATION PROCEDURES: Use Government form.
- k. LIST OF DEFINABLE FEATURES: A Definable Feature of Work (DFOW) is a task that is separate and distinct from other tasks and has control requirements and work crews unique to that task. A DFOW is identified by different trades or disciplines and is an item or activity on the construction schedule. Include in the list of DFOWs, but not be limited to, all critical path activities on the NAS. Include all activities for which this specification requires QC Specialists or specialty inspection personnel. Provide separate DFOWs in the Network Analysis Schedule for each design development stage and submittal package.
- l. PROCEDURES FOR PERFORMING THE THREE PHASES OF CONTROL: Identify procedures used to ensure the three phases of control to manage the quality on this project. For each DFOW, a Preparatory and Initial phase checklist will be filled out during the Preparatory and Initial phase meetings. Conduct the Preparatory and Initial Phases and meetings with a view towards obtaining quality construction by planning ahead and identifying potential problems for each DFOW.
- m. PERSONNEL MATRIX: Not Applicable
- n. PROCEDURES FOR COMPLETION INSPECTION: Procedures for identifying and documenting the completion inspection process. Include in these procedures the responsible party for punch out inspection, pre-final inspection, and final acceptance inspection.
- o. TRAINING PROCEDURES AND TRAINING LOG: Procedures for coordinating and documenting the training of personnel required by the Contract.

- p. ORGANIZATION AND PERSONNEL CERTIFICATIONS LOG: Procedures for coordinating, tracking and documenting all certifications on subcontractors, testing laboratories, suppliers, personnel, etc. QC Manager will ensure that certifications are current, appropriate for the work being performed, and will not lapse during any period of the contract that the work is being performed.

1.7 COORDINATION AND MUTUAL UNDERSTANDING MEETING

After submission of the QC Plan, and prior to Government approval and the start of construction, the QC Manager will meet with the Contracting Officer to present the QC program required by this Contract. When a new QC Manager is appointed, the coordination and mutual understanding meeting must be repeated.

1.7.1 Purpose

The purpose of this meeting is to develop a mutual understanding of the QC details, including documentation, administration for on-site and off-site work, design intent, Cx, environmental requirements and procedures, coordination of activities to be performed, Special Inspections, and the coordination of the Contractor's management, production, and QC personnel. At the meeting, the Contractor will be required to explain in detail how three phases of control will be implemented for each DFOW, as well as how each DFOW will be affected by each management plan or requirement as listed below:

- a. Waste Management Plan.
- b. IAQ Management Plan.
- c. Procedures for noise and acoustics management.
- d. Environmental Protection Plan.
- e. Environmental regulatory requirements.
- f. Cx Plan.
- g. Special Inspections.

1.7.2 Coordination of Activities

Coordinate activities included in various sections to assure efficient and orderly installation of each component. Coordinate operations included under different sections that are dependent on each other for proper installation and operation. Schedule construction operations with consideration for indoor air quality as specified in the IAQ Management Plan. Coordinate prefunctional tests and startup testing with Cx. Coordinate special inspections.

1.7.3 Attendees

As a minimum, the Contractor's personnel required to attend include an officer of the firm, the Project Manager, Project Superintendent, QC Manager, Alternate QC Manager, QC Specialists, Special Inspector, CA, Environmental Manager, and subcontractor representatives. Each subcontractor who will be assigned QC responsibilities must have a

principal of the firm at the meeting. Minutes of the meeting will be prepared by the QC Manager and signed by the Contractor and the Contracting Officer. Provide a copy of the signed minutes to all attendees and include in the QC Plan.

1.8 QC MEETINGS

After the start of construction, conduct QC meetings once every two weeks by the QC Manager at the work site with the Project Superintendent, the QC Specialists, the Special Inspector, the CA, and the foremen who are performing the work of the DFOWs. The QC Manager is to prepare the minutes of the meeting and provide a copy to the Contracting Officer within two working days after the meeting. The Contracting Officer may attend these meetings. As a minimum, accomplish the following at each meeting:

- a. Review the minutes of the previous meeting.
- b. Review the schedule and the status of work and rework.
- c. Review the status of submittals.
- d. Review the work to be accomplished in the next two weeks and documentation required.
- e. Resolve QC and production problems (RFI, etc.).
- f. Address items that may require revising the QC Plan.
- g. Review Accident Prevention Plan (APP).
- h. Review environmental requirements and procedures.
- i. Review Waste Management Plan.
- j. Review IAQ Management Plan.
- k. Review Environmental Management Plan.
- l. Review the status of training completion.
- m. Review Cx Plan and progress.

1.9 DESIGN REVIEW AND DOCUMENTATION

1.9.1 Basis of Design and Design Intent

The CA must review the basis of design received from the Contracting Officer and the design intent. The Basis of Design is not part of the contract documents, but will be provided by the Contracting Officer upon request. Document the Basis of Design review in the Design Review report required below.

1.9.2 Design Review

The CA must review design documents to verify that each commissioned system meets the design intent relative to functionality, energy performance, water performance, maintainability, sustainability, system cost, indoor environmental quality, and local environmental impacts. Fully document design review in written report.

1.9.3 Contract Document Review

The CA must review the Contract documents to verify that Cx is adequately specified, and that each commissioned system is likely to meet the design intent relative to functionality, energy performance, water performance, maintainability, sustainability, system cost, indoor environmental quality, and local environmental impacts. Fully document contract document review in written report.

1.10 THREE PHASES OF CONTROL

Adequately cover both on-site and off-site work with the Three Phases of Control and include the following for each DFOW.

1.10.1 Preparatory Phase

Notify the Contracting Officer at least two work days in advance of each preparatory phase meeting. The meeting will be conducted by the QC Manager and attended by the QC Specialists, the Project Superintendent, the CA, the Special Inspector, and the foreman responsible for the DFOW. When the DFOW will be accomplished by a subcontractor, that subcontractor's foreman must attend the preparatory phase meeting. Document the results of the preparatory phase actions in the daily Contractor Quality Control Report and in the Preparatory Phase Checklist. Perform the following prior to beginning work on each DFOW:

- a. Review each paragraph of the applicable specification sections.
- b. Review the Contract drawings.
- c. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on construction and/or shop drawings before confirming product orders, in order to minimize waste due to excessive materials.
- d. Verify that appropriate shop drawings and submittals for materials and equipment have been submitted and approved. Verify receipt of approved factory test results, when required.
- e. Review the testing plan and ensure that provisions have been made to provide the required QC testing.
- f. Review special inspections required by Section 01 45 35 SPECIAL INSPECTION, the statement of special inspections and the schedule of special inspections.
- g. Examine the work area to ensure that the required preliminary work has been completed.
- h. Coordinate the schedule of product delivery to designated prepared areas in order to minimize site storage time and potential damage to stored materials.
- i. Arrange for the return of shipping/packaging materials, such as wood pallets, where economically feasible.
- j. Examine the required materials, equipment and sample work to ensure that they are on hand and conform to the approved shop drawings and submitted data and are properly stored.

- k. Discuss specific controls used and construction methods, construction tolerances, workmanship standards, and the approach that will be used to provide quality construction by planning ahead and identifying potential problems for each DFOW.
- l. Review the APP and appropriate Activity Hazard Analysis (AHA) to ensure that applicable safety requirements are met, and that required Safety Data Sheets (SDS) are submitted.
- m. Review the Cx Plan and ensure all preliminary work items have been completed and documented.

1.10.2 Initial Phase

Notify the Contracting Officer at least two work days in advance of each initial phase. When construction crews are ready to start work on a DFOW, conduct the initial phase with the QC Specialists, the Project Superintendent, the Special Inspector, and the foreman responsible for that DFOW. Observe the initial segment of the DFOW to ensure that the work complies with Contract requirements. Document the results of the initial phase in the daily CQC Report and in the Initial Phase Checklist. Repeat the initial phase for each new crew to work on-site, or when acceptable levels of specified quality are not being met. Perform the following for each DFOW:

- a. Establish level of workmanship and verify that it meets the minimum acceptable workmanship standards. Compare with required sample panels as appropriate.
- b. Resolve any workmanship issues.
- c. Ensure that testing is performed by the approved laboratory.
- d. Check work procedures for compliance with the APP and the appropriate AHA to ensure that applicable safety requirements are met.
- e. Review project specific work plans (i.e. Cx, HAZMAT Abatement, Stormwater Management) to ensure all preparatory work items have been completed and documented.
- f. Coordinate scheduled work with special inspections required by Section 01 45 35 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS, the statement of special inspections and the schedule of special inspections.

1.10.3 Follow-Up Phase

Perform the following for on-going work daily, or more frequently as necessary, until the completion of each DFOW and document in the daily CQC Report:

- a. Ensure the work is in compliance with Contract requirements.
- b. Maintain the quality of workmanship required.
- c. Ensure that testing is performed by the approved laboratory.
- d. Ensure that rework items are being corrected.

- e. Assure manufacturers representatives have performed necessary inspections if required and perform safety inspections.
- f. Review the Cx Plan and ensure all work items, testing, and documentation has been completed.
- g. Coordinate scheduled work with special inspections required by Section 01 45 35 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS, the statement of special inspections and the schedule of special inspections.

1.10.4 Additional Preparatory and Initial Phases

Conduct additional preparatory and initial phases on the same DFOW if the quality of on-going work is unacceptable, if there are changes in the applicable QC organization, if there are changes in the on-site production supervision or work crew, if work on a DFOW is resumed after substantial period of inactivity, or if other problems develop.

1.10.5 Notification of Three Phases of Control for Off-Site Work

Notify the Contracting Officer at least two weeks prior to the start of the preparatory and initial phases.

1.11 SUBMITTAL REVIEW AND APPROVAL

Procedures for submission, review and approval of submittals are described in Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.

1.12 TESTING

Except as stated otherwise in the specification sections, perform sampling and testing required under this Contract.

1.12.1 Accreditation Requirements

Construction materials testing laboratories must be accredited by a laboratory accreditation authority and will be required to submit a copy of the Certificate of Accreditation and Scope of Accreditation. The laboratory's scope of accreditation must include the appropriate ASTM standards (E 329, C 1077, D 3666, D 3740, A 880, E 543) listed in the technical sections of the specifications. Laboratories engaged in Hazardous Materials Testing must meet the requirements of OSHA and EPA. The policy applies to the specific laboratory performing the actual testing, not just the Corporate Office.

1.12.2 Laboratory Accreditation Authorities

Laboratory Accreditation Authorities include the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) administered by the National Institute of Standards and Technology at <https://www.nist.gov/nvlap>, the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) Accreditation Program at <http://www.aashtoresource.org/aap/overview>, International Accreditation Services, Inc. (IAS) at <http://www.iasonline.org>, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Materials Testing Center (MTC) at <http://www.erdc.usace.army.mil/Media/FactSheets/FactSheetArticleView/tabid/9254/Article/476661/materials-testing-center.aspx>, the American Association for Laboratory Accreditation (A2LA) program at <http://www.a2la.org/>, the Washington Association of Building Officials (WABO) at <http://www.wabo.org/> (Approval authority for WABO is limited to projects within Washington

State), and the Washington Area Council of Engineering Laboratories (WACEL) at <https://www.wacel.org/lab-accreditation-and-inspection-agency-audit-programs/laboratory-accreditation-program/> (Approval authority by WACEL is limited to projects within Facilities Engineering Command (FEC) Washington geographical area).

1.12.3 Capability Check

The Contracting Officer retains the right to check laboratory equipment in the proposed laboratory and the laboratory technician's testing procedures, techniques, and other items pertinent to testing, for compliance with the standards set forth in this Contract.

1.12.4 Test Results

Cite applicable Contract requirements, tests or analytical procedures used. Provide actual results and include a statement that the item tested or analyzed conforms or fails to conform to specified requirements. If the item fails to conform, notify the Contracting Officer immediately. Conspicuously stamp the cover sheet for each report in large red letters "CONFORMS" or "DOES NOT CONFORM" to the specification requirements, whichever is applicable. Test results must be signed by a testing laboratory representative authorized to sign certified test reports. Furnish the signed reports, certifications, and other documentation to the Contracting Officer via the QC Manager. Furnish a summary report of field tests at the end of each month, in accordance with paragraph INFORMATION FOR THE CONTRACTING OFFICER.

1.12.5 Test Reports and Monthly Summary Report of Tests

Furnish the signed reports, certifications, and a summary report of field tests at the end of each month to the Contracting Officer. Attach a copy of the summary report to the last daily Contractor Quality Control Report of each month. Provide a copy of the signed test reports and certifications to the OMSI preparer for inclusion into the OMSI documentation.

1.13 QC CERTIFICATIONS

1.13.1 CQC Report Certification

Contain the following statement within the CQC Report: "On behalf of the Contractor, I certify that this report is complete and correct and equipment and material used and work performed during this reporting period is in compliance with the contract drawings and specifications to the best of my knowledge, except as noted in this report."

1.13.2 Invoice Certification

Furnish a certificate to the Contracting Officer with each payment request, signed by the QC Manager, attesting that as-built drawings are current, coordinated and attesting that the work for which payment is requested, including stored material, is in compliance with Contract requirements.

1.13.3 Completion Certification

Upon completion of work under this Contract, the QC Manager must furnish a certificate to the Contracting Officer attesting that "the work has been completed, inspected, tested and is in compliance with the Contract."

Provide a copy of this final QC Certification for completion to the OMSI preparer for inclusion into the OMSI documentation.

1.14 COMPLETION INSPECTIONS

1.14.1 Punch-Out Inspection

Near the completion of all work or any increment thereof, established by a completion time stated in the Contract Clause entitled "Commencement, Prosecution, and Completion of Work," or stated elsewhere in the specifications, the QC Manager and the CA must conduct an inspection of the work and develop a "punch list" of items which do not conform to the approved drawings, specifications and Contract. Include in the punch list any remaining items on the "Rework Items List", which were not corrected prior to the Punch-Out Inspection. Include within the punch list the estimated date by which the deficiencies will be corrected. Provide a copy of the punch list to the Contracting Officer. The QC Manager, or staff, must make follow-on inspections to ascertain that all deficiencies have been corrected. Once this is accomplished, notify the Government that the facility is ready for the Government "Pre-Final Inspection".

1.14.2 Pre-Final Inspection

The Government and QCM will perform this inspection to verify that the facility is complete and ready to be occupied. A Government "Pre-Final Punch List" will be documented by the CQM as a result of this inspection. The QC Manager will ensure that all items on this list are corrected prior to notifying the Government that a "Final" inspection with the Client can be scheduled. Any items noted on the "Pre-Final" inspection must be corrected in a timely manner and be accomplished before the contract completion date for the work, or any particular increment thereof, if the project is divided into increments by separate completion dates.

1.14.3 Final Acceptance Inspection

Notify the Contracting Officer at least 14 calendar days prior to the date a final acceptance inspection can be held. State within the notice that all items previously identified on the pre-final punch list will be corrected and acceptable, along with any other unfinished Contract work, by the date of the final acceptance inspection. The Contractor must be represented by the QC Manager, the Project Superintendent, the CA, and others deemed necessary. Attendees for the Government will include the Contracting Officer, other FEAD/ROICC personnel, and personnel representing the Client. Failure of the Contractor to have all contract work acceptably complete for this inspection will be cause for the Contracting Officer to bill the Contractor for the Government's additional inspection cost in accordance with the Contract Clause entitled "Inspection of Construction."

1.15 DOCUMENTATION

Maintain current and complete records of on-site and off-site QC program operations and activities.

1.15.1 Construction Documentation

Reports are required for each day that work is performed and must be attached to the Contractor Quality Control Report prepared for the same day. Maintain current and complete records of on-site and off-site QC program operations and activities. The forms identified under the

paragraph "INFORMATION FOR THE CONTRACTING OFFICER" will be used. Reports are required for each day work is performed. Account for each calendar day throughout the life of the Contract. Every space on the forms must be filled in. Use N/A if nothing can be reported in one of the spaces. The Project Superintendent and the QC Manager must prepare and sign the Contractor Production and CQC Reports, respectively. The reporting of work must be identified by terminology consistent with the construction schedule. In the "remarks" sections of the reports, enter pertinent information including directions received, problems encountered during construction, work progress and delays, conflicts or errors in the drawings or specifications, field changes, safety hazards encountered, instructions given and corrective actions taken, delays encountered and a record of visitors to the work site, quality control problem areas, deviations from the QC Plan, construction deficiencies encountered, meetings held. For each entry in the report(s), identify the Schedule Activity No. that is associated with the entered remark.

1.15.2 Quality Control Validation

Establish and maintain the following in a series of three ring binders. Binders must be divided and tabbed as shown below. These binders must be readily available to the Contracting Officer during all business hours.

- a. All completed Preparatory and Initial Phase Checklists, arranged by specification section.
- b. All milestone inspections, arranged by Activity Number.
- c. An up-to-date copy of the Testing Plan and Log with supporting field test reports, arranged by specification section.
- d. Copies of all contract modifications, arranged in numerical order. Also include documentation that modified work was accomplished.
- e. An up-to-date copy of the Rework Items List.
- f. Maintain up-to-date copies of all punch lists issued by the QC staff to the Contractor and Sub-Contractors and all punch lists issued by the Government.
- g. Commissioning documentation including Cx checklists, schedules, tests, and reports.
- h. Special inspection reports.

1.15.3 Reports from the QC Specialist(s)

Reports are required for each day that work is performed in their area of responsibility. QC Specialist reports must include the same documentation requirements as the CQC Report for their area of responsibility. QC Specialist reports are to be prepared, signed and dated by the QC Specialists and must be attached to the CQC Report prepared for the same day.

1.15.4 Testing Plan and Log

As tests are performed, the QC Manager will record on the "Testing Plan and Log" the date the test was performed and the date the test results were forwarded to the Contracting Officer. Attach a copy of the updated

"Testing Plan and Log" to the last daily CQC Report of each month, per the paragraph "INFORMATION FOR THE CONTRACTING OFFICER". Provide a copy of the final "Testing Plan and Log" to the OMSI preparer for inclusion into the OMSI documentation.

1.15.5 Rework Items List

The QC Manager must maintain a list of work that does not comply with the Contract, identifying what items need to be reworked, the date the item was originally discovered, the date the item will be corrected by, and the date the item was corrected. There is no requirement to report a rework item that is corrected the same day it is discovered. Attach a copy of the "Rework Items List" to the last daily CQC Report of each month. The Contractor is responsible for including those items identified by the Contracting Officer.

1.15.6 As-Built Drawings

The QC Manager is required to ensure the as-built drawings, required by Section 01 78 00 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS are kept current on a daily basis and marked to show deviations which have been made from the Contract drawings. Ensure each deviation has been identified with the appropriate modifying documentation (e.g. PC No., Modification No., Request for Information No., etc.). The QC Manager or QC Specialist assigned to an area of responsibility must initial each revision. Upon completion of work, the QC Manager will furnish a certificate attesting to the accuracy of the as-built drawings prior to submission to the Contracting Officer.

1.16 NOTIFICATION ON NON-COMPLIANCE

The Contracting Officer will notify the Contractor of any detected non-compliance with the Contract. Take immediate corrective action after receipt of such notice. Such notice, when delivered to the Contractor at the work site, is deemed sufficient for the purpose of notification. If the Contractor fails or refuses to comply promptly, the Contracting Officer may issue an order stopping all or part of the work until satisfactory corrective action has been taken. No part of the time lost due to such stop orders will be made the subject of claim for extension of time for excess costs or damages by the Contractor.

1.17 CONSTRUCTION INDOOR AIR QUALITY (IAQ) MANAGEMENT PLAN

Submit an IAQ Management Plan within 15 days after notice to proceed and not less than 10 days before the preconstruction meeting. Revise and resubmit Plan as required by the Contracting Officer. Make copies of the final plan available to all workers on site. Include provisions in the Plan to meet the requirements specified below and to ensure safe, healthy air for construction workers and building occupants.

1.17.1 Requirements During Construction

Provide for evaluation of indoor Carbon Dioxide concentrations in accordance with ASTM D6245. Provide for evaluation of volatile organic compounds (VOCs) in indoor air in accordance with ASTM D6345. Use filters with a Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value (MERV) of 8 in permanently installed air handlers during construction.

1.17.1.1 Control Measures

Meet or exceed the requirements of ANSI/SMACNA 008, Chapter 3, to help minimize contamination of the building from construction activities. The five requirements of this manual which must be adhered to are described below:

- a. HVAC protection: Isolate return side of HVAC system from surrounding environment to prevent construction dust and debris from entering the duct work and spaces.
- b. Source control: Use low emitting paints and other finishes, sealants, adhesives, and other materials as specified. When available, cleaning products must have a low VOC content and be non-toxic to minimize building contamination. Utilize cleaning techniques that minimize dust generation. Cycle equipment off when not needed. Prohibit idling motor vehicles where emissions could be drawn into building. Designate receiving/storage areas for incoming material that minimize IAQ impacts.
- c. Pathway interruption: When pollutants are generated use strategies such as 100 percent outside air ventilation or erection of physical barriers between work and non-work areas to prevent contamination.
- d. Housekeeping: Clean frequently to remove construction dust and debris. Promptly clean up spills. Remove accumulated water and keep work areas dry to discourage the growth of mold and bacteria. Take extra measures when hazardous materials are involved.
- e. Scheduling: Control the sequence of construction to minimize the absorption of VOCs by other building materials.

1.17.1.2 Moisture Contamination

- a. Remove accumulated water and keep work dry.
- b. Use dehumidification to remove moist, humid air from a work area.
- c. Do not use combustion heaters or generators inside the building.
- d. Protect porous materials from exposure to moisture.
- e. Remove and replace items which remain damp for more than a few hours.

1.17.2 Requirements after Construction

After construction ends and prior to occupancy, conduct a building flush-out or test the indoor air contaminant levels. Flush-out must be a minimum two-weeks with MERV-13 filtration media as determined by ASHRAE 52.2 at 100 percent outside air. Air contamination testing must be consistent with EPA's current Compendium of Methods for the Determination of Air Pollutants in Indoor Air. After building flush-out or testing and prior to occupancy, replace filtration media. Filtration media must have a MERV of 13 as determined by ASHRAE 52.2.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

Designate receiving/storage areas for incoming material to be delivered according to installation schedule and to be placed convenient to work area in order to minimize waste due to excessive materials handling and misapplication. Store and handle materials in a manner as to prevent loss from weather and other damage. Keep materials, products, and accessories covered and off the ground, and store in a dry, secure area. Prevent contact with material that may cause corrosion, discoloration, or staining. Protect all materials and installations from damage by the activities of other trades.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 01 45 35

SPECIAL INSPECTIONS
02/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC IBC

(2018) International Building Code

1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Perform Special Inspections in accordance with the Statement of Special Inspections, Schedule of Special Inspections and Chapter 17 of ICC IBC. The Statement of Special Inspections and Schedule of Special Inspections are included as an attachment to this specification. Special Inspections are to be performed by an independent third party and are intended to ensure that the work of the prime contractor is in accordance with the Contract Documents and applicable building codes. Special inspections do not take the place of the three phases of control inspections performed by the Contractor's QC Manager or any testing and inspections required by other sections of the specifications.

Structural observations will be performed by the Government. The contractor must provide notification to the Contracting Officer 14 days prior to the following points of construction:

- a. Foundation subgrade preparation
- b. Pre-engineered metal building erection

1.3 DEFINITIONS

1.3.1 Continuous Special Inspections

Continuous Special Inspections is the constant monitoring of specific tasks by a special inspector. These inspections must be carried out continuously over the duration of the particular tasks.

1.3.2 Periodic Special Inspections

Periodic Special Inspections is Special Inspections by the special inspector who is intermittently present where the work to be inspected has been or is being performed.

1.3.3 Perform

Perform these Special Inspections tasks for each welded joint or member.

1.3.4 Observe

Observe these Special Inspections items on a random daily basis. Operations need not be delayed pending these inspections.

1.3.5 Special Inspector (SI)

A qualified person retained by the contractor and approved by the Contracting Officer as having the competence necessary to inspect a particular type of construction requiring Special Inspections. The SI must be an independent third party hired directly by the Prime Contractor.

1.3.6 Associate Special Inspector (ASI)

A qualified person who assists the SI in performing Special Inspections but must perform inspection under the direct supervision of the SI and cannot perform inspections without the SI on site.

1.3.7 Third Party

A third party inspector must not be company employee of the Contractor or any Sub-Contractor performing the work to be inspected.

1.3.8 Contracting Officer

The Government official having overall authority for administrative contracting actions. Certain contracting actions may be delegated to the Contracting Officer's Representative (COR).

1.3.9 Contractor's Quality Control (QC) Manager

An individual retained by the prime contractor and qualified in accordance with the Section 01 45 00.00 20 QUALITY CONTROL having the overall responsibility for the contractor's QC organization.

1.3.10 Designer of Record (DOR)

A registered design professional contracted by the Government as an A/E responsible for the overall design and review of submittal documents prepared by others. The DOR is registered or licensed to practice their respective design profession as defined by the statutory requirements of the professional registration laws in state in which the design professional works. The DOR is also referred to as the Engineer of Record (EOR) in design code documents.

1.3.11 Statement of Special Inspections (SSI)

A document developed by the DOR identifying the material, systems, components and work required to have Special Inspections.

1.3.12 Schedule of Special Inspections

A schedule which lists each of the required Special Inspections, the extent to which each Special Inspections is to be performed, and the required frequency for each in accordance with ICC IBC Chapter 17.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation;

submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Special Inspections Agency's Written Practices

NDT Procedures and Equipment Calibration Records

SD-06 Test Reports

Special Inspections Daily Reports

Special Inspections Biweekly Reports

SD-07 Certificates

Fabrication Plant

AC472 Accreditation

Certificate of Compliance

Special Inspector Qualifications; G

Qualification Records for NDT technicians

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Comprehensive Final Report of Special Inspections; G

1.5 SPECIAL INSPECTOR QUALIFICATIONS

Submit qualifications for each special inspector.

Certifying Associations	
AABC	Associated Air Balance Council
ACI	American Concrete Institute
AWCI	Association of the Wall and Ceiling Industry
AWS	American Welding Society
FM	Factory Mutual
ICC	International Code Council
NDT	Nondestructive Testing
NICET	National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies

Certifying Associations	
PCI	Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute
PTI	Post-Tensioning Institute
UL	Underwriters Laboratories

1.5.1 Steel Construction and High Strength Bolting

1.5.1.1 Special Inspector

- a. ICC Structural Steel and Bolting Special Inspector certificate with one year of related experience, or
- b. Registered Professional Engineer with related experience

1.5.1.2 Associate Special Inspector

Engineer-In-Training with one year of related experience.

1.5.2 Welding Structural Steel

1.5.2.1 Special Inspector

- a. ICC Structural Welding Special Inspector certificate with one year of related experience, or
- b. AWS Certified Welding Inspector

1.5.2.2 Associate Special Inspector

AWS Certified Associate Welding Inspector

1.5.3 Nondestructive Testing of Welds

1.5.3.1 Special Inspector

NDT Level III Certificate

1.5.3.2 Associate Special Inspector

NDT Level II Certificate plus one year of related experience

1.5.4 Cold Formed Steel Framing

1.5.4.1 Special Inspector

- a. ICC Structural Steel and Bolting Special Inspector certificate with one year of related experience, or
- b. ICC Commercial Building Inspector with one year of experience, or
- c. Registered Professional Engineer with related experience

1.5.4.2 Associate Special Inspector

Engineer-In-Training with one year of related experience.

1.5.5 Concrete Construction

1.5.5.1 Special Inspector

- a. ICC Reinforced Concrete Special Inspector Certificate with one year of related experience, or
- b. ACI Concrete Construction Special Inspector, or
- c. NICET Concrete Technician Level III Certificate in Construction Materials Testing, or
- d. Registered Professional Engineer with related experience

1.5.5.2 Associate Special Inspector

- a. ACI Concrete Construction Special Inspector in Training, or
- b. Engineer-In-Training with one year of related experience

1.5.6 Masonry Construction

1.5.6.1 Special Inspector

- a. ICC Structural Masonry Special Inspector Certificate with one year of related experience, or
- b. Registered Professional Engineer with related experience

1.5.6.2 Associate Special Inspector

Engineer-In-Training with one year of related experience.

1.5.7 Verification of Site Soil Condition, Fill Placement and Load-Bearing Requirements

1.5.7.1 Special Inspector

- a. ICC Soils Special Inspector Certificate with one year of related experience, or
- b. NICET Soils Technician Level II Certificate in Construction Material Testing, or
- c. NICET Geotechnical Engineering Technician Level II Construction or Generalist Certificate, or
- d. Geologist-In-Training with one year of related experience, or
- e. Registered Professional Engineer with related experience

1.5.7.2 Associate Special Inspector

- a. NICET Soils Technician Level I Certificate in Construction Material Testing with one year of related experience, or

- b. NICET Geotechnical Engineering Technician Level I Construction or Generalist Certificate with one year of related experience, or
- c. Engineer-In-Training with one year of related experience

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FABRICATOR SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

Special Inspections of fabricator's work performed in the fabricator's shop is required to be inspected in accordance with the Statement of Special Inspections and the Schedule of Special Inspections unless the fabricator is certified by the approved agency to perform such work without Special Inspections. Submit the following certifications to the Contracting Officer for information to allow work performed in the fabricator's shop to not be subjected to Special Inspections.

American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC) Certified [Fabrication Plant](#), Category STD.

International Accreditation Service, [AC472 Accreditation](#)

At the completion of fabrication, submit a [certificate of compliance](#), to be included with the comprehensive final report of Special Inspections, stating that the materials supplied and work performed by the fabricator are in accordance the construction documents.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

3.1.1 Quality Control Manager

- a. Supervise all Special Inspectors required by the contract documents and the IBC.
- b. Verify the qualifications of all of the Special Inspectors.
- c. Verify the qualifications of fabricators.
- d. Maintain a 3- ring binder for the Special Inspector's daily and [biweekly reports](#). This file must be located in a conspicuous place in the project trailer/office to allow review by the Contracting Officer and the DOR.
- e. Maintain a rework items list that includes discrepancies noted on the Special Inspectors daily report.

3.1.2 Special Inspectors

- a. Inspect all elements of the project for which the special inspector is qualified to inspect and are identified in the Schedule of Special Inspections.
- b. Attend preparatory phase meetings related to the Definable Feature of Work (DFOW) for which the special inspector is qualified to inspect.
- c. Submit Special Inspections agency's [written practices](#) for the

monitoring and control of the agency's operations to include the following:

- (1) The agency's procedures for the selection and administration of inspection personnel, describing the training, experience and examination requirements for qualifications and certification of inspection personnel.
 - (2) The agency's inspection procedures, including general inspection, material controls, and visual welding inspection.
- d. Submit [qualification records](#) for nondestructive testing (NDT) technicians designated for the project.
 - e. Submit [NDT procedures and equipment calibration records](#) for NDT to be performed and equipment to be used for the project.
 - f. Submit a copy of the [daily reports](#) to the QC Manager.
 - g. Discrepancies that are observed during Special Inspections must be reported to the QC Manager for correction. If discrepancies are not corrected before the special inspector leaves the site the observed discrepancies must be documented in the daily report.
 - h. Submit a biweekly Special Inspection Report until all inspections are complete. A report is required for each biweekly period in which Special Inspections activity occurs, and must include the following:
 - (1) A brief summary of the work performed during the reporting time frame.
 - (2) Changes and/or discrepancies with the drawings, specifications that were observed during the reporting period.
 - (3) Discrepancies which were resolved or corrected.
 - (4) A list of nonconforming items requiring resolution.
 - (5) All applicable test result including nondestructive testing reports.
 - i. At the completion of the project submit a [comprehensive final report](#) of Special Inspections that documents the Special Inspections completed for the project and corrections of all discrepancies noted in the daily reports. The comprehensive final report of Special Inspections must be signed, dated and indicate the certification of the special inspector qualifying them to conduct the inspection.

3.2 DEFECTIVE WORK

Check work as it progresses, but failure to detect any defective work or materials must in no way prevent later rejection if defective work or materials are discovered, nor obligate the Contracting Officer to accept such work.

-- End of Section --

Project: P1395 Marine Raider Headquarters
 Location: Camp Lejeune, NC
 Project #: Task Order No. N4008518F7180
 Date: 4/3/2019



STATEMENT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

Project Seismic Design Category: B
 Project Risk Category: II
 Project Design Wind Speed (mph): 140
 Number of Stories: 1
 Structure Height Above Grade (ft): 30
 Hazardous Occupancy or attached to such? No Group H Occupancies (2015 IBC, Section 415)

Special Inspector of Record (SIOR)

A Special Inspector of Record (SIOR) IS NOT required (per UFGS 01 45 35, Section 1.3.8)

Lateral Force Resisting System (LFRS)

2015 IBC 1704.3.2 and 1704.3.3

Following is a listing of critical main wind/seismic force resisting systems for this structure. Carefully inspect these elements as part of the roles and responsibilities of the Special Inspector (reference the Schedule of Special Inspections for inspection checklists).

Vertical LFRS Elements	Notes
PEMB - Steel Moment resisting Frames (SMRF) - Main Frames	North South Direction
PEMB - SMRF - Portal Frames	East West Direction
	Steel Systems Not Specifically Detailed For Seismic
	Resistance
Horizontal LFRS Elements	Notes
Diaphragm Cross Rod Bracing	PEMB

Project: P1395 Marine Raider Headquarters
Location: Camp Lejeune, NC
Project #: Task Order No. N4008518F7180
Date: 4/3/2019

Designated Seismic Systems (DSS)

(2015 IBC 1705.13.3.4) (ASCE 7-10, 13.2.2, C13.2.2) (UFC 3-310-04, 2-11.2 & 2-13.2.2)

DESIGNATED SEISMIC SYSTEMS DO NOT APPLY TO THIS PROJECT, due to the Seismic Design Category being less than C.

ELECTRICAL Designated Seismic Systems (DSS) Requiring a Certificate of Compliance
N/A
N/A
N/A
N/A
N/A

If additional space is required, append an additional sheet listing the remaining DSS

MECHANICAL/PLUMBING Designated Seismic Systems (DSS) Requiring a Certificate of Compliance
N/A
N/A
N/A
N/A
N/A
N/A

If additional space is required, append an additional sheet listing the remaining DSS

OTHER Designated Seismic Systems (DSS) Requiring a Certificate of Compliance
N/A
N/A
N/A
N/A
N/A
N/A

Final Walk Down Inspection and Report

(UFC 3 301 01 SECTION 2-2.4.3)

Final Walk Down Inspection of non-structural Designated Seismic Systems does not apply to this project (no Designated Seismic Systems)

This page intentionally left blank.

SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

Reference UFGS 01 45 35 for all requirements not noted as part of this schedule.

INSPECTION DEFINITIONS:

- PERFORM:** Perform these tasks for each weld, fastener or bolted connection, and noted verification.
- OBSERVE:** Observe these items randomly during the course of each work day to insure that applicable requirements are being met. Operations need not be delayed pending these inspections at contractor's risk.
- DOCUMENT:** Document, with a report, that the work has been performed in accordance with the contract documents. This is in addition to any other reports required in the Special Inspections guide specification.
- CONTINUOUS:** Constant monitoring of identified tasks by a special inspector over the duration of performance of said tasks.

A. STRUCTURAL - STEEL – WELDING SECTION**THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED: ☒**

STEEL INSPECTION PRIOR TO WELDING – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE IBC 1705.2.1, AISC 360-10: Table C-N5.4-1		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
1. Verify that the welding procedures specification (WPS) is available	PERFORM	
2. Verify manufacturer certifications for welding consumables are available	PERFORM	
3. Verify material identification	PERFORM	Type and grade.
4. Welder Identification System	PERFORM	The fabricator or erector, as applicable, shall maintain a system by which a welder who has welded a joint or member can be identified. Stamps, if used, shall be the low-stress type.
5. Fit-up of groove welds (including joint geometry)	OBSERVE	✓ Joint preparation ✓ Dimensions (alignment, root opening, root face, bevel) ✓ Cleanliness (condition of steel surfaces) ✓ Tacking (tack weld quality and location) ✓ Backing type and fit (if applicable)
6. Configuration and finish of access holes	OBSERVE	
7. Fit-up of fillet welds	OBSERVE	✓ Dimensions (alignment, gaps at root) ✓ Cleanliness (condition of steel surfaces) ✓ Tacking (tack weld quality and location)
STEEL INSPECTION DURING WELDING – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE IBC 1705.2.1, AISC 360-10: Table C-N5.4-2		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE	DESCRIPTION
8. Use of qualified welders	PERFORM	Welding by welders, welding operators, and tack welders who are qualified in conformance with requirements.
9. Control and handling of welding consumables	OBSERVE	✓ Packaging ✓ Electrode atmospheric exposure control
10. No welding over cracked tack welds	OBSERVE	
11. Environmental conditions	OBSERVE	✓ Wind speed within limits ✓ Precipitation and temperature
12. Welding Procedures Specification followed	OBSERVE	✓ Settings on welding equipment ✓ Travel speed ✓ Selected welding materials ✓ Shielding gas type/flow rate ✓ Preheat applied ✓ Interpass temperature maintained (min./max.) ✓ Proper position (F, V, H, OH) ✓ Intermix of filler metals avoided
13. Welding techniques	OBSERVE	✓ Interpass and final cleaning ✓ Each pass within profile limitations ✓ Each pass meets quality requirements

¹ **PERFORM:** Perform these tasks for each weld, fastener or bolted connection, and required verification.

OBSERVE: Observe these items on a random sampling basis daily to insure that applicable requirements are met. Operations need not be delayed pending these inspections at contractor's risk.

A. STRUCTURAL - STEEL – WELDING SECTION (CONTINUED)

STEEL INSPECTION AFTER WELDING – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE
IBC 2015 1705.2.1, AISC 360-10: Table C-N5.4-3

TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
14. Welds cleaned	OBSERVE	
15. Size, length, and location of all welds	PERFORM	Size, length, and location of all welds conform to the requirements of the detail drawings.
16. Welds meet visual acceptance criteria	PERFORM AND DOCUMENT	✓ Crack prohibition ✓ Weld/base-metal fusion ✓ Crater cross section ✓ Weld profiles ✓ Weld size ✓ Undercut ✓ Porosity
17. Arc strikes	PERFORM	
18. k-area	PERFORM	When welding of doubler plates, continuity plates or stiffeners has been performed in the k-area, visually inspect the web k-area for cracks.
19. Backing removed, weld tabs removed and finished, and fillet welds added where required	PERFORM	
20. Repair activities	PERFORM AND DOCUMENT	
21. Document acceptance or rejection of welded joint or member	PERFORM	

END SECTION

¹ **PERFORM:** Perform these tasks for each weld, fastener or bolted connection, and required verification.
DOCUMENT: Document in a report that the work has been performed as required. This is in addition to all other required reports.

B. STRUCTURAL - STEEL – BOLTING SECTION**THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED: ☒**

STEEL INSPECTION TASKS <u>PRIOR</u> TO BOLTING – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE IBC 1705.2.1, AISC 360-10: Table C-N5.6-1		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
1. Manufacture's certifications available for fastener materials	PERFORM	
2. Fasteners marked in accordance with ASTM requirements	OBSERVE	
3. Proper fasteners selected for joint detail (grade, type, bolt length if threads are to be excluded from shear plane)	OBSERVE	
4. Proper bolting procedure selected for joint detail	OBSERVE	
5. Connecting elements, including appropriate faying surface condition and hole preparation, if specified, meet applicable requirements	OBSERVE	
6. Proper storage provided for bolts, nuts, washers, and other fastener components	OBSERVE	
STEEL INSPECTION TASKS <u>DURING</u> BOLTING – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE IBC 1705.2.1, AISC 360-10: Table C-N5.6-2		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
7. Fastener assemblies of suitable condition, placed in all holes and washers (if required) are positioned as required	OBSERVE	
8. Joint brought to the snug-tight condition prior to pretensioning operation	OBSERVE	
9. Fastener component not turned by the wrench prevented from rotating	OBSERVE	
10. Bolts are pretensioned in accordance with RCSC Specification, progressing systematically from the most rigid point toward the free edges	OBSERVE	
STEEL INSPECTION TASKS <u>AFTER</u> BOLTING – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE IBC 1705.2.1, AISC 360-10: Table C-N5.6-3		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
11. Document acceptance or rejection of all bolted connections	DOCUMENT	

END SECTION

¹ **PERFORM:** Perform these tasks for each weld, fastener or bolted connection, and required verification.
OBSERVE: Observe these items on a random sampling basis daily to insure that applicable requirements are met. Operations need not be delayed pending these inspections at contractor's risk.
DOCUMENT: Document in a report that the work has been performed as required. This is in addition to all other required reports.

C. STRUCTURAL - STEEL - NON DESTRUCTIVE TESTING SECTION**THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED: ☒**

NONDESTRUCTIVE TESTING OF WELDED JOINTS – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE IBC 1705.2.1, AISC 360-10: Section N5.5		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
1. Use of qualified nondestructive testing personnel	PERFORM	Visual weld inspection and nondestructive testing (NDT) shall be conducted by personnel qualified in accordance with AWS D1.8 clause 7.2
2. CJP groove welds	OBSERVE	Dye penetrant testing (DT) and ultrasonic testing (UT) shall be performed on 20% of CJP groove welds for materials greater than 5/16" (8mm) thick. Testing rate must be increased to 100% if greater than 5% of welds tested have unacceptable defects.
3. Welded joints subject to fatigue	OBSERVE	Dye penetrant testing (DT) and Ultrasonic testing (UT) shall be performed on 100% of welded joints identified on contract drawings as being subject to fatigue.
4. Weld tab removal sites	OBSERVE	At the end of welds where weld tabs have been removed, magnetic particle testing shall be performed on the same beam-to-column joints receiving UT

END SECTION

¹ **PERFORM:** Perform these tasks for each weld, fastener or bolted connection, and required verification.

OBSERVE: Observe these items on a random sampling basis daily to insure that applicable requirements are met. Operations need not be delayed pending these inspections at contractor's risk.

D. STRUCTURAL - STEEL – AISC 341 REQUIREMENTS (SEISMIC PROVISIONS) SECTION**THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED:** ☐

NONDESTRUCTIVE TESTING OF WELDED JOINTS – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE IBC 1705.2.1, AISC 341-10: Section J6.2		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
[NOTE: DOR may uncheck this section for projects NOT designed in accordance with AISC 341 (Seismic Provisions) or for projects designed according to AISC 341, but using an R value equal to 3]		
5. CJP groove welds	OBSERVE	Dye penetrant testing (DT) and ultrasonic testing (UT) shall be performed on 100% of CJP groove welds for materials greater than 5/16" thick (8mm).
6. Beam cope and access hole.	OBSERVE	At welded splices and connections, thermally cut surfaces of beam copes and access holes shall be tested using magnetic particle testing (MT) or dye penetrant testing (DT), when the flange thickness exceeds 1 1/2 in. for rolled shapes, or when the web thickness exceeds 1 1/2 in. for built-up shapes.
7. K-area NDT (AISC 341)	PERFORM	Where welding of doubler plates, continuity plates or stiffeners has been performed in the k-area, the web shall be tested for cracks using magnetic particle testing (MT). The MT inspection area shall include the k-area base metal within 3-inches of the weld. The MT shall be performed no sooner than 48 hours following completion of the welding.
8. Placement of reinforcing or contouring fillet welds	DOCUMENT	

END SECTION

¹ **PERFORM:** Perform these tasks for each weld, fastener or bolted connection, and required verification.
OBSERVE: Observe these items on a random sampling basis daily to insure that applicable requirements are met. Operations need not be delayed pending these inspections at contractor's risk.
DOCUMENT: Document in a report that the work has been performed as required. This is in addition to all other required reports.

E. STRUCTURAL - STEEL - COMPOSITE CONSTRUCTION ¹**THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED:** ☐COMPOSITE CONSTRUCTION PRIOR TO PLACING CONCRETE – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE
IBC 1705.2.1, AISC 360-10: Table N6.1, AISC 341-10: Table J9-1

TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ²	DESCRIPTION
1. Placement and installation of steel headed stud anchors	PERFORM	
2. Material identification of reinforcing steel (Type/Grade)	OBSERVE	
3. Determination of carbon equivalent for reinforcing steel other than ASTM A706	OBSERVE	
4. Proper reinforcing steel size, spacing, clearances, support, and orientation	OBSERVE	
5. Reinforcing steel has been tied and supported as required	OBSERVE	

END SECTION**F. STRUCTURAL - STEEL - OTHER INSPECTIONS****THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED:** ☒OTHER STEEL INSPECTIONS – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE
IBC 1705.2.1, AISC 341-10: Tables J8-1 & J10-1

TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ²	DESCRIPTION
1. Anchor rods and other embedments supporting structural steel	PERFORM	Verify the diameter, grade, type, and length of the anchor rod or embedded item, and the extent or depth of embedment prior to placement of concrete.
2. Fabricated steel or erected steel frame	OBSERVE	Verify compliance with the details shown on the construction documents, such as braces, stiffeners, member locations and proper application of joint details at each connection.
3.		✓
4.		
5.		

END SECTION¹ See Concrete Construction Section for all concrete related inspection of composite steel construction.

² **PERFORM:** Perform these tasks for each weld, fastener or bolted connection, and required verification.
OBSERVE: Observe these items on a random sampling basis daily to insure that applicable requirements are met. Operations need not be delayed pending these inspections at contractor's risk.
DOCUMENT: Document in a report that the work has been performed as required. This is in addition to all other required reports.

G. STRUCTURAL - COLD-FORMED METAL DECK - PLACEMENT SECTION**THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED: ☐**

METAL DECK INSPECTION PRIOR TO DECK PLACEMENT – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE SDI QA/QC-2011, Appendix 1, Table 1.1		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
1. Verify compliance of materials (deck and all deck accessories) with construction documents, including profiles, material properties, and base metal thickness	PERFORM	
2. Document acceptance or rejection of deck and deck accessories	DOCUMENT	
METAL DECK INSPECTION DURING DECK PLACEMENT – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE SDI QA/QC-2011, Appendix 1, Table 1.2		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
3. Verify compliance of deck and all deck accessories installation with construction documents	PERFORM	
4. Verify deck materials are represented by the mill certifications that comply with the construction documents	PERFORM	
5. Document acceptance or rejection of installation of deck and deck accessories	DOCUMENT	
METAL DECK INSPECTION AFTER DECK PLACEMENT – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE SDI QA/QC-2011, Appendix 1, Table 1.3		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
6. Welding procedure specification (WPS) available	PERFORM	
7. Manufacturers certifications for welding consumables available	OBSERVE	
8. Material identification (type/grade)	OBSERVE	
9. Check welding equipment	OBSERVE	

END SECTION

¹ **PERFORM:** Perform these tasks for each weld, fastener or bolted connection, and required verification.
OBSERVE: Observe these items on a random sampling basis daily to insure that applicable requirements are met. Operations need not be delayed pending these inspections at contractor's risk.
DOCUMENT: Document in a report that the work has been performed as required. This is in addition to all other required reports.

H. STRUCTURAL - COLD-FORMED METAL DECK – WELDING SECTION**THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED: ☐**

METAL DECK INSPECTION <u>DURING</u> WELDING – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE SDI QA/QC-2011, Appendix 1, Table 1.4		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
1. Use of qualified welders	OBSERVE	
2. Control and handling of welding consumables	OBSERVE	
3. Environmental conditions (wind speed, moisture, temperature)	OBSERVE	
4. WPS followed	OBSERVE	
METAL DECK INSPECTION <u>AFTER</u> WELDING – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE SDI QA/QC-2011, Appendix 1, Table 1.5		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
5. Verify size and location of welds, including support, sidelap, and perimeter welds.	PERFORM	
6. Welds meet visual acceptance criteria	PERFORM	
7. Verify repair activities	PERFORM	
8. Document acceptance or rejection of welds	DOCUMENT	

END SECTION

¹ **PERFORM:** Perform these tasks for each weld, fastener or bolted connection, and required verification.
OBSERVE: Observe these items on a random sampling basis daily to insure that applicable requirements are met. Operations need not be delayed pending these inspections at contractor's risk.
DOCUMENT: Document in a report that the work has been performed as required. This is in addition to all other required reports.

I. STRUCTURAL - COLD-FORMED METAL DECK – FASTENING SECTION**THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED: ☐****METAL DECK INSPECTION BEFORE MECHANICAL FASTENING – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE**
SDI QA/QC-2011, Appendix 1, Table 1.6

TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
1. Manufacturer installation instructions available for mechanical fasteners	OBSERVE	
2. Proper tools available for fastener installation	OBSERVE	

METAL DECK INSPECTION DURING MECHANICAL FASTENING – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE
SDI QA/QC-2011, Appendix 1, Table 1.7

TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
3. Fasteners are positioned as required	OBSERVE	
4. Fasteners are installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions	OBSERVE	

METAL DECK INSPECTION AFTER MECHANICAL FASTENING – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE
SDI QA/QC-2011, Appendix 1, Table 1.8

TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
5. Check spacing, type, and installation of support fasteners	PERFORM	
6. Check spacing, type, and installation of sidelap fasteners	PERFORM	
7. Check spacing, type, and installation of perimeter fasteners	PERFORM	
8. Verify repair activities	PERFORM	
9. Document acceptance or rejection of mechanical fasteners	DOCUMENT	

END SECTION

¹ **PERFORM:** Perform these tasks for each weld, fastener or bolted connection, and required verification.
OBSERVE: Observe these items on a random sampling basis daily to insure that applicable requirements are met. Operations need not be delayed pending these inspections at contractor's risk.
DOCUMENT: Document in a report that the work has been performed as required. This is in addition to all other required reports.

J. STRUCTURAL - LIGHT GAUGE STEEL FRAMING AND/OR LIGHT GAUGE TRUSSES SECTION**THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED:** ☐

LIGHT GAUGE STEEL CONSTRUCTION AND CONNECTIONS – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE IBC 1705.2.2, 1705.11.2, 1705.11.3, UFC 4 023 03		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
1. Trusses spanning 60-feet or greater where/if applies	PERFORM	Verify that temporary and permanent truss restraint/bracing is installed in accordance with approved truss submittal package.
2. Welded connections (seismic and/or wind resisting system)	OBSERVE	Visually inspect all welds composing part of the main wind or seismic force resisting system, including shearwalls, braces, collectors (drag struts), and hold-downs. [NOTE: DOR must identify critical wind and/or seismic force resisting welds in the contract drawings so that the special inspector can confirm compliance.]
3. Connections (seismic and/or wind resisting system)	OBSERVE	Visually inspect all screw attachment, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of components within the main wind or seismic force resisting system, including roof deck, roof framing, exterior wall covering, wall to roof/floor connections, braces, collectors (drag struts) and hold-downs. [NOTE: DOR must identify critical wind and/or seismic force resisting connection/fastener components in the contract drawings so that the special inspector can confirm compliance.]
4. Cold-formed steel (progressive collapse resisting system where/if applies)	OBSERVE	Verify proper welding operations, screw attachment, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of components within the progressive collapse resisting system, including horizontal tie force elements, vertical tie force elements and bridging elements (UFC 4 023 03). [NOTE: DOR must identify critical progressive collapse resisting connection/fastener components in the contract drawings so that the special inspector can confirm compliance.]

END SECTION**K. STRUCTURAL - OPEN-WEB STEEL JOISTS SECTION****THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED:** ☐

OPEN-WEB STEEL JOISTS AND JOIST GIRDERS – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE IBC TABLE 1705.2.3		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
1. Installation of open-web steel joists and joist girders	OBSERVE	✓ End connections – welded or bolted ✓ Bridging – horizontal and diagonal

END SECTION

¹ **PERFORM:** Perform these tasks for each weld, fastener or bolted connection, and required verification.

OBSERVE: Observe these items on a random sampling basis daily to insure that applicable requirements are met. Operations need not be delayed pending these inspections at contractor's risk.

L. STRUCTURAL - CONCRETE CONSTRUCTION SECTION**THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED: ☒**

CONCRETE CONSTRUCTION, INCLUDING COMPOSITE DECK – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE IBC TABLE 1705.3 (ACI 318 REFERENCES NOTED IN IBC TABLE)		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
1. Inspect reinforcement, including prestressing tendons, and verify placement.	OBSERVE	Verify prior to placing concrete that reinforcing is of specified type, grade and size; that it is free of oil, dirt and unacceptable rust; that it is located and spaced properly; that hooks, bends, ties, stirrups and supplemental reinforcement are placed correctly; that lap lengths, stagger and offsets are provided; and that all mechanical connections are installed per the manufacturer's instructions and/or evaluation report.
2. Reinforcing bar welding	OBSERVE	✓ Verify weldability of reinforcing bars other than ASTM A 706 ✓ Inspect single-pass fillet welds, maximum 5/16" in accordance with AWS D1.4
3. All other welding	CONTINUOUS	Visually inspect all welds in accordance with AWS D1.4
4. Cast in place anchors and post installed drilled anchors (downward inclined)	OBSERVE	Verify prior to placing concrete that cast in place anchors and post installed drilled anchors have proper embedment, spacing and edge distance.
5. Post-installed adhesive anchors in horizontal or upward inclined orientations	CONTINUOUS AND DOCUMENT	✓ Inspect as required per approved ICC-ES report ✓ Verify that installer is certified for installation of horizontal and overhead installation applications ✓ Inspect proof loading as required by the contract documents
6. Verify use of required mix design	OBSERVE	Verify that all mixes used comply with the approved construction documents
7. Prior to concrete placement, fabricate specimens for strength tests, perform slump and air content tests, and determine the temperature of the concrete	CONTINUOUS	At the time fresh concrete is sampled to fabricate specimens for strength test verify these tests are performed by qualified technicians.
8. Inspect concrete and/or shotcrete placement for proper application techniques	CONTINUOUS	Verify proper application techniques are used during concrete conveyance and depositing avoids segregation or contamination. Verify that concrete is properly consolidated.
9. Verify maintenance of specified curing temperature and technique	OBSERVE	Inspect curing, cold weather protection, and hot weather protection procedures.
10. Pre-stressed concrete	CONTINUOUS	Verify application of prestressing forces and grouting of bonded prestressing tendons.

CONTINUED ON FOLLOWING PAGE

¹ **OBSERVE:** Observe these items on a random sampling basis daily to insure that applicable requirements are met. Operations need not be delayed pending these inspections at contractor's risk.

DOCUMENT: Document in a report that the work has been performed as required. This is in addition to all other required reports.

CONTINUOUS: Constant monitoring of identified tasks by a special inspector over the duration of performance of said tasks.

K. STRUCTURAL - CONCRETE CONSTRUCTION (CONTINUED)

CONCRETE CONSTRUCTION, INCLUDING COMPOSITE DECK – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE IBC TABLE 1705.3 (ACI 318 REFERENCES NOTED IN IBC TABLE)		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
11. Inspect erection of precast concrete members	OBSERVE	
12. Verify in-situ concrete strength, prior to stressing of tendons in post-tensioned concrete and prior to removal of shores and forms from beams and structural slabs.	OBSERVE	
13. Inspect formwork for shape, location and dimensions of the concrete member being formed.	OBSERVE	

END SECTION

¹ **OBSERVE:** Observe these items on a random sampling basis daily to insure that applicable requirements are met. Operations need not be delayed pending these inspections at contractor's risk.

DOCUMENT: Document in a report that the work has been performed as required. This is in addition to all other required reports.

CONTINUOUS: Constant monitoring of identified tasks by a special inspector over the duration of performance of said tasks.

M. STRUCTURAL - MASONRY CONSTRUCTION SECTION (ALL RISK CATEGORIES)**THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED: ☒**

MASONRY CONSTRUCTION – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE <u>AT START</u> OF CONSTRUCTION IBC 1705.4 (ACI 530-13 TABLE 3.1.2 & 3.1.3)		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
1. Compliance with approved submittals prior to start	OBSERVE	
2. Proportions of site-mixed mortar.	OBSERVE	
3. Grade and type of reinforcement, anchor bolts, and prestressing tendons and anchorages	OBSERVE	
4. Prestressing technique	OBSERVE	
5. Properties of thin bed mortar for AAC masonry	OBSERVE	
MASONRY CONSTRUCTION – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE <u>PRIOR TO</u> GROUTING IBC 1705.4 (ACI 530-13 TABLE 3.1.2 & 3.1.3)		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
6. Grout space	OBSERVE	
7. Proportions of site-prepared grout and prestressing grout for bonded tendons	OBSERVE	
8. Proportions of site-mixed grout and prestressing grout for bonded tendons	OBSERVE	
9. Placement of masonry units and mortar joints	OBSERVE	
10. Welding of reinforcement	CONTINUOUS	
MASONRY CONSTRUCTION – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE <u>DURING</u> CONSTRUCTION IBC 1705.4 (ACI 530-13 TABLE 3.1.2 & 3.1.3)		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
11. Size and location of structural elements is in compliance	OBSERVE	
12. Preparation, construction, and protection of masonry during cold weather (temperature below 40°F (4.4°C) or hot weather (temp above 90°F (32.2°C))	OBSERVE	
13. Application and measurement of prestressing force	CONTINUOUS	
14. Placement of grout and prestressing grout for bonded tendons	CONTINUOUS	
15. Placement of AAC masonry units and construction of thin bed mortar joints	CONTINUOUS	Continuous for first 5000 square feet only (465 square meters).
16. Observe preparation of grout specimens, mortar specimens, and/or prisms	OBSERVE	
17. Type, size and placement of reinforcement, connectors, anchor bolts and prestressing tendons and anchorages, including details of anchorage of masonry to structural members, frames, or other construction	OBSERVE	

END SECTION

¹ **OBSERVE:** Observe these items on a random sampling basis daily to insure that applicable requirements are met. Operations need not be delayed pending these inspections at contractor's risk.

CONTINUOUS: Constant monitoring of identified tasks by a special inspector over the duration of performance of said tasks.

N. STRUCTURAL - WOOD CONSTRUCTION – SPECIALTY ITEMS SECTION**THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED:** ☐

WOOD CONSTRUCTION – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE IBC 1705.5		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
1. High-load diaphragms where applicable	OBSERVE	Verify thickness and grade of sheathing, size of framing members at panel edges, nail diameters and length, and the number of fastener lines and that fastener spacing is per approved contract documents.
2. Metal-plate connected wood trusses spanning 60 feet or greater	OBSERVE	Verify that the temporary installation restraint/bracing and the permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing are installed in accordance with the approved truss submittal package

END SECTION**O. STRUCTURAL - WOOD CONSTRUCTION - SEISMIC & WIND SECTION****THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED:** ☐

WOOD CONSTRUCTION SEISMIC AND WIND – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE IBC 1705.5		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
[NOTE: DOR may uncheck this section where sheathing nailing/fasteners (both shearwall and roof) are consistently greater than 4" on center, or if the design wind speed is less than 110 mph (49 meters/sec) AND the seismic design category is A or B]		
1. Nailing, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of elements of the main wind/seismic force-resisting system	OBSERVE	Includes connectors for: shearwall sheathing, roof/floor sheathing, drag struts/collectors, braces, hold downs, roof and floor framing connections to exterior walls.

END SECTION**P. STRUCTURAL – ISOLATION AND ENERGY DISSIPATION SYSTEMS SECTION****THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED:** ☐

ISOLATION AND ENERGY DISSIPATION SYSTEMS – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE IBC TABLE 1705.2.3		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
1. Fabrication and installation	OBSERVE	Verify that fabrication and installation of isolator units and energy dissipation devices conform to manufacturer's recommendations and approved construction documents

END SECTION

¹ **OBSERVE:** Observe these items on a random sampling basis daily to insure that applicable requirements are met. Operations need not be delayed pending these inspections at contractor's risk.

Q. GEOTECHNICAL - SOILS INSPECTION SECTION**THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED: ☒**

SOILS INSPECTION – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE IBC 1705.6		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
1. Materials below shallow foundations are adequate to achieve the design bearing capacity.	OBSERVE	
2. Excavations are extended to proper depth and have reached proper material	OBSERVE	
3. Verify use of proper materials, densities and lift thicknesses during placement and compaction of compacted fill	CONTINUOUS	
4. Prior to placement of compacted fill, inspect subgrade and verify that site has been prepared properly.	OBSERVE	During fill placement, the special inspector shall verify that proper materials and procedures are used in accordance with the provisions of the approved geotechnical report

END SECTION**R. GEOTECHNICAL - DRIVEN DEEP FOUNDATION ELEMENTS SECTION****THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED: ☐**

DEEP DRIVEN FOUNDATION CONSTRUCTION – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE IBC 1705.5		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
1. Verify element materials, sizes and lengths comply with requirements	CONTINUOUS	
2. Inspect driving operations and maintain complete and accurate records for each element	CONTINUOUS	
3. Verify placement locations and plumbness, confirm type and size of hammer, record number of blows per foot of penetration, determine required penetrations to achieve design capacity, record tip and butt elevations and document any damage to foundation element	CONTINUOUS	

END SECTION

¹ **OBSERVE:** Observe these items on a random sampling basis daily to insure that applicable requirements are met. Operations need not be delayed pending these inspections at contractor's risk.

CONTINUOUS: Constant monitoring of identified tasks by a special inspector over the duration of performance of said tasks.

S. GEOTECHNICAL - HELICAL PILE FOUNDATIONS SECTION**THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED:** ☐

HELICAL PILE FOUNDATIONS – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE
IBC 1705.9

TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
1. Record installation equipment used, pile dimensions, tip elevations, final depth, final installation torque and other pertinent installation data. The approved geotechnical report and the contract documents shall be used to determine compliance	CONTINUOUS	

END SECTION**T. GEOTECHNICAL - CAST IN PLACE DEEP FOUNDATION ELEMENTS SECTION****THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED:** ☐

CAST IN PLACE DEEP FOUNDATION ELEMENTS – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE
IBC 1705.8

TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
1. Inspect drilling operations and maintain complete and accurate records for each element.	CONTINUOUS	
2. Verify placement locations and plumbness, confirm element diameters, bell diameters (if applicable), lengths, embedment into bedrock (if applicable and adequate end-bearing strata capacity. Record concrete or grout volumes	CONTINUOUS	

END SECTION

¹ **CONTINUOUS:** Constant monitoring of identified tasks by a special inspector over the duration of performance of said tasks.

U. FIRE PROTECTION - SPRAYED FIRE-RESISTANT MATERIALS SECTION**THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED:** ☐

SPRAYED FIRE RESISTANT MATERIALS – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE IBC 1705.14		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
1. Surface condition	OBSERVE	Prior to application confirm that surface has been prepared per the approved fire-resistance design and manufacturer's instructions.
2. Application	OBSERVE	Prior to application confirm that the substrate meets the minimum ambient temperature per the approved fire-resistance design and manufacturer's instructions.
3. Material thickness	OBSERVE	Verify that the thickness of the SFRM to structural elements is not less than the thickness require by the fire-resistant design in more that 10 percent of the measurement, but in no case less than minimum allowable thickness required by 1705.14.
4. Material density	OBSERVE	Verify that the thickness of the SFRM to structural elements is not less than the thickness require by the fire-resistant design in more than 10 percent of the measurement, but in no case less than minimum allowable thickness required by IBC 1705.14.5
5. Bond strength	OBSERVE	Verify cohesive/adhesive bond strength of the cured SFRM applied to the structural element is not less than 150psf and according to IBC 1705.14.6

END SECTION**V. FIRE PROTECTION - MASTIC AND INTUMESCENT COATINGS SECTION****THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED:** ☐

MASTIC AND INTUMESCENT FIRE-RESISTANT COATINGS – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE IBC 1705.15		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
1. Surface preparation	OBSERVE	Inspections shall be performed in accordance with AWCI 12-B and the contract documents

END SECTION**W. FIRE PROTECTION – FIRE RESISTANT PENETRATIONS AND JOINTS SECTION****THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED:** ☐

FIRE RESISTANT PENETRATIONS AND JOINTS – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE IBC 1705.17		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
1. Inspections of penetration firestop systems conducted in accordance with ASTM E 2174.	OBSERVE	[NOTE: This section applies to Risk Category III, IV, & V only. DOR may choose to uncheck this section where project is assigned to Risk Category I or II. Confirm Risk Category with Structural Engineer]
2. Inspections of fire-resistant joint systems conducted in accordance with ASTM E 2393	OBSERVE	

END SECTION

¹ **OBSERVE:** Observe these items on a random sampling basis daily to insure that applicable requirements are met. Operations need not be delayed pending these inspections at contractor's risk.

X. FIRE PROTECTION – SMOKE CONTROL SECTION

THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED: ☐

SMOKE CONTROL – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE IBC 1705.17		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
1. Verify device locations and perform leakage testing	OBSERVE	Perform during erection of ductwork and prior to concealment
2. Pressure difference testing, flow measurements and detection and control verification	OBSERVE	Perform prior to occupancy and after sufficient completion

END SECTION

¹ OBSERVE:

Observe these items on a random sampling basis daily to insure that applicable requirements are met. Operations need not be delayed pending these inspections at contractor’s risk.

Y. ARCHITECTURAL - EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS SECTION**THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED: ☐**

EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS (EIFS) – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE
IBC 1705.16

TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
1. Water resistive barrier coating applied over a sheathing substrate.	OBSERVE	Verify that water resistive barrier coating complies with ASTM E 2570. [NOTE: not applicable to masonry or concrete wall applications. Uncheck this section in those cases]

END SECTION**Z. ARCHITECTURAL – ARCHITECTURAL COMPONENTS****THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED: ☐**

ARCHITECTURAL COMPONENTS – VERIFY THE FOLLOWING ARE IN COMPLIANCE
IBC 1705.12.5, 1705.12.7

TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
[NOTE: This section is not applicable to Seismic Design Categories A, B, & C. Uncheck this section if one of those categories applies. Confirm Seismic Design Category with the structural engineer]		
1. Erection and fastening of exterior cladding and interior and exterior veneer.	OBSERVE	Verify appropriate materials, fasteners and attachment at commencement of work and at completion. Inspector Note: Inspection not required if height is less than 30 feet or weight is less than 5psf
2. Interior and exterior non-load bearing walls	OBSERVE	Verify appropriate materials, fasteners and attachment at commencement of work and at completion. Inspector Note: Inspection not required if height is less than 30 feet. Also, Interior non-load bearing walls need not be inspected if weighing less than 15psf
3. Access floors	OBSERVE	Verify that anchorage complies with approved construction documents. Inspection of post-installed anchors shall comply with approved ICC-ES report
4. Storage racks	OBSERVE	Verify that anchorage complies with approved construction documents. Inspection of post-installed anchors shall comply with approved ICC-ES report. Inspector Note: Not required for racks less than 8 feet in height

END SECTION

¹ **OBSERVE:** Observe these items on a random sampling basis daily to insure that applicable requirements are met. Operations need not be delayed pending these inspections at contractor's risk.

AA. PLUMBING/MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL DESIGNATED SEISMIC SYSTEMS SECTION**THIS SECTION APPLICABLE IF BOX IS CHECKED: ☐**

PLUMBING, MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL - DESIGNATED SEISMIC SYSTEMS IBC 1705.12.4		
TASK	INSPECTION TYPE ¹	DESCRIPTION
[NOTE: This section is not applicable to Seismic Design Categories A or B. Uncheck this section if one of those categories applies. Confirm Seismic Design Category with structural engineer]		
1. Designated Seismic Systems equipment verification	OBSERVE	✓ Verify model number and serial number are in conformance with project specific seismic qualification (PSSQ) ✓ Verify Tag ID is correct and installed per specifications
2. Designated Seismic Systems equipment Mounting	OBSERVE	✓ Verify that Anchor Base Bolting is installed per PSSQ ✓ Verify that Equipment Bracing is Installed per PSSQ ✓ Verify that Bracing Attachments are installed per PSSQ
3. Designated Seismic Systems utility Conduit/Piping	OBSERVE	✓ Verify that Conduit/Piping is connected to the equipment per PSSQ (flex or rigid) ✓ Verify that Conduit/Piping is seismically supported independently of equipment and in accordance with PSSQ support requirements
4. Designated Seismic Systems clearance	OBSERVE	✓ Adjacent Equipment – Verify that there is adequate gap to eliminate possibility of pounding ✓ Conduit/Piping - Verify that there is adequate gap to eliminate possibility of pounding

END SECTION

¹ **OBSERVE:** Observe these items on a random sampling basis daily to insure that applicable requirements are met. Operations need not be delayed pending these inspections at contractor's risk.

SECTION 01 50 00

TEMPORARY CONSTRUCTION FACILITIES AND CONTROLS
05/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN WATER WORKS ASSOCIATION (AWWA)

AWWA C511 (2017) Reduced-Pressure Principle Backflow Prevention Assembly

FOUNDATION FOR CROSS-CONNECTION CONTROL AND HYDRAULIC RESEARCH (FCCCHR)

FCCCHR List (continuously updated) List of Approved Backflow Prevention Assemblies

FCCCHR Manual (10th Edition) Manual of Cross-Connection Control

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 241 (2013; Errata 2015) Standard for Safeguarding Construction, Alteration, and Demolition Operations

NFPA 70 (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2; TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6; TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10; TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA 17-14; TIA 17-15; TIA 17-16; TIA 17-17) National Electrical Code

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1 (2014) Safety and Health Requirements Manual

U.S. FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION (FAA)

FAA AC 70/7460-1 (2015; Rev L) Obstruction Marking and Lighting

U.S. FEDERAL HIGHWAY ADMINISTRATION (FHWA)

MUTCD (2015) Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Construction Site Plan; G

Traffic Control Plan; G

Haul Road Plan; G

SD-03 Product Data

Backflow Preventers; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Backflow Preventer Tests

SD-07 Certificates

Backflow Tester Certification

Backflow Preventers Certificate of Full Approval

1.3 CONSTRUCTION SITE PLAN

Prior to the start of work, submit a site plan showing the locations and dimensions of temporary facilities (including layouts and details, equipment and material storage area (onsite and offsite), and access and haul routes, avenues of ingress/egress to the fenced area and details of the fence installation. Identify any areas which may have to be graveled to prevent the tracking of mud. Indicate if the use of a supplemental or other staging area is desired. Show locations of safety and construction fences, site trailers, construction entrances, trash dumpsters, temporary sanitary facilities, and worker parking areas.

1.4 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS CERTIFICATE

Certificate of Full Approval from FCCCHR List, University of Southern California, attesting that the design, size and make of each backflow preventer has satisfactorily passed the complete sequence of performance testing and evaluation for the respective level of approval. Certificate of Provisional Approval will not be acceptable.

1.4.1 Backflow Tester Certificate

Prior to testing, submit to the Contracting Officer certification issued by the State or local regulatory agency attesting that the backflow tester has successfully completed a certification course sponsored by the regulatory agency. Tester must not be affiliated with any company participating in any other phase of this Contract.

1.4.2 Backflow Prevention Training Certificate

Submit a certificate recognized by the State or local authority that states the Contractor has completed at least 10 hours of training in backflow preventer installations. The certificate must be current.

1.5 DOD CONDITION OF READINESS (COR)

DOD will set the Condition of Readiness (COR) based on the weather forecast for sustained winds 50 knots (60mph or 95 km/hr) or greater. Contact the Contracting Officer for the current COR setting.

Monitor weather conditions a minimum of twice a day and take appropriate actions according to the approved Emergency Plan in the accepted Accident Prevention Plan, EM-385-1-1 Section 01 Emergency Planning and the instructions below.

Unless otherwise directed by the Contracting Officer, comply with:

- a. Condition FOUR (Sustained winds of 50 knots or greater expected within 72 hours): Normal daily jobsite cleanup and good housekeeping practices. Collect and store in piles or containers scrap lumber, waste material, and rubbish for removal and disposal at the close of each work day. Maintain the construction site including storage areas, free of accumulation of debris. Stack form lumber in neat piles less than 4 feet high. Remove all debris, trash, or objects that could become missile hazards.
- b. Condition THREE (Sustained winds of 50 knots or greater expected within 48 hours): Maintain "Condition FOUR" requirements and commence securing operations necessary for "Condition ONE" which cannot be completed within 18 hours. Cease all routine activities which might interfere with securing operations. Commence securing and stow all gear and portable equipment. Make preparations for securing buildings. Review requirements pertaining to "Condition TWO" and continue action as necessary to attain "Condition THREE" readiness.
- c. Condition TWO (Sustained winds of 50 knots or greater expected within 24 hours): Curtail or cease routine activities until securing operation is complete. Reinforce or remove form work and scaffolding. Secure machinery, tools, equipment, materials, or remove from the jobsite. Expend every effort to clear all missile hazards and loose equipment from general base areas.
- d. Condition ONE. (Sustained winds of 50 knots or greater expected within 12 hours): Secure the jobsite, and leave Government premises.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 TEMPORARY SIGNAGE

2.1.1 Bulletin Board

Within one calendar day of mobilization on site and prior to the commencement of work activities, provide a clear weatherproof covered bulletin board not less than 36 by 48 inches in size for displaying the Equal Employment Opportunity poster, a copy of the wage decision contained in the contract, Wage Rate Information poster, Safety and Health Information as required by EM 385-1-1 Section 01 and other information

approved by the Contracting Officer. Coordinate requirements herein with
01 35 26 GOVERNMENTAL SAFETY REQUIREMENTS.

2.1.2 Project Identification Signs

The requirements for the signs, their content, and location are as specified in Section 01 58 00 PROJECT IDENTIFICATION. Erect signs within 15 days after receipt of the notice to proceed. Correct the data required by the safety sign daily, with light colored metallic or non-metallic numerals.

2.1.3 Warning Signs

Post temporary signs, tags, and labels to give workers and the public adequate warning and caution of construction hazards according to the EM 385-1-1 Section 04. Attach signs to the perimeter fencing every 150 feet warning the public of the presence of construction hazards. Signs must require unauthorized persons to keep out of the construction site. Correct the data required by safety signs daily.

2.2 TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL

2.2.1 Haul Roads

Construct access and haul roads necessary for proper prosecution of the work under this contract in accordance with EM 385-1-1 Section 04. Construct with suitable grades and widths; sharp curves, blind corners, and dangerous cross traffic are to be avoided. Submit haul road plan for approval. Provide necessary lighting, signs, barricades, and distinctive markings for the safe movement of traffic. The method of dust control, although optional, must be adequate to ensure safe operation at all times. Location, grade, width, and alignment of construction and hauling roads are subject to approval by the Contracting Officer. Lighting must be adequate to assure full and clear visibility for full width of haul road and work areas during any night work operations.

2.2.2 Barricades

Erect and maintain temporary barricades to limit public access to hazardous areas. Whenever safe public access to paved areas such as roads, parking areas or sidewalks is prevented by construction activities or as otherwise necessary to ensure the safety of both pedestrian and vehicular traffic barricades will be required. Securely place barricades clearly visible with adequate illumination to provide sufficient visual warning of the hazard during both day and night.

2.3 FENCING

Provide fencing along the construction site and at all open excavations and tunnels to control access by unauthorized personnel. Safety fencing must be highly visible to be seen by pedestrians and vehicular traffic. Specific fencing requirements are as described herein. All fencing will meet the requirements of EM 385-1-1.

Construct permanent perimeter fence to serve as site boundary fencing.

2.3.1 Post-Driven Chain Link Fencing

Temporary post-driven fencing must be galvanized chain link fencing 8 feet high supported by an tightly secured to galvanized steel posts driven below

grade. Fence posts must be located on minimum 10 foot centers. Posts may be set in various surfaces such as sand, soil, asphalt or concrete as necessary. Chain link fencing must remain rigid and taut with a minimum of 200 pounds of force exerted on it from any direction with less than 4 inches of deflection. Any temporary fencing and posts must be completely removed at the completion of construction and any surfaces disturbed or damaged must be restored to its original condition. Permanent perimeter fence will remain in place. Underground utilities must be located and identified prior to setting fence posts. Fence must be equipped with a lockable gate. Gate must remain locked when construction personnel are not present.

2.4 TEMPORARY WIRING

Provide temporary wiring in accordance with EM 385-1-1 Section 11, NFPA 241 and NFPA 70. Include monthly inspection and testing of all equipment and apparatus.

2.5 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

Reduced pressure principle type conforming to the applicable requirements AWWA C511. Provide backflow preventers complete with 150 pound flanged cast iron, mounted gate valve and strainer, 304 stainless steel or bronze, internal parts. The particular make, model/design, and size of backflow preventers to be installed must be included in the latest edition of the List of Approved Backflow Prevention Assemblies issued by the FCCCHR List and be accompanied by a Certificate of Full Approval from FCCCHR List. After installation conduct Backflow Preventer Tests and provide test reports verifying that the installation meets the FCCCHR Manual Standards.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EMPLOYEE PARKING

Construction contract employees will park privately owned vehicles in an area designated by the Contracting Officer. This area will be within reasonable walking distance of the construction site. Employee parking must not interfere with existing and established parking requirements of the government installation.

3.2 TEMPORARY BULLETIN BOARD

Locate the bulletin board at the project site in a conspicuous place easily accessible to all employees, as approved by the Contracting Officer.

3.3 AVAILABILITY AND USE OF UTILITY SERVICES

3.3.1 Temporary Utilities

Provide temporary utilities required for construction. Materials may be new or used, must be adequate for the required usage, not create unsafe conditions, and not violate applicable codes and standards.

3.3.2 Payment for Utility Services

- a. Reasonable amounts of the following utilities will be made available at the prevailing rates.

Utility Services		
	Cost (\$) per	Unit
Electricity		
Potable Water		
Salt Water		
Compressed Air		
Steam		
Natural Gas		
Sanitary Sewer		

3.3.3 Utilities at Special Locations

- a. Reasonable amounts of utilities will be made available at the prevailing Government rates and may be obtained upon application to the Base Maintenance Officer, Bldg. 1202, Marine Corps Base, Camp Lejeune. A refundable security deposit to the Resident Officer in Charge of Construction shall be made prior to application for services. Provide transformers, meter bases, electrical service poles and drops for electrical services, and backflow preventer devices on connections to domestic water lines. Final taps and tie-ins to the Government utility grid will be made by Base Maintenance who will also provide and seal a 120 or 208 volt, three-wire kWh meter. Tap-in cost, if any, shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. Tampering or movement of a sealed meter without notification to base maintenance is grounds for discontinuance of electrical service. Provide larger meters required if they are not available from the Government. The Contractor is responsible for the cost of utility services required until the date of Government acceptance. Under no circumstances will taps to base fire hydrants be allowed for obtaining domestic water.

3.3.4 Sanitation

- a. Provide and maintain within the construction area minimum field-type sanitary facilities approved by the Contracting Officer and periodically empty wastes into a municipal, district, or station sanitary sewage system, or remove waste to a commercial facility. Obtain approval from the system owner prior to discharge into any municipal, district, or commercial sanitary sewer system. Any penalties or fines associated with improper discharge will be the responsibility of the Contractor. Coordinate with the Contracting Officer and follow station regulations and procedures when discharging into the station sanitary sewer system. Maintain these conveniences at all times. Include provisions for pest control and elimination of odors. Government toilet facilities will not be available to Contractor's personnel.

3.3.5 Telephone

Make arrangements and pay all costs for telephone facilities desired.

3.3.6 Obstruction Lighting of Cranes

Provide a minimum of 2 aviation red or high intensity white obstruction lights on temporary structures (including cranes) over 100 feet above ground level. Light construction and installation must comply with FAA AC 70/7460-1. Lights must be operational during periods of reduced visibility, darkness, and as directed by the Contracting Officer.

3.3.7 Fire Protection

Provide temporary fire protection equipment for the protection of personnel and property during construction. Remove debris and flammable materials daily to minimize potential hazards.

3.4 TRAFFIC PROVISIONS

3.4.1 Maintenance of Traffic

- a. Conduct operations in a manner that will not close any thoroughfare or interfere in any way with traffic on railways or highways except with written permission of the Contracting Officer at least 15 calendar days prior to the proposed modification date, and provide a Traffic Control Plan detailing the proposed controls to traffic movement for approval. The plan must be in accordance with State and local regulations and the MUTCD, Part VI. Contractor may move oversized and slow-moving vehicles to the worksite provided requirements of the highway authority have been met.
- b. Conduct work so as to minimize obstruction of traffic, and maintain traffic on at least half of the roadway width at all times. Obtain approval from the Contracting Officer prior to starting any activity that will obstruct traffic.
- c. Provide, erect, and maintain, at contractors expense, lights, barriers, signals, passageways, detours, and other items, that may be required by the Life Safety Signage, overhead protection authority having jurisdiction.

3.4.2 Protection of Traffic

Maintain and protect traffic on all affected roads during the construction period except as otherwise specifically directed by the Contracting Officer. Measures for the protection and diversion of traffic, including the provision of watchmen and flagmen, erection of barricades, placing of lights around and in front of equipment the work, and the erection and maintenance of adequate warning, danger, and direction signs, will be as required by the State and local authorities having jurisdiction. Protect the traveling public from damage to person and property. Minimize the interference with public traffic on roads selected for hauling material to and from the site. Investigate the adequacy of existing roads and their allowable load limit. Contractor is responsible for the repair of any damage to roads caused by construction operations.

3.4.3 Rush Hour Restrictions

Do not interfere with the peak traffic flows preceding and during normal operations without notification to and approval by the Contracting Officer.

3.4.4 Dust Control

Dust control methods and procedures must be approved by the Contracting Officer. Coordinate dust control methods with 01 57 19 TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS.

3.5 CONTRACTOR'S TEMPORARY FACILITIES

3.5.1 Quality Control Manager Records and Field Office

Provide on the jobsite an office with approximately 150 square feet of useful floor area for the exclusive use of the QC Manager. Provide a weathertight structure with adequate heating and cooling, toilet facilities, lighting, ventilation, a 4 by 8 foot plan table, a standard size office desk and chair, computer station, and working communications facilities. Provide either a 1,500 watt radiant heater and a window-mounted air conditioner rated at 9,000 Btus minimum or a window-mounted heat pump of the same minimum heating and cooling ratings. Provide a door with a cylinder lock and windows with locking hardware. Make utility connections. Locate as directed. File quality control records in the office and make available at all times to the Government. After completion of the work, remove the entire structure from the site.

3.5.2 Safety Systems

Protect the integrity of any installed safety systems or personnel safety devices. Obtain prior approval from Contracting Officer if entrance into systems serving safety devices is required. If it is temporarily necessary to remove or disable personnel safety devices in order to accomplish contract requirements, provide alternative means of protection prior to removing or disabling any permanently installed safety devices or equipment and obtain approval from the Contracting Officer.

3.5.3 Administrative Field Offices

Provide and maintain administrative field office facilities within the construction area at the designated site. Government office and warehouse facilities will not be available to the Contractor's personnel.

3.5.4 Storage Area

Construct a temporary 6 foot high chain link fence around trailers and materials. Include plastic strip inserts, colored green, so that visibility through the fence is obstructed. Fence posts may be driven, in lieu of concrete bases, where soil conditions permit. Do not place or store trailers, materials, or equipment outside the fenced area unless such trailers, materials, or equipment are assigned a separate and distinct storage area by the Contracting Officer away from the vicinity of the construction site but within the installation boundaries. Trailers, equipment, or materials must not be open to public view with the exception of those items which are in support of ongoing work on any given day. Do not stockpile materials outside the fence in preparation for the next day's work. Park mobile equipment, such as tractors, wheeled lifting equipment, cranes, trucks, and like equipment within the fenced area at the end of each work day.

3.5.5 Supplemental Storage Area

Upon request, and pending availability, the Contracting Officer will

designate another or supplemental area for the use and storage of trailers, equipment, and materials. This area may not be in close proximity of the construction site but will be within the installation boundaries. The area will be maintained in a clean and orderly fashion and secured if needed to protect supplies and equipment. Utilities will not be provided to this area by the Government.

3.5.6 Appearance of Trailers

- a. Trailers which are rusted, have peeling paint or are otherwise in need of repair will not be allowed on Installation property. Trailers must present a clean and neat exterior appearance and be in a state of good repair.
- b. [Paint in accordance with facility standards](#) and maintain the temporary facilities. Failure to do so will be sufficient reason to require their removal.

3.5.7 Maintenance of Storage Area

- a. Keep fencing in a state of good repair and proper alignment. Grassed or unpaved areas, which are not established roadways, and will be traversed with construction equipment or other vehicles, will be covered with a layer of gravel as necessary to prevent rutting and the tracking of mud onto paved or established roadways, should the Contractor elect to traverse them with construction equipment or other vehicles. Mow and maintain grass located within the boundaries of the construction site for the duration of the project. Grass and vegetation along fences, buildings, under trailers, and in areas not accessible to mowers will be edged or trimmed neatly.

3.5.8 New Building

In the event a new building is constructed for the temporary project field office, it will be a minimum [12 feet](#) in width, [16 feet](#) in length and have a minimum of [7 feet](#) headroom. Equip the building with approved electrical wiring, at least one double convenience outlet and the required switches and fuses to provide 110-120 volt power. Provide a work table with stool, desk with chair, two additional chairs, and one legal size file cabinet that can be locked. The building must be waterproof, supplied with a heater, have a minimum of two doors, electric lights, a telephone, a battery operated smoke detector alarm, a sufficient number of adjustable windows for adequate light and ventilation, and a supply of approved drinking water. Approved sanitary facilities must be furnished. Screen the windows and doors and provide the doors with dead bolt type locking devices or a padlock and heavy duty hasp bolted to the door. Door hinge pins will be non-removable. Arrange the windows to open and to be securely fastened from the inside. Protect glass panels in windows by bars or heavy mesh screens to prevent easy access. In warm weather, furnish air conditioning capable of maintaining the office at 50 percent relative humidity and a room temperature [20 degrees F](#) below the outside temperature when the outside temperature is [95 degrees F](#). Any new building erected for a temporary field office must be maintained during the life of the contract. Unless otherwise directed by the Contracting Officer, remove the building from the site upon completion and acceptance of the work.

3.5.9 Security Provisions

Provide adequate outside security lighting at the temporary facilities.

The Contractor will be responsible for the security of its own equipment.

3.5.10 Storage Size and Location

The site available for storage must be as directed by the Contracting Officer.

3.5.11 Weather Protection of Temporary Facilities and Stored Materials

Take necessary precautions to ensure that roof openings and other critical openings in the building are monitored carefully. Take immediate actions required to seal off such openings when rain or other detrimental weather is imminent, and at the end of each workday. Ensure that the openings are completely sealed off to protect materials and equipment in the building from damage.

3.5.11.1 Building and Site Storm Protection

When a warning of gale force winds is issued, take precautions to minimize danger to persons, and protect the work and nearby Government property. Precautions must include, but are not limited to, closing openings; removing loose materials, tools and equipment from exposed locations; and removing or securing scaffolding and other temporary work. Close openings in the work when storms of lesser intensity pose a threat to the work or any nearby Government property.

3.6 PLANT COMMUNICATIONS

Whenever the individual elements of the plant are located so that operation by normal voice between these elements is not satisfactory, install a satisfactory means of communication, such as telephone or other suitable devices and make available for use by Government personnel.

3.7 TEMPORARY PROJECT SAFETY FENCING

As soon as practicable, but not later than 15 days after the date established for commencement of work, furnish and erect temporary project safety fencing at the work site. Maintain the safety fencing during the life of the contract and, upon completion and acceptance of the work, remove from the work site.

3.8 CLEANUP

Remove construction debris, waste materials, packaging material and the like from the work site daily. Any dirt or mud which is tracked onto paved or surfaced roadways must be cleaned away. Store any salvageable materials resulting from demolition activities within the fenced area described above or at the supplemental storage area. Neatly stack stored materials not in trailers, whether new or salvaged.

3.9 RESTORATION OF STORAGE AREA

Upon completion of the project remove the bulletin board, signs, barricades, haul roads, and any other temporary products from the site. After removal of trailers, materials, and equipment from within the fenced area, remove the fence. Restore areas used during the performance of the contract to the original or better condition. Remove gravel used to traverse grassed areas and restore the area to its original condition, including top soil and seeding as necessary.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 01 57 19

TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS

11/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR 1910.120	Hazardous Waste Operations and Emergency Response
40 CFR 112	Oil Pollution Prevention
40 CFR 122.26	Storm Water Discharges (Applicable to State NPDES Programs, see section 123.25)
40 CFR 241	Guidelines for Disposal of Solid Waste
40 CFR 243	Guidelines for the Storage and Collection of Residential, Commercial, and Institutional Solid Waste
40 CFR 258	Subtitle D Landfill Requirements
40 CFR 260	Hazardous Waste Management System: General
40 CFR 261	Identification and Listing of Hazardous Waste
40 CFR 261.7	Residues of Hazardous Waste in Empty Containers
40 CFR 262	Standards Applicable to Generators of Hazardous Waste
40 CFR 262.31	Standards Applicable to Generators of Hazardous Waste-Labeling
40 CFR 262.34	Standards Applicable to Generators of Hazardous Waste-Accumulation Time
40 CFR 263	Standards Applicable to Transporters of Hazardous Waste
40 CFR 264	Standards for Owners and Operators of Hazardous Waste Treatment, Storage, and Disposal Facilities
40 CFR 265	Interim Status Standards for Owners and Operators of Hazardous Waste Treatment, Storage, and Disposal Facilities

40 CFR 266	Standards for the Management of Specific Hazardous Wastes and Specific Types of Hazardous Waste Management Facilities
40 CFR 268	Land Disposal Restrictions
40 CFR 273	Standards for Universal Waste Management
40 CFR 273.2	Standards for Universal Waste Management - Batteries
40 CFR 273.4	Standards for Universal Waste Management - Mercury Containing Equipment
40 CFR 273.5	Standards for Universal Waste Management - Lamps
40 CFR 279	Standards for the Management of Used Oil
40 CFR 300	National Oil and Hazardous Substances Pollution Contingency Plan
40 CFR 300.125	National Oil and Hazardous Substances Pollution Contingency Plan - Notification and Communications
40 CFR 355	Emergency Planning and Notification
40 CFR 403	General Pretreatment Regulations for Existing and New Sources of Pollution
40 CFR 50	National Primary and Secondary Ambient Air Quality Standards
40 CFR 60	Standards of Performance for New Stationary Sources
40 CFR 63	National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants for Source Categories
40 CFR 64	Compliance Assurance Monitoring
49 CFR 171	General Information, Regulations, and Definitions
49 CFR 172	Hazardous Materials Table, Special Provisions, Hazardous Materials Communications, Emergency Response Information, and Training Requirements
49 CFR 173	Shippers - General Requirements for Shipments and Packagings
49 CFR 178	Specifications for Packagings

1.2 DEFINITIONS

1.2.1 Class I and II Ozone Depleting Substance (ODS)

Class I ODS is defined in Section 602(a) of The Clean Air Act. A list of Class I ODS can be found on the EPA website at the following weblink.
<https://www.epa.gov/ozone-layer-protection/ozone-depleting-substances>.

Class II ODS is defined in Section 602(s) of The Clean Air Act. A list of Class II ODS can be found on the EPA website at the following weblink.
<https://www.epa.gov/ozone-layer-protection/ozone-depleting-substances>.

1.2.2 Contractor Generated Hazardous Waste

Contractor generated hazardous waste is materials that, if abandoned or disposed of, may meet the definition of a hazardous waste. These waste streams would typically consist of material brought on site by the Contractor to execute work, but are not fully consumed during the course of construction. Examples include, but are not limited to, excess paint thinners (i.e. methyl ethyl ketone, toluene), waste thinners, excess paints, excess solvents, waste solvents, excess pesticides, and contaminated pesticide equipment rinse water.

1.2.3 Electronics Waste

Electronics waste is discarded electronic devices intended for salvage, recycling, or disposal.

1.2.4 Environmental Pollution and Damage

Environmental pollution and damage is the presence of chemical, physical, or biological elements or agents which adversely affect human health or welfare; unfavorably alter ecological balances of importance to human life; affect other species of importance to humankind; or degrade the environment aesthetically, culturally or historically.

1.2.5 Environmental Protection

Environmental protection is the prevention/control of pollution and habitat disruption that may occur to the environment during construction. The control of environmental pollution and damage requires consideration of land, water, and air; biological and cultural resources; and includes management of visual aesthetics; noise; solid, chemical, gaseous, and liquid waste; radiant energy and radioactive material as well as other pollutants.

1.2.6 Hazardous Debris

As defined in paragraph SOLID WASTE, debris that contains listed hazardous waste (either on the debris surface, or in its interstices, such as pore structure) in accordance with 40 CFR 261. Hazardous debris also includes debris that exhibits a characteristic of hazardous waste in accordance with 40 CFR 261.

1.2.7 Hazardous Materials

Hazardous materials as defined in 49 CFR 171 and listed in 49 CFR 172.

Hazardous material is any material that: Is regulated as a hazardous

material in accordance with 49 CFR 173; or requires a Safety Data Sheet (SDS) in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.120; or during end use, treatment, handling, packaging, storage, transportation, or disposal meets or has components that meet or have potential to meet the definition of a hazardous waste as defined by 40 CFR 261 Subparts A, B, C, or D. Designation of a material by this definition, when separately regulated or controlled by other sections or directives, does not eliminate the need for adherence to that hazard-specific guidance which takes precedence over this section for "control" purposes. Such material includes ammunition, weapons, explosive actuated devices, propellants, pyrotechnics, chemical and biological warfare materials, medical and pharmaceutical supplies, medical waste and infectious materials, bulk fuels, radioactive materials, and other materials such as asbestos, mercury, and polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs).

1.2.8 Hazardous Waste

Hazardous Waste is any material that meets the definition of a solid waste and exhibit a hazardous characteristic (ignitability, corrosivity, reactivity, or toxicity) as specified in 40 CFR 261, Subpart C, or contains a listed hazardous waste as identified in 40 CFR 261, Subpart D.

1.2.9 Land Application

Land Application means spreading or spraying discharge water at a rate that allows the water to percolate into the soil. No sheeting action, soil erosion, discharge into storm sewers, discharge into defined drainage areas, or discharge into the "waters of the United States" must occur. Comply with federal, state, and local laws and regulations.

1.2.10 Municipal Separate Storm Sewer System (MS4) Permit

MS4 permits are those held by installations to obtain NPDES permit coverage for their stormwater discharges.

1.2.11 National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES)

The NPDES permit program controls water pollution by regulating point sources that discharge pollutants into waters of the United States.

1.2.12 Oily Waste

Oily waste are those materials that are, or were, mixed with Petroleum, Oils, and Lubricants (POLs) and have become separated from that POLs. Oily wastes also means materials, including wastewaters, centrifuge solids, filter residues or sludges, bottom sediments, tank bottoms, and sorbents which have come into contact with and have been contaminated by, POLs and may be appropriately tested and discarded in a manner which is in compliance with other state and local requirements.

This definition includes materials such as oily rags, "kitty litter" sorbent clay and organic sorbent material. These materials may be land filled provided that: It is not prohibited in other state regulations or local ordinances; the amount generated is "de minimus" (a small amount); it is the result of minor leaks or spills resulting from normal process operations; and free-flowing oil has been removed to the practicable extent possible. Large quantities of this material, generated as a result of a major spill or in lieu of proper maintenance of the processing equipment, are a solid waste. As a solid waste, perform a hazardous waste

determination prior to disposal. As this can be an expensive process, it is recommended that this type of waste be minimized through good housekeeping practices and employee education.

1.2.13 Regulated Waste

Regulated waste are solid wastes that have specific additional federal, state, or local controls for handling, storage, or disposal.

1.2.14 Sediment

Sediment is soil and other debris that have eroded and have been transported by runoff water or wind.

1.2.15 Solid Waste

Solid waste is a solid, liquid, semi-solid or contained gaseous waste. A solid waste can be a hazardous waste, non-hazardous waste, or non-Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) regulated waste. Types of solid waste typically generated at construction sites may include:

1.2.15.1 Debris

Debris is non-hazardous solid material generated during the construction, demolition, or renovation of a structure that exceeds 2.5-inch particle size that is: a manufactured object; plant or animal matter; or natural geologic material (for example, cobbles and boulders), broken or removed concrete, masonry, and rock asphalt paving; ceramics; roofing paper and shingles. Inert materials may be reinforced with or contain ferrous wire, rods, accessories and weldments. A mixture of debris and other material such as soil or sludge is also subject to regulation as debris if the mixture is comprised primarily of debris by volume, based on visual inspection.

1.2.15.2 Green Waste

Green waste is the vegetative matter from landscaping, land clearing and grubbing, including, but not limited to, grass, bushes, scrubs, small trees and saplings, tree stumps and plant roots. Marketable trees, grasses and plants that are indicated to remain, be re-located, or be re-used are not included.

1.2.15.3 Material not regulated as solid waste

Material not regulated as solid waste is nuclear source or byproduct materials regulated under the Federal Atomic Energy Act of 1954 as amended; suspended or dissolved materials in domestic sewage effluent or irrigation return flows, or other regulated point source discharges; regulated air emissions; and fluids or wastes associated with natural gas or crude oil exploration or production.

1.2.15.4 Non-Hazardous Waste

Non-hazardous waste is waste that is excluded from, or does not meet, hazardous waste criteria in accordance with 40 CFR 263.

1.2.15.5 Recyclables

Recyclables are materials, equipment and assemblies such as doors, windows,

door and window frames, plumbing fixtures, glazing and mirrors that are recovered and sold as recyclable, wiring, insulated/non-insulated copper wire cable, wire rope, and structural components. It also includes commercial-grade refrigeration equipment with Freon removed, household appliances where the basic material content is metal, clean polyethylene terephthalate bottles, cooking oil, used fuel oil, textiles, high-grade paper products and corrugated cardboard, stackable pallets in good condition, clean crating material, and clean rubber/vehicle tires. Metal meeting the definition of lead contaminated or lead based paint contaminated may be included as recyclable if sold to a scrap metal company. Paint cans that meet the definition of empty containers in accordance with 40 CFR 261.7 may be included as recyclable if sold to a scrap metal company.

1.2.15.6 Surplus Soil

Surplus soil is existing soil that is in excess of what is required for this work, including aggregates intended, but not used, for on-site mixing of concrete, mortars, and paving. Contaminated soil meeting the definition of hazardous material or hazardous waste is not included and must be managed in accordance with paragraph HAZARDOUS MATERIAL MANAGEMENT.

1.2.15.7 Scrap Metal

This includes scrap and excess ferrous and non-ferrous metals such as reinforcing steel, structural shapes, pipe, and wire that are recovered or collected and disposed of as scrap. Scrap metal meeting the definition of hazardous material or hazardous waste is not included.

1.2.15.8 Wood

Wood is dimension and non-dimension lumber, plywood, chipboard, hardboard. Treated or painted wood that meets the definition of lead contaminated or lead based contaminated paint is not included. Treated wood includes, but is not limited to, lumber, utility poles, crossties, and other wood products with chemical treatment.

1.2.16 Surface Discharge

Surface discharge means discharge of water into drainage ditches, storm sewers, creeks or "waters of the United States". Surface discharges are discrete, identifiable sources and require a permit from the governing agency. Comply with federal, state, and local laws and regulations.

1.2.17 Wastewater

Wastewater is the used water and solids from a community that flow to a treatment plant.

1.2.17.1 Stormwater

Stormwater is any precipitation in an urban or suburban area that does not evaporate or soak into the ground, but instead collects and flows into storm drains, rivers, and streams.

1.2.18 Waters of the United States

Waters of the United States means Federally jurisdictional waters, including wetlands, that are subject to regulation under Section 404 of the

Clean Water Act or navigable waters, as defined under the Rivers and Harbors Act.

1.2.19 Wetlands

Wetlands are those areas that are inundated or saturated by surface or groundwater at a frequency and duration sufficient to support, and that under normal circumstances do support, a prevalence of vegetation typically adapted for life in saturated soil conditions.

1.2.20 Universal Waste

The universal waste regulations streamline collection requirements for certain hazardous wastes in the following categories: batteries, pesticides, mercury-containing equipment (for example, thermostats), and lamps (for example, fluorescent bulbs) and aerosol cans. The rule is designed to reduce hazardous waste in the municipal solid waste (MSW) stream by making it easier for universal waste handlers to collect these items and send them for recycling or proper disposal. These regulations can be found at 40 CFR 273.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for all submittals. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

- Preconstruction Survey
- Solid Waste Management Permit; G
- Regulatory Notifications; G
- Environmental Protection Plan; G
- Stormwater Notice of Intent (for NPDES coverage under the general permit for construction activities); G
- Dirt and Dust Control Plan; G
- Employee Training Records; G
- Environmental Manager Qualifications; G

SD-06 Test Reports

- Inspection Reports
- Solid Waste Management Report; G

SD-07 Certificates

- Employee Training Records; G
- ECATTS Certificate Of Completion; G
- Erosion and Sediment Control Inspector Qualifications

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

- Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan Compliance Notebook; G
- Stormwater Notice of Termination (for NPDES coverage under the general permit for construction activities); G
- Waste Determination Documentation; G
- Disposal Documentation for Hazardous and Regulated Waste; G
- Assembled Employee Training Records; G

Solid Waste Management Permit; G
Solid Waste Management Report; G
Contractor Hazardous Material Inventory Log; G
Hazardous Waste/Debris Management; G
Regulatory Notifications; G
Sales Documentation; G
As-Built Topographic Survey
Vapor Intrusion Mitigation System As-Built Drawings; G
O&M/Pm Documentation; G

1.4 ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION REQUIREMENTS

Provide and maintain, during the life of the contract, environmental protection as defined. Plan for and provide environmental protective measures to control pollution that develops during construction practice. Plan for and provide environmental protective measures required to correct conditions that develop during the construction of permanent or temporary environmental features associated with the project. Protect the environmental resources within the project boundaries and those affected outside the limits of permanent work during the entire duration of this Contract. Comply with federal, state, and local regulations pertaining to the environment, including water, air, solid waste, hazardous waste and substances, oily substances, and noise pollution.

Tests and procedures assessing whether construction operations comply with Applicable Environmental Laws may be required. Project-specific environmental constraints have been identified and should be incorporated into all design aspects and appropriate deliverables. Refer to supplemental documents, specifically the Decision Memorandum(s) and Contractors Environmental Guide (available online at http://www.lejeune.marines.mil/Portals/27/Documents/EMD/Contractor_Environmental_Guide.pdf.) Analytical work must be performed by qualified laboratories; and where required by law, the laboratories must be certified.

1.4.1 Training in Environmental Compliance Assessment Training and Tracking System (ECATTS)

1.4.1.1 Personnel Requirements

The Environmental Manager is responsible for environmental compliance on projects. The Environmental Manager must complete applicable ECATTS training modules (installation specific or general) prior to starting respective portions of on-site work under this Contract. If personnel changes occur for any of these positions after starting work, replacement personnel must complete applicable ECATTS training within 14 days of assignment to the project.

1.4.1.2 Certification

Refer to Marine Corps Order 5090.2 for record keeping requirements (<https://www.marines.mil/News/Publications/MCPPEL/Electronic-Library-Display/Article/1552941/mco-50902>). All records should be kept with Environmental Planning and Environmental Manager assigned to the contract.

Register for NAVFAC ECATTS by logging on to <https://environmentaltraining.ecatts.com/>. Obtain the password for registration from the Contracting Officer.

1.4.1.3 Refresher Training

This training has been structured to allow contractor personnel to receive credit under this contract and to carry forward credit to future contracts. Ensure the Environmental Manager review their training plans for new modules or updated training requirements prior to beginning work. Some training modules are tailored for specific state regulatory requirements; therefore, Contractors working in multiple states will be required to retake modules tailored to the state where the contract work is being performed.

1.4.2 Conformance with the Environmental Management System

Perform work under this contract consistent with the policy and objectives identified in the installation's Environmental Management System (EMS). Perform work in a manner that conforms to objectives and targets of the environmental programs and operational controls identified by the EMS. Support Government personnel when environmental compliance and EMS audits are conducted by escorting auditors at the Project site, answering questions, and providing proof of records being maintained. Provide monitoring and measurement information as necessary to address environmental performance relative to environmental, energy, and transportation management goals. In the event an EMS nonconformance or environmental noncompliance associated with the contracted services, tasks, or actions occurs, take corrective and preventative actions. In addition, employees must be aware of their roles and responsibilities under the installation EMS and of how these EMS roles and responsibilities affect work performed under the contract.

Coordinate with the installation's EMS coordinator to identify training needs associated with environmental aspects and the EMS, and arrange training or take other action to meet these needs. Provide training documentation to the Contracting Officer. The Installation Environmental Office will retain associated environmental compliance records. Make EMS Awareness training completion certificates available to Government auditors during EMS audits and include the certificates in the Employee Training Records. See paragraph EMPLOYEE TRAINING RECORDS.

1.5 SPECIAL ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Comply with the special environmental requirements listed here and attached at the end of this section.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6.1 Preconstruction Survey and Protection of Features

This paragraph supplements the Contract Clause PROTECTION OF EXISTING VEGETATION, STRUCTURES, EQUIPMENT, UTILITIES, AND IMPROVEMENTS. Prior to start of any onsite construction activities, perform a [Preconstruction Survey](#) of the project site with the Contracting Officer, and take photographs showing existing environmental conditions in and adjacent to the site. Submit a report for the record. Include in the report a plan describing the features requiring protection under the provisions of the Contract Clauses, which are not specifically identified on the drawings as environmental features requiring protection along with the condition of trees, shrubs and grassed areas immediately adjacent to the site of work and adjacent to the Contractor's assigned storage area and access route(s), as applicable. The Contractor and the Contracting Officer will sign this

survey report upon mutual agreement regarding its accuracy and completeness. Protect those environmental features included in the survey report and any indicated on the drawings, regardless of interference that their preservation may cause to the work under the Contract.

1.6.2 Regulatory Notifications

Provide regulatory notification requirements in accordance with federal, state and local regulations. In cases where the Government will also provide public notification (such as stormwater permitting), coordinate with the Contracting Officer. Submit copies of regulatory notifications to the Contracting Officer at least 15 days prior to commencement of work activities. Typically, regulatory notifications must be provided for the following (this listing is not all-inclusive): demolition, renovation, NPDES defined site work, construction, removal or use of a permitted air emissions source, and remediation of controlled substances (asbestos, hazardous waste, lead paint), and construction within an environmental land use controlled (LUC) or land use restricted (LUR) area. Note: Construction within a LUC or LUR area requires a minimum 60-day notification to regulators.

1.6.3 Environmental Brief

Attend an environmental brief to be included in the preconstruction meeting. Provide the following information: types, quantities, and use of hazardous materials that will be brought onto the installation; and types and quantities of wastes/wastewater that may be generated during the Contract. Discuss the results of the Preconstruction Survey at this time.

Prior to initiating any work on site, meet with the Contracting Officer and installation Environmental Office to discuss the proposed Environmental Protection Plan (EPP). Develop a mutual understanding relative to the details of environmental protection, including measures for protecting natural and cultural resources, required reports, required permits, permit requirements (such as mitigation measures), and other measures to be taken.

1.6.4 Environmental Manager

Appoint in writing an Environmental Manager for each project site. The Environmental Manager is directly responsible for coordinating contractor compliance with federal, state, local, and installation requirements. The Environmental Manager must ensure compliance with Hazardous Waste Program requirements (including hazardous waste handling, storage, manifesting, and disposal); implement the EPP; ensure environmental permits are obtained, maintained, and closed out; ensure compliance with Stormwater Program requirements; ensure compliance with Hazardous Materials (storage, handling, and reporting) requirements; ensure appropriate documentation for new air emission sources that need to be added to the Installation's Title V Air Quality Permit is provided to the Installation's Air Quality Program Manager in a timely manner; ensure POL containing storage tank installations and/or removals are coordinated with the Installation's POL program manager; and coordinate any remediation of regulated substances (lead, asbestos, PCB transformers). This can be a collateral position; however, the person in this position must be trained to adequately accomplish the following duties: ensure waste segregation and storage compatibility requirements are met; inspect and manage Satellite Accumulation areas; ensure only authorized personnel add wastes to containers; ensure Contractor personnel are trained in 40 CFR requirements in accordance with their position requirements; coordinate removal of waste

containers; and maintain the Environmental Records binder and required documentation, including environmental permits compliance and close-out. Submit [Environmental Manager Qualifications](#) to the Contracting Officer.

1.6.5 Employee Training Records

Prepare and maintain [Employee Training Records](#) throughout the term of the contract meeting applicable 40 CFR requirements. Provide Employee Training Records in the Environmental Records Binder. Ensure every employee completes a program of classroom instruction or on-the-job training that teaches them to perform their duties in a way that ensures compliance with federal, state and local regulatory requirements for RCRA Large Quantity Generator. Provide a Position Description for each employee, by subcontractor, based on the Davis-Bacon Wage Rate designation or other equivalent method, evaluating the employee's association with hazardous and regulated wastes. This Position Description will include training requirements as defined in [40 CFR 265](#) for a Large Quantity Generator facility. Submit these [Assembled Employee Training Records](#) to the Contracting Officer at the conclusion of the project, unless otherwise directed.

Train personnel to meet EPA and state requirements. Conduct environmental protection/pollution control meetings for personnel prior to commencing construction activities. Contact additional meetings for new personnel and when site conditions change. Include in the training and meeting agenda: methods of detecting and avoiding pollution; familiarization with statutory and contractual pollution standards; installation and care of devices, vegetative covers, and instruments required for monitoring purposes to ensure adequate and continuous environmental protection/pollution control; anticipated hazardous or toxic chemicals or wastes, and other regulated contaminants; recognition and protection of archaeological sites, artifacts, waters of the United States, and endangered species and their habitat that are known to be in the area. Provide copy of the [Erosion and Sediment Control Inspector](#) Certification as required by the state of North Carolina.

1.6.6 Non-Compliance Notifications

The Contracting Officer will notify the Contractor in writing of any observed noncompliance with federal, state or local environmental laws or regulations, permits, and other elements of the Contractor's EPP. After receipt of such notice, inform the Contracting Officer of the proposed corrective action and take such action when approved by the Contracting Officer. The Contracting Officer may issue an order stopping all or part of the work until satisfactory corrective action has been taken. FAR 52.242-14 Suspension of Work provides that a suspension, delay, or interruption of work due to the fault or negligence of the Contractor allows for no adjustments to the contract for time extensions or equitable adjustments. In addition to a suspension of work, the Contracting Officer may use additional authorities under the contract or law..

1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION PLAN

The purpose of the EPP is to present an overview of known or potential environmental issues that must be considered and addressed during construction. Incorporate construction related objectives and targets from the installation's EMS into the EPP. Include in the EPP measures for protecting natural and cultural resources, required reports, and other measures to be taken. Meet with the Contracting Officer or Contracting

Officer Representative to discuss the EPP and develop a mutual understanding relative to the details for environmental protection including measures for protecting natural resources, required reports, and other measures to be taken. Project Specific environmental constraints have been identified and should be incorporated into all design aspects and appropriate deliverables. Refer to supplemental documents, specifically the Decision Memorandum(s) and Contractors Environmental Guide (available online at http://www.lejeune.marines.mil/Portals/27/Documents/EMD/Contractor_Environmental_Guide.pdf). Submit the EPP within 15 days after notice to proceed and not less than 10 days before the preconstruction meeting. Revise the EPP throughout the project to include any reporting requirements, changes in site conditions, or contract modifications that change the project scope of work in a way that could have an environmental impact. No requirement in this section will relieve the Contractor of any applicable federal, state, and local environmental protection laws and regulations. During Construction, identify, implement, and submit for approval any additional requirements to be included in the EPP. Maintain the current version onsite.

The EPP includes, but is not limited to, the following elements:

1.7.1 General Overview and Purpose

1.7.1.1 Descriptions

A brief description of each specific plan required by environmental permit or elsewhere in this Contract such as stormwater pollution prevention plan, spill control plan, solid waste management plan, wastewater management plan, air pollution control plan, contaminant prevention plan, a historical, archaeological, cultural resources, biological resources and wetlands plan, traffic control plan Hazardous, Toxic and Radioactive Waste (HTRW) Plan Non-Hazardous Solid Waste Disposal Plan borrowing material plan, Explosive safety (3R Training), chemical soil vapor mitigation, and management of contaminated soil/groundwater.

1.7.1.2 Duties

The duties and level of authority assigned to the person(s) on the job site who oversee environmental compliance, such as who is responsible for adherence to the EPP, who is responsible for spill cleanup and training personnel on spill response procedures, who is responsible for manifesting hazardous waste to be removed from the site (if applicable), and who is responsible for training the Contractor's environmental protection personnel.

1.7.1.3 Procedures

A copy of any standard or project-specific operating procedures that will be used to effectively manage and protect the environment on the project site.

1.7.1.4 Communications

Communication and training procedures that will be used to convey environmental management requirements to Contractor employees and subcontractors.

1.7.1.5 Contact Information

Emergency contact information contact information (office phone number, cell phone number, and e-mail address).

1.7.2 General Site Information

1.7.2.1 Drawings

Drawings showing locations of proposed temporary excavations or embankments for haul roads, stream crossings, jurisdictional wetlands, material storage areas, structures, sanitary facilities, storm drains and conveyances, and stockpiles of excess soil.

1.7.2.2 Work Area

Work area plan showing the proposed activity in each portion of the area and identify the areas of limited use or nonuse. Include measures for marking the limits of use areas, including methods for protection of features to be preserved within authorized work areas and methods to control runoff and to contain materials on site, and a traffic control plan.

1.7.2.3 Documentation

A letter signed by an officer of the firm appointing the Environmental Manager and stating that person is responsible for managing and implementing the Environmental Program as described in this contract. Include in this letter the Environmental Manager's authority to direct the removal and replacement of non-conforming work.

1.7.3 Management of Natural Resources

- a. Land resources
- b. Tree protection
- c. Replacement of damaged landscape features
- d. Temporary construction
- e. Stream crossings
- f. Fish and wildlife resources (including known threatened and endangered species)
- g. Wetland areas

1.7.4 Protection of Historical and Archaeological Resources

- a. Objectives
- b. Methods

1.7.5 Stormwater Management and Control

- a. Ground cover
- b. Erodible soils
- c. Temporary measures
 - (1) Structural Practices
 - (2) Temporary and permanent stabilization
- d. Effective selection, implementation and maintenance of Stormwater Control Measures (SCMs).

1.7.6 Protection of the Environment from Waste Derived from Contractor Operations

Control and disposal of solid and sanitary waste. Control and disposal of hazardous waste.

This item consists of the management procedures for hazardous waste to be generated. The elements of those procedures will coincide with the Installation Hazardous Waste Management Plan. The Contracting Officer will provide a copy of the Installation Hazardous Waste Management Plan. As a minimum, include the following:

- a. List of the types of hazardous wastes expected to be generated
- b. Procedures to ensure a written waste determination is made for appropriate wastes that are to be generated
- c. Sampling/analysis plan, including laboratory method(s) that will be used for waste determinations and copies of relevant laboratory certifications
- d. Methods and proposed locations for hazardous waste accumulation/storage (that is, in tanks or containers)
- e. Management procedures for storage, labeling, transportation, and disposal of waste (treatment of waste is not allowed unless specifically noted)
- f. Management procedures and regulatory documentation ensuring disposal of hazardous waste complies with Land Disposal Restrictions (40 CFR 268)
- g. Management procedures for recyclable hazardous materials such as lead-acid batteries, used oil, and similar
- h. Used oil management procedures in accordance with 40 CFR 279; Hazardous waste minimization procedures
- i. Plans for the disposal of hazardous waste by permitted facilities; and Procedures to be employed to ensure required employee training records are maintained.

1.7.7 Prevention of Releases to the Environment

- a. Procedures to prevent releases to the environment
- b. Notifications in the event of a release to the environment
- c. Controls for managing existing contamination from known Environmental Restoration and petroleum remediation sites.

1.7.8 Regulatory Notification and Permits

List what notifications and permit applications must be made. Some permits require up to 180 days to obtain. Demonstrate that those permits have been obtained or applied for by including copies of applicable environmental permits including monitoring well installation and abandonment records. The EPP will not be approved until the permits have been obtained.

1.7.9 Clean Air Act Compliance

1.7.9.1 Haul Route

Submit truck and material haul routes along with a [Dirt and Dust Control Plan](#) for controlling dirt, debris, and dust on Installation roadways. As a minimum, identify in the plan the subcontractor and equipment for cleaning along the haul route and measures to reduce dirt, dust, and debris from roadways.

1.7.9.2 Pollution Generating Equipment

Identify air pollution generating equipment or processes that may require federal, state, or local permits under the Clean Air Act. Determine requirements based on any current installation permits and the impacts of the project. Provide a list of all fixed or mobile equipment, machinery or operations that could generate air emissions during the project to the Installation Environmental Office (Air Program Manager).

1.7.9.3 Stationary Internal Combustion Engines

Identify portable and stationary internal combustion engines that will be supplied, used or serviced. Comply with [40 CFR 60](#) Subpart IIII, [40 CFR 60](#) Subpart JJJJ, [40 CFR 63](#) Subpart ZZZZ, and local regulations as applicable. At minimum, include the make, model, serial number, manufacture date, size (engine brake horsepower), and EPA emission certification status of each engine. Maintain applicable records and log hours of operation and fuel use. Logs must include reasons for operation and delineate between emergency and non-emergency operation.

1.7.9.4 Refrigerants

Identify management practices to ensure that heating, ventilation, and air conditioning (HVAC) work involving refrigerants complies with 40 CFR 82 requirements. Technicians must be certified, maintain copies of certification on site, use certified equipment and log work that requires the addition or removal of refrigerant. Any refrigerant reclaimed is the property of the Government, coordinate with the Installation Environmental Office to determine the appropriate turn in location.

1.7.9.5 Air Pollution-engineering Processes

Identify planned air pollution-generating processes and management control measures (including, but not limited to, spray painting, abrasive blasting, demolition, material handling, fugitive dust, and fugitive emissions). Log hours of operations and track quantities of materials used.

1.7.9.6 Compliant Materials

Provide the Government a list of and SDSs for all hazardous materials proposed for use on site. Materials must be compliant with all Clean Air Act regulations for emissions including solvent and volatile organic compound contents, and applicable National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants requirements. The Government may alter or limit use of specific materials as needed to meet installation permit requirements for emissions.

1.7.10 Controls for Handling Existing Contamination, Including Munitions, if Applicable.

- a. Known site conditions, including types of contaminants and media impacted.
- b. Personnel Training Requirements
- c. Disposal procedures
- d. Notification requirements and procedures, particularly if working in an area with Land Use Controls mandated under CERCLA or RCRA regulations.

1.8 LICENSES AND PERMITS

Obtain licenses and permits required for the construction of the project and in accordance with FAR 52.236-7 Permits and Responsibilities. Notify the Government of all general use permitted equipment the Contractor plans to use on site. This paragraph supplements the Contractor's responsibility under FAR 52.236-7 Permits and Responsibilities.

1.9 ENVIRONMENTAL RECORDS BINDER

Maintain on-site a separate three-ring Environmental Records Binder and submit at the completion of the project. Make separate parts within the binder that correspond to each submittal listed under paragraph CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS in this section.

1.10 SOLID WASTE MANAGEMENT PERMIT

Provide the Contracting Officer with written notification of the quantity of anticipated solid waste or debris that is anticipated or estimated to be generated by construction. Include in the report the locations where various types of waste will be disposed or recycled. Include letters of acceptance from the receiving location or as applicable; submit one copy of the receiving location state and local Solid Waste Management Permit or license showing such agency's approval of the disposal plan before transporting wastes off Government property.

1.10.1 Solid Waste Management Report

Monthly, submit a solid waste disposal report to the Contracting Officer. For each waste, the report will state the classification (using the definitions provided in this section), amount, location, and name of the business receiving the solid waste.

1.11 FACILITY HAZARDOUS WASTE GENERATOR STATUS

MCB Camp Lejeune is designated as a Large Quantity Generator. Meet the regulatory requirements of this generator designation for any work conducted within the boundaries of this Installation. Comply with provisions of federal, state, and local regulatory requirements applicable to this generator status regarding training and storage, handling, and disposal of construction derived wastes.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION OF NATURAL RESOURCES

Minimize interference with, disturbance to, and damage to fish, wildlife, and plants, including their habitats. Prior to the commencement of activities, consult with the Installation Environmental Office regarding rare species or sensitive habitats that need to be protected. The protection of rare, threatened, and endangered animal and plant species identified, including their habitats, is the Contractor's responsibility.

Preserve the natural resources within the project boundaries and outside the limits of permanent work. Restore to an equivalent or improved condition upon completion of work that is consistent with the requirements of the Installation Environmental Office or as otherwise specified. Confine construction activities to within the limits of the work indicated or specified.

3.1.1 Flow Ways

Do not alter water flows or otherwise significantly disturb the native habitat adjacent to the project and critical to the survival of fish and wildlife, except as specified and permitted.

3.1.2 Vegetation

Except in areas to be cleared, do not remove, cut, deface, injure, or destroy trees or shrubs without the Contracting Officer's permission. Do not fasten or attach ropes, cables, or guys to existing nearby trees for anchorages unless authorized by the Contracting Officer. Where such use of attached ropes, cables, or guys is authorized, the Contractor is responsible for any resultant damage.

Protect existing trees that are to remain to ensure they are not injured, bruised, defaced, or otherwise damaged by construction operations. Remove displaced rocks from uncleared areas. Coordinate with the Contracting Officer and Installation Environmental Office to determine appropriate action for trees and other landscape features scarred or damaged by equipment operations.

3.1.3 Streams

Stream crossings must allow movement of materials or equipment without violating water pollution control standards of the federal, state, and local governments. Construction of stream crossing structures must be in compliance with any required permits including, but not limited to, Clean Water Act Section 404, and Section 401 Water Quality.

The Contracting Officer's approval and appropriate permits are required before any equipment will be permitted to ford live streams. In areas where frequent crossings are required, install temporary culverts or bridges. Obtain Contracting Officer's approval prior to installation. Remove temporary culverts or bridges upon completion of work, and repair the area to its original condition unless otherwise required by the Contracting Officer.

3.2 STORMWATER

Do not discharge stormwater from construction sites to the sanitary sewer.

If the water is noted or suspected of being contaminated, it may only be released to the storm drain system if the discharge is specifically permitted. Obtain authorization in advance from the Installation Environmental Office for any release of contaminated water.

3.2.1 Construction General Permit

Provide a Construction General Permit as required by 40 CFR 122.26 or the State of North Carolina General Permit. Under the terms and conditions of the permit, install, inspect, maintain BMPs, prepare stormwater erosion and sediment control inspection reports, and submit SWPPP inspection reports. Maintain construction operations and management in compliance with the terms and conditions of the general permit for stormwater discharges from construction activities.

3.2.1.1 Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan

Submit a project-specific Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) to the Contracting Officer for approval, prior to the commencement of work. The SWPPP must meet the requirements of 40 CFR 122.26 and the North Carolina State General Permit for stormwater discharges from construction sites.

Include the following:

- a. Comply with terms of the state general permit for stormwater discharges from construction activities. Prepare SWPPP in accordance with state requirements. Use EPA guide Developing your Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan located at <https://www.epa.gov/npdes/developing-stormwater-pollution-prevention-plan-swppp> to prepare the SWPPP.
- b. Select applicable BMPs from EPA Fact Sheets located at <https://www.epa.gov/npdes/national-menu-best-management-practices-bmps-stormwater#constr> or in accordance with applicable state or local requirements.
- c. Include a completed copy of the Notice of Intent, BMP Inspection Report Template, and Stormwater Notice of Termination, except for the effective date.
- d. Comply with additional requirements provided in Section 01 57 19.01 20 SUPPLEMENTAL TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS

3.2.1.2 Stormwater Notice of Intent for Construction Activities

Prepare and submit the Notice of Intent for NPDES coverage under the general permit for construction activities to the Contracting Officer for review and approval.

Submit the approved NOI and appropriate permit fees onto the appropriate federal or state agency for approval. No land disturbing activities may commence without permit coverage. Maintain an approved copy of the SWPPP at the onsite construction office, and continually update as regulations require, reflecting current site conditions.

Comply with the additional requirements in Section 01 57 19.01 20 SUPPLEMENTAL TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS.

3.2.1.3 Inspection Reports

Submit "Inspection Reports" to the Contracting Officer in accordance with the State of North Carolina Construction General Permit. Provide Inspection Reports in accordance with 01 57 19.01 20 SUPPLEMENTAL TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS.

3.2.1.4 Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan Compliance Notebook

Create and maintain a three ring binder of documents that demonstrate compliance with the Construction General Permit. Include a copy of the permit Notice of Intent, proof of permit fee payment, SWPPP and SWPPP update amendments, inspection reports and related corrective action records, copies of correspondence with the North Carolina State Permitting Agency, and a copy of the permit Notice of Termination in the binder. At project completion, the notebook becomes property of the Government. Provide the compliance notebook to the Contracting Officer.

3.2.1.5 Stormwater Notice of Termination for Construction Activities

Submit a Notice of Termination to the Contracting Officer for approval once construction is complete and final stabilization has been achieved on all portions of the site for which the permittee is responsible. Once approved, submit the Notice of Termination to the appropriate state or federal agency. Prepare as-built topographic survey information required by the permitting agency for certification of the stormwater management system, and provide to the Contracting Officer.

3.2.2 Erosion and Sediment Control Measures

Provide erosion and sediment control measures in accordance with state and local laws and regulations. Preserve vegetation to the maximum extent practicable.

Erosion control inspection reports may be compiled as part of a stormwater pollution prevention plan inspection reports.

3.2.2.1 Erosion Control

Prevent erosion by mulching, Compost Blankets, Geotextiles, temporary slope drains. Stabilize slopes by chemical stabilization, sodding, or such combination of these methods necessary for effective erosion control. Use of hay bales is prohibited.

3.2.2.2 Sediment Control Practices

Implement sediment control practices to divert flows from exposed soils, temporarily store flows, or otherwise limit runoff and the discharge of pollutants from exposed areas of the site. Implement sediment control practices prior to soil disturbance and prior to creating areas with concentrated flow, during the construction process to minimize erosion and sediment laden runoff. Include the following devices: silt fence, temporary diversion dikes, storm drain inlet protection, Location and details of installation and construction are indicated on the drawings.

3.2.3 Work Area Limits

Mark the areas that need not be disturbed under this Contract prior to commencing construction activities. Mark or fence isolated areas within

the general work area that are not to be disturbed. Protect monuments and markers before construction operations commence. Where construction operations are to be conducted during darkness, any markers must be visible in the dark. Personnel must be knowledgeable of the purpose for marking and protecting particular objects.

3.2.4 Contractor Facilities and Work Areas

Place field offices, staging areas, stockpile storage, and temporary buildings in areas designated on the drawings or as directed by the Contracting Officer. Move or relocate the Contractor facilities only when approved by the Government. Provide erosion and sediment controls for onsite borrow and spoil areas to prevent sediment from entering nearby waters. Control temporary excavation and embankments for plant or work areas to protect adjacent areas.

3.2.5 Municipal Separate Storm Sewer System (MS4) Management

Comply with the Installation's MS4 permit requirements. [Comply with requirements of Section 01 57 19.01 20 SUPPLEMENTAL TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS.](#)

3.3 SURFACE AND GROUNDWATER

3.3.1 Cofferdams, Diversions, and Dewatering

Construction operations for dewatering, removal of cofferdams, tailrace excavation, and tunnel closure must be constantly controlled to maintain compliance with existing state water quality standards and designated uses of the surface water body. Comply with the State of North Carolina water quality standards and anti-degradation provisions and the Clean Water Act Section 404. Do not discharge excavation ground water to the sanitary sewer, storm drains, or to surface waters without prior specific authorization in writing from the Installation Environmental Office. Discharge of hazardous substances will not be permitted under any circumstances. Use sediment control BMPs to prevent construction site runoff from directly entering any storm drain or surface waters.

If the construction dewatering is noted or suspected of being contaminated, it may only be released to the storm drain system if the discharge is specifically permitted. Obtain authorization for any contaminated groundwater release in advance from the Installation Environmental Officer and the federal or state authority, as applicable. Discharge of hazardous substances will not be permitted under any circumstances.

3.3.2 Waters of the United States

Do not enter, disturb, destroy, or allow discharge of contaminants into waters of the United States. The protection of waters of the United States shown on the drawings in accordance with paragraph LICENSES AND PERMITS is the Contractor's responsibility. Authorization to enter specific waters of the United States identified does not relieve the Contractor from any obligation to protect other waters of the United States within, adjacent to, or in the vicinity of the construction site and associated boundaries.

3.4 PROTECTION OF CULTURAL RESOURCES

3.4.1 Archaeological Resources

If, during excavation or other construction activities, any previously unidentified or unanticipated historical, archaeological, and cultural resources are discovered or found, activities that may damage or alter such resources will be suspended. Resources covered by this paragraph include, but are not limited to: any human skeletal remains or burials; artifacts; shell, midden, bone, charcoal, or other deposits; rock or coral alignments, pavings, wall, or other constructed features; and any indication of agricultural or other human activities. Upon such discovery or find, immediately notify the Contracting Officer so that the appropriate authorities may be notified and a determination made as to their significance and what, if any, special disposition of the finds should be made. Cease all activities that may result in impact to or the destruction of these resources. Secure the area and prevent employees or other persons from trespassing on, removing, or otherwise disturbing such resources. The Government retains ownership and control over archaeological resources.

3.5 AIR RESOURCES

Equipment operation, activities, or processes will be in accordance with 40 CFR 64 and state air emission and performance laws and standards.

3.5.1 Preconstruction Air Permits

Notify the Air Program Manager, through the Contracting Officer, at least 6 months prior to bringing equipment, assembled or unassembled, onto the Installation, so that air permits can be secured. Necessary permitting time must be considered in regard to construction activities. Clean Air Act (CAA) permits must be obtained prior to bringing equipment, assembled or unassembled, onto the Installation.

Confirm that these permits have been obtained.

3.5.2 Oil or Dual-fuel Boilers and Furnaces

Provide product data and details for new, replacement, or relocated fuel fired boilers, heaters, or furnaces to the Installation Environmental Office (Air Program Manager) through the Contracting Officer. Data to be reported include: equipment purpose (water heater, building heat, process), manufacturer, model number, serial number, fuel type (oil type, gas type) size (MMBTU heat input). Provide in accordance with paragraph PRECONSTRUCTION AIR PERMITS.

3.5.3 Burning

Burning is prohibited on the Government premises.

3.5.4 Class I and II ODS Prohibition

Class I and II ODS are Government property and must be returned to the Government for appropriate management. Coordinate with the Installation Environmental Office to determine the appropriate location for turn in of all reclaimed refrigerant.

3.5.5 Accidental Venting of Refrigerant

Accidental venting of a refrigerant is a release and must be reported immediately to the Contracting Officer.

3.5.6 EPA Certification Requirements

Heating and air conditioning technicians must be certified through an EPA-approved program. Maintain copies of certifications at the employees' places of business; technicians must carry certification wallet cards, as provided by environmental law.

3.5.7 Dust Control

Keep dust down at all times, including during nonworking periods. Sprinkle or treat, with dust suppressants, the soil at the site, haul roads, and other areas disturbed by operations. Dry power brooming will not be permitted. Instead, use vacuuming, wet mopping, wet sweeping, or wet power brooming. Air blowing will be permitted only for cleaning nonparticulate debris such as steel reinforcing bars. Only wet cutting will be permitted for cutting concrete blocks, concrete, and bituminous concrete. Do not unnecessarily shake bags of cement, concrete mortar, or plaster.

3.5.7.1 Particulates

Dust particles, aerosols and gaseous by-products from construction activities, and processing and preparation of materials (such as from asphaltic batch plants) must be controlled at all times, including weekends, holidays, and hours when work is not in progress. Maintain excavations, stockpiles, haul roads, permanent and temporary access roads, plant sites, spoil areas, borrow areas, and other work areas within or outside the project boundaries free from particulates that would exceed 40 CFR 50, state, and local air pollution standards or that would cause a hazard or a nuisance. Sprinkling, chemical treatment of an approved type, baghouse, scrubbers, electrostatic precipitators, or other methods will be permitted to control particulates in the work area. Sprinkling, to be efficient, must be repeated to keep the disturbed area damp. Provide sufficient, competent equipment available to accomplish these tasks. Perform particulate control as the work proceeds and whenever a particulate nuisance or hazard occurs. Comply with state and local visibility regulations.

3.5.7.2 Abrasive Blasting

Blasting operations cannot be performed without prior approval of the Installation Air Program Manager. The use of silica sand is prohibited in sandblasting.

Provide tarpaulin drop cloths and windscreens to enclose abrasive blasting operations to confine and collect dust, abrasive agent, paint chips, and other debris. Perform work involving removal of hazardous material in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.

3.5.8 Odors

Control odors from construction activities. The odors must be in compliance with state regulations and local ordinances and may not constitute a health hazard.

3.6 WASTE MINIMIZATION

Minimize the use of hazardous materials and the generation of waste. Include procedures for pollution prevention/hazardous waste minimization in the Hazardous Waste Management Section of the EPP. Obtain a copy of the installation's Pollution Prevention/Hazardous Waste Minimization Plan for reference material when preparing this part of the EPP. If no written plan exists, obtain information by contacting the Contracting Officer. Describe the anticipated types of the hazardous materials to be used in the construction when requesting information.

3.6.1 Salvage, Reuse and Recycle

Identify anticipated materials and waste for salvage, reuse, and recycling. Describe actions to promote material reuse, resale or recycling. To the extent practicable, all scrap metal must be sent for reuse or recycling and will not be disposed of in a landfill.

Include the name, physical address, and telephone number of the hauler, if transported by a franchised solid waste hauler. Include the destination and, unless exempted, provide a copy of the state or local permit (cover) or license for recycling.

3.6.2 Nonhazardous Solid Waste Diversion Report

Maintain an inventory of nonhazardous solid waste diversion and disposal of construction and demolition debris. Submit a report to the Contracting Officer on the first working day after each fiscal year quarter, starting the first quarter that nonhazardous solid waste has been generated. Include the following in the report:

Construction and Demolition (C&D) Debris Disposed	(____) cubic yards or tons, as appropriate
C&D Debris Recycled	(____) cubic yards or tons, as appropriate
Total C&D Debris Generated	(____) cubic yards or tons, as appropriate
Waste Sent to Waste-To-Energy Incineration Plant (This amount should not be included in the recycled amount)	(____) cubic yards or tons, as appropriate

3.7 WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

3.7.1 Waste Determination Documentation

Complete a Waste Determination form (provided at the pre-construction conference) for Contractor-derived wastes to be generated. All potentially hazardous solid waste streams that are not subject to a specific exclusion or exemption from the hazardous waste regulations (e.g. scrap metal, domestic sewage) or subject to special rules (lead-acid batteries and precious metals) must be characterized in accordance with the requirements of 40 CFR 261 or corresponding applicable state or local regulations. Base

waste determination on user knowledge of the processes and materials used, and analytical data when necessary. Consult with the Installation environmental staff for guidance on specific requirements. Attach support documentation to the Waste Determination form. As a minimum, provide a Waste Determination form for the following waste (this listing is not inclusive): oil- and latex -based painting and caulking products, solvents, adhesives, aerosols, petroleum products, and containers of the original materials.

3.7.2 Solid Waste Management

3.7.2.1 Solid Waste Management Report

Provide copies of the waste handling facilities' weight tickets, receipts, bills of sale, and other sales documentation. In lieu of sales documentation, a statement indicating the disposal location for the solid waste that is signed by an employee authorized to legally obligate or bind the firm may be submitted. The sales documentation Contractor certification must include the receiver's tax identification number and business, EPA or state registration number, along with the receiver's delivery and business addresses and telephone numbers. For each solid waste retained for the Contractor's own use, submit the information previously described in this paragraph on the solid waste disposal report. Prices paid or received do not have to be reported to the Contracting Officer unless required by other provisions or specifications of this Contract or public law.

3.7.2.2 Control and Management of Solid Wastes

Pick up solid wastes, and place in covered containers that are regularly emptied. Do not prepare or cook food on the project site. Prevent contamination of the site or other areas when handling and disposing of wastes. At project completion, leave the areas clean. Employ segregation measures so that no hazardous or toxic waste will become co-mingled with non-hazardous solid waste. Transport solid waste off Government property and dispose of it in compliance with 40 CFR 260, state, and local requirements for solid waste disposal. A Subtitle D RCRA permitted landfill is the minimum acceptable offsite solid waste disposal option. Verify that the selected transporters and disposal facilities have the necessary permits and licenses to operate. Solid waste disposal offsite must comply with most stringent local, state, and federal requirements, including 40 CFR 241, 40 CFR 243, and 40 CFR 258.

Manage hazardous material used in construction, including but not limited to, aerosol cans, waste paint, cleaning solvents, contaminated brushes, and used rags, in accordance with 49 CFR 173.

3.7.3 Control and Management of Hazardous Waste

Do not dispose of hazardous waste on Government property. Do not discharge any waste to a sanitary sewer, storm drain, or to surface waters or conduct waste treatment or disposal on Government property without written approval of the Contracting Officer.

3.7.3.1 Hazardous Waste/Debris Management

Identify construction activities that will generate hazardous waste or debris. Provide a documented waste determination for resultant waste streams. Identify, label, handle, store, and dispose of hazardous waste or debris in accordance with federal, state, and local regulations, including

40 CFR 261, 40 CFR 262, 40 CFR 263, 40 CFR 264, 40 CFR 265, 40 CFR 266, and 40 CFR 268.

Manage hazardous waste in accordance with the approved Hazardous Waste Management Section of the EPP. Store hazardous wastes in approved containers in accordance with 49 CFR 173 and 49 CFR 178. Hazardous waste generated within the confines of Government facilities is identified as being generated by the Government. Prior to removal of any hazardous waste from Government property, hazardous waste manifests must be signed by personnel from the Installation Environmental Office. Do not bring hazardous waste onto Government property. Provide the Contracting Officer with a copy of waste determination documentation for any solid waste streams that have any potential to be hazardous waste or contain any chemical constituents listed in 40 CFR 372-SUBPART D.

3.7.3.2 Waste Storage/Satellite Accumulation/90 Day Storage Areas

Accumulate hazardous waste at satellite accumulation points and in compliance with 40 CFR 262.34 and applicable state or local regulations. Individual waste streams will be limited to 55 gallons of accumulation (or 1 quart for acutely hazardous wastes). If the Contractor expects to generate hazardous waste at a rate and quantity that makes satellite accumulation impractical, the Contractor may request a temporary 90 day accumulation point be established. Submit a request in writing to the Contracting Officer and provide the following information (Attach Site Plan to the Request):

Contract Number	(_____)
Contractor	(_____)
Haz/Waste or Regulated Waste POC	(_____)
Phone Number	(_____)
Type of Waste	(_____)
Source of Waste	(_____)
Emergency POC	(_____)
Phone Number	(_____)
Location of the Site	(_____)

Attach a Waste Determination form for the expected waste streams. Allow 10 working days for processing this request. Additional compliance requirements (e.g. training and contingency planning) that may be required are the responsibility of the Contractor. Barricade the designated area where waste is being stored and post a sign identifying as follows:

"DANGER - UNAUTHORIZED PERSONNEL KEEP OUT"

3.7.3.3 Hazardous Waste Disposal

3.7.3.3.1 Responsibilities for Contractor's Disposal

Provide hazardous waste manifest to the Installations Environmental Office for review, approval, and signature prior to shipping waste off Government property.

3.7.3.3.1.1 Services

Provide service necessary for the final treatment or disposal of the hazardous material or waste in accordance with 40 CFR 260, local, and state, laws and regulations, and the terms and conditions of the Contract within 60 days after the materials have been generated. These services include necessary personnel, labor, transportation, packaging, detailed analysis (if required for disposal or transportation, include manifesting or complete waste profile sheets, equipment, and compile documentation).

3.7.3.3.1.2 Samples

Obtain a representative sample of the material generated for each job done to provide waste stream determination.

3.7.3.3.1.3 Analysis

Analyze each sample taken and provide analytical results to the Contracting Officer. See paragraph WASTE DETERMINATION DOCUMENTATION.

3.7.3.3.1.4 Labeling

Determine the Department of Transportation's (DOT's) proper shipping names for waste (each container requiring disposal) and demonstrate to the Contracting Officer how this determination is developed and supported by the sampling and analysis requirements contained herein. Label all containers of hazardous waste with the words "Hazardous Waste" or other words to describe the contents of the container in accordance with 40 CFR 262.31 and applicable state or local regulations.

3.7.3.4 Universal Waste Management

Manage the following categories of universal waste in accordance with federal, state, and local requirements and installation instructions:

- a. Batteries as described in 40 CFR 273.2
- b. Lamps as described in 40 CFR 273.5
- c. Mercury-containing equipment as described in 40 CFR 273.4
- d. Aerosol cans as described in 40 CFR 273
- e. Section 01 57 19.01 20 SUPPLEMENTAL TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS

Mercury is prohibited in the construction of this facility, unless specified otherwise, and with the exception of mercury vapor lamps and fluorescent lamps. Dumping of mercury-containing materials and devices such as mercury vapor lamps, fluorescent lamps, and mercury switches, in rubbish containers is prohibited. Remove without breaking, pack to prevent breakage, and transport out of the activity in an unbroken condition for disposal as directed.

3.7.3.5 Electronics End-of-Life Management

Recycle or dispose of electronics waste, including, but not limited to, used electronic devices such computers, monitors, hard-copy devices, televisions, mobile devices, in accordance with 40 CFR 260-262, state, and local requirements, and installation instructions.

3.7.3.6 Disposal Documentation for Hazardous and Regulated Waste

Contact the Contracting Officer for the facility RCRA identification number that is to be used on each manifest.

Submit a copy of the applicable EPA and or state permit(s), manifest(s), or license(s) for transportation, treatment, storage, and disposal of hazardous and regulated waste by permitted facilities. Hazardous or toxic waste manifests must be reviewed, signed, and approved by the Contracting Officer before the Contractor may ship waste. To obtain specific disposal instructions, coordinate with the Installation Environmental Office. Refer to Section 01 57 19.01 20 SUPPLEMENTAL TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS for the Installation Point of Contact information.

3.7.4 Releases/Spills of Oil and Hazardous Substances

3.7.4.1 Response and Notifications

Exercise due diligence to prevent, contain, and respond to spills of hazardous material, hazardous substances, hazardous waste, sewage, regulated gas, petroleum, lubrication oil, and other substances regulated in accordance with 40 CFR 300. Maintain spill cleanup equipment and materials at the work site. In the event of a spill, take prompt, effective action to stop, contain, curtail, or otherwise limit the amount, duration, and severity of the spill/release. In the event of any releases of oil and hazardous substances, chemicals, or gases; immediately (within 15 minutes) notify the Installation Fire Department, the Installation Command Duty Officer, the Installation Environmental Office, the Contracting Officer and the state or local authority.

Submit verbal and written notifications as required by the federal (40 CFR 300.125 and 40 CFR 355), state, local regulations and instructions. Provide copies of the written notification and documentation that a verbal notification was made within 20 days. Spill response must be in accordance with 40 CFR 300 and applicable state and local regulations. Contain and clean up these spills without cost to the Government.

3.7.4.2 Clean Up

Clean up hazardous and non-hazardous waste spills. Reimburse the Government for costs incurred including sample analysis materials, clothing, equipment, and labor if the Government will initiate its own spill cleanup procedures, for Contractor- responsible spills, when: Spill cleanup procedures have not begun within one hour of spill discovery/occurrence; or, in the Government's judgment, spill cleanup is inadequate and the spill remains a threat to human health or the environment.

3.7.5 Mercury Materials

Immediately report to the Environmental Office and the Contracting Officer instances of breakage or mercury spillage. Clean mercury spill area to the satisfaction of the Contracting Officer.

Do not recycle a mercury spill cleanup; manage it as a hazardous waste for disposal.

3.7.6 Wastewater

3.7.6.1 Disposal of wastewater must be as specified below.

3.7.6.1.1 Treatment

Do not allow wastewater from construction activities, such as onsite material processing, concrete curing, foundation and concrete clean-up, water used in concrete trucks, and forms to enter water ways or to be discharged prior to being treated to remove pollutants. Dispose of the construction- related waste water off-Government property in accordance with 40 CFR 403, state, regional, and local laws and regulations.

3.7.6.1.2 Surface Discharge

For discharge of ground water, Surface discharge in accordance with federal, state, and local laws and regulations. Surface discharge in accordance with the requirements of the NPDES or state STORMWATER DISCHARGES FROM CONSTRUCTION SITES permit.

3.7.6.1.3 Land Application

Water generated from the flushing of lines after disinfection or disinfection in conjunction with hydrostatic testing must be land- applied in accordance with federal, state, and local laws and regulations for land application.

3.8 HAZARDOUS MATERIAL MANAGEMENT

Include hazardous material control procedures in the Safety Plan, in accordance with Section 01 35 26 GOVERNMENTAL SAFETY REQUIREMENTS. Address procedures and proper handling of hazardous materials, including the appropriate transportation requirements. Do not bring hazardous material onto Government property that does not directly relate to requirements for the performance of this contract. Submit an SDS and estimated quantities to be used for each hazardous material to the Contracting Officer prior to bringing the material on the installation. Typical materials requiring SDS and quantity reporting include, but are not limited to, oil and latex based painting and caulking products, solvents, adhesives, aerosol, and petroleum products. Use hazardous materials in a manner that minimizes the amount of hazardous waste generated. Containers of hazardous materials must have National Fire Protection Association labels or their equivalent. Certify that hazardous materials removed from the site are hazardous materials and do not meet the definition of hazardous waste, in accordance with 40 CFR 261.

3.8.1 Contractor Hazardous Material Inventory Log

Submit the "Contractor Hazardous Material Inventory Log"(found at: www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/forms-graphics-tables), which provides information required by (EPCRA Sections 312 and 313) along with corresponding SDS, to the Contracting Officer at the start and at the end of construction (30 days from final acceptance), and update no later than January 31 of each calendar year during the life of the contract. Keep copies of the SDSs for hazardous materials onsite. At the end of the project, provide the Contracting Officer with copies of the SDSs, and the maximum quantity of each material that was present at the site at any one time, the dates the material was present, the amount of each material that was used during the project, and how the material was used.

The Contracting Officer may request documentation for any spills or releases, environmental reports, or off-site transfers.

3.9 PREVIOUSLY USED EQUIPMENT

Clean previously used construction equipment prior to bringing it onto the project site. Equipment must be free from soil residuals, egg deposits from plant pests, noxious weeds, and plant seeds. Consult with the U.S. Department of Agriculture jurisdictional office for additional cleaning requirements.

3.10 MILITARY MUNITIONS

In the event military munitions, as defined in 40 CFR 260, are discovered or uncovered, immediately stop work in that area and immediately inform the Contracting Officer.

3.10.1 Emergency Unexploded Ordinance (UXO) Response

In the event UXOs, as defined in 40 CFR 260, are encountered during construction activities, stop work immediately and have all personnel clear the immediate area. Immediately report the situation to the ROICC or Contracting Representative, who will then report the item to Range Control and Explosive Ordnance Disposal (EOD).

3.10.2 UXO Safety Awareness Training

Complete 3R (Recognize, Retreat, Report) UXO Safety Awareness Training prior to working in known contaminated areas at MCB Camp Lejeune. Refer to the website <http://www.lejeune.marines.mil/OfficesStaff/EnvironmentalMgmt/TrainingVideo.aspx> for the training and the latest edition of the Camp Lejeune Contractor Environmental Guide for guidance and information.

3.11 PETROLEUM, OIL, LUBRICANT (POL) STORAGE AND FUELING

POL products include flammable or combustible liquids, such as gasoline, diesel, lubricating oil, used engine oil, hydraulic oil, mineral oil, and cooking oil. Store POL products and fuel equipment and motor vehicles in a manner that affords the maximum protection against spills into the environment. Manage and store POL products in accordance with EPA 40 CFR 112, and other federal, state, regional, and local laws and regulations. Use secondary containments, dikes, curbs, and other barriers, to prevent POL products from spilling and entering the ground, storm or sewer drains, stormwater ditches or canals, or navigable waters of the United States. Describe in the EPP (see paragraph ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION PLAN) how POL tanks and containers must be stored, managed, and inspected and what protections must be provided. Storage of oil, including fuel, on the project site is not allowed. Fuel must be brought to the project site each day that work is performed.

3.11.1 Used Oil Management

Manage used oil generated on site in accordance with 40 CFR 279. Determine if any used oil generated while onsite exhibits a characteristic of hazardous waste. Used oil containing 1,000 parts per million of solvents is considered a hazardous waste and disposed of at the Contractor's expense. Used oil mixed with a hazardous waste is also considered a

hazardous waste. Dispose in accordance with paragraph HAZARDOUS WASTE DISPOSAL.

3.12 INADVERTENT DISCOVERY OF PETROLEUM-CONTAMINATED SOIL OR HAZARDOUS WASTES

If petroleum-contaminated soil, or suspected hazardous waste is found during construction that was not identified in the Contract documents, immediately notify the Contracting Officer and notify base FESD by calling 911 or (910) 451-3333. Do not disturb this material until authorized by the Contracting Officer.

3.13 CHLORDANE

Evaluate excess soils and concrete foundation debris generated during the demolition of housing units or other wooden structures for the presence of chlordane or other pesticides prior to reuse or final disposal.

3.14 SOUND INTRUSION

Make the maximum use of low-noise emission products, as certified by the EPA. Blasting or use of explosives are not permitted without written permission from the Contracting Officer, and then only during the designated times. Confine pile-driving operations to the period between 8 a.m. and 6 p.m., Monday through Friday, exclusive of holidays, unless otherwise specified.

Keep construction activities under surveillance and control to minimize environment damage by noise. Comply with the provisions of the State of North Carolina rules.

3.15 POST CONSTRUCTION CLEANUP

Clean up areas used for construction in accordance with Contract Clause: "Cleaning Up". Unless otherwise instructed in writing by the Contracting Officer, remove traces of temporary construction facilities such as haul roads, work area, structures, foundations of temporary structures, stockpiles of excess or waste materials, and other vestiges of construction prior to final acceptance of the work. Grade parking area and similar temporarily used areas to conform with surrounding contours.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 01 57 19.01 20

SUPPLEMENTAL TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS

08/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 MID-ATLANTIC

Comply with the following state, regional, and local requirements which supplement Section 01 57 19 TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS.

1.1.1 North Carolina

1.1.1.1 MCB Camp Lejeune

1.1.1.1.1 Removal of Waste

Remove and dispose of rubbish and debris from Government property. Provide 24-hour advance written notice to the Contracting Office of Contractor's intention to dispose rubbish and debris off base. Disposal at sites or landfills not holding a valid state of North Carolina permit is specifically prohibited. The prohibition also applies to sites where a permit may have been applied for but not yet obtained. If construction debris has been disposed off-base outside the parameter of this paragraph at a site without state permits or not in accordance with regulatory requirements, remove, transport, and relocate the debris to a state-approved site at Contractor expense. Pay any required fines, penalties, or fees related to the illegal disposal of construction debris. Metal will not be accepted at the Base Sanitary Landfill.

1.1.1.1.2 Surplus Soils Disposal for Camp Lejeune

Transport all surplus soil to one of the designated locations on government property. No surplus material will leave government property without approval of installation Environmental Program Manager and the Contracting Officer. Deliver and properly manage any surplus soil that cannot be reused on its originating site to one of the following locations:

- a. Area managed by G-3/5 for reuse on training areas for various maintenance activities:

3.5-acre storage, within TLZ Condor off Verona Loop Road, approximate coordinates 34°38'07.3"N 77°26'41.7"W.

Coordinate with G-3/5 Project Development Specialist, MCIEAST-MCB CAMLEJ at (910) 451-5772 to determine capacity available at the storage location, prior to delivery.

This site operates Monday through Thursday between 0730 and 1500.

- b. Area managed by PWD for use as daily cover:

Base landfill, located on Piney Green Road, approximate coordinates 34°41'26.9"N 77°19'27.4"W.

Contractor shall provide temporary silt fencing around designated stockpile areas as needed.

Coordinate with Landfill Manager at (910) 451-8666. Landfill use letters will be provided so that deliveries can be tracked.

This site operates Monday through Thursday between 0730 and 1500 and on Friday between 0700 and 1400.

Contact POCs listed above 7 to 10 days in advance to coordinate delivery of material at the storage locations.

Prior to transportation to one of the designated locations, screen all surplus soil to remove all objects greater than 3 inches and deleterious material. Deleterious material consists of organic debris such as roots, stumps, timber, and construction debris. Construction debris shall include, but is not limited to wood, plastic, glass, concrete, brick, and metal. Dispose of deleterious material and objects larger than 3 inches in accordance with Section 01 57 19 Temporary Environmental Controls.

Provide all plant, material, and labor for placement and management of the surplus material at the designated locations. Grade surplus material to a flat condition and slope to provide positive drainage daily. Submit the following verification documents to the Contracting Officer for review and approval:

- 1) Photographic documentation that surplus soil has been properly placed. Photograph will include time and date of image.
- 2) Certification statement indicating volume, in cubic yards (CY), of material delivered and confirming material is free of contaminants.

NOTE: Soil contaminated with debris or chemicals cannot be disposed at the stockpile locations. If contaminated soils are suspected or confirmed through presence of UXO, odors, or visual staining, affected soils must be properly tested, manifested, and disposed of in accordance with RCRA regulations. Contact Base EMD, ER Program Manager, for more information.

1.1.1.1.3 Hazardous Materials

1. Contractors may ONLY use the Camp Lejeune Sanitary Landfill for the disposal of asbestos containing materials, building products with tightly adhered lead containing paint, and non-contaminated clean dirt and clean gravel. The hours of operation are 0730-1530.
2. Delivery of acceptable materials (identified above) shall be by appointment only. Appointments made by phone at 910-451-5011 or 910-451-2946. ALL other contractor generated material shall be weighed through the Base Landfill scales before being removed from the Base. Contractors utilizing the base scales will require Contracting Officer assisted pre-registration with the Landfill Manager.
3. The Contracting Officer will register the contract via E-mail, with the Base Landfill. All haul vehicles will maintain a secure vehicle placard as a condition to utilize the scale. E-mail the contract information to the Landfill Clerk, including the name on the Prime Contractor, contract number, job name/description, completion date and whether or not any of the above materials will be delivered to the Landfill.
4. As of May 01 2014 the above supersedes any other statements/specifications pertaining to the delivery of materials to

the Base Landfill.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not Used

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 01 58 00

PROJECT IDENTIFICATION

08/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN WOOD PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (AWPA)

AWPA C1 (2003) All Timber Products - Preservative Treatment by Pressure Processes

AWPA C2 (2003) Lumber, Timber, Bridge Ties and Mine Ties - Preservative Treatment by Pressure Processes

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Preliminary One Line Drawings Of Project Rendering; G

Preliminary Drawing Indicating Layout And Text Content; G

SD-04 Samples

Final Rendering Sample; G

Final Framed Rendering and Copies; G

Facility Recognition Plaque; G

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.3.1 Rendering

Provide the project rendering in accordance with the following drawing stages as required in the paragraph SUBMITTALS. The following submittal data is required to properly identify the appropriate view and approve the final rendering of the facility. The final painted rendering will be used to produce the image for the signboard and framed photographic copies provided to the Contracting Officer.

1.3.1.1 Preliminary One Line Drawings

Provide three different views of the facility in a preliminary single line drawing (black and white) format. These three views will represent the best angles at which to view the proposed facility showing the best design features and the three dimensional character of the facility.

1.3.1.2 Final Rendering Sample

Provide a photographic copy (8 by 10 inches minimum size) of final rendering for approval of color, landscaping, and foreground/background development prior to final submittal.

1.3.1.3 Final Framed Rendering and Copies

Provide final full color rendering of the proposed facility as specified.

1.3.2 Facility Recognition Plaque

Submit full size drawing of Facility Recognition Plaque for approval. Contractor shall confirm the content (message), location and mounting with Contracting Officer prior to fabrication. The names on the plaque shall be determined at the end of the project duration to assure that current participants can be identified and recognized on the plaque.

1.4 PROJECT SIGN

Prior to initiating any work on site, provide one project identification sign at the location designated. Construct the sign in accordance with project sign detail, which can be downloaded at: <https://www.wbdg.org/FFC/NAVGRAPH/graphdoc.pdf>. Maintain sign throughout the life of the project. Upon completion of the project, remove the sign from the site.

1.4.1 Project Identification Signboard (Navy)

A project identification signboard shall be provided in accordance with attached Plates 2MC, 3, 4, and 5. Provide preliminary drawing indicating layout and text content. The signboard shall be provided at a conspicuous location on the job site where directed by the Contracting Officer.

- a. The field of the sign shall consist of a 4 by 8 foot sheet of grade B-B medium density overlaid exterior plywood.
- b. Lumber shall be B or better Southern pine, pressure-preservative treated in accordance with AWPA C1 and AWPA C2. Nails shall be aluminum or galvanized steel.
- c. The entire signboard and supports shall be given one coat of exterior alkyd primer and two coats of exterior alkyd enamel paint. The lettering and sign work shall be performed by a skilled sign painter using paint known in the trade as bulletin colors. The colors, lettering sizes, and lettering styles shall be as indicated. Where preservative-treated lumber is required, utilize only cured pressure-treated wood which has had the chemicals leached from the surface of the wood prior to painting.
- d. Use spray applied automotive quality high gloss acrylic white enamel paint as background for the NAVFAC logo. NAVFAC logo shall be an

applied 2 mil film sticker/decals with either transparent or white background or paint the logo by stencil onto the sign. The weather resistant sticker/decals film shall be rated for a minimum of 2-year exterior vertical exposure. The self-adhering sticker shall be mounted to the sign with pressure sensitive, permanent acrylic adhesive. Shop cut sticker/decals to rectangular shape and provide pull-off backing sheet on adhesive side of design sticker for shipping.

- e. Sign paint colors (manufacturer's numbers/types listed below for color identification only)
 - (1) Blue = To match dark blue color in the NAVFAC logo.
 - (2) White = To match Brilliant White color in the NAVFAC logo.
- f. NAVFAC logo must retain proportions and design integrity. NAVFAC logos in electronic format may be obtained from the NAVFAC web portal via the following link:
https://www.navfac.navy.mil/about_us/logos_and_seals.html. Use the following to choose color values for the paint to be used:
 - (1) Dark Blue = equivalent to CMYK values 100, 72, 0, 8.
 - (2) Light Blue = equivalent to CMYK values 69, 34, 0, 0.
 - (3) Cyan = equivalent to CMYK values 100, 9, 0, 6.
 - (4) Yellow = equivalent to CMYK values 0.9, 94, 0.

1.4.1.1 Project Rendering

Provide a full color rendering of the proposed facility as specified below:

- a. Provide rendering by a company that regularly does this work as a major component of their normal business.
- b. Colors used on rendering shall match the exterior color scheme indicated in the contract document.
- c. The rendering shall be a full vignette/fully developed, on heavy illustration board. Approximate finished size shall be 24 by 30 inches with minimum inside mat dimension of 16 by 20 inches. Draw the rendering at human eye level view, painted with Case-in Tempera.
- d. Provide three preliminary single line black and white perspectives prior to proceeding with the color rendering. Provide these preliminary perspectives within 30 days after preliminary design approval for evaluation by the Contracting Officer. The view selected by the Contracting Officer shall be developed into the final rendering.
- e. Provide the final rendering sample photograph within 30 days after approval of preliminary single line drawings. Provide this sample photograph for evaluation by the Contracting Officer.
- f. Provide final original color rendering, three (3) full size photographic reproductions of the original rendering, and three electronic copies on CD's. Original and reproductions shall be mounted on acid free board, double-matted (acid free matting) with appropriate colored board and framed in contemporary metal frames, using non-glare

glass. Project name, location, Architect/Engineer firm's name shall be printed on the matting. On the back of the renderings and reproductions, **indicate** the project name, the location, the contract number, and the date of reproduction.

- g. The rendering, the photographic copies, and the negative shall be shipped in resilient packaging to ensure damage-free delivery.

Deliver one photographic reproduction and one CD to:

**(Insert project manager name here), Code OPQC2, Marine Corps AOR, Room
210
9324 Virginia Avenue
Norfolk, Virginia 23511**

Deliver two photographic reproductions and two CD's to:

Contracting Officer

- h. Provide copy of rendering to be used for the signboard that has been protected from UV damage as per specifications.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not Used

-- End of Section --

VERIFY W/ CONTRACTING OFFICER IF PROJECT IS AN ARRA PROJECT. FOR ARRA PROJECTS, ADD SIGNAGE AT TOP OF SIGN. SEE PLATES 8 AND 9 FOR SIGNAGE AND DETAILS.

MITERED CORNER

4x4 [89mmx89mm]
PRESSURE TREATED POST;
COLOR: 'DARK BLUE', TYP.

11.25" [286mm] DIAMETER
USMC LOGO AVAIL: https://portal.navfac.navy.mil/portal/page?_pageid=181,3465071&_dad=portal&_schema=PORTAL

2" [50mm] LETTERING
CENTERED (ITALICIZED)

PAINTED FIELD; COLOR,
'WHITE'

PAINT WOOD TRIM 'DARK
BLUE'

3" [75mm] LETTERING
CENTERED

2" [50mm] LETTERING
CENTERED

2" [50mm] LETTERING
CENTERED

2" [50mm] LETTERING
CENTERED

PAINTED 3.5" [89mm]
STRIPE; COLOR, 'DARK
BLUE'

NOTES:

1. PAINT ALL OTHER WOOD
SURFACES WITH ONE COAT
EXT. PRIMER AND TWO
COATS GLOSS WHITE
ENAMEL.

2. ALL LETTERING SHALL
BE EVENLY SPACED.

3. LETTER STYLE, 'ARIAL',
COLOR 'DARK BLUE'.
TYPICAL FOR ALL
LETTERING.

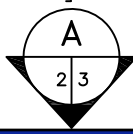
*-ABBREVIATE STATE

**-CONFIRM USE WITH
CONTRACTING OFFICER

***-VERIFY NAME WITH
CONTRACTING OFFICER.

4'-0" [1220mm]

2.5" [64mm] LETTERING CENTERED



9.25"x11.25"[240mmX286mm]
NAVFAC LOGO AVAIL: https://portal.navfac.navy.mil/portal/page?_pageid=181,3465071&_dad=portal&_schema=PORTAL



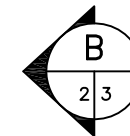
USMC
&
NAVFAC



Supporting the Warfighter

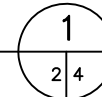
2" [50mm] LETTERING
CENTERED

PAINTED 3.5" [89mm]
STRIPE; COLOR, 'DARK
BLUE'



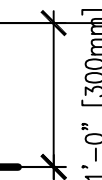
PAINTED 3.5" [89mm]
STRIPE; COLOR, 'DARK
BLUE'

PAINTED FIELD; COLOR,
'WHITE'



2.5" [64mm] LETTERING
CENTERED

4x4 [89mmx89mm]
PRESSURE TREATED POST
BEYOND; COLOR: 'WHITE'

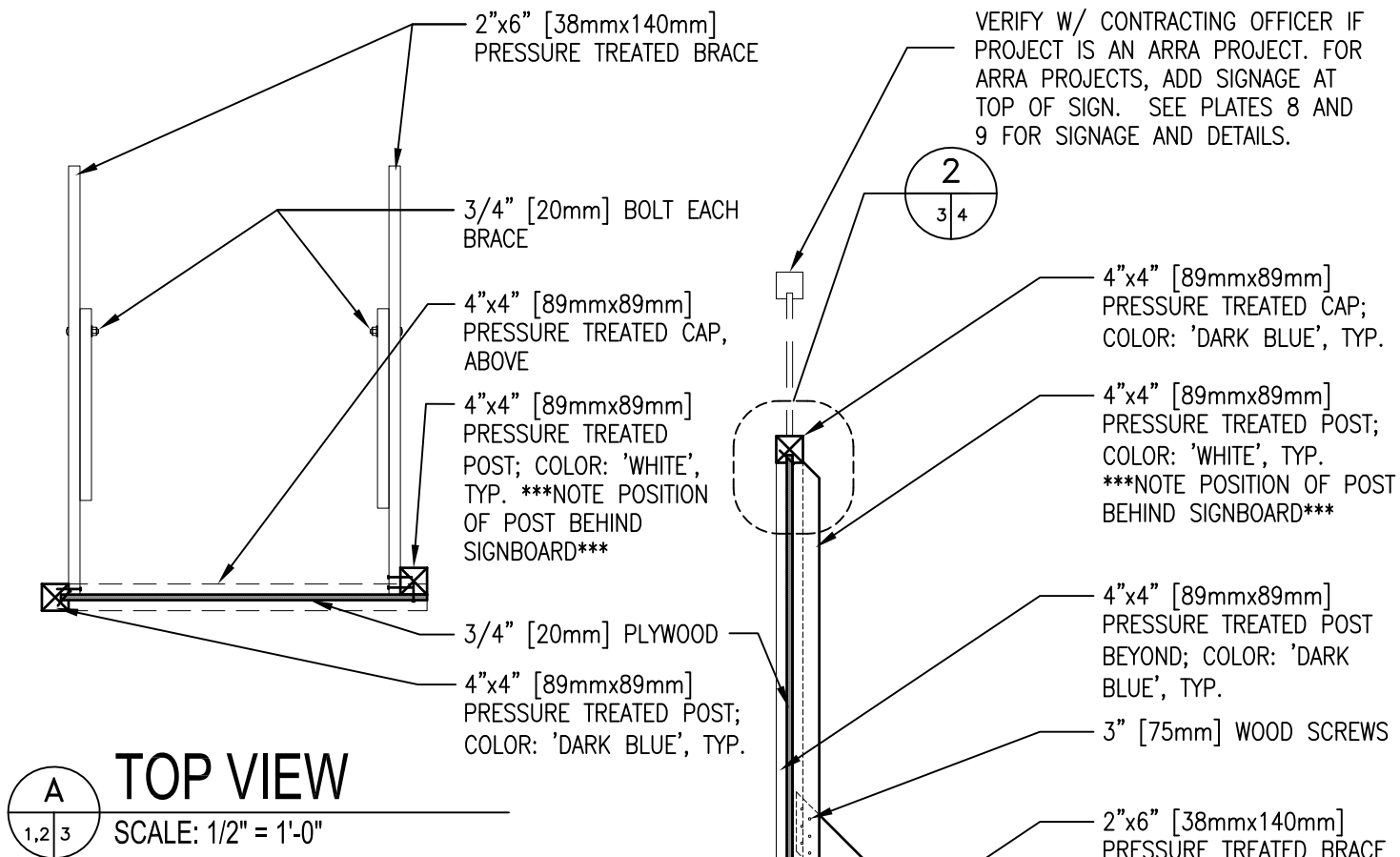


GROUND LEVEL

PROJECT IDENTIFICATION SIGNBOARD FOR MARINE CORPS PROJECTS

SCALE: 3/4" = 1'-0"

PLATE 2MC



NOTES:

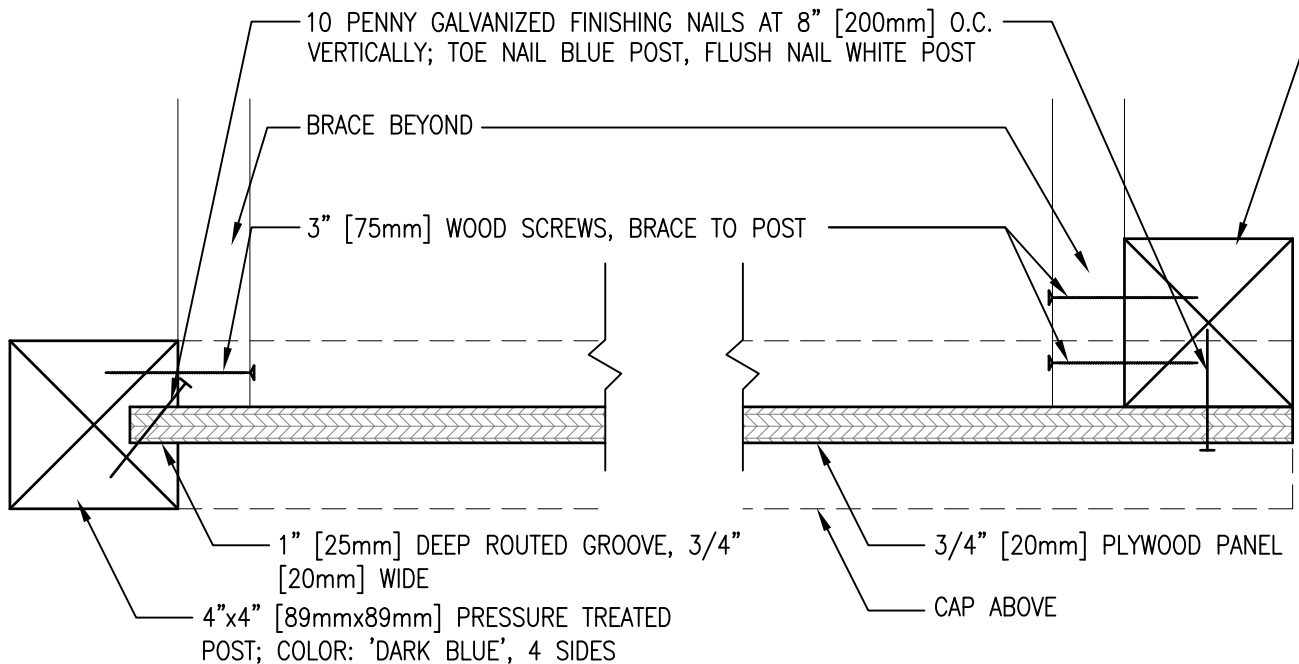
1. POSTS AND BRACES SHALL BE PRESSURE TREATED.
2. ALL FASTENERS SHALL BE ZINC COATED.
3. BRACING IS REQUIRED IN ALL SOIL CONDITIONS AND HIGH WIND ENVIRONMENTS.



PROJECT IDENTIFICATION SIGNBOARD SUPPORT DETAILS

PLATE 3

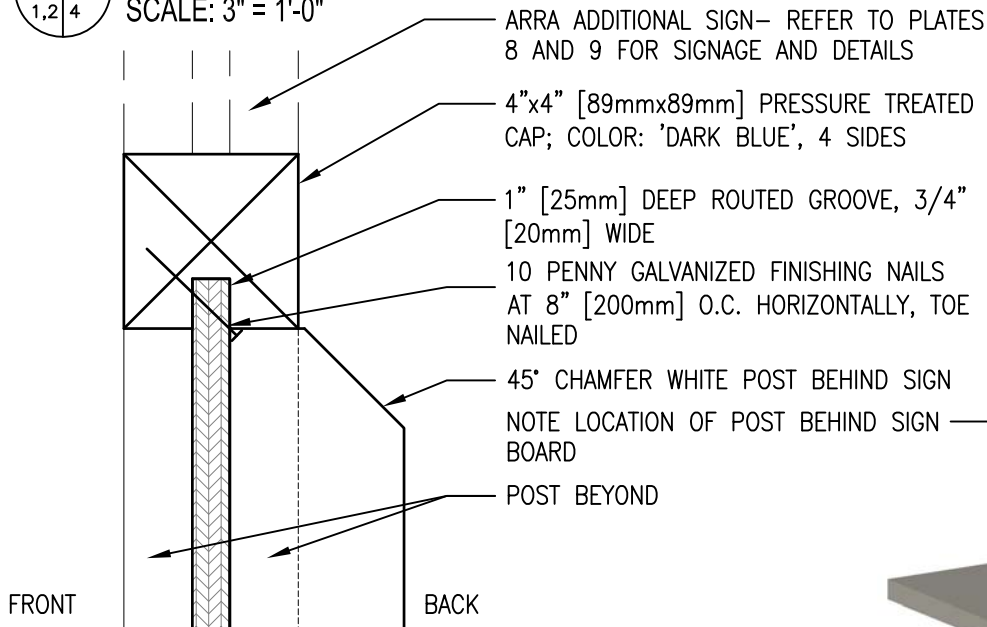
4"x4" [89mmx89mm] PRESSURE TREATED POST; COLOR: 'WHITE',
TYP. ***NOTE POSITION OF POST BEHIND SIGNBOARD***



1
1,2 4

PLAN SECTION

SCALE: 3" = 1'-0"



2
1,2 4

SECTION AT TOP

SCALE: 3" = 1'-0"

3
2 4

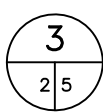
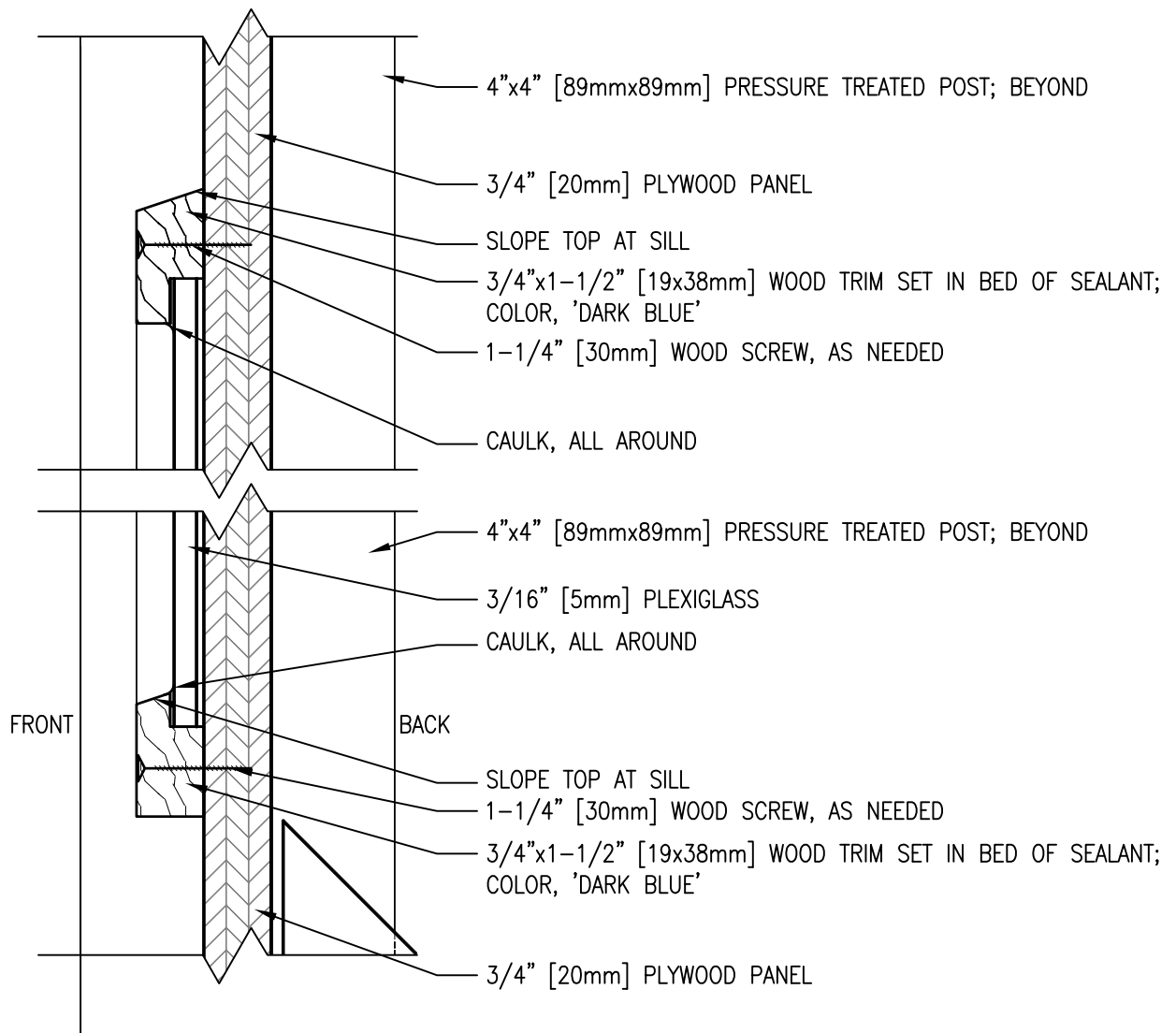
ISO VIEW

SCALE: NONE



PROJECT IDENTIFICATION SIGNBOARD SECTIONS

PLATE 4



SECTION AT RENDERING FRAME

SCALE: 6" = 1'-0"

PROJECT IDENTIFICATION SIGNBOARD SECTION

PLATE 5

SECTION 01 60 00.00 22

REQUIREMENTS FOR PESTICIDE AND HERBICIDE COORDINATION

08/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-07 Certificates

Certificate of State Licensed Applicator; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Completed Field Pesticide/Herbicide Management Record Form; G

1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.2.1 Certificate of State Licensed Applicator

A State licensed applicator is required and must be licensed in the state in which the project is located. Submit a copy of the certificate(s) to the Base Pest Management Coordinator (PMC) through the Contracting Officer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PESTICIDE/HERBICIDE LIST

Comply with Base Regulations and use only approved pesticides/herbicides listed on the current "Base Approved Pesticide/herbicide List". Use the approved list that is current at the time of application. Contact the Contracting Officer to obtain the current approved list.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 COORDINATION WITH BASE PEST MANAGEMENT COORDINATOR (PMC)

Coordinate with the PMC before proceeding with any pesticide/herbicide application. The Point of Contact information for the Base Pest Management Coordinator can be obtained from the Contracting Officer.

3.2 Field Pesticide/Herbicide Management Record Form

Following the pesticide/herbicide application, complete the attached Field Pesticide/Herbicide Management Record Form and submit to the Base Pest Management Coordinator (PMC) through the Contracting Officer. Submit the completed form(s) within 15 days after application.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 01 74 19

CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL
02/19

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

40 CFR 273	Standards for Universal Waste Management
49 CFR 173	Shippers - General Requirements for Shipments and Packagings
49 CFR 178	Specifications for Packagings

1.2 DEFINITIONS

1.2.1 Co-mingle

The practice of placing unrelated materials together in a single container, usually for benefits of convenience and speed.

1.2.2 Construction Waste

Waste generated by construction activities, such as scrap materials, damaged or spoiled materials, temporary and expendable construction materials, and other waste generated by the workforce during construction activities.

1.2.3 Demolition Debris/Waste

Waste generated from demolition activities, including minor incidental demolition waste materials generated as a result of Intentional dismantling of all or portions of a building, to include clearing of building contents that have been destroyed or damaged.

1.2.4 Disposal

Depositing waste in a solid waste disposal facility, usually a managed landfill, regulated in the US under the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA).

1.2.5 Diversion

The practice of diverting waste from disposal in a landfill, by means of eliminating or minimizing waste, or reuse of materials.

1.2.6 Final Construction Waste Diversion Report

A written assertion by a material recovery facility operator identifying

constituent materials diverted from disposal, usually including summary tabulations of materials, weight in short-ton.

1.2.7 Recycling

The series of activities, including collection, separation, and processing, by which products or other materials are diverted from the solid waste stream for use in the form of raw materials in the manufacture of new products sold or distributed in commerce, or the reuse of such materials as substitutes for goods made of virgin materials, other than fuel.

1.2.8 Reuse

The use of a product or materials again for the same purpose, in its original form or with little enhancement or change.

1.2.9 Salvage

Usable, salable items derived from buildings undergoing demolition or deconstruction, parts from vehicles, machinery, other equipment, or other components.

1.2.10 Source Separation

The practice of administering and implementing a management strategy to identify and segregate unrelated waste at the first opportunity.

1.3 CONSTRUCTION WASTE (INCLUDES DEMOLITION DEBRIS/WASTE)

Divert a minimum of 60 percent by weight of the project [construction waste and demolition debris/waste](#) from the landfill. Follow applicable industry standards in the management of waste. Apply sound environmental principles in the management of waste. (1) Practice efficient waste management when sizing, cutting, and installing products and materials and (2) use all reasonable means to divert construction waste and demolition debris/waste from landfills and incinerators and to facilitate the recycling or reuse of [excess construction materials](#).

1.4 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT

Implement a construction waste management program for the project. Take a pro-active, responsible role in the management of construction waste, recycling process, disposal of demolition debris/waste, and require all subcontractors, vendors, and suppliers to participate in the construction waste management program. Establish a process for clear tracking, and documentation of construction waste and demolition debris/waste.

1.4.1 Implementation of Construction Waste Management Program

Develop and document how the construction waste management program will be implemented in a construction waste management plan. Submit a Construction Waste Management Plan to the Contracting Officer for approval. Construction waste and demolition debris/waste materials include un-used construction materials not incorporated in the final work, as well as demolition debris/waste materials from demolition activities or deconstruction activities. In the management of waste, consider the availability of viable markets, the condition of materials, the ability to provide material in suitable condition and in a quantity acceptable to available markets, and time constraints imposed by internal project

completion mandates.

1.4.2 Oversight

The Environmental Manager, as specified in Section 01 57 19 TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS, is responsible for overseeing and documenting results from executing the construction waste management plan for the project.

1.4.3 Special Programs

Implement any special programs involving rebates or similar incentives related to recycling of construction waste and demolition debris/waste materials. Retain revenue or savings from salvaged or recycling, unless otherwise directed. Ensure firms and facilities used for recycling, reuse, and disposal are permitted for the intended use to the extent required by federal, state, and local regulations.

1.4.4 Special Instructions

Provide on-site instruction of appropriate separation, handling, recycling, salvage, reuse, and return methods to be used by all parties at the appropriate stages of the projects. Designation of single source separating or commingling will be clearly marked on the containers.

1.4.5 Waste Streams

Delineate waste streams and characterization, including estimated material types and quantities of waste, in the construction waste management plan. Manage all waste streams associated with the project. Typical waste streams are listed below. Include additional waste streams not listed:

- a. Land Clearing Debris
- b. Asphalt
- c. Masonry and CMU
- d. Concrete
- e. Metals (e.g. banding, stud trim, ductwork, piping, rebar, roofing, other trim, steel, iron, galvanized, stainless steel, aluminum, copper, zinc, bronze, etc.)
- f. Wood (nails and staples allowed)
- g. Glass
- h. Paper
- i. Plastics (PET, HDPE, PVC, LDPE, PP, PS, Other)
- j. Gypsum
- k. Non-hazardous paint and paint cans
- l. Carpet
- m. Ceiling Tiles

- n. Insulation
- o. Beverage Containers

1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Construction Waste Management Plan; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Final Construction Waste Diversion Report; S

1.6 MEETINGS

Conduct Construction Waste Management meetings. After award of the Contract and prior to commencement of work, schedule and conduct a meeting with the Contracting Officer to discuss the proposed construction waste management plan and to develop a mutual understanding relative to the management of the construction waste management program and how waste diversion requirements will be met.

The requirements of this meeting may be fulfilled during the coordination and mutual Understanding meeting outlined in Section 01 45 00.00 20 QUALITY CONTROL. At a minimum, discuss and document waste management goals at following meetings:

- a. Preconstruction meeting.
- b. Regular site meetings.
- c. Work safety meeting (if applicable).

1.7 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN

Submit Construction Waste Management Plan within 15 days after notice to proceed. Revise and resubmit Construction Waste Management Plan until it receives final approval from the Contracting Officer, in order for construction to begin. Manage demolition debris/waste or deconstruction materials in accordance with the approved construction waste management plan.

An approved construction waste management plan will not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for compliance with applicable environmental regulations or meeting project cumulative waste diversion requirement. Ensure all subcontractors receive a copy of the approved Construction Waste Management Plan. The plan demonstrates how to meet the project waste diversion requirement. Also, include the following in the plan:

- a. Identify the names of individuals responsible for waste management and

waste management tracking, along with roles and responsibilities on the project.

- b. Actions that will be taken to reduce solid waste generation, including coordination with subcontractors to ensure awareness and participation.
- c. Description of the regular meetings to be held to address waste management.
- d. Description of the specific approaches to be used in recycling/reuse of the various materials generated, including the areas on site and equipment to be used for processing, sorting, and temporary storage of materials.
- e. Name of landfill and/or incinerator to be used.
- f. Identification of local and regional re-use programs, including non-profit organizations such as schools, local housing agencies, and organization that accept used materials such as material exchange networks and resale stores. Include the name, location, phone number for each re-use facility identified, and provide a copy of the permit or license for each facility.
- g. List of specific materials, by type and quantity, that will be salvaged for resale, salvaged and reused on the current project, salvaged and stored for reuse on a future project, or recycled. Identify the recycling facilities by name, address, and phone number.
- h. Identification of materials that cannot be recycled or reused with an explanation or justification, to be approved by the Contracting Officer.
- i. Description of the means by which any materials identified in item (g) above will be protected from contamination.
- j. Description of the means of transportation of the recyclable materials (whether materials will be site-separated and self-hauled to designated centers, or whether mixed materials will be collected by a waste hauler and removed from the site).
- k. Copy of training plan for subcontractors and other services to prevent contamination by co-mingling materials identified for diversion and waste materials.
- l. Identification of at least 5 construction or demolition material streams for diversion.
- m. Detailed plan and distribution of waste diversion between buildings, when project is a part of a campus.
- n. Facilities or subcontractors offering construction waste transport on-site or off-site must ensure that proper shipping orders, bill of lading, manifests, or other shipping documents containing waste diversion information meet requirements of 40 CFR 273 Universal Waste Management, 49 CFR 173 Shippers - General Requirements for Shipments and Packagings, and 49 CFR 178 Specifications for Packaging. Individuals signing manifests or other shipping documents should meet the minimum training requirements.
- o. List each supplier who deliver construction materials, in bulk, or

package products in returnable containers or returnable packaging, or have take-back programs. List each program and the applicable material to actively monitor and track to assist in meeting waste diversion requirements on the project.

1.8 RECORDS (DOCUMENTATION)

1.8.1 General

Maintain records to document the types and quantities of waste generated and diverted through re-use, recycling and/or sale to third parties; through disposal to a landfill or incinerator facility. Provide explanations for any materials not recycled, reused or sold. Collect and retain manifests, weight tickets, sales receipts, and invoices specifically identifying diverted project waste materials or disposed materials.

1.8.2 Accumulated

Maintain a running record of materials generated and diverted from landfill disposal, including accumulated diversion rates for the project. Make records available to the Contracting Officer during construction or incidental demolition activities. Provide a copy of the diversion records to the Contracting Officer upon completion of the construction, incidental demolitions or minor deconstruction activities.

1.9 FINAL CONSTRUCTION WASTE DIVERSION REPORT

A Final Construction Waste Diversion Report is required at the end of the project. Provide [Final Construction Waste Diversion Report](#) 60 days prior to the Beneficial Occupancy Date (BOD). The final Construction Waste Diversion Report must be included in the Sustainability eNotebook in accordance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING.

1.10 COLLECTION

Collect, store, protect, and handle reusable and recyclable materials at the site in a manner which prevents contamination, and provides protection from the elements to preserve their usefulness and monetary value. Provide receptacles and storage areas designated specifically for recyclable and reusable materials and label them clearly and appropriately to prevent contamination from other waste materials. Keep receptacles or storage areas neat and clean.

Train subcontractors and other service providers to either separate waste streams or use the co-mingling method as described in the construction waste management plan. Separate materials by one of the following methods described herein:

1.10.1 Source Separation Method

Separate waste products and materials that are recyclable from trash and sort as described below into appropriately marked separate containers and then transport to the respective recycling facility for further processing. Deliver materials in accordance with recycling or reuse facility requirements (e.g., free of dirt, adhesives, solvents, petroleum contamination, and other substances deleterious to the recycling process). Separate materials into the category types as defined in the construction waste management plan.

1.10.2 Other Methods

Other methods proposed by the Contractor may be used when approved by the Contracting Officer.

1.11 DISPOSAL

Control accumulation of waste materials and trash. Recycle or dispose of collected materials off-site at intervals approved by the Contracting Officer and in compliance with waste management procedures as described in the waste management plan. Except as otherwise specified in other sections of the specifications, dispose of in accordance with the following:

1.11.1 Reuse

Give first consideration to reusing construction and demolition materials as a disposition strategy. Recover for reuse materials, products, and components as described in the approved construction waste management plan. Coordinate with the Contracting Officer to identify onsite reuse opportunities or material sales or donation available through Government resale or donation programs. Sale of recovered materials **will be considered** on the Installation.

1.11.2 Recycle

Recycle non-hazardous construction and demolition/debris materials that are not suitable for reuse. Track rejection of contaminated recyclable materials by the recycling facility. Rejected recyclables materials will not be counted as a percentage of diversion calculation. Recycle all fluorescent lamps, HID lamps, mercury (Hg) -containing thermostats and ampoules, and PCBs-containing ballasts and electrical components as directed by the Contracting Officer. Do not crush lamps on site as this creates a hazardous waste stream with additional handling requirements.

1.11.3 Camp Lejeune Landfill

Contractors may **ONLY** use the Camp Lejeune Sanitary Landfill for the disposal of asbestos containing materials, building products with tightly adhered lead containing paint, non-contaminated clean dirt and clean gravel. The hours of operation are 0730-1530 Monday thru Thursday and 0730-1430 on Friday. Delivery of Asbestos and Lead materials (identified above) shall be by appointment only. Appointments made by phone at 910-451-5011 or 910-451-2946. Asbestos and Lead materials will be delivered before 10:00 AM Monday thru Thursday. AB and Lead are not received on Friday.

ALL other contractor generated material shall be weighed through the Base Landfill scales before being removed from the Base. Contractors utilizing the base scales will require Contracting Officer assisted pre-registration with the Landfill Manager.

The Contracting Officer will register the contract via Memorandum, with the Base Landfill. All haul vehicles will maintain a secure vehicle placard as a condition to utilize the scale. E-mail the Memo with the contract information to the Landfill Clerk, including the name on the Prime Contractor, contract number, job name/description, completion date and whether or not any of the above materials will be delivered to the Landfill.

1.11.4 Waste

Dispose by landfill or incineration only those waste materials with no practical use, economic benefit, or recycling opportunity.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not used.

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not used. -- End of Section --

SECTION 01 78 00

CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
08/11

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM E1971 (2005; R 2011) Standard Guide for
Stewardship for the Cleaning of Commercial
and Institutional Buildings

GREEN SEAL (GS)

GS-37 (2017) Cleaning Products for Industrial
and Institutional Use

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

UFC 1-300-08 (2009, with Change 2) Criteria for
Transfer and Acceptance of DoD Real
Property

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00
SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

As-Built Record of Equipment and Materials

Warranty Management Plan

Warranty Tags

Final Cleaning

Spare Parts Data

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Preventative Maintenance

Condition Monitoring (Predictive Testing)

Inspection

Posted Instructions

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance Manuals

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Record Drawings

NAVFAC Sustainable & Energy Data Record Card; G

Certification of EPA Designated Items; G

Preliminary Interim DD FORM 1354; G

Updated Interim DD FORM 1354; G

1.3 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

1.3.1 Record Drawings

Drawings showing final as-built conditions of the project. This paragraph covers record drawings complete, as a requirement of the contract. The terms "drawings," "contract drawings," "drawing files," "working record drawings" and "final record drawings" refer to contract drawings which are revised to be used for final record drawings showing as-built conditions. The final CAD record drawings must consist of one set of electronic CAD drawing files in the specified format, 2 sets of prints, and one set of the approved working Record drawings.

1.3.1.1 Government Furnished Materials

One set of electronic CADD files in the specified software and format revised to reflect all bid amendments will be provided by the Government at the preconstruction conference for projects requiring CADD file record drawings.

1.3.1.2 Working Record and Final Record Drawings

Revise 2 sets of paper drawings by red-line process to show the as-built conditions during the prosecution of the project. Keep these working as-built marked drawings current on a weekly basis and at least one set available on the jobsite at all times. Changes from the contract plans which are made in the work or additional information which might be uncovered in the course of construction must be accurately and neatly recorded as they occur by means of details and notes. Prepare final record (as-built) drawings after the completion of each definable feature of work as listed in the Contractor Quality Control Plan (Foundations, Utilities, Structural Steel, etc., as appropriate for the project). The working as-built marked prints and final record (as-built) drawings will be jointly reviewed for accuracy and completeness by the Contracting Officer and the Contractor prior to submission of each monthly pay estimate. If the Contractor fails to maintain the working and final record drawings as specified herein, the Contracting Officer will deduct from the monthly progress payment an amount representing the estimated cost of maintaining the record drawings. This monthly deduction will continue until an agreement can be reached between the Contracting Officer and the Contractor regarding the accuracy and completeness of updated drawings. Show on the

working and final record drawings, but not limited to, the following information:

- a. The actual location, kinds and sizes of all sub-surface utility lines. In order that the location of these lines and appurtenances may be determined in the event the surface openings or indicators become covered over or obscured, show by offset dimensions to two permanently fixed surface features the end of each run including each change in direction on the record drawings. Locate valves, splice boxes and similar appurtenances by dimensioning along the utility run from a reference point. Also record the average depth below the surface of each run.
- b. The location and dimensions of any changes within the building structure.
- c. Correct grade, elevations, cross section, or alignment of roads, earthwork, structures or utilities if any changes were made from contract plans.
- d. Changes in details of design or additional information obtained from working drawings specified to be prepared and/or furnished by the Contractor; including but not limited to fabrication, erection, installation plans and placing details, pipe sizes, insulation material, dimensions of equipment foundations, etc.
- e. The topography, invert elevations and grades of drainage installed or affected as part of the project construction.
- f. Changes or modifications which result from the final inspection.
- g. Where contract drawings or specifications present options, show only the option selected for construction on the final as-built prints.
- h. If borrow material for this project is from sources on Government property, or if Government property is used as a spoil area, furnish a contour map of the final borrow pit/spoil area elevations.
- i. Systems designed or enhanced by the Contractor, such as HVAC controls, fire alarm, fire sprinkler, and irrigation systems.
- j. Modifications (include within change order price the cost to change working and final record drawings to reflect modifications) and compliance with the following procedures.
 - (1) Follow directions in the modification for posting descriptive changes.
 - (2) Place a Modification Delta at the location of each deletion.
 - (3) For new details or sections which are added to a drawing, place a Modification Delta by the detail or section title.
 - (4) For minor changes, place a Modification Delta by the area changed on the drawing (each location).
 - (5) For major changes to a drawing, place a Modification Delta by the title of the affected plan, section, or detail at each location.

- (6) For changes to schedules or drawings, place a Modification Delta either by the schedule heading or by the change in the schedule.
- (7) The Modification Delta size shall be 1/2 inch diameter unless the area where the circle is to be placed is crowded. Smaller size circle shall be used for crowded areas.

1.3.1.3 Drawing Preparation

Modify the record drawings as may be necessary to correctly show the features of the project as it has been constructed by bringing the contract set into agreement with approved working as-built prints, and adding such additional drawings as may be necessary. These working as-built marked prints must be neat, legible and accurate. These drawings are part of the permanent records of this project and must be returned to the Contracting Officer after approval by the Government. Any drawings damaged or lost by the Contractor must be satisfactorily replaced by the Contractor at no expense to the Government.

1.3.1.4 Computer Aided Design and Drafting (CADD) Drawings

Only employ personnel proficient in the preparation of CADD drawings to modify the contract drawings or prepare additional new drawings. Additions and corrections to the contract drawings must be equal in quality and detail to that of the originals. Line colors, line weights, lettering, layering conventions, and symbols must be the same as the original line colors, line weights, lettering, layering conventions, and symbols. If additional drawings are required, prepare them using the specified electronic file format applying the same graphic standards specified for original drawings. The title block and drawing border to be used for any new final record drawings must be identical to that used on the contract drawings. Accomplish additions and corrections to the contract drawings using CADD files. The Contractor will be furnished "as-designed" drawings in AutoCAD DWG 2013 format compatible with AutoCAD MEP 2016. The electronic files will be supplied on compact disc, read-only memory (CD-ROM). Provide all program files and hardware necessary to prepare final record drawings. The Contracting Officer will review final record drawings for accuracy and return them to the Contractor for required corrections, changes, additions, and deletions.

- a. Provide CADD "base" colors of red, green, and blue. Color code for changes as follows:
 - (1) Deletions (Red) - Over-strike deleted graphic items (lines), lettering in notes and leaders.
 - (2) Additions (Green) - Added items, lettering in notes and leaders.
 - (3) Special (Blue) - Items requiring special information, coordination, or special detailing or detailing notes.
- b. Rename the Contract Drawing files in a manner related to the contract number (i.e., 98-C-10.DGN) as instructed in the Pre-Construction conference. Use only those renamed files for the Marked-up changes. All changes shall be made on the layer/level as the original item.
- c. When final revisions have been completed, show the wording "RECORD DRAWINGS / AS-BUILT CONDITIONS" followed by the name of the Contractor in letters at least 3/16 inch high on the cover sheet drawing. Mark

all other contract drawings either "Record" drawing denoting no revisions on the sheet or "Revised Record" denoting one or more revisions. Date original contract drawings in the revision block.

- d. Within 20 days for contracts \$5 million and above after Government approval of all of the working record drawings for a phase of work, prepare the final CADD record drawings for that phase of work and submit two sets of blue-lined prints of these drawings for Government review and approval. The Government will promptly return one set of prints annotated with any necessary corrections. Within 10 days for contracts \$5 million and above revise the CADD files accordingly at no additional cost and submit one set of final prints for the completed phase of work to the Government. Within 20 days for contracts \$5 million and above of substantial completion of all phases of work, submit the final record drawing package for the entire project. Submit one set of electronic files on compact disc, read-only memory (CD-ROM), one set of mylars, two sets of blue-line prints and one set of the approved working record drawings. They must be complete in all details and identical in form and function to the contract drawing files supplied by the Government. Any transactions or adjustments necessary to accomplish this is the responsibility of the Contractor. The Government reserves the right to reject any drawing files it deems incompatible with the customer's CADD system. Paper prints, drawing files and storage media submitted will become the property of the Government upon final approval. Failure to submit final record drawing files and marked prints as specified will be cause for withholding any payment due the Contractor under this contract. Approval and acceptance of final record drawings must be accomplished before final payment is made to the Contractor.

1.3.1.5 Payment

No separate payment will be made for record drawings required under this contract, and all costs accrued in connection with such drawings are considered a subsidiary obligation of the Contractor.

1.3.2 As-Built Record of Equipment and Materials

Furnish one copy of preliminary record of equipment and materials used on the project 15 days prior to final inspection. This preliminary submittal will be reviewed and returned 2 days after final inspection with Government comments. Submit Two sets of final record of equipment and materials 10 days after final inspection. Key the designations to the related area depicted on the contract drawings. List the following data:

RECORD OF DESIGNATED EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS DATA				
Description	Specification Section	Manufacturer and Catalog, Model, and Serial Number	Composition and Size	Where Used

1.3.3 Final Approved Shop Drawings

Provide final approved project shop drawings 30 days after transfer of the completed facility.

1.3.4 Construction Contract Specifications

Provide final PDF file record construction contract specifications, including revisions thereto, 30 days after transfer of the completed facility.

1.3.5 Real Property Equipment

Furnish a list of installed equipment furnished under this contract. Include all information usually listed on manufacturer's name plate. In the "EQUIPMENT-IN-PLACE LIST" include, as applicable, the following for each piece of equipment installed: description of item, location (by room number), model number, serial number, capacity, name and address of manufacturer, name and address of equipment supplier, condition, spare parts list, manufacturer's catalog, and warranty. Furnish a draft list at time of transfer. Furnish the final list 30 days after transfer of the completed facility.

1.4 SPARE PARTS DATA

Submit two copies of the Spare Parts Data list.

- a. Indicate manufacturer's name, part number, nomenclature, and stock level required for maintenance and repair. List those items that may be standard to the normal maintenance of the system.

1.5 PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE

Submit [Preventative Maintenance](#), [Condition Monitoring \(Predictive Testing\)](#) and [Inspection](#) schedules with instructions that state when systems should be retested.

- a. Define the anticipated length of each test, test apparatus, number of personnel identified by responsibility, and a testing validation procedure permitting the record operation capability requirements within the schedule. Provide a signoff blank for the Contractor and Contracting Officer for each test feature; e.g., gpm, rpm, psi. Include a remarks column for the testing validation procedure referencing operating limits of time, pressure, temperature, volume, voltage, current, acceleration, velocity, alignment, calibration, adjustments, cleaning, or special system notes. Delineate procedures for preventative maintenance, inspection, adjustment, lubrication and cleaning necessary to minimize corrective maintenance and repair.
- b. Repair requirements must inform operators how to check out, troubleshoot, repair, and replace components of the system. Include electrical and mechanical schematics and diagrams and diagnostic techniques necessary to enable operation and troubleshooting of the system after acceptance.

1.6 CERTIFICATION OF EPA DESIGNATED ITEMS

Submit the [Certification of EPA Designated Items](#) as required by FAR 52.223-9 Estimate of Percentage of Recovered Material Content for EPA

Designated Items and FAR 52-223-17 Affirmative Procurement of EPA designated items in Service and Construction Contracts. Include on the certification form the following information: project name, project number, Contractor name, license number, Contractor address, and certification. The certification will read as follows and be signed and dated by the Contractor. "I hereby certify the information provided herein is accurate and that the requisition/procurement of all materials listed on this form comply with current EPA standards for recycled/recovered materials content. The following exemptions may apply to the non-procurement of recycled/recovered content materials:

- 1) The product does not meet appropriate performance standards;
- 2) The product is not available within a reasonable time frame;
- 3) The product is not available competitively (from two or more sources);
- 4) The product is only available at an unreasonable price (compared with a comparable non-recycled content product)."

Record each product used in the project that has a requirement or option of containing recycled content in accordance with SECTION 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING, noting total price, total value of post-industrial recycled content, total value of post-consumer recycled content, exemptions (1, 2, 3, or 4, as indicated), and comments. Recycled content values may be determined by weight or volume percent, but must be consistent throughout.

1.7 WARRANTY MANAGEMENT

1.7.1 Warranty Management Plan

Develop a warranty management plan which contains information relevant to FAR 52.246-21 Warranty of Construction. At least 30 days before the planned pre-warranty conference, submit one set of the warranty management plan. Include within the warranty management plan all required actions and documents to assure that the Government receives all warranties to which it is entitled. The plan must be in narrative form and contain sufficient detail to render it suitable for use by future maintenance and repair personnel, whether tradesmen, or of engineering background, not necessarily familiar with this contract. The term "status" as indicated below must include due date and whether item has been submitted or was accomplished. Warranty information made available during the construction phase must be submitted to the Contracting Officer for approval prior to each monthly pay estimate. Assemble approved information in a binder and turn over to the Government upon acceptance of the work. The construction warranty period will begin on the date of project acceptance and continue for the full product warranty period. A joint 4 month and 9 month warranty inspection will be conducted, measured from time of acceptance, by the Contractor, Contracting Officer and the Customer Representative. Include within the warranty management plan, but not limited to, the following:

- a. Roles and responsibilities of all personnel associated with the warranty process, including points of contact and telephone numbers within the organizations of the Contractors, subcontractors, manufacturers or suppliers involved.
- b. Furnish with each warranty the name, address, and telephone number of each of the guarantor's representatives nearest to the project location.
- c. Listing and status of delivery of all Certificates of Warranty for extended warranty items, to include roofs, HVAC balancing, pumps,

motors, transformers, and for all commissioned systems such as fire protection and alarm systems, sprinkler systems, lightning protection systems, etc.

- d. A list for each warranted equipment, item, feature of construction or system indicating:
 - (1) Name of item.
 - (2) Model and serial numbers.
 - (3) Location where installed.
 - (4) Name and phone numbers of manufacturers or suppliers.
 - (5) Names, addresses and telephone numbers of sources of spare parts.
 - (6) Warranties and terms of warranty. Include one-year overall warranty of construction, including the starting date of warranty of construction. Items which have extended warranties must be indicated with separate warranty expiration dates.
 - (7) Cross-reference to warranty certificates as applicable.
 - (8) Starting point and duration of warranty period.
 - (9) Summary of maintenance procedures required to continue the warranty in force.
 - (10) Cross-reference to specific pertinent Operation and Maintenance manuals.
 - (11) Organization, names and phone numbers of persons to call for warranty service.
 - (12) Typical response time and repair time expected for various warranted equipment.
- e. The Contractor's plans for attendance at the 4 and 9 month post-construction warranty inspections conducted by the Government.
- f. Procedure and status of tagging of all equipment covered by extended warranties.
- g. Copies of [instructions](#) to be posted near selected pieces of equipment where operation is critical for warranty and/or safety reasons.

1.7.2 Performance Bond

The Performance Bond must remain effective throughout the construction period.

- a. In the event the Contractor fails to commence and diligently pursue any construction warranty work required, the Contracting Officer will have the work performed by others, and after completion of the work, will charge the remaining construction warranty funds of expenses incurred by the Government while performing the work, including, but not limited to administrative expenses.
- b. In the event sufficient funds are not available to cover the construction warranty work performed by the Government at the Contractor's expense, the Contracting Officer will have the right to recoup expenses from the bonding company.
- c. Following oral or written notification of required construction warranty repair work, respond in a timely manner. Written verification will follow oral instructions. Failure of the Contractor to respond will be cause for the Contracting Officer to proceed against the Contractor.

1.7.3 Pre-Warranty Conference

Prior to contract completion, and at a time designated by the Contracting Officer, meet with the Contracting Officer to develop a mutual understanding with respect to the requirements of this section. Communication procedures for Contractor notification of construction warranty defects, priorities with respect to the type of defect, reasonable time required for Contractor response, and other details deemed necessary by the Contracting Officer for the execution of the construction warranty will be established/reviewed at this meeting. In connection with these requirements and at the time of the Contractor's quality control completion inspection, furnish the name, telephone number and address of a licensed and bonded company which is authorized to initiate and pursue construction warranty work action on behalf of the Contractor. This point of contact will be located within the local service area of the warranted construction, be continuously available, and be responsive to Government inquiry on warranty work action and status. This requirement does not relieve the Contractor of any of its responsibilities in connection with other portions of this provision.

1.7.4 Warranty Tags

At the time of installation, tag each warranted item with a durable, oil and water resistant tag approved by the Contracting Officer. Attach each tag with a copper wire and spray with a silicone waterproof coating. Also, submit two record copies of the warranty tags showing the layout and design. The date of acceptance and the QC signature must remain blank until the project is accepted for beneficial occupancy. Show the following information on the tag.

Type of product/material	
Model number	
Serial number	
Contract number	
Warranty period from/to	
Inspector's signature	
Construction Contractor	
Address	
Telephone number	
Warranty contact	
Address	
Telephone number	

Warranty response time priority code	
WARNING - PROJECT PERSONNEL TO PERFORM ONLY OPERATIONAL MAINTENANCE DURING THE WARRANTY PERIOD.	

1.8 COMMISSIONING

1.8.1 Building Commissioning

All contract requirements for building commissioning shall be completed prior to contract completion.

1.8.2 HVAC Commissioning

All contract requirements of Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING must be fully completed, including testing and inspection, prior to HVAC commissioning, except as noted otherwise in Section 23 05 93. All contract requirements of Section 23 09 23.02 BACnet DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS must be fully completed, including all testing, prior to HVAC commissioning. The time required to complete all work and testing as prescribed by Sections 23 09 23.02 and 23 05 93 is included in the allotted calendar days for completion.

1.9 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

Submit 6 copies of the project operation and maintenance manuals 30 calendar days prior to testing the system involved. Update and resubmit data for final approval no later than 30 calendar days prior to contract completion.

1.9.1 Configuration

Operation and Maintenance Manuals must be consistent with the manufacturer's standard brochures, schematics, printed instructions, general operating procedures, and safety precautions. Bind information in manual format and grouped by technical sections. Test data must be legible and of good quality. Light-sensitive reproduction techniques are acceptable provided finished pages are clear, legible, and not subject to fading. Pages for vendor data and manuals must have 0.3937-inch holes and be bound in 3-ring, loose-leaf binders. Organize data by separate index and tabbed sheets, in a loose-leaf binder. Binder must lie flat with printed sheets that are easy to read. Caution and warning indications must be clearly labeled.

1.9.2 Training and Instruction

Submit classroom and field instructions in the operation and maintenance of systems equipment where required by the technical provisions. These services must be directed by the Contractor, using the manufacturer's factory-trained personnel or qualified representatives. Contracting Officer will be given 7 calendar days written notice of scheduled instructional services. Instructional materials belonging to the manufacturer or vendor, such as lists, static exhibits, and visual aids, must be made available to the Contracting Officer.

1.10 CLEANUP

Provide **final cleaning** in accordance with **ASTM E1971** and submit two copies of the listing of completed final clean-up items. Leave premises "broom clean." Comply with **GS-37** for general purpose cleaning and bathroom cleaning. Use only nonhazardous cleaning materials, including natural cleaning materials, in the final cleanup. Clean interior and exterior glass surfaces exposed to view; remove temporary labels, stains and foreign substances; polish transparent and glossy surfaces; vacuum carpeted and soft surfaces. Clean equipment and fixtures to a sanitary condition. Replace filters of operating equipment and comply with the Indoor Air Quality (IAQ) Management Plan. Clean debris from roofs, gutters, downspouts and drainage systems. Sweep paved areas and rake clean landscaped areas. Remove waste and surplus materials, rubbish and construction facilities from the site. Recycle, salvage, and return construction and demolition waste from project in accordance with the Waste Management Plan. Promptly and legally transport and dispose of any trash. Do not burn, bury, or otherwise dispose of trash on the project site.

1.11 REAL PROPERTY RECORD

DD Form 1354 "Transfer and Acceptance of Military Real Property" is utilized to record and maintain the Base's real property inventory and to manage capital improvements costs.

A Draft DD Form 1354 is attached to this section. Note: The Draft DD Form 1354 will not contain cost or quantity information. The Contractor shall provide this information based on "as constructed" conditions.

Near the completion of the project, but a minimum of 60 days prior to the projected Beneficial Occupancy Date (BOD), update the Draft DD Form 1354 and submit a **Preliminary Interim DD Form 1354**, accounting for all installed property. Required data will include costs, quantities, units of measure, etc. as indicated on the DD Form 1354. Include any additional assets/improvements/alterations from the Draft DD Form 1354. An Excel version of this document can be provided by the Government for use in providing this data. Contact the Contracting Officer for any project specific information necessary to complete the DD Form 1354.

The DD Form 1354 shall be prepared in accordance with **UFC 1-300-08**, available at http://www.wbdg.org/ccb/browse_cat.php?o=29&c=4.

Submit an **Updated Interim DD Form 1354** for approval with the Final Invoice. The Updated Interim DD Form 1354 shall address all requested revisions to the Preliminary Interim DD Form 1354 and shall be updated to contain Contractor's "Final" quantity and cost information.

The Final DD Form 1354 will be prepared by the Activity Real Property Accountability Officer (RPAO) at final project closeout after all outstanding issues have been resolved. The Final DD Form 1354 will be prepared using the Contractor provided project data.

1.11.1 MCB Camp Lejeune / MCAS New River

Point of Contact (POC) for assistance in completing the DD Form 1354:

Facilities Planner
Installation Dev Div/Fac Planning Branch

Building 12 Marine Corps Base
PSC Box 20004
Camp Lejeune, NC 28542-0004
Phone: (910) 451-1833

Coordinate with Section 01 20 00.00 20 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES paragraph "EARNED VALUE REPORT".

The Contractor's Earned Value Report shall allocate the total cost of construction to the appropriate category codes. If a supporting facility feature has a unique category code, it shall be listed separately on the DD Form 1354. If a supporting facility does not have a unique category code the costs associated with the feature shall be included in the primary facility cost.

When documenting demolition work, the DD Form 1354 shall list the quantitative data associated with this work as a negative value to show the costs should be deleted from the Navy Asset Data Store. Coordinate with the POCs listed above in determining the negative value for demolition work.

The Contractor shall complete DD Form 1354 to the satisfaction of the Installation Development Division of MCB Camp Lejeune.

1.12 GEOSPATIAL INFORMATION SYSTEMS (GIS) DELIVERABLES

Provide geospatial data and documents for all features added, demolished or modified as part of this project in accordance with Section 01 78 30.00 22 DIGITAL DATA DELIVERABLES (GIS).

1.13 NAVFAC SUSTAINABLE & ENERGY DATA RECORD CARD

Within 60 days of the completion of Project, complete an electronic copy of the NAVFAC Sustainable & Energy Data Record Card, and submit to the Contracting Officer. Draft Record card for this project should be available from Designer of Record (DOR) or Contracting Officer. Instructions and a blank DD Form (fill-able) in ADOBE (PDF) may be obtained at the Whole Building Design Guide web site by navigating: Home > Participating Agencies > Department of Defense (DoD) > NAVFAC Sustainable Development Program > Contract Documents > NAVFAC Sustainable & Energy Data Record Card; or directly at

PART 2 PRODUCTS

NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

NOT USED

-- End of Section --

SECTION 01 78 23

OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

09/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM E1971 (2005; R 2011) Stewardship for the
Cleaning of Commercial and Institutional
Buildings

1.2 SUBMISSION OF OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

Submit Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Data specifically applicable to this contract and a complete and concise depiction of the provided equipment, product, or system, stressing and enhancing the importance of system interactions, troubleshooting, and long-term preventative maintenance and operation. The subcontractors must compile and prepare data and deliver to the Contractor prior to the training of Government personnel. The Contractor must compile and prepare aggregate O&M data including clarifying and updating the original sequences of operation to as-built conditions. Organize and present information in sufficient detail to clearly explain O&M requirements at the system, equipment, component, and subassembly level. Include an index preceding each submittal. Submit in accordance with this section, Section 01 78 24.00 20 FACILITY ELECTRONIC OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE SUPPORT INFORMATION (eOMSI), and Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.

1.2.1 Package Quality

Documents must be fully legible. Poor quality copies and material with hole punches obliterating the text or drawings will not be accepted.

1.2.2 Package Content

Data package content shall be as shown in the paragraph titled "Schedule of Operation and Maintenance Data Packages." Comply with the data package requirements specified in the individual technical sections, including the content of the packages and addressing each product, component, and system designated for data package submission, except as follows. Commissioned items without a specified data package requirement in the individual technical sections must use Data Package 3. Commissioned items with a Data Package 1 or 2 requirement must use instead Data Package 3.

1.2.3 Changes to Submittals

Manufacturer-originated changes or revisions to submitted data must be furnished by the Contractor if a component of an item is so affected subsequent to acceptance of the O&M Data. Submit changes, additions, or revisions required by the Contracting Officer for final acceptance of

submitted data within 30 calendar days of the notification of this change requirement.

1.2.4 Review and Approval

The Government's Commissioning Authority (CA) must review the commissioned systems and equipment submittals for completeness and applicability. The CA must verify that the systems and equipment provided meet the requirements of the Contract documents and design intent, particularly as they relate to functionality, energy performance, water performance, maintainability, sustainability, system cost, indoor environmental quality, and local environmental impacts. The CA must communicate deficiencies to the Contracting Officer. Upon a successful review of the corrections, the CA must recommend approval and acceptance of these O&M manuals to the Contracting Officer. This work is in addition to the normal review procedures for O&M data.

1.2.5 O&M Database

Develop a database from the O&M manuals that contains the information required to start a preventative maintenance program.

1.3 TYPES OF INFORMATION REQUIRED IN O&M DATA PACKAGES

1.3.1 Operating Instructions

Include specific instructions, procedures, and illustrations for the following phases of operation for the installed model and features of each system:

1.3.1.1 Safety Precautions

List personnel hazards and equipment or product safety precautions for all operating conditions.

1.3.1.2 Operator Prestart

Include procedures required to install, set up, and prepare each system for use.

1.3.1.3 Startup, Shutdown, and Post-Shutdown Procedures

Provide narrative description for Startup, Shutdown and Post-shutdown operating procedures including the control sequence for each procedure.

1.3.1.4 Normal Operations

Provide narrative description of Normal Operating Procedures. Include Control Diagrams with data to explain operation and control of systems and specific equipment.

1.3.1.5 Emergency Operations

Include Emergency Procedures for equipment malfunctions to permit a short period of continued operation or to shut down the equipment to prevent further damage to systems and equipment. Include Emergency Shutdown Instructions for fire, explosion, spills, or other foreseeable contingencies. Provide guidance and procedures for emergency operation of all utility systems including required valve positions, valve locations and

zones or portions of systems controlled.

1.3.1.6 Operator Service Requirements

Include instructions for services to be performed by the operator such as lubrication, adjustment, inspection, and recording gage readings.

1.3.1.7 Environmental Conditions

Include a list of Environmental Conditions (temperature, humidity, and other relevant data) that are best suited for the operation of each product, component or system. Describe conditions under which the item equipment should not be allowed to run.

1.3.2 Preventive Maintenance

Include the following information for preventive and scheduled maintenance to minimize corrective maintenance and repair for the installed model and features of each system. Include potential environmental and indoor air quality impacts of recommended maintenance procedures and materials.

1.3.2.1 Lubrication Data

Include preventative maintenance lubrication data, in addition to instructions for lubrication provided under paragraph titled "Operator Service Requirements":

- a. A table showing recommended lubricants for specific temperature ranges and applications.
- b. Charts with a schematic diagram of the equipment showing lubrication points, recommended types and grades of lubricants, and capacities.
- c. A Lubrication Schedule showing service interval frequency.

1.3.2.2 Preventive Maintenance Plan and Schedule

Include manufacturer's schedule for routine preventive maintenance, inspections, tests and adjustments required to ensure proper and economical operation and to minimize corrective maintenance. Provide manufacturer's projection of preventive maintenance work-hours on a daily, weekly, monthly, and annual basis including craft requirements by type of craft. For periodic calibrations, provide manufacturer's specified frequency and procedures for each separate operation.

1.3.2.3 Cleaning Recommendations

Provide environmentally preferable cleaning recommendations in accordance with [ASTM E1971](#).

1.3.3 Corrective Maintenance (Repair)

Include manufacturer's recommended procedures and instructions for correcting problems and making repairs for the installed model and features of each system. Include potential environmental and indoor air quality impacts of recommended maintenance procedures and materials.

1.3.3.1 Troubleshooting Guides and Diagnostic Techniques

Include step-by-step procedures to promptly isolate the cause of typical malfunctions. Describe clearly why the checkout is performed and what conditions are to be sought. Identify tests or inspections and test equipment required to determine whether parts and equipment may be reused or require replacement.

1.3.3.2 Wiring Diagrams and Control Diagrams

Wiring diagrams and control diagrams shall be point-to-point drawings of wiring and control circuits including factory-field interfaces. Provide a complete and accurate depiction of the actual job specific wiring and control work. On diagrams, number electrical and electronic wiring and pneumatic control tubing and the terminals for each type, identically to actual installation configuration and numbering.

1.3.3.3 Maintenance and Repair Procedures

Include instructions and a list of tools required to repair or restore the product or equipment to proper condition or operating standards.

1.3.3.4 Removal and Replacement Instructions

Include step-by-step procedures and a list of required tools and supplies for removal, replacement, disassembly, and assembly of components, assemblies, subassemblies, accessories, and attachments. Provide tolerances, dimensions, settings and adjustments required. Instructions shall include a combination of text and illustrations.

1.3.3.5 Spare Parts and Supply Lists

Include lists of spare parts and supplies required for maintenance and repair to ensure continued service or operation without unreasonable delays. Special consideration is required for facilities at remote locations. List spare parts and supplies that have a long lead-time to obtain.

1.3.4 Corrective Maintenance Work-Hours

Include manufacturer's projection of corrective maintenance work-hours including requirements by type of craft. Corrective maintenance that requires completion or participation of the equipment manufacturer shall be identified and tabulated separately.

1.3.5 Appendices

Provide information required below and information not specified in the preceding paragraphs but pertinent to the maintenance or operation of the product or equipment. Include the following:

1.3.5.1 Product Submittal Data

Provide a copy of all SD-03 Product Data submittals required in the applicable technical sections.

1.3.5.2 Manufacturer's Instructions

Provide a copy of all SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions submittals required

in the applicable technical sections.

1.3.5.3 O&M Submittal Data

Provide a copy of all SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data submittals required in the applicable technical sections.

1.3.5.4 Parts Identification

Provide identification and coverage for all parts of each component, assembly, subassembly, and accessory of the end items subject to replacement. Include special hardware requirements, such as requirement to use high-strength bolts and nuts. Identify parts by make, model, serial number, and source of supply to allow reordering without further identification. Provide clear and legible illustrations, drawings, and exploded views to enable easy identification of the items. When illustrations omit the part numbers and description, both the illustrations and separate listing shall show the index, reference, or key number that will cross-reference the illustrated part to the listed part. Parts shown in the listings shall be grouped by components, assemblies, and subassemblies in accordance with the manufacturer's standard practice. Parts data may cover more than one model or series of equipment, components, assemblies, subassemblies, attachments, or accessories, such as typically shown in a master parts catalog

1.3.5.5 Warranty Information

List and explain the various warranties and clearly identify the servicing and technical precautions prescribed by the manufacturers or contract documents in order to keep warranties in force. Include warranty information for primary components such as the compressor of air conditioning system.

1.3.5.6 Personnel Training Requirements

Provide information available from the manufacturers that is needed for use in training designated personnel to properly operate and maintain the equipment and systems.

1.3.5.7 Testing Equipment and Special Tool Information

Include information on test equipment required to perform specified tests and on special tools needed for the operation, maintenance, and repair of components.

1.3.5.8 Testing and Performance Data

Include completed prefunctional checklists, functional performance test forms, and monitoring reports. Include recommended schedule for retesting and blank test forms.

1.3.5.9 Contractor Information

Provide a list that includes the name, address, and telephone number of the General Contractor and each Subcontractor who installed the product or equipment, or system. For each item, also provide the name address and telephone number of the manufacturer's representative and service organization that can provide replacements most convenient to the project site. Provide the name, address, and telephone number of the product,

equipment, and system manufacturers.

1.4 TYPES OF INFORMATION REQUIRED IN CONTROLS O&M DATA PACKAGES

Include Data Package 5 and the following for control systems:

- a. Narrative description on how to perform and apply all functions, features, modes, and other operations, including unoccupied operation, seasonal changeover, manual operation, and alarms. Include detailed technical manual for programming and customizing control loops and algorithms.
- b. Full as-built sequence of operations.
- c. Copies of all checkout tests and calibrations performed by the Contractor (not Cx tests).
- d. Full points list. A listing of rooms shall be provided with the following information for each room:

- (1) Floor
- (2) Room number
- (3) Room name
- (4) Air handler unit ID
- (5) Reference drawing number
- (6) Air terminal unit tag ID
- (7) Heating and/or cooling valve tag ID
- (8) Minimum cfm
- (9) Maximum cfm

- e. Full print out of all schedules and set points after testing and acceptance of the system.

- f. Full as-built print out of software program.

- g. Electronic File:

- (1) Assemble each manual into a composite electronically indexed file in PDF format. Provide HDD's, DVD's or CD's as appropriate, so that each one contains all maintenance and record files, and also the Project Record Documents and Training Videos, of the entire program for this facility.
- (2) Name each indexed document file in composite electronic index with applicable item name. Include a complete electronically linked operation and maintenance directory.
- (3) Link the index to separate files within the composite of files. Book mark maintenance and record files, that have a Table of Contents, according to the Table of Contents

- h. Marking of all system sensors and thermostats on the as-built floor plan and mechanical drawings with their control system designations.

1.5 SCHEDULE OF OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA PACKAGES

Furnish the O&M data packages specified in individual technical sections. The required information for each O&M data package is as follows:

1.5.1 Data Package 1

- a. Safety precautions
- b. Cleaning recommendations
- c. Maintenance and repair procedures
- d. Warranty information
- e. Contractor information
- f. Spare parts and supply list

1.5.2 Data Package 2

- a. Safety precautions
- b. Normal operations
- c. Environmental conditions
- d. Lubrication data
- e. Preventive maintenance plan and schedule
- f. Cleaning recommendations
- g. Maintenance and repair procedures
- h. Removal and replacement instructions
- i. Spare parts and supply list
- j. Parts identification
- k. Warranty information
- l. Contractor information

1.5.3 Data Package 3

- a. Safety precautions
- b. Operator prestart
- c. Startup, shutdown, and post-shutdown procedures
- d. Normal operations
- e. Emergency operations

- f. Environmental conditions
- g. Lubrication data
- h. Preventive maintenance plan and schedule
- i. Cleaning recommendations
- j. Troubleshooting guides and diagnostic techniques
- k. Wiring diagrams and control diagrams
- l. Maintenance and repair procedures
- m. Removal and replacement instructions
- n. Spare parts and supply list
- o. Product submittal data
- p. O&M submittal data
- q. Parts identification
- r. Warranty information
- s. Testing equipment and special tool information
- t. Testing and performance data
- u. Contractor information

1.5.4 Data Package 4

- a. Safety precautions
- b. Operator prestart
- c. Startup, shutdown, and post-shutdown procedures
- d. Normal operations
- e. Emergency operations
- f. Operator service requirements
- g. Environmental conditions
- h. Lubrication data
- i. Preventive maintenance plan and schedule
- j. Cleaning recommendations
- k. Troubleshooting guides and diagnostic techniques
- l. Wiring diagrams and control diagrams

- m. Maintenance and repair procedures
- n. Removal and replacement instructions
- o. Spare parts and supply list
- p. Corrective maintenance man-hours
- q. Product submittal data
- r. O&M submittal data
- s. Parts identification
- t. Warranty information
- u. Personnel training requirements
- v. Testing equipment and special tool information
- w. Testing and performance data
- x. Contractor information

1.5.5 Data Package 5

- a. Safety precautions
- b. Operator prestart
- c. Start-up, shutdown, and post-shutdown procedures
- d. Normal operations
- e. Environmental conditions
- f. Preventive maintenance plan and schedule
- g. Troubleshooting guides and diagnostic techniques
- h. Wiring and control diagrams
- i. Maintenance and repair procedures
- j. Removal and replacement instructions
- k. Spare parts and supply list
- l. Product submittal data
- m. Manufacturer's instructions
- n. O&M submittal data
- o. Parts identification
- p. Testing equipment and special tool information

- q. Warranty information
- r. Testing and performance data
- s. Contractor information

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used.

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not Used.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 01 78 24.00 20

FACILITY ELECTRONIC OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE SUPPORT INFORMATION (eOMSI)
09/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

This section provides the requirements for electronic operation and maintenance support information (eOMSI). eOMSI contains detailed as-built information describing the efficient, economical, safe operation, maintenance, and repair of the facility. eOMSI is required to be in electronic format divided into the eOMSI Data and eOMSI Document files.

- a. Provide eOMSI Data files in the eOMSI Spreadsheet Workbook format that are uploaded by the Government into a Government computerized maintenance management system (CMMS). Maximo is the CMMS that will be used on this project.
- b. Provide eOMSI Document files in Portable Document Format (PDF), Computer Assisted Design and Drafting (CADD), and MS Word formats that can be uploaded into a document management system. The eOMSI document information is to be factual, concise, comprehensive, and written to be easily used by maintenance personnel. Descriptive matter and theory must include technical details that are essential for a comprehensive understanding of the operation, maintenance and repair of the system. The eOMSI Preparer shall ensure that the eOMSI reflect changes to systems and equipment, made during construction.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

1.2.1 Component Inventory Management Unit (CIMU)

CIMU is an organization of like-kind real property into manageable maintenance units. CIMU is a building component, group of components or component assemblies, serving a specific purpose in a facility that can be expected to follow a common and predictable lifecycle behavior. This class of non-equipment will include items such as exterior walls, exterior windows, interior finish, and roofs. This class of equipment will include items such as fan coil units, air handling units, lighting, and water closets. CIMUs can include items of installed equipment typically subject to routine scheduled maintenance.

1.2.2 Real Property Inventory Equipment (RPIE)

RPIE is a Government owned or leased individual pieces of equipment, apparatus, or fixture that are essential to the function of the real property (i.e. plumbing, electrical, heating, cooling and elevators). It is physically attached to, integrated into, and built in or on the property. Individual RPIE's can be combined to make a CIMU to facilitate facilities management.

1.2.3 BOTH (Combined CIMU and RPIE)

A BOTH is a stand-alone piece of equipment that can be managed independently and therefore is a Component Inventory Management Unit and a Real Property Installed Equipment. (If a CIMU has a Quantity of "One", it

would be considered a BOTH)

1.2.4 Utility and Energy Management (UEM)

UEM is a part of the Government Public Works (PW) Organization that manages the operation and maintenance of the Base utilities.

1.2.5 Systems

The words "system", "systems", and "equipment", when used in this document refer to as-built systems and equipment.

1.2.6 Computer Assisted Design and Drafting (CADD)

Electronic Computer Assisted Design and Drafting graphic software program that is used to create facility design contract documents.

1.2.7 eOMSI Spreadsheet Workbook

The eOMSI Spreadsheet Workbook is a group of Excel spreadsheets that provide forms, samples, and tools to assist the Contractor in identifying equipment and non-equipment data for the project. Use these Excel spreadsheets to organize and record maintenance data for the project. Use the eOMSI Spreadsheet Workbook in conjunction with this specification section with the file title: "eOMSI Facility Data Workbook 24SEPT2014.xlsm" located inside the zip file at the following web link:

<http://www.wbdg.org/ccb/NAVGRAPH/graphdoc.pdf>

1.2.8 Flat File

The flat file is the blank forms portion of the eOMSI Spreadsheet Workbook used to fill in the equipment and non-equipment data. These flat file forms are Excel templates with column headings that identify required information for equipment and non-equipment. The data placed on the flat file spreadsheets are organized by the Contractor into RPIE, and BOTH maintenance units.

1.2.9 KTR

KTR is an abbreviation for "Contractor."

1.3 ORGANIZATION of eOMSI

Prepare the eOMSI submittals in two components, eOMSI Data Files and eOMSI Document Files.

1.3.1 eOMSI Data Files

Provide facility specific information listed in the DESCRIPTION of WORK of this specification section and divide into Equipment Data and Non-Equipment Data on eOMSI Spreadsheet Workbook / Flat Files. The Government will use the completed eOMSI Spreadsheet Workbook to update information of the CMMS indicated above. The following tabs are included in the eOMSI Spreadsheet Workbook and serve the purpose stated:

- a. Flat File - Equipment Data; This spreadsheet provides an organized format for the contractor to fill in required information about dynamic equipment (fans, pumps,...) that is part of the project.

- b. **Flat** File - Non-Equipment Data; This spreadsheet provides an organized format for the Contractor to fill in required information about non-equipment (doors, windows, etc.) that is part of the project.
- c. **New** CONST - RENOVATION Schema; Provides information and instructions to explain the task of completing the Flat File - Equipment Data and Flat File - No-Equipment Data spreadsheets.
- d. **Facility** and UEM Unifomat; Provides a Unifomat division of facility and utility systems and components of the project. This information is used to complete the Master-System-Subsystem portions of the Flat File - Equipment Data and Flat File - Non-Equipment Data spreadsheets.
- e. **UEM** Asset Classification: Provides a list of critical Utility and Energy Management components that must be identified in the Flat File - Equipment Data spreadsheet.
- f. **Asset** Identification List: List of items that require equipment tagging. Tag numbering must be entered in the Equipment Tag Number of the Flat File - Equipment Data spreadsheet.
- g. **Data** Definitions; Provide definitions of terms used on the spreadsheet workbook.

1.3.2 eOMSI Document Files

Provide facility specific information, which was used to construct the project and provide information on operation and maintenance of the facility in a form that can be easily accessed and used. Organize the document files to facilitate storage in an electronic Government document file management system. Arrange the eOMSI Documents files in the following order and identify the document files as follows:

- a. **Facility** Information
- b. **Primary** Systems Information
- c. **Product** and Drawing Information

Cross-referencing within or between the eOMSI Document File parts must be specific.

1.3.3 Order of Precedence of eOMSI Requirements

This specification section takes precedence over the eOMSI Spreadsheet Workbook in the event of conflict between this specification section and the eOMSI Spreadsheet Workbook.

1.3.4 Sources of eOMSI Information

The sources of data needed to prepare the eOMSI include, but are not limited to, the design plans and specifications, field visits, approved construction submittals and manufacturer's catalog data for materials, products, systems, as-built drawings, contract modifications, and construction methods used in this contract. Ensure that the eOMSI reflect changes to systems and equipment made during construction as a result of contract modifications. Collect and input needed information to complete the data and document files

1.3.5 Unified Facility Guide Specifications (UFGS) Operation and Maintenance Data Packages

Provide information necessary to maintain the equipment and non-equipment of the facility by utilizing the SD-10 Operations and Maintenance Data Packages as defined in [Section 01 78 23 OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE DATA](#). Provide the SD-10 Data Packages required in the individual sections for each product, material, and system used on the project.

1.4 eOMSI MEETINGS

Organize, coordinate, and facilitate the meetings necessary to obtain the information to complete the eOMSI submittal.

1.4.1 eOMSI Start-Up Meeting

During the [Pre Construction Meeting](#), discuss the following;

- a. [The](#) eOMSI Development Meetings schedules and participants.
- b. [Processes](#) and methods of gathering of facility eOMSI information during construction.
- c. [The](#) qualifications of the eOMSI Preparer.
- d. [The](#) eOMSI Submittals schedule. Place the eOMSI submittal schedule on the construction schedule.

1.4.2 eOMSI Development Meetings

Meet with key personnel to discuss the eOMSI requirements and the deliverables. These are a series of meetings that begin after the [Preconstruction Meeting](#) and conclude with the Contractor's first eOMSI submittal. Include the eOMSI Preparer, Commissioning Authority (CA) and the Quality Control Manager to attend these meetings. Also include the Mechanical, Electrical and Fire Protection Sub Contractors as required. The purposes of these meetings are to:

- a. [Familiarize](#) the Contractor with the Government PW maintenance processes.
- b. [Provide](#) the Contractor with an understanding of the RPIE, CIMU, and BOTH to organize the facility into these information structures.
- c. [Obtain](#) the "By KTR Using Government Info" information for the eOMSI Flat File Spreadsheets.
- d. [Review](#) and identify the electronic format, units of measure, titles, and wording necessary to load the eOMSI data into the designated Government CMMS and eOMSI documents into the Government Document Management System.
- e. [Review](#) progress of eOMSI development and discuss issues that need to be resolved.
- f. [Coordinate](#) requirements for eOMSI training.

1.4.3 Field Validation Meetings

Meet with key personnel to determine the accuracy of the eOMSI Data and

Documents as described in this specification. Include the Subcontractors as required to verify as-built conditions.

1.4.4 Facility Turnover Meetings

Refer to paragraph FACILITY TURNOVER PLANNING MEETINGS (NAVFAC Red Zone - NRZ) in Section 01 30 00, ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS, for eOMSI facility turnover meeting requirements.

1.5 UNITS of MEASURE

Provide eOMSI utilizing the units of measure used in the Government created contract documents. Metric eOMSI shall be in SI (System International) metric units exclusively.

1.6 QUALIFICATIONS of eOMSI PREPARER

Submit Qualifications of eOMSI Preparer that meet the following:

- a. Possess multidiscipline technical knowledge of the operations and maintenance of building systems.
- b. Experience with the type of systems that are identified in this specification and capable of augmenting manufacturer's information to clarify operations instructions.
- c. Experience preparing detailed Operations and Maintenance Manuals for facilities of equal size and complexity as required by this contract
- d. Ability to prepare spreadsheets to be loaded into a CMMS.
- e. Experience presenting training and coordinating a team of manufacturer's representatives to provide training of Facility Users and Maintenance Personnel.

1.7 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-07 Certificates

Qualifications of eOMSI Preparer; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Training Plan; G

For each training session; submit dates start and finish times, and locations; outline of the information to be presented; names and qualifications of the presenters; and list of texts and other materials required to support training.

Training Outline; G

Training Content; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

eOMSI, Preliminary Submittal; G

eOMSI, 100 percent, Prefinal Submittal; G

eOMSI, Final Submittal; G

Training Video Recording; G

Validation of Training Completion; G

1.8 SUBMITTAL FORMAT

1.8.1 eOMSI Data Files

Provide eOMSI data on compact disks (CD) or data digital versatile disk (DVD) disks in formats that are compatible with those used on the project. Provide eOMSI Data information by completing the eOMSI Spreadsheet Workbook / Flat File initial templates:

- a. eOMSI Spreadsheet Workbook / Flat File - Equipment Data tab; Provide information to all spreadsheet fields. Obtain the information indicated to be supplied "By KTR using Government info" from the Contracting Officer and fill in this part of the Flat File. Typically identify individual pieces of equipment by RPIE. Group equipment with similar Uniformat classification, design life, install date, remaining service life, and direct condition rating - into manageable CIMUs. Except, when the individual RPIE is complex enough to require its own management planning and in this case the individual RPIE is also a BOTH. Each CIMU shall be greater than \$2,500 in value.
- b. eOMSI Spreadsheet Workbook / Flat File - Equipment Data tab; Provide information to all spreadsheet fields. Group Non-equipment with similar Uniformat classification, design life, install date, remaining service life, and direct condition rating - into manageable CIMUs. Obtain the information indicated to be supplied "By KTR using Government info" from the Contracting Officer to complete that portion of the Flat File. Each CIMU shall be greater than \$2,500 in value.

1.8.2 eOMSI Document Files

Provide eOMSI document files on CD or data DVD disks using the most current version of Adobe Acrobat or similar software capable of producing PDF files that can be used to upload the files into an electronic Government document management system. Bookmark the PDF files for easy access to the information. Bookmark Facility Information and Primary Systems Information to at least one level lower than the major system. Bookmark Product and Drawing Information documents using the current version of Masterformat and arrange submittals using the specification sections as a structure. Use Masterformat and UFGS numbers along with descriptive bookmarking titles that explain the content of the information that is being bookmarked.

Provide the following information on the compact disk label and disk holder/ case:

- a. Building Number
- b. Project Title

- c. Activity and Location
- d. Construction Contract Number
- e. Prepared For: (Contracting Agency)
- f. Prepared By: (Name, title, phone number and email address)
- g. Include the compact disk content on the disk label
- h. Date
- i. Virus scanning program used

1.9 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

Provide the following eOMSI submittals. Scan electronic files of eOMSI Data and eOMSI Documents for malicious viruses using a commercially available scanning program that is routinely updated to identify/remove current virus threats.

1.9.1 eOMSI, Preliminary Submittal

Submit the Preliminary submittal when construction is approximately 50 percent complete;

- a. eOMSI Data Files.(Excel)
- b. eOMSI Document Files (Bookmarked PDF) that include:
 - (1) Facility Information
 - (2) Primary Systems Information
 - (3) Product and Drawing Information

Provide four electronic copies to the Contracting Officer for approval. Provide the submittal in sufficient detail to allow the Government to substantiate that the data collection, detail of discussion, and information organization of both the data and document files are in accordance with the contract. Include in the submittal, as a minimum, all available Facility Information; all systems of the Primary Systems Information (at least one system to be essentially complete and the remaining systems shall be at least 50 percent complete); and at least two Masterformat divisions of the completed Product Data.

1.9.1.1 Preliminary eOMSI Submittal Review Duration

Allow the Government a minimum of 30 calendar days to review and comment on the submittal, from the time the Government receives the Preliminary eOMSI submittal.

1.9.2 100 percent - Prefinal eOMSI Submittal

Submit four electronically formatted copies of the 100 percent submittal of the eOMSI Data File and eOMSI Document File to the Contracting Officer for approval. The eOMSI, 100 percent, Prefinal Submittal is due 90 calendar days prior to Beneficial Occupancy Date (BOD)/ Placed In Service Date.

This submittal shall be a complete, working document that can be used to operate and maintain the facility. Any portion of the submittal that is incomplete or inaccurate will require the entire submittal to be returned for correction. Incorporate all Government requested changes from the Preliminary submittal and the eOMSI Development Meetings comments into the Prefinal submission. Provide the same information required for each eOMSI document file CD/ DVD disk label, on the introductory page of each eOMSI submittal volume. Refer to paragraph titled "eOMSI Document Files" of this section for a list of this required introductory page information.

Submit the Prefinal submittal when construction is 90 percent complete that include;

- a. eOMSI Data Files.(Excel)
- b. eOMSI Document Files (Bookmarked PDF) that include;
 - (1) Facility Information
 - (2) Primary Systems Information
 - (3) Product and Drawing Information

1.9.2.1 Prefinal eOMSI Submittal Review Duration

Allow the Government a minimum of 30 calendar days to review and approve the submittal, from the time the Government receives the Prefinal eOMSI submittal. If the Prefinal submittal is required to be resubmitted, the Government review of subsequent submittals shall have the same review duration as the first submittal. No extension in project completion date will be granted due to resubmittal.

1.9.3 eOMSI, Final Submittal

Complete the eOMSI Data and Documents and provide Final submittal in Excel and bookmarked PDF format as required in the Prefinal Submittal. Deliver submittals to the Contracting Officer for approval. The Final submittal is due at BOD/ Placed in Service Date. Include all Government requested changes from the Prefinal submittal, and the Project Closeout Meetings to complete the Final submittal.

In addition to the formats stated above, provide four electronic copies of the Final submittal in editable formats. Provide editable eOMSI Document drawing and diagram files in CADD and other editable eOMSI Document files in MS Word or Excel. Refer to Product and Drawing Information below to describe the format of the Record Drawings submission.

1.10 FACILITY SYSTEMS

The project is anticipated to include the following critical systems. Provide eOMSI data, eOMSI documents, and training for all products, materials, and equipment that make up these systems in the final constructed facility, including the following systems:

- a. HVAC facility systems (including chillers, boilers, heat pumps, air handling equipment, exhaust fans, fan coil units, VAV boxes, heat recovery wheels, hot and chilled water hydronic systems, control valves, and backflow preventers)

- b. **Direct** Digital Controls/Space Temperature Controls
- c. **Steam** condensate pumps, Steam pressure relief valves.
- d. **Electrical** systems (including transformers, diesel electric generator sets, automatic transfer switches, primary switchgear, secondary switchgear, high voltage switches, variable frequency drives, and frequency converters).
- e. **Fire** protection systems and fire alarm detection systems
- f. **Cathodic** protection
- g. **Site** civil water utilities (including water, storm water collection, and treatment systems)
- h. **Site** civil wastewater utilities (including pumping station, tanks, treatment and filters)
- i. **Potable** water systems (including wells, tanks, pumps, back-flow preventers, filters, disinfection, and controllers)
- j. **Site** electrical utilities (including substations, transformers, and pad mounted switchgear)

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

2.1.1 eOMSI DATA FILES

Provide the following items of data in a format compatible with the CMMS used on the project. Enter all data in the eOMSI Spreadsheet Workbook / Flat File.

2.1.1.1 Equipment Information

- a. **Equipment** Listing - Provide the following information for each piece of installed equipment and for each applicable item listed on the UEM Asset Classification tab of the eOMSI Spreadsheet Workbook. Enter all information on the Flat File - Equipment Data tab of the eOMSI Spreadsheet Workbook.

- (1) Asset_ID
- (2) Asset Description
- (3) ORG_ID
- (4) Site_ID
- (5) Building Name
- (6) Asset Type
- (7) Inventory Category
- (8) Location Code

- (9) Design Life
- (10) FCI
- (11) Remaining Service Life
- (12) DCR
- (13) Work Center
- (14) Belongs to (Parent Asset. ID)
- (15) Contract number
- (16) Task/delivery order number
- (17) Drawing reference ID
- (18) Location description
- (19) Master system Uniformat
- (20) System Uniformat
- (21) Subsystem Uniformat
- (22) Quantity
- (23) Install date
- (24) Replacement cost
- (25) Manufacturer
- (26) Model number
- (27) Serial number
- (28) Manufacturer Warranty end date
- (29) Warranty Company Info
- (30) Comment (Such as: Required information not to void warranty)
- (31) Status Date
- (32) Asset Status
- (33) UEM Classification ID
- (34) UEM Classification Description
- (35) Job Plan Code (Preventive Maintenance)

The Job Plan List is provided by NAVFAC to identify applicable Job Plan Codes. If NAVFAC does not have a Job Plan for the equipment used, provide information in paragraph entitled Job Plan for Equipment NOT assigned a NAVFAC Job Plan below.

(36) Equipment Tag Number

- b. **Job** Plan for Equipment NOT assigned a NAVFAC Job Plan - Preventive Maintenance Procedures, and Schedules. If the Government cannot provide a job plan for a specific piece of equipment, provide a detailed Job Plan (Preventive Maintenance Plan) using manufacturer's recommendations and sound engineering practice. Show associated frequencies when job plan is to be performed and include detailed preventive maintenance (PM) procedures such as inspections, tests, adjustments required to ensure proper and economical operation and minimize corrective maintenance. For periodic calibrations, provide manufacturer's specified frequency and procedures for each operation. Detailed Job Plans include the following:

- (1) Safety instructions and precautions,
- (2) Including lock out/tag out precautions,
- (3) Required skill level,
- (4) Number of personnel needed,
- (5) Frequency of performing the job plan,
- (6) Special tools needed,
- (7) Parts needed
- (8) Estimated time required to complete the task.
- (9) Lubrication schedules indicating types, grades and capacities.

2.1.1.1.2 Non-Equipment Information

- a. **Provide** the following information for each item of non-equipment. Enter all information on the eOMSI Spreadsheet Workbook - Flat File Non-Equipment Data tab.

- (1) Asset ID
- (2) Asset Description
- (3) ORG_ID
- (4) Site_ID
- (5) Asset Type
- (6) Inventory Category
- (7) Design Life
- (8) FCI
- (9) DCR
- (10) Building Name
- (11) Location Code

- (12) Contract Number
- (13) Task/ Delivery Order Number
- (14) Drawing Reference _ID
- (15) Notes on CIMU Structure
- (16) Master System Unifomat
- (17) System Unifomat
- (18) Subsystem Unifomat
- (19) Quantity
- (20) Install Date
- (21) Remaining Service Life
- (22) Replacement Cost
- (23) Warranty End Date
- (24) Warranty Company Info
- (25) Comments (Such as: Required information not to void warranty)

2.1.1.2 eOMSI DOCUMENT FILES

2.1.1.2.1 Facility Information

Facility Information includes the following;

- a. **General** Facility and System Description - Describe the function of the facility. Detail the overall dimensions of the facility, number of floors, foundation type, expected number of occupants, and facility Category Code. List and generally describe all the facility systems listed in the Primary Systems Information and any special building features (for example, HVAC Controls, Sprinkler Systems, cranes, elevators, and generators). Include photographs marked up and labeled to show key operating components and the overall facility appearance.
- b. **Basis** of Design - Include the Government furnished Basis of Design that shows the basic design scope of work, assumptions and the original intentions of the DOR. Identify the site utility design goals, objectives, design load limits, assumptions, and system features that are critical to the operation and maintenance of the systems.
- c. **Safety** Hazards - List all residual hazards identified in the Activity Hazard Analysis as prepared by the DOR. Provide recommended safeguards for each identified hazard.
- d. **Floor** Plans - Provide uncluttered, legible 11 by 17 inches floor plans. Include room numbers, type or function of spaces, and overall facility dimensions on the floor plans. Do not include construction instructions, references, frame numbers, etc.

- e. **Floor** Coverings, Wall Surfaces, Ceiling Surfaces - Provide a table that lists by room number (including hallways and common spaces), the type, and area of finish. The table shall include a facility summary of the total area for each type of space and floor, wall, or ceiling finish.
- f. **Roofing** - Provide the total area of each type of roof surface and system. Provide the name of the roofing product and system; manufacturer's, supplier's, and installer's names, addresses, and phone numbers. For each type of roof, provide a recommended inspection, maintenance and repair schedule that details checkpoints, frequencies, and prohibited practices. List roof structural load limits.
- g. **Supply** Inventory Requirements - Provide a list of maintenance and repair supplies (e.g., spare parts, fuels and lubricants) required to ensure continued operation without unreasonable delays. Identify and list parts and supplies that have long purchase lead times. Give special consideration to facilities at remote locations.

2.1.2.2 Primary Systems

Provide Primary Systems Information for all primary systems listed below. Primary systems information shall address operations, troubleshooting guides and diagnostic techniques, repair, and preventive maintenance.

- a. HVAC facility systems
- b. Direct digital controls/ space temperature controls
- c. Electrical systems
- d. Fire protection systems and fire alarm and detection systems
- e. Cathodic protection
- f. Site civil utilities (including water, wastewater, storm water collection, gas/ fuel, manholes/ hand holes, and pumping, and treatment systems)
- g. Site electrical utilities (including power generation, communications, distribution, ducts, and manholes/ hand holes)

2.1.2.3 Primary Systems Information

Primary Systems Information requires using a systems approach. This approach requires that consideration be given to the entire system (that is, the interfaces of equipment, connections and material flow within the system). Use Notes, Cautions and Warnings throughout the Primary Systems Information to emphasize important and critical instructions and procedures. Provide the following information for each system:

- a. **Operation**
 - (1) **System Description** - Provide a detailed discussion of the system composition and operation. Include technical details that are essential for an understanding of the system.
 - (2) **Start-Up and Shutdown Procedures** - Provide step by step instructions to bring systems from static to operational configurations and from operating to shutdown status.

- (3) Normal and Emergency Operating Instructions - Provide a discussion of the normal and emergency operation and control of the system. Address operating norms (for example, temperatures, pressures, and flow rates) expected at each zone or phase of the system. Supplement the discussion with control and wiring diagrams and data. Include shutdown instruction for fires, explosions, spill, or other contingencies.
- (4) System Flow Diagrams - Provide a flow diagram indicating system liquid, air or gas flow during normal operations. Integrate all system components into the diagram. A compilation of non-integrated, flow diagrams for the individual system components are not acceptable.
- (5) Field Test Reports - Provide Field Test Reports (SD-06) that apply to equipment associated with the system. The eOMSI Document Submittal does not require the second season HVAC testing.
- (6) Operator Servicing Requirements - Provide instructions for services to be performed by the operator such as lubrication, adjustments, and inspection.

b. Troubleshooting Guides and Diagnostic Techniques

Provide step-by-step procedures for isolating the cause of system malfunctions. The procedures shall clearly state indications or symptoms of trouble; the sequential instructions, including checks and tests to be performed and conditions to be sought, to determine the cause; and remedial measures to bring the equipment and system to operating condition. Identify special test equipment required to perform the procedures. Start the troubleshooting guide at the system level and proceed to a level where detailed manufacturer's troubleshooting procedures for equipment and components can be referenced. Provide clear references to repair procedures included in the manufacturer's Product Data.

c. Repair

Repair Procedures - Provide repair instructions required for restoring equipment to proper operating condition and standards. References must be specific as to location within the eOMSI manuals.

2.1.1.2.4 Product and Drawing Information

This portion of the eOMSI provides a record of the facility products, materials, equipment, and minimum information necessary to operate the facility. Provide Product and Drawing Information for all systems in the final constructed facility, including the anticipated critical systems identified in this specification section.

- a. O&M Data.** Include, as a minimum O&M Data, required in the SD-10 Data Packages of the UFGS specifications. Provide the following for each product, material, and system on the project:

- (1) Materials

- (2) Equipment
- (3) Data Sheets
- (4) Test Reports
- (5) Warranties
- (6) Certificates
- (7) Shop Drawings

b. **Drawings.** Provide original CADD drawings or original facility design drawings that have been edited to eliminate unneeded information and highlight eOMSI information in PDF format. Provide the following drawings at a large enough scale to be clear, legible, and able to differentiate designated isolation units from surrounding valves and switches.

(1) **Utility Schematic Diagrams** - Provide a one line schematic diagram for each utility system such as power, water, wastewater, and gas/fuel. Schematic diagram must show from the point where the utility line is connected to the mainline up to the five-foot connection point to the facility. Indicate location or area designation for route of transmission or distribution lines; locations of duct banks, manholes/ handholes or poles; isolation units such as valves and switches; and utility facilities such as pump stations, lift stations, and substations.

(2) **Enlarged Connection and Cutoff Plans** - Provide enlarged floor plans that provide information between the five foot utility connection point and where utilities connect to facility distribution. Enlarge floor plans/ elevations of the rooms where the utility enters the building and indicate on these plans locations of the main interior and exterior connection and cutoff points for all utilities. Also enlarge floor plans/ elevations of the rooms where equipment is located. Include enough information to enable someone unfamiliar with the facility to locate the connection and cutoff points. Indicate the room number, panel number, circuit breaker, valve number, etc., of each utility and equipment connection and cutoff point, and what that connection and cutoff point controls.

c. **Equipment Tags.** Provide equipment tags for all applicable items listed in eOMSI Spreadsheet Workbook/ Asset Identification List tab. Provide tags that are durable, oil and water-resistant and approved by the Contracting Officer. Attach tag with copper wire and spray with a clear silicone waterproof coating. Place tags on the equipment in a visible location that can be read by an inspector in a standing position. Provide tag information to include: Contract Number, Maximo Equipment Identification Numbers, and Equipment Tag Number that corresponds with the drawing. Only equipment with a value of greater than \$2,500 or sized as noted in eOMSI Spreadsheet Workbook/ Asset Identification List tab, shall be tagged.

Provide tags for the items listed below in addition to the items listed in eOMSI Spreadsheet Workbook/ Asset Identification List tab:

- (1) **Control** valves for heating, cooling, gas, fuel, water and

wastewater for piping 1 1/2 inches or greater. Main interior and exterior utility cut off valves (no dollar value restriction).

- d. **Record Drawings.** Provide an electronic copy of the Record Drawings for the project in PDF format, bookmarking all drawings using the sheet title and sheet number. Provide the Record Drawings on the same electronic media as used for the eOMSI submittal but on separate disks or files to allow simultaneous use of the eOMSI and Record Drawings.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 eOMSI TRAINING

Prior to acceptance of the facility by the Contracting Officer for Beneficial Occupancy/ Placed in Service Date, the eOMSI Preparer must provide a comprehensive project-specific Government personnel training program for the systems and equipment of the facility specified in the technical specifications of this Contract. The trainees must include the Facilities Management Specialist, **Public Works Facility Project Lead**, maintenance staff, and applicable building occupants. Coordinate, schedule, and ensure that training is completed. Instructors shall be well-versed in the particular systems that they are presenting. Provide instruction on site at a location approved by the Contracting Officer.

3.1.1 Training Plan

Submit a written **training plan** to the Contracting Officer for approval at least 60 calendar days prior to the scheduled training. Indicate prior approval of the **training plan** by the Commissioning Authority (CA) on the submittal forwarded to the Contracting Officer. Also, coordinate the training schedule with the Contracting Officer and CA. Include within the plan the following elements:

- a. Equipment included in training.
- b. Intended audience.
- c. Location of training.
- d. Objectives.
- e. Subjects covered including description.
- f. Duration of training on each subject.
- g. Methods (classroom lecture, video, site walk-through, actual operational demonstrations, written handouts, etc.).
- h. Instructor and instructor qualifications for each subject.

3.1.2 Training Content

The core of this training shall be based on manufacturer's recommendations and the operation and maintenance information defined in **Section 01 78 23 OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE DATA**. The CA is responsible for overseeing and approving the content and adequacy of the training. The eOMSI Preparer and the CA must interview the Government Facilities Management Specialist and the Contracting Officer to determine the special needs and areas where training will be most valuable. The Contracting Officer and CA must decide

how rigorous the training should be for each piece of equipment. The training shall include the following for each Primary System:

- a. **Start-up**, normal operation, shutdown, unoccupied operation, seasonal changeover, manual operation, controls set-up and programming, troubleshooting, and alarms.
- b. **Relevant** health and safety issues.
- c. **Discussion** of how the feature or system is environmentally responsive. Advise adjustments and optimizing methods for energy conservation.

In addition to the training requirements above, provide a brief summary of "Facility Information" and a more detailed presentation of, "Primary Systems Information". Spend 95 percent of the instruction time during the presentation on the "Primary Systems Information". Include the following for each Primary system training presentation:

- d. Design intent.
- e. Use of O&M Manuals.
- f. Review of control drawings and schematics.
- g. Interactions with other systems.
- h. Special maintenance and replacement sources.
- i. Tenant interaction issues.

3.1.1.3 Training Outline

The eOMSI Preparer shall provide each trainee in the course a written course outline, listing the major and minor topics to be discussed by the instructor on each day of the course. Provide the course outline 14 calendar days prior to the training.

3.1.1.4 Training Video Recording

Provide to the Contracting Officer two copies of the training course in DVD video recording format. Capture within the recording, in video and audio, all instructors' training presentations including question and answer periods with the trainees. Confirm proposed software, used to create the training is compatible with the using activity resources to play the training materials. The recording camera(s) shall be attended by a person during the recording sessions to assure proper size of exhibits and projections during the recording are visible and readable when viewed as training.

3.1.1.5 Unresolved Questions from Trainees

If, at the end of the training course, there are questions from trainees that remain unresolved, the instructor shall send the answers, in writing, to the Contracting Officer for transmittal to the trainees, and the training video shall be modified to include the appropriate clarifications.

3.1.1.6 Validation of Training Completion

Ensure that each attendee at each training session signs a class roster

daily to confirm Government participation in the training. At the completion of all training, submit a signed validation letter that includes a sample record of training for reporting what systems were included in the training, who provided the training, when and where the training was performed, and copies of the signed class rosters. Provide two copies of the validation to the Contracting Officer, one copy to the OMSI Preparer for inclusion into the OMSI documentation, and one copy to the LEED Documentation Preparer.

3.1.7 Quality Control Coordination

Coordinate the eOMSI training with the CA in [Section 01 45 00.00 20 QUALITY CONTROL](#).

3.2 FIELD VALIDATION

Perform the field validation at the 100 percent - Prefinal submittal stage. Coordinate with the Contracting Officer to establish the field validation date, to ensure the availability of Government representatives. Validation without Government representative, unless waived, is not acceptable.

The purpose of the validation is to discuss final requirements needed to complete the eOMSI submittals and to conduct field verification. Field validation is used to verify the accuracy and completeness of the eOMSI Data and eOMSI Documents. This includes verifying that the systems and equipment in the eOMSI submittal accurately reflect the as-built conditions; verifying that O&M procedures are appropriate for the systems and equipment that they support; verifying that equipment nomenclature and system configurations are accurate; and confirming correct equipment tagging.

The eOMSI Preparer, Superintendent, Quality Control Manager, and the Design Quality Control Manager/ Commissioning Authority (CA) shall attend the field validation, to verify the accuracy of the eOMSI Submittal. The eOMSI Preparer shall perform the validation, document the results of the field validation and correct the final eOMSI submittal to reflect the changes identified.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 01 78 30.00 22

GIS DATA DELIVERABLES

11/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 OBJECTIVE

The primary objective of this section is to provide detailed specifications for collection and delivery of geospatial data commonly referred to as Geographic Information System (GIS) data. Additionally, this section shall provide guidance to ensure that all GIS data delivered is compatible and will add value to the Marine Corps Base (MCB) Camp Lejeune Installation Geospatial Information and Services (IGI&S) GEODatabase.

Failure to comply with the specifications outlined in this document will result in non-acceptance of data deliverables.

1.1.1 Point of Contact for MCB Camp Lejeune

The Points of Contact (POC) for assistance in preparation of GIS deliverables are:

Resident Officer In Charge Of Construction
Construction Manager (CM)
1005 Michael Drive
Camp Lejeune, NC 28547-2521
(910) 451-2581

Public Works Division
GIS Data Manager
1005 Michael Road
Camp Lejeune, NC 28547-2521
(910) 451-5507 ext 3264

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

GIS Data Deliverables; G

1.3 GOVERNMENT GEOSPATIAL DATA AND SCHEMA

1. The IGI&S repository model schema is based on the Spatial Data Standards for Facilities, Infrastructure and Environment (SDSFIE) GEOFidelis Data Model with recurring business driven modifications and or adaptations.
 - a. Data will be created and delivered by developing an ARCGIS Personal GEODatabase using ArcGIS 10.1 or higher if a higher version is being utilized by the Government at the time the deliverable is being developed.
 - b. Request the existing GIS Data, Schema and Domain Properties by means of a Data Request Package (DRP). Receipt of request will include Geospatial Database table structure, schema, Domain configuration, Attribute text format, i.e., case size as well as

Meta Data information.

- c. The DRP should be submitted prior to the start of data collection efforts and again every 6 months for the duration of the contract. Ensure that all GIS data has been created and delivered utilizing the most up to date IGI&S GEODatabase schema.
 - d. Verify the ArcGIS and schema version, via the CM or PM, at the commencement of this contract. All GIS DATA DELIVERABLES will be created in accordance with the current version and these specifications.
2. Submit a request for a Geospatial DRP to the CM or the Project Manager.
 - a. Request to be completely filled out and include all the information as instructed on the data request form.
 - b. Request only GIS data and or schema for feature classes that are relevant to the contract and within the boundary of project area.
 - c. Attach Scope of Work, which is defined by this GIS DATA DELIVERABLES section for each project request.
 - d. Return the DRP to the CM or Project Manager for sponsorship and submittal to the Installation Geospatial Information & Services (IGI&S) Office.
 - e. Incomplete forms may delay receipt of the requested GIS data and Schema.

1.3.1 Global Positioning System (GPS) and Spatial Reference Properties

GPS data shall be completed in accordance with the GPS Data Collection and Documentation Standards, Version 4 (or higher version if available at the time of this project) as prepared by Geographic Information Coordinating Council (GICC) Statewide Mapping Advisory Committee (SMAC) and adopted by the [North Carolina](#) Geographic Information Coordinating Council.

1. Prior to GPS efforts, ALL underground utilities are to be located utilizing a utility locating service in order to verify and obtain accurate feature locations.
2. Only bench marks included in the [North Carolina](#) Geodetic Survey Base Station Network are to be used for GPS data collection.
3. Mission planning is essential. Utilize the best Position Dilution of Precision (PDOP) values for data accuracy.
4. Utility data, as identified in paragraph "ATTRIBUTE DATA COLLECTION AND GPS REQUIREMENTS FOR SPECIFIC FEATURES" will be collected utilizing Survey Grade GPS data collection methods.
5. Infrastructure data, as identified in paragraph "ATTRIBUTE DATA COLLECTION AND GPS REQUIREMENTS FOR SPECIFIC FEATURES" will be collected utilizing Sub-Foot or better GPS data collection methods.
 - a. Spatial accuracy requirements for Survey and Sub-Foot grade data collection are as follows:

- i. Sub-Foot requirements:
 - 1) All points shall be within + 12 inches
 - 2) 95 percent accuracy rate for all points.
- ii. Survey Grade requirements:
 - 1) All points shall be within + 1 centimeter
 - 2) 98 percent accuracy rate for all points
6. Make every effort to capture feature locations without using offsets. All Offsets will be noted in the Final Report for each feature.
7. Excessive offsets included in the Final Data, which will be referenced in the Final Report, will be reviewed for quality control.
 - a. Resubmittal of data will be required if PDOP planning was not observed per this specification.

The following GEODatabase Coordinate Systems and Spatial Reference Properties should be utilized for Camp Lejeune:

1. Transverse Mercator (UTM) Zone 18N
 - a. GRS 1980 spheroid
 - b. North American Datum 1983 (NAD83) horizontal datum
 - c. North American Vertical Datum 1988 (NAVD88) vertical datum.
2. Domain precision of 1000 which will result in a database accuracy of 1/1000 m

1.3.2 Demolished and Abandoned in Place (AIP) Features

Reference all Demolished and or AIP features in the data delivered. Should the current feature data class attributes and or domains not reference AIP or demolished features, the Contractor will be responsible for appropriately delivering these features by creating an associated "Demolished" or AIP feature class for all point and polyline data, i.e., CLJN.CL.WastewaterUtilitySegment and CLJN.CL.WateUtilNode_wHydrant, etc.

1. Utilize a blank schema for the associated feature class.
2. Rename associated feature class and add DEMO or AIP as a prefix, i.e., DEMO.CLJN.CL.WastewaterUtilitySegment, AIP.CLJN.CL.WastewaterUtilitySegment.
3. All demolished and or AIP features should provide existing spatial and non-spatial data which may be copied from existing data.
4. Update attributes appropriately to include the following:
 - a. Contract Number.
 - b. Drawing Number.

- c. isDemolished.
- d. dateDemolished or dateAIP.
- e. Status.

1.3.3 Creating a New Feature Class

Should a new feature class be required that is not readily available in the current GIS schema provided by the Government. Contact the CM or Project Manager for **guidance** and schema format.

1.3.4 GIS Topology Rules

All data must be created using GIS topology rules for polygons, points and lines, such as, but not limited to the following examples:

1. Polygons, Polylines and points rules; please reference illustrating topology rules in ArcGIS at www.esri.com.
2. Polygons must not have slivers.
3. All utility or infrastructure system data, which is, but is not limited to, transportation system and electrical, water, steam distribution, and wastewater collection, etc., will be created using GIS spatial connectivity rules which specify that vertex, edge and endpoints be snapped to features within the system.
4. Features will be snapped to the appropriate item.
5. Data will be created to represent the real world, for example, water, sewer, and **transportation** systems, etc. will be drawn and or created in the direction of flow.
6. Utility and transportation systems will be created from source to sink, etc.
7. Abandoned In Place (AIP) utility lines will be located and updated in the current feature data set and identified as AIP in the attribute **table** or provide in a feature data set as specified in paragraph "Demolished and Abandoned in Place (AIP) Features" with CM approval.

1.3.5 Creation of Geographic Data Documentation (METADATA)

For each digital file delivered containing geographic information, provide documentation consistent with the Federal Geographic Data Committee (FGDC) Content Standards for Digital Geospatial Metadata (CSDGM).

Metadata generation tools included in the ArcGIS suite of software (or equivalent technology) will be used in the production of the required metadata in XML format. Regardless of the tools used for metadata creation, must ensure that the metadata is delivered in XML format and can be easily imported into the IGI&S GEODatabase.

(NOTE: The metadata should be formatted from the Government perspective, not the Contractor project perspective. Therefore such items as Point of Contact (POC) should be the POC currently associated with the data and NOT the Contractor's Project Manager. Use language and format consistent with existing metadata.)

1.3.6 GIS Submittals Guidelines

All GIS Submittals will be submitted to the CM or PM and then analyzed by Government GIS personnel prior to final approval. Failure to comply with the specifications outlined in this document will result in non-acceptance of data deliverables.

1. Prior to any database development, provide the Government with a technical approach document, in PDF format, for review and approval. The Technical Approach document will describe in detail the Contractor's technical approach to designing and developing the database.
2. All attributes will be populated in accordance with the "ATTRIBUTE DATA COLLECTION AND GPS REQUIREMENTS FOR SPECIFIC FEATURES" and will be obtained via contract specifications, plans and record drawings.
3. Research may be required to be conducted to collect data and make copies of reports and studies as necessary to verify existing and/or record drawing data. Record drawing data and closed contracts can be located in the Technical Records Section in the Public Works Department which is located at 1005 Michael Street, MCB Camp Lejeune.
4. Raw GPS data and collection data files will be included with every phase of delivery.
5. Actual spatial and non-spatial conditions in the field always supersede drawings. Locate and field verify all features to ensure attribute data and location is correctly recorded.
6. Submit a preliminary review of data at 25 percent contract completion to ensure specifications compliance.
7. Deliver digital geographic maps, GPS collection files and related data. All working text and documents and personal geodatabase will be included for review in the draft and final delivery of data.
 - a. All maps of GIS DATA DELIVERABLES will be ANSI C size and include a project title, contract number, scale, legend, standard symbology, attributes, i.e., building numbers, road names, segment diameters, etc. Also provide a PDF copy of all maps.
8. When required, provide a technical consultant to meet on site.
9. Do not deliver blank unused schema or feature class data with no attributes. Deliver only data pertinent to the contract that adds value to the GEODatabase per this section.
10. When projects are constructed in phases, deliver GIS Data at the end of each phase for all Phased Projects and Construction projects.
11. It is the Contractor's responsibility to perform quality assurance for all data and related materials required in the section prior to submitting product to the Government.
12. The data will be analyzed for discrepancies in subject content, correct format in accordance with this statement of work, and compatibility with the existing GIS system as well as all other specifications in

this section.

1.3.7 Formats, Versions and Guidelines

All data deliverables will be in the following formats and/or versions.

1. GIS data will be provided in an ArcGIS 10.1 or higher if a higher version is being used by the Government at the time of this project. Verify the ArcGIS version, via the CM or PM at the commencement of this contract.
2. Microsoft Windows 7 operating system, unless otherwise approved by the Government.
3. All reports and maps will be delivered as a hard copy and in a searchable Adobe Portable Document Format (PDF).
4. All text, spreadsheet, database files, reports, and maps will be delivered on Digital Versatile Disc read - only memory (DVD-ROM).
5. Verify required version(s) of software and schema, via the CM or PM.
6. Map submittals will accompany each geospatial deliverable.
 - a. Include ANSI C map for each project/area.
 - b. Data should be labeled and attributed per specification.
 - c. All maps should include the date, a legend, scale, contract title, and number.
 - d. Each map should be exported on a .pdf and delivered electronically with the project.

1.3.8 Final Report Requirements with additional Guidelines

Follow the following:

1. Specific procedures and list of equipment, software and versions that were utilized for the GPS data collection and creation of geospatial data.
2. Submit all GPS data files.
3. Provide the date(s) the IGI&S schema and geospatial data was received.
4. Provide details on any offsets to include justification as to why offsets were utilized and on which features and or points offsets were used.
5. Describe all modifications to the geodatabase to include the name of all new features classes, i.e., new, demolished or AIP.
6. Provide the source that was utilized for required attributes.
 - a. Include an ANSI C size copy of all design drawings that were referenced in the attribute data. This information should be included in all phases of delivery to include draft and final reviews.

- b. Provide the overall utility site plan drawing(s) with each submittal.
 - c. Provide a separate map for communication which includes infrastructure in PDF format.
- 7. Specify Deliverable "Draft #" or "Final Submittal" when data is submitted to the CM or PM for review.
 - 8. Provide the name and contact information for the GIS Technical Point of Contact who can answer questions regarding the data deliverable.
 - 9. GIS DATA DELIVERABLES must be provided in a format that does not require translation or pre/post processing prior to being loaded into the IGI&S GEODatabase.
 - 10. Provide any miscellaneous information that is deemed significant.
 - 11. Provide the current version of the GIS DATA DELIVERABLES specification utilized for this contract submittal.

1.3.9 Ownership

All digital files, final hardcopy products, GPS raw data, source data acquired for this project, and related materials, including that furnished by the Government, will become the property of the Government and will not be issued, posted, distributed, or published by the Contractor. All documentation will be delivered in the final delivery.

Note: No endorsement of software or hardware is implied.

1.4 ATTRIBUTE DATA COLLECTION AND GPS REQUIREMENTS FOR SPECIFIC FEATURES

GPS and collect attribute data as specified for each feature listed with (GPS) accuracy as described in paragraph "Global Positioning System (GPS) and Spatial Reference Properties". Attribute fields may be associated with Domains, which are utilized to constrain the values allowed in a particular field, attribute table or feature class. Domains must be utilized when populating the feature where required.

1.4.1 CLJN.CL.Common

GPS and collect attribute data as specified for each feature listed with GPS accuracy as described in paragraph "Global Positioning System (GPS) and Spatial Reference Properties." Attribute fields may be associated with Domains, which are utilized to constrain the values allowed in a particular field, attribute table, or feature class. Domains must be utilized when populating the feature where required.

GPS and collect the following attributes:

CLJN.CL.Sign

A structure that conveys directional, warning, or other information.

- a) numberOfSigns
- b) assemblyOffset
- c) SignText
- d) SignType - Directional, Standard Identifier, Safety

- Warnings, Regulatory, etc.
- e) SymbolCode - Utilize manual for Uniform Traffic Control Devices Code as issued by the Federal Highway Administration
 - f) GisFeatureCollectionMethod - Survey Grade GPS, Digitized, etc.
 - g) Contract Number
 - h) SdsFeatureDescription
 - i) signAssemblyType - Pedestal Pole, Wood 4x4, etc.

1.4.2 CLJN.CL.EMERGENCY_SERVICES

GPS and collect attribute data as specified for each feature listed with GPS accuracy as described in paragraph "Global Positioning System (GPS) and Spatial Reference Properties". Attribute fields may be associated with Domains, which are utilized to constrain the values allowed in a particular field, attribute table, or feature class. Domains must be utilized when populating the feature where required.

CLJN.CL.RoadCenterline

The center of the road area

- a) roadClass - Major Roads/Local Roads/etc.
- b) trackOrLaneCount
- c) speedLimit
- d) isPaved - YES / NO
- e) oneWayDirection
- f) fullStreetName
- g) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- h) contractNumber
- i) isTankTrail - YES / NO
- j) isLighted - Yes / No
- k) routeMinTravelledWayWidth
- l) routeMinTravelledWayWidthUOM
- m) routeTotalUsableWidth
- n) routeTotalUsableWidthUOM
- o) supportedByBridgeSpan - Yes / No

1.4.3 CLJN.CL.REAL.PROPERTY

GPS and collect attribute data as specified for each feature listed with GPS accuracy as described in paragraph "Global Positioning System (GPS) and Spatial Reference Properties." Attribute fields may be associated with Domains, which are utilized to constrain the values allowed in a particular field, attribute table or feature class. Domains must be utilized when populating the feature where required.

GPS and collect the following attributes:

CLJN.CL.AccessControl

A structure manned or unmanned intended to control access to an area

- a) controlType - gate, barricade, tire shedder, etc.
- b) contractNumber
- c) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- d) isRangeAccess - YES / NO

- e) gateType -
- f) Facility Number
- g) sdsFeatureDescription - Location

CLJN.CL.AlternativeEnergyPoint

Locations used for the production of alternative energy sources, such as wind turbines, photovoltaic, etc.

- a) alternativeEnergyType - Photovoltaic, Natural Gas, etc.
- b) contractNumber
- c) designDrawingNumber
- d) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- e) isPortable - YES / NO
- f) wattage
- g) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- h) panelType
- i) sdsFeatureName
- j) sdsFeatureDescription
- k) wattage - Total per unit
- l) hasInverter - YES / NO
- m) isPartOfElectricalNetwork - YES / NO
- n) photovoltaicPanelInstallation

CLJN.CL.AlternativeEnergyArea

Locations used for the production of alternative energy sources

- a) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- b) isPortable - YES / NO
- c) panelType
- d) wattage - total for area
- e) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- f) contractNumber
- g) sdsFeatureName - Facility Number
- h) hasInverter - YES / NO
- i) isPartOfElectricalNetwork - YES / NO

CLJN.CL.BoatRamp

A partially submerged hard surfaced structure on a shoreline for launching or retrieving vessels or vehicles

- a) boatRampIDPK - Facility Number
- b) dateConstructed
- c) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- d) contractNumber
- e) sdsFeatureName
- f) sdsFeatureDescription - Location
- g) numberOfLaunchLanes

CLJN.CL.Bridge

A structure used by vehicles that allows passage over or under an obstacle such as a river, chasm, mountain, road or railroad

- a) isFixed - YES / NO
- b) TransportationSystemType - Pedestrian, Road, Railway, etc.
- c) FacilityNumber

- d) verticalConstructionMaterial - Brick, Concrete, etc.
- e) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- f) contractNumber
- g) sdsFeatureDescription - Road Name if applicable
- h) OperationalStatus - closed, operational, etc.

CLJN.CL.Building

A roofed, floored and walled structure that is completely enclosed

- a) facilityNumber
- b) builtDate
- c) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- d) contractNumber
- e) sdsFeatureDescription - General Description of Building's Purpose
- f) floorCount
- g) material - Exterior material such as Brick, Concrete, etc.
- h) operationalStatus - inService, abandoned, etc.

CLJN.CL.BuildingFloorPlan

A linear representation of floor plans for buildings, provided in one feature per floor

- a) buildingFloorLevel
- b) buildingIDFK - Structure Number
- c) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- d) contractNumber
- e) sdsFeatureDescription Renovation Date

CLJN.CL.Disposal_RealProperty

Real property demolished structures

- a) sdsFeatureDescription
- b) sdsFeatureName
- c) facilityNumber
- d) contractNumber
- e) disposalDate

CLJN.CL.DocksAndWharfs

A manmade water-land interface structure often for access to boats or ships

- a) PurposeType - Fishing, Mooring, etc.
- b) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- c) contractNumber
- d) Facility Number - Structure Number
- e) sdsFeatureDescription - Pier, boat ramp, dock, etc.
- f) natureOfConstruction - concrete, earthen, steel

CLJN.CL.Fence

A freestanding structure designed to restrict or prevent movement across a boundary

- a) facilityIDFK - Structure Number
- b) fenceType - metal, wood, etc.
- c) fenceUse - agriculture, boundary, etc.
- d) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- e) contractNumber
- f) sdsFeatureName - Fence or Gate
- g) sdsFeatureDescription

CLJN.CL.Marina

Any facility or area for the exchange of people or materials from land to water such as a port, harbor, marina, launch area or small craft facility

- a) marinaIDPK - Structure Number
- b) marinaType
- c) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- d) contractNumber
- e) sdsFeatureName
- f) createdDate - Construction Date
- g) categoryOfCraftFacility - boat launch or landed, etc.

CLJN.CL.NavigationalAid

A visual or electronic device, on the ground or airborne, which provides point-to-point guidance information or position data to aircraft in flight

- a) navigationalAidIDPK - Structure Number
- b) navaidType - TACAN, Radar station, Beacon, etc.
- c) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- d) contractNumber
- e) sdsFeatureName - Type of navigational aid

CLJN.CL.PavementSectionAirfield

A pavement section is a portion of a pavement branch that differs in some aspect from other sections such that further segmentation is required to uniquely identify that section)

- a) pavementSectionType - apron, roadway, etc.
- b) isLighted - YES / NO
- c) operationalStatus - inService, abandoned, etc.
- d) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- e) builtDate
- f) contractNumber
- g) runwayClassification - class A, class B, rotatory, etc.
- h) sdsFeatureName
- i) sdsFeatureDescription - MCBCL, MCASNR, Geiger, Stone Bay, etc.

CLJN.CL.PavementSectionParkingArea

A vehicle parking area is an area used for parking vehicles not including residential streets and driveways.

- a) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- b) operationalStatus - inService, abandoned, etc.
- c) pavementSectionType - parking, slab, driveway, etc.

- d) sdsFeatureDescription - Dumpster, Driveway, Transformer, Parking, etc.
- e) sdsFeatureName - Pad, Slab, Parking, etc.
- f) facilityNumber
- g) builtDate
- h) contractNumber
- i) isLighted

CLJN.CL.PavementSectionRoadway

The surface area that comprise a road area, upon which vehicles drive and park.

- a) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- b) operationalStatus - inService, abandoned, etc.
- c) pavementSectionType - curb, roadway, etc.
- d) facCode - Surfaced or Unsurfaced
- e) divided - Yes / No
- f) featureCode
- g) oneWay - Yes / No
- h) routeSurfaceComposition - concrete, asphalt, etc.
- i) builtDate
- j) contractNumber
- k) isLighted - Yes / No
- l) isTankTrail - Yes / No

CLJN.CL.PavementSectionSidewalk

The paved pedestrian walkway prepared to facilitate travel on foot. It may or may not be adjacent to a street/road.

- a) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- b) operationalStatus - inService, abandoned, etc.
- c) pavementSectionType - Sidewalks
- d) sdsFeatureDescription - Named Area
- e) routeSurfaceComposition - Concrete, Asphalt, etc.
- f) builtDate
- g) contractNumber
- h) installationCode - M67001
- i) isLighted - Yes / No

CLJN.CL.RailTrack

A track is the main designation for describing a physical linear portion of the network

- a) contractNumber
- b) facilityNumber
- c) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- d) NetworkSubtype - railroadTrack, craneTrack
- e) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- f) sdsFeatureName - Start & finish Points
- g) sdsFeatureDescription - Provide Street Name Cross cover

CLJN.CL.RecreationArea

An area defined for recreational purposes

- a) facilityNumber
- b) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- c) contractNumber
- d) sdsFeatureName - Type of recreation field
- e) sdsFeatureDescription - Type of recreation feature
- f) areaType - biking, boating, picnic, Hunting, etc.

CLJN.CL.RecreationTrail

A location providing physical activities which are mentally relaxing, such as running/walking, biking, or hiking

- a) recreationTrailIDPK - Facility or Structure Number
- b) trailType - Multi-use, horse riding, etc.
- c) isPaved - YES / NO
- d) dateConstructed
- e) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- f) contractNumber
- g) sdsFeatureName - Trail Name
- h) sdsFeatureDescription - Area, Location or parallel street

CLJN.CL.StructureArea

A facility classified as other than a building or linear asset

- a) facilityNumber - Structure Number
- b) builtDate
- c) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- d) contractNumber
- e) sdsFeatureName - Name of structure according to contract
- f) sdsFeatureDescription - Description of item
- g) heightAboveSurfaceLevel
- h) heightAboveSurfaceLevelUOM - foot, inch, meter, etc.

CLJN.CL.StructurePoint

Example: Flag poles; Point of Information Signs (POI) etc

- a) facilityNumber - Structure Number
- b) builtDate
- c) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- d) contractNumber
- e) sdsFeatureName - POI, Sign, Flagpole, bleacher, etc.
- f) sdsFeatureDescription - Specific type of feature

CLJN.CL.Tower

A vertical projection, higher than its diameter, generally used for observation, storage, or electronic transmission

- a) towerUseType - communication, observation, etc.
- b) heightMax
- c) heightUOM - foot, inch, meter, etc.
- d) contractNumber
- e) towerType - Observation Tower, Guard Tower, etc.
- f) facilityNumber - Structure number

- g) sdsFeatureDescription
- h) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- i) towerMaterial - wood, concrete, steel, etc.

CLJN.CL.TrafficControlLight

A feature used to represent traffic lights

- a) contractNumber
- b) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- c) sdsFeatureName - Traffic Control Light, Traffic Signal control box, etc.
- d) sdsFeatureDescription - Location such as streets that intersect

CLJN.CL.Wall

A linear feature used for separation of facilities, ornamental decoration, or structural reinforcement (retaining wall)

- a) wallType - brick, timber, stone, concrete, etc.
- b) wallHeight
- c) wallHeightUOM - foot, inch, meter, etc.
- d) dateConstructed
- e) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- f) contractNumber
- g) sdsFeatureName
- h) sdsFeatureDescription - Dumpster enclosure, Utility Enclosure, Blast Protection, etc.

1.4.4 CLJN.CL.REAL_PROPERTY_RESTRICTED

GPS and collect attribute data as specified for each feature listed with GPS accuracy as described in paragraph "Global Positioning System (GPS) and Spatial Reference Properties." Attribute fields may be associated with Domains, which are utilized to constrain the values allowed in a particular field, attribute table or feature class. Domains must be utilized when populating the feature where required.

GPS and collect the following attributes:

CLJN.CL.Well

A shaft dug or drilled into the Earth for the purpose of extracting fluids from the subsurface, collecting environmental samples, injecting fluids into the subsurface or extracting contamination or other impurities from the subsurface

- a) facilityNumber - Structure Number
- b) wellPurpose - extraction, injection, etc.
- c) wellResource - WATER
- d) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- e) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- f) contractNumber
- g) sdsFeatureName - potable or nonpotable
- h) sdsFeatureDescription - operational status source
- i) ProjectID - Name of Plant this well services

- j) wellType - artesian, drilled, etc.
- k) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, removed, etc

1.4.5 CLJN.CL.COMMUNICATIONS_RESTRICTED

GPS and collect attribute data as specified for each feature listed with GPS accuracy as described in paragraph "Global Positioning System GPS and Spatial Reference Properties." Attribute fields may be associated with Domains, which are utilized to constrain the values allowed in a particular field, attribute table or feature class. Domains must be utilized when populating the feature where required.

GPS and collect the following attributes:

CLJN.CL.CommCartographicFeatureArea

Graphic features that aid in visually associating CommAnnotation features to the appropriate communication infrastructure feature.

- a) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- b) sdsFeatureName
- c) sdsFeatureDescription
- d) commProjectName - Contract Number
- e) operationalStatus - In service, Removed, Abandon in Place, etc.

CLJN.CL.CommCartographicFeatureLine

Graphic features that aid in visually associating CommAnnotation features to the appropriate communication infrastructure feature.

- a) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- b) sdsFeatureName
- c) sdsFeatureDescription
- d) commProjectName - Contract Number
- e) operationalStatus - In service, Removed, Abandon in Place, etc.

CLJN.CL.CommCartographicFeaturePoint

Graphic features that aid in visually associating CommAnnotation features to the appropriate communication infrastructure feature.

- a) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- b) sdsFeatureName
- c) sdsFeatureDescription
- d) commProjectName - Contract Number
- e) operationalStatus - In service, Removed, Abandon in Place, etc.

CLJN.CL.CommUtilityNode

A subdivision of a communications network, particularly an asset that participates in the transmission of a signal but that is not a cable.

- a) commUtilityNodeIDPK - Structure Number
- b) commNodeType - connection or two or more sheaths, Devise Used to detect & measure various environmental conditions, Devise converts electrical signal in to sound, etc.

- c) operatingSpectrum
- d) transmissionPower
- e) powerUOM
- f) operationalStatus - In service, Removed, Abandon in Place, etc.
- g) commProjectName - Contract Number
- h) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- i) sdsFeatureName - MNS - Big Voice, MNS - Little Voice, MSN - Control Station, etc.
- j) sdsFeatureDescription - MNS - Big Voice, Field Antenna, Antenna Communication, etc.

CLJN.CL.CommUtilitySegment

A subdivision of a communications network, particularly a cable for the transmission of a signal.

- a) cableMaterial - Fiber Optical, PB, CU, Steel, ABS, etc.
- b) cableSheathing - PE, XLPE, Cross Ply, etc.
- c) availableFibers -
- d) usedFibers
- e) numberOfMultiModeFibers
- f) numberOfPairs
- g) numberOfSingleModeFibers
- h) installationTypeCode - Underground, above ground, etc.
- i) operationalStatus - In service, Removed, Abandon in Place, etc.
- j) cableInstaller -
- k) cableRoute -
- l) cableCount -
- m) numberOfStrands -
- n) wireGauge -
- o) commProjectName - Contract Number
- p) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- q) sdsFeatureName - Non-direct Buried Lines, Direct Buried Lines, etc.
- r) sdsFeatureDescription - communications line, etc.

CLJN.CL.UtilityFeature_cDuctBank

One or more ducts routed in parallel between two nodes.

- a) networkType - A network used for the transmission of a signal.
- b) networkSubType - The communication network subtype.
- c) utilityFeatureType - One or more ducts routed in parallel between two nodes. (L), etc.
- d) diameter
- e) diameterUOM - Inches, Feet, meters, etc.
- f) ductDepth
- g) ductDepthUOM - Inches, Feet, meters, etc.
- h) interDuctDiameter
- i) interDuctDiameterUOM - Inches, Feet, meters, etc.
- j) isEncased - Yes or No
- k) numberOfDucts
- l) numberOfInserts
- m) operationalStatus - In service, Removed, Abandon in Place, etc.
- n) commProjectName - Contract Number

- o) `gisFeatureCollectionMethod` - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.

CLJN.CL.UtilityFeature_cManhole

An enclosed structure (manhole, or handhole)

- a) `utilityFeatureIDPK` - MH Number - See project Manager
- b) `networkType` - Network used for transmission of signal,
- c) `networkSubType` - Communication network subtype
- d) `utilityFeatureType` - Manhole, hand hole, etc.
- e) `cManholeType` - T, R2A, L, j4, JC9C, etc.
- f) `cManholeMaterial` - steel, plastic, aluminum, fiberglass, etc.
- g) `isHandhole` - Yes or No
- h) `widthValue`
- i) `widthUOM` - Inches, Feet, meters, etc.
- j) `lengthValue`
- k) `lengthUOM` - Inches, Feet, meters, etc.
- l) `heightValue`
- m) `heightUOM` - Inches, Feet, meters, etc.
- n) `diameter`
- o) `diameterUOM` - Inches, Feet, meters, etc.
- p) `cManholeDepth`
- q) `cManholeDepthUOM` - Inches, Feet, meters, etc.
- r) `operationalStatus` - In service, Removed, Abandon in Place, etc.
- s) `commProjectName` - Contract Number
- t) `gisFeatureCollectionMethod` - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.

CLJN.CL.UtilityFeature_cPedestal

An above-ground enclosed structure that provides access to buried plant and a place to house splices, terminals, etc.

- a) `networkType` - A network used for the transmission of a signal.
- b) `networkSubType` - The communication network subtype.
- c) `utilityFeatureType` - above-ground enclosed structure that provides access to buried plant and a place to house splices, terminal, etc.
- d) `pedestalType` - rectangular box type, etc.
- e) `operationalStatus` - In service, Removed, Abandon in Place, etc.
- f) `commProjectName` - Add Contract Number
- g) `gisFeatureCollectionMethod` - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- h) `sdsFeatureDescription`

CLJN.CL.UtilityFeature_cVault

An enclosed structure in a facility used for cable entrance.

- a) `utilityFeatureType`
- b) `networkType` - A network used for the transmission of a signal.
- c) `networkSubType` - The communication network subtype.
- d) `heightValue`
- e) `heightUOM` - Inches, Feet, meters, etc.
- f) `widthValue`
- g) `widthUOM` - Inches, Feet, meters, etc.
- h) `vaultDepth`

- i) vaultDepthUOM - Inches, Feet, meters, etc.
- j) diameter
- k) diameterUOM - Inches, Feet, meters, etc.
- l) operationalStatus - In service, Removed, Abandon in Place, etc.
- m) commProjectName - Contract Number
- n) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- o) sdsFeatureDescription

1.4.6 CLJN.CL.UTILITIES_ELECTRICAL

GPS and collect attribute data as specified for each feature listed with GPS accuracy as described in paragraph "Global Positioning System (GPS) and Spatial Reference Properties." Attribute fields may be associated with Domains, which are utilized to constrain the values allowed in a particular field, attribute table or feature class. Domains must be utilized when populating the feature where required.

GPS and collect the following attributes:

CLJN.CL.ElecUtilNode_eExteriorLight

Exterior lighting is supplied by local distribution systems and is generally the only service for which the electric utility installs, operates and maintains utilization equipment

- a) electricalUtilityNodeIDPK
- b) exteriorLightType - streetLight, parkingLotLight, etc.
- c) electricalNodeType - eExteriorLight
- d) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- e) bulbType LED, INCA, etc.
- f) circuitID - This available from CM or PM
- g) hasSensor - YES / NO
- h) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- i) contractNumber
- j) dateInService
- k) sdsFeatureName
- l) Voltage
- m) Wattage

CLJN.CL.ElecUtilNode_eGenerator

Generator is a power source for providing electricity. Generators may be primary or standby power sources

- a) FacilityNumber - structure number
- b) electricalNodeType - eGenerator
- c) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- d) voltage
- e) kvaRate
- f) circuitID - List is available from CM or PM
- g) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- h) contractNumber
- i) dateInService
- j) sdsFeatureName - Manufacturer
- k) generatorType - Primary, backup, emergency, etc.

CLJN.CL.ElecUtilNode_eMeterPoint

A electrical meter point represents the location of the metering device

- a) electricalNodeType - Description
- b) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- c) circuitID - List is available from CM or PM
- d) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- e) contractNumber
- f) dateInService
- g) sdsFeatureName
- h) sdsFeatureDescription -
- i) mountingType
- j) utilityOwner
- k) voltage - 208Y-120V, 480Y-277V, etc.

CLJN.CL.ElecUtilNode_eSwitch

Electrical Switches are installed at strategic locations throughout distribution feeder circuits

- a) electricalNodeType
- b) switchPosition - closed, open, etc.
- c) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- d) electricalSwitchType - switches
- e) circuitID - List is available from CM or PM
- f) numberOfPhases single, three, two
- g) switchPosition - Open, closed, etc.
- h) voltage - 208Y-120V, 480Y-277V, etc.
- i) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- j) contractNumber

CLJN.CL.ElecUtilNode_eTransformer

The Transformer feature class captures information about distribution and power transformers

- a) electricalNodeType - Transformer
- b) transformerType - stepdown, step up, etc.
- c) mountingType - pool or pad
- d) numberOfPhases - 1, 2, 3, etc.
- e) primaryVoltage - 208Y-120V, 480Y-277V, etc.
- f) secondaryVoltage - 208Y-120V, 480Y-277V, etc.
- g) totalKVA
- h) circuitID - List is available from CM or PM
- i) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- j) contractNumber
- k) sdsFeatureName - Manufacturer
- l) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.

CLJN.CL.ElecUtilNode_eVoltageRegulator

Voltage regulators vary the ac supply or source voltage to the customer to maintain the voltage within desired limits

- a) electricalNodeType - VoltageRegulator
- b) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- c) primaryVoltage - 208Y-120V, 480Y-277V, etc.
- d) secondaryVoltage - 208Y-120V, 480Y-277V, etc.
- e) numberOfPhases - 1, 2, 3,

- f) circuitID - This available from CM or PM
- g) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- h) contractNumber

CLJN.CL.UtilFeat_eSupportStructure

A structure that supports electric devices

- a) utilityFeatureType - Utility, Guy, Poles, etc.
- b) networkType - electrical
- c) heightValue -
- d) heightUOM - foot, inch, meter, etc.
- e) utilityOwner
- f) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- g) cableCircuitName - List is available from CM or PM
- h) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- i) contractNumber
- j) sdsFeatureName - Utility Pole, etc
- k) sdsFeatureDescription - Number of circuits attached to pole

CLJN.CL.UtilFeat_eUndergroundStructure

Underground Structure is a simple junction feature that includes vaults and manholes that house and protect electrical equipment

- a) utilityFeatureIDPK - Structure Number
- b) utilityFeatureType - Underground, surface structure, etc
- c) networkType - electrical
- d) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- e) electricalJunctionType - Manhole, Junction Box, Handhole, etc.
- f) numberOfCables -
- g) rimElevation -
- h) rimElevationUOM - foot, inch, meter, etc.
- i) cableCircuitName - List is available from CM or PM
- j) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- k) contractNumber

CLJN.CL.ElecUtilSegment

A subdivision of an electrical distribution network, particularly a line for the transmission of electricity

- a) electricalSegmentType - OH Primary, UG Primary, OH Secondary, UG Secondary, etc.
- b) cableMaterial - AL, copper, etc.
- c) location - aboveground, underground, etc.
- e) voltage - 208Y-120V, 480Y-277V, etc.
- f) utilityOwner -
- g) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- h) insulationMaterial - polyCross, none, etc.
- i) conductorSize -
- j) neutralSize -
- k) numberOfConduct -
- l) numberOfNeutral -
- m) numberOfPhases - 1, 2, 3, etc.
- n) circuitID - List is available from CM or PM
- o) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- p) contractNumber -

- q) dateInService -
- r) sdsFeatureName - Electrical Distribution, exterior lighting, etc.
- s) sdsFeatureDescription - Armless mount, cross arm, etc.

CLJN.CL.UtilFeat_eElecFacilitySite

Polygon feature class to define boundaries of electrical facility stations

- a) utilityFeatureType - Electrical Facility station
- b) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- c) numberOfCircuits
- d) numberOfSpareBays
- e) numberOfTransformers
- f) voltageIn - 208Y-120V, 480Y-277V, etc.
- g) utilityOwner
- h) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- i) contractNumber
- j) equipmentInstallationDate
- k) sdsFeatureDescription - Location of substation
- l) facilityIDFK - structure number

1.4.7 CLJN.CL.UTILITIES_POL

GPS and collect attribute data as specified for each feature listed with GPS accuracy as described in paragraph "Global Positioning System GPS and Spatial Reference Properties." Attribute fields may be associated with Domains, which are utilized to constrain the values allowed in a particular field, attribute table or feature class. Domains must be utilized when populating the feature where required.

GPS and collect the following attributes:

CLJN.CL.POLUtilNode_oDispenser

A fuel dispenser is a machine at a fueling station that is used to pump fuel into vehicles or AGE equipment

- a) polNodeType - Fuel dispenser
- b) networkSubType - automotive_diesel, jpts, etc.
- c) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- d) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- e) contractNumber
- f) dateInService
- g) sdsFeatureName - Fuel Dispenser
- h) sdsFeatureDescription - Type of fuel, unleaded, ethanol, diesel, etc.

CLJN.CL.UtilFeat_oPumpingFacility

A structure, typically a building, containing pumps, filters, and controls as part of a larger fuel handling system

- a) utilityFeatureIDPK
- b) utilityFeatureType - off-loading pumping facility
- c) networkSubType automotive_diesel, jpts, etc.
- d) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- e) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- f) contractNumber

- g) equipmentInstallationDate
- h) sdsFeatureDescription -

1.4.8 CLJN.CL.UTILITIES_STORMWATER

GPS and collect attribute data as specified for each feature listed with GPS accuracy as described in paragraph "Global Positioning System GPS and Spatial Reference Properties." Attribute fields may be associated with Domains, which are utilized to constrain the values allowed in a particular field, attribute table or feature class. Domains must be utilized when populating the feature where required.

GPS and collect the following attributes:

CLJN.CL.Impoundment_Stormwater

An accumulation of storm water that is impounded by a dam or weir

- a) permitID - Permit Number
- b) impoundmentType - minimumPool, topOfFloodControl, etc.
- c) waterSurfaceElevation
- d) waterSurfaceElevationUOM - foot, inch, meter, etc.
- e) dateConstructed
- f) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- g) contractNumber
- h) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- i) stormwaterTreatmentType - Infiltration Basin, Constructed Wetlands, etc.
- j) utilityOwner

CLJN.CL.StormwaterUtilityNode_swInlet

The location at which stormwater is collected/received into the stormwater network

- a) stormwaterUtilityNodeIDPK - Structure ID
- b) stormwaterNodeType - swInlet description
- c) networkSubType - stormWater
- d) stormwaterInletType - Inlet, Headwall, etc.
- e) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- f) contractNumber
- g) equipmentInstallationDate
- h) sdsFeatureDescription -
- i) operationalStatus inservice, abandoned, etc.

CLJN.CL.StormwaterUtilitySegment

A subdivision of a stormwater network, particularly a pipeline or drainage ditch for the transport of stormwater, between the source, holding facilities, and/or treatment facilities

- a) diameter
- b) diameterUOM - inch
- c) pipeMaterial - cement, plastic, etc.
- d) isLined - YES / NO
- e) downstreamInvertElevation
- f) upstreamInvertElevation
- g) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- h) contractNumber

- i) equipmentInstallationDate
- j) sdsFeatureName - Stormwater pipe, Open Ditch, etc.
- k) sdsFeatureDescription
- l) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- m) stormwaterPipeStyle
- n) stormwaterSegmentType - open ditch, closed under other feature type, etc.

CLJN.CL.StorUtilNode_swManhole

A storm water manhole is an underground concrete structure with a top opening used for collecting and routing storm water runoff through underground pipes

- a) stormwaterNodeType
- b) stormwaterUtilityNodeIDPK - Structure Number
- c) numberOfPipes
- d) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- e) stormwaterBasinIDFK - Basin id
- f) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- g) contractNumber
- h) equipmentInstallationDate
- i) sdsFeatureName
- j) sdsFeatureDescription

1.4.9 CLJN.CL.UTILITIES_THERMAL

GPS and collect attribute data as specified for each feature listed with GPS accuracy as described in paragraph "Global Positioning System GPS and Spatial Reference Properties." Attribute fields may be associated with Domains, which are utilized to constrain the values allowed in a particular field, attribute table or feature class. Domains must be utilized when populating the feature where required.

GPS and collect the following attributes:

CLJN.CL.GeothermalWell

A geothermal well is part of a central heating and/or cooling system that pumps heat to or from the ground

- a) geothermalWellIDPK - Well ID
- b) pipeMaterial - AL, stainless_steel, etc.
- c) geothermalWellCasingMaterial
- d) thermalInsulationMaterial - MINERAL_FIBER, ARMAFLEX, etc.
- e) geothermalWellDepth
- f) geothermalWellDepthUOM - foot, inch, meter, etc.
- g) downholePipeDiameter
- h) downholePipeDiameterUOM - foot, inch, meter, etc.
- i) hasBentoniteSeal - YES / NO
- j) hasPump - YES / NO
- k) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- l) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- m) contractNumber
- n) designDrawingNumber
- o) equipmentInstallationDate
- p) sdsFeatureDescription - Associated Building Number
- q) geothermalPipeType
- r) xLocation

- s) xLocationUOM - foot, inch, meter, etc.
- t) yLocation
- u) yLocationUOM - foot, inch, meter, etc.

CLJN.CL.TherUtilNode

The Thermal Fitting Type bend, cap, tee, etc. subclass represents the joint between two lines

- a) thermalUtilityNodeIDPK
- b) thermalNodeType - tFittingType bend, cap, tee, etc.
- c) diameter
- d) diameterUOM - foot, inch, meter, etc.
- e) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- f) fittingType - bend, cap, tee, etc.
- g) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- h) contractNumber
- i) dateInService
- j) sdsFeatureName
- k) sdsFeatureDescription
- l) depth
- m) depthUOM - foot, inch, meter, etc.
- n) facilityNumber
- o) fittingType - bend, cap, tee, etc.
- p) projectID
- q) utilityOwner

CLJN.CL.TherUtilSegment

A subdivision of a thermal distribution network, particularly a pipeline for the transmission of chilled water, refrigerant, hot water, or steam

- a) thermalSegmentType - tMainLine, tServiceLine
- b) networkSubType
- c) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- d) material - AL, stainless_steel, etc.
- e) pipeLocation - aboveground, underground, etc.
- f) diameter
- g) diameterUOM - foot, inch, meter, etc.
- h) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- i) contractNumber
- j) dateInService
- k) sdsFeatureName
- l) sdsFeatureDescription
- m) cathodicProtection - YES / NO
- n) depth
- o) depthUOM - foot, inch, meter, etc.
- p) facilityNumber
- q) pipeType - circular, box, etc.
- r) projectID
- s) utilityOwner

CLJN.CL.TherUtilNode_tProdStruc

Thermal production structures are facilities which produce steam, high-temperature water, low-temperature water, dual-temperature water or chilled water

- a) thermalNodeType - facility which produce steam, etc.
- b) Capacity
- c) CapacityUOM - foot, inch, meter, etc.
- d) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- e) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- f) contractNumber
- g) dateInService
- h) sdsFeatureName
- i) sdsFeatureDescription
- j) facilityNumber
- k) utilityOwner

CLJN.CL.TherUtilNode_tSystemValve

A thermal system valve is a device installed in a pipeline to isolate flow

- a) thermalNodeType
- b) systemValveType - gate, ball, etc.
- c) diameter
- d) diameterUOM - foot, inch, meter, etc.
- e) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- f) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- g) contractNumber
- h) dateInService
- i) depth
- j) depthUOM - foot, inch, meter, etc.
- k) utilityOwner
- l) valveMaterial - AL, stainless_steel, etc.

CLJN.CL.UtilFeat_tUGEnclosureAccess

A point feature class for locating the access point to a thermal manhole junction

- a) utilityFeatureType - SCADA, UGEnclosureAccess point, etc.
- b) networkSubType - steamSupply, steamReturn, etc.
- c) networktype -
- d) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- e) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- f) contractNumber
- g) diameter
- h) diameterUOM - inch, feet, meter, etc.
- i) sdsFeatureName - steam pit, etc.

1.4.10 CLJN.CL.UTILITIES_WASTEWATER

GPS and collect attribute data as specified for each feature listed with GPS accuracy as described in paragraph "Global Positioning System GPS and Spatial Reference Properties." Attribute fields may be associated with Domains, which are utilized to constrain the values allowed in a particular field, attribute table or feature class. Domains must be utilized when populating the feature where required.

GPS and collect the following attributes:

CLJN.CL.UtilFeat_sPretreatmentDevice

A wastewater pretreatment device is a piece of equipment that removes

contaminants before they enter the waste system, etc.

- a) utilityFeatureIDPK - Structure Number
- b) utilityFeatureType - Pretreatment Device see existing data
- c) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- d) pretreatmentDeviceType - OWS, Trap, etc.
- e) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- f) contractNumber
- g) equipmentInstallationDate
- h) sdsFeatureDescription - detailed description

CLJN.CL.UtilityFeature_sPumpStation

This is a collection of waste water Pump Station is a facility, which indications total capacity for the station

- a) utilityFeatureIDPK - Structure Number
- b) utilityFeatureType - Pump station, etc.
- c) networkType - wastewater network subtype...
- d) numberOfPumps -
- e) totalDesignCapacity -
- f) designCapacityUOM -
- g) totalRatedFlow
- h) ratedFlowUOM - GPM, CF_SEC, etc.
- i) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- j) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- k) contractNumber
- l) equipmentInstallationDate
- m) sdsFeatureName
- n) sdsFeatureDescription

CLJN.CL.UtilityFeature_sSCADASensor

The SCADA sensor is a feature that is used to remotely measure the status of network components

- a) utilityFeatureIDPK - Structure Number
- b) utilityFeatureType - SCADA
- c) networkType - wastewater
- d) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- e) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- f) contractNumber
- g) equipmentInstallationDate
- h) sdsFeatureName
- i) sdsFeatureDescription - Antenna Radio to Location

CLJN.CL.UtilityFeature_sSepticTank

A wastewater septic tank is a small-scale anaerobic digester and leach field designed to treat wastewater from an individual facility, and is not connected to the wastewater collection system

- a) utilityFeatureIDPK - Structure Number
- b) utilityFeatureType - septic tank
- c) storageTankProduct - domestic wastewater
- d) volume
- e) volumeUOM - usGallon, cubicMeter, etc.
- f) isRegulated - YES / NO
- g) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.

- h) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- i) contractNumber
- j) equipmentInstallationDate
- k) sdsFeatureName - Septic Tank
- l) sdsFeatureDescription - Location area name

CLJN.CL.WastUtilNode_sCleanOut

A clean out is an access point in a lateral used for maintenance purposes

- a) wastewaterNodeType - Cleanout
- b) material - PVC, etc.
- c) diameter
- d) diameterUOM - inch, meter, etc.
- e) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- f) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- g) contractNumber
- h) utilityOwner

CLJN.CL.WastUtilNode_sFitting

The wastewater fitting that represents the join between two lines

- a) fittingType - Bend, Cap, Tee, etc.
- b) sdsFeatureDescription - Ben, Cap, Tee, Wye, etc.
- c) diameter
- d) diameterUOM - foot, inch, meter, etc.
- e) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- f) material - PVC, precast, stainless steel, etc.
- g) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- h) contractNumber
- i) fittingType - bend, cap, tee, etc.
- j) utilityOwner

CLJN.CL.WastUtilNode_sManhole

The wastewater manhole represents an access point between two or more lines

- a) wastewaterNodeType - sManhole
- b) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- c) numberOfPipes
- d) pipeMaterial - precast brick, etc.
- e) diameter
- f) diameterUOM - inch, etc.
- g) rimElevation
- h) rimElevationUOM - foot, inch, meter, etc.
- i) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- j) contractNumber
- k) dateInService
- l) sdsFeatureName - Manhole, Valve box, etc.
- m) manholeMaterial - precast brick, etc.
- n) utilityOwner

CLJN.CL.WastUtilNode_sPump

A wastewater pump is a piece of equipment that adds energy to a fluid being conveyed through a pipe or other closed conduit

- a) facilityNumber
- b) numberOfPumps
- c) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- d) wastewaterNodeType - sPump
- e) ratedFlow
- f) ratedFlowUOM - GPM, CF_SEC, etc.
- g) pumpHorsepower
- h) contractNumber
- i) dateInService
- j) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- k) sdsFeatureName - Wastewater Pump, Lift Station, etc.
- l) utilityOwner

CLJN.CL.WastUtilNode_sSystemValve

A system valve is a facility that is fitted to a pipeline or orifice in which the closure member is either rotated or moved transversely or longitudinally in the waterway so as to control or stop the flow

- a) wastewaterNodeType - sSystemValve
- b) valveMaterial - stainless_steel, etc.
- c) diameter
- d) diameterUOM - inch, meter, etc.
- e) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- f) valveType - gate, butterfly, check, etc.
- g) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- h) contractNumber
- i) dateInService
- j) utilityOwner

CLJN.CL.WastUtilNode_sTreatmentPlant

A facility designed to treat wastewater using physical, chemical and/or biological processes prior to discharge into receiving waters

- a) wastewaterNodeType - facility designed to treat wastewater
- b) Capacity
- c) CapacityUOM - gallons, meter, etc.
- d) ContractNumber
- e) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- f) facilityNumber - Structure Number
- g) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- h) dateInService
- i) sdsFeatureName

CLJN.CL.WastUtilSegment

Wastewater Line - A pipeline for the transport of sewage or industrial waste between the source, holding facilities, and/or treatment facilities

- a) wastewaterSegmentType - Gravity, Force Main, Service etc.

- b) utilityOwner - CLJN / ONWASA
- c) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- d) pipeMaterial - PVC, VC, etc.
- e) isLined - YES / NO
- f) diameter
- g) diameterUOM -foot, inch, meter, etc.
- h) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- i) contractNumber
- j) dateInService
- k) sdsFeatureName -
- l) invertElevationDownstream
- m) invertElevationUpstream
- n) invertElevationUOM - foot, inch, meter, etc.
- o) slope

1.4.11 CLJN.CL.UTILITIES_WATER

GPS and collect attribute data as specified for each feature listed with GPS accuracy as described in paragraph "Global Positioning System (GPS) and Spatial Reference Properties." Attribute fields may be associated with Domains, which are utilized to constrain the values allowed in a particular field, attribute table or feature class. Domains must be utilized when populating the feature where required.

GPS and collect the following attributes:

CLJN.CL.UtilFeat_wUGEnclosureAccess

A point feature class for locating the access point to a water manhole junction

- a) utilityFeatureIDPK - Manhole Number
- b) numberOfPipes
- c) groundElevation
- d) elevationUOM - inch, foot, meter, etc.
- e) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- f) gisFeatureCollectionMethod - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- g) contractNumber
- h) equipmentInstallationDate
- i) sdsFeatureName - Manhole
- j) utilityFeatureType - wUGEnclosureAccess
- k) waterServiceAreaIDFK - Holcomb, Hadnot Pt, Onslow Beach, etc.

CLJN.CL.WaterUtilNode_wFittingType bend, cap, tee, etc.

The water fitting class represents the joint between two lines in the water network

- a) waterNodeType - fitting class represents transition between two lines
- b) diameter -
- c) diameterUOM - inch, meter, etc.
- d) operationalStatus -inservice, abandoned, etc.
- e) fittingType - reducer, bend, cap, tee, etc.
- f) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- g) contractNumber
- h) dateInServicen

CLJN.CL.WaterUtiNode_wHydrant

A water distribution point that enables fire fighters to attach fire hoses

- a) waterNodeType - wHydrant
- b) networkSubType - fireProtectionwater
- c) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- d) connectionType - fireconnect, firehydrant
- e) facilityNumber - Structure number if connection is to structure
- f) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- g) contractNumber
- h) dateInService

CLJN.CL.WaterUtilNode_wMeterPoint

A water meter point represents the location of the metering device

- a) waterNodeType - meterPoint
- b) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- c) projectID - area name
- d) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- e) contractNumber
- f) diameter
- g) diameterUOM - foot, inch, meter, etc.
- h) dateInService

CLJN.CL.WateUtilNode_wReliefValve

A valve used to relieve pressure

- a) operationalStatus
- b) sdsFeatureDescription
- c) sdsFeatureName - Air Release Valve
- d) contractNumber
- e) dateInService
- f) diameter
- g) diameterUOM
- h) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- i) projectID
- j) utilityOwner

CLJN.CL.WaterUtilNode_wSystemValve

A valve used to regulate pressure, isolate, throttle flow, prevent backflow

- a) waterNodeType - wSystemValve
- b) diameter
- c) diameterUOM - foot, inch, meter, etc.
- d) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- e) valveType - gate, ball, etc.
- f) projectID - MCASNR, MCBCLJN, Geiger, etc
- g) mediaID - GIS Collection Method -- CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- h) contractNumber
- i) dateInService
- j) valveType - Gate Valve, Post Indicator Valve, etc.

CLJN.CL.WaterUtilSegment

A subdivision of a water distribution network, particularly a distribution pipeline

- a) networkSubType - potable water, raw water, Service, Fire etc.
- b) material - PVC, Ductile Iron, Cement, etc,
- c) diameter
- d) diameterUOM - inch
- e) utilityOwner - MBCCLJN, Onwasa, etc.
- f) operationalStatus -inservice, abandoned, etc.
- g) projectID
- h) mediaID - GIS Collection Method /- CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- i) contractNumber
- j) dateInService
- k) sdsFeatureName - Main, Service, Fire, AIP, Raw, etc.
- l) invertElevationDownstream
- m) invertElevationUpstream

CLJN.CL.WateUtilNode_wProdStructure

Water production structures are facilities which produce raw or treated water

- a) waterNodeType - produce treated water, etc.
- b) facilityNumber - Structure Number
- c) capacity
- d) capacityUOM - gallons per day, etc
- e) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- f) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- g) contractNumber
- h) dateInService
- i) sdsFeatureName - Water Treatment Plant, Location
- j) sdsFeatureDescription - Describe Plant purpose

CLJN.CL.WateUtilNode_wStorageStructure

Water storage structures are facilities that store large volumes of water - Water Tank)

- a) facilityNumber - structure number
- b) waterNodeType - water Storage Structure
- c) storageTankProduct - treatedWater, rawWater, etc.
- d) volume
- e) volumeUOM - gallons, etc.
- f) tankType - Elevated, Under Ground, Above Ground, etc.
- g) operationalStatus - inservice, abandoned, etc.
- h) width
- i) widthUOM - foot, etc.
- j) groundElevation
- k) invertElevation
- l) overflowElevation
- m) surfaceElevation
- n) elevationUOM - foot, etc.
- o) projectID - Named Area of Location, Hadnot Point, etc.
- p) mediaID - GIS Collection Method - CAD, Survey Grade GPS, etc.
- q) contractNumber

- r) dateInService
- s) storageTypeProduct - Raw water or Potable Water

1.4.12 Non-Compliance

Failure to follow the specification outlined in this document will result in non-acceptance of data deliverable.

Note: Geospatial data delivery does not replace record drawing requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used.

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not Used.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 01 91 00.15 22

TOTAL BUILDING COMMISSIONING
10/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

Commission the building systems listed herein. The Government will employ the services of an independent, Commissioning Firm acting as the Commissioning Authority (CxA). The Contractor will support the commissioning efforts described herein. Conform to the commissioning procedures outlined in this specification. and the Design Phase Commissioning Plan in Appendix A.

1.2 SYSTEMS TO BE COMMISSIONED

Commission the following systems:

Heating, Ventilating, Air Conditioning, and Refrigeration Systems (HVAC)
Building Automation System
Utility Monitoring and Control System
Lighting Systems
Power Distribution Systems
Power Generation Systems
Service Water Heating Systems
Plumbing Systems
Propane Systems
Energy and Water Utility Metering Systems and Sub-Meters
Building Envelope: moisture and thermal integrity and air tightness

1.3 COMMUNICATION WITH THE GOVERNMENT

Submit all plans, schedules, reports, and other requested documentation directly to the CxA concurrently with the Contracting Officer's Technical Representative (CTOR) in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.

1.4 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

1.4.1 Sequencing

Complete Functional Performance Tests of HVAC systems prior to Performance Verification Tests required by Specification Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC. Complete the following prior to starting Functional Performance Tests of mechanical systems:

- a. All equipment and systems have been completed, cleaned, flushed, disinfected, calibrated, tested, and operate in accordance with contract documents and construction plans and specifications.
- b. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing has been completed and the Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Report, and all TAB and DALI related submittals prerequisite to the TAB Report, have been submitted and approved in accordance with Specification Section 23 05 93 TESTING,

ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC.

- c. The building envelope is enclosed according to contract documents with final construction completed, the Air Barrier Pressure Tests have been completed and the Air Leakage Test Reports and Diagnostic Test Reports have been submitted and approved in accordance with Specification Section 07 05 23 PRESSURE TESTING AN AIR BARRIER SYSTEM FOR AIR TIGHTNESS.
- d. The Pre-Functional Checklists have been submitted and approved.
- e. The Certificate of Readiness for mechanical systems has been submitted and approved.

Complete the following prior to starting Functional Performance Tests of the electrical systems:

- a. All electrical, power generation, and lighting equipment and systems have been completed, calibrated, tested, and operate in accordance with contract documents and construction plans and specifications.
- b. The building envelope is enclosed according to contract documents with final construction completed.
- c. Ceiling tiles, floor coverings, and window coverings are in place.
- d. The Certificate of Readiness for electrical systems has been submitted and approved.

1.4.2 Project Schedule

Include the following tasks in the project schedule required by Section 01 32 17.00 20 COST-LOADED NETWORK ANALYSIS SCHEDULES (NAS). Ensure sufficient time is scheduled to accommodate the requirements of this specification section. The order of items listed below is not intended to imply a specified sequence:

- a. Submission and approval of the Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing (TAB) Firm and TAB Specialist specified in Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC.
- b. Submission of the Design Review Report specified in Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC.
- c. Installation of permanent utilities (gas, water, electric).
- d. Building Envelope Construction.
- e. Air Barrier Pressure Tests specified in Section 07 05 23 PRESSURE TESTING AN AIR BARRIER SYSTEM FOR AIR TIGHTNESS.
- f. Drainage and Vent, Building Sewers, Water Supply Systems and Backflow Prevention Assembly Tests specified in Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.
- g. Factory Acceptance Testing for each of the systems to be commissioned as required by technical specifications.
- h. Manufacturer's Equipment Start-Up for each of the systems to be

commissioned.

- i. Potable Water System Flushing specified in Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.
- j. Operational Tests of the plumbing system specified in Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.
- k. Potable Water System Disinfection specified in Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.
- l. Submission and approval of the TAB Schematic Drawings, Report Forms, Design Review Report and Procedures specified in Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC.
- m. Submission and approval of Duct Air Leakage Test Procedures specified in Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC.
- n. Duct Air Leakage Test Execution specified in Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC.
- o. Submission and approval of the Final Duct Air Leakage Test Report specified in Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC.
- p. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing (TAB) Field Work required by Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC.
- q. Submission and approval of the TAB Report specified in Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVA.
- r. TAB Field Acceptance Testing required by Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC.
- s. Submission and approval of the Start-Up Testing Report specified in Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.
- t. Submission and approval of the Performance Verification Test Procedures specified in Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.
- u. Performance Verification Tests required by Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.
- v. Performance Verification Test Report specified in Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.
- w. Pre-Functional Checklist Submittal.
- x. Functional Performance Testing for each system to be commissioned.
- y. Integrated Systems Tests.
- z. Post-Test Deficiency Correction for each system to be commissioned.
- aa. Re-Testing.
- bb. Endurance Tests.
- cc. Training for each of the systems to be commissioned.

dd. **Systems Manual**, submission and approval.

ee. Seasonal Testing

1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for **Contractor Quality Control approval**. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with **Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES**:

SD-06 Test Reports

Completed Building Envelope Inspection Checklists; G

Completed Pre-Functional Checklists; G

SD-07 Certificates

Certificate of Readiness; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Training Plan; G

Training Attendance Rosters; G

Systems Manual; G

1.6 GOVERNMENT ACCEPTANCE ENGINEER

A Government Acceptance Engineer will perform many of the Government Quality Assurance functions for the project including review of select submittals, plans, procedures, **reports**, and inspection and testing of systems. The Government Acceptance Engineer will participate in TAB Field Acceptance Testing and Performance Verification Tests. Coordinate submittal transmission and testing schedules with the Contracting Officer's Technical Representative and the Government Acceptance Engineer.

1.7 SUSTAINABILITY THIRD PARTY CERTIFICATION (TPC)

The **Contractor must** execute and document the commissioning activities required of the Commissioning Authority (**CxA**) for the purposes of complying with the Third Party Certification (TPC) requirements for the project in accordance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Provide all commissioning documentation required to meet the TPC requirements.

1.8 ISSUES LOG

The **CxA will develop** and maintain an Issues Log for tracking and resolution of all deficiencies discovered through commissioning review, inspection, and testing. **The log will include areas for the date of initial discovery of each issue, description of each issue, the Contractor response / corrective action for each issue, and the date of final resolution of each issue as confirmed by the CxA or Government Acceptance Engineer. The CxA will provide to the Contractor the Issues Log on a monthly basis at a**

minimum. At any point during construction, any commissioning team member finding deficiencies **must** communicate those deficiencies in writing to the CxA **within three working days of the discrepancy discovery for inclusion into the Issues Log. The Contractor is responsible for providing, within five working days, responses, updates and resolutions to identified issues.**

Track construction deficiencies identified in the Issues Log in accordance with the Quality Control Plan required by Specification Section **01 45 00.00 20 QUALITY CONTROL.**

1.9 CERTIFICATE OF READINESS

Prior to scheduling Functional Performance Tests for each system, issue a Certificate of Readiness for the system certifying that the system is ready for Functional Performance Testing. The Certificate of Readiness must include, for each system to be commissioned, all equipment and system start-up **reports; completed Building Envelope Inspection Checklists; completed** Pre-Functional Checklists; Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing (TAB) Report; HVAC Controls Start-Up Reports; and the Air Leakage Test Reports and Diagnostic Test Reports to the extent applicable to the system. The Contractor; the Lead Commissioning Specialist; the Contractor's Quality Control Representative; the Mechanical, Electrical, Controls, and TAB subcontractor representatives must sign and date the Certificate of Readiness. Submit the Certificate of Readiness for each system no later than 14 calendar days prior to Functional Performance Tests of that system. **Submit an** electronic copy. Do not schedule Functional Performance Tests for a system until the Certificate of Readiness for that system receives approval by the Government.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not used

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 CONSTRUCTION PHASE

3.1.1 Construction Commissioning Coordination Meeting

The Commissioning Authority (CxA) will lead a Construction Commissioning Coordination Meeting no later than 14 days after approval of the Commissioning Firm and Commissioning Specialists to discuss the commissioning process including contract requirements, lines of communication, roles and responsibilities, schedules, documentation requirements, inspection and test procedures, and logistics as specified in this specification section. The Contractor's Superintendent or Project Manager, the Contractor's Quality Control **Representative, any applicable Sub-Contractor representatives, and** the Government must attend this meeting.

Invite the User and a Public Works Division Representative, to attend this meeting.

3.1.2 Construction Phase Commissioning Plan

3.1.2.1 Interim Construction Phase Commissioning Plan

The Commissioning Authority (CxA) will prepare and distribute to the Commissioning Team the Interim Construction Phase Commissioning Plan, based on the Design Phase Commissioning Plan. After the Construction Commissioning Coordination Meeting the Interim Construction Phase

Commissioning Plan will be an update of the Design Phase Cx Plan as a result of the Commissioning Coordination Meeting discussions and any applicable resolved request for information, awarded change orders, actual equipment operation conditions, and other items that impact or otherwise alter the content of the Design Phase Commissioning Plan. This Interim Cx Plan will include the checklists identified as part of the Final Construction Phase Commissioning Plan. The Contractor will provide supporting input and product data.

3.1.2.2 Final Construction Phase Commissioning Plan

The Commissioning Authority (CxA) will prepare and distribute the Final Construction Phase Commissioning Plan prior to the start of Pre-Functional Checks.

The Final Construction Commissioning Plan will include the information provided in the Interim Construction Phase Commissioning Plan. The Commissioning Authority (CxA) will develop the Pre-Functional Checklists, Integrated Systems Test Checklists, and Functional Performance Test Checklists for each building, for each system required to be commissioned, and for each component for inclusion in the Final Construction Phase Commissioning Plan. The Contractor will review and provide supporting input and product data.

3.1.2.2.1 Pre-Functional Checklists

The Pre-Functional Checklists will include items for physical inspection or testing that demonstrate that installation and start-up of equipment and systems is complete. See paragraph Pre-Functional Checks for more information.

3.1.2.2.2 Functional Performance Test Checklists

Functional Performance Test Checklists will include procedures that explain, step-by-step, the actions and expected results that will demonstrate that the system performs in accordance with the contract. See paragraph Functional Performance and Integrated Systems Tests for more information. The Checklist will include the following sections and details appropriate to the systems being tested:

- a. Notable system features including information about such attributes as system sizing and controls to facilitate understanding of system operation.
- b. Conclusions and recommendations based on control system feature, point-to-point, actuator, and system operation observations. Conclusions will clearly indicate if system does or does not perform in accordance with contract requirements. Recommendation will clearly indicate that the system should or should not be accepted by the Government.
- c. Test conditions including date, beginning and ending time, and beginning and ending outdoor air conditions.
- d. Attendees present throughout the entire system test.
- e. Identification of the equipment involved in the test.
- f. Control system feature identification including control point

description, embedded/visible type, adjustable/monitoring type, actual value, and setpoint value/alarm range.

- g. Point-to-point observations including demonstrating system flow meters and sensors have been calibrated and are correctly displayed on the Operator work station.
- h. Actuator operation observations demonstrating actuator responses to commands from the control system.
- i. System operation observations for system-based tests demonstrating each control algorithm, operation mode, and alarm condition resulting from control point(s) manipulation. System operation observations must contain the following:
 - (1) Introduction identifying testing methodology
 - (2) As-found conditions prior to control point(s) manipulation
 - (3) Clear list of test items (step numbers)
 - (4) Control algorithm (design control sequence) segmented by unique functions
 - (5) Intended test procedures following each segmented control algorithm identifying control point(s) required to be manipulated to initiate system response
 - (6) Expected system response
 - (7) Space for comments for each test item complete including resulting control signal such as 0-volts, 10-volts, active, or inactive
 - (8) Pass or fail indication for each test item

3.1.2.2.3 Integrated Systems Test Checklists

The Integrated Systems Test Checklists will include test procedures that explain, step-by-step, the actions and expected results that will demonstrate that the system performs in accordance with the contract. See paragraph Functional Performance and Integrated Systems Tests for more information. The Checklist will include the following sections:

- a. Notable features of the interconnected systems organized by discipline including information to facilitate understanding of system operation
- b. Conclusions and recommendations based on observations of interconnected system operation. Conclusions must clearly indicate if the systems do or do not perform in accordance with contract requirements. Recommendation must clearly indicate that the systems should or should not be accepted by the Government
- c. Test conditions including date and beginning and ending time
- d. Attendees present throughout the entire system test
- e. Identification of the equipment and systems involved in the test
- f. Identification of dates for the completion and approval of relevant

functional performance test checklists, and identify the Contractor's Quality Control Personnel that accepted and signed the related functional performance test checklists.

- g. Interconnected system operation observations for tests demonstrating each operation resulting from system manipulation. System operation observations must contain the following:
- (1) Introduction identifying testing methodology.
 - (2) As-found conditions prior to system manipulation.
 - (3) Clear list of test items (step numbers).
 - (4) Design control sequences or interlocks segmented by unique functions.
 - (5) Intended test procedures following each segmented sequence or interlock identifying the system manipulation required to initiate system response.
 - (6) Expected system responses.
 - (7) Space for comments for each test item.
 - (8) Pass or fail indication for each test.

3.1.3 Construction Submittals

Provide all submittals associated with the systems to be commissioned, including shop drawings; equipment submittals; test plans, procedures, and reports; and resubmittal's to the Commissioning Authority (CxA).

3.1.4 Inspection and Testing

Demonstrate that all system components have been installed, that each control device and item of equipment operates, and that the systems operate and perform, including interactive operation between systems, in accordance with contract documents and the Owner's Project Requirements. Requirements in related specification sections are independent from the requirements of this section and do not satisfy any of the requirements specified in this specification section. Provide all materials, services, and labor required to perform the Pre-Functional Checks, Building Envelope Inspection, Integrated Systems Tests, and Functional Performance Tests.

The Commissioning Authority (CxA) will, from time to time, perform site visits to observe construction of the systems in progress and will distribute to the Commissioning Team the results of those visits as a Site Visit Report. Deficiencies contained in the Site Visit Report will be documented in the Issues Log for action.

The Commissioning Authority (CxA) will document discrepancies and other issues discovered during testing in the Issues Log for action.

3.1.4.1 Commissioning Team

The Commissioning Team Members will be defined in the Interim and Final Construction Phase Commissioning Plans. Provide a commissioning representative for each sub-contractor associated with the systems to be

commissioned. Each commissioning representative is responsible for coordination of their respective sub-contractor's execution of the commissioning activities and participation in the inspection and testing required by this specification section. The designers listed below are the designers of record for their respective systems. Substitutes must be approved by the Contracting Officer's Technical Representative.

3.1.4.1.1 Building Envelope Inspections Team

The following team members must participate in building envelope inspections:

Designation	Function
CxA	Building Envelope Technical Commissioning Specialist
QAR	Contracting Officer's Quality Assurance Representative
CQC	Contractor's Quality Control Personnel
BEC	Contractor's Building Envelope Commissioning Representative

3.1.4.1.2 Mechanical System Pre-Functional Checks Team

The following team members must participate in Pre-Functional checks of mechanical systems:

Designation	Function
CQC	Contractor's Quality Control Personnel
MC	Contractor's Mechanical Commissioning Representative
EC	Contractor's Electrical Commissioning Representative
CC	Contractor's Controls Commissioning Representative
TABC	Contractor's TAB Commissioning Representative
PC	Contractor's Plumbing Commissioning Representative

3.1.4.1.3 Electrical System Pre-Functional Checks Team

The following team members must participate in Pre-Functional checks of electrical systems:

Designation	Function
CQC	Contractor's Quality Control Personnel

Designation	Function
EC	Contractor's Electrical Commissioning Representative

3.1.4.1.4 Mechanical Systems Test Team

The following team members must participate in Functional Performance, Seasonal, and Integrated Systems Testing of mechanical systems:

Designation	Function
CxA	Mechanical System Technical Commissioning Specialist
QAR	Contracting Officer's Quality Assurance Representative
CQC	Contractor's Quality Control Personnel
MC	Contractor's Mechanical Commissioning Representative
EC	Contractor's Electrical Commissioning Representative
CC	Contractor's Controls Commissioning Representative
TABC	Contractor's TAB Commissioning Representative
PC	Contractor's Plumbing Commissioning Representative
IC	Contractor's Irrigation Commissioning Representative

3.1.4.1.5 Electrical Systems Test Team

The following team members must participate in Functional Performance and Integrated Systems Testing of electrical systems:

Designation	Function
CxA	Electrical System Technical Commissioning Specialist
QAR	Contracting Officer's Quality Assurance Representative
CQC	Contractor's Quality Control Personnel
EC	Contractor's Electrical Commissioning Representative

3.1.4.1.6 Other Pre-Functionl and Functional Performance Participants

The following may participate as team members during Pre-Functional Checks and Functional Performance Testing:

Designation	Function
DPW	Directorate of Public Works Representative
User	Using Agent's Representative

3.1.4.2 Building Envelope Inspection

Document building envelope inspection by the commissioning team using the approved Template Building Envelope Inspection Checklists. Indicate commissioning team member inspection and acceptance of each Building Envelope Inspection Checklist item by initials at the time they are inspected and found to be in conformance with contract requirements. Inspect checklist items before they become hidden as construction progresses.

- Submit the initialed and completed Building Envelope Inspection Checklists no later than 7 calendar days after completion of inspection of all checklist items. Submit an electronic copy.
- The Commissioning Authority (CxA) will make at least two site visits to the site to observe construction of the building envelope in-progress. On each visit, the Commissioning Authority (CxA) will review the Contractor's in-progress checklists to ensure that the commissioning team is inspecting the building envelope as required.
- The Commissioning Authority (CxA) will witness the building envelope pressure tests and diagnostic tests specified in Specification Section 07 05 23 PRESSURE TESTING AN AIR BARRIER SYSTEM FOR AIR TIGHTNESS. The Commissioning Authority (CxA) will review the resulting reports and provide recommendations for correction of any deficiencies or further testing.

3.1.4.3 Pre-Functional Checks

Pre-Functional Checklists from the approved Final Construction Phase Commissioning Plan must be completed by the Contractor. Complete one Pre-Functional Checklist for each individual item of equipment or system for each system required to be commissioned including, but not limited to, ductwork, piping, equipment, fixtures (lighting and plumbing), and controls. Indicate Contractor team member inspection and acceptance of each Pre-Functional Checklist item by initials. Acceptance of each Pre-Functional Checklist item by each team member indicates that item conforms to the construction contract requirements in their area of responsibility. Submit an electronic copy. Include completed manufacturer

start-up checklists associated with equipment with the submission of the completed Pre-Functional Checklists.

3.1.4.4 Tests

3.1.4.4.1 Functional Performance and Integrated Systems Tests

Schedule Functional Performance Tests for each system only after the Certificate of Readiness has been approved by the Government for the system. Provide written notice to the Commissioning Team of the Proposed initial start date of the Functional Performance Testing no later than 7 calendar days prior to the proposed start date.

- a. Technical Commissioning Specialists must lead and document all Functional Performance Tests and Integrated Systems Tests for the systems to be commissioned with the Contractor and appropriate sub-contractors performing the Functional Performance Tests and Integrated Systems Tests. The representatives listed in the paragraph Commissioning Team must attend the tests. Abort Functional Performance Tests or Integrated Systems Tests when any required commissioning team member is not present for the test.

3.1.4.4.1.1 Checklist

Use the Functional Performance Test and Integrated Systems Test Checklists from the approved Final Construction Phase Commissioning Plan to guide the Functional Performance Tests and Integrated Systems Tests. Functional Performance Tests must be performed for each item of equipment and each system required to be commissioned and verify all sensor calibrations, control responses, safeties, interlocks, operating modes, sequences of operation, capacities, lighting levels, and all other performance requirements comply with construction contract regardless of the specific items listed within the Functional Performance Test and Integrated Systems Test Checklists provided. Testing must progress from equipment or components to subsystems to systems to interlocks and connections between systems. Integrated Systems Tests must be performed for the interactive operation between systems such as HVAC systems, fire protection systems, back-up electrical supply, energy generation systems, and other systems, and verify correct interactive operation, acceptable speed of response, and other contract requirements for both normal and failure modes. Examples of Integrated Systems Tests include the correct operation of HVAC systems upon power being restored, correct operation of uninterruptible power supplies or energy generators and connected systems, or lighting system operation during power outage or emergency system activation. The order of components and systems to be tested will be determined by the Commissioning Authority (CxA).

3.1.4.4.1.2 Acceptance

Indicate acceptance of each item of equipment and systems tested by signature of each commissioning team member for each Functional Performance Test or Integrated Systems Test Checklist. The Contractor's Quality Control Representative and the Commissioning Authority (CxA) will indicate acceptance after the equipment and systems are free of deficiencies.

3.1.4.4.2 HVAC Test Methods

Perform Functional Performance Tests in accordance with the following:

3.1.4.4.2.1 Prior to Testing

Prior to system testing, complete control system feature, point-to-point, and actuator observations.

3.1.4.4.2.2 Simulating Conditions

Over-writing control input (actual) values through the controls system is not acceptable, unless approved by the Contracting Officer's Technical Representative. Identify proposed exceptions in a protocol submitted to the Contracting Officer's Technical Representative for approval. Before simulating conditions, overwriting values (if approved), or changing set-points, calibrate all sensors, transducers and devices. Below are several examples of exceptions that would be considered acceptable:

- a. When varying static pressures inside ductwork can not be simulated within the duct, and where a sensor signals the controls system to initiate sequences at various duct static pressures, it is acceptable to simulate the various pressures with a Pneumatic Squeeze-Bulb Type Signaling Device with gauge temporarily attached to the sensing tube leading to the transmitter. It is not acceptable to reset the various set-points, nor to simulate an electric analog signal (unless approved as noted above).
- b. Dirty filter pressure drops can be simulated using sheets of cardboard at filter face.
- c. Freeze-stat safeties can be simulated by packing portion of sensor with ice.
- d. High outside air temperatures can be simulated with a hair blower.
- e. High entering cooling coil temperatures can be used to simulate entering cooling coil conditions.
- f. Do not use signal generators to simulate sensor signals unless approved by the Contracting Officer's Technical Representative, as noted above, for special cases.
- g. Control set points can be altered. For example, to see the air conditioning compressor lockout work at an outside air temperature below 55 degrees F, when the outside air temperature is above 55 degrees F, temporarily change the lockout set point to be 0 degrees F above the current outside air temperature. Caution: Set points are not to be raised or lowered to a point such that damage to the components, systems, or the building structure and/or contents will occur.
- h. Test duct mounted smoke detectors in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Perform the tests with air system at minimum airflow condition in ductwork.
- i. Test current sensing relays used for fan and pump status signals to control system to indicate unit failure and run status by resetting the set point on the relay to simulate a lost belt or unit failure while the unit is running. Confirm that the failure alarm was generated and received at the control system. After the test is conducted, return the set point to its original set-point or a set-point as indicated by the Contracting Officer's Technical Representative.

3.1.4.4.2.3 Setup

Perform each test under conditions that simulate actual conditions as close as is practically possible. Provide all necessary materials and system modifications to produce the necessary flows, pressures, temperatures, and other conditions necessary to execute the test according to the specified conditions. At completion of the test, return the affected building equipment and systems to their pre-test condition.

3.1.4.4.3 Sample Strategy

Perform Functional Performance Tests using the following sample strategy. Prepare and complete a Functional Performance Test Checklist for each item of equipment or system to be tested. For sample sizes less than 100 percent for all similar equipment, the Government will select the specific equipment or system to be tested during testing. Equipment Identifiers are as indicated on the design drawings:

Equipment Identifier	Sample Size (Percent)
DOAS	100%
VAV	25%
ACC	100%
CHWP & HWP	100%
GWH	100%
Lighting Controls	100%
FCU	25%

3.1.4.4.4 Endurance Test

Following successful completion of Functional Performance Tests for HVAC systems and prior to the Performance Verification Test, perform an Endurance Test of the HVAC systems in accordance with the paragraph Endurance Test in Specification Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC. Use the Temporary Trending Hardware, if necessary, in accordance with Specification Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC. Perform the test with all equipment and systems in full automatic mode. Restart the test if the equipment and systems or setpoints are overridden to manual mode at any time during the test. Poll all points shown in the project schedules with an alarm condition at 5 minute intervals. Poll all points shown in the Point Schedule required for trending, overrides, or graphical displays at 15 minute intervals. In instances where the equipment performance or operation dictates, perform subsequent endurance testing of duration determined by the CxA on the applicable point(s) at a higher polling rate to identify anomalies hidden by the above polling rates. For example, an air handler with a modulating compressor supplied cooling coil may require sampling coil discharge air temperature at 30 second intervals during the morning start-up period. Provide an Endurance Test Report with the Commissioning Report that includes a graphical representation of all trends with all trend data

clearly identified.

3.1.4.4.5 Seasonal Tests

3.1.4.4.5.1 Initial Functional Performance Tests

Perform Initial Functional Performance Tests as soon as all contract work is completed, regardless of the season. Develop and implement means of artificial loading to demonstrate, to a reasonable level of confidence, the ability of the HVAC systems to handle peak seasonal loads.

3.1.4.4.5.2 Full-Load Conditions

In addition to the Initial Functional Performance Tests, perform Functional Performance Tests of HVAC systems under full-load conditions during peak heating and cooling seasons during outdoor air condition design extremes as the seasons are defined in Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC. Control set points may be altered to obtain full load performance with advance approval of the Contracting Officer's Technical Representative.

Schedule Seasonal Functional Performance Tests in coordination with the Government.

3.1.4.4.5.3 System Acceptance

Systems may be partially accepted prior to seasonal testing if they comply with all construction contract that can be tested during initial Functional Performance Tests. All Functional Performance Test procedures must be completed prior to full systems acceptance.

3.1.4.4.6 Re-Testing

Re-test only after all deficiencies identified during the original test have been confirmed by the CxA to be resolved.

3.1.4.4.6.1 100 Percent Sample

Systems or equipment fail if one or more of the test procedures results in discovery of a deficiency and the deficiency cannot be resolved within 5 minutes during the test.

In accordance with the system or equipment sample strategy, re-test the effected systems or equipment to the extent necessary to confirm that the deficiencies have been corrected without negatively impacting the performance of the rest of the system.

3.1.4.4.6.2 Less than 100 Percent Sample

For systems tests with a sample size less than 100 percent, if one or more of the test procedures for an item of equipment or a system results in discovery of a deficiency, regardless of whether the deficiency is corrected during the sample tests, the item of equipment or system fails the test.

In accordance with the system or equipment sample strategy, re-test the effected systems or equipment, and one additional system or equipment to the extent necessary to confirm that the deficiencies have been corrected without negatively impacting the performance of the rest of the system. If

systems or equipment being tested continue to fail the test, add additional systems or equipment to the testing, up to 100 percent testing of systems and equipment, if necessary.

3.1.5 Training Plan

The Contractor must develop training plans which identify all training required by specification sections associated with commissioned systems. Include a matrix listing each training requirement, content of the training, the trainer name, trainer contact information, and schedule and location of training. Submit an electronic copy of the Training Plan to the Commissioning Authority (CxA) and the Government no later than 30 calendar days prior to the associated training.

Document training attendance using training attendance rosters and provide completed attendance rosters to the Commissioning and the Government no later than 7 calendar days following the completion of training for each system to be commissioned. Submit one hard copy and an electronic copy..

3.1.6 Systems Manual

Prepare and submit Systems Manual including, for all commissioned systems, the Basis of Design, system single line diagrams, as-built sequences of operation and controls drawings, as-built control setpoints, recommended schedule for sensor and actuator calibration, recommended schedule of maintenance when not in the O&M manuals, recommended re-testing schedule with proposed testing forms, and full equipment warranty information. Update and resubmit the Systems Manual based on any corrective action taken during the warranty period.

Submit Systems Manual no later than 30 calendar days following completion of Functional Performance Tests. Submit an electronic copy.

3.2 COMMISSIONING REPORT

Following the completion of Functional Performance Tests and Integrated Systems Tests, with the exception of Seasonal Tests, and following the Endurance Tests, the Commissioning Authority (CxA) will prepare a Commissioning Report. The report will include the following:

- a. An executive summary describing the overall commissioning process, the results of the commissioning process, any outstanding deficiencies and recommended resolutions, and any seasonal testing that must be scheduled for a later date. The summary will indicate whether the systems meet the requirements of the construction contract and the Owner's Project Requirements.
- b. A detail of any deficiencies discovered during the commissioning process and the corrective actions taken in the report. The completed Building Envelope Inspection Checklists, Pre-Functional Checklists, Functional Performance Test Checklists, Integrated Systems Test Checklists, the Endurance Test Report, the Commissioning Plans, the Issues Log, Training Attendance Rosters, the Design Review Report, the final TAB Report, and any other test reports required by the certifying organization of the CxA will be included in the report.
- c. Following any Seasonal Tests or Post-Construction Activities, the Final Commissioning Report will be updated to reflect any changes and resubmitted by the Commissioning Authority (CxA). File the approved,

updated, Final Commissioning Report in the Sustainability eNotebook.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 03 30 00

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

02/19

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN CONCRETE INSTITUTE INTERNATIONAL (ACI)

ACI 117	(2010; Errata 2011) Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials and Commentary
ACI 121R	(2008) Guide for Concrete Construction Quality Systems in Conformance with ISO 9001
ACI 301	(2016) Specifications for Structural Concrete
ACI 302.1R	(2015) Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction
ACI 304.2R	(2017) Guide to Placing Concrete by Pumping Methods
ACI 304R	(2000; R 2009) Guide for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting, and Placing Concrete
ACI 305.1	(2014) Specification for Hot Weather Concreting
ACI 305R	(2010) Guide to Hot Weather Concreting
ACI 306.1	(1990; R 2002) Standard Specification for Cold Weather Concreting
ACI 306R	(2016) Guide to Cold Weather Concreting
ACI 308.1	(2011) Specification for Curing Concrete
ACI SP-15	(2011) Field Reference Manual: Standard Specifications for Structural Concrete ACI 301-05 with Selected ACI References
ACI SP-2	(2007; Abstract: 10th Edition) ACI Manual of Concrete Inspection

AMERICAN HARDBOARD ASSOCIATION (AHA)

AHA A135.4	(1995; R 2004) Basic Hardboard

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.4/D1.4M (2011) Structural Welding Code -
Reinforcing Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A1044/A1044M (2016a) Standard Specification for Steel
Stud Assemblies for Shear Reinforcement of
Concrete

ASTM A1064/A1064M (2017) Standard Specification for
Carbon-Steel Wire and Welded Wire
Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for
Concrete

ASTM A184/A184M (2017) Standard Specification for Welded
Deformed Steel Bar Mats for Concrete
Reinforcement

ASTM A53/A53M (2018) Standard Specification for Pipe,
Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated,
Welded and Seamless

ASTM A615/A615M (2016) Standard Specification for Deformed
and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete
Reinforcement

ASTM A934/A934M (2016) Standard Specification for
Epoxy-Coated Prefabricated Steel
Reinforcing Bars

ASTM A955/A955M (2018b) Standard Specification for
Deformed and Plain Stainless-Steel Bars
for Concrete Reinforcement

ASTM A970/A970M (2018) Standard Specification for Headed
Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

ASTM C1017/C1017M (2013; E 2015) Standard Specification for
Chemical Admixtures for Use in Producing
Flowing Concrete

ASTM C1077 (2017) Standard Practice for Agencies
Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates
for Use in Construction and Criteria for
Testing Agency Evaluation

ASTM C1107/C1107M (2017) Standard Specification for Packaged
Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Nonshrink)

ASTM C1116/C1116M (2010a; R 2015) Standard Specification for
Fiber-Reinforced Concrete

ASTM C1157/C1157M (2017) Standard Performance Specification
for Hydraulic Cement

ASTM C1218/C1218M (2017) Standard Test Method for
Water-Soluble Chloride in Mortar and

Concrete

ASTM C1260	(2014) Standard Test Method for Potential Alkali Reactivity of Aggregates (Mortar-Bar Method)
ASTM C1293	(2008; R 2015) Standard Test Method for Determination of Length Change of Concrete Due to Alkali-Silica Reaction
ASTM C143/C143M	(2015) Standard Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic-Cement Concrete
ASTM C150/C150M	(2018) Standard Specification for Portland Cement
ASTM C1567	(2013) Standard Test Method for Potential Alkali-Silica Reactivity of Combinations of Cementitious Materials and Aggregate (Accelerated Mortar-Bar Method)
ASTM C1602/C1602M	(2012) Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete
ASTM C172/C172M	(2017) Standard Practice for Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete
ASTM C173/C173M	(2016) Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Volumetric Method
ASTM C231/C231M	(2017a) Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method
ASTM C260/C260M	(2010a; R 2016) Standard Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete
ASTM C31/C31M	(2018b) Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field
ASTM C311/C311M	(2017) Standard Test Methods for Sampling and Testing Fly Ash or Natural Pozzolans for Use in Portland-Cement Concrete
ASTM C33/C33M	(2018) Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates
ASTM C330/C330M	(2017a) Standard Specification for Lightweight Aggregates for Structural Concrete
ASTM C39/C39M	(2018) Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens
ASTM C42/C42M	(2018) Standard Test Method for Obtaining and Testing Drilled Cores and Sawed Beams

of Concrete

ASTM C494/C494M	(2017) Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete
ASTM C552	(2017; E 2018) Standard Specification for Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation
ASTM C578	(2018) Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation
ASTM C591	(2017) Standard Specification for Unfaced Preformed Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation
ASTM C595/C595M	(2018) Standard Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements
ASTM C618	(2017a) Standard Specification for Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use in Concrete
ASTM C78/C78M	(2018) Standard Test Method for Flexural Strength of Concrete (Using Simple Beam with Third-Point Loading)
ASTM C845/C845M	(2018) Standard Specification for Expansive Hydraulic Cement
ASTM C920	(2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
ASTM C94/C94M	(2017a) Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete
ASTM C989/C989M	(2018) Standard Specification for Slag Cement for Use in Concrete and Mortars
ASTM D1751	(2004; E 2013; R 2013) Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types)
ASTM D2628	(1991; R 2016) Standard Specification for Preformed Polychloroprene Elastomeric Joint Seals for Concrete Pavements
ASTM D2835	(1989; R 2017) Standard Specification for Lubricant for Installation of Preformed Compression Seals in Concrete Pavements
ASTM D5759	(2012) Characterization of Coal Fly Ash and Clean Coal Combustion Fly Ash for Potential Uses
ASTM D6690	(2015) Standard Specification for Joint and Crack Sealants, Hot Applied, for Concrete and Asphalt Pavements

ASTM E1155	(2014) Standard Test Method for Determining Floor Flatness and Floor Levelness Numbers
ASTM E1643	(2018a) Standard Practice for Selection, Design, Installation, and Inspection of Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth or Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs
ASTM E1745	(2017) Standard Specification for Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Soil or Granular Fill under Concrete Slabs
ASTM E329	(2018) Standard Specification for Agencies Engaged in Construction Inspection, Testing, or Special Inspection
ASTM E96/E96M	(2016) Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials

CONCRETE REINFORCING STEEL INSTITUTE (CRSI)

CRSI 10MSP	(2009; 28th Ed; Errata) Manual of Standard Practice
CRSI RB4.1	(2016) Supports for Reinforcement Used in Concrete

NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF STANDARDS AND TECHNOLOGY (NIST)

NIST PS 1	(2009) DOC Voluntary Product Standard PS 1-07, Structural Plywood

U.S. GREEN BUILDING COUNCIL (USGBC)

LEED NC	(2009) Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design(tm) New Construction Rating System

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- a. "Cementitious material" as used herein must include all portland cement, pozzolan, fly ash, and slag cement.
- b. "Exposed to public view" means situated so that it can be seen from eye level from a public location after completion of the building. A public location is accessible to persons not responsible for operation or maintenance of the building.
- c. "Chemical admixtures" are materials in the form of powder or fluids that are added to the concrete to give it certain characteristics not obtainable with plain concrete mixes.
- d. "Supplementary cementing materials" (SCM) include coal fly ash, slag cement, natural or calcined pozzolans, and ultra-fine coal ash when used in such proportions to replace the portland cement that result in improvement to sustainability and durability and reduced cost.

- e. "Design strength" (f'_c) is the specified compressive strength of concrete at time(s) specified in this section to meet structural design criteria.
- f. "Mixture proportioning" is the process of designing concrete mixture proportions to enable it to meet the strength, service life and constructability requirements of the project while minimizing the initial and life-cycle cost.
- g. "Mixture proportions" are the masses or volumes of individual ingredients used to make a unit measure (cubic meter or cubic yard) of concrete.
- h. "Pozzolan" is a siliceous or siliceous and aluminous material, which in itself possesses little or no cementitious value but will, in finely divided form and in the presence of moisture, chemically react with calcium hydroxide at ordinary temperatures to form compounds possessing cementitious properties.
- i. "Workability (or consistence)" is the ability of a fresh (plastic) concrete mix to fill the form/mould properly with the desired work (vibration) and without reducing the concrete's quality. Workability depends on water content, chemical admixtures, aggregate (shape and size distribution), cementitious content and age (level of hydration).

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Concrete Curing Plan

Quality Control Plan; G

Quality Control Personnel Certifications; G

Quality Control Organizational Chart

Laboratory Accreditation; G

Form Removal Schedule; G

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Formwork

Reinforcing Steel; G

SD-03 Product Data

Joint Sealants; (LEED NC)

Joint Filler; (LEED NC)

Formwork Materials

Cementitious Materials; (LEED NC)

Vapor Retarder

Concrete Curing Materials

Reinforcement; (LEED NC)

Liquid Chemical Floor Hardeners and Sealers

Admixtures

Mechanical Reinforcing Bar Connectors

Biodegradable Form Release Agent

Pumping Concrete

Finishing Plan

Nonshrink Grout

Crystalline Waterproofing Additive

SD-05 Design Data

Concrete Mix Design; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Concrete Mix Design; G

Fly Ash

Pozzolan

Slag Cement

Aggregates

Fiber-Reinforced Concrete; G

Tolerance Report

Compressive Strength Tests; G

Chloride Ion Concentration

Air Content

Slump Tests

Water

SD-07 Certificates

Reinforcing Bars

Welder Qualifications

VOC Content for Form Release Agents, Curing Compounds, and
Concrete Penetrating Sealers

Safety Data Sheets

Field Testing Technician and Testing Agency

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Liquid Chemical Floor Hardeners and Sealers

Joint Sealants; (LEED NC)

Curing Compound

1.4 MODIFICATION OF REFERENCES

Accomplish work in accordance with ACI publications except as modified herein. Consider the advisory or recommended provisions to be mandatory. Interpret reference to the "Building Official," the "Structural Engineer," and the "Architect/Engineer" to mean the Contracting Officer.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Follow ACI 301, ACI 304R and ASTM A934/A934M requirements and recommendations. Do not deliver concrete until vapor retarder, forms, reinforcement, embedded items, and chamfer strips are in place and ready for concrete placement. Do not store concrete curing compounds or sealers with materials that have a high capacity to adsorb volatile organic compound (VOC) emissions. Do not store concrete curing compounds or sealers in occupied spaces.

1.5.1 Reinforcement

Store reinforcement of different sizes and shapes in separate piles or racks raised above the ground to avoid excessive rusting. Protect from contaminants such as grease, oil, and dirt. Ensure bar sizes can be accurately identified after bundles are broken and tags removed.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6.1 Design Data

1.6.1.1 Concrete Mix Design

Sixty days minimum prior to concrete placement, submit a mix design for each strength and type of concrete. Submit a complete list of materials including type; brand; source and amount of cement, supplementary cementitious materials, fibers, and admixtures; and applicable reference specifications. Submit mill test and all other test for cement, supplementary cementitious materials, aggregates, and admixtures. Provide documentation of maximum nominal aggregate size, gradation analysis, percentage retained and passing sieve, and a graph of percentage retained verses sieve size. Provide mix proportion data using at least three different water-cementitious material ratios for each type of mixture,

which produce a range of strength encompassing those required for each type of concrete required. If source material changes, resubmit mix proportion data using revised source material. Provide only materials that have been proven by trial mix studies to meet the requirements of this specification, unless otherwise approved in writing by the Contracting Officer. Indicate clearly in the submittal where each mix design is used when more than one mix design is submitted. Resubmit data on concrete components if the qualities or source of components changes. For previously approved concrete mix designs used within the past twelve months, the previous mix design may be re-submitted without further trial batch testing if accompanied by material test data conducted within the last six months. Obtain mix design approval from the contracting officer prior to concrete placement.

1.6.2 Shop Drawings

1.6.2.1 Formwork

Drawings showing details of formwork including, but not limited to; joints, supports, studding and shoring, and sequence of form and shoring removal. Indicate placement schedule, construction, location and method of forming control joints. Include locations of inserts, conduit, sleeves and other embedded items. Reproductions of contract drawings are unacceptable. Submit [form removal schedule](#) indicating element and minimum length of time for form removal.

Design, fabricate, erect, support, brace, and maintain formwork so that it is able to support, without failure, all vertical and lateral loads that may reasonably be anticipated to be applied to the formwork.

1.6.2.2 Reinforcing Steel

Indicate bending diagrams, assembly diagrams, splicing and laps of bars, shapes, dimensions, and details of bar reinforcing, accessories, and concrete cover. Do not scale dimensions from structural drawings to determine lengths of reinforcing bars. Reproductions of contract drawings are unacceptable.

1.6.3 Control Submittals

1.6.3.1 Concrete Curing Plan

Submit proposed materials, methods and duration for curing concrete elements in accordance with [ACI 308.1](#).

1.6.3.2 Pumping Concrete

Submit proposed materials and methods for pumping concrete. Submittal must include mix designs, pumping equipment including type of pump and size and material for pipe, and maximum length and height concrete is to be pumped.

1.6.3.3 Finishing Plan

Submit proposed material and procedures to be used in obtaining the finish for the floors. Include qualification of person to be used for obtaining floor tolerance measurement, description of measuring equipment to be used, and a sketch showing lines and locations the measuring equipment will follow.

1.6.3.4 VOC Content for form release agents, curing compounds, and concrete penetrating sealers

Submit certification for the form release agent, curing compounds, and concrete penetrating sealers that indicate the VOC content of each product.

1.6.3.5 Safety Data Sheets

Submit Safety Data Sheets (SDS) for all materials that are regulated for hazardous health effects. SDS must be readily accessible during each work shift to employees when they are at the construction site.

1.6.4 Test Reports

1.6.4.1 Fly Ash and Pozzolan

Submit test results in accordance with ASTM C618 for fly ash and pozzolan. Submit test results performed within 6 months of submittal date.

1.6.4.2 Slag Cement

Submit test results in accordance with ASTM C989/C989M for slag cement. Submit test results performed within 6 months of submittal date.

1.6.4.3 Aggregates

Submit test results in accordance with ASTM C33/C33M, or ASTM C330/C330M for lightweight aggregate, and ASTM C1293 or ASTM C1567 as required in the paragraph titled ALKALI-AGGREGATE REACTION.

1.6.4.4 Fiber-Reinforced Concrete

Test to determine flexural toughness index I5 in accordance with ASTM C1116/C1116M.

1.6.5 Quality Control Plan

Develop and submit for approval a concrete quality control program in accordance with the guidelines of ACI 121R and as specified herein. The plan must include approved laboratories. Provide direct oversight for the concrete qualification program inclusive of associated sampling and testing. All quality control reports must be provided to the Contracting Officer, Quality Manager and Concrete Supplier. Maintain a copy of ACI SP-15 and CRSI 10MSP at project site.

1.6.6 Quality Control Personnel Certifications

The Contractor must submit for approval the responsibilities of the various quality control personnel, including the names and qualifications of the individuals in those positions and a quality control organizational chart defining the quality control hierarchy and the responsibility of the various positions. Quality control personnel must be employed by the Contractor.

Submit American Concrete Institute certification for the following:

- a. CQC personnel responsible for inspection of concrete operations.
- b. Lead Foreman or Journeyman of the Concrete Placing, Finishing, and

Curing Crews.

- c. Field Testing Technicians: ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade I.

1.6.6.1 Quality Manager Qualifications

The quality manager must hold a current license as a professional engineer in a U.S. state or territory with experience on at least five similar projects. Evidence of extraordinary proven experience may be considered by the Contracting Officer as sufficient to act as the Quality Manager.

1.6.6.2 Field Testing Technician and Testing Agency

Submit data on qualifications of proposed testing agency and technicians for approval by the Contracting Officer prior to performing testing on concrete.

- a. Work on concrete under this contract must be performed by an ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician Grade 1 qualified in accordance with [ACI SP-2](#) or equivalent. Equivalent certification programs must include requirements for written and performance examinations as stipulated in [ACI SP-2](#).
- b. Testing agencies that perform testing services on reinforcing steel must meet the requirements of [ASTM E329](#).
- c. Testing agencies that perform testing services on concrete materials must meet the requirements of [ASTM C1077](#).

1.6.7 Laboratory Qualifications for Concrete Qualification Testing

The concrete testing laboratory must have the necessary equipment and experience to accomplish required testing. The laboratory must meet the requirements of [ASTM C1077](#) and be Cement and Concrete Reference Laboratory (CCRL) inspected.

1.6.8 Laboratory Accreditation

Laboratory and testing facilities must be provided by and at the expense of the Contractor. The laboratories performing the tests must be accredited in accordance with [ASTM C1077](#), including [ASTM C78/C78M](#) and [ASTM C1260](#). The accreditation must be current and must include the required test methods, as specified. Furthermore, the testing must comply with the following requirements:

- a. Aggregate Testing and Mix Proportioning: Aggregate testing and mixture proportioning studies must be performed by an accredited laboratory and under the direction of a registered professional engineer in a U.S. state competent in concrete materials who is competent in concrete materials and must sign all reports and designs.
- b. Acceptance Testing: Furnish all materials, labor, and facilities required for molding, curing, testing, and protecting test specimens at the site and in the laboratory. Furnish and maintain boxes or other facilities suitable for storing and curing the specimens at the site while in the mold within the temperature range stipulated by [ASTM C31/C31M](#).

- c. Contractor Quality Control: All sampling and testing must be performed by an approved, onsite, independent, accredited laboratory.

1.7 QUALIFICATIONS FOR WELDING WORK

Welding procedures must be in accordance with AWS D1.4/D1.4M.

Verify that Welder qualifications are in accordance with AWS D1.4/D1.4M for welding of reinforcement or under an equivalent qualification test approved in advance. Welders are permitted to do only the type of welding for which each is specifically qualified.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FORMWORK MATERIALS

- a. Form-facing material in contact with concrete must be lumber, plywood, metal, or plastic. Submit product information on proposed form-facing materials if different from that specified herein.
- b. Design formwork, shores, reshores, and backshores to support loads transmitted to them and to comply with applicable building code requirements.
- c. Design formwork to withstand pressure resulting from placement and vibration of concrete and to maintain specified tolerances.
- d. Design formwork to accommodate waterstop materials in joints at locations indicated in Contract Documents.
- e. Provide temporary openings in formwork if needed to facilitate cleaning and inspection.
- f. Design formwork joints to inhibit leakage of mortar.
- g. Limit deflection of facing materials for concrete surfaces exposed to view to 1/240 of center-to-center spacing of facing supports.
- h. Do not use earth cuts as forms for vertical or sloping surfaces.
- i. Submit product information on proposed form-facing materials if different from that specified herein.
- j. Submit manufacturer's product data on form liner proposed for use with each formed surface.

2.1.1 Wood Forms

Provide lumber that is square edged or tongue-and-groove boards, free of raised grain, knotholes, or other surface defects. Provide plywood that complies with NIST PS 1, B-B concrete form panels or better or AHA A135.4, hardboard for smooth form lining. Submit data verifying that composite wood products contain no urea formaldehyde resins.

2.1.1.1 Concrete Form Plywood (Standard Rough)

Provide plywood that conforms to NIST PS 1, B-B, concrete form, not less than 5/8-inch thick.

2.1.1.2 Overlaid Concrete Form Plywood (Standard Smooth)

Provide plywood that conforms to **NIST PS 1**, B-B, high density form overlay, not less than **5/8-inch** thick.

2.1.2 Steel Forms

Provide steel form surfaces that do not contain irregularities, dents, or sags.

2.2 FORMWORK ACCESSORIES

- a. Use commercially manufactured formwork accessories, including ties and hangers.
- b. Form ties and accessories must not reduce the effective cover of the reinforcement.

2.2.1 Form Ties

- a. Use form ties with ends or end fasteners that can be removed without damage to concrete.
- b. Where indicated in Contract Documents, use form ties with integral water barrier plates or other acceptable positive water barriers in walls.
- c. The breakback distance for ferrous ties must be at least **3/4 in.** for Surface Finish-2.0 or Surface Finish-3.0, as defined in **ACI 301**.
- d. If the breakback distance is less than **3/4 in.**, use coated or corrosion-resistant ties.
- e. Submit manufacturer's data sheet on form ties.

2.2.2 Biodegradable Form Release Agent

- a. Provide form release agent that is colorless, biodegradable, and water-based, with a zero VOC content.
- b. Provide product that does not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and does not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
- c. Provide form release agent that reduces formwork moisture absorption, and does not contain diesel fuel, petroleum-based lubricating oils, waxes, or kerosene. Submit documentation indicating type of biobased material in product and biobased content. Indicate relative dollar value of biobased content products to total dollar value of products included in project.
- d. Submit manufacturer's product data on formwork release agent for use on each form-facing material.

2.2.3 Chamfer Materials

Use lumber materials with dimensions of **3/4 x 3/4 in.**

2.2.4 Construction and movement joints

- a. Submit details and locations of construction joints in accordance with the requirements herein.
- b. Locate construction joints within middle one-third of spans of slabs, beams, and girders. If a beam intersects a girder within the middle one-third of girder span, the distance between the construction joint in the girder and the edge of the beam must be at least twice the width of the larger member.
- c. Locate construction joints in walls and columns at underside of slabs, beams, or girders and at tops of footings or slabs.
- d. Make construction joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.
- e. Provide movement joints where indicated in Contract Documents or in accepted alternate locations.
- f. Submit location and detail of movement joints if different from those indicated in Contract Documents.
- g. Submit manufacturer's data sheet on expansion joint materials.
- h. Provide keyways where indicated in Contract Documents

2.2.5 Perimeter Insulation

Perimeter insulation must be polystyrene conforming to [ASTM C578](#), Type II; polyurethane conforming to [ASTM C591](#), Type II; or cellular glass conforming to [ASTM C552](#), Type I or IV. Comply with EPA requirements in accordance with Section [01 33 29](#) SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING.

2.2.6 Other Embedded items

Use sleeves, inserts, anchors, and other embedded items of material and design indicated in Contract Documents.

2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS

2.3.1 Cementitious Materials

2.3.1.1 Portland Cement

- a. Unless otherwise specified, provide cement that conforms to [ASTM C150/C150M](#) Type I
- b. Use one brand and type of cement for formed concrete having exposed-to-view finished surfaces.
- c. Submit information along with evidence demonstrating compliance with referenced standards. Submittals must include types of cementitious materials, manufacturing locations, shipping locations, and certificates showing compliance.
- d. Cementitious materials must be stored and kept dry and free from contaminants.

2.3.1.2 Fly Ash

- a. **ASTM C618**, Class F, except that the maximum allowable loss on ignition must not exceed 3 percent.
- b. Fly ash content must be a minimum of 25 percent by weight of cementitious material, provided the fly ash does not reduce the amount of cement in the concrete mix below the minimum requirements of local building codes. Where the use of fly ash cannot meet the minimum level, provide the maximum amount of fly ash permissible that meets the code requirements for cement content. Report the chemical analysis of the fly ash in accordance with **ASTM C311/C311M**. Evaluate and classify fly ash in accordance with **ASTM D5759**.

2.3.1.3 Other Supplementary Cementitious Materials

Natural pozzolan must be raw or calcined and conform to **ASTM C618**, Class N, including the optional requirements for uniformity and effectiveness in controlling ASR and must have an ignition loss not exceeding 3 percent. Class N pozzolan for use in mitigating ASR must have a Calcium Oxide (CaO) content of less than 13 percent and total equivalent alkali content less than 3 percent.

Ultra Fine Fly Ash (UFFA) and Ultra Fine Pozzolan (UFP) must conform to **ASTM C618**, Class F or N, and the following additional requirements:

- a. The strength activity index at 28 days of age must be at least 95 percent of the control specimens.
- b. The average particle size must not exceed 6 microns.
- c. The sum of $\text{SiO}_2 + \text{Al}_2\text{O}_3 + \text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$ must be greater than 77 percent.

2.3.2 Water

- a. Water or ice must comply with the requirements of **ASTM C1602/C1602M**.
- b. Minimize the amount of water in the mix. Improve workability by adjusting the grading of the aggregate and using admixture rather than by adding water.
- c. Water must be potable ; free from injurious amounts of oils, acids, alkalis, salts, organic materials, or other substances deleterious to concrete.
- d. Protect mixing water and ice from contamination during storage and delivery.
- e. Submit test report showing water complies with **ASTM C1602/C1602M**.

2.3.3 Aggregate

2.3.3.1 Normal-Weight Aggregate

- a. Aggregates must conform to **ASTM C33/C33M**.
- b. Aggregates used in concrete must be obtained from the same sources and have the same size range as aggregates used in concrete represented by submitted field test records or used in trial mixtures.

- c. Provide sand that is 100 percent natural sand.
- d. Store and handle aggregate in a manner that will avoid segregation and prevents contamination by other materials or other sizes of aggregates. Store aggregates in locations that will permit them to drain freely. Do not use aggregates that contain frozen lumps.
- e. Submit types, pit or quarry locations, producers' names, aggregate supplier statement of compliance with ASTM C33/C33M, and ASTM C1293 expansion data not more than 18 months old.

2.3.4 Admixtures

- a. Chemical admixtures must conform to ASTM C494/C494M.
- b. Air-entraining admixtures must conform to ASTM C260/C260M.
- c. Chemical admixtures for use in producing flowing concrete must conform to ASTM C1017/C1017M.
- d. Do not use calcium chloride admixtures.
- e. Use an ASR-inhibiting admixture for concrete containing aggregate susceptible to ASR.
- f. Admixtures used in concrete must be the same as those used in the concrete represented by submitted field test records or used in trial mixtures.
- g. Protect stored admixtures against contamination, evaporation, or damage.
- h. To ensure uniform distribution of constituents, provide agitating equipment for admixtures used in the form of suspensions or unstable solutions. Protect liquid admixtures from freezing and from temperature changes that would adversely affect their characteristics.
- i. Submit types, brand names, producers' names, manufacturer's technical data sheets, and certificates showing compliance with standards required herein.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

2.4.1 Concrete Curing Materials

Provide concrete curing material in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5 and ACI 308.1 Section 2. Submit product data for concrete curing compounds. Submit manufactures instructions for placement of curing compound.

2.4.2 Nonshrink Grout

Nonshrink grout in accordance with ASTM C1107/C1107M.

2.4.3 Floor Finish Materials

2.4.3.1 Liquid Chemical Floor Hardeners and Sealers

- a. Hardener must be a colorless aqueous solution containing a blend of inorganic silicate or siliconate material and proprietary components

combined with a wetting agent; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete surfaces. Submit manufactures instructions for placement of liquid chemical floor hardener.

- b. Use concrete penetrating sealers with a low (maximum 100 grams/liter, less water and less exempt compounds) VOC content. Submit manufactures instructions for placement of sealers.

2.4.3.2 Abrasive Aggregate for Nonslip Aggregate Finish

Aggregate must be packaged, factory-graded fused aluminum oxide grits, or it may be crushed emery containing not less than 40-percent aluminum oxide and not less than 25-percent ferric oxide. Aggregate must be rust proof and nonglazing and must be unaffected by freezing, moisture, and cleaning materials.

2.4.3.3 Dry Materials for Colored Wear-Resistant Finish

Provide materials that are packaged, dry, and a combination of materials formulated for producing colored and wear-resistant monolithic surface treatments; they must include portland cement, graded-quartz aggregate, coloring pigments, and dispersing agents. Provide coloring pigments that are finely ground, nonfacing mineral oxides prepared especially for the purpose and interground with the cement.

2.4.3.4 Aggregate for Heavy-Duty Wear-Resistant Finish

Provide aggregate that is traprock or emery, as follows:

Traprock must be packaged, crushed, natural, fine-to-medium-grained, igneous rock, such as diabase, basalt, or black granite. Traprock aggregate must be well-graded in size from particles retained on [No. 4 sieve 0.187 inch](#) to particles passing [3/8-inch sieve](#).

Emery must be packaged, factory-graded, crushed, natural-emery ore, cubical or polyhedral in form, containing not less than 35-percent aluminum oxide and not less than 24-percent ferric oxide. Emery aggregate must be well graded in size from particles retained on [No. 50 sieve 0.0118 inch](#) to particles passing [No. 8 sieve 0.0929 inch](#).

2.4.3.5 Aggregate for Heavy-Duty Floor Topping

Provide emery (or may be traprock or traprock-screenings) fine aggregates, as specified.

Provide emery that is packaged, factory-graded, crushed natural emery ore containing not less than 35-percent aluminum oxide and not less than 24-percent ferric oxide. Provide aggregate that is cubical or polyhedral in form and does not change its physical or chemical nature in the presence of moisture. Grade aggregate to a fineness modulus of 3.9 to 4.0, with 100 percent passing [3/8-inch sieve](#) and not less than 95 percent retained on [No. 100 sieve](#). Deliver emery in moisture-resistant bags.

Provide traprock that is packaged, crushed, natural, fine- to medium-grained igneous rock such as diabase, basalt, or black granite. Uniformly grade coarse aggregate with 100 percent passing [1/2-inch sieve](#), 30 to 50 percent passing [3/8-inch sieve](#), 0 to 15 percent passing [No. 4 sieve](#), and 0 to 5 percent passing [No. 8 sieve](#).

Provide fine aggregate using traprock that conforms to [ASTM C33/C33M](#), except gradation. Grade fine aggregate within the following limits:

<u>SIEVE</u>	<u>PERCENT PASSING</u>
3/8 in.	100
No. 4	95 to 100
No. 8	65 to 80
No. 16	45 to 65
No. 30	25 to 45
No. 50	5 to 15
No. 100	0 to 5

Deliver traprock coarse aggregate and fine aggregate in moisture-resistant bags.

2.4.4 Expansion/Contraction [Joint Filler](#)

[ASTM D1751](#). Material must be [1/2 inch](#) thick, unless otherwise indicated.

2.4.5 [Joint Sealants](#)

Submit manufacturer's product data, indicating VOC content.

2.4.5.1 Horizontal Surfaces, 3 Percent Slope, Maximum

[ASTM D6690](#) or [ASTM C920](#), Type M, Class 25, Use T.

2.4.5.2 Vertical Surfaces Greater Than 3 Percent Slope

[ASTM C920](#), Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, Use T.

2.4.5.3 Preformed Polychloroprene Elastomeric Type

[ASTM D2628](#).

2.4.5.4 Lubricant for Preformed Compression Seals

[ASTM D2835](#).

2.4.6 [Vapor Retarder](#)

[ASTM E1745](#) Class C polyethylene sheeting, minimum [10 mil](#) [15 mil](#) thickness or other equivalent material with a maximum permeance rating of 0.04 perms per [ASTM E96/E96M](#).

Consider plastic vapor retarders and adhesives with a high recycled content, low toxicity low VOC (Volatile Organic Compounds) levels.

2.4.7 Dovetail Anchor Slot

Preformed metal slot approximately [1 inch by 1 inch](#) of not less than 22 gage galvanized steel cast in concrete. Coordinate actual size and throat

opening with dovetail anchors and provide with removable filler material.

2.5 CONCRETE MIX DESIGN

2.5.1 Properties and Requirements

- a. Use materials and material combinations listed in this section and the contract documents.
- b. Cementitious material content must be adequate for concrete to satisfy the specified requirements for strength, w/cm, durability, and finishability described in this section and the contract documents.

The minimum cementitious material content for concrete used in floors must meet the following requirements:

Nominal maximum size of aggregate, in.	Minimum cementitious material content, pounds per cubic yard
1-1/2	470
1	520
3/4	540
3/8	610

- c. Selected target slump must meet the requirements this section, the contract documents, and must not exceed 8 inches. Concrete must not show visible signs of segregation.
- d. The target slump must be enforced for the duration of the project. Determine the slump by ASTM C143/C143M. Slump tolerances must meet the requirements of ACI 117.
- e. The nominal maximum size of coarse aggregate for a mixture must not exceed three-fourths of the minimum clear spacing between reinforcement, one-fifth of the narrowest dimension between sides of forms, or one-third of the thickness of slabs or toppings.
- f. Concrete must be air entrained for members assigned to Exposure Class F1, F2, or F3. The total air content must be in accordance with the requirements of the paragraph titled DURABILITY.
- g. Measure air content at the point of delivery in accordance with ASTM C173/C173M or ASTM C231/C231M.
- h. Concrete for slabs to receive a hard-troweled finish must not contain an air-entraining admixture or have a total air content greater than 3 percent.
- i. Concrete properties and requirements for each portion of the structure are specified in the table below. Refer to the paragraph titled DURABILITY for more details on exposure categories and their requirements.

- j. Crystalline Waterproofing Additive (required only for footing): Concrete waterproofing and protection system shall be of the crystalline type that chemically controls and permanently fixes a non-soluble crystalline structure within the pores and capillary tracts of the concrete. This crystalline system causes the concrete to become sealed against the penetration of liquids from any direction, and protects the concrete from deterioration due to harsh environmental conditions. The system is used for above or below-grade walls and slabs, including liquid retaining structures and where enhanced chemical resistance is required.

	Minimum $f'c$ psi	Exposure Categories^	Miscellaneous Requirements
Footings	4000 at 28 days	S0	Max. slump: 4 in. Nominal maximum aggregate size must be 1 in. For Crystalline Waterproofing Additive, see item J above.
Slabs-on-ground	4000 at 28 days	S0 F0-Interior F1-Exterior	

2.5.2 Durability

2.5.2.1 Alkali-Aggregate Reaction

Do not use any aggregate susceptible to alkali-carbonate reaction (ACR). Use one of the three options below for qualifying concrete mixtures to reduce the potential of alkali-silica reaction (ASR):

- For each aggregate used in concrete, the expansion result determined in accordance with ASTM C1293 must not exceed 0.04 percent at one year.
- For each aggregate used in concrete, the expansion result of the aggregate and cementitious materials combination determined in accordance with ASTM C1567 must not exceed 0.10 percent at an age of 16 days.

2.5.2.2 Freezing and Thawing Resistance

- Provide concrete meeting the following requirements based on exposure class assigned to members for freezing-and-thawing exposure in Contract

Documents:

Exposure class	Maximum w/cm*	Minimum $f'c$, psi	Air content	Additional Requirements
F0	N/A	4000		N/A
F1	0.55	4000	Depends on aggregate size	N/A

*The maximum w/cm limits do not apply to lightweight concrete.

- b. Concrete must be air entrained for members assigned to Exposure Class F1, F2, or F3. The total air content must meet the requirements of the following table:

Nominal maximum aggregate size, in.	Total air content, percent*^	
	Exposure Class F2 and F3	Exposure Class F1
3/4	6.0	5.0
1	6.0	4.5

*Tolerance on air content as delivered must be plus/minus 1.5 percent.

^For $f'c$ greater than 5000 psi, reducing air content by 1.0 percentage point is acceptable.

- c. Submit documentation verifying compliance with specified requirements.
- d. For sections of the structure that are assigned Exposure Class F3, submit certification on cement composition verifying that concrete mixture meets the requirements of the following table:

Cementitious material	Maximum percent of total cementitious material by mass*
Fly ash or other pozzolans conforming to ASTM C618	25

*Total cementitious material also includes ASTM C150/C150M, ASTM C595/C595M, ASTM C845/C845M, and ASTM C1157/C1157M cement. The maximum percentages above must include:

^Fly ash or other pozzolans must constitute no more than 25 percent of the total mass of the cementitious materials.

2.5.2.3 Concrete Temperature

The temperature of concrete as delivered must not exceed 95°F.

2.5.3 Trial Mixtures

Trial mixtures must be in accordance to ACI 301.

2.5.4 Ready-Mix Concrete

Provide concrete that meets the requirements of [ASTM C94/C94M](#).

Ready-mixed concrete manufacturer must provide duplicate delivery tickets with each load of concrete delivered. Provide delivery tickets with the following information in addition to that required by [ASTM C94/C94M](#):

- a. Type and brand cement
- b. Cement and supplementary cementitious materials content in [94-pound](#) bags per cubic [yard](#) of concrete
- c. Maximum size of aggregate
- d. Amount and brand name of admixtures
- e. Total water content expressed by water cementitious material ratio

2.6 REINFORCEMENT

- a. Bend reinforcement cold. Fabricate reinforcement in accordance with fabricating tolerances of [ACI 117](#).
- b. When handling and storing coated reinforcement, use equipment and methods that do not damage the coating. If stored outdoors for more than 2 months, cover coated reinforcement with opaque protective material.
- c. Submit manufacturer's certified test report for reinforcement.
- d. Submit placing drawings showing fabrication dimensions and placement locations of reinforcement and reinforcement supports. Placing drawings must indicate locations of splices, lengths of lap splices, and details of mechanical and welded splices.
- e. Submit request with locations and details of splices not indicated in Contract Documents.
- f. Submit request to place column dowels without using templates.
- g. Submit request and procedure to field-bend or straighten reinforcing bars partially embedded in concrete at locations not indicated in Contract Documents.
- h. Submit request for field cutting, including location and type of bar to be cut and reason field cutting is required.

2.6.1 Reinforcing Bars

- a. Reinforcing bars must be deformed, except spirals, load-transfer dowels, and welded wire reinforcement, which may be plain.
- b. [ASTM A615/A615M](#) with the bars marked A, Grade [60](#). Cold drawn wire used for spiral reinforcement must conform to [ASTM A1064/A1064M](#).

2.6.1.1 Stainless Steel Reinforcing Bars

Stainless steel bars must meet the requirements of [ASTM A955/A955M](#).

2.6.1.2 Headed Reinforcing Bars

Headed reinforcing bars must conform to [ASTM A970/A970M](#) including Annex A1, and other specified requirements.

2.6.1.3 Bar Mats

Bar mats must conform to [ASTM A184/A184M](#).

2.6.1.4 Headed Shear Stud Reinforcement

Headed studs and headed stud assemblies must conform to [ASTM A1044/A1044M](#).

2.6.2 Mechanical Reinforcing Bar Connectors

- a. Provide 125 percent minimum yield strength of the reinforcement bar.
- b. Mechanical splices for galvanized reinforcing bars must be galvanized or coated with dielectric material.
- c. Mechanical splices used with epoxy-coated or dual-coated reinforcing bars must be coated with dielectric material.
- d. Submit data on mechanical splices demonstrating compliance with this paragraph.

2.6.3 Wire

Plain or deformed steel wire must conform to [ASTM A1064/A1064M](#).

2.6.4 Welded wire reinforcement

- a. Use welded wire reinforcement specified in Contract Documents and conforming to one or more of the specifications given herein.
- b. Deformed welded wire reinforcement must conform to [ASTM A1064/A1064M](#), with welded intersections spaced no greater than 16 in. apart in direction of principal reinforcement.

2.6.5 Reinforcing Bar Supports

- a. Provide reinforcement support types within structure as required by Contract Documents. Reinforcement supports must conform to [CRSI RB4.1](#). Submit description of reinforcement supports and materials for fastening coated reinforcement if not in conformance with [CRSI RB4.1](#).
- b. Legs of supports in contact with formwork must be hot-dip galvanized, or plastic coated after fabrication, or stainless-steel bar supports.

2.6.6 Dowels for Load Transfer in Floors

Provide greased dowels for load transfer in floors of the type, design, weight, and dimensions indicated. Provide dowel bars that are plain-billet steel conforming to [ASTM A615/A615M](#), Grade 60. Provide dowel pipe that is steel conforming to [ASTM A53/A53M](#).

2.6.7 Welding

Welding of reinforcing is not permitted.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- a. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly constructed; verify that substrates are level.
- b. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Contracting Officer of unsatisfactory preparation before processing.
- c. Check field dimensions before beginning installation. If dimensions vary too much from design dimensions for proper installation, notify Contracting Officer and wait for instructions before beginning installation.

3.2 PREPARATION

Determine quantity of concrete needed and minimize the production of excess concrete. Designate locations or uses for potential excess concrete before the concrete is poured.

3.2.1 General

- a. Surfaces against which concrete is to be placed must be free of debris, loose material, standing water, snow, ice, and other deleterious substances before start of concrete placing.
- b. Remove standing water without washing over freshly deposited concrete. Divert flow of water through side drains provided for such purpose.

3.2.2 Subgrade Under Foundations and Footings

- a. When subgrade material is semi-porous and dry, sprinkle subgrade surface with water as required to eliminate suction at the time concrete is deposited, or seal subgrade surface by covering surface with specified vapor retarder.
- b. When subgrade material is porous, seal subgrade surface by covering surface with specified vapor retarder.

3.2.3 Subgrade Under Slabs on Ground

- a. Before construction of slabs on ground, have underground work on pipes and conduits completed and approved.
- b. Previously constructed subgrade or fill must be cleaned of foreign materials
- c. Finish surface of capillary water barrier under interior slabs on ground must not show deviation in excess of 1/4 inch when tested with a 10-foot straightedge parallel with and at right angles to building lines.

- d. Finished surface of subgrade or fill under exterior slabs on ground must not be more than 0.02-foot above or 0.10-foot below elevation indicated.

3.2.4 Edge Forms and Screed Strips for Slabs

- a. Set edge forms or bulkheads and intermediate screed strips for slabs to obtain indicated elevations and contours in finished slab surface and must be strong enough to support vibrating bridge screeds or roller pipe screeds if nature of specified slab finish requires use of such equipment.
- b. Align concrete surface to elevation of screed strips by use of strike-off templates or approved compacting-type screeds.

3.2.5 Reinforcement and Other Embedded Items

- a. Secure reinforcement, joint materials, and other embedded materials in position, inspected, and approved before start of concrete placing.
- b. When concrete is placed, reinforcement must be free of materials deleterious to bond. Reinforcement with rust, mill scale, or a combination of both will be considered satisfactory, provided minimum nominal dimensions, nominal weight, and minimum average height of deformations of a hand-wire-brushed test specimen are not less than applicable ASTM specification requirements.

3.3 FORMS

- a. Provide forms, shoring, and scaffolding for concrete placement. Set forms mortar-tight and true to line and grade.
- b. Chamfer above grade exposed joints, edges, and external corners of concrete 0.75 inch. Place chamfer strips in corners of formwork to produce beveled edges on permanently exposed surfaces.
- c. Provide formwork with clean-out openings to permit inspection and removal of debris.
- d. Inspect formwork and remove foreign material before concrete is placed.
- e. At construction joints, lap form-facing materials over the concrete of previous placement. Ensure formwork is placed against hardened concrete so offsets at construction joints conform to specified tolerances.
- f. Provide positive means of adjustment (such as wedges or jacks) of shores and struts. Do not make adjustments in formwork after concrete has reached initial setting. Brace formwork to resist lateral deflection and lateral instability.
- g. Fasten form wedges in place after final adjustment of forms and before concrete placement.
- h. Provide anchoring and bracing to control upward and lateral movement of formwork system.
- i. Construct formwork for openings to facilitate removal and to produce opening dimensions as specified and within tolerances.

- j. Provide runways for moving equipment. Support runways directly on formwork or structural members. Do not support runways on reinforcement. Loading applied by runways must not exceed capacity of formwork or structural members.
- k. Position and support expansion joint materials, waterstops, and other embedded items to prevent displacement. Fill voids in sleeves, inserts, and anchor slots temporarily with removable material to prevent concrete entry into voids.
- l. Clean surfaces of formwork and embedded materials of mortar, grout, and foreign materials before concrete placement.

3.3.1 Coating

- a. Cover formwork surfaces with an acceptable material that inhibits bond with concrete.
- b. If formwork release agent is used, apply to formwork surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations before placing reinforcement. Remove excess release agent on formwork prior to concrete placement.
- c. Do not allow formwork release agent to contact reinforcement or hardened concrete against which fresh concrete is to be placed.

3.3.2 Reshoring

- a. Do not allow structural members to be loaded with combined dead and construction loads in excess of loads indicated in the accepted procedure.
- b. Install and remove reshores or backshores in accordance with accepted procedure.
- c. For floors supporting shores under newly placed concrete, either leave original supporting shores in place, or install reshores or backshores. Shoring system and supporting slabs must resist anticipated loads. Locate reshores and backshores directly under a shore position or as indicated on formwork shop drawings.
- d. In multistory buildings, place reshoring or backshoring over a sufficient number of stories to distribute weight of newly placed concrete, forms, and construction live loads.

3.3.3 Reuse

- a. Reuse forms providing the structural integrity of concrete and the aesthetics of exposed concrete are not compromised.
- b. Wood forms must not be clogged with paste and must be capable of absorbing high water-cementitious material ratio paste.
- c. Remove leaked mortar from formwork joints before reuse.

3.3.4 Forms for Standard Rough Form Finish

Provide formwork in accordance with **ACI 301** Section 5 with a surface

finish, SF-1.0, for formed surfaces that are to be concealed by other construction.

3.3.5 Forms for Standard Smooth Form Finish

Provide formwork in accordance with [ACI 301](#) Section 5 with a surface finish, SF-3.0, for formed surfaces that are exposed to view. Do not provide mockup of concrete surface appearance and texture.

3.3.6 Form Ties

After ends or end fasteners of form ties have been removed, repair tie holes in accordance with [ACI 301](#) Section 5 requirements.

3.3.7 Tolerances for Form Construction

- a. Construct formwork so concrete surfaces conform to tolerances in [ACI 117](#).
- b. Position and secure sleeves, inserts, anchors, and other embedded items such that embedded items are positioned within [ACI 117](#) tolerances.
- c. To maintain specified elevation and thickness within tolerances, install formwork to compensate for deflection and anticipated settlement in formwork during concrete placement. Set formwork and intermediate screed strips for slabs to produce designated elevation, camber, and contour of finished surface before formwork removal. If specified finish requires use of vibrating screeds or roller pipe screeds, ensure that edge forms and screed strips are strong enough to support such equipment.

3.3.8 Removal of Forms and Supports

- a. If vertical formed surfaces require finishing, remove forms as soon as removal operations will not damage concrete.
- b. Remove top forms on sloping surfaces of concrete as soon as removal will not allow concrete to sag. Perform repairs and finishing operations required. If forms are removed before end of specified curing period, provide curing and protection.
- c. Do not damage concrete during removal of vertical formwork for columns, walls, and sides of beams. Perform needed repair and finishing operations required on vertical surfaces. If forms are removed before end of specified curing period, provide curing and protection.
- d. Leave formwork and shoring in place to support construction loads and weight of concrete in beams, slabs, and other structural members until in-place required strength of concrete is reached.
- e. Form-facing material and horizontal facing support members may be removed before in-place concrete reaches specified compressive strength if shores and other supports are designed to allow facing removal without deflection of supported slab or member.

3.3.9 Strength of Concrete Required for Removal of Formwork

If removal of formwork, reshoring, or backshoring is based on concrete reaching a specified in-place strength, mold and field-cure cylinders in accordance with [ASTM C31/C31M](#). Test cylinders in accordance with

ASTM C39/C39M.

3.4 PLACING REINFORCEMENT AND MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- a. Unless otherwise specified, placing reinforcement and miscellaneous materials must be in accordance to **ACI 301**. Provide bars, welded wire reinforcement, wire ties, supports, and other devices necessary to install and secure reinforcement.
- b. Reinforcement must not have rust, scale, oil, grease, clay, or foreign substances that would reduce the bond. Rusting of reinforcement is a basis of rejection if the effective cross-sectional area or the nominal weight per unit length has been reduced. Remove loose rust prior to placing steel. Tack welding is prohibited.
- c. Nonprestressed cast-in-place concrete members must have concrete cover for reinforcement **as noted on Contract Drawings**.

3.4.1 General

Provide details of reinforcement that are in accordance with the Contract Documents.

3.4.2 Vapor Retarder

- a. Install in accordance with **ASTM E1643**. Provide beneath the on-grade concrete floor slab. Use the greatest widths and lengths practicable to eliminate joints wherever possible. Lap joints a minimum of **12 inches** and tape.
- b. Remove torn, punctured, or damaged vapor retarder material and provide with new vapor retarder prior to placing concrete. Concrete placement must not damage vapor retarder.

3.4.3 Perimeter Insulation

Install perimeter insulation at locations indicated. Adhesive must be used where insulation is applied to the interior surface of foundation walls and may be used for exterior application.

3.4.4 Reinforcement Supports

Provide reinforcement support in accordance with **CRSI RB4.1** and **ACI 301** Section 3 requirements. Supports for coated or galvanized bars must also be coated with electrically compatible material for a distance of at least **2 inches** beyond the point of contact with the bars.

3.4.5 Splicing

As indicated in the Contract Documents. For splices not indicated follow **ACI 301**. Do not splice at points of maximum stress. Overlap welded wire reinforcement the spacing of the cross wires, plus **2 inches**.

3.4.6 Future Bonding

Plug exposed, threaded, mechanical reinforcement bar connectors with a greased bolt. Provide bolt threads that match the connector. Countersink the connector in the concrete. Caulk the depression after the bolt is installed.

3.4.7 Setting Miscellaneous Material

Place and secure anchors and bolts, pipe sleeves, conduits, and other such items in position before concrete placement and support against displacement. Plumb anchor bolts and check location and elevation. Temporarily fill voids in sleeves with readily removable material to prevent the entry of concrete.

3.4.8 Fabrication

Shop fabricate reinforcing bars to conform to shapes and dimensions indicated for reinforcement, and as follows:

- a. Provide fabrication tolerances that are in accordance with [ACI 117](#).
- b. Provide hooks and bends that are in accordance with the Contract Documents.

Reinforcement must be bent cold to shapes as indicated. Bending must be done in the shop. Rebending of a reinforcing bar that has been bent incorrectly is not be permitted. Bending must be in accordance with standard approved practice and by approved machine methods.

Deliver reinforcing bars bundled, tagged, and marked. Tags must be metal with bar size, length, mark, and other information pressed in by machine. Marks must correspond with those used on the placing drawings.

Do not use reinforcement that has any of the following defects:

- a. Bar lengths, depths, and bends beyond specified fabrication tolerances
- b. Bends or kinks not indicated on drawings or approved shop drawings
- c. Bars with reduced cross-section due to rusting or other cause

Replace defective reinforcement with new reinforcement having required shape, form, and cross-section area.

3.4.9 Placing Reinforcement

Place reinforcement in accordance with [ACI 301](#).

For slabs on grade (over earth or over capillary water barrier) and for footing reinforcement, support bars or welded wire reinforcement on precast concrete blocks, spaced at intervals required by size of reinforcement, to keep reinforcement the minimum height specified above the underside of slab or footing.

For slabs other than on grade, supports for which any portion is less than [1 inch](#) from concrete surfaces that are exposed to view or to be painted must be of precast concrete units, plastic-coated steel, or stainless steel protected bar supports. Precast concrete units must be wedge shaped, not larger than [3-1/2 by 3-1/2 inches](#), and of thickness equal to that indicated for concrete protection of reinforcement. Provide precast units that have cast-in galvanized tie wire hooked for anchorage and blend with concrete surfaces after finishing is completed.

Provide reinforcement that is supported and secured together to prevent

displacement by construction loads or by placing of wet concrete, and as follows:

- a. Provide supports for reinforcing bars that are sufficient in number and have sufficient strength to carry the reinforcement they support, and in accordance with [ACI 301](#) and [CRSI 10MSP](#). Do not use supports to support runways for concrete conveying equipment and similar construction loads.
- b. Equip supports on ground and similar surfaces with sand-plates.
- c. Support welded wire reinforcement as required for reinforcing bars.
- d. Secure reinforcements to supports by means of tie wire. Wire must be black, soft iron wire, not less than [16 gage](#).
- e. Reinforcement must be accurately placed, securely tied at intersections, and held in position during placing of concrete by spacers, chairs, or other approved supports. Point wire-tie ends away from the form. Unless otherwise indicated, numbers, type, and spacing of supports must conform to the Contract Documents.
- f. Bending of reinforcing bars partially embedded in concrete is permitted only as specified in the Contract Documents.

3.4.10 Spacing of Reinforcing Bars

- a. Spacing must be as indicated in the Contract Documents.
- b. Reinforcing bars may be relocated to avoid interference with other reinforcement, or with conduit, pipe, or other embedded items. If any reinforcing bar is moved a distance exceeding one bar diameter or specified placing tolerance, resulting rearrangement of reinforcement is subject to preapproval by the Contracting Officer.

3.4.11 Concrete Protection for Reinforcement

Additional concrete protection must be in accordance with the Contract Documents.

3.5 BATCHING, MEASURING, MIXING, AND TRANSPORTING CONCRETE

In accordance with [ASTM C94/C94M](#), [ACI 301](#), [ACI 302.1R](#) and [ACI 304R](#), except as modified herein. Batching equipment must be such that the concrete ingredients are consistently measured within the following tolerances: 1 percent for cement and water, 2 percent for aggregate, and 3 percent for admixtures. Furnish mandatory batch ticket information for each load of ready mix concrete.

3.5.1 Measuring

Make measurements at intervals as specified in paragraphs SAMPLING and TESTING.

3.5.2 Mixing

- a. Mix concrete in accordance with [ASTM C94/C94M](#), [ACI 301](#) and [ACI 304R](#).
- b. Machine mix concrete. Begin mixing within 30 minutes after the cement

has been added to the aggregates. Place concrete within 90 minutes of either addition of mixing water to cement and aggregates or addition of cement to aggregates if the air temperature is less than 84 degrees F.

- c. Reduce mixing time and place concrete within 60 minutes if the air temperature is greater than 84 degrees F except as follows: if set retarding admixture is used and slump requirements can be met, limit for placing concrete may remain at 90 minutes. Additional water may be added, provided that both the specified maximum slump and submitted water-cementitious material ratio are not exceeded and the required concrete strength is still met. When additional water is added, an additional 30 revolutions of the mixer at mixing speed is required.
- d. Dissolve admixtures in the mixing water and mix in the drum to uniformly distribute the admixture throughout the batch. Do not reconstitute concrete that has begun to solidify.

3.5.3 Transporting

Transport concrete from the mixer to the forms as rapidly as practicable. Prevent segregation or loss of ingredients. Clean transporting equipment thoroughly before each batch. Do not use aluminum pipe or chutes. Remove concrete which has segregated in transporting and dispose of as directed.

3.6 PLACING CONCRETE

Place concrete in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5.

3.6.1 Footing Placement

Concrete for footings may be placed in excavations without forms upon inspection and approval by the Contracting Officer. Excavation width must be a minimum of 4 inches greater than indicated.

3.6.2 Pumping

ACI 304R and ACI 304.2R. Pumping must not result in separation or loss of materials nor cause interruptions sufficient to permit loss of plasticity between successive increments. Loss of slump in pumping equipment must not exceed 2 inches at discharge/placement. Do not convey concrete through pipe made of aluminum or aluminum alloy. Avoid rapid changes in pipe sizes. Limit maximum size of coarse aggregate to 33 percent of the diameter of the pipe. Limit maximum size of well-rounded aggregate to 40 percent of the pipe diameter. Take samples for testing at both the point of delivery to the pump and at the discharge end.

3.6.3 Cold Weather

Cold weather concrete must meet the requirements of ACI 301ACI 306.1 unless otherwise specified. Do not allow concrete temperature to decrease below 50 degrees F. Obtain approval prior to placing concrete when the ambient temperature is below 40 degrees F or when concrete is likely to be subjected to freezing temperatures within 24 hours. Cover concrete and provide sufficient heat to maintain 50 degrees F minimum adjacent to both the formwork and the structure while curing. Limit the rate of cooling to 37 degrees F in any 1 hour and 50 degrees F per 24 hours after heat application.

3.6.4 Hot Weather

Hot weather concrete must meet the requirements of [ACI 301](#)[ACI 305.1](#). Maintain required concrete temperature using Figure 4.2 in [ACI 305R](#) to prevent the evaporation rate from exceeding [0.2 pound of water per square foot](#) of exposed concrete per hour. Cool ingredients before mixing or use other suitable means to control concrete temperature and prevent rapid drying of newly placed concrete. Shade the fresh concrete as soon as possible after placing. Start curing when the surface of the fresh concrete is sufficiently hard to permit curing without damage. Provide water hoses, pipes, spraying equipment, and water hauling equipment, where job site is remote to water source, to maintain a moist concrete surface throughout the curing period. Provide burlap cover or other suitable, permeable material with fog spray or continuous wetting of the concrete when weather conditions prevent the use of either liquid membrane curing compound or impervious sheets. For vertical surfaces, protect forms from direct sunlight and add water to top of structure once concrete is set.

3.6.5 Bonding

Surfaces of set concrete at joints, must be roughened and cleaned of laitance, coatings, loose particles, and foreign matter. Roughen surfaces in a manner that exposes the aggregate uniformly and does not leave laitance, loosened particles of aggregate, nor damaged concrete at the surface.

Obtain bonding of fresh concrete that has set as follows:

- a. At joints between footings and walls or columns, between walls or columns and the beams or slabs they support, and elsewhere unless otherwise specified; roughened and cleaned surface of set concrete must be dampened, but not saturated, immediately prior to placing of fresh concrete.
- b. At joints in exposed-to-view work; at vertical joints in walls; at joints near midpoint of span in girders, beams, supported slabs, other structural members; in work designed to contain liquids; the roughened and cleaned surface of set concrete must be dampened but not saturated and covered with a cement grout coating.
- c. Provide cement grout that consists of equal parts of portland cement and fine aggregate by weight with not more than [6 gallons](#) of water per sack of cement. Apply cement grout with a stiff broom or brush to a minimum thickness of [1/16 inch](#). Deposit fresh concrete before cement grout has attained its initial set.

3.7 WASTE MANAGEMENT

Provide as specified in the Waste Management Plan and as follows.

3.7.1 Mixing Equipment

Before concrete pours, designate Contractor-owned site meeting environmental standards for cleaning out concrete mixing trucks. Minimize water used to wash equipment.

3.7.2 Reinforcing Steel

Collect reinforcing steel and place in designated area for recycling.

3.7.3 Other Waste

Identify concrete manufacturer's or supplier's policy for collection or return of construction waste, unused material, deconstruction waste, and/or packaging material. Institute deconstruction and construction waste separation and recycling for use in manufacturer's programs. When such a program is not available, seek local recyclers to reclaim the materials.

3.8 SURFACE FINISHES EXCEPT FLOOR, SLAB, AND PAVEMENT FINISHES

3.8.1 Defects

Repair surface defects in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5.

3.8.2 Not Against Forms (Top of Walls)

Surfaces not otherwise specified must be finished with wood floats to even surfaces. Finish must match adjacent finishes.

3.8.3 Formed Surfaces

3.8.3.1 Tolerances

Tolerances in accordance with ACI 117 and as indicated.

3.8.3.2 As-Cast Rough Form

Provide for surfaces not exposed to public view a surface finish SF-1.0. Patch holes and defects in accordance with ACI 301.

3.8.3.3 Standard Smooth Finish

Provide for surfaces exposed to public view a surface finish SF-3.0. Patch holes and defects in accordance with ACI 301.

3.8.4 Smooth-Rubbed, Grout-Cleaned Rubbed, Cork-Floated, and Exposed Aggregate Finishes

Provide a smooth-rubbed finish per ACI 301 Section 5 in the locations indicated. Provide a grout-cleaned rubbed finish per ACI 301 Section 5 in the locations indicated. Provide a cork-floated finish per ACI 301 Section 5 in the locations indicated. Provide an exposed aggregate finish per ACI 301 Section 5 in the locations indicated.

3.9 FLOOR, SLAB, AND PAVEMENT FINISHES AND MISCELLANEOUS CONSTRUCTION

In accordance with ACI 301 and ACI 302.1R, unless otherwise specified. Slope floors uniformly to drains where drains are provided. Depress the concrete base slab where quarry tile, ceramic tile. Steel trowel and fine-broom finish concrete slabs that are to receive quarry tile, ceramic tile, or paver tile. Where straightedge measurements are specified, Contractor must provide straightedge.

3.9.1 Finish

Place, consolidate, and immediately strike off concrete to obtain proper contour, grade, and elevation before bleedwater appears. Permit concrete to attain a set sufficient for floating and supporting the weight of the

finisher and equipment. If bleedwater is present prior to floating the surface, drag the excess water off or remove by absorption with porous materials. Do not use dry cement to absorb bleedwater.

3.9.1.1 Scratched

Use for surfaces intended to receive bonded applied cementitious applications. Finish concrete in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5 for a scratched finish.

3.9.1.2 Floated

Use for surfaces to receive waterproofing membranes, sand bed terrazzo, and exterior slabs where not otherwise specified. Finish concrete in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5 for a floated finish.

3.9.1.3 Steel Troweled

Use for floors intended as walking surfaces, and for reception of floor coverings. Finish concrete in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5 for a steel troweled finish.

3.9.1.4 Nonslip Finish

Use on surfaces of exterior platforms, steps, and landings; and on exterior and interior pedestrian ramps. Finish concrete in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5 for a dry-shake finish. After the selected material has been embedded by the two floatings, complete the operation with a broomed finish.

3.9.1.5 Broomed

Use on surfaces of exterior walks, platforms, patios, and ramps, unless otherwise indicated. Finish concrete in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5 for a broomed finish.

3.9.1.6 Pavement

Screed the concrete with a template advanced with a combined longitudinal and crosswise motion. Maintain a slight surplus of concrete ahead of the template. After screeding, float the concrete longitudinally. Use a straightedge to check slope and flatness; correct and refloat as necessary. Obtain final finish by a burlap drag. Drag a strip of clean, wet burlap from 3 to 10 feet wide and 2 feet longer than the pavement width across the slab. Produce a fine, granular, sandy textured surface without disfiguring marks. Round edges and joints with an edger having a radius of 1/8 inch.

3.9.1.7 Concrete Toppings Placement

The following requirements apply to the placement of toppings of concrete on base slabs that are either freshly placed and still plastic, or on hardened base slabs.

- a. Placing on a Fresh Base: Screed and bull float the base slab. As soon as the water sheen has disappeared, lightly rake the surface of the base slab with a stiff bristle broom to produce a bonding surface for the topping. Immediately spread the topping mixture evenly over the roughened base before final set takes place. Give the topping the finish specified herein.

- b. Bonding to a Hardened Base: When the topping is to be bonded to a floated or troweled hardened base, roughen the base by scarifying, grit-blasting, scabbling, planing, flame cleaning, or acid-etching to lightly expose aggregate and provide a bonding surface. Remove dirt, laitance, and loose aggregate by means of a stiff wire broom. Keep the clean base wet for a period of 12 hours preceding the application of the topping. Remove excess water and apply a 1:1:1/2 cement-sand-water grout, and brush into the surface of the base slab. Do not allow the cement grout to dry, and spread it only short distances ahead of the topping placement. Do not allow the temperature differential between the completed base and the topping mixture to exceed 41 degrees F at the time of placing. Place the topping and finish as specified herein.

3.9.1.8 Chemical-Hardener Treatment

Apply liquid-chemical floor hardener where indicated after curing and drying concrete surface. Dilute liquid hardener with water and apply in three coats. First coat must be one-third strength, second coat one-half strength, and third coat two-thirds strength. Apply each coat evenly and allow to dry 24 hours between coats.

Approved proprietary chemical hardeners must be applied in accordance with manufacturer's printed directions.

3.9.1.9 Colored Wear-Resistant Finish

- a. Give finish to monolithic slab surfaces where indicated.
- b. Apply dry shake materials for colored wear-resistant finish at the rate of 60 pounds per 100 square feet of surface.
- c. Immediately following first floating operation, approximately two-thirds of specified weight of dry shake material must be uniformly distributed over surface and embedded by means of power floating. After first dry-shake application has been embedded, uniformly distribute remainder of dry-shake material over surface at right angles to first dry-shake application and embed by means of power floating. Trueness of surface and other requirements for floating operations not specified in this paragraph must be as specified for float finish.
- d. After completion of float finish, apply a trowel finish as specified.

3.9.1.10 Heavy-Duty Wear-Resistant Finish

- a. Give finish to slab surfaces where indicated.
- b. Dry-shake material for heavy-duty, wear-resistant finish must consist of a mixture of standard portland cement and aggregate for heavy-duty, wear-resistant finish proportioned by weight as follows:

One part standard portland cement and four parts emery aggregate for heavy-duty wear-resistant finish.

- c. Apply blended dry-shake material as follows:

Maximum type of aggregate in dry shake	Amount per 100 square feet of Surface
Traprock	160 pounds
Emery	130 pounds

- d. Immediately following the first floating operation, approximately one-half the specified weight of blended, uniformly distribute dry-shake materials over the surface and embedded by means of power floating. After the first dry-shake application has been embedded, uniformly distribute the remaining one-half of the blended dry-shake material over the surface at right angles to the first dry-shake application and embedded by means of power floating. Trueness of surface and other requirements for floating operations not specified in this paragraph must be as specified for float finish.
- e. After completion of the float finish, trowel finish the surface as specified.

3.9.2 Flat Floor Finishes

ACI 302.1R. Construct in accordance with one of the methods recommended in Table 7.15.3, "Typical Composite Ff/FL Values for Various Construction Methods." ACI 117 for tolerance tested by ASTM E1155.

- a. Specified Conventional Value:

Floor Flatness (Ff) 20 13 minimum
Floor Levelness (FL) 15 10 minimum

3.9.2.1 Measurement of Floor Tolerances

Test slab within 24 hours of the final troweling. Provide tests to Contracting Officer within 12 hours after collecting the data. Floor flatness inspector is required to provide a tolerance report which must include:

- a. Key plan showing location of data collected.
- b. Results required by ASTM E1155.

3.9.2.2 Remedies for Out of Tolerance Work

Contractor is required to repair and retest any floors not meeting specified tolerances. Prior to repair, Contractor must submit and receive approval for the proposed repair, including product data from any materials proposed. Repairs must not result in damage to structural integrity of the floor. For floors exposed to public view, repairs must prevent any uneven or unusual coloring of the surface.

3.9.3 Concrete Walks

Provide 4 inches thick minimum. Provide contraction joints spaced every 5 linear feet unless otherwise indicated. Cut contraction joints 1 inch deep, or one fourth the slab thickness whichever is deeper, with a jointing tool after the surface has been finished. Provide 0.5 inch thick transverse expansion joints at changes in direction where sidewalk abuts

curb, steps, rigid pavement, or other similar structures; space expansion joints every 50 feet maximum. Give walks a broomed finish. Unless indicated otherwise, provide a transverse slope of 1/48. Limit variation in cross section to 1/4 inch in 5 feet.

3.9.4 Pits and Trenches

Place bottoms and walls monolithically or provide waterstops and keys.

3.9.5 Curbs and Gutters

Provide contraction joints spaced every 10 feet maximum unless otherwise indicated. Cut contraction joints 3/4 inch deep with a jointing tool after the surface has been finished. Provide expansion joints 1/2 inch thick and spaced every 100 feet maximum unless otherwise indicated. Perform pavement finish.

3.9.6 Splash Blocks

Provide at outlets of downspouts emptying at grade. Splash blocks may be precast concrete, and must be 24 inches long, 12 inches wide and 4 inches thick, unless otherwise indicated, with smooth-finished countersunk dishes sloped to drain away from the building.

3.10 JOINTS

3.10.1 Construction Joints

Make and locate joints not indicated so as not to impair strength and appearance of the structure, as approved. Joints must be perpendicular to main reinforcement. Reinforcement must be continued and developed across construction joints. Locate construction joints as follows:

3.10.1.1 Maximum Allowable Construction Joint Spacing

- a. In walls at not more than 60 feet in any horizontal direction.
- b. In slabs on ground, so as to divide slab into areas not in excess of 1,200 square feet.

3.10.1.2 Construction Joints for Constructability Purposes

- a. In walls, at top of footing; at top of slabs on ground; at top and bottom of door and window openings or where required to conform to architectural details; and at underside of deepest beam or girder framing into wall.
- b. In columns or piers, at top of footing; at top of slabs on ground; and at underside of deepest beam or girder framing into column or pier.
- c. Near midpoint of spans for supported slabs, beams, and girders unless a beam intersects a girder at the center, in which case construction joints in girder must offset a distance equal to twice the width of the beam. Make transfer of shear through construction joint by use of inclined reinforcement.

Provide keyways at least 1-1/2-inches deep in construction joints in walls and slabs and between walls and footings; approved bulkheads may be used for slabs.

3.10.2 Isolation Joints in Slabs on Ground

- a. Provide joints at points of contact between slabs on ground and vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and elsewhere as indicated.
- b. Fill joints with premolded joint filler strips $1/2$ inch thick, extending full slab depth. Install filler strips at proper level below finish floor elevation with a slightly tapered, dress-and-oiled wood strip temporarily secured to top of filler strip to form a groove not less than $3/4$ inch in depth where joint is sealed with sealing compound and not less than $1/4$ inch in depth where joint sealing is not required. Remove wood strip after concrete has set. Contractor must clean groove of foreign matter and loose particles after surface has dried.

3.10.3 Contraction Joints in Slabs on Ground

- a. Provide joints to form panels as indicated.
- b. Under and on exact line of each control joint, cut 50 percent of welded wire reinforcement before placing concrete.
- c. Sawcut contraction joints into slab on ground in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5.
- d. Sawcutting will be limited to within 12 hours after set and at $1/4$ slab depth.

3.10.4 Sealing Joints in Slabs on Ground

- a. Contraction and control joints which are to receive finish flooring material must be sealed with joint sealing compound after concrete curing period. Slightly underfill groove with joint sealing compound to prevent extrusion of compound. Remove excess material as soon after sealing as possible.
- b. Sealed groove must be left ready to receive filling material that is provided as part of finish floor covering work.

3.11 CONCRETE FLOOR TOPPING

3.11.1 Standard Floor Topping

Provide topping for treads and platforms of metal steel stairs and elsewhere as indicated.

3.11.1.1 Preparations Prior to Placing

- a. When topping is placed on a green concrete base slab, screed surface of base slab to a level not more than $1-1/2$ inches nor less than 1 inch below required finish surface. Remove water and laitance from surface of base slab before placing topping mixture. As soon as water ceases to rise to surface of base slab, place topping.
- b. When topping is placed on a hardened concrete base slab, remove dirt, loose material, oil, grease, asphalt, paint, and other contaminants from base slab surface, leaving a clean surface. Prior to placing

topping mixture, 2-1/2-inches minimum, slab surface must be dampened and left free of standing water. Immediately before topping mixture is placed, broom a coat of neat cement grout onto surface of slab. Do not allow cement grout to set or dry before topping is placed.

- c. When topping is placed on a metal surface, such as metal pans for steel stairs, remove dirt, loose material, oil, grease, asphalt, paint, and other contaminants from metal surface.

3.11.1.2 Placing

Spread standard topping mixture evenly on previously prepared base slab or metal surface, brought to correct level with a straightedge, and struck off. Topping must be consolidated, floated, checked for trueness of surface, and refloated as specified for float finish.

3.11.1.3 Finishing

Give trowel finish standard floor topping surfaces.

Give other finishes standard floor topping surfaces as indicated.

3.11.2 Heavy-Duty Floor Topping

Provide topping where indicated.

3.11.2.1 Heavy-duty Topping Mixture

Provide mixture that consists of 1 part portland cement and 2-1/2 parts emery aggregate or 1 part fine aggregate and 1-1/2 parts traprock coarse aggregate, by volume. Exact proportions of mixture must conform to recommendations of aggregate manufacturer. Mixing water must not exceed 3-1/4 gallons per 94-pound sack of cement including unabsorbed moisture in aggregate. Maximum slump must be 1 inch.

3.11.2.2 Base Slab

- a. Screed surface of slab to a level no more than 1-1/2 inches nor less than 1 inch below grade of finished floor.
- b. Give slab a scratch finish as specified.
- c. Preparations prior to placing.

Remove dirt, loose material, oil, grease, asphalt, paint and other contaminants from base slab surface. Prior to placing topping mixture, dampen slab surface and leave free of standing water. Immediately before topping mixture is placed, broom a coat of neat cement grout onto surface of slab. Allow cement grout to set or dry before topping mixture is placed.

3.11.2.3 Placing

Spread heavy-duty topping mixture evenly on previously prepared base slab, and bring to correct level with a straightedge, and strike off. Provide topping that is consolidated, floated, and checked for trueness of surface as specified for float finish, except that power-driven floats is the impact type.

3.11.2.4 Finishing

Give trowel finish heavy-duty floor topping surfaces. Provide trowel finish as specified, except that additional troweling after first power troweling must be not less than three hand-troweling operations.

3.12 CURING AND PROTECTION

Curing and protection in accordance with **ACI 301** Section 5, unless otherwise specified. Begin curing immediately following form removal. Avoid damage to concrete from vibration created by blasting, pile driving, movement of equipment in the vicinity, disturbance of formwork or protruding reinforcement, and any other activity resulting in ground vibrations. Protect concrete from injurious action by sun, rain, flowing water, frost, mechanical injury, tire marks, and oil stains. Do not allow concrete to dry out from time of placement until the expiration of the specified curing period. Do not use membrane-forming compound on surfaces where appearance would be objectionable, on any surface to be painted, where coverings are to be bonded to the concrete, or on concrete to which other concrete is to be bonded. If forms are removed prior to the expiration of the curing period, provide another curing procedure specified herein for the remaining portion of the curing period. Provide moist curing for those areas receiving liquid chemical sealer, hardener, or epoxy coating. Allow curing compound/sealer installations to cure prior to the installation of materials that adsorb VOCs.

3.12.1 Curing Periods

ACI 301 Section 5, except 10 days for retaining walls, pavement or chimneys. Begin curing immediately after placement. Protect concrete from premature drying, excessively hot temperatures, and mechanical injury; and maintain minimal moisture loss at a relatively constant temperature for the period necessary for hydration of the cement and hardening of the concrete. The materials and methods of curing are subject to approval by the Contracting Officer.

3.12.2 Curing Formed Surfaces

Accomplish curing of formed surfaces, including undersurfaces of girders, beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces by moist curing with forms in place for full curing period or until forms are removed. If forms are removed before end of curing period, accomplish final curing of formed surfaces by any of the curing methods specified above, as applicable.

3.12.3 Curing Unformed Surfaces

Accomplish initial curing of unformed surfaces, such as monolithic slabs, floor topping, and other flat surfaces, by membrane curing.

3.12.4 Temperature of Concrete During Curing

When temperature of atmosphere is **41 degrees F** and below, maintain temperature of concrete at not less than **55 degrees F** throughout concrete curing period or **45 degrees F** when the curing period is measured by maturity. When necessary, make arrangements before start of concrete placing for heating, covering, insulation, or housing as required to maintain specified temperature and moisture conditions for concrete during curing period.

When the temperature of atmosphere is 80 degrees F and above or during other climatic conditions which cause too rapid drying of concrete, make arrangements before start of concrete placing for installation of wind breaks, of shading, and for fog spraying, wet sprinkling, or moisture-retaining covering of light color as required to protect concrete during curing period.

Changes in temperature of concrete must be uniform and not exceed 37 degrees F in any 1 hour nor 80 degrees F in any 24-hour period.

3.12.5 Protection from Mechanical Injury

During curing period, protect concrete from damaging mechanical disturbances, particularly load stresses, heavy shock, and excessive vibration and from damage caused by rain or running water.

3.12.6 Protection After Curing

Protect finished concrete surfaces from damage by construction operations.

3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.13.1 Sampling

ASTM C172/C172M. Collect samples of fresh concrete to perform tests specified. ASTM C31/C31M for making test specimens.

3.13.2 Testing

3.13.2.1 Slump Tests

ASTM C143/C143M. Take concrete samples during concrete placement/discharge. The maximum slump may be increased as specified with the addition of an approved admixture provided that the water-cementitious material ratio is not exceeded. Perform tests at commencement of concrete placement, when test cylinders are made, and for each batch (minimum) or every 20 cubic yards (maximum) of concrete.

3.13.2.2 Temperature Tests

Test the concrete delivered and the concrete in the forms. Perform tests in hot or cold weather conditions (below 50 degrees F and above 80 degrees F) for each batch (minimum) or every 20 cubic yards (maximum) of concrete, until the specified temperature is obtained, and whenever test cylinders and slump tests are made.

3.13.2.3 Compressive Strength Tests

ASTM C39/C39M. Make six 6 inch by 12 inch test cylinders for each set of tests in accordance with ASTM C31/C31M, ASTM C172/C172M and applicable requirements of ACI 305R and ACI 306R. Take precautions to prevent evaporation and loss of water from the specimen. Test two cylinders at 7 days, two cylinders at 28 days, two cylinders at 56 days and hold two cylinder in reserve. Take samples for strength tests of each mix design of and for concrete placed each day not less than once a day, nor less than once for each 100 cubic yards of concrete for the first 500 cubic yards, then every 500 cubic yards thereafter, nor less than once for each 5400 square feet of surface area for slabs or walls. For the entire project, take no less than five sets of samples and perform strength tests for each

mix design of concrete placed. Each strength test result must be the average of two cylinders from the same concrete sample tested at 28 days. Concrete compressive tests must meet the requirements of this section, the Contract Document, and [ACI 301](#). Retest locations represented by erratic core strengths. Where retest does not meet concrete compressive strength requirements submit a mitigation or remediation plan for review and approval by the contracting officer. Repair core holes with nonshrink grout. Match color and finish of adjacent concrete.

3.13.2.4 [Air Content](#)

[ASTM C173/C173M](#) or [ASTM C231/C231M](#) for normal weight concrete. Test air-entrained concrete for air content at the same frequency as specified for slump tests.

3.13.2.5 [Chloride Ion Concentration](#)

Chloride ion concentration must meet the requirements of the paragraph titled CORROSION AND CHLORIDE CONTENT. Determine water soluble ion concentration in accordance with [ASTM C1218/C1218M](#). Perform test once for each mix design.

3.13.2.6 [Strength of Concrete Structure](#)

The strength of the concrete structure will be considered to be deficient if any of the following conditions are identified:

- a. Failure to meet compressive strength tests as evaluated.
- b. Reinforcement not conforming to requirements specified.
- c. Concrete which differs from required dimensions or location in such a manner as to reduce strength.
- d. Concrete curing and protection of concrete against extremes of temperature during curing, not conforming to requirements specified.
- e. Concrete subjected to damaging mechanical disturbances, particularly load stresses, heavy shock, and excessive vibration.
- f. Poor workmanship likely to result in deficient strength.

Where the strength of the concrete structure is considered deficient submit a mitigation or remediation plan for review and approval by the contracting officer.

3.13.2.7 [Non-Conforming Materials](#)

Factors that indicate that there are non-conforming materials include (but not limited to) excessive compressive strength, inadequate compressive strength, excessive slump, excessive voids and honeycombing, concrete delivery records that indicate excessive time between mixing and placement, or excessive water was added to the mixture during delivery and placement. Any of these indicators alone are sufficient reason for the Contracting Officer to request additional sampling and testing.

Investigations into non-conforming materials must be conducted at the Contractor's expense. The Contractor must be responsible for the investigation and must make written recommendations to adequately mitigate

or remediate the non-conforming material. The Contracting Officer may accept, accept with reduced payment, require mitigation, or require removal and replacement of non-conforming material at no additional cost to the Government.

3.13.2.8 Testing Concrete Structure for Strength

When there is evidence that strength of concrete structure in place does not meet specification requirements or there are non-conforming materials, make cores drilled from hardened concrete for compressive strength determination in accordance with [ASTM C42/C42M](#), and as follows:

- a. Take at least three representative cores from each member or area of concrete-in-place that is considered potentially deficient. Location of cores will be determined by the Contracting Officer.
- b. Test cores after moisture conditioning in accordance with [ASTM C42/C42M](#) if concrete they represent is more than superficially wet under service.
- c. Air dry cores, ([60 to 80 degrees F](#) with relative humidity less than 60 percent) for 7 days before test and test dry if concrete they represent is dry under service conditions.
- d. Strength of cores from each member or area are considered satisfactory if their average is equal to or greater than 85 percent of the 28-day design compressive strength of the class of concrete.
- e. Core specimens will be taken and tested by the Government. If the results of core-boring tests indicate that the concrete as placed does not conform to the drawings and specification, the cost of such tests and restoration required must be borne by the Contractor.

Fill core holes solid with patching mortar and finished to match adjacent concrete surfaces.

Correct concrete work that is found inadequate by core tests in a manner approved by the Contracting Officer.

3.14 REPAIR, REHABILITATION AND REMOVAL

Before the Contracting Officer accepts the structure the Contractor must inspect the structure for cracks, damage and substandard concrete placements that may adversely affect the service life of the structure. A report documenting these defects must be prepared which includes recommendations for repair, removal or remediation must be submitted to the Contracting Officer for approval before any corrective work is accomplished.

3.14.1 Crack Repair

Prior to final acceptance, all cracks in excess of [0.02 inches](#) wide must be documented and repaired. The proposed method and materials to repair the cracks must be submitted to the Contracting Officer for approval. The proposal must address the amount of movement expected in the crack due to temperature changes and loading.

3.14.2 Repair of Weak Surfaces

Weak surfaces are defined as mortar-rich, rain-damaged, uncured, or containing exposed voids or deleterious materials. Concrete surfaces with

weak surfaces less than 1/4 inch thick must be diamond ground to remove the weak surface. Surfaces containing weak surfaces greater than 1/4 inch thick must be removed and replaced or mitigated in a manner acceptable to the Contracting Officer.

3.14.3 Failure of Quality Assurance Test Results

Proposed mitigation efforts by the Contractor must be approved by the Contracting Officer prior to proceeding.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 03 42 13.00 10

PLANT-PRECAST CONCRETE PRODUCTS FOR BELOW GRADE CONSTRUCTION
05/16

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN CONCRETE INSTITUTE INTERNATIONAL (ACI)

ACI 211.1	(1991; R 2009) Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Normal, Heavyweight and Mass Concrete
ACI 211.2	(1998; R 2004) Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Structural Lightweight Concrete
ACI 305R	(2010) Guide to Hot Weather Concreting
ACI 306.1	(1990; R 2002) Standard Specification for Cold Weather Concreting
ACI 318	(2014; Errata 1-2 2014; Errata 3-5 2015; Errata 6 2016; Errata 7-9 2017) Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete (ACI 318-14) and Commentary (ACI 318R-14)

AMERICAN CONCRETE PIPE ASSOCIATION (ACPA)

ACPA 01-102	(2000) Concrete Pipe Handbook
ACPA 01-110	(1984) Design Manual for Sulfide and Corrosion Prediction and Control
ACPA QPC	(202016) QCast Plant Certification Manual

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.1/D1.1M	(2015; Errata 1 2015; Errata 2 2016) Structural Welding Code - Steel
AWS D1.4/D1.4M	(2011) Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A1064/A1064M	(2017) Standard Specification for Carbon-Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for Concrete

ASTM A153/A153M	(2016) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
ASTM A36/A36M	(2014) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel
ASTM A615/A615M	(2016) Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A706/A706M	(2016) Standard Specification for Low-Alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM C1064/C1064M	(2017) Standard Test Method for Temperature of Freshly Mixed Hydraulic-Cement Concrete
ASTM C1107/C1107M	(2017) Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Nonshrink)
ASTM C1116/C1116M	(2010a; R 2015) Standard Specification for Fiber-Reinforced Concrete
ASTM C1244	(2011; R 2017) Standard Test Method for Concrete Sewer Manholes by the Negative Air Pressure (Vacuum) Test Prior to Backfill
ASTM C138/C138M	(2017a) Standard Test Method for Density (Unit Weight), Yield, and Air Content (Gravimetric) of Concrete
ASTM C143/C143M	(2015) Standard Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic-Cement Concrete
ASTM C1478	(2008; R 2013) Standard Specification for Storm Drain Resilient Connectors Between Reinforced Concrete Storm Sewer Structures, Pipes and Laterals
ASTM C171	(2016) Standard Specification for Sheet Materials for Curing Concrete
ASTM C173/C173M	(2016) Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Volumetric Method
ASTM C192/C192M	(2016a) Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Laboratory
ASTM C231/C231M	(2017a) Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method
ASTM C309	(2011) Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing

Concrete

ASTM C31/C31M	(2018b) Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field
ASTM C39/C39M	(2018) Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens
ASTM C443	(2012; R 2017) Standard Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe and Manholes, Using Rubber Gaskets
ASTM C857	(2016) Standard Practice for Minimum Structural Design Loading for Underground Precast Concrete Utility Structures
ASTM C858	(2010; E 2012) Standard Specification for Underground Precast Concrete Utility Structures
ASTM C877	(2008) External Sealing Bands for Concrete Pipe, Manholes, and Precast Box Sections
ASTM C891	(2011) Installation of Underground Precast Concrete Utility Structures
ASTM C920	(2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
ASTM C923	(2008; R 2013; E 2016) Standard Specification for Resilient Connectors Between Reinforced Concrete Manhole Structures, Pipes and Laterals
ASTM C990	(2009; R 2014) Standard Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe, Manholes and Precast Box Sections Using Preformed Flexible Joint Sealants

CSA GROUP (CSA)

CSA A23.4	(2016; Errata 2016) Precast Concrete - Materials and Construction

NATIONAL PRECAST CONCRETE ASSOCIATION (NPCA)

NPCA QC Manual	(2017) Quality Control Manual for Precast and Prestressed Concrete Plants

1.2 SUBMITTALS

All submittals are the responsibility of the precast concrete producer. Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Quality Control Procedures

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Standard Precast Units; G
Custom-Made Precast Units; G
Special Finishes

SD-03 Product Data

Standard Precast Units
Proprietary Precast Units
Embedded Items
Accessories

SD-05 Design Data

Design Calculations; G
Concrete Mix Proportions

SD-06 Test Reports

Test Reports

SD-07 Certificates

Quality Control Procedures

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Recycled content for fly ash and pozzolan; S
Recycled content for Ground Iron Blast-Furnace Slag; S
Recycled content for Silica Fume; S
Recycled content for Synthetic Fiber Reinforcement; S
Recycled content for steel; S

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Demonstrate adherence to the standards set forth in [NPCA QC Manual](#) or [ACPA QPC](#). Meet requirements written in the subparagraphs below.

1.3.1 NPCA and ACPA Plant Certification

The precast concrete producer must be certified by the National Precast Concrete Association's or the American Concrete Pipe Association's Plant Certification Program prior to and during production of the products for this project.

1.3.2 Qualifications, Quality Control and Inspection

1.3.2.1 Qualifications

Select a precast concrete producer that has been in the business of producing precast concrete units similar to those specified for a minimum of 3 years. The precast concrete producer must maintain a permanent quality control department or retain an independent testing agency on a

continuing basis.

1.3.2.2 Quality Control Procedures

Submit quality control procedures established by the precast manufacturer in accordance with [NPCA QC Manual](#) and [ACPA QPC](#). Show that the following QC tests are performed as required and in accordance with the ASTM standards indicated.

1.3.2.2.1 Slump

Perform a slump test for each [150 cu yd](#) of concrete produced, or once a day, whichever comes first. Perform slump tests in accordance with [ASTM C143/C143M](#).

1.3.2.2.2 Temperature

Measure the temperature of fresh concrete when slump or air content tests are made and when compressive test specimens are made in accordance with [ASTM C1064/C1064M](#).

1.3.2.2.3 Compressive Strength

Make at least four compressive strength specimens for each [150 cubic yards](#) of concrete of each mix in accordance with the following Standards: [ASTM C31/C31M](#), [ASTM C192/C192M](#), [ASTM C39/C39M](#).

1.3.2.2.4 Air Content

Perform tests for air content on air-entrained, wet-cast concrete for each [150 cu yd](#) of concrete, but not less often than once each day when air-entrained concrete is used. Determine the air content in accordance with either [ASTM C231/C231M](#) or [ASTM C173/C173M](#) for normal weight aggregates and [ASTM C173/C173M](#) for lightweight aggregates.

1.3.2.2.5 Unit Weight

Perform tests for unit weight a minimum of once per week to verify the yield of batch mixes. Perform unit weight tests for each [100 cu yd](#) of lightweight concrete in accordance with [ASTM C138/C138M](#).

1.3.2.3 Inspection

The Contracting Officer may place an inspector in the plant when the units covered by this specification are being manufactured. The burden of payment for plant inspection will be clearly detailed in the specification. The precast concrete producer must give notice 14 days prior to the time the units will be available for plant inspection. Neither the exercise nor waiver of inspection at the plant will affect the Government's right to enforce contractual provisions after units are transported or erected.

1.3.2.4 Test Reports

Submit the following:

1.3.2.4.1 Material Certifications or Laboratory Test Reports

Include mill tests and all other test data, for portland cement, blended

cement, pozzolans, ground granulated blast furnace slag, silica fume, aggregate, admixtures, and curing compound proposed for use on this project.

1.3.2.4.2 Mix Test

Submit reports showing that the mix has been successfully tested to produce concrete with the properties specified and will be suitable for the job conditions. Such tests may include compressive strength, flexural strength, plastic or hardened air content, freeze thaw durability, abrasion and absorption. Clearly detail in the specifications special tests for precast concrete or cast-in items.

1.3.2.4.3 Self-Consolidating Concrete

Submit sufficient documentation, when the use of self-consolidating concrete (SCC) is proposed, showing a minimum of 30-days production track records demonstrating that SCC is appropriate for casting of the product.

1.3.2.4.4 In-Plant QA/QC Inspection Reports

Submit inspection reports upon the request of the Contracting Officer.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.4.1 Delivery

Deliver precast units to the site in accordance with the delivery schedule to avoid excessive build-up of units in storage at the site. Upon delivery to the jobsite, all precast concrete units will be inspected by the Contracting Officer for quality and final acceptance.

1.4.2 Storage

Store units off the ground or in a manner that minimizes potential damage.

1.4.3 Handling

Handle, transport, and store products in a manner to minimize damage. Lifting devices or holes must be consistent with industry standards. Perform lifting with methods or devices intended for this purpose as indicated on shop drawings.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Furnish precast concrete units designed and fabricated by an experienced and acceptable precast concrete manufacturer who has been, for at least three years, regularly and continuously engaged in the manufacture of precast concrete work similar to that indicated on the drawings. Coordinate precast work with the work of other trades. Below grade structures must comply with [ASTM C858](#).

2.1.1 [Standard Precast Units](#)

Design standard precast concrete units to withstand indicated design load conditions in accordance with applicable industry design standards [ACI 318](#), [ASTM C857](#). Design must also consider stresses induced during handling, shipping and installation as to avoid product cracking or other handling

damage. Indicate design loads for precast concrete units on the shop drawings. Submit drawings for standard precast concrete units furnished by the precast concrete producer for approval by the Contracting Officer. These drawings must demonstrate that the applicable industry design standards have been met. Include installation and construction information on shop drawings. Include details of steel reinforcement size and placement as well as supporting design calculations, if appropriate. Produce precast concrete units in accordance with the approved drawings. Submit cut sheets, for standard precast concrete units, showing conformance to project drawings and requirements, and to applicable industry design standards listed in this specification.

2.1.2 Custom-Made Precast Units

Submit [design calculations](#) for custom-made precast units, prepared and sealed by a registered professional engineer, for approval prior to fabrication. Include in the calculations the analysis of units for lifting stresses and the sizing of lifting devices. Submit drawings furnished by the precast concrete producer for approval by the Contracting Officer. Show on these drawings complete design, installation, and construction information in such detail as to enable the Contracting Officer to determine the adequacy of the proposed units for the intended purpose. Include details of steel reinforcement size and placement as well as supporting design calculations, if appropriate. Produce precast concrete units in accordance with the approved drawings.

2.1.3 Proprietary Precast Units

Products manufactured under franchise arrangements must conform to all the requirements specified by the franchiser. Items not included in the franchise specification, but included in this specification, must conform to the requirements in this specification. Submit standard plans or informative literature, for proprietary precast concrete units. Make available supporting calculations and design details upon request. Provide sufficient information as to demonstrate that such products will perform the intended task.

2.1.4 Joints and Sealants

Provide joints and sealants between adjacent units of the type and configuration indicated on shop drawings meeting specified design and performance requirements.

2.1.5 Concrete Mix Design

2.1.5.1 Concrete Mix Proportions

Base selection of proportions for concrete on the methodology presented in [ACI 211.1](#) for normal weight concrete and [ACI 211.2](#) for lightweight concrete. Develop the concrete proportions using the same type and brand of cement, the same type and brand of pozzolan, the same type and gradation of aggregates, and the same type and brand of admixture that will be used in the manufacture of precast concrete units for the project. Do not use calcium chloride in precast concrete containing reinforcing steel or other embedded metal items. At a minimum of thirty days prior to precast concrete unit manufacturing, the precast concrete producer will submit a mix design and proportions for each strength and type of concrete that will be used. Furnish a complete list of materials, including quantity, type, brand and applicable data sheets for all mix design constituents as well as

applicable reference specifications. The use of self-consolidating concrete is permitted, provided that mix design proportions and constituents meet the requirements of this specification.

2.1.5.2 Concrete Strength

Provide precast concrete units with a 28-day compressive strength (f'c) of 5,000 psi.

2.1.5.3 Water-to-Cement Ratio

Where exposed to freezing and thawing, furnish concrete containing entrained air and with a water-cementitious ratio of 0.45 or less. Where exposed to deicer salts, brackish water, or seawater, furnish concrete with a water-cementitious ratio of 0.40 or less, for corrosion protection.

2.1.5.4 Air Content

The air content of concrete that will be exposed to freezing conditions must be within the limits given below.

NOMINAL MAXIMUM AGGREGATE SIZE	AIR CONTENT PERCENT	
	EXPOSURE CLASS F1	EXPOSURE CLASSES F2 and F3
3/8 inch	6.0	7.5
1/2 inch	5.5	7.0
3/4 inch	5.0	6.0
1.0 inch	4.5	6.0
1.5 inch	4.5	5.5
Note: For specified compressive strengths greater than 5000 psi, air content may be reduced 1 percent		

2.1.5.5 Corrosion Control for Sanitary Sewer Systems

Follow design recommendations outlined in Chapter 7 of ACPA 01-102 or the ACPA 01-110 when hydrogen sulfide is indicated as a potential problem.

2.2 MATERIALS

Except as otherwise specified in the following paragraphs, conform material to Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.

2.2.1 Material Sustainability Criteria

For products in this section, where applicable and to extent allowed by performance criteria, provide and document the following in accordance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS:

- a. Recycled content for fly ash and pozzolan

- b. Recycled content for Ground Iron Blast-Furnace Slag
- c. Recycled content for Silica Fume
- d. Recycled content for Synthetic Fiber Reinforcement
- e. Recycled content for steel, 75 percent minimum

2.2.2 Pigments

Non-fading and lime-resistant

2.2.3 Reinforcement

2.2.3.1 Reinforcing Bars

- a. Deformed Billet-steel: [ASTM A615/A615M](#)
- b. Deformed Low-alloy steel: [ASTM A706/A706M](#)

2.2.3.2 Reinforcing Wire

- a. Plain Wire: [ASTM A1064/A1064M](#)
- b. Deformed Wire: [ASTM A1064/A1064M](#)

2.2.3.3 Welded Wire Reinforcement

- a. Plain Wire: [ASTM A1064/A1064M](#)
- b. Deformed Wire: [ASTM A1064/A1064M](#)

2.2.4 Synthetic Fiber Reinforcement

Provide fiber reinforced concrete in accordance with [ASTM C1116/C1116M](#) Type III, synthetic fiber reinforced concrete, and as follows. Synthetic reinforcing fibers must be 100 percent virgin monofilament polypropylene fibers. Provide fibers that have a specific gravity of 0.9, a minimum tensile strength of 70 ksi, graded per manufacturer, and specifically manufactured to an optimum gradation for use as concrete secondary reinforcement. Toughness indices must meet requirements for performance level I.

2.2.5 Inserts and Embedded Metal

All items embedded in concrete must be of the type required for the intended task, and meet the following standards.

- a. Structural Steel Plates, Angles, etc.: [ASTM A36/A36M](#)
- b. Hot-dipped Galvanized: [ASTM A153/A153M](#)
- c. Proprietary Items: In accordance with manufacturers published literature

2.2.6 Accessories

Submit proper installation instructions and relevant product data for items including, but not limited to, sealants, gaskets, connectors, steps, cable racks and other items installed before or after delivery.

- a. Rubber Gaskets for Circular Concrete Sewer Pipe and Culvert Pipe: [ASTM C443](#).

- b. External Sealing Bands for Noncircular Sewer, Storm Drain and Culvert Pipe: [ASTM C877](#).
- c. Preformed Flexible Joint Sealants for Concrete Pipe, Manholes, and Manufactured Box Sections: [ASTM C990](#).
- d. Elastomeric Joint Sealants: [ASTM C920](#)

2.2.7 Pipe Entry Connectors

Pipe entry connectors must conform to [ASTM C923](#) or [ASTM C1478](#).

2.2.8 Grout

Nonshrink Grout must conform to [ASTM C1107/C1107M](#). Cementitious grout must be a mixture of portland cement, sand, and water. Proportion one part cement to approximately 2.5 parts sand, with the amount of water based on placement method. Provide air entrainment for grout exposed to the weather.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 FABRICATION AND PLACEMENT

Perform fabrication in accordance with [NPCA QC Manual](#) or [ACPA QPC](#) unless specified otherwise.

3.1.1 Forms

Use forms, for manufacturing precast concrete products, of the type and design consistent with industry standards and practices. They should be capable of consistently providing uniform products and dimensions. Construct forms so that the forces and vibrations to which the forms will be subjected can cause no product damage. Clean forms of concrete build-up after each use. Apply form release agents according to the manufacturers recommendations and do not allow to build up on the form casting surfaces.

3.1.2 Reinforcement

Follow applicable ASTM Standard or [ACI 318](#) for placement and splicing. Fabricate cages of reinforcement either by tying the bars, wires or welded wire reinforcement into rigid assemblies or by welding, where permissible, in accordance with [AWS D1.4/D1.4M](#). Position reinforcing as specified by the design and so that the concrete cover conforms to requirements. The tolerance on concrete cover must be one-third of that specified but not more than [1/2 inch](#). Provide concrete cover not less than [1/2 inch](#). Take positive means to assure that the reinforcement does not move significantly during the casting operations.

3.1.3 Embedded Items

Position embedded items at locations specified in the design documents. Perform welding in accordance with [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#) when necessary. Hold rigidly in place inserts, plates, weldments, lifting devices and other items to be imbedded in precast concrete products so that they do not move significantly during casting operations. Submit product data sheets and proper installation instruction for anchors, lifting inserts and other devices. Clearly indicate the products dimensions and safe working load.

3.1.4 Synthetic Fiber Reinforced Concrete

Add fiber reinforcement to the concrete mix at the batch plant in accordance with the applicable sections of [ASTM C1116/C1116M](#) and the recommendations of the manufacturer. Use a minimum of [1.5 pounds of fibers per cubic yard](#) of concrete.

3.2 CONCRETE

3.2.1 Concrete Mixing

Mixing operations must produce batch-to-batch uniformity of strength, consistency, and appearance.

3.2.2 Concrete Placing

Deposit concrete into forms as near to its final location as practical. Keep the free fall of the concrete to a minimum. Consolidate concrete in such a manner that segregation of the concrete is minimized and honeycombed areas are kept to a minimum. Use vibrators to consolidate concrete with frequencies and amplitudes sufficient to produce well consolidated concrete.

3.2.2.1 Cold Weather Concreting

Perform cold weather concreting in accordance with [ACI 306.1](#).

- a. Provide adequate equipment for heating concrete materials and protecting concrete during freezing or near-freezing weather.
- b. All concrete materials, reinforcement, forms, fillers, and ground with which concrete is to come in contact must be free from frost.
- c. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice.
- d. In cold weather the temperature of concrete at the time of placing must not be below [45 degrees F](#). Discard concrete that freezes before its compressive strength reaches [500 psi](#).

3.2.2.2 Hot Weather Concreting

Follow recommendations for hot weather concreting in [ACI 305R](#). During hot weather, give proper attention to constituents, production methods, handling, placing, protection, and curing to prevent excessive concrete temperatures or water evaporation that could impair required strength or serviceability of the member or structure. The temperature of concrete at the time of placing must not exceed [90 degrees F](#).

3.2.3 Concrete Curing

Commence curing immediately following the initial set and completion of surface finishing.

3.2.3.1 Curing by Moisture Retention

Prevent moisture evaporation from exposed surfaces until adequate strength for stripping is reached by one of the following methods:

- a. Cover with polyethylene sheets a minimum of [6 mils](#) thick in accordance with [ASTM C171](#).

- b. Cover with burlap or other absorptive material and keep continually moist.
- c. Use a membrane-curing compound, conforming to [ASTM C309](#) and applied at a rate not less than [200 square ft/gallon](#), or in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.

3.2.3.2 Curing with Heat and Moisture

Do not subject concrete to steam or hot air until after the concrete has attained its initial set. Apply steam, if used, within a suitable enclosure, which permits free circulation of the steam in accordance with [CSA A23.4](#). If hot air is used for curing, take precautions to prevent moisture loss from the concrete. The temperature of the concrete must not be permitted to exceed [150 degrees F](#). These requirements do not apply to products cured with steam under pressure in an autoclave.

3.2.4 Surface Finish

Finish unformed surfaces of wet-cast precast concrete products as specified. If no finishing procedure is specified, finish such surfaces using a strike-off to level the concrete with the top of the form.

3.2.4.1 Formed Non-Architectural Surfaces

Cast surfaces against approved forms following industry practices in cleaning forms, designing concrete mixes, placing and curing concrete. Normal color variations, form joint marks, small surface holes caused by air bubbles, and minor chips and spalls will be accepted but no major imperfections, honeycombs or other major defects will be permitted.

3.2.4.2 Unformed Surfaces

Finish unformed surfaces with a vibrating screed, or by hand with a float. Normal color variations, minor indentations, minor chips and spalls will be accepted. Major imperfections, honeycombs, or other major defects are not permitted.

3.2.4.3 [Special Finishes](#)

Troweled, broom or other finishes must be according to the requirements of project documents and performed in accordance with industry standards or supplier specifications. Submit finishes for approval when required by the project documents. The sample finishes must be approved prior to the start of production.

3.2.5 Stripping Products from Forms

Do not remove products from the forms until the concrete reaches the compressive strength for stripping required by the design. If no such requirement exists, products may be removed from the forms after the final set of concrete provided that stripping damage is minimal.

3.2.6 Patching and Repair

No repair is required to formed surfaces that are relatively free of air voids and honeycombed areas, unless the surfaces are required by the design to be finished.

3.2.6.1 Repairing Minor Defects

Defects that will not impair the functional use or expected life of a precast concrete product may be repaired by any method that does not impair the product.

3.2.6.2 Repairing Honeycombed Areas

When honeycombed areas are to be repaired, remove all loose material and cut back the areas into essentially horizontal or vertical planes to a depth at which coarse aggregate particles break under chipping rather than being dislodged. Use proprietary repair materials in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. If a proprietary repair material is not used, saturate the area with water. Immediately prior to repair, the area should be damp, but free of excess water. Apply a cement-sand grout or an approved bonding agent to the chipped surfaces, followed immediately by consolidating an appropriate repair material into the cavity.

3.2.6.3 Repairing Major Defects

Evaluate, by qualified personnel, defects in precast concrete products which impair the functional use or the expected life of products to determine if repairs are feasible and, if so, to establish the repair procedure.

3.2.7 Shipping Products

Do not ship products until they are at least five days old, unless it can be shown that the concrete strength has reached at least 75 percent of the specified 28-day strength, or that damage will not result, impairing the performance of the product.

3.3 INSTALLATION

3.3.1 Site Access

It is the Contractor's responsibility to provide adequate access to the site to facilitate hauling, storage and proper handling of the precast concrete products.

3.3.2 General Requirements

- a. Install precast concrete products to the lines and grades shown in the contract documents or otherwise specified.
- b. Lift products by suitable lifting devices at points provided by the precast concrete producer.
- c. Install products in accordance with the precast concrete producer's instructions. In the absence of such instructions, install underground utility structures in accordance with [ASTM C891](#). Install pipe and manhole sections in accordance with the procedures outlined by the American Concrete Pipe Association.
- d. Field modifications to the product will relieve the precast producer of liability even if such modifications result in the failure of the product.

3.3.3 Water Tightness

Where water tightness is a necessary performance characteristic of the precast concrete product's end use, watertight joints, connectors and inserts should be used to ensure the integrity of the entire system.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.4.1 Site Tests

When water tightness testing is required for an underground product, use one of the following methods:

3.4.2 Vacuum Testing

Prior to backfill vacuum test system according to [ASTM C1244](#).

3.4.3 Water Testing

Perform water testing according to the contract documents and precast concrete producer's recommendations.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 04 20 00

UNIT MASONRY
11/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN CONCRETE INSTITUTE INTERNATIONAL (ACI)

ACI 318 (2014; Errata 1-2 2014; Errata 3-5 2015; Errata 6 2016; Errata 7-9 2017) Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete (ACI 318-14) and Commentary (ACI 318R-14)

ACI SP-66 (2004) ACI Detailing Manual

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A1008/A1008M (2016) Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable

ASTM A1064/A1064M (2017) Standard Specification for Carbon-Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for Concrete

ASTM A153/A153M (2016) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware

ASTM A167 (2011) Standard Specification for Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip

ASTM A185/A185M (2007) Standard Specification for Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain, for Concrete

ASTM A615/A615M (2016) Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

ASTM A641/A641M (2009a; R 2014) Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire

ASTM A653/A653M (2017) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or

	Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM A951/A951M	(2011) Standard Specification for Steel Wire for Masonry Joint Reinforcement
ASTM A996/A996M	(2016) Standard Specification for Rail-Steel and Axle-Steel Deformed Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM B370	(2012) Standard Specification for Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction
ASTM C1019	(2018) Standard Test Method for Sampling and Testing Grout
ASTM C1314	(2014) Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Masonry Prisms
ASTM C1384	(2012a) Standard Specification for Admixtures for Masonry Mortars
ASTM C144	(2011) Standard Specification for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar
ASTM C1611/C1611M	(2014) Standard Test Method for Slump Flow of Self-Consolidating Concrete
ASTM C207	(2006; R 2011) Standard Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes
ASTM C216	(2017) Standard Specification for Facing Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale)
ASTM C270	(2014a) Standard Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry
ASTM C476	(2018) Standard Specification for Grout for Masonry
ASTM C494/C494M	(2017) Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete
ASTM C641	(2017) Standard Test Method for Iron Staining Materials in Lightweight Concrete Aggregates
ASTM C652	(2017a) Standard Specification for Hollow Brick (Hollow Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale)
ASTM C67/C67M	(2018) Standard Test Methods for Sampling and Testing Brick and Structural Clay Tile
ASTM C73	(2017) Standard Specification for Calcium Silicate Brick (Sand-Lime Brick)
ASTM C780	(2017) Standard Test Method for

Preconstruction and Construction
Evaluation of Mortars for Plain and
Reinforced Unit Masonry

ASTM C979/C979M (2016) Standard Specification for Pigments
for Integrally Colored Concrete

ASTM D2000 (2012; R 2017) Standard Classification
System for Rubber Products in Automotive
Applications

ASTM D2287 (2012) Nonrigid Vinyl Chloride Polymer and
Copolymer Molding and Extrusion Compounds

ASTM E514/E514M (2014a) Standard Test Method for Water
Penetration and Leakage Through Masonry

THE MASONRY SOCIETY (TMS)

TMS MSJC (2016) Masonry Standard Joint Committee's
(MSJC) Book - Building Code Requirements
and Specification for Masonry Structures,
Containing TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, TMS
602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6, and Companion
Commentaries

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation;
submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control
approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability
eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING.
Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL
PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Cut CMU Drawings; G

Reinforcement Detail Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Hot Weather Procedures; G

Cold Weather Procedures; G

Clay or Shale Brick; G

Cementitious Materials; G

SD-04 Samples

Mock-Up Panel; G

Clay or Shale Brick; G

Concrete Masonry Units (CMU); G

Split Face Concrete Masonry Units (CMU); G

Admixtures for Masonry Mortar; G

Anchors, Ties, and Bar Positioners; G

Joint Reinforcement; G

SD-05 Design Data

Masonry Compressive Strength; G

Bracing Calculations; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Efflorescence Test

Field Testing of Mortar

Field Testing of Grout

Prism Tests

Single-Wythe Masonry Wall Water Penetration Test

SD-07 Certificates

Special Masonry Inspector Qualifications

Clay or Shale Brick

Concrete Masonry Units (CMU)

Precast Concrete Units

Cementitious Materials

Admixtures for Masonry Mortar

Admixtures for Grout

Anchors, Ties, and Bar Positioners

Joint Reinforcement

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Admixtures for Masonry Mortar

Admixtures for Grout

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Take-Back Program

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.3.1 Masonry Mock-Up Panels

1.3.1.1 Mock-Up Panel Location

After material samples are approved and prior to starting masonry work, construct a [mock-up panel](#) for each type and color of masonry required. At least 48 hours prior to constructing the panel or panels, submit written notification to the Contracting Officer. Do not build-in mock-up panels as part of the structure; locate mock-up panels where directed. Construct portable mock-up panels or locate in an area where they will not be disrupted during construction.

1.3.1.2 Mock-Up Panel Configuration

Construct mock-up panels L-shaped or otherwise configured to represent all of the wall elements. Construct panels of the size necessary to demonstrate the acceptable level of workmanship for each type of masonry represented on the project. Provide a straight panel or a leg of an L-shaped panel of minimum size [8 feet](#) long by [4 feet](#) high.

1.3.1.3 Mock-Up Panel Composition

Show full color range, texture, and bond pattern of the masonry work. Demonstrate mortar joint tooling; grouting of reinforced vertical cores, collar joints, bond beams, and lintels; positioning, securing, and lapping of reinforcing steel; positioning and lapping of joint reinforcement (including prefabricated corners); and cleaning of masonry work during the construction of the panels. Also include installation or application procedures for anchors, wall ties, [CMU control joints](#), [brick expansion joints](#), [insulation](#), [flashing](#), [brick soldier](#), [row lock courses](#) and [weepers](#). Include a masonry bonded corner, a stacked bond corner, and installation of electrical boxes and conduit. When the panel represents reinforced masonry, include a [2 by 2 foot](#) opening placed at least [2 feet](#) above the panel base and [2 feet](#) away from all free edges, corners, and control joints. Provide required reinforcing around this opening as well as at wall corners and control joints.

1.3.1.4 Mock-Up Panel Construction Method

Where anchored veneer walls or cavity walls are required, demonstrate and receive approval for the method of construction; i.e., either bring up the two wythes together or separately, with the insulation and appropriate ties placed within the specified tolerances across the cavity. Demonstrate provisions to preclude mortar or grout droppings in the cavity and to provide a clear open air space of the dimensions shown on the drawings. Where masonry is to be grouted, demonstrate and receive approval on the method that will be used to bring up the masonry wythes; support the reinforcing bars; and grout cells, bond beams, lintels, and collar joints using the requirements specified herein. When water-repellent is specified to be applied to the masonry, apply the approved product to the mock-up panel. Construct panels on a properly designed concrete foundation.

1.3.1.5 Mock-Up Panel Purpose

The completed panels is used as the standard of workmanship for the type of masonry represented. Do not commence masonry work until the mock-up panel for that type of masonry construction has been completed and approved.

Protect panels from the weather and construction operations until the masonry work has been completed and approved. Perform cleaning procedures on the mockup and obtain approval of the Contracting Officer prior to cleaning the building. After completion of the work, completely remove the mock-up panels, including all foundation concrete, from the construction site.

1.3.2 Special Masonry Inspector Qualifications

Refer to Section 01 45 35 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS for qualifications and responsibilities of the masonry special inspector.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver, store, handle, and protect material to avoid chipping, breakage, and contact with soil or contaminating material. Store and prepare materials in already disturbed areas to minimize project site disturbance and size of project site.

1.4.1 Masonry Units

Cover and protect masonry units from precipitation. Conform to handling and storage requirements of TMS MSJC.

- a. Pack glazed brick, glazed structural clay tile, and prefaced concrete masonry units in the manufacturer's standard paper cartons, trays, or shrink wrapped pallets with a divider between each unit. Do not stack pallets. Do not remove units from cartons until cartons are placed on scaffolds or in the location where units are to be laid.
- b. Mark prefabricated lintels on top sides to show either the lintel schedule number or the number and size of top and bottom bars.

1.4.2 Reinforcement, Anchors, and Ties

Store steel reinforcing bars, coated anchors, ties, and joint reinforcement above the ground. Maintain steel reinforcing bars and uncoated ties free of loose mill scale and loose rust.

1.4.3 Cementitious Materials, Sand and Aggregates

Deliver cementitious and other packaged materials in unopened containers, plainly marked and labeled with manufacturers' names and brands. Store cementitious material in dry, weathertight enclosures or completely cover. Handle cementitious materials in a manner that will prevent the inclusion of foreign materials and damage by water or dampness. Store sand and aggregates in a manner to prevent contamination and segregation.

1.5 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

Conform to TMS MSJC for hot and cold weather masonry erection.

1.5.1 Hot Weather Procedures

When ambient air temperature exceeds 100 degrees F, or exceeds 90 degrees F and the wind velocity is greater than 8 mph, comply with TMS MSJC Article 1.8 D for: preparation prior to conducting masonry work; construction while masonry work is in progress; and protection for newly completed masonry.

1.5.2 Cold Weather Procedures

When ambient temperature is below 40 degrees F, comply with TMS MSJC Article 1.8 C for: preparation prior to conducting masonry work; construction while masonry work is in progress; and protection for newly completed masonry.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

2.1.1 Design - Specified Compressive Strength of Masonry

The specified compressive strength of masonry, f'_m , is 1,500 psi.

2.1.2 Performance - Verify Masonry Compressive Strength

Verify specified compressive strength of masonry using the "Unit Strength Method" of TMS MSJC. Submit calculations and certifications of unit and mortar strength.

Verify specified compressive strength of masonry using the "Prism Test Method" of TMS MSJC when the "Unit Strength Method" cannot be used. Submit test results.

2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS

2.2.1 General Requirements

Do not change the source of materials, which will affect the appearance of the finished work, after the work has started except with Contracting Officer's approval. Submit test reports from an approved independent laboratory. Certify test reports on a previously tested material as the same materials as that proposed for use in this project. Submit certificates of compliance stating that the materials meet the specified requirements.

2.2.2 Clay or Shale Brick

2.2.2.1 General

2.2.2.1.1 Sample Submittal

Submit brick samples as specified, showing the color range and texture of clay or shale brick. Limit units used on the project to those that conform to the approved sample. Submit sample of colored mortar with applicable masonry unit and color samples of three stretcher units and one unit for each type of special shape.

2.2.2.1.2 Uniformity

Manufacture bricks at one time and from the same run. Deliver clay or shale brick units factory-blended to provide a uniform appearance and color range in the completed wall.

2.2.2.1.3 Recycled Content

Follow FGI for recycled content requirements.

2.2.2.1.4 Efflorescence Test

Test clay brick that will be exposed to weathering for efflorescence in accordance with **ASTM C67/C67M**. Schedule tests far enough in advance of starting masonry work to permit retesting if necessary. Units meeting the definition of "effloresced" are subject to rejection.

2.2.2.2 Solid Clay or Shale Brick

Provide solid clay or shale brick that conforms to **ASTM C216**, Type FBX. Where brick cores, recesses, or deformation would be exposed to view, provide 100 percent solid units. Provide brick with texture and color to match the brick indicated.

Provide brick with specified sizes.

- a. Modular size, 3-5/8 inches thick, 2-1/4 inches high, and 7-5/8 inches long.

2.2.2.3 Hollow Clay or Shale Brick

Provide hollow clay or shale brick that conforms to **ASTM C652**, Type HBS.

- a. Provide brick size of 3-5/8 inches thick, 2-1/4 inches high, and 7-5/8 inches long.
- b. Where vertical reinforcement is shown in hollow brick, provide hollow brick designed to provide precise vertical alignment of the cells, with minimum cell dimension of 2-1/2 inches.

2.2.3 Concrete Units

2.2.3.1 Aggregates

Test lightweight aggregates, and blends of lightweight and heavier aggregates in proportions used in producing the units, for stain-producing iron compounds in accordance with **ASTM C641**, visual classification method. Do not incorporate aggregates for which the iron stain deposited on the filter paper exceeds the "light stain" classification.

Use industrial waste by-products (air-cooled slag, cinders, or bottom ash), ground waste glass and concrete, granulated slag, and expanded slag in aggregates.

2.2.3.2 Concrete Masonry Units (CMU)

2.2.3.2.1 Cement

Use only cement that has a low alkali content and is of one brand.

2.2.3.2.2 Size

Provide units with specified dimension of 7-5/8 inches wide, 7-5/8 inches high, and 7-5/8 inches long.

2.2.3.2.3 Surfaces

Provide units with exposed surfaces that are smooth and of uniform texture.

2.2.3.2.4 Weather Exposure

Provide concrete masonry units with water-repellant admixture added during manufacture where units will be exposed to weather.

2.2.3.2.5 Unit Types

Hollow Load-Bearing Units: ASTM C90, normal weight. Provide load-bearing units for exterior walls, foundation walls, load-bearing walls, and shear walls.

2.2.3.2.6 Jamb Units

Provide jamb units of the shapes and sizes to conform with wall units. Solid units may be incorporated in the masonry work where necessary to fill out at corners, gable slopes, and elsewhere as approved.

Provide sash jamb units with a 3/4 by 3/4 inch groove near the center at end of each unit.

2.2.3.3 Split Face Concrete Masonry Units (CMU)

2.2.3.3.1 Cement

Use only cement that has a low alkali content and is of one brand.

2.2.3.3.2 Size

Provide units with specified dimension of 3-5/8 inches wide, 7-5/8 inches high, and 7-5/8 inches long.

2.2.3.3.3 Surfaces

Provide units with exposed surfaces that are smooth and of uniform texture.

2.2.3.3.4 Weather Exposure

Provide concrete masonry units with water-repellant admixture added during manufacture where units will be exposed to weather.

2.2.3.3.5 Unit Types

Hollow Load-Bearing Units: ASTM C90, normal weight. Provide load-bearing units for exterior walls, foundation walls, load-bearing walls, and shear walls.

2.2.3.3.6 Jamb Units

Provide jamb units of the shapes and sizes to conform with wall units. Solid units may be incorporated in the masonry work where necessary to fill out at corners, gable slopes, and elsewhere as approved.

Provide sash jamb units with a 3/4 by 3/4 inch groove near the center at end of each unit.

2.2.3.4 Architectural Units

Provide units that are integrally colored during manufacture, with color

Limestone.

2.2.4 Precast Concrete Units

2.2.4.1 General

- a. Provide precast concrete trim, lintels, copings, splashblocks and sills that are factory-made units in a plant regularly engaged in producing precast concrete units. Unless otherwise indicated, provide precast concrete with minimum 3000 psi compressive strength, conforming to Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE using 1/2 inch to No. 4 nominal-size coarse aggregate, and with reinforcement required for handling of the units. Maintain minimum clearance of 3/4 inch between reinforcement and faces of units.
- b. Unless precast-concrete items have been subjected during manufacture to saturated-steam pressure of at least 120 psi for at least 5 hours, either damp-cure for 24 hours or steam-cure and then age under cover for 28 days or longer. In precast concrete members weighing over 80 pounds provide built-in loops of galvanized wire or other approved provisions for lifting and anchoring.
- c. Fabricate units with beds and joints at right angles to the face, with sharp true arises and with drip grooves on the underside where units overhang walls. Form exposed-to-view surfaces free of surface voids, spalls, cracks, and chipped or broken edges and with uniform appearance and color. Unless otherwise specified, provide units with a smooth dense finish.
- d. Prior to installation, wet and inspect each unit for crazing. Items showing evidence of dusting, spalling, crazing, or having surfaces treated with a protective coating will be rejected.
- e. Submit specified factory certificates.
- f. Provide architectural cast stone masonry trim, copings, heads, and sills that are manufactured in a plant by a producer regularly engaged in producing cast stone. Provide cast stone units that comply with ASTM C1364. Submit test reports and three exemplars of the same cast stone product installed in similar projects in similar climatic conditions.

2.2.4.2 Precast Concrete Lintels

Provide precast concrete lintels, unless otherwise shown, of a thickness equal to the wall and reinforced with minimum two No. 4 bars for the full length. Provide top and bottom bars for lintels over 36 inches in length. Provide at least 8 inches bearing at each end. Label the top of lintels and clearly mark each lintel to show location in the structure. Design reinforced lintels in conformance with ACI 318 for flexural and shear strength, using concrete with a minimum 28 day compressive strength of 3000 psi. Limit lintel deflection due to dead plus live load to L/600 or 0.3 inches.

2.2.4.3 Precast Concrete Sills and Copings

Cast sills and copings washes. For windows having mullions, cast sills in sections with head joints at mullions and a 1/4 inch allowance for mortar joints. Roughen the ends of sills, except a 3/4 inch wide margin at

exposed surfaces, for bond. Provide rounded nosings on treads of door sills.

2.2.5 Calcium Silicate Masonry Units

To ASTM C73, Grade SW; solid units that have been pressure formed and autoclaved; 3-5/8 inch bed depth; special shapes as indicated; and as follows:

- a. Modular Size - Lugged Sill: 7-5/8 inches high, 31-5/8 inches long, verify all cast stone elements on Drawings.
- b. Modular Size - Sill: 7-5/8 inches high, 40-5/8 inches long, verify all cast stone elements on Drawings.
- c. Texture: smooth.
- d. Color: Limestone.

2.3 EQUIPMENT

2.3.1 Vibrators

Maintain at least one spare vibrator on site at all times.

2.3.2 Grout Pumps

Pumping through aluminum tubes is not permitted.

2.4 MATERIALS

2.4.1 Mortar Materials

2.4.1.1 Cementitious Materials

Provide cementitious materials that conform to those permitted by [ASTM C270](#).

2.4.1.2 Hydrated Lime and Alternates

Provide lime that conforms to one of the materials permitted by [ASTM C207](#) for use in combination with portland cement, hydraulic cement, and blended hydraulic cement. Do not use lime in combination with masonry cement or mortar cement.

2.4.1.3 Colored Mortar

Use mortar pigment that conforms to [ASTM C979/C979M](#). Add pigment to mortar to produce a uniform color matching [natural gray](#). Furnish pigments in accurately pre-measured and packaged units that can be added to a measured amount of cementitious materials or supply pigments via preblended cementitious materials or dry mortar mix.

- a. In masonry cement or mortar cement, do not exceed 5 percent of cement weight for mineral oxide pigment; do not exceed 1 percent of cement weight for carbon black pigment.
- b. In cement-lime mortar mix, do not exceed 10 percent of cementitious materials' weight for mineral oxide pigment; do not exceed 2 percent of cementitious materials' weight for carbon black pigment.

2.4.1.4 Admixtures for Masonry Mortar

In cold weather, use a non-chloride based accelerating admixture that conforms to [ASTM C1384](#), unless Type III portland cement is used in the mortar.

In showers and kitchens, use mortar that contains a water-repellent admixture that conforms to [ASTM C1384](#). Provide a water-repellent admixture, conforming to [ASTM C1384](#) and of the same brand and manufacturer as the block's integral water-repellent, in the mortar used to place concrete masonry units that have an integral water-repellent admixture.

2.4.1.5 Aggregate and Water

Provide aggregate (sand) and water that conform to materials permitted by [ASTM C270](#).

2.4.2 Mortar Materials for Calcium Silicate Masonry Units

- a. Portland Cement: to gray
- b. Hydrated Lime: to ASTM C207, Type S.
- c. Mortar Aggregate: to ASTM C144, standard masonry type; clean, dry, protected against dampness, freezing, and foreign matter.
- d. Color Pigment: natural oxide pigment, gray
- e. Water: potable, clean and free of deleterious amounts of acids, alkalies or organic materials.

2.4.3 Grout and Ready-Mix Grout Materials

2.4.3.1 Cementitious Materials for Grout

Provide cementitious materials that conform to those permitted by [ASTM C476](#).

2.4.3.2 Admixtures for Grout

Water-reducing admixtures that conform to [ASTM C494/C494M](#) Type F or G and viscosity-modifying admixtures that conform to [ASTM C494/C494M](#) Type S are permitted for use in grout. Other admixtures require approval by the Contracting Officer.

In cold weather, a non-chloride based accelerating admixture may be used subject to approval by the Contracting Officer; use accelerating admixture that is non-corrosive and conforms to [ASTM C494/C494M](#), Type C.

2.4.3.3 Aggregate and Water

Provide fine and coarse aggregates and water that conform to materials permitted by [ASTM C476](#).

2.5 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

2.5.1 Mortar Mix

- a. Provide mortar Type S unless specified otherwise herein. Do not use

masonry cement in the mortar. Do not use air-entrainment in the mortar.

- b. Provide Type S mortar for non-load-bearing, non-shear-wall interior masonry.

2.5.2 Grout and Ready Mix Grout Mix

Use grout that conforms to [ASTM C476](#), fine. Use conventional grout with a slump between [8 and 11 inches](#). Use self-consolidating grout with slump flow of [24 to 30 inches](#) and a visual stability index (VSI) not greater than 1. Provide minimum grout strength of [2000 psi](#) in 28 days, as tested in accordance with [ASTM C1019](#). Do not change proportions and do not use materials with different physical or chemical characteristics in grout for the work unless additional evidence is furnished that grout meets the specified requirements. Use ready-mixed grout that conforms to [ASTM C476](#).

2.6 ACCESSORIES

2.6.1 Grout Barriers

Grout barriers for vertical cores that consist of fine mesh wire, fiberglass, or expanded metal.

2.6.2 Anchors, Ties, and Bar Positioners

2.6.2.1 General

- a. Fabricate anchors and ties without drips or crimps. Size anchors and ties to provide a minimum of [5/8 inch](#) mortar cover from each face of masonry.
- b. Fabricate steel wire anchors and ties shall from wire conforming to [ASTM A1064/A1064M](#) and hot-dip galvanize in accordance with [ASTM A153/A153M](#).
- c. Fabricate joint reinforcement in conformance with [ASTM A951/A951M](#). Hot dip galvanize joint reinforcement in exterior walls and in interior walls exposed to moist environment in conformance with [ASTM A153/A153M](#). Galvanize joint reinforcement in other interior walls in conformance with [ASTM A641/A641M](#); coordinate with paragraph JOINT REINFORCEMENT below.
- d. Fabricate sheet metal anchors and ties in conformance with [ASTM A1008/A1008M](#). Hot dip galvanize sheet metal anchors and ties in exterior walls and in interior walls exposed to moist environment in compliance with [ASTM A153/A153M](#) Class B. Galvanize sheet metal anchors and ties in other interior walls in compliance with [ASTM A653/A653M](#), Coating Designation G60.
- e. Submit two anchors, ties and bar positioners of each type used, as samples.

2.6.2.2 Wire Mesh Anchors

Provide wire mesh anchors of [1/4 inch](#) mesh galvanized hardware cloth, conforming to [ASTM A185/A185M](#), with length not less than [12 inches](#), at intersections of interior non-bearing masonry walls.

2.6.2.3 Dovetail Anchors

Provide dovetail anchors of 3/16 inch diameter steel wire, triangular shaped, and attached to a 12 gauge or heavier steel dovetail section. Use these anchors to connect the exterior masonry wythe as it passes over the face of concrete columns, beams, or walls. Fill cells immediately above and below these anchors unless solid units are used.

2.6.2.4 Adjustable Anchors

2.6.2.4.1 Anchorage to Structural Steel

Provide stainless steel adjustable anchors for connecting masonry walls to the structural steel frame that have maximum deflection of 0.05 inch, when exposed to a load of 100 pounds inward or outward when placed at 16 inches on center; submit test data to verify compliance. Provide zinc-rich paint for touching up paint after welding galvanized anchors to structural steel.

2.6.2.4.2 Anchorage of Veneer to Light Gauge Steel or Concrete Backing

Use one of the following types of adjustable anchors to connect veneer to light gauge steel or concrete backing:

- a. sheet metal at least 7/8 inch wide, 0.06 inch thick, and with corrugations having a wavelength of 0.3 to 0.5 inch and an amplitude of 0.06 to 0.10 inch or bent, notched or punched to provide equivalent performance;
- b. wire anchors of minimum size W1.7 with ends bent to form a minimum 2 inches extension and without drips;
- c. or wire pintle anchors used in conjunction with joint reinforcement.

Do not exceed 1/16 inch clearance between connecting parts of the tie. Assemble adjustable anchors to prevent disengagement. Provide pintle anchors with one or more pintle legs of wire size W2.8 and an offset not exceeding 1-1/4 inch.

2.6.2.5 Veneer Anchor Screws

Provide screws for attachment of veneer anchors to cold-formed steel framing members of size No. 12. Provide length of screws such that the screws penetrate the holding member by not less than 5/8 inch.

2.6.2.6 Bar Positioners

Factory-fabricate bar positioners, used to prevent displacement of reinforcing bars during the course of construction, from 9 gauge steel wire or equivalent, and hot-dip galvanized.

2.6.3 Joint Reinforcement

Factory fabricate joint reinforcement in conformance with ASTM A951/A951M, welded construction. Provide ladder type joint reinforcement, having one longitudinal wire in the mortar bed of each face shell for hollow units and one wire for solid units and with all wires a minimum of 9 gauge. Size joint reinforcement to provide a minimum of 5/8 inch cover from each face. Space crosswires not more than 16 inches. Provide joint reinforcement for straight runs in flat sections not less than 10 feet long. Provide joint

reinforcement with factory formed corners and intersections. If approved for use, joint reinforcement may be furnished with adjustable wall tie features. Submit one piece of each type used, including corner and wall intersection pieces, showing at least two cross wires.

2.6.4 Reinforcing Steel Bars

Reinforcing steel bars and rods shall conform to [ASTM A615/A615M](#) or [ASTM A996/A996M](#), Grade 60.

2.6.5 Concrete Masonry Control Joint Keys

Provide control joint keys of a factory fabricated solid section of natural or synthetic rubber (or combination thereof) conforming to [ASTM D2000](#) M2AA-805 with a minimum durometer hardness of 80 or polyvinyl chloride conforming to [ASTM D2287](#) Type PVC 654-4 with a minimum durometer hardness of 85. Form the control joint key with a solid shear section not less than [5/8 inch](#) thick and [3/8 inch](#) thick flanges, with a tolerance of plus or minus [1/16 inch](#), to fit neatly, but without forcing, in masonry unit jamb sash grooves.

2.6.6 Through Wall Flashing and Weeps

2.6.6.1 General

Provide coated copper, copper or stainless steel sheet, self-adhesive rubberized sheet, or reinforced membrane sheet flashing except that flashing indicated to terminate in reglets shall be metal or coated-metal flashing and except that the material shall be one which is not adversely affected by dampproofing material.

2.6.6.2 Coated-Copper Flashing

Provide [7 ounce](#), electrolytic copper sheet, uniformly coated on both sides with acidproof, alkaliproof, asphalt impregnated kraft paper or polyethylene sheets.

2.6.6.3 Copper or Stainless Steel Flashing

Provide copper sheet, complying with [ASTM B370](#), minimum [16 ounce](#) weight; or stainless steel, [ASTM A167](#), Type 304 or 316, [0.015 inch](#) thick, No. 2D finish. Where indicated, provide with factory-fabricated deformations that mechanically bond flashing against horizontal movement in all directions, where deformations consist of dimples, diagonal corrugations, or a combination of dimples and transverse corrugations.

2.6.6.4 Reinforced Membrane Flashing

Provide polyester film core with a reinforcing fiberglass scrim bonded to one side. Provide membrane that is impervious to moisture, flexible, is not affected by caustic alkalis, and after being exposed for not less than 1/2 hour to a temperature of [32 degrees F](#), shows no cracking when, at that temperature, it is bent 180 degrees over a [1/16 inch](#) diameter mandrel and then bent at the same point over the same size mandrel in the opposite direction 360 degrees.

2.6.6.5 Rubberized Flashing

Provide self-adhesive rubberized asphalt sheet flashing consisting of [32-mil](#)

thick pliable and highly adhesive rubberized asphalt compound bonded completely and integrally to 8-mil thick, high density, cross-laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of 40 mils. Provide rubberized, asphalt-based mastic and surface conditioner that are each approved by flashing manufacturer for use with flashing material.

2.6.6.6 Weep Ventilators

Provide weep ventilators that are prefabricated from stainless steel or plastic. Provide inserts with grill or louver-type openings designed to allow the passage of moisture from cavities and to prevent the entrance of insects, and with a rectangular closure strip to prevent mortar droppings from clogging the opening. Provide ventilators with compressible flanges to fit in a standard 3/8 inch wide mortar joint and with height equal to the nominal height of the unit.

2.6.6.7 Single-Wythe Exterior Wall CMU Flashing System

In single-wythe exterior CMU walls, provide a system of CMU cell flashing pans and interlocking CMU web covers made from UV-resistant, high-density polyethylene. For exterior CMU walls, provide a flashing/weep system in open cores that do not receive grout. Cell flashing pans are to have integral weep spouts built into mortar bed joints that extend into the cell to prevent clogging with mortar.

2.6.6.8 Metal Drip Edge

Provide stainless steel drip edge, 15-mil thick, hemmed edges, with down-turned drip at the outside edge and upturned dam at the inside edge for use with membrane flashings.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

Prior to start of work, verify the applicable conditions as set forth in TMS MSJC, inspection.

3.2 PREPARATION

3.2.1 Stains

Protect exposed surfaces from mortar and other stains. When mortar joints are tooled, remove mortar from exposed surfaces with fiber brushes and wooden paddles. Protect base of walls from splash stains by covering adjacent ground with sand, sawdust, or polyethylene.

3.2.2 Loads

Do not apply uniform loads for at least 12 hours or concentrated loads for at least 72 hours after masonry is constructed. Provide temporary bracing as required.

3.2.3 Concrete Surfaces

Where masonry is to be placed, clean concrete of laitance, dust, dirt, oil, organic matter, or other foreign materials and slightly roughen to provide a surface texture with a depth of at least 1/8 inch. Sandblast, if necessary, to remove laitance from pores and to expose the aggregate.

3.2.4 Shelf Angles

Adjust shelf angles as required to keep the masonry level and at the proper elevation.

3.2.5 Bracing

Provide bracing and scaffolding necessary for masonry work. Design bracing to resist wind pressure as required by OSHA and local codes and submit [bracing calculations](#), sealed by a registered professional engineer. Do not remove bracing in less than 10 days.

3.3 ERECTION

3.3.1 General

- a. Coordinate masonry work with the work of other trades to accommodate built-in items and to avoid cutting and patching. Lay masonry units in the indicated bond pattern. Lay facing courses level with back-up courses, unless the use of adjustable ties has been approved in which case the tolerances is plus or minus [1/2 inch](#). Adjust each unit to its final position while mortar is still soft and has plastic consistency.
- b. Remove and clean units that have been disturbed after the mortar has stiffened, and relay with fresh mortar. Keep air spaces, cavities, chases, expansion joints, and spaces to be grouted free from mortar and other debris. Select units to be used in exposed masonry surfaces from those having the least amount of chipped edges or other imperfections detracting from the appearance of the finished work.
- c. When necessary to temporarily discontinue the work, step (rack) back the masonry for joining when work resumes. Toothing may be used only when specifically approved by the Contracting Officer. Before resuming work, remove loose mortar and thoroughly clean the exposed joint. Cover the top of walls subjected to rain or snow with nonstaining waterproof covering or membrane when work is not in process. Extend the covering a minimum of [610 mm 2 feet](#) down on each side of the wall and hold securely in place.
- d. Ensure that units being laid and surfaces to receive units are free of water film and frost. Lay solid units in a nonfurrowed full bed of mortar. Bevel mortar for veneer wythes and slope down toward the cavity side. Shove units into place so that the vertical joints are tight. Completely fill vertical joints between solid units with mortar, except where indicated at control, expansion, and isolation joints. Place hollow units so that mortar extends to the depth of the face shell at heads and beds, unless otherwise indicated. Mortar will be permitted to protrude up to [1/2 inch](#) into the space or cells to be grouted. Provide means to prevent mortar from dropping into the space below or clean grout spaces prior to grouting.
- e. In multi-wythe construction with collar joints no more than [3/4 inch](#) wide, bring up the inner wythe not more than [16 inches](#) ahead of the outer wythe. Fill collar joints with mortar during the laying of the facing wythe, and filling shall not lag the laying of the facing wythe by back-buttering each unit as it is laid.

3.3.1.1 Jointing

Tool mortar joints when the mortar is thumbprint hard. Tool horizontal joints after tooling vertical joints. Brush mortar joints to remove loose and excess mortar.

3.3.1.1.1 Tooled Joints

Tool mortar joints in exposed exterior and interior masonry surfaces concave, using a jointer that is slightly larger than the joint width so that complete contact is made along the edges of the unit. Perform tooling so that the mortar is compressed and the joint surface is sealed. Use a jointer of sufficient length to obtain a straight and true mortar joint. No exterior joints are to be left un-tooled.

3.3.1.1.2 Flush Joints

Flush cut mortar joints in concealed masonry surfaces and joints at electrical outlet boxes in wet areas. Finish flush cut joints by cutting off the mortar flush with the face of the wall. Point joints in unparged masonry walls below grade tight. For architectural units, such as fluted units, completely fill both the head and bed joints and flush cut.

3.3.1.1.3 Door and Window Frame Joints

On the exposed interior side of exterior frames, joints between frames and abutting masonry walls shall be raked to a depth of $\frac{3}{8}$ inch. On the exterior side of exterior frames, joints between frames and abutting masonry walls shall be raked to a depth of $\frac{3}{8}$ inch.

3.3.1.1.4 Joint Widths

- a. Construct brick masonry with mortar joint widths equal to the difference between the specified and nominal dimensions of the unit, within tolerances permitted by TMS MSJC.
- b. Provide $\frac{3}{8}$ inch wide mortar joints in concrete masonry, except for prefaced concrete masonry units.
- c. Provide $\frac{3}{8}$ inch wide mortar joints on unfaced side of prefaced concrete masonry units and not less than $\frac{3}{16}$ inch nor more than $\frac{1}{4}$ inch wide on prefaced side.
- d. Maintain mortar joint widths within tolerances permitted by TMS MSJC

3.3.1.2 Cutting and Fitting

Use full units of the proper size wherever possible, in lieu of cut units. Locate cut units where they would have the least impact on the architectural aesthetic goals of the facility. Perform cutting and fitting, including that required to accommodate the work of others, by masonry mechanics using power masonry saws. Concrete masonry units may be wet or dry cut. Before being placed in the work, dry wet-cut units to the same surface-dry appearance as uncut units being laid in the wall. Provide cut edges that are clean, true and sharp.

- a. Carefully make openings in the masonry so that wall plates, cover plates or escutcheons required by the installation will completely conceal the openings and will have bottoms parallel with the masonry

bed joints. Provide reinforced masonry lintels above openings over 12 inches wide for pipes, ducts, cable trays, and other wall penetrations, unless steel sleeves are used.

- b. Do not reduce masonry units in size by more than one-third in height and one-half in length. Do not locate cut products at ends of walls, corners, and other openings.

3.3.1.3 Unfinished Work

Rack back unfinished work for joining with new work. Toothing may be resorted to only when specifically approved by the Contracting Officer. Remove loose mortar and thoroughly clean the exposed joints before laying new work.

3.3.1.4 Clay Masonry Expansion Joints

Provide clay masonry expansion joints as indicated. Construct by filling with a compressible foam pad. Ensure that no mortar or other noncompressible materials are within the joint. Install backer rod and sealant in accordance with Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.

3.3.1.5 Control Joints

Provide control joints in concrete masonry as indicated. Construct by using special control-joint units or using sash jamb units with control joint key in accordance with the details shown on the Drawings. Form a continuous vertical joint at control joint locations, including through bond beams, by utilizing half blocks in alternating courses on each side of the joint. Interrupt the control joint key in courses containing continuous bond beam reinforcement. Do not interrupt the horizontal reinforcement and grout at the control joint.

Where mortar was placed in the joint, rake both faces of the control joints to a depth of 3/4 inch. Install backer rod and sealant on both faces in accordance with Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.

3.3.1.6 Decorative Architectural Units

Place decorative masonry units with the patterned face shell properly aligned in the completed wall.

3.3.2 Clay or Shale Brick Masonry

3.3.2.1 Brick Placement

Blend all brick at the jobsite from several cubes to produce a uniform appearance when installed. An observable "banding" or "layering" of colors or textures caused by improperly mixed brick is unacceptable. Lay brick facing with the better face exposed. Lay brick in running bond with each course bonded at corners, unless otherwise indicated. Lay molded brick with the frog side down. Do not lay brick that is cored, recessed, or has other deformations in a manner that allows those deformations to be exposed to view; lay 100 percent solid units in these areas. Completely fill head and bed joints of solid units with mortar. Lay hollow units with mortar joints as specified for concrete masonry units. Lay fire brick by dipping each brick in a soft mixture of fire clay and water and then rubbing the brick into place with joints as thin as practicable or provide refractory mortar with joints not more than 3/8 inch thick.

Place exterior face of salvaged bricks towards the exterior.

3.3.2.2 Wetting of Units

Wetting of clay, shale brick, or hollow brick units having an initial rate of absorption of more than 1 gram per minute per square inch of bed surface shall be in conformance with ASTM C67/C67M. Ensure that each unit is nearly saturated when wetted but surface dry when laid.

Test clay or shale brick daily on the job, prior to laying, as follows: Using a wax pencil, draw a circle the size of a quarter on five randomly selected bricks. Apply 20 drops of water with a medicine dropper to the surface within the circle on each brick. If the average time that the water is completely absorbed in the five bricks is less than 1-1/2 minutes, wet bricks represented by the five bricks tested.

3.3.2.3 Brick Sills

Lay brick on edge, slope not less than 3/4 inch downward to the outside, and project not less than 1/2 inch beyond the face of the wall to form a wash and drip. Fill all joints solidly with mortar and tool.

3.3.3 Anchored Veneer Construction

- a. Construct exterior masonry wythes to the thickness indicated on the drawings. Provide a minimum 1-1/2 inch air space behind the masonry veneer. Provide means to ensure that the cavity space and flashings are kept clean of mortar droppings and other loose debris. Maintain chases and raked-out joints free from mortar and debris.
- b. Place masonry in running bond pattern for majority of building. See elevations for other bond accents.
- c. For veneer over stud framing, do not install veneer until the exterior sheathing, moisture barrier, veneer anchors and flashing have been installed on the backing. Take extreme care to avoid damage to the moisture barrier and flashing during construction of the masonry veneer. Repair or replace portions of the moisture barrier and flashing that are damaged prior to completion of the veneer. Provide a continuous cavity as indicated.
- d. For veneer with a masonry backup wythe, lay up both the inner and the outer wythes together except when adjustable joint reinforcement assemblies are approved for use. When both wythes are not brought up together, install through-wall flashings with the exterior wythe, securing the top edge of the flashing with a termination bar and sealant, or protect flashings that are installed with the interior wythe from damage until they are fully enclosed in the wall.
- e. Provide anchors (ties) to connect the veneer to its backing in sufficient quantity to comply with the following requirements: maximum wall area per anchor {tie} of 2.67 square feet, and maximum vertical spacing of 25 inches, and maximum horizontal spacing of 32 inches. Provide additional anchors around openings larger than 16 inch in either direction. Space anchors around perimeter of opening at a maximum of 3 feet on center. Place anchors within 12 inches of openings. Anchors with drips are not permitted.

- f. With solid units, embed anchors in mortar joint and extend into the veneer a minimum of **1-1/2 inch**, with at least **5/8 inch** mortar cover to the outside face.
- g. With hollow units, embed anchors in mortar or grout and extend into the veneer a minimum of **1-1/2 inch**, with at least **5/8 inch** mortar or grout cover to outside face.

3.3.4 Composite Walls

Tie masonry wythes together with joint reinforcement or with unit wall ties. Embed wall ties at least **1-1/2 inch** into mortar of solid units and at least **1/2 inch** into the mortar of the outer face shell of hollow units. Provide at least one tie every **2.67 square feet** for wire size **W1.7** and at least one tie every **4.50 square feet** for wire size **W2.8**. Space ties at a maximum of **36 inches** horizontally and **24 inches** vertically. Do not cross expansion joints or control joints with ties. Fill collar joints between masonry facing and masonry backup solidly with grout.

3.3.5 Reinforced, Single Wythe Concrete Masonry Units Walls

3.3.5.1 Concrete Masonry Unit Placement

- a. Fully bed units used to form piers, pilasters, columns, starting courses on footings, solid foundation walls, lintels, and beams, and where cells are to be filled with grout in mortar under both face shells and webs. Provide mortar beds under both face shells for other units. Mortar head joints for a distance in from the face of the unit not less than the thickness of the face shell.
- b. Solidly grout foundation walls below grade.
- c. Stiffen double walls at wall-mounted plumbing fixtures by use of strap anchors, two above each fixture and two below each fixture, located to avoid pipe runs, and extending from center to center of each wall within the double wall. Adequately reinforce walls and partitions for support of wall-hung plumbing fixtures when chair carriers are not specified.
- d. Submit drawings showing elevations of walls exposed to view and indicating the location of all **cut CMU** products.

3.3.5.2 Preparation for Reinforcement

Lay units in such a manner as to preserve the unobstructed vertical continuity of cores to be grouted. Remove mortar protrusions extending **1/2 inch** or more into cells before placing grout. Position reinforcing bars accurately as indicated before placing grout. Where vertical reinforcement occurs, fill cores solid with grout in accordance with paragraph PLACING GROUT in this Section.

3.3.6 Lintels

3.3.6.1 Masonry Lintels

Construct masonry lintels with lintel units filled solid with grout in all courses and reinforced with a minimum of two No. 4 bars in the bottom course unless otherwise indicated. Extend lintel reinforcement beyond each side of masonry opening 40 bar diameters or **24 inches**, whichever is

greater. Support reinforcing bars in place prior to grouting and locate 1/2 inch above the bottom inside surface of the lintel unit.

3.3.6.2 Precast Concrete and Steel Lintels

Provide precast concrete and steel lintels as shown on the Drawings. Set lintels in a full bed of mortar with faces plumb and true. Provide steel and precast lintels with a minimum bearing length of 8 inches unless otherwise indicated. In partially grouted masonry, provide fully grouted units under the full lintel bearing length, unless otherwise indicated.

3.3.7 Sills and Copings

Set sills and copings in a full bed of mortar with faces plumb and true. Slope sills and copings to drain water. Mechanically anchor copings and sills longer than 4 feet as indicated.

3.4 INSTALLATION

3.4.1 Bar Reinforcement Installation

3.4.1.1 Preparation

Submit detail drawings showing bar splice locations. Identify bent bars on a bending diagram and reference and locate such bars on the drawings. Show wall dimensions, bar clearances, and wall openings. Utilize bending details that conform to the requirements of ACI SP-66. No approval will be given to the shop drawings until the Contractor certifies that all openings, including those for mechanical and electrical service, are shown. If, during construction, additional masonry openings are required, resubmit the approved shop drawings with the additional openings shown along with the proposed changes. Clearly highlight location of these additional openings. Provide wall elevation drawings with minimum scale of 1/4 inch per foot. Submit drawings including plans, elevations, and details of wall reinforcement; details of reinforcing bars at corners and wall intersections; offsets; tops, bottoms, and ends of walls; control and expansion joints; lintels; and wall openings.

Clean reinforcement of loose, flaky rust, scale, grease, mortar, grout, and other coatings that might destroy or reduce its bond prior to placing grout. Do not use bars with kinks or bends not shown on the approved shop drawings. Place reinforcement prior to grouting. Unless otherwise indicated, extend vertical wall reinforcement to within 2 inches of tops of walls.

3.4.1.2 Positioning Bars

- a. Accurately place vertical bars within the cells at the positions indicated on the drawings. A minimum clearance of 1/2 inch shall be maintained between the bars and masonry units. Provide minimum clearance between parallel bars of 1/2 inch between the bars and masonry units for coarse grout and a minimum clearance of 1/4 inch between the bars and masonry units for fine grout. Provide minimum clearance between parallel bars of 1 inch or one diameter of the reinforcement, whichever is greater. Vertical reinforcement may be held in place using bar positioners located near the ends of each bar and at intermediate intervals of not more than 192 diameters of the reinforcement or by other means to prevent displacement beyond permitted tolerances. As masonry work progresses, secure vertical

reinforcement to prevent displacement beyond allowable tolerances.

- b. Wire column and pilaster lateral ties in position around the vertical reinforcing bars. Place lateral ties in contact with the vertical reinforcement and do not place in horizontal mortar bed joints.
- c. Position horizontal reinforcing bars as indicated. Stagger splices in adjacent horizontal bars, unless otherwise indicated.
- d. Form splices by lapping bars as indicated. Do not cut, bend or eliminate reinforcing bars. Foundation dowel bars may be field-bent when permitted by TMS MSJC.

3.4.1.3 Splices of Bar Reinforcement

Lap splice reinforcing bars as indicated. When used, provide welded or mechanical connections that develop at least 125 percent of the specified yield strength of the reinforcement.

3.4.2 Placing Grout

3.4.2.1 General

Fill cells containing reinforcing bars with grout. Solidly grout hollow masonry units in walls or partitions supporting plumbing, heating, or other mechanical fixtures, voids at door and window jambs, and other indicated spaces. Solidly grout cells under lintel bearings on each side of openings for full height of openings. Solidly grout walls below grade, lintels, and bond beams. Units other than open end units may require grouting each course to preclude voids in the units.

Discard site-mixed grout that is not placed within 1-1/2 hours after water is first added to the batch or when the specified slump is not met without adding water after initial mixing. Discard ready-mixed grout that does not meet the specified slump without adding water other than water that was added at the time of initial discharge. Allow sufficient time between grout lifts to preclude displacement or cracking of face shells of masonry units. Provide a grout shear key between lifts when grouting is delayed and the lower lift loses plasticity. If blowouts, flowouts, misalignment, or cracking of face shells should occur during construction, tear down the wall and rebuild.

3.4.2.2 Vertical Grout Barriers for Multi-Wythe Composite Walls

In multi-wythe composite walls, provide grout barriers in the collar joint not more than 30 feet apart, or as required, to limit the horizontal flow of grout for each pour.

3.4.2.3 Horizontal Grout Barriers

Embed horizontal grout barriers in mortar below cells of hollow units receiving grout.

3.4.2.4 Grout Holes and Cleanouts

3.4.2.4.1 Grout Holes

Provide grouting holes in slabs, spandrel beams, and other in-place overhead construction. Locate holes over vertical reinforcing bars or as

required to facilitate grout fill in bond beams. Provide additional openings spaced not more than 16 inches on centers where grouting of hollow unit masonry is indicated. For such openings not less than 4 inches in diameter or 3 by 4 inches in horizontal dimensions. Upon completion of grouting operations, plug and finish grouting holes to match surrounding surfaces.

3.4.2.4.2 Cleanouts for Hollow Unit Masonry Construction

For hollow masonry units, provide cleanout holes at the bottom of every grout pour in cores containing vertical reinforcement when the height of the grout pour exceeds 5 feet 4 inches. Where all cells are to be grouted, construct cleanout courses using bond beam units in an inverted position to permit cleaning of all cells. Provide cleanout holes at a maximum spacing of 32 inches where all cells are to be filled with grout.

Establish a new series of cleanouts if grouting operations are stopped for more than 4 hours. Provide cleanouts not less than 3 by 3 inch by cutting openings in one face shell. Manufacturer's standard cutout units may be used at the Contractor's option. Do not cleanout holes until masonry work, reinforcement, and final cleaning of the grout spaces have been completed and inspected. For walls which will be exposed to view, close cleanout holes in an approved manner to match surrounding masonry.

3.4.2.4.3 Cleanouts for Multi-Wythe Composite Masonry Construction

Provide cleanouts for construction of walls that incorporate a grout filled cavity between solid masonry wythes, provide cleanouts at the bottom of every pour by omitting every other masonry unit from one wythe. Establish a new series of cleanouts if grouting operations are stopped for more than 4 hours. Do not plug cleanout holes until masonry work, reinforcement, and final cleaning of the grout spaces have been completed and inspected. For walls which will be exposed to view, close cleanout holes in an approved manner to match surrounding masonry.

3.4.2.5 Grout Placement

A grout pour is the total height of masonry to be grouted prior to erection of additional masonry. A grout lift is an increment of grout placement within a grout pour. A grout pour is filled by one or more lifts of grout.

- a. Lay masonry to the top of a pour permitted by TMS MSJC Table 7, based on the size of the grout space and the type of grout. Prior to grouting, remove masonry protrusions that extend 1/2 inch or more into cells or spaces to be grouted. Provide grout holes and cleanouts in accordance with paragraph GROUT HOLES AND CLEANOUTS above when the grout pour height exceeds 5 feet 4 inches. Hold reinforcement, bolts, and embedded connections rigidly in position before grouting is started. Do not prewet concrete masonry units.
- b. Place grout using a hand bucket, concrete hopper, or grout pump to fill the grout space without segregation of aggregate. Operate grout pumps to produce a continuous stream of grout without air pockets, segregation, or contamination.
- c. If the masonry has cured at least 4 hours, grout slump is maintained between 10 to 11 inches, and no intermediate reinforced bond beams are placed between the top and bottom of the pour height, place conventional grout in lifts not exceeding 12 feet 8 inches. For the

same curing and slump conditions but with intermediate bond beams, limit conventional grout lift to the bottom of the lowest bond beam that is more than 5 feet 4 inches above the bottom of the lift, but do not exceed 12 feet 8 inches. If masonry has not cured at least 4 hours or grout slump is not maintained between 10 to 11 inches, place conventional grout in lifts not exceeding 5 feet 4 inches.

- d. Consolidate conventional grout lift and reconsolidate after initial settlement before placing next lift. For grout pours that are 12 inches or less in height, consolidate and reconsolidate grout by mechanical vibration or puddling. For grout pours that are greater than 12 inches in height, consolidate and reconsolidate grout by mechanical vibration. Apply vibrators at uniformly spaced points not further apart than the visible effectiveness of the machine. Limit duration of vibration to time necessary to produce satisfactory consolidation without causing segregation. If previous lift is not permitted to set, dip vibrator into previous lift. Do not insert vibrators into lower lifts that are in a semi-solidified state. If lower lift sets prior to placement of subsequent lift, form a grout key by terminating grout a minimum of 1-1/2 inch below a mortar joint. Vibrate each vertical cell containing reinforcement in partially grouted masonry. Do not form grout keys within beams.
- e. If the masonry has cured 4 hours, place self-consolidating grout (SCG) in lifts not exceeding the pour height. If masonry has not cured for at least 4 hours, place SCG in lifts not exceeding 5 feet 4 inches. Do not mechanically consolidate self-consolidating grout. Place self-consolidating grout in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- f. Upon completion of each day's grouting, remove waste materials and debris from the equipment, and dispose of outside the masonry.

3.4.3 Joint Reinforcement Installation

Install joint reinforcement at 16 inches on center unless otherwise indicated. Lap joint reinforcement not less than 6 inches. Install prefabricated sections at corners and wall intersections. Place the longitudinal wires of joint reinforcement in mortar beds to provide not less than 5/8 inch cover to either face of the unit.

3.4.4 Bond Beams

Reinforce and grout bond beams as indicated and as described in paragraphs above. Install grout barriers under bond beam units to retain the grout as required, unless wall is fully grouted or solid bottom units are used. For high lift grouting in partially grouted masonry, provide grout retaining material on the top of bond beams to prevent upward flow of grout. Ensure that reinforcement is continuous, including around corners, except through control joints or expansion joints, unless otherwise indicated.

3.4.5 Flashing and Weeps

- a. Install through-wall flashing at obstructions in the cavity and where indicated on Drawings. Ensure continuity of the flashing at laps and inside and outside corners by splicing in a manner approved by the flashing manufacturer. Ensure that the top edge of the flashing is sealed by attaching a termination bar and applying compatible sealant at the top edge of the termination bar. Terminate the horizontal leg

of the flashing terminating the fabric flashing $1/2$ inch short of the outside face of masonry and adhering the flashing to a sheet metal drip edge. Provide sealant below the drip edge of through-wall flashing.

- b. Wherever through-wall flashing occurs, provide weep holes to drain flashing to exterior at acceptable locations as indicated. Provide weeps of weep ventilators. Locate weeps not more than 24 inches on centers in mortar joints of the exterior wythe directly on the horizontal leg of through-wall flashing over foundations, bond beams, and any other horizontal interruptions of the cavity. Place weep holes perfectly horizontal or slightly canted downward to encourage water drainage outward and not inward. Other methods may be used for providing weeps when spacing is reduced to 16 inches on center and approved by the Contracting Officer. Maintain weeps free of mortar and other obstructions.
- c. Install single-wythe CMU flashing system in bed joints of CMU walls where CMU cells are open. Install CMU cell pans with upturned edges located below face shells and webs of CMUs above and with weep spouts aligned with face of wall on the exterior side. Install CMU web covers so that they cover upturned edges of CMU cell pans at CMU webs and extend from face shell to face shell.

3.5 APPLICATION

3.5.1 Insulation

Insulate cavity walls (multi-wythe noncomposite masonry walls), where shown, by installing board-type insulation on the cavity side of the inner wythe. Apply board type insulation directly to the masonry or thru-wall flashing with adhesive. Neatly fit insulation between obstructions without impaling insulation on ties or anchors. Apply insulation in parallel courses with vertical joints breaking midway over the course below and in moderate contact with adjoining units without forcing. Cut to fit neatly against adjoining surfaces. Tape or seal the joints between the boards.

3.5.2 Interface with Other Products

3.5.2.1 Built-In Items

Fill spaces around built-in items with mortar. Point openings around flush-mount electrical outlet boxes in wet locations with mortar. Embed anchors, ties, wall plugs, accessories, flashing, pipe sleeves and other items required to be built-in as the masonry work progresses. Fully embed anchors, ties and joint reinforcement in the mortar. Fill cells receiving anchor bolts and cells of the first course below bearing plates with grout, unless otherwise indicated.

3.5.2.2 Door and Window Frame Joints

On the exposed interior and exterior sides of exterior frames, rake joints between frames and abutting masonry walls to a depth of $3/8$ inch.

3.5.3 Tolerances

Lay masonry plumb, true to line, with courses level within the tolerances of TMS MSJC, Article 3.3 F.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.6.1 Tests

3.6.1.1 Field Testing of Mortar

Perform mortar testing at the following frequency: **two** times per **day**. For each required mortar test, provide a minimum of three mortar samples. Perform initial mortar testing prior to construction for comparison purposes during construction.

Prepare and test mortar samples for mortar aggregate ratio in accordance with **ASTM C780** Appendix A4. Prepare and test mortar compressive strength specimens in accordance with **ASTM C780** Appendix A6.

3.6.1.2 Field Testing of Grout

- a. Perform grout testing at the following frequency: **two** times per **day**. For each required grout property to be evaluated, provide a minimum of three specimens.
- b. Sample and test conventional and self-consolidating grout for compressive strength and temperature in accordance with **ASTM C1019**.
- c. Evaluate slump in conventional grout in accordance with **ASTM C1019**.
- d. Evaluate slump flow and visual stability index of self-consolidating grout in accordance with **ASTM C1611/C1611M**.

3.6.1.3 Clay Brick Efflorescence Test

Test clay brick that will be exposed to weathering for efflorescence in accordance with **ASTM C67/C67M**. Schedule tests far enough in advance of starting masonry work to permit retesting if necessary. Units meeting the definition of "effloresced" are subject to rejection.

3.6.1.4 Prism Tests

Perform at least one prism test sample for each **5,000 square feet** of wall but not less than three such tests for any building. Evaluate three prisms in each test. Fabricate, store, handle, and test prisms in accordance with **ASTM C1314**.

Seven-day tests may be used provided the relationship between the 7-day and 28-day strengths of the masonry is established by the tests of the materials used. If the compressive strength of any prism falls below the specified value by more than **500 psi**, take steps to assure that the load-carrying capacity of the structure is not jeopardized. If the likelihood of low-strength masonry is confirmed and computations indicate that the load-carrying capacity may have been significantly reduced, tests of cores drilled, or prisms sawed, from the area in question may be required. In such case, take three specimens for each prism test more than **500 psi** below the specified value. Masonry in the area in question will be considered structurally adequate if the average compressive strength of three specimens is equal to or exceeds the specified value. Additional testing of specimens extracted from locations represented by erratic core or prism strength test results will be permitted.

3.6.1.5 Single-Wythe Masonry Wall Water Penetration Test

Prior to start of field construction of the single-wythe concrete masonry wall, perform masonry wall water penetration test on mock-up wall assemblies consisting of the identical design, materials, mix, and construction methods as the actual wall construction and in accordance with [ASTM E514/E514M](#). Prepare a minimum of three specimens and cure for minimum 28 days prior to testing. Construct panels by the same methods, processes, and applications to be used on the project's construction site. Spray test for 6 hours on each specimen. If water is visible on back of test panels during the test and areas of dampness on the backside of the test panels do not exceed 25 percent of the wall area, the panels will be considered to have passed. Dampness is defined as any area of surface darkening or discoloration due to moisture penetration or accumulation below the observed surface.

Construct additional test panels for each failed test performed until three test panels pass the test. Factors that can affect test performance include materials, mixing, and quality of application and workmanship. Materials, mixing, and methods adjustments may be necessary in order to provide construction that passes the water penetration test. Document and record the test specimen construction materials and application and provide written test report in accordance with [ASTM E514/E514M](#), supplemented by a detailed discussion of the specifics of test panel construction, application methods and processes used, quality of construction, and any variances or deviations that may have occurred between test panels during test panel construction. For failed test panels, identify in the supplemental report the variances, deficiencies or flaws that contributed to test panel failure and itemize the precautions to be taken in field construction of the masonry wall to prevent similar deficiencies and assure the wall construction replicates test panel conditions that pass the water penetration test. Submit the complete, certified test report, including supplemental report, to the Contracting Officer prior to start of single-wythe concrete masonry wall construction. Significant changes to materials, proportions, or construction techniques from those used in the passing water penetration test are grounds for performing new tests, at the discretion of the Contracting Officer.

3.6.2 Special Inspection

Perform special inspections and testing in accordance with Section [01 45 35 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS](#).

3.7 POINTING AND CLEANING

After mortar joints have attained their initial set, but prior to hardening, completely remove mortar and grout daubs and splashings from masonry-unit surfaces that will be exposed or painted. Before completion of the work, rake out defects in joints of masonry to be exposed or painted, fill with mortar, and tool to match existing joints. Immediately after grout work is completed, remove scum and stains that have percolated through the masonry work using a low pressure stream of water and a stiff bristled brush. Do not clean masonry surfaces, other than removing excess surface mortar, until mortar in joints has hardened. Leave masonry surfaces clean, free of mortar daubs, dirt, stain, and discoloration, including scum from cleaning operations, and with tight mortar joints throughout. Do not use metal tools and metal brushes for cleaning.

3.7.1 Dry-Brushing Concrete Masonry

Dry brush exposed concrete masonry surfaces at the end of each day's work and after any required pointing, using stiff-fiber bristled brushes.

3.7.2 Clay Brick Surfaces

Clean exposed clay brick masonry surfaces to obtain surfaces free of stain, dirt, mortar and grout daubs, efflorescence, and discoloration or scum from cleaning operations. Perform cleaning in accordance with the approved cleaning procedure demonstrated on the mockup.

After cleaning, examine the sample panel of similar material for discoloration or stain as a result of cleaning. If the sample panel is discolored or stained, change the method of cleaning to ensure that the masonry surfaces in the structure will not be adversely affected. Water-soak exposed masonry surfaces and then clean with a proprietary masonry cleaning agent specifically recommended for the color and texture by the clay brick manufacturer and manufacturer of the cleaning product. Apply the solution with stiff fiber brushes, followed immediately by thorough rinsing with clean water. Use proprietary cleaning agents in conformance with the cleaning product manufacturer's printed recommendations. Remove efflorescence in conformance with the brick manufacturer's recommendations.

3.8 CLOSE-OUT TAKE-BACK PROGRAM

Collect information from manufacturer for take-back program options. Set aside masonry units, full and partial, scrap, packaging to be returned to manufacturer for recycling into new product. When such a service is not available, seek local recyclers to reclaim the materials. Submit documentation that includes contact information, summary of procedures, and the limitations and conditions applicable to the project. Indicate manufacturer's commitment to reclaim materials for recycling and/or reuse.

3.9 PROTECTION

Protect facing materials against staining. Cover top of walls with nonstaining waterproof covering or membrane to protect from moisture intrusion when work is not in progress. Continue covering the top of the unfinished walls until the wall is waterproofed with a complete roof or parapet system. Extend covering a minimum of 2 feet down on each side of the wall and hold securely in place. Before starting or resuming work, clean top surface of masonry in place of loose mortar and foreign material.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 05 40 00

COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

05/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN CONCRETE INSTITUTE INTERNATIONAL (ACI)

ACI 318 (2014; Errata 1-2 2014; Errata 3-5 2015; Errata 6 2016; Errata 7-9 2017) Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete (ACI 318-14) and Commentary (ACI 318R-14)

AMERICAN IRON AND STEEL INSTITUTE (AISI)

AISI S100 (2012) North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members

AISI S110 (2007; Suppl 1; Reaffirmed 2012) Standard for Seismic Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Systems - Special Bolted Moment Frames

AISI S200 (2007) North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provision

AISI S201 (2007) North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Product Data

AISI S202 (2011) Code of Standard Practice for Cold-formed Steel Structural Framing

AISI S211 (2007) North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Wall Stud Design

AISI S212 (2007) North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design

AISI S213 (2007; Suppl 1 2009) North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Lateral Design

AISI S214 (2012) North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Truss Design

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.1/D1.1M (2015; Errata 1 2015; Errata 2 2016)

Structural Welding Code - Steel

AWS D1.3/D1.3M

(2018) Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A1003/A1003M

(2015) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Carbon, Metallic- and Nonmetallic-Coated for Cold-Formed Framing Members

ASTM A123/A123M

(2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products

ASTM A153/A153M

(2016) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware

ASTM A307

(2014; E 2017) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength

ASTM A653/A653M

(2017) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM C1007

(2011a) Standard Specification for Installation of Load Bearing (Transverse and Axial) Steel Studs and Related Accessories

ASTM C1513

(2018) Standard Specification for Steel Tapping Screws for Cold-Formed Steel Framing Connections

ASTM C955

(2017) Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Steel Structural Framing Members

ASTM E119

(2018) Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials

ASTM E329

(2018) Standard Specification for Agencies Engaged in Construction Inspection, Testing, or Special Inspection

ASTM E488/E488M

(2015) Standard Test Methods for Strength of Anchors in Concrete and Masonry Elements

ASTM F1554

(2018) Standard Specification for Anchor Bolts, Steel, 36, 55, and 105-ksi Yield Strength

ASTM F1941

(2010) Standard Specification for Electrodeposited Coatings on Threaded

Fasteners (Unified Inch Screw Threads
(UN/UNR))

ASTM F2329/F2329M

(2015) Standard Specification for Zinc
Coating, Hot-Dip, Requirements for
Application to Carbon and Alloy Steel
Bolts, Screws, Washers, Nuts, and Special
Threaded Fasteners

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC IBC

(2015) International Building Code

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

UFC 3-301-01

(2013; with Change 4) Structural
Engineering

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor QC approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29, SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Framing Components; G

SD-03 Product Data

Steel Studs, Joists, Tracks, Bracing, Bridging and Accessories

Recycled Content of Steel Products; S

SD-05 Design Data

Metal Framing Calculations; G

SD-07 Certificates

Welds

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Steel framing and related accessories shall be stored and handled in accordance with the AISI S202, "Code of Standard Practice for Cold-Formed Steel Structural Framing".

1.4 MAXIMUM DEFLECTION

Deflections of structural members shall not exceed the more restrictive of the limitations of ICC IBC and UFC 3-301-01.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, design calculations, and other structural data by a registered professional

engineer.

- b. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to [ASTM E329](#) for testing indicated.
- c. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including base-metal thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, and metallic-coating thickness.
- d. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - (1) [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#), "Structural Welding Code - Steel".
 - (2) [AWS D1.3/D1.3M](#), "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel".
- e. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide cold-formed metal framing identical to that of assemblies tested for fire resistance per [ASTM E119](#) by, and displaying a classification label from, a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- f. AISI Specifications and Standards: Comply with:
 - (1) [AISI S100](#), "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members".
 - (2) [AISI S110](#), "Standard for Seismic Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Systems - Special Bolted Moment Frames".
 - (3) [AISI S200](#), "North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provision".
 - (4) [AISI S201](#), "North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Product Data".
 - (5) [AISI S202](#), "Code of Standard Practice for Cold-Formed Steel Structural Framing".
 - (6) [AISI S211](#), "North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Wall Stud Design".
 - (7) [AISI S212](#), "North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design".
 - (8) [AISI S213](#), "North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Lateral Design".
 - (9) [AISI S214](#), "North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Truss Design".

1.5.1 Drawing Requirements

Submit [framing components](#) to show sizes, thicknesses, layout, material designations, methods of installation, and accessories including the following:

- a. Cross sections, plans, and/or elevations showing component types and locations for each framing application; including shop coatings and material thicknesses for each framing component.
- b. Connection details showing fastener type, quantity, location, and other information to assure proper installation.
- c. Drawings depicting panel configuration, dimensions, components, locations, and construction sequence if the Contractor elects to install prefabricated/prefinished frames.

Sign and seal fabrication drawings by a registered professional engineer.

1.5.2 Design Data Required

Submit [metal framing calculations](#) with design criteria and structural loading to verify sizes, thickness, and spacing of members and connections signed and sealed by a registered professional engineer. Show methods and practices used in installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STEEL [STUDS](#), [JOISTS](#), TRACKS, BRACING, BRIDGING AND ACCESSORIES

Framing components shall comply with [ASTM C955](#) and the following.

- a. Provide products with an average [recycled content of steel products](#) so postconsumer recycled content plus one half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.
- b. Steel Sheet: [ASTM A1003/A1003M](#), Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:
 - (1) Grade: As required by structural performance.
 - (2) Coating: G60.
- c. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
 - (1) Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: [0.0329 inch](#).
 - (2) Flange Width: [As required by structural performance](#).
- d. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with straight flanges, and as follows:
 - (1) Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: Matching steel studs.
 - (2) Flange Width: [1-1/4 inches](#).

2.1.1 Studs and Joists of [54 mils \(0.054 Inch\)](#) and Heavier

Galvanized steel, [ASTM A653/A653M](#) and [ASTM A1003/A1003M](#), SS Grade 50, [G60](#).

2.1.2 Studs and Joists of [43 mils \(0.043 Inch\)](#) and Lighter

Studs and Joists of [43 mils \(0.043 Inch\)](#) and Lighter, Track, and Accessories (All thicknesses): Galvanized steel, [ASTM A653/A653M](#) and

ASTM A1003/A1003M, SS, Grade 33 33,000 psi G60.

2.1.3 Sizes, Thickness, Section Modulus, and Other Structural Properties

Size and thickness as required.

2.2 MARKINGS

Studs and track shall have product markings stamped on the web of the section. The markings shall be repeated throughout the length of the member at a maximum spacing of 4 feet on center and shall be legible and easily read. The product marking shall include the following:

- a. An ICC number.
- b. Manufacturer's identification.
- c. Minimum delivered uncoated steel thickness.
- d. Protective coating designator.
- e. Minimum yield strength.

2.3 CONNECTIONS

2.3.1 Steel-To-Concrete Connections

- a. Anchor Rods: ASTM F1554, Grade 36; galvanized per ASTM A153/A153M.
- b. Post-Installed Concrete Anchors: Adhesive or expansion anchors fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials with allowable load capacities in accordance with ICC-ES AC193 and ACI 318 greater than or equal to the design load as determined by testing per ASTM E488/E488M conducted by a qualified testing agency.
- c. Power-Actuated Fasteners: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials with allowable load capacities in accordance with ICC-ES AC 70 greater than or equal to the design load as determined by testing per ASTM E1190 conducted by a qualified testing agency.

2.3.2 Steel-To-Steel Connections

- a. Screws: ASTM C1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping steel screws of the type and size indicated. Provide low-profile head beneath sheathing and manufacturer's standard elsewhere. Electroplated to a minimum of 5 micron zinc coating per ASTM F1941 or hot-dipped galvanized per ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A153/A153M.
- b. Bolts: ASTM A307 coated by hot-dip process per ASTM F2329/F2329M or zinc-coated by mechanical-deposition process per ASTM B695, Class 55.
- c. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

2.4 PLASTIC GROMMETS

Supply plastic grommets for stud webs as recommended by stud manufacturer, to protect electrical wires and plumbing piping. Prevent metal-to-metal contact between wiring/piping and studs.

2.5 SEALER GASKET

Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4-inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track on concrete slab or foundation.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 FASTENING

Fasten framing members together by welding or by using self-drilling, self-tapping screws. Electrodes and screw connections shall be as required and indicated in the design calculations.

3.1.1 Welds

All welding shall be performed in accordance with AWS D1.3/D1.3M, as modified by AISI S100. All welders, welding operations, and welding procedures shall be qualified according to AWS D1.3/D1.3M. Submit certified copies of welder qualifications test records showing qualification in accordance with AWS D1.3/D1.3M. All welds shall be cleaned and coated with rust inhibitive galvanizing paint. Do not field weld materials lighter than 43 mils.

3.1.2 Screws

Screws shall be of the self-drilling self-tapping type, size, and location as required. Screw penetration through joined materials shall not be less than three exposed threads. Minimum spacings and edge distances for screws shall be as specified in AISI S100. Screws covered by sheathing materials shall have low profile heads.

3.1.3 Anchors

Anchors shall be of the type, size, and location as required.

3.1.4 Powder-Actuated Fasteners

Powder-actuated fasteners shall be of the type, size, and location as required.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Install cold-formed framing in accordance with ASTM C1007 and AISI S200.

Install cold-formed steel framing according to AISI S202 and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

3.2.1 Tracks

Provide accurately aligned runners at top and bottom of studs. Install sealer gasket under bottom of track on concrete slab or foundation. Anchor tracks as indicated in design calculations. Butt weld joints in tracks or splice with stud inserts. Fasteners shall be at least 3 inches from the edge of concrete slabs.

3.2.2 Studs

Cut studs square and set with firm bearing against webs of top and bottom tracks. Position studs vertically in tracks and space as indicated in design. Do not splice studs. Provide at least two studs at jambs of doors and other openings 2 feet wide or larger. Provide jack studs over openings, as necessary, to maintain indicated stud spacing. Provide tripled studs at corners, positioned to receive interior and exterior finishes. Fasten studs to top and bottom tracks by welding or screwing both flanges to the tracks. Framed wall openings shall include headers and supporting components as shown on the drawings. Headers shall be installed in all openings that are larger than the stud spacing in a wall. In curtain wall construction, provide for vertical movement where studs connect to the structural frame. Provide horizontal bracing in accordance with the design calculations and AISI S100. Bracing shall be not less than the following:

<u>LOAD</u>	<u>HEIGHT</u>	<u>BRACING</u>
Wind load only	Up to 10 feet	One row at mid-height
	Over 10 feet	Rows 5'-0" o.c. maximum

3.2.3 Erection Tolerances

- a. Framing members which will be covered by finishes such as wallboard, plaster, or ceramic tile set in a mortar setting bed, shall be within the following limits:
 - (1) Layout of walls and partitions: 1/4 inch from intended position;
 - (2) Plates and runners: 1/4 inch in 8 feet from a straight line;
 - (3) Studs: 1/4 inch in 8 feet out of plumb, not cumulative; and
 - (4) Face of framing members: 1/4 inch in 8 feet from a true plane.
- b. Framing members which will be covered by ceramic tile set in dry-set mortar, latex-portland cement mortar, or organic adhesive shall be within the following limits:
 - (1) Layout of walls and partitions: 1/4 inch from intended position;
 - (2) Plates and runners: 1/8 inch in 8 feet from a straight line;
 - (3) Studs: 1/8 inch in 8 feet out of plumb, not cumulative; and
 - (4) Face of framing members: 1/8 inch in 8 feet from a true plane.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 05 50 13

MISCELLANEOUS METAL FABRICATIONS

05/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ALUMINUM ASSOCIATION (AA)

AA DAF45 (2003; Reaffirmed 2009) Designation System
for Aluminum Finishes

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION (AISC)

AISC 303 (2016) Code of Standard Practice for Steel
Buildings and Bridges

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF SAFETY ENGINEERS (ASSE/SAFE)

ASSE/SAFE A10.3 (2013) Operations - Safety Requirements
for Powder Actuated Fastening Systems

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.1/D1.1M (2015; Errata 1 2015; Errata 2 2016)
Structural Welding Code - Steel

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME B18.2.1 (2012; Errata 2013) Square and Hex Bolts
and Screws (Inch Series)

ASME B18.2.2 (2015) Nuts for General Applications:
Machine Screw Nuts, Hex, Square, Hex
Flange, and Coupling Nuts (Inch Series)

ASME B18.21.1 (2009; R 2016) Washers: Helical
Spring-Lock, Tooth Lock, and Plain Washers
(Inch Series)

ASME B18.21.2M (1999; R 2014) Lock Washers (Metric Series)

ASME B18.22M (1981; R 2017) Metric Plain Washers

ASME B18.6.2 (1998; R 2010) Slotted Head Cap Screws,
Square Head Set Screws, and Slotted
Headless Set Screws: Inch Series

ASME B18.6.3 (2013; R 2017) Machine Screws, Tapping
Screws, and Machine Drive Screws (Inch
Series)

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A108	(2013) Standard Specification for Steel Bar, Carbon and Alloy, Cold-Finished
ASTM A123/A123M	(2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A153/A153M	(2016) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
ASTM A307	(2014; E 2017) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength
ASTM A36/A36M	(2014) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel
ASTM A47/A47M	(1999; R 2014) Standard Specification for Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings
ASTM A48/A48M	(2003; R 2012) Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings
ASTM A500/A500M	(2018) Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes
ASTM A53/A53M	(2018) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
ASTM A653/A653M	(2017) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM A780/A780M	(2009; R 2015) Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings
ASTM A786/A786M	(2015a) Standard Specification for Hot-Rolled Carbon, Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy, and Alloy Steel Floor Plates
ASTM A924/A924M	(2017a) Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM B108/B108M	(2015) Standard Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Permanent Mold Castings
ASTM B209	(2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate

ASTM B209M	(2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate (Metric)
ASTM B221	(2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes
ASTM B221M	(2013) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric)
ASTM B26/B26M	(2014; E 2015) Standard Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Sand Castings
ASTM C1513	(2018) Standard Specification for Steel Tapping Screws for Cold-Formed Steel Framing Connections
ASTM D1187/D1187M	(1997; E 2011; R 2011) Asphalt-Base Emulsions for Use as Protective Coatings for Metal
ASTM F1554	(2018) Standard Specification for Anchor Bolts, Steel, 36, 55, and 105-ksi Yield Strength

MASTER PAINTERS INSTITUTE (MPI)

MPI 79	(2012) Primer, Alkyd, Anti-Corrosive for Metal

NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF ARCHITECTURAL METAL MANUFACTURERS (NAAMM)

NAAMM MBG 531	(2017) Metal Bar Grating Manual
NAAMM MBG 532	(2009) Heavy Duty Metal Bar Grating Manual

SOCIETY FOR PROTECTIVE COATINGS (SSPC)

SSPC SP 3	(1982; E 2004) Power Tool Cleaning
SSPC SP 6/NACE No.3	(2007) Commercial Blast Cleaning

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1	(2014) Safety and Health Requirements Manual

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Structural Steel Door Frames, Fabrication Drawings; G

Floor Gratings, Installation Drawings; G

Roof Walkways, Installation Drawings; G

Bollards/Pipe Guards; G

Wheel Guards, Installation Drawings; G

Embedded Angles and Plates, Installation Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Corner Guards

Floor Gratings; G

Roof Walkways; G

Structural Steel Door Frames; G

Wheel Guards

Each Downspout Terminations Type; G

Recycled Content; S

SD-07 Certificates

Certificates of Compliance; G

Certified Mill Test Reports for Chemistry and Mechanical Properties; G

1.3 QUALIFICATION OF WELDERS

Qualify welders in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Use procedures, materials, and equipment of the type required for the work.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

Protect from corrosion, deformation, and other types of damage. Store items in an enclosed area free from contact with soil and weather. Remove and replace damaged items with new items.

1.5 MISCELLANEOUS REQUIREMENTS

1.5.1 Fabrication Drawings

Submit fabrication drawings showing layout(s), connections to structural system, and anchoring details as specified in AISC 303.

1.5.2 Installation Drawings

Submit templates, erection, and installation drawings indicating thickness, type, grade, class of metal, and dimensions. Show construction details, reinforcement, anchorage, and installation in relation to the building construction.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 RECYCLED CONTENT

Provide products with recycled content. Provide [certificates of compliance](#) for recycled content.

2.2 MATERIALS

Provide exposed fastenings of compatible materials (avoid contact of dissimilar metals). Coordinate color and finish with the material to which fastenings are applied. Submit the manufacturer's [certified mill](#) reports which clearly show the applicable ASTM mechanical and chemical requirements together with the actual test results for the supplied materials.

2.2.1 Structural Carbon Steel

Provide in accordance with [ASTM A36/A36M](#).

2.2.2 Structural Tubing

Provide in accordance with [ASTM A500/A500M](#).

2.2.3 Steel Pipe

Provide in accordance with [ASTM A53/A53M](#), Type E or S, Grade B.

2.2.4 Fittings for Steel Pipe

Provide standard malleable iron fittings in accordance with [ASTM A47/A47M](#).

2.2.5 Gratings

- a. Provide gray cast iron in accordance with [ASTM A48/A48M](#), Class 40.
- b. Provide metal plank grating, non-slip requirement, steel in accordance with [ASTM A653/A653M](#), Z275 G90.
- c. Provide metal bar type grating in accordance with [NAAMM MBG 531](#).

2.2.6 Floor Plates, Patterned

Provide floor plate in accordance with [ASTM A786/A786M](#). Provide steel plate not less than [14 gage](#).

2.2.7 Anchor Bolts

Provide in accordance with [ASTM F1554](#). Where exposed, provide anchor bolts of the same material, color, and finish as the metal to which they are applied.

2.2.7.1 Expansion Anchors and Adhesive Anchors

[See drawings for minimum diameter and embedment for expansion and adhesive anchors. Minimum requirements per general notes.](#)

2.2.7.2 Lag Screws and Bolts

Provide in accordance with ASME B18.2.1, type and grade best suited for the purpose.

2.2.7.3 Toggle Bolts

Provide in accordance with ASME B18.2.1.

2.2.7.4 Bolts, Nuts, Studs and Rivets

Provide in accordance with ASME B18.2.2 or ASTM A307.

2.2.7.5 Powder Actuated Fasteners

Follow safety provisions in accordance with ASSE/SAFE A10.3.

2.2.7.6 Screws

Provide in accordance with ASME B18.2.1, ASME B18.6.2, ASME B18.6.3 and ASTM C1513.

2.2.7.7 Washers

Provide plain washers in accordance with ASME B18.22M, ASME B18.21.1. Provide beveled washers for American Standard beams and channels, square or rectangular, tapered in thickness, and smooth. Provide lock washers in accordance with ASME B18.21.2M, ASME B18.21.1.

2.2.7.8 Welded Headed Shear Studs

Provide in accordance with ASTM A108.

2.2.8 Aluminum Alloy Products

Provide in accordance with ASTM B209M, ASTM B209 for sheet plate, ASTM B221M, ASTM B221M, ASTM B221 for extrusions and ASTM B26/B26M or ASTM B108/B108M for castings. Provide aluminum extrusions at least 1/8 inch thick and aluminum plate or sheet at least 0.050 inch thick.

2.3 FABRICATION FINISHES

2.3.1 Galvanizing

Hot-dip galvanize items specified to be zinc-coated, after fabrication where practicable. Provide galvanizing in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M, ASTM A153/A153M, ASTM A653/A653M or ASTM A924/A924M, Z275 G90.

2.3.2 Galvanize

Anchor bolts, grating fasteners, washers, and parts or devices necessary for proper installation, unless indicated otherwise.

2.3.3 Repair of Zinc-Coated Surfaces

Repair damaged surfaces with galvanizing repair method and paint in accordance with ASTM A780/A780M or by application of stick or thick paste material specifically designed for repair of galvanizing, as approved by Contracting Officer. Clean areas to be repaired and remove slag from

welds. Heat, with a torch, surfaces to which stick or paste material will be applied. Heat to a temperature sufficient to melt the metals in the stick or paste. Spread molten material uniformly over surfaces to be coated and wipe off excess material.

2.3.4 Shop Cleaning and Painting

2.3.4.1 Surface Preparation

Blast clean surfaces in accordance with **SSPC SP 6/NACE No.3**. Surfaces that will be exposed in spaces above ceiling or in attic spaces, crawl spaces, furred spaces, and chases may be cleaned in accordance with **SSPC SP 3** in lieu of being blast cleaned. Wash cleaned surfaces which become contaminated with rust, dirt, oil, grease, or other contaminants with solvents until thoroughly clean. Steel to be embedded in concrete must be free of dirt and grease prior to embed. Do not paint or galvanize bearing surfaces, including contact surfaces within slip critical joints. Shop coat these surfaces with rust prevention.

2.3.4.2 Pretreatment, Priming and Painting

Apply pre-treatment, primer, and paint in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions. On surfaces concealed in the finished construction or not accessible for finish painting, apply an additional prime coat to a minimum dry film thickness of **1.0 mil**. Tint additional prime coat with a small amount of tinting pigment.

2.3.5 Nonferrous Metal Surfaces

Protect by plating, anodic, or organic coatings.

2.3.6 Aluminum Surfaces

2.3.6.1 Surface Condition

Before finishes are applied, remove roll marks, scratches, rolled-in scratches, kinks, stains, pits, orange peel, die marks, structural streaks, and other defects which will affect uniform appearance of finished surfaces.

2.3.6.2 Aluminum Finishes

Unexposed sheet, plate and extrusions may have mill finish as fabricated. Sandblast castings' finish, medium, **AA DAF45**. Unless otherwise specified, provide all other aluminum items with a standard mill finish. Provide a coating thickness not less than that specified for protective and decorative type finishes for items used in interior locations or architectural Class I type finish for items used in exterior locations. Provide in accordance with **AA DAF45**. Provide a polished satin finish on items to be anodized.

2.4 **CORNER GUARDS**

For jambs and sills of openings and edges of platforms provide steel shapes and plates anchored in masonry or concrete with welded steel straps or end-weld stud anchors. Form corner guards for use with glazed or ceramic tile finish on walls with **0.0625 inch** thick corrosion-resisting steel with satin finish, extend **5 feet** above the top of cove base or to the top of the wainscot, whichever is less, and securely anchor to the supporting wall. Provide galvanized corner guards on exterior. Provide interior corner

guards as indicated in Section 10 26 00 WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION.

2.5 FLOOR GRATINGS AND ROOF WALKWAYS

Design steel grating in accordance with NAAMM MBG 531 and NAAMM MBG 532 for bar type gratings, or in accordance with manufacturer's charts for plank grating. Galvanize steel floor gratings.

- a. Design floor gratings to support a stress live load of 100 pounds per square foot for the spans indicated, with maximum deflection of L/240.
- b. In accordance with NAAMM MBG 531, band edges of grating with bars of the same size as the bearing bars. Weld banding in accordance with the manufacturer's standard for trim unless otherwise indicated. Design tops of bearing bars, cross or intermediate bars to be in the same plane and to match grating finish.
- c. NAAMM MBG 531, band ends of gratings with bars of the same or greater thickness than the metal used for grating. Weld banding bars to bearing bars or channels at least every fourth bar or channel and in every corner. Tack weld intervening bars or channels. Band diagonal or round cuts by welding bars of the same or greater thickness as the grating and in accordance with the manufacturer's standard for trim unless otherwise indicated.
- d. Anchor gratings to structural members with bolts, toggle bolts, or expansion shields and bolts.
- e. Provide slip resistant surface finishes.

2.6 BOLLARDS/PIPE GUARDS

Provide 8 inch prime coated, extra strong weight steel pipe in accordance with ASTM A53/A53M. Anchor posts in concrete as indicated and fill solidly with concrete with minimum compressive strength of 3500 psi.

2.7 DOWNSPOUT TERMINATIONS

Provide 5x5 inch, 4x6 inch or 6x6 inch aluminum downspout tile adapter with manufacturer's standard powder coated finish. Units shall have all seams welded.

Provide nickel bronze cast downspout nozzle and flange.

Provide 4x3 inch, 5x4 inch and or 4 inch diameter cast iron downspout boot with cleanout access and manufacturer's standard cast iron strap.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS PLATES AND SHAPES

Provide items that do not form a part of the structural steel framework, such as lintels, sill angles, support framing for ceiling-mounted toilet partitions, miscellaneous mountings and frames. Provide lintels fabricated from structural steel shapes over openings in masonry walls and partitions as required to support wall loads over openings. Provide with connections and fasteners or welds. Construct to have at least 8 in bearing on masonry at each end.

Provide angles and plates in accordance with ASTM A36/A36M, for embedment as indicated. Galvanize embedded items exposed to the elements in

accordance with ASTM A123/A123M.

2.9 STEEL PLATE WAINSCOTS FOR CONCRETE OR MASONRY COLUMNS

Shop bend to radius for round columns and at right angles for square and rectangular columns with slight 1/4 inch radius on corners, with no horizontal joints and not more than 2 vertical joints single strapped and butt welded with a thickness of 1/4 inch.

2.10 STRUCTURAL STEEL DOOR FRAMES

- a. Provide frames as indicated. Unless otherwise indicated, construct frames of structural shapes, or shape and plate composite, to form a full depth channel shape with at least 1-1/2 inch outstanding legs. For single swing doors, provide continuous 5/8 by 1-1/2 inch bar stock stops at head and jambs. For freight elevator hoistway entrance, include a non-skid metal sill. Provide extruded metal frames as required by the elevator manufacturer.
- b. Provide support where track, guides, hoods, hangers, operators, and other accessories are required.
- c. Provide jamb anchors near top, bottom, and at not more than 24 inch intervals. Provide the bottom of each jamb member with a clip angle welded in place with two 1/2 inch diameter floor bolts for adjustment.
- d. Provide spreaders between bottoms of floor jamb members. When floor construction permits, spreaders may be left in place and concealed in the floor.

Provide frames of rolled shapes as indicated. Miter and weld heads to jambs, or provide riveted clip angle connections concealed in the finished work. Provide frames for swinging doors with 5/8 by 1-1/2 inch solid bar stops secured to the frame by welding or by 1/4 inch diameter countersunk machine screws spaced not more than 12 inches on centers. Stiffen head openings greater than 3 feet as necessary to limit deflection to not more than 1/16 inch. Secure frames to masonry with zinc-coated metal anchors spaced not more than 30 inches on centers. Where necessary to engage the threads of machine screws for fastening hardware, back frames on inside faces with steel plates of suitable thickness. Tap frames and reinforcing plates as necessary for the installation of hardware and other work. Countersink rivets and screw heads where they will be exposed in the finished work. Grind welds smooth.

2.11 WHEEL GUARDS

Provide wheel guards of hollow, heavy-duty type cast iron in accordance with ASTM A48/A48M, with shaped, rounded top, at least 18 inches high, and designed to provide a minimum of 6 inches of protection.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Install items at locations indicated in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Verify all field dimensions prior to fabrication. Include materials and parts necessary to complete each assembly, whether indicated or not. Miss-alignment and miss-sizing of holes for fasteners is cause for rejection. Conceal fastenings where practicable. Joints exposed to

weather must be watertight.

3.2 WORKMANSHIP

Provide miscellaneous metalwork that is true and accurate in shape, size, and profile. Make angles and lines continuous and straight. Make curves consistent, smooth and unfaceted. Provide continuous welding along the entire area of contact except where tack welding is permitted. Do not tack weld exposed connections. Unless otherwise indicated and approved, provide a smooth finish on exposed surfaces. Provide countersunk rivets where exposed. Provide coped and mitered corner joints aligned flush and without gaps.

3.3 ANCHORAGE, FASTENINGS, AND CONNECTIONS

Provide anchorage as necessary, whether indicated or not, for fastening miscellaneous metal items securely in place. Include slotted inserts, expansion shields, powder-driven fasteners, toggle bolts (when approved for concrete), through bolts for masonry, headed shear studs, machine and carriage bolts for steel, through bolts, lag bolts, and screws for wood. Do not use wood plugs. Provide non-ferrous attachments for non-ferrous metal. Provide exposed fastenings of compatible materials (avoid contact of dissimilar metals), that generally match in color and finish the surfaces to which they are applied. Conceal fastenings where practicable. Provide all fasteners flush with the surfaces they fasten, unless indicated otherwise.

3.4 BUILT-IN WORK

Where necessary and not otherwise indicated, form built-in metal work for anchorage with concrete or masonry. Provide built-in metal work in ample time for securing in place as the work progresses.

3.5 WELDING

Perform welding, welding inspection, and corrective welding in accordance with [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#). Use continuous welds on all exposed connections. Grind visible welds smooth in the finished installation. Provide welded headed shear studs in accordance with [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#), Clause 7, except as otherwise specified. Provide in accordance with the safety requirements of [EM 385-1-1](#).

3.6 DISSIMILAR METALS

Where dissimilar metals are in contact, protect surfaces with a coating in accordance with [MPI 79](#) to prevent galvanic or corrosive action. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete, plaster, mortar, masonry, wood, or absorptive materials subject to wetting, protect in accordance with [ASTM D1187/D1187M](#), asphalt-base emulsion. Clean surfaces with metal shavings from installation at the end of each work day.

3.7 PREPARATION

3.7.1 Material Coatings and Surfaces

Remove rust preventive coating just prior to field erection, using a remover approved by the metal manufacturer. Surfaces, when assembled, must be free of rust, grease, dirt and other foreign matter.

3.7.2 Environmental Conditions

Do not clean or paint surfaces when damp or exposed to foggy or rainy weather, when metallic surface temperature is less than minus 5 degrees F above the dew point of the surrounding air, or when surface temperature is below 45 degrees F or over 95 degrees F, unless approved by the Contracting Officer. Metal surfaces to be painted must be dry for a minimum of 48 hours prior to the application of primer or paint.

3.8 WHEEL GUARDS

Anchor guards to concrete or masonry in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Fill hollow cores solid with concrete with minimum compressive strength of 2500 psi.

3.9 DOOR GUARD FRAME

Mount door guard frames over glazed openings using 1/4 inch lag bolts on the interiors of wood doors or tamperproof through bolts on the interiors of metal doors.

3.10 INSTALLATION OF BOLLARDS/PIPE GUARDS

Set bollards/pipe guards vertically in concrete piers. Fill hollow cores with concrete having a compressive strength of 3500 psi.

3.11 INSTALLATION OF DOWNSPOUT TERMINATIONS

Secure downspouts terminations to downspouts and substrate per manufacturer's instructions.

3.12 STRUCTURAL STEEL DOOR FRAMES

Secure door frames to the floor slab by means of angle clips and expansion bolts. Provide any necessary reinforcements and drill and tap frames as required for hardware. Clean metal shavings from finished surfaces at the end of each work day.

For freight elevator hoistway entrances, include a non-skid metal sill installed in accordance with the elevator manufacturer's written installation instructions.

3.13 INSTALLATION OF WHEEL GUARDS

Fill wheel guards with concrete and anchor to slab in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

3.14 INSTALLATION MISCELLANEOUS PLATES AND SHAPES

Provide lintels fabricated from structural steel shapes over openings in masonry walls and partitions as indicated and as required to support wall loads over openings. Provide with connections and fasteners or welds. Construct to have at least 8 inches bearing on masonry at each end.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 06 10 00

ROUGH CARPENTRY

08/16

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN LUMBER STANDARDS COMMITTEE (ALSC)

ALSC PS 20 (2015) American Softwood Lumber Standard

AMERICAN WOOD COUNCIL (AWC)

AWC WFCM (2012) Wood Frame Construction Manual for One- and Two-Family Dwellings

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D1435 (2013) Standard Practice for Outdoor Weathering of Plastics

ASTM D1972 (1997; R 2005) Standard Practice for Generic Marking of Plastic Products

ASTM D198 (2015) Standard Test Methods of Static Tests of Lumber in Structural Sizes

ASTM D2344/D2344M (2016) Standard Test Method for Short-Beam Strength of Polymer Matrix Composite Materials and Their Laminates

ASTM D6108 (2013) Standard Test Method for Compressive Properties of Plastic Lumber and Shapes

ASTM D6109 (2013) Standard Test Methods for Flexural Properties of Unreinforced and Reinforced Plastic Lumber and Related Products

ASTM D6111 (2013a) Standard Test Method for Bulk Density and Specific Gravity of Plastic Lumber and Shapes by Displacement

ASTM D6112 (2013) Compressive and Flexural Creep and Creep-Rupture of Plastic Lumber and Shapes

ASTM D6117 (2016) Standard Test Methods for Mechanical Fasteners in Plastic Lumber and Shapes

ASTM D696 (2016) Standard Test Method for Coefficient of Linear Thermal Expansion of

Plastics Between -30 degrees C and 30
degrees C With a Vitreous Silica
Dilatometer

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC IBC

(2018) International Building Code

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Fabricated Structural Members; G

Modifications of Structural Members; G

Drawings of structural laminated members, fabricated wood trusses, engineered wood joists and rafters, and other fabricated structural members indicating materials, shop fabrication, and field erection details; including methods of fastening.

SD-03 Product Data

Plastic Lumber

Recycled Content for Plastic Lumber; S

SD-05 Design Data

Modifications of Structural Members; G

Design analysis and calculations showing design criteria used to accomplish the applicable analysis.

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Plastic

When not labeled, identify types in Operation and Maintenance Manual.

1.3 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Deliver materials to the site in an undamaged condition. Store, protect, handle, and install prefabricated structural elements in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and as specified. Store materials off the ground to provide proper ventilation, with drainage to avoid standing water, and protection against ground moisture and dampness. Store materials with a moisture barrier at both the ground level and as a cover forming a well ventilated enclosure. Store wood I-beams and glue-laminated beams and joists on edge. Adhere to requirements for stacking, lifting, bracing, cutting, notching, and special fastening requirements. Do not use

materials that have visible moisture or biological growth. Remove defective and damaged materials and provide new materials. Store separated reusable wood waste convenient to cutting station and area of work.

1.4 GRADING AND MARKING

1.4.1 Lumber

Mark each piece of framing and board lumber or each bundle of small pieces of lumber with the grade mark of a recognized association or independent inspection agency. Such association or agency must be certified by the Board of Review, American Lumber Standards Committee, to grade the species used. Surfaces that are to be exposed to view must not bear grademarks, stamps, or any type of identifying mark. Hammer marking will be permitted on timbers when all surfaces will be exposed to view.

1.4.2 Plastic Lumber

Label plastic products to be incorporated into the project in accordance with ASTM D1972, or provide product data indicating polymeric information in the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

- a. Type 2: High Density Polyethylene (HDPE).

1.5 SIZES AND SURFACING

ALSC PS 20 for dressed sizes of yard and structural lumber. Lumber must be surfaced four sides. Size references, unless otherwise specified, are nominal sizes, and actual sizes must be within manufacturing tolerances allowed by the standard under which the product is produced. Other measurements are IP or SI standard.

1.6 MOISTURE CONTENT

Air-dry or kiln-dry lumber. Kiln-dry treated lumber after treatment. Maximum moisture content of wood products must be as follows at the time of delivery to the job site:

- a. Materials other than lumber; moisture content must be in accordance with standard under which the product is produced

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.7.1 Drawing Requirements

For fabricated structural members, trusses, glulam members, indicate materials, details of construction, methods of fastening, and erection details. Include reference to design criteria used and manufacturers design calculations. Submit drawings for all proposed modifications of structural members. Do not proceed with modifications until the submittal has been approved.

1.7.2 Data Required

Submit calculations and drawings for all proposed modifications of structural members. Do not proceed with modifications until the submittal has been approved.

1.7.3 Humidity Requirements

Sequence work to minimize use of temporary HVAC to dry out building and control humidity.

1.7.4 Plastic Lumber Performance

Plastic lumber intended for use in exterior applications must have no fading or discoloration and no change in dimensional stability as tested in accordance with [ASTM D1435](#) for a period of 5 years.

1.8 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

During and immediately after installation of treated wood, engineered wood products, and laminated wood products at interior spaces, provide temporary ventilation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

2.1.1 Plastic Lumber

HDPE lumber must contain a minimum of 90 percent total recycled content. Mixed plastics and cellulose lumber must contain a minimum of 100 percent total recovered materials content, with a minimum of 50 percent post-consumer recycled content. HDPE/fiberglass lumber must contain a minimum of 95 percent total recovered materials content with a minimum of 75 percent post-consumer recycled content. Other mixed resin lumber must contain a minimum of 95 percent total recovered materials content with a minimum of 50 percent post-consumer recycled content. Provide data identifying percentage of [recycled content for plastic lumber](#).

2.1.1.1 Shear Parallel to Length

Maximum [1,000 psi](#) in accordance with [ASTM D2344/D2344M](#).

2.1.1.2 Density

[ASTM D6111](#).

2.1.1.3 Compressive Strength

- a. Secant Modulus: Minimum [70,000 psi](#) in accordance with [ASTM D6108](#).
- b. Stress at 3 percent strain: Minimum [1,500 psi](#) in accordance with [ASTM D6108](#).
- c. Compression Parallel to Grain: Minimum [3,000 psi](#) in accordance with [ASTM D6112](#).
- d. Compression Perpendicular to Grain: Minimum [1,000 psi](#) in accordance with [ASTM D6112](#).

2.1.1.4 Flexural Strength

Minimum [2,000 psi](#) in accordance with [ASTM D6109](#).

2.1.1.1.5 Tensile Strength

Minimum 1,250 psi in accordance with ASTM D198.

2.1.1.1.6 Coefficient of Thermal Expansion

Maximum 0.000080 in/in/degree F in accordance with ASTM D696.

2.1.1.1.7 Screw Withdrawal

350 lbs in accordance with ASTM D6117.

2.1.1.1.8 Nail Withdrawal

150 lbs in accordance with ASTM D6117.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Do not install building construction materials that show visual evidence of biological growth.

Conform to AWC WFCM and install in accordance with the National Association of Home Builders (NAHB) Advanced Framing Techniques: Optimum Value Engineering, unless otherwise indicated or specified. Select lumber sizes to minimize waste. Fit framing lumber and other rough carpentry, set accurately to the required lines and levels, and secure in place in a rigid manner. Space plastic lumber boards as necessary to allow for lengthwise expansion and contraction. Do not splice framing members between bearing points. Set joists, rafters, and purlins with their crown edge up. Frame members for the passage of pipes, conduits, and ducts. Provide adequate support as appropriate to the application, climate, and modulus of elasticity of the product. Do not cut or bore structural members for the passage of ducts or pipes without approval. Reinforce all members damaged by such cutting or boring by means of specially formed and approved sheet metal or bar steel shapes, or remove and provide new, as approved. Provide as necessary for the proper completion of the work all framing members not indicated or specified. Spiking and nailing not indicated or specified otherwise must be in accordance with the Nailing Schedule contained in ICC IBC; perform bolting in an approved manner. Spikes, nails, and bolts must be drawn up tight. Install plastic lumber with screws or bolts; if nails are used, use ring shank or spiral shank nails. Use slate or steel shims when leveling joists, beams, and girders on masonry or concrete. Do not use shimming on wood or metal bearings. When joists, beams, and girders are placed on masonry or concrete, a wood base plate must be positioned and leveled with grout. The joist, beam, or girder must then be placed on the plate. When joists, beams, and girders are set into masonry or concrete, a pocket must be formed into the wall. The joist, beam, or girder must then be placed into the pocket and leveled with a steel shim.

3.1.1 Plastic Lumber

In conjunction with above requirements, follow manufacturer's recommendations for plastic lumber installation, including requirements for structural support, thermal movement, working, fastening, and finishing. Use standard woodworking tools, including carbide tips, coarse saw blades, and routers with aggressive cutters. Follow manufacturer's recommendations for repair by melting.

3.2 WASTE MANAGEMENT OF WOOD PRODUCTS

In accordance with the Waste Management Plan and as specified.

Separate treated, stained, painted, and contaminated wood and place in designated area for hazardous materials. Dispose of according to local regulations.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 06 41 16.00 10

PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS
08/10

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI A161.2 (1998) Decorative Laminate Countertops,
Performance Standards for Fabricated High
Pressure

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM E84 (2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface
Burning Characteristics of Building
Materials

ASTM F547 (2017) Standard Terminology of Nails for
Use with Wood and Wood-Base Materials

BUILDERS HARDWARE MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (BHMA)

ANSI/BHMA A156.9 (2015) Cabinet Hardware

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

ANSI/NEMA LD 3 (2005) Standard for High-Pressure
Decorative Laminates

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

UL ENVIRONMENT (ULE)

ULE Greenguard UL Greenguard Certification Program

WINDOW AND DOOR MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (WDMA)

ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A (2013) Interior Architectural Wood Flush
Doors

WOODWORK INSTITUTE (WI)

NAAWS 3.1 (2017; 2018 Errata Edition) North American
Architectural Woodwork Standards

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Work in this section includes laminate clad custom casework, **cabinets, and vanities** as shown on the drawings and as described in this specification. This Section includes high-pressure laminate surfacing and cabinet hardware. Comply with EPA requirements in accordance with Section **01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING**. All exposed and semi-exposed surfaces, whose finish is not otherwise noted on the drawings or finish schedule, shall be sanded smooth and shall receive a clear finish of polyurethane. Wood finish may be shop finished or field applied in accordance with Section **09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS**.

1.3 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING

Materials in this technical specification may contribute towards contract compliance with sustainability requirements. See Section **01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING** for project requirements.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section **01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING**. Submit the following in accordance with Section **01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES**:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Shop Drawings

Installation

SD-03 Product Data

Wood Materials

Finish Schedule

Certification

SD-04 Samples

Plastic Laminates

Cabinet Hardware

SD-07 Certificates

Quality Assurance

Laminate Clad Casework

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 General Requirements

Unless otherwise noted on the drawings, all materials, construction methods, and fabrication shall conform to and comply with the **premium or**

custom grade quality standards as outlined in NAAWS 3.1, Section for laminate clad cabinets. These standards shall apply in lieu of omissions or specific requirements in this specification. Contractors and their personnel engaged in the work shall be able to demonstrate successful experience with work of comparable extent, complexity and quality to that shown and specified. Submit a quality control statement which illustrates compliance with and understanding of NAAWS 3.1 requirements, in general, and the specific NAAWS 3.1 requirements provided in this specification. The quality control statement shall also certify a minimum of ten years Contractor's experience in laminate clad casework fabrication and construction. The quality control statement shall provide a list of a minimum of five successfully completed projects of a similar scope, size, and complexity.

1.5.2 Mock-ups

Prior to final approval of shop drawings, provide a full-size mock-up of a typical vanity, floor cabinet, and wall cabinet, including all components and hardware necessary to illustrate a completed unit with a minimum of one door and one drawer assembly. The completed mock-up shall include countertops and back splashes where specified. The mock-up shall utilize specified finishes in the patterns and colors as indicated. Upon disapproval, rework or remake the mock-up until approval is secured. Remove rejected units from the jobsite. Approved mock-up may remain as part of the finished work. Submit shop drawings showing all fabricated casework items in plan view, elevations and cross-sections to accurately indicate materials used, details of construction, dimensions, methods of fastening and erection, and installation methods proposed. Shop drawing casework items shall be clearly cross-referenced to casework items located on the project drawings. Shop drawings shall include a color schedule of all casework items to include all countertop, exposed, and semi-exposed cabinet finishes to include finish material manufacturer, pattern, and color.

1.5.3 Sustainable Design Certification

Product shall be third party certified in accordance with ULE Greenguard Gold, SCS Scientific Certification Systems Indoor Advantage Gold or equal. Certification shall be performed annually and shall be current.

Forest Certification: Provide wood products made from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body. All non-FSC wood in assemblies with FSC-certified woods shall meet the FSC Controlled Wood (CW) criteria.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Casework may be delivered knockdown or fully assembled. Deliver all units to the site in undamaged condition, stored off the ground in fully enclosed areas, and protected from damage. The storage area shall be well ventilated and not subject to extreme changes in temperature or humidity.

1.7 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

Coordinate work with other trades. Units shall not be installed in any room or space until painting, and ceiling installation are complete within the room where the units are located. Floor cabinets shall be installed before finished flooring materials are installed.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD MATERIALS

2.1.1 Lumber

- a. All framing lumber shall be kiln-dried Grade III to dimensions as shown on the drawings. Frame front, where indicated on the drawings, shall be nominal 3/4 inch hardwood.
- b. Standing or running trim casework components, which are specified to receive a transparent finish, shall be maple hardwood species, plain sawn. AWI grade shall be premium or custom. Location, shape, and dimensions shall be as indicated on the drawings.

2.1.2 Panel Products

Interior Installed: Comply with low-emitting requirements in section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING.

2.1.2.1 Plywood

All plywood panels used for framing purposes shall be veneer core hardwood plywood, NAAWS 3.1 Grade AA. Nominal thickness of plywood panels shall be as indicated in this specification and on the drawings.

2.2 SOLID POLYMER MATERIAL

Solid surfacing casework components shall conform to the requirements of Section 06 61 16 SOLID SURFACING FABRICATIONS.

2.3 HIGH PRESSURE DECORATIVE LAMINATE (HPDL)

All plastic laminates shall meet the requirements of ANSI/NEMA LD 3 and ANSI A161.2 for high-pressure decorative laminates. Design, colors, surface finish and texture, and locations shall be as indicated on the drawings. Submit two samples of each plastic laminate pattern and color. Samples shall be a minimum of 5 by 7 inches in size. Plastic laminate types and nominal minimum thicknesses for casework components shall be as indicated in the following paragraphs.

2.3.1 Horizontal General Purpose Standard (HGS) Grade

Horizontal general purpose standard grade plastic laminate shall be 0.048 inches (plus or minus 0.005 inches) in thickness. This laminate grade is intended for horizontal surfaces where postforming is not required.

2.3.2 Vertical General Purpose Standard (VGS) Grade

Vertical general purpose standard grade plastic laminate shall be 0.028 inches (plus or minus 0.004 inches) in thickness. This laminate grade is intended for exposed exterior vertical surfaces of casework components where postforming is not required.

2.3.3 Horizontal General Purpose Postformable (HGP) Grade

Horizontal general purpose postformable grade plastic laminate shall be 0.042 inches (plus or minus 0.005 inches) in thickness. This laminate grade is intended for horizontal surfaces where post forming is required.

2.3.4 Vertical General Purpose Postformable (VGP) Grade

Vertical general purpose postformable grade plastic laminate shall be 0.028 inches (plus or minus 0.004 inches) in thickness. This laminate grade is intended for exposed exterior vertical surfaces of components where postforming is required for curved surfaces.

2.3.5 Horizontal General Purpose Fire Rated (HGF) Grade

Horizontal general purpose fire rated grade plastic laminate shall be 0.048 inches (plus or minus 0.005 inches) in thickness. Laminate grade shall have a class 1, class A fire rating in accordance with ASTM E84.

2.3.6 Vertical General Purpose Fire Rated (VGF) Grade

Vertical general purpose fire rated grade plastic laminate shall be 0.028 inches (plus or minus 0.004 inches) in thickness. This laminate grade shall have a class 1, class A fire rating in accordance with ASTM E84.

2.3.7 Cabinet Liner Standard (CLS) Grade

Cabinet liner standard grade plastic laminate shall be 0.020 inches in thickness. This laminate grade is intended for light duty semi-exposed interior surfaces of casework components.

2.3.8 Backing Sheet (BK) Grade

Undecorated backing sheet grade laminate is formulated specifically to be used on the backside of plastic laminated panel substrates to enhance dimensional stability of the substrate. Backing sheet thickness shall be 0.020 inches. Backing sheets shall be provided for all laminated casework components where plastic laminate finish is applied to only one surface of the component substrate.

2.4 THERMOSET DECORATIVE OVERLAYS (MELAMINE)

Thermoset decorative overlays (melamine panels) shall be used for casework cabinet interior and drawer interior surfaces.

2.5 EDGE BANDING

Edge banding for casework doors and drawer fronts shall be PVC vinyl and shall be 0.125 inch thick. Material width shall be 15/16 inches. Color and pattern shall match exposed door and drawer front laminate pattern and color.

2.6 CABINET HARDWARE

Submit one sample of each cabinet hardware item specified to include hinges, pulls, and drawer glides. All hardware shall conform to ANSI/BHMA A156.9, unless otherwise noted, and shall consist of the following components:

2.6.1 Door Hinges

Concealed 165 degree opening angle, self-close, full overlay.

2.6.2 Cabinet Pulls

4 inch wire pull, matte stainless steel.

2.6.3 Drawer Slide

Side mounted type, with full extension and a minimum 100 pound load capacity. Slides shall include an integral stop to avoid accidental drawer removal.

2.6.4 Adjustable Shelf Support System

Recessed (mortised) metal standards, BHMA No. B04071, finish: stainless steel. Support clips for the standards shall be open type, BHMA No. B04091, finish: stainless steel.

2.7 FASTENERS

Nails, screws, and other suitable fasteners shall be the size and type best suited for the purpose and shall conform to ASTM F547 where applicable.

2.8 ADHESIVES, CAULKS, AND SEALANTS

2.8.1 Adhesives

Adhesives shall be of a formula and type recommended by AWI. Adhesives shall be selected for their ability to provide a durable, permanent bond and shall take into consideration such factors as materials to be bonded, expansion and contraction, bond strength, fire rating, and moisture resistance. Adhesives shall meet local regulations regarding VOC emissions and off-gassing.

2.8.1.1 Wood Joinery

Adhesives used to bond wood members shall be a Type II for interior use polyvinyl acetate resin emulsion. Adhesives shall withstand a bond test as described in ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A.

2.8.1.2 Laminate Adhesive

Adhesive used to join high-pressure decorative laminate to wood shall be a water-based contact adhesive consistent with AWI and laminate manufacturer's recommendations. PVC edgebanding shall be adhered using a polymer-based hot melt glue.

2.8.2 Caulk

Caulk used to fill voids and joints between laminated components and between laminated components and adjacent surfaces shall be clear, 100 percent silicone.

2.8.3 Sealant

Sealant shall be of a type and composition recommended by the substrate manufacturer to provide a moisture barrier at sink cutouts and all other locations where unfinished substrate edges may be subjected to moisture.

Comply with low-emitting requirements of Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING.

2.9 ACCESSORIES

2.9.1 Grommets

Grommets shall be plastic material for cutouts with a diameter of 2 inches. Locations shall be as indicated on the drawings.

2.10 FABRICATION

Comply with low-emitting requirements of Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Verify field measurements as indicated in the shop drawings before fabrication. Fabrication and assembly of components shall be accomplished at the shop site to the maximum extent possible. Construction and fabrication of cabinets and their components shall meet or exceed the requirements for AWI premium or custom grade unless otherwise indicated in this specification. Cabinet style, in accordance with NAAWS 3.1, Section 400-G descriptions, shall be reveal overlay or as indicated on the drawings.

2.10.1 Base and Wall Cabinet Case Body

2.10.1.1 Cabinet Components

Frame members shall be glued-together, kiln-dried hardwood lumber. Top corners, bottom corners, and cabinet bottoms shall be braced with either hardwood blocks or water-resistant glue and nailed in place metal or plastic corner braces. Cabinet components shall be constructed from the following materials and thicknesses:

2.10.1.1.1 Body Members (Ends, Divisions, Bottoms, and Tops)

3/4 inch medium density fiberboard (MDF) panel product

2.10.1.1.2 Face Frames and Rails

3/4 inch hardwood lumber

2.10.1.1.3 Shelving

3/4 inch medium density fiberboard (MDF) panel product

2.10.1.1.4 Cabinet Backs

1/4 inch medium density fiberboard (MDF) panel product

2.10.1.1.5 Drawer Sides, Backs, and Subfronts

1/2 inch hardwood lumber

2.10.1.1.6 Drawer Bottoms

1/4 inch medium density fiberboard (MDF) panel product

2.10.1.1.7 Door and Drawer Fronts

3/4-inch medium density fiberboard (MDF) panel product

2.10.1.2 Joinery Method for Case Body Members

2.10.1.2.1 Tops, Exposed Ends, and Bottoms

Steel "European" assembly screws (1-1/2 inch from end, 5 inch on center, fasteners will not be visible on exposed parts).

2.10.1.2.2 Exposed End Corner and Face Frame Attachment

2.10.1.2.2.1 Mitered Joint

lock miter or spline or biscuit, glued under pressure (no visible fasteners)

2.10.1.2.2.2 Non-Mitered Joint (90 degree)

butt joint glued under pressure (no visible fasteners)

2.10.1.2.3 Cabinet Backs (Wall Hung Cabinets)

Wall hung cabinet backs must not be relied upon to support the full weight of the cabinet and its anticipated load for hanging/mounting purposes. Method of back joinery and hanging/mounting mechanisms should transfer the load to case body members. Fabrication method shall be:

2.10.1.2.3.1 Full Bound

Full bound, captured in grooves on cabinet sides, top, and bottom. Cabinet backs for floor standing cabinets shall be side bound, captured in grooves; glued and fastened to top and bottom.

2.10.1.2.3.2 Full Overlay

Full overlay, plant-on backs with minimum back thickness of 1/2 inch and minimum No. 12 plated (no case hardened) screws spaced a minimum 3 inches on center. Edge of back shall not be exposed on finished sides. Anchor strips are not required when so attached.

2.10.1.2.4 Cabinet Backs (Floor Standing Cabinets)

2.10.1.2.4.1 Side Bound

Side bound, captured in grooves; glued and fastened to top and bottom.

2.10.1.2.5 Wall Anchor Strips

Wall Anchor Strips shall be required for all cabinets with backs less than 1/2 inch thick. Strips shall consist of minimum 1/2 inch thick lumber, minimum 2-1/2 inches width; securely attached to wall side of cabinet back - top and bottom for wall hung cabinets, top only for floor standing cabinets.

2.10.2 Cabinet Floor Base

Floor cabinets shall be mounted on a base constructed of veneer core exterior plywood. Base assembly components shall be treated lumber. Finished height for each cabinet base shall be not less than the full height of the installed, specified wall base as indicated on the drawings. Bottom edge of the cabinet door or drawer face shall be flush with top of base.

2.10.3 Cabinet Door and Drawer Fronts

Door and drawer fronts shall be fabricated from 3/4 inch plywood. All door and drawer front edges shall be surfaced with high pressure plastic laminate, color and pattern to match exterior face laminate.

2.10.4 Drawer Assembly

2.10.4.1 Drawer Components

Drawer components shall consist of a removable drawer front, sides, backs, and bottom. Drawer components shall be constructed of the following materials and thicknesses:

2.10.4.1.1 Drawer Sides and Backs For Transparent Finish

1/2 inch thick solid hardwood lumber

2.10.4.1.2 Drawer Sides and Backs For Laminate Finish

1/2 inch thick 7-ply hardwood veneer core substrate

2.10.4.1.3 Drawer Bottom

1/4 inch thick veneer core panel product for transparent or plastic laminate finish

2.10.4.2 Drawer Assembly Joinery Method

- a. Multiple dovetail (all corners) or French dovetail front/dadoed back, glued under pressure.
- b. Bottoms shall be set into sides, front, and back, 1/4 inch deep groove with a minimum 3/8 inch standing shoulder.

2.10.5 Shelving

2.10.5.1 General Requirements

Shelving shall be fabricated from 3/4 inch plywood. All shelving top and bottom surfaces shall be finished with HPDL plastic laminate. Shelf edges shall be finished in a HPDL plastic laminate.

2.10.5.2 Shelf Support System

The shelf support system shall be:

2.10.5.2.1 Metal Standards

Recessed (mortised) metal standards, BHMA No. B04071, finish: stainless steel. Support clips for the standards shall be open type, BHMA No. B04091, finish: stainless steel.

2.10.6 Laminate Clad Countertops

Construct laminate countertop substrate of 3/4 inch plywood. The substrate shall be moisture-resistant where countertops receive sinks, lavatories, or are subjected to liquids. All substrates shall have sink cutout edges

sealed with appropriate sealant against moisture. No joints shall occur at any cutouts. A balanced backer sheet is required.

2.10.6.1 Edge Style

Front and exposed side countertop edges shall be in shapes and to dimensions as shown on the drawings. The countertop edge material shall be:

2.10.6.1.1 Plastic Laminate Self Edge

Flat, 90 degree "self " edge. Edge must be applied before top. Laminate edge shall overlap countertop laminate and shall be eased to eliminate sharp corners.

2.10.7 Laminate Application

Laminate application to substrates shall follow the recommended procedures and instructions of the laminate manufacturer and [ANSI/NEMA LD 3](#), using tools and devices specifically designed for laminate fabrication and application. Provide a balanced backer sheet (Grade BK) wherever only one surface of the component substrate requires a plastic laminate finish. Apply required grade of laminate in full uninterrupted sheets consistent with manufactured sizes using one piece for full length only, using adhesives specified herein or as recommended by the manufacturer. Fit corners and joints hairline. All laminate edges shall be machined flush, filed, sanded, or buffed to remove machine marks and eased (sharp corners removed). Clean up at easing shall be such that no overlap of the member eased is visible. Fabrication shall conform to [ANSI A161.2](#). Laminate types and grades for component surfaces shall be as follows unless otherwise indicated on the drawings:

2.10.7.1 Base/Wall Cabinet Case Body

- a. Exterior (exposed) surfaces to include exposed and semi-exposed face frame surfaces: HPDL Grade VGS.
- b. Interior (semi-exposed) surfaces to include interior back wall, bottom, and side walls: HPDL Grade CLS.

2.10.7.2 Adjustable Shelving

2.10.7.2.1 Top and Bottom Surfaces

HPDL Grade HGS

2.10.7.2.2 All Edges

HPDL Grade VGS

2.10.7.3 Fixed Shelving

2.10.7.3.1 Top and Bottom Surfaces

HPDL Grade HGS

2.10.7.3.2 Exposed Edges

HPDL Grade VGS

2.10.7.4 Door, Drawer Fronts, Access Panels

2.10.7.4.1 Exterior (Exposed) and Interior (Semi-Exposed) Faces

HPDL Grade VGS

2.10.7.4.2 Edges

HPDL Grade VGS

2.10.7.5 Drawer Assembly

All interior and exterior surfaces: HPDL Grade CLS.

2.10.7.6 Countertops and Splashes

All exposed and semi-exposed surfaces: HPDL Grade HGS

2.10.7.7 Tolerances

Flushness, flatness, and joint tolerances of laminated surfaces shall meet the NAAWS 3.1 premium or custom grade requirements.

2.10.8 Finishing

2.10.8.1 Filling

No fasteners shall be exposed on laminated surfaces. All nails, screws, and other fasteners in non-laminated cabinet components shall be countersunk and the holes filled with wood filler consistent in color with the wood species.

2.10.8.2 Sanding

All surfaces requiring coatings shall be prepared by sanding with a grit and in a manner that scratches will not show in the final system.

2.10.8.3 Coatings

Types, method of application and location of casework finishes shall be in accordance with the finish schedule, drawings and Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS. All cabinet reveals shall be painted. Submit descriptive data which provides narrative written verification of all types of construction materials and finishes, methods of construction, etc. not clearly illustrated on the submitted shop drawings. Data shall provide written verification of conformance with NAAWS 3.1 for the quality indicated to include materials, tolerances, and types of construction. Both the manufacturer of materials and the fabricator shall submit available literature which describes re-cycled product content, operations and processes in place that support efficient use of natural resources, energy efficiency, emissions of ozone depleting chemicals, management of water and operational waste, indoor environmental quality, and other production techniques supporting sustainable design and products.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Installation shall comply with applicable requirements for NAAWS 3.1 premium

quality standards. Countertops and fabricated assemblies shall be installed level, plumb, and true to line, in locations shown on the drawings. Cabinets and other **laminate clad casework** assemblies shall be attached and anchored securely to the floor and walls with mechanical fasteners that are appropriate for the wall and floor construction.

3.1.1 Anchoring Systems

3.1.1.1 Floor

Base cabinets shall utilize a floor anchoring system as detailed on the drawings. Anchoring and mechanical fasteners shall not be visible from the finished side of the casework assembly. Cabinet assemblies shall be attached to anchored bases without visible fasteners. Where assembly abuts a wall surface, anchoring shall include a minimum **1/2 inch** thick lumber or panel product hanging strip, minimum **2-1/2 inch** width; securely attached to the top of the wall side of the cabinet back.

3.1.1.2 Wall

Cabinet to be wall mounted shall utilize minimum **1/2 inch** thick lumber or panel product hanging strips, minimum **2-1/2 inch** width; securely attached to the wall side of the cabinet back, both top and bottom.

3.1.2 Countertops

Countertops shall be installed in locations as indicated on the drawings. Countertops shall be fastened to supporting casework structure with mechanical fasteners, hidden from view. All joints formed by the countertop or countertop splash and adjacent wall surfaces shall be filled with a clear silicone caulk. Loose **back and side** splashes shall be adhered to both the countertop surface perimeter and the adjacent wall surface with adhesives appropriate for the type of materials to be adhered. Joints between the countertop surface and splash shall be filled with clear silicone caulk in a smooth consistent concave bead. Bead size shall be the minimum necessary to fill the joint and any surrounding voids or cracks.

3.1.3 Hardware

Casework hardware shall be installed in types and locations as indicated on the drawings.

3.1.4 Doors, Drawers and Removable Panels

The fitting of doors, drawers and removable panels shall be accomplished within target fitting tolerances for gaps and flushness in accordance with **NAAWS 3.1** premium grade requirements.

3.1.5 Plumbing Fixtures

Install sinks, sink hardware, and other plumbing fixtures in locations as indicated on the drawings and in accordance with Section **22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE**.

3.1.6 Glass

Install glass and glazing in the casework using methods and materials specified in Section **08 81 00 GLAZING** in locations as indicated on the drawings.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 06 61 16

SOLID SURFACING FABRICATIONS
08/10

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D2583	(2013a) Indentation Hardness of Rigid Plastics by Means of a Barcol Impressor
ASTM D570	(1998; E 2010; R 2010) Standard Test Method for Water Absorption of Plastics
ASTM D638	(2014) Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Plastics
ASTM D696	(2016) Standard Test Method for Coefficient of Linear Thermal Expansion of Plastics Between -30 degrees C and 30 degrees C With a Vitreous Silica Dilatometer
ASTM E84	(2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
ASTM G21	(2015) Standard Practice for Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350	(2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources using Environmental Chambers

CSA GROUP (CSA)

CSA B45.5-11/IAPMO Z124	(2011; Update 1 2012) Plastic Plumbing Fixtures - First Edition

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

ANSI/NEMA LD 3	(2005) Standard for High-Pressure Decorative Laminates

NSF INTERNATIONAL (NSF)

NSF/ANSI 51 (2012) Food Equipment Materials

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

TILE COUNCIL OF NORTH AMERICA (TCNA)

TCNA Hdbk (2017) Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and
Stone Tile Installation

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program
For Chemical Emissions For Building
Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- a. Work under this section includes items utilizing solid polymer (solid surfacing) fabrication as shown on the drawings and as described in this specification. Do not change source of supply for materials after work has started, if the appearance of finished work would be affected.
- b. In most instances, installation of solid polymer fabricated components and assemblies will require strong, correctly located structural support provided by other trades. To provide a stable, sound, secure installation, close coordination is required between the solid polymer fabricator/installer and other trades to ensure that necessary structural wall support, cabinet counter top structural support, proper clearances, and other supporting components are provided for the installation of wall panels, countertops, shelving, and all other solid polymer fabrications to the degree and extent recommended by the solid polymer manufacturer.
- c. Appropriate staging areas for solid polymer fabrications. Allow variation in component size and location of openings of plus or minus 1/8 inch.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Detail Drawings; G, AE

Installation; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Solid Polymer Material

Qualifications

Fabrications

Indoor air quality for solid surface seam and sealant products; S

SD-04 Samples

Material; G, AE

Counter and Vanity Tops; G, AE

SD-06 Test Reports

Solid Polymer Material

SD-07 Certificates

Fabrications

Qualifications

Indoor Air Quality for solid surface fabrication products; S

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Clean-up

1.4 CERTIFICATIONS

1.4.1 Indoor Air Quality

Submit required indoor air quality certifications and validations in one submittal package.

1.4.1.1 Indoor Air Quality for Solid Surface Fabricated Products

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by **UL 2818** (Greenguard) Gold, **SCS** Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification by other third-party program that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited herein.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 Qualifications

To ensure warranty coverage, solid polymer fabricators must be certified to fabricate by the solid polymer material manufacturer being utilized. Mark all fabrications with the fabricator's certification label affixed in an inconspicuous location. Fabricators must have a minimum of 5 years of experience working with solid polymer materials. Submit solid polymer manufacturer's certification attesting to fabricator qualification approval.

1.5.2 Mock-ups

Submit [Detail Drawings](#) indicating locations, dimensions, component sizes, fabrication and joint details, attachment provisions, installation details, and coordination requirements with adjacent work. Prior to final approval of shop drawings, provide a full-size mock-up of a typical countertop where multiple units are required. The mock-up must include all solid polymer components required to provide a completed unit, and utilize finishes in patterns and colors indicated on the drawings. Should the mock-up not be approved, re-work or remake it until approval is secured. Remove rejected units from the jobsite. Approved mock-up may remain as part of the finished work.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Do not deliver materials to project site until areas are ready for installation. Deliver components and materials to the site undamaged, in containers clearly marked and labeled with manufacturer's name. Store materials indoors with adequate precautions taken to prevent damage to finished surfaces. Provide protective coverings to prevent physical damage or staining following installation, for duration of project.

1.7 WARRANTY

Provide manufacturer's warranty of ten years against defects in materials, excluding damages caused by physical or chemical abuse or excessive heat. Provide warranty for material and labor for replacement or repair of defective material for a period of ten years after component installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIAL

Provide [solid polymer material](#) that is a homogeneous filled solid polymer; not coated, laminated or of a composite construction; meeting [CSA B45.5-11/IAPMO Z124](#) requirements. Provide materials with the minimum physical and performance properties specified. Superficial damage to a depth of [0.01 inch](#) must be repairable by sanding or polishing. Provide material thickness as indicated on the drawings. Provide material not less than [1/4 inch](#) in thickness. Submit a minimum [4 by 4 inch](#) sample of each color and pattern for approval. Provide samples that indicate the full range of color and pattern variation. Retain approved samples as the standard for this work throughout the construction duration. Submit test report results from an independent testing laboratory attesting that the submitted solid polymer material meets or exceeds each of the specified performance requirements. Provide materials that meet the emissions requirements of [CDPH SECTION 01350](#) (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type).

Provide certification or validation of [indoor air quality for solid surface fabrication products](#).

2.1.1 Cast, 100 Percent Acrylic Polymer Solid Surfacing Material

Provide cast, 100 percent acrylic solid polymer material composed of acrylic polymer, mineral fillers, and pigments and meeting the following minimum performance requirements:

PROPERTY	REQUIREMENT (min. or max.)	TEST PROCEDURE
Tensile Strength	4000 psi (max.)	ASTM D638
Hardness	55-Barcol Impressor (min.)	ASTM D2583
Thermal Expansion	.000023 in/in/F (max.)	ASTM D696
Boiling Water Surface Resistance	No Change	ANSI/NEMA LD 3-3.05
High Temperature Resistance	No Change	ANSI/NEMA LD 3-3.06
Impact Resistance (Ball drop)		ANSI/NEMA LD 3-303
1/4 inch sheet	36 inches, 1/2 lb ball, no failure	
1/2 inch sheet	140 inches, 1/2 lb ball, no failure	
3/4 inch sheet	200 inches, 1/2 lb ball, no failure	
Mold & Mildew Growth	No growth	ASTM G21
Bacteria Growth	No growth	ASTM G21
Liquid Absorption (Weight in 24 hrs.)	0.1 percent max.	ASTM D570
Flammability		ASTM E84
Flame Spread	25 max.	
Smoke Developed	30 max.	
Sanitation	"Food Contact" approval	NSF/ANSI 51

2.1.2 Acrylic-modified Polymer Solid Surfacing Material

Provide cast, solid polymer material composed of a formulation containing acrylic and polyester polymers, mineral fillers, and pigments. Provide acrylic polymer content not less than 5 percent and not more than 10 percent to meet the following minimum performance requirements:

PROPERTY	REQUIREMENT (min. or max.)	TEST PROCEDURE
Tensile Strength	4100 psi (max.)	ASTM D638
Hardness	50-Barcol Impressor (min.)	ASTM D2583

PROPERTY	REQUIREMENT (min. or max.)	TEST PROCEDURE
Thermal Expansion	.000023 in/in/F (max.)	ASTM D696
Boiling Water Surface Resistance	No Change	ANSI/NEMA LD 3-3.05
High Temperature Resistance	No Change	ANSI/NEMA LD 3-3.06
Impact Resistance (Ball drop)		ANSI/NEMA LD 3-303
1/4 inch sheet	36 inches, 1/2 lb ball, no failure	
1/2 inch sheet	140 inches, 1/2 lb ball, no failure	
3/4 inch sheet	200 inches, 1/2 lb ball, no failure	
Mold & Mildew Growth	No growth	ASTM G21
Bacteria Growth	No growth	ASTM G21
Liquid Absorption (Weight in 24 hrs.)	0.6 percent max.	ASTM D570
Flammability		ASTM E84
Flame Spread	25 max.	
Smoke Developed	100 max.	
Sanitation	"Food Contact" approval	NSF/ANSI 51

2.1.3 Material Patterns and Colors

Provide patterns and colors for all solid polymer components and fabrications indicated on the project drawings and color schedule. Pattern and color must be consistent in appearance, throughout the entire depth (thickness) of the solid polymer material.

2.1.4 Surface Finish

Provide exposed finished surfaces and edges with a uniform appearance. Exposed surface finish must be matte; gloss rating of 5-20.

2.2 ACCESSORY PRODUCTS

Provide accessory products, as specified below, manufactured by the solid polymer manufacturer or products approved by the solid polymer manufacturer

for use with the solid polymer materials being specified.

2.2.1 Seam Adhesive

Provide a two-part adhesive kit to create permanent, inconspicuous, non-porous, hard seams and joints by chemical bond between solid polymer materials and components to create a monolithic appearance of the fabrication. Adhesive must be approved by the solid polymer manufacturer and color-matched to the surfaces being bonded where solid-colored, solid polymer materials are being bonded together. Provide clear or color matched seam adhesive where particulate patterned, solid polymer materials are being bonded together.

2.2.2 Panel Adhesive

Provide neoprene based panel adhesive meeting [TCNA Hdbk](#), Underwriter's Laboratories (UL) listed. Use this adhesive to bond solid polymer components to adjacent and underlying substrates.

2.2.3 Silicone Sealant

Provide a mildew-resistant, FDA and OSHA Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) listed silicone sealant or caulk in a clear formulation. The silicone sealant must be approved for use by the solid polymer manufacturer. Use sealant to seal all expansion joints between solid polymer components and all joints between solid polymer components and other adjacent surfaces such as walls, floors, ceiling, and plumbing fixtures.

2.2.4 Seam and Sealant Emissions

Provide seam and other accessory materials that meet the emissions requirements of [CDPH SECTION 01350](#) (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type).

Provide validation of [indoor air quality for solid surface seam and sealant products](#).

2.2.5 Mounting Hardware

Provide mounting hardware, including sink/bowl clips, inserts and fasteners for attachment of undermount sinks and lavatories.

2.3 [FABRICATIONS](#)

Provide factory or shop fabricated components to sizes and shapes indicated, to the greatest extent practical, in accordance with approved Shop Drawings and manufacturer's requirements. Provide factory cutouts for sinks, lavatories, and plumbing fixtures where indicated on the drawings. Contours and radii must be routed to template, with edges smooth. Defective and inaccurate work will be rejected. Submit product data indicating product description, fabrication information, and compliance with specified performance requirements for solid polymer, joint adhesive, sealants, and heat reflective tape.

2.3.1 Joints and Seams

Form joints and seams between solid polymer components using manufacturer's approved seam adhesive. Provide inconspicuous joints in appearance and

without voids to create a monolithic appearance.

2.3.2 Edge Finishing

Rout and finish component edges to a smooth, uniform appearance and finish. Provide edge shapes and treatments, including any inserts, as detailed on the drawings. Rout all cutouts, then sand all edges smooth. Repair or reject defective or inaccurate work.

2.3.3 Counter and Vanity Top Splashes

Fabricate backsplashes and end splashes from 1/2 inch thick solid surfacing material to be in conformance with dimensions and shapes as indicated on the drawings. Provide backsplashes and end splashes for all counter tops and vanity tops at locations indicated on the drawings. Provide shop fabricated permanently attached backsplashes.

2.3.3.1 Permanently Attached Backsplash

Fasten permanently attached backsplashes straight with seam adhesive to form a 90 degree transition or with seam adhesive and to form a radiused coved transition from countertop to backsplash.

2.3.3.2 End Splashes

Provide end splashes as loose for installation at the jobsite after horizontal surfaces to which they are to be attached have been installed.

2.3.4 Shelving

Provide shelving and wall support brackets fabricated from 1/2 inch thick solid surfacing, solid polymer material, including dimensions, edge shape, and other details as indicated on the drawings.

2.3.5 Window Stools

Fabricate window stools from 1/2 inch thick solid surfacing, solid polymer material, including dimensions, edge shape, and other details as indicated on the drawings and selected from manufacturer's available pre-fabricated standards.

2.3.6 Counter and Vanity Tops

Fabricate all solid surfacing, solid polymer counter top and vanity top components from 1/2 inch thick material including details, dimensions, locations, and quantities as indicated on the Drawings. Provide complete counter tops with 4 inch high where indicated on the drawings. Attach 2 inch wide reinforcing strip of polymer material under each horizontal counter top seam. Submit a minimum 1 foot wide by 6 inch deep, full size sample for each type of counter top shown on the project drawings. The sample must include the edge profile and backsplash as detailed on the project drawings. Provide solid polymer material of a pattern and color as indicated on the drawings. Provide sample that includes at least one seam and retain approved sample as standard for this work.

2.3.6.1 Counter Top With Sink

Provide solid polymer sinks that are a manufacturer's standard, pre-molded product specifically designed for attachment to solid polymer countertops.

2.3.6.2 Vanity Tops With Bowls

- a. Provide countertops with vitreous china bowls including cutouts to template as furnished by the sink manufacturer. Provide manufacturer's standard sink mounting hardware for vitreous china rimless installation. Seal seam between sink and countertop with silicone sealant. Install sink, faucet, and plumbing requirements in accordance with Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.
- b. Provide solid polymer bowls as manufacturer's standard, pre-molded product specifically designed for attachment to solid polymer counter tops.
- c. Provide one-piece vanity top and bowl fabrications that are a standard pre-fabricated product provided by the solid polymer manufacturer. Each unit must include a vanity top with integral backsplash and sink bowl.

2.3.7 Shower Wall Panel System

Provide shower wall enclosures in a system of solid polymer components to include: panels, corner trim, soap dish, shampoo shelf, and panel edge trim. Provide dimensions of all components as indicated on the drawings. Panels must be formed from manufacturer's standard 1/4 inch thick sheet product. Provide full width and height panels with seams occurring only at the inside corners of the enclosure. Soap dish and shampoo shelf must be of a configuration, shape, and location as indicated on the drawings.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

3.1.1 Components

Do not install items that show visual evidence of biological growth. Install all components and fabricated units plumb, level, and rigid. Make field joints between solid polymer components using solid polymer manufacturer's approved seam adhesives, to provide a monolithic appearance with joints inconspicuous in the finished work. Attach metal or vitreous china sinks and lavatory bowls to counter tops using solid polymer manufacturer's recommended clear silicone sealant and mounting hardware. Install all solid polymer sinks and bowls using a color-matched seam adhesive. Install all plumbing connections to sinks and lavatories in accordance with Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.

3.1.1.1 Loose Counter Top Splashes

Mount loose splashes in the locations noted on the drawings. Adhere loose splashes to the counter top with a color matched silicone sealant when the solid polymer components are solid colors. Use a clear silicone sealant to provide adhesion of particulate patterned solid polymer splashes to counter tops.

3.1.1.2 Wall Panels & Panel Systems

Use a neoprene-based panel adhesive for installation of wall panels and system components to substrates. Use seam adhesive to adhere all solid polymer components to each other with the exception of expansion joints and

inside corners. Use a silicone sealant to join all inside corners and expansion joints between solid polymer components. Seal all joints between solid polymer components and non-solid polymer surfaces with a clear silicone sealant.

3.1.2 Silicone Sealant

Use a clear, silicone sealant or caulk to seal all expansion joints between solid polymer components and all joints between solid polymer components and other adjacent surfaces such as walls, floors, ceiling, and plumbing fixtures. Sealant bead must be smooth and uniform in appearance and use the minimum size necessary to bridge any gaps between the solid surfacing material and the adjacent surface. Install continuous bead that runs the entire length of the joint being sealed.

3.1.3 Plumbing

Make plumbing connections to sinks and lavatories in accordance with Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.

3.2 CLEAN-UP

Clean all components after installation and cover to protect against damage during completion of the remaining project items. Components damaged after installation by other trades will be repaired or replaced at the General Contractor's cost. Component supplier will provide a repair/replace cost estimate to the General Contractor who must approve estimate before repairs are made. Submit a minimum of three copies of maintenance data indicating manufacturer's care, repair and cleaning instructions. Provide maintenance video if available. Submit maintenance kit for matte finishes.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 07 05 23

PRESSURE TESTING AN AIR BARRIER SYSTEM FOR AIR TIGHTNESS
05/14

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

Employ an independent agency to conduct the pressure test on the building envelope in accordance with this specification section and [ASTM E779](#).

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR NONDESTRUCTIVE TESTING (ASNT)

ANSI/ASNT CP-189	(2016) ASNT Standard for Qualification and Certification of Nondestructive Testing Personnel (ANSI/ASNT CP-105-2006)
ASNT CP-105	(2011) ASNT Standard Topical Outlines for Qualification of Nondestructive Testing Personnel - Item No. 2821
ASNT SNT-TC-1A	(2016) Recommended Practice for Personnel Qualification and Certification in Nondestructive Testing

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM E1186	(2017) Standard Practices for Air Leakage Site Detection in Building Envelopes and Air Barrier Systems
ASTM E1827	(2011; R 2017) Standard Test Methods for Determining Airtightness of Buildings Using an Orifice Blower Door
ASTM E779	(2010) Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization

INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATION FOR STANDARDIZATION (ISO)

ISO 6781	(1983) Thermal Insulation - Qualitative Detection of Thermal Irregularities in Building Envelopes - Infrared Method

1.3 DEFINITIONS

The following terms as they apply to this section:

1.3.1 Air Barrier Envelope

The surface that separates the inside air from the outside air. The combination of air barrier assemblies and air barrier components, connected by air barrier accessories are designed to provide a continuous barrier to the movement of air through an environmental separator. A single building may have more than one air barrier envelope. The air barrier surface includes the top, bottom, and sides of the envelope. The term "air barrier envelope" is also known as "air barrier system" or simply "air barrier".

1.3.2 Air Leakage Rate

How leaky, or conversely how air tight a building envelope is. The air leakage is normally described in terms of air flow rate for the surface area of the envelope at a defined differential pressure.

1.3.3 Bias Pressure

Also known as zero flow pressure, baseline pressure, offset pressure or background pressure. With the envelope not artificially pressurized, bias is the differential pressure that always exists between the envelope that has been prepared (sealed) for the pressure test and the outdoors. Bias pressure is made up of two components, fixed static offset (usually due to stack effect or the HVAC system) and fluctuating pressure (usually due to wind or a moving elevator). Because of pressure fluctuations many bias pressure readings are recorded and averaged for use in the calculations.

1.3.4 Blower Door

Commonly used term for an apparatus used to pressurize and depressurize the space within the building envelope and quantify air leakage through the envelope. The blower door typically includes a door fan and an air resistant fabric or a series of hard panels that extends to cover and seal the door opening between the fan shroud and door frame. The door fan is a calibrated fan capable of measuring air flow and is usually placed in the opening of an exterior door. With the air barrier otherwise sealed, air produced by the door fan pressurizes or de-pressurizes the envelope, depending on the fan's orientation.

1.3.5 Environmental Separator

The parts of a building that separate the controlled interior environment from the uncontrolled exterior environment, or that separate spaces within a building that have dissimilar environments. The term "environmental separator" is also known as the "control layer".

1.3.6 Pressure Test

A generic term for a test in which the envelope is either pressurized or de-pressurized with respect to the outdoors.

1.3.6.1 Negative Pressure Test (Depressurization Test)

A test wherein air inside the envelope is drawn to the outdoors. This places the envelope at a lower (negative) pressure with respect to the outdoors.

1.3.6.2 Positive Pressure Test (Pressurization Test)

A test wherein outdoor air is pushed into the envelope. This air movement places the envelope at a higher (positive) pressure with respect to the outdoors.

1.4 WORK PLAN

Submit the following not later than 120 calendar days after contract award, but before start of pressure testing work, steps to be taken by the lead pressure test technician to accomplish the required testing.

a. Memorandum of test procedure.

(1) Proposed dates for conducting the pressure, thermographic and fog tests.

(2) Submit detailed pressure test procedures prior to the test. Provide a plan view showing proposed locations (personnel doors or other similar openings) to install blower doors or flexible ducts (for trailer-mounted fans), if used.

b. Test equipment to be used.

c. Scaffolding, scissor lifts, power, electrical extension cords, duct tape, plastic sheeting and other Contractor's support equipment required to perform all tests.

d. Other Contractor's support personnel who will be on site for testing.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Work Plan; G

SD-03 Product Data

Thermal Imaging Camera; G

SD-05 Design Data

Envelope Surface Area Calculations; G

SD-07 Certificates

Pressure Test Agency
Thermographer Qualifications
Test Instruments
Date Of Last Calibration

SD-06 Test Reports

Pressure Test Procedures; G
Air Leakage Test Report; G
Diagnostic Test Report; G

No later than 14 days after completion of the pressure test, submit 6 copies of an organized report bound in a durable 3-ring binder. The report is to contain a table of contents, an executive summary, an introduction, a results section and a discussion of the results. Submit the Air Leakage Test Report as described in paragraph AIR LEAKAGE TEST REPORT. Submit a diagnostic test report as described in paragraph LOCATING LEAKS BY DIAGNOSTIC TESTING. The diagnostic test report is to include the Thermographic Investigation Report and the Fog Test Report (if performed).

Submit field data and completed report forms found in the appendices. Use the sample forms, Test Agency Qualification Sheet, Air Leakage Test Form and Air Leakage Test Results Form to summarize the tests for the appropriate building envelope. Submit both electronically populated and field hand filled-in forms.

Report Data. Include in the report the following information for all tests:

- a. Date of Issue
- b. Project title and number
- c. Name, address, and telephone number of testing agency
- d. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections
- e. Names of individuals making the inspection or test
- f. Designation of the work and test method
- g. Identification of product and Specification Section
- h. Complete inspection or test data
- i. Test results and an interpretation of test results
- j. Comments or professional opinion on whether inspected or tested work complies with contract document requirements
- k. Recommendations on retesting

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6.1 Modification of References

Perform all pressure and diagnostic tests according to the referenced publications listed in paragraph REFERENCES and as modified by this section. Consider the advisory or recommended provisions, of the referred references, as mandatory.

1.6.2 Qualifications

1.6.2.1 Pressure Test Agency

Submit, no later than 15 calendar days after contract award, information certifying that the pressure test agency is not affiliated with any other company participating in work on this contract. The work of the test agency is limited to pressure testing the building envelope, performing a thermography test and fog test, and investigating, through various methods, the location of air leaks through the air barrier. See paragraph PRESSURE TEST AGENCY for additional requirements. For thermographer qualifications, see paragraph THERMOGRAPHER QUALIFICATIONS.

Use the sample TEST AGENCY QUALIFICATIONS SHEET form (Appendix C), to submit the following information.

- a. Verification of 2 years of experience as an agency in pressure testing commercial and/or industrial buildings.
- b. List of at least ten commercial/industrial facilities with building envelopes that the agency has tested within the past 2 years. Include building name, address, and name of prime construction contractor and contractor's point-of-contact information.
- c. Confirmation of 2 years of commercial and or industrial building pressure test experience for the lead pressure test technician and the thermographer in using the specified [ASTM E779](#) testing standard. References from five Contracting Officers for facilities where the lead test technician has supervised commercial and or industrial building pressure tests in the last 2 years.
- d. Verification that the lead pressure test technician has been employed by a building pressure testing agency in the capacity of a lead pressure test technician for not less than 1 year.

1.6.2.2 [Thermographer Qualifications](#)

To perform an infrared diagnostic evaluation, use a lead thermographer who has at least an active Level II Certification that is based on the requirements in [ASNT CP-105](#) or [ANSI/ASNT CP-189](#) and is in accordance with [ASNT SNT-TC-1A](#). The course of study is to be specifically focused on infrared thermography for building science. The thermographer must have at least two years of building science thermography experience in IR testing commercial or industrial buildings. The thermographer must also have experience in building envelopes and building science in order to make effective recommendations to the contractor should the envelope require additional sealing. Submit the thermographer's certificate for approval. Submit a list of at least ten commercial/industrial buildings on which the thermographer has performed IR thermography in the past two years. The thermographer is to have a current active certification. Submit certification at least 60 days prior to thermography testing.

1.6.3 [Test Instruments And Date Of Last Calibration](#)

Submit a signed and dated list of test instruments, their application, manufacturer, model, serial number, range of operation, accuracy and date of most recent calibration.

1.7 CLIMATE CONDITIONS SUITABLE FOR A PRESSURE TEST

As the test date approaches, monitor the weather forecast for the test site. Avoid testing on days forecast to experience high winds, rain, or snow. Monitor weather forecasts prior to shipping pressure test equipment to the site. Preferred ambient weather test conditions as stated in [ASTM E779](#) are 0 to 4 mph winds and an ambient temperature range of 41 - 95 degrees F. Based on current and forecast weather conditions, the Contracting Officer's representative is to grant final approval for testing to occur.

1.7.1 Rain

Rain can temporarily seal roof and wall assemblies so that they leak less than under no-rain conditions. Do not test during rain or if rain is anticipated during testing. If pneumatic hoses are installed and exposed to rain inspect the hose to insure rainwater has not migrated into the hose ends. Orient all exposed hose ends to keep them out of water puddles. Success in temporarily sealing outdoor ventilation components such as louvers and exhaust fans may also be compromised by rain. Don't seal roof-mounted ventilation components during times of potential lightning.

1.7.2 Snow

Snow piled against a wall or on top of a roof can make a building envelope appear to be more airtight than it actually is. Snow may also impact thermography readings. Remove snow from around and on top of the building prior to testing.

1.7.3 Wind

Because wind can skew pressure test results, test only on days and at times when winds are anticipated to be the calmest. Avoid pressure testing during gusty or high wind conditions.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PRESSURE TEST EQUIPMENT

Depending on site conditions and size of the envelope, the test may be conducted using **blower door equipment or trailer-mounted fans**. The testing agency is to supply sufficient quantity of blower equipment that will produce a minimum of 75 Pa differential pressure between the envelope and outdoors using the test methods described herein. Supplying additional blower test equipment to provide additional airflow capacity or to act as a backup is highly recommended.

2.1.1 Blower Door Fans and Trailer Mounted Fans

Each air flow measuring system including blower door fans and trailer mounted fans are to be calibrated within the last 3 years in accordance with **ASTM E1827**. Calibrated blower door fans and trailer mounted fans must measure accurately to within plus or minus 5 percent of the flow reading. Blower door equipment and trailer mounted fans are to be specifically designed to pressurize building envelopes. Each set of blower door equipment is to include fan(s), digital gage(s), door frame, door fabric or hard panels.

2.1.2 Digital Gages as Test Instruments

Use only digital gages as measuring instruments in the pressure test; analog gages are not acceptable. The gauges must be accurate to within 1.0 percent of the pressure reading or 0.15 Pa, whichever is greater. Each gage is to have been calibrated within two years of the test. The calibration is to be checked against a National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST, formerly National Bureau of Standards) traceable standard.

2.2 **THERMAL IMAGING CAMERA** REQUIREMENTS

The thermal imaging camera used in the thermography test must have a

thermal sensitivity (Noise Equivalent Temperature Difference.) of +/- 0.18 degrees F at 86 degrees F or less. Ensure the camera's operating spectral range falls between 2 and 15 micrometers. Ensure the camera's IR image viewing screen resolution measures at least 240x180 pixels. Ensure the camera has a means of recording thermal images seen on the camera viewing screen. The camera is to display output as individual still frame images that also can be downloaded and inserted into an electronic Thermographic Investigation Report. Submit camera make and model, and catalog information that defines the camera thermal sensitivity for approval.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PRESSURE TEST AGENCY

The test agency is to be an independent third party subcontractor, not an affiliated or subsidiary of the prime contractor, subcontractors or A/E firm. The agency is to be regularly engaged in pressure testing of commercial/industrial building envelopes. If using blower door or trailer-mounted fans, the lead test technician must have at least two years of experience in using such equipment in building envelope pressurization tests. Formal training using pressure test equipment is highly recommended. Technicians using the building's air handling system for pressure testing are to have tested at least five commercial/industrial buildings within the past two years with each building having over 50,000 square feet of floor area. Submit the name, address and floor areas of each of these five buildings for approval.

3.1.1 Field Work

The lead pressure test technician and thermographer are to be present at the project site while testing is performed and is to be responsible for conducting, supervising, and managing of their respective test work. Management includes health and safety of test agency employees.

3.1.2 Reporting Work

The lead pressure test technician is to prepare, sign, and date the test agenda, equipment list, and submit a certified Air Leakage Test Report. The thermographer is to prepare, sign, and date the test agenda, equipment list, and submit a certified Thermographic Investigation Report. The contractor is to prepare a final report that identifies improvements that were made to the envelope to reduce leaks, mitigate thermal bridging, eliminate moisture migration, repair insulation voids discovered during diagnostic tests. Jointly submit all reports.

3.2 ENVELOPE SURFACE AREA CALCULATION

The architectural air barrier boundary includes the floor, walls, and ceiling. After construction of the air barrier envelope is complete, field measure the envelope to ensure the physical measurements match the design drawings and the air barrier envelope surface area calculations. If the measurements are not consistent with the defined air barrier boundary as indicated, re-calculate the envelope surface area and submit the envelope surface area calculation and results for review. If the air barrier was not defined during design but the air barrier envelope surface area was not calculated, calculate it during construction and submit the envelope surface area calculations and result for review.

3.3 PREPARING THE BUILDING ENVELOPE FOR THE PRESSURE TEST

3.3.1 Testing During Construction

The pressure test cannot be conducted until all components of the air barrier system have been installed. After all sealing as described herein has been completed, inspect the envelope to ensure it has been adequately prepared. During the pressure test, stop all ongoing construction within and neighboring the envelope which may impact the test or the air barrier integrity. The pressure test may be conducted before finishes that are not part of the air barrier envelope have been installed. For example, if suspended ceiling tile, interior gypsum board or cladding systems are not part of the air barrier the test can be conducted before they are installed. Recommend testing prior to installing the finished ceilings within the envelope and immediately surrounding it. The absence of finished ceilings allows for inspection and diagnostic testing of the roof/wall interface and for implementation of repairs to the air barrier, if necessary to comply with the maximum allowed leakage.

3.3.2 Sealing The Air Barrier Envelope

Seal all penetrations through the air barrier. Unavoidable penetrations due to electrical boxes or conduit, plumbing, and other assemblies that are not air tight are to be made so by sealing the assembly and the interface between the assembly and the air barrier or by extending the air barrier over the assembly. Support the air barrier so as to withstand the maximum positive and negative air pressure to be placed on the building without displacement or damage, and transfer the load to the structure. Durably construct the air barrier to last the anticipated service life of the assembly and to withstand the maximum positive and negative pressures placed on it during pressure testing. Do not install lighting fixtures that are equipped with ventilation holes through the air barrier.

3.3.3 Sealing Plumbing

Prime all plumbing traps located within the envelope full of water.

3.3.4 Close and Lock Doors

Close and lock all doors and windows in the envelope perimeter. For doors not equipped with latching hardware, temporarily secure them in the closed position. Secure the doors in such a way that they remain fully closed even when the maximum anticipated differential air pressure produced during the test acts on them.

3.3.5 Hold Excluded Building Areas at the Outdoor Pressure Level

Keep building areas immediately surrounding but excluded from the test envelope at the outdoor pressure level during the pressure test. Maintain these areas at the outdoor pressure level by propping exterior doors open, opening windows and de-energizing all air moving devices in or serving these areas.

3.3.6 Maintain an Even Pressure within the Envelope

Ensure the pressure differences within the envelope are minimized by opening all internal air pathways including propping open all interior doors. Distribute test fans throughout the envelope as necessary to ensure the internal pressures are uniform (within 10 percent of the average

differential pressure). Ideally, do not install suspended ceilings until after all pressure tests have been completed. If, however the envelope includes finished suspended ceiling spaces, temporarily remove approximately 5 percent of all ceiling tiles or a minimum of 1 tile from each isolated suspended ceiling space, whichever comprises the greatest surface area. Temporarily remove additional ceiling tiles during testing to allow for inspection and diagnostic testing of the ceiling/wall interface.

3.3.7 Maintain Access to Mechanical and Electrical Rooms

Maintain access to mechanical rooms and electrical rooms associated with the envelope to allow for de-energizing ventilation equipment and resetting circuit breakers tripped by blower door equipment, if used.

3.3.8 Minimize Potential for Blowing Dust and Debris

Because high velocity air will be blown into and out of the envelope during the test, debris, including dust and litter, may become airborne. Airborne debris may become trapped or entangled in test equipment, thereby skewing test results. Ensure areas within and surrounding the envelope are free of dust, litter and construction materials that are easily airborne. If pressurizing existing, occupied areas, provide adequate notice to building occupants of blowing dust and debris, and general disruption of normal activities during the test.

3.3.9 De-energize Air Moving Devices

De-energize all air moving devices serving the envelope to keep air within the envelope as still as reasonably achievable. De-energize all fans that deliver air to, exhaust air from, or recirculate air within the envelope. Also de-energize all fans serving areas adjacent to but excluded from the envelope.

3.3.10 Installing Blower Door Equipment in a Door Opening

Where blower door fans are used, before installing blower door equipment, select a door opening that does not restrict air flow into and out of the envelope and has at least 5 feet clear distance in front of and behind the door opening. Disconnect the door actuator and secure the door open to prevent it from being drawn into the fan by fan pressure.

3.4 BUILDING ENVELOPE AIR TIGHTNESS REQUIREMENT

For each building envelope, perform two pressure tests; the Architectural Only test and the Architectural Plus HVAC System test. The purpose of the pressure (air leakage) test is to determine final compliance with the airtightness requirement by demonstrating the performance of the continuous air barrier. An effective air barrier envelope minimizes infiltration and exfiltration through unintended air paths (leaks). The tests may be performed in any desired order.

3.4.1 Architectural Only Test

The test envelope is the architectural air barrier boundary as defined on the contract drawings. This boundary includes connecting walls, roof and floor which comprise a complete, whole, and continuous three dimensional envelope. Perform both a positive pressure test and a negative pressure test on this envelope, unless otherwise directed.

3.4.1.1 Test Goal

Input data from the test into the Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization spreadsheet as described in paragraph CALCULATION PROGRAM via the Air Leakage Test Form. Compare output from the spreadsheet against the maximum allowable leakage defined in Section 07 27 10.00 10 BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM. The envelope passes the test if the leakage rate, as calculated using the spreadsheet, is equal to or lower than the Architectural Only leakage rate goal.

3.4.1.2 Preparing The Envelope For The Pressure Test - Seal All Openings Through The Air Barrier

Temporarily close all perimeter windows, roof hatches and doors in the envelope perimeter except for those doors that are to remain open to accommodate blower door or trailer mounted fan test equipment installation. Seal, or isolate all other intentional openings, pathways and fenestrations through the architectural envelope prior to pressure testing. Follow the Recommended Test Envelope Conditions identified in ASTM E1827, Table 1, for the Closed Envelope condition. These openings may include boiler flues, fuel-burning water heater flues, fuel-burning kitchen equipment, clothes dryer vents, fireplaces, wall or ceiling grilles, diffusers etc. Before sealing flues, close their associated fuel valves and verify the associated pilot lights are extinguished. Prime all plumbing traps located within the envelope full of water. In lieu of applying tape and/or plastic, Typical temporary sealing materials include tape and sheet plastic or a self-adhesive grille wrap. Use and apply tape and plastic in a manner that does not deface or remove paint or mar the finish of permanent surfaces. Be especially aware of residue that remains from tape applied to stainless steel surfaces such as kitchen hoods or rollup doors. For painted surfaces, use tape types that do not remove finish paint when the tape is removed. If paint is removed from the finished surface, repaint to match existing surfaces. Secure dampers closed either manually or by using the building's HVAC system controls. Use the table below for further guidance in building preparation.

Building Component	Envelope Condition
Air handling units, duct fans	As found (open) or temporarily sealed as necessary
Clothes dryer	Off
Clothes dryer vents	Temporarily sealed
Dampers - intake, exhaust	Physically closed or closed using control power or temporarily sealed
Diffusers, registers, grilles within the envelope	Temporarily sealed
Doors, personnel type, at the envelope perimeter	Secured closed
Doors, personnel type, within the envelope	Secured (propped) open
Doors, roll-up type, at the envelope perimeter	Closed (no additional sealing)
Exhaust hoods	Closed* and temporarily sealed

Building Component	Envelope Condition
Fireplace hearth	Temporarily sealed *
Kitchen hoods	Temporarily sealed *
Pilot light and associated fuel valve	Extinguished and closed, <u>respectively</u>
Vented combustion appliance	Temporarily sealed *
Vented combustion appliance exhaust flue	Off
Windows	Secured closed
* If the building component has an associated manual or automatic damper, consider securing the damper closed in lieu of temporarily sealing.	

3.4.2 Architectural Plus HVAC System Test

This test envelope includes the architectural air barrier boundary as defined on the contract drawings plus all HVAC supply, return and exhaust systems that penetrate and terminate within said architectural air barrier boundary and that extends outward from said boundary. All associated ductwork, intake and exhaust dampers, and air moving devices, including air handling units and fans, are included in this test envelope even if they are physically located outside of the architectural air barrier boundary. The boundary extends to and includes the low leakage intake and exhaust dampers. Perform both a positive pressure test and a negative pressure test on this envelope, unless otherwise indicated.

3.4.2.1 Test Goal

Data from the test is to be input into the Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization spreadsheet as described in paragraph CALCULATION PROGRAM via the Air Leakage Test Form. If both a positive and negative pressure tests were performed, both data sets are together to be input in the spreadsheet. Compare output from the spreadsheet against the leakage rate goal. The envelope passes the test if the leakage rate, as calculated using the spreadsheet, is equal to or lower than the Architectural Plus HVAC System leakage rate goal.

3.4.2.2 Preparing the Building for the Pressure Test

In preparation of this test, de-energize all air moving devices within this envelope by putting their controls in the Unoccupied mode. This allows the building's HVAC controls to close all associated motorized intake, exhaust, and relief dampers. Make no other changes to the HVAC systems. Temporarily sealing diffusers, grilles, registers, kitchen hoods, exhaust hoods, fans, air handling units and all other HVAC system elements with tape and/or plastic sheeting or any other means is not allowed. If the envelope includes a fireplace hearth do not seal it with tape and plastic. Use the table below for further guidance in building preparation.

Building Component	Envelope Condition
Air handling units, duct fans	As found (open)
Clothes dryer	Off
Clothes dryer vents	As found (no preparation)
Dampers - intake, exhaust	As found (no preparation)
Diffusers, registers, grilles within the envelope	As found (open)
Doors, personnel type, at the envelope perimeter	Secured closed
Doors, personnel type, within the envelope	Secured (propped) open
Doors, roll-up type, at the envelope perimeter	Closed (no preparation)
Exhaust hoods	Closed
Fireplace hearth	As found (open)
Kitchen hoods	As found (open)
Pilot light and associated fuel valve	Extinguished and closed, respectively
Vented combustion appliance	Off
Vented combustion appliance exhaust flue	As found (open)
Windows	Secured closed

3.5 CONDUCTING THE PRESSURE TEST

Notify the Contracting Officer at least 10 working days before conducting the pressure tests to provide the Government the opportunity to witness the tests and to monitor weather forecasts for conditions favorable for testing. Do not pressure test until verifying that the continuous air barrier is in place and installed without failures in accordance with installation instructions. During the pressure test periodically inspect temporarily sealed items to ensure they are still sealed. Seals on temporarily sealed items tend to release more readily at higher pressures. Test data obtained after temporarily sealed items become unsealed cannot be used as input into the calculation program. Follow the Envelope Pressure Test Procedures in the paragraphs below. Submit detailed [pressure test procedures](#) indicating the test apparatus, the test methods and procedures, and the analysis methods to be employed for the building envelope pressure (air tightness) test. Submit these procedures not later than 60 days after Notice to Proceed.

3.5.1 Extend Pneumatic Tubes and Establish a Reference Differential Pressure

Confirm the various zones within the envelope have a relatively uniform

interior pressure distribution by establishing a representative differential pressure between the envelope and the outdoors with blower door or trailer-mounted fans operating. The number of indoor pressure difference measurements (pneumatic hoses) required depends on the number of interior zones separated by bottle necks that could create significant pressure drops (e.g. doorways and stairwells). Extend at least four pneumatic hoses (differential pressure monitoring ports) to locations within the envelope that are physically opposite of each other. In multiple story buildings, especially those over three stories, extend hoses to multiple floors. Locate the hose ends away from the effects of air discharge from blower test equipment. Select one of the four (or more) interior hoses, one judged by the test agency to be the most unaffected by air velocity produced by blower test equipment, to serve as the interior reference pressure port. Extend at least one additional pneumatic hose to the outdoors (outdoor pressure port). To the end of this hose manifold at least four hoses together and terminate each hose on a different side of the building. With the envelope sealed and the blowers energized, measure the differential pressure using the interior reference pressure port and the four outdoor pressure ports. Then measure and record the differential pressure by individually using each of the remaining three interior hoses. Ensure each reading is within plus or minus 10 percent of the reference reading. Thus at an average 75 Pa maximum pressure difference across the envelope, the difference between the highest and lowest interior pressure difference measurements should be 15 Pa or less. If this condition cannot be met, attempt to create additional air pathways within the envelope to minimize pressure differences within the envelope. If necessary, move the interior hose ends. See step 2.13 of the Air Leakage Test Form in Appendix A.

3.5.2 Bias Pressure Readings

With the fan pressurization equipment de-energized and the envelope sealed, obtain the differential pressure between the outdoors and the envelope. Record 12 bias pressure readings before the pressure test and 12 bias pressure readings after the pressure test. Each reading is the average of ten or more 1-second measurements. Include positive and negative signs for each reading. To help dampen bias pressures that significantly contribute to test pressure, reduce temperature differences between indoor and outdoor air. Temperature differences can be reduced by operating test fan equipment for a few minutes to replace most of the indoor air with outdoor air.

3.5.3 Testing in Both Positive and Negative Directions

The preferred method for testing a building envelope is to test in both the pressurized and depressurized directions. Testing in one direction is only allowed if opposite direction testing cannot logistically be performed due to test equipment limitations or restrictions. After obtaining the pre-test bias differential pressure readings, conduct the pressure test. Record the envelope pressures (in units of Pascals) from one interior pneumatic hose (monitoring port) and the outdoor pneumatic hose(s), averaged or manifolded, with corresponding flows (in units of cfm) for each fan. Record the flow rates at at least 10 to 12 positive and 10 to 12 negative building pressure readings. If conducting both positive and negative pressure tests the lowest allowable test pressure is 40 Pa and the highest test pressure is 85 Pa. Keep at least 25 Pa difference between the lowest and highest test pressure readings. Include the 75 Pa pressure value between the lowest and highest readings. The 10 to 12 readings in each direction are to be roughly evenly spaced along the range of pressures

and flows. After testing is complete de-energize the equipment used to provide pressurization and obtain an additional 10 to 12 post-test bias pressure readings. None of the bias pressure readings are allowed to exceed 30 percent of the minimum test pressure. If these limits are exceeded the test fails and must be repeated.

3.5.4 Single Direction Testing

After obtaining the 12 aforementioned bias pressure readings, conduct the **positive and negative** pressure test. Obtain flow rates at 10 to 12 roughly evenly spaced pressure readings over a pressure range of 50 to 85 Pa. After the data is recorded, de-energize the blower equipment and obtain an additional 10 to 12 bias pressure readings. None of the bias pressure readings may exceed 10 percent of the minimum test pressure. If these limits are exceeded the test fails.

3.5.5 Failed Pressure Test

If the pressure test fails to meet the established criteria, use diagnostic test methods described in paragraph LOCATING LEAKS BY DIAGNOSTIC TESTING to discover the leak locations. Provide additional permanent sealing measures to reduce or eliminate leak sources discovered during diagnostic testing. Retest (perform another pressure test) after sealing has been completed. Repeat this sequence of documenting test results in the test report, performing diagnostic tests, documenting recommendations for additional sealing measures in the test report, sealing leak locations per recommendations, and re-testing as necessary until the building envelope passes the pressure test and is in compliance with the performance requirements.

3.5.6 Air Leakage Test Report

Report volumetric flow rates and corresponding differential pressures in **cubic feet per minute (cfm)** and Pascals (Pa), respectively, on the Air Leakage Test Form sample form found in Appendix A. Populate the accompanying spreadsheet file entitled Pressure Test Data Analysis with information obtained during the test. The spreadsheet uses equations found in **ASTM E779** as a basis for calculating the envelope leakage rate. Other similar leakage rate calculation programs cannot be used or submitted for review. Submit a printout of the data input and output in the report. Should any air tightness (pressure) test fail, the pressure test report is to include data and results from all previous failed tests along with the final successful test data and results. Indicate if the resulting leakage rate did or did not meet the goal leakage requirement. Identify and document deficiencies in the building construction upon failure of a test to meet the specified maximum leakage rate.

Include the Test Agency Qualification Sheet, Air Leakage Test Form and Air Leakage Test Results Form in the written report. Document every test set-up condition with diagrams and photos to ensure the tests can be made repeatable. Document all pneumatic hose termination locations. Record in detail how the building envelope was prepared for the tests. Also describe in detail which building items were temporarily sealed. Include photos of test equipment and sealing measures in the report. Include an electronic (pdf) version of all test reports on a CD. If the building envelope fails to meet the leakage rate goal, provide recommendations to further seal the envelope and document these recommendations in the test report.

3.6 LOCATING LEAKS BY DIAGNOSTIC TESTING

Use diagnostic test methods described herein to discover obvious leaks through the envelope. Perform diagnostic tests on the building envelope regardless of the envelope meeting or failing to meet the designated leakage rate goal. Use diagnostic test methods in accordance with [ASTM E1186](#) and in conjunction with pressurization equipment as necessary. Use the thermography diagnostic test to establish a baseline for envelope leakage. Apply additional diagnostic tests (find, feel, fog or other tests) as necessary to further define leak locations and pathways discovered using thermography or to find additional leaks not readily detected by thermography. Using a variety of diagnostic tests may help locate leaks that would otherwise go undetected if only a single diagnostic test were used. Pay special attention to locating leaks at interfaces where there is a change in materials or a change in direction of like materials. These interfaces, at a minimum, include roof/wall, wall/wall, floor/wall, wall/window, wall/door, wall/louver, roof mounted equipment/roof curb interfaces and all utility penetrations (ducts, pipes, conduit, etc) through the envelope's architecture. Also use diagnostic tests to check for leakage between the air duct and duct damper, when the damper, under normal control power, is placed in the closed position. Should leaks be discovered during diagnostic tests, thoroughly document their exact locations on a floor plan so that sealing can be later applied, if required or as directed. If the envelope passes the leakage test, use the diagnostic test procedure described above to identify obvious leakage locations. Seal the leaks at the discretion of the COR based on the magnitude, location, potential for liquid moisture penetration or retention, potential for condensation, presence of daylight through an architectural surface or if the leakage location could potentially cause rapid deterioration or mold growth of, or in the building envelope materials and assemblies. Apply sealing measures after diagnostic testing is complete and all pressurization blowers are off. To verify that the applied sealing measures that are effective, re-test for leaks using the same diagnostic methods that discovered the leak. Reseal and retest until the envelope meets the leakage rate goal and all obvious leaks through the envelope are sealed.

3.6.1 Find Test

Use visual observation to locate daylight and/or artificial light streaming from the opposite side of the envelope. Observe all interfaces identified above.

3.6.2 Feel Test

Use the building's air handling system or blower door equipment to negatively pressurize the building envelope, to at least 25 Pa but no greater than 85 Pa, with respect to the outdoors. The larger the pressure difference, the easier discovering leaks by feeling them becomes. While inside the envelope, hand feel roof/wall, wall/wall, and floor/wall interfaces and utility penetrations (ducts, pipes, conduit, etc) for leaks and note the leak locations on a floor plan. The "Feel" test may also be used to check for leaks between the ductwork and ductwork damper. To do this, positively pressurize the envelope and check for air movement from the envelope exterior.

3.6.3 Infrared Thermography Test

Avoid performing thermography tests just after pressure testing the

building envelope (pressurizing and/or depressurizing the building envelope) as thermography readings may be inaccurate due to excessive air-wash. Perform thermography either before the pressure test or wait an appropriate amount of time after pressure test completion for the temperatures within the building envelope to stabilize before starting the thermography tests. Coordinate thermography examination with the pressure test agency and the test agency's pressurization equipment. The pressure test agency is to allow adequate time for the thermographer to perform a complete thermographic examination, as described hereinafter, of the envelope interior and exterior.

3.6.3.1 Thermography Test Methods

Before thermographic testing, remove furniture, construction equipment, and all other obstructions both inside and outside the building as necessary to gain a clear field of view. In the Thermographic Investigation Report, document all areas where obstructions remain. For exterior thermal examination of the envelope, verify that no direct solar radiation has heated the envelope surfaces to be examined for a period of approximately 3 hours for frame construction and for approximately 8 hours for masonry veneer construction. Conduct exterior investigations after sunset, before sunrise, or on an overcast day when the influence of solar radiation can be determined to be minimal. Limit exterior examinations to times when the influence of solar radiation is minimal, such as after sunset or before sunrise or during an overcast day. Conduct thermal imaging tests only when wind speeds are less than 8 mph at the time of analysis and at the end of analysis. Document any variations in wind during the test. Document all variations of test conditions in the Thermographic Investigation Report. Test only when exterior surfaces are dry. Monitor and document ongoing test parameters, such as the temperatures inside and outside the air barrier envelope, wind speed, and differential pressure.

3.6.3.1.1 Thermography Testing of the Air Barrier

Test the building envelope in accordance with [ISO 6781](#) and [ASTM E1186](#). Perform a complete thermographic inspection consisting of the full inspection of the interior and exterior of the complete air barrier envelope. Document envelope areas that are inaccessible for testing. Use infrared thermography technology in concert with standard pressurization methods (blower doors, trailer mounted fans and/or the building's own air handling systems) to locate leaks through the air barrier. Because thermography works best with at least a [18 degree F](#) temperature difference between the envelope interior and the exterior, adjust the HVAC system, if possible, to create or enhance this temperature difference. The minimum allowable temperature difference is [3 degrees F](#). Maintain this temperature difference for at least 3 hours prior to the test. Use pressurization methods to establish a minimum of +20 Pa pressure difference with respect to the outdoors while using an infrared camera to view the envelope from outdoors. When viewing with the camera from inside the envelope, keep the envelope at a pressure differential of -20 Pa with respect to the outdoors using pressure testing equipment or the building's own air handling system.

3.6.3.1.2 Thermography Testing of the Insulation Envelope to Find Insulation Voids (Qualitative Test)

After installation of the insulation envelope is complete, use thermography to identify anomalies (insulation voids) in this envelope. Test only when the temperature difference between inside and outside wall surfaces and as defined by the surface being imaged is a minimum of [18 degrees F](#) or greater

for a period of 4 hours before the test. Alternatively, the thermographer is to verify and document in the Thermographic Investigation Report that the imaging system is capable of providing satisfactory results with less temperature difference between inside and outside. Test during a time when there is no more than 0.05 inches differential pressure across the insulation envelope. Document the location of the voids on floor plans or wall sections.

3.6.3.1.3 Thermography Testing of Thermal Bridging

Take sample thermal images of representative parts of the building envelope being examined and analyze to demonstrate the majority of areas with anomalies or identifiable thermal features. Also sample thermal bridges in parts of the building that have no apparent anomalies to demonstrate the correct functioning of building components.

3.6.3.2 Thermography Test Results

Document the location of all leaks, anomalies, and unusual thermal features on a floor plan and/or elevation view and catalog them with a visible light picture for locating the defect for correction. The thermographer is to recommend corrective actions to eliminate the leaks, anomalies and unusual thermal features. Where leaks are found perform corrective sealing as necessary to achieve the whole envelope air leakage rate specified. After sealing, again use thermography in concert with standard pressurization methods to verify that the air leakage has been reduced. After these leaks have been permanently sealed note all actions taken on the drawings or in the Thermographic Investigation Report. Submit the drawings for approval as part of the Thermographic Investigation Report. Also include thermographic photos that show where leaks were discovered. Include thermograms using an imaging palette that clearly shows the observed thermal patterns indicating air leakage. The Contracting Officer's Representative is to witness all testing.

3.6.4 Fog Test

Before using a theatrical fog generator, disable all building smoke detectors as they may alarm when fog is issued. Coordinate fog tests and the disabling of all smoke detectors with the Contracting Officer's representative and the local fire department as necessary. Use pressure test equipment or the buildings own air handling system to positively pressurize the building envelope to at least 25 Pa but not greater than 85 Pa over the outdoors. Using a theatrical fog generator within the envelope, direct fog at suspected leakage points such as at building interfaces. Test the following interfaces: roof/wall, wall/wall, floor/wall, wall/window, roof/ mounted mechanical equipment. From the vantage point immediately outside the envelope and opposite that of the interface being tested, observe the effect as the fog is issued. Detection may also be further enhanced by using a scented fog liquid or a fog liquid that produces a colored fog. Look for fog and smell for associated odor percolating through the interface. Also use smoke puffers and smoke sticks as necessary to locate leaks at these and other interface locations. If the Architectural Plus HVAC System pressure test will be/was performed introduce fog into ductwork to check for leakage between ductwork and associated dampers. After fog testing has ended, reactivate the building smoke detectors and notify the Contracting Officer and local fire department that the test has ended. After sealing has been completed retest these areas using fog. Seal additional leaks that are found.

3.6.5 Diagnostic Test Report

Once the diagnostic tests have been completed and the leakage locations identified and sealed, document these procedures, locations and recommendations in the diagnostic test report. Submit plan and/or profile drawings that thoroughly identify leak locations. Describe in detail all leak locations so that the seal-up crew knows where to apply sealing measures. After sealing measures have been applied, describe the methods used along with applicable photos of the final sealed condition.

3.6.5.1 Thermographic Investigation Report

Submit a report of each thermographic investigation identifying the thermal discontinuities in the thermal control layer. Indicate in the final report locations to which improvements for both the air control layer and the thermal control layer were made to reduce air leaks and correct discontinuities in the thermal control layer. Include in the report some selected radiometric images of suspected failure points in the air barrier envelope that indicate before and after conditions. Devote a chapter(s) of the Thermographic Investigation Report to identifying suspected points of thermal bridging, moisture migration through roofs and walls, and insulation voids. Indicate in the final report improvements that were made to the envelope to reduce air leaks, correct wet roof and wall areas, and repair insulation. Include the following items in the report:

- a. Brief description of the building construction
- b. Types of interior and exterior surface materials used in the building.
- c. Geographical orientation of the building with a description of the exterior surroundings including other buildings, vegetation, landscaping, and surface water drainage.
- d. Camera brand, model and serial number, and date of most recent calibration date; optional lenses with serial numbers (if applicable)
- e. Thermographer's and Government Inspector's names
- f. Date and time of tests
- g. Air temperature and humidity inside the air barrier envelope
- h. Outdoor air temperature and humidity
- i. General information for the last 12 hours on the solar radiation conditions in the geographic area where the test is being performed.
- j. Ambient conditions such as precipitation and wind direction and speed occurring with the last 24 hours, as applicable. Refer to specific requirements in each section of each thermographic inspection type for requirements in each specific area.
- k. Documentation of those portions of the building envelop which were not within test conditions when the scan was performed and which portions were obstructed by adjacent structures, interior furnishings, intervening cavities or reflective surfaces.
- l. Other relevant information, which may have influenced test results.

- m. Drawings, sketches, floor plans and/or photographs detailing the locations in the buildings where thermograms were taken detailing possible irregularities in the components being tested.
- n. Thermal images taken during the inspection with their relative locations and written or voiced recorded explanations of the anomaly listed along with visual and reference images.
- o. An identification of the aspects or components of the building being examined.
- p. Explanations for the type and the extent of each construction defect observed during the inspection.
- q. Any results from additional measurements and investigations. Identify additional equipment used and support with type, model number, serial number and date of most recent calibrated.

3.6.5.2 Fog Test Report

Document all turbulent air flow and dead air spaces within the envelope. Report fog behavior as it exits from and/or is entrained within the building. Include a floor plan in the report that documents the locations where fog passed through the envelope.

3.7 CALCULATION PROGRAM

To calculate the envelope leakage rate and other required outputs, input the data obtained during the pressure tests as documented in the Air Leakage Test Form (Appendix A) into the Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization Excel spreadsheet. This spreadsheet can be found at the following web site:

<http://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/forms-graphics->

3.8 AFTER COMPLETION OF THE PRESSURE AND/OR DIAGNOSTIC TEST

After all pressure and/or diagnostic testing has been completed unseal all temporarily sealed items. Unless otherwise directed by the Contracting Officer, return all dampers, doors, and windows to their pre-test condition. Remove tape and plastic from all temporarily sealed openings, being careful not to deface painted surfaces. If paint is removed from finished surfaces, repaint to match existing surfaces. Unless otherwise directed by the Contracting Officer's representative, return fuel (gas) valves to their pre-test position and relight pilot lights. Return all fans and air handling units to pre-test conditions.

3.9 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

Repair and protection is the Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for testing, inspection, and similar services. Upon completion of inspection, testing, or sample taking and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes, protect construction exposed by or for quality control service activities, and protect repaired construction.

3.10 APPENDICES

The following forms are available for download as a MS Word file at

<http://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/forms-graphics->

Appendix A - Air Leakage Test Form
Appendix B - Air Leakage Test Results Form
Appendix C - Test Agency Qualifications Sheet

-- End of Section --

AIR LEAKAGE TEST FORM

For buildings constructed in compliance with the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Air Leakage Protocol

Test Date: _____

Telephone/e-mail

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins, text, or other markings on the paper.

INSERT PHOTOGRAPHS OF SUBJECT BUILDING

The testing agency is to provide a Compact Disk (CD) with digital photographs of subject building envelope, setup, test procedures, and diagnostic evaluation. The diagnostic evaluation is to include photos of the envelope as leaks are discovered and after they are sealed.

STEP 1: Envelope Surface Area

For each air barrier envelope, record the following information found on the Architectural design drawings or found in Specification SECTION 07 08 27.00 10 BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM:

1.1 Surface Area: _____

Architectural Only Test:

1.2 Allowable leakage rate (cfm/sq. ft @ 75 Pa): _____

1.3 Maximum leakage (cfm @ 75 Pa): _____

Architectural Plus HVAC System Test:

1.4 Allowable leakage rate (cfm/sq. ft. @ 75 Pa): _____

1.5 Maximum leakage (cfm @ 75 Pa): _____

Verify the envelope surface area in units of square feet matches the as-built envelope surface area.

Yes / No

If the surface area calculation results do not match, notify the Contracting Officer of the discrepancy and ask him to contact the person who originally calculated the surface area for resolution. Use the resolved surface area in all calculations.

STEP 2: Set Up Checklist

2.1 Confirm HVAC shutdown/disabling. _____

2.2 Confirm all dampers in the air barrier envelope are secured closed and/or isolated. _____

2.3 Confirm exhaust fans, clothes dryers, etc. are off and the air barrier envelope is isolated. _____

2.4 Confirm combustion appliances in the envelope are disabled and all gas valves are shut off. _____

2.5 Confirm all air intakes at the air barrier envelope are sealed or isolated. _____

2.6 Confirm all doors within the envelope are propped open. _____

2.7 Confirm all air exhausts at the air barrier envelope are sealed or isolated. _____

2.8 Note rain or snow conditions that may affect air leaks through walls. _____

2.9 Confirm doors and windows at the envelope are closed and latched. _____

2.10 Confirm and document outdoor weather conditions. _____

2.11 Confirm all plumbing traps within the envelope are primed full of water. _____

2.12 Confirm dropped ceiling tiles are removed at specified rate. _____

2.13 Confirm uniform interior pressure distribution by establishing a differential pressure between the envelope and the outdoors with pressurization/depressurization fans operating.

The acceptable range of readings for differential pressure is between [40 Pa to 85 Pa for a 2 sided test for Army and Navy buildings][50 Pa to 85 Pa for a single sided test for Army and Navy buildings][25 Pa to 50 Pa for Air Force buildings]. Ensure that the differential pressure range is a minimum of 25 Pa between the lowest differential pressure reading and the highest. Between 10 and 12 differential pressure and corresponding airflow data points shall be recorded at roughly even intervals within the specified range. The highest pressure shall not damage or otherwise compromise the air barrier system or materials. If the indicated pressure range cannot be achieved, install and energize additional pressurization fans as needed.

Extend at least 4 pneumatic hoses (differential pressure monitoring ports) to locations within the envelope that are physically opposite of each other. For buildings with multiple stories hoses shall be extended at least to the bottom floor, top floor and to two other locations between those two floors. Extend one pneumatic hose outdoors. Select one of the 4 interior hoses, the one judged to be the most unaffected by air velocity produced by blower test equipment and most representative of the actual building pressure, to serve as the reference pressure. Measure the differential pressure using each of the remaining 3 interior monitoring stations to ensure each reading is within +/-10% of the reference reading. If this condition cannot be met, attempt to create additional air pathways within the envelope to minimize pressure differences.

Manifold the end of the hose that extends outdoors to 4 additional hoses, each of which terminates on a different side of the building on its exterior.

Internal pneumatic hose location description and corresponding differential pressure:

- a. _____ Pa
- b. _____ Pa
- c. _____ Pa
- d. _____ Pa

Which one of the four differential pressure readings above served as the reference pressure reading?

Describe the approximate location of the end of the 4 pneumatic hoses (monitoring station) that extend to the outdoors:

- a. _____
- b. _____
- c. _____
- d. _____

Means of averaging pressures of multiple tubes (physically manifolded together or mathematically averaged): _____

Additional Set up notes: _____

STEP 3 Testing Equipment

Gage 1

Model: _____

Serial #: _____

Accuracy: _____

Last Calibration Date: _____

Gage 2

Model: _____

Serial #: _____

Accuracy: _____

Last Calibration Date: _____

Gage 3

Model: _____

Serial #: _____

Accuracy: _____

Last Calibration Date: _____

Gage 4

Model: _____

Serial #: _____

Accuracy: _____

Last Calibration Date: _____

Gage 5

Model: _____

Serial #: _____

Accuracy: _____

Last Calibration Date: _____

Gage 6

Model: _____

Serial #: _____

Accuracy: _____

Last Calibration Date: _____

Note: Identify additional gages as necessary.

Note: Each gage must have an accuracy of plus or minus 1 percent or 0.15 Pa, whichever is greater and must have had its calibration checked against a National Institute of Standards and Technology (formerly National Bureau of Standards, or NIST) traceable standard within 2 years of the test. If the gage manufacturer recommends yearly testing, the calibration date is to be within one year of the test date.

Fan 1

Model: _____

Serial #: _____

Accuracy: _____

Last Calibration Date: _____

Fan 2

Model: _____

Serial #: _____

Accuracy: _____

Last Calibration Date: _____

Fan 3

Model: _____

Serial #: _____

Accuracy: _____

Last Calibration Date: _____

Fan 4

Model: _____

Serial #: _____

Accuracy: _____

Last Calibration Date: _____

Fan 5

Model: _____

Serial #: _____

Accuracy: _____

Last Calibration Date: _____

Fan 6

Model: _____

Serial #: _____

Accuracy: _____

Last Calibration Date: _____

Note: Identify additional fans as necessary.

Note: Each fan must have an air flow measurement accuracy of ± 5 percent of the measured flow and must have had its calibration checked against a NIST traceable standard. Each fan is to have been calibrated within the last 5 years of the date of the test.

Thermographic Infrared Camera

Model: _____

Serial #: _____

Accuracy: _____

Last Calibration Date: _____

The thermographic infrared camera must have a sensitivity of plus or minus 0.1 degrees C.

Include calibration certificates for all test equipment listed above with the air leakage test form and the final test report.

STEP 4: Perform a multipoint pressure test

4.1 Record indoor and outdoor temperatures before and after the test.

Indoor pre-test: _____ degrees F Indoor post-test: _____ degrees F

Outdoor pre-test: _____ degrees F Outdoor post-test: _____ degrees F

4.2 Record wind speed and prevailing wind direction

Average speed, mph: _____ Prevailing direction: _____

4.3 Record approximate elevation of the building above sea level: _____ feet

4.4 Indicate which of the following methods was used to test the building:

_____ Building's own air handling system

_____ Trailer-mounted fan

_____ Blower door fan

Indicate which Service branch the building falls under:

_____ Air Force

_____ Army

_____ Navy

4.5 With all test blowers de-energized and sealed (covers applied), use a digital gage to obtain 12 baseline/bias pressure readings where each reading is the average of at least 10 one-second measurements. Record readings below:

Bias Pressure Test Point 1 reading: _____ Pa

Bias Pressure Test Point 2 reading: _____ Pa

Bias Pressure Test Point 3 reading: _____ Pa

Bias Pressure Test Point 4 reading: _____ Pa

Bias Pressure Test Point 5 reading: _____ Pa

Bias Pressure Test Point 6 reading: _____ Pa

Bias Pressure Test Point 7 reading: _____ Pa

Bias Pressure Test Point 8 reading: _____ Pa

Bias Pressure Test Point 9 reading: _____ Pa

Bias Pressure Test Point 10 reading: _____ Pa

Bias Pressure Test Point 11 reading: _____ Pa

Bias Pressure Test Point 12 reading: _____ Pa

4.6 All of the values obtained in step 4.5 are to be 30 percent or less than the lowest test pressure as documented in step 4.7. If one or more values is greater than 30 percent of the lowest test pressure, repeat steps 4.5 and 4.7. If at least 1 reading is still greater than 30 percent of the lowest test pressure, wait to test until wind speed lessens or reschedule the test to a time when atmospheric conditions are more favorable.

4.7 Pressure Test

4.7.1 Identify the flow direction of the pressurized air. In a negative pressure test air is drawn out of the envelope to the outdoors, thereby negatively pressurizing the envelope with respect to the outdoors. In a positive pressure test outdoor air is delivered to the envelope, thereby positively pressurizing the envelope with respect to the outdoors. Pressure test in both the positive and negative directions unless extenuating circumstances allow testing in only one direction. If testing in only one direction, provide a detailed explanation for omitting the opposite direction's test:

The testing agency is to supply a sufficient quantity of blower equipment that will produce a minimum 75 Pa differential pressure between the envelope and outdoors. Record the actual envelope pressures (Pa) from one or more interior pneumatic hoses (monitoring ports) and the outdoor pneumatic hose(s) (monitoring port(s)), averaged or manifolded, with corresponding Flows (CFM) for each fan.

For testing in both directions:

Adjust the test fan(s) speed to establish a range of 10 to 12 roughly equally spaced envelope pressure readings per flow direction (20 to 24 points total) where each reading is an average of 10 one-second measurements. The greatest baseline/bias pressure must not exceed 30 percent of the minimum test pressure recorded.

For testing in one direction only:

Adjust the test fan(s) speed to establish a range of 10 to 12 roughly equally spaced envelope pressure readings where each reading is an average of 10 one-second measurements. The test pressure range must be between [50 and 85 Pa for Army and Navy buildings][25-50 Pa for Air Force buildings]. The greatest baseline/bias pressure must not exceed 10 percent of the minimum test pressure recorded.

4.7.2 Pressure test in one direction. Indicate whether this test is a negative pressure test or a positive pressure test. Circle one: Positive/Negative

Reading 1

Differential Pressure, Pa: _____

Fan 1 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____

Fan 2 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____

Fan 5 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____
Fan 6 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____

4.7.3 Pressure test in opposite direction. If testing in only one direction, skip this step. Indicate whether this test is a negative pressure test or a positive pressure test. Circle one: Positive/Negative

(Note: If using blower door equipment, remove the test fans from their frame, turn them around 180 degrees, and reinsert them into their frame. Connect pneumatic hoses as necessary to the gage.)

Reading 1

Differential Pressure, Pa: _____
Fan 1 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____
Fan 2 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____
Fan 3 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____
Fan 4 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____
Fan 5 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____
Fan 6 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____

Reading 2

Differential Pressure, Pa: _____
Fan 1 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____
Fan 2 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____
Fan 3 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____
Fan 4 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____
Fan 5 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____
Fan 6 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____

Reading 3

Differential Pressure, Pa: _____
Fan 1 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____
Fan 2 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____
Fan 3 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____
Fan 4 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____
Fan 5 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____
Fan 6 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____

Reading 4

Differential Pressure, Pa: _____
Fan 1 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____
Fan 2 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____
Fan 3 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____
Fan 4 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____
Fan 5 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____
Fan 6 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____

Reading 5

Differential Pressure, Pa: _____
Fan 1 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____
Fan 2 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____
Fan 3 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____
Fan 4 Flow, CFM: _____ Orifice plate designation: _____ Fan Model: _____

Fan 2 Flow, CFM:	_____	Orifice plate designation:	_____	Fan Model:	_____
Fan 3 Flow, CFM:	_____	Orifice plate designation:	_____	Fan Model:	_____
Fan 4 Flow, CFM:	_____	Orifice plate designation:	_____	Fan Model:	_____
Fan 5 Flow, CFM:	_____	Orifice plate designation:	_____	Fan Model:	_____
Fan 6 Flow, CFM:	_____	Orifice plate designation:	_____	Fan Model:	_____

Reading 12

Differential Pressure, Pa: _____

Fan 1 Flow, CFM:	_____	Orifice plate designation:	_____	Fan Model:	_____
Fan 2 Flow, CFM:	_____	Orifice plate designation:	_____	Fan Model:	_____
Fan 3 Flow, CFM:	_____	Orifice plate designation:	_____	Fan Model:	_____
Fan 4 Flow, CFM:	_____	Orifice plate designation:	_____	Fan Model:	_____
Fan 5 Flow, CFM:	_____	Orifice plate designation:	_____	Fan Model:	_____
Fan 6 Flow, CFM:	_____	Orifice plate designation:	_____	Fan Model:	_____

4.8 With all test blowers de-energized and sealed (covers applied) , use a digital gage to obtain 12 baseline/bias pressure readings where each reading is the accumulated average of at least ten 1-second measurements. Record readings below:

Bias Pressure Test Point 1 reading:	_____	Pa
Bias Pressure Test Point 2 reading:	_____	Pa
Bias Pressure Test Point 3 reading:	_____	Pa
Bias Pressure Test Point 4 reading:	_____	Pa
Bias Pressure Test Point 5 reading:	_____	Pa
Bias Pressure Test Point 6 reading:	_____	Pa
Bias Pressure Test Point 7 reading:	_____	Pa
Bias Pressure Test Point 8 reading:	_____	Pa
Bias Pressure Test Point 9 reading:	_____	Pa
Bias Pressure Test Point 10 reading:	_____	Pa
Bias Pressure Test Point 11 reading:	_____	Pa
Bias Pressure Test Point 12 reading:	_____	Pa

4.9 If all of the values obtained in step 4.8. are 30 percent or less than the lowest test pressure recorded in step 4.7. 2 and 4.7.3, proceed with step 4.10. If one or more values is greater than 30 percent of the lowest test pressure, repeat steps 4.5 through 4.8. If at least one reading is still greater than 30 percent of the lowest test pressure, wait to test until wind speed lessens or reschedule the test to a time when atmospheric conditions are more favorable.

4.10 Make copies of data recorded in this form. Distribute copies to the Government inspector and Contractor.

STEP 5 Calculate and Report Results

Pressurization Test Results

5.1 Air leakage coefficient C: _____ CFM/Paⁿ

5.2 Pressure exponent n: _____

(NOTE: If n is less than 0.45 or greater than 0.8, the test fails and must be repeated.)

- 5.3 Air flow referenced to standard temperature and pressure at +75 Pa: _____ CFM
- 5.4 Envelope leakage rate at 75 Pa: _____ CFM/sq ft of envelope surface area at 75 Pa.
- 5.5 Data correlation coefficient, r^2 , of the curve fitted data points. Correlation coefficient: _____
(NOTE: If r^2 is less than 0.98, test fails and must be repeated.)
- 5.6 The 95 percent (upper) confidence interval at +75 Pa: _____ CFM/sq ft at 75 Pa.

Depressurization Test Results

- 5.7 Air leakage coefficient C_d : _____ CFM/Paⁿ
- 5.8 Pressure exponent n : _____
(NOTE: if n is less than 0.45 or greater than 0.8, the test fails and must be repeated.)
- 5.9 Air flow referenced to standard temperature and pressure at -75 Pa: _____ CFM
- 5.10 Envelope leakage rate at 75 Pa: _____ CFM/sq ft of envelope surface area at -75 Pa.
- 5.11 Data Correlation Coefficient, r^2 , of the curve fitted data with all (12 or 24) points. Correlation coefficient: _____
(NOTE: if r^2 is less than 0.98, the test fails and must be repeated.)
- 5.12 The 95 percent (upper) confidence interval at +75 Pa: _____ CFM/sq ft at 75 Pa.

Both Pressurization and Depressurization Test Results:

- 5.13 Leakage rate per envelope area at 75 Pa: _____ CFM/sq ft at 75 Pa
- 5.14 Was the calculated envelope leakage less than or equal to the leakage rate goal. Circle one: Pass / Fail
- 5.15 To help visualize the magnitude of the envelope's air leakage, document the equivalent leakage area in square feet at 75 Pa: _____ sq ft.
- 5.16 Attach the results of the Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization spreadsheet program to this test form.

STEP 6 Diagnostic Evaluation

6. Perform a diagnostic evaluation of the envelope in accordance with ASTM E 1186. Attach results of diagnostic evaluation including a floor plan of all floors within the envelope to this test form. Document the location of all leaks on the floor plan and describe the treatment method used to seal the leaks.

STEP 7 Restore Building to Pre-test Conditions

This page intentionally left blank.

APPENDIX B

AIR LEAKAGE TEST RESULTS FORM

Testing Agency Certified Compliance

1 The envelope area was obtained from the architect of record and was checked on site for reasonableness.

_____ (Initial)

2 Set up conditions were performed in accordance with the Pressure Testing a Building for Air Tightness specification and all deviations and their impact noted.

_____ (Initial)

3 Test equipment used was in compliance respect to accuracy and calibration date.

_____ (Initial)

4 The test procedure used was in compliance except as noted here.

_____ (Initial)

5 The calculations were performed in strict accordance with ASTM E 779 or the Pressure Testing a Air Barrier System for Air Tightness specification except as noted.

_____ (Initial)

6 Provide the average leakage rate calculated in step 5.13 of the Air Leakage Test Form.

_____ CFM/sq ft at 75 Pa

7 All accuracies, pressure limits and data correlations and confidence intervals are within the bounds specified in steps 4 and 5 of the Air Leakage Test Form. Note all deviations.

8 The building envelope passes if there are no deviations in the criteria as stated in item 7 (immediately above) and if the value in step 5.13 of the Air Leakage Test Form is less than the required envelope leakage rate goal at 75 Pa.

Circle one: Pass / Fail

9 Supporting documentation described in Steps 1, 3, and 6 of the Air Leakage Test Form is attached to this test form, including all digital photographs of the building and test procedure.

_____ (Initial)

I hereby certify that the results above are in conformance with the procedures outlined in this specification.

Testing Agency Name _____

Testing Agency Authorized Representative Signature _____

Testing Agency Authorized Representative Printed Name _____

Date _____

APPENDIX C
TEST AGENCY QUALIFICATION SHEET

DATE _____
COMPLETED BY _____

A. Agency Qualifications

Agency Name: _____

Agency Mailing Address: _____

Point-Of-Contact name, telephone number and e-mail address:

Point-Of-Contact name, telephone number and e-mail address:

Attach letters of recommendation for test performed at these facilities.

B. Lead Pressure Test Technician Qualifications

Name, telephone number and e-mail address:

Length of time lead technician has worked with Agency as a lead pressure test technician:

Years of experience as a lead technician pressure testing commercial and industrial buildings:

Years of experience pressure testing building envelopes by lead pressure test technician: _____

Commercial/Industrial facilities previously tested by the lead pressure test technician. Include the following:

Facility name, address, point-of-contact with telephone number;

Dates of pressure test;

Facility description (including floor area, number of stories) tested;

Type and quantity of test equipment used; and

Number of personnel performing the test.

[illegible]

C. Infrared Thermography Test Technician Qualifications

Name _____

Years of experience as an infrared thermographer testing commercial and industrial buildings:

Commercial/Industrial facilities previously tested. Include the following:

Facility name, address, point-of-contact with telephone number;

Dates of pressure test;

Facility description (including floor area, number of stories) tested;

Type and quantity of test equipment used; and

Number of personnel performing the test.

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins, text, or other markings on the paper.

Attach the thermographer's current Level II training certificate to this form.

**U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization
Using ASTM E 779-10**

Building Name		Test Date	
Building Address			
Prime Contractor			
Contract No.			
Pressure Testing Agency			
Testing Agency Address			
Testing Agency Contact		Phone	
Lead On-Site Personnel		Phone	
Witness Name	Organization	Telephone	Email
Building / Test Comments			

What method is used for this pressure test?	☒	Blower Door
	☐	Trailer Mounted Fan
	☐	Building Air Handling System

Is this an Air Force, Army or Navy Building?	☐	Army
	☐	Navy
	☒	Air Force

Note: Performing a two-sided test is highly recommended for increased result accuracy.		
What type of test is being performed?	☒	Positive & Negative - Two Sided
	☐	Positive - Single Sided
	☐	Negative - Single Sided

Building Data			
Elevation Above Sea Level (ft)	760	Building Envelope Pressure (Pa)	75
Envelope Surface Area (ft ²)	80,000	Acceptable Leakage Rate (cfm/ft ²)	0.25

Test Conditions					
Indoor Temperature (°F)		Outdoor Temperature (°F)		Average Wind Speed (MPH)	5.0
Pre Test	75.2	Pre Test	62.6	Prevailing Wind Direction	W
Post Test	75.2	Post Test	62.6	Average Bias Pressure (Pa)	-0.3
Average	75.2	Average	62.6		

Pre Test Bias Pressure Test Points												
Pressure (Pa)	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
	-0.4	-0.4	-0.4	-0.4	-0.4	-0.4	-0.4	-0.4	-0.4	-0.4	-0.4	-0.4
Post Test Bias Pressure Test Points												
Pressure (Pa)	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
	-0.2	-0.2	-0.2	-0.2	-0.2	-0.2	-0.2	-0.2	-0.2	-0.2	-0.2	-0.2

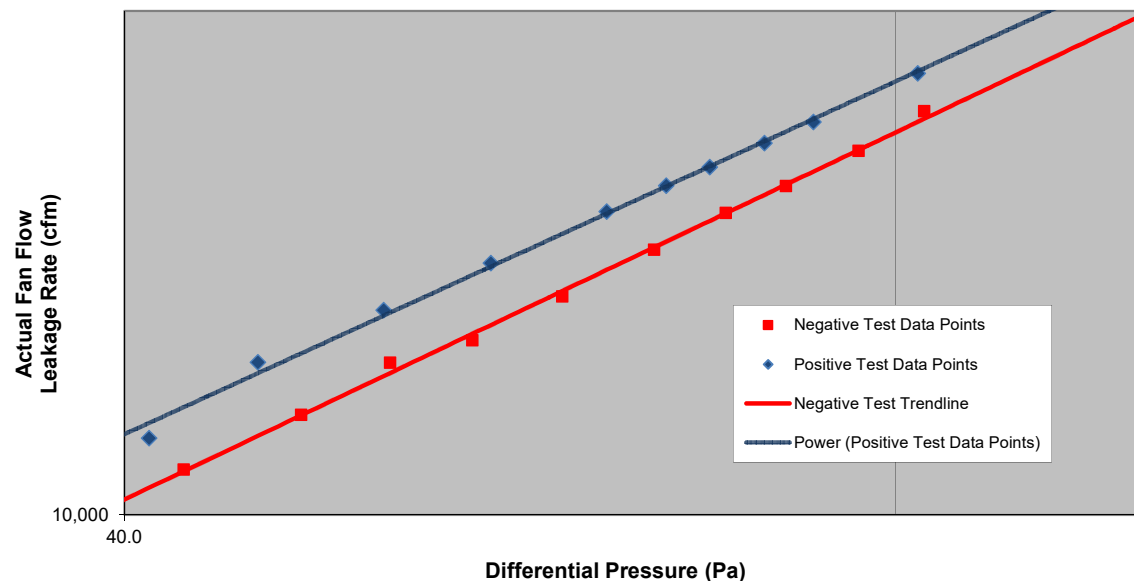
Positive Pressure Test Data												
Pressure (Pa)	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
	40.9	45.1	50.5	55.6	61.7	65.1	67.7	71.1	74.3	81.6		
Fan 1	11,022	12,230	13,144	14,022	15,054	15,596	16,002	16,541	17,022	18,207		
Fan 2												
Fan 3												
Fan 4												
Fan 5												
Fan 6												
Fan 7												
Fan 8												
Fan 9												
Fan 10												
Fan 11												
Fan 12												
Gauge (cfm)	11022	12230	13144	14022	15054	15596	16002	16541	17022	18207	0	0
Actual (cfm)	11115	12333	13255	14140	15181	15727	16137	16680	17165	18360	0	0

Positive Pressure Test - Data Quality Check			
Number of Pre Test Bias Pressure Data Points	12	PASS	12 Points Required
Number of Pressure Test Data Points	10	PASS	10 Points Required
Number of Post Test Bias Pressure Data Points	12	PASS	12 Points Required
Maximum Bias Pressure (Pa)	0.4	PASS	For a two-sided test, the maximum allowable bias pressure is 30 percent of the lowest pressure data point - 12.27 Pa
Minimum Test Pressure (Pa)	40.9	PASS	For an Air Force, single sided, test the lowest allowable data point pressure is 25 Pa
Lowest Allowable Maximum Pressure Data Point (Pa)	81.6	PASS	The lowest allowable maximum pressure data point is 50 Pa
Test Pressure Range (Pa)	40.7	PASS	Must be > 25 Pa
Data Correlation Coefficient (r) Squared	0.9965	PASS	Must be > 0.98

Negative Pressure Test Data												
Pressure (Pa)	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
	42.2	46.9	50.8	54.7	59.3	64.4	68.7	72.5	77.4	82.1		
Fan 1	10,424	11,242	12,076	12,452	13,229	14,106	14,837	15,397	16,166	17,067		
Fan 2												
Fan 3												
Fan 4												
Fan 5												
Fan 6												
Fan 7												
Fan 8												
Fan 9												
Fan 10												
Fan 11												
Fan 12												
Gauge (cfm)	10,424	11,242	12,076	12,452	13,229	14,106	14,837	15,397	16,166	17,067	0	0
Actual (cfm)	10,638	11,473	12,324	12,707	13,500	14,395	15,141	15,713	16,497	17,417	0	0

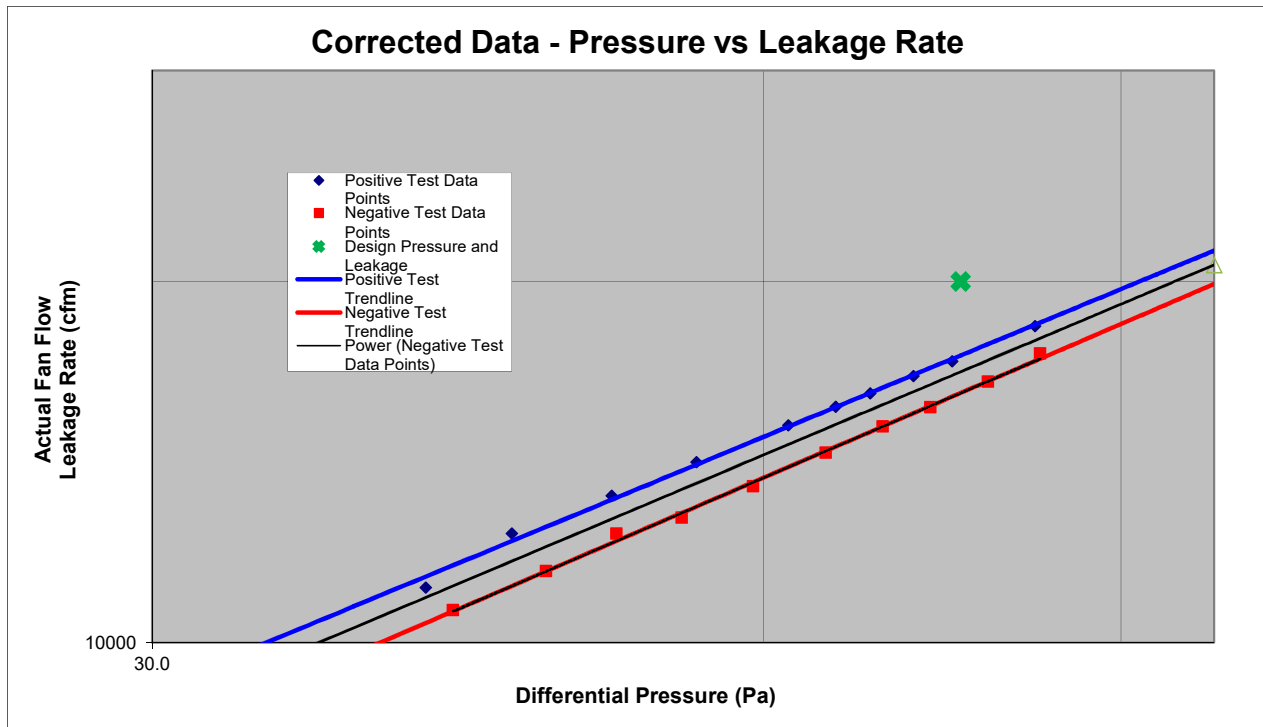
Negative Pressure Test - Data Quality Check			
Number of Pre Test Bias Pressure Data Points	12	PASS	12 Points Required
Number of Pressure Test Data Points	10	PASS	10 Points Required
Number of Post Test Bias Pressure Data Points	12	PASS	12 Points Required
Maximum Bias Pressure (Pa)	0.4	PASS	For a two-sided test, the maximum allowable bias pressure is 30 percent of the lowest pressure data point - 12.66 Pa.
Minumum Test Pressure Data Point (Pa)	42.2	PASS	For a two-sided test, the lowest allowable data point pressure is 25 Pa
Lowest Allowable Maximum Pressure Data Point (Pa)	82.1	PASS	The lowest allowable maximum pressure data point is 50 Pa
Test Pressure Range (Pa)	39.9	PASS	Must be > 25 Pa
Data Correlation Coefficient (r) Squared	0.9980	PASS	Must be > 0.98

Input Data - Pressure vs Leakage Rate



Calculated Values	Positive Test	Negative Test	Pos & Neg Test
Effective Leakage Area (AL) @ 75 Pa (ft ²)	13.4	11.9	12.6
Pressure Exponent, n	0.704	0.725	0.714
Air Leakage Coefficient - C _{Corr} (cfm/Pa ⁿ)	841.2	686.2	763.7
Leakage Rates @ 75 Pa (Q75) (cfm)			
Envelope Leakage Rate	17586	15682	16634
Upper 95% Confidence Leakage Rate	18416	16257	17831
Lower 95% Confidence Leakage Rate	16793	15128	15466
Leakage per square foot of envelope area @ 75 Pa (cfm/ft²)			
Leakage per Sq. Ft. of Envelope	0.220	0.196	0.208
Upper 95% Confidence Limit	0.230	0.203	0.223
Lower 95% Confidence Limit	0.210	0.189	0.193
95% Confidence Interval (CI)	0.010	0.007	0.015

Pressure Test Results	Positive Test	Negative Test	Pos & Neg Test
0.45 < Exponent (n) < 0.8	PASS	PASS	NA
Envelope Leakage Rate < 0.25 cfm/sq ft	PASS	PASS	PASS
Upper 95% Confidence Limit < 0.27 cfm/sq ft	PASS	PASS	NA
The envelope leakage rate is less than 0.25 cfm/sq ft and the 95% confidence interval is less than 0.02 OR The envelope leakage rate is less than 0.25 cfm/sq ft, the 95% confidence interval is greater than 0.02 and the leakage rate plus the 95% confidence interval is less than 0.25 cfm/sq ft.	PASS	PASS	NA



SECTION 07 05 43

CLADDING SUPPORT SYSTEMS

04/20

PART 1 GENERAL

Furnish labor, materials, tools, equipment, and services for Cladding Support Systems, as indicated, in accordance with provisions of Contract Documents. Completely coordinate with work of other trades.

Provide Cladding Support System engineered to support dead, live, and lateral, wind or seismic, loads from floors, roofs, mezzanines, and walkable ceilings supported by system. Coordinate with structural support system, building insulation and cladding specified in other Sections.

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATION FOR STANDARDIZATION (ISO)

ISO 3146	(2000) Plastics - Determination of melting behavior (melting temperature or melting range) of semi-crystalline polymers by capillary tube and polarizing-microscope methods
ISO 527	(2019)Plastics - Determination of tensile properties - Part 1: General principles

1.2 ADDITIONAL REFERENCE STANDARDS

ALUMINUM ASSOCIATION (AA): AA ASD-1 Aluminum Standards and Data

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC): ICC IBC - 2003 International Building Code: Division - Wind Design

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI): ANSI A58.1 Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability Notebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Elevations; G

Elevations showing extent of supported panel systems.

Installation and Attachment; G

Details of conditions of installation and attachment.

Transitions and Terminations; G

Details of transitions and terminations.

SD-03 Product Data

Manufacturer's Product Data Sheets; G

Manufacturer's product data sheets, details and installation instructions including components and accessories, indicating product used to be in compliance with specifications.

SD-05 Design Data

Calculations; G

Structural calculations for Cladding Support indicating design conforms to specified design criteria, sealed by the Specialty Structural Engineer. Submit concurrent with Shop Drawings.

SD-07 Certificates

Manufacturer Qualifications; G

Installer Qualifications; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Warranty; G

Minutes of Preinstallation Conference; G

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4.1 Manufacturer Qualifications

Manufacturer with a minimum of ten (10) years' experience.

1.4.2 Installer Qualifications

Minimum of five (5) years' experience in installing products of same type and scope specified.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

2.1.1 Cladding Support Systems

Approved Manufacturers include: Knight Wall Systems, ECO Cladding, or Nvelope Rainscreen Systems, LTD. Any substitutions shall require government approval.

2.2 DESIGN CRITERIA

2.2.1 Design Loads

Design Cladding Support Systems to carry cladding materials and to meet Design Loads. Include anchorage to structural system, modifications to meet specified requirements and maintain visual design concepts.

2.2.1.1 Wind Loads

Wind Pressures as required per local building code based on wind speed, exposure factor and importance factor noted in the Structural Drawings.

2.2.1.2 Deflection Values

Use the most restrictive of the following:

- a. Limit deflection to $L/240 + 1/4$ inch for span over 13 feet-6 inches.

2.2.2 Thermal Expansion and Structural Movement

Expansion and contraction, caused by changes in surface temperature equal to delta T.

- a. Delta T for this project: 120 degrees F.
- b. Thermal contraction/expansion in this range shall not cause buckling, stresses on cladding, failure of joint seals, undue stress on structural elements, damaging loads on fasteners, reduction of performance, or other detrimental effects over this temperature range.
- c. Design shall eliminate audible harmonic vibrations, and noises from thermal movement.

2.2.3 Structural Movements of Building Structure

Per Section 13 34 19 METAL BUILDING SYSTEMS

2.3 MATERIALS

2.3.1 Bracket and Rail Support System

Thermally broken brackets and attached rail system to carry rainscreen panels.

2.3.1.1 Brackets

- a. S-Series or D-Series brackets as required for plumb cladding installation.
- b. 14 gauge, 50 ksi sheet steel with ZM40 coating.
- c. 1/8 inch thick polyoxymethylene (POM) isolator at substrate and rail attachments.
- d. Fiberglass brackets by Optional manufacturers.
- e. Depth: 2 inches.

2.3.1.2 Primary Horizontal Rails

- a. 18 gauge cold formed steel C-channel.
- b. Dimensions: 1 inch flanges and 1-5/8 inch web.

2.3.2 Vertical Rail Support System

2.3.2.1 Primary Vertical Rails

- a. 18 gauge, 50 ksi sheet steel with ZM40 coating.
- b. Dimensions: 3/4 inch deep channel with 2 inch fastening face.

2.3.2.2 Building Insulation

Minimum compressive strength: 25 PSI.

2.3.3 Horizontal Rail Support System

2.3.3.1 Primary Horizontal Rails

- a. 18 gauge, 50 ksi sheet steel with ZM40 coating.
- b. Dimensions: 5-1/8 inch wide by 3/4 inch deep girt with 2 inch fastening face.
- c. Include pre-punched drainage holes.
- d. Attach to structure through insulation with 9.57 ksi tensile yield strength fasteners.
- e. Isolate fasteners from primary rails with 1/8 inch thick polyoxymethylene (POM) washer.

2.3.3.2 Building Insulation

See Section 07 21 13 BOARD AND BLOCK INSULATION. Minimum compressive strength of 25 PSI.

2.3.4 Fasteners

- a. Minimum ultimate pull-out capacity from substrate: 450 pounds.
- b. Sufficient length to provide solid attachment to structure.
 - 1. Coordinate length with Section 07 21 13 BOARD AND BLOCK INSULATION and drawings.
- c. Fastener to metal stud substrate:
 - 1. Stainless steel.
 - 2. 1,000 hour salt spray rated thermoset polyester coating.
- d. Fastener to masonry substrate:
 - 1. Carbon steel.

2. Minimum 1-1/4 inch embedment depth.

e. Fasteners to connect Support System Components to each other:

1. Thermal Isolating Washers: Minimum 0.125 inch thick Polyoxymethylene copolymer (POM) washers with integral centering lip to act as a thermal break between wall anchor fasteners and girt.

Tensile Yield Strength: 9.57 ksi per ISO 527.

Melting Temperature: 329 degrees F per ISO 3146.

2. Stainless steel.

3. 1,000 hour salt spray rated thermoset polyester coating.

2.3.5 Accessories

Plates, gussets, and clips formed of sheet steel to meet structural requirements and provide a complete system.

Galvanic protection with tapes or other methods to separate and prevent contact between dissimilar metals except where noted otherwise.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

Examine structure and components to support or receive the panel system. Verify location of studs and other structural components related to Cladding Support System. Inspect integrity of waterproof building envelope. Do not proceed with erection of panel system until deficiencies are corrected. Installation indicates acceptance of substrates and responsibility for performance.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Install Cladding Support System per manufacturer's recommendation. Erect panel system plumb, level, and square. Maintain installation tolerances within panel manufacturer's requirements. Protect construction in place from damage during installation. Repair air barrier, sheathing and other building components if damage, including holes due to improperly located attachments, occurs.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 07 13 00

SHEET APPLIED WATERPROOFING

02/16

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C836/C836M	(2015) High Solids Content, Cold Liquid-Applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane for Use With Separate Wearing Course
ASTM D1621	(2016) Standard Test Method for Compressive Properties of Rigid Cellular Plastics
ASTM D1970/D1970M	(2017) Standard Specification for Self-Adhering Polymer Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Used as Steep Roofing Underlayment for Ice Dam Protection
ASTM D3767	(2014) Standard Practice for Rubber - Measurement of Dimensions
ASTM D4068	(2017) Standard Specification for Chlorinated Polyethylene (CPE) Sheeting for Concealed Water-Containment Membrane
ASTM D412	(2016) Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers - Tension
ASTM D4491/D4491M	(2015) Standard Test Methods for Water Permeability of Geotextiles by Permittivity
ASTM D4716/D4716M	(2008; R 2013) Determining the (In-Plane) Flow Rate Per Unit Width and Hydraulic Transmissivity of a Geosynthetic Using a Constant Head
ASTM D4833/D4833M	(2007; E 2013; R 2013) Index Puncture Resistance of Geotextiles, Geomembranes, and Related Products
ASTM D5385/D5385M	(1993; R 2014; E 2014) Standard Test Method for Hydrostatic Pressure Resistance of Waterproofing Membranes
ASTM D570	(1998; E 2010; R 2010) Standard Test Method for Water Absorption of Plastics

ASTM D624	(2000; R 2012) Standard Test Method for Tear Strength of Conventional Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers
ASTM D6241	(2014) Standard Test Method for the Static Puncture Strength of Geotextiles and Geotextile-Related Products Using a 50-mm Probe
ASTM D903	(1998; R 2017) Standard Test Method for Peel or Stripping Strength of Adhesive Bonds
ASTM E96/E96M	(2016) Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC IBC	(2018) International Building Code

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Manufacturer's Standard Details; G
Waterproofing Sheet Material; G
Primers, Adhesives, and Mastics; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Waterproofing Sheet Material; G
Field Quality Control documentation; G

SD-07 Certificates

Waterproofing Sheet Material; G
Primers, Adhesives, and Mastics; G
Draft Special Warranties; G
Final Special Warranties; G
Certificates Of Compliance; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Primers, Adhesives, and Mastics; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Certificates Of Compliance with sustainable requirements for items listed in SD-07; G

1.3 MANUFACTURER'S DETAILS

Submit manufacturer's standard details indicating methods of attachment and spacing, transition and termination details, and installation details. Include verification of existing conditions.

1.4 PRODUCT DATA

Include data for material descriptions, recommendations for product shelf life, requirements for protective coverings, and manufacturer's Safety Data Sheets (SDS) for primers, adhesives, and mastics.

1.5 CODE REQUIREMENTS

Provide membrane waterproofing system in accordance with ICC IBC Section 1805 Dampproofing and Waterproofing.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, HANDLING, IDENTIFICATION

Deliver and store materials in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions, out of the weather, in manufacturer's original packaging with brand name and product identification clearly marked. Keep materials wrapped and separated from off-gassing materials (such as drying paints and adhesives). Do not use materials that have visible moisture or biological growth. Do not permit unidentified materials in the work area or in the project.

1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

Do not apply waterproofing during inclement weather or when there is ice, frost, surface moisture, or visible dampness on the surface to receive waterproofing for when ambient and surface temperatures are 40 degrees F or below. The restriction on the application of waterproofing materials when ambient and surface temperatures are below 40 degrees F will be waived if the Contractor devises a means, approved by the Contracting Officer in writing, of maintaining the surface and ambient temperatures above 40 degrees F.

1.8 SPECIAL WARRANTIES

1.8.1 Guarantee

Guarantee waterproofing membrane installation against failure due to leaks for a period of two years from the date of Beneficial Occupancy. Submit draft and final guarantees in accordance with Sections 01 78 00 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS and 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

1.8.2 Warranty

Provide manufacturer's material warranty for all system components for a period of ten years from the date of Beneficial Occupancy. Submit draft and final warranties in accordance with Sections 01 78 00 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS and 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SUSTAINABILITY CRITERIA

Where allowed by performance criteria:

2.1.1 Reduced Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Content

Provide products with reduced VOC content and provide [certificates of compliance](#) in accordance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING paragraph REDUCE VOLATILE ORGANIC COMPOUNDS.

2.1.2 Recycled Content

Provide products with recycled content and provide [certificates of compliance](#) in accordance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING paragraph RECYCLED CONTENT.

2.2 MATERIALS

Provide one of the types of [self-healing, self-sealing, self-repairing waterproofing sheet material](#) and related [primers, adhesives, and mastics](#) as specified herein. Ensure compatibility of waterproofing materials with each other, and with materials on which they are applied. Provide materials that comply with applicable requirements cited below when tested in accordance with the referenced ASTM publications.

2.3 SHEET APPLIED WATERPROOFING SYSTEM

[Self-healing, self-sealing and self-repairing sheet waterproofing membrane.](#) This co-extruded, watertight membrane has three active layers - a watertight EPDM barrier, and active core with the ability to heal itself when penetrated, and an active barrier which seals the overlap and prevents lateral movement of water. Also, a non-woven fabric layer promotes the mechanical adhesion of the membrane to the concrete. Multi-Layer Sheet Waterproofing: Composite membrane of 63 mils thickness consisting of an EPDM watertight barrier layer, a hydro-reactive polymer core layer, an EPDM derivative/polymer hydro-reactive layer, and a non-woven polyethylene geotextile facing.

2.3.1 Performance Requirements

2.3.1.1 General

[Waterproofing system shall be capable of performing as a continuous watertight installation and as a moisture drainage plane transitioned to adjacent flashings and discharging water to the building exterior.](#) Waterproofing shall accommodate normal substrate movement, construction material transitions, opening transitions, penetrations, and perimeter conditions without resultant moisture deterioration.

2.3.1.2 Compatibility

[Provide waterproofing system materials that are compatible with adjacent materials under conditions of service and substrates on which product is applied, as recommended by waterproofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.](#)

2.3.2 Sheet Waterproofing

2.3.2.1 Physical Properties

- a. Elongation, ASTM D412: 709 percent
- b. Tensile Strength, ASTM D412: 927 psi
- c. Nail Sealability, ASTM D1970/D1970M, sect. 7.9: Passed
- d. Low Temp Flexibility at -20 degrees F, Below Structural Slabs-on-Grade: Apply waterproofing membrane with black EPDM side down, and white, fleece fabric side up., sect. 7.6: Unaffected, passed
- e. Peel Adhesion to Concrete, ASTM D903: 7.7 lbs./in.
- f. Strength at Break, ASTM D624: 161.51 psi
- g. Permeance, ASTM E96/E96M B:0.069 US Perms, 0.016 US Perms (BW - Inverted Wet Cup)
- h. Resistance to Hydrostatic Head, ASTM D5385/D5385M: Pass at 231 ft.²
- i. Thickness, ASTM D3767: 63 mils, 1.6mm
- j. Crack Cycling at -9.4 degrees F, 100 cycles, ASTM C836/C836M: Unaffected, Pass
- k. Puncture Resistance of Geomembranes, ASTM D4833/D4833M: 52.4 kg/M
- l. Hydrostatic Pressure Resistance, ASTM D4068: Pass at 40 hours
- m. Water Absorption, ASTM D570: 0.13 percent
- n. Installation Temperatures: 32 to 95 degrees F
- o. Freeze/Thaw Cycles: No effect before or after installation
- p. Life Expectancy: Indefinite
- q. Color: Black

2.3.3 Accessory Materials

- a. Safety Overlap Tape: double-sided, synthetic rubber composite membrane tape, with a butyl adhesive on one side and a fleece material facing.
- b. Single component, high performance, medium-modulus, low-VOC, UV-stable, non-sag polyurethane sealant.
- c. Single component, thermoplastic elastomer sealant.

2.4 WATERPROOFING PROTECTION AND DRAINAGE PANELS

Protection Course is not required.

2.4.1 Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel

Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a nonwoven,

spun-bonded polypropylene facing laminated to one side of a studded, non-biodegradable, polystyrene drainage core.

- a. Flow Capacity, per unit width, ASTM D4716/D4716M: 12.5 gpm/ft. (155 lpm/m).
- b. Flow Rate, ASTM D4491/D4491M: 165 gpm/ft² (6,724 lpm/m²).
- c. Apparent Opening Size: No. 70 sieve (210 micron).
- d. CBR Puncture, ASTM D6241: 275 lb. (1,220 N).
- e. Core Compressive Strength, ASTM D1621: 11,000 lb/ft² (527 kN/m²).
- f. Thickness: 0.25 inch (6.35 mm).

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 VERIFICATION OF CONDITIONS

Before starting the work, verify surfaces that must be waterproofed are in satisfactory condition. Notify the Contracting Officer of defects or conditions anticipated to prevent a satisfactory application. Do not start application until defects and conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INTERFACE WITH OTHER WORK

- a. Sequencing of Work: Coordinate sequencing of waterproofing installation with work of other sections that form portions of building envelope moisture control to ensure that flashings and transition materials can be properly installed and inspected.
- b. Subsequent Work: Coordinate waterproofing installation with work of other sections installed subsequent to waterproofing to ensure complete inspection of installed waterproofing and sealing of waterproofing penetrations necessitated by subsequent work.

3.3 PREPARATION

- a. Clean, prepare, and treat substrates. Fill voids with cement grout as recommended by manufacturer.
- b. Formed Concrete Surfaces: Remove fins and projections. Fill voids, form-tie holes, and other defects greater than 1/4 inch (6 mm) in depth.
- c. Horizontal Concrete Surfaces: Remove standing water, debris, and substances that may impair bonding of patching materials or effectiveness of waterproofing. Fill voids and other defects greater than 1/4 inch (6 mm) in depth.
- d. Excavation Support and Protection System: Fill minor gaps and spaces 1 (25 mm) wide or wider with appropriate filling material. Cover or fill large voids and crevices.

3.4 APPLICATION

3.4.1 Building Envelope Requirements

Provide a continuous waterproofing system at all material and building

transitions. Lap, wrap, fasten and seal products in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions. Envelope assembly variations are not permitted without written approval from the Contracting Officer's Representative.

3.4.2 General Installation Requirements

Provide sheet waterproofing in accordance with manufacturer's printed installation instructions. Ensure the surface to receive membrane is clean, smooth and dry without surface irregularities; correct deficiencies prior to installation. When using solvent welding liquid, avoid prolonged contact with skin and breathing of vapor and provide adequate ventilation. Carry waterproofing of horizontal surfaces up abutting vertical surfaces and adhere solid to the substrate. Avoid wrinkles and buckles in applying membrane and joint reinforcement.

Install waterproofing and accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.

- a. Install a continuous layer of waterproofing membrane with ends and edges lapped a minimum of 2-4 inches (102 mm). Stagger end joints, seal laps and treat fastener penetrations in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- b. Apply hydro-reactive expandable sealant around penetrations in horizontal and vertical surfaces, construction joints in substrate, and penetrations.
- c. Apply sealant between all overlaps and compress with a 2 inch x 2 inch steel seam roller using pressure sufficient to adequately flatten/spread the sealant bead.
- d. Seal all overlaps with tape centered on the adjacent sheet edge, adhering to the white, non-woven fleece fabric layer facing the installer and pressing or rolling down to ensure full adhesion.

Protect waterproofing from damage during construction. Repair punctures, tears, and cuts.

3.4.2.1 Self-Adhering Membrane

Apply composite, self-adhering membrane on surfaces primed at a uniform coverage rate in accordance with membrane manufacturer's printed instructions. Remove release sheet and apply with tacky surface in contact with dried primer.

3.4.2.2 Protection

Protect membrane over horizontal surfaces from traffic during installation. Use only equipment with rubber tires. Provide walkway protection where heavy traffic from other trades is expected. Do not store material on membrane.

3.5 SHEET APPLIED WATERPROOFING MEMBRANE

Lap sheets at edges and ends a minimum of 2-1/2 inches over the preceding sheet. Provide all side laps a minimum 2-1/2 inches and end laps 5 inches. Provide self-adhesive, mastic laps in accordance with manufacturer's recommendation. Roll or firmly press to adhere membrane to substrate.

Cover corners and joints with two layers of reinforcement by first applying a 12 inch width of membrane centered along the axis. Flash drains and projections with a second ply of membrane for a distance of 6 inches from the drain or projection. Finish exposed, terminated edges of membrane on horizontal or vertical surfaces with a toweled bead of mastic. Apply mastic around edges of membrane, and drains and projections. Apply mastic at end of each work day.

3.6 FLASHING

Flash penetrations through membrane. Seal all penetrations where reinforcing bars penetrate a waterproofing membrane with the appropriate sealant or mastic flashing component. Embed elastomeric membrane in a heavy coat of adhesive, except for self-adhering membrane. Position continuous metal reglets horizontally on footing and vertically on intersecting and connecting walls, and as specified in Section 07 60 00 FLASHING AND SHEET METAL. Metal reglets are to receive exposed edges of membrane waterproofing. Secure membrane into reglets by lead wedges and fill with cement as recommended in writing by manufacturer of waterproofing materials. Counterflash upper edge of membrane waterproofing and protective covering as specified in Section 07 60 00 FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.

3.7 VERTICAL BLINDSIDE WALL WATERPROOFING

- a. Install membrane with the white, fleece fabric side to be in direct contact with concrete and over a continuous layer of drainage board. Drainage board is applied 4 feet (1.2 m) above submerged conditions.
- b. On shoring walls, install membrane with a minimum 2 - 4 inches (101.6 mm) sheet edge overlaps. Tack membrane to highest point of shoring. All overlaps must be treated in accordance with manufacturer's details.
- c. Verify which penetrations must be accessed after concrete placement for completion of waterproofing detail treatment and ensure that sufficient access to membrane is provided within a wood formed box out; verify which penetrations will not be accessed after concrete placement for completion of waterproofing detail treatment and ensure that final detailing procedures are completed prior to concrete pour; waterproof penetrations in accord with manufacturer's current procedures; contact manufacturer for procedures at project conditions not provided in installation manuals.
- d. After any precipitation, pump standing water off waterproofing as soon as possible and repair any damage to membrane.
- e. Excavation Support and Protection: Cut, clean, and treat tiebacks and similar projections. Encase tieback rods, nuts, and plates. If water is present, cover shoring and lagging with plastic protection sheets. If water is present, set up a dewatering system to remove water.

3.8 HORIZONTAL WATERPROOFING

Horizontal Roofs, Plazas, and between Slabs: Install waterproofing membrane starting at lowest point, with ends and edges overlapped a minimum of 2 - 4 inches (102 mm) and tape sealed.

- a. Install fleece fabric side of membrane against the material to be waterproofed.

- b. Terminations at Vertical Surfaces: Provide a fillet or cant at intersection of horizontal and vertical substrates.

3.9 BELOW-SLAB WATERPROOFING

Below Structural Slabs-on-Grade: Apply waterproofing membrane with black EPDM side down, and white, fleece fabric side up.

- a. Install membrane sheets with the fleece fabric side up. Tape all seams where subject to displacement during concrete placement.
- b. Install under footings, grade beams, and pile caps; or continue waterproofing through key joints between footings and foundation walls, and extend a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) up or beyond perimeter slab forms. Stagger seams minimum 12 inches (305 mm).
- c. Install under slabs starting at lowest point, install a continuous layer of waterproofing membrane, with ends and edges lapped a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm).
- d. Protect waterproofing from damage caused by reinforcing bar supports with sharp edges.

3.10 DRAINAGE PANEL INSTALLATION

Place and secure drainage panels in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesives that do not penetrate waterproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Notify the Contracting Officer 5 working days prior to date of performing tests. Before concealment, cover waterproofing on horizontal surfaces over finished spaces with 3 inches of ponded water for 24 hours. Do not add water after start of 24 hour period. Accurately measure water level at beginning and end of 24 hour period. If water level falls, remove water and inspect waterproofing membrane. Make repairs or replacement as directed, and repeat test. Do not proceed with work that conceals membrane waterproofing before receiving approval and acceptance of the Contracting Officer.

3.12 PROTECTIVE COVERING

After installation has been inspected and approved by the Contracting Officer, apply a protective covering to the membrane waterproofing prior to backfilling. Protect vertical membrane waterproofing with a 1/2 inch minimum thickness of asphalt plank; 1/2 inch minimum thickness of fiberboard; or 1/8 inch minimum thickness of compatible water resistant bitumen type protection board with edges abutting adjacent edges and exposed surfaces covered by a taping system recommended by manufacturer of protection board. Cover horizontal membrane waterproofing with similar protection board and Portland cement mortar not less than 3/4 inch thick; place uniformly and allow to set before installing subsequent construction.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 07 21 13

BOARD AND BLOCK INSULATION

02/16

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 90.1 (2016; ERTA 1-8 2017; INT 1-5 2017) Energy
Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise
Residential Buildings

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C165 (2007; R 2017) Standard Test Method for
Measuring Compressive Properties of
Thermal Insulations

ASTM C578 (2018) Standard Specification for Rigid,
Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation

ASTM C612 (2014) Mineral Fiber Block and Board
Thermal Insulation

ASTM C930 (2019) Standard Classification of
Potential Health and Safety Concerns
Associated with Thermal Insulation
Materials and Accessories

ASTM D1621 (2016) Standard Test Method for
Compressive Properties of Rigid Cellular
Plastics

ASTM D3833/D3833M (1996; R 2011) Water Vapor Transmission of
Pressure-Sensitive Tapes

ASTM E84 (2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface
Burning Characteristics of Building
Materials

ASTM E96/E96M (2016) Standard Test Methods for Water
Vapor Transmission of Materials

ASTM E154/E154M (2008a; R 2013; E 2013) Water Vapor
Retarders Used in Contact with Earth Under
Concrete Slabs, on Walls, or as Ground
Cover

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC IBC (2018) International Building Code

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 31 (2016) Standard for the Installation of
Oil-Burning Equipment

NFPA 54 (2018) National Fuel Gas Code

NFPA 70 (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2;
TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6;
TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10;
TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA
17-14; TIA 17-15; TIA 17-16; TIA 17-17)
National Electrical Code

NFPA 211 (2019) Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces,
Vents, and Solid Fuel-Burning Appliances

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program
For Chemical Emissions For Building
Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation;
submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control
approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability
eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING.
Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL
PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Manufacturer's Standard Details; G

Block or Board Insulation; G

Vapor Retarder; G

Pressure Sensitive Tape; G

Accessories including sealants; G

Recycled Content for Block or Board Insulation; S

SD-07 Certificates

Block or Board Insulation; G

Vapor Retarder; G

Final Special Warranties; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Block or Board Insulation

Adhesive

1.3 MANUFACTURER'S DETAILS

Submit manufacturer's standard details indicating methods of attachment and spacing, transition and termination details, and installation details. Include verification of existing conditions.

1.4 PRODUCT DATA

Include data for material descriptions, recommendations for product shelf life, requirements for protection board or coatings, and precautions for flammability and toxicity. Include data to verify compatibility of sealants with insulation.

1.5 CERTIFICATIONS

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification by other third-party programs. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.6.1 Delivery

Deliver materials to the site in original sealed wrapping bearing manufacturer's name and brand designation, specification number, type, grade, R-value, and class. Store and handle to protect from damage. Do not allow insulation materials to become wet, soiled, crushed, or covered with ice or snow. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations for handling, storing, and protecting of materials before and during installation.

1.6.2 Storage

Inspect materials delivered to the site for damage and store out of weather in manufacturer's original packaging. Store only in dry locations, not subject to open flames or sparks, and easily accessible for inspection and handling. Keep materials wrapped and separated from off-gassing materials (such as drying paints and adhesives). Do not use materials that have visible moisture or biological growth. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations for handling, storage, and protection of materials before and during installation.

1.7 SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

1.7.1 Other Safety Considerations

Comply with the safety requirements of ASTM C930.

1.8 SPECIAL WARRANTIES

1.8.1 Guarantee

Guarantee insulation installation against failure due to ultraviolet light exposure for a period of three years from the date of Beneficial Occupancy. Submit draft and final guarantees in accordance with Sections 01 78 00 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS and 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

1.8.2 Warranty

Provide manufacturer's material warranty for all system components for a period of three years from the date of Beneficial Occupancy. Submit draft and final warranties in accordance with Sections 01 78 00 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS and 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 BLOCK OR BOARD INSULATION

Provide thermal insulating materials as recommended by manufacturer for each type of application indicated. Provide insulation with the following physical properties and in accordance with the following standards:

- a. Mineral Fiber Block and Board: ASTM C612

2.1.1 Thermal Resistance

Indicated on drawings. Must meet or exceed ASHRAE 90.1 code compliance for overall envelope.

2.1.2 Fire Protection Requirements

- a. Flame spread index of 75 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- b. Smoke developed index of 150 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- c. Provide insulated assemblies in accordance ICC IBC Chapter Fire and Smoke Protection Features.

2.1.3 Other Material Properties

Provide thermal insulating materials with the following properties:

- a. Rigid cellular plastics: Compressive Resistance at Yield: Not less than 10 pounds per square inch (psi) when measured according to ASTM D1621.
- b. Mineral fiber board: Compressive strength: Minimum load required to produce a reduction in thickness of 10 percent pounds per square foot (lbf/sf): 25 when tested according to ASTM C165.
- c. Water Vapor Permeance: Not more than 1.1 perms or less when measured according to ASTM E96/E96M, desiccant method, in the thickness required to provide the specified thermal resistance, including facings, if any.

2.1.1.4 Premolded Concrete Masonry Insert

Provide in accordance with **ASTM C578** REV A. Provide inserts in concrete masonry units that are installed at the masonry unit manufacturing plant. Provide insert with thickness of not less than **1 1/4 inches**.

2.1.1.5 Recycled Materials

Provide thermal insulation containing recycled materials to the extent practicable, provided that the material meets all other requirements of this section. The minimum required recycled material contents (by weight, not volume) are:

Polyisocyanurate/Polyurethane:	9 percent
Phenolic Rigid Foam:	5 percent
Perlite Board:	75 percent post consumer paper

Provide data identifying percentage of **recycled content for block or board insulation**.

2.1.1.6 Prohibited Materials

Do not provide materials containing asbestos.

2.2 **VAPOR RETARDER AND DAMPPROOFING**

2.2.1 Vapor Retarder under Floor Slab

- Water vapor permeance: **0.2 Perm** or less when tested in accordance with **ASTM E96/E96M**.
- Puncture resistance: Maximum load no less than **40 pounds** when tested according to **ASTM E154/E154M** REV A.

2.3 **PRESSURE SENSITIVE TAPE**

As recommended by manufacturer of vapor retarder(s). Match water vapor permeance rating for each vapor retarder specified. Provide tape in accordance with **ASTM D3833/D3833M**.

2.4 **PROTECTION BOARD OR COATING**

As recommended by insulation manufacturer.

2.5 **ACCESSORIES**

2.5.1 **Adhesive**

As recommended by insulation manufacturer.

2.5.2 **Mechanical Fasteners**

Corrosion resistant fasteners as recommended by the insulation manufacturer.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

3.1.1 Blocking Around Heat Producing Devices

Provide noncombustible blocking at all spaces between heat producing devices and the floors, ceilings and roofs through which they pass. Provide in accordance with **ICC IBC** Section 2111.12 Fireplace Blocking and with the following clearances:

- a. Recessed lighting fixtures, including wiring compartments, ballasts, and other heat producing devices, unless certified for installation surrounded by insulation: **3 inches** from outside face of fixtures and devices or as required by **NFPA 70** and, if insulation is placed above fixture or device, **24 inches** above fixture.
- b. Vents and vent connectors used for venting products of combustion, flues, and chimneys other than masonry chimneys: Minimum clearances as required by **NFPA 211**.
- c. Gas Fired Appliances: Clearances as required in **NFPA 54**.
- d. Oil Fired Appliances: Clearances as required in **NFPA 31**.

Blocking is not required if chimneys or flues are certified in writing by the chimney or flue manufacturer for use in contact with specific insulating materials.

3.2 INSTALLATION

3.2.1 Installation and Handling

Provide insulation in accordance with the manufacturer's printed installation instructions. Keep material dry and free of extraneous materials.

3.2.2 Electrical Wiring

Do not install insulation in a manner that would enclose electrical wiring between two layers of insulation.

3.2.3 Continuity of Insulation

Butt tightly against adjoining boards, studs, rafters, joists, sill plates, headers and obstructions. Provide continuity and integrity of insulation at corners, wall to ceiling joint, roof, and floor. Avoid creating thermal bridges and voids. Provide and verify continuity of insulative barrier throughout the building enclosure.

3.2.4 Coordination

Verify final installed insulation thicknesses comply with thicknesses indicated, R-values specified herein, and with the approved insulation submittal(s).

3.3 INSTALLATION ON WALLS

3.3.1 Installation using Furring Strips

Install insulation **between and on** members as recommended by insulation manufacturer.

3.4 PERIMETER AND UNDER SLAB INSULATION

Install perimeter thermal insulation where heated spaces are adjacent to exterior walls, slab edges in slab-on-grade, or floating slab construction.

3.4.1 Insulation on Vertical Surfaces

Provide thermal insulation **as indicated on drawings**. Fasten insulation with adhesive or mechanical fasteners.

3.4.2 Protection of Insulation

Protect insulation from damage during construction and back filling by application of protection board or a coating. Do not leave installed vertical insulation unprotected overnight. Protect installed insulation from weather, including rain and ultraviolet light, from mechanical abuse, compression, and dislocation. Install protection over entire exposed exterior insulation board.

3.5 VAPOR RETARDER

Apply vapor retarder continuous across all surfaces. Overlap all joints at least **12 inches** and seal with pressure sensitive tape. Seal at sills, header, windows, doors and utility penetrations. Repair punctures or tears with pressure sensitive tape.

3.6 ACCESS PANELS AND DOORS

Attach insulation to all access panels greater than **1 square foot** and all access doors in insulated floors and ceilings. Use insulation with same R-Value as that for the floor or ceiling in which each panel occurs.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 07 21 16

MINERAL FIBER BLANKET INSULATION

11/11

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C665	(2017) Standard Specification for Mineral-Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Light Frame Construction and Manufactured Housing
ASTM C930	(2018) Standard Classification of Potential Health and Safety Concerns Associated with Thermal Insulation Materials and Accessories
ASTM D3833/D3833M	(1996; R 2011) Water Vapor Transmission of Pressure-Sensitive Tapes
ASTM D5359	(2015) Standard Specification for Glass Cullet Recovered from Waste for Use in Manufacture of Glass Fiber
ASTM E136	(2016) Behavior of Materials in a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750 Degrees C
ASTM E84	(2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350	(2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources using Environmental Chambers

GREEN SEAL (GS)

GS-36	(2013) Adhesives for Commercial Use

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 211	(2019) Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel-Burning Appliances
NFPA 31	(2016) Standard for the Installation of Oil-Burning Equipment

NFPA 54 (2018) National Fuel Gas Code

NFPA 70 (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2; TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6; TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10; TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA 17-14; TIA 17-15; TIA 17-16; TIA 17-17) National Electrical Code

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168 (2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR 1910.134 Respiratory Protection

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program For Chemical Emissions For Building Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Blanket Insulation

Recycled Content for Insulation Materials; S

Accessories

SD-07 Certificates

Indoor Air Quality for Insulation Materials; S

Indoor Air Quality for Adhesives; S

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Insulation

1.3 CERTIFICATIONS

Submit required indoor air quality certifications and validations in one submittal package.

1.3.1 Insulation Products

Provide product certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by [UL 2818](#) (Greenguard) Gold, [SCS](#) Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification by other third-party programs. Provide current product certification from certification body.

1.3.2 Adhesives and Sealants

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by [UL 2818](#) (Greenguard) Gold, [SCS](#) Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party programs that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited herein.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.4.1 Delivery

Deliver materials to site in original sealed wrapping bearing manufacturer's name and brand designation, specification number, type, grade, R-value, and class. Store and handle to protect from damage. Do not allow insulation materials to become wet, soiled, crushed, or covered with ice or snow. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations for handling, storing, and protecting of materials before and during installation.

1.4.2 Storage

Inspect materials delivered to the site for damage; unload and store out of weather in manufacturer's original packaging. Store only in dry locations, not subject to open flames or sparks, and easily accessible for inspection and handling.

1.5 SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

1.5.1 Respirators

Provide installers with dust/mist respirators, training in their use, and protective clothing, all approved by National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH)/Mine Safety and Health Administration (MSHA) in accordance with [29 CFR 1910.134](#).

1.5.2 Other Safety Concerns

Consider other safety concerns and measures as outlined in [ASTM C930](#).

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 [BLANKET INSULATION](#)

[ASTM C665](#), Type I, blankets without membrane coverings and II, blankets with non-reflecting coverings; Class A, membrane-faced surface with a flame spread of 25 or less when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#).

2.1.1 Thermal Resistance Value (R-VALUE)

R-Value indicated on drawings.

2.1.2 Recycled Materials

Provide insulation materials containing the following minimum percentage of recycled material content by weight:

Fiberglass: 20 percent glass cullet complying with [ASTM D5359](#)

Provide data identifying percentage of [recycled content for insulation materials](#).

2.1.3 Prohibited Materials

Do not provide asbestos-containing materials.

2.1.4 Reduced Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC) for Insulation Materials

Provide certification of [indoor air quality for insulation materials](#).

2.2 BLOCKING

Wood, metal, unfaced mineral fiber blankets in accordance with [ASTM C665](#), Type I, or other approved materials. Use only non-combustible materials meeting the requirements of [ASTM E136](#) for blocking around chimneys and heat producing devices.

2.3 PRESSURE SENSITIVE TAPE

As recommended by the vapor retarder manufacturer and having a water vapor permeance rating of [one perm](#) or less when tested in accordance with [ASTM D3833/D3833M](#).

2.4 ACCESSORIES

2.4.1 Adhesive

As recommended by the insulation manufacturer. Provide non-aerosol adhesive products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) that meet either emissions requirements of [CDPH SECTION 01350](#) (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of [SCAQMD Rule 1168](#). Provide aerosol adhesives used on the interior of the building that meet either emissions requirements of [CDPH SECTION 01350](#) (use the office or classroom requirements, regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of [GS-36](#). Provide certification or validation of [indoor air quality for adhesives](#).

2.4.2 Mechanical Fasteners

Corrosion resistant fasteners as recommended by the insulation manufacturer.

2.4.3 Wire Mesh

Corrosion resistant and as recommended by the insulation manufacturer.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXISTING CONDITIONS

Before installing insulation, ensure that areas that will be in contact with the insulation are dry and free of projections which could cause voids, compressed insulation, or punctured vapor retarders. If moisture or other conditions are found that do not allow the workmanlike installation of the insulation, do not proceed but notify Contracting Officer of such conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

3.2.1 Blocking Around Heat Producing Devices

Install non-combustible blocking around heat producing devices to provide the following clearances:

- a. Recessed lighting fixtures, including wiring compartments, ballasts, and other heat producing devices, unless these are certified by the manufacturer for installation surrounded by insulation: 3 inches from outside face of fixtures and devices or as required by NFPA 70 and, if insulation is to be placed above fixture or device, 24 inches above fixture.
- b. Vents and vent connectors used for venting the products of combustion, flues, and chimneys other than masonry chimneys: Minimum clearances as required by NFPA 211.
- c. Gas Fired Appliances: Clearances as required in NFPA 54.
- d. Oil Fired Appliances: Clearances as required in NFPA 31.

Blocking around flues and chimneys is not required when insulation blanket, including any attached vapor retarder, passed ASTM E136, in addition to meeting all other requirements stipulated in Part 2. Blocking is also not required if the chimneys are certified by the manufacturer for use in contact with insulating materials.

3.3 INSTALLATION

3.3.1 Insulation

Install and handle insulation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Keep material dry and free of extraneous materials. Any materials that show visual evidence of biological growth due to presence of moisture must not be installed on the building project. Ensure personal protective clothing and respiratory equipment is used as required. Observe safe work practices.

3.3.1.1 Electrical wiring

Do not install insulation in a manner that would sandwich electrical wiring between two layers of insulation.

3.3.1.2 Continuity of Insulation

Install blanket insulation to butt tightly against adjoining blankets and to studs, rafters, joists, sill plates, headers and any obstructions.

Where insulation required is thicker than depth of joist, provide full width blankets to cover across top of joists. Provide continuity and integrity of insulation at corners, wall to ceiling joints, roof, and floor. Avoid creating thermal bridges.

3.3.1.3 Installation at Bridging and Cross Bracing

Insulate at bridging and cross bracing by splitting blanket vertically at center and packing one half into each opening. Butt insulation at bridging and cross bracing; fill in bridged area with loose or scrap insulation.

3.3.1.4 Insulation without Affixed Vapor Retarder

Provide snug friction fit to hold insulation in place. Stuff pieces of insulation into cracks between trusses, joists, studs and other framing, such as at attic access doors, door and window heads, jambs, and sills, band joists, and headers.

3.3.1.5 Sizing of Blankets

Provide only full width blankets when insulating between trusses, joists, or studs. Size width of blankets for a snug fit where trusses, joists or studs are irregularly spaced.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 07 22 00

ROOF AND DECK INSULATION

02/16

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C578	(2018) Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation
ASTM C726	(2017) Standard Specification for Mineral Wool Roof Insulation Board
ASTM C1177/C1177M	(2017) Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing
ASTM E84	(2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

FM GLOBAL (FM)

FM 4450	(1989) Approval Standard for Class 1 Insulated Steel Deck Roofs
FM 4470	(2010) Single-Ply, Polymer-Modified Bitumen Sheet, Built-up Roof (BUR), and Liquid Applied Roof Assemblies for Use in Class 1 and Noncombustible Roof Deck Construction
FM APP GUIDE	(updated on-line) Approval Guide http://www.approvalguide.com/

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC IBC	(2018) International Building Code

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 1	(2018) Fire Code

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS	SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 1256	(2002; Reprint Jul 2013) Fire Test of Roof Deck Constructions

UL 2818

(2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program
For Chemical Emissions For Building
Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Insulation Board Layout and Attachment; G

Verification of Existing Conditions; G

SD-03 Product Data

Insulation; G

Cover Board; G

Fasteners; G

Moisture Control; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Flame Spread Rating; G

SD-07 Certificates

Installer Qualifications; G

Certificates Of Compliance For Felt Materials; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Nails and Fasteners; G

Roof Insulation; G

1.3 SHOP DRAWINGS

Submit insulation board layout and attachment indicating methods of attachment and spacing, transitions, tapered components, thicknesses of materials, and closure and termination conditions. Show locations of ridges, valleys, crickets, interface with, and slope to, roof drains. Base shop drawings on verified field measurements and include verification of existing conditions. Show location and spacing of wood nailers required for securing of insulation.

1.4 PRODUCT DATA

Include data for material descriptions, recommendations for product shelf

life, requirements for [cover board](#) or coatings, and precautions for flammability and toxicity. Include data to verify compatibility of sealants with insulation.

1.5 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

Include field of roof and perimeter attachment requirements.

Provide a complete description of installation sequencing for each phase of the roofing system. Include weatherproofing procedures.

1.6 QUALITY CONTROL

Provide certification of [installer qualifications](#) from the insulation manufacturer confirming the specific installer has the required qualifications for installing the specific roof insulation system(s) indicated.

Provide [certificates of compliance for felt materials](#).

1.7 FIRE PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

1.7.1 Insulation in Roof Systems

Comply with the requirements of [ICC IBC](#) or [UL 1256](#) or [FM 4450](#) or [FM 4470](#). Roof insulation to have a [flame spread rating](#) of 75 or less when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#). Additional documentation of compliance with flame spread rating is not required when insulation of the type used for this project as part of the specific roof assembly is listed and labeled as FM Class 1 approved.

1.7.2 Fire Resistance Ratings for Roofs

Provide in accordance with [ICC IBC](#) Chapter 7 and Table 721.1(3) Min Fire and Smoke Protection For Floor and Roof Systems.

1.8 CERTIFICATIONS

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by [UL 2818](#) (Greenguard) Gold, [SCS](#) Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification by other third-party programs. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.9.1 Delivery

Deliver materials to the project site in manufacturer's unopened and undamaged standard commercial containers bearing the following legible information:

- a. Name of manufacturer
- b. Brand designation
- c. Specification number, type, and class, as applicable, where materials are covered by a referenced specification

1.9.2 Storage and Handling

Store and handle materials in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions. Protect from damage, exposure to open flame or other ignition sources, wetting, condensation, and moisture absorption. Keep materials wrapped and separated from off-gassing materials (such as drying paints and adhesives). Do not use materials that have visible moisture or biological growth. Store in an enclosed building or trailer that provides a dry, adequately ventilated environment. Replace damaged material with new material.

1.10 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

Do not install roof insulation during inclement weather or when air temperature is below 40 degrees F and interior humidity is 45 percent or greater, or when there is visible ice, frost, or moisture on the roof deck.

1.11 PROTECTION

1.11.1 Flame Heated Equipment

1.11.1.1 Fire Protection

Locate melt kettles no closer than 25 feet from buildings or combustible materials. Provide and maintain two approved 4-A:40-B:C fire extinguishers within 25 feet of each operating kettle. Fire extinguishers, operations and locations must comply with NFPA 1 Section Tar Kettles. Equip asphalt (tar) kettles with tight fitting lids.

1.11.1.2 Operational Requirements

Equip kettles with automatic thermostatic control capable of maintaining asphalt temperature. Calibrate and maintain controls in working order for the duration of the work. Equip kettles with means of agitation and ensure they are operating as necessary to produce a controlled uniform temperature throughout kettle contents to prevent spot heating. Do not heat contents above flash point. Do not place flame heated equipment on the roof.

1.11.2 Special Protection

Provide special protection as approved by the insulation manufacturer.

1.11.3 Completed Work

Cover completed work with cover board for the duration of construction. Avoid traffic on completed work particularly when ambient temperature is above 80 degrees F. Replace crushed or damaged insulation prior to roof surface installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION

2.1.1 Insulation Types

Provide roof insulation that is compatible with attachment methods for the specified insulation and roof membrane.

- a. Polystyrene Board: In accordance with ASTM C578 REV A, Type II, IV, or

X.

2.1.2 Mineral Fiber Insulation Board

Provide in accordance with [ASTM C726](#).

2.1.3 Insulation Thickness

As necessary to provide the thermal resistance (R-value) indicated for average thickness of tapered system. Base calculation on the R-value for aged insulation. For insulation over steel decks, satisfy both specified R-value and minimum thickness for width of rib opening recommended in insulation manufacturer's published literature.

2.1.4 Tapered Roof Insulation

One layer of the tapered roof insulation assembly must be factory tapered to a slope of not less than one in [1/4 or 1/2 inch per foot](#). Factory fabricate mitered joints from two diagonally cut boards or one board shaped to provide required slopes.

2.1.5 Cants and Tapered Edge Strips

Provide preformed cants and tapered edge strips of the same material as the roof insulation. When unavailable, provide pressure-preservative treated wood, wood fiberboard, or rigid perlite board cants and edge strips as recommended by the roofing manufacturer for the specific application, unless otherwise indicated. Face of cant strips to incline at 45 degrees with a minimum vertical height of [4 inches](#). Taper edge strips at a rate of [one to 1 1/2 inch per foot](#) down to approximately [1/8 inch](#) thick.

2.2 COVER BOARD

For use as a thermal barrier (underlayment), fire barrier (overlayment), or cover board for hot-mopped, torched-down, or adhesive-applied roofing membrane over roof insulation.

2.2.1 Glass Mat Gypsum Roof Board

[ASTM C1177/C1177M](#), 0 Flame Spread and 0 Smoke Developed when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#), 500 psi, Class A, non-combustible, [1/4 or 1/2 or 5/8 inch](#) thick, [4 by 8 feet](#) board size.

2.3 MOISTURE CONTROL

2.4 FASTENERS

Provide flush-driven fasteners through flat round or hexagonal steel or plastic plates. Provide zinc-coated steel plates, flat round not less than [1 3/8 inch](#) diameter, hexagonal not less than [28 gage](#). Provide high-density plastic plates, molded thermoplastic with smooth top surface, reinforcing ribs and not less than [3 inches](#) in diameter. Fully recess fastener head into plastic plate after it is driven. Form plates to prevent dishing. Do not use bell or cup shaped plates. Provide fasteners in accordance with insulation manufacturer's recommendations for holding power when driven, or a minimum of [40 pounds or 120 pounds](#) each in steel deck, whichever is the higher minimum. Provide fasteners for steel or concrete decks in accordance with [FM APP GUIDE](#) (<http://www.approvalguide.com/>) for Class I roof deck construction, and spaced to withstand uplift pressure of [90](#)

pounds per square foot.

2.4.1 Roofing Nails for Wood Decks

Barbed 11 gage, zinc-coated nails with 7/16 to 5/8 inch diameter heads or annular ring shank, square head, one piece composite nails. Provide nails long enough to penetrate wood deck at least 5/8 inch without protruding through underside of decking.

2.4.2 Fasteners for Plywood Decks

Annular ring shank, square head, one piece composite nails long enough to penetrate into plywood decks approximately 1/2 inch without protruding through underside of decking.

2.4.3 Fasteners for Steel Decks

Approved hardened penetrating fasteners or screws in accordance with FM 4450 and listed in FM APP GUIDE for Class I roof deck construction. Quantity and placement to withstand a minimum uplift pressure of 90 psf in accordance with FM APP GUIDE.

2.4.4 Fasteners for Poured Concrete Decks

Approved hardened fasteners or screws to penetrate deck at least 1 inch but not more than 1 1/2 inches, in accordance with FM 4470, and listed in FM APP GUIDE for Class I roof deck construction. Quantity and placement to withstand an uplift pressure of 90 psf in accordance with FM APP GUIDE.

2.5 WOOD NAILERS

Pressure-preservative treated as specified in Section 06 10 00 ROUGH CARPENTRY.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION AND PREPARATION

3.1.1 Surface Inspection

The Contractor must inspect and approve the surfaces immediately before starting installation. Prior to installing insulation, perform the following:

- a. Examine steel decks to ensure that panels are properly secured to structural members and to each other and that surfaces of top flanges are flat or slightly convex.
- b. In the presence of the Contracting Officer perform the following surface dryness test on concrete substrates:
 - (1) Foaming: When poured on the deck, one pint of asphalt when heated in the range of 350 to 400 degrees F, does not foam upon contact.
 - (2) Strippability: After asphalt used in the foaming test application has cooled to ambient temperatures, test coating for adherence. Should a portion of the sample be readily stripped clean from surface, do not consider surface to be dry and do not start application. Should rain occur during application, stop work and

do not resume until surface has been re-tested by method above and found dry.

3.1.2 Surface Preparation

Correct defects and inaccuracies in roof deck surface to eliminate poor drainage from hollow or low spots, perform the following:

- a. Provide wood nailers of the same thickness as the insulation at eaves, edges, curbs, walls, and roof openings for securing of cant strips, gravel stops, gutters, and flashing flanges. On decks with slopes of one in 12 (1 inch per foot) or more, install wood nailers perpendicular to slope for securing insulation. Space nailers in accordance with approved shop drawings.
- b. Fill or cover cracks or knot holes larger than 1/2 inch in diameter in wood decks as necessary to form an unyielding surface.
- c. Cover steel decks with a layer of insulation board of sufficient width to span the width of a deck rib opening, and in accordance with fire safety requirements. Secure with piercing or self-drilling, self-tapping fasteners of quantity and placement in accordance with FM APP GUIDE. Locate insulation joints parallel to ribs of deck on solid bearing surfaces only, not over open ribs.

3.2 INSULATION INSTALLATION

Apply insulation in two layers with staggered joints when total required thickness of insulation exceeds 1/2 inch. Lay insulation so that continuous longitudinal joints are perpendicular to direction of roofing and end joints of each course are staggered with those of adjoining courses. When using multiple layers of insulation, provide joints of each succeeding layer that are parallel and offset in both directions with respect to the layer below. Keep insulation 1/2 inch clear of vertical surfaces penetrating and projecting from roof surface. Verify required slopes to each roof drain.

3.2.1 Installation Using Only Mechanical Fasteners

Secure total thickness of insulation with penetrating type fasteners.

3.2.2 Special Precautions for Installation of Foam Insulation

3.2.2.1 Polyisocyanurate Insulation

Where polyisocyanurate foam board insulation is provided, install 1/2 inch thick wood fiberboard, glass mat gypsum roof board, or 3/4 inch thick expanded perlite board insulation over top surface of foam board insulation. Stagger joints of insulation with respect to foam board insulation below.

3.2.2.2 Polystyrene Insulation

- a. Over the top surface of non-composite polystyrene board, install 1/2 inch thick high density wood fiberboard, 3/4 inch thick expanded perlite board, glass mat gypsum roof board, or other overlayment approved by roofing sheet manufacturer. Tightly butt and stagger joints of field applied overlayment board at least 6 inches with respect to the polystyrene board below. Apply 6 inch wide glass fiber

roofing tape centered over joints and edges of overlayment board.

- b. Where composite boards consisting of polystyrene insulation are provided, apply 6 inch wide glass fiber roofing tape centered over joints and edges of composite board. Apply joint strips as recommended by roofing sheet manufacturer.

3.2.3 Cant Strips

Where indicated, provide cant strips at intersections of roof with walls, parapets, and curbs extending above roof. Wood cant strips must bear on and be anchored to wood blocking. Fit cant strips flush to vertical surfaces. Where possible, nail cant strips to adjoining surfaces. Where cant strips are installed against non-nailable materials.

3.2.4 Tapered Edge Strips

Where indicated, provide edge strips in the right angle formed by the juncture of roof and wood nailing strips that extend above the level of the roof. Install edge strips flush to vertical surfaces of wood nailing strips. Where possible, nail edge strips to adjoining surfaces. Where installed against non-nailable materials.

3.3 PROTECTION

3.3.1 Damaged Work and Materials

Restore work and materials that become damaged during construction to original condition or replace with new materials.

3.4 INSPECTION

Establish and maintain inspection procedures to assure compliance of the installed roof insulation with contract requirements. Remove, replace, correct in an approved manner, any work found not in compliance. Quality control must include, but is not limited to, the following:

- a. Observation of environmental conditions; number and skill level of insulation workers; start and end time of work.
- b. Verification of certification, listing or label compliance with FM Data Sheets. (<https://www.fmglobal.com/fmglobalregistration/Downloads.aspx>)
- c. Verification of proper storage and handling of insulation and vapor retarder materials before, during, and after installation.
- d. Inspection of vapor retarder application, including edge envelopes and mechanical fastening.
- e. Inspection of mechanical fasteners; type, number, length, and spacing.

- f. Coordination with other materials, cants, sleepers, and nailing strips.
- g. Inspection of insulation joint orientation and laps between layers, joint width and bearing of edges of insulation on deck.
- h. Installation of cutoffs and proper joining of work on subsequent days.
- i. Continuation of complete roofing system installation to cover insulation installed same day.
- j. Verification of required slope to each roof drain.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 07 27 10.00 10

BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM
05/14

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

This Section specifies the construction and quality control of the installation of an air barrier system. Construct the air barrier system indicated, taking responsibility for the means, methods, and workmanship of the installation of the air barrier system. The air barrier must be contiguous and connected across all surfaces of the enclosed air barrier envelope indicated. The maximum leakage requirements of individual air barrier components and materials are specified in the other specification sections covering these items.

This section also defines the maximum allowable leakage of the final air barrier system. The workmanship must be adequate to meet the maximum allowable leakage requirements of this specification. Test the assembled air barrier system to demonstrate that the building envelope is properly sealed and insulated. Passing the air barrier system leakage test and thermography test will result in system acceptance. Conform air barrier system leakage and thermography testing and reporting to the requirements of Section 07 05 23 PRESSURE TESTING AN AIR BARRIER SYSTEM FOR AIR TIGHTNESS.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D4541	(2017) Standard Test Method for Pull-Off Strength of Coatings Using Portable Adhesion Testers

1.3 DEFINITIONS

The following terms as they apply to this section:

1.3.1 Air Barrier Accessory

Products designated to maintain air tightness between air barrier materials, air barrier assemblies and air barrier components, to fasten them to the structure of the building, or both (e.g., sealants, tapes, backer rods, transition membranes, fasteners, strapping, primers).

1.3.2 Air Barrier Assembly

The combination of air barrier materials and air barrier accessories that are designated and designed within the environmental separator to act as a continuous barrier to the movement of air through the environmental separator.

1.3.3 Air Barrier Component

Pre-manufactured elements such as windows, doors, dampers and service elements that are installed in the environmental separator.

1.3.4 Air Barrier Envelope

The combination of air barrier assemblies and air barrier components, connected by air barrier accessories that are designed to provide a continuous barrier to the movement of air through an environmental separator. There may be more than one air barrier envelope in a single building. Also known as Air Barrier System.

1.3.5 Air Barrier Material

A building material that is designed and constructed to provide the primary resistance to airflow through an air barrier assembly.

1.3.6 Air Barrier System

Same as AIR BARRIER ENVELOPE.

1.3.7 Air Leakage Rate

The rate of airflow (CFM) driven through a unit surface area (sq.ft.) of an assembly or system by a unit static pressure difference (Pa) across the assembly. (example: 0.25 CFM/sq.ft. @ 75 Pa)

1.3.8 Air Leakage

The total airflow (CFM) driven through the air barrier system by a unit static pressure difference (Pa) across the air barrier envelope. (example: 6500 CFM @ 75 Pa)

1.3.9 Air Permeance

The rate of airflow (CFM) through a unit area (sq.ft.) of a material driven by unit static pressure difference (Pa) across the material (example: 0.004 CFM/sq.ft. @ 75 Pa).

1.3.10 Environmental Separator

The parts of a building that separate the controlled interior environment from the uncontrolled exterior environment, or that separate spaces within a building that have dissimilar environments. Also known as the Control Layer.

1.4 PREPARATORY PHASE OR PRECONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE

Organize pre-construction conferences between the air barrier inspector and the sub-contractors involved in the construction of or penetration of the air barrier system to discuss where the work of each sub-contractor begins and ends, the sequence of installation, and each sub-contractor's responsibility to ensure airtight joints, junctures, penetrations and transitions between materials. Discuss the products, and assemblies of products specified in the different sections to be installed by the different sub-contractors.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-04 Samples

Mock-Up; G

Build one as specified prior to building construction.

SD-06 Test Reports

Design Review Report; G

Two copies not later than 14 days after approval of the Air Barrier Inspector Qualifications.

Testing and Inspection; G

SD-07 Certificates

Air Barrier Inspector; G

Two copies 30 days after Notice to Proceed.

1.6 AIR BARRIER ENVELOPE SURFACE AREA AND LEAKAGE REQUIREMENTS

The building air barrier systems must meet the following leakage requirements. The allowable leakage rate and the maximum leakage are at a differential test pressure of 75 Pa.

Air Barrier Envelope - Building P1395	
Surface Area	81,073 square feet to be confirmed by Contractor
Architectural Only Test:	
Allowable leakage rate	0.25 CFM/sq.ft
Maximum leakage	20,268 total CFM
Architectural Plus HVAC System Test:	
Allowable leakage rate	0.30 CFM/sq.ft
Maximum leakage	24,322 total CFM

1.7 AIR BARRIER INSPECTOR

Employ a qualified Air Barrier Inspector for this project with a minimum of 5 years experience. The Air Barrier Inspector performs a Design Review, oversees quality control testing specified in these specifications,

performs quality control air barrier inspection as specified, interfaces with the designer and product manufacturer's representatives to assure all installation requirements are met, and coordinates efforts between all workers installing or penetrating the air barrier materials. Qualification for the Air Barrier Inspector are as follows:

- a. Training and certification as an Air Barrier Installer from the Air Barrier Association of America (ABAA) or other third party air barrier association.
- b. Experience coordinating and instructing personnel involved in the installation, joining, and sealing of air barrier materials and components.

1.8 DESIGN REVIEW

Review the Contract Plans and Specifications and advise the Contracting Officer of any deficiencies that would prevent the construction of an effective air barrier system. Provide a [Design Review Report](#) individually listing each deficiency and the corresponding proposed corrective action necessary for proper air barrier system.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

As specified in Section 07 27 26 FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 QUALITY CONTROL

3.1.1 Documentation and Reporting

Document the entire installation process on daily job site reports. These reports include information on the Installer, substrates, substrate preparation, products used, ambient and substrate temperature, the location of the air barrier installation, the results of the quality control procedures, and testing results.

3.1.2 Construction [Mock-Up](#)

- a. Prepare a construction mock-up to demonstrate proper installation of the air barrier assemblies and components. Include air barrier system connections between floor and wall, wall and window, wall and roof. Also, include the sealing method between membrane joints at transitions from one material or component to another, at pipe or conduit penetrations of the wall and roof, and at duct penetration of the wall and roof. Work will not begin until the mock-up is satisfactory to the Contracting Officer.
- b. Size the mock-up to approximately [8 feet long by 8 feet high](#). The mock-up must be representative of primary exterior wall assemblies and glazing components including backup wall and typical penetrations as acceptable to the Contracting Officer. A corner of the actual building may be used as the mock-up.
- c. Mock-Up Tests for Adhesion: Test the mock-up of materials for adhesion in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Perform the test after the curing period recommended by the manufacturer. Record the mode of failure and the area which failed in accordance with [ASTM D4541](#).

When the air barrier material manufacturer has established a minimum adhesion level for the product on the particular substrate, the inspection report must indicate whether this requirement has been met. Where the manufacturer has not declared a minimum adhesion value for their product/substrate combination, simply record the value.

3.1.1.3 Quality Control [Testing And Inspection](#)

Conduct the following tests and inspections as applicable in the presence of the Contracting Officer during installation of the air barrier system, and submit quality control reports as indicated below.

- a. Provide a Daily Report of Observations with a copy to the Contracting Officer.
- b. Inspect to assure continuity of the air barrier system throughout the building enclosure and that all gaps are covered, the covering is structurally sound, and all penetrations are sealed allowing for no infiltration or exfiltration through the air barrier system.
- c. Inspect to assure structural support of the air barrier system to withstand design air pressures.
- d. Inspect to assure masonry [and concrete](#) surfaces receiving air barrier materials are smooth, clean, and free of cavities, protrusions and mortar droppings, with mortar joints struck flush or as required by the manufacturer of the air barrier material.
- e. Inspect and test to assure site conditions for application temperature, and dryness of substrates are within guidelines.
- f. Inspect to assure substrate surfaces are properly primed if applicable and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Priming must extend at least 2 inches beyond the air barrier material to make it obvious that the primer was applied to the substrate before the air barrier material.
- g. Inspect to [assure](#) laps in materials are at least a 2-inch minimum, shingled in the correct direction or mastic applied in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations, and with no fishmouths.
- h. Inspect to assure that a roller has been used to enhance adhesion. Identify any defects such as fishmouths, wrinkles, areas of lost adhesion, and improper curing. Note the intended remedy for the deficiencies.
- i. Measure application thickness of liquid applied materials to assure that manufacturer's specifications for the specific substrate are met.
- j. Inspect to assure that the correct materials are installed for compatibility.
- k. Inspect to assure proper transitions for change in direction and structural support at gaps.
- l. Inspect to assure proper connection between assemblies (membrane and sealants) for cleaning, preparation and priming of surfaces, structural support, integrity and continuity of seal.

- m. Perform adhesion tests for fluid-applied and self-adhered air barrier membranes to assure that the manufacturer's specified adhesion strength properties are met. Determine the bond strength of coatings to substrate in accordance with [ASTM D4541](#).
- n. Provide written test reports of all tests performed.

3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

Upon completion of inspection, testing, sample removal and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates, coatings and finishes. Protect construction exposed by or for quality control service activities, and protect repaired construction.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 07 27 26

FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS

05/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR BARRIER ASSOCIATION OF AMERICA (ABAA)

ABAA Accreditation

Accreditation

ABAA QAP

Quality Assurance Program

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C836/C836M

(2015) High Solids Content, Cold
Liquid-Applied Elastomeric Waterproofing
Membrane for Use With Separate Wearing
Course

ASTM D412

(2016) Standard Test Methods for
Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic
Elastomers - Tension

ASTM D4263

(1983; R 2012) Indicating Moisture in
Concrete by the Plastic Sheet Method

ASTM D4541

(2017) Standard Test Method for Pull-Off
Strength of Coatings Using Portable
Adhesion Testers

ASTM D5590

(2000; R 2010; E 2012) Standard Test
Method for Determining the Resistance of
Paint Films and Related Coatings to Fungal
Defacement by Accelerated Four-Week Agar
Plate Assay

ASTM E2178

(2013) Standard Test Method for Air
Permeance of Building Materials

ASTM E2357

(2017) Standard Test Method for
Determining Air Leakage of Air Barrier
Assemblies

ASTM E283

(2004; R 2012) Determining the Rate of Air
Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain
Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure
Differences Across the Specimen

ASTM E331

(2000; R 2016) Standard Test Method for
Water Penetration of Exterior Windows,
Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls by

Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference

ASTM E84

(2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

ASTM E96/E96M

(2016) Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 285

(2012) Standard Fire Test Method for Evaluation of Fire Propagation Characteristics of Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Components

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Coordinate the requirements of Section 07 27 10.00 10 BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM, Section 07 05 23 PRESSURE TESTING AN AIR BARRIER SYSTEM FOR AIR TIGHTNESS, and other building enclosure sections to provide a complete building air barrier system. Submit all materials, components and assemblies of the air barrier system together as one complete submittal package.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Qualifications of Manufacturer; G

Qualifications of Installer; G

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barrier; G

SD-03 Product Data

Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barrier; G

Transition Membrane; G

Primers, Adhesives, and Mastics; G

Reinforcement; G

Safety Data Sheets; G

SD-04 Samples

Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barrier [Mockup](#); G

SD-06 Test Reports

Capillary Moisture Test; G

Field Peel Adhesion Test; G

Flame Propagation of Wall Assemblies; G

Flame Spread and Smoke Developed Index Ratings; G

Site Inspections Reports; G

SD-07 Certificates

Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barrier; G

Transition Membrane; G

Qualifications of Manufacturer; G

Qualifications of Installer; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barrier; G

Transition Membrane; G

Primers, Adhesives, and Mastics; G

1.4 MISCELLANEOUS REQUIREMENTS

For [fluid-applied membrane air barriers](#) provide the following:

1.4.1 Shop Drawings

Submit fluid-applied membrane air barrier shop drawings showing locations and extent of barrier assemblies, transition membranes, details of all typical conditions, intersections with other envelope assemblies and materials, and membrane counterflashings. Show details for bridging of gaps in construction, treatment of inside and outside corners, expansion joints, methods of attachment of materials covering the self-adhered barrier without compromising the barrier. Indicate how miscellaneous penetrations such as conduit, pipes, electric boxes, brick ties, and similar items will be sealed.

1.4.2 Product Data

Submit manufacturer's technical data indicating compliance with performance and environmental requirements, manufacturer's printed instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrates, temperature and other limitations of installation conditions, safety requirements for installation, and [Safety Data Sheets](#). Indicate flame and smoke spread ratings for all products.

1.4.3 Mockup

Provide a mockup of the fluid-applied membrane air barrier. Apply product in an area designated by the Contracting Officer. Apply an area of not less than 54 square feet. Include all components specified as representative of the complete system. Notify the Contracting Officer a minimum of 48 hours prior to the test application. Select a test area representative of conditions to be covered including window or door openings, wall to ceiling transitions, flashings, and penetrations, as applicable.

1.4.4 Test Reports

Submit test reports indicating that capillary moisture tests and field peel adhesion tests on all substrate materials have been performed and the changes made, if required, in order to achieve successful and lasting adhesion. Submit test reports for flame propagation of wall assemblies tested in accordance with NFPA 285. Submit test reports for flame spread and smoke developed index ratings of barrier materials tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.5.1 Delivery

Deliver and store materials in sufficient quantity to allow for uninterrupted flow of work. Inspect materials delivered to the site for damage and store out of weather. Deliver materials to the jobsite in their original unopened packages, clearly marked with the manufacturer's name, brand designation, description of contents, and shelf life of containerized materials. Store and handle to protect from damage.

1.5.2 Storage

Inspect materials delivered to the site for damage; unload and store out of weather in manufacturer's original packaging. Store only in dry locations, not subject to open flames or sparks, and easily accessible for inspection and handling. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

1.6 CAPILLARY MOISTURE TEST

Perform a capillary moisture test by plastic sheet method in accordance with ASTM D4263 on the construction mockup and substrate materials. Perform test after curing period as recommended by the air barrier manufacturer. Record mode of failure and area which failed in accordance with ASTM D4263. Once the air barrier material manufacturer has established a minimum adhesion or moisture level for the product on the particular substrate, indicate on the inspection report whether this requirement has been met. Where the manufacturer has not declared a minimum adhesion or moisture value for their product and substrate combination, the inspector must record actual values.

1.7 FIELD PEEL ADHESION TEST

Perform a field peel adhesion test on a construction mockup. Test the applied product for adhesion in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Perform test after curing period recommended by the manufacturer. Record mode of failure and area which failed in accordance with ASTM D4541. When the manufacturer has established a minimum adhesion

level for the product on the particular substrate, the inspection report must indicate whether this requirement has been met. Where the manufacturer has not declared a minimum adhesion value for their product/substrate combination, the inspector must record actual values.

1.8 AIR BARRIER TESTING

Perform air barrier testing in accordance with Section 07 27 10.00 10 BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM and Section 07 05 23 PRESSURE TESTING AN AIR BARRIER SYSTEM FOR AIR TIGHTNESS.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.9.1 Qualifications of Manufacturer

Submit documentation verifying that manufacturer of fluid-applied membrane air barrier is currently accredited by the Air Barrier Association of America (ABAA Accreditation <https://www.airbarrier.org/>).

1.9.2 Qualifications of Installer

Submit documentation verifying that installers of the fluid-applied membrane air barrier are currently certified in accordance with the ABAA QAP Quality Assurance Program (<https://www.airbarrier.org/qap/>).

1.10 PRECONSTRUCTION MEETING

Conduct a preconstruction meeting a minimum of two weeks prior to commencing work specified in this Section. Agenda must include, at a minimum, construction and testing of construction mock up, sequence of construction, coordination with substrate preparation, materials approved for use, compatibility of materials, coordination with installation of adjacent and covering materials, and details of construction. Attendance is required by representatives of related trades including covering materials, substrate materials, adjacent materials, and materials and components of the fluid-applied membrane air barrier.

1.11 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

1.11.1 Temperature

Install fluid-applied membrane air barrier within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures as recommended in writing by the fluid-applied membrane air barrier manufacturer. Do not apply fluid-applied membrane air barrier to a damp or wet substrate. Do not apply during inclement weather or when ice, frost, surface moisture, or visible dampness is present on surfaces to be covered, or when precipitation is imminent.

1.11.2 Exposure to Weather

Protect fluid-applied membrane air barrier products from direct exposure to rain, snow, sunlight, mist, and other extreme weather conditions. Replace, at no additional cost to the government, barrier products that have been exposed to ultraviolet (sun)light longer than allowed by manufacturer's written requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIER

Provide a fluid-applied, vapor retarding, air barrier. This barrier must exhibit no visible water leakage when tested in accordance with [ASTM E331](#) and must perform as a liquid water drainage plane with thru-wall flashing to discharge incidental condensation and water penetration to the exterior of the building enclosure. Provide products suitable for use within temperature ranges specified by manufacturer for the location of the project.

2.1.1 Physical Properties

- a. Air Permeance ([ASTM E2178](#)): in accordance with Section [07 27 10.00 10](#) BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM
- b. Air Leakage ([ASTM E2357](#), [ASTM E283](#)): in accordance with Section [07 27 10.00 10](#) BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM and Section [07 05 23](#) PRESSURE TESTING AN AIR BARRIER SYSTEM FOR AIR TIGHTNESS.
- c. Water Vapor Permeance (Vapor Permeable Membrane) ([ASTM E96/E96M](#), desiccant method A): [10.0 perms](#).
- d. Tensile Strength ([ASTM D412](#)): Not less than [138 psi](#).
- e. Elongation ([ASTM D412](#)): Not less than 300 percent.
- f. Low temperature Flexibility and Crack Bridging ([ASTM C836/C836M](#)): Pass at [minus 15 degrees F](#).
- g. Solids by Volume: minimum 50 percent.
- h. Flame propagation of wall assemblies ([NFPA 285](#)): Pass
- i. Surface Burning Characteristics ([ASTM E84](#)):
 - (1) Flame Spread Index Rating not higher than 75.
 - (2) Smoke Developed Index Rating not higher than 150.
- j. Resistance to Mold, Mildew and Fungal Growth ([ASTM D5590](#)): 0, No growth.

2.2 PRIMERS, ADHESIVES, AND MASTICS

Provide primers, adhesives, mastics, sealants and other accessories as recommended by manufacturer of fluid-applied membrane air barrier for a complete installation.

2.3 TRANSITION MEMBRANE

Provide as specified in Section [07 27 10.00 10](#) BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM.

2.4 SHEET METAL FLASHING

Provide as specified in Section [07 60 00](#) FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.

2.5 JOINT SEALANTS

Provide as specified in Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.

2.6 REINFORCEMENT

Provide fiberglass mesh tape, or fluid-applied air barrier manufacturer's approved comparable equal product, reinforcement at seams, edges, projections and penetrations. Reinforce all joints exceeding 1/4 inch with fiberglass mesh.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

Before installing fluid-applied membrane air barrier, examine substrates, areas, and conditions under which fluid-applied membrane air barrier assemblies will be applied, with installer present, for compliance with requirements. Ensure the following conditions are met:

- a. Surfaces are sound, dry, even, and free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar or other contaminants detrimental to the adhesion of the membranes.
- b. Concrete and masonry surfaces are cured and dry, smooth without large voids, spalled areas or sharp protrusions. Do not proceed with installation until after minimum concrete curing period recommended by fluid-applied membrane air barrier manufacturer.
- c. Fill voids, gaps and spalled areas in substrate to provide an even plane. Strike masonry joints full flush.
- d. Verify substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method in accordance with ASTM D4263 and take suitable measures until substrate passes moisture test.
- e. Verify sealants used in substrates, and in joints between substrates, are compatible with fluid-applied membrane air barrier.

3.2 PREPARATION

Clean, prepare, and treat substrate in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Ensure clean, dust-free, and dry substrate for fluid-applied membrane air barrier application.

- a. Remove dust, dirt and other contaminants from joints and cracks before coating surfaces.
- b. Prepare, treat, and seal vertical and horizontal surfaces at terminations and penetrations through fluid-applied membrane air barrier.
- c. At changes in substrate plane, provide transition material (bead of sealant, mastic, extruded silicone sealant, membrane counterflashing or other material recommended by manufacturer) under transition membrane to eliminate all sharp 90 degree inside corners and to make a smooth transition from one plane to another.
- d. Provide mechanically fastened non-corrosive metal sheet to span gaps in

substrate plane and to make a smooth transition from one plane to the other. Continuously support membrane with substrate.

- e. For exterior sheathing substrates, ensure that exterior sheathing is stabilized, with corners and edges fastened with appropriate screws. Treat all joints in accordance with the air barrier manufacturer's instructions prior to application of air barrier material. Allow sufficient time for joint treatments to fully cure before application of transition membranes and fluid-applied membrane air barrier.
- f. For concrete and masonry substrates, fill all voids and holes, particularly in mortar joints, with non-shrinking grout.
- g. Mask off and cover adjacent surfaces to protect from spillage and overspray.

3.3 INSTALLATION

3.3.1 Installation of Transition Membrane

Install transition membrane materials in accordance with the details on the drawings and the following:

- a. Install transition membrane at all required locations prior to installation of the fluid-applied membrane air barrier.
- b. Verify transition membrane is fully adhered to substrate and that its surface is clean, dry and wrinkle free prior to installation of the fluid-applied membrane air barrier.
- c. Verify transition membrane completely covers all transition areas and will provide continuity of the finished fluid-applied membrane air barrier without gaps or cracks.

3.3.2 Installation of Flashing

Counterflash upper edge of thru-wall flashing and fluid-applied air barrier. Counter flashing and thru-wall flashing are specified in Section 07 60 00 FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.

3.3.3 Installation of Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barrier

Install materials in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and the following:

- a. Apply fluid-applied membrane air barrier in single or dual coat application by spray or roller. Apply fluid-applied membrane air barrier within manufacturer's recommended temperature range for application.
- b. Apply fluid-applied membrane air barrier at rate recommended by manufacturer to yield a wet film thickness of 90 mils.
- c. Apply fluid-applied membrane air barrier around all penetrations ensuring a complete and continuous air barrier. Lap fluid-applied membrane air barrier a minimum of 3 inch over transition membrane to seal leading edge.
- d. Seal membrane terminations, heads of mechanical fasteners, masonry tie

fasteners, around penetrations, HVAC assemblies, plumbing and electrical assemblies, doors, windows, louvers, and other assemblies penetrating the fluid-applied membrane air barrier with a termination sealant recommended by the fluid-applied membrane air barrier manufacturer.

- e. Notify the Contracting Officer and Testing Agency upon completion of fluid-applied membrane air barrier installation. Air barrier materials and assemblies must remain exposed until tested and inspected by the ABAA.
- f. Do not allow materials to come in contact with chemically incompatible materials.

3.3.4 Installation of Reinforcement

Install reinforcement at projections, corners, joints, and penetrations where applicable.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.4.1 Site Inspections and Testing

Provide site inspections and testing in accordance with ABAA protocol to verify conformance with the manufacturer's instructions, the [ABAA QAP](https://www.airbarrier.org/gap/) Quality Assurance Program (<https://www.airbarrier.org/gap/>), Section 07 27 10.00 10 BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM, Section 07 05 23 PRESSURE TESTING AN AIR BARRIER SYSTEM FOR AIR TIGHTNESS, and this section.

- a. Conduct inspections and testing at 5, 50, and 95 percent completion of this scope of work. Forward written inspection reports to the Contracting Officer within five working days of the inspection and test being performed.
- b. If the inspections reveal any defects, promptly remove and replace defective work at no additional expense to the Government.

3.5 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

3.5.1 Protection

Protect fluid-applied membrane air barrier assemblies from damage during application and remainder of construction in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

Coordinate installation, testing, and inspection procedures to ensure exposure period does not exceed that recommended by the product manufacturer. Remove and replace, at no additional cost to the government, membrane products that exceed manufacturer's allowed exposure limits.

3.5.2 Cleaning of Adjacent Surfaces

Clean excess product from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures as recommended in writing by the manufacturer of each type of affected construction and as acceptable to same.

3.6 CLEANUP OF SPILLS

Conduct cleanup of uncured product spillage in accordance with

manufacturer's written safe handling instructions.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 07 42 13

METAL WALL PANELS

05/11

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ALUMINUM ASSOCIATION (AA)

AA ADM (2015) Aluminum Design Manual

AA ASD1 (2017; Errata 2017) Aluminum Standards and Data

AMERICAN ARCHITECTURAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (AAMA)

AAMA 501.1 (2017) Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Windows, Curtain Walls and Doors Using Dynamic Pressure

AAMA 800 (2016) Voluntary Specifications and Test Methods for Sealants

AMERICAN IRON AND STEEL INSTITUTE (AISI)

AISI S100 (2012) North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members

AISI SG03-3 (2002; Suppl 2001-2004; R 2008) Cold-Formed Steel Design Manual Set

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF CIVIL ENGINEERS (ASCE)

ASCE 7 (2017) Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS A5.1/A5.1M (2012) Specification for Carbon Steel Electrodes for Shielded Metal Arc Welding

AWS D1.1/D1.1M (2015; Errata 1 2015; Errata 2 2016) Structural Welding Code - Steel

AWS D1.2/D1.2M (2014) Structural Welding Code - Aluminum

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A36/A36M (2014) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel

ASTM A123/A123M	(2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A424/A424M	(2009a; R 2016) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet for Porcelain Enameling
ASTM A463/A463M	(2010; R 2015) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Aluminum-Coated, by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM A606/A606M	(2008) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet and Strip, High-Strength, Low-Alloy, Hot-Rolled and Cold-Rolled, with Improved Atmospheric Corrosion Resistance
ASTM A653/A653M	(2018) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM A792/A792M	(2010) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, 55% Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM A924/A924M	(2018) Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM A1008/A1008M	(2016) Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable
ASTM B117	(2016) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus
ASTM B209	(2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate
ASTM C286	(1999; R 2017) Standard Terminology Relating to Porcelain Enamel and Ceramic-Metal Systems
ASTM C920	(2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
ASTM D522/D522M	(2014) Mandrel Bend Test of Attached Organic Coatings
ASTM D523	(2014; R 2018) Standard Test Method for Specular Gloss
ASTM D610	(2008; R 2019) Standard Practice for Evaluating Degree of Rusting on Painted Steel Surfaces
ASTM D714	(2002; R 2017) Standard Test Method for

Evaluating Degree of Blistering of Paints

ASTM D822	(2013) Filtered Open-Flame Carbon-Arc Exposures of Paint and Related Coatings
ASTM D968	(2017) Standard Test Methods for Abrasion Resistance of Organic Coatings by Falling Abrasive
ASTM D1056	(2014) Standard Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials - Sponge or Expanded Rubber
ASTM D1308	(2013) Effect of Household Chemicals on Clear and Pigmented Organic Finishes
ASTM D1654	(2008; R 2016; E 2017) Standard Test Method for Evaluation of Painted or Coated Specimens Subjected to Corrosive Environments
ASTM D1667	(2017) Standard Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials - Poly (Vinyl Chloride) Foam (Closed-Cell)
ASTM D1781	(1998; R 2012) Standard Test Method for Climbing Drum Peel for Adhesives
ASTM D2244	(2016) Standard Practice for Calculation of Color Tolerances and Color Differences from Instrumentally Measured Color Coordinates
ASTM D2247	(2015) Testing Water Resistance of Coatings in 100% Relative Humidity
ASTM D2794	(1993; R 2019) Standard Test Method for Resistance of Organic Coatings to the Effects of Rapid Deformation (Impact)
ASTM D3359	(2017) Standard Test Methods for Rating Adhesion by Tape Test
ASTM D3363	(2005; E 2011; R 2011; E 2012) Film Hardness by Pencil Test
ASTM D4214	(2007; R 2015) Standard Test Method for Evaluating the Degree of Chalking of Exterior Paint Films
ASTM D4587	(2011) Standard Practice for Fluorescent UV-Condensation Exposures of Paint and Related Coatings
ASTM D5894	(2016) Standard Practice for Cyclic Salt Fog/UV Exposure of Painted Metal, (Alternating Exposures in a Fog/Dry Cabinet and a UV/Condensation Cabinet)

ASTM E72	(2015) Conducting Strength Tests of Panels for Building Construction
ASTM E84	(2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
ASTM E108	(2011) Fire Tests of Roof Coverings
ASTM E283	(2004; R 2012) Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen
ASTM E331	(2000; R 2016) Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference
ASTM E1592	(2005; R 2012) Structural Performance of Sheet Metal Roof and Siding Systems by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference
ASTM G152	(2013) Operating Open Flame Carbon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials
ASTM G153	(2013) Operating Enclosed Carbon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials

METAL BUILDING MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (MBMA)

MBMA MBSM	(2012) Metal Building Systems Manual

NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF ARCHITECTURAL METAL MANUFACTURERS (NAAMM)

NAAMM AMP 500	(2006) Metal Finishes Manual

PORCELAIN ENAMEL INSTITUTE (PEI)

PEI 1001	(1996) Specification for Architectural Porcelain Enamel (ALS-100)
PEI CG-3	(2005) Color Guide for Architectural Porcelain Enamel

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION (SMACNA)

SMACNA 1793	(2012) Architectural Sheet Metal Manual, 7th Edition

U.S. GREEN BUILDING COUNCIL (USGBC)

LEED NC	(2009) Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design(tm) New Construction Rating System

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 94 (2013; Reprint Sep 2017) UL Standard for Safety Tests for Flammability of Plastic Materials for Parts in Devices and Appliances

UL Bld Mat Dir (updated continuously online) Building Materials Directory

1.2 DEFINITIONS

Metal Wall Panel: Metal wall panels, attachment system components and accessories necessary for a complete weather-tight wall system.

1.3 DESCRIPTION OF WALL PANEL SYSTEMS

Factory color finished, aluminum metal wall panel system with concealed fastening attachment. Panel profile must be recessed seam lock.

Composite lightweight exterior cladding panel system. Panels consist of a thermoplastic core material, thermally bonded to aluminum face sheets with fluoropolymer paint finish. Composite metal panels to be manufactured, fabricated and installed to withstand loads from deflection and thermal movement and to maintain performance criteria stated by manufacturer without defects, damage, or failure. Thickness, finish, and color to be selected from manufacturer's standards.

Concealed fastener, flat panel, with vertical joints exterior cladding metal panel system. Concealed fastener design, weather resistant, rainscreen ventilated application. Smooth flat panel surface. Vertical application.

1.3.1 Metal Wall Panel General Performance

Comply with performance requirements, conforming to AISI S100, without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Wall panels and accessory components must conform to the following standards:

ASTM A1008/A1008M

ASTM A123/A123M

ASTM A36/A36M

ASTM A424/A424M, ASTM C286, PEI 1001, PEI CG-3 for Porcelain and Ceramic Enameling

ASTM A653/A653M

ASTM A463/A463M for aluminum coated steel sheet

ASTM A606/A606M

ASTM A924/A924M for metallic coated steel sheetASTM D522/D522M for applied coatings

UL Bld Mat Dir

1.3.2 Structural Performance

Maximum calculated fiber stress must not exceed the allowable value in the AISI or AA manuals; a one third overstress for wind is allowed. Midspan deflection under maximum design loads is limited to L/180. Contract drawings show the design wind loads and the extent and general assembly details of the metal siding. Contractor must provide design for members

and connections not shown on the drawings. Siding panels and accessories must be the products of the same manufacturer.

Provide metal wall panel assemblies complying with the load and stress requirements in accordance with [ASTM E1592](#). Wind Load force due to wind action governs the design for panels.

Wall systems and attachments are to resist the wind loads as determined by [ASTM E72](#) and [ASCE 7](#) in the geographic area where the construction will take place, in pounds per square foot. Submit five copies of [wind load tests](#) to the Contracting Officer.

1.3.3 Air Infiltration

Air leakage must conform to the limits through the wall assembly area when tested according to [ASTM E283](#).

1.3.4 Water Penetration Under Static Pressure

No water penetration when tested according to [ASTM E331](#).

1.3.5 Water Penetration Under Dynamic Pressure

No evidence of water leakage when tested according to [AAMA 501.1](#).

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section [01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING](#). Submit the following in accordance with Section [01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES](#):

[SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals](#)

Submit Documentation for the following items:

[Qualification of Manufacturer; G](#)
[Qualification of Installation Contractor; G](#)
[Qualification of Welders; G](#)
[Sample Warranty; G](#)

[SD-02 Shop Drawings](#)

[Installation Drawings; G](#)

- [1.Elevations showing each composite panel and attachment point.](#)
- [2.Details of each condition of installation and attachment.](#)
- [3.Details of each transition and termination.](#)

[SD-03 Product Data](#)

[Recycled Content; \(LEED NC\)](#)

Submit Manufacturer's data indicating percentage of recycle material in wall panels to verify sustainable acquisition compliance.

Submit Manufacturer's catalog data for the following items:

Wall Panels ; G
Factory Color Finish
Closure Materials
Pressure Sensitive Tape
Sealants and Caulking
Galvanizing Repair Paint
Enamel Repair Paint
Accessories

SD-04 Samples

Submit as required each of the following samples:

Wall Panels, 12 inches long by actual panel width; G
Fasteners; G
Metal Closure Strips, 10 inches long of each type; G
Color chart and chips; G

Submit manufacturer's color charts and chips, approximately 4 by 4 inches, showing full range of colors, textures and patterns available for wall panels with factory applied finishes.

SD-05 Design Data

Wind load design analysis ; G

Submit structural calculations for Aluminum Composite Material (ACM) System indicating design conforms to specified design criteria, sealed by the Specialty Structural Engineer.
Submit concurrent with Shop Drawings.

As applicable, submit the following wind load design analysis data, to include, but not limited to:
wind speed
exposure category,co-efficient,importance factor
type of facility
negative pressures for each zone
methods and requirements of attachment

SD-06 Test Reports

Submit test reports for the following in accordance with the referenced articles in this section.

Leakage Tests; G
Wind Load Tests; G
Coating Tests; G
Chalking Tests; G

SD-07 Certificates

Submit certificates for the following items showing conformance with referenced standards contained in this section:

Sustainability Documentation; G
Coil Stock; G
Fasteners; G

Galvanizing Repair Paint; G
Enamel Repair Paint; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Include detailed application instructions and standard manufacturer drawings altered as required by these specifications.

Installation of Wall panels; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Warranty; G
Maintenance Instructions; G

20 year "No Dollar Limit" warranty for labor and material

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 Pre-Installation Conference

Upon notification of submittal receipt and approval by the Contracting Officer; and prior to the commencement of the work, the Contractor must attend a pre-installation conference to review the following:

- a. Drawings and Specifications.
- b. Qualification of Installer, Qualification of Welders.
- c. Sustainable acquisition
- d. Approved Warranty
- e. Sample wall panels, 12 inches long by actual panel width
- f. Sample metal closure strips, 10 inches long of each type
- g. Color charts and chips
- h. Coatings and base metal tests, chalking tests
- i. Construction schedule, availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment and facilities required to progress with the work without delay.
- j. Methods and procedures related to installation of wall panels, including manufacturer's written instructions. Explicitly identify in writing, differences between manufacturer's instructions and the specified requirements.
- k. Support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
- l. Flashing, special siding details, wall penetrations, openings, and condition of other construction that will affect metal wall panels.
- m. Governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.

- n. Temporary protection requirements for metal wall panel assembly during and after installation.
- o. Wall panel observation and repair procedures after metal wall panel installation. Provide detailed written instructions including copies of Safety Data Sheets for maintenance and repair materials, and manufacturer's maintenance instructions.

1.5.1.1 Installation Drawings

Installation shop drawings for wall panels, flashing, accessories, and anchorage systems must indicate completely dimensioned structural frame and erection layouts, openings in the wall, special framing details, and construction details at corners, building intersections and flashing, location and type of mastic and metal filler strips.

Include elevations showing each composite panel and attachment point, details of each condition of installation and attachment, and details of each transition and termination.

1.5.1.2 Wind Load Design Analysis

Wind design analysis must include wall plan delineating dimensions and attachment patterns for each zone. Wind design analysis must be prepared and sealed by Licensed Project Engineer in the geographic area where the construction will take place.

Submit structural calculations for Aluminum Composite Material (ACM) System indicating design conforms to specified design criteria, sealed by the Specialty Structural Engineer. Submit concurrent with Shop Drawings.

- a. Wind Pressures as required per local building code based on wind speed, exposure factor and importance factor noted in the Structural Drawings.
- b. Wind Pressures defined by Building Code as locally adopted and amended.

1.5.2 Manufacturer's Technical Representative

The representative must have authorization from manufacturer to approve field changes and be thoroughly familiar with the products and installations in the geographical area where construction will take place.

1.5.3 Qualification of Manufacturer

Certify that metal wall panel system manufacturer has a minimum of five (5) years experience in manufacturing metal wall system and accessory products.

Manufacturer must also provide engineering services by an authorized engineer; currently licensed in the geographical area where construction will take place, having a minimum of four (4) years experience as an engineer knowledgeable in wind load design analysis, protocols and procedures per MBMA MBSM, "Metal Building Systems Manual"; ASCE 7, and ASTM E1592.

Provide certified engineering calculations, using the products submitted, for Wind load requirements in accordance with ASCE 7.

1.5.3.1 Manufacturer's Certificates

Provide certificates signed by manufacturer certifying materials comply with specified performance characteristics and physical requirements. Also provide the following certifications from the manufacturer:

Coil Stock
Fasteners
Galvanizing Repair Paint
Enamel Repair Paint

Submit certification from coil stock manufacturer or supplier that the machinery used will form the provided coil stock without warping, waviness, or rippling that is not a part of the panel profile, and without damage, abrasion or marring of the finish coating.

Provide evidence that products used within this specification are manufactured in the United States.

1.5.4 Certified Qualification of Installation Contractor

The installation contractor must be approved and certified by the metal wall panel manufacturer prior to beginning the installation of the metal wall panel system. Installation contractor must have at least three years of experience on similar sized metal panel projects and qualified by the composite panel manufacturer; contractor must be capable of providing field service representation during construction. Subcontracting by Certified Contractor for the metal wall panel work is not permitted.

1.5.4.1 Qualifications for Welding Work

Qualification of welders and welding must conform to AWS A5.1/A5.1M, AWS D1.1/D1.1M for steel or AWS D1.2/D1.2M for aluminum.

1.5.5 Single Source

Obtain each type of metal wall panels, clips, closure materials and other accessories from the standard products of the single source from a single manufacturer to operate as a complete system for the intended use.

1.5.6 Manufacturer's Maintenance Instructions

Provide manufacturer's detailed written instructions including copies of Safety Data Sheets for maintenance and repair materials.

1.5.6.1 Sustainability Documentation

Product Data for LEED Credit Materials & Resources 4.1 and Credit Materials & Resources 4.2: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.

Product Data for LEED Credit Materials & Resources 5.1 and Credit Materials & Resources 5.2: For products manufactured within 500 miles of project site, documentation indicating manufacturing location. Include statement indicating costs for each product manufactured within 500 miles of project site.

Product Data for LEED Credit Sustainable Sites 7.2: For products meeting reflectivity and emissivity requirements, including manufacturer's testing data.

1.6 DELIVERY, HANDLING, AND STORAGE

Deliver and protect package components, sheets, metal wall panels, and other manufactured items to prevent damage or deformation during transportation and handling.

Unload, store, and erect metal wall panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.

Stack and store metal wall panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weather-tight and ventilated covering to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal wall panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.

Retain strippable protective covering on metal wall panel until actual installation.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

1.7.1 Field Measurements

Verify locations of wall framing and opening dimensions by field measurements before metal wall panel fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.7.2 Weather Limitations

Proceed with installation preparation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit Work to proceed without water entering into wall system or building.

1.8 WARRANTY

Warranty must conform to the Sample Warranty as reviewed and approved by the Contracting Officer.

1.8.1 20 Year "No Dollar Limit" Warranty for Labor and Material

Furnish manufacturer's no-dollar-limit warranty for the metal wall panel system. The warranty period is to be no less than twenty (20) years from the date of Government acceptance of the work. The warranty is to be issued directly to the Government. The warranty is to provide that if within the warranty period the metal wall panel system shows evidence of corrosion, perforation, rupture or excess weathering due to deterioration of the wall panel system resulting from defective materials and correction of the defective workmanship is to be the responsibility of the metal wall panel system manufacturer. Repairs that become necessary because of defective materials and workmanship while metal wall panel system is under warranty are to be performed within 24 hours after notification, unless additional time is approved by the Contracting Officer. Failure to perform repairs within 24 hours of notification will constitute grounds for having emergency repairs performed by others and not void the warranty.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPOSITE METAL PANELS

Unless approved otherwise, fabricate and finish metal wall panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes and as necessary to fulfill indicated and specified performance requirements. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements. See section 01 33 29 LEED(tm) DOCUMENTATION for cumulative total recycled content requirements.

- a. Thermally bonded in a continuous process, under tension, to the core material.
- b. Bond Integrity; tested for resistance to delamination:
 - 1. Peel Strength (ASTM D1781): 22.5 in-lb/in minimum.
 - 2. No degradation in bond performance after 8 hours of submersion in boiling water and after 21 days of immersion in water at 70 degrees F.
- c. Fire Performance:
 - 1. Flamespread (ASTM E84): 25 maximum
 - 2. Smoke Developed (ASTM E84): 450 maximum
 - 3. Surface Flammability (modified ASTM E108): Pass
 - 4. V-O Rating: Comply with UL 94
- d. Production Tolerances:
 - 1. Width: +/- 2 mm
 - 2. Length: +/- 4 mm
 - 3. Thickness (4 mm Panel): +/- 0.008 inch
 - 4. Thickness (6 mm Panel): +/- 0.012 inch
 - 5. Bow: Maximum 0.5 percent length or width
 - 6. Squareness: Maximum 0.2 inch
 - 7. Edges of sheets shall be square and trimmed

2.1.1 Factory Color Finish

Comply with NAAM AMP 500 for recommendations for applying and designating finishes. Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

All panels are to receive a factory-applied polyvinylidene fluoride or fluoropolymer finish consisting of a baked-on top-coat with a manufacturer's recommended prime coat conforming to the following:

2.1.2 Metal Preparation

Carefully prepare all metal surfaces for painting on a continuous process coil coating line by alkali cleaning, hot water rinsing, application chemical conversion coating, cold water rinsing, sealing with acid rinse, and thorough drying.

2.1.3 Prime Coating

Carefully prepare all metal surfaces for painting on a continuous process coil coating line by alkali cleaning, hot water rinsing, application chemical conversion coating, cold water rinsing, sealing with acid rinse, and thorough drying.

2.1.4 Exterior Finish Coating

Roll coat the finish coating over the primer by roll coating to dry film thickness of 0.80 plus 5 mils (3.80 plus 0.50 mils for Vinyl Plastisol) for a total dry film thickness of 1.0 plus 0.10 mils (4.00 plus 0.10 mils for Vinyl Plastisol). Oven-cure finish coat.

2.1.5 Interior Finish Coating

Apply a wash-coat on the reverse side over primer by roll coating to a dry film thickness of 0.30 plus 0.05 mils for a total dry film thickness of 0.50 plus 0.10 mils. Oven-cure the wash coat.

2.1.6 Color

Provide exterior finish color as selected by the Architect of Record and the Contracting Officer from the manufacturer's standard color chart.

2.1.7 Physical Properties

Coating must conform to the industry and manufacturer's standard performance criteria as listed by the following certified test reports:

General: ASTM D4587
Abrasion: ASTM D968
Chalking: ASTM D4214
Chemical Pollution: ASTM D1308
Color Change and Conformity: ASTM D1654
Cyclic Corrosion Test: ASTM D5894
Flame Spread: ASTM E84
Formability: ASTM D522/D522M
Gloss at 60 and 85 degrees: ASTM D523
Humidity: ASTM D714
Oxidation: ASTM D610
Reverse Impact: ASTM D2794
Salt Spray: ASTM B117
Weatherometer: ASTM G152 and ASTM G153

2.2 CONCEALED FASTENER METAL WALL PANELS

Factory color finished galvalume metal wall panel system with concealed fastening attachment. Panel profile must be smooth face with stiffening ribs in the flat of panel.

2.3 FABRICATION

Unless approved otherwise, fabricate and finish metal wall panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes and as necessary to fulfill indicated and specified performance requirements. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements. See section 01 33 29 LEED(tm) DOCUMENTATION for cumulative total recycled content requirements.

Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel. Fabricate metal wall panel side laps with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a tight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, in a manner that will seal weather-tight and minimize noise from movements within panel assembly.

2.3.1 Sheet Metal Accessories

Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA 1793 that apply to the design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated:

- a. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
- b. End Seams: fabricate nonmoving end seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
- c. Sealed Joints: form non-expansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA 1793.
- d. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
- e. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of size and metal thickness recommended by SMACNA 1793 or by metal wall panel manufacturer for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.4 PANEL MATERIALS

2.4.1 Aluminum Sheet

Roll-form aluminum wall panels to the specified profile, with $f_y = 0.157$ inches thickness and depth as indicated. Material must be plumb and true, and within the tolerances listed:

- a. Aluminum Sheet conforming to ASTM B209, AA ASD1 and AA ADM.
- b. Individual panels must have continuous length to cover the entire length of any wall area with no joints or seams and formed without warping, waviness, or ripples that are not part of the panel profile and free of damage to the finish coating system.
- c. Provide panels with thermal expansion and contraction consistent with the type of system specified.

1. Profile and coverage to be a minimum height and width from

manufacturer's standard for the indicated wall area.

2. Smooth, flat surface texture.

2.4.2 Steel Sheet

Roll-form steel wall panels to the specified profile, with $f_y = 40$ ksi, 18 gauge and depth as indicated. Material must be plumb and true, and within the tolerances listed:

- a. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-coated Steel Sheet conforming to ASTM A792/A792M and AISI SG03-3.
- b. Individual panels must be continuous length to cover the entire length of any unbroken wall area with no joints or seams and formed without warping, waviness, or ripples that are not part of the panel profile and free of damage to the finish coating system.
- c. Provide panels with thermal expansion and contraction consistent with the type of system specified.

1. Smooth, flat Surface Texture.

2.4.3 Factory Color Finish

Comply with NAAMM AMP 500 for recommendations for applying and designating finishes. Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

All panels are to receive a factory-applied alloy compatible finish consisting of a baked-on top-coat with a manufacturer's recommended prime coat conforming to the following:

2.4.3.1 Metal Preparation

Carefully prepare all metal surface for painting on a continuous process coil coating line by alkali cleaning, hot water rinsing, application of chemical conversion coating, cold water rinsing, sealing with acid rinse, and thorough drying.

2.4.3.2 Color

Provide exterior finish color as selected by the Contracting Officer from the manufacturer's standard color chart, closest match to Slate Gray.

2.4.3.3 Physical Properties

Coating must conform to the industry and manufacturer's standard performance criteria as listed by the following certified test reports:

General:	ASTM D5894 and ASTM D4587
Abrasion:	ASTM D968
Adhesion:	ASTM D3359

Chalking:	ASTM D4214
Chemical Pollution:	ASTM D1308
Color Change and Conformity:	ASTM D2244
Creepage:	ASTM D1654
Cyclic Corrosion Test:	ASTM D5894
Flame Spread:	ASTM E84
Flexibility:	ASTM D522/D522M
Formability:	ASTM D522/D522M
Gloss at 60 and 85 degrees:	ASTM D523
Humidity:	ASTM D2247 and ASTM D714
Oxidation:	ASTM D610
Pencil Hardness:	ASTM D3363
Reverse Impact:	ASTM D2794
Salt Spray:	ASTM B117
Weatherometer:	ASTM G152, ASTM G153 and ASTM D822

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FRAMING

Cold-formed metallic-coated steel sheet conforming to ASTM A653/A653M and specified in Section 05 40 00 COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING unless otherwise indicated.

2.5.1 Fasteners for Miscellaneous Metal Framing

Type, material, corrosion resistance, size and sufficient length to penetrate the supporting member a minimum of 1 inch with other properties required to fasten miscellaneous metal framing members to supporting members and substrates in accordance with the wall panel manufacturer's and ASCE 7 requirements.

2.6 FASTENERS

2.6.1 General

2.6.1.1 Hidden Fasteners

Provide corrosion resistant fasteners recommended by the manufacturer to meet the performance requirements and design loads.

2.6.1.2 Screws

Screws to be corrosion resistant coated steel, aluminum and/or 300 - series stainless steel being the type and size recommended by the manufacturer to meet the performance requirements.

2.6.1.3 Rivets

Rivets to be closed-end type, corrosion resistant coated steel, aluminum or stainless steel where watertight connections are required.

2.6.1.4 Attachment Clips

Fabricate clips from steel hot-dipped galvanized in accordance with [ASTM A653/A653M](#), Z275 G 90 or Series 300 stainless steel. Size, shape, thickness and capacity as required meeting the insulation thickness and design load criteria specified.

2.7 ACCESSORIES

2.7.1 General

All accessories must be compatible with the metal wall panels. Sheet metal flashing, trim, metal closure strips, caps and similar metal accessories must not be less than the minimum thickness specified for the wall panels. Exposed metal accessories/finishes to match the panels furnished, except as otherwise indicated. Molded foam rib, ridge and other closure strips must be non-absorbent closed-cell or solid-cell synthetic rubber or pre-molded neoprene to match configuration of the panels.

2.7.2 Rubber Closure Strips

Provide closed-cell, expanded cellular rubber conforming to [ASTM D1056](#) and [ASTM D1667](#); extruded or molded to the configuration of the specified wall panel and in lengths supplied by the wall panel manufacturer.

2.7.3 Metal Closure Strips

Provide factory fabricated aluminum closure strips to be the same color, finish, and profile of the specified wall panel.

2.7.4 Joint Sealants

2.7.4.1 Sealants and Caulking

Provide approved gun type sealants for use in hand- or air-pressure caulking guns at temperatures above [40 degrees F](#) (or frost-free application at temperatures above [10 degrees F](#) with minimum solid content of 85 percent of the total volume. Sealants must dry with a tough, durable surface skin which permit remaining soft and pliable underneath, providing a weather-tight joint. No migratory staining is permitted on painted or unpainted metal, stone, glass, vinyl, or wood.

Prime all joints receiving sealants with a compatible one-component or two-component primer as recommended by the wall panel manufacturer.

2.7.4.2 Shop-Applied

Sealant for shop-applied caulking must be non-curing butyl compliant with

AAMA 800 to ensure the sealant's plasticity at the time of field erection.

2.7.4.3 Field-Applied

Sealant for field-applied caulking must be an approved gun grade, non-sag one component polysulfide or two-component polyurethane with an initial maximum Shore A durometer hardness of 25, and conforming to ASTM C920, Type II. Color to match panel colors.

2.7.4.4 Pressure Sensitive Tape

Provide pressure sensitive tape sealant, 100 percent solid with a release paper backing; permanently elastic, non-sagging, non-toxic and non-staining as approved by the wall panel manufacturer.

2.8 SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

2.8.1 Fabrication

Shop fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim where practicable to comply with recommendations in SMACNA 1793 that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication. Adjust as required based on actual field dimensions. Allow for thermal expansion/contraction between panels and structure. Design panels to withstand structural loads indicated.

Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.

2.9 REPAIR OF FINISH PROTECTION

Repair paint for color finish enameled wall panel must be compatible paint of the same formula and color as the specified finish furnished by the wall panel manufacturer. Provide 5 pints of repair paint matching the specified wall panels.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal wall panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

Examine primary and secondary wall framing to verify that rafters, purlins, angles, channels, and other structural panel support members and anchorages have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer, UL, ASTM, ASCE 7 and as required for the geographical area where construction will take place.

Examine solid wall sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.

Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal wall panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal wall panels before metal wall panel installation.

Install brackets, support system, metal panels, fasteners, trim, sealant and related components in accordance with final erection drawings and approved shop drawings. Erect with concealed fasteners. Provide for necessary structural and thermal movement.

Install on properly prepared substrate. Provide blocking and bracing required for panel system.

Submit to the Contracting Officer a written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of interfering with insulation attachment. Miscellaneous framing installation, including sub-purlins, girts, angles, furring, and other miscellaneous wall panel support members and anchorage must be according to metal wall panel manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 WALL PANEL INSTALLATION

Provide full length metal wall panels, from sill to eave as indicated, unless otherwise indicated or restricted by shipping limitations. Anchor metal wall panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement in accordance with MBMA MBSM.

Erect wall panel system in accordance with the approved erection drawings, the printed instructions and safety precautions of the manufacturer.

Sheets are not to be subjected to overloading, abuse, or undue impact. Bent, chipped, or defective sheets shall not be applied.

Sheets must be erected true and plumb and in exact alignment with the horizontal and vertical edges of the building, securely anchored, and with the indicated eave, and sill.

Work is to allow for thermal movement of the wall panel, movement of the building structure, and to provide permanent freedom from noise due to wind pressure.

Field cutting metal wall panels by torch is not permitted.

3.3.1 Aluminum Wall Panels

Use aluminum or stainless-steel fasteners for exterior surfaces and aluminum or galvanized steel fasteners for interior surfaces.

3.3.2 Anchor Clips

Anchor metal wall panels and other components of the Work securely in place, using manufacturer's approved fasteners according to manufacturers' written instructions.

3.3.3 Metal Protection

Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with

bituminous coating, by applying rubberized-asphalt underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.

3.3.4 Joint Sealers

Install gaskets, joint fillers, and sealants where indicated and where required for weatherproof performance of metal wall panel assemblies. Provide types of gaskets, fillers, and sealants indicated or, if not indicated, types recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.

3.3.4.1 Expansion Joints

Elastomeric, weather-resistant, flexible closure fabrication.

3.3.4.2 Silicone Sealants

Comply with Section 07 92 00 and the following:

- a. Moisture-curing silicone.
- b. Compatible with aluminum and PVDF finishes.
- c. Color: As selected from manufacturers standard or custom line of colors.
- d. Backer Rod: Closed cell foam rod.

3.4 FASTENER INSTALLATION

Anchor metal wall panels and other components of the Work securely in place, using manufacturer's approved fasteners according to manufacturers' written instructions.

3.5 FLASHING, TRIM AND CLOSURE INSTALLATION

3.5.1 General Requirements

Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and [SMACNA 1793](#). Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams to form permanently watertight and weather resistant.

Install sheet metal work is to form weather-tight construction without waves, warps, buckles, fastening stresses or distortion, and allow for expansion and contraction. Cutting, fitting, drilling, and other operations in connection with sheet metal required to accommodate the work of other trades is to be performed by sheet metal mechanics.

3.5.2 Metal Flashing

Install exposed metal flashing at building corners, sills and eaves, junctions between metal siding and walling. Exposed metal flashing must be the same material, color, and finish as the specified metal wall panel.

Fasten flashing at a minimum of [8 inches](#) on center, except where flashing is held in place by the same screws that secure covering sheets.

Flashing is to be furnished in at least [8 foot](#) lengths. Exposed flashing

is to have 1 inch locked and blind-soldered end joints, and expansion joints at intervals of not more than 16 feet.

Exposed flashing and flashing subject to rain penetration to be bedded in the specified joint sealant.

Isolate flashing which is in contact with dissimilar metals by means of the specified asphalt mastic material to prevent electrolytic deterioration.

Form drips to the profile indicated, with the edge folded back 1/2 inch to form a reinforced drip edge.

3.5.3 Closures

Install metal closure strips at open ends of corrugated or ribbed pattern walls, and at intersection of wall and wall unless open ends are concealed with formed eave flashing; and in other required areas.

Install mastic closure strips at intersection of the wall with metal walling; top and bottom of metal siding; heads of wall openings; and in other required locations.

3.6 WORKMANSHIP

Make lines, arises, and angles sharp and true. Free exposed surfaces from visible wave, warp, buckle, and tool marks. Fold back exposed edges neatly to form a 1/2 inch hem on the concealed side. Make sheet metal exposed to the weather watertight with provisions for expansion and contraction.

Make surfaces to receive sheet metal plumb and true, clean, even, smooth, dry, and free of defects and projections which might affect the application. For installation of items not shown in detail or not covered by specifications conform to the applicable requirements of SMACNA 1793. Provide sheet metal flashing in the angles formed where roof decks abut walls, curbs, ventilators, pipes, or other vertical surfaces and wherever indicated and necessary to make the work watertight.

3.7 ACCEPTANCE PROVISIONS

3.7.1 Erection Tolerances

Erect metal wall panels straight and true with plumb vertical lines correctly lapped and secured in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7.2 Leakage Tests

Finished application of metal wall panels are to be subject to inspection and test for leakage by request of the Contracting Officer, Architect/Engineer. Conduct inspection and tests at no cost to the Government.

Inspection and testing is to be made promptly after erection to permit correction of defects and the removal and replacement of defective materials.

3.7.3 Repairs to Finish

Scratches, abrasions, and minor surface defects of finish may be repaired

with the specified repair materials. Finished repaired surfaces must be uniform and free from variations of color and surface texture.

Repaired metal surfaces that are not acceptable to the project requirements and/or Contracting Officer are to be immediately removed and replaced with new material.

3.7.4 Paint-Finish Metal Siding

Paint-finish metal siding will be tested for color stability by the Contracting Officer during the manufacturer's specified guarantee period.

Panels that indicate color changes, fading, or surface degradation, determined by visual examination, must be removed and replaced with new panels at no expense to the Government.

New panels will be subject to the specified tests for an additional year from the date of their installation.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.8.1 Construction Monitoring

Make visual inspections as necessary to ensure compliance with specified requirements. Additionally, verify the following:

- a. Materials comply with the specified requirements.
- b. All materials are properly stored, handled and protected from damage. Damaged materials are removed from the site.
- c. Framing and substrates are in acceptable condition, in compliance with specification, prior to application of wall panels.
- d. Panels are installed without buckles, ripples, or waves and in uniform alignment and modulus.
- e. Side laps are formed, sealed, fastened or seam locked as required.
- f. The proper number, type, and spacing of attachment clips and fasteners are installed.
- g. Installer adheres to specified and detailed application parameters.
- h. Associated flashing and sheet metal are installed in a timely manner in accord with the specified requirements.

3.9 CLEAN-UP AND DISPOSAL

Clean all exposed sheet metal work at completion of installation. Remove metal shavings, filings, nails, bolts, and wires from work area. Remove grease and oil films, excess sealants, handling marks, contamination from steel wool, fittings and drilling debris and scrub the work clean. Exposed metal surfaces must be free of dents, creases, waves, scratch marks, solder

or weld marks, and damage to the finish coating.

Collect and place scrap/waste materials in containers. Promptly dispose of demolished materials. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site; transport demolished materials from government property and legally dispose of them.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 07 60 00

FLASHING AND SHEET METAL

05/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A480/A480M (2017) Standard Specification for General Requirements for Flat-Rolled Stainless and Heat-Resisting Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip

ASTM B209 (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION (SMACNA)

SMACNA 1793 (2012) Architectural Sheet Metal Manual, 7th Edition

1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Finished sheet metal assemblies must form a weathertight enclosure without waves, warps, buckles, fastening stresses or distortion, while allowing for expansion and contraction without damage to the system. The sheet metal installer is responsible for cutting, fitting, drilling, and other operations in connection with sheet metal modifications required to accommodate the work of other trades. Coordinate installation of sheet metal items used in conjunction with roofing with roofing work to permit continuous, uninterrupted roofing operations.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Sheet Metal Items; G

Drip Edges; G

Recycled Content; S

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Quality Control Plan; G

1.4 MISCELLANEOUS REQUIREMENTS

1.4.1 Product Data

Indicate thicknesses, dimensions, fastenings, anchoring methods, expansion joints, and other provisions necessary for thermal expansion and contraction. Scaled manufacturer's catalog data may be submitted for factory fabricated items.

1.5 DELIVERY, HANDLING, AND STORAGE

Package and protect materials during shipment. Uncrate and inspect materials for damage, dampness, and wet-storage stains upon delivery to the job site. Remove from the site and replace damaged materials that cannot be restored to like-new condition. Handle sheet metal items to avoid damage to surfaces, edges, and ends. Store materials in dry, weather-tight, ventilated areas until installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 RECYCLED CONTENT

Provide products with recycled content. Provide data for each product with recycled content, identifying percentage of recycled content.

2.2 MATERIALS

Do not use lead, lead-coated metal, or galvanized steel. Use any metal listed by [SMACNA 1793](#) for a particular item, unless otherwise indicated. Provide materials, thicknesses, and configurations in accordance with [SMACNA 1793](#) for each material. Different items need not be of the same metal, except that contact between dissimilar metals must be avoided.

Furnish [sheet metal](#) items in [8 to 10 foot](#) lengths. Single pieces less than [8 feet](#) long may be used to connect to factory-fabricated inside and outside corners, and at ends of runs. Factory fabricate corner pieces with minimum [12 inch](#) legs. Provide accessories and other items essential to complete the sheet metal installation. Provide accessories made of the same or compatible materials as the items to which they are applied. Fabricate sheet metal items of the materials specified below and to the gage, thickness, or weight shown in Table I at the end of this section. Provide sheet metal items with mill finish unless specified otherwise. Where more than one material is listed for a particular item in Table I, each is acceptable and may be used, except as follows:

2.2.1 Stainless Steel

Provide in accordance with [ASTM A480/A480M](#), Type 302 or 304, 2D Finish, fully annealed, dead-soft temper.

2.2.2 Aluminum Alloy Sheet

Provide in accordance with [ASTM B209](#) anodized color form alloy, and temper appropriate for use. Provide material not less than [0.065-in](#) in thickness.

2.2.3 Finishes

Provide exposed exterior sheet metal and aluminum with a baked on, factory applied color coating of polyvinylidene fluoride (PVF2) or approved equal fluorocarbon coating. Dry film thickness of coatings must be 0.8 to 1.3 mils. Color to be selected from manufacturer's full range of color choices. Field applications of color coatings are prohibited and will be rejected.

2.2.4 Fasteners

Use the same metal as, or a metal compatible with the item fastened. Use stainless steel fasteners.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

3.1.1 Metal Drip Edges

Provide a metal drip edge, designed to allow water run-off to drip free of underlying construction, at eaves and rakes prior to the application of roofing shingles. Apply directly on the wood deck at the eaves and over the underlay along the rakes. Extend back from the edge of the deck not more than 3 inches and secure with compatible nails spaced not more than 10 inches on center along upper edge.

3.2 CLEANING

Clean exposed sheet metal work at completion of installation. Remove grease and oil films, handling marks, contamination from steel wool, fittings and drilling debris, and scrub-clean. Free the exposed metal surfaces of dents, creases, waves, scratch marks, and solder or weld marks.

3.3 REPAIRS TO FINISH

Scratches, abrasions, and minor surface defects of finish may be repaired in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions and as approved. Repair damaged surfaces caused by scratches, blemishes, and variations of color and surface texture. Replace items which cannot be repaired.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Establish and maintain a Quality Control Plan for sheet metal used in conjunction with roofing to assure compliance of the installed sheet metalwork with the contract requirements. Remove work that is not in compliance with the contract and replace or correct. Include quality control, but not be limited to, the following:

- a. Observation of environmental conditions; number and skill level of sheet metal workers; condition of substrate.
- b. Verification that specified material is provided and installed.
- c. Inspection of sheet metalwork, for proper size(s) and thickness(es), fastening and joining, and proper installation.

3.4.1 Procedure

Submit for approval prior to start of work. Include a checklist of points

to be observed. Document the actual quality control observations and inspections. Furnish a copy of the documentation to the Contracting Officer at the end of each day.

TABLE I. SHEET METAL WEIGHTS, THICKNESSES, AND GAGES		
Sheet Metal Items	Aluminum, inch	Stainless Steel, inch
Sheets, smooth	.050	.018
Edge strip	.050	.025

-- End of Section --

SECTION 07 84 00

FIRESTOPPING
05/10

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

Furnish and install tested and listed firestopping systems, combination of materials, or devices to form an effective barrier against the spread of flame, smoke and gases, and maintain the integrity of fire resistance rated walls, partitions, floors, and ceiling-floor assemblies, including through-penetrations and construction joints and gaps.

- a. Through-penetrations include the annular space around pipes, tubes, conduit, wires, cables and vents.
- b. Construction joints include those used to accommodate expansion, contraction, wind, or seismic movement; firestopping material shall not interfere with the required movement of the joint.
- c. Gaps requiring firestopping include gaps between the curtain wall and the floor slab and between the top of the fire-rated walls and the roof or floor deck above and at the intersection of shaft assemblies and adjoining fire resistance rated assemblies.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM E119	(2018) Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials
ASTM E1399/E1399M	(1997; R 2017) Standard Test Method for Cyclic Movement and Measuring the Minimum and Maximum Joint Widths of Architectural Joint Systems
ASTM E1966	(2015) Fire-Resistive Joint Systems
ASTM E2174	(2014b) Standard Practice for On-Site Inspection of Installed Fire Stops
ASTM E2307	(2015a) Standard Test Method for Determining Fire Resistance of Perimeter Fire Barrier Systems Using Intermediate-Scale, Multi-story Test Apparatus
ASTM E2393	(2010a) Standard Practice for On-Site Inspection of Installed Fire Resistive

Joint Systems and Perimeter Fire Barriers

ASTM E699 (2009) Standard Practice for Evaluation of Agencies Involved in Testing, Quality Assurance, and Evaluating of Building Components

ASTM E814 (2013a; R 2017) Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Penetration Firestop Systems

ASTM E84 (2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

FM GLOBAL (FM)

FM 4991 (2013) Approval of Firestop Contractors

FM APP GUIDE (updated on-line) Approval Guide
<http://www.approvalguide.com/>

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC IBC (2018) International Building Code

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 1479 (2015) Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Firestops

UL 2079 (2004; Reprint Dec 2014) Tests for Fire Resistance of Building Joint Systems

UL 723 (2018) UL Standard for Safety Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

UL Fire Resistance (2014) Fire Resistance Directory

1.3 SEQUENCING

Coordinate the specified work with other trades. Apply firestopping materials, at penetrations of pipes and ducts, prior to insulating, unless insulation meets requirements specified for firestopping. Apply firestopping materials. at building joints and construction gaps, prior to completion of enclosing walls or assemblies. Cast-in-place firestop devices shall be located and installed in place before concrete placement. Pipe, conduit or cable bundles shall be installed through cast-in-place device after concrete placement but before area is concealed or made inaccessible. Firestop material shall be inspected and approved prior to final completion and enclosing of any assemblies that may conceal installed firestop.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING.

Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Firestopping System; G

SD-03 Product Data

Firestopping Materials; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Inspection; G

SD-07 Certificates

Inspector Qualifications

Firestopping Materials

Installer Qualifications; G

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 Installer

Engage an experienced Installer who is:

- a. FM Research approved in accordance with FM 4991, operating as a UL Certified Firestop Contractor, or
- b. Certified, licensed, or otherwise qualified by the firestopping manufacturer as having the necessary staff, training, and a minimum of 3 years experience in the installation of manufacturer's products in accordance with specified requirements. Submit documentation of this experience. A manufacturer's willingness to sell its firestopping products to the Contractor or to an installer engaged by the Contractor does not in itself confer installer qualifications on the buyer. The Installer shall have been trained by a direct representative of the manufacturer (not distributor or agent) in the proper selection and installation procedures. The installer shall obtain from the manufacturer and submit written certification of training, and retain proof of certification for duration of firestop installation.

1.5.2 Inspector Qualifications

The inspector shall meet the criteria contained in ASTM E699 for agencies involved in quality assurance and shall have a minimum of two years experience in construction field inspections of firestopping systems, products, and assemblies. The inspector shall be completely independent of, and divested from, the installer, the manufacturer, and the supplier of any material or item being inspected. The inspector shall not be a competitor of the installer, the contractor, the manufacturer, or supplier of any material or item being inspected. Include in the qualifications submittal a notarized statement assuring compliance with the requirements stated herein.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver materials in the original unopened packages or containers showing name of the manufacturer and the brand name. Store materials off the ground, protected from damage and exposure to elements and temperatures in accordance with manufacturer requirements. Remove damaged or deteriorated materials from the site. Use materials within their indicated shelf life.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FIRESTOPPING SYSTEM

Submit detail drawings including manufacturer's descriptive data, typical details conforming to **UL Fire Resistance** or other details certified by another nationally recognized testing laboratory, installation instructions or UL listing details for a firestopping assembly in lieu of fire-test data or report. For those firestop applications for which no UL tested system is available through a manufacturer, a manufacturer's engineering judgment, derived from similar UL system designs or other tests, shall be submitted for review and approval prior to installation. Submittal must indicate the firestopping material to be provided for each type of application. When more than a total of 5 penetrations and/or construction joints are to receive firestopping, provide drawings that indicate location, "F" "T" and "L" ratings, and type of application.

Also, submit a written report indicating locations of and types of penetrations and types of firestopping used at each location; record type by UL list printed numbers.

2.2 FIRESTOPPING MATERIALS

Provide firestopping materials, supplied from a single domestic manufacturer, consisting of commercially manufactured, asbestos-free, nontoxic products **FM APP GUIDE** approved, or UL listed, for use with applicable construction and penetrating items, complying with the following minimum requirements:

2.2.1 Fire Hazard Classification

Material shall have a flame spread of 25 or less, and a smoke developed rating of 50 or less, when tested in accordance with **ASTM E84** or **UL 723**. Material shall be an approved firestopping material as listed in **UL Fire Resistance** or by a nationally recognized testing laboratory.

2.2.2 Toxicity

Material shall be nontoxic and carcinogen free to humans at all stages of application or during fire conditions and shall not contain hazardous chemicals or require harmful chemicals to clean material or equipment.

2.2.3 Fire Resistance Rating

Firestop systems shall be **UL Fire Resistance** listed or **FM APP GUIDE** approved with "F" rating at least equal to fire-rating of fire wall or floor in which penetrated openings are to be protected. Where required, firestop systems shall also have "T" rating at least equal to the fire-rated floor in which the openings are to be protected.

2.2.3.1 Through-Penetrations

Firestopping materials for through-penetrations, as described in paragraph SUMMARY, shall provide "F", "T" and "L" fire resistance ratings in accordance with [ASTM E814](#) or [UL 1479](#). Fire resistance ratings shall be as follows:

2.2.3.1.1 Penetrations of Fire Resistance Rated Walls and Partitions

F Rating = Rating of wall or partition being penetrated.

2.2.3.1.2 Penetrations of Fire Resistance Rated Floors, Floor-Ceiling Assemblies and the Ceiling Membrane of Roof-Ceiling Assemblies

F Rating = 1 hour, T Rating = 1 hour. Where the penetrating item is outside of a wall cavity the F rating must be equal to the fire resistance rating of the floor penetrated, and the T rating shall be in accordance with the requirements of [ICC IBC](#).

2.2.3.1.3 Penetrations of Fire and Smoke Resistance Rated Walls, Floors, Floor-Ceiling Assemblies, and the ceiling membrane of Roof-Ceiling Assemblies

F Rating = 1 hour, T Rating = 1 hour and L Rating = <10 cfm/sf Where L rating is required.

2.2.3.2 Construction Joints and Gaps

Fire resistance ratings of construction joints, as described in paragraph SUMMARY, and gaps such as those between floor slabs and curtain walls shall be the same as the construction in which they occur. Construction joints and gaps shall be provided with firestopping materials and systems that have been tested in accordance with [ASTM E119](#), [ASTM E1966](#) or [UL 2079](#) to meet the required fire resistance rating. Curtain wall joints shall be provided with firestopping materials and systems that have been tested in accordance with [ASTM E2307](#) to meet the required fire resistance rating. Systems installed at construction joints shall meet the cycling requirements of [ASTM E1399/E1399M](#) or [UL 2079](#). All joints at the intersection of the top of a fire resistance rated wall and the underside of a fire-rated floor, floor ceiling, or roof ceiling assembly shall provide a minimum class II movement capability.

2.2.4 Material Certification

Submit certificates attesting that firestopping material complies with the specified requirements. For all intumescent firestop materials used in through penetration systems, manufacturer shall provide certification of compliance with [UL 1479](#).

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

Areas to receive firestopping must be free of dirt, grease, oil, or loose materials which may affect the fitting or fire resistance of the firestopping system. For cast-in-place firestop devices, formwork or metal deck to receive device prior to concrete placement must be sound and capable of supporting device. Prepare surfaces as recommended by the manufacturer.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Completely fill void spaces with firestopping material regardless of geometric configuration, subject to tolerance established by the manufacturer. Firestopping systems for filling floor voids 4 inches or more in any direction must be capable of supporting the same load as the floor is designed to support or be protected by a permanent barrier to prevent loading or traffic in the firestopped area. Install firestopping in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Provide tested and listed firestop systems in the following locations, except in floor slabs on grade:

- a. Penetrations of duct, conduit, tubing, cable and pipe through floors and through fire-resistance rated walls, partitions, and ceiling-floor assemblies.
- b. Penetrations of vertical shafts such as pipe chases, elevator shafts, and utility chutes.
- c. Gaps at the intersection of floor slabs and curtain walls, including inside of hollow curtain walls at the floor slab.
- d. Gaps at perimeter of fire-resistance rated walls and partitions, such as between the top of the walls and the bottom of roof decks.
- e. Construction joints in floors and fire rated walls and partitions.
- f. Other locations where required to maintain fire resistance rating of the construction.

3.2.1 Insulated Pipes and Ducts

Thermal insulation shall be cut and removed where pipes or ducts pass through firestopping, unless insulation meets requirements specified for firestopping. Replace thermal insulation with a material having equal thermal insulating and firestopping characteristics.

3.2.2 Fire Dampers

Install and firestop fire dampers in accordance with Section 23 00 00 AIR SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION, AND EXHAUST SYSTEM. Firestop installed with fire damper must be tested and approved for use in fire damper system. Firestop installed with fire damper must be tested and approved for use in fire damper system.

3.2.3 Data and Communication Cabling

Cabling for data and communication applications shall be sealed with re-enterable firestopping products.

3.2.3.1 Re-Enterable Devices

Firestopping devices shall be pre-manufactured modular devices, containing built-in self-sealing intumescent inserts. Firestopping devices shall allow for cable moves, additions or changes without the need to remove or replace any firestop materials. Devices must be capable of maintaining the fire resistance rating of the penetrated membrane at 0 percent to 100 percent visual fill of penetrants; while maintaining "L" rating of <10 cfm/sf measured at ambient temperature and 400 degrees F at 0 percent to

100 percent visual fill.

3.2.3.2 Re-Sealable Products

Provide firestopping pre-manufactured modular products, containing self-sealing intumescent inserts. Firestopping products shall allow for cable moves, additions or changes. Devices shall be capable of maintaining the fire resistance rating of the penetrated membrane at 0 percent to 100 percent visual fill of penetrants.

3.3 INSPECTION

For Navy projects, install one of each type of penetration and have it inspected and accepted by the NAVFAC Division, Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Fire Protection Engineer prior to the installation of the remainder of the penetrations. At this inspection, the manufacturer's technical representative of the firestopping material shall be present. For all projects, the remainder of the firestopped areas shall not be covered or enclosed until inspection is complete and approved by the Contracting Officer. The inspector must inspect the applications initially to ensure adequate preparations (clean surfaces suitable for application, etc.) and periodically during the work to assure that the completed work has been accomplished according to the manufacturer's written instructions and the specified requirements. Submit written reports indicating locations of and types of penetrations and types of firestopping used at each location; type shall be recorded by UL listed printed numbers.

3.3.1 Inspection Standards

Inspect all firestopping in accordance with ASTM E2393 and ASTM E2174 for firestop inspection, and document inspection results to be submitted.

3.3.2 Inspection Reports

Submit inspection report stating that firestopping work has been inspected and found to be applied according to the manufacturer's recommendations and the specified requirements.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 07 92 00

JOINT SEALANTS

08/16

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C1193	(2013) Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants
ASTM C1311	(2014) Standard Specification for Solvent Release Agents
ASTM C1521	(2013) Standard Practice for Evaluating Adhesion of Installed Weatherproofing Sealant Joints
ASTM C509	(2006; R 2015) Elastomeric Cellular Preformed Gasket and Sealing Material
ASTM C734	(2015) Low-Temperature Flexibility of Latex Sealants After Artificial Weathering
ASTM C919	(2012; R 2017) Standard Practice for Use of Sealants in Acoustical Applications
ASTM C920	(2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
ASTM D1056	(2014) Standard Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials - Sponge or Expanded Rubber
ASTM D1667	(2017) Standard Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials - Poly (Vinyl Chloride) Foam (Closed-Cell)
ASTM D217	(2017) Standard Test Methods for Cone Penetration of Lubricating Grease
ASTM D2452	(2015) Standard Test Method for Extrudability of Oil- and Resin-Base Caulking Compounds
ASTM D2453	(2015) Standard Test Method for Shrinkage and Tenacity of Oil- and Resin-Base Caulking Compounds
ASTM E84	(2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building

Materials

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350 (2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources using Environmental Chambers

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168 (2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program For Chemical Emissions For Building Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Sealants; G

Primers; G

Bond Breakers; G

Backstops; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Field Adhesion; G

SD-07 Certificates

Indoor Air Quality For Interior Sealants; S

Indoor Air Quality For Interior Floor Joint Sealants; S

Indoor Air Quality For Interior Acoustical Sealants; S

Indoor Air Quality For Interior Caulking; S

1.3 PRODUCT DATA

Include storage requirements, shelf life, curing time, instructions for

mixing and application, and accessories. Provide manufacturer's Safety Data Sheets (SDS) for each solvent, primer and sealant material proposed.

1.4 CERTIFICATIONS

1.4.1 Indoor Air Quality Certifications

Submit required indoor air quality certifications in one submittal package.

1.4.1.1 Adhesives and Sealants

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by [UL 2818](#) (Greenguard) Gold, [SCS](#) Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party program that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body.. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited herein.

1.5 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

Apply sealant when the ambient temperature is between [40 and 90 degrees F](#).

1.6 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Deliver materials to the jobsite in unopened manufacturers' sealed shipping containers, with brand name, date of manufacture, color, and material designation clearly marked thereon. Label elastomeric sealant containers to identify type, class, grade, and use. Handle and store materials in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions. Prevent exposure to foreign materials or subjection to sustained temperatures exceeding [90 degrees F](#) or lower than [0 degrees F](#). Keep materials and containers closed and separated from absorptive materials such as wood and insulation.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.7.1 Compatibility with Substrate

Verify that each sealant is compatible for use with each joint substrate in accordance with sealant manufacturer's printed recommendations for each application.

1.7.2 Joint Tolerance

Provide joint tolerances in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.

1.7.3 Mock-Up

Provide a mock-up of each type of sealant using materials, colors, and techniques approved for use on the project. Approved mock-ups may be incorporated into the Work.

1.7.4 Adhesion

Provide in accordance with [ASTM C1193](#) or [ASTM C1521](#).

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SEALANTS

Provide sealant products that have been tested, found suitable, and documented as such by the manufacturer for the particular substrates to which they will be applied.

In areas with ambient temperatures that exceed 110 degrees F, do not use polybutene, bituminous, acrylic-latex, polyvinyl acetate latex sealants, polychloroprene (neoprene), polyvinyl chloride (PVC), and polyurethane foams, and neoprene, PVC, and styrene butadiene rubber extruded seals and closure strips due to these materials having maximum recommended surface temperature ranges from 130 to 180 degrees F.

2.1.1 Interior Sealants

Provide ASTM C920, Type S or M, Grade NS, Class 12.5, Use NT. Provide sealant products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) meeting either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of SCAQMD Rule 1168. Provide certification or validation of indoor air quality for interior sealants. Location(s) and color(s) of sealant for the following. Note, color "as selected" refers to manufacturer's full range of color options.

LOCATION	COLOR
a. Small voids between walls or partitions and adjacent lockers, casework, shelving, door frames, built-in or surface mounted equipment and fixtures, and similar items.	As selected
b. Perimeter of frames at doors, windows, and access panels which adjoin exposed interior concrete and masonry surfaces.	As selected
c. Joints of interior masonry walls and partitions which adjoin columns, pilasters, concrete walls, and exterior walls unless otherwise detailed.	As selected
d. Joints between edge members for acoustical tile and adjoining vertical surfaces.	As selected
e. Interior locations, not otherwise indicated or specified, where small voids exist between materials specified to be painted.	As selected
f. Joints between bathtubs and ceramic tile; joints between shower receptors and ceramic tile; joints formed where non-planar tile surfaces meet.	As selected
g. Joints formed between tile floors and tile base cove; joints between tile and dissimilar materials; joints occurring where substrates change.	As selected

LOCATION	COLOR
h. Behind escutcheon plates at valve pipe penetrations and showerheads in showers.	As selected

2.1.2 Exterior Sealants

For joints in vertical surfaces, provide **ASTM C920**, Type S or M, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT. For joints in horizontal surfaces, provide **ASTM C920**, Type S or M, Grade P, Class 25, Use T. Provide location(s) and color(s) of sealant as follows. Note, color "as selected" refers to manufacturer's full range of color options:

LOCATION	COLOR
a. Joints and recesses formed where frames and subsills of windows, doors, louvers, and vents adjoin masonry, concrete, or metal frames. Use sealant at both exterior and interior surfaces of exterior wall penetrations.	Match adjacent surface color
b. Joints between new and existing exterior masonry walls.	As selected
c. Masonry joints where shelf angles occur.	As selected
d. Joints in wash surfaces of stonework.	As selected
e. Expansion and control joints.	As selected
f. Interior face of expansion joints in exterior concrete or masonry walls where metal expansion joint covers are not required.	As selected
g. Voids where items pass through exterior walls.	As selected
h. Metal reglets, where flashing is inserted into masonry joints, and where flashing is penetrated by coping dowels.	As selected
i. Metal-to-metal joints where sealant is indicated or specified.	As selected
j. Joints between ends of gravel stops, fasciae, copings, and adjacent walls.	As selected

2.1.1.3 Floor Joint Sealants

ASTM C920, Type S or M, Grade P, Class 25, Use T. Provide sealant products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) meeting either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of SCAQMD Rule 1168. Provide certification or validation of indoor air quality for interior floor joint sealants. Provide location(s) and color(s) of sealant as follows. Note, color "as selected" refers to manufacturer's full range of color options:

LOCATION	COLOR
a. Seats of metal thresholds for exterior doors.	Gray
b. Control and expansion joints in floors, slabs, ceramic tile, and walkways.	As selected

2.1.1.4 Acoustical Sealants

Rubber or polymer based acoustical sealant in accordance with ASTM C919 to have a flame spread of 25 or less and a smoke developed rating of 50 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Provide non-staining acoustical sealant with a consistency of 250 to 310 when tested in accordance with ASTM D217. Acoustical sealant must remain flexible and adhesive after 500 hours of accelerated weathering as specified in ASTM C734. Provide sealant products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) meeting either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of SCAQMD Rule 1168. Provide certification or validation of indoor air quality for interior acoustical sealants.

2.1.1.5 Preformed Sealants

Provide preformed sealants of polybutylene or isoprene-butylene based pressure sensitive weather resistant tape or bead sealants capable of sealing out moisture, air and dust when installed as recommended by the manufacturer. At temperatures from minus 30 to plus 160 degrees F, sealants must be non-bleeding and have no loss of adhesion.

2.1.5.1 Tape

Tape sealant: Provide cross section dimensions of 0.555 inch by 0.125 inch.

2.1.5.2 Bead

Bead sealant: Provide cross section dimensions of .625 inch by .625 inch.

2.1.5.3 Foam Strip

Provide foam strip of polyurethane foam with cross section dimensions of 1 inch by 1 inch. Provide foam strip capable of sealing out moisture, air, and dust when installed and compressed in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions. Service temperature must be minus 40 to plus 275

degrees F. Furnish untreated strips with adhesive to hold them in place. Do not allow adhesive to stain or bleed onto adjacent finishes. Saturate treated strips with butylene waterproofing or impregnate with asphalt.

2.2 PRIMERS

Non-staining, quick drying type and consistency as recommended by the sealant manufacturer for the particular application. Provide primers for interior applications that meet the indoor air quality requirements of the paragraph SEALANTS above.

2.3 BOND BREAKERS

Type and consistency as recommended by the sealant manufacturer to prevent adhesion of the sealant to the backing or to the bottom of the joint. Provide bond breakers for interior applications that meet the indoor air quality requirements of the paragraph SEALANTS above.

2.4 BACKSTOPS

Provide glass fiber roving, neoprene, butyl, polyurethane, or polyethylene foams free from oil or other staining elements as recommended by sealant manufacturer. Provide 25 to 33 percent oversized backing for closed cell and 40 to 50 percent oversized backing for open cell material, unless otherwise indicated. Provide backstop material that is compatible with sealant. Do not use oakum or other types of absorptive materials as backstops.

2.4.1 Rubber

Provide in accordance with ASTM D1056, Type 2, closed cell, Class A, Grade 2, round cross section for cellular rubber sponge backing.

2.4.2 PVC

Provide in accordance with ASTM D1667, Grade VO 12, open-cell foam, round cross section for polyvinyl chloride (PVC) backing.

2.4.3 Synthetic Rubber

Provide in accordance with ASTM C509, Option I, Type I for synthetic rubber backing.

2.4.4 Neoprene

Provide in accordance with ASTM D1056, closed cell expanded neoprene cord Type 2, Class C, Grade 2C2 for neoprene backing.

2.4.5 Butyl Rubber Based

Provide in accordance with ASTM C1311, from a single component, with solvent release. color as selected from manufacturer's full range of color choices.

2.4.6 Silicone Rubber Base

Provide in accordance with ASTM C920, from a single component, with solvent release, Non-sag, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25. Color as selected from manufacturer's full range of color choices.

2.5 CAULKING

For interior use and only where there is little or no anticipated joint movement. Provide in accordance with [ASTM D2452](#) and [ASTM D2453](#), Type S, for oil and resin-based caulking. Provide products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) meeting either emissions requirements of [CDPH SECTION 01350](#) (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of [SCAQMD Rule 1168](#). Provide certification or validation of [indoor air quality for interior caulking](#).

2.6 CLEANING SOLVENTS

Provide type(s) recommended by the sealant manufacturer and in accordance with environmental requirements herein. Protect adjacent aluminum and bronze surfaces from solvents. Provide solvents for interior applications that meet the indoor air quality requirements of the paragraph SEALANTS above.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Perform a field adhesion test in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and [ASTM C1193](#), Method A or ASTM C1521, Method A, Tail Procedure. Remove sealants that fail adhesion testing; clean substrates, reapply sealants, and re-test. Test sealants adjacent to failed sealants. Submit [field adhesion](#) test report indicating tests, locations, dates, results, and remedial actions taken.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

Prepare surfaces according to manufacturer's printed installation instructions. Clean surfaces from dirt, frost, moisture, grease, oil, wax, lacquer, paint, or other foreign matter that would destroy or impair adhesion. Remove oil and grease with solvent; thoroughly remove solvents prior to sealant installation. Wipe surfaces dry with clean cloths. When resealing an existing joint, remove existing caulk or sealant prior to applying new sealant. For surface types not listed below, provide in accordance with sealant manufacturer's printed instructions for each specific surface.

3.2.1 Steel Surfaces

Remove loose mill scale by sandblasting or, if sandblasting is impractical or would damage finished work, scraping and wire brushing. Remove protective coatings by sandblasting or using a residue free solvent. Remove resulting debris and solvent residue prior to sealant installation.

3.2.2 Aluminum or Bronze Surfaces

Remove temporary protective coatings from surfaces that will be in contact with sealant. When masking tape is used as a protective coating, remove tape and any residual adhesive prior to sealant application. For removing protective coatings and final cleaning, use non-staining solvents recommended by the manufacturer of the item(s) containing aluminum or bronze surfaces.

3.2.3 Concrete and Masonry Surfaces

Where surfaces have been treated with curing compounds, oil, or other such materials, remove materials by sandblasting or wire brushing. Remove laitance, efflorescence and loose mortar from the joint cavity. Remove resulting debris prior to sealant installation.

3.2.4 Wood Surfaces

Ensure wood surfaces that will be in contact with sealants are free of splinters, sawdust and other loose particles.

3.3 SEALANT PREPARATION

Do not add liquids, solvents, or powders to sealants. Mix multicomponent elastomeric sealants in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.

3.4 APPLICATION

3.4.1 Joint Width-To-Depth Ratios

Acceptable Ratios:

<u>JOINT WIDTH</u>	<u>JOINT DEPTH</u>	
	Minimum	Maximum
For metal, glass, or other nonporous surfaces:		
1/4 inch (minimum)	1/4 inch	1/4 inch
over 1/4 inch	1/2 of width	Equal to width
For wood, concrete, masonry, stone:		
1/4 inch (minimum)	1/4 inch	1/4 inch
over 1/4 inch to 1/2 inch	1/4 inch	Equal to width
over 1/2 inch to 1 inch	1/2 inch	5/8 inch
Over 1 inch	prohibited	

Unacceptable Ratios: Where joints of acceptable width-to-depth ratios have not been provided, clean out joints to acceptable depths and grind or cut to acceptable widths without damage to the adjoining work. Grinding is prohibited at metal surfaces.

3.4.2 Unacceptable Sealant Use

Do not install sealants in lieu of other required building enclosure weatherproofing components such as flashing, drainage components, and joint closure accessories, or to close gaps between walls, floors, roofs, windows, and doors, that exceed acceptable installation tolerances. Remove sealants that have been used in an unacceptable manner and correct building enclosure deficiencies to comply with contract documents requirements.

3.4.3 Masking Tape

Place masking tape on the finished surface on one or both sides of joint cavities to protect adjacent finished surfaces from primer or sealant smears. Remove masking tape within 10 minutes of joint filling and tooling.

3.4.4 Backstops

Provide backstops dry and free of tears or holes. Tightly pack the back or bottom of joint cavities with backstop material to provide joints in specified depths. Provide backstops where indicated and where backstops are not indicated but joint cavities exceed the acceptable maximum depths specified in JOINT WIDTH-TO-DEPTH RATIOS Table.

3.4.5 Primer

Clean out loose particles from joints immediately prior to application of. Apply primer to joints in concrete masonry units, wood, and other porous surfaces in accordance with sealant manufacturer's printed instructions. Do not apply primer to exposed finished surfaces.

3.4.6 Bond Breaker

Provide bond breakers to surfaces not intended to bond in accordance with, sealant manufacturer's printed instructions for each type of surface and sealant combination specified.

3.4.7 Sealants

Provide sealants compatible with the material(s) to which they are applied. Do not use a sealant that has exceeded its shelf life or has jelled and cannot be discharged in a continuous flow from the sealant gun. Apply sealants in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions with a gun having a nozzle that fits the joint width. Work sealant into joints so as to fill the joints solidly without air pockets. Tool sealant after application to ensure adhesion. Apply sealant uniformly smooth and free of wrinkles. Upon completion of sealant application, roughen partially filled or unfilled joints, apply additional sealant, and tool smooth as specified. Apply sealer over sealants in accordance with the sealant manufacturer's printed instructions.

3.5 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

3.5.1 Protection

Protect areas adjacent to joints from sealant smears. Masking tape may be used for this purpose if removed 5 to 10 minutes after the joint is filled and no residual tape marks remain.

3.5.2 Final Cleaning

Upon completion of sealant application, remove remaining smears and stains and leave the work in a clean and neat condition.

- a. Masonry and Other Porous Surfaces: Immediately remove fresh sealant that has been smeared on adjacent masonry, rub clean with a solvent, and remove solvent residue, in accordance with sealant manufacturer's

printed instructions. Allow excess sealant to cure for 24 hour then remove by wire brushing or sanding. Remove resulting debris.

- b. Metal and Other Non-Porous Surfaces: Remove excess sealant with a solvent moistened cloth. Remove solvent residue in accordance with solvent manufacturer's printed instructions.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 08 11 13

STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

02/10

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.1/D1.1M (2015; Errata 1 2015; Errata 2 2016)
Structural Welding Code - Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C578 (2018) Standard Specification for Rigid,
Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation

ASTM C591 (2017) Standard Specification for Unfaced
Preformed Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate
Thermal Insulation

ASTM C612 (2014) Mineral Fiber Block and Board
Thermal Insulation

ASTM D2863 (2017a) Standard Test Method for Measuring
the Minimum Oxygen Concentration to
Support Candle-Like Combustion of Plastics
(Oxygen Index)

ASTM E1300 (2016) Standard Practice for Determining
Load Resistance of Glass in Buildings

ASTM F2248 (2012) Standard Practice for Specifying an
Equivalent 3-Second Duration Design
Loading for Blast Resistant Glazing
Fabricated with Laminated Glass

BUILDERS HARDWARE MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (BHMA)

ANSI/BHMA A156.115 (2016) Hardware Preparation in Steel Doors
and Steel Frames

STEEL DOOR INSTITUTE (SDI/DOOR)

SDI/DOOR 111 (2009) Recommended Selection and Usage
Guide for Standard Steel Doors, Frames and
Accessories

SDI/DOOR 113 (2001; R2006) Standard Practice for
Determining the Steady State Thermal
Transmittance of Steel Door and Frame
Assemblies

SDI/DOOR A250.11	(2001) Recommended Erection Instructions for Steel Frames
SDI/DOOR A250.3	(2007; R 2011) Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Factory Applied Finish Painted Steel Surfaces for Steel Doors and Frames
SDI/DOOR A250.4	(2011) Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Physical Endurance for Steel Doors and Hardware Reinforcing
SDI/DOOR A250.6	(2003; R2009) Recommended Practice for Hardware Reinforcing on Standard Steel Doors and Frames
SDI/DOOR A250.8	(2003; R2008) Recommended Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Doors; G

Frames; G

Accessories

Weatherstripping

Schedule of Doors; G

Schedule of Frames; G

Submit door and frame locations.

SD-03 Product Data

Doors; G

Frames; G

Weatherstripping

SD-04 Samples

Factory-applied enamel finish; G

Where colors are not indicated, submit manufacturer's standard colors and patterns for selection.

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver doors, frames, and accessories undamaged and with protective wrappings or packaging. Strap knock-down frames in bundles. Store doors and frames on platforms under cover in clean, dry, ventilated, and accessible locations, with 1/4 inch airspace between doors. Remove damp or wet packaging immediately and wipe affected surfaces dry. Replace damaged materials with new.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STANDARD STEEL DOORS

SDI/DOOR A250.8, except as specified otherwise. Prepare doors to receive door hardware as specified in Section 08 71 00. Provide exterior doors with top edge closed flush and sealed to prevent water intrusion. Provide doors at 1-3/4 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated. Provide door material that uses a minimum of 25 percent recycled content. Provide exterior glazing in accordance with ASTM F2248 and ASTM E1300.

2.1.1 Classification - Level, Performance, Model

2.1.1.1 Extra Heavy Duty Doors

SDI/DOOR A250.8, Level 3, physical performance Level A, Model 2 with core construction as required by the manufacturer for interior doors, of size(s) and design(s) indicated. Where vertical stiffener cores are required, the space between the stiffeners must be filled with mineral board insulation. Provide Level 3 where indicated.

2.1.1.2 Maximum Duty Doors

SDI/DOOR A250.8, Level 4, physical performance Level A, Model 2 with core construction as required by the manufacturer for exterior doors, of size(s) and design(s) indicated. Where vertical stiffener cores are required, the space between the stiffeners must be filled with mineral board insulation. Provide Level 4 where indicated.

2.2 INSULATED STEEL DOOR SYSTEMS

At the option of the Contractor, insulated steel doors and frames may be provided in lieu of Level 1 standard steel doors and frames. Provide insulated steel doors in the door size(s), design, and material as specified for standard steel doors. Provide insulated steel doors with a core of polyurethane foam; face sheets, edges, and frames of galvanized steel not lighter than 23 gage, 16 gage, and 16 gage respectively; magnetic weatherstripping; nonremovable-pin hinges; thermal-break aluminum threshold; and vinyl door bottom. Provide to doors and frames a phosphate treatment, rust-inhibitive primer, and baked acrylic enamel finish. Test doors in accordance with SDI/DOOR A250.4 and meet the requirements for Level C. Prepare doors to receive specified hardware. Provide doors 1-3/4 inch thick. Provide insulated steel doors and frames where shown.

2.3 SOUND RATED STEEL DOORS

Provide sound rated doors with a Sound Transmission Class (STC) as indicated on the drawings.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

2.5 INSULATION CORES

Provide insulating cores of the type specified, and provide an apparent U-factor of .48 in accordance with SDI/DOOR 113 and conforming to:

- a. Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Foam: ASTM C591, Type I or II, foamed-in-place or in board form, with oxygen index of not less than 22 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM D2863; or
- b. Rigid Polystyrene Foam Board: ASTM C578, Type I or II; or
- c. Mineral board: ASTM C612, Type I.

2.6 STANDARD STEEL FRAMES

SDI/DOOR A250.8, Level 3, except as otherwise specified. Form frames to sizes and shapes indicated, with welded corners or knock-down field-assembled corners. Provide steel frames for doors, and cased openings, unless otherwise indicated. Provide frame product that uses a minimum of 25 percent recycled content.

2.6.1 Welded Frames

Continuously weld frame faces at corner joints. Mechanically interlock or continuously weld stops and rabbets. Grind welds smooth.

Weld frames in accordance with the recommended practice of the Structural Welding Code Sections 1 through 6, AWS D1.1/D1.1M and in accordance with the practice specified by the producer of the metal being welded.

2.6.2 Stops and Beads

Form stops and beads from 20 gage steel. Provide for glazed and other openings in standard steel frames. Secure beads to frames with oval-head, countersunk Phillips self-tapping sheet metal screws or concealed clips and fasteners. Space fasteners approximately 12 to 16 inch on center. Miter molded shapes at corners. Butt or miter square or rectangular beads at corners.

2.6.3 Cased Openings

Fabricate frames for cased openings of same material, gage, and assembly as specified for metal door frames, except omit door stops and preparation for hardware.

2.6.4 Anchors

Provide anchors to secure the frame to adjoining construction. Provide steel anchors, zinc-coated or painted with rust-inhibitive paint, not lighter than 18 gage.

2.6.4.1 Wall Anchors

Provide at least three anchors for each jamb. For frames which are more than 7.5 feet in height, provide one additional anchor for each jamb for each additional 2.5 feet or fraction thereof.

- a. Masonry: Provide anchors of corrugated or perforated steel straps or 3/16 inch diameter steel wire, adjustable or T-shaped;
- b. Stud partitions: Weld or otherwise securely fasten anchors to backs of frames. Design anchors to be fastened to closed steel studs with sheet metal screws, and to open steel studs by wiring or welding;
- c. Completed openings: Secure frames to previously placed concrete or masonry with expansion bolts in accordance with SDI/DOOR 111; and
- d. Solid plaster partitions: Secure anchors solidly to back of frames and tie into the lath. Provide adjustable top strut anchors on each side of frame for fastening to structural members or ceiling construction above. Provide size and type of strut anchors as recommended by the frame manufacturer.

2.6.4.2 Floor Anchors

Provide floor anchors drilled for 3/8 inch anchor bolts at bottom of each jamb member. Where floor fill occurs, terminate bottom of frames at the indicated finished floor levels and support by adjustable extension clips resting on and anchored to the structural slabs.

2.7 WEATHERSTRIPPING

As specified in Section 08 71 00 DOOR HARDWARE.

2.8 HARDWARE PREPARATION

Provide minimum hardware reinforcing gages as specified in SDI/DOOR A250.6. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive finish hardware. Prepare doors and frames for hardware in accordance with the applicable requirements of SDI/DOOR A250.8 and SDI/DOOR A250.6. For additional requirements refer to ANSI/BHMA A156.115. Drill and tap for surface-applied hardware at the project site. Build additional reinforcing for surface-applied hardware into the door at the factory. Locate hardware in accordance with the requirements of SDI/DOOR A250.8, as applicable. Punch door frames, with the exception of frames that will have weatherstripping or soundproof gasketing, to receive a minimum of two rubber or vinyl door silencers on lock side of single doors and one silencer for each leaf at heads of double doors. Set lock strikes out to provide clearance for silencers.

2.9 FINISHES

2.9.1 Factory-Primed Finish

Thoroughly clean all surfaces of doors and frames then chemically treat and factory prime with a rust inhibiting coating as specified in SDI/DOOR A250.8, or paintable A25 galvanized steel without primer. Where coating is removed by welding, apply touchup of factory primer.

2.9.2 Factory-Applied Enamel Finish

Provide coatings that meet test procedures and acceptance criteria in accordance with SDI/DOOR A250.3. After factory priming, apply two coats of low-gloss enamel to exposed surfaces. Separately bake or oven dry each coat. Drying time and temperature requirements must be in accordance with

the coating manufacturer's recommendations. Provide finish coat color(s) as indicated to match approved color sample(s).

2.10 FABRICATION AND WORKMANSHIP

Provide finished doors and frames that are strong and rigid, neat in appearance, and free from defects, waves, scratches, cuts, dents, ridges, holes, warp, and buckle. Provide molded members that are clean cut, straight, and true, with joints coped or mitered, well formed, and in true alignment. Dress exposed welded and soldered joints smooth. Design door frame sections for use with the wall construction indicated. Corner joints must be well formed and in true alignment. Conceal fastenings where practicable. Frames for use in solid plaster partitions must be welded construction. On wraparound frames for masonry partitions, provide a throat opening $\frac{1}{8}$ inch larger than the actual masonry thickness. Design other frames in exposed masonry walls or partitions to allow sufficient space between the inside back of trim and masonry to receive caulking compound.

2.11 PROVISIONS FOR GLAZING

Materials are specified in Section 08 81 00, GLAZING.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

3.1.1 Frames

Set frames in accordance with SDI/DOOR A250.11. Plumb, align, and brace securely until permanent anchors are set. Anchor bottoms of frames with expansion bolts or powder-actuated fasteners. Build in or secure wall anchors to adjoining construction. Where frames require ceiling struts or overhead bracing, anchor frames to the struts or bracing. Backfill frames with mortar. Coat inside of frames with corrosion-inhibiting bituminous material. For frames in exterior walls, ensure that stops are filled with rigid insulation before grout is placed.

3.1.2 Doors

Hang doors in accordance with clearances specified in SDI/DOOR A250.8. After erection and glazing, clean and adjust hardware.

3.2 PROTECTION

Protect doors and frames from damage. Repair damaged doors and frames prior to completion and acceptance of the project or replace with new, as directed. Wire brush rusted frames until rust is removed. Clean thoroughly. Apply an all-over coat of rust-inhibitive paint of the same type used for shop coat.

3.3 CLEANING

Upon completion, clean exposed surfaces of doors and frames thoroughly. Remove mastic smears and other unsightly marks.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 08 14 00

WOOD DOORS
08/16

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN FOREST FOUNDATION (AFF)

ATFS STANDARDS (2015) American Tree Farm System Standards of Sustainability 2015-2020

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM E90 (2009) Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements

CSA GROUP (CSA)

CSA Z809-08 (R2013) Sustainable Forest Management

FOREST STEWARDSHIP COUNCIL (FSC)

FSC STD 01 001 (2015) Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 105 (2016; TIA 16-1) Standard for Smoke Door Assemblies and Other Opening Protectives

NFPA 80 (2016; TIA 16-1) Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives

PROGRAMME FOR ENDORSEMENT OF FOREST CERTIFICATION (PEFC)

PEFC ST 2002:2013 (2015) PEFC International Standard Chain of Custody of Forest Based Products Requirements

SUSTAINABLE FOREST INITIATIVE (SFI)

SFI 2015-2019 (2015) Standards, Rules for Label Use, Procedures and Guidance

WINDOW AND DOOR MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (WDMA)

ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A (2013) Interior Architectural Wood Flush Doors

ANSI/WDMA I.S.6A

(2013) Interior Architectural Stile and
Rail Doors

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Doors; G

Submit drawings or catalog data showing each type of door unit; include descriptive data of head and jamb weatherstripping with installation instructions. Indicate within drawings and data the door types and construction, sizes, and thickness.

SD-03 Product Data

Doors; G

Accessories

Water-resistant Sealer

Sound Transmission Class Rating; G

SD-04 Samples

Doors

Prior to the delivery of wood doors, submit a sample section of each type of door which shows the stile, rail, veneer, finish, and core construction.

Door Finish Colors; G

Submit a minimum of three color selection samples, minimum 3 by 5 inches in size representing wood stain for selection by the Contracting Officer.

SD-07 Certificates

Certificates of Grade

1.3 CERTIFICATIONS

1.3.1 Certified Wood Grades

Provide certificates of grade from the grading agency on acoustical doors and fire doors.

1.3.2 Certified Sustainably Harvested Wood

Provide wood certified as sustainably harvested by FSC STD 01 001,

ATFS STANDARDS, CSA Z809-08, SFI 2015-2019, or other third party program certified by PEFC ST 2002:2013. Provide a letter of Certification of Sustainably Harvested Wood signed by the wood supplier. Identify certifying organization and their third party program name and indicate compliance with chain-of-custody program requirements. Submit sustainable wood certification data; identify each certified product on a line item basis. Submit copies of invoices bearing certification numbers.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver doors to the site in an undamaged condition and protect against damage and dampness. Stack doors flat under cover. Support on blocking, a minimum of 4 inch thick, located at each end and at the midpoint of the door. Store doors in a well-ventilated building so that they will not be exposed to excessive moisture, heat, dryness, direct sunlight, or extreme changes of temperature and humidity. Replace defective or damaged doors with new ones.

1.5 WARRANTY

Warrant doors free of defects as set forth in the door manufacturer's standard door warranty.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 DOORS

Provide doors of the types, sizes, and designs indicated free of urea-formaldehyde resins.

2.1.1 Stile and Rail Doors

Premium grade Ponderosa Pine doors or premium stile and rail doors conforming to ANSI/WDMA I.S.6A. Furnish laminate panels in not less than three ply thickness. Provide flat panels with a minimum finished panel thickness of 1/2 inch and 3/4 inch thickness for raised panels. Provide certified sustainably harvested stile and rail wood doors if available within region and cost effective.

2.1.2 Flush Doors

Conform to ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A for flush doors. Provide hollow core doors with lock blocks and 1 inch minimum thickness hinge stile. Hardwood stile edge bands of doors receives a natural finish, compatible with face veneer. Provide mill option for stile edge of doors scheduled to be painted. No visible finger joints will be accepted in stile edge bands. When used, locate finger-joints under hardware. Provide certified sustainably harvested flush wood doors if available within region and cost effective.

2.1.2.1 Interior Flush Doors

Provide staved lumber core, Type II flush doors conforming to ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A with faces of select premium white birch. Hardwood veneers must be plain sliced. Products must contain no added urea-formaldehyde resins.

2.1.3 Acoustical Doors

ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A, solid core, constructed to provide Sound Transmission

Class rating of 35 when tested in accordance with ASTM E90.

2.1.4 Prehung Doors

Frames for prehung interior doors to be for clear finish, with 3 piece adjustable jamb units. Provide doors complete with frame, hinges, and prepared to receive finish hardware.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

2.2.1 Door Light Openings

Provide glazed openings with the manufacturer's standard wood moldings. Provide moldings for doors to receive natural finish of the same wood species and color as the wood face veneers. Provide moldings on the exterior doors with sloped surfaces. Lip type moldings for flush doors.

2.2.2 Additional Hardware Reinforcement

Provide the minimum lock blocks to secure the specified hardware. The measurement of top, bottom, and intermediate rail blocks are a minimum 125 mm 5 inch by full core width. Comply with the manufacturer's labeling requirements for reinforcement blocking, but not mineral material similar to the core.

2.3 FABRICATION

2.3.1 Marking

Stamp each door with a brand, stamp, or other identifying mark indicating quality and construction of the door.

2.3.2 Quality and Construction

Identify the standard on which the construction of the door was based, identify the standard under which preservative treatment was made, and identify doors having a Type I glue bond.

2.3.3 Preservative Treatment

Treat doors scheduled for restrooms, janitor closets and other possible wet locations including exterior doors with a water-repellent preservative treatment and so marketed at the manufacturer's plant.

2.3.4 Adhesives and Bonds

ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A. Use Type I bond for exterior doors and Type II bond for interior doors. Provide a nonstaining adhesive on doors with a natural finish.

2.3.5 Prefitting

Provide factory prefinished and factory prefitted doors for the specified hardware, door frame and door-swing indicated. Machine and size doors at the factory by the door manufacturer in accordance with the standards under which the doors are produced and manufactured. The work includes sizing, beveling edges, mortising, and drilling for hardware and providing necessary beaded openings for glass and louvers. Provide the door manufacturer with the necessary hardware samples, and frame and hardware

schedules to coordinate the work.

2.3.6 Finishes

2.3.6.1 Field Painting

Factory prime or seal doors, and field paint.

2.3.6.2 Color

Door finish colors listed on drawings.

2.3.7 Water-Resistant Sealer

Provide manufacturer's standard water-resistant sealer compatible with the specified finish.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

Meet or exceed the following minimum performance criteria of stiles of "B" and "C" label fire doors utilizing standard mortise leaf hinges:

- a. Cycle-slam: Standard Duty Doors: 250,000 cycles with no loose hinge screws or other visible signs of failure when tested in accordance with the requirements of ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A. Heavy Duty Doors: 500,000 cycles with no loose hinge screws or other visible signs of failure when tested in accordance with the requirements of ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A. Extra Heavy Duty Doors: 1,000,000 cycles with no loose hinge screws or other visible signs of failure when tested in accordance with the requirements of ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A.
- b. Hinge loading resistance: Averages of ten test samples not less than Standard Duty doors: 400 pounds force. Heavy Duty doors: 475 pounds force. Extra Heavy Duty doors: 550 pounds force when tested for direct screw withdrawal in accordance with ANSI/WDMA I.S.6A using a No. 12, 1-1/4 inch long, steel, fully threaded wood screw. Drill 5/32 inch pilot hole, use 1-1/2 inch opening around screw for bearing surface, and engage screw full, except for last 1/8 inch. Do not use a steel plate to reinforce screw area.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Do not install building construction materials that show visual evidence of biological growth.

Before installation, seal top and bottom edges of doors with the approved water-resistant sealer. Seal cuts made on the job immediately after cutting using approved water-resistant sealer. Fit, trim, and hang doors with a 1/16 inch minimum, 1/8 inch maximum clearance at sides and top, and a 3/16 inch minimum, 1/4 inch maximum clearance over thresholds. Provide 3/8 inch minimum, 7/16 inch maximum clearance at bottom where no threshold occurs. Bevel edges of doors at the rate of 1/8 inch in 2 inch. Door warp must not exceed 1/4 inch when measured in accordance with ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A.

3.1.1 Fire and Smoke Doors

Install fire doors in accordance with NFPA 80. Install smoke doors in

accordance with NFPA 105. Do not paint over labels.

3.1.2 Prehung Doors

Install doors in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and details. Provide fasteners for stops and casing trim within 3 inch of each end and spaced 11 inch on center maximum. Provide side and head jambs joined together with a dado or notch of 3/16 inch minimum depth.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 08 31 00

ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS

05/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.1/D1.1M (2015; Errata 1 2015; Errata 2 2016)
Structural Welding Code - Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A1008/A1008M (2016) Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable

ASTM A36/A36M (2014) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel

ASTM A653/A653M (2017) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM A666 (2015) Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate and Flat Bar

ASTM E119 (2018) Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials

ASTM E1332 (2016) Standard Classification for Rating Outdoor-Indoor Sound Attenuation

ASTM E413 (2016) Classification for Rating Sound Insulation

ASTM E90 (2009) Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements

MASTER PAINTERS INSTITUTE (MPI)

MPI 79 (2012) Primer, Alkyd, Anti-Corrosive for Metal

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 252	(2017) Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies
NFPA 288	(2017) Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Horizontal Fire Door Assemblies Installed in Horizontal Fire Resistance-Rated Assemblies
NFPA 80	(2016; TIA 16-1) Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 10B	(2008; Reprint Feb 2015) Fire Tests of Door Assemblies
UL 263	(2011; Reprint Mar 2018) UL Standard for Safety Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Access Doors And Panels; G

SD-03 Product Data

Access Doors And Panels; G

Hardware Including Locks and Keys; G

Accessories; G

Recycled Content; S

SD-04 Samples

Finishes; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Fire-rating(s) of Assemblies; G

Acoustical Ratings of Assemblies; G

1.3 MISCELLANEOUS REQUIREMENTS

For access doors and panels provide the following:

1.3.1 Shop Drawings

For field assembled access doors and panels, provide plans, elevations, sections, and details for each type of access door and panel assembly. Indicate frame, surface and edge construction, materials, and accessories. Indicate types of finished surfaces and details for panel edge conditions. Provide a door schedule with a unique number for each access door and panel, specific location in the project, location of hinges and hardware for each door. Indicate [acoustical ratings of assemblies](#) as sound transmission class (STC) ratings and [fire-rating\(s\) of assemblies](#).

1.3.2 Product Data

For shop assembled access doors and panels, provide literature indicating sizes, types, frame and edge construction, finishes, [hardware](#), accessories such as gaskets, seals and weatherstripping, and location of each door and panel in the project. Indicate [acoustical ratings of assemblies and fire-ratings of assemblies](#). Provide details of adjoining work for each condition indicated.

1.3.3 Finish Samples

Submit two color charts from manufacturer's standard color and finish options for each type of frame and panel assembly finish indicated.

1.3.4 Test Reports

Provide test reports for acoustical assemblies when tested in accordance with [ASTM E90](#) and classified in accordance with [ASTM E413](#) and [ASTM E1332](#). Provide test reports for fire-rated assemblies when tested in accordance with [NFPA 252](#) or [UL 10B](#) for fire-rated access door assemblies installed vertically and [NFPA 288](#) for fire-rated access door assemblies installed horizontally.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

1.4.1 Structural Requirements

Provide floor access assemblies to support live loads indicated for floors. Deflection must not exceed 1/180 of span.

1.4.2 Acoustical Requirements

Provide access panels with a minimum sound transmission class (STC) [to match adjacent assembly](#). Provide gasketing in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations.

1.4.3 Fire-Rating Requirements

Provide access panels with a minimum fire-rating [to match adjacent assembly](#).

1.4.4 Insulated Access Panels

Provide panels in a thickness as necessary to achieve a minimum R-value [to match adjacent assembly](#). Provide gasketing as necessary for an airtight installation.

1.4.5 Access Panels for Wet Areas

Provide panel assemblies that will be located in wet areas with corrosion resistant finishes and hardware and water resistant gasketing.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

Protect from corrosion, deformation, and other types of damage. Store items in an enclosed area free from contact with soil and weather. Remove and replace damaged items with new items.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 RECYCLED CONTENT

Provide products with recycled content. Provide data for each product with recycled content, identifying percentage of recycled content.

2.2 MATERIALS

2.2.1 Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars

Provide in accordance with [ASTM A36/A36M](#).

2.2.2 Sheet Steel

Provide cold rolled steel sheet substrate in accordance with [ASTM A1008/A1008M](#), Commercial Steel (CS), exposed.

2.2.3 Stainless Steel

Provide in accordance with [ASTM A666](#), type 302 or 304.

2.2.4 Metallic Coated Steel Sheet

Provide in accordance with [ASTM A653/A653M](#), Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum G60 (Z180) or A60 (ZF180) metallic coating.

2.2.5 Hardware

Provide automatic closing devices. Provide latch releases operable from insides of doors. Provide anchors in accordance with applicable fire test parameters.

2.2.6 Hinges

Provide concealed spring hinges, 175 degrees of opening, with non-removable hinge pins. Provide hinges of same steel as door and frame or in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations. If providing non-continuous hinges, provide in numbers required to maintain alignment of door panel with frame. Provide coatings as necessary to permanently protect dissimilar metals from contact with one another; see Part 3 herein for more information.

2.2.7 Locks

Unless otherwise indicated, provide flush tamper proof screws (spanner head locks) for access panels in locations requiring such security.

2.2.8 Accessories

Provide anchors in size, number and location on four sides to secure access door to substrate. Provide anchors in types as recommended by manufacturer's written installation instructions for each substrate indicated. Provide shims, bushings, clips, gaskets, and other devices as necessary for a complete installation.

2.3 FABRICATION

2.3.1 Thickness, Size, Edges

Fabricate frames for access doors of steel not lighter than 16 gage with welded joints and anchorage for securing to adjacent construction. Provide doors a minimum of 24 by 24 inches and of not lighter than 16 gage steel, with stiffened edges and welded attachments. Provide with eased (lightly rounded) edges, without burrs, snags or sharpness and exposed welds ground smooth.

2.3.2 Welding

Provide in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

2.4 ACCESS ASSEMBLY TYPES

Unless indicated otherwise, provide flush-face steel access doors and panels with steel frames and flanges.

2.4.1 Recessed Doors

Provide recessed access doors with gypsum wallboard bead flanges. Depth of door panel recess must accommodate the installed thickness of the finish material of the wall assembly for a flush finished condition of the wall and the access panel face. Reinforce panel and frame to prevent sagging.

2.4.2 Fire-rated Doors

2.4.2.1 Door Construction

Provide ceiling access door construction in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263. Provide wall access doors in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10B.

2.4.2.2 Labels

Provide class B opening according to UL 10B or test by another nationally recognized laboratory, approved by the Contracting Officer. Provide fire-rating as indicated herein, with a maximum temperature rise of 216 degrees F.

2.4.2.3 Door Panel and Frame

Steel sheet, with mineral fiber insulation core, insulated sandwich type construction.

2.4.3 Acoustical Doors

Manufacturer's standard assembly rated in accordance with STC requirements indicated herein. Acoustical insulating materials must have a flame spread rating of no more than 25.

2.4.4 Insulated Doors

Provide access door panels with 25 pounds per square inch density polystyrene with a flame spread rating of no more than 25.

Provide ceiling access panels for terminal air blenders as indicated. Provide pin-tumbler cylinder locks with appropriate cams in lieu of screwdriver-operated latches.

2.5 FINISHES

Provide steel frame and panel surfaces with a shop applied prime coat. Field paint frames and panels to match wall and ceiling surfaces in which they occur. Provide exposed fastenings that approximately match the color and finish of the each material to which fastenings are applied.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

Field verify all measurements prior to fabrication. Verify access door locations and sizes provide required maintenance access to installed building services components. Protect existing construction and completed work from damage during installation.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Install items at locations indicated, in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Include materials and parts as necessary for a complete installation of each item. Conceal fastenings where practicable. Poor matching of holes to fasteners is cause for rejection of the work.

3.3 ACCESS LOCATIONS

Install removable access panels directly below each valve, flow indicator, damper, air splitter or other utility requiring access that is located above ceilings, other than at acoustical panel ceilings, and that would otherwise not be accessible. Install access doors and panels permitting access to service valves, traps, dampers, cleanouts, and other mechanical, electrical and conveyor control items concealed in walls and partitions.

3.4 ACCESS LOCATIONS IN WET AREAS

When possible, avoid locating access panels in wet areas. When such locations cannot be avoided, provide moisture resistant assemblies as indicated in Part I herein.

3.5 RECESSED ACCESS DOORS

Install fire-rated access doors in fire-rated partitions and ceilings in accordance with NFPA 80.

3.6 FIELD PAINTING

Field painting primed access doors in accordance with the requirements of Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

3.7 DISSIMILAR MATERIALS

Where dissimilar metals are in contact, protect surfaces with a coating in accordance with MPI 79 to prevent galvanic or corrosive action.

3.8 ADJUSTMENT

Adjust hardware so that door panel opens freely. Adjust door when closed center door panel in frame.

3.9 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

Do not paint surfaces when damp or exposed to weather, when surface temperature is below 45 degrees F or over 95 degrees F, unless approved by the Contracting Officer.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 08 34 19.10 20

ROLLING SERVICE DOORS
02/12

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A123/A123M	(2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A653/A653M	(2017) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM A780/A780M	(2009; R 2015) Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings
ASTM E84	(2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

DOOR AND ACCESS SYSTEM MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (DASMA)

ANSI/DASMA 108	(2012) Standard Method for Testing Sectional Garage Doors and Rolling Doors: Determination of Structural Performance Under Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA ICS 1	(2000; R 2015) Standard for Industrial Control and Systems: General Requirements
NEMA ICS 2	(2000; R 2005; Errata 2008) Industrial Control and Systems Controllers, Contactors, and Overload Relays Rated 600 V
NEMA ICS 6	(1993; R 2016) Industrial Control and Systems: Enclosures
NEMA MG 1	(2016; SUPP 2016) Motors and Generators

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70	(2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2;

TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6;
TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10;
TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA
17-14; TIA 17-15; TIA 17-16; TIA 17-17)
National Electrical Code

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Rolling service doors; G

Submit drawings for doors showing types, sizes, locations, metal gages, hardware provisions, installation details, and other details of construction. For motor-operated doors include supporting brackets for motors, location, type, and ratings of motors, and safety devices.

SD-03 Product Data

Rolling service doors; G

Motors; G

Controls; G

For electrically operated system, submit wiring diagrams for motor and controls.

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Rolling service doors

Submit manufacturer's currently recommended installation procedures for doors with the shop drawings.

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Rolling service doors, Data Package 2.

Submit in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA. Include wiring diagrams.

1.3 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Protect doors and accessories from damage during delivery, storage, and handling. Clearly mark manufacturer's brand name. Store doors in dry locations with adequate ventilation, free from dust and water, and in such a manner as to permit access for inspection and handling. Handle doors carefully to prevent damage. Remove damaged items that cannot be restored to like-new condition and provide new items.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 ROLLING SERVICE DOORS

Shall be spring counterbalanced, rolling type, and shall be designed for use on exterior openings, as indicated. Doors shall be operated by electric-power with auxiliary hand chain operation. Doors shall be complete with guides, hardware, fastenings, operating mechanisms, and accessories. Doors shall be surface-mounted type with guides at jambs set back a sufficient distance to provide a clear opening when door is in open position. Doors, hardware, and anchors shall be designed to withstand a wind pressure of 75 pounds per square foot of door area in accordance with ANSI/DASMA 108. Sound engineering principles may be used to interpolate or extrapolate test results to door sizes not specifically tested. Exterior doors shall be mounted on interior side of walls.

2.1.1 Operational Cycle Life

All portions of the door, hardware and operating mechanism that is subject to movement, wear or stress fatigue must be designed to operate through a minimum number of 10 cycles per day.

2.2 FABRICATION

2.2.1 Curtains

Shall be formed of interlocking galvanized steel slats of shapes standard with the manufacturer, except that slats for exterior doors shall be flat type. Curtain shall roll up on a barrel supported at head of opening on brackets and be balanced by a torsion spring system in the barrel. Slats shall be of the gage required for the width indicated and the wind pressure specified above. Slats for exterior doors shall be insulated with not less than 11/16 inch thick polyurethane or polyisocyanurate foam insulation. Insulation shall have a maximum flame-spread and smoke-development indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, according to ASTM E84. Interior side of insulation shall be covered with interlocking galvanized steel slats not lighter than the standard thickness with the manufacturer.

2.2.2 Endlocks and Windlocks

The ends of each slat or each alternate slat shall have malleable iron or galvanized steel endlocks of manufacturer's stock design. In addition to endlocks, exterior doors which are more than 16 feet wide or which have a design wind load of more than 20 pounds per square foot, shall have windlocks of manufacturer's standard design. Windlocks shall prevent curtain from leaving guide because of deflection from wind pressure or other forces.

2.2.3 Bottom Bar

The curtain shall have a steel bottom bar consisting of two angles of equal weight, one on each side, or an equivalent extruded aluminum section, fastened to bottom of curtain. Do not use aluminum on doors more than 16 feet wide. In addition, exterior doors shall have a compressible and replaceable rubber, neoprene, or vinyl weather seal attached to bottom bar. Attach a combination compressible seal and reversing safety device for stopping and reversing the travel of the door to the bottom bar of doors that are electric-power operated.

2.2.4 Guides

Steel structural shapes or formed steel shapes fastened to wall with steel shapes not less than $3/16$ inch thick. Guides shall be of sufficient depth or shall incorporate a steel locking bar to retain the curtain in place under the wind pressure specified. Provide continuous vinyl or neoprene weather seals on guides at exterior doors. Securely attach guides to adjoining construction with not less than $3/8$ inch diameter bolts, spaced near each end and not over 30 inches apart.

2.2.5 Barrel

Steel pipe or commercial welded steel tubing of proper diameter and thickness for the size of curtain. Deflection shall not exceed 0.03 inch per foot of span. Close ends of barrel with cast-iron plugs, machined to fit the pipe and either pinned or attached with screws or welded in the spring barrel, except that drive end plug may be steel welded in place. Install within the barrel an oil-tempered, stress relieved, helical, counterbalancing steel spring, capable of producing sufficient torque to assure easy operation of the door curtain from any position. At least 80 percent of the door weight shall be counterbalanced at any position. Spring-tension shall be adjustable without removing the hood.

2.2.6 Brackets

Fabricate of steel plate to support the barrel, curtain, and operator and to form a supporting ring and end closure for the hood. Provide prelubricated, self-aligning ball bearings, shielded or sealed.

2.2.7 Hoods

Steel, not lighter than 0.0209 inch thick 24 gage stainless steel, not lighter than 0.0209 inch thick 24 gauge formed to fit contour of end brackets and reinforced with rolled beads at top and bottom edges. Provide a weather baffle at the lintel or inside the hood of each exterior door.

2.2.8 Locking Device

For each manually operated exterior rolling door provide manufacturer's standard chain- or bar-type locking device on the inside. The locking device shall be of type to receive a padlock with a $5/16$ inch diameter shackle.

2.3 MANUAL OPERATION

2.3.1 Manual Push-Up Operation

Provide lifting handles on both sides of door and counterbalance in a manner to provide easy operation while raising or lowering the curtain by hand. The force required to operate the door shall not exceed 30 pounds. Provide pull-down straps or pole hooks on bottom rail of doors over 7 feet high.

2.4 ELECTRIC OPERATION

2.4.1 Operator Features

Provide operators complete with components and other accessories necessary for proper operation. The operator shall be so designed that the motor may

be removed without disturbing the limit-switch timing and without affecting the emergency auxiliary operators. Make provision for immediate emergency manual operation of door in case of electrical failure. The emergency manual operating mechanism shall be so arranged that it may be put into and out of operation from the floor, and its use shall not affect the timing of the limit switches. Provide an electrical or mechanical device which will disconnect the motor from the operating mechanism when the emergency manual operating mechanism is engaged.

2.4.2 Motors

Shall conform to NEMA MG 1, high-starting torque, reversible type of sufficient horsepower and torque output to move the door in either direction from any position, and produce a door travel speed of not less than two-thirds foot per second or more than one foot per second, without exceeding the rated capacity. Motors shall be suitable for operation on current of the characteristics indicated. Single-phase motors shall not have commutation or more than one starting contact. Motor enclosures shall be the drip-proof type or NEMA TEFC and TENV type. Install motors in approved locations.

2.4.3 Controls

Remote control switches shall be at least 5 feet above the floor line, and all switches shall be located so that the operator will have complete visibility of the door at all times. The control equipment shall conform to NEMA ICS 1 and NEMA ICS 2. Control enclosures shall be NEMA ICS 6, Type 12 or Type 4, for interior locations and Type 4 for exterior locations, except that contactor enclosures may be Type 1. Locate control switches inside the building unless otherwise indicated. Each switch control station shall be of the three-button type, with the buttons marked "OPEN," "CLOSE," and "STOP." The "OPEN" and "STOP" buttons shall be of the type requiring only momentary pressure to operate. The "CLOSE" button shall be of the type either requiring constant pressure to maintain the closing motion of the door or momentary pressure when installed with a monitored entrapment detection device which, upon failure of the device or any component of the control system, cause the door to return to its full open position. When the door is in motion, and the "STOP" button is pressed, the door shall stop and remain in the stop position; from the stop position, the door may then be operated in either direction by the "OPEN" or "CLOSE" buttons. When the door is in motion, and the "CLOSE" button of the constant pressure type is released, the door shall stop and remain in the stop position or reverse to the user set up position; from the stop position, the door may then be operated in either direction by the "OPEN" or "CLOSE" buttons. Pushbuttons shall be full-guarded to prevent accidental operation. Controls shall be adjustable to automatically stop the doors at their fully open and closed positions. Open and closed positions shall be readily adjustable.

2.4.4 Safety Device

Power-operated doors shall have a safety device that will immediately stop and reverse the door in its closing travel upon detecting an obstruction in the door opening or upon failure of the device or any component of the control system and cause the door to return to its user-defined open position. Any momentary door-closing circuit shall be automatically locked out and the door shall be operable manually or with constant pressure controls until the failure or damage has been corrected. Do not use safety device as a limit switch.

2.4.5 Control Power Supply

Shall be provided in power circuits as necessary to reduce the voltage on the control circuits to 120 volts or less (preferably 24 volts). The power supply, whether it incorporates a transformer or a switched mode power supply (SMPS), shall conform to the appropriate UL Standard.

2.4.6 Electrical Work

Electrical components and installation shall conform to **NFPA 70**. The door manufacturer shall furnish manual or automatic control and safety devices, including extra flexible type SO cable and spring-loaded automatic takeup reel or equivalent device, as required for proper operation of the doors. Conduit, wiring, and mounting of controls are specified in Section **26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM**.

2.5 FINISHES

Slats and hoods shall be hot-dip galvanized and shop primed. Prime finish other parts of coiling doors, except faying surfaces.

2.5.1 Primed Finish

Clean surfaces thoroughly, treat to assure maximum paint adherence, and provide a factory dip or spray coat of rust-inhibitive metallic oxide or synthetic resin primer on exposed surfaces.

2.5.2 Galvanized and Shop-Primed Finish

Surfaces specified shall have a zinc coating, a phosphate treatment, and a shop prime coat of rust-inhibitive paint. The galvanized coating shall conform to **ASTM A653/A653M**, coating designation **G90**, for steel sheets, except that hoods located on interior of the building may be **G60**, and **ASTM A123/A123M** for iron and steel products. The weight of coatings for products shall be as designated in Table I of **ASTM A123/A123M** for the thickness of base metal to be coated. The prime coat shall be a type especially developed for materials treated by phosphates and adapted to application by dipping or spraying. Repair damaged zinc-coated surfaces by the materials and methods conforming to **ASTM A780/A780M** and spot prime. At the option of the Contractor, a two-part system including bonderizing, baked-on epoxy primer, and baked-on enamel top coat may be applied to slats and hoods before forming, in lieu of prime coat specified.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Install doors in accordance with approved detail drawings and manufacturer's directions. Locate anchors and inserts for guides, brackets, motors, switches, hardware, and other accessories accurately. Upon completion, doors shall be weathertight and shall be free from warp, twist, or distortion.

3.2 FINAL ADJUSTMENT

Doors shall be lubricated and properly adjusted to operate freely.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 08 34 73

SOUND CONTROL DOOR ASSEMBLIES

02/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.3/D1.3M (2018) Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A1008/A1008M (2016) Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable

ASTM A1011/A1011M (2018a) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and Ultra-High Strength

ASTM A108 (2013) Standard Specification for Steel Bar, Carbon and Alloy, Cold-Finished

ASTM A36/A36M (2014) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel

ASTM A568/A568M (2017a) Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Carbon, Structural, and High-Strength, Low-Alloy, Hot-Rolled and Cold-Rolled, General Requirements for

ASTM C1036 (2016) Standard Specification for Flat Glass

ASTM D1056 (2014) Standard Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials - Sponge or Expanded Rubber

ASTM D6386 (2016) Standard Practice for Preparation of Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coated Iron and Steel Product and Hardware Surfaces for Painting

ASTM E1289 (2008; R 2016) Standard Specification for Reference Specimen for Sound Transmission Loss

ASTM E336	(2016a) Standard Test Method for Measurement of Airborne Sound Insulation in Buildings
ASTM E413	(2016) Classification for Rating Sound Insulation
ASTM E90	(2009) Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements
NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)	
NFPA 101	(2018; TIA 18-1; TIA 18-2; TIA 18-3) Life Safety Code
NFPA 252	(2017) Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies
NFPA 80	(2016; TIA 16-1) Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives
WOODWORK INSTITUTE (WI)	
NAAWS 3.1	(2017; 2018 Errata Edition) North American Architectural Woodwork Standards

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Hollow Metal Sound Retardant Doors; G

Wood Sound Retardant Doors; G

Door Frames; G

SD-03 Product Data

Hollow Metal Sound Retardant Doors; G

Wood Sound Retardant Doors; G

Door Frames; G

Door Hardware; G

Vision Panels; G

Intumescent Seals and Gasketing; G

Thresholds; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Acoustical Tests; G

SD-07 Certificates

Hollow Metal Sound Retardant Doors; G

Wood Sound Retardant Doors; G

Door Frames; G

Intumescent Seals, Gasketing and Door Bottoms

Thresholds; G

1.3 QUALITY CONTROL

Ensure work within this section is designed and furnished by one manufacturer, who has been engaged in the manufacture of Sound Retardant **Wood Swinging Door and Hollow Metal Door** systems for at least five years prior to the start of this work.

Provide acoustic assemblies manufactured by a single source specializing in the production of this type work for a minimum of 5 years.

1.3.1 Compliance and Labeling

1.3.1.1 Category A Positive Pressure Fire Door Construction

Where requirements for positive pressure are met, include for doors all requirements as part of the door construction per Category A guidelines as published by ITS/Warnock-Hersey. Intumescent is not allowed on the frame. Apply smoke gasketing around the perimeter of the frame to meet the "S" smoke rating is permissible in instances where smoke control is required.

1.3.1.2 Category B Positive Pressure Fire Door Construction

Conform all door openings to the applicable portions of **NFPA 101** and **NFPA 252**. Incorporate field applied intumescent materials, applied by a licensed installer according to the manufacturers' instructions. Keep instructions on file. Additional gasketing may be required to meet the 'S' smoke rating. Submit Certificate for **intumescent seals, gasketing and door bottoms**.

1.3.1.3 Labeling

Ensure all positive pressure door assemblies carry the fire label for the complete opening, clearly identifying the:

- a. Manufacturer
- b. Third party testing and certification agency
- c. Fire door rating
- d. Installation limitations

- e. Compatible frame, hardware component ratings
- f. Compatible lite or vision panel component ratings
- g. Required building code information, including temperature and smoke rating

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Ship all doors in the manufacturer's undamaged individual cartons, securely bundled and wrapped with moisture-resistant covers and stored in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions in a dry, clean, and ventilated area.

Deliver and store wood doors in the building following the installation of concrete, terrazzo, plaster, or other wet materials, and only after the building has dried out and has a roof.

Store all materials on planks in a dry location. Store doors and frames vertically with minimum 1 inch airspace between. Store doors on the edge to eliminate any potential damage to the door bottom seal. Cover all material to protect from damage but in a manner to allow proper circulation.

Maintain relative humidity in the building between 30 and 65 percent. Maintain the ambient temperature at 60 degrees F minimum at the time of installation of wood doors.

Perform final adjustment of seals when temperatures and humidity conditions replicate the interior conditions that will exist when the building is occupied.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Provide sound retardant door assemblies of the thickness, width, and height indicated, complete with perimeter seals, seal housings, gasketing, automatic door bottoms, thresholds, door frames, and astragals as required to conform to the specified STC per ASTM E90 and ASTM E1289.

Submit fabrication drawings for Hollow Metal Sound Retardant Doors, Wood Sound Retardant Doors, and Door Frames.

Submit certificates showing conformance with the referenced standards in this section, and manufacturer's catalog data including STC ratings and UL fire rating, where applicable, for the following items: Hollow metal sound retardant doors; wood sound retardant doors; door frames; door hardware; vision panels; intumescent seals and gasketing; and thresholds.

Provide assemblies that are complete with metal frame, wood door(s), sealing system, and Cam-lift hinges (when required). If vision lights are specified for doors, provide metal loose stops and field install glass and glazing when shipped separately.

2.1.1.1 Design Requirements

2.1.1.1.1 Door Design

Provide sound Retardant Wood Swinging Doors that are a 1-3/4-inch thickness construction with sizes as indicated on drawings. No visible seams are permitted on door faces. Provide face gauges, internal sound retardant core and perimeter door edge construction per manufacturer's standard for the specified STC rating. No lead or asbestos is permitted in door construction to achieve STC performance. Provide face veneer species cut and color as selected from manufacturer's full range of available colors and patterns. No lead or asbestos is permitted in door construction to achieve performance requirements.

2.1.1.2 Frame Design

Provide sound Retardant Metal Frames conforming to ASTM A1008/A1008M, not less than 0.0747-inch thick, and free from pitting, scale, stretcher strains, fluting, and surface defects with integral trim and shipped with temporary spreader. Knockdown frames are not acceptable.

Provide frames with 2-inch faces, profiles and dimensions as indicated, with mitered reinforced corners, welded the full depth of frame and trim, with exposed surfaces ground smooth and flush. Close contact edges to hairline joints.

2.1.2 Performance Requirements

2.1.2.1 STC (Sound Transmission Classification) Rating

Provide doors with an STC per the door schedule.

2.2 FABRICATION

Provide doors that are minimum 16 gauge, 1-3/4-inch thick with welded, seamless construction. No visible joints are permitted on the exposed faces or edges. Join door skins at vertical edges by continuous welds, ground and dressed smooth to provide a flush finish. Reinforce top and bottom with 16 gauge continuous inverted steel channels spot welded to both faces. Finish both top and bottom to provide a smooth flush condition. Bevel both vertical edges 1/8-inch in 2-inches.

Clean and sand to smooth finish all doors to remove handling and storage marks, raised grain, minor surface marks and abrasions which are to receive a job site finish.

2.2.1 Hollow Metal Sound Retardant Doors

Conform to ASTM A1008/A1008M for door construction utilizing steel facing sheets. Conform stretcher level flatness to ASTM A568/A568M; not less than 0.0598-inch thick; free from pitting, scale, and surface defects; separated by a core construction designed to meet the required STC; and tested and rated in accordance with ASTM E90.

Provide doors that have flush seamless face sheets and vertical edges, with continuous welded and smooth joints. Provide edges that are flush or rabbeted as required for perimeter seals.

Provide door surfaces that are visually flat and free from warp, waviness,

and other surface irregularities and defects. Maximum allowable warp or twist-can not exceed 1/8-inch when measured with a 7-foot straightedge along the diagonal and not exceed 1/16-inch when measured with a 7-foot straightedge in the width or in any position along the length of the door.

Provide hardware reinforcement that is steel drilled, tapped to template requirements and welded in place. Provide minimum thicknesses as follows:

- a. Butts, 0.1494-inch
- b. Lock strike, 0.1196-inch
- c. Surface applied hardware 0.0747-inch

Provide doors, including sound retardant type, to bear the UL 3/4-hour C label fire rating and the specified STC.

Shop paint exposed door surfaces, including surfaces that are galvanized.

Shop paint concealed exterior door surfaces except galvanized surfaces.

Thoroughly clean all mill scale, rust, oil, grease, dirt, and other foreign materials from surfaces before the application of the shop coat of paint.

After cleaning, provide galvanized surfaces free of paint in accordance with ASTM D6386, Method A, B, C, or D.

Apply to clean prepared dry surfaces one shop coat of rust inhibitive metallic oxide or synthetic resin primer by brush, dipping, or other approved method to provide a continuous minimum dry film thickness (dft) of 0.9 mil.

2.2.2 Wood Sound Retardant Doors

Construct doors with wood veneer facings separated by a core construction designed to meet the required STC. Test, rate, and label in accordance with ASTM E90.

Comply with the NAAWS 3.1, "Guide Specifications and Quality Certification Program," for premium grade constructions and to the requirements specified.

Perform beveling, prefitting, machining, mortising, and routing for hardware, perimeter seals, and door bottom cutouts at the mill.

Furnish premium grade door facings with standard thickness face veneers conforming to NAAWS 3.1, Type 1 for stain and transparent job site-applied finish.

Provide face veneers as follows:

Face Veneer Species:	Remarks
Birch	

Provide the following veneer cut:

Plain Cut

2.2.3 Door Finishing

Conform factory finishing of Sound Retardant Wood Swinging Doors in accordance with AWI Quality Standards. Provide factory finish of a water-base stain and ultraviolet (UV) cured polyurethane sealer to comply with EPA Title 5 guidelines for Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) emissions limitations. Conform finish to meet or exceed performance standards of [NAAWS 3.1](#) catalyzed polyurethane.

2.3 COMPONENTS

2.3.1 Frames

Construct frames for Sound Retardant Wood Swinging Doors from formed sheet steel or structural shapes and bars. Provide sheet steel that is commercial quality, level, cold rolled steel conforming to [ASTM A1008/A1008M](#) or hot rolled, pickled and oiled steel conforming to [ASTM A1011/A1011M](#). Comply steel shapes with [ASTM A36/A36M](#) and steel bars with [ASTM A108](#), Grade 1018.

2.3.2 Hardware Reinforcements

Factory mortise, reinforce, drill and tap frames for all mortise hardware as required by hardware manufacturer's template. Provide necessary reinforcement plates as required for surface mounted hardware; installer to perform all field drilling and tapping. Provide dust cover boxes on all frame mortises. Provide minimum thicknesses as follows:

- a. Butts, [3/16-inch](#)
- b. Lock strike, [0.1196-inch](#)
- c. Surface applied hardware [0.0747-inch](#)

2.3.3 Anchors

Locate frame anchors near the top and bottom of doors and at intermediate points [and 24-inches](#) on center. Provide a minimum of three anchors per jamb.

Provide floor anchor clips at each jamb with [2-inch](#) vertical adjustments on increments not exceeding [1/16-inch](#).

2.3.4 Door Hardware

Provide the following STC related hardware with the door; cam-lift hinges, perimeter seals, door bottoms, thresholds, [and](#) hardware standoff brackets.

Include on Installation drawings a finish hardware schedule for each door and a hollow metal door frame schedule for each door indicating profile, dimensions, hardware reinforcement, and frame anchorage. Also indicate perimeter seals, door-bottom devices and other hardware items that are assembled in the shop.

Refer to Section [08 71 00](#) DOOR HARDWARE for remaining hardware requirements.

2.3.5 Vision Panels

Furnish doors with vision panels complete with glazing. Provide 0.0747-inch steel or wood frames, moldings, and stop to match the door finish, with profile indicated. Assemble with mitered corners and flush joints, and secured with countersunk phillips-head screws.

Provide either a single thickness of acoustical plate glass laminated to an inner face of water-clear plastic or multiple thicknesses of 1/4-inch plate glass, clear or patterned as indicated, and set in glazing gaskets and frames as required to meet the specified STC.

Provide glass to conform to ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 1. Provide acoustical plate glass that has been tested and rated in accordance with ASTM E90, with an STC of not less than 36 and a minimum thickness of 9/32-inch.

2.3.6 Perimeter Intumescent Seals and Gasketing

Provide a closed-cell, expanded cellular rubber Seal material conforming to ASTM D1056, Type S, Grade SBE-42 or SCE-42 for heads, jambs, and door bottoms.

Install seals in formed steel or extruded aluminum shapes designed to receive and hold seals and to provide concealed adjustable attachment to door frames. Provide concealed adjustment screws that are not more than 12-inches on center and provide at least 3/8-inch adjustment.

Provide door bottoms that are assemblies of closed-cell neoprene seals, seal housings, and automatic operating devices, mounted on the doors as indicated. Design devices to seal the spaces between the doors and the finished floors or thresholds when closed and to retract immediately when doors are opened, with a sill clearance of approximately 1/4-inch.

2.3.7 Thresholds

Provide metal thresholds where indicated. Provide thresholds that are extruded aluminum, 6063-T5 alloy, mill finish, not less than 1/8-inch thick, with integral seal grooves formed to the indicated section.

Provide hardwood thresholds where indicated made of clear, all-heartwood, free of streaks, pin or worm holes, uniform in color, free of defects, finish sanded, and ready for job site transparent or paint finish.

2.4 TESTS, INSPECTIONS, AND VERIFICATIONS

2.4.1 Sound Transmission Classification

Provide Test reports prepared by a nationally recognized, independent laboratory for Acoustical Tests, Air Infiltration Tests, Wind Loading Tests, and Water Leakage Tests indicating that the sound transmission classification (STC) of the proposed door, based on tests at 16 third-octave band frequencies from 125 to 4,000 hertz, is no less than the specified STC when tested in accordance with ASTM E90, and that the door tested is hung in substantially the type of wall and frame as indicated and is fully operable with hardware and perimeter seals installed.

2.4.2 Positive Pressure

Provide Test reports, prepared by a nationally recognized, independent laboratory for Positive Pressure Tests, for all fire rated door assemblies, including Intumescent Seals, Gasketing, and Door Bottoms.

2.4.3 Cam Lift Hinges

When required to achieve STC, manufacturer to furnish laboratory test data certifying hinges have been cycled a minimum of 1,000,000 while supporting a minimum door weight of 350 pounds.

2.4.4 Guarantee

Provide written guarantee that each door delivered to the project is equal in construction, sound transmission classification (STC), and positive pressure test rating where applicable, with appropriate labeling and markings, to that of the sample door tested. Clearly state in written guarantee that each door assembly, when installed in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions, has an in-place STC within 3 decibels of the specimen tested. Submit the following test data and Certificates with the written Guarantee:

a. Acoustical Tests

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

Upon receipt of material, thoroughly inspect all frames, doors and accessories. Verify quantities and tag numbers according to the packing list provided. Report all discrepancies, deficiencies and/or damages immediately to Contracting Officer.

Prior to installation check all doors and frames for correct size and swing. Verify that frames are plumb, square and aligned without twist in accordance with tolerances published by NAAMM/HMMA and SDI.

3.1.1 Frame Painting and Cleaning

Clean thoroughly all surfaces of all mill scale, rust, oil, grease, dirt, and other foreign materials before the application of the shop coat of paint.

Apply one shop coat of rust inhibitive metallic oxide or synthetic resin primer applied to clean, dry, and prepared surfaces by brush, dipping, or other approved method to provide a continuous minimum dry film thickness of 0.9 mil.

3.2 INSTALLATION

3.2.1 Frame

Install frames plumb and true with not more than 1/32-inch deviation in vertical alignment in 8 feet. Anchor to the wall in accordance with the printed instructions of the manufacturer. Grout frames solid with mortar in masonry, concrete, and plaster wall construction. Spot grout frames in dry wall partitions with mortar at the jamb anchor clips; fill the space between metal frame and stud partition solidly with fiberglass or mineral

wool insulation.

Field splices may be required after installation because of shipping limitations. Field weld splices by certified welders per manufacturer's instructions and in accordance with [AWS D1.3/D1.3M](#).

3.2.2 Door

Install and adjust all doors, hardware, and seals in accordance with the approved drawings, hardware schedules, and the printed instructions of the door manufacturer.

Install and adjust perimeter seals to provide positive compression contact with the entire sealing surface with no gaps, openings, or breaks. Hinges or hardware which distort or pinch the perimeter seal during operation of the door will be rejected.

Field apply perimeter seal housings with mitered corners and with flush, aligned hairline joints.

Install wood doors and frames in accordance with [NFPA 80](#).

Install components to manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate with [wall assembly](#) wall construction for anchor placement. Set frames plumb, square, level and at correct elevation. Adjust operable parts for correct clearances and function. Install and adjust perimeter and bottom acoustic seals.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Provide third party testing in accordance with [ASTM E336](#). Verify in writing that installed product performs no less than five (5) ASTC or NIC rating points below the specified laboratory STC rating. Examine, adjust, and retest any installation not meeting that criteria until compliance is obtained.

3.3.1 Testing and Performance

Provide assemblies that are identical to those tested at an independent acoustical laboratory qualified under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) by the National Institute for Science and Technology (NIST) in accordance with [ASTM E90](#) and [ASTM E413](#). On test reports include the laboratory name, test report number and date of test.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 08 41 13

ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

08/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ALUMINUM ASSOCIATION (AA)

AA DAF45 (2003; Reaffirmed 2009) Designation System
for Aluminum Finishes

AMERICAN ARCHITECTURAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (AAMA)

AAMA 1503 (2009) Voluntary Test Method for Thermal
Transmittance and Condensation Resistance
of Windows, Doors and Glazed Wall Sections

AAMA 2605 (2017a) Voluntary Specification,
Performance Requirements and Test
Procedures for Superior Performing Organic
Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels

AAMA 501 (2015) Methods of Test for Exterior Walls

AAMA 800 (2016) Voluntary Specifications and Test
Methods for Sealants

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF CIVIL ENGINEERS (ASCE)

ASCE 7 (2017) Minimum Design Loads for Buildings
and Other Structures

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM B221 (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum
and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,
Wire, Profiles, and Tubes

ASTM E1105 (2015) Standard Test Method for Field
Determination of Water Penetration of
Installed Exterior Windows, Skylights,
Doors, and Curtain Walls, by Uniform or
Cyclic Static Air Pressure Difference

ASTM E1424 (1991; R 2016) Standard Test Method for
Determining the Rate of Air Leakage
Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls,
and Doors Under Specified Pressure and
Temperature Differences Across the Specimen

ASTM E1996 (2014a) Standard Specification for

Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors, and Impact Protective Systems Impacted by Windborne Debris in Hurricanes

ASTM E283

(2004; R 2012) Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen

ASTM E330/E330M

(2014) Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Doors, Skylights and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference

ASTM E331

(2000; R 2016) Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference

ASTM E783

(2002; R 2010) Standard Test Method for Field Measurement of Air Leakage Through Installed Exterior Windows and Doors

ASTM F1642/F1642M

(2017) Standard Test Method for Glazing and Glazing Systems Subject to Airblast Loadings

BUILDERS HARDWARE MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (BHMA)

ANSI/BHMA A156.10

(2017) Power Operated Pedestrian Doors

ANSI/BHMA A156.4

(2013) Door Controls - Closers

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC IBC

(2018) International Building Code

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

FS TT-P-645

(Rev C) Primer, Paint, Zinc-Molybdate, Alkyd Type

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 325

(2017) UL Standard for Safety Door, Drapery, Gate, Louver, and Window Operators and Systems

1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

1.2.1 Pre-Installation Meetings

Conduct a meeting before installation begins to verify the project requirements, substrate conditions, manufacturer's installation instructions, and manufacturer's warranty requirements.

Within 30 days of the Contract Award, submit the following for review and approval by the Contracting Officer:

- a. List of product installations
- b. Sample warranty
- c. Finish and color samples
- d. Manufacturer's catalog data

Concurrently submit **certified test reports** showing compliance with specified performance characteristics and **UL 325** for the following:

- a. Wind Load (Resistance) in accordance with **AAMA 501**
- b. Deflection in accordance with **ASTM F1642/F1642M**
- c. Condensation Resistance and Thermal Transmittance Performance Requirements in accordance with **AAMA 1503**
- d. Water Infiltration in accordance with **ASTM E331**
- e. Structural Requirements in accordance with **ASTM F1642/F1642M**
- f. Large Missile Test in accordance with **ASTM E1996**.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section **01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING**. Submit the following in accordance with Section **01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES**:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Sample Warranty; G

List of Product Installations; G

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Installation Drawings; G

Fabrication Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Manufacturer's Catalog Data; G

Finish; G

Recycled Content of Aluminum Material; S

SD-04 Samples

Finish and Color Samples; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Certified Test Reports; G

Deflection

Air Infiltration

Condensation Resistance and Thermal Transmittance

Water Infiltration

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Manufacturer's Instructions

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Manufacturer's Product Warranty

1.4 QUALITY CONTROL

1.4.1 Qualifications

1.4.1.1 Installer Qualifications

Provide documentation of the installer's experience in performing the work specified in this section.

Ensure that the installers are specialized in work similar to that required for this project, and that they are acceptable to product manufacturer.

1.4.1.2 Manufacturer Qualifications

Ensure that manufacturers meet the requirements specified in this section and project drawings.

Ensure that the manufacturer is capable of providing field service representation during construction, approving acceptable installers and approving application methods.

1.4.2 Single-Source Responsibility

When aluminum entrances are part of a building enclosure system, that includes storefront framing, windows, a curtain wall system, and related products, provide building enclosure system products from a single-source manufacturer.

Use a single source manufacturer with sole responsibility for providing design, structural engineering, and custom fabrication for door portal systems and for supplying components, materials, and products. Do not use products provided from numerous sources for assembly at the site. Ensure that the following work items and components are fabricated or supplied by a single source are:

- a. Glazed walls to be constructed around door portals as specified in this Section.
- b. Door operating hardware to be installed on or within door portals as specified in Section 08 71 00 DOOR HARDWARE.

c. Glass as specified in Section 08 81 00 GLAZING.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.5.1 Ordering

To avoid construction delays, comply with the manufacturer's lead-time requirements and instructions for ordering.

1.5.2 Packing, Shipping, Handling and Unloading

Deliver materials in the manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.

1.5.3 Storage and Protection

Store materials in a way that protects them from exposure to harmful weather conditions. Avoid damaging the storefront material and components during handling. Protect storefront material against damage from elements, construction activities, and other hazards before, during, and after storefront installation.

Do not use adhesive papers or sprayed coatings that become firmly bonded when exposed to sunlight. Do not leave coating residue on surfaces.

1.6 PROJECT / SITE CONDITIONS

1.6.1 Field Measurements

Verify actual measurements or openings by taking field measurements before fabrication; record these measurements on shop drawings. To avoid construction delays, coordinate field measurements, and fabrication schedule with construction progress.

1.7 WARRANTY

Provide a written manufacturer's warranty, executed by a company official, warranting against defects in materials and products for 2 years from the date of shipment. Warrant that the door corner construction is for the life of the project. Provide a written installer's warranty, warranting work to be watertight and free from defective materials, defective workmanship, and glass breakage as a result of defective design, and agreeing to replace components that fail within 2 years.

The warranty states the following:

- a. Watertight and airtight system installation is completed within specified tolerances.
- b. The completed installation remains free of rattles, wind whistles and noise caused by thermal movement and wind pressure.
- c. System is structurally sound and free from distortion.
- d. Glass and glazing gaskets will not break or "pop" from frames as a result of design, wind load pressure, movement caused by expansion or contraction, or structural loading.

- e. Glazing sealants and gaskets remain free of abnormal deterioration or dislocation as a result of sunlight, weather, or oxidation.

Provide a written thermal integrity warranty for 5 years from ship date against thermal barrier system failure resulting from the following:

- a. Longitudinal and transverse thermal barrier shrinkage.
- b. Thermal barrier cracking.
- c. Structural failure of the thermal barrier material.
- d. Loss of adhesion or loss of prescribed edge pressure on glazing material, resulting in excessive air and water infiltration.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Provide blast and windborne debris rated aluminum entrances, with glass and glazing, door hardware, and components. At punched window locations, provide blast and windborne debris rated storefront units. Storefront and entrance basis of design system is KAWNEER IR 501UT.

Aluminum entrances include impact resistance entrances; medium stile, 2-3/4 inch vertical face dimension, 5 inch depth, for interior structural silicone glaze, for high-traffic/impact-resistant applications.:

2.1.1 Design Requirements for Aluminum (Entrances and Components)

Provide a door portal system designed to withstand the following loads without breakage, loss, failure of seals, product deterioration, or other defects.

- a. Dead and Live Loads: Determined by ASCE 7 and calculated in accordance with applicable codes.
- b. Seismic Loads: Design and install the system to comply with the seismic requirements for the project location in accordance with Section 1613 of the International Building Code, ICC IBC.
- c. Wind Loads: Design and install the system so that the effects of wind load acting inward and outward normal to the plane of the wall are in accordance with ASTM E330/E330M.
- d. Thermal Loads And Movement:
 - (1) Ambient Temperature Range: 120 degrees F
 - (2) Material Surfaces Range: 180 degrees F
- e. Water and Air Resistance: Provide weatherstripping, exterior gaskets, sealants, and other accessories to resist water and air penetration.
- f. Impact-Protective Systems Provide an impact-protective system in accordance with ASTM E1996.

2.1.1.1 Material Standard

ASTM B221; 6063-T5 alloy and tempered.

Provide door stile and rail face dimensions of the entrance doors as follows:

Vertical Stile	Top Rail	Bottom Rail
2-3/4 inches	2-3/4 inches	6-1/2 inches

Provide major portions of the door members at 0.125 inches nominal in thickness and glazing molding at 0.050 inches thick.

2.1.1.2 Recycled Content

Provide aluminum framed entrances and storefronts that have a minimum of 20 percent recycled content based upon the aluminum billet used in the original material. Provide data indicating percentage of recycled content of aluminum material.

2.1.1.3 Sealants

Provide either ethylene propylene diene monomer (EPDM) elastomeric extrusions or thermoplastic elastomer glazing gaskets. Structural silicone sealant is required.

Internal Sealants: Provide sealants that according to the manufacturer will remain permanently elastic, tacky, non-drying, non-migrating, and weather tight.

2.1.1.4 Thermal Barrier

Use a rigid, structural thermal barrier to separate all exterior aluminum from interior aluminum. For purposes of this specification, a structural thermal barrier is defined as a system that transfers shear during bending and, therefore, promotes composite action between the exterior and interior extrusions. Do not use a nonstructural thermal barrier. Ensure that the thermal barrier provides a structural connection between the two sides of the door.

2.2 FABRICATION

Provide the following information when submitting fabrication drawings for custom fabrications:

- a. Indicate elevations, detailed design, dimensions, member profiles, joint locations, arrangement of units, and member connections.
- b. Show the following items:
 - (1) Details of special shapes.
 - (2) Reinforcing.
 - (3) Anchorage system.
 - (4) Interfacing with building construction.

- (5) Provisions for expansion and contraction.
- (6) Thermal breaks.
- c. Indicate typical glazing details, locations of various types and thickness of glass and internal sealant requirements as recommended by the sealant manufacturer.
- d. Clearly indicate locations of exposed fasteners and joints.
- e. Clearly show where and how the manufacturer's system deviates from Contract drawings and these specifications.

2.2.1 Entrance System Fabrication

Provide door corner construction consisting of mechanical clip fastening, SIGMA deep penetration plug welds and 1 1/8 inch long fillet welds inside and outside all four corners. Provide a hook-in type exterior glazing stop with EPDM glazing gaskets reinforced with non-stretchable cord. Provide an interior glazing stop that is mechanically fastened to the door member and that incorporates a silicone-compatible spacer used with silicone sealant.

Accurately fit and secure joints and corners. Make joints hairline in appearance. Remove burrs and smooth edges. Prepare components with internal reinforcement for door hardware. Arrange fasteners and attachments so that they are concealed from view.

Separate dissimilar metals with protective coating or pre-formed separators to prevent contact and corrosion.

2.2.2 Shop Assembly

Fabricate and assemble units with joints only at the intersection of aluminum members with hairline joints; rigidly secure these units, and seal them in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

2.2.2.1 Welding

Conceal welds on aluminum members in accordance with AWS recommendations or methods recommended by the manufacturer. Members showing welding bloom or discoloration on finish or material distortion will be rejected by the Contacting Officer.

2.2.3 Finish

Before fabrication, clean the units and give them a AA-M-10-C22-A41 clear (natural) anodized finish in accordance with the requirements of the AA DAF45. The finish thickness is A42, 0.7 mil or greater.

- a. Organic Coating (high-performance exterior coating):
 - (1) Comply with requirements of AAMA 2605.
 - (2) Clean surfaces and pretreat them with a conversion coating before applying 0.3 mil dry-film thickness of epoxy or acrylic primer according to the recommendations of the finish coat manufacturer.
 - (3) Apply a finish coat of 70 percent minimum fluoropolymer resin fused to primed surfaces at the temperature recommended by the

manufacturer and at a minimum dry film thickness of 1.0 mil.

(4) Use a 2-, 3-, or 4-coat system as required for the color selected.

2.2.4 Fabrication Tolerance

Fabricate and assemble units with joints only at intersection of aluminum members with hairline joints; rigidly secure these units, and seal them in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Fabricate aluminum entrances in accordance with the entrance manufacturer's prescribed tolerances.

2.2.4.1 Material Cuts

Square to 1/32 inch off square, over largest dimension; proportionate amount of 1/32 inch on the two dimensions.

2.2.4.2 Maximum Offset at Consecutive Members

1/64 inch in alignment between two consecutive members in line, end to end.

2.2.4.3 Maximum Offset at Glazing Pocket Corners

1/64 inch between framing members at glazing pocket corners.

2.2.4.4 Joints

Between adjacent members in same assembly: Joints are hairline and square to the adjacent member.

2.2.4.5 Variation

In squaring diagonals for doors and fabricated assemblies: 1/16 inch.

2.2.4.6 Flatness

For doors and fabricated assemblies: plus/minus 1/16 inch of neutral plane.

2.3 MATERIALS

2.3.1 Sealants

Refer to Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS. Ensure that all sealants conform to AAMA 800.

2.3.2 Glass

Refer to Section 08 81 00 GLAZING.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

2.4.1 Fasteners

Provide stainless steel fasteners in areas where the fasteners are exposed.

Use non-corrosive and compatible fasteners with components being fastened. Do not use exposed fasteners, except where unavoidable for application of hardware.

In areas where fasteners are not exposed, use aluminum, non-magnetic stainless steel, or other materials warranted by the manufacturer.

For exposed locations, provide countersunk Phillips head screws when items with a matching finish are fastened. For concealed locations, provide the manufacturer's standard fasteners.

Provide nuts or washers that have been designed with a means to prevent disengagement; do not deform fastener threads.

2.4.2 Perimeter Anchors

When steel anchors are used, provide insulation between steel material and aluminum material to prevent galvanic action.

2.4.2.1 Inserts and Anchorage Devices

Provide manufacturer's standard formed or fabricated assemblies, steel or aluminum, of shapes, plates, bars, or tubes. Shop-coat steel assemblies after fabrication with an alkyd zinc chromate primer complying with [FS TT-P-645](#).

2.4.3 Standard Entrance Hardware

2.4.3.1 Weatherstripping

Equip meeting stiles on pairs of doors with an adjustable astragal using wool pile with a polymeric fin.

Provide door weatherstripping on a single-acting offset pivot or butt-hung door and frame (single or pairs) consisting of a thermoplastic elastomer weatherstripping on a tubular shape with a semi-rigid polymeric backing.

Provide sill-sweep strips: Provide an EPDM blade gasket sweep strip in an aluminum extrusion applied to the interior exposed surface of the bottom rail with concealed fasteners. (Provide as necessary to meet specified performance tests.)

2.4.3.2 Threshold

Provide an extruded aluminum threshold, one piece per door opening, with ribbed surface.

2.4.3.3 Offset Pivots

Provide the manufacturer's standard top and bottom pivots with one intermediate offset pivot.

2.4.3.4 Panic Device

Provide the manufacturer's recommended standard panic hardware.

2.4.3.5 Closer

Provide a surface closer in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.4](#).

2.4.3.6 Security Lock or Dead Lock

Provide A/R MS 1850A lock with two A/R 1871 cylinder operated flush bolts.

2.4.3.7 Cylinder(s)/Thumb-turn

Provide the manufacturer's recommended standard.

2.4.3.8 Cylinder Guard

Provide the manufacturer's recommended standard.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

3.1.1 Site Verification of Conditions

Verify that the condition of substrate previously installed under other sections is acceptable for product installation in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Verify that openings are sized to receive the storefront system and that the sill plate is level in accordance with the manufacturer's acceptable tolerances.

3.2 PREPARATION

Field-verify dimensions before fabricating components for the door portal assembly.

Coordinate requirements for locations of blockouts for anchorage of door portal columns and other embedded components with Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.

Coordinate the erection of door portal with installation of surrounding glass wall and door assemblies. Ensure that the door portals can provide support and anchorage for assembly components.

Coordinate electrical requirements for automatic door assemblies and electrified door hardware to ensure proper power source, conduit, wiring, and boxes.

3.2.1 Adjacent Surfaces Protection

Protect adjacent work areas and finish surfaces from damage during product installation.

3.2.2 Aluminum Surface Protection

Protect aluminum surfaces from contact with lime, mortar, cement, acids, and other harmful contaminants.

3.3 INSTALLATION

Submit installation drawings for review and approval.

Install the entrance system in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the AAMA storefront and entrance guide specifications

manual. Attach the entrance system to the structure, allowing it to be adjusted to accommodate construction tolerances and other irregularities. Provide alignment attachments and shims to permanently fasten the system to the building structure. Align the assembly so that it is plumb and level, and free of warp and twist. Maintain assembly dimensional tolerances aligning with adjacent work.

Set thresholds in a bed of mastic and secure the thresholds. Protect aluminum members in contact with masonry, steel, concrete, or dissimilar materials using nylon pads or a bituminous coating. Shim and brace the aluminum system before anchoring the system to the structure. Verify that weep holes are open, and the metal joints are sealed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Seal metal-to-metal joints using a sealant recommended by the system manufacturer.

3.3.1 Tolerances

Ensure that tolerances for wall thickness and other cross-sectional dimensions of entrance members are nominal and in compliance with Aluminum Standards and Data, published by the Aluminum Association.

3.3.2 Adjusting

Adjust operating hardware for smooth operation, and as recommended by the manufacturer.

3.3.3 Related Products Installation Requirements

3.3.3.1 Sealants (Perimeter)

Refer to Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.

3.3.3.2 Glass

Refer to Section 08 81 00 GLAZING.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.4.1 Air Infiltration

Test air infiltration in accordance with ASTM E783

Submit certified test reports showing compliance with specified performance characteristics as follows:

- a. For single-acting offset pivot, butt hung, or continuous geared hinge entrances in the closed and locked position, test the specimen in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.10, and ASTM E283 at a pressure differential of 1.57 psf for pairs of doors; ensure that maximum infiltration for a pair of 7 foot by 8 foot entrance doors and frame is 1.2 cfm/square foot.
- b. Ensure the maximum allowable infiltration for a completed storefront system does not exceed 0.06 cfm/square foot when tested in accordance with ASTM E1424 at a differential static pressure of 6.24 psf.

3.4.2 Wind Loads

Provide a completed storefront system capable of withstanding wind pressure

loads, normal to the wall plane indicated, as follows:

a. Exterior Walls

- (1) Positive Pressure: 48 psf (ultimate)
- (2) Negative Pressure: 64 psf (ultimate)

3.4.3 Deflection

Submit certified test reports showing that the maximum allowable deflection in a member when tested in accordance with ASTM E330/E330M with allowable stress is L/175 or 3/4 inches maximum.

3.4.4 Condensation Resistance and Thermal Transmittance

Submit certified test reports showing compliance with specified performance characteristics as follows:

a. U-Value Requirements:

- (1) Perform test in accordance with the AAMA 1503 procedure and on the configuration specified therein.
- (2) Thermal Transmittance ("U" Value) maximum 0.65 (6250) BTU/hr/sf/deg F at 15 mph exterior wind.

b. CRF Class Requirements:

- (1) Perform a test in accordance with AAMA 1503.
- (2) Condensation Resistance Factor Requirements (CRF) minimum.

3.4.5 Water Infiltration

Submit certified test reports showing that the system is designed to provide no uncontrolled water when tested in accordance with ASTM E1105 at a static pressure of 8 psf.

3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

3.5.1 Protection

Protect the installed product's finish surfaces from damage during construction. Protect the aluminum storefront system from damage from grinding and polishing compounds, plaster, lime, acid, cement, or other harmful contaminants.

3.5.2 Cleaning

Repair or replace damaged installed products. Clean installed products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions before acceptance remove excess mastic, mastic smears, and other foreign materials. Remove construction debris from the project site and legally dispose of this debris.

3.6 WARRANTY

Submit three signed copies of the manufacturer's product warranty for the entrance system as follows:

Warranty Period: Five years from Date of Substantial Completion of the project, provided that the Limited Warranty begins no later than six months from the date of shipment by the manufacturer. In addition, support welded door corner construction with a limited lifetime warranty for the life of the door under normal use.

Ensure that the Warranty's language is identical to the "As Approved" version of the sample warranty submitted to and returned from the Contracting Officer.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 08 56 63

DETENTION AND SECURITY WINDOWS

04/06

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME B18.6.3 (2013; R 2017) Machine Screws, Tapping Screws, and Machine Drive Screws (Inch Series)

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A1011/A1011M (2018a) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and Ultra-High Strength

ASTM A123/A123M (2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products

ASTM A153/A153M (2016) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware

ASTM A239 (2014) Standard Practice for Locating the Thinnest Spot in a Zinc (Galvanized) Coating on Iron or Steel Articles

ASTM A627 (2003; R 2011) Standard Specification for Tool-Resisting Steel Bars, Flats, and Shapes for Detention and Correctional Facilities

ASTM A653/A653M (2017) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM A90/A90M (2013; R 2018) Standard Test Method for Weight Mass of Coating on Iron and Steel Articles with Zinc or Zinc-Alloy Coatings

ASTM B766 (1986; R 2015) Standard Specification for Electrodeposited Coatings of Cadmium

ASTM E330/E330M (2014) Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Doors, Skylights and Curtain

Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure
Difference

STEEL WINDOW INSTITUTE (SWI)

SWI AGSW

(2002) Architect's Guide to Steel Windows

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Window units

Indicate the elevations of windows, half-size sections, thicknesses and gages of metal, fastenings, proposed method of anchoring, the size and spacing of anchors, details of construction, method of glazing, mullion details, casings, sills, trim, other related items, and installation details.

SD-03 Product Data

Window units

Fasteners

Accessories

Include finishes.

SD-06 Test Reports

Mullion and transom bar wind load

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

The requirements specified in this section govern where there is a difference between this section and the referenced industry specifications.

1.3.1 Test Reports

1.3.1.1 Mullion and Transom Bar Wind Load Tests

ASTM E330/E330M. Members shall withstand a uniform wind load of 20 pounds per square foot of window area without deflecting more than 1/175 of the span.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver windows to project site in an undamaged condition. Store windows and components at the site on edge, out of contact with the ground, and under a weathertight covering.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

2.1.1 Steel Bars

SWI AGSW.

2.1.2 Sheet Steel

ASTM A1011/A1011M.

2.1.3 Zinc-Coated Sheet Steel

ASTM A653/A653M.

2.1.4 Zinc-Coated Steel

ASTM A90/A90M, ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A153/A153M.

2.1.5 Screws and Bolts

ASTM B766 or ASME B18.6.3, as applicable.

2.2 WINDOW UNITS

Units shall conform to the SWI AGSW, except as modified herein. Units to be fire rated to 45 minutes and bullet resistant to Level III.

2.3 FABRICATION

Form permanent joints by welding or by mechanically fastening as specified for each type window. Use joints of strength required to maintain the structural value of members connected. Weld joints solid, remove excess metal, and dress smooth on exposed and contact surfaces. Closely fit joints formed with mechanical fastenings and make permanently watertight. Assemble frames at the plant, and ship as a unit with hardware unattached.

2.3.1 Window Sections

Where fixed window sections adjoin, provide a fixed sash, fabricated from similar frame members and of the manufacturer's standard type suitable for the purpose. Roll weathering surfaces integrally to provide two-point, parallel-surface contact with an overlap at both inside and outside points of closure.

2.3.2 Fasteners

Use flat or oval head spanner, twist-off or safety head screws and bolts with standard threads on windows, trim and accessories. Self tapping sheet-metal screws are not acceptable.

2.3.3 Fastener Finish

Fabricate windows with hot-dipped galvanized finish, using stainless steel or hot-spun galvanized steel fasteners. Use heavily cadmium plated steel fasteners for windows with painted finish or electrogalvanized in accordance with ASTM A239. Finish exposed heads of fasteners to match finish of windows.

2.3.4 Frames

Form frames from low carbon steel not less than 12 U.S. gage. Frames shall be one piece, channel shaped sections, at each jamb and between jamb at head and sill. Cope or miter and weld frame members at corners full depth of the frame for maximum strength and weathertightness; dress exposed welds smooth. Provide frame members with dimensions and profiles indicated. Provide 3/8 by 2 1/4 inch, tool resistant steel flats conforming to ASTM A627, penetrated by 7/8 inch tool-resistant steel rounds conforming to ASTM A627 in frame members.

2.4 PROVISIONS FOR GLAZING

Design for outside single glazing and for securing glass with metal beads and glazing compound. Glazing specified in Section 08 88 53 DETENTION AND SECURITY GLAZING.

2.5 SCREENS

Provide manufacturer's standard screens for window units with movable sash, galvanized frame.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

Provide windows complete with necessary hardware, fastenings, clips, fins, anchors, glazing beads, and other appurtenances necessary for complete installation of windows.

2.7 ANCHORS

Use hot-dip, zinc-coated steel anchors of the type indicated or specified. Use cadmium or zinc-coated nuts, bolts, and other fasteners for ferrous material.

2.8 SHOP PRIMED FINISH

After fabrication, clean surfaces of windows, fins, mullions, cover plates and screen frames, provide a hot-dip galvanized, phosphate-treated and shop primed finish. The methods of cleaning, chemical treating, galvanizing, and painting shall conform to SWI AGSW. Windows shall receive finish paint coats as specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Install windows in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions and details, except as specified otherwise in this section. Build in windows as the work progresses. Set windows at indicated elevation, location, and reveal. Set plumb, square, level, and in alignment. Brace, strut, and stay to prevent distortion and misalignment.

3.2 ANCHORS AND FASTENINGS

Place anchorage as wall construction progresses. Build in anchors or bolt anchors and fastenings to the jambs of openings and weld securely to the windows or frames and to the adjoining construction. Space anchors not more than 16 inches apart on jambs, and install a minimum of four anchors

on each side of each opening. Anchors and fastenings shall have sufficient strength to hold the member firmly in position.

3.3 SEALANTS

Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.

3.4 CLEANING

Clean metal surfaces of windows, inside and outside, of mortar, plaster, paint, and other foreign matter to present a neat appearance and to prevent fouling of weathering surfaces. Clean and touch-up abraded surfaces of steel windows. Replace stained, discolored, or abraded windows that cannot be restored to their original condition with new windows.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 08 71 00

DOOR HARDWARE
02/16

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM E283 (2004; R 2012) Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen

ASTM F883 (2013) Padlocks

BUILDERS HARDWARE MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (BHMA)

ANSI/BHMA A156.1 (2016) Butts and Hinges

ANSI/BHMA A156.10 (2017) Power Operated Pedestrian Doors

ANSI/BHMA A156.13 (2017) Mortise Locks & Latches Series 1000

ANSI/BHMA A156.14 (2013) Sliding and Folding Door Hardware

ANSI/BHMA A156.15 (2015) Release Devices Closer Holder, Electromagnetic and Electromechanical

ANSI/BHMA A156.16 (2013) Auxiliary Hardware

ANSI/BHMA A156.18 (2016) Materials and Finishes

ANSI/BHMA A156.19 (2013) Power Assist & Low Energy Power Operated Doors

ANSI/BHMA A156.2 (2017) Bored and Preamsembled Locks and Latches

ANSI/BHMA A156.21 (2014) Thresholds

ANSI/BHMA A156.22 (2017) Door Gasketing and Edge Seal Systems

ANSI/BHMA A156.23 (2010) Electromagnetic Locks

ANSI/BHMA A156.24 (2012) Delayed Egress Locking Systems

ANSI/BHMA A156.25 (2013) Electrified Locking Devices

ANSI/BHMA A156.27 (2011) Power and Manual Operated Revolving Pedestrian Doors

ANSI/BHMA A156.3	(2014) Exit Devices
ANSI/BHMA A156.31	(2013) Electric Strikes and Frame Mounted Actuators
ANSI/BHMA A156.4	(2013) Door Controls - Closers
ANSI/BHMA A156.5	(2014) Cylinder and Input Devices for Locks
ANSI/BHMA A156.6	(2015) Architectural Door Trim
ANSI/BHMA A156.7	(2016) Template Hinge Dimensions
ANSI/BHMA A156.8	(2015) Door Controls - Overhead Stops and Holders

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 101	(2018; TIA 18-1; TIA 18-2; TIA 18-3) Life Safety Code
NFPA 252	(2017) Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies
NFPA 70	(2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2; TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6; TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10; TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA 17-14; TIA 17-15; TIA 17-16; TIA 17-17) National Electrical Code
NFPA 72	(2016; Errata 1 2018) National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code
NFPA 80	(2016; TIA 16-1) Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives

STEEL DOOR INSTITUTE (SDI/DOOR)

SDI/DOOR A250.8	(2003; R2008) Recommended Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

36 CFR 1191	Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL Bld Mat Dir	(updated continuously online) Building Materials Directory

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control

approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Manufacturer's Detail Drawings; G

Verification of Existing Conditions; G

Hardware Schedule; G

Keying System; G

SD-03 Product Data

Hardware Items; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Installation

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Hardware Schedule Items, Data Package 1; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Key Bitting

1.3 SHOP DRAWINGS

Submit manufacturer's detail drawings indicating all hardware assembly components and interface with adjacent construction. Indicate power components and wiring coordination for electrified hardware. Base shop drawings on verified field measurements and include verification of existing conditions.

1.4 PRODUCT DATA

Indicate fire-ratings at applicable components. Provide documentation of ABA/ADA accessibility compliance of applicable components, as required by 36 CFR 1191 Appendix D - Technical.

1.5 HARDWARE SCHEDULE

Prepare and submit hardware schedule in the following form:

Hardware Item	Quantity	Size	Reference Publication Type No.	Finish	Mfr Name and Catalog No.	Key Control Symbols	UL Mark (If fire-rated and listed)	BHMA Finish Designation

In addition, submit hardware schedule data package 1 in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

1.6 KEY BITTING CHART REQUIREMENTS

1.6.1 Requirements

Submit key bitting charts to the Contracting Officer prior to completion of the work. Include:

- a. Complete listing of all keys (e.g. AA1 and AA2).
- b. Complete listing of all key cuts (AA1-123456, AA2-123458).
- c. Tabulation showing which key fits which door.
- d. Copy of floor plan showing doors and door numbers.
- e. Listing of 20 percent more key cuts than are presently required in each master system.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.7.1 Hardware Manufacturers and Modifications

Provide, as far as feasible, locks, hinges, and closers of one lock, hinge, or closer manufacturer's make. Modify hardware as necessary to provide features indicated or specified.

1.7.2 Key Shop Drawings Coordination Meeting

Prior to the submission of the key shop drawing, the Contracting Officer, Contractor, Door Hardware Subcontractor, using Activity and Base Locksmith must meet to discuss and coordinate key requirements for the facility.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver hardware in original individual containers, complete with necessary appurtenances including fasteners and instructions. Mark each individual container with item number as shown on hardware schedule. Deliver permanent keys and removable cores to the Contracting Officer, either directly or by certified mail. Deliver construction master keys with the locks.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 TEMPLATE HARDWARE

Hardware applied to metal or to prefinished doors must be manufactured using a template. Provide templates to door and frame manufacturers in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.7 for template hinges. Coordinate hardware items to prevent interference with other hardware.

2.2 HARDWARE FOR FIRE DOORS AND EXIT DOORS

Provide all hardware necessary to meet the requirements of NFPA 72 for door alarms, NFPA 80 for fire doors, NFPA 101 for exit doors, NFPA 252 for fire tests of door assemblies, ABA/ADA accessibility requirements, and all other requirements indicated, even if such hardware is not specifically

mentioned in paragraph HARDWARE SCHEDULE. Provide Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. labels for such hardware in accordance with [UL Bld Mat Dir](#) or equivalent labels in accordance with another testing laboratory approved in writing by the Contracting Officer.

2.3 [HARDWARE ITEMS](#)

Clearly and permanently mark with the manufacturer's name or trademark, hinges, pivots, locks, latches, exit devices, bolts and closers where the identifying mark is visible after the item is installed. For closers with covers, the name or trademark may be beneath the cover. Coordinate electrified door hardware components with corresponding components specified in Division 28 ELECTRONIC SECURITY SYSTEMS (ESS).

2.3.1 Hinges

Provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.1](#). Provide hinges that are [4-1/2 by 4-1/2 inch](#) unless otherwise indicated. Construct loose pin hinges for interior doors and reverse-bevel exterior doors so that pins are non-removable when door is closed. Other anti-friction bearing hinges may be provided in lieu of ball bearing hinges.

2.3.2 Locks and Latches

- a. At exterior locations provide locksets of full stainless steel type 302 or 304 construction including fronts, strike, escutcheons, knobs, bolts and all interior working parts. Marine Grade I, fully non-ferrous.
- b. In non-air-conditioned interior environments or humid interior environments, provide interior locksets on the same Marine Grade I, fully non-ferrous as exterior locksets.

2.3.2.1 Mortise Locks and Latches

Provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.13](#), Series 1000, Operational Grade 1, Security Grade 2. Provide mortise locks with escutcheons not less than [7 by 2-1/4 inch](#) with a bushing at least [1/4 inch](#) long. Cut escutcheons to fit cylinders and provide trim items with straight, beveled, or smoothly rounded sides, corners, and edges. Provide knobs and roses of mortise locks with screwless shanks and no exposed screws.

2.3.3 Exit Devices

Provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.3](#), Grade 1. Provide adjustable strikes for rim type and vertical rod devices. Provide open back strikes for pairs of doors with mortise and vertical rod devices. Provide touch bars in lieu of conventional crossbars and arms. Provide escutcheons not less than [7 by 2-1/4 inch](#).

Use stainless steel finishes. Also include stainless steel fasteners and screws.

2.3.4 Cylinders and Cores

Provide cylinders and cores for new locks, including locks provided under other sections of this specification. Provide cylinders and cores with six pin tumblers. Provide cylinders from the products of one manufacturer, and provide cores from the products of one manufacturer. Rim cylinders, mortise cylinders, and knobs of bored locksets have interchangeable cores

which are removable by special control keys. Stamp each interchangeable core with a key control symbol in a concealed place on the core.

2.3.5 Electrified Hardware

Comply with the requirements of [NFPA 70](#) for wiring of electrified hardware.

2.3.5.1 Electric Strikes and Frame Mounted Actuators

Provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.31](#), Grade 1. Provide electric strikes and actuators as required to meet operational requirements. Provide electric strikes that remain secure during power failure.

Provide facility interface devices that use direct current (dc) power to energize the solenoids. Provide electric strikes and actuators that incorporate end-of-line resistors to facilitate line supervision by the system. If not incorporated into the electric strike or local controller, provide metal oxide resistors (MOVs) to protect the controller from reverse current surges.

2.3.5.1.1 Solenoid

Provide actuating solenoid for strikes and actuators that are rated for continuous duty, cannot dissipate more than 12 Watts and must operate on 12 or 24 Volts dc. Inrush current cannot exceed 1 ampere and the holding current cannot be greater than 500 milliamperes. Actuating solenoid must move from fully secure to fully open positions in less than 500 milliseconds.

2.3.5.1.2 Signal Switches

Provide strikes and actuators with signal switches to indicate to the system when the bolt is not engaged or the strike mechanism is unlocked. Signal switches must report a forced entry to the system.

2.3.5.1.3 Coordination

Provide electric strikes and actuators of a size, weight and profile compatible with each specified door frame. Field verify installation clearances prior to procurement.

2.3.5.1.4 Mounting Method

Provide electric strikes and actuators suitable for use with single and double doors, with mortise or rim type hardware specified, and for right or left hand mounting as specified. In double door installations, locate the lock in the active leaf and monitor the fixed leaf.

2.3.5.2 Electrified Mortise Locks

Provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.25](#), Grade 1. Provide electrified mortise locks that remain secure during power failure. Provide facility interface devices that use dc power to energize solenoids. Provide solenoids, resistors, and signal switches in accordance with paragraph ELECTRIC STRIKES AND FRAME MOUNTED ACTUATORS.

2.3.5.3 Card Readers and Keypad Access Control Hardware

Provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.5](#) and [ANSI/BHMA A156.25](#), Grade 1

components. Provide devices that are tamper alarmed, tamper and vandal resistant, solid state, and do not contain electronics which could compromise the access control subsystem should the subsystem be attacked. Provide surface, semi-flush, pedestal, or weatherproof mountable devices as specified for each individual location. Provide proximity type card readers capable of reading high coercivity magnetic stripe or Smart Card type access control cards. Provide keypads that contain an integral 12-digit tactile keyboard with digits arranged in numerical order. Provide keypads that are a standalone device or integrated into the card reader. Coordinate access control hardware with corresponding devices and systems specified in Division 28 ELECTRONIC SECURITY SYSTEMS (ESS).

2.3.5.4 Power Operated Pedestrian Door Hardware

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.10, Grade 1.

2.3.5.5 Release Devices

In accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.15, Grade 1.

2.3.5.5.1 Closer Holders

Provide header mounted closer holder devices connected by integral releasing to fire and smoke detecting devices.

2.3.5.5.2 Release Devices

Provide door mounted Electromagnetic release devices connected to fire and smoke detecting devices.

2.3.5.6 Power Assist and Low Energy Power Operated Doors

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.19, Grade 1.

2.3.5.7 Electromagnetic Locks

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.23, Grade 1. Provide electromagnetic locks that do not contain any moving parts and depend solely upon electromagnetism to secure a portal by generating at least 1200 pounds of holding force. The lock must interface with the local processors without external, internal or functional alteration of the local processor. The electromagnetic lock must incorporate an end of line resistor to facilitate line supervision by the system. Provide metal-oxide resistors (MOVs) to protect controllers from reverse current surges, if not incorporated into the electromagnetic lock or local controller.

2.3.5.7.1 Armature

Provide electromagnetic locks with internal circuitry to eliminate residual magnetism and inductive kickback. Provide actuating armature that operates on 12 or 24 Volts dc and cannot dissipate more than 12 Watts. Holding current must be less than 500 milliamperes. Actuating armature must take less than 300 milliseconds to change the status of the lock from fully secure to fully open or fully open to fully secure.

2.3.5.7.2 Tamper Resistance

Provide lock mechanism encased in hardened guard barriers to deter forced entry.

2.3.5.7.3 Mounting Method

Provide electromagnetic lock suitable for use with single and double door with mortise or rim type hardware and compatible with right or left hand mounting.

2.3.5.8 Delayed Egress Locking System

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.24, Grade 1.

2.3.5.9 Power and Manual Operated Revolving Pedestrian Doors

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.27, Grade 1.

2.3.6 Keying System

Provide a master keying system Provide a construction master keying system.

Provide cylinders of Grade 1 products from one manufacturer. Notify the Contracting Officer 90 days prior to the required delivery of the cylinders. Provide temporary cores and keys for the Contractor's use during construction, and for testing of locksets.

2.3.7 Lock Trim

Provide cast, forged, or heavy wrought construction and commercial plain design for lock trim.

2.3.7.1 Knobs and Roses

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.2 and ANSI/BHMA A156.13 for knobs, roses, and escutcheons. For unreinforced knobs, roses, and escutcheons, provide a 0.050 inch thickness. For reinforced knobs, roses, and escutcheons, provide an outer shell thickness of 0.035 inch and a combined total thickness of 0.070 inch, except at knob shanks. Provide knob shanks 0.060 inch thick.

2.3.7.2 Lever Handles

Provide lever handles where indicated in the Hardware Schedule. Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.3 for mortise locks of lever handles for exit devices. Provide lever handle locks with a breakaway feature (such as a weakened spindle or a shear key) to prevent irreparable damage to the lock when force in excess of that specified in ANSI/BHMA A156.13 is applied to the lever handle. Provide lever handles return to within 1/2 inch of the door face.

2.3.7.3 Texture

Provide knurled or abrasive coated knobs or lever handles for doors which are accessible to blind persons and which lead to dangerous areas.

2.3.8 Keys

Provide one file key, one duplicate key, and one working key for each key change and for each master keying system. Provide one additional working key for each lock of each keyed-alike group. Provide a quantity of key blanks equal to 20 percent of the total number of file keys. Stamp each

key with appropriate key control symbol and "U.S. property - do not duplicate." Do not place room number on keys.

2.3.9 Door Bolts

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.16. Provide dustproof strikes for bottom bolts, except at doors having metal thresholds. Provide automatic latching flush bolts in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.3, Type 25.

2.3.10 Closers

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.4, Series C02000, Grade 1, with PT 4C. Provide with brackets, arms, mounting devices, fasteners, full size covers, except at storefront mounting, and other features necessary for the particular application. Size closers in accordance with manufacturer's printed recommendations, or provide multi-size closers, Sizes 1 through 6, and list sizes in the Hardware Schedule. Provide manufacturer's 10 year warranty.

Use stainless steel inside bracketed or door mounted closers on exterior doors. Non-ferrous closers, such as aluminum or cast bronze, are permissible where door utilization is minimal. On interior doors use closers of 302 or 304 stainless steel or non-ferrous materials. On surface-mounted closers use or apply rust inhibiting finish on all ferrous parts. Also apply this finish on concealed closers.

2.3.10.1 Identification Marking

Engrave each closer with manufacturer's name or trademark, date of manufacture, and manufacturer's size designation in locations that will be visible after installation.

2.3.11 Overhead Holders

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.8.

2.3.12 Door Protection Plates

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.6.

2.3.12.1 Sizes of Kick Plates

2 inch less than door width for single doors; 1 inch less than door width for pairs of doors. Provide 8 inch kick plates for flush doors and 1 inch less than height of bottom rail for panel doors.

2.3.12.2 Edge Guards

Stainless steel, of same height as armor plates. Apply to hinge stile.

2.3.13 Door Stops and Silencers

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.16. Silencers Type L03011. Provide three silencers for each single door, two for each pair.

2.3.14 Padlocks

Provide in accordance with ASTM F883.

2.3.15 Thresholds

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.21. Use J35100, with vinyl or silicone rubber insert in face of stop, for exterior doors opening out, unless specified otherwise.

2.3.16 Weatherstripping Gasketing

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.22. Provide the type and function designation where specified in paragraph HARDWARE SCHEDULE. Provide a set to include head and jamb seals, sweep strips, and, for pairs of doors, astragals. Air leakage of weatherstripped doors not to exceed 0.5 cubic feet per minute of air per square foot of door area when tested in accordance with ASTM E283. Provide weatherstripping with one of the following:

2.3.16.1 Extruded Aluminum Retainers

Extruded aluminum retainers not less than 0.050 inch wall thickness with vinyl, neoprene, silicone rubber, or polyurethane inserts. Provide clear (natural) anodized aluminum.

2.3.16.2 Interlocking Type

Zinc or bronze not less than 0.018 inch thick.

2.3.16.3 Spring Tension Type

Spring bronze or stainless steel not less than 0.008 inch thick.

2.3.17 Rain Drips

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.22. Provide extruded aluminum rain drips, not less than 0.08 inch thick, clear anodized finish. Provide the manufacturer's full range of color choices to the Contracting Officer for color selection. Provide rain drips with a 4 inch overlap on each side of each exterior door that is not protected by an awning, roof, eave or other horizontal projection. Set drips in sealant and fasten with stainless steel screws.

2.3.17.1 Door Rain Drips

Approximately 1-1/2 inch high by 5/8 inch projection. Align bottom with bottom edge of door.

2.3.17.2 Overhead Rain Drips

Approximately 1-1/2 inch high by 2-1/2 inch projection. Align bottom with door frame rabbet.

2.3.18 Auxiliary Hardware (Other than locks)

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.

2.3.19 Sliding and Folding Door Hardware

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.14, Grade 1. Finishes to match other hardware specified herein.

2.3.20 Special Tools

Provide special tools, such as spanner and socket wrenches and dogging keys, as required to service and adjust hardware items.

2.4 FASTENERS

Provide fasteners of type, quality, size, and quantity appropriate to the specific application. Fastener finish to match hardware. Provide stainless steel or nonferrous metal fasteners in locations exposed to weather. Verify metals in contact with one another are compatible and will avoid galvanic corrosion when exposed to weather.

2.5 FINISHES

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.18. Provide hardware in BHMA 630 finish (satin stainless steel), unless specified otherwise. Provide items not manufactured in stainless steel in BHMA 626 finish (satin chromium plated) over brass or bronze, except aluminum paint and prime coat finish for surface door closers, and except BHMA 652 finish (satin chromium plated) or BHMA 600 finish (primed for painting) for steel hinges. Provide hinges for exterior doors in stainless steel with BHMA 630 finish or chromium plated brass or bronze with BHMA 626 finish. Furnish exit devices in BHMA 626 finish in lieu of BHMA 630 finish except where BHMA 630 is specified under paragraph HARDWARE SETS. Match exposed parts of concealed closers to lock and door trim. Match hardware finish for aluminum doors to the doors.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Provide hardware in accordance with manufacturers' printed installation instructions. Fasten hardware to wood surfaces with full-threaded wood screws or sheet metal screws. Provide machine screws set in expansion shields for fastening hardware to solid concrete and masonry surfaces. Provide toggle bolts where required for fastening to hollow core construction. Provide through bolts where necessary for satisfactory installation.

3.1.1 Weatherstripping Installation

Provide full contact, weathertight seals that allow operation of doors without binding the weatherstripping.

3.1.1.1 Stop Applied Weatherstripping

Fasten in place with color matched sheet metal screws not more than 9 inch on center after doors and frames have been finish painted.

3.1.1.2 Interlocking Type Weatherstripping

Provide interlocking, self adjusting type on heads and jambs and flexible hook type at sills. Nail weatherstripping to door 1 inch on center and to heads and jambs at 4 inch on center.

3.1.1.3 Spring Tension Type Weatherstripping

Provide spring tension type on heads and jambs. Provide bronze nails with bronze. Provide stainless steel nails with stainless steel. Space nails

not more than 1-1/2 inch on center.

3.1.2 Threshold Installation

Extend thresholds the full width of the opening and notch end for jamb stops. Set thresholds in a full bed of sealant and anchor to floor with cadmium-plated, countersunk, steel screws in expansion sleeves. For aluminum thresholds placed on top of concrete surfaces, coat the underside surfaces that are in contact with the concrete with fluid applied waterproofing as a separation measure prior to placement.

3.2 HARDWARE LOCATIONS

Provide in accordance with SDI/DOOR A250.8, unless indicated or specified otherwise.

- a. Kick and Armor Plates: Push side of single-acting doors. Both sides of double-acting doors.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

After installation, protect hardware from paint, stains, blemishes, and other damage until acceptance of work. Submit notice of testing 15 days before scheduled, so that testing can be witnessed by the Contracting Officer. Adjust hinges, locks, latches, bolts, holders, closers, and other items to operate properly. Demonstrate that permanent keys operate respective locks, and give keys to the Contracting Officer. Correct, repair, and finish, errors in cutting and fitting and damage to adjoining work.

3.4 HARDWARE SETS

Provide hardware for aluminum doors under this section. Deliver Hardware templates and hardware, except field applied hardware, to the aluminum door and frame manufacturer for use in fabricating doors and frames.

Hardware Sets

1. MK - McKinney
2. MR - Markar
3. PE - Pemko
4. RO - Rockwood
5. YA - Yale
6. SU - Securitron
7. KA - Kaba Ilco
8. HS - HES
9. NO - Norton
10. RF - Rixson
11. OT - Other
12. SE - Sentrol 12345

Set: 1.0

2	Elect Continuous Hinge	CFM HD1 x ACC		PE
1	Keyed Removable Mullion	KRM200FWS	600	YA
1	Elect Rim Exit Device	7150 WS B P 121NL	630	YA
1	Elect Rim Exit Device	7150 WS B P EO	630	YA
2	Cylinder	AS REQUIRED x 7-Pin Temp Core	626	YA
2	Permanent Core	SFIC x 7-Pin	626	YA
2	Offset Pull	RM201 x MTG 12XHD	US32D	RO

Hardware Sets

2	Door Closer	UNIJ8501	689	NO
1	Threshold	171A		PE
1	Weatherstrip	BY DOOR MANUFACTURER		OT
2	ElectroLynx Harness	QC-C1500P (@ JAMB)		MK
2	ElectroLynx Harness	QC-C000P x LAR		MK
1	Wiring Diagram	WD-SYSPK		OT
1	Card Reader	FURNISHED IN OTHER SECTION		OT
1	Controller	782		YA

Notes: OPERATION: DOORS TO BE CLOSED AND LOCKED AT ALL TIMES. PRESENTATION OF A VALID CARD SIGNALS ELECTRIC LATCH RETRACTION ALLOWING INGRESS. EGRESS AT ALL TIMES BY EXIT DEVICE PUSH BARS.

NOTE: THE ABOVE HARDWARE IS ILLUSTRATED AS A BASIS OF DESIGN. IF ALTERNATE HARDWARE IS REQUIRED TO MEET WINDSTORM CODES, PROVIDE ARCHITECT WITH INFORMATION ON HARDWARE SUBSTITUTED FOR THAT WHICH IS SPECIFIED.

NOTE: THE ABOVE HARDWARE IS ILLUSTRATED AS A BASIS OF DESIGN. IF ALTERNATE HARDWARE IS REQUIRED TO MEET WINDSTORM CODES, PROVIDE ARCHITECT WITH INFORMATION ON HARDWARE SUBSTITUTED FOR THAT WHICH IS SPECIFIED.

Set: 2.0

3	Hinge	T4A3386 x NRP	US32D	MK
1	Exit Device (storeroom)	7150 WS AU627F	630	YA
1	Cylinder	AS REQUIRED x 7-Pin Temp Core	626	YA
1	Permanent Core	SFIC x 7-Pin	626	YA
1	Electric Strike	7000-LBM (GFGI)	630	HS
1	SMART Pac Bridge Rectifier	2005M3 (GFGI)		HS
1	Door Closer	CPS7500	689	NO
1	Kick Plate	K1050 8" high HVBEV CSK	US32D	RO
1	Threshold	2005AT		PE
1	Set Weatherstrip	303AS		PE
1	Rain Guard	346C		PE
1	Door Bottom Sweep	3452CNB		PE
1	Door Contact	2757 (GFGI)		SE
1	Wiring Diagram	WD-SYSPK		OT
1	Card Reader	FURNISHED IN OTHER SECTION		OT
1	Power Supply	BPS-24 (GFGI)		SU

Notes: OPERATION: DOOR TO BE CLOSED AND LOCKED AT ALL TIMES. WHEN LOCKED, PRESENTATION OF A VALID CARD SIGNAL ELECTRIC STRIKE ALLOWING INGRESS. EGRESS AT ALL TIMES BY EXIT DEVICE PUSH BAR.

NOTE: THE ABOVE HARDWARE IS ILLUSTRATED AS A BASIS OF DESIGN. IF ALTERNATE HARDWARE IS REQUIRED TO MEET WINDSTORM CODES, PROVIDE ARCHITECT WITH INFORMATION ON HARDWARE SUBSTITUTED FOR THAT WHICH IS SPECIFIED.

Set: 3.0

3	Hinge	T4A3386 x NRP	US32D	MK
1	Storeroom Lock	AU 5405LN x 7-Pin Temp Core	626	YA
1	Permanent Core	SFIC x 7-Pin	626	YA
1	Door Closer	CPS7500	689	NO
1	Kick Plate	K1050 8" high HVBEV CSK	US32D	RO
1	Threshold	2005AT		PE
1	Set Weatherstrip	303AS		PE
1	Rain Guard	346C		PE

Hardware Sets

1	Door Bottom Sweep	3452CNB	PE

Notes:

NOTE: THE ABOVE HARDWARE IS ILLUSTRATED AS A BASIS OF DESIGN. IF ALTERNATE HARDWARE IS REQUIRED TO MEET WINDSTORM CODES, PROVIDE ARCHITECT WITH INFORMATION ON HARDWARE SUBSTITUTED FOR THAT WHICH IS SPECIFIED.

Set: 4.0

3	Hinge	TA2714	US26D	MK
1	Rim Exit Device	7100 AU627F	630	YA
1	Cylinder	AS REQUIRED x 7-Pin Temp Core	626	YA
1	Permanent Core	SFIC x 7-Pin	626	YA
1	Surface Closer	7500	689	NO
1	Kick Plate	K1050 8" high HVBEV CSK	US32D	RO
1	Door Stop	409/441CU	US26D	RO
1	Set Sound Assembly STC25	BY DOOR/FRAME MANUFACTURER		OT
1	ElectroLynx Harness	QC-C1500P (@ JAMB)		MK
1	Door Contact	2757 (GFGI)		SE
1	ElectroLynx Harness	QC-C000P x LAR		MK
1	Wiring Diagram	WD-SYSPK		OT
1	Card Reader	FURNISHED IN OTHER SECTION		OT
1	Power Supply	BPS-24 (GFGI)		SU

Notes: OPERATION: DOOR TO BE CLOSED AND LOCKED AT ALL TIMES. PRESENTATION OF A VALID CARD RELEASES ELECTRIC STRIKE ALLOWING INGRESS. EGRESS AT ALL TIMES BY EXIT DEVICE PUSH BAR.

Set: 5.0

3	Hinge	TA2714	US26D	MK
1	Magnetic Lock	M62 (GFGI)		SU
1	High Secuirty Lock	CDX-10 (TO SUIT) (GFGI)		KA
1	Rim Exit Device	7100 AU627F	630	YA
1	Cylinder	AS REQUIRED x 7-Pin Temp Core	626	YA
1	Permanent Core	SFIC x 7-Pin	626	YA
1	Electric Strike	7000-LBM (GFGI)	630	HS
1	SMART Pac Bridge Rectifier	2005M3 (GFGI)		HS
1	Door Closer	PR8501	689	NO
1	Kick Plate	K1050 8" high HVBEV CSK	US32D	RO
3	Silencer	608		RO
1	Door Contact	2757 (GFGI)		SE
1	Wiring Diagram	WD-SYSPK		OT
1	Card Reader	FURNISHED IN OTHER SECTION		OT
1	Power Supply	BPS-24 (GFGI)		SU

Notes: OPERATION: DOOR TO BE CLOSED AND LOCKED AT ALL TIMES. VALID CODE UNLOCKS CDX-10 PRIOR TO PRESENTATION OF A VALID CARD RELEASES ELECTRIC STRIKE ALLOWING INGRESS. EGRESS AT ALL TIMES BY EXIT DEVICE PUSH BAR.

Set: 6.0

3	Hinge	TA2714	US26D	MK
1	Rim Exit Device	7100 AU627F	630	YA
1	Cylinder	AS REQUIRED x 7-Pin Temp Core	626	YA
1	Permanent Core	SFIC x 7-Pin	626	YA
1	Door Closer	CLP7500	689	NO
1	Kick Plate	K1050 8" high HVBEV CSK	US32D	RO

Hardware Sets

3	Silencer	608		RO

Set: 7.0

3	Hinge	TA2714	US26D	MK
1	Passage Set	AU 5401LN	626	YA
1	Door Closer	PR8501	689	NO
1	Kick Plate	K1050 8" high HVBEV CSK	US32D	RO
1	Electromagnetic Holder	990M SERIES	689	RF
1	Set Door Seals/Silencers	S88D/608 AS REQUIRED		PE

Set: 8.0

3	Hinge	TA2714	US26D	MK
1	Passage Set	AU 5401LN	626	YA
1	Door Closer	PR8501	689	NO
1	Kick Plate	K1050 8" high HVBEV CSK	US32D	RO
1	Electromagnetic Holder	990M SERIES	689	RF
1	Set Door Seals/Silencers	S88D/608 AS REQUIRED		PE

Notes: NOTE: DOOR TO SWING 180 DEGREES TO ENGAGE WITH ELECTROMAGNETIC HOLDER.

Set: 9.0

3	Hinge	TA2714	US26D	MK
1	Office Lock	AU 5407LN x 7-Pin Temp Core	626	YA
1	Permanent Core	SFIC x 7-Pin	626	YA
1	Door Stop	409/441CU	US26D	RO
1	Set Sound Assembly STC25	BY DOOR/FRAME MANUFACTURER		OT

Set: 10.0

3	Hinge	TA2714	US26D	MK
1	Office Lock	AU 5407LN x 7-Pin Temp Core	626	YA
1	Permanent Core	SFIC x 7-Pin	626	YA
1	Door Stop	409/441CU	US26D	RO
1	Set Sound Assembly STC30	BY DOOR/FRAME MANUFACTURER		OT

Set: 11.0

3	Hinge	TA2714	US26D	MK
1	Storeroom Lock	AU 5405LN x 7-Pin Temp Core	626	YA
1	Permanent Core	SFIC x 7-Pin	626	YA
1	Electric Strike	7000-LBM (GFGI)	630	HS
1	SMART Pac Bridge Rectifier	2005M3 (GFGI)		HS
1	Door Closer	8501	689	NO
1	Kick Plate	K1050 8" high HVBEV CSK	US32D	RO
1	Door Stop	409/441CU	US26D	RO
1	Set Door Seals/Silencers	S88D/608 AS REQUIRED		PE
1	Door Contact	2757 (GFGI)		SE
1	Wiring Diagram	WD-SYSPK		OT
1	Card Reader	FURNISHED IN OTHER SECTION		OT
1	Power Supply	BPS-24 (GFGI)		SU

Notes: OPERATION: DOOR TO BE CLOSED AND LOCKED AT ALL TIMES. PRESENTATION OF A VALID CARD RELEASES ELECTRIC STRIKE ALLOWING INGRESS. EGRESS AT ALL TIMES BY EXIT DEVICE PUSH BAR.

Hardware Sets

Set: 12.0

3	Hinge	TA2714	US26D	MK
1	Storeroom Lock	AU 5405LN x 7-Pin Temp Core	626	YA
1	High Secuirty Lock	CDX-10 (TO SUIT) (GFGI)		KA
1	Permanent Core	SFIC x 7-Pin	626	YA
1	Electric Strike	7000-LBM (GFGI)	630	HS
1	SMART Pac Bridge Rectifier	2005M3 (GFGI)		HS
1	Kick Plate	K1050 8" high HVBEV CSK	US32D	RO
1	Wall Stop	409	US32D	RO
1	Set Door Seals/Silencers	S88D/608 AS REQUIRED		PE
1	Door Contact	2757 (GFGI)		SE
1	Wiring Diagram	WD-SYSPK		OT
1	Card Reader	FURNISHED IN OTHER SECTION		OT
1	Power Supply	BPS-24 (GFGI)		SU

Notes: OPERATION: DOOR TO BE CLOSED AND LOCKED AT ALL TIMES. VALID CODE UNLOCKS CDX-10 PRIOR TO PRESENTATION OF A VALID CARD RELEASES ELECTRIC STRIKE ALLOWING INGRESS. EGRESS AT ALL TIMES BY EXIT DEVICE PUSH BAR.

Set: 13.0

6	Hinge	TA2714	US26D	MK
1	Set Combo Flush Bolts	2845/2945	US26D	RO
1	Dust Proof Strike	570	US26D	RO
1	Storeroom Lock	AU 5405LN x 7-Pin Temp Core	626	YA
1	Permanent Core	SFIC x 7-Pin	626	YA
2	Door Closer	8501	689	NO
2	Kick Plate	K1050 8" high HVBEV CSK	US32D	RO
2	Door Stop & Holder	491R	US26D	RO
1	Set Door Seals/Silencers	S88D/608 AS REQUIRED		PE

Set: 14.0

6	Hinge	TA2714	US26D	MK
1	Set Auto Flush Bolts	2842/2942	US26D	RO
1	Dust Proof Strike	570	US26D	RO
1	Storeroom Lock	AU 5405LN x 7-Pin Temp Core	626	YA
1	Permanent Core	SFIC x 7-Pin	626	YA
1	Coordinator	2600 x FILLER BAR	Black	RO
2	Door Closer	8501	689	NO
2	Kick Plate	K1050 8" high HVBEV CSK	US32D	RO
2	Door Stop & Holder	491R	US26D	RO
1	Set Door Seals/Silencers	S88D/608 AS REQUIRED		PE

Set: 15.0

3	Hinge	TA2714	US26D	MK
1	Push Plate	70C	US32D	RO
1	Pull Plate	111 x 70C	US32D	RO
1	Door Closer	8501	689	NO
1	Kick Plate	K1050 8" high HVBEV CSK	US32D	RO
1	Door Stop	409/441CU	US26D	RO
3	Silencer	608		RO

Set: 16.0

3	Hinge	TA2714	US26D	MK

Hardware Sets

1	Push Plate	70F	US32D	RO
1	Pull Plate	111 x 70C	US32D	RO
1	Door Closer	8501	689	NO
1	Kick Plate	K1050 8" high HVBEV CSK	US32D	RO
1	Door Stop	482	US26D	RO
1	Set Sound Assembly STC30	BY DOOR/FRAME MANUFACTURER		OT

Set: 17.0

1	Wiring Diagram	WD-SYSPK		OT
1	Hardware	SEE NOTE BELOW		OT

Notes: NOTE: OVERHEAD DOOR - ALL HARDWARE FURNISHED IN OTHER SECTION BY DOOR MANUFACTURER.

Set: 17.1

1	Wiring Diagram	WD-SYSPK		OT
1	Hardware	SEE NOTE BELOW		OT

Notes: NOTE: OVERHEAD DOOR - ALL HARDWARE FURNISHED IN OTHER SECTION BY DOOR MANUFACTURER.

Set: 18.0

3	Hinge	T4A3786	US26D	MK
1	High Secuirty Lock	CDX-10 (TO SUIT) (GFGI)		KA
1	Cylindrical Lock (utility)	AU 5430LN	626	YA
2	Cylinder	AS REQUIRED x 7-Pin Temp Core	626	YA
1	Electric Strike	7000-LBM (GFGI)	630	HS
1	SMART Pac Bridge Rectifier	2005M3 (GFGI)		HS
1	Surface Closer	7500	689	NO
1	Kick Plate	K1050 8" high HVBEV CSK	US32D	RO
1	Door Stop	409/441CU	US26D	RO
1	Door Contact	2757 (GFGI)		SE
1	Wiring Diagram	WD-SYSPK		OT
2	Card Reader	FURNISHED IN OTHER SECTION		OT
1	Power Supply	BPS-24 (GFGI)		SU

Notes: OPERATION: DOOR TO BE CLOSED AND LOCKED AT ALL TIMES. VALID CODE UNLOCKS CDX-10 PRIOR TO PRESENTATION OF A VALID CARD RELEASES ELECTRIC STRIKE ALLOWING INGRESS/EGRESS. NO FREE EGRESS AT ANY TIME.

Set: 19.0

3	Hinge	TA2714	US26D	MK
1	Storeroom Lock	AU 5405LN x 7-Pin Temp Core	626	YA
1	Cylinder	AS REQUIRED x 7-Pin Temp Core	626	YA
1	Permanent Core	SFIC x 7-Pin	626	YA
1	Door Stop	09/441CU	US26D	RO
1	Set Door Seals/Silencers	S88D/608 AS REQUIRED		PE

Set: 20.0

3	Hinge	TA2714	US26D	MK
1	Cylinder	AS REQUIRED x 7-Pin Temp Core	626	YA
1	Permanent Core	SFIC x 7-Pin	626	YA
1	Surface Closer	7500	689	NO

Hardware Sets

1	Kick Plate	K1050 8" high HVBEV CSK	US32D	RO
1	Door Stop	409/441CU	US26D	RO
1	Set Sound Assembly STC25	BY DOOR/FRAME MANUFACTURER		OT
1	ElectroLynx Harness	QC-C1500P (@ JAMB)		MK
1	Door Contact	2757 (GFGI)		SE
1	ElectroLynx Harness	QC-C000P x LAR		MK
1	Wiring Diagram	WD-SYSPK		OT
1	Card Reader	FURNISHED IN OTHER SECTION		OT
1	Power Supply	BPS-24 (GFGI)		SU

Notes: OPERATION: DOOR TO BE CLOSED AND LOCKED AT ALL TIMES. PRESENTATION OF A VALID CARD RELEASES ELECTRIC STRIKE ALLOWING INGRESS. EGRESS AT ALL TIMES BY EXIT DEVICE PUSH BAR.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 08 81 00

GLAZING

08/11

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI Z97.1 (2015) Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings - Safety Performance Specifications and Methods of Test

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C1036 (2016) Standard Specification for Flat Glass

ASTM C1048 (2012; E 2012) Standard Specification for Heat-Strengthened and Fully Tempered Flat Glass

ASTM C1172 (2014) Standard Specification for Laminated Architectural Flat Glass

ASTM C1184 (2014) Standard Specification for Structural Silicone Sealants

ASTM C509 (2006; R 2015) Elastomeric Cellular Preformed Gasket and Sealing Material

ASTM C864 (2005; R 2015) Dense Elastomeric Compression Seal Gaskets, Setting Blocks, and Spacers

ASTM C920 (2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants

ASTM D2287 (2012) Nonrigid Vinyl Chloride Polymer and Copolymer Molding and Extrusion Compounds

ASTM D395 (2016; E 2017) Standard Test Methods for Rubber Property - Compression Set

ASTM E1300 (2016) Standard Practice for Determining Load Resistance of Glass in Buildings

ASTM E1996 (2014a) Standard Specification for Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors, and Impact Protective Systems Impacted by Windborne Debris in Hurricanes

ASTM E413	(2016) Classification for Rating Sound Insulation
ASTM E90	(2009) Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)	
UFC 4-010-01	(2012; with Change 1) DoD Minimum Antiterrorism Standards for Buildings
GLASS ASSOCIATION OF NORTH AMERICA (GANA)	
GANA Glazing Manual	(2008) Glazing Manual
GANA Sealant Manual	(2008) Sealant Manual
INSULATING GLASS MANUFACTURERS ALLIANCE (IGMA)	
IGMA TB-1200	(1983; R 2016) Guidelines for Insulating Glass Dimensional Tolerances
IGMA TB-3001	(2001) Guidelines for Sloped Glazing
IGMA TM-3000	(1990; R 2016) North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial & Residential Use
NATIONAL FENESTRATION RATING COUNCIL (NFRC)	
NFRC 100	(2014) Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product U-Factors
NFRC 200	(2014) Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence
NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)	
NFPA 80	(2016; TIA 16-1) Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives
U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)	
16 CFR 1201	Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials
UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)	
UL MEAPD	(2011) Mechanical Equipment and Associated Products Directory (online version is listed under Certifications at www.ul.com)

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation;

submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Installation

Drawings showing complete details of the proposed setting methods, mullion details, edge blocking, size of openings, frame details, materials, and types and thickness of glass.

SD-03 Product Data

Insulating Glass

Exterior Glazing - performance documentation for all glass types

Glazing Accessories

Manufacturer's descriptive product data, handling and storage recommendations, installation instructions, and cleaning instructions.

Environmental Data

SD-04 Samples

Insulating Glass

Glazing Compound

Sealant

Two 8 by 10 inch samples of each of the following: tinted glass, patterned glass, heat-absorbing glass, spandrel glass and insulating glass units.

Three samples of each indicated material. Samples of plastic sheets must be minimum 5 by 7 inches.

SD-07 Certificates

Insulating Glass

Certificates stating that the glass meets the specified requirements. Labels or manufacturers marking affixed to the glass will be accepted in lieu of certificates.

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Setting and Sealing Materials

Glass Setting

Submit glass manufacturer's recommendations for setting and sealing materials and for installation of each type of glazing

material specified.

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Fabricate and install watertight and airtight glazing systems to withstand thermal movement and wind loading without glass breakage, gasket failure, deterioration of [glazing accessories](#), or defects in the work. Glazed panels must comply with the safety standards, in accordance with [ANSI Z97.1](#), and comply with indicated wind/snow loading in accordance with [ASTM E1300](#).

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver products to the site in unopened containers, labeled plainly with manufacturers' names and brands. Store glass and setting materials in safe, enclosed dry locations and do not unpack until needed for installation. Handle and install materials in a manner that will protect them from damage.

1.5 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Do not start glazing work until the outdoor temperature is above [40 degrees F](#) and rising, unless procedures recommended by the glass manufacturer and approved by the Contracting Officer are made to warm the glass and rabbet surfaces. Provide ventilation to prevent condensation of moisture on glazing work during installation. Do not perform glazing work during damp or rainy weather.

1.6 WARRANTY

1.6.1 Warranty for [Insulating Glass](#) Units

Warranty insulating glass units against development of material obstruction to vision (such as dust, fogging, or film formation on the inner glass surfaces) caused by failure of the hermetic seal, other than through glass breakage, for a 10-year period following acceptance of the work. Provide new units for any units failing to comply with terms of this warranty within 45 working days after receipt of notice from the Government.

1.6.2 Warranty for Polycarbonate Sheet

For a 5-year period following acceptance of the work:

- a. Warranty Type I, Class A (UV stabilized) sheets against breakage;
- b. Warranty Type III (coated, mar-resistant) sheets against breakage and against coating delamination;
- c. Warranty Type IV (coated sheet) against breakage and against yellowing;
- d. Warranty extruded polycarbonate profile sheet against breakage.

For a 10-year period following acceptance of the work, warranty Type IV against yellowing and loss of light transmission.

1.6.3 Monolithic Reflective Glass

Manufacturer must warrant the monolithic reflective glass to be free of peeling or deteriorating of coating for a period of 10 years after Date of Substantial Completion. Warranty must be signed by manufacturer.

1.6.4 Monolithic Opacified Spandrel

Manufacturer must warrant the opacifier film on the spandrel to be free of peeling for a period of five years after Date of Substantial Completion. Warranty must be signed by manufacturer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GLASS

ASTM C1036, unless specified otherwise. In doors and sidelights, provide safety glazing material conforming to 16 CFR 1201.

2.1.1 Clear Glass

For interior glazing (i.e., pass and observation windows), 6 mm thick glass should be used.

Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality q3. Provide for glazing openings not indicated or specified otherwise. Use double-strength sheet glass or 6 mm float glass for openings up to and including 15 square feet, 6 mm for glazing openings over 15 square feet but not over 30 square feet, and 6 mm for glazing openings over 30 square feet but not over 45 square feet.

2.1.2 Annealed Glass

Annealed glass must be Type I transparent flat type, Class 1 - clear, Quality q3 - glazing select, 36 percent light transmittance, 0.22 percent shading coefficient, conforming to ASTM C1036. Color must be gray-blue.

2.1.3 Laminated Glass

ASTM C1172, Kind LA fabricated from two nominal 6 mm pieces of Type I, Class 1, Quality q3, flat annealed transparent glass conforming to ASTM C1036. Flat glass must be laminated together with a minimum of 0.030 inch thick, clear polyvinyl butyral interlayer with a total nominal thickness of 12 mm.

2.1.4 Bullet-Resisting Glass

Fabricated from Type I, Class 1, Quality q3 glass with polyvinyl butyral plastic interlayers between the layers of glass and listed by UL MEAPD as bullet resisting, with a power rating of Medium-Small Arms in accordance with UL 752. Provide at security window.

2.1.5 Spandrel Glass

2.1.5.1 Ceramic-Opacified Spandrel Glass

Ceramic-opacified spandrel glass must be Kind HS heat-strengthened transparent flat type, Condition B, coated with a colored ceramic material on No. 2 surface, Quality q3 - glazing select, 6 mm thick, conforming to ASTM C1048. Glass performance must be U-Value/Winter Nighttime 0.29, relative heat gain 48, shading coefficient 0.22. Color must be Crystal Grey.

2.2 INSULATING GLASS UNITS

Two panes of glass separated by a dehydrated 1/2 inch airspace, filled

with argon gas, and hermetically sealed. Non-residential glazed systems (including frames and glass) must be certified by the National Fenestration Rating Council with a whole-window Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC) maximum of 0.20 determined according to NFRC 200 procedures and a U-factor maximum of 0.29 in accordance with NFRC 100. Glazing must meet or exceed a luminous efficacy of 1.0. Glazed panels must be rated for not less than 35 Sound Transmission Class (STC) when tested for laboratory sound transmission loss according to ASTM E90 and determined by ASTM E413. Dimensional tolerances must be as specified in IGMA TB-1200. Spacer must be black, roll-formed, match manufacturers standard spacer material and construction, with bent or tightly welded or keyed and sealed joints to completely seal the spacer periphery and eliminate moisture and hydrocarbon vapor transmission into airspace through the corners. Primary seal must be compressed polyisobutylene and the secondary seal must be a specially formulated silicone.

2.2.1 Buildings

Two panes of glass separated by a dehydrated airspace and hermetically sealed.

Insulated glass units must have a Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC) maximum of 0.20 and a U-factor maximum of 0.29 Btu per square foot by hr by degree F.

Glazing must meet or exceed a luminous efficacy of 1.0. Glazed panels must be rated for not less than 35 Sound Transmission Class (STC) when tested for laboratory sound transmission loss according to ASTM E90 and determined by ASTM E413.

Dimensional tolerances must be as specified in IGMA TB-1200. Spacer must be black, roll-formed, match manufacturers standard material and construction, with bent or tightly welded or keyed and sealed joints to completely seal the spacer periphery and eliminate moisture and hydrocarbon vapor transmission into airspace through the corners. Primary seal must be compressed polyisobutylene and the secondary seal must be a specially formulated silicone.

The inner light must be ASTM C1172, clear annealed flat glass Type I, Class I, Quality q3. The outer light must be ASTM C1036, Type I, Class, 2 (solar-reflective).

2.2.2 Low Emissivity Insulating Glass

Interior and exterior glass panes for Low-E insulating units must be Type I annealed flat glass, Class 2-tinted with anti-reflective low-emissivity coating on No. 2 surface (inside surface of exterior pane), Quality q3 - glazing select, conforming to ASTM C1036. Glass performance must be U value maximum of 0.29, Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC) maximum of 0.2. Color must be crystal gray.

2.3 SETTING AND SEALING MATERIALS

Provide as specified in the GANA Glazing Manual, IGMA TM-3000, IGMA TB-3001, and manufacturer's recommendations, unless specified otherwise herein. Do not use metal sash putty, nonskinning compounds, nonresilient preformed sealers, or impregnated preformed gaskets. Materials exposed to view and unpainted must be gray or neutral color.

2.3.1 Putty and Glazing Compound

Provide glazing compound as recommended by manufacturer for face-glazing metal sash. Putty must be linseed oil type. Do not use putty and glazing compounds with insulating glass or laminated glass.

2.3.2 Glazing Compound

Use for face glazing metal sash. Do not use with insulating glass units or laminated glass.

2.3.3 Sealants

Provide elastomeric sealants.

2.3.3.1 Elastomeric Sealant

ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 12.5, Use G. Use for channel or stop glazing metal sash. Sealant must be chemically compatible with setting blocks, edge blocks, and sealing tapes, with sealants used in manufacture of insulating glass units. Color of sealant must be white.

2.3.3.2 Structural Sealant

ASTM C1184, Type S.

2.3.4 Joint Backer

Joint backer must have a diameter size at least 25 percent larger than joint width; type and material as recommended in writing by glass and sealant manufacturer.

2.3.5 Preformed Channels

Neoprene, vinyl, or rubber, as recommended by the glass manufacturer for the particular condition. Channels for bullet-resistant glass must be synthetic rubber, ASTM C864, not less than 1/4 inch thick and sufficiently resilient to accommodate expansion and contraction while maintaining a vaportight seal between glass and frame. Channels must be chemically compatible with plastic sheet.

2.3.6 Preformed Vinyl Extrusions

Preformed, semisolid, PVC-based material of proper size and compressibility for the particular condition, complying with ASTM D2287. Use only where glazing rabbet is designed for tape and tape is recommended by the glass or sealant manufacturer. Provide spacer shims for use with compressible tapes. Tapes must be chemically compatible with the product being set.

2.3.7 Setting Blocks and Edge Blocks

Closed-cell neoprene setting blocks must be dense extruded type conforming to ASTM C509 and ASTM D395, Method B, Shore A durometer between 70 and 90. Edge blocking must be Shore A durometer of 50 (plus or minus 5). Provide silicone setting blocks when blocks are in contact with silicone sealant. Profiles, lengths and locations must be as required and recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Block color must be black.

2.3.8 Glazing Gaskets

Glazing gaskets must be extruded with continuous integral locking projection designed to engage into metal glass holding members to provide a watertight seal during dynamic loading, building movements and thermal movements. Glazing gaskets for a single glazed opening must be continuous one-piece units with factory-fabricated injection-molded corners free of flashing and burrs. Glazing gaskets must be in lengths or units recommended by manufacturer to ensure against pull-back at corners. Provide glazing gasket profiles as recommended by the manufacturer for the intended application.

2.3.8.1 Fixed Glazing Gaskets

Fixed glazing gaskets must be closed-cell (sponge) smooth extruded compression gaskets of cured elastomeric virgin neoprene compounds conforming to [ASTM C509](#), Type 2, Option 1.

2.3.8.2 Wedge Glazing Gaskets

Wedge glazing gaskets must be high-quality extrusions of cured elastomeric virgin neoprene compounds, ozone resistant, conforming to [ASTM C864](#), Option 1, Shore A durometer between 65 and 75.

2.3.8.3 Aluminum Framing Glazing Gaskets

Glazing gaskets for aluminum framing must be permanent, elastic, non-shrinking, non-migrating, watertight and weathertight.

2.3.9 Accessories

Provide as required for a complete installation, including glazing points, clips, shims, angles, beads, and spacer strips. Provide noncorroding metal accessories. Provide primer-sealers and cleaners as recommended by the glass and sealant manufacturers.

PART 3 EXECUTION

Any materials that show visual evidence of biological growth due to the presence of moisture must not be installed on the building project.

3.1 PREPARATION

Preparation, unless otherwise specified or approved, must conform to applicable recommendations in the [GANA Glazing Manual](#), [GANA Sealant Manual](#), [IGMA TB-3001](#), [IGMA TM-3000](#), and manufacturer's recommendations. Determine the sizes to provide the required edge clearances by measuring the actual opening to receive the glass. Grind smooth in the shop glass edges that will be exposed in finish work. Leave labels in place until the installation is approved, except remove applied labels on heat-absorbing glass and on insulating glass units as soon as glass is installed. Securely fix movable items or keep in a closed and locked position until glazing compound has thoroughly set.

3.2 GLASS SETTING

Shop glaze or field glaze items to be glazed using glass of the quality and thickness specified or indicated. Glazing, unless otherwise specified or approved, must conform to applicable recommendations in the

GANA Glazing Manual, GANA Sealant Manual, IGMA TB-3001, IGMA TM-3000, and manufacturer's recommendations. Aluminum windows, wood doors, and wood windows may be glazed in conformance with one of the glazing methods described in the standards under which they are produced, except that face puttying with no bedding will not be permitted. Handle and install glazing materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Use beads or stops which are furnished with items to be glazed to secure the glass in place. Verify products are properly installed, connected, and adjusted.

3.2.1 Sheet Glass

Cut and set with the visible lines or waves horizontal.

3.2.2 Patterned Glass

Set glass with one patterned surface with smooth surface on the weather side. When used for interior partitions, place the patterned surface in same direction in all openings.

3.2.3 Insulating Glass Units

Do not grind, nip, or cut edges or corners of units after the units have left the factory. Springing, forcing, or twisting of units during setting will not be permitted. Handle units so as not to strike frames or other objects. Installation must conform to applicable recommendations of IGMA TB-3001 and IGMA TM-3000.

3.2.4 Installation of Wire Glass

Install glass for fire doors in accordance with installation requirements of NFPA 80.

3.2.5 Installation of Heat-Absorbing Glass

Provide glass with clean-cut, factory-fabricated edges. Field cutting will not be permitted.

3.2.6 Installation of Laminated Glass

Sashes which are to receive laminated glass must be weeped to the outside to allow water drainage into the channel.

3.2.7 Plastic Sheet

Conform to manufacturer's recommendations for edge clearance, type of sealant and tape, and method of installation.

3.3 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR GLAZING CONTROL TOWER WINDOWS

3.3.1 Materials and Methods of Installation

Comply with the manufacturer's warranty and written instructions, except as indicated. Install units with the heat-absorbing glass to the exterior. Secure glass in place with bolts and spring clips. The minimum clearance between bolts and edge of glass unit must be 3/16 inch. The glass must be edged with 3/16 inch thick continuous neoprene, vinyl, or other approved material. Trim edging after installation. The channel shapes or strips must be firmly held against the glass by the spring action of the extruded metal moldings. Resilient setting blocks, spacer strips, clips, bolts,

washers, angles, applicable glazing compound, and resilient channels or cemented-on materials must be as recommended in the written instructions of the glass manufacturer, as approved.

3.3.2 Tolerances and Clearances of Units

Design to prevent the transfer of stress in the setting frames to the glass. Springing, twisting, or forcing of units during setting will not be permitted.

3.4 CLEANING

Clean glass surfaces and remove labels, paint spots, putty, and other defacement as required to prevent staining. Glass must be clean at the time the work is accepted. Clean plastic sheet in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.5 PROTECTION

Protect glass work immediately after installation. Identify glazed openings with suitable warning tapes, cloth or paper flags, attached with non-staining adhesives. Protect reflective glass with a protective material to eliminate any contamination of the reflective coating. Place protective material far enough away from the coated glass to allow air to circulate to reduce heat buildup and moisture accumulation on the glass. [Upon removal, separate protective materials for reuse or recycling.](#) Remove and replace glass units which are broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or otherwise damaged during construction activities with new units.

3.6 GLAZING SCHEDULE

3.6.1 Monolithic Glass

3.6.1.1 CFG

Clear float glass. For interior locations not required to be safety glass. 6mm clear annealed glass.

3.6.2 Laminated Glass

3.6.2.1 LG

Clear laminated glass at interior locations not required to be fire rated.

- a. Outer Lite: 3mm clear annealed glass.
- b. Interlayer: 30 mil.
- c. Inner Lite: 3mm clear annealed glass.
- d. Performance Requirements: STC 30

3.6.2.2 XLG

Laminated Glass at exterior doors where glazing channel cannot accommodate insulated unit.

- a. Outer Lite: 6mm annealed glass, color to match IGU system.

- b. Interlayer: As required for blast and windborne debris large missile requirements. SNX 51/23 coating or equivalent coating applied to surface #2.
- c. Inner Lite: 6mm annealed glass, color to match IGU system.
- d. Performance Requirements:
 - 1. Visible Light Transmission: 36 percent
 - 2. U-Value: 0.88
 - 3. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: 0.36
 - 4. Blast Requirements per UFC 4-010-01 Standard 10 Glazing.
 - 5. Windborne Debris - Large Missile test ASTM E1996

3.6.3 Fire-Rated Bullet Resistant Glass

3.6.3.1 FRBRG

Fire Rate Bullet Resistant laminated glass for interior locations.

- a. Outer Lite: As required to meet bullet resistance.
- b. Interlayer: As required to meet bullet resistance.
- c. Inner Lite: As required to meet bullet resistance.
- d. Performance Requirements: Fire rated to 45 minutes. Bullet Resistance Rating to Level III.

3.6.4 Insulating Glass Units

3.6.4.1 IGU

Insulating Glass Units, typical at exterior windows and storefronts.

- a. Basis of Design: Guardian Sunguard SNX 51/23
- b. Outer Lite: 6mm Light Gray Tinted Heat Strengthened. SNX 51/23 coating or equivalent coating applied to Surface #2
- c. Air Space: 1/2 inch.
- d. Inner Lite Laminated:
 - 1. Outer Lite: 6mm clear.
 - 2. Interlayer: 90 mil.
 - 3. Inner Lite: 6mm clear.
 - 4. Total Unit Thickness: 1-5/16 inch.
 - 5. Performance Requirements:
 - (a) Visible Light Transmission: 36 percent.
 - (b) U-Value: 0.29
 - (c) Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: 0.2

- (d) Blast Requirements per UFC 4-010-01 Standard 10 Glazing.
- (e) Windborne Debris - Large Missile test ASTM E1996

3.6.4.2 TIGU

Insulating Glass Units, at exterior where safety glazing is required.

- a. Basis of Design: Guardian Sunguard SNX 51/23
- b. Outer Lite: 6mm Light Gray Tinted Heat Strengthened. SNX 51/23 coating or equivalent coating applied to Surface #2
- c. Air Space: 1/2 inch.
- d. Inner Lite Laminated:
 - 1. Outer Lite: 6mm clear.
 - 2. Interlayer: 90 mil.
 - 3. Inner Lite: 6mm clear.
 - 4. Total Unit Thickness: 1-5/16 inch.
 - 5. Performance Requirements:
 - (a) Visible Light Transmission: 36 percent.
 - (b) U-Value: 0.29
 - (c) Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: 0.2
 - (d) Blast Requirements per UFC 4-010-01 Standard 10 Glazing.
 - (e) Windborne Debris - Large Missile test ASTM E1996

3.6.5 Spandrel Glass

3.6.5.1 SIGU

Insulating Glass Units, at Spandrel locations.

- a. Basis of Design: Guardian Sunguard SNX 51/23
- b. Outer Lite: 6mm Light Gray Tinted Heat Strengthened. SNX 51/23 coating or equivalent coating applied to Surface #2
- c. Air Space: 1/2 inch.
- d. Inner Lite Laminated:
 - 1. Outer Lite: 6mm clear.
 - 2. Interlayer: 90 mil.
 - 3. Inner Lite: 6mm Warm Gray Frit.

4. Total Unit Thickness: 1-5/16 inch.
5. Performance Requirements:
 - (a) Visible Light Transmission: 1 percent.
 - (b) U-Value: 0.29
 - (c) Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: 0.16
 - (d) Blast Requirements per UFC 4-010-01 Standard 10 Glazing.
 - (e) Windborne Debris - Large Missile test ASTM E1996

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 08 88 53

DETENTION AND SECURITY GLAZING

05/11

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ARCHITECTURAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (AAMA)

AAMA MCWM-1 (1989) Metal Curtain Wall Manual

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C158 (2002; R 2017) Standard Test Methods for Strength of Glass by Flexure (Determination of Modulus of Rupture)

ASTM C864 (2005; R 2015) Dense Elastomeric Compression Seal Gaskets, Setting Blocks, and Spacers

ASTM C920 (2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants

GLASS ASSOCIATION OF NORTH AMERICA (GANA)

GANA Glazing Manual (2008) Glazing Manual

GANA Sealant Manual (2008) Sealant Manual

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Glazing materials

Include glass manufacturer's printed literature for setting and sealing materials and for cleaning of each type of glazing material specified.

SD-04 Samples

Glazing materials

Submit samples, 10 inches square, factory labeled, for each type

of glazing specified.

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Glass setting

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver products to the site in their original unopened containers, plainly labeled with manufacturers' names and brands. Store all glass and setting materials in safe, dry locations and do not unpack until needed for installation. Handle and install materials in a manner that protects them from damage.

1.4 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

Do not start glazing work until the outdoor temperature is above 40 degrees F and rising unless approved provisions are made to warm the glass and rabbet surfaces. Provide sufficient ventilation to prevent condensation of moisture on glazing work during installation. Do not perform glazing work during wet weather.

1.5 WARRANTY

Warranty glass units against development of material obstruction to vision as a result of delamination, other than through glass breakage for at least a 5 year period from the date of acceptance of the work. Provide new units for units failing to comply with terms of this warranty no later than 45 working days following receipt of notice from the Government.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 DETENTION GLAZING ASSEMBLIES

2.1.1 Glass Laminated (Bonded) Construction

Two or more layers (plies) of chemically-strengthened float glass bonded together with polyvinyl butyral (PVB).

2.2 DETENTION GLAZING MATERIALS

2.2.1 Glass, Chemically Strengthened

ASTM C158, transparent prestressed.

2.3 DETENTION GLAZING TYPES

- a. Type 4: 7/16 inch nominal laminated glass: 1/8 inch clear chemically-strengthened glass, 0.090 inch polyvinyl butyral interlayer, 1/8 inch clear chemically-strengthened glass, 0.090 inch polyvinyl butyral interlayer, 1/8 inch clear chemically-strengthened glass. Glazing to work with security frame to meet a 45 minute fire rating and a Level III bullet resistance rating.

2.4 SETTING MATERIALS

Provide types required for the applicable setting method specified in GANA Glazing Manual and GANA Sealant Manual, except as modified in this section. Do not use metal sash putty, nonskinning compounds, nonresilient

preformed sealers, or impregnated preformed gaskets. Materials exposed to view shall be gray or neutral color.

2.4.1 Glazing Compound

Use for face glazing metal sash. Verify compatibility with materials in glazing assembly.

2.4.2 Elastomeric Sealant

ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 12.5, use NT. Use for channel or stop glazing metal sash. Sealant shall be chemically compatible with setting blocks, edge blocks, and sealing tapes, and with plastic sheet. Color of sealant shall be white.

2.4.3 Preformed Channels

Neoprene, **AAMA MCWM-1**, as recommended by the glass manufacturer for the particular condition. Channels shall be chemically compatible with plastic sheet.

2.4.4 Sealing Tapes

Preformed, semisolid, polymeric-based material of proper size and compressibility for the particular condition. Use only where glazing rabbet is designed for tape and tape is recommended by the glass or sealant manufacturer. Provide spacer shims for use with compressible tapes. Tapes shall be chemically compatible with plastic sheet.

2.4.5 Setting Blocks and Edge Blocks

ASTM C864 neoprene of 70 to 90 Shore "A" durometer hardness, chemically compatible with sealants used, and of sizes recommended by the glass manufacturer.

2.4.6 Accessories

As required to provide a complete installation, including glazing points, clips, shims, angles, beads, and spacer strips. Provide noncorroding metal accessories. Provide primer-sealers and cleaners as recommended by the glass and sealant manufacturers.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 GLAZING TYPES

Locations and types of glass for use in glazed openings as indicated.

3.2 PREPARATION

Determine the sizes to provide the required edge clearances by measuring the actual opening to receive the glass. Leave labels in place until the installation is approved. Securely attach movable items or keep in a closed and locked position until glazing compound has thoroughly set.

3.3 GLASS SETTING

Items to be glazed shall be either shop or field glazed using glass of the quality and thickness specified. Preparation and glazing shall conform to

applicable recommendations in the **ANA Glazing Manual** and **ANA Sealant Manual**. Handle and install glazing materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Use beads or stops furnished with items to be glazed to secure glass in place.

3.4 CLEANING

Clean glass surfaces and remove labels, paint spots, putty, and other defacement. Glass shall be clean at the time the work is accepted. Clean plastic sheet in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.5 SCHEDULE

Please refer to Glazing Schedule included in Section 08 81 00 GLAZING, paragraph 3.6.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 08 91 00

METAL WALL LOUVERS

05/11

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR MOVEMENT AND CONTROL ASSOCIATION INTERNATIONAL, INC. (AMCA)

AMCA 500-L (2015) Laboratory Methods of Testing
Louvers for Rating

AMCA 511 (2010) Certified Ratings Program for Air
Control Devices

AMERICAN ARCHITECTURAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (AAMA)

AAMA 2605 (2017a) Voluntary Specification,
Performance Requirements and Test
Procedures for Superior Performing Organic
Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A1008/A1008M (2016) Standard Specification for Steel,
Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural,
High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength
Low-Alloy with Improved Formability,
Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable

ASTM A653/A653M (2017) Standard Specification for Steel
Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or
Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by
the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM B209 (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum
and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate

ASTM B221 (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum
and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,
Wire, Profiles, and Tubes

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Wall louvers

SD-03 Product Data

Metal Wall Louvers

SD-04 Samples

Wall louvers; G

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

Deliver materials to the site in an undamaged condition. Carefully store materials off the ground to provide proper ventilation, drainage, and protection against dampness. Louvers shall be free from nicks, scratches, and blemishes. Replace defective or damaged materials with new.

1.4 DETAIL DRAWINGS

Show all information necessary for fabrication and installation of wall louvers. Indicate materials, sizes, thicknesses, fastenings, and profiles.

1.5 COLOR SAMPLES

Colors of finishes for wall louvers shall closely approximate colors indicated. Where color is not indicated, submit the manufacturer's standard colors to the Contracting Officer for selection.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

2.1.1 Galvanized Steel Sheet

ASTM A653/A653M, coating designation G90.

2.1.2 Aluminum Sheet

ASTM B209, alloy 3003 or 5005 with temper as required for forming.

2.1.3 Extruded Aluminum

ASTM B221, alloy 6063-T5 or -T52.

2.1.4 Cold Rolled Steel Sheet

ASTM A1008/A1008M, Class 1, with matte finish. Use for interior louvers only.

2.2 METAL WALL LOUVERS

Weather resistant type, with bird screens and made to withstand a wind load of not less than 30 pounds per square foot. Wall louvers must bear the AMCA certified ratings program seal for air performance and water penetration in accordance with AMCA 500-L and AMCA 511. The rating must show a water penetration of 0.20 or less ounce per square foot of free area at a free velocity of 800 feet per minute.

2.2.1 Extruded Aluminum Louvers

Fabricated of extruded 6063-T5 or -T52 aluminum with a wall thickness of not less than 0.081 inch.

2.2.2 Screens and Frames

Provide 1/2 inch square mesh, 14 or 16 gage aluminum bird screening. Mount screens in removable, rewirable frames of same material and finish as the louvers.

2.3 FASTENERS AND ACCESSORIES

Provide stainless steel screws and fasteners for aluminum louvers and zinc-coated or stainless steel screws and fasteners for steel louvers. Provide other accessories as required for complete and proper installation.

2.4 FINISHES

2.4.1 Aluminum

Exposed aluminum surfaces shall be factory finished with an organic coating. Color shall be as indicated. Louvers shall have the same finish.

2.4.1.1 Organic Coating

Clean and prime exposed aluminum surfaces. Provide a high-performance finish in accordance with AAMA 2605 with total dry film thickness of not less than 1.2 mil, color as indicated.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

3.1.1 Wall Louvers

Install using stops or moldings, flanges, strap anchors, or jamb fasteners as appropriate for the wall construction and in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

3.1.2 Screens and Frames

Attach frames to louvers with screws or bolts.

3.2 PROTECTION FROM CONTACT OF DISSIMILAR MATERIALS

3.2.1 Copper or Copper-Bearing Alloys

Paint copper or copper-bearing alloys in contact with dissimilar metal with heavy-bodied bituminous paint or separate with inert membrane.

3.2.2 Aluminum

Where aluminum contacts metal other than zinc, paint the dissimilar metal with a primer and two coats of aluminum paint.

3.2.3 Metal

Paint metal in contact with mortar, concrete, or other masonry materials

with alkali-resistant coatings such as heavy-bodied bituminous paint.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 09 22 00

SUPPORTS FOR GYPSUM BOARD

02/10

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION (AISC)

AISC 341 (2016) Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A463/A463M (2010; R 2015) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Aluminum-Coated, by the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM A653/A653M (2017) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM C645 (2014; E 2015) Nonstructural Steel Framing Members

ASTM C754 (2018) Standard Specification for Installation of Steel Framing Members to Receive Screw-Attached Gypsum Panel Products

ASTM C841 (2003; R 2013) Installation of Interior Lathing and Furring

ASTM C847 (2014a) Standard Specification for Metal Lath

NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF ARCHITECTURAL METAL MANUFACTURERS (NAAMM)

NAAMM EMLA 920 (2009) Guide Specifications for Metal Lathing and Furring

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL Fire Resistance (2014) Fire Resistance Directory

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING.

Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Metal Support Systems; G

Submit for the erection of metal framing, furring, and ceiling suspension systems. Indicate materials, sizes, thicknesses, and fastenings.

SD-03 Product Data

Metal Support Systems

Recycled Content for Metal Support Systems; S

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver materials to the job site and store in ventilated dry locations permitting easy access for inspection and handling. If materials are stored outdoors, stack materials off the ground, supported on a level platform, and fully protected from the weather. Handle materials carefully to prevent damage. Remove damaged items and provide new items.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

Provide steel materials for metal support systems with galvanized coating ASTM A653/A653M, G-60; aluminum coating ASTM A463/A463M, T1-25; or a 55-percent aluminum-zinc coating. Provide support systems and attachments per AISC 341 in seismic zones.

Provide metal support systems containing a minimum of 20 percent recycled content. Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for metal support systems.

2.1.1 Materials for Attachment of Lath

2.1.1.1 Suspended and Furred Ceiling Systems and Wall Furring

ASTM C841, and ASTM C847.

2.1.1.2 Non-loadbearing Wall Framing

NAAMM EMLA 920.

2.1.2 Materials for Attachment of Gypsum Wallboard

2.1.2.1 Suspended and Furred Ceiling Systems

ASTM C645.

2.1.2.2 Nonload-Bearing Wall Framing and Furring

ASTM C645, but not thinner than 0.0179 inch thickness, with 0.0329 inch minimum thickness supporting wall hung items such as cabinetwork, equipment and fixtures.

2.1.2.3 Furring Structural Steel Columns

ASTM C645. Steel (furring) clips and support angles listed in UL Fire Resistance may be provided in lieu of steel studs for erection of gypsum wallboard around structural steel columns.

2.1.2.4 Z-Furring Channels with Wall Insulation

Not lighter than 26 gage galvanized steel, Z-shaped, with 1-1/4 inch and 3/4 inch flanges and 1 1/2 inch furring depth or depth as required by the insulation thickness provided.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

3.1.1 Systems for Attachment of Gypsum Wallboard

3.1.1.1 Suspended and Furred Ceiling Systems

ASTM C754, except provide framing members 16 inches o.c. unless indicated otherwise.

3.1.1.2 Non-loadbearing Wall Framing and Furring

ASTM C754, except as indicated otherwise.

3.1.1.3 Furring Structural Steel Columns

Install studs or galvanized steel clips and support angles for erection of gypsum wallboard around structural steel columns in accordance with the UL Fire Resistance, design number(s) of the fire resistance rating indicated.

3.1.1.4 Z-Furring Channels with Wall Insulation

Install Z-furring channels vertically spaced not more than 24 inches o.c. Locate Z-furring channels at interior and exterior corners in accordance with manufacturer's printed erection instructions.

3.2 ERECTION TOLERANCES

Provide framing members which will be covered by finish materials such as wallboard, plaster, or ceramic tile set in a mortar setting bed, within the following limits:

- a. Layout of walls and partitions: 1/4 inch from intended position;
- b. Plates and runners: 1/4 inch in 8 feet from a straight line;
- c. Studs: 1/4 inch in 8 feet out of plumb, not cumulative; and
- d. Face of framing members: 1/4 inch in 8 feet from a true plane.

Provide framing members which will be covered by ceramic tile set in dry-set mortar, latex-portland cement mortar, or organic adhesive within the following limits:

- a. Layout of walls and partitions: 1/4 inch from intended position;

- b. Plates and runners: 1/8 inch in 8 feet from a straight line;
 - c. Studs: 1/8 inch in 8 feet out of plumb, not cumulative; and
 - d. Face of framing members: 1/8 inch in 8 feet from a true plane.
- End of Section --

SECTION 09 29 00

GYPSUM BOARD

08/16

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI A108.11 (1992; Reaffirmed 2005) Specifications for Interior Installation of Cementitious Backer Units

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C1002 (2018) Standard Specification for Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs

ASTM C1047 (2014a) Standard Specification for Accessories for Gypsum Wallboard and Gypsum Veneer Base

ASTM C1177/C1177M (2017) Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing

ASTM C1178/C1178M (2013) Standard Specification for Glass Mat Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Panel

ASTM C1396/C1396M (2017) Standard Specification for Gypsum Board

ASTM C475/C475M (2017) Standard Specification for Joint Compound and Joint Tape for Finishing Gypsum Board

ASTM C514 (2004; R 2014) Standard Specification for Nails for the Application of Gypsum Board

ASTM C840 (2017) Standard Specification for Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board

ASTM C954 (2018) Standard Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs from 0.033 in. (0.84 mm) to 0.112 in. (2.84 mm) in Thickness

ASTM D1149 (2007; R 2012) Standard Test Method for Rubber Deterioration - Surface Ozone

Cracking in a Chamber

ASTM D226/D226M	(2017) Standard Specification for Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing
ASTM D3273	(2016) Standard Test Method for Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber
ASTM D412	(2016) Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers - Tension
ASTM D624	(2000; R 2012) Tear Strength of Conventional Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350	(2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources using Environmental Chambers

FM GLOBAL (FM)

FM APP GUIDE	(updated on-line) Approval Guide http://www.approvalguide.com/

GREEN SEAL (GS)

GS-36	(2013) Adhesives for Commercial Use

GYPSUM ASSOCIATION (GA)

GA 214	(2010) Recommended Levels of Gypsum Board Finish
GA 216	(2010) Application and Finishing of Gypsum Panel Products
GA 253	(2012) Application of Gypsum Sheathing
GA 600	(2009) Fire Resistance Design Manual

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS	SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168	(2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818	(2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program For Chemical Emissions For Building

Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

UL Fire Resistance

(2014) Fire Resistance Directory

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Cementitious Backer Units

Glass Mat Water-Resistant Gypsum Tile Backing Board

Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board

Glass Mat Covered or Reinforced Gypsum Sheathing

Glass Mat Covered or Reinforced Gypsum Sheathing Sealant

Accessories

Submit for each type of gypsum board and for cementitious backer units.

Gypsum Board

VOC Content of Joint Compound; S

SD-07 Certificates

Asbestos Free Materials; G

Certify that gypsum board types, gypsum backing board types, cementitious backer units, and joint treating materials do not contain asbestos.

Indoor Air Quality for Gypsum Board; S

Indoor Air Quality for Non-aerosol Adhesives; S

Indoor Air Quality for Aerosol Adhesives; S

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Safety Data Sheets

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Manufacturer Maintenance Instructions

1.3 CERTIFICATIONS

1.3.1 Indoor Air Quality Certifications

Submit required indoor air quality certifications in one submittal package.

1.3.1.1 Ceiling and Wall Systems

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by [UL 2818](#) (Greenguard) Gold, [SCS](#) Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party program that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited herein.

1.3.1.2 Adhesives and Sealants

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by [UL 2818](#) (Greenguard) Gold, [SCS](#) Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party program that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited herein.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.4.1 Delivery

Deliver materials in the original packages, containers, or bundles with each bearing the brand name, applicable standard designation, and name of manufacturer, or supplier.

1.4.2 Storage

Keep materials dry by storing inside a sheltered building. Where necessary to store gypsum board and cementitious backer units outside, store off the ground, properly supported on a level platform, and protected from direct exposure to rain, snow, sunlight, and other extreme weather conditions. Provide adequate ventilation to prevent condensation. Store per manufacturer's recommendations for allowable temperature and humidity range. [Do not store gypsum wallboard with materials which have high emissions of volatile organic compounds \(VOCs\) or other contaminants.](#) Do not store panels near materials that may offgas or emit harmful fumes, such as kerosene heaters, fresh paint, or adhesives. Do not use materials that have visible moisture or biological growth.

1.4.3 Handling

Neatly stack gypsum board and cementitious backer units flat to prevent sagging or damage to the edges, ends, and surfaces.

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS

Furnish type of gypsum board work specialized by the installer with a minimum of 3 years of documented successful experience.

1.6 SCHEDULING

Commence application only after the area scheduled for gypsum board work is completely weathertight. The heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning systems must be complete and in operation prior to application of the gypsum board. If the mechanical system cannot be activated before gypsum board is begun, the gypsum board work may proceed in accordance with an approved plan to maintain the environmental conditions specified below. Apply gypsum board prior to the installation of finish flooring and acoustic ceiling.

1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Do not expose the gypsum board to excessive sunlight prior to gypsum board application. Maintain a continuous uniform temperature of not less than 50 degrees F and not more than 80 degrees F for at least one week prior to the application of gypsum board work, while the gypsum board application is being done, and for at least one week after the gypsum board is set. Shield air supply and distribution devices to prevent any uneven flow of air across the plastered surfaces. Provide ventilation to exhaust moist air to the outside during gypsum board application, set, and until gypsum board jointing is dry. In glazed areas, keep windows open top and bottom or side to side 3 to 4 inches. Reduce openings in cold weather to prevent freezing of joint compound when applied. For enclosed areas lacking natural ventilation, provide temporary mechanical means for ventilation. In unglazed areas subjected to hot, dry winds or temperature differentials from day to night of 20 degrees F or more, screen openings with cheesecloth or similar materials. Avoid rapid drying. During periods of low indoor humidity, provide minimum air circulation following gypsum boarding and until gypsum board jointing complete and is dry.

1.8 FIRE RESISTIVE CONSTRUCTION

Comply with specified fire-rated assemblies for design numbers indicated per UL Fire Resistance or FM APP GUIDE.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

Conform to specifications, standards and requirements specified. Provide gypsum board types, gypsum backing board types, cementitious backing units, and joint treating materials manufactured from asbestos free materials only. Submit Safety Data Sheets and manufacturer maintenance instructions for gypsum materials including adhesives.

2.1.1 Gypsum Board

ASTM C1396/C1396M. Provide gypsum wall board and panels meeting the emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type). Provide certification or validation of indoor air quality for gypsum board.

2.1.1.1 Regular

48 inch wide, 5/8 inch thick, tapered edges. Provide tapered and featured edge gypsum board for all walls over 12 feet in length.

2.1.1.2 Type X (Special Fire-Resistant)

48 inch wide, 5/8 inch thick, tapered edges.

2.1.1.3 Mold Resistant / Anti-Microbial Gypsum

ASTM D3273. 48 inch wide, 1/2 inch thick, tapered edges.

2.1.2 Regular Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board

ASTM C1396/C1396M

2.1.2.1 Regular

48 inch wide, 5/8 inch thick, tapered edges.

2.1.2.2 Type X (Special Fire-Resistant)

48 inch wide, 5/8 inch thick, tapered edges.

2.1.3 Glass Mat Water-Resistant Gypsum Tile Backing Board

ASTM C1178/C1178M

2.1.3.1 Regular

48 inch wide, 5/8 inch thick, square edges.

2.1.3.2 Type X (Special Fire-Resistant)

48 inch wide, 5/8 inch thick, square edges.

2.1.4 Glass Mat Covered or Reinforced Gypsum Sheathing

Exceeds physical properties of ASTM C1396/C1396M and ASTM C1177/C1177M. Provide 5/8 inch, gypsum sheathing. Provide gypsum board of with a noncombustible water-resistant core, with glass mat surfaces embedded to the gypsum core or reinforcing embedded throughout the gypsum core. Warrant gypsum sheathing board for at least twelve months against delamination due to direct weather exposure. Provide continuous, asphalt impregnated, building felt to cover exterior face of sheathing. Seal all joints, seams, and penetrations with compatible sealant.

2.1.4.1 Glass Mat Covered or Reinforced Gypsum Sheathing Sealant

Provide sealant compatible with glass mat covered or reinforced gypsum sheathing, rubber washers for masonry veneer anchors, and other associated cavity wall components such as anchors and through wall flashing. Provide sealants for glass mat covered or reinforced gypsum sheathing board edge seams and veneer anchor penetrations recommended by the glass mat covered or reinforced gypsum sheathing manufacturer and have the following performance requirements:

- a. ASTM D412: Tensile Strength, 80 psi
- b. ASTM D412: Ultimate Tensile Strength (maximum elongation), 170 psi
- c. ASTM D624: Tear Strength, dieB, 27 ppi
- d. ASTM D1149: Joint Movement Capability after 14 Days cure, plus or minus 50 percent.

2.1.1.5 Cementitious Backer Units

In accordance with the Tile Council of America (TCA) Handbook.

2.1.1.6 Joint Treatment Materials

ASTM C475/C475M. Product must be low emitting VOC types with VOC limits not exceeding 50 g/L. Provide data identifying **VOC content of joint compound**. Use all purpose joint and texturing compound containing inert fillers and natural binders, including lime compound. Pre-mixed compounds must be free of antifreeze, vinyl adhesives, preservatives, biocides and other slow releasing compounds.

2.1.1.6.1 Embedding Compound

Specifically formulated and manufactured for use in embedding tape at gypsum board joints and compatible with tape, substrate and fasteners.

2.1.1.6.2 Finishing or Topping Compound

Specifically formulated and manufactured for use as a finishing compound.

2.1.1.6.3 All-Purpose Compound

Specifically formulated and manufactured to serve as both a taping and a finishing compound and compatible with tape, substrate and fasteners.

2.1.1.6.4 Setting or Hardening Type Compound

Specifically formulated and manufactured for use with fiber glass mesh tape.

2.1.1.6.5 Joint Tape

Use cross-laminated, tapered edge, reinforced paper, or fiber glass mesh tape recommended by the manufacturer.

2.1.1.7 Fasteners

2.1.1.7.1 Nails

ASTM C514.

2.1.1.7.2 Screws

ASTM C1002, Type "G", Type "S" or Type "W" steel drill screws for fastening gypsum board to gypsum board, wood framing members and steel framing members less than **0.033 inch** thick. **ASTM C954** steel drill screws for fastening gypsum board to steel framing members **0.033 to 0.112 inch** thick. Provide cementitious backer unit screws with a polymer coating.

2.1.1.7.3 Staples

No. 16 USS gage flattened galvanized wire staples with **7/16 inch** wide crown outside measurement and divergent point for base ply of two-ply gypsum board application. Use as follows:

<u>Length of Legs</u>	<u>Thickness of Gypsum Board</u>
1-1/8 inches	1/2 inch
1-1/4 inches	5/8 inch

2.1.1.8 Adhesives

Provide non-aerosol adhesive products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) meeting either emissions requirements of [CDPH SECTION 01350](#) (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of [SCAQMD Rule 1168](#). Provide aerosol adhesive products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) meeting either emissions requirements of [CDPH SECTION 01350](#) (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of [GS-36](#). Provide certification or validation of [indoor air quality for non-aerosol adhesives](#) applied on the interior of the building (inside of the weatherproofing system). Provide certification or validation of [indoor air quality for aerosol adhesives](#) used on the interior of the building (inside of the weatherproofing system).

2.1.8.1 Adhesive for Fastening Gypsum Board to Metal Framing

Not permitted.

2.1.8.2 Adhesive for Laminating

Not permitted.

2.1.9 Accessories

[ASTM C1047](#). Fabricate from plastic designed for intended use. Accessories manufactured with paper flanges are not acceptable. Flanges must be free of dirt, grease, and other materials that may adversely affect bond of joint treatment. Provide prefinished or job decorated materials.

2.1.10 Asphalt Impregnated Building Felt

Provide a [15 lb](#) asphalt moisture barrier over glass mat covered or reinforced gypsum sheathing. Conforming to [ASTM D226/D226M](#) Type 1 (No. 15) for asphalt impregnated building felt.

2.1.11 Water

Provide clean, fresh, and potable water.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

3.1.1 Framing and Furring

Verify that framing and furring are securely attached and of sizes and spacing to provide a suitable substrate to receive gypsum board and cementitious backer units. Verify that all blocking, headers and supports are in place to support plumbing fixtures and to receive soap dishes, grab bars, towel racks, and similar items. Do not proceed with work until

framing and furring are acceptable for application of gypsum board and cementitious backer units.

3.1.2 Building Construction Materials

Do not install building construction materials that show visual evidence of biological growth.

3.2 APPLICATION OF GYPSUM BOARD

Apply gypsum board to framing and furring members in accordance with [ASTM C840](#) or [GA 216](#) and the requirements specified. Apply gypsum board with separate panels in moderate contact; do not force in place. Stagger end joints of adjoining panels. Neatly fit abutting end and edge joints. Use gypsum board of maximum practical length; select panel sizes to minimize waste. Cut out gypsum board to make neat, close, and tight joints around openings. In vertical application of gypsum board, provide panels in lengths required to reach full height of vertical surfaces in one continuous piece. Lay out panels to minimize waste; reuse cutoffs whenever feasible. Surfaces of gypsum board and substrate members may not be bonded together with an adhesive. Treat edges of cutouts for plumbing pipes, screwheads, and joints with water-resistant compound as recommended by the gypsum board manufacturer. [Minimize framing by floating corners with single studs and drywall clips. Install 5/8 inch gypsum or 1/2 inch ceiling board over framing at 24 inch on center, or 12 inch on center in wet locations.](#) Provide type of gypsum board for use in each system specified herein as indicated.

3.2.1 Semi-Solid Gypsum Board Partitions

Provide in accordance with [ASTM C840](#), System IV or [GA 216](#).

3.2.2 Solid Gypsum Board Partitions

Provide in accordance with [ASTM C840](#), System V or [GA 216](#).

3.2.3 Application of Gypsum Board to Steel Framing and Furring

Apply in accordance with [ASTM C840](#), System VIII or [GA 216](#).

3.2.4 Gypsum Board for Wall Tile or Tile Base Applied with Adhesive

In dry areas (areas other than tubs, shower enclosures, saunas, steam rooms, gang shower rooms), apply glass mat water-resistant gypsum tile backing board or water-resistant gypsum backing board in accordance with [ASTM C840](#), System X or [GA 216](#).

3.2.5 Exterior Application

Apply exterior gypsum board (such as at soffits) in accordance with [ASTM C840](#), System XI or [GA 216](#).

3.2.6 Glass Mat Covered or Fiber Reinforced Gypsum Sheathing

Apply glass mat covered or fiber reinforced gypsum sheathing in accordance to gypsum association publications [GA 253](#). Follow gypsum sheathing manufacturer's requirements of design details for joints and fasteners and be properly installed to protect the substrate from moisture intrusion. Do not leave exposed surfaces of the glass mat covered or fiber reinforced

gypsum sheathing beyond the manufacturer's recommendation without a weather barrier cladding. Provide continuous asphalt impregnated building felt over sheathing surface in shingle fashion with edges and ends lapped a minimum of 6 inch. Properly flash the openings. Seal all joints, seams, and penetrations with a compatible silicone sealant.

3.2.7 Floating Interior Angles

Minimize framing by floating corners with single studs and drywall clips. Locate the attachment fasteners adjacent to ceiling and wall intersections in accordance with ASTM C840, System XII or GA 216, for single-ply applications of gypsum board to wood framing.

3.2.8 Control Joints

Install expansion and contraction joints in ceilings and walls in accordance with ASTM C840, System XIII or GA 216. Fill control joints between studs in fire-rated construction with firesafing insulation to match the fire-rating of construction.

3.3 APPLICATION OF CEMENTITIOUS BACKER UNITS

3.3.1 Application

In wet areas (tubs, shower enclosures, saunas, steam rooms, gang shower rooms), apply cementitious backer units in accordance with ANSI A108.11. Place a 15 lb asphalt impregnated, continuous felt paper membrane behind cementitious backer units, between backer units and studs or base layer of gypsum board. Place membrane with a minimum 6 inch overlap of sheets laid shingle style.

3.3.2 Joint Treatment

ANSI A108.11.

3.4 FINISHING OF GYPSUM BOARD

Tape and finish gypsum board in accordance with ASTM C840, GA 214 and GA 216. Finish plenum areas above ceilings to Level 1 in accordance with GA 214. Finish water resistant gypsum backing board, ASTM C1396/C1396M, to receive ceramic tile to Level 2 in accordance with GA 214. Finish walls and ceilings to receive a heavy-grade wall covering or heave textured finish before painting to Level 3 in accordance with GA 214. Finish walls and ceilings without critical lighting to receive flat paints, light textures, or wall coverings to Level 4 in accordance with GA 214. Unless otherwise specified, finish all gypsum board walls, partitions and ceilings to Level 5 in accordance with GA 214. Provide joint, fastener depression, and corner treatment. Tool joints as smoothly as possible to minimize sanding and dust. Do not use self-adhering fiber glass mesh tape with conventional drying type joint compounds; use setting or hardening type compounds only. Provide treatment for water-resistant gypsum board as recommended by the gypsum board manufacturer. Protect workers, building occupants, and HVAC systems from gypsum dust.

3.4.1 Uniform Surface

Wherever gypsum board is to receive eggshell, semigloss or gloss paint finish, or where severe, up or down lighting conditions occur, finish gypsum wall surface in accordance to GA 214 Level 5. In accordance with

GA 214 Level 5, apply a thin skim coat of joint compound to the entire gypsum board surface, after the two-coat joint and fastener treatment is complete and dry.

3.5 SEALING

Seal openings around pipes, fixtures, and other items projecting through gypsum board and cementitious backer units as specified in Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS. Apply material with exposed surface flush with gypsum board or cementitious backer units.

3.5.1 Sealing for Glass Mat or Reinforced Gypsum Board Sheathing

Apply silicone sealant in a 3/8 inch bead to all joints and trowel flat. Apply enough of the same sealant to all fasteners penetrating through the glass mat gypsum board surface to completely cover the penetration when troweled flat. Do not place construction and materials behind sheathing until a visual inspection of sealed joints during daylight hours has been completed by Contracting Officer.

3.6 FIRE-RESISTANT ASSEMBLIES

Wherever fire-rated construction is indicated, provide materials and application methods, including types and spacing of fasteners, wall and ceiling framing in accordance with the specifications contained in UL Fire Resistance for the Design Number(s) indicated, or GA 600 for the File Number(s) indicated. Joints of fire-rated gypsum board enclosures must be closed and sealed in accordance with UL test requirements or GA requirements. Seal penetrations through rated partitions and ceilings tight in accordance with tested systems.

3.7 PATCHING

Patch surface defects in gypsum board to a smooth, uniform appearance, ready to receive finishes.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 09 30 10

CERAMIC, QUARRY, AND GLASS TILING
08/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI A136.1	(2008 Reaffirmed 2013) American National Standard Specifications for Organic Adhesives for Installation of Ceramic Tile
ANSI A137.1	(2012) American National Standards Specifications for Ceramic Tile
ANSI A137.2	(2012) American National Standards Specifications for Glass Tile

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A1064/A1064M	(2017) Standard Specification for Carbon-Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for Concrete
ASTM C1026	(2013; R 2018) Standard Test Method for Measuring the Resistance of Ceramic and Glass Tile to Freeze-Thaw Cycling
ASTM C144	(2017) Standard Specification for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar
ASTM C150/C150M	(2018) Standard Specification for Portland Cement
ASTM C206	(2014) Standard Specification for Finishing Hydrated Lime
ASTM C207	(2006; R 2011) Standard Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes
ASTM C33/C33M	(2018) Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates
ASTM C373	(2018) Standard Test Methods for Determination of Water Absorption and Associated Properties by Vacuum Method for Pressed Ceramic Tiles and Glass Tiles and Boil Method for Extruded Ceramic Tiles and Non-tile Fired Ceramic Whiteware Products

ASTM C648	(2004; R 2009) Breaking Strength of Ceramic Tile
ASTM C847	(2014a) Standard Specification for Metal Lath
ASTM D2103	(2015) Standard Specification for Polyethylene Film and Sheeting
ASTM D226/D226M	(2017) Standard Specification for Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing
ASTM D4068	(2017) Standard Specification for Chlorinated Polyethylene (CPE) Sheeting for Concealed Water-Containment Membrane

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350	(2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources using Environmental Chambers

GREEN SEAL (GS)

GS-36	(2013) Adhesives for Commercial Use

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS	SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168	(2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications

TILE COUNCIL OF NORTH AMERICA (TCNA)

TCNA Hdbk	(2017) Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818	(2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program For Chemical Emissions For Building Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Detail Drawings; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Porcelain Tile; G, AE

Recycled Content for Porcelain Tile; S

Setting-Bed; G, AE

Mortar, Grout, and Adhesive; G, AE

Reinforcing Wire Fabric

SD-04 Samples

Tile; G, AE

Accessories; G, AE

Transition Strips; G, AE

Grout; G, AE

SD-07 Certificates

Indoor Air Quality for Adhesives; S

Indoor Air Quality for Sealants; S

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Maintenance Instructions

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Installation; G, AE

1.3 CERTIFICATIONS

1.3.1 Indoor Air Quality Certifications

1.3.1.1 Adhesives and Sealants

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by **UL 2818** (Greenguard) Gold, **SCS** Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party programs that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited in this Section.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Provide installers having a minimum of two years experience with a company specializing in performing the type of work described. Each type and color of tile to be provided from a single source. Each type and color of mortar, adhesive, and grout to be provided from the same source.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Ship tiles in sealed packages and clearly marked with the grade, type of tile, producer identification, and country of origin. Deliver materials to the project site in manufacturer's original unopened containers with seals unbroken and labels and hallmarks intact. Protect materials from weather, and store them under cover in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.

1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Do not perform ceramic tile work unless the substrate and ambient temperature is at least 50 degrees F and rising. Maintain temperature above 50 degrees F while the work is being performed and for at least 7 days after completion of the work. When temporary heaters are used, ventilate the area to the outside to avoid carbon dioxide damage to new tilework.

1.7 WARRANTY

Provide manufacturer's standard performance guarantees or warranties that extend beyond a 1-year period.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

Supply an extra 5 percent of each type tile used in clean and marked cartons.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 TILE

Provide tiles that comply with ANSI A137.1 and are standard grade tiles. Furnish glass tiles that comply with ANSI A137.2. Provide a minimum breaking strength of 125 lbs. for wall tile and 250 lbs. for floor tile in accordance with ASTM C648. Provide exterior building tile for cold climate projects that is approved by the manufacturer for exterior use when tested in accordance with ASTM C1026. Provide floor tiles with a wet dynamic coefficient of friction (DCOF) value of 0.42 or greater when tested in accordance with ANSI A137.1 requirements. For materials like tile, accessories, and transition strips submit samples of sufficient size to show color range, pattern, type and joints. Submit manufacturer's catalog data.

2.1.1 Porcelain Tile

Provide unglazed or glazed, rectified porcelain tile, with color extending uniformly through the body of the tile. Provide tile with a V1 aesthetic classification. Blend tiles in factory and in a packages to have same color range and continuous blend for installation. Provide nominal tile size(s) of 12 by 24 inch and 5/16 inch thick. Provide a 0.50 percent maximum water absorption in accordance with ASTM C373.

Provide Porcelain Tiling Materials that contain a minimum of 10 percent recycled content. Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for porcelain tile.

2.2 SETTING-BED

Submit manufacturer's catalog data. Compose the setting-bed of the

following materials:

2.2.1 Aggregate for Concrete Fill

Conform to [ASTM C33/C33M](#) for aggregate fill. Do not exceed one-half the thickness of concrete fill for maximum size of coarse aggregate.

2.2.2 Portland Cement

Conform to [ASTM C150/C150M](#) for cement, Type I, white for wall mortar and gray for other uses.

2.2.3 Sand

Conform to [ASTM C144](#) for sand.

2.2.4 Hydrated Lime

Conform to [ASTM C206](#) for hydrated lime, Type S or [ASTM C207](#), Type S.

2.2.5 Metal Lath

Conform to [ASTM C847](#) for flat expanded type metal lath, and weighing a minimum [2.5 pound/square yard](#).

2.2.6 Reinforcing Wire Fabric

Conform to [ASTM A1064/A1064M](#) for wire fabric.

2.3 WATER

Provide potable water.

2.4 MORTAR, GROUT, AND ADHESIVE

Provide non-aerosol adhesive products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) meeting either emissions requirements of [CDPH SECTION 01350](#) (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of [SCAQMD Rule 1168](#). Provide aerosol adhesives used on the interior of the building meeting either emissions requirements of [CDPH SECTION 01350](#) (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of [GS-36](#). Provide certification or validation of [indoor air quality for adhesives](#).

2.4.1 Dry-Set Portland Cement Mortar

[TCNA Hdbk](#).

2.4.2 Latex-Portland Cement Mortar

[TCNA Hdbk](#).

2.4.3 Ceramic Tile Grout

[TCNA Hdbk](#); petroleum-free and plastic-free [sand portland cement grout](#), [dry-set grout](#), [latex-portland cement grout](#), or [commercial portland cement grout](#).

2.4.4 Organic Adhesive

TCNA Hdbk, Type I. Water-resistant. Comply with ANSI A136.1.

2.4.5 Epoxy Resin Grout

TCNA Hdbk. Prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

2.4.6 Furan Resin Grout

TCNA Hdbk and consist of an intimate mixture of furfuryl-alcohol resin with carbon filler and catalyst. Prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

2.4.7 Sealants

Comply with applicable regulations regarding toxic and hazardous materials and as specified. Grout sealant must not change the color or alter the appearance of the grout. Refer to Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.

Provide sealants used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) meeting either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of SCAQMD Rule 1168. Provide certification or validation of indoor air quality for sealants.

2.5 SUBSTRATES

2.5.1 Cementitious Backer Board

Provide cementitious backer units, for use as tile substrate over wood sub-floors, in accordance with TCNA Hdbk. Furnish 1/2 inch thick cementitious backer units.

2.6 TRANSITION STRIPS

Provide clear anodized aluminum transitions between tile and carpet or resilient flooring. Provide types as recommended by flooring manufacturer for both edges and transitions of flooring materials specified.

2.7 MEMBRANE MATERIALS

Conform to ASTM D226/D226M, Type 1 for 15 pound waterproofing membrane, asphalt-saturated building felt. Conform to ASTM D2103 and ASTM D4068 4 mil for polyethylene film.

2.8 COLOR, TEXTURE, AND PATTERN

Provide color, pattern and texture in accordance with as indicated. Color listed is not intended to limit the selection of equal colors from other manufacturers. Provide floor patterns as specified on the drawings.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATORY WORK AND WORKMANSHIP

Inspect surface to receive tile in conformance to the requirements of TCNA Hdbk for surface conditions for the type setting bed specified and for

workmanship. Provide variations of tiled surfaces that fall within maximum values shown below:

TYPE	WALLS	FLOORS
Dry-Set Mortar	1/8 inch in 8 ft.	1/8 inch in 10 ft.
Organic Adhesives	1/8 inch in 8 ft.	1/16 inch in 3 ft.
Latex Portland Cement Mortar	1/8 inch in 8 ft.	1/8 inch in 10 ft.
Epoxy	1/8 inch in 8 ft.	1/8 inch in 10 ft.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Do not start tile work until roughing in for mechanical and electrical work has been completed and tested, and built-in items requiring membrane waterproofing have been installed and tested. Close space, in which tile is being set, to traffic and other work. Keep closed until tile is firmly set. Do not start floor tile installation in spaces requiring wall tile until after wall tile has been installed. Apply tile in colors and patterns indicated in the area shown on the drawings. Install tile with the respective surfaces in true even planes to the elevations and grades shown. Provide special shapes as required for sills, jambs, recesses, offsets, external corners, and other conditions to provide a complete and neatly finished installation. Solidly back tile bases and coves with mortar. Do not walk or work on newly tiled floors without using kneeling boards or equivalent protection of the tiled surface. Keep traffic off horizontal portland cement mortar installations for at least 72 hours. Keep all traffic off epoxy installed floors for at least 40 hours after grouting, and heavy traffic off for at least 7 days, unless otherwise specifically authorized by manufacturer. Dimension and draw [detail drawings](#) at a minimum scale of 1/4 inch = 1 foot. Include drawings of pattern at inside corners, outside corners, termination points and location of all equipment items such as thermostats, switch plates, mirrors and toilet accessories mounted on surface. Submit drawings showing ceramic tile pattern elevations and floor plans. Submit manufacturer's preprinted [installation](#) instructions.

Do not install building construction materials that show visual evidence of biological growth.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF WALL TILE

Install wall tile in accordance with the [TCNA Hdbk](#), with grout joints as recommended by the manufacturer for the type of tile. Install thinner wall tile flush with thicker wall tile applied on same wall and provide installation materials as recommended by the tile and setting materials manufacturer's to achieve flush installation.

3.3.1 Workable or Cured Mortar Bed

Install tile over workable mortar bed or a cured mortar bed at the option of the Contractor. Install a 4 mil polyethylene membrane, metal lath, and scratch coat. Conform to [TCNA Hdbk](#) for workable mortar bed, materials, and installation of tile. Conform to [TCNA Hdbk](#) for cured mortar bed and materials.

3.3.2 Furan Mortar and Grout

Conform to TCNA Hdbk for furan mortar and grout installation.

3.3.3 Ceramic Tile Grout

Prepare and install ceramic tile grout in accordance with TCNA Hdbk. Provide and apply manufacturer's standard product for sealing grout joints in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF FLOOR TILE

Install floor tile in accordance with TCNA Hdbk and with grout joints as recommended by the manufacturer for the type of tile. Install shower receptors in accordance with TCNA Hdbk method B414 or B415.

3.4.1 Workable or Cured Mortar Bed

Install floor tile over a workable mortar bed or a cured mortar bed at the option of the Contractor. Conform to TCNA Hdbk for workable mortar bed materials and installation. Conform to TCNA Hdbk for cured mortar bed materials and installation. Provide minimum 1/4 inch to maximum 3/8 inch joints in uniformed width.

3.4.2 Ceramic Tile Grout

Prepare and install ceramic tile grout in accordance with TCNA Hdbk. Provide and apply manufacturer's standard product for sealing grout joints in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

3.4.3 Waterproofing

Shower pans are specified in Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.

3.4.4 Concrete Fill

Provide a 3500 psi concrete fill mix to dry as consistency as practicable. Spread, tamp, and screed concrete fill to a true plane, and pitch to drains or levels as shown. Thoroughly damp concrete fill before applying setting-bed material. Reinforce concrete fill with one layer of reinforcement, with the uncut edges lapped the width of one mesh and the cut ends and edges lapped a minimum 2 inch. Tie laps together with 18 gauge wire every 10 inch along the finished edges and every 6 inch along the cut ends and edges. Provide reinforcement with support and secure in the centers of concrete fills. Provide a continuous mesh; except where expansion joints occur, cut mesh and discontinue across such joints. Provide reinforced concrete fill under the setting-bed where the distance between the under-floor surface and the finished tiles floor surface is a minimum of 2 inches, and of the same thickness that the mortar setting-bed over the concrete fill with the thickness required in the specified TCNA Hdbk method.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF TRANSITION STRIPS

Install transition strips where indicated, in a manner similar to that of the ceramic tile floor and as recommended by the manufacturer. Provide thresholds full width of the opening. Install head joints at ends not exceeding 1/4 inch in width and grouted full.

3.6 EXPANSION JOINTS

Form and seal joints as specified in Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.

3.6.1 Walls

Provide expansion joints at control joints in backing material. Wherever backing material changes, install an expansion joint to separate the different materials.

3.6.2 Floors

Provide expansion joints over construction joints, control joints, and expansion joints in concrete slabs. Extend expansion joints through setting-beds and fill.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

Upon completion, thoroughly clean tile surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's approved cleaning instructions. Do not use acid for cleaning glazed tile. Clean floor tile with resinous grout or with factory mixed grout in accordance with printed instructions of the grout manufacturer. After the grout has set, provide a protective coat of a noncorrosive soap or other approved method of protection for tile wall surfaces. Cover tiled floor areas with building paper before foot traffic is permitted over the finished tile floors. Provide board walkways on tiled floors that are to be continuously used as passageways by workmen. Replace damaged or defective tiles. Submit copy of manufacturer's printed maintenance instructions.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 09 51 00

ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS
08/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A1008/A1008M	(2016) Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable
ASTM A489	(2018; E 2018) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Eyebolts
ASTM A653/A653M	(2017) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM B633	(2015) Standard Specification for Electrodeposited Coatings of Zinc on Iron and Steel
ASTM C423	(2009a) Sound Absorption and Sound Absorption Coefficients by the Reverberation Room Method
ASTM C635/C635M	(2017) Standard Specification for Manufacture, Performance, and Testing of Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panel Ceilings
ASTM C636/C636M	(2013) Standard Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panels
ASTM C834	(2017) Standard Specification for Latex Sealants
ASTM E1264	(2014) Acoustical Ceiling Products
ASTM E1477	(1998a; R 2017; E 2018) Standard Test Method for Luminous Reflectance Factor of Acoustical Materials by Use of Integrating-Sphere Reflectometers
ASTM E795	(2016) Standard Practices for Mounting

Test Specimens During Sound Absorption
Tests

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350

(2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for
the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile
Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor
Sources using Environmental Chambers

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS

SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168

(2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818

(2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program
For Chemical Emissions For Building
Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Approved Detail Drawings; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Acoustical Ceiling Systems; G, AE

Recycled Content for Type III Ceiling Tiles; S

Recycled Content for Suspension Systems; S

SD-04 Samples

Acoustical Units; G, AE

Acoustical Ceiling Tiles; G, AE

SD-06 Test Reports

SD-07 Certificates

Indoor Air Quality for Type III Ceiling Tiles; S

Indoor Air Quality for Sealants; S

1.3 CERTIFICATIONS

1.3.1 Indoor Air Quality Certifications

1.3.1.1 Ceiling Tiles

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by **UL 2818** (Greenguard) Gold, **SCS** Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification by other third-party programs. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body.

1.3.1.2 Adhesives and Sealants

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by **UL 2818** (Greenguard) Gold, **SCS** Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party programs that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited in this Section.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE. AND HANDLING

Deliver materials to the site in the manufacturer's original unopened containers with brand name and type clearly marked. Carefully handle and store materials in dry, watertight enclosures. Immediately before installation, store acoustical units for not less than 24 hours at the same temperature and relative humidity as the space where they will be installed in order to assure proper temperature and moisture acclimation.

1.5 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Maintain a uniform temperature of not less than **60 degrees F** nor more than **85 degrees F** and a relative humidity of not more than 70 percent for 24 hours before, during, and 24 hours after installation of acoustical units.

1.6 SCHEDULING

Complete and dry interior finish work such as plastering, concrete and terrazzo work before ceiling installation. Complete mechanical, electrical, and other work above the ceiling line; install and start operating heating, ventilating, and air conditioning systems in order to maintain temperature and humidity requirements.

1.7 WARRANTY

Provide manufacturer's standard performance guarantees or warranties that extend beyond a one year period. Include an agreement to repair or replace acoustical panels that fail within the warranty period in the standard performance guarantee or warranty. Failures include, but are not limited to, sagging and warping of panels; rusting and manufacturers defects of grid system.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

Furnish spare tiles, from the same lot as those installed, of each color at the rate of **10** tiles for each 1000 tiles installed.

1.9 OTHER SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

Submit the following:

- a. Manufacturer's catalog showing UL classification of fire-rated ceilings giving materials, construction details, types of floor and roof constructions to be protected, and UL design number and fire protection time rating for each required floor or roof construction and acoustic ceiling assembly.
- b. Reports by an independent testing laboratory attesting that [acoustical ceiling systems](#) meet specified fire endurance and sound transmission requirements. Data attesting to conformance of the proposed system to Underwriters Laboratories requirements for the fire endurance rating listed in UL Fire Resistance may be submitted in lieu of test reports.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Provide sound controlling units mechanically mounted on a ceiling suspension system for acoustical treatment. The unit size, texture, finish, and color must be as specified. The Contractor has the option to substitute inch-pound (I-P) Recessed Light Fixtures (RLF) for metric RLF. If the Contractor opts to furnish I-P RLF, other ceiling elements like acoustical ceiling tiles, air diffusers, air registers and grills, must also be I-P products. Coordinate the whole ceiling system with other details, like the location of access panels and ceiling penetrations, etc., shown on the drawings. The Contractor is responsible for all associated labor and materials and for the final assembly and performance of the specified work and products if I-P products are used. The location and extent of acoustical treatment must be as shown on the [approved detail drawings](#). Submit drawings showing suspension system, method of anchoring and fastening, details, and reflected ceiling plan. Coordinate with paragraph RECLAMATION PROCEDURES for reclamation of mineral fiber acoustical ceiling panels to be removed from the job site.

2.1.1 Ceiling Sound Absorption

Determine the Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC) in accordance with [ASTM C423](#) Test Method.

2.1.2 Light Reflectance

Determine light reflectance factor in accordance with [ASTM E1477](#) Test Method.

2.2 ACOUSTICAL UNITS

Submit two samples of each type of acoustical unit and each type of suspension grid tee section showing texture, finish, and color. Conform acoustical units to [ASTM E1264](#), Class A, and the following requirements:

2.2.1 Units for Exposed-Grid System A

2.2.1.1 Type

III (non-asbestos mineral fiber with painted finish). Provide Type III

Acoustical Ceiling Tiles containing a minimum of 30 percent recycled content. Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for Type III ceiling tiles. Provide certification of indoor air quality for Type III Ceiling Tiles.

2.2.1.2 Flame Spread

Class A, 25 or less

2.2.1.3 Pattern

D

2.2.1.4 Minimum NRC

0.75 in open office areas; 0.60 in conference rooms, executive offices, teleconferencing rooms, and other rooms as designated; 0.50 in all other rooms and areas when tested on mounting Type E-400 of ASTM E795.

2.2.1.5 Minimum Light Reflectance Coefficient LR-1, 0.75 or greater

2.2.1.6 Nominal Size

24 by 24 inch.

2.2.1.7 Edge Detail

Square.

2.2.1.8 Finish

Factory-applied standard finish.

2.2.1.9 Minimum CAC

40

2.3 SUSPENSION SYSTEM

Provide standard suspension system conforming to ASTM C635/C635M for intermediate-duty systems. Provide surfaces exposed to view of galvanized steel with a factory-applied white baked-enamel finish. Provide wall molding having a flange of not less than 15/16 inch. Provide inside and outside corner caps and mitered corners. Suspended ceiling framing system must have the capability to support the finished ceiling, light fixtures, air diffusers, and accessories, as shown. Provide a suspension system with a maximum deflection of 1/360 of the span length. Conform seismic details to the contract drawings.

Provide Suspension System containing a minimum of 15 percent recycled content. Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for suspension systems.

2.4 HANGERS

Provide hangers and attachment capable of supporting a minimum 300 pound ultimate vertical load without failure of supporting material or attachment.

2.4.1 Straps

Provide straps of 1 by 3/16 inch galvanized steel conforming to ASTM A653/A653M, with a light commercial zinc coating or ASTM A1008/A1008M with an electrodeposited zinc coating conforming to ASTM B633, Type RS.

2.4.2 Eyebolts

Provide eyebolts of weldless, forged-carbon-steel, with a straight-shank in accordance with ASTM A489. Eyebolt size must be a minimum 1/4 inch, zinc coated or cadmium plated.

2.4.3 Anchorage Devices

Comply with ASTM C636/C636M for anchorage devices for eyebolts, machine screws, or wood screws. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete, coat aluminum with bituminous paint or where exposed, with a chromatic primer and 2-coats of enamel paint.

2.5 FINISHES

Use manufacturer's standard textures, patterns and finishes as specified for acoustical units and suspension system members. Treat ceiling suspension system components to inhibit corrosion.

2.6 COLORS AND PATTERNS

Use colors and patterns for acoustical units and suspension system components as indicated on contract documents.

2.7 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

Conform acoustical sealant to ASTM C834, nonstaining. Provide sealants used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) that meet either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (use the office or classroom requirements, regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of SCAQMD Rule 1168. Provide certification of indoor air quality for Sealants.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Do not install building construction materials that show visual evidence of biological growth.

Examine surfaces to receive directly attached acoustical units for unevenness, irregularities, and dampness that would affect quality and execution of the work. Rid areas, where acoustical units will be cemented, of oils, form residue, or other materials that reduce bonding capabilities of the adhesive. Complete and dry interior finish work such as plastering, concrete, and terrazzo work before installation. Complete and approve mechanical, electrical, and other work above the ceiling line prior to the start of acoustical ceiling installation. Provide acoustical work complete with necessary fastenings, clips, and other accessories required for a complete installation. Do not expose mechanical fastenings in the finished work. Lay out hangers for each individual room or space. Provide hangers to support framing around beams, ducts, columns, grilles, and other penetrations through ceilings. Keep main runners and carrying channels

clear of abutting walls and partitions. Provide at least two main runners for each ceiling span. Wherever required to bypass an object with the hanger wires, install a subsuspension system so that all hanger wires will be plumb.

3.1.1 Suspension System

Install suspension system in accordance with **ASTM C636/C636M** and as specified herein. Do not suspend hanger wires or other loads from underside of steel decking.

3.1.1.1 Plumb Hangers

Install hangers plumb and not pressing against insulation covering ducts and pipes. Where lighting fixtures are supported from the suspended ceiling system, provide hangers at a minimum of four hangers per fixture and located not more than **6 inch** from each corner of each fixture.

3.1.1.2 Splayed Hangers

Where hangers must be splayed (sloped or slanted) around obstructions, offset the resulting horizontal force by bracing, countersplaying, or other acceptable means.

3.1.2 Wall Molding

Provide wall molding where ceilings abut vertical surfaces. Miter corners where wall moldings intersect or install corner caps. Secure wall molding not more than **3 inch** from ends of each length and not more than **16 inch** on centers between end fastenings. Provide wall molding springs at each acoustical unit in semi-exposed or concealed systems.

3.1.3 Acoustical Units

Install acoustical units in accordance with the approved installation instructions of the manufacturer. Ensure that edges of acoustical units are in close contact with metal supports, with each other, and in true alignment. Arrange acoustical units so that units less than one-half width are minimized. Hold units in exposed-grid system in place with manufacturer's standard hold-down clips, if units weigh less than **1 psf** or if required for fire resistance rating.

3.1.4 Caulking

Seal all joints around pipes, ducts or electrical outlets penetrating the ceiling. Apply a continuous ribbon of acoustical sealant on vertical web of wall or edge moldings.

3.2 CLEANING

Following installation, clean dirty or discolored surfaces of acoustical units and leave them free from defects. Remove units that are damaged or improperly installed and provide new units as directed.

3.3 RECLAMATION PROCEDURES

Neatly stack ceiling tile, designated for recycling by the Contracting Officer, on **4 by 4 foot** pallets not higher than **4 foot**. Panels must be completely dry. Shrink wrap and symmetrically stack pallets on top of each

other without falling over.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 09 65 00

RESILIENT FLOORING
08/10

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D4078 (2002; R 2015) Water Emulsion Floor Polish

ASTM E648 (2017a) Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor-Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source

ASTM F1482 (2015) Installation and Preparation of Panel Type Underlayments to Receive Resilient Flooring

ASTM F1700 (2018a) Standard Specification for Solid Vinyl Floor Tile

ASTM F1861 (2016) Standard Specification for Resilient Wall Base

ASTM F1869 (2016) Standard Test Method for Measuring Moisture Vapor Emission Rate of Concrete Subfloor Using Anhydrous Calcium Chloride

ASTM F2170 (2018) Standard Test Method for Determining Relative Humidity in Concrete Floor Slabs Using in situ Probes

ASTM F710 (2017) Standard Practice for Preparing Concrete Floors to Receive Resilient Flooring

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350 (2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources using Environmental Chambers

GREEN SEAL (GS)

GS-36 (2013) Adhesives for Commercial Use

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168 (2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program
For Chemical Emissions For Building
Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Resilient Flooring and Accessories; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Resilient Flooring and Accessories; G, AE

Adhesives

Luxury Vinyl Tile

Wall Base

SD-04 Samples

Resilient Flooring and Accessories; G, AE

SD-06 Test Reports

Moisture, Alkalinity and Bond Tests; G, AE

SD-07 Certificates

Indoor Air Quality for Luxury Vinyl Tile; S

Indoor Air Quality for Wall Base; S

Indoor Air Quality for Adhesives; S

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Surface Preparation; G, AE

Installation; G, AE

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Resilient Flooring and Accessories; G, AE

1.3 CERTIFICATES

1.3.1 Indoor Air Quality

Submit required indoor air quality certifications and validations in one submittal package.

1.3.1.1 Floor Covering Materials

Provide Luxury Vinyl Tile, and wall base products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by FLOORSCORE, [UL 2818](#) (Greenguard) Gold, [SCS](#) Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification by other third-party programs. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body.

1.3.1.2 Adhesives, Caulking and Sealants

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by [UL 2818](#) (Greenguard) Gold, [SCS](#) Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party programs that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited herein.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver materials to the building site in original unopened containers bearing the manufacturer's name, style name, pattern color name and number, production run, project identification, and handling instructions. Store materials in a clean, dry, secure, and well-ventilated area [free from strong contaminant sources and residues](#) with ambient air temperature maintained above [68 degrees F](#) and below [85 degrees F](#), stacked according to manufacturer's recommendations. [Remove resilient flooring products from packaging to allow ventilation prior to installation.](#) Protect materials from the direct flow of heat from hot-air registers, radiators and other heating fixtures and appliances. Observe ventilation and safety procedures specified in the MSDS.

1.5 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Maintain areas to receive resilient flooring at a temperature above [68 degrees F](#) and below [85 degrees F](#) for 3 days before application, during application and 2 days after application, unless otherwise directed by the flooring manufacturer for the flooring being installed. Maintain a minimum temperature of [55 degrees F](#) thereafter. Provide adequate ventilation to remove moisture from area and to comply with regulations limiting concentrations of hazardous vapors.

1.6 SCHEDULING

Schedule resilient flooring application after the completion of other work which would damage the finished surface of the flooring.

1.7 WARRANTY

Provide manufacturer's standard performance guarantees or warranties that extend beyond a one year period.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

Provide extra flooring material of each color and pattern at the rate of 10 tiles for each 1000 tiles installed. Provide extra wall base material composed of 20 linear feet of each type, color and pattern. Package all extra materials in original properly marked containers bearing the manufacturer's name, brand name, pattern color name and number, production run, and handling instructions. Provide extra materials from the same lot as those installed. Leave extra stock at the site in location assigned by Contracting Officer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 LUXURY VINYL TILE TYPE RF-1

Conform to ASTM F1700 Class III printed film with a minimum wear layer thickness 0.040 inch (40 mil) and minimum overall thickness 0.118 inch. Provide 12 by 18 inch tile. Provide tile with a factory protective finish that enhances cleanability and durability.

Provide certification of indoor air quality for Luxury Vinyl Tile. Ensure product has a 20 year minimum warranty.

2.2 WALL BASE

Conform to ASTM F1861, Type RB-1 (vulcanized thermoset rubber), Style A (straight - installed with carpet) and Style B (coved - installed with resilient flooring). Provide 4 inch high and a minimum 1/8 inch thick wall base. Provide job formed corners in matching height, shape, and color.

Provide certification of indoor air quality for Wall Base.

2.3 ADHESIVES

Provide adhesives for flooring, base and accessories as recommended by the manufacturer and comply with local indoor air quality standards. Submit manufacturer's descriptive data, documentation stating physical characteristics, and mildew and germicidal characteristics.

Provide non-aerosol adhesive products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) that meet either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of SCAQMD Rule 1168. Provide aerosol adhesives used on the interior of the building that meet either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (use the office or classroom requirements, regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of GS-36. Provide certification or validation of indoor air quality for adhesives.

2.4 SURFACE PREPARATION MATERIALS

Provide surface preparation materials, such as panel type underlayment, lining felt, and floor crack fillers as recommended by the flooring manufacturer for the subfloor conditions. Comply with ASTM F1482 for panel type underlayment products. Use concrete substrate.

2.5 POLISH/FINISH

Provide polish finish as recommended by the manufacturer and conform to [ASTM D4078](#) for polish.

2.6 CAULKING AND SEALANTS

Provide caulking and sealants in accordance with Section [07 92 00](#) JOINT SEALANTS.

2.7 MANUFACTURER'S COLOR, PATTERN AND TEXTURE

Provide color, pattern and texture for [resilient flooring and accessories](#) as indicated on the drawings. Color listed is not intended to limit the selection of equal colors from other manufacturers. Provide floor patterns as specified on the [drawings](#). Provide flooring in any one continuous area or replacement of damaged flooring in continuous area from same production run with same shade and pattern. Submit scaled drawings indicating patterns (including location of patterns and colors) and dimensions. Submit manufacturer's descriptive data and three samples of each indicated color and type of flooring, base, mouldings, and accessories sized a minimum [2-1/2 by 4 inch](#). Submit Data Package 1 in accordance with Section [01 78 23](#) OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

2.8 FIRE RESISTANCE TESTING REQUIREMENTS

Provide a minimum average critical radiant flux of 0.45 watts per square centimeter for flooring in corridors and exits when tested in accordance with [ASTM E648](#).

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

Examine and verify that site conditions are in agreement with the design package. Report all conditions that will prevent a proper [installation](#). Do not take any corrective action without written permission from the Government. Work will proceed only when conditions have been corrected and accepted by the installer. Submit manufacturer's printed installation instructions for all flooring materials and accessories, including preparation of substrate, seaming techniques, and recommended adhesives.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

Provide a smooth, true, level plane for surface preparation of the flooring, except where indicated as sloped. Floor to be flat to within [3/16 inch in 10 feet](#). Prepare subfloor in accordance with flooring manufacturer's recommended instructions. Prepare the surfaces of lightweight concrete slabs (as defined by the flooring manufacturer) as recommended by the flooring manufacturer. Comply with [ASTM F710](#) for concrete subfloor preparation. Floor fills or toppings may be required as recommended by the flooring manufacturer. Install underlayments, when required by the flooring manufacturer, in accordance with manufacturer's recommended printed installation instructions. Comply with [ASTM F1482](#) for panel type underlayments. Before any work under this section is begun, correct all defects such as rough or scaling concrete, chalk and dust, cracks, low spots, high spots, and uneven surfaces. Repair all damaged portions of concrete slabs as recommended by the flooring manufacturer. Remove concrete curing and sealer compounds from the slabs, other than the

type that does not adversely affect adhesion. Remove paint, varnish, oils, release agents, sealers, waxes, and adhesives, as required by the flooring product in accordance with manufacturer's printed installation instructions.

3.3 MOISTURE, ALKALINITY AND BOND TESTS

Determine the suitability of the concrete subfloor for receiving the resilient flooring with regard to moisture content and pH level by moisture and alkalinity tests. Conduct moisture testing in accordance with [ASTM F1869](#) or [ASTM F2170](#), unless otherwise recommended by the flooring manufacturer. Conduct alkalinity testing as recommended by the flooring manufacturer. Determine the compatibility of the resilient flooring adhesives to the concrete floors by a bond test in accordance with the flooring manufacturer's recommendations. Submit copy of test reports for moisture and alkalinity content of concrete slab, and bond test stating date of test, person conducting the test, and the area tested.

3.4 GENERAL INSTALLATION

Do not install building construction materials that show visual evidence of biological growth.

3.5 PLACING LUXURY VINYL TILES

Install luxury vinyl tile flooring using [glue down](#) installation. Install flooring and accessories in accordance with manufacturer's printed installation instructions. Prepare and apply adhesives in accordance with manufacturer's directions for installation method specified. Keep tile lines and joints square, symmetrical, tight, and even. Keep each floor in true, level plane, except where slope is indicated. Vary edge width as necessary to maintain full-size tiles in the field, no edge tile to be less than one-half the field tile size, except where irregular shaped rooms make it impossible. Cut flooring to fit around all permanent fixtures, built-in furniture and cabinets, pipes, and outlets. Cut, fit, and scribe edge tile to walls and partitions after field flooring has been applied.

3.6 PLACING WALL BASE

Install wall base in accordance with manufacturer's printed installation instructions. Prepare and apply adhesives in accordance with manufacturer's printed directions. Tighten base joints and make even with adjacent resilient flooring. Fill voids along the top edge of base at masonry walls with caulk. Roll entire vertical surface of base with hand roller, and press toe of base with a straight piece of wood to ensure proper alignment. Avoid excess adhesive in corners.

3.7 CLEANING

Immediately upon completion of installation of flooring in a room or an area, dry and clean the flooring and adjacent surfaces to remove all surplus adhesive. Clean flooring as recommended in accordance with manufacturer's printed maintenance instructions and within the recommended time frame. As required by the manufacturer, apply the recommended number of coats and type of polish and finish in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

3.8 PROTECTION

From the time of installation until acceptance, protect flooring from

damage as recommended by the flooring manufacturer. Remove and replace flooring which becomes damaged, loose, broken, or curled and wall base which is not tight to wall or securely adhered.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 09 68 00

CARPETING
11/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF TEXTILE CHEMISTS AND COLORISTS (AATCC)

AATCC 107	(2013) Colorfastness to Water
AATCC 134	(2016) Electrostatic Propensity of Carpets
AATCC 16	(2004; E 2008; E 2010) Colorfastness to Light
AATCC 165	(2013) Colorfastness to Crocking: Textile Floor Coverings - Crockmeter Method

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D1335	(2017; E 2018) Standard Test Method for Tuft Bind of Pile Yarn Floor Coverings
ASTM D2859	(2016) Standard Test Method for Ignition Characteristics of Finished Textile Floor Covering Materials
ASTM D3278	(1996; R 2011) Flash Point of Liquids by Small Scale Closed-Cup Apparatus
ASTM D5793	(2018) Standard Test Method for Binding Sites Per Unit Length or Width of Pile Yarn Floor Coverings
ASTM D5848	(2010; E 2010) Mass Per Unit Area of Pile Yarn Floor Coverings
ASTM D6859	(2011) Standard Test Method for Pile Thickness of Finished Level Pile Yarn Floor Coverings
ASTM D7330	(2015) Standard Test Method for Assessment of Surface Appearance Change in Pile Floor Coverings Using Standard Reference Scales
ASTM E648	(2017a) Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor-Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350 (2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources using Environmental Chambers

CARPET AND RUG INSTITUTE (CRI)

CRI 104 (2015) Carpet Installation Standard for Commercial Carpet

CRI 105 (2015) Carpet Installation Standard for Residential Carpet

CRI GLP QM (2017) Green Label Plus Quality Manual

CRI Test Method 103 (2015) Standard Test Method for the Evaluation of Texture Appearance Retention of Carpet Standards Program

GREEN SEAL (GS)

GS-36 (2013) Adhesives for Commercial Use

INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATION FOR STANDARDIZATION (ISO)

ISO 2551 (1981) Machine-made Textile Floor Coverings - Determination of Dimensional Changes Due to the Effects of Varied Water and Heat Conditions

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1113 (2016) Architectural Coatings

SCAQMD Rule 1168 (2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

16 CFR 1630 Standard for the Surface Flammability of Carpets and Rugs (FF 1-70)

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program For Chemical Emissions For Building Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING.

Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Installation Drawings; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Carpet; G, AE

Recycled Content for Carpeting; S

Moldings; G, AE

Indoor Air Quality for Aerosol Adhesives; S

Indoor Air Quality for Non-Aerosol Adhesives; S

Indoor Air Quality for Concrete Primer; S

SD-04 Samples

Carpet; G, AE

Moldings; G, AE

SD-06 Test Reports

Moisture and Alkalinity Tests; G

SD-07 Certificates

Indoor Air Quality for Carpet; S

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Surface Preparation

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Cleaning and Protection

Maintenance Service

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Warranty

1.3 CERTIFICATIONS

1.3.1 Indoor Air Quality Certifications

1.3.1.1 Floor Covering Materials

Provide carpet and cushion products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818 (GreenGuard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold, CRI GLP QM or provide certification or validation by other third-party program that products meet the requirements of this Section.

Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited herein.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver materials to the site in the manufacturer's original wrappings and packages clearly labeled with the manufacturer's name, brand name, size, dye lot number, and related information. Remove materials from packaging and store them in a clean, dry, well ventilated area (100 percent outside air supply, minimum of 1.5 air changes per hour, and no recirculation), protected from damage, soiling, and moisture, and strong contaminant sources and residues, and maintain at a temperature above 60 degrees F for 2 days prior to installation. Do not store carpet or carpet tiles with materials which have high emissions of volatile organic compounds (VOCs) or other contaminants, including paints and adhesives. Do not store carpet near materials that may off gas or emit harmful fumes, such as kerosene heaters, fresh paint, or adhesives.

1.5 AMBIENT CONDITIONS

Maintain areas in which carpeting is to be installed at a temperature above 60 degrees F and below 90 degrees F for 2 days before installation, during installation, and for 2 days after installation. Provide temporary ventilation during work of this section. Maintain a minimum temperature of 55 degrees F thereafter for the duration of the contract.

1.6 WARRANTY

Provide manufacturer's standard performance guarantees or warranties including minimum ten year wear warranty, two year material and workmanship and ten year tuft bind and delamination.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 CARPET

Furnish first quality carpet that is free of visual blemishes, streaks, poorly dyed areas, fuzzing of pile yarn, spots or stains, and other physical and manufacturing defects. Provide carpet materials and treatments as reasonably nonallergenic and free of other recognized health hazards. Provide a static control construction on all grade carpets which gives adequate durability and performance. Submit manufacturer's catalog data and printed documentation stating physical characteristics, durability, resistance to fading, and flame resistance characteristics for each type of carpet material and installation accessory. Submit manufacturer's Product Data for 1) Carpet, 2) Moldings. Also, submit Samples of the following:

- a. Carpet: Two "Production Quality" samples 18 by 18 inches of each carpet proposed for use, showing quality, pattern, and color specified
- b. Moldings: Two samples of each type minimum 12 inches long

2.1.1 Recycled Content

Carpeting must contain a minimum of 20 percent recycled content. Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for carpeting.

Provide certification of indoor air quality for carpet.

2.1.2 Indoor Air Quality Requirements

Products must meet emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350. Provide certification or validation of indoor air quality for carpet.

2.1.3 Physical Characteristics for Modular Tile Carpet

2.1.3.1 Carpet Construction

Bonded

2.1.3.2 Type

Modular tile 24 by 24 inch square with 0.15 percent growth/shrink rate in accordance with ISO 2551. See Section 09 69 13 RIGID GRID ACCESS FLOORING for size required for a one to one alignment with raised access floor panels.

2.1.3.3 Pile Type

Cut and loop Level tip shear

2.1.3.4 Pile Fiber

Commercial 100 percent branded (federally registered trademark) nylon continuous filament.

2.1.3.5 Gauge or Pitch

Minimum 5/64 inch in accordance with ASTM D5793

2.1.3.6 Stitches or Rows/Wires

Minimum 9.66 per square inch

2.1.3.7 Surface Pile Weight

Minimum 23 ounces per square yard. This does not include weight of backings. Determine weight in accordance with ASTM D5848.

2.1.3.8 Pile Thickness

Minimum 0.128 inch in accordance with ASTM D6859

2.1.3.9 Pile Density

Minimum 6,000

2.1.3.10 Dye Method

Solution dyed

2.1.3.11 Backing Materials

Provide synthetic material.

2.1.3.12 Cushion

Provide attached cushion.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

2.2.1 Texture Appearance Retention Rating (TARR)

Provide carpet with a greater than or equal to 3.5 (Severe) TARR traffic level classification in accordance with ASTM D7330 or CRI Test Method 103.

2.2.2 Static Control

Provide static control to permanently regulate static buildup to less than 3.5 kV when tested at 20 percent relative humidity and 70 degrees F in accordance with AATCC 134.

2.2.3 Flammability and Critical Radiant Flux Requirements

Comply with 16 CFR 1630 or ASTM D2859. Provide carpet in corridors and exits with a minimum average critical radiant flux of 0.45 watts per square centimeter when tested in accordance with ASTM E648.

2.2.4 Tuft Bind

Comply with ASTM D1335 for tuft bind force required to pull a tuft or loop free from carpet backing with a minimum 10 pound average force for loop pile broadloom.

2.2.5 Colorfastness to Crocking

Comply dry and wet crocking with AATCC 165 and with a Class 4 minimum rating on the AATCC Color Transference Chart for all colors.

2.2.6 Colorfastness to Light

Comply colorfastness to light with AATCC 16, Test Option E "Water-Cooled Xenon-Arc Lamp, Continuous Light" and with a minimum 4 grey scale rating after 40 hours.

2.2.7 Colorfastness to Water

Comply colorfastness to water with AATCC 107 and with a minimum 4.0 gray scale rating and a minimum 4.0 transfer scale rating.

2.2.8 Delamination Strength

Provide delamination strength for tufted carpet with a secondary back of minimum 2.5 lbs/inch.

2.3 ADHESIVES AND CONCRETE PRIMER

Comply with applicable regulations regarding toxic and hazardous materials. Provide water resistant, mildew resistant, nonflammable, and nonstaining adhesives and concrete primers for carpet installation as required by the carpet manufacturer. Provide release adhesive for modular tile carpet as recommended by the carpet manufacturer. Provide adhesives flashpoint of minimum 140 degrees F in accordance with ASTM D3278. Non-aerosol adhesive products used on the interior of the building (defined

as inside of the weatherproofing system) must meet either emissions requirements of [CDPH SECTION 01350](#) (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of [SCAQMD Rule 1168](#). Aerosol adhesive products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) must meet either emissions requirements of [CDPH SECTION 01350](#) (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of [GS-36](#). Provide validation of [indoor air quality for aerosol adhesives](#). Provide validation of [indoor air quality for non-aerosol adhesives](#). Concrete primer products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) must meet either emissions requirements of [CDPH SECTION 01350](#) (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of [SCAQMD Rule 1113](#). Provide validation of [indoor air quality for concrete primer](#).

2.4 [MOLDINGS](#)

Provide carpet moldings where floor covering material changes or carpet edge does not abut a vertical surface. Provide a heavy-duty rubber molding designed for the type of carpet being installed. Provide floor flange of a minimum [1 1/2 inches](#) wide. Provide color to match resilient base [or](#) an aluminum molding, pinless clamp-down type, designed for the type of carpet being installed.

2.5 COLOR, TEXTURE, AND PATTERN

Provide color, texture, and pattern in accordance with the drawings.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 [SURFACE PREPARATION](#)

Do not install carpet on surfaces that are unsuitable and will prevent a proper installation. Prepare subfloor in accordance with flooring manufacturer's recommended instructions. Repair holes, cracks, depressions, or rough areas using material recommended by the carpet or adhesive manufacturer. Free floor of any foreign materials and sweep clean. Before beginning work, test subfloor with glue and carpet to determine "open time" and bond. Submit three copies of the manufacturer's printed Installation instructions for the carpet, including Surface Preparation, seaming techniques, and recommended adhesives and tapes.

3.2 [MOISTURE AND ALKALINITY TESTS](#)

Test concrete slab for moisture content and excessive alkalinity in accordance with [CRI 104/CRI 105](#). Submit three copies of reports of Moisture and Alkalinity Tests including content of concrete slab stating date of test, person conducting the test, and the area tested.

3.3 PREPARATION OF CONCRETE SUBFLOOR

Do not commence installation of the carpeting until concrete substrate is at least 90 days old. Prepare the concrete surfaces in accordance with the carpet manufacturer's instructions. Match carpet, when required, and adhesives to prevent off-gassing to a type of curing compounds, leveling agents, and concrete sealer.

3.4 INSTALLATION

Isolate area of installation from rest of building. Perform all work by manufacturer's approved installers. Conduct installation in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions and CRI 104/CRI 105. Protect edges of carpet meeting hard surface flooring with molding and install in accordance with the molding manufacturer's printed instructions. Use autofoam mothproofing system for wool carpets. Follow ventilation, personal protection, and other safety precautions recommended by the adhesive manufacturer. Continue ventilation during installation and for at least 72 hours following installation. Do not permit traffic or movement of furniture or equipment in carpeted area for 24 hours after installation. Complete other work which would damage the carpet prior to installation of carpet. Submit three copies of Installation Drawings for 1) Carpet, 2) Carpet Cushion, and 3) Moldings indicating areas receiving carpet, carpet types, patterns, direction of pile, location of seams, and locations of edge molding.

Do not install building construction materials that show visual evidence of biological growth.

3.4.1 Modular Tile Installation

Install modular tiles with manufacturer approved adhesive tab system adhesive and snug joints. Use monolithic installation method. Comply with manufacturer installation instructions for required drying time of releasable adhesive so it sets up properly. Provide accessibility to the subfloor where required. Carpet tile on stairs and sloped surfaces must be installed with a more permanent installation method in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and with manufacturer recommended adhesives for this application. See Section 09 69 13 RIGID GRID ACCESS FLOORING for installation method of carpet tile on access flooring.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

Submit three copies of carpet manufacturer's maintenance instructions describing recommended type of cleaning equipment and material, spotting and cleaning methods, and cleaning cycles.

3.5.1 Cleaning

As specified in Section 01 78 00 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS. After installation of the carpet, remove debris, scraps, and other foreign matter. Remove soiled spots and adhesive from the face of the carpet with appropriate spot remover. Cut off and remove protruding face yarn. Vacuum carpet clean with a high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filtration vacuum.

3.5.2 Protection

Protect the installed carpet from soiling and damage with heavy, reinforced, nonstaining kraft paper, plywood, or hardboard sheets. Lap and secure edges of kraft paper protection to provide a continuous cover. Restrict traffic for at least 48 hours. Remove protective covering when directed by the Contracting Officer.

3.6 MAINTENANCE

3.6.1 Extra Materials

Provide extra material from same dye lot consisting of uncut carpet tiles for future maintenance. Provide a minimum of five percent of total square yards of each carpet type, pattern, and color. Furnish five percent extra of total adhesive tabs.

3.6.2 Maintenance Service

Collect information from the manufacturer about maintenance agreement and green lease options, and submit to Contracting Officer. Service must reclaim materials for recycling and/or reuse. Service must not landfill or burn reclaimed materials. When such a service is not available, seek local recyclers to reclaim the materials. Submit documentation of manufacturer's maintenance agreement, take-back program, or green lease for carpet. Include contact information, summary of procedures, and the limitations and conditions applicable to the project. Indicate manufacturer's commitment to reclaim materials for recycling and reuse.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 09 69 13

LOW PROFILE CABLE MANAGEMENT ACCESS FLOORING

11/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM E84 (2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2; TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6; TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10; TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA 17-14) National Electrical Code

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

36 CFR 1191 Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Detailed Installation Drawings; G
Fabrication Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Access Flooring System; G

SD-04 Samples

Floor Panels; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Factory Tests

Concentrated Load

Uniform Live Load

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance Manuals; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Recycled Content of Access Flooring System; S

1.3 SPARE PARTS

Provide extra carpet tile from same dye lot consisting of uncut tiles for future maintenance. Provide a minimum of ten percent of total square yards of each carpet type, pattern, and color. Furnish ten percent extra of total adhesive tabs and ten percent extra of total components required for installing carpet tile.

1.4 QUALITY CONTROL

1.4.1 Qualification of Manufacturer

Access flooring manufacturer must have at least 5 years experience in manufacturing access flooring systems. Certify that the manufacturer of the access flooring system meets requirements specified under paragraph entitled QUALIFICATION OF MANUFACTURER.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.5.1 Delivery

Deliver materials to site in undamaged condition, in original containers or packages, complete with accessories and instructions. Label packages with manufacturer's name and brand designations. Package materials covered by specific references bearing specification number, type and class as applicable.

1.5.2 Storage

Store all materials in original protective packaging in a safe, dry, and clean location. Store panels at temperatures between 40 and 90 degrees F, and between 20 and 70 percent humidity. Replace defective or damaged materials.

1.5.3 Handling

Handle and protect materials in a manner to prevent damage during the entire construction period.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT SUSTAINABILITY CRITERIA

For products in this section, Where applicable and to the extent allowed by

performance criteria, provide and document the following:

2.1.1 Recycled Content of Access Flooring System

Provide Access Flooring System with a minimum recycled contents of 20 percent and provide documentation in accordance with Section 01 33 39 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING, paragraph Recycled Content.

2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- a. Provide for self-alignment of floor panel.
- b. Lateral stability of the low profile cable management access floor support system is dependent on the concrete floor substrate. Provide a finished assembly that is rigid and free of vibration, noises, and rocking panels. The system shall accommodate electrical floor penetrations in any location of the panel.
- c. Submit manufacturer's product data for access flooring system consisting of descriptive data, catalog cuts, and installation instructions. Include in the data information about any design and production techniques, total system including all accessories and finish coatings of under-floor components, procedures and policies used to conserve energy, reduce material, improve waste management or incorporate green building/recycled products into the manufacturer of their components or products. Include cleaning and maintenance instructions.

2.2.1 Design Requirements

When tested as specified, make all deflection and deformation measurements at the point of load application on the top surface of the panel. Floor panels must be capable of supporting the following loads:

- a. Concentrated load of 200 pounds on one square inch.
- b. Uniform live load of 100 psf.

2.3 FLOOR PANELS

2.3.1 Floor System Drawings And Planer Quality

- a. Submit Fabrication Drawings for elevated floor systems consisting of fabrication and assembly details to be performed in the factory.
- b. Indicate on Location Drawings exact location of pedestals, ventilation openings, cable cutouts, and the panel installation pattern.
- c. Provide Detail Drawings showing details of the pedestals, pedestal-floor interlocks, floor panels, panel edging, floor openings, floor opening edging, floor registers, floor grilles, cable cutout treatment, perimeter base, expansion, ramp and peripheral support facilities.
- d. Design and workmanship of the floor, as installed, must be completely planar within plus or minus 0.060 inch in 10 feet, 0.100 inch for the entire floor, and 0.030 inch across panel joints.

2.3.2 Detailed Installation Drawings

Submit **Detailed Installation Drawings** that as a minimum indicate the following:

- a. Location of panels
- b. Layout of panels and cutout locations
- c. **Ramp** framing
- d. Sizes and details of components
- e. Details at floor perimeter and height above structural floor
- f. Typical cutout details
- g. Location of connection to building grounding electrode **for metal low profile cable management access flooring**

2.3.3 Panel Construction

- a. Base access floor system on a module providing minimum of **1.5 inches and maximum of 3 inches** clearance between structural floor **the top surface of floor panels**. Fabricate so accurate job cutting and fitting may be done using standard sizes for perimeters and around columns. **Low profile cable management access flooring system shall comply with ASTM E84 and NFPA 70 as it pertains to accommodating conventional conduit raceway and conductor wiring distribution.**
- b. Provide cutouts and cutout closures to accommodate utility systems and equipment intercabling. Reinforce cutouts to meet design load requirements. Provide extra support pedestals at each corner of cutout for cutout panels that do not meet specified design load requirements.
- c. Machine square floor panels to within plus or minus **0.015 inch** with edge straightness plus or minus **0.0025 inch**.

2.3.3.1 Panel System Material

Provide low profile cable management access panel system of polypropylene, polycarbonate, steel, aluminum or similar base material.

2.3.4 Floor Covering

Surface floor panels with carpet tile installed in the files as scheduled in the Interior Design drawings.

2.3.5 Resilient Base

Install rubber base as scheduled in the Interior Design drawings.

2.4 FASCIA

Provide aluminum or steel fascia plates at open ends of floor, at sides of ramps and steps, and elsewhere as required to enclose the free area under the raised floor. Steel plates must have a factory applied baked enamel finish. Finish on aluminum plates must be standard with the floor system manufacturer. Fascia plates must be reinforced on the back, and supported

using the manufacturer's standard installation provisions. Provide trim, angles, and fasteners as required.

2.5 RAMPS

Securely fasten steps and ramps to the access flooring system and to the structural floor. Include in the construction standard floor system components and custom components as required, and all supports, fasteners, and trim necessary for a finished installation. Threshold strips and floor bevel strips must be cast or extruded aluminum with non-slip traffic surfaces.

2.5.1 Ramps

Slope of ramps must comply with applicable codes and 36 CFR 1191 Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA). Design ramps to support the same loads as specified for floor panels. Surface ramps with field installed carpet tile as scheduled in the Interior Design drawings.

2.6 FACTORY TESTS

Factory test access flooring, using an independent laboratory, at the same position and maximum design elevation and in the same arrangement as shown on the drawings for installation so as to duplicate service conditions as much as possible.

2.6.1 Load Tests

Conduct floor panel and support to determine deformation and permanent set of panels and system due to concentrated and uniform loading.

2.7 CUT OUTS

Provide cable and receptacle cutouts finished with rigid polyvinylchloride or molded polypropylene edging to conform to the appearance level of the floor surface and to cover raw edges of the cutout panel.

- a. When size of cutout reduces the performance requirement of panel, provide intermediate support adjacent to cutouts.

2.8 EDGE CLOSURE

Provide 1/16 inch aluminum closure plate and extruded aluminum nosing at exposed edge of floor. Back up the closure plates with aluminum or steel framing braced diagonally, or anchor at bottom to continuous angle.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Install access flooring at the location and elevation and in the arrangement shown in the Instruments of Service. The floor system must be of the rigid grid stringer type, complete with all supplemental items, and be the standard product of a manufacturer specializing in access flooring systems.

Install the floor system in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Open ends of the floor, where the floor system does not abut wall or other construction, must have positive anchorage and rigid

support. Maintain areas to receive access flooring between 60 and 90 degrees F, and between 20 and 70 percent humidity for 24 hours prior to and during installation.

3.1.1 Preparation for Installation

Clear out all debris in the area in which the floor system is to be installed. Thoroughly clean structural floor surfaces and remove all dust. Install floor coatings, required for dust or vapor control, prior to installation.

3.1.2 Auxiliary Framing

Provide auxiliary framing or pedestals around columns and other permanent construction, at sides of ramps, at open ends of the floor, and beneath panels that are substantially cut to accommodate utility systems. Use special framing for additional lateral support as shown on the approved detailed installation drawings. Provide additional pedestals and stringers designed to specific heights and lengths to meet structural irregularities and design loads. Connect auxiliary framing to floor panels.

3.1.3 Panels

Interlock panels with supports in a manner that will preclude lateral movement. Fasten perimeter panels, cutout panels, and panels adjoining columns, stairs, and ramps to the supporting components to form a rigid boundary for the interior panels. Level floors within the specified tolerances. Cut edges of panels must be finished as recommended by panel manufacturer.

3.1.4 Fascia Plates

Cover exposed floor ends and exposed openings of ramps and stairs with prefinished aluminum or steel closures.

3.2 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

3.2.1 Cleaning

Keep the space below the completed floor free of all debris. Before any traffic or other work on the completed raised floor is started, clean the completed floor in accordance with the floor covering manufacturer's instructions.

3.2.2 Surplus Material Removal

Clean surfaces of the work, and adjacent surfaces soiled as a result of the work. Remove all installation equipment, surplus materials, and rubbish from the work site.

3.3 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

Submit maintenance instructions for proper care of the floor panel surface. When conductive flooring is specified, also submit maintenance instructions to identify special cleaning and maintenance requirements to maintain "conductivity" properties of the panel finish.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 09 90 00

PAINTS AND COATINGS

05/11

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN CONFERENCE OF GOVERNMENTAL INDUSTRIAL HYGIENISTS (ACGIH)

ACGIH 0100 (2015; Suppl 2002-2016) Documentation of the Threshold Limit Values and Biological Exposure Indices

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C920 (2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants

ASTM D235 (2002; R 2012) Mineral Spirits (Petroleum Spirits) (Hydrocarbon Dry Cleaning Solvent)

ASTM D4263 (1983; R 2012) Indicating Moisture in Concrete by the Plastic Sheet Method

ASTM D4444 (2013) Use and Calibration of Hand-Held Moisture Meters

ASTM D523 (2014; R 2018) Standard Test Method for Specular Gloss

ASTM D6386 (2016) Standard Practice for Preparation of Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coated Iron and Steel Product and Hardware Surfaces for Painting

ASTM F1869 (2016) Standard Test Method for Measuring Moisture Vapor Emission Rate of Concrete Subfloor Using Anhydrous Calcium Chloride

MASTER PAINTERS INSTITUTE (MPI)

MPI 10 (2012) Latex, Exterior Flat (MPI Gloss Level 1)

MPI 101 (2012) Primer, Epoxy, Anti-Corrosive, for Metal

MPI 107 (2012) Primer, Rust-Inhibitive, Water Based

MPI 108 (2012) Epoxy, High Build, Low Gloss

MPI 11 (2012) Latex, Exterior Semi-Gloss, MPI

	Gloss Level 5
MPI 134	(2012) Primer, Galvanized, Water Based
MPI 145	(2012) Latex, Interior, Institutional Low Odor/VOC, (MPI Gloss Level 3)
MPI 161	(2012) Light Industrial Coating, Exterior, Water Based (MPI Gloss Level 3)
MPI 163	(2012) Light Industrial Coating, Exterior, Water Based, Semi-Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5)
MPI 22	(2012) Aluminum Paint, High Heat (up to 590° C/1100° F)
MPI 23	(2012) Primer, Metal, Surface Tolerant
MPI 26	(2012) Primer, Galvanized Metal, Cementitious
MPI 4	(2012) Interior/Exterior Latex Block Filler
MPI 42	(2012) Textured Coating, Latex, Flat
MPI 47	(2012) Alkyd, Interior, Semi-Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5)
MPI 50	(2012) Primer Sealer, Latex, Interior
MPI 77	(2012) Epoxy, Gloss
MPI 79	(2012) Primer, Alkyd, Anti-Corrosive for Metal
MPI 8	(2012) Alkyd, Exterior Flat (MPI Gloss Level I)
MPI 94	(2012) Alkyd, Exterior, Semi-Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5)
MPI 95	(2012) Primer, Quick Dry, for Aluminum

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS	SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

SOCIETY FOR PROTECTIVE COATINGS (SSPC)

SSPC 7/NACE No.4	(2007; E 2004) Brush-Off Blast Cleaning
SSPC PA 1	(2016) Shop, Field, and Maintenance Coating of Metals
SSPC PA Guide 3	(1982; E 1995) A Guide to Safety in Paint Application
SSPC QP 1	(2012; E 2012) Standard Procedure for Evaluating Painting Contractors (Field

	Application to Complex Industrial Structures)
SSPC SP 1	(2015) Solvent Cleaning
SSPC SP 10/NACE No. 2	(2007) Near-White Blast Cleaning
SSPC SP 12/NACE No.5	(2002) Surface Preparation and Cleaning of Metals by Waterjetting Prior to Recoating
SSPC SP 2	(1982; E 2000; E 2004) Hand Tool Cleaning
SSPC SP 3	(1982; E 2004) Power Tool Cleaning
SSPC SP 6/NACE No.3	(2007) Commercial Blast Cleaning
SSPC VIS 1	(2002; E 2004) Guide and Reference Photographs for Steel Surfaces Prepared by Dry Abrasive Blast Cleaning
SSPC VIS 3	(2004) Guide and Reference Photographs for Steel Surfaces Prepared by Hand and Power Tool Cleaning
SSPC VIS 4/NACE VIS 7	(1998; E 2000; E 2004) Guide and Reference Photographs for Steel Surfaces Prepared by Waterjetting

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1	(2014) Safety and Health Requirements Manual

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

FED-STD-313	(2014; Rev E) Material Safety Data, Transportation Data and Disposal Data for Hazardous Materials Furnished to Government Activities

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR 1910.1000	Air Contaminants

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818	(2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program For Chemical Emissions For Building Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

The current MPI, "Approved Product List" which lists paint by brand, label, product name and product code as of the date of contract award, will be used to determine compliance with the submittal requirements of this specification. The Contractor may choose to use a subsequent MPI "Approved Product List", however, only one list may be used for the entire contract and each coating system is to be from a single manufacturer. Provide all coats on a particular substrate from a single manufacturer. No variation from the MPI Approved Products List is acceptable.

Samples of specified materials may be taken and tested for compliance with specification requirements.

SD-03 Product Data

Coating; G, AE

Sealant

SD-04 Samples

Color; G, AE

SD-07 Certificates

Applicator's Qualifications

Indoor Air Quality for Paints and Primers

Indoor Air Quality for Consolidated Latex Paints

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Mixing

Manufacturer's Safety Data Sheets

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Coatings; G

1.3 CERTIFICATES

1.3.1 Indoor Air Quality

Submit required indoor air quality certifications in one submittal package.

1.3.1.1 Paints and Coatings

Provide paint and coating products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification by other third-party programs. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body.

1.4 APPLICATOR'S QUALIFICATIONS

1.4.1 Contractor Qualification

Submit the name, address, telephone number, FAX number, and e-mail address of the contractor that will be performing all surface preparation and

coating application. Submit evidence that key personnel have successfully performed surface preparation and application of coatings on a minimum of three similar projects within the past three years. List information by individual and include the following:

- a. Name of individual and proposed position for this work.
- b. Information about each previous assignment including:

Position or responsibility

Employer (if other than the Contractor)

Name of facility owner

Mailing address, telephone number, and telex number (if non-US) of facility owner

Name of individual in facility owner's organization who can be contacted as a reference

Location, size and description of structure

Dates work was carried out

Description of work carried out on structure

1.4.2 SSPC QP 1 Certification

All contractors and subcontractors that perform surface preparation or coating application must be certified by the Society for Protective Coatings (formerly Steel Structures Painting Council) (SSPC) to the requirements of **SSPC QP 1** prior to contract award, and must remain certified while accomplishing any surface preparation or coating application. If a contractor's or subcontractor's certification expires, the firm will not be allowed to perform any work until the certification is reissued. Requests for extension of time for any delay to the completion of the project due to an inactive certification will not be considered and liquidated damages will apply. Notify the Contracting Officer of any change in contractor certification status.

1.5 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

1.5.1 Environmental Protection

In addition to requirements specified elsewhere for environmental protection, provide coating materials that conform to the restrictions of the local Air Pollution Control District and regional jurisdiction. Notify Contracting Officer of any paint specified herein which fails to conform.

1.5.2 Lead Content

Do not use coatings having a lead content over 0.06 percent by weight of nonvolatile content.

1.5.3 Chromate Content

Do not use coatings containing zinc-chromate or strontium-chromate.

1.5.4 Asbestos Content

Provide asbestos-free materials.

1.5.5 Mercury Content

Provide materials free of mercury or mercury compounds.

1.5.6 Silica

Provide abrasive blast media containing no free crystalline silica.

1.5.7 Human Carcinogens

Provide materials that do not contain **ACGIH 0100** confirmed human carcinogens (A1) or suspected human carcinogens (A2).

1.6 PACKAGING, LABELING, AND STORAGE

Provide paints in sealed containers that legibly show the contract specification number, designation name, formula or specification number, batch number, color, quantity, date of manufacture, manufacturer's formulation number, manufacturer's directions including any warnings and special precautions, and name and address of manufacturer. Furnish pigmented paints in containers not larger than **5 gallons**. Store paints and thinners in accordance with the manufacturer's written directions, and as a minimum, stored off the ground, under cover, with sufficient ventilation to prevent the buildup of flammable vapors, and at temperatures between **40 to 95 degrees F**. **Do not store paint, polyurethane, varnish, or wood stain products with materials that have a high capacity to adsorb VOC emissions. Do not store paint, polyurethane, varnish, or wood stain products in occupied spaces.**

1.7 SAFETY AND HEALTH

Apply coating materials using safety methods and equipment in accordance with the following:

Comply with applicable Federal, State, and local laws and regulations, and with the ACCIDENT PREVENTION PLAN, including the Activity Hazard Analysis as specified in Section **01 35 26** GOVERNMENT SAFETY REQUIREMENTS and in Appendix A of **EM 385-1-1**. Include in the Activity Hazard Analysis the potential impact of painting operations on painting personnel and on others involved in and adjacent to the work zone.

1.7.1 Safety Methods Used During Coating Application

Comply with the requirements of **SSPC PA Guide 3**.

1.7.2 Toxic Materials

To protect personnel from overexposure to toxic materials, conform to the most stringent guidance of:

- a. The applicable **manufacturer's Safety Data Sheets** (SDS) or local regulation.
- b. **29 CFR 1910.1000**.

- c. **ACGIH 0100**, threshold limit values.

Submit manufacturer's Safety Data Sheets for coatings, solvents, and other potentially hazardous materials, as defined in **FED-STD-313**.

1.8 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

Comply, at minimum, with manufacturer recommendations for space ventilation during and after installation. Isolate area of application from rest of building when applying high-emission paints or coatings.

1.8.1 Coatings

Do not apply coating when air or substrate conditions are:

- a. Less than **5 degrees F** above dew point;
- b. Below **50 degrees F** or over **95 degrees F**, unless specifically pre-approved by the Contracting Officer and the product manufacturer. Do not, under any circumstances, violate the manufacturer's application recommendations.

1.8.2 Post-Application

Vacate space for as long as possible after application. Wait a minimum of 48 hours before occupying freshly painted rooms. Maintain one of the following ventilation conditions during the curing period, or for 72 hours after application:

- a. Supply airflow at a rate of 6 air changes per hour, when outside temperatures are between **55 degrees F** and **85 degrees F** and humidity is between 30 percent and 60 percent.
- b. Supply airflow at a rate of 1.5 air changes per hour, when outside air conditions are not within the range stipulated above.

1.9 SCHEDULING

Allow paint, polyurethane, varnish, and wood stain installations to cure prior to the installation of materials that adsorb VOCs.

1.10 COLOR SELECTION

Provide colors of finish coats as indicated or specified. Allow Contracting Officer to select colors not indicated or specified. Manufacturers' names and color identification are used for the purpose of color identification only. Named products are acceptable for use only if they conform to specified requirements. Products of other manufacturers are acceptable if the colors approximate colors indicated and the product conforms to specified requirements.

Tint each coat progressively darker to enable confirmation of the number of coats.

Provide color, texture, and pattern of wall coating systems as indicated.

Submit manufacturer's samples of paint colors. Cross reference color samples to color scheme as indicated. Submit color stencil codes.

1.11 LOCATION AND SURFACE TYPE TO BE PAINTED

1.11.1 Painting Included

Where a space or surface is indicated to be painted, include the following unless indicated otherwise.

- a. Surfaces behind portable objects and surface mounted articles readily detachable by removal of fasteners, such as screws and bolts.
- b. New factory finished surfaces that require identification or color coding and factory finished surfaces that are damaged during performance of the work.
- c. Existing coated surfaces that are damaged during performance of the work.

1.11.1.1 Exterior Painting

Includes new surfaces of the buildings and appurtenances.

1.11.1.2 Interior Painting

Includes new surfaces of the buildings and appurtenances as indicated. Where a space or surface is indicated to be painted, include the following items, unless indicated otherwise.

- a. Exposed columns, girders, beams, joists, and metal deck; and
- b. Other contiguous surfaces.

1.11.2 Painting Excluded

Do not paint the following unless indicated otherwise.

- a. Surfaces concealed and made inaccessible by panelboards, fixed ductwork, machinery, and equipment fixed in place.
- b. Surfaces in concealed spaces. Concealed spaces are defined as enclosed spaces above suspended ceilings, furred spaces, attic spaces, crawl spaces, elevator shafts and chases.
- c. Steel to be embedded in concrete.
- d. Copper, stainless steel, aluminum, brass, and lead except existing coated surfaces.
- e. Hardware, fittings, and other factory finished items.

1.11.3 Mechanical and Electrical Painting

Includes field coating of interior new surfaces.

- a. Where a space or surface is indicated to be painted, include the following items unless indicated otherwise.

(1) Miscellaneous metalwork and insulation coverings.

- b. Do not paint the following, unless indicated otherwise:

- (1) New zinc-coated, aluminum, and copper surfaces under insulation
- (2) New aluminum jacket on piping
- (3) New interior ferrous piping under insulation.

1.11.3.1 Fire Extinguishing Sprinkler Systems

Clean, pretreat, prime, and paint new fire extinguishing sprinkler systems including valves, piping, conduit, hangers, supports, miscellaneous metalwork, and accessories. Apply coatings to clean, dry surfaces, using clean brushes. Clean the surfaces to remove dust, dirt, rust, and loose mill scale. Immediately after cleaning, provide the metal surfaces with one coat primer per schedules. Shield sprinkler heads with protective covering while painting is in progress. Upon completion of painting, remove protective covering from sprinkler heads. Remove sprinkler heads which have been painted and replace with new sprinkler heads. Provide primed surfaces with the following:

- a. Piping in Unfinished Areas: Provide primed surfaces with one coat of red alkyd gloss enamel applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 1.0 mil in attic spaces, spaces above suspended ceilings, crawl spaces, pipe chases, mechanical equipment room, and spaces where walls or ceiling are not painted or not constructed of a prefinished material. In lieu of red enamel finish coat, provide piping with 2 inch wide red enamel bands or self-adhering red plastic bands spaced at maximum of 20 foot intervals.
- b. Piping in Finished Areas: Provide primed surfaces with two coats of paint to match adjacent surfaces, except provide valves and operating accessories with one coat of red alkyd gloss enamel applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 1.0 mil. Provide piping with 2 inch wide red enamel bands or self-adhering red plastic bands spaced at maximum of 20 foot intervals throughout the piping systems.

1.11.4 MISCELLANEOUS PAINTING

Lettering Building Room Number(s)

Provide lettering as scheduled on the drawings. Samples must be approved before application.

1.11.5 Definitions and Abbreviations

1.11.5.1 Qualification Testing

Qualification testing is the performance of all test requirements listed in the product specification. This testing is accomplished by MPI to qualify each product for the MPI Approved Product List, and may also be accomplished by Contractor's third party testing lab if an alternative to Batch Quality Conformance Testing by MPI is desired.

1.11.5.2 Batch Quality Conformance Testing

Batch quality conformance testing determines that the product provided is the same as the product qualified to the appropriate product specification. This testing must be accomplished by an MPI testing lab.

1.11.5.3 Coating

A film or thin layer applied to a base material called a substrate. A coating may be a metal, alloy, paint, or solid/liquid suspensions on various substrates (such as metals, plastics, wood, paper, leather, cloth). They may be applied by electrolysis, vapor deposition, vacuum, or mechanical means such as brushing, spraying, calendaring, and roller coating. A coating may be applied for aesthetic or protective purposes or both. The term "coating" as used herein includes emulsions, enamels, stains, varnishes, sealers, epoxies, and other coatings, whether used as primer, intermediate, or finish coat. The terms paint and coating are used interchangeably.

1.11.5.4 DFT or dft

Dry film thickness, the film thickness of the fully cured, dry paint or coating.

1.11.5.5 DSD

Degree of Surface Degradation, the MPI system of defining degree of surface degradation. Five (5) levels are generically defined under the Assessment sections in the MPI Maintenance Repainting Manual.

1.11.5.6 EPP

Environmentally Preferred Products, a standard for determining environmental preferability in support of Executive Order 13101.

1.11.5.7 EXT

MPI short term designation for an exterior coating system.

1.11.5.8 INT

MPI short term designation for an interior coating system.

1.11.5.9 micron / microns

The metric measurement for 0.001 mm or one/one-thousandth of a millimeter.

1.11.5.10 mil / mils

The English measurement for 0.001 in or one/one-thousandth of an inch, equal to 25.4 microns or 0.0254 mm.

1.11.5.11 mm

The metric measurement for millimeter, 0.001 meter or one/one-thousandth of a meter.

1.11.5.12 MPI Gloss Levels

MPI system of defining gloss. Seven (7) gloss levels (G1 to G7) are generically defined under the Evaluation sections of the MPI Manuals. Traditionally, Flat refers to G1/G2, Eggshell refers to G3, Semigloss refers to G5, and Gloss refers to G6.

Gloss levels are defined by MPI as follows:

Gloss Level	Description	Units at 60 degrees	Units at 85 degrees
G1	Matte or Flat	0 to 5	10 max
G2	Velvet	0 to 10	10 to 35
G3	Eggshell	10 to 25	10 to 35
G4	Satin	20 to 35	35 min
G5	Semi-Gloss	35 to 70	
G6	Gloss	70 to 85	
G7	High Gloss		

Gloss is tested in accordance with [ASTM D523](#). Historically, the Government has used Flat (G1 / G2), Eggshell (G3), Semi-Gloss (G5), and Gloss (G6).

1.11.5.13 MPI System Number

The MPI coating system number in each Division found in either the MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual or the Maintenance Repainting Manual and defined as an exterior (EXT/REX) or interior system (INT/RIN). The Division number follows the CSI Master Format.

1.11.5.14 Paint

See Coating definition.

1.11.5.15 REX

MPI short term designation for an exterior coating system used in repainting projects or over existing coating systems.

1.11.5.16 RIN

MPI short term designation for an interior coating system used in repainting projects or over existing coating systems.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

Conform to the [coating](#) specifications and standards referenced in PART 3. Submit product data sheets for specified [coatings](#) and solvents. Provide preprinted cleaning and maintenance instructions for all coating systems.

Submit Manufacturer's Instructions on Mixing: Detailed mixing instructions, minimum and maximum application temperature and humidity, potlife, and curing and drying times between coats.

Provide certification of [Indoor Air Quality for paints and primers](#).

Provide certification of [Indoor Air Quality for consolidated latex paints](#).

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION OF AREAS AND SPACES NOT TO BE PAINTED

Prior to surface preparation and coating applications, remove, mask, or otherwise protect hardware, hardware accessories, machined surfaces, radiator covers, plates, lighting fixtures, public and private property,

and other such items not to be coated that are in contact with surfaces to be coated. Following completion of painting, reinstall removed items by workmen skilled in the trades. Restore surfaces contaminated by coating materials, to original condition and repair damaged items.

3.2 REPUTTYING AND REGLAZING

Remove cracked, loose, and defective putty or glazing compound on glazed sash and provide new putty or glazing compound. Where defective putty or glazing compound constitutes 30 percent or more of the putty at any one light, remove the glass and putty or glazing compound and reset the glass. Remove putty or glazing compound without damaging sash or glass. Clean rabbets to bare wood or metal and prime prior to reglazing. Provide linseed oil putty for wood sash. Patch surfaces to provide smooth transition between existing and new surfaces. Finish putty or glazing compound to a neat and true bead. Allow glazing compound time to cure, in accordance with manufacturer's recommendation, prior to coating application. Allow putty to set one week prior to coating application.

3.3 RESEALING OF EXISTING EXTERIOR JOINTS

3.3.1 Surface Condition

Begin with surfaces that are clean, dry to the touch, and free from frost and moisture; remove grease, oil, wax, lacquer, paint, defective backstop, or other foreign matter that would prevent or impair adhesion. Where adequate grooves have not been provided, clean out to a depth of **1/2 inch** and grind to a minimum width of **1/4 inch** without damage to adjoining work. Grinding is not required on metal surfaces.

3.3.2 Backstops

In joints more than **1/2 inch** deep, install glass fiber roving or neoprene, butyl, polyurethane, or polyethylene foams free of oil or other staining elements as recommended by sealant manufacturer. Provide backstop material compatible with sealant. Do not use oakum and other types of absorptive materials as backstops.

3.3.3 Primer and Bond Breaker

Install the type recommended by the sealant manufacturer.

3.3.4 Ambient Temperature

Between **38 degrees F** and **95 degrees F** when applying sealant.

3.3.5 Exterior Sealant

For joints in vertical surfaces, provide **ASTM C920**, Type S or M, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT. For joints in horizontal surfaces, provide **ASTM C920**, Type S or M, Grade P, Class 25, Use T. Color(s) will be selected by the Contracting Officer. Apply the sealant in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions. Force sealant into joints with sufficient pressure to fill the joints solidly. Apply sealant uniformly smooth and free of wrinkles.

3.3.6 Cleaning

Immediately remove fresh sealant from adjacent areas using a solvent

recommended by the sealant manufacturer. Upon completion of sealant application, remove remaining smears and stains and leave the work in a clean condition. Allow sealant time to cure, in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations, prior to coating.

3.4 SURFACE PREPARATION

Remove dirt, splinters, loose particles, grease, oil, disintegrated coatings, and other foreign matter and substances deleterious to coating performance as specified for each substrate before application of paint or surface treatments. Remove oil and grease prior to mechanical cleaning. Schedule cleaning so that dust and other contaminants will not fall on wet, newly painted surfaces. Spot-prime exposed ferrous metals such as nail heads on or in contact with surfaces to be painted with water-thinned paints, with a suitable corrosion-inhibitive primer capable of preventing flash rusting and compatible with the coating specified for the adjacent areas.

3.5 PREPARATION OF METAL SURFACES

3.5.1 Existing and New Ferrous Surfaces

- a. Ferrous Surfaces including Shop-coated Surfaces and Small Areas That Contain Rust, Mill Scale and Other Foreign Substances: Solvent clean or detergent wash in accordance with [SSPC SP 1](#) to remove oil and grease. Where shop coat is missing or damaged, clean according to [SSPC SP 2](#), [SSPC SP 3](#), [SSPC SP 6/NACE No.3](#), or [SSPC SP 10/NACE No. 2](#). Brush-off blast remaining surface in accordance with [SSPC 7/NACE No.4](#); Water jetting to [SSPC SP 12/NACE No.5](#) WJ-4 may be used to remove loose coating and other loose materials. Use inhibitor as recommended by coating manufacturer to prevent premature rusting. Protect shop-coated ferrous surfaces from corrosion by treating and touching up corroded areas immediately upon detection.
- b. Surfaces With More Than 20 Percent Rust, Mill Scale, and Other Foreign Substances: Clean entire surface in accordance with [SSPC SP 6/NACE No.3](#) /[SSPC SP 12/NACE No.5](#) WJ-3/[SSPC SP 10/NACE No. 2](#)/[SSPC SP 12/NACE No.5](#) WJ-2.
- c. Metal Floor Surfaces to Receive Nonslip Coating: Clean in accordance with [SSPC SP 10/NACE No. 2](#)/[SSPC SP 12/NACE No.5](#) WJ-2.

3.5.2 Final Ferrous Surface Condition:

For tool cleaned surfaces, the requirements are stated in [SSPC SP 2](#) and [SSPC SP 3](#). Use as a visual reference, photographs in [SSPC VIS 3](#) for the appearance of cleaned surfaces.

For abrasive blast cleaned surfaces, the requirements are stated in [SSPC 7/NACE No.4](#), [SSPC SP 6/NACE No.3](#), and [SSPC SP 10/NACE No. 2](#). Use as a visual reference, photographs in [SSPC VIS 1](#) for the appearance of cleaned surfaces.

For waterjet cleaned surfaces, the requirements are stated in [SSPC SP 12/NACE No.5](#). Use as a visual reference, photographs in [SSPC VIS 4/NACE VIS 7](#) for the appearance of cleaned surfaces.

3.5.3 Galvanized Surfaces

- a. New or Existing Galvanized Surfaces With Only Dirt and Zinc Oxidation Products: Clean with solvent, steam, or non-alkaline detergent solution in accordance with [SSPC SP 1](#). Completely remove coating by brush-off abrasive blast if the galvanized metal has been passivated or stabilized. Do not "passivate" or "stabilize" new galvanized steel to be coated. If the absence of hexavalent stain inhibitors is not documented, test as described in [ASTM D6386](#), Appendix X2, and remove by one of the methods described therein.

3.5.4 Non-Ferrous Metallic Surfaces

Aluminum and aluminum-alloy, lead, copper, and other nonferrous metal surfaces.

Surface Cleaning: Solvent clean in accordance with [SSPC SP 1](#) and wash with mild non-alkaline detergent to remove dirt and water soluble contaminants.

3.5.5 Terne-Coated Metal Surfaces

Solvent clean surfaces with mineral spirits, [ASTM D235](#). Wipe dry with clean, dry cloths.

3.5.6 Existing Surfaces with a Bituminous or Mastic-Type Coating

Remove chalk, mildew, and other loose material by washing with a solution of [1/2 cup](#) trisodium phosphate, [1/4 cup](#) household detergent, [one quart](#) 5 percent sodium hypochlorite solution and [3 quarts](#) of warm water.

3.6 PREPARATION OF CONCRETE AND CEMENTITIOUS SURFACE

3.6.1 Concrete and Masonry

- a. Curing: Allow concrete, stucco and masonry surfaces to cure at least 30 days before painting, and concrete slab on grade to cure at least 90 days before painting.
- b. Surface Cleaning: Remove the following deleterious substances.
 - (1) Dirt, Chalking, Grease, and Oil: Wash new surfaces with a solution composed of [1/2 cup](#) trisodium phosphate, [1/4 cup](#) household detergent, and [4 quarts](#) of warm water. Then rinse thoroughly with fresh water. For large areas, water blasting may be used.
 - (2) Fungus and Mold: Wash new surfaces with a solution composed of [1/2 cup](#) trisodium phosphate, [1/4 cup](#) household detergent, [1 quart](#) 5 percent sodium hypochlorite solution and [3 quarts](#) of warm water. Rinse thoroughly with fresh water.
 - (3) Paint and Loose Particles: Remove by wire brushing.
 - (4) Efflorescence: Remove by scraping or wire brushing followed by washing with a 5 to 10 percent by weight aqueous solution of hydrochloric (muriatic) acid. Do not allow acid to remain on the surface for more than five minutes before rinsing with fresh water. Do not acid clean more than [4 square feet](#) of surface, per workman, at one time.

(5) Removal of Existing Coatings: For surfaces to receive textured coating **MPI 42**, remove existing coatings including soundly adhered coatings if recommended by textured coating manufacturer.

- c. Cosmetic Repair of Minor Defects: Repair or fill mortar joints and minor defects, including but not limited to spalls, in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and prior to coating application.
- d. Allowable Moisture Content: Latex coatings may be applied to damp surfaces, but not to surfaces with droplets of water. Do not apply epoxies to damp vertical surfaces as determined by **ASTM D4263** or horizontal surfaces that exceed 3 lbs of moisture per 1000 square feet in 24 hours as determined by **ASTM F1869**. In all cases follow manufacturers recommendations. Allow surfaces to cure a minimum of 30 days before painting.

3.6.2 Gypsum Board, Plaster, and Stucco

- a. Surface Cleaning: Verify that plaster and stucco surfaces are free from loose matter and that gypsum board is dry. Remove loose dirt and dust by brushing with a soft brush, rubbing with a dry cloth, or vacuum-cleaning prior to application of the first coat material. A damp cloth or sponge may be used if paint will be water-based.
- b. Repair of Minor Defects: Prior to painting, repair joints, cracks, holes, surface irregularities, and other minor defects with patching plaster or spackling compound and sand smooth.
- c. Allowable Moisture Content: Latex coatings may be applied to damp surfaces, but not surfaces with droplets of water. Do not apply epoxies to damp surfaces as determined by **ASTM D4263**. Verify that new plaster to be coated has a maximum moisture content of 8 percent, when measured in accordance with **ASTM D4444**, Method A, unless otherwise authorized. In addition to moisture content requirements, allow new plaster to age a minimum of 30 days before preparation for painting.

3.7 PREPARATION OF WOOD AND PLYWOOD SURFACES

3.7.1 New Plywood and Wood Surfaces, Except Floors:

- a. Clean wood surfaces of foreign matter.

Surface Cleaning: Verify that surfaces are free from dust and other deleterious substances and in a condition approved by the Contracting Officer prior to receiving paint or other finish. Do not use water to clean uncoated wood. Scrape to remove loose coatings. Lightly sand to roughen the entire area of previously enamel-coated wood surfaces.

- b. Removal of Fungus and Mold: Wash existing coated surfaces with a solution composed of 3 ounces (2/3 cup) trisodium phosphate, 1 ounce (1/3 cup) household detergent, 1 quart 5 percent sodium hypochlorite solution and 3 quarts of warm water. Rinse thoroughly with fresh water.
- c. Do not exceed 12 percent moisture content of the wood as measured by a moisture meter in accordance with **ASTM D4444**, Method A, unless otherwise authorized.
- d. Prime or touch up wood surfaces adjacent to surfaces to receive

water-thinned paints before applying water-thinned paints.

- e. Cracks and Nailheads: Set and putty stop nailheads and putty cracks after the prime coat has dried.
- f. Cosmetic Repair of Minor Defects:
 - (1) Knots and Resinous Wood: Prior to application of coating, cover knots and stains with two or more coats of 3-pound-cut shellac varnish, plasticized with 5 ounces of castor oil per gallon. Scrape away existing coatings from knotty areas, and sand before treating. Prime before applying any putty over shellacked area.
 - (2) Open Joints and Other Openings: Fill with whiting putty, linseed oil putty. Sand smooth after putty has dried.
 - (3) Checking: Where checking of the wood is present, sand the surface, wipe and apply a coat of pigmented orange shellac. Allow to dry before paint is applied.

3.7.2 Interior Wood Surfaces, Stain Finish

Sand interior wood surfaces to receive stain. Fill oak and other open-grain wood to receive stain with a coat of wood filler not less than 8 hours before the application of stain; remove excess filler and sand the surface smooth.

3.8 APPLICATION

3.8.1 Coating Application

Comply with applicable federal, state and local laws enacted to insure compliance with Federal Clean Air Standards. Apply coating materials in accordance with SSPC PA 1. SSPC PA 1 methods are applicable to all substrates, except as modified herein.

At the time of application, paint must show no signs of deterioration. Maintain uniform suspension of pigments during application.

Unless otherwise specified or recommended by the paint manufacturer, paint may be applied by brush, roller, or spray. Use trigger operated spray nozzles for water hoses. Use rollers for applying paints and enamels of a type designed for the coating to be applied and the surface to be coated. Wear protective clothing and respirators when applying oil-based paints or using spray equipment with any paints.

Only apply paints, except water-thinned types to surfaces that are completely free of moisture as determined by sight or touch.

Thoroughly work coating materials into joints, crevices, and open spaces. Pay special attention to ensure that all edges, corners, crevices, welds, and rivets receive a film thickness equal to that of adjacent painted surfaces.

Apply each coat of paint so that dry film is of uniform thickness and free from runs, drops, ridges, waves, pinholes or other voids, laps, brush marks, and variations in color, texture, and finish. Completely hide all blemishes.

Touch up damaged coatings before applying subsequent coats. Broom clean and clear dust from interior areas before and during the application of coating material.

- a. Drying Time: Allow time between coats, as recommended by the coating manufacturer, to permit thorough drying, but not to present topcoat adhesion problems. Provide each coat in specified condition to receive next coat.
- b. Primers, and Intermediate Coats: Do not allow primers or intermediate coats to dry more than 30 days, or longer than recommended by manufacturer, before applying subsequent coats. Follow manufacturer's recommendations for surface preparation if primers or intermediate coats are allowed to dry longer than recommended by manufacturers of subsequent coatings. Cover each preceding coat or surface completely by ensuring visually perceptible difference in shades of successive coats.
- c. Finished Surfaces: Provide finished surfaces free from runs, drops, ridges, waves, laps, brush marks, and variations in colors.
- d. Thermosetting Paints: Topcoats over thermosetting paints (epoxies and urethanes) should be applied within the overcoating window recommended by the manufacturer.

3.8.2 Mixing and Thinning of Paints

Reduce paints to proper consistency by adding fresh paint, except when thinning is mandatory to suit surface, temperature, weather conditions, application methods, or for the type of paint being used. Obtain written permission from the Contracting Officer to use thinners. Verify that the written permission includes quantities and types of thinners to use.

When thinning is allowed, thin paints immediately prior to application with not more than 0.125 L of suitable thinner per liter. The use of thinner does not relieve the Contractor from obtaining complete hiding, full film thickness, or required gloss. Thinning cannot cause the paint to exceed limits on volatile organic compounds. Do not mix paints of different manufacturers.

3.8.3 Two-Component Systems

Mix two-component systems in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Follow recommendation by the manufacturer for any thinning of the first coat to ensure proper penetration and sealing for each type of substrate.

3.8.4 Coating Systems

- a. Systems by Substrates: Apply coatings that conform to the respective specifications listed in the following Tables:

Table - Exterior

Division 3. Exterior Concrete Paint Table
Division 4. Exterior Concrete Masonry Units Paint Table
Division 5. Exterior Metal, Ferrous and Non-Ferrous Paint Table

Table - Interior

Table - Exterior

Division 3.	Interior Concrete Paint Table
Division 4.	Interior Concrete Masonry Units Paint Table
Division 5.	Interior Metal, Ferrous and Non-Ferrous Paint Table
Division 9:	Interior Plaster, Gypsum Board, Textured Surfaces Paint Table

- b. Minimum Dry Film Thickness (DFT): Apply paints, primers, varnishes, enamels, undercoats, and other coatings to a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mil each coat unless specified otherwise in the Tables. Coating thickness where specified, refers to the minimum dry film thickness.
- c. Coatings for Surfaces Not Specified Otherwise: Coat surfaces which have not been specified, the same as surfaces having similar conditions of exposure.
- d. Existing Surfaces Damaged During Performance of the Work, Including New Patches In Existing Surfaces: Coat surfaces with the following:
 - (1) One coat of primer.
 - (2) One coat of undercoat or intermediate coat.
 - (3) One topcoat to match adjacent surfaces.
- e. Existing Coated Surfaces To Be Painted: Apply coatings conforming to the respective specifications listed in the Tables herein, except that pretreatments, sealers and fillers need not be provided on surfaces where existing coatings are soundly adhered and in good condition. Do not omit undercoats or primers.

3.9 COATING SYSTEMS FOR METAL

Apply coatings of Tables in Division 5 for Exterior and Interior.

- a. Apply specified ferrous metal primer on the same day that surface is cleaned, to surfaces that meet all specified surface preparation requirements at time of application.
- b. Inaccessible Surfaces: Prior to erection, use one coat of specified primer on metal surfaces that will be inaccessible after erection.
- c. Shop-primed Surfaces: Touch up exposed substrates and damaged coatings to protect from rusting prior to applying field primer.
- d. Surface Previously Coated with Epoxy or Urethane: Apply MPI 101, 1.5 mils DFT immediately prior to application of epoxy or urethane coatings.
- e. Pipes and Tubing: The semitransparent film applied to some pipes and tubing at the mill is not to be considered a shop coat. Overcoat these items with the specified ferrous-metal primer prior to application of finish coats.
- f. Exposed Nails, Screws, Fasteners, and Miscellaneous Ferrous Surfaces. On surfaces to be coated with water thinned coatings, spot prime exposed nails and other ferrous metal with latex primer MPI 107.

3.10 COATING SYSTEMS FOR CONCRETE AND CEMENTITIOUS SUBSTRATES

Apply coatings of Tables in Division 3, 4 and 9 for Exterior and Interior.

3.11 COATING SYSTEMS FOR WOOD AND PLYWOOD

- a. Apply coatings of Tables in Division 6 for Exterior and Interior.
- b. Prior to erection, apply two coats of specified primer to treat and prime wood and plywood surfaces which will be inaccessible after erection.
- c. Apply stains in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.

3.12 INSPECTION AND ACCEPTANCE

In addition to meeting previously specified requirements, demonstrate mobility of moving components, including swinging and sliding doors, cabinets, and windows with operable sash, for inspection by the Contracting Officer. Perform this demonstration after appropriate curing and drying times of coatings have elapsed and prior to invoicing for final payment.

3.13 WASTE MANAGEMENT

As specified in the Waste Management Plan and as follows. Do not use kerosene or any such organic solvents to clean up water based paints. Properly dispose of paints or solvents in designated containers. Close and seal partially used containers of paint to maintain quality as necessary for reuse. Store in protected, well-ventilated, fire-safe area at moderate temperature. Place materials defined as hazardous or toxic waste in designated containers. Coordinate with manufacturer for take-back program. Set aside scrap to be returned to manufacturer for recycling into new product. When such a service is not available set aside extra paint for future color matches or reuse by the Government.

3.14 PAINT TABLES

All DFT's are minimum values. Acceptable products are listed in the MPI Green Approved Products List, available at <http://www.specifygreen.com/APL/ProductIdxByMPInum.asp>.

3.14.1 Exterior Paint Tables

DIVISION 5: EXTERIOR METAL, FERROUS AND NON-FERROUS PAINT TABLE

STEEL / FERROUS SURFACES

- A. New Steel that has been hand or power tool cleaned to SSPC SP 2 or SSPC SP 3

1. Alkyd

New; MPI EXT 5.1Q-G5 (Semigloss) Existing; MPI REX 5.1D-G5

Primer: Intermediate: Topcoat:

MPI 23 MPI 94 MPI 94

System DFT: 5.25 mils

- B. New Steel that has been blast-cleaned to SSPC SP 6/NACE No.3:

1. Alkyd

STEEL / FERROUS SURFACES

New; MPI EXT 5.1D-G5 (Semigloss) / Existing; MPI REX 5.1D-G5

Primer: Intermediate: Topcoat:

MPI 79 MPI 94 MPI 94

System DFT: 5.25 mils

C. New steel blast cleaned to SSPC SP 10/NACE No. 2:

1. Waterborne Light Industrial

MPI EXT 5.1R-G5 (Semigloss)

Primer: Intermediate: Topcoat:

MPI 101 MPI 108 MPI 163

System DFT: 8.5 mils

EXTERIOR GALVANIZED SURFACES

D. New Galvanized surfaces:

1. Cementitious primer / Latex

MPI EXT 5.3A-G1 (Flat)

Primer: Intermediate: Topcoat:

MPI 26 MPI 10 MPI 10

System DFT: 4.5 mils

MPI EXT 5.3A-G5 (Semigloss)

Primer: Intermediate: Topcoat:

MPI 26 MPI 11 MPI 11

System DFT: 4.5 mils

2. Waterborne Primer / Latex

MPI EXT 5.3H-G1 (Flat)

Primer: Intermediate: Topcoat:

MPI 134 MPI 10 MPI 10

System DFT: 4.5 mils

MPI EXT 5.3H-G5 (Semigloss)

Primer: Intermediate: Topcoat:

MPI 134 MPI 11 MPI 11

System DFT: 4.5 mils

3. Waterborne Primer / Waterborne Light Industrial Coating

MPI EXT 5.3J-G5 (Semigloss)

Primer: Intermediate: Topcoat:

MPI 134 MPI 163 MPI 163

System DFT: 4.5 mils

4. Epoxy Primer / Waterborne Light Industrial Coating

MPI EXT 5.3K-G5 (Semigloss)

Primer: Intermediate: Topcoat:

MPI 101 MPI 163 MPI 163

System DFT: 5 mils

E. Galvanized surfaces with slight coating deterioration; little or no rusting:

1. Waterborne Light Industrial Coating

MPI REX 5.3J-G5 (Semigloss)

Primer: Intermediate: Topcoat:

MPI 134 N/A MPI 163

EXTERIOR GALVANIZED SURFACES

System DFT: 4.5 mils

F. Galvanized surfaces with severely deteriorated coating or rusting:

1. Waterborne Light Industrial Coating

MPI REX 5.3L-G5 (Semigloss)

Primer: Intermediate: Topcoat:
MPI 101 MPI 108 MPI 163

System DFT: 8.5 mils

EXTERIOR SURFACES, OTHER METALS (NON-FERROUS)

G. Aluminum, aluminum alloy and other miscellaneous non-ferrous metal items not otherwise specified except hot metal surfaces, roof surfaces, and new prefinished equipment. Match surrounding finish:

1. Alkyd

MPI EXT 5.4F-G1 (Flat)

Primer: Intermediate: Topcoat:
MPI 95 MPI 8 MPI 8

System DFT: 5 mils

2. Waterborne Light Industrial Coating

MPI EXT 5.4G-G3 (Eggshell)

Primer: Intermediate: Topcoat:
MPI 95 MPI 161 MPI 161

System DFT: 5 mils

H. Surfaces adjacent to painted surfaces; Mechanical, Electrical, Fire extinguishing sprinkler systems including valves, conduit, hangers, supports, exposed copper piping, and miscellaneous metal items not otherwise specified except floors, hot metal surfaces, and new prefinished equipment. Match surrounding finish:

1. Alkyd

MPI EXT 5.1D-G1 (Flat)

Primer: Intermediate: Topcoat:
MPI 79 MPI 8 MPI 8

System DFT: 5.25 mils

3.14.2 Interior Paint Tables

DIVISION 3: INTERIOR CONCRETE PAINT TABLE

A. New and uncoated existing and Existing, previously painted Concrete, vertical surfaces, not specified otherwise:

1. Institutional Low Odor / Low VOC Latex

New; MPI INT 3.1M-G3 (Eggshell)

Primer: Intermediate: Topcoat:
MPI 50 MPI 145 MPI 145

System DFT: 4 mils

DIVISION 4: INTERIOR CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS PAINT TABLE

B. New and uncoated Existing Concrete masonry:

1. Institutional Low Odor / Low VOC Latex

DIVISION 4: INTERIOR CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS PAINT TABLE

New; MPI INT 4.2E-G3 (Eggshell)

Filler	Primer:	Intermediate:	Topcoat:
MPI 4	N/A	MPI 145	MPI 145

System DFT: 4 mils

DIVISION 5: INTERIOR METAL, FERROUS AND NON-FERROUS PAINT TABLE

INTERIOR STEEL / FERROUS SURFACES

A. Metaland

miscellaneous metal items not otherwise specified except floors, hot metal surfaces, and new prefinished equipment:

1. Alkyd

MPI INT 5.1E-G5 (Semigloss)

Primer:	Intermediate:	Topcoat:
MPI 79	MPI 47	MPI 47

System DFT: 5.25 mils

B. Metal in toilets, restrooms, laundry areas, shower areas, and other high-humidity areas not otherwise specified except floors, hot metal surfaces, and new prefinished equipment:

1. Alkyd

MPI INT 5.1E-G5 (Semigloss)

Primer:	Intermediate:	Topcoat:
MPI 79	MPI 47	MPI 47

System DFT: 5.25 mils

C. Miscellaneous non-ferrous metal items not otherwise specified except floors, hot metal surfaces, and new prefinished equipment. Match surrounding finish:

1. Alkyd

MPI INT 5.4J-G5 (Semigloss)

Primer:	Intermediate:	Topcoat:
MPI 95	MPI 47	MPI 47

System DFT: 5 mils

D. New surfaces and Existing surfaces made bare cleaning to

SSPC SP 10/NACE No. 2

subject to temperatures up to 593 degrees C (1100 degrees F):

1. High Heat Resistant Coating

MPI INT 5.2D

Primer:	Intermediate:	Topcoat:
MPI 22	Surface preparation and number of coats per manufacturer's instructions.	

System DFT: Per Manufacturer

DIVISION 9: INTERIOR PLASTER, GYPSUM BOARD, TEXTURED SURFACES PAINT TABLE

A. New and Existing, previously painted Plaster and Wallboard not otherwise specified:

1. Institutional Low Odor / Low VOC Latex

New; MPI INT 9.2M-G3 (Eggshell) / Existing; MPI RIN 9.2M-G3 (Eggshell)

Primer:	Intermediate:	Topcoat:

DIVISION 9: INTERIOR PLASTER, GYPSUM BOARD, TEXTURED SURFACES PAINT TABLE
MPI 50 MPI 145 MPI 145
System DFT: 4 mils

B. New Wallboard in toilets, restrooms, laundry areas, shower areas, and other high humidity areas not otherwise specified.:

1. Epoxy
New; MPI INT 9.2E-G6 (Gloss)
Primer: Intermediate: Topcoat:
MPI 50 MPI 77 MPI 77
System DFT: 4 mils

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 10 14 00.10

EXTERIOR SIGNAGE
08/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM E84 (2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

All exterior signage must be provided by a single manufacturer. Exterior signage must be of the design, detail, sizes, types, and message content shown on the drawings, must conform to the requirements specified, and must be provided at the locations indicated. Submit exterior signage schedule in electronic media with spread sheet format. Spread sheet must include sign location, sign type, and message. Signs must be complete with lettering, framing as detailed, and related components for a complete installation. Each sample must consist of a complete sign panel with letters and symbols. Samples may be installed in the work, provided each sample is identified and location recorded. Submit three color samples for each material requiring color and 12 inch square sample of sign face color sample.

1.2.1 Character Proportions and Heights

Letters and numbers on indicated signs for handicapped-accessible buildings must have a width-to-height ratio between 3:5 and 1:1 and a stroke-width-to-height ratio between 1:5 and 1:10. Characters and numbers on indicated signs must be sized according to the viewing distance from which they are to be read. The minimum height is measured using an upper case letter "X". Lower case characters are permitted.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Approved Detail Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Installation

Exterior Signage; G

SD-04 Samples

Exterior Signage; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Protection and Cleaning; G

1.4 QUALIFICATIONS

Signs, plaques, and dimensional letters must be the standard product of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of the products. Items of equipment must essentially duplicate equipment that has been in satisfactory use at least 2 years prior to bid opening.

1.5 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Materials must be wrapped for shipment and storage, delivered to the jobsite in manufacturer's original packaging, and stored in a clean, dry area in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

1.6 WARRANTY

Manufacturer's standard performance guarantees or warranties that extend beyond a one year period must be provided.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GRAPHICS FOR EXTERIOR SIGNAGE SYSTEMS

2.1.1 Graphics

Signage graphics must conform to the following:

- a. Pressure sensitive precision cut vinyl letters, **white**, must be provided.

2.1.2 Messages

See drawings for message content. Typeface: **As indicated on drawings**.
Type size **as indicated on drawings**.

2.2 DIMENSIONAL BUILDING LETTERS

2.2.1 Fabrication

Letters must be fabricated from **white vinyl**. Letters must be cleaned. Letters must be packaged for protection until installation.

2.2.2 Typeface

Typeface must be **as indicated on drawings**.

2.2.3 Size

Letter size must be as indicated on drawings.

2.2.4 Finish

White vinyl finish must be provided.

2.2.5 Mounting

Adhere to glass store front.

2.3 VINYL SHEETING FOR GRAPHICS

Vinyl sheeting must be 5 to 7 year premium type and must be in accordance with the flammability requirements of ASTM E84 and must be a minimum 0.003 inch film thickness. Film must include a precoated pressure sensitive adhesive backing, Class 1, or positionable pressure sensitive adhesive backing, Class 3.

2.4 COLOR, FINISH, AND CONTRAST

Color must be selected from manufacturers standard colors. Color listed is not intended to limit the selection of equal colors from other manufacturers. For buildings required to be handicapped-accessible, the characters and background of signs must be eggshell, matte, or other non-glare finish. Characters and symbols must contrast with their background - either light characters on a dark background or dark characters on a light background.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Signs, plaques, or dimensional letters must be installed in accordance with approved manufacturer's instructions at locations shown on the approved detail drawings; submit drawings showing elevations of each type of sign; dimensions, details, and methods of mounting or anchoring; shape and thickness of materials; and details of construction. A schedule showing the location, each sign type, and message must be included. Signs mounted on other surfaces must not be installed until finishes on such surfaces have been completed. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions and cleaning instructions.

3.1.1 Protection and Cleaning

The work must be protected against damage during construction. Hardware and electrical equipment must be adjusted for proper operation. Glass, frames, and other sign surfaces must be cleaned in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. After signs are completed and inspected, cover all project identification, directional, and other signs which may mislead the public. Covering must be maintained until instructed to be removed by the Contracting Officer or until the facility is to be opened for business. Submit two copies of maintenance instructions listing routine maintenance procedures, possible breakdowns and repairs, and troubleshooting guides. The instructions must include simplified diagrams for the equipment as installed. Signs must be cleaned, as required, at time of cover removal.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 10 14 00.20

INTERIOR SIGNAGE
08/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI Z97.1 (2015) Safety Glazing Materials Used in
Buildings - Safety Performance
Specifications and Methods of Test

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C1036 (2016) Standard Specification for Flat
Glass

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

UFC 3-120-01 (2017) Design: Sign Standards, With Change
3

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

36 CFR 1191 Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)
Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and
Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act
(ABA) Accessibility Guidelines

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Detail Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Installation; G

Warranty; G

SD-04 Samples

Interior Signage; G

Software; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Approved Manufacturer's Instructions; G

Protection and Cleaning; G

1.3 EXTRA MATERIALS

Provide 10 extra frames and extra stock of the following: 10 blank plates of each color and size for all sign types. 60 changeable message strips for sign type Workstation. Provide 60 paper inserts and one copy of the software for user produced signs and inserts after project completion and equipment necessary for removal of signage parts and pieces.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4.1 Samples

Submit interior signage samples of each of the following sign types showing typical quality, workmanship and color: Directional sign, Standard Room sign, Changeable message strip sign, Facility Recognition Plaque, and Workstations. The samples may be installed in the work, provided each sample is identified and location recorded.

1.4.2 Detail Drawings

Submit detail drawings showing elevations of each type of sign, dimensions, details and methods of mounting or anchoring, mounting height, shape and thickness of materials, and details of construction. Include a schedule showing the location, each sign type, and message.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Materials must be packaged to prevent damage and deterioration during shipment, handling, storage and installation. Product must be delivered to the jobsite in manufacturer's original packaging and stored in a clean, dry area in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

1.6 WARRANTY

Warrant the interior signage for a period of 2 years against defective workmanship and material. Warranties must be signed by the authorized representative of the manufacturer. Submit warranty accompanied by the document authenticating the signer as an authorized representative of the guarantor. Guarantee that the signage products and the installation are free from any defects in material and workmanship from the date of delivery.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STANDARD PRODUCTS

Design criteria outlined in UFC 3-120-01, Design: Sign Standards, apply to this section.

Signs, plaques, directories, and dimensional letters must be the standard

product of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products that essentially duplicate signs that have been in satisfactory use at least 2 years prior to bid opening. Obtain signage from a single manufacturer with edges and corners of finished letterforms and graphics true and clean.

2.2 ROOM IDENTIFICATION/DIRECTIONAL SIGNAGE SYSTEM

2.2.1 Standard Room Signs

Signs must consist of acrylic plastic 0.080 inch thickness minimum conforming to ANSI Z97.1 and must conform to the following:

- a. Frames must be molded acrylic, flat 1/8 inch thick.
- b. End caps must be molded acrylic with square style corners.
- c. Units must be frameless. Corners of signs must be squared .

2.2.2 Changeable Message Strip Signs

Changeable message strip signs must be of same construction as standard room signs to include a clear sleeve that will accept a paper or plastic insert identifying changeable text. The insert must be prepared typeset message mounted on paper card stock. Provide paper and software for creating text and symbols for computers identified by owner for Owner production of paper inserts after project completion. Furnish one suction device to assist in removing face sheet.

2.2.3 Type of Mounting For Signs

Provide extruded aluminum brackets for hanging, projecting, and double-sided signs. Mounting for framed, hanging, and projecting signs must be by mechanical fasteners. Surface mounted signs must be mounted with countersunk mounting holes in plaques and mounting screws 1/16 inch thick closed cell vinyl foam with adhesive backing. Adhesive must be transparent, long aging, high tech formulation on two sides of the vinyl foam. fabricated from materials that are not corrosive to sign material and mounting surface.

2.2.4 Graphics

Signage graphics for modular signs must conform to the following:

2.2.4.1 Subsurface Copy

Copy is transferred to the back face of clear acrylic sheeting forming the panel face to produce precisely formed opaque image. This method bonds all sign elements (color, graphics, lettering, Braille and substrate) into a single unit.

2.2.4.2 Surface Applied Photopolymer

Integral graphics and Braille achieved by photomechanical stratification processes. Photopolymer used for ADA compliant graphics must be of the type that has a minimum durometer reading of 90. Tactile graphics must be raised 1/32 inch from the first surface of plaque by photomechanical stratification process.

2.2.5 Tactile Letters, Symbols and Braille

Raised letters and numbers on signs must conform to 36 CFR 1191.

2.3 BUILDING DIRECTORIES

Building directories must be lobby directories or floor directories, and must be provided with a changeable directory listing consisting of the areas, offices and personnel located within the facility. Dimensions, details, and materials of sign and message content must be as shown on the drawings.

2.3.1 Header Panel

Header panel must be acrylic with raised acrylic letters.

2.3.2 Doors

2.3.2.1 Door Glazing

Door glazing must be in accordance with ASTM C1036, Type 1, Class 1, Quality 3, minimum 1/8 inch thick.

2.3.2.2 Door Construction

Extruded aluminum door frame must be of same finish as surrounding frame. Corners must be mitered, reinforced, and assembled with concealed fasteners. Hinges must be standard with the manufacturer, in finish to match frames and trim. Glazing must be set in frame with resilient glazing channels.

2.3.2.3 Door Locks

Door locks must be manufacturer's standard and must be keyed alike. Provide two sets of keys.

2.3.3 Fabrication

Extruded aluminum frames and trim must be assembled with corners reinforced and mitered to a hairline fit, with no exposed fasteners.

2.3.4 Non-Illuminated Unit

Directory must consist of a non-illuminated unit with machine or laser engraved copy in interchangeable acrylic, metal, or high-pressure plastic laminate strips, screen printed or vinyl copy applied to acrylic, metal, or high-pressure plastic laminate strips, vinyl or screen printed lettering on plastic film held in interchangeable plastic carriers, screen printed or vinyl copy laminated to magnetic tape. Design of unit must be as shown in the drawings.

2.3.4.1 Construction

The directory must be constructed of an aluminum 2 inch deep frame with satin black anodized finish. Unit must be surface mounted. Unit must have a 3 inch high header lettering as shown. Unit must have a 3/8 inch face door frame with concealed hinges and locking system or other secure method. Door frame must match directory material and finish.

2.3.4.2 Message Strips

Message strips must be updatable by user. Message strips must be sized in accordance with manufacturer's standard. Letters and numbers must be provided in accordance with the drawings.

2.4 PRESSURE SENSITIVE LETTERS

2.4.1 Fabrication

Ensure that vinyl letter edges and corners of finished letterforms and graphics are true and clean. Do not use letterforms and graphics with rounded positive or negative corners, nicked, cut, or ragged edges.

2.4.2 Size

Letter size: As indicated.

2.5 FABRICATION AND MANUFACTURE

2.5.1 Factory Workmanship

Holes for bolts and screws must be drilled or punched. Drilling and punching must produce clean, true lines and surfaces. Exposed surfaces of work must have a smooth finish and exposed riveting must be flush. Fastenings must be concealed where practicable.

2.5.2 Dissimilar Materials

Where dissimilar metals are in contact, the surfaces will be protected to prevent galvanic or corrosive action.

2.6 COLOR, FINISH, AND CONTRAST

Color must be as indicated. Finish of all signs must be eggshell, matte, or other non-glare finish as required in handicapped-accessible buildings.

2.7 TYPEFACE

ADA-ABA compliant font for Room Signs, Helvetica Regular.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Signs must be installed plumb and true and in accordance with [approved manufacturer's instructions](#) at locations shown on the detail drawings. Submit six copies of operating instructions outlining the step-by-step procedures required for system operation. The instructions must include simplified diagrams for the system as installed, the manufacturer's name, model number, service manual, parts list, and brief description of all equipment and their basic operating features. Each set must be permanently bound and must have a hard cover. The following identification must be inscribed on the covers: the words "OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS", name and location of the facility, name of the Contractor, and contract number. Mounting height and mounting location must conform to [36 CFR 1191](#). Required blocking must be installed. Signs on doors or other surfaces must not be installed until finishes on such surfaces have been installed. Signs installed on glass surfaces must be installed with

matching blank back-up plates in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

Do not install items that show visual evidence of biological growth.

3.1.1 Anchorage

Anchorage must be in accordance with approved manufacturer's instructions. In high humidity interior spaces (for example, bathrooms, locker rooms, pools, trainers) and unconditioned spaces, use corrosion-resistant anchors/fasteners or with approval by the manufacturer, waterproof silicone adhesive. Anchorage not otherwise specified or shown must include slotted inserts, expansion shields, and powder-driven fasteners when approved for concrete; toggle bolts and through bolts for masonry; machine carriage bolts for steel; lag bolts and screws for wood. Exposed anchor and fastener materials must be compatible with metal to which applied and must have matching color and finish. At interior applications in heavy traffic areas, firmly attach signage to structure walls with tamper-proof fasteners.

- a. Signs mounted to painted gypsum board surfaces must be removable for painting maintenance.
- b. Mount signs mounted to lay-in ceiling grids with clip connections to ceiling tees.
- c. Install signs mounted on metal surfaces with magnetic tape.
- d. Install signs mounted on fabric surfaces with hook and loop tape or pin mount.

3.1.2 Protection and Cleaning

Protect the work against damage during construction. Hardware and electrical equipment must be adjusted for proper operation. Glass, frames, and other sign surfaces must be cleaned at completion of sign installation in accordance with the manufacturer's approved instructions and the requirements of Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA, Package 1. Submit six copies of maintenance instructions listing routine procedures, repairs, and guides.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 10 21 13

TOILET COMPARTMENTS
08/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ALUMINUM ASSOCIATION (AA)

AA DAF45 (2003; Reaffirmed 2009) Designation System
for Aluminum Finishes

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A123/A123M (2017) Standard Specification for Zinc
(Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and
Steel Products

ASTM A336/A336M (2018) Standard Specification for Alloy
Steel Forgings for Pressure and
High-Temperature Parts

ASTM A385/A385M (2017) Standard Practice for Providing
High-Quality Zinc Coatings (Hot-Dip)

ASTM B221 (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum
and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,
Wire, Profiles, and Tubes

ASTM B221M (2013) Standard Specification for Aluminum
and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,
Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric)

ASTM B36/B36M (2013) Standard Specification for Brass
Plate, Sheet, Strip, and Rolled Bar

ASTM B456 (2017) Standard Specification for
Electrodeposited Coatings of Copper Plus
Nickel Plus Chromium and Nickel Plus
Chromium

ASTM B86 (2013) Standard Specification for Zinc and
Zinc-Aluminum (ZA) Alloy Foundry and Die
Castings

ASTM D7611/D7611M (2013; E 2014) Standard Practice for
Coding Plastic Manufactured Articles for
Resin Identification

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350 (2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for
the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile
Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor
Sources using Environmental Chambers

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC A117.1 COMM (2017) Standard And Commentary Accessible
and Usable Buildings and Facilities

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

SOCIETY OF AUTOMOTIVE ENGINEERS INTERNATIONAL (SAE)

SAE AMS2460 (2013; Rev A) Plating, Chromium

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

CID A-A-60003 (Basic) Partitions, Toilet, Complete

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

36 CFR 1191 Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)
Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and
Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act
(ABA) Accessibility Guidelines

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program
For Chemical Emissions For Building
Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation;
submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control
approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability
eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING.
Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL
PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Fabrication Drawings

Installation Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Cleaning and Maintenance Instructions

Colors And Finishes

Sound-Deadening Cores

Anchoring Devices and Fasteners

Hardware and Fittings

Brackets

Door Hardware

Toilet Enclosures

Urinal Screens

Pilaster Shoes

Finishes; G

Recycled content for plastic partitions and screens; S

SD-04 Samples

Colors and Finishes; G

Hardware and Fittings

Anchoring Devices and Fasteners

SD-07 Certificates

Warranty

Indoor air quality for solid phenolic partitions and screens; S

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Plastic Identification; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

1.3 CERTIFICATIONS

1.3.1 Indoor Air Quality

1.3.1.1 Solid Phenolic Products

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by **UL 2818** (Greenguard) Gold, **SCS** Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party program that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited herein.

1.4 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

Conform to **ICC A117.1 COMM** code for access for the handicapped operation of toilet compartment door and hardware.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver materials in the manufacturer's original unopened packages with the brand, item identification, and project reference clearly marked. Store components in a dry location that is adequately ventilated; free from dust, water, other contaminants, and damage during delivery, storage, and construction.

1.6 WARRANTY

Provide certification or warranties that toilet partitions will be free of defects in materials, fabrication, finish, and installation and will remain so for a period of not less than 15 years after completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Provide a complete and usable toilet partition system, including toilet enclosures, room entrance screens, urinal screens, system of panels, hardware, and support components. Furnish the partition system from a single manufacturer, with a standard product as shown in the most recent catalog data. Submit Fabrication Drawings for metal toilet partitions and urinal screens consisting of fabrication and assembly details to be performed in the factory. Submit manufacturer's Cleaning and Maintenance Instructions with Fabrication Drawings for review.

2.1.1 Plastic Identification

Verify that plastic products to be incorporated into the project are labeled in accordance with ASTM D7611/D7611M. Where products are not labeled, provide product data indicating polymeric information in the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Type 2	High Density Polyethylene (HDPE)

2.2 MATERIALS

2.2.1 Sound-Deadening Cores

Provide sound deadening consisting of treated kraft paper honeycomb cores with a cell size of not more than 1 inch. Resin-material content must weigh not less than 11 percent of the finished core weight. Expanded cores must be faced on both sides with kraft paper.

2.2.2 Anchoring Devices and Fasteners

Provide steel anchoring devices and fasteners hot-dipped galvanized after fabrication, in conformance with ASTM A385/A385M and ASTM A123/A123M. Conceal all galvanized anchoring devices.

2.2.3 Brackets

Wall brackets must be two-ear panel brackets, T-style, 1-inch stock. Provide stirrup style panel-to-pilaster brackets.

2.2.4 Hardware and Fittings

2.2.4.1 General Requirements

Conform hardware for the toilet partition system to [CID A-A-60003](#) for the specified type and style of partitions. Provide hardware finish highly resistant to alkalis, urine, and other common toilet room acids. Comply with latching devices and hinges for handicap compartments with [36 CFR 1191](#); provide stainless steel devices and hinges with door latches that operate without either tight grasping or twisting of the wrist of the operator. Submit three samples of each item, including anchoring devices and fasteners. Approved hardware samples may be installed in the work if properly identified.

Material	Conformance Standard
Cold-rolled sheet steel	ASTM A336/A336M , commercial quality
Zinc-base alloy	ASTM B86 , Alloy AC41-A
Brass	ASTM B36/B36M , Alloy C26800
Aluminum	ASTM B221M ASTM B221

2.2.4.2 Finishes

- Chrome plating must conform to [ASTM B456](#).
- Finish must conform to [SAE AMS2460](#), Class I, Type II.
- Aluminum must have a clear anodic coating conforming to [AA DAF45](#).
- Corrosion-resistant steel must have a No. 4 finish.
- Exposed fasteners must match the hardware and fittings.

2.2.5 Door Hardware

2.2.5.1 Hinges

Hinges must be adjustable to hold in-swinging doors open at any angle up to 90 degrees and outswinging doors to 10 degrees. Provide self-lubricating hinges with the indicated swing. Hinges must be the surface-mounted type and have the following type of return movement:

- Gravity return movement

2.2.5.2 Latch and Pull

Latch and pull must be a combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper equipped with emergency access.

2.2.5.3 Coat Hooks

Coat hooks must be combination units with hooks and rubber tipped pins.

2.3 PARTITION PANELS AND DOORS

Fabricate partition panels and doors not less than 1 inch thick with face sheets not less than 0.0396 inch thick.

Provide solid toilet partitions and screens with recycled content of 30 percent minimum. Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for plastic partitions and screens.

Provide solid phenolic toilet partitions and urinal screens to meet the emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (use the office or classroom requirements, regardless of space type). Provide certification or validation of indoor air quality for solid phenolic partitions and screens.

2.3.1 Toilet Enclosures

Provide and conform toilet enclosures to CID A-A-60003, Type I, Style A, floor supported. Furnish width, length, and height of toilet enclosures as shown. Provide a width of 1 inch. Provide overhead bracing as required. Finish surface of panels must be solid phenolic, color through the core Finish 4A; water resistant; graffiti resistant; non-absorbent. Reinforce panels indicated to receive toilet paper holders or grab bars for mounting of the items required. Provide grab bars to withstand a bending stress, shear stress, shear force, and a tensile force induced by 250 lbf. Grab bars must not rotate within their fittings.

2.3.2 Urinal Screens

Provide and conform urinal screens to CID A-A-60003, Type III, Style A, floor supported. Provide finish for surface of screens as solid phenolic, color through the core Finish 4A; water resistant; graffiti resistant; non-absorbent. Furnish width and height of urinal screens as shown. Provide thickness of 1 inch. Secure wall hung urinal screens with 42 inch long, continuous flanges. Fabricate screens from the same types of panels and pilasters as the toilet partitions. Use corrosion-resistant stainless steel fittings and fasteners.

2.4 FLOOR-ANCHORED PARTITIONS

Pilasters must be not less than 1-1/4 inch thick with face sheets not less than 0.0635 inch thick. Provide anchoring device at the bottom of the pilaster consisting of a steel bar not less than 1/2 by 7/8 inch welded to the reinforced face sheets and having not less than two 3/8 inch round anchorage devices for securing to the floor slab. Provide anchorage devices complete with threaded rods, expansion shields, lock washers, and leveling-adjustment nuts. Trim piece at the floor must be 3 inch high and fabricated from not less than 0.030 inch thick corrosion-resistant stainless steel.

2.5 OVERHEAD-BRACED PARTITIONS

Pilasters must be not less than 1-1/4 inch thick with face sheets not less than 0.0393 inch thick. Provide anchoring device at the bottom of the pilaster consisting of a channel-shaped floor stirrup fabricated from not less than 0.0635 inch thick material and a leveling bolt. Secure the stirrup to the pilaster with not less than a 3/16 inch bolt and nut after the pilaster is leveled. Secure the stirrup to the floor with not less than two lead expansion shields and sheetmetal screws. Fabricate overhead brace from a continuous extruded aluminum tube not less than 1 inch wide by

1-1/2 inch high, 0.125-inch wall thickness. Finish must be AA-C22A31 in accordance with AA DAF45. Set and secure brace into the top of each pilaster. Fabricate 3 inch high trim piece at the floor from not less than 0.030 inch thick corrosion-resistant stainless steel.

2.6 PILASTER SHOES

Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal floor-mounted anchorage. Pilaster shoes must be stainless steel. See Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING for cumulative total recycled content requirements. Height must be 3 inches.

2.7 HARDWARE

Provide hardware for the toilet partition system that conforms to CID A-A-60003 for the specified type and style of partitions. Use a hardware finish that is highly resistant to alkalis, urine, and other common toilet room acids. Hardware includes: chrome plated non ferrous cast pivot hinges, gravity type, adjustable for door close positioning; nylon bearings; chrome plated aluminum door latch; door strike and keeper with rubber bumper; and cast alloy chrome plated coat hook and bumper. Provide latching devices and hinges for handicap compartments complying with 36 CFR 1191 and stainless steel door latches that operate without either tight grasping or twisting of the wrist of the operator. Use stainless steel, tamper proof type screws and bolts. Wall mounting brackets must be continuous, full height, stainless steel, in accordance with toilet compartment manufacturer's instructions.

2.8 COLORS AND FINISHES

2.8.1 Colors

Provide manufacturer's standard color charts for color of finishes for toilet partition system components. Submit three samples showing a finished edge on two adjacent sides and core construction, each not less than 12-inch square

2.8.2 Finishes No.4 and No. 5

Provide solid plastic fabricated of HDPE formed under high pressure rendering a single component section not less than one inch thick. Colors must extend throughout the panel thickness. Provide exposed finish surfaces: smooth, waterproof, non-absorbent, and resistant to staining and marking with pens, pencils, or other writing devices. Solid plastic partitions must not show any sign of deterioration when immersed in the following chemicals and maintained at a temperature of 80 degrees F for a minimum of 30 days:

Acetic Acid (80 percent)	Hydrochloric Acid (40 percent)
Acetone	Hydrogen Peroxide (30 percent)
Ammonia (liquid)	Isopropyl Alcohol
Ammonia Phosphate	Lactic Acid (25 percent)
Bleach (12 percent)	Lime Sulfur

Borax	Nicotine
Brine	Potassium Bromide
Caustic Soda	Soaps
Chlorine Water	Sodium Bicarbonate
Citric Acid	Trisodium Phosphate
Copper Chloride	Urea; Urine
Core Oils	Vinegar

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

Take field measurements prior to the preparation of drawing and fabrication to ensure proper fits. Verify that field measurements, surfaces, substrates and conditions are as required, and ready to receive work. Verify correct spacing of plumbing fixtures. Verify correct location of built in framing, anchorage, and bracing. Report in writing to Contracting Officer prevailing conditions that will adversely affect satisfactory execution of the work of this section. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Do not install items that show visual evidence of biological growth. Install partitions rigid, straight, plumb, and level, with the panels centered between the fixtures. Provide a panel clearance of not more than **1/2 inch** and secure the panels to walls and pilasters with not less than two wall brackets attached near the top and bottom of the panel. Locate wall brackets so that holes for wall bolts occur in masonry or tile joints. Secure Panels to pilasters with brackets matching the wall brackets. Provide for adjustment due to minor floor variations. Locate head rail joints at pilaster center lines. Install adjacent components for consistency of line and plane. Equip each door with hinges, one door latch, and one coat hook and bumper. Align hardware to uniform clearance at vertical edges of doors.

- a. Secure panels to hollow plastered walls with toggle bolts using not less than **1/4-20** screws of the length required for the wall thickness. Toggle bolts must have a load-carrying strength of not less than **600 pounds** per anchor.
- b. Secure panels to ceramic tile on hollow plastered walls or hollow concrete-masonry walls with toggle bolts using not less than **1/4-20** screws of the length required for the wall thickness. Toggle bolts must have a load-carrying strength of not less than **600 pounds** per anchor.
- c. Secure panels to solid masonry or concrete with lead or brass expansion shields designed for use with not less than **1/4-20** screws, with a shield length of not less than **1-1/2 inch**. Expansion shields must have a load-carrying strength of not less than **600 pounds** per anchor.

- d. Submit [Installation Drawings](#) for metal toilet partitions and urinal screens showing plans, elevations, details of construction, hardware, reinforcing and blocking, fittings, mountings and escutcheons. Indicate on drawings the type of partition, location, mounting height, cutouts, and reinforcement required for toilet-room accessories.

3.3 FLOOR-ANCHORED PARTITIONS

Secure pilasters to the floor with the anchorage device specified. Make all leveling devices readily accessible for leveling, plumbing, and tightening the installation. Level tops of doors with tops of pilasters when doors are in a closed position. Expansion shields must have a minimum [2-inch](#) penetration into the concrete slab.

3.4 OVERHEAD-BRACED PARTITIONS

Secure pilasters to the floor with the anchorage device specified. Make all leveling devices readily accessible for leveling, plumbing, and tightening the installation. Secure overhead brace to the pilaster face with not less than two fasteners per face. Expansion shields must have a minimum [2-inch](#) penetration into the concrete slab. Make tops of doors parallel with the overhead brace when doors are in a closed position.

3.5 FINAL ADJUSTMENT

After completion of the installation, make final adjustments to the pilaster-leveling devices, door hardware, and other working parts of the partition assembly. Doors must have a uniform vertical edge clearance of approximately [3/16 inch](#) and must rest open at approximately 30 degrees when unlatched.

3.6 CLEANING

Baked enamel finish must be touched up with the same color of paint that was used for the finish. Clean all surfaces of the work, and adjacent surfaces soiled as a result of the work, in an approved manner compliant with the manufacturer's recommended cleaning and protection from damage procedures until accepted. Remove all equipment, tools, surplus materials, and work debris from the site.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 10 26 00

WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION
08/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A240/A240M	(2017) Standard Specification for Chromium and Chromium-Nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip for Pressure Vessels and for General Applications
ASTM B221	(2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes
ASTM D256	(2010) Determining the Izod Pendulum Impact Resistance of Plastics
ASTM D543	(2014) Standard Practices for Evaluating the Resistance of Plastics to Chemical Reagents
ASTM D635	(2014) Standard Test Method for Rate of Burning and/or Extent and Time of Burning of Self-Supporting Plastics in a Horizontal Position
ASTM E84	(2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
ASTM G21	(2015) Standard Practice for Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350	(2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources using Environmental Chambers

GREEN SEAL (GS)

GS-36	(2013) Adhesives for Commercial Use

NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF ARCHITECTURAL METAL MANUFACTURERS (NAAMM)

NAAMM AMP 500 (2006) Metal Finishes Manual

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 80 (2016; TIA 16-1) Standard for Fire Doors
and Other Opening Protectives

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

SOCIETY OF AUTOMOTIVE ENGINEERS INTERNATIONAL (SAE)

SAE J1545 (2005; R 2014) Instrumental Color
Difference Measurement for Exterior
Finishes, Textiles and Colored Trim

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168 (2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program
For Chemical Emissions For Building
Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Corner Guards; G, AE

Door Protectors; G, AE

Wall Covering/Panels; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Corner Guards; G, AE

Door Protectors; G, AE

Wall Covering/Panels; G, AE

Recycled content for aluminum component of corner guards; S

SD-04 Samples

Finish; G, AE

SD-06 Test Reports

Corner Guards

Door Protectors

Wall Covering/Panels

SD-07 Certificates

Corner Guards

Door Protectors

Indoor air quality for wall covering/panels; S

Indoor air quality for adhesives; S

1.3 CERTIFICATIONS

1.3.1 Indoor Air Quality

1.3.1.1 Wall Covering/Panels

Provide sheet and high impact resistant resilient materials certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by **UL 2818** (Greenguard) Gold, **SCS** Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party program that products meet the requirements of this section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited herein.

1.3.1.2 Adhesives and Sealants

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by **UL 2818** (Greenguard) Gold, **SCS** Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party program that products meet the requirements of this section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited herein.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver materials to the project site in manufacturer's original unopened containers with seals unbroken and labels and trademarks intact. Keep materials dry, protected from weather and damage, and stored under cover. Materials must be stored at approximately **70 degrees F** for at least 48 hours prior to installation.

1.5 WARRANTY

Provide manufacturer's standard performance guarantees or warranties that extend beyond a 1 year period.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STANDARD PRODUCTS

To the maximum extent possible, corner guards, door and door frame protectors, wall guards (bumper guards), wall panels and wall covering must be the standard products of a single manufacturer and must be furnished as detailed. Drawings show general configuration of products required, and items differing in minor details from those shown will be acceptable.

2.1.1 Resilient Material

Provide resilient material consisting of high impact resistant extruded acrylic vinyl, polyvinyl chloride, or injection molded thermal plastic conforming to the following:

2.1.1.1 Minimum Impact Resistance

Minimum impact resistance must be 18 ft-lbs/sq. inch when tested in accordance with ASTM D256, (Izod impact, ft-lbs per sq inch notched).

2.1.1.2 Fire Rating

Fire rating must be Class 1 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, having a maximum flame spread of 25 and a smoke developed rating of 450 or less. Material must be rated self extinguishing when tested in accordance with ASTM D635. Material must be labeled and tested by an approved nationally known testing laboratory. Resilient material used for protection on fire rated doors and frames must be listed by the testing laboratory performing the tests. Resilient material installed on fire rated wood/steel door and frame assemblies must have been tested on similar type assemblies. Test results of material tested on any other combination of door/frame assembly will not be acceptable.

2.1.1.3 Integral Color

Colored components must have integral color and must be matched in accordance with SAE J1545 to within plus or minus 1.0 on the CIE-LCH scales.

2.1.1.4 Chemical and Stain Resistance

Materials must be resistant to chemicals and stains reagents in accordance with ASTM D543.

2.1.1.5 Fungal and Bacterial Resistance

Materials must be resistant to fungi and bacteria in accordance with ASTM G21, as applicable.

2.2 CORNER GUARDS

2.2.1 Resilient Corner Guards

Corner guard units must be flush mounted or surface mounted type, radius formed to profile shown. Corner guards must be 4 feet high. Mounting hardware, cushions, and base plates must be furnished. Assembly must consist of a snap-on corner guard formed from high impact resistant resilient material, mounted on a continuous aluminum retainer. Extruded aluminum retainer must conform to ASTM B221, alloy 6063, temper T5 or T6.

Provide aluminum components that contain a minimum of 35 percent recycled content. Provide data identifying percentage of [recycled content for aluminum component of corner guards](#). Flush mounted type guards must act as a stop for adjacent wall finish material. Factory fabricated end closure caps must be furnished for top and bottom of surface mounted corner guards. Flush mounted corner guards installed in fire rated wall must maintain the rating of the wall. Insulating materials that are an integral part of the corner guard system must be provided by the manufacturer of the corner guard system. Exposed metal portions of fire rated assemblies must have a paintable surface.

2.3 [DOOR PROTECTORS](#)

Door protection items must consist of high impact resistant acrylic vinyl or polyvinyl chloride resilient material, minimum [0.060 inch](#) thick for doors. Coordinate door and door frame protection material requirements with door and frame suppliers to insure fit for all components and color matching with other resilient materials. Provide adhesive as recommended by resilient material manufacturer.

2.4 [WALL COVERING/PANELS](#)

Provide wall covering/panels consisting of high impact rigid acrylic vinyl or polyvinyl chloride resilient material. Panel sizes must be [4 x 8 feet](#). Submit fire rating and extinguishing test results for resilient material. Also submit statements attesting that the items comply with specified fire and safety code requirements. Provide wall covering material used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) that meets either emissions requirements of [CDPH SECTION 01350](#) (use the office or classroom requirements, regardless of space type) the VOC content requirements of [SCAQMD Rule 1168](#), or VOC content requirements of [GS-36](#). Provide certification or validation of [indoor air quality for wall covering/panels](#).

2.4.1 Rigid Vinyl Acrylic Wall Covering

Wall covering thickness must be [0.040 inch](#).

2.5 TRIM, FASTENERS AND ANCHORS

Provide vinyl trim, fasteners and anchors for each specific installation as shown.

2.6 [FINISH](#)

Submit three samples indicating color and texture of materials requiring color and finish.

2.6.1 Stainless Steel Finish

Finish for stainless steel must be in accordance with [ASTM A240/A240M](#), Type 302 or 304, [NAAMM AMP 500](#), finish number 4.

2.6.2 Resilient Material Finish

Finish for resilient material must be [as selected from manufacturers standard offerings](#).

2.7 ADHESIVES

Adhesive for resilient material must be in accordance with manufacturers recommendations. Provide sealants and non-aerosol adhesive products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) that meet either emissions requirements of [CDPH SECTION 01350](#) (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) the VOC content requirements of [SCAQMD Rule 1168](#), or VOC content requirements of [GS-36](#). Provide certification or validation of [indoor air quality for adhesives](#).

2.8 COLOR

Color must be as indicated. Color listed is not intended to limit the selection of equal colors from other manufacturers.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Do not install items that show visual evidence of biological growth.

3.1.1 Corner Guards and Wall Guards (Bumper Guards)

Material must be mounted at location indicated in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

3.1.2 Door, Door Frame Protectors, and Wall Panels

Surfaces to receive protection must be clean, smooth, and free of obstructions. Protectors must be installed after frames are in place, but prior to hanging of doors, in accordance with manufacturer's specific instructions. Adhesives must be applied in controlled environment in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Protection for fire doors and frames must be installed in accordance with [NFPA 80](#).

3.1.3 Stainless Steel Guards

- a. Mount guards on external corners of interior walls, partitions and columns as in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- b. Where corner guards are installed on gypsum board, clean surfaces and anchor guards with a neoprene solvent-type contact adhesive specifically manufactured for use on gypsum board construction. Remove excess adhesive from the guard edges and allow to cure undisturbed for 24 hours.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 10 28 13

TOILET ACCESSORIES
08/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C1036 (2016) Standard Specification for Flat Glass

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Finishes; G

Accessory Items; G

SD-04 Samples

Finishes; G

Accessory Items

SD-07 Certificates

Accessory Items

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Wrap toilet accessories for shipment and storage, then deliver to the jobsite in manufacturer's original packaging, and store in a clean, dry area protected from construction damage and vandalism.

1.4 WARRANTY

Provide manufacturer's standard performance guarantees or warranties that extend beyond a 1 year period.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS

Provide toilet accessories where indicated in accordance with paragraph SCHEDULE. Porcelain type, tile-wall accessories are specified in Section 09 30 10 CEMENT TILING, QUARRY TILING, AND PAVER TILING. Provide each accessory item complete with the necessary mounting plates of sturdy construction with corrosion resistant surface.

Provide stainless steel products listed herein manufactured from materials containing a minimum of 50 percent recycled content.

2.1.1 Anchors and Fasteners

Provide anchors and fasteners capable of developing a restraining force commensurate with the strength of the accessory to be mounted and suited for use with the supporting construction. Provide exposed fasteners with finish to match the accessory.

2.1.2 Finishes

Except where noted otherwise, provide the following finishes on metal:

Metal	Finish
Stainless steel	No. 4 satin finish
Carbon steel, copper alloy, and brass	Chromium plated, bright

2.2 ACCESSORY ITEMS

Conform to the requirements for accessory items specified below. Submit fasteners proposed for use for each type of wall construction, mounting, operation, and cleaning instructions and one sample of each other accessory proposed for use. Incorporate approved samples into the finished work, provided they are identified and their locations noted. Submit certificate for each type of accessory specified, attesting that the items meet the specified requirements.

2.2.1 Grab Bar (GB)

Provide an 18 gauge, 1-1/4 inch grab bar OD Type 304 stainless steel. Provide form and length for grab bar as indicated. Provide concealed mounting flange. Provide grab with satin finish. Furnish installed bars capable of withstanding a 500 pound vertical load without coming loose from the fastenings and without obvious permanent deformation. Allow 1-1/2 inch space between wall and grab bar.

2.2.2 Mirrors, Glass (MG)

Provide Type I transparent flat type, Class 1-clear glass for mirrors. Glazing Quality q1 1/4 inch thick conforming to ASTM C1036. Coat glass on one surface with silver coating, copper protective coating, and mirror backing paint. Provide highly adhesive pure silver coating of a thickness which provides reflectivity of 83 percent or more of incident light when viewed through 1/4 inch thick glass, free of pinholes or other defects.

Provide copper protective coating with pure bright reflective copper, homogeneous without sludge, pinholes or other defects, of proper thickness to prevent "adhesion pull" by mirror backing paint. Provide mirror backing paint with two coats of special scratch and abrasion-resistant paint and baked in uniform thickness to provide a protection for silver and copper coatings which will permit normal cutting and edge fabrication.

2.2.3 Paper Towel Dispenser (PTD)

Provide paper towel dispenser constructed of a minimum 0.03 inch Type 304 stainless steel, surface mounted. Furnish tumbler key lock locking mechanism.

2.2.4 Sanitary Napkin Disposer (SND)

Construct a Type 304 stainless steel sanitary napkin disposal with removable leak-proof receptacle for disposable liners. Provide fifty disposable liners of the type standard with the manufacturer. Retain receptacle in cabinet by tumbler lock. Provide disposer with a door for inserting disposed napkins, partition mounted, double access.

2.2.5 Sanitary Napkin and Tampon Dispenser (SNTD)

Provide sanitary napkin and tampon dispenser surface mounted. Dispenser, including door of Type 304 stainless steel that dispense both napkins and tampons with a minimum capacity of 20 each. Furnish dispensing mechanism for complimentary operation. Hang doors with a full-length corrosion-resistant steel piano hinge and secure with a tumbler lock. Provide keys for coin box different from the door keys.

2.2.6 Shower Curtain Rods (SCR)

Provide Type 304 stainless steel shower curtain rods 1-1/4 inch OD by 0.049 inch minimum straight or bent as required to meet installation conditions.

2.2.7 Towel Pin (TP)

Provide towel pin with concealed wall fastenings, and a pin integral with or permanently fastened to wall flange with maximum projection of 4 inch. Provide satin finish.

2.2.8 Toilet Tissue Dispenser (TD)

Furnish Type II - surface mounted toilet tissue holder with two rolls of standard tissue mounted horizontally. Provide stainless steel, satin finish cabinet.

2.2.9 Folding Shower Seat (FSS)

Folding shower seat must have a frame constructed of type-304 satin finish stainless steel, 16-gauge, 1-1/4 inch square tubing, and 18-gauge, 1 inch diameter seamless tubing. Seat must be constructed of one-piece, 1/2 inch thick water-resistant, ivory colored solid phenolic with black edge. Clearance between back of shower seat and wall must be 1-1/2 inches to comply with ADA Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG). Seat supports must not come into contact with the floor. Seat must be able to lock in upright position when not in use. Seat must be attached to wall by two 3 inch diameter mounting flanges constructed of type-304, 3/16 inch thick stainless steel with satin finish. Manufacturer's service and parts manual

must be provided to building owner/manager upon completion of project.

2.2.10 Mop and Broom Holder (MH)

Stainless steel with grip jaw cam mechanism securing 5 mop or broom handles. Also includes hooks and storage shelf.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Do not install items that show visual evidence of biological growth. Provide the same finish for the surfaces of fastening devices exposed after installation as the attached accessory. Provide oval exposed screw heads. Install accessories at the location and height indicated. Protect exposed surfaces of accessories with strippable plastic or by other means until the installation is accepted. After acceptance of accessories, remove and dispose of strippable plastic protection. Coordinate accessory manufacturer's mounting details with other trades as their work progresses. Use sealants for brackets, plates, anchoring devices and similar items in showers (a silicone or polysulfide sealant) as they are set to provide a watertight installation. After installation, thoroughly clean exposed surfaces and restore damaged work to its original condition or replace with new work.

3.1.1 Recessed Accessories

Fasten accessories with wood screws to studs, blocking or rough frame in wood construction. Set anchors in mortar in masonry construction. Fasten to metal studs or framing with sheet metal screws in metal construction.

3.1.2 Surface Mounted Accessories

Mount on concealed backplates, unless specified otherwise. Conceal fasteners on accessories without backplates. Install accessories with sheet metal screws or wood screws in lead-lined braided jute, PTFE or neoprene sleeves, or lead expansion shields, or with toggle bolts or other approved fasteners as required by the construction. Install backplates in the same manner, or provide with lugs or anchors set in mortar, as required by the construction. Fasten accessories mounted on gypsum board and plaster walls without solid backing into the metal or wood studs or to solid wood blocking secured between wood studs, or to metal backplates secured to metal studs.

3.2 CLEANING

Clean material in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Do not use alkaline or abrasive agents. Take precautions to avoid scratching or marring exposed surfaces.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 10 51 00

LOCKERS

07/19

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 286 (2015) Standard Methods of Fire Tests for Evaluating Contribution of Wall and Ceiling Interior Finish to Room Fire Growth

1.2 DEFINITIONS

This section includes lockers and locker benches.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

Section 06 10 00 ROUGH CARPENTRY.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability Notebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Lockers; G

Drawings shall be submitted showing individual locker size and overall dimensions.

SD-03 Product Data

Manufacturer's Data Sheets; G

SD-04 Samples

Locker Color; G

Bench Top Color; G

Selection Samples: For each finish product specified, two complete sets of color chips representing manufacturer's full range of available colors and patterns.

Verification Samples: For each finish product specified, two

samples, minimum size 3 inches square, representing actual product, color, and patterns.

SD-07 Certificates

Recycled Content; S

Regional Materials; S

1.5 SUSTAINABLE DESIGN

1.5.1 Recycled Content

Certify percentages of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content.

1.5.2 Regional Materials

Certify distance between manufacturer and Project and between manufacturer and extraction or harvest point in miles.

1.6 QUALITY CONTROL

1.6.1 Manufacturer Qualifications

A company regularly engaged in manufacture of products specified in this section, and whose products have been in satisfactory use under similar service conditions for not less than 5 years.

1.6.2 Installer Qualifications

A company regularly engaged in installation of products specified in this Section, with a minimum of 5 years experience.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Provide Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used including:

- a. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
- b. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
- c. Installation methods.

Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation. Locker components shall be stored flat until assembly. All finishes shall be protected from soiling and damage during handling.

1.8 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

1.8.1 Environmental Conditions

Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's recommended limits.

1.9 WARRANTY

Manufacturer guarantees its plastic against breakage, corrosion, and

delamination under normal conditions for 15 years from the date of receipt by the customer. If materials are found to be defective during that period for reasons listed above, the materials will be replaced free of charge. (Labor not included in warranty.)

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 LOCKERS

2.1.1 Design

Storage "Z" locker. Vertical Stack: Two tier.

2.1.2 Size

Individual and stack height as indicated on drawings.

- a. Locker Depth: 15 inches.
- b. Locker Width: 15 inches.

2.1.3 Hardware

- a. Padlock hasp.
- b. One top-mounted, two-pronged plastic coat hook (1, 2 and 3 tier only).
- c. Horizontal venting.
- d. Continuous hinge.
- e. Continuous security latch.
- f. Slope top.
- g. Base.

2.1.4 Bases

Bases shall be supplied 4 inches high, black unless otherwise specified. Locker bases shall be fabricated from 1 inch or 3/4 inch black plastic. Bases are assembled in the field.

2.2 CONSTRUCTION

- a. Locker doors and frames shall be made from high impact, high density polyethylene (HDPE) formed under high pressure into solid plastic components 1/2 inch thick with homogeneous color throughout.
- b. Sides, tops, bottoms, backs, and shelves shall be made from high impact, high density, polyethylene (HDPE) formed under pressure into solid plastic components 3/8 inch thick with homogenous natural color throughout. Out sides, insides, tops, bottoms, backs, dividers and shelves shall be natural in color.
- c. Provide end panels and filler panels of plastic material in color of locker unless noted otherwise as an accent color.
- d. Continuous latch shall be made from high impact HDPE plastic and

capable of accepting various locking mechanisms. The spring-loaded latch shall be securely fastened to the entire length of the door providing a quiet positive latching function.

- e. Door hinge shall be made from heavy duty zinc-plated steel, full length, assembled onto door and locker front.
- f. Assembly profile shall be full height of the lockers. Profile shall be Tongue-and-groove joint construction using 3/8 inch thick HDPE.
- g. Coat hooks shall be two-prong and made from high impact plastic. Hooks shall be mounted to bottom of the shelf or divider, one each per door opening. (Standard on Single, Double and Triple tier lockers only).

2.3 MATERIALS

- a. Lockers shall be constructed from High Density Polyethylene (HDPE) resins. Material shall be fabricated from polymer resins compounded under high pressure, forming a single component which is waterproof, nonabsorbent and has a self-lubricating surface that resists marks from pens, pencils, markers and other writing instruments.
- b. Plastic components shall resist deterioration and discoloration when subjected to any of the following: acetic acid 80 percent, acetone, ammonia 12 percent, ammonium phosphate, bleach 12 percent, borax, brine, caustic soda, chlorine water, citric acid, copper chloride, core oils, hydrochloric acid 40 percent, hydrogen peroxide 3 percent, isopropyl alcohol, lactic acid 25 percent, lime sulfur, nicotine, potassium bromide; soaps, sodium bicarbonate, trisodium phosphate, urea, urine and vinegar. (Testing in accordance with corrosion testing procedure established by the United States Plastic Corporation.)
- c. HDPE components shall have a smooth "orange peel" finish. Locker doors and door frames shall be the same color.
 - 1. Locker Color: Charcoal Grey.
- d. Materials must conform to the requirements of NFPA 286.

2.4 FABRICATION

- a. Locker components shall be fabricated square and rigid with a finish free of scratches and chips.
- b. Solid plastic locker components shall snap together at profile connections or slide together at dovetail connections for easy assembly and shall provide a solid and secure anti-racking book case component construction for clean lines and precise reveals. Adjacent lockers shall share a common side panel. Locker units shall be manufactured for assembly in a group of no more than three adjacent lockers.

2.5 BENCHES

- a. Bench tops shall be 1-1/2 inches thick with all edges rounded to a 1/4 inch radius. Standard bench top size is 9-1/2 inches wide by length not to exceed 96 inches for one single piece.
- b. Steel pedestals shall be 16-1/4 inches high, secured to bench tops with stainless steel tamper resistant Torx head screws and secured to the

floor using lead expansion shields with 2 inches stainless steel Phillips head machine bolts.

- c. Aluminum pedestals shall be 16 inches high, and secured to bench tops with stainless steel tamper resistant Torx head screws and secured to the floor using lead expansion shields with 2 inches stainless steel Phillips head machine bolts
- d. Bench Top Color: Charcoal Grey

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.2 PREPARATION

Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions. Report discrepancies to the architect.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- a. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- b. Install lockers at the location shown in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions for plumb, level, rigid and flush installations.
- c. Anchor the units to the wall studs through the locker back and to the floor using 1-1/2 inches tapcon screws.
- d. Lockers shall be floor-mounted as scheduled or indicated. Floor shall be level for proper installation.
- e. Lockers shall be installed on a 4 inch high base as scheduled or indicated. Base shall be level for proper installation.

3.4 PROTECTION

Protect installed products until completion of project. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 12 24 13

ROLLER WINDOW SHADES
08/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Provide roller window shades, complete with necessary brackets, fittings, and hardware in accordance with paragraph ROLLER WINDOW SHADE PLACEMENT SCHEDULE and as indicated. Mount and operate equipment in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Windows to receive a shade must be completely covered.

- a. Submit drawings showing plans, elevations, sections, product details, installation details, operational clearances, wiring diagrams and relationship to adjacent work. Include the use of same room designations as indicated on the drawings.
- b. Provide manufacturer's data composed of catalog cuts, brochures, product information, and operating and maintenance instructions on each product to be used. Include styles, profiles and features.
- c. Furnish samples of each type and color of roller shade fabric and roller shade channel. Shade material shall be minimum 6 by 6 inch in size. Mark face of material to indicate interior faces.
- d. Mock up: Install shade in area designated by Contracting Officer. Do not proceed with remaining work until the Contracting Officer approves workmanship and operation. Re-work mock-up as required to produce acceptable work. The approved shade can be used in installation.
- e. Submit fire resistance data, flame spread and smoke contribution data.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM G21 (2015) Standard Practice for Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 701 (2015) Standard Methods of Fire Tests for Flame Propagation of Textiles and Films

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818	(2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program For Chemical Emissions For Building Materials, Finishes And Furnishings
UL 325	(2017) UL Standard for Safety Door, Drapery, Gate, Louver, and Window Operators and Systems

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Installation; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Window Shades; G, AE

Recycled Content for various fiber components; S

SD-04 Samples

Window Shades; G, AE

SD-06 Test Reports

Window Shades

SD-07 Certificates

Indoor Air Quality for roller window shades; S

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Window Shades

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Window Shades

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Warranty; G

1.4 CERTIFICATES

1.4.1 Indoor Air Quality Certifications

1.4.1.1 Roller Window Shades

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by [UL 2818](#) (Greenguard) Gold, [SCS](#) Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide validation by other third-party program that products meet the requirements of this paragraph. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 Qualifications

1.5.1.1 Manufacturer's Qualifications

Obtain motor-controlled roller shades through one source from a single manufacturer with a minimum of twenty years experience and minimum of three projects of similar scope and size in manufacturing products comparable to those specified in this section.

1.5.1.2 Installer's Qualifications

Installer trained and certified by the manufacturer with a minimum of ten years experience in installing products comparable to those specified in this section.

1.5.2 Flammability Requirements

Passes in accordance with [NFPA 701](#) small and large-scale vertical burn. Materials tested must be identical to products proposed for use.

1.5.3 Electrical Requirements

NFPA Article 100 listed and labeled in accordance with [UL 325](#) or other testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, marked for intended use, and tested as a system. Individual testing of components will not be acceptable in lieu of system testing.

1.5.4 Anti-Microbial Requirements

'No Growth' per [ASTM G21](#) results for fungi ATCC9642, ATCC 9644, ATCC9645.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver components to the jobsite in the manufacturer's original packaging with the brand or company name, item identification, and project reference clearly marked. Store components in a dry location that is adequately ventilated and free from dust, water, or other contaminants and has easy access for inspection and handling. Store materials flat in a clean dry area with temperature maintained above [50 degrees F](#). Do not open containers until needed for installation unless verification inspection is required.

1.7 WARRANTY

Provide 10 year minimum limited warranty.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 WINDOW SHADES

Roller tube must operate smoothly and be of sufficient diameter and thickness to prevent excessive deflection. Provide brackets that are appropriate for outside and ceiling mount as indicated. The shade cloth must meet the performance described in NFPA 701, small scale test. Treat steel features for corrosion resistance.

Provide Various Fiber Components with a minimum of 60 percent recycled content. Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for various fiber components.

Provide certification of indoor air quality for roller window shades.

2.1.1 Light Filtering Shades

Provide light filtering window shades to conform with the following:

- a. Roller tube must be extruded aluminum or steel. Diameter, wall thickness, and material to be selected by the manufacturer to accommodate the shade size. Provide roller idler assembly of molded nylon and zinc-plated steel pin. Sliding pin must allow easy installation and removal of roller. Fabric must be connected to the roller tube with double sided adhesive specifically developed to attach coated textiles to metal to eliminate horizontal impressions in fabric or attached with a spline lock system.
- b. Fascia must be L-shaped aluminum extrusion to conceal shade roller and hardware that snaps onto end caps without requiring exposed fasteners of any kind. Fascia can be mounted continuously across two or more shade bands.
- c. End caps must be stamped steel with universal design suitable for mounting to window mullions. Provide size compatible with roller size. End cap covers must match fascia/headbox finish.
- d. Provide hardware that allows for field adjustment or removal of shade roller tube and other operable hardware component or adjustment of motor without requiring removal of brackets and end or center supports. Provide hardware system that allows for operation of multiple shade bands by a single operator. Connectors must be offset to assure alignment from the first to the last shade band. Provide shade hardware constructed of minimum 1/8 inch thick plated steel or heavier as required to support 150 percent of the full weight of each shade.
- e. Manual Operated Drive Hardware with ligature proof offset. The drive bracket must be fully integrated with all accessories.
- f. Activation Controls of Shades:
 - (1) Wall mounted controls: switches are able to electronically set and reconfigure shade open and close limits, shade preset positions, system groups and system subgroups at the control without rewiring and without access to the Electronic Drive Unit.
- g. Switches that are adjustable and interlocked with motor controls and

set to automatically stop the shade at fully raised and fully lowered positions must be provided. Low voltage switching is required.

- h. Operating function: Stop and hold shade at any position .
- i. Provide the following options: Low Voltage System; group switching with integrated switch control; single face plate for multiple switch cut-outs. Capable of interface with audiovisual control system. Override switch; Backup gear and crank operator for manual operation during power failures with detachable handle, 6 feet long length required to make operation convenient from floor level Power failure memory for the life of the systems which protects presets.

2.1.2 Room Darkening Shades

Provide room darkening (black-out) window shades designed to eliminate all visible light gaps when shades are fully closed, and conform with the following:

- a. Roller tube must be aluminum, controlled by crank operated gear box with steel rods. Provide shop fabricated light traps, consisting of a head box to house the shade roller, and U-shaped channels to serve as guides for the shade along the sides and to receive the bottom edge of the shade along the sill.
- b. Provide light trap made of sheet steel having a minimum thickness of 22 gauge or anodized, extruded, aluminum. The legs of the channels must be not less than 1-3/4 inches long and separated by the minimum distance that will permit free operation of the shade. Edges of light trap coming into contact with the shade cloth must be smooth pile light seal. The exposed face of the head box must be hinged or removable for access to the shade roller. The interior or unexposed surfaces of the light trap must have a finish coat of flat black enamel. The exposed portions of the light trap must have a factory-applied priming coat of gray paint.
- c. Cloth must be of type for blackout purposes. Make the shade from a single piece of canvas duck cloth laminated to vinyl . When not finished with a selvage, the vertical edges of the shade must be bound or hemmed using a high-grade thread. Make needle holes lightproof by applying a suitable filler.
- d. Fit the bottom edge of the shade with a steel operating bar. Shades will engage positively with bottom rail through operating bar or chain pull. Paint bars with flat black enamel. Make pull cords of No. 4 braided nylon or beaded chain having not less than 175 pounds breaking strength.

2.2 COLOR

Provide color, pattern and texture for metal and shade fabric as indicated. Color listed is not intended to limit the selection of equal colors from other manufacturers. Openness factor of shade fabric must be as indicated.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

After becoming familiar with details of the work, verify all dimensions in

the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing the work.

3.2 ROLLER WINDOW SHADE PLACEMENT SCHEDULE

All exterior windows include WC1 and WC2.

3.3 INSTALLATION

Do not install building construction materials that show visual evidence of biological growth.

Perform installation in accordance with the approved detail drawings and manufacturer's installation instructions. Install units level, plumb, secure, and at proper height and location relative to window units. Provide and install supplementary or miscellaneous items in total, including clips, brackets, or anchorages incidental to or necessary for a sound, secure, and complete installation. Do not start installation until completion of room painting and finishing operations.

3.4 CLEAN-UP

Upon completion of the installation, clean window treatments and adjust them for form and appearance and proper operating condition. Repair or replace damaged units as directed by the Contracting Officer. Isolate metal parts from direct contact with concrete, mortar, or dissimilar metals. Ensure shades installed in recessed pockets can be removed without disturbing the pocket. The entire shade, when retracted, must be contained inside the pocket. For shades installed outside the jambs and mullions, overlap each jamb and mullion 0.75 inch or more when the jamb and mullion sizes permit. Include all hardware, brackets, anchors, fasteners, and accessories necessary for a complete, finished installation.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 12 48 13

ENTRANCE FLOOR MATS AND FRAMES

08/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D2047 (2017) Standard Test Method for Static Coefficient of Friction of Polish-Coated Floor Surfaces as Measured by the James Machine

ASTM E648 (2017a) Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor-Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

36 CFR 1191 Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines

1.2 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING

Materials in this technical specification may increase contract compliance with sustainability requirements.

1.2.1 EPA Comprehensive Procurement Guidelines

See Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING for requirements associated with EPA-designated products.

1.2.2 USDA Biobased

See Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING for requirements associated with USDA Biobased products.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Installation Drawings; G, AE

Detail Drawings; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Entrance Floor Mats and Frames; G, AE

Adhesives and Concrete Primers; G, AE

SD-04 Samples

Entrance Floor Mats and Frames; G, AE

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Manufacturer's Instructions

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Protection, Maintenance, and Repair Information

1.4 QUALITY CONTROL

Comply with 36 CFR 1191 Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines for installed entrance floor mats and frames. Ensure that entrance floor mats and frames are slip-resistant in accordance with ASTM D2047, with a minimum 0.60 coefficient of friction, for accessible routes and are structurally capable of withstanding a uniform floor load of 500 lb/sq ft. Ensure that flammability is in accordance with ASTM E648, Class 1, Critical Radiant Flux, minimum 0.45 watts/square meter.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver materials to the project site in their original packages or containers bearing labels clearly identifying the manufacturer, brand name, and quality or grade.

Store materials in their original unbroken packages or containers in the area in which they will be installed. Unwrap, inspect, and place mats at indicated locations. Remove all excess packing materials.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS

2.1.1 Entrance Floor Mats and Frames

Submit the manufacturer's catalog data. Submit samples of assembled sections of floor mats showing corners, intersections, and other details of construction. Submit samples of exposed floor mats, frame finishes and accessories.

2.1.1.1 Floor Grids

Provide a floor grid consisting of a series of stainless steel tread rails spaced 1 1/2 inches on center and running counter to the traffic flow. Ensure that floor grids allow debris to fall to the subfloor. Provide a trench drain deep. Rest grid assemblies on a continuous vinyl cushion

mounted to each continuous foot at [as indicated](#). Ensure that pits are [1-1/4 inch](#) deep and rest on a continuous vinyl cushion with additional support members [24 inches](#) on center, including adjustable support legs. For a stainless-steel grid, provide satin-finished stainless-steel rails [.145 inch](#) apart, electronically welded joints, and a stainless-steel frame [1-1/8 inches](#) deep. Provide all anchors, fasteners, accessories, and other parts required for a complete installation.

2.1.2 [Adhesives and Concrete Primers](#)

Provide adhesives and concrete primers, where required, according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

2.1.3 [Color and Size](#)

Ensure that color is in accordance with the drawings. Ensure that the size of mat is as indicated.

PART 3 [EXECUTION](#)

3.1 [EXAMINATION](#)

Comply with the manufacturer's requirements for substrates and floor conditions affecting installation of floor mats and frames. Ensure that all unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected before installation.

3.2 [INSTALLATION](#)

Submit [detail drawings](#) as required. Provide [installation drawings](#). Provide the manufacturer's [protection, maintenance, and repair information](#).

Install floor mats and frames according to [manufacturer's instructions](#). Set mat tops at the height recommended by the manufacturer for the most effective cleaning action. Provide clearance between bottoms of doors and tops of mats. Coordinate recess frame installation with concrete construction to ensure that frame anchorage is correct and that the base is level and flat. Install grout and fill around frames and, if required to set mat tops at proper elevations, in recesses under mats. Finish grout and fill smooth and level.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 12 93 00

SITE FURNISHINGS
08/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION (AISC)

AISC 303 (2016) Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF SAFETY ENGINEERS (ASSE/SAFE)

ASSE/SAFE A10.3 (2013) Operations - Safety Requirements for Powder Actuated Fastening Systems

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.1/D1.1M (2015; Errata 1 2015; Errata 2 2016) Structural Welding Code - Steel

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME B18.2.1 (2012; Errata 2013) Square and Hex Bolts and Screws (Inch Series)

ASME B18.2.2 (2015) Nuts for General Applications: Machine Screw Nuts, Hex, Square, Hex Flange, and Coupling Nuts (Inch Series)

ASME B18.21.1 (2009; R 2016) Washers: Helical Spring-Lock, Tooth Lock, and Plain Washers (Inch Series)

ASME B18.6.2 (1998; R 2010) Slotted Head Cap Screws, Square Head Set Screws, and Slotted Headless Set Screws: Inch Series

ASME B18.6.3 (2013; R 2017) Machine Screws, Tapping Screws, and Machine Drive Screws (Inch Series)

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A1064/A1064M (2017) Standard Specification for Carbon-Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for Concrete

ASTM A123/A123M (2017) Standard Specification for Zinc

	(Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A153/A153M	(2016) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
ASTM A307	(2014; E 2017) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength
ASTM A36/A36M	(2014) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel
ASTM A47/A47M	(1999; R 2014) Standard Specification for Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings
ASTM A48/A48M	(2003; R 2012) Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings
ASTM A500/A500M	(2018) Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes
ASTM A501/A501M	(2014) Standard Specification for Hot-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing
ASTM A53/A53M	(2018) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
ASTM A615/A615M	(2016) Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A653/A653M	(2017) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM A780/A780M	(2009; R 2015) Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings
ASTM B62	(2017) Standard Specification for Composition Bronze or Ounce Metal Castings
ASTM C150/C150M	(2018) Standard Specification for Portland Cement
ASTM C94/C94M	(2017a) Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete
ASTM D1187/D1187M	(1997; E 2011; R 2011) Asphalt-Base Emulsions for Use as Protective Coatings for Metal

ASTM D3451	(2006; R 2017) Standard Guide for Testing Coating Powders and Powder Coatings
ASTM E488/E488M	(2015) Standard Test Methods for Strength of Anchors in Concrete and Masonry Elements
SOCIETY FOR PROTECTIVE COATINGS (SSPC)	
SSPC Paint 25	(1997; E 2004) Zinc Oxide, Alkyd, Linseed Oil Primer for Use Over Hand Cleaned Steel, Type I and Type II
U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)	
CID A-A-1925	(Rev A; Notice 3) Shield Expansion (Nail Anchors)

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Benches; G
Bicycle Racks; G
Waste Receptacles; G
Entrance (Contoured) Signage; G
Assembly Instruction Drawings

SD-03 Product Data

Benches; G
Bicycle Racks; G
Waste Receptacles; G
Ash Receptacles; G

SD-04 Samples

Finish; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Testing; G

SD-07 Certificates

Primer Certificate; G

Powder Coatings Certificate; G

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Qualify welders in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M using procedures, materials, and equipment of the type required for the work.

1.3.1 Fabrication Drawings

Submit fabrication drawings showing layout(s), connections to structural system, and anchoring details as specified in AISC 303.

1.3.2 Installation Drawings

Submit templates, erection and installation drawings indicating thickness, type, grade, class of metal, and dimensions. Show construction details, reinforcement, anchorage, and installation.

1.3.3 Assembly Instruction Drawings

Submit assembly instruction drawings showing layout(s), connections, bolting and anchoring details in accordance with manufacturer's standards. Submit drawings showing scaled details of proposed site furnishings, elevations for each type of site furnishing; dimensions, details, and methods of mounting or anchoring; shape and thickness of materials; and details of construction.

1.3.4 Primer Certificate

Submit a certificate from the manufacturer stating that the primer conforms to requirements of SSPC Paint 25.

1.3.5 Powder Coatings Certificate

Submit a certificate from the manufacturer stating that the powder coat conforms to ASTM D3451.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Ship items knocked-down (KD) ready for site assembly. Packaged components must be complete including all accessories and hardware. Materials must be delivered, handled, and stored in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Site furnishings must be inspected upon arrival at the job site for conformity to specifications and quality in accordance with paragraph MATERIALS. Protect from corrosion, staining, and other types of damage. Store items in designated area free from contact with soil and weather. Remove and replace damaged items with new items.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

Provide materials which are the standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products. The materials provided shall be of a type with proven satisfactory usage for at least 5 years.

2.1.1.1 Metals

Metallic materials and products must conform to Section 05 50 13 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FABRICATIONS. Furnish metal components with factory drilled holes and free of excess weld and spatter. Metal components with holes that will not be filled by hardware or hidden by other components will be rejected. Structural steel products must conform to ASTM A36/A36M, ASTM A500/A500M and ASTM A501/A501M. Provide Steel Components with a minimum of 70 percent recycled content.

2.1.1.2 Structural Tubing

ASTM A500/A500M

2.1.1.3 Steel Pipe and Fittings

Steel pipe must conform to ASTM A53/A53M, Type E or S, Grade B; standard malleable iron fittings must conform to ASTM A47/A47M.

2.1.1.4 Gray Cast Iron

Gray cast iron must conform to ASTM A48/A48M Class 35 or better. Provide castings manufactured true to pattern and component parts that fit together in a satisfactory manner. Castings must be of uniform quality, free from blowholes, porosity, hard spots, shrinkage, distortion, or other defects. Smooth castings must be well-cleaned by sand or shot blasting.

2.1.1.5 Anchors and Hardware

Provide anchors, where necessary, for fastening site furnishings securely in place and in accordance with approved manufacturer's instructions. Anchoring devices that may be used, when no anchors are otherwise specified or indicated, include anchor bolts, slotted inserts, expansion shields for concrete; toggle bolts and through bolts for masonry; machine carriage bolts for steel; and lag bolts and screws for wood. Anchor bolts must conform to ASTM A307. Hardware must be stainless steel or galvanized steel in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M and compatible with the material to which applied. All exposed hardware must match in color and finish. Mounting hardware must be concealed, recessed, and plugged.

2.1.5.1 Threaded Inserts and Expansion Anchors

Provide inserts recessed not less than 2.5 inches into concrete or masonry. Pullout 198 pounds in concrete with f'c of 3,000 psi, as tested in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M. Expansion shields must conform to CID A-A-1925, group II, type 4, class 1. Provide embedment required by manufacturer.

2.1.5.2 Lag Screws and Bolts

ASME B18.2.1, type and grade best suited for the purpose.

2.1.5.3 Toggle Bolts

ASME B18.2.1.

2.1.5.4 Bolts, Nuts, Studs and Rivets

ASME B18.2.2 or ASTM A307.

2.1.5.5 Power Driven Fasteners

Follow safety provisions of [ASSE/SAFE A10.3](#).

2.1.5.6 Screws

[ASME B18.2.1](#), [ASME B18.6.2](#), and [ASME B18.6.3](#).

2.1.5.7 Washers

Provide plain washers to conform to [ASME B18.21.1](#). Provide beveled washers for American Standard beams and channels, square or rectangular, tapered in thickness, and smooth. Provide lock washers to conform to [ASME B18.21.1](#).

2.1.6 Ounce Metals

Bronze, copper, and other ounce metals must conform to [ASTM B62](#).

2.1.7 Concrete

Ready-mixed concrete must conform to [ASTM C94/C94M](#), using 3/4 inch maximum size aggregate, and having minimum compressive strength of 3000 psi at 28 days. Portland cement must conform to [ASTM C150/C150M](#). Cast-in-place concrete materials and products must conform to Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE. Reinforcing steel must conform to [ASTM A615/A615M](#). Welded wire fabric must conform to [ASTM A1064/A1064M](#).

2.2 PRETREATMENT, PRIMING AND PAINTING

Use manufacturers standard treatment when painting and finishing is required. Apply pretreatment, primer, and paint in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions. On surfaces concealed in the finished construction or not accessible for finish painting, apply an additional prime coat to a minimum dry film thickness of 1.0 mil. Tint additional prime coat with a small amount of tinting pigment.

2.2.1 Nonferrous Metal Surfaces

Protect by plating, anodic, or organic coatings.

2.2.2 Aluminum Surfaces

Before finishes are applied, remove roll marks, scratches, rolled-in scratches, kinks, stains, pits, orange peel, die marks, structural streaks, and other defects which will affect uniform appearance of finished surfaces.

2.3 COATINGS AND FINISHES

2.3.1 Galvanizing

Hot-dip galvanize items specified to be zinc-coated, after fabrication where practicable. Galvanizing must conform to [ASTM A123/A123M](#), [ASTM A153/A153M](#) or [ASTM A653/A653M](#), as applicable. Tailings and sharp protrusions formed as a result of the hot-dip process must be removed and exposed edges burnished. Galvanize anchor bolts, grating fasteners, washers and parts or devices necessary for proper installation, unless otherwise indicated.

2.3.2 Polyester Powder

Powder-coated surfaces must receive electrostatic zinc coating prior to painting. Powder coating must be electrostatically applied and oven cured. Polyester powder coating must be resistant to ultraviolet (UV) light.

2.3.3 Finish

Finish must be as specified by the manufacturer or as indicated. Exposed surfaces and edges must be rounded, polished, or sanded. Finish must be non-toxic, non-glare, and resistant to corrosion. Exposed surfaces must be smooth and splinter-free exposed surfaces. Submit two sets of color data for each furnishing displaying manufacturer's color selections and finishes, and identifying those colors and finishes proposed for use.

2.3.3.1 Paint

Paint must be factory applied with a minimum of 2 coats. Paint must be weather-resistant and resistant to cracking, peeling and fading.

2.3.3.2 Color

Color of site furnishing components must be in accordance with colors specified on drawings.

2.4 SITE STANDARDS

Site furnishings must be furnished with the dimensions and requirements indicated on drawings.

2.5 BENCHES

Furnish benches with no sharp edges or protruding hardware.

- a. Height: The height above finished grade or specified surface must be between 18-20 inches and level.
- b. Seat: The seat surface must be pitched or slotted to shed water; the seat depth must be between 12-18 inches and pitched down at the back at a 0-5 degree angle. Seat must have a minimum width of 24 inches per person, and must overhang the support base by a minimum of 4 inches for heel space and to facilitate rising from a seating position.
- c. Back Rest: When back rests are required, the height must be between 15-18 inches from the top of the seat and the connection must be at a 90-110 degree angle to the seat.
- d. Arm Rest: When arm rests are required, a minimum of 6 inches height from the seat and a minimum arm rest width of 1-1/2 inches must be provided.
- e. Weight Limit: Seats must support a minimum 300 lbs for each person they are designed to accommodate.

2.5.1 Steel Units

2.5.1.1 Steel

Provide horizontal steel slats, shotblasted, etched, phosphatized, preheated and electrostatically powder-coated with TGIC polyester powder coatings.

- a. Design bench to sustain a live load of not less than 200 pounds per square foot.
- b. Provide 3/8 inch thick by 4 inch wide hot rolled steel pedestals conforming to ASTM A653/A653M.
- c. Provide 1-1/2 inch O.D. ASTM A53/A53M schedule 40 steel pipe pedestals.

2.5.2 Accessories

Provide manufacturer's standard materials and accessories as required for assembly of units and as indicated on the assembly drawings. Provide unexposed aluminum, stainless steel or steel plates, angles and supports as required for complete assembly. Separate dissimilar materials to prevent electrolytic action.

2.5.3 Fasteners

Provide concealed fasteners except where specifically approved; types as required for specific usage.

2.5.4 Anchoring Brackets

Provide 1/4 inch zinc plated steel angle anchoring brackets, 1-7/8 inch wide by 2 inches deep by 2-1/2 inches high, pre-drilled for bolting benches to substrate.

2.6 BICYCLE RACKS

Design bicycle racks (stanchions) in accordance with manufacturer's standards and to meet design conditions indicated. Locate as shown on the drawings. Provide powder coat finish in color as selected from manufacturer's standards. Racks must accommodate locking devices and secure, as a minimum, one wheel and part of the frame simultaneously. The spacing between racks must be a minimum of 24 inches.

2.6.1 Bicycle Racks

Provide 1 inch by 1 inch solid steel framed bicycle rack as shown on the drawings. Type of mounting, bicycle rack capacity and height above the ground as shown on the drawings.

2.7 WASTE RECEPTACLES AND ASH RECEPTACLES

Provide for trash/waste receptacles with domed tops and removable semi-rigid plastic liner insert. Provide top-mounted ash trays for ash receptacles. Waste receptacles must be furnished with weather protection, odor containment, and insect/animal-proofing. Container size must be as specified in drawings. No openings shall be larger than 6 inches per ATFP requirements.

2.7.1 Height

Trash and litter deposit openings must be between 30-40 inches above the ground.

2.7.2 Liners

Trash and litter receptacles must be furnished with removable/reusable inner containers.

2.7.3 Anchors

Trash and litter receptacles that can be anchored to resist overturning by typical use, high winds, or animals must be furnished and anchored in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

2.7.4 Openings

Openings for trash and litter insertion must be a minimum of 4 inches in diameter. Edges of the openings must be crimped, rounded and smoothed. No openings shall be larger than 6 inches per ATFP requirements.

2.7.5 Ash Receptacles

Provide ash receptacles with a fire-proof metal bowl or screen or sand-filled containers for ash containment. Ash receptacles must have a minimum diameter of 8 inches; ash containers must have a fire-proof metal bowl or screen and must be easily removable for cleaning.

2.7.6 Waste Receptacle

Provide metal waste receptacles as indicated, fabricated from solid steel bars; powder coat finish, color as selected.

- a. Metal thickness, width, and configuration must be manufacturer's standard. Chemically clean and phosphate coat prior to final powdercoat.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Verify that finished grades and other operations affecting mounting surfaces have been completed prior to the installation of site furnishings. Site furnishings must be installed plumb and true, at locations indicated, in accordance with the approved manufacturer's instructions.

3.1.1 Assembly and Erection of Components

New parts must be acquired from the manufacturer; substitute parts will not be accepted unless approved by the manufacturer. When the inspection of parts has been completed, the site furnishings must be assembled and anchored according to manufacturer's instructions or as indicated. When site furnishings are assembled at the site, assembly must not interfere with other operations or pedestrian and vehicular circulation.

3.1.2 Anchorage, Fastenings, and Connections

Furnish metal work, mounting bolts or hardware in ample time for securing into concrete or masonry as the work progresses. Provide anchorage where necessary for fastening furniture or furnishings securely in place. Provide, for anchorage not otherwise specified or indicated, slotted inserts, expansion shields, and power-driven fasteners, when approved for concrete; toggle bolts and through bolts for masonry; machine and carriage bolts for steel; through bolts, lag bolts, and screws for wood. Do not use wood plugs in any material. Provide non-ferrous attachments for non-ferrous metal. Make exposed fastenings of compatible materials, generally matching in color and finish the fastenings to which they are applied. Conceal fastenings where practicable.

3.2 WELDING

Perform welding, welding inspection, and corrective welding, in accordance with [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#). Use continuous welds on all exposed connections. Grind visible welds smooth in the finished installation.

3.3 TESTING

Test each site furnishing to ascertain a secure and correct installation. A correct installation must be according to the manufacturer's recommendations and by the following procedure: Measure the physical dimensions and clearance of each installed site furnishing for compliance with manufacturer's recommendations and as indicated. Site furnishings which do not comply must be reinstalled. Fasteners and anchors determined to be non-compliant must be replaced. Submit a written report describing the results of the testing and a report of post-installation test results.

3.4 FINISHES

3.4.1 Field Finishes

Where indicated, field finishes must be applied in accordance with Section [09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS](#). Where dissimilar metals are in contact, protect surfaces with a coat conforming to [SSPC Paint 25](#) to prevent galvanic or corrosive action. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete, mortar, masonry, wood, or absorptive materials subject to wetting, protect with [ASTM D1187/D1187M](#), asphalt-base emulsion.

3.4.2 Repair of Zinc-Coated Surfaces

Repair damaged surfaces with galvanizing repair method and paint conforming to [ASTM A780/A780M](#) or by the application of stick or thick paste material specifically designed for repair of galvanizing, as approved by the Contracting Officer. Clean areas to be repaired and remove the slag from the welds. Heat surfaces to which stick or paste material is applied, with a torch to a temperature sufficient to melt the metallics in stick or paste; spread the molten material uniformly over surfaces to be coated and wipe the excess material off.

3.5 BICYCLE RACKS

Affix to base structure by flanges anchored to concrete or other existing masonry by expansion shields. Provide Series 300 stainless steel bolts to anchor aluminum alloy flanges, of a size appropriate to the standard product of the manufacturer. Where aluminum or alloy fittings or

extrusions are to be in contact with dissimilar metals or concrete, give the contact surface a heavy coating of bituminous paint.

3.6 RESTORATION AND CLEAN UP

When the installation has been completed, clean up and protect the site. Existing areas that have been damaged from the installation operation must be restored to original condition at Contractor's expense.

3.6.1 Clean Up

The site must be cleaned of all materials associated with the installation. Site furnishing surfaces must be cleaned of dirt, stains, filings, and other blemishes occurring from shipment and installation. Cleaning methods and agents must be according to manufacturer's instructions or as indicated.

3.6.2 Protection

The area must be protected as required.

3.6.3 Disposal of Materials

Excess and waste material must be removed and disposed off Government property.

3.7 RE-INSTALLATION

Where re-installation is required, the following must be accomplished:

- a. Re-install the product as specified. Material acquisition of replacement parts is the responsibility of the Contractor. Provide replacement materials that are new and supplied by the original manufacturer to match.
- b. Damage caused by the failed installation must be repaired.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 13 34 19

METAL BUILDING SYSTEMS

11/11

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ALUMINUM ASSOCIATION (AA)

AA ADM (2015) Aluminum Design Manual

AA ASD1 (2017; Errata 2017) Aluminum Standards and Data

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION (AISC)

AISC 325 (2017) Steel Construction Manual

AISC 341 (2016) Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings

AISC 360 (2016) Specification for Structural Steel Buildings

AMERICAN IRON AND STEEL INSTITUTE (AISI)

AISC/AISI 121 (2004) Standard Definitions for Use in the Design of Steel Structures

AISI SG03-3 (2002; Suppl 2001-2004; R 2008) Cold-Formed Steel Design Manual Set

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF CIVIL ENGINEERS (ASCE)

ASCE 7 (2017) Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS A5.1/A5.1M (2012) Specification for Carbon Steel Electrodes for Shielded Metal Arc Welding

AWS D1.1/D1.1M (2015; Errata 1 2015; Errata 2 2016) Structural Welding Code - Steel

AWS D1.3/D1.3M (2018) Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A1008/A1008M (2016) Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural,

	High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable
ASTM A1011/A1011M	(2018a) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and Ultra-High Strength
ASTM A123/A123M	(2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A153/A153M	(2016) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
ASTM A193/A193M	(2017) Standard Specification for Alloy-Steel and Stainless Steel Bolting Materials for High-Temperature Service and Other Special Purpose Applications
ASTM A307	(2014; E 2017) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength
ASTM A325	(2014) Standard Specification for Structural Bolts, Steel, Heat Treated, 120/105 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength
ASTM A36/A36M	(2014) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel
ASTM A463/A463M	(2010; R 2015) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Aluminum-Coated, by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM A500/A500M	(2018) Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes
ASTM A501/A501M	(2014) Standard Specification for Hot-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing
ASTM A529/A529M	(2014) Standard Specification for High-Strength Carbon-Manganese Steel of Structural Quality
ASTM A53/A53M	(2018) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
ASTM A563	(2015) Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts
ASTM A563M	(2007; R 2013) Standard Specification for

	Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts (Metric)
ASTM A572/A572M	(2018) Standard Specification for High-Strength Low-Alloy Columbium-Vanadium Structural Steel
ASTM A606/A606M	(2008) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet and Strip, High-Strength, Low-Alloy, Hot-Rolled and Cold-Rolled, with Improved Atmospheric Corrosion Resistance
ASTM A653/A653M	(2017) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM A755/A755M	(2016; E 2016) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Metallic Coated by the Hot-Dip Process and Prepainted by the Coil-Coating Process for Exterior Exposed Building Products
ASTM A780/A780M	(2009; R 2015) Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings
ASTM A792/A792M	(2010) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, 55% Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM A992/A992M	(2011; R 2015) Standard Specification for Structural Steel Shapes
ASTM B117	(2016) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus
ASTM B209	(2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate
ASTM B221	(2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes
ASTM B221M	(2013) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric)
ASTM C1363	(2011) Standard Test Method for Thermal Performance of Building Materials and Envelope Assemblies by Means of a Hot Box Apparatus
ASTM C518	(2017) Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus
ASTM C553	(2013) Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for

Commercial and Industrial Applications

ASTM C612	(2014) Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation
ASTM C665	(2017) Standard Specification for Mineral-Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Light Frame Construction and Manufactured Housing
ASTM C920	(2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
ASTM C991	(2016) Flexible Glass Fiber Insulation for Metal Buildings
ASTM D1056	(2014) Standard Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials - Sponge or Expanded Rubber
ASTM D1308	(2013) Effect of Household Chemicals on Clear and Pigmented Organic Finishes
ASTM D1667	(2017) Standard Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials - Poly (Vinyl Chloride) Foam (Closed-Cell)
ASTM D2244	(2016) Standard Practice for Calculation of Color Tolerances and Color Differences from Instrumentally Measured Color Coordinates
ASTM D2247	(2015) Testing Water Resistance of Coatings in 100% Relative Humidity
ASTM D2794	(1993; R 2010) Resistance of Organic Coatings to the Effects of Rapid Deformation (Impact)
ASTM D3363	(2005; E 2011; R 2011; E 2012) Film Hardness by Pencil Test
ASTM D4214	(2007; R 2015) Standard Test Method for Evaluating the Degree of Chalking of Exterior Paint Films
ASTM D522/D522M	(2014) Mandrel Bend Test of Attached Organic Coatings
ASTM D523	(2014; R 2018) Standard Test Method for Specular Gloss
ASTM D714	(2002; R 2017) Standard Test Method for Evaluating Degree of Blistering of Paints
ASTM D822	(2013) Filtered Open-Flame Carbon-Arc Exposures of Paint and Related Coatings
ASTM D968	(2017) Standard Test Methods for Abrasion

Resistance of Organic Coatings by Falling
Abrasive

ASTM DEFONLINE

(2008) ASTM Online Dictionary of
Engineering Science and Technology

ASTM E119

(2018) Standard Test Methods for Fire
Tests of Building Construction and
Materials

ASTM E136

(2016) Behavior of Materials in a Vertical
Tube Furnace at 750 Degrees C

ASTM E1592

(2005; R 2012) Structural Performance of
Sheet Metal Roof and Siding Systems by
Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference

ASTM E1646

(1995; R 2011) Standard Test Method for
Water Penetration of Exterior Metal Roof
Panel Systems by Uniform Air Pressure
Difference

ASTM E1680

(2016) Standard Test Method for Rate of
Air Leakage Through Exterior Metal Roof
Panel Systems

ASTM E84

(2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface
Burning Characteristics of Building
Materials

ASTM F1554

(2018) Standard Specification for Anchor
Bolts, Steel, 36, 55, and 105-ksi Yield
Strength

ASTM F1852

(2014) Standard Specification for "Twist
Off" Type Tension Control Structural
Bolt/Nut/Washer Assemblies, Steel, Heat
Treated, 120/105 ksi Minimum Tensile
Strength

ASTM F436

(2011) Hardened Steel Washers

ASTM F844

(2007a; R 2013) Washers, Steel, Plain
(Flat), Unhardened for General Use

ASTM G152

(2013) Operating Open Flame Carbon Arc
Light Apparatus for Exposure of
Nonmetallic Materials

ASTM G153

(2013) Operating Enclosed Carbon Arc Light
Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic
Materials

METAL BUILDING MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (MBMA)

MBMA MBSM

(2012) Metal Building Systems Manual

NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF ARCHITECTURAL METAL MANUFACTURERS (NAAMM)

NAAMM AMP 500 (2006) Metal Finishes Manual

NATIONAL ROOFING CONTRACTORS ASSOCIATION (NRCA)

NRCA RoofMan (2017) The NRCA Roofing Manual

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION
(SMACNA)

SMACNA 1793 (2012) Architectural Sheet Metal Manual,
7th Edition

SOCIETY FOR PROTECTIVE COATINGS (SSPC)

SSPC Paint 15 (1999; E 2004) Steel Joist Shop Primer

SSPC Painting Manual (2002) Good Painting Practice, Steel
Structures Painting Manual, Volume 1

SSPC SP 2 (1982; E 2000; E 2004) Hand Tool Cleaning

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1 (2014) Safety and Health Requirements
Manual

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL Bld Mat Dir (updated continuously online) Building
Materials Directory

1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

1.2.1 Structural Performance

Provide metal building systems capable of withstanding the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within the limits and conditions indicated.

1.2.1.1 Engineering

Design metal building systems conforming to procedures described in MBMA MBSM.

1.2.1.2 Design Loads

Conform to the requirements of MBMA MBSM, ASCE 7, and the building code applicable to the project geographical location.

1.2.1.3 Live Loads

Include all vertical loads induced by the building occupancy indicated on the drawings, as well as loads induced by maintenance workers, materials and equipment for roof live loads.

1.2.1.4 Roof Snow Loads

Include vertical loads induced by the ground snow load at the project site of 10 psf. Allow for unbalanced and drift loads.

1.2.1.5 Wind Loads

Include horizontal loads induced by a basic wind speed Project site of 140 mph.

1.2.1.6 Collateral Loads

Include additional dead loads other than the weight of metal building system for permanent items such as sprinklers, mechanical systems, electrical systems, and ceilings.

1.2.1.7 Auxiliary Loads

Include dynamic live loads, such as those generated by cranes and materials-handling equipment indicated on detail drawings.

1.2.1.8 Load Combinations

Design metal building systems to withstand the most critical effects of load factors and load combinations as required by MBMA MBSM, ASCE 7, and the building code applicable to the project location.

1.2.1.9 Deflection Limits

Engineer assemblies to withstand design loads with deflections no greater than the following:

- a. Purlins and Rafters; vertical deflection of 1/240 of the span.
- b. Girts; horizontal deflection of 1/240 of the span. Where girts are supporting masonry, horizontal deflection of 1/360.
- c. Metal Roof Panels; vertical deflection of 1/240 of the span.

Design secondary framing system to accommodate deflection of primary building structure and construction tolerances, and to maintain clearances at openings. Provide metal panel assemblies capable of withstanding the effects of loads and stresses indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E1592.

1.2.2 Seismic Performance

Design and engineer metal building system capable of withstanding the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE 7, AISC 341, and the applicable portions of the building code in the geographic area where the construction will take place.

1.2.3 Thermal Movements

Provide metal panel systems that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials

due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss as follows:

Temperature Change (Range); 120 F, ambient; 180 F, material surfaces.

1.2.4 Thermal Performance

Provide insulated metal panel assemblies with the following maximum U-factors and minimum R-values for opaque elements when tested according to ASTM C1363 or ASTM C518.

1.2.4.1 Metal Roof Panel Assemblies

- a. U-Factor: U-0.041 minimum.
- b. R-Value: R-10 + R-19 FC (Filled Cavity) minimum.

1.2.5 Air Infiltration for Metal Roof Panels

Air leakage through assembly must not exceed 0.06 cfm/sq.ft. of roof area when tested according to ASTM E1680 at negative test-pressure difference of 1.57 lbf/sq.ft.

1.2.6 Water Penetration for Metal Roof Panels

No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E1646 at test-pressure difference of 2.86 lbf/sq.ft.

1.2.7 Wind-Uplift Resistance

Provide metal roof panel assemblies that comply with ASCE 7.

1.2.8 Erection Plan

Provide plans and a written erection/lifting procedure with required plans clearly showing the intended sequence and method of erection in accordance with EM 385-1-1 "Safety - Safety and Health Requirements". Indicate required crane lifting requirements, temporary support structures, member size and locations of braced or guyed temporary supports, and locations of bracing or guys anchor points. Clearly define the required framing sequence and conditions necessary to insure the structure is maintained in a properly braced and stable condition throughout the complete erection process.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

ASTM DEFONLINE applies to this definition paragraph.

- a. Bay: Dimension between main frames measured normal to frame (at centerline of frame) for interior bays, and dimension from centerline of first interior main frame measured normal to end wall (outside face of end-wall girt) for end bays.
- b. Building Length: Dimension of the building measured perpendicular to main framing from end wall to end wall (outside face of girt to outside face of girt).
- c. Building Width: Dimension of the building measured parallel to main framing from sidewall to sidewall (outside face of girt to outside face of girt).

- d. Clear Span: Distance between supports of beams, girders, or trusses (measured from lowest level of connecting area of a column and a rafter frame or knee).
- e. Eave Height: Vertical dimension from finished floor to eave (the line along the sidewall formed by intersection of the planes of the roof and wall).
- f. Clear Height under Structure: Vertical dimension from finished floor to lowest point of any part of primary or secondary structure, not including crane supports, located within clear span.
- g. Terminology Standard: Refer to MBMA "Metal Building Systems Manual" for definitions of terms for metal building system construction not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

General: Provide a complete, integrated set of metal building system manufacturer's standard mutually dependent components and assemblies that form a metal building system capable of withstanding structural and other loads, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure or infiltration of water into building interior. Include primary and secondary framing, metal roof panels, and accessories complying with requirements indicated.

Provide metal building system of size and with spacing, slopes, and spans indicated.

1.4.1 Primary Frame Type

- a. Rigid Clear Span: Solid-member, structural-framing system without interior columns.

1.4.2 Fixed End-Wall Framing

Provide manufacturer's standard fixed end wall, for buildings not required to be expandable, consisting of primary frame, capable of supporting one-half of a bay design load, and end-wall columns or load-bearing end-wall with corner columns, and rafters.

1.4.3 Secondary Frame Type

Provide manufacturer's standard purlins and joists and flush-framed girts.

1.4.4 Eave Height

Eave height must be as indicated by nominal height on drawings.

1.4.5 Bay Spacing

Bay Spacing must be as indicated on drawings.

1.4.6 Roof Slope

Roof slope must be as indicated on drawings.

1.4.7 Roof System

Provide manufacturer's standard vertical-rib, standing-seam metal roof panels with [insulation](#).

1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section [01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING](#). Submit the following in accordance with Section [01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES](#):

[SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals](#)

[Manufacturer's Qualifications; G](#)

[SD-02 Shop Drawings](#)

[Detail Drawings; G](#)

[Erection Plan; G](#)

[SD-03 Product Data](#)

[Manufacturer's data indicating percentage of recycle material of the following to verify \[sustainable acquisition compliance\]\(#\); G](#)

[Manufacturer's Catalog Data; G](#)

[SD-04 Samples](#)

[Coil Stock, 12 inches long by the actual panel width; G](#)

[Roof Panels, 12 inches long by actual panel width; G](#)

[Fasteners; G](#)

[Metal Closure Strips 10 inches long of each type; G](#)

[Vapor Barrier; G](#)

[Manufacturer's Color Charts and Chips, 4 by 4 inches; G](#)

[SD-05 Design Data](#)

[Manufacturer's Descriptive and Technical Literature; G](#)

[Manufacturer's Building Design Analysis; G](#)

[SD-06 Test Reports](#)

[Test Reports; G](#)

[Coatings and Base Metals; G](#)

[Factory Color Finish Performance Requirements; G](#)

SD-07 Certificates

System Components; G

Coil Stock Certification; G

Aluminized Steel Repair Paint; G

Galvanizing Repair Paint; G

Enamel Repair Paint; G

Qualification of Manufacturer; G

Qualification of Erector; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Installation of Roof panels; G

Shipping, Handling, and Storage; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Manufacturer's Warranty; G

Contractor's Warranty for Installation; G

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6.1 Pre-Erection Conference

After submittals are received and approved but before metal building system work, including associated work, is performed, the Contracting Officer will hold a pre-erection conference to review the following:

- a. The detail drawings, specifications, and manufacturer's descriptive and technical literature.
- b. Finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, erector's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
- c. Methods and procedures related to metal building system erection, including, but not limited to: qualification of manufacturer, qualification of erector, manufacturer's catalog data, manufacturer's building design analysis, written instructions and test reports.
- d. Support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and erection of structural members.
- e. Flashing, special roofing and siding details, roof penetrations, openings, and condition of other construction that will affect metal building system, including coatings and base metals, factory color finish performance requirements, system components, and certificates for coil stock.
- f. Governing regulations and requirements for, certificates, insurance, tests and inspections if applicable.

- g. Temporary protection requirements for metal panel assembly during and after installation.
- h. Samples of [aluminized steel repair paint](#), [galvanizing repair paint](#), and [enamel repair paint](#).

1.6.1.1 Pre-Roofing and Siding Installation Conference

After structural framing system erection and approval but before roofing, siding, insulation and vapor barrier work, including associated work, is performed; the Contracting Officer will hold a pre-roofing and siding conference to review the following:

- a. Examine purlins, sub-girts and formed shapes conditions for compliance with requirements, including flatness and attachment to structural members.
- b. Review structural limitations of purlins, sub-girts and formed shapes during and after roofing and siding.
- c. Review flashings, special roof and wall details, roof drainage, roof and wall penetrations, roof equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that will affect the metal building system.
- d. Review temporary protection requirements for metal roof and wall panels' assembly during and after installation.
- e. Review roof and wall observation and repair procedures after metal building system erection.

1.6.2 Manufacturer's Technical Representative

The representative must have authorization from manufacturer to approve field changes and be thoroughly familiar with the products, erection of structural framing and [installation of roof panels](#) in the geographical area where construction will take place.

1.6.3 [Manufacturer's Qualifications](#)

Metal building system manufacturer must have a minimum of five (5) years experience as a qualified manufacturer and a member of MBMA of metal building systems and accessory products.

Provide engineering services by an authorized currently licensed engineer in the geographical area where construction will take place, having a minimum of four years experience as an engineer knowledgeable in building design analysis, protocols and procedures for the "Metal Building Systems Manual" ([MBMA MBSM](#)); [ASCE 7](#), and [ASTM E1592](#).

Provide certified engineering calculations using the products submitted for:

- a. Roof Wind Loads with basic wind speed, exposure category, co-efficient, importance factor, designate type of facility, negative pressures for each zone, methods and requirements of attachment.
- b. Roof Dead and Live Loads
- c. Collateral Loads

- d. Foundation Loads
- e. Roof Snow Load
- f. Seismic Loads

1.6.4 Qualification of Erection Contractor

An experienced erector who has specialized in erecting and installing work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and must be approved and certified by the metal building system manufacturer.

1.6.5 Single Source

Obtain primary and secondary components and structural framing members, each type of metal roof, wall and liner panel assemblies, clips, closures and other accessories from the standard products of the single source from a single manufacturer to operate as a complete system for the intended use.

1.6.6 Welding

Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS A5.1/A5.1M, AWS D1.1/D1.1M, and AWS D1.3/D1.3M.

1.6.7 Structural Steel

Comply with AISC 325, AISC 360, for design requirements and allowable stresses.

1.6.8 Cold-Formed Steel

Comply with AISC/AISI 121 and AISI SG03-3 for design requirements and allowable stresses.

1.6.9 Fire-Resistance Ratings

Where indicated, provide metal panels identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

Indicate design designations from UL Bld Mat Dir or from the listings of another qualified testing agency. Combustion Characteristics must conform to ASTM E136.

1.6.10 Surface-Burning Characteristics

Provide metal panels having insulation and vapor barrier material with the following surface-burning characteristics as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency showing:

- a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
- b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

1.6.11 Fabrication

Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes and as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements. Comply with indicated profiles with dimensional and structural requirements

Provide metal panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel. Aluminum and aluminum-alloy sheet and plate must conform to [ASTM B209](#).

Fabricate metal panel side laps with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a tight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, in a manner that will seal weather-tight and minimize noise from movements within panel assembly.

Sheet Metal Accessories: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in [SMACNA 1793](#) that apply to the design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated:

- a. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
- b. End Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
- c. Sealed Joints: Form non-expansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA standards.
- d. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
- e. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of size and metal thickness recommended by SMACNA or by metal building system manufacturer for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

1.6.12 Finishes

Comply with [NAAMM AMP 500](#) for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

1.7 SHIPPING, HANDLING AND STORAGE

1.7.1 Delivery

Package and deliver components, sheets, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed and protected during transportation and handling.

Stack and store metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weather-tight and ventilated covering to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Store in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage. Do not store metal wall

panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panel for entire period up to metal panel installation.

Protect foam-plastic insulation as follows:

- a. Do not expose to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
- b. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic insulation materials to project site before installation time.

Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction to minimize ultraviolet exposure.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

1.8.1 Weather Limitations

Proceed with installation preparation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit Work to proceed without water entering into existing panel system or building.

1.8.2 Field Measurements

1.8.2.1 Established Dimensions for Foundations

Comply with established dimensions on approved anchor-bolt plans, established foundation dimensions, and proceed with fabricating structural framing. Do not proceed without verifying field measurements. Coordinate anchor-bolt installation to ensure that actual anchorage dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

1.8.2.2 Established Dimensions for Metal Panels

Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, either establish framing and opening dimensions and proceed with fabricating metal panels without field measurements, or allow for field trimming metal panels. Coordinate construction to ensure that actual building dimensions, locations of structural members, and openings correspond to established dimensions.

1.8.2.3 Verification Record

Verify locations of all framing and opening dimensions by field measurements before metal panel fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.9 COORDINATION

Coordinate size and location of concrete foundations and casting of anchor-bolt inserts into foundation walls and footings. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in section CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.

Coordinate installation of fire suppression system, equipment supports, piping and supports, and accessories, which are specified in Division 21 - FIRE SUPPRESSION.

Coordinate installation of plumbing system, equipment supports, piping and supports, and accessories, which are specified in Division 22 - PLUMBING.

Coordinate installation of HVAC system, equipment supports, ductwork and supports, piping and supports, and accessories, which are specified in Division 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING (HVAC).

Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations, which are specified in Division 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION.

Coordinate metal panel assemblies with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, and construction of supports and other adjoining work to provide a leak-proof, secure, and non-corrosive installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

1.10.1 Building System Warranty

Furnish manufacturer's no-dollar-limit warranty for the metal building system. The warranty period is to be no less than 10 years from the date of acceptance of the work and be issued directly to the Government. The warranty must provide that if within the warranty period, the metal building system shows evidence of deterioration resulting from defective materials and/or workmanship, correcting of any defects is the responsibility of the metal building system manufacturer. Repairs that become necessary because of defective materials and workmanship while metal building system is under warranty are to be performed within 32 hours after notification, unless additional time is approved by the Contracting Officer. Failure to perform repairs within 32 hours of notification will constitute grounds for having emergency repairs performed by others and will not void the warranty.

1.10.2 Roof System Weather-Tightness Warranty

Furnish manufacturer's no-dollar-limit warranty for the metal panel system. The warranty period is to be no less than 20 years from the date of acceptance of the work and be issued directly to the Government.

The warranty is to provide that if within the warranty period the roof panel system shows evidence of corrosion, perforation, rupture, lost of weather-tightness or excess weathering due to deterioration of the panel system resulting from defective materials and correction of the defective workmanship is to be the responsibility of the metal building system manufacturer.

Repairs that become necessary because of defective materials and workmanship while roof panel system is under warranty are to be performed within 24 hours after notification, unless additional time is approved by the Contracting Officer. Failure to perform temporary repairs within 24 hours of notification will constitute grounds for having emergency repairs performed by others and not void the warranty. Immediate follow-up and completion of permanent repairs must be performed within 10 days from date of notification.

1.10.3 Roof Finish Warranty

Furnish manufacturer's no-dollar-limit warranty for the metal panel system. The warranty period is to be no less than 20 years from the date

of acceptance of the work and be issued directly to the Government.

The warranty is to provide that if within the warranty period the metal panel system shows evidence of checking, delaminating cracking, peeling, chalk in excess of a numerical rating of eight, as determined by [ASTM D4214](#) test procedures; or change colors in excess of five CIE or Hunter units in accordance with [ASTM D2244](#) or excess weathering due to deterioration of the panel system resulting from defective materials and finish or correction of the defective workmanship is to be the responsibility of the metal building system manufacturer.

Liability under this warranty is exclusively limited to replacing the defective coated materials.

Repairs that become necessary because of defective materials and workmanship while roof and wall panel system is under warranty are to be performed within 32 hours after notification, unless additional time is approved by the Contracting Officer. Failure to perform repairs within 32 hours of notification will constitute grounds for having emergency repairs performed by others and not void the warranty.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STRUCTURAL FRAMING MATERIALS

2.1.1 W-Shapes

[ASTM A992/A992M](#); [ASTM A572/A572M](#) or [ASTM A529/A529M](#).

2.1.2 Channel, Angles, M-Shapes and S-Shapes

[ASTM A36/A36M](#); [ASTM A572/A572M](#) or [ASTM A529/A529M](#).

2.1.3 Plate and Bar

[ASTM A36/A36M](#), [ASTM A572/A572M](#) or [ASTM A529/A529M](#).

2.1.4 Steel Pipe

[ASTM A36/A36M](#), [ASTM A53/A53M](#), [ASTM A572/A572M](#) or [ASTM A529/A529M](#).

2.1.5 Cold-Formed and Hot Formed Hollow Structural Sections

Cold formed:[ASTM A500/A500M](#) or [ASTM B221](#), [ASTM B221M](#). Hot-formed:
[ASTM A501/A501M](#).

2.1.6 Structural-Steel Sheet

Hot-rolled, [ASTM A1011/A1011M](#) or cold-rolled, [ASTM A1008/A1008M](#).

2.1.7 Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet

[ASTM A653/A653M](#), [ASTM A606/A606M](#).

2.1.8 Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet Pre-painted with [Coil Stock](#) Coating

Steel sheet metallic coated by the hot-dip process and pre-painted by the coil-coating process to comply with [ASTM A755/A755M](#).

- a. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: [ASTM A653/A653M](#), and [ASTM A123/A123M](#).
- b. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: [ASTM A792/A792M](#), and [ASTM A463/A463M](#).

2.1.9 High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers

[ASTM A325](#), heavy hex steel structural bolts; [ASTM A563](#) heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and [ASTM F436](#) hardened carbon-steel washers.

Finish: Plain.

Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: [ASTM F1852](#), heavy-hex-head steel structural bolts with spline.

Finish: Plain.

2.1.10 Non-High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers

[ASTM A307](#), [ASTM A563](#), and [ASTM F844](#).

Finish: Plain.

2.1.11 Anchor Rods

[ASTM F1554](#) and [ASTM A36/A36M](#).

- a. Configuration: Straight.
- b. Nuts: [ASTM A563](#) heavy hex carbon steel.
- c. Plate Washers: [ASTM A36/A36M](#) carbon steel.
- d. Washers: [ASTM F436](#) hardened carbon steel.
- e. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, [ASTM A153/A153M](#).

2.1.12 Threaded Rods

[ASTM A193/A193M](#) and [ASTM A36/A36M](#).

- a. Nuts: [ASTM A563](#) heavy hex carbon steel.
- b. Washers: [ASTM A36/A36M](#) carbon steel.
- c. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, [ASTM A153/A153M](#).

2.1.13 Primer

SSPC-Paint 15, Type I, red oxide.

2.2 FABRICATION

2.2.1 General

Comply with [MBMA MBSM](#) - "Metal Building Systems Manual": Chapter IV, Section 9, "Fabrication and Erection Tolerances."

2.3 STRUCTURAL FRAMING

2.3.1 General

Clean all framing members to remove loose rust and mill scale. Provide 1 shop coat of primer to an average dry film thickness of 1 mil according to

SSPC SP 2. Balance of painting and coating procedures must conform to SSPC Paint 15 and SSPC Painting Manual.

2.3.2 Primary Framing

Manufacturer's standard structural primary framing system includes transverse and lean-to frames; rafter, rakes, and canopy beams; sidewall, intermediate, end-wall, and corner columns; and wind bracing designed to withstand required loads and specified requirements. Provide frames with attachment plates, bearing plates, and splice members. Provide frame span and spacing indicated.

Shop fabricate framing components by welding or by using high-strength bolts to the indicated size and section with base-plates, bearing plates, stiffeners, and other items required. Cut, form, punch, drill, and weld framing for bolted field erection.

- a. Rigid Clear-Span Frames: I-shaped frame sections fabricated from shop-welded, built-up steel plates or structural-steel shapes. Interior columns are not permitted.
- b. Exterior Column Type: Tapered.
- c. Rafter Type: Tapered.

2.3.3 Secondary Framing

Manufacturer's standard secondary framing members, including purlins, girts, eave struts, flange bracing, base members, gable angles, clips, headers, jambs, and other miscellaneous structural members. Fabricate framing from cold-formed, structural-steel sheet or roll-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet pre-painted with coil coating, unless otherwise indicated.

Shop fabricate framing components by roll-forming or break-forming to the indicated size and section with base-plates, bearing plates, stiffeners, and other plates required for erection. Cut, form, punch, drill, and weld secondary framing for bolted field connections to primary framing.

- a. Purlins: C-shaped sections; fabricated from steel sheet, built-up steel plates, or structural-steel shapes; minimum depth *As indicated or as required to comply with system performance requirements*.
- b. Girts: C-shaped sections; fabricated from steel sheet, built-up steel plates, or structural-steel shapes. Form ends of sections with stiffening lips angled 40 to 50 degrees to flange minimum depth as required to comply with system performance requirements.
- c. Eave Struts: Unequal-flange, C-shaped sections; fabricated from steel sheet, built-up steel plates, or structural-steel shapes; to provide adequate backup for metal panels.
- d. Flange Bracing: Structural-steel angles or cold-formed structural tubing to stiffen primary frame flanges.
- e. Sag Bracing: Structural-steel angles.
- f. Base or Sill Angles: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet.

- g. Purlin and Girt Clips: Steel sheet. Provide galvanized clips where clips are connected to galvanized framing members.
- h. Secondary End-Wall Framing: Manufacturer's standard sections fabricated from structural-steel sheet.
- i. Framing for Openings: Channel shapes; fabricated cold-formed, structural-steel sheet or structural-steel shapes. Frame head and jamb of door openings, and head, jamb, and sill of other openings.
- j. Miscellaneous Structural Members: Manufacturer's standard sections fabricated from cold-formed, structural-steel sheet; built-up steel plates; or zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet; designed to withstand required loads.

2.3.4 Bracing

Provide adjustable wind bracing as follows:

- a. Rigid Portal Frames: Fabricate from shop-welded, built-up steel plates or structural-steel shapes to match primary framing; of size required to withstand design loads.

2.4 PANEL MATERIALS

2.4.1 Aluminum Sheet

Roll-form aluminum roof panels to the specified profile, with $f_y = .040$ inch thickness and depth as indicated. Material must be plumb and true, and within the tolerances listed:

- a. Aluminum Sheet conforming to **ASTM B209**, **AA ADM** and **AA ASD1**.
- b. Individual panels to have continuous length to cover the entire length of any roof slope with no joints or seams and formed without warping, waviness, or ripples that are not part of the panel profile and free of damage to the finish coating system.
- c. Provide panels with thermal expansion and contraction consistent with the type of system specified.
 - 1. Profile and coverage to be a minimum height and width from manufacturer's standard for the indicated roof slope .
 - 2. Profile to be a **2 inch** high standing seam, **16 inch** coverage, with mechanical crimping or snap-together seams with concealed clips and fasteners.
 - 3. Smooth, flat Surface Texture.

2.4.2 Insulated Panel Construction

Shop fabricate or field assemble insulated panel construction with specified exterior and interior aluminum sheet in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.

Insulation to be **glass-fiber-ASTM C991** or **rock-wool-fiber** conforming to **ASTM C553** and **ASTM C612** of thickness and density as required for the geographical area where construction will take place. Glass-Fiber and

Mineral-Wool-Fiber are materials listed in the EPA's Comprehensive Procurement Guidelines (CPG) (<http://www.epa.gov/cpg/>), and are a component of sustainable acquisition compliance.

Insulation fasteners to be adhesively attached, plate welded to projecting spindle anchors; capable of holding insulation of thickness indicated, secured in position with self-locking washer and complying with the following requirements:

- a. Plate: Perforated galvanized carbon-steel sheet 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
- b. Spindle: Copper-coated, low carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
- c. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick galvanized steel sheet, with beveled edge for increased stiffness, sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches square or in diameter.
- d. Anchor adhesive to be a product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation anchors securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, fasteners, and substrates.

2.4.3 Finish

All panels are to receive a factory-applied polyvinylidene fluoride or Kynar 500/Hylar 5000 finish consisting of a baked-on top-coat with a manufacturer's recommended prime coat conforming to the following:

- a. Metal Preparation: All metal is to have the surfaces carefully prepared for painting on a continuous process coil coating line by alkali cleaning, hot water rinsing, application of chemical conversion coating, cold water rinsing, sealing with acid rinse, and thorough drying.
- b. Prime Coating: A base coat of epoxy paint, specifically formulated to interact with the top-coat, is to be applied to the prepared surfaces by roll coating to a dry film thickness of 0.20 plus 0.05 mils. This prime coat must be oven cured prior to application of finish coat.
- c. Exterior Finish Coating: Apply the finish coating over the primer by roll coating to dry film thickness of 0.80 plus 5 mils (3.80 plus 0.50 mils for Vinyl Plastisol) for a total dry film thickness of 1.00 plus 0.10 mils (4.00 plus 0.10 mils for Vinyl Plastisol). This finish coat must be oven-cured.
- d. Interior Finish Coating: Apply a wash-coat on the reverse side over the primer by roll coating to a dry film thickness of 0.30 plus 0.05 mils for a total dry film thickness of 0.50 plus 0.10 mils. The wash-coat must be oven-cured.
- e. Color: The exterior finish chosen from the manufacturer's color charts and chips.
- f. Physical Properties: Coating must conform to the industry and manufacturer's standard performance criteria as listed by the following certified test reports:

Chalking: ASTM DEFONLINE
Color Change and Conformity: ASTM D2244
Weatherometer: ASTM G152, ASTM G153 and ASTM D822
Humidity: ASTM D2247 and ASTM D714
Salt Spray: ASTM B117
Chemical Pollution: ASTM D1308
Gloss at 60 degrees: ASTM D523
Pencil Hardness: ASTM D3363
Reverse Impact: ASTM D2794
Flexibility: ASTM D522/D522M
Abrasion: ASTM D968
Flame Spread: ASTM E84

2.4.4 Repair Of Finish Protection

Repair paint for color finish enameled metal panel must be compatible paint of the same formula and color as the specified finish furnished by the metal panel manufacturer, conforming to ASTM A780/A780M.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FRAMING

2.5.1 General

Cold-formed metallic-coated steel sheet conforming to ASTM A653/A653M and specified in Section 05 40 00 COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING unless otherwise indicated.

2.5.2 Fasteners for Miscellaneous Metal Framing

Refer to the following paragraph "FASTENERS".

2.6 FASTENERS

2.6.1 General

Type, material, corrosion resistance, size and sufficient length to penetrate the supporting member a minimum of 1 inch with other properties required to fasten miscellaneous metal framing members to substrates in accordance with the metal panel manufacturer's and ASCE 7 requirements.

2.6.2 Exposed Fasteners

Fasteners for metal panels to be corrosion resistant coated steel, aluminum, stainless steel, or nylon capped steel compatible with the sheet panel or flashing and of a type and size recommended by the manufacturer to meet the performance requirements and design loads. Fasteners for accessories to be the manufacturer's standard. Provide an integral metal washer matching the color of attached material with compressible sealing EPDM gasket approximately 3/32 inch thick.

2.6.3 Screws

Screws to be corrosion resistant coated steel, aluminum and/or stainless steel being the type and size recommended by the manufacturer to meet the performance requirements.

2.6.4 Rivets

Rivets to be closed-end type, corrosion resistant coated steel, aluminum or

stainless steel where watertight connections are required.

2.6.5 Attachment Clips

Fabricate clips from steel hot-dipped galvanized in accordance with [ASTM A653/A653M](#) or Series 300 stainless steel. Size, shape, thickness and capacity as required meeting the insulation thickness and design load criteria specified.

2.7 ACCESSORIES

2.7.1 General

All accessories to be compatible with the metal panels; sheet metal flashing, trim, [metal closure strips](#), caps and similar metal accessories must not be less than the minimum thickness specified for the metal panels. Exposed metal accessories/finishes to match the panels furnished, except as otherwise indicated. Molded foam rib, ridge and other closure strips to be non-absorbent closed-cell or solid-cell synthetic rubber or pre-molded neoprene to match configuration of the panels.

2.7.2 Roof Accessories and Specialties

[Aluminum or Steel](#) roof curbs, equipment supports, roof hatches, dropout-type heat and smoke vents, hatch-type heat and smoke vents, gravity and roof ridge ventilators, wall louvers and other miscellaneous roof and wall equipment or penetrations conforming to AAMA, ASTM, and UL as specified in Division 07 unless otherwise indicated.

2.7.3 Insulation

Faced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: [ASTM C665](#), Type III, blankets with reflective coverings; Class A, membrane-faced surface with a flame spread of 25 or less , except a flame spread rating of 25 or less and a smoke developed rating of 150 or less when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#).

2.7.3.1 Polyethylene Vapor Retarder

Install polyethylene vapor retarder membrane over entire [roof](#) surface. Use fully compatible polyethylene tape to seal the edges of the sheets to provide a vapor tight membrane. Lap sheets not less than [6 inch](#). Provide sufficient material to avoid inducing stresses in sheets due to stretching or binding. All tears or punctures visible in the finished surface, at anytime during the construction process, must be sealed with polyethylene tape.

2.7.3.2 Wall Liner

Securely fasten wall liner into place in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation and in a neatly presented appearance.

2.7.4 Rubber Closure Strips

Closed-cell, expanded cellular rubber conforming to [ASTM D1056](#) and [ASTM D1667](#); extruded or molded to the configuration of the specified metal panel and in lengths supplied by the metal panel manufacturer.

2.7.5 Metal Closure Strips

Factory fabricated aluminum closure strips to be the same gauge , color, finish and profile of the specified roof panel.

2.7.6 Joint Sealants

2.7.6.1 Sealants

Sealants are to be an approved gun type for use in hand or air-pressure caulking guns at temperatures above 40 degrees F (or frost-free application at temperatures above 10 degrees F with minimum solid content of 85 percent of the total volume. Sealant is to dry with a tough, durable surface skin which permits it to remain soft and pliable underneath, providing a weather-tight joint. No migratory staining is permitted on painted or unpainted metal, stone, glass, vinyl, or wood.

Prime all joints to receive sealants with a compatible one-component or two-component primer as recommended by the metal panel manufacturer.

2.7.6.2 Shop-Applied

Sealant for shop-applied caulking must be an approved gun grade, non-sag one component polysulfide or silicone conforming to ASTM C920, Type II, and with a curing time to ensure the sealant's plasticity at the time of field erection.

2.7.6.3 Field-Applied

Sealant for field-applied caulking must be an approved gun grade, non-sag one component polysulfide or two-component polyurethane with an initial maximum Shore A durometer hardness of 25, and conforming to ASTM C920, Type II. Color to match panel colors.

2.7.6.4 Tape Sealant

Pressure sensitive, 100 percent solid with a release paper backing; permanently elastic, non-sagging, non-toxic and non-staining as approved by the metal panel manufacturer.

2.8 SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

2.8.1 Fabrication

Shop fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim where practicable to comply with recommendations in SMACNA 1793 that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.

Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.

2.9 FINISHES

2.9.1 General

Comply with NAAMM AMP 500 for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

2.9.2 Appearance of Finished Work

Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

Before erection proceeds examine with the erector present the concrete foundation dimensions, concrete and/or masonry bearing surfaces, anchor bolt size and placement, survey slab elevation, locations of bearing plates, and other embedment's to receive structural framing with the metal building manufacturer's templates and drawings before erecting any steel components for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

Examine primary and secondary framing to verify that rafters, purlins, angles, channels, and other structural and metal panel support members and anchorages have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal building manufacturer, UL, ASTM, [ASCE 7](#) and as required by the building code for the geographical area where construction will take place.

Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal roof or wall panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before metal roof or wall panel installation.

Submit to the Contracting Officer a written report, endorsed by Erector, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.

Proceed with erection only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

Provide temporary shoring, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep the structural framing secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loading or loads equal in intensity of the building design loads. Remove temporary support systems when permanent structural framing, connections, and bracing are in place, unless otherwise indicated.

Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of interfering with insulation attachment and performance.

Miscellaneous Framing: Install sub-purlins, girts, angles, furring, and other miscellaneous support members or anchorage for the metal roof or wall panels, doors, windows, roof curbs, ventilators and louvers according to metal building manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 ERECTION OF STRUCTURAL FRAMING

Erect metal building system according to manufacturer's written erection instructions, approved shop drawings and other erection documents in accordance with [MBMA MBSM](#) - "Metal Building Systems Manual".

Do not field cut, drill, or alter structural members without written approval from metal building system manufacturer's professional engineer and the Contracting Officer.

Set structural framing accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 325 specifications. Maintain structural stability of frame during erection.

Clean and roughen concrete and masonry bearing surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.

Align and adjust structural framing before permanent bolt-up and connections. Perform necessary adjustments and alignment to compensate for changes or discrepancies in elevations.

Maintain erection tolerances of structural framing in accordance with AISC 360.

3.4 ROOF PANEL INSTALLATION

Provide metal roof panels of full length from eave to ridge or eave to wall as indicated, unless otherwise indicated or restricted by shipping limitations. Anchor metal roof panels and other components of the Work securely in place in accordance with NRCA RoofMan and MBMA MBSM.

Erect roofing system in accordance with the approved erection drawings, the printed instructions and safety precautions of the metal building manufacturer.

Sheets are not to be subjected to overloading, abuse, or undue impact. Do not install bent, chipped, or defective sheets.

Sheets must be erected true and plumb and in exact alignment with the horizontal and vertical edges of the building, securely anchored, and with the indicated rake and eave overhang.

Work must allow for thermal movement of the roofing, movement of the building structure, and provide permanent freedom from noise due to wind pressure.

Field cutting metal roof panels by torch is not permitted.

Roofing sheets must be laid with corrugations in the direction of the roof slope. End laps of exterior roofing must not be less than 8 inches; the side laps of standard exterior corrugated sheets must not be less than 2-1/2 corrugations.

Do not permit storage, walking, wheeling, and trucking directly on applied roofing materials. Provide temporary walkways, runways, and platforms of smooth clean boards or planks as necessary to avoid damage to the installed roofing materials, and to distribute weight to conform to the indicated live load limits of roof construction.

3.5 METAL PANEL FASTENER INSTALLATION

Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, using manufacturer's approved fasteners according to manufacturers' written instructions.

3.6 FLASHING, TRIM AND CLOSURE INSTALLATION

- a. Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and [SMACNA 1793](#). Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
- b. Sheet metalwork is to be accomplished to form weather-tight construction without waves, warps, buckles, fastening stresses or distortion, and allow for expansion and contraction. Cutting, fitting, drilling, and other operations in connection with sheet metal required to accommodate the work of other trades is to be performed by sheet metal mechanics.

3.7 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

3.7.1 General

Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weather-tight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.

3.7.2 Dissimilar Metals

Where dissimilar metals contact one another or corrosive substrates are present, protect against galvanic action by painting dissimilar metal surfaces with bituminous coating, by applying rubberized-asphalt underlayment to each surface, or by other permanent separation techniques as recommended by the metal building manufacturer.

3.7.3 Gutters and Downspouts

Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and install sheet metal roof drainage items to produce complete roof drainage system according to [SMACNA 1793](#) recommendations and as indicated. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof drainage system.

3.7.4 Insulation

Comply with performance requirements and manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install insulation concurrently with metal panel installation, in thickness indicated to cover entire roof and wall area, as specified in Division 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION.

3.7.5 Roof Accessories and Specialties

Install roof and wall accessories and specialties complete with necessary hardware, anchors, dampers, weather guards, rain caps, and equipment supports as specified in Division 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION, unless otherwise indicated.

3.8 CLEAN-UP AND PROTECTION

3.8.1 Structural Framing

Clean all exposed structural framing at completion of installation. Remove

metal shavings, filings, bolts, and wires from work area. Remove grease and oil films, excess sealants, handling marks, contamination from steel wool, fittings and drilling debris and scrub the work clean. Exposed metal surfaces to be free of dents, creases, waves, scratch marks, solder or weld marks, and damage to the finish coating.

3.8.2 Metal Panels

Clean all exposed sheet metal work at completion of installation. Remove metal shavings, filings, nails, bolts, and wires from work area. Remove protective coverings/films, grease and oil films, excess sealants, handling marks, contamination from steel wool, fittings and drilling debris and scrub the work clean. Exposed metal surfaces to be free of dents, creases, waves, scratch marks, solder or weld marks, and damage to the finish coating.

3.8.3 Touch-Up Painting

After erection, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or re-prime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted structural framing and accessories. Clean and touch-up paint as specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS, unless otherwise indicated.

3.9 WASTE MANAGEMENT

Separate waste in accordance with the Waste Management Plan, placing copper materials, ferrous materials, and galvanized sheet metal in designated areas for reuse. Close and seal tightly all partly used adhesives and solvents; store protected in a well-ventilated, fire-safe area at moderate temperature.

Collect and place scrap/waste debris in containers. Promptly dispose of scrap/waste debris. Do not allow scrap/waste debris to accumulate on-site; transport scrap/waste debris from government property and legally dispose of them.

3.10 SPECIAL INSPECTION AND TESTING FOR SEISMIC-RESISTING SYSTEMS

Special inspections and testing for seismic-resisting systems and components shall be done in accordance with Section 01 45 35 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS.

3.11 WARRANTY

3.11.1 MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY

Submit all manufacturers' signed warranties to Contracting Officer prior to final commissioning and acceptance.

3.11.2 CONTRACTOR'S WARRANTY for INSTALLATION

Submit contractor's warranty for installation to the Contracting Officer prior to final commissioning and acceptance.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 21 13 13.00 20

WET PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEM, FIRE PROTECTION

04/08

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D709 (2017) Standard Specification for
Laminated Thermosetting Materials

FM GLOBAL (FM)

FM APP GUIDE (updated on-line) Approval Guide
<http://www.approvalguide.com/>

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 13 (2016; TIA 16-1; TIA 16-2; TIA 16-3 2016;
Errata 17-1; Errata 17-2) Standard for the
Installation of Sprinkler Systems

NFPA 24 (2016; ERTA 2016) Standard for the
Installation of Private Fire Service Mains
and Their Appurtenances

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 262 (2004; Reprint Oct 2011) Gate Valves for
Fire-Protection Service

UL 668 (2004; Reprint Jul 2016) UL Standard for
Safety Hose Valves for Fire-Protection
Service

UL 789 (2004; Reprint May 2017) UL Standard for
Safety Indicator Posts for Fire-Protection
Service

UL Fire Prot Dir (2012) Fire Protection Equipment Directory

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Design and provide new automatic wet pipe fire extinguishing sprinkler systems for complete fire protection coverage throughout the entire building.

1.3 SPRINKLER SYSTEM DESIGN

Except as modified herein, design automatic wet pipe fire extinguishing sprinkler systems in accordance with the required and advisory provisions of NFPA 13, including all recommendations and advisory portions, which shall be considered mandatory; this includes advisory provisions listed in

the appendices of such standard(s), as though the word "shall" had been substituted for the word "should" wherever it appears. Design system by hydraulic calculations for uniform distribution of water over the design area. Hydraulic calculations shall assume a 12 psi pressure loss for the backflow preventer assembly. Hydraulic calculations shall assume the pressure loss for the backflow preventer assembly is the same as the losses indicated on the manufacturer's data sheets. Locate sprinklers in a consistent pattern with ceiling grid, lights, and air supply diffusers. Provide sprinklers and piping system layout. All Devices and equipment for fire protection service shall be UL Fire Prot Dir listed or FM APP GUIDE approved for use in wet pipe sprinkler systems.

1.3.1 Location of Sprinklers

Sprinklers in relation to the ceiling and the spacing of sprinklers shall not exceed that permitted by NFPA 13 for the hazards indicated on the contract drawings. Uniformly space sprinklers on the branch piping. Sprinklers shall provide coverage throughout 100 percent of the building. This includes, but is not limited to, telephone rooms, electrical equipment rooms, boiler rooms, switchgear rooms, transformer rooms, and other electrical and mechanical spaces.

1.3.2 Water Distribution

Distribution shall be uniform throughout the area in which the sprinklers will open. Discharge from individual sprinklers in hydraulically most remote area shall be between 100 percent and 120 percent of the specified density.

1.3.3 Density of Application of Water

Size pipe to provide the specified density when the system is discharging the specified total maximum required flow. Application to horizontal surfaces below the sprinklers shall be as indicated on the contract drawings. Size pipe to provide the specified density when the system is discharging the specified total maximum required flow. Application to horizontal surfaces below the sprinklers shall be as indicated on the contract drawings.

1.3.4 Sprinkler Discharge Area

Area shall be the hydraulically most remote 1,500 sq ft for light hazard occupancies and 2,500 for ordinary hazard occupancies. Area reductions and increases from NFPA 13 shall not be applied to this area.

1.3.5 Outside Hose Allowances

Hydraulic calculations shall include a hose allowance of 250 gpm for outside hose streams

1.3.6 Water Supply

Base hydraulic calculations on a static pressure of 80 psig with 1230 gpm available at a residual pressure of 68 psig at the junction with the existing water distribution piping system.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation;

submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval.

Partial submittals and submittals not fully complying with the requirements and recommended practices of NFPA 13 and this specification section shall be returned disapproved without review. This contract stipulation is non-negotiable.

Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Shop Drawings; G

Prepare 24 by 36 inch detail working drawings of sprinklers and piping. Floor plans shall be drawn to a scale not less than 1/8" = 1'-0". Show data essential for proper installation of each system. Show details, plan view, elevations and sections of the systems supply and piping. Show piping schematic of systems supply, devices, valves, pipe and fittings. Show point to point electrical wiring diagrams. Submit drawings signed by a registered fire protection engineer. Provide three copies of the Sprinkler System Shop Drawings, no later than 21 days prior to the start of sprinkler system installation.

SD-03 Product Data

Pipe; G
Fittings; G
Alarm valves; G
Valves, including gate, check, and globe; G
Sprinklers; G
Pipe hangers and supports; G
Sprinkler Alarm Switches; G
Fire department connections; G
Mechanical couplings; G
Backflow Prevention Assembly; G

Annotate descriptive data to show the specific model, type, and size of each item. Catalog cuts shall also indicate UL Listing/FM Approval and country of manufacture.

SD-05 Design Data

Hydraulic Calculations; G

Submit computer program generated hydraulic calculations to substantiate compliance with hydraulic design requirements. Calculations shall be performed by computer using software intended specifically for fire protection system design. Calculations shall include isometric diagram indicating hydraulic nodes and pipe segments. Submit name of software program used.

SD-06 Test Reports

request to schedule Preliminary Tests; G

Preliminary Test Report; G

Provide Three copies of the completed Preliminary Test Report, no later than 7 days after the completion of the Preliminary Tests. The Preliminary Tests Report shall include both the Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Underground Piping and the Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping. All items in the Preliminary Tests Report shall be signed by the Fire Protection Engineer.

request to schedule Final Acceptance Test; G

Final Acceptance Test Report; G

Provide Three copies of the completed Final Acceptance Tests Reports, no later than 7 days after the completion of the Final Acceptance Tests. All items in the Final Acceptance Report shall be signed by the Fire Protection Engineer.

SD-07 Certificates

Inspection by Fire Protection Engineer; G

Concurrent with the Final Acceptance Test Report, certification by the Fire Protection Engineer that the sprinkler system is installed in accordance with the contract requirements, including signed approval of the Preliminary and Final Acceptance Test Reports.

Fire Protection Engineer; G

The name and documentation of certification of the proposed Fire Protection Engineer, no later than 14 days after the Notice to Proceed and prior to the submittal of the sprinkler system drawings and hydraulic calculations.

Sprinkler System Installer; G

Submit data showing the Sprinkler System Installer has successfully installed systems of the same type and design as specified herein, Data shall include names and locations of at least two installations where the Contractor, or the subcontractor referred to above, has installed such systems. Indicate type and design of each system and certify that each system has performed satisfactorily in the manner intended for not less than 18 months. Provide NICET certification of the system technician. Contractor shall submit data along with submittal of the Fire Protection Engineer Qualifications.

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operating and Maintenance Instructions

Submit in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA as supplemented and modifies by this specification section.

Provide six manuals in accordance with NFPA 13. The manuals shall include the manufacturer's name, model number, parts list, list of

parts and tools that should be kept in stock by the owner for routine maintenance including the name of a local supplier, simplified wiring and controls diagrams, troubleshooting guide, and recommended service organization (including address and telephone number) for each item of equipment.

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

As-built drawings

As-built shop drawings, at no later than 14 days after completion of the Final Tests. The Sprinkler System Drawings shall be updated to reflect as-built conditions after all related work is completed. Provide electronic drawings in dwg or pdf format.

On-site training

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS

1.5.1 Fire Protection Engineer

A Fire Protection Engineer is a registered professional engineer (P.E.) who has passed the fire protection engineering written examination administered by the National Council of Examiners for Engineering and Surveys (NCEES)

1.5.2 Sprinkler System Installer

The Sprinkler System Installer shall be regularly engaged in the installation of the type and complexity of system specified in the Contract documents, and shall have served in a similar capacity for at least three systems that have performed in the manner intended for a period of not less than 6 months. Installation drawings, [shop drawings](#) and as-built drawings shall be prepared, by or under the supervision of, an system technician who is experienced with the types of works specified herein, and is currently certified by the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET) as an engineering technician with minimum Level IV certification in Automatic Sprinkler System program or by a fire protection engineer.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6.1 Material and Equipment Qualifications

Provide materials and equipment that are standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products, which are of a similar material, design and workmanship. Standard products shall have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening. The 2-year use shall include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The product shall have been for sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2 year period.

1.6.2 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a two-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturer's factory or laboratory tests, can be shown.

1.6.3 Manufacturer's Nameplate

Each item of equipment shall have a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable.

1.6.4 Field Fabricated Nameplates

ASTM D709. Provide laminated plastic nameplates for each equipment enclosure, relay, switch, and device; as specified in the technical sections or as indicated on the drawings. Each nameplate inscription shall identify the function and, when applicable, the position. Nameplates shall be melamine plastic, 0.125 inch thick, white with black center core. Surface shall be matte finish. Corners shall be square. Accurately align lettering and engrave into the core. Minimum size of nameplates shall be one by 2.5 inches. Lettering shall be a minimum of 0.25 inch high normal block style.

1.7 ACCESSIBILITY

Install all work so that parts requiring periodic inspection, operation, maintenance, and repair are readily accessible. Install concealed valves, expansion joints, controls, dampers, and equipment requiring access, in locations freely accessible through access doors.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

All equipment delivered and placed in storage shall be housed in a manner to preclude any damage from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, or other contaminants. Additionally, all pipes shall either be capped or plugged until installed.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 UNDERGROUND PIPING COMPONENTS

2.1.1 Pipe

Pipe shall comply with **NFPA 24**. Minimum pipe size shall be 6 inches. Piping more than 5 feet outside the building walls shall comply with Section 33 11 00 WATER UTILITY DISTRIBUTION PIPING.

2.1.2 Gate Valve

Installation shall comply with **NFPA 24**. Gate valves for use with indicator post shall conform to **UL 262**. Indicator posts shall conform to **UL 789**. Provide each indicator post with one coat of primer and two coats of red enamel paint.

2.1.3 Valve Boxes

Except where indicator posts are provided, for each buried valve, provide cast-iron, ductile-iron, or plastic valve box of a suitable size. Plastic boxes shall be constructed of acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) or inorganic fiber-reinforced black polyolefin. Provide cast-iron, ductile-iron, or plastic cover for valve box with the word "WATER" cast on the cover. The minimum box shaft diameter shall be 5.25 inches. Coat cast-iron and ductile-iron boxes with bituminous paint applied to a minimum

dry-film thickness of 10 mils.

2.1.4 Buried Utility Warning and Identification Tape

Provide detectable aluminum foil plastic backed tape or detectable magnetic plastic tape manufactured specifically for warning and identification of buried piping. Tape shall be detectable by an electronic detection instrument. Provide tape in rolls, 3 inches minimum width, color coded for the utility involved with warning and identification imprinted in bold block letters continuously and repeatedly over the entire tape length. Warning and identification shall read "CAUTION BURIED WATER PIPING BELOW" or similar wording. Use permanent code and letter coloring unaffected by moisture and other substances contained in trench backfill material.

2.2 ABOVEGROUND PIPING COMPONENTS

All components of the aboveground piping shall fully comply with the requirements and recommended practices of NFPA 13 and this specification section. Aboveground piping shall be steel or copper.

2.2.1 Steel Pipe

Pipe shall be rigid black steel. Steel pipe shall be Schedule 40 for sizes less than 3 inches and Schedule 40 for sizes 3 inches or larger. Fittings into which sprinklers, sprinkler riser nipples, or drop nipples are threaded shall be welded, threaded, or grooved-end type. Plain-end fittings with mechanical couplings, fittings that use steel gripping devices to bite into the pipe and segmented welded fittings shall not be permitted. Rubber gasketed grooved-end pipe and fittings with mechanical couplings shall be permitted in pipe sizes 1.5 inches and larger. Fittings, mechanical couplings, and rubber gaskets shall be supplied by the same manufacturer. Steel piping with wall thickness less than Schedule 30 shall not be threaded.

2.2.2 Grooved Mechanical Joints and Fittings

Grooved couplings, fittings and grooving tools shall be products of the same manufacturer.

2.2.3 Flexible Sprinkler Hose

The use of flexible sprinkler hose is permissible.

2.2.4 Sprinklers

Provide nominal 0.50 inch or 0.53 inch orifice sprinklers. Sprinklers with internal O-rings shall not be used. Sprinklers shall be used in accordance with their listed coverage limitations. Provide Recessed sprinklers. Sprinklers shall have a polished chrome finish. Temperature classification shall be ordinary. Sprinklers in high heat areas including attic spaces or in close proximity to unit heaters shall have temperature classification in accordance with NFPA 13. Extended coverage sprinklers shall not be used. Deflector shall not be more than 3 inches below suspended ceilings. Ceiling plates shall not be more than 0.5 inch deep. Ceiling cups shall not be permitted.

2.2.5 Valves

Provide valves of types approved for fire service. Valves shall open by

counterclockwise rotation. Provide a rising stem OS&Y valve beneath each alarm. Check valves shall be clear opening swing-check type with inspection and access cover plate for sizes 8 inches and larger.

2.2.6 Pipe Supports

Provide Pipe hangers and supports in accordance with NFPA 13.

2.2.7 Alarm Valves

Provide variable pressure type alarm check valve, standard trim piping, pressure gauges, bypass, retarding chamber, testing valves, main drain, and other components as required for a fully operational system.

2.2.8 Fire Department Connections

Fire department connection shall be 5 inch Storz connection with a 30 degree elbow placed on the fire department connection.

2.2.9 Backflow Prevention Assembly

Provide listed reduced pressure principle valve assembly backflow preventer. Each check valve shall have a drain. Backflow prevention assemblies shall have current "Certificate of Approval from the Foundation for Cross-Connection Control and Hydraulic Research, FCCCHR List. Listing of the specific make, model, design, and size in the FCCCHR List shall be acceptable as the required documentation."

2.3 ALARM INITIATING AND SUPERVISORY DEVICES

2.3.1 Sprinkler Alarm Switches

Provide vane type flow switch(es) with circuit opener or closer for the automatic transmittal of an alarm over the facility fire alarm system. Connection of switch shall be under Section 28 31 76.22 INTERIOR COMBINATION EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS. Vane type Alarm actuating devices shall have mechanical diaphragm controlled retard device adjustable from 10 to 60 seconds and shall instantly recycle.

2.3.2 Valve Supervisory (Tamper) Switch

Switch shall be suitable for mounting to the type of control valve to be supervised open. The switch shall be tamper resistant and contain one set of SPDT (Form C) contacts arranged to transfer upon removal of the housing cover or closure of the valve of more than two rotations of the valve stem.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

2.4.1 Sprinkler Cabinet

Provide metal cabinet with extra sprinklers, including a representative sample of dry pendent type sprinklers and sprinkler wrench adjacent to each alarm valve. The number and types of extra sprinklers shall be as specified in NFPA 13.

2.4.2 Pipe Escutcheon

Provide split hinge metal plates for piping entering walls, floors, and ceilings in exposed spaces. Provide polished stainless steel plates or

chromium-plated finish on copper alloy plates in finished spaces. Provide paint finish on metal plates in unfinished spaces.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION BY FIRE PROTECTION ENGINEER

The Fire Protection Engineer shall inspect the sprinkler system periodically during the installation to assure the sprinkler system is being provided and installed in accordance with the contract requirements and the approved sprinkler system submittal(s). The Fire Protection Engineer shall attend both the preliminary and final tests, and shall sign the test results. After the preliminary testing has been completed, the Fire Protection Engineer, shall certify in writing the system is ready for the final inspections and tests. This report shall document any discrepancies found and what actions will be taken to correct. Any discrepancy noted during the periodic site visits or the preliminary testing shall be brought to the attention of the Contracting Officer in writing, no later than three working days after the discrepancy is discovered.

3.2 UNDERGROUND PIPING INSTALLATION

The methods of fabrication and installation of the underground piping shall fully comply with the requirements and recommended practices of NFPA 13, NFPA 24 and the contract drawings.

3.3 ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSTALLATION

The methods of fabrication and installation of the aboveground piping shall fully comply with the requirements and recommended practices of NFPA 13 and this specification section.

3.3.1 Piping in Finished Areas

In areas with suspended or dropped ceilings and in areas with concealed spaces above the ceiling, piping shall be concealed above ceilings. Piping shall be inspected, tested and approved before being concealed. Risers and similar vertical runs of piping in finished areas shall be concealed.

3.3.2 Pendent Sprinklers

Where sprinklers are installed below suspended or dropped ceilings, drop nipples shall be cut such that sprinkler ceiling plates or escutcheons are of a uniform depth throughout the finished space. The outlet of the reducing coupling shall not extend more than 1 inch below the underside of the ceiling. Pendent sprinklers in suspended ceilings shall be a minimum of 6 inches from ceiling grids.

3.3.3 Pipe Joints

Pipe joints shall conform to NFPA 13, except as modified herein. Welded joints will be permitted, only if welding operations are performed as required by NFPA 13 at the Contractor's fabrication shop, not at the project construction site. Flanged joints shall be provided where indicated or required by NFPA 13. Grooved pipe and fittings shall be prepared in accordance with the manufacturer's latest published specification according to pipe material, wall thickness and size. Grooved couplings, fittings and grooving tools shall be products of the same

manufacturer. The diameter of grooves made in the field shall be measured using the method specifically approved by the coupling manufacturer for the intended application. Groove width and dimension of groove from end of pipe shall be measured and recorded for each change in grooving tool setup to verify compliance with coupling manufacturer's tolerances.

3.3.4 Reducers

Reductions in pipe sizes shall be made with one-piece tapered reducing fittings. Bushings are prohibited.

3.3.5 Pipe Penetrations

Cutting structural members for passage of pipes or for pipe-hanger fastenings will not be permitted. Pipes that must penetrate concrete or masonry walls or concrete floors shall be core-drilled and provided with pipe sleeves. Each sleeve shall be Schedule 40 galvanized steel, ductile iron or cast iron pipe and shall extend through its respective wall or floor and be cut flush with each wall surface. Sleeves shall provide required clearance between the pipe and the sleeve per NFPA 13. The space between the sleeve and the pipe shall be firmly packed with mineral wool insulation. Where pipes penetrate fire walls, fire partitions, or floors, pipes shall be fire stopped in accordance with Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING. In penetrations that are not fire-rated or not a floor penetration, the space between the sleeve and the pipe shall be sealed at both ends with plastic waterproof cement that will dry to a firm but pliable mass or with a mechanically adjustable segmented elastomer seal.

3.3.6 Inspector's Test Connection

Provide test connections approximately 6 feet above the floor for each sprinkler system or portion of each sprinkler system equipped with an alarm device. Provide test connection piping to a drain location that can accept full flow where the discharge will be readily visible and where water may be discharged without property damage. Discharge to floor drains, janitor sinks or similar fixtures shall not be permitted. Provide discharge orifice of same size as corresponding sprinkler orifice. The penetration of the exterior wall shall be no greater than 2 feet above finished grade.

3.3.7 Backflow Preventer Test Connection

Provide downstream of the backflow prevention assembly UL 668 hose valves with 2.5 inch National Standard male hose threads with cap and chain. Provide one valve for each 250 gpm of system demand or fraction thereof. Provide a permanent sign in accordance with paragraph entitled "Identification Signs" which reads, "Test Valve."

3.3.8 Drains

Main drain piping shall be provided to discharge at a safe point outside the building. Auxiliary drains shall be provided as required by NFPA 13.

3.3.9 Installation of Fire Department Connection

Connection shall be mounted on the exterior wall approximately 3 feet above finished grade, adjacent to and on the sprinkler system side of the backflow preventer. The piping between the connection and the check valve shall be provided with an automatic drip in accordance with NFPA 13 and arranged to drain to the outside.

3.3.10 Identification Signs

Signs shall be affixed to each control valve, inspector test valve, main drain, auxiliary drain, test valve, and similar valves as appropriate or as required by NFPA 13. Valve identification signs shall be minimum 6 inches wide by 2 inches high with enamel baked finish on minimum 18 gauge steel or 0.024 inch aluminum with red letters on a white background or white letters on red background. Hydraulic design data nameplates shall be permanently affixed to each sprinkler riser as specified in NFPA 13.

3.4 ELECTRICAL WORK

Except as supplemented and modified herein, electric equipment and wiring shall be in accordance with Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Alarm signal wiring connected to the building fire alarm control system shall be in accordance with Section 28 31 76.22 INTERIOR COMBINATION EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS.

3.5 PIPE PAINTING AND COLOR CODE MARKING

Paint and color code mark sprinkler piping system as specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

3.6 PRELIMINARY TESTS

The system, including the underground water mains, and the aboveground piping and system components, shall be tested to assure that equipment and components function as intended. The underground and aboveground interior piping systems and attached appurtenances subjected to system working pressure shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 13 and NFPA 24. Submit request to schedule Preliminary Tests, no later than 14 days prior to the proposed start of the tests. Upon completion of specified tests, the Contractor shall submit for approval a Preliminary Test Report.

3.6.1 Underground Piping

3.6.1.1 Flushing

Underground piping shall be flushed in accordance with NFPA 24.

3.6.1.2 Hydrostatic Testing

New underground piping shall be hydrostatically tested in accordance with NFPA 24.

3.6.2 Aboveground Piping

3.6.2.1 Hydrostatic Testing

Aboveground piping shall be hydrostatically tested in accordance with NFPA 13.

3.6.2.2 Backflow Prevention Assembly Forward Flow Test

Each backflow prevention assembly shall be tested at system flow demand, including all applicable hose streams, as specified in NFPA 13. The Contractor shall provide all equipment and instruments necessary to conduct a complete forward flow test, including 2.5 inch diameter hoses, playpipe

nozzles, calibrated pressure gauges, and pitot tube gauge. The Contractor shall provide all necessary supports to safely secure hoses and nozzles during the test. At the system demand flow, the pressure readings and pressure drop (friction) across the assembly shall be recorded. A metal placard shall be provided on the backflow prevention assembly that lists the pressure readings both upstream and downstream of the assembly, total pressure drop, and the system test flow rate determined during the preliminary testing. The pressure drop shall be compared to the manufacturer's data and the readings observed during the final inspections and tests.

3.7 FINAL ACCEPTANCE TEST

Final Acceptance Test shall begin only when the Preliminary Test Report has been approved. Submit [request to schedule Final Acceptance Test](#), no later than 14 days prior to the proposed start of the tests. Notification shall include a copy of the Contractor's Material & Test Certificates.

This shall include operation of control valves and flowing of inspector's test connections to verify operation of associated waterflow alarm switches. After operation of control valves has been completed, the main drain test shall be repeated to assure that control valves are in the open position. In addition, the representative shall have available copies of [as-built drawings](#) and certificates of tests previously conducted. The installation shall not be considered accepted until identified discrepancies have been corrected and test documentation is properly completed and received. The Contractor shall submit the [Final Acceptance Test Report](#) as specified in the Submittals paragraph.

An experienced technician regularly employed by the system installer shall be present during the inspection. The Fire Protection Engineer shall attend the final inspections and tests. At this inspection, repeat any or all of the required tests as directed. Correct defects in work provided by the Contractor, and make additional tests until the systems comply with contract requirements. Furnish appliances, equipment, electricity, instruments, connecting devices, and personnel for the tests. The Government will furnish water for the tests. The [MIDLANT](#) Division, Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Fire Protection Engineer, will witness formal tests and approve systems before they are accepted.

3.8 ON-SITE TRAINING

Submit request to schedule the On-site Training, at least 14 days prior to the start of related training but prior to the final inspections and tests. The sprinkler contractor shall conduct a training course for operating and maintenance personnel as designated by the Contracting Officer. Training shall be provided for a period of 8 hours of normal working time and shall start after the system is functionally complete and after the Final Acceptance Test. The On-Site Training shall cover all of the items contained in the approved [Operating and Maintenance Instructions](#).

-- End of Section --

SECTION 22 00 00

PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE

11/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR-CONDITIONING, HEATING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE (AHRI)

AHRI 1010 (2002) Self-Contained, Mechanically Refrigerated Drinking-Water Coolers

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3 (2017) Gas-Fired Water Heaters Vol.III, Storage Water Heaters With Input Ratings Above 75,000 Btu Per Hour, Circulating and Instantaneous

ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4 (2015) Relief Valves for Hot Water Supply Systems

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 90.1 - IP (2016; ERTA 1-8 2017; INT 1-5 2017) Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF SANITARY ENGINEERING (ASSE)

ASSE 1001 (2016) Performance Requirements for Atmospheric Type Vacuum Breakers

ASSE 1003 (2009) Performance Requirements for Water Pressure Reducing Valves for Domestic Water Distribution Systems - (ANSI approved 2010)

ASSE 1010 (2004) Performance Requirements for Water Hammer Arresters (ANSI approved 2004)

ASSE 1011 (2004; Errata 2004) Performance Requirements for Hose Connection Vacuum Breakers (ANSI approved 2004)

ASSE 1012 (2009) Performance Requirements for Backflow Preventer with an Intermediate Atmospheric Vent - (ANSI approved 2009)

ASSE 1013 (2011) Performance Requirements for Reduced Pressure Principle Backflow

Preventers and Reduced Pressure Fire
Protection Principle Backflow Preventers -
(ANSI approved 2010)

ASSE 1018 (2001) Performance Requirements for Trap
Seal Primer Valves - Potable Water
Supplied (ANSI Approved 2002)

ASSE 1019 (2011; R 2016) Performance Requirements
for Wall Hydrant with Backflow Protection
and Freeze Resistance

ASSE 1020 (2004; Errata 2004; Errata 2004)
Performance Requirements for Pressure
Vacuum Breaker Assembly (ANSI Approved
2004)

AMERICAN WATER WORKS ASSOCIATION (AWWA)

AWWA 10084 (2017) Standard Methods for the
Examination of Water and Wastewater

AWWA B300 (2010; Addenda 2011) Hypochlorites

AWWA B301 (2010) Liquid Chlorine

AWWA C203 (2008) Coal-Tar Protective Coatings and
Linings for Steel Water Pipelines - Enamel
and Tape - Hot-Applied

AWWA C606 (2015) Grooved and Shouldered Joints

AWWA C651 (2014) Standard for Disinfecting Water
Mains

AWWA C652 (2011) Disinfection of Water-Storage
Facilities

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS A5.8/A5.8M (2011; Amendment 2012) Specification for
Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding

AWS B2.2/B2.2M (2016) Specification for Brazing Procedure
and Performance Qualification

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME A112.1.2 (2012; R 2017) Air Gaps in Plumbing
Systems (For Plumbing Fixtures and
Water-Connected Receptors)

ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 (2018; ERTA 2018) Standard for Vitreous
China Plumbing Fixtures and Hydraulic
Requirements for Water Closets and Urinals

ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 (2017; Errata 2017) Stainless Steel
Plumbing Fixtures

ASME A112.19.5	(2017) Flush Valves and Spuds for Water Closets, Urinals, and Tanks
ASME A112.36.2M	(1991; R 2017) Cleanouts
ASME A112.6.1M	(1997; R 2017) Floor Affixed Supports for Off-the-Floor Plumbing Fixtures for Public Use
ASME A112.6.3	(2016) Standard for Floor and Trench Drains
ASME B1.20.1	(2013) Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)
ASME B16.12	(2009; R 2014) Cast Iron Threaded Drainage Fittings
ASME B16.15	(2013) Cast Copper Alloy Threaded Fittings Classes 125 and 250
ASME B16.18	(2018) Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B16.21	(2016) Nonmetallic Flat Gaskets for Pipe Flanges
ASME B16.22	(2013) Standard for Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B16.23	(2011) Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings - DWV
ASME B16.24	(2011) Cast Copper Alloy Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: Classes 150, 300, 600, 900, 1500, and 2500
ASME B16.29	(2017) Wrought Copper and Wrought Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Drainage Fittings - DWV
ASME B16.3	(2016) Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings, Classes 150 and 300
ASME B16.34	(2017) Valves - Flanged, Threaded and Welding End
ASME B16.4	(2011) Standard for Gray Iron Threaded Fittings; Classes 125 and 250
ASME B16.5	(2017) Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings NPS 1/2 Through NPS 24 Metric/Inch Standard
ASME B16.50	(2013) Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Braze-Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B31.1	(2016; Errata 2016) Power Piping
ASME B31.5	(2016) Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components
ASME B40.100	(2013) Pressure Gauges and Gauge

Attachments

ASME BPVC SEC IV	(2017) BPVC Section IV-Rules for Construction of Heating Boilers
ASME BPVC SEC IX	(2017; Errata 2018) BPVC Section IX-Welding, Brazing and Fusing Qualifications
ASME CSD-1	(2016) Control and Safety Devices for Automatically Fired Boilers

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A105/A105M	(2014) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Forgings for Piping Applications
ASTM A193/A193M	(2017) Standard Specification for Alloy-Steel and Stainless Steel Bolting Materials for High-Temperature Service and Other Special Purpose Applications
ASTM A515/A515M	(2017) Standard Specification for Pressure Vessel Plates, Carbon Steel, for Intermediate- and Higher-Temperature Service
ASTM A516/A516M	(2017) Standard Specification for Pressure Vessel Plates, Carbon Steel, for Moderate- and Lower-Temperature Service
ASTM A53/A53M	(2018) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
ASTM A74	(2017) Standard Specification for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings
ASTM A888	(2018) Standard Specification for Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste, and Vent Piping Applications
ASTM B117	(2016) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus
ASTM B306	(2013) Standard Specification for Copper Drainage Tube (DWV)
ASTM B32	(2008; R 2014) Standard Specification for Solder Metal
ASTM B370	(2012) Standard Specification for Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction
ASTM B42	(2015a) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes
ASTM B43	(2014) Standard Specification for Seamless

Red Brass Pipe, Standard Sizes

ASTM B584	(2014) Standard Specification for Copper Alloy Sand Castings for General Applications
ASTM B813	(2016) Standard Specification for Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube
ASTM B828	(2016) Standard Practice for Making Capillary Joints by Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube and Fittings
ASTM B88	(2016) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube
ASTM B88M	(2018) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube (Metric)
ASTM C564	(2014) Standard Specification for Rubber Gaskets for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings
ASTM C920	(2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
ASTM D1248	(2012) Standard Specification for Polyethylene Plastics Extrusion Materials for Wire and Cable
ASTM D1785	(2015; E 2018) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC), Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80, and 120
ASTM D2241	(2015) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pressure-Rated Pipe (SDR Series)
ASTM D2464	(2015) Standard Specification for Threaded Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
ASTM D2466	(2017) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40
ASTM D2467	(2015) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
ASTM D2564	(2012) Standard Specification for Solvent Cements for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Piping Systems
ASTM D2665	(2014) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings

ASTM D2672	(2014) Joints for IPS PVC Pipe Using Solvent Cement
ASTM D2822/D2822M	(2005; R 2011; E 2011) Standard Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos-Containing
ASTM D2846/D2846M	(2017b; E 2018) Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Hot- and Cold-Water Distribution Systems
ASTM D2855	(2015) Standard Practice for Making Solvent-Cemented Joints with Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pipe and Fittings
ASTM D3139	(1998; R 2011) Joints for Plastic Pressure Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals
ASTM D3212	(2007; R 2013) Standard Specification for Joints for Drain and Sewer Plastic Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals
ASTM E1	(2014) Standard Specification for ASTM Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers
ASTM F1760	(2016) Standard Specification for Coextruded Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Non-Pressure Plastic Pipe Having Reprocessed-Recycled Content
ASTM F2389	(2017a) Standard Specification for Pressure-rated Polypropylene (PP) Piping Systems
ASTM F477	(2014) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Seals (Gaskets) for Joining Plastic Pipe
ASTM F891	(2016) Standard Specification for Coextruded Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe with a Cellular Core

CAST IRON SOIL PIPE INSTITUTE (CISPI)

CISPI 301	(2012) Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste, and Vent Piping Applications
CISPI 310	(2012) Coupling for Use in Connection with Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste, and Vent Piping Applications

COPPER DEVELOPMENT ASSOCIATION (CDA)

CDA A4015	(2016; 14/17) Copper Tube Handbook

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC A117.1 COMM (2017) Standard And Commentary Accessible
and Usable Buildings and Facilities

ICC IPC (2018) International Plumbing Code

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS
INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-110 (2010) Ball Valves Threaded,
Socket-Welding, Solder Joint, Grooved and
Flared Ends

MSS SP-25 (2013) Standard Marking System for Valves,
Fittings, Flanges and Unions

MSS SP-58 (2009) Pipe Hangers and Supports -
Materials, Design and Manufacture,
Selection, Application, and Installation

MSS SP-67 (2017; Errata 1 2017) Butterfly Valves

MSS SP-70 (2011) Gray Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and
Threaded Ends

MSS SP-71 (2011; Errata 2013) Gray Iron Swing Check
Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends

MSS SP-72 (2010a) Ball Valves with Flanged or
Butt-Welding Ends for General Service

MSS SP-78 (2011) Cast Iron Plug Valves, Flanged and
Threaded Ends

MSS SP-80 (2013) Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle and Check
Valves

MSS SP-85 (2011) Gray Iron Globe & Angle Valves
Flanged and Threaded Ends

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA 250 (2018) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment
(1000 Volts Maximum)

NEMA MG 1 (2016; SUPP 2016) Motors and Generators

NEMA MG 11 (1977; R 2012) Energy Management Guide for
Selection and Use of Single Phase Motors

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 54 (2018) National Fuel Gas Code

NSF INTERNATIONAL (NSF)

NSF 372 (2016) Drinking Water System Components -
Lead Content

NSF/ANSI 14	(2017b) Plastics Piping System Components and Related Materials
NSF/ANSI 61	(2017) Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects
PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE INSTITUTE (PDI)	
PDI WH 201	(2010) Water Hammer Arresters Standard
SOCIETY OF AUTOMOTIVE ENGINEERS INTERNATIONAL (SAE)	
SAE J1508	(2009) Hose Clamp Specifications
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY (DOE)	
Energy Star	(1992; R 2006) Energy Star Energy Efficiency Labeling System (FEMP)
U.S. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA)	
PL 93-523	(1974; A 1999) Safe Drinking Water Act
U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)	
40 CFR 141.80	National Primary Drinking Water Regulations; Control of Lead and Copper; General Requirements

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Plumbing System; G

Detail drawings consisting of schedules, performance charts, instructions, diagrams, and other information to illustrate the requirements and operations of systems that are not covered by the Plumbing Code. Detail drawings for the complete plumbing system including piping layouts and locations of connections; dimensions for roughing-in, foundation, and support points; schematic diagrams and wiring diagrams or connection and interconnection diagrams. Detail drawings shall indicate clearances required for maintenance and operation. Where piping and equipment are to be supported other than as indicated, details shall include loadings and proposed support methods. Mechanical drawing plans, elevations, views, and details, shall be drawn to scale.

SD-03 Product Data

Recycled Content for Steel Pipe; S

Recycled Content for Cast Iron Pipe; S

Fixtures

List of installed fixtures with manufacturer, model, and flow rate.

Flush Valve Water Closets

WaterSense Label for Flush Valve Water Closet; S

Flush Valve Urinals

WaterSense Label for Urinal; S

Countertop Lavatories

WaterSense Label for Lavatory Faucet; S

Kitchen Sinks

Drinking-Water Coolers; G

Energy Star Label for Wheelchair Electric Water Cooler; S

Precast Terrazzo Shower

WaterSense Label for Showerhead; S

Water Heaters; G

Energy Star Label for Propane Storage Water Heater; S

Pumps; G

Backflow Prevention Assemblies; G

Shower Faucets; G

Welding

A copy of qualified procedures and a list of names and identification symbols of qualified welders and welding operators.

Plumbing System

Diagrams, instructions, and other sheets proposed for posting.
Manufacturer's recommendations for the installation of bell and spigot and hubless joints for cast iron soil pipe.

SD-06 Test Reports

Tests, Flushing and Disinfection

Test reports in booklet form showing all field tests performed to adjust each component and all field tests performed to prove compliance with the specified performance criteria, completion and testing of the installed system. Each test report shall indicate

the final position of controls.

Test of Backflow Prevention Assemblies; G.

Certification of proper operation shall be as accomplished in accordance with state regulations by an individual certified by the state to perform such tests. If no state requirement exists, the Contractor shall have the manufacturer's representative test the device, to ensure the unit is properly installed and performing as intended. The Contractor shall provide written documentation of the tests performed and signed by the individual performing the tests.

SD-07 Certificates

Materials and Equipment

Where equipment is specified to conform to requirements of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, the design, fabrication, and installation shall conform to the code.

Bolts

Written certification by the bolt manufacturer that the bolts furnished comply with the specified requirements.

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Plumbing System; G

Submit in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

1.3 STANDARD PRODUCTS

Specified materials and equipment shall be standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products. Specified equipment shall essentially duplicate equipment that has performed satisfactorily at least two years prior to bid opening. Standard products shall have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening. The 2-year use shall include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The product shall have been for sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2 year period.

1.3.1 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a two-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturer's factory or laboratory tests, can be shown.

1.3.2 Service Support

The equipment items shall be supported by service organizations. Submit a certified list of qualified permanent service organizations for support of the equipment which includes their addresses and qualifications. These service organizations shall be reasonably convenient to the equipment

installation and able to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

1.3.3 Manufacturer's Nameplate

Each item of equipment shall have a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable.

1.3.4 Modification of References

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "shall" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction", or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer.

1.3.4.1 Definitions

For the International Code Council (ICC) Codes referenced in the contract documents, advisory provisions shall be considered mandatory, the word "should" shall be interpreted as "shall." Reference to the "code official" shall be interpreted to mean the "Contracting Officer." For Navy owned property, references to the "owner" shall be interpreted to mean the "Contracting Officer." For leased facilities, references to the "owner" shall be interpreted to mean the "lessor." References to the "permit holder" shall be interpreted to mean the "Contractor."

1.3.4.2 Administrative Interpretations

For ICC Codes referenced in the contract documents, the provisions of Chapter 1, "Administrator," do not apply. These administrative requirements are covered by the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulations (FAR) included in this contract and by the authority granted to the Officer in Charge of Construction to administer the construction of this project. References in the ICC Codes to sections of Chapter 1, shall be applied appropriately by the Contracting Officer as authorized by his administrative cognizance and the FAR.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Handle, store, and protect equipment and materials to prevent damage before and during installation in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and as approved by the Contracting Officer. Replace damaged or defective items.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

1.5.1 Welding

Piping shall be welded in accordance with qualified procedures using performance-qualified welders and welding operators. Procedures and welders shall be qualified in accordance with ASME BPVC SEC IX. Welding procedures qualified by others, and welders and welding operators qualified by another employer, may be accepted as permitted by ASME B31.1. The Contracting Officer shall be notified 24 hours in advance of tests, and the tests shall be performed at the work site if practicable. Welders or welding operators shall apply their assigned symbols near each weld they

make as a permanent record.

1.6 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

Unless otherwise required herein, plumbing work shall be in accordance with ICC IPC.

1.7 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

The Contractor shall become familiar with details of the work, verify dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing any work.

1.8 INSTRUCTION TO GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL

When specified in other sections, furnish the services of competent instructors to give full instruction to the designated Government personnel in the adjustment, operation, and maintenance, including pertinent safety requirements, of the specified equipment or system. Instructors shall be thoroughly familiar with all parts of the installation and shall be trained in operating theory as well as practical operation and maintenance work.

Instruction shall be given during the first regular work week after the equipment or system has been accepted and turned over to the Government for regular operation. The number of man-days (8 hours per day) of instruction furnished shall be as specified in the individual section. When more than 4 man-days of instruction are specified, use approximately half of the time for classroom instruction. Use other time for instruction with the equipment or system.

When significant changes or modifications in the equipment or system are made under the terms of the contract, provide additional instruction to acquaint the operating personnel with the changes or modifications.

1.9 ACCESSIBILITY OF EQUIPMENT

Install all work so that parts requiring periodic inspection, operation, maintenance, and repair are readily accessible. Install concealed valves, expansion joints, controls, dampers, and equipment requiring access, in locations freely accessible through access doors.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

Materials for various services shall be in accordance with TABLES I and II. Steel pipe shall contain a minimum of 25 percent recycled content, with a minimum of 16 percent post-consumer recycled content. Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for steel pipe. Pipe schedules shall be selected based on service requirements. Pipe fittings shall be compatible with the applicable pipe materials. Plastic pipe, fittings, and solvent cement shall meet NSF/ANSI 14 and shall be NSF listed for the service intended. Plastic pipe, fittings, and solvent cement used for potable hot and cold water service shall bear the NSF seal "NSF-PW." Polypropylene pipe and fittings shall conform to dimensional requirements of Schedule 40, Iron Pipe size and shall comply with NSF/ANSI 14, NSF/ANSI 61 and ASTM F2389. Polypropylene piping that will be exposed to UV light shall be provided with a Factory applied UV resistant coating. Pipe threads (except dry seal) shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Material or

equipment containing a weighted average of greater than 0.25 percent lead shall not be used in any potable water system intended for human consumption, and shall be certified in accordance with NSF/ANSI 61, Annex G or NSF 372. In line devices such as water meters, building valves, check valves, meter stops, valves, fittings and back flow preventers shall comply with PL 93-523 and NSF/ANSI 61, Section 8. End point devices such as drinking water fountains, lavatory faucets, kitchen and bar faucets, residential ice makers, supply stops and end point control valves used to dispense water for drinking must meet the requirements of NSF/ANSI 61, Section 9. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe shall not be installed underground, under concrete floor slabs, or in crawl spaces below kitchen floors. Cast-iron pipe shall contain a minimum of 95 percent recycled content. Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for cast iron pipe.

2.1.1 Pipe Joint Materials

Grooved pipe and hubless cast-iron soil pipe shall not be used underground. Solder containing lead shall not be used with copper pipe. Cast iron soil pipe and fittings shall be marked with the collective trademark of the Cast Iron Soil Institute. Joints and gasket materials shall conform to the following:

- a. Coupling for Cast-Iron Pipe: for hub and spigot type ASTM A74, AWWA C606. For hubless type: CISPI 310
- b. Coupling for Steel Pipe: AWWA C606.
- c. Flange Gaskets: Gaskets shall be made of non-asbestos material in accordance with ASME B16.21. Gaskets shall be flat, 1/16 inch thick, and contain Aramid fibers bonded with Styrene Butadiene Rubber (SBR) or Nitro Butadiene Rubber (NBR). Gaskets shall be the full face or self centering flat ring type. Gaskets used for hydrocarbon service shall be bonded with NBR.
- d. Brazing Material: Brazing material shall conform to AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP-5.
- e. Brazing Flux: Flux shall be in paste or liquid form appropriate for use with brazing material. Flux shall be as follows: lead-free; have a 100 percent flushable residue; contain slightly acidic reagents; contain potassium borides; and contain fluorides.
- f. Solder Material: Solder metal shall conform to ASTM B32.
- g. Solder Flux: Flux shall be liquid form, non-corrosive, and conform to ASTM B813, Standard Test 1.
- h. PTFE Tape: PTFE Tape, for use with Threaded Metal or Plastic Pipe.
- i. Rubber Gaskets for Cast-Iron Soil-Pipe and Fittings (hub and spigot type and hubless type): ASTM C564.
- j. Flexible Elastomeric Seals: ASTM D3139, ASTM D3212 or ASTM F477.
- k. Plastic Solvent Cement for PVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM D2564 and ASTM D2855.
- l. Flanged fittings including, but not limited to, flanges, bolts, nuts and bolt patterns shall be in accordance with ASME B16.5 class 150 and shall have the manufacturer's trademark affixed in accordance with

MSS SP-25. Flange material shall conform to ASTM A105/A105M. Blind flange material shall conform to ASTM A516/A516M cold service and ASTM A515/A515M for hot service. Bolts shall be high strength or intermediate strength with material conforming to ASTM A193/A193M.

- m. Copper tubing shall conform to ASTM B88, Type K, L or M.

2.1.2 Miscellaneous Materials

Miscellaneous materials shall conform to the following:

- a. Water Hammer Arrestor: PDI WH 201. Water hammer arrester shall be diaphragm or piston type.
- b. Copper, Sheet and Strip for Building Construction: ASTM B370.
- c. Asphalt Roof Cement: ASTM D2822/D2822M.
- d. Hose Clamps: SAE J1508.
- e. Supports for Off-The-Floor Plumbing Fixtures: ASME A112.6.1M.
- f. Metallic Cleanouts: ASME A112.36.2M.
- g. Plumbing Fixture Setting Compound: A preformed flexible ring seal molded from hydrocarbon wax material. The seal material shall be nonvolatile nonasphaltic and contain germicide and provide watertight, gastight, odorproof and verminproof properties.
- h. Coal-Tar Protective Coatings and Linings for Steel Water Pipelines: AWWA C203.
- i. Hypochlorites: AWWA B300.
- j. Liquid Chlorine: AWWA B301.
- k. Gauges - Pressure and Vacuum Indicating Dial Type - Elastic Element: ASME B40.100.
- l. Thermometers: ASTM E1. Mercury shall not be used in thermometers.

2.1.3 Pipe Insulation Material

Insulation shall be as specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

2.2 PIPE HANGERS, INSERTS, AND SUPPORTS

Pipe hangers, inserts, and supports shall conform to MSS SP-58.

2.3 VALVES

Valves shall be provided on supplies to equipment and fixtures. Valves 2-1/2 inches and smaller shall be bronze with threaded bodies for pipe and solder-type connections for tubing. Valves 3 inches and larger shall have flanged iron bodies and bronze trim. Pressure ratings shall be based upon the application. Valves shall conform to the following standards:

Description	Standard
Butterfly Valves	MSS SP-67
Cast-Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends	MSS SP-70
Cast-Iron Swing Check Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends	MSS SP-71
Ball Valves with Flanged Butt-Welding Ends for General Service	MSS SP-72
Ball Valves Threaded, Socket-Welding, Solder Joint, and Flared Ends	MSS SP-110
Cast-Iron Plug Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends	MSS SP-78
Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle, and Check Valves	MSS SP-80
Steel Valves, Socket Welding and Threaded Ends	ASME B16.34
Cast-Iron Globe and Angle Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends	MSS SP-85
Vacuum Relief Valves	ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4
Water Pressure Reducing Valves	ASSE 1003
Water Heater Drain Valves	ASME BPVC SEC IV, Part HLW-810: Requirements for Potable-Water Heaters Bottom Drain Valve
Trap Seal Primer Valves	ASSE 1018
Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves for Hot Water Supply Systems	ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4
Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves for Automatically Fired Hot Water Boilers	ASME CSD-1 Safety Code No., Part CW, Article 5

2.3.1 Wall Hydrants (Frostproof)

ASSE 1019 with vacuum-breaker backflow preventer shall have a nickel-brass

or nickel-bronze wall plate or flange with nozzle and detachable key handle. A brass or bronze operating rod shall be provided within a galvanized iron casing of sufficient length to extend through the wall so that the valve is inside the building, and the portion of the hydrant between the outlet and valve is self-draining. A brass or bronze valve with coupling and union elbow having metal-to-metal seat shall be provided. Valve rod and seat washer shall be removable through the face of the hydrant. The hydrant shall have 3/4 inch exposed hose thread on spout and 3/4 inch male pipe thread on inlet.

2.3.2 Relief Valves

Water heaters and hot water storage tanks shall have a combination pressure and temperature (P&T) relief valve. The pressure relief element of a P&T relief valve shall have adequate capacity to prevent excessive pressure buildup in the system when the system is operating at the maximum rate of heat input. The temperature element of a P&T relief valve shall have a relieving capacity which is at least equal to the total input of the heaters when operating at their maximum capacity. Relief valves shall be rated according to ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Relief valves for systems where the maximum rate of heat input is less than 200,000 Btuh shall have 3/4 inch minimum inlets, and 3/4 inch outlets. Relief valves for systems where the maximum rate of heat input is greater than 200,000 Btuh shall have 1 inch minimum inlets, and 1 inch outlets. The discharge pipe from the relief valve shall be the size of the valve outlet.

2.3.3 Thermostatic Mixing Valves

Provide thermostatic mixing valve for lavatory faucets according to ASEE 1070. Mixing valves, thermostatic type, pressure-balanced or combination thermostatic and pressure-balanced shall be line size and shall be constructed with rough or finish bodies either with or without plating. Each valve shall be constructed to control the mixing of hot and cold water and to deliver water at a desired temperature regardless of pressure or input temperature changes. The control element shall be of an approved type. The body shall be of heavy cast bronze, and interior parts shall be brass, bronze, corrosion-resisting steel or copper. The valve shall be equipped with necessary stops, check valves, unions, and sediment strainers on the inlets. Mixing valves shall maintain water temperature within 5 degrees F of any setting.

2.4 FIXTURES

Fixtures for use by the physically handicapped shall be in accordance with ICC A117.1 COMM. Vitreous China, nonabsorbent, hard-burned, and vitrified throughout the body shall be provided. No fixture will be accepted that shows cracks, crazes, blisters, thin spots, or other flaws. Fixtures shall be equipped with appurtenances such as traps, faucets, stop valves, and drain fittings. Each fixture and piece of equipment requiring connections to the drainage system shall be equipped with a trap. Brass expansion or toggle bolts capped with acorn nuts shall be provided for supports, and polished chromium-plated pipe, valves, and fittings shall be provided where exposed to view. Fixtures with the supply discharge below the rim shall be equipped with backflow preventers. Internal parts of flush valves and flushometer valves, shower mixing valves, shower head face plates, pop-up stoppers of lavatory waste drains, and pop-up stoppers and overflow tees and shoes of bathtub waste drains shall be copper alloy with all visible surfaces chrome plated.

2.4.1 Flush Valve Water Closets

ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, white vitreous china, siphon jet, elongated bowl, wall mounted, wall outlet. Top of toilet seat height above floor shall be 14 to 15 inches, except 17 to 19 inches for wheelchair water closets. Provide wax bowl ring including plastic sleeve. Provide white solid plastic elongated open-front seat .

Water flushing volume of the water closet and flush valve combination shall not exceed 1.28 gallons per flush. Water closets must meet the EPA WaterSense product definition specified in http://www.epa.gov/watersense/partners/product_program_specs.html and must be EPA WaterSense labeled products. Provide data identifying WaterSense label for flush valve water closet.

Provide large diameter flush valve including angle control-stop valve, vacuum breaker, tail pieces, slip nuts, and wall plates; exposed to view components shall be chromium-plated or polished stainless steel. Flush valves shall be nonhold-open type. Mount flush valves not less than 11 inches above the fixture. Mounted height of flush valve shall not interfere with the hand rail in ADA stalls. Provide piston type, oil operated, flush valve and wall support for salt water service.

2.4.2 Flush Valve Urinals

ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, white vitreous china, ,wall-mounted, wall outlet, siphon jet, integral trap, and extended side shields. Provide urinal with the rim 17 inches above the floor. Water flushing volume of the urinal and flush valve combination shall not exceed 0.5 gallons per flush. Urinals must meet the specifications of http://www.epa.gov/watersense/partners/product_program_specs.html and must be EPA WaterSense labeled products. Provide data identifying WaterSense label for urinal. Provide ASME A112.6.1M concealed chair carriers with vertical steel pipe supports. Provide large diameter flush valve including angle control-stop valve, vacuum breaker, tail pieces, slip nuts, and wall plates; exposed to view components shall be chromium-plated or polished stainless steel. Flush valves shall be nonhold-open type. Mount flush valves not less than 11 inches above the fixture. Provide piston type, oil operated, flush valve and wall support for salt water service.

2.4.3 Wheelchair Flush Valve Type Urinals

ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, white vitreous china, ,wall-mounted, wall outlet, blowout action, integral trap, elongated projecting bowl, 20 inches long from wall to front of flare, and ASME A112.19.5 trim. Provide large diaphragm (not less than 2.625 inches upper chamber inside diameter at the point where the diaphragm is sealed between the upper and lower chambers), nonhold-open flush valve of chrome plated cast brass conforming to ASTM B584, including vacuum breaker and angle (control-stop) valve with back check. The water flushing volume of the flush valve and urinal combination shall not exceed 0.5 gallon per flush. Urinals must meet the specifications of http://www.epa.gov/watersense/partners/product_program_specs.html and must be EPA WaterSense labeled products. Provide data identifying WaterSense label for wheelchair flush valve urinal. Furnish urinal manufacturer's certification of conformance. Provide ASME A112.6.1M concealed chair carriers. Mount urinal with front rim a maximum of 17 inches above floor and flush valve handle a maximum of 44 inches above floor for use by handicapped on wheelchair.

2.4.4 Countertop Lavatories

ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, white vitreous china, self-rimming, minimum dimensions of 19 inches wide by 17 inches front to rear, with supply openings for use with top mounted centerset faucets. Furnish template and mounting kit by lavatory manufacturer. Provide aerator with faucet. Provide lavatory faucets and accessories meeting the flow rate and product requirements of the paragraph LAVATORIES. Mount counter with the top surface 34 inches above floor and with 29 inches minimum clearance from bottom of the counter face to floor. Provide top mounted washerless centerset lavatory faucets. Provide WaterSense labeled faucet with a maximum flow rate of 0.5 gpm at a flowing pressure of 60 psi. Water volume must be limited to 0.25 gal per metering cycle. Provide data identifying WaterSense label for lavatory faucet.

2.4.5 Kitchen Sinks

ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4, 20 gage stainless steel with integral mounting rim for flush installation, minimum dimensions of 33 inches wide by 21 inches front to rear, two compartments, with undersides fully sound deadened, with supply openings for use with top mounted washerless sink faucets with hose spray, and with 3.5 inch drain outlet. Provide aerator with faucet. Water flow rate shall not exceed 2.2 gpm when measured at a flowing water pressure of 60 psi. Provide stainless steel drain outlets and stainless steel cup strainers. Provide separate 1.5 inch P-trap and drain piping to vertical vent piping from each compartment. Provide top mounted washerless sink faucets with hose spray.

2.4.6 Wheelchair Drinking-Water coolers

AHRI 1010, wall-mounted bi-level bubbler style with ASME A112.6.1M concealed chair carrier, air-cooled condensing unit, 8 gph minimum total capacity, bottle filler, stainless steel splash receptor, and all stainless steel cabinet, with 27 inch minimum knee clearance from front bottom of unit to floor. Low drinking water cooler bubbler spouts shall be mounted at maximum of 36 inches above floor. High drinking water cooler bubbler spouts shall be mounted at minimum 38 inches and maximum of 36 inches above floor. Spouts shall direct water flow at least 4 inches above unit basin and trajectory parallel or nearly parallel to the front of unit. Bubblers shall also be controlled by push levers, by push bars, or touch pads one on each side or one on front and both sides of the cabinet. Provide electric water cooler that is Energy Star labeled. Provide data identifying Energy Star label for wheelchair electric water cooler.

2.4.7 Precast Terrazzo Shower

Terrazzo shall be made of white marble chips cast in white portland cement to produce 3000 psi minimum compressive strength 7 days after casting. Provide floor or wall outlet copper alloy body drain cast integral with terrazzo, with polished stainless steel strainers. Accessible showers shall comply with ADA guidelines.

2.4.8 Precast Terrazzo Mop Sinks

Terrazzo shall be made of marble chips cast in white portland cement to produce 3000 psi minimum compressive strength 7 days after casting. Provide floor or wall outlet copper alloy body drain cast integral with terrazzo, with polished stainless steel strainers. Provide cast brass body faucet with top brace, 6 inch brass spigot with vacuum breaker, ceramic

disc valves, integral supply stops, vandal-resistant metal lever handles, bucket hook, and 3/4 threaded hose end.

2.5 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

Backflow prevention devices must be approved by the State or local regulatory agencies. If there is no State or local regulatory agency requirements, the backflow prevention devices must be listed by the Foundation for Cross-Connection Control & Hydraulic Research, or any other approved testing laboratory having equivalent capabilities for both laboratory and field evaluation of backflow prevention devices and assemblies.

Reduced pressure principle assemblies, double check valve assemblies, atmospheric (nonpressure) type vacuum breakers, and pressure type vacuum breakers shall meet the above requirements.

Backflow preventers with intermediate atmospheric vent shall conform to ASSE 1012. Reduced pressure principle backflow preventers shall conform to ASSE 1013. Hose connection vacuum breakers shall conform to ASSE 1011. Pipe applied atmospheric type vacuum breakers shall conform to ASSE 1001. Pressure vacuum breaker assembly shall conform to ASSE 1020. Air gaps in plumbing systems shall conform to ASME A112.1.2.

2.6 DRAINS

2.6.1 Floor and Shower Drains

Floor and shower drains shall consist of a galvanized body, integral seepage pan, and adjustable perforated or slotted chromium-plated bronze, nickel-bronze, or nickel-brass strainer, consisting of grate and threaded collar. Floor drains shall be cast iron except where metallic waterproofing membrane is installed. Drains shall be of double drainage pattern for embedding in the floor construction. The seepage pan shall have weep holes or channels for drainage to the drainpipe. The strainer shall be adjustable to floor thickness. A clamping device for attaching flashing or waterproofing membrane to the seepage pan without damaging the flashing or waterproofing membrane shall be provided when required. Drains shall be provided with threaded connection. Between the drain outlet and waste pipe, a neoprene rubber gasket conforming to ASTM C564 may be installed, provided that the drain is specifically designed for the rubber gasket compression type joint. Floor and shower drains shall conform to ASME A112.6.3.

2.6.1.1 Metallic Shower Pan Drains

Where metallic shower pan membrane is installed, polyethylene drain with corrosion-resistant screws securing the clamping device shall be provided. Polyethylene drains shall have fittings to adapt drain to waste piping. Polyethylene for floor drains shall conform to ASTM D1248. Drains shall have separate cast-iron "P" trap, circular body, seepage pan, and strainer, unless otherwise indicated.

2.6.1.2 Drains

Drains installed in connection with waterproofed floors or shower pans shall be equipped with bolted-type device to securely clamp flashing.

2.6.2 Shower Faucets and Drain Fittings

Provide single control pressure equalizing shower faucets with body mounted from behind the wall with threaded connections. Provide ball joint self-cleaning shower heads. Provide WaterSense labeled showerhead with a maximum flow rate of 1.75 gpm. Provide data identifying WaterSense label for showerhead. Provide separate globe valves or angle valves with union connections in each supply to faucet. Provide shower valve with ball type control handle.

2.7 TRAPS

Unless otherwise specified, traps shall be copper-alloy adjustable tube type with slip joint inlet and swivel. Traps shall be without a cleanout. Tubes shall be copper alloy with walls not less than 0.032 inch thick within commercial tolerances, except on the outside of bends where the thickness may be reduced slightly in manufacture by usual commercial methods. Inlets shall have rubber washer and copper alloy nuts for slip joints above the discharge level. Swivel joints shall be below the discharge level and shall be of metal-to-metal or metal-to-plastic type as required for the application. Nuts shall have flats for wrench grip. Outlets shall have internal pipe thread, except that when required for the application, the outlets shall have sockets for solder-joint connections. The depth of the water seal shall be not less than 2 inches. The interior diameter shall be not more than 1/8 inch over or under the nominal size, and interior surfaces shall be reasonably smooth throughout. A copper alloy "P" trap assembly consisting of an adjustable "P" trap and threaded trap wall nipple with cast brass wall flange shall be provided for lavatories. The assembly shall be a standard manufactured unit and may have a rubber-gasketed swivel joint.

2.8 WATER HEATERS

Water heater types and capacities shall be as indicated. Each water heater shall have replaceable anodes. Each primary water heater shall have controls with an adjustable range that includes 90 to 160 degrees F. Hot water systems utilizing recirculation systems shall be tied into building off-hour controls. The thermal efficiencies and standby heat losses shall conform to TABLE III in PART 3 of this Section for each type of water heater specified. The only exception is that storage water heaters and hot water storage tanks having more than 500 gallons storage capacity need not meet the standard loss requirement if the tank surface area is insulated to R-12.5 and if a standing light is not used. Plastic materials polyetherimide (PEI) and polyethersulfone (PES) are forbidden to be used for vent piping of combustion gases. A factory pre-charged expansion tank shall be installed on the cold water supply to each water heater. Expansion tanks shall be specifically designed for use on potable water systems and shall be rated for 200 degrees F water temperature and 150 psi working pressure. The expansion tank size and acceptance volume shall be as indicated.

2.8.1 Automatic Storage Type

Heaters shall be complete with control system, temperature gauge, and pressure gauge, and shall have ASME rated combination pressure and temperature relief valve.

2.8.1.1 Gas-Fired Type

Gas-fired water heaters shall conform ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3. Provide Energy Star labeled gas storage water heater. Provide data identifying Energy Star label for propane storage water heater.

2.9 PUMPS

2.9.1 Circulating Pumps

Domestic hot water circulating pumps shall be electrically driven, single-stage, centrifugal, with mechanical seals, suitable for the intended service. Pump and motor shall be close-coupled with an overhung impeller or supported by the piping on which it is installed. The shaft shall be one-piece, heat-treated, corrosion-resisting steel with impeller and smooth-surfaced housing of bronze.

Motor shall be totally enclosed, fan-cooled and shall have sufficient horsepower for the service required. Each pump motor shall be equipped with an across-the-line magnetic controller in a NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure with "START-STOP" switch in cover.

2.9.2 Sewage Pumps

Provide duplex type with automatic controls to alternate the operation from one pump to the other pump and to start the second pump in the event the first pump cannot handle the incoming flow. Provide high water alarm and check valve.

2.10 DOMESTIC WATER SERVICE METER

The requirements for metering and submetering are specified in Section 33 11 00 WATER UTILITY DISTRIBUTION PIPING.

2.11 ELECTRICAL WORK

Provide electrical motor driven equipment specified complete with motors, motor starters, and controls as specified herein and in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Provide internal wiring for components of packaged equipment as an integral part of the equipment. Provide high efficiency type, single-phase, fractional-horsepower alternating-current motors, including motors that are part of a system, corresponding to the applications in accordance with NEMA MG 11. Provide motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1 and of sufficient size to drive the load at the specified capacity without exceeding the nameplate rating of the motor.

Motors shall be rated for continuous duty with the enclosure specified. Motor duty requirements shall allow for maximum frequency start-stop operation and minimum encountered interval between start and stop. Motor torque shall be capable of accelerating the connected load within 20 seconds with 80 percent of the rated voltage maintained at motor terminals during one starting period. Motor bearings shall be fitted with grease supply fittings and grease relief to outside of the enclosure.

Controllers and contactors shall have auxiliary contacts for use with the controls provided. Manual or automatic control and protective or signal devices required for the operation specified and any control wiring required for controls and devices specified, but not shown, shall be provided. For packaged equipment, the manufacturer shall provide

controllers, including the required monitors and timed restart.

Power wiring and conduit for field installed equipment shall be provided under and conform to the requirements of Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

2.12 MISCELLANEOUS PIPING ITEMS

2.12.1 Escutcheon Plates

Provide one piece or split hinge metal plates for piping entering floors, walls, and ceilings in exposed spaces. Provide chromium-plated on copper alloy plates or polished stainless steel finish in finished spaces. Provide paint finish on plates in unfinished spaces.

2.12.2 Pipe Sleeves

Provide where piping passes entirely through walls, ceilings, roofs, and floors. Sleeves are not required where supply, drain, waste, and vent (DWV) piping passes through concrete floor slabs located on grade, except where penetrating a membrane waterproof floor.

2.12.2.1 Sleeves in Masonry and Concrete

Provide steel pipe sleeves or schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe sleeves. Sleeves are not required where drain, waste, and vent (DWV) piping passes through concrete floor slabs located on grade. Core drilling of masonry and concrete may be provided in lieu of pipe sleeves when cavities in the core-drilled hole are completely grouted smooth.

2.12.2.2 Sleeves Not in Masonry and Concrete

Provide 26 gage galvanized steel sheet or PVC plastic pipe sleeves.

2.12.3 Pipe Hangers (Supports)

Provide MSS SP-58 Type 1 with adjustable type steel support rods, except as specified or indicated otherwise. Attach to steel joists with Type 19 or 23 clamps and retaining straps. Attach to Steel W or S beams with Type 21, 28, 29, or 30 clamps. Attach to steel angles and vertical web steel channels with Type 20 clamp with beam clamp channel adapter. Attach to horizontal web steel channel and wood with drilled hole on centerline and double nut and washer. Attach to concrete with Type 18 insert or drilled expansion anchor. Provide Type 40 insulation protection shield for insulated piping.

2.12.4 Nameplates

Provide 0.125 inch thick melamine laminated plastic nameplates, black matte finish with white center core, for equipment, gages, thermometers, and valves; valves in supplies to faucets will not require nameplates. Accurately align lettering and engrave minimum of 0.25 inch high normal block lettering into the white core. Minimum size of nameplates shall be 1.0 by 2.5 inches. Key nameplates to a chart and schedule for each system. Frame charts and schedules under glass and place where directed near each system. Furnish two copies of each chart and schedule.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

The plumbing system shall be installed complete with necessary fixtures, fittings, traps, valves, and accessories. Water and drainage piping shall be extended 5 feet outside the building, unless otherwise indicated. A full port ball valve and drain shall be installed on the water service line inside the building approximately 6 inches above the floor from point of entry. Piping shall be connected to the exterior service lines or capped or plugged if the exterior service is not in place. Sewer and water pipes shall be laid in separate trenches, except when otherwise shown. Exterior underground utilities shall be at least 12 inches below the average local frost depth. If trenches are closed or the pipes are otherwise covered before being connected to the service lines, the location of the end of each plumbing utility shall be marked with a stake or other acceptable means. Valves shall be installed with control no lower than the valve body.

3.1.1 Water Pipe, Fittings, and Connections

3.1.1.1 Utilities

The piping shall be extended to fixtures, outlets, and equipment. The hot-water and cold-water piping system shall be arranged and installed to permit draining. The supply line to each item of equipment or fixture, except faucets, flush valves, or other control valves which are supplied with integral stops, shall be equipped with a shutoff valve to enable isolation of the item for repair and maintenance without interfering with operation of other equipment or fixtures. Supply piping to fixtures, faucets, hydrants, shower heads, and flushing devices shall be anchored to prevent movement.

3.1.1.2 Cutting and Repairing

The work shall be carefully laid out in advance, and unnecessary cutting of construction shall be avoided. Damage to building, piping, wiring, or equipment as a result of cutting shall be repaired by mechanics skilled in the trade involved.

3.1.1.3 Protection of Fixtures, Materials, and Equipment

Pipe openings shall be closed with caps or plugs during installation. Fixtures and equipment shall be tightly covered and protected against dirt, water, chemicals, and mechanical injury. Upon completion of the work, the fixtures, materials, and equipment shall be thoroughly cleaned, adjusted, and operated. Safety guards shall be provided for exposed rotating equipment.

3.1.1.4 Mains, Branches, and Runouts

Piping shall be installed as indicated. Pipe shall be accurately cut and worked into place without springing or forcing. Structural portions of the building shall not be weakened. Aboveground piping shall run parallel with the lines of the building, unless otherwise indicated. Branch pipes from service lines may be taken from top, bottom, or side of main, using crossover fittings required by structural or installation conditions. Supply pipes, valves, and fittings shall be kept a sufficient distance from other work and other services to permit not less than 1/2 inch between finished covering on the different services. Bare and insulated water

lines shall not bear directly against building structural elements so as to transmit sound to the structure or to prevent flexible movement of the lines. Water pipe shall not be buried in or under floors unless specifically indicated or approved. Changes in pipe sizes shall be made with reducing fittings. Use of bushings will not be permitted except for use in situations in which standard factory fabricated components are furnished to accommodate specific accepted installation practice. Change in direction shall be made with fittings, except that bending of pipe 4 inches and smaller will be permitted, provided a pipe bender is used and wide sweep bends are formed. The center-line radius of bends shall be not less than six diameters of the pipe. Bent pipe showing kinks, wrinkles, flattening, or other malformations will not be acceptable.

3.1.1.5 Pipe Drains

Pipe drains indicated shall consist of 3/4 inch hose bibb with renewable seat and full port ball valve ahead of hose bibb. At other low points, 3/4 inch brass plugs or caps shall be provided. Disconnection of the supply piping at the fixture is an acceptable drain.

3.1.1.6 Expansion and Contraction of Piping

Allowance shall be made throughout for expansion and contraction of water pipe. Horizontal runs of pipe over 50 feet in length shall be anchored to the wall or the supporting construction about midway on the run to force expansion, evenly divided, toward the ends. Sufficient flexibility shall be provided on branch runouts from mains and risers to provide for expansion and contraction of piping. Flexibility shall be provided by installing one or more turns in the line so that piping will spring enough to allow for expansion without straining.

3.1.1.7 Thrust Restraint

Thrust blocking shall be concrete of a mix not leaner than: 1 cement, 2-1/2 sand, 5 gravel; and having a compressive strength of not less than 2000 psi after 28 days. Blocking shall be placed between solid ground and the fitting to be anchored. Unless otherwise indicated or directed, the base and thrust bearing sides of the thrust block shall be poured against undisturbed earth. The side of the thrust block not subject to thrust shall be poured against forms. The area of bearing will be as shown. Blocking shall be placed so that the joints of the fitting are accessible for repair. Steel rods and clamps, protected by galvanizing or by coating with bituminous paint, shall be used to anchor vertical down bends into gravity thrust blocks.

3.1.1.8 Commercial-Type Water Hammer Arresters

Commercial-type water hammer arresters shall be provided on hot- and cold-water supplies and shall be located as generally indicated, with precise location and sizing to be in accordance with PDI WH 201. Water hammer arresters, where concealed, shall be accessible by means of access doors or removable panels. Commercial-type water hammer arresters shall conform to ASSE 1010. Vertical capped pipe columns will not be permitted.

3.1.2 Joints

Installation of pipe and fittings shall be made in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Mitering of joints for elbows and notching of straight runs of pipe for tees will not be permitted. Joints shall be

made up with fittings of compatible material and made for the specific purpose intended.

3.1.2.1 Threaded

Threaded joints shall have American Standard taper pipe threads conforming to ASME B1.20.1. Only male pipe threads shall be coated with graphite or with an approved graphite compound, or with an inert filler and oil, or shall have a polytetrafluoroethylene tape applied.

3.1.2.2 Unions and Flanges

Unions, flanges and mechanical couplings shall not be concealed in walls, ceilings, or partitions. Unions shall be used on pipe sizes 2-1/2 inches and smaller; flanges shall be used on pipe sizes 3 inches and larger.

3.1.2.3 Cast Iron Soil, Waste and Vent Pipe

Bell and spigot compression and hubless gasketed clamp joints for soil, waste and vent piping shall be installed per the manufacturer's recommendations.

3.1.2.4 Copper Tube and Pipe

- a. Brazed. Brazed joints shall be made in conformance with AWS B2.2/B2.2M, ASME B16.50, and CDA A4015 with flux and are acceptable for all pipe sizes. Copper to copper joints shall include the use of copper-phosphorus or copper-phosphorus-silver brazing metal without flux. Brazing of dissimilar metals (copper to bronze or brass) shall include the use of flux with either a copper-phosphorus, copper-phosphorus-silver or a silver brazing filler metal.
- b. Soldered. Soldered joints shall be made with flux and are only acceptable for piping 2 inches and smaller. Soldered joints shall conform to ASME B31.5 and CDA A4015.
- c. Copper Tube Extracted Joint. Mechanically extracted joints shall be made in accordance with ICC IPC.

3.1.2.5 Plastic Pipe

PVC pipe shall have joints made with solvent cement elastomeric, threading, (threading of Schedule 80 Pipe is allowed only where required for disconnection and inspection; threading of Schedule 40 Pipe is not allowed), or mated flanged.

3.1.3 Dissimilar Pipe Materials

Connections between ferrous and non-ferrous copper water pipe shall be made with dielectric unions or flange waterways. Dielectric waterways shall have temperature and pressure rating equal to or greater than that specified for the connecting piping. Waterways shall have metal connections on both ends suited to match connecting piping. Dielectric waterways shall be internally lined with an insulator specifically designed to prevent current flow between dissimilar metals. Dielectric flanges shall meet the performance requirements described herein for dielectric waterways. Connecting joints between plastic and metallic pipe shall be made with transition fitting for the specific purpose.

3.1.4 Pipe Sleeves and Flashing

Pipe sleeves shall be furnished and set in their proper and permanent location.

3.1.4.1 Sleeve Requirements

Unless indicated otherwise, provide pipe sleeves meeting the following requirements:

Secure sleeves in position and location during construction. Provide sleeves of sufficient length to pass through entire thickness of walls, ceilings, roofs, and floors.

A modular mechanical type sealing assembly may be installed in lieu of a waterproofing clamping flange and caulking and sealing of annular space between pipe and sleeve. The seals shall consist of interlocking synthetic rubber links shaped to continuously fill the annular space between the pipe and sleeve using galvanized steel bolts, nuts, and pressure plates. The links shall be loosely assembled with bolts to form a continuous rubber belt around the pipe with a pressure plate under each bolt head and each nut. After the seal assembly is properly positioned in the sleeve, tightening of the bolt shall cause the rubber sealing elements to expand and provide a watertight seal between the pipe and the sleeve. Each seal assembly shall be sized as recommended by the manufacturer to fit the pipe and sleeve involved.

Sleeves shall not be installed in structural members, except where indicated or approved. Rectangular and square openings shall be as detailed. Each sleeve shall extend through its respective floor, or roof, and shall be cut flush with each surface, except for special circumstances. Pipe sleeves passing through floors in wet areas such as mechanical equipment rooms, lavatories, kitchens, and other plumbing fixture areas shall extend a minimum of 4 inches above the finished floor.

Unless otherwise indicated, sleeves shall be of a size to provide a minimum of 1/4 inch clearance between bare pipe or insulation and inside of sleeve or between insulation and inside of sleeve. Sleeves in bearing walls and concrete slab on grade floors shall be steel pipe or cast-iron pipe. Sleeves in nonbearing walls or ceilings may be steel pipe, cast-iron pipe, galvanized sheet metal with lock-type longitudinal seam, or plastic.

Except as otherwise specified, the annular space between pipe and sleeve, or between jacket over insulation and sleeve, shall be sealed as indicated with sealants conforming to ASTM C920 and with a primer, backstop material and surface preparation as specified in Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS. The annular space between pipe and sleeve, between bare insulation and sleeve or between jacket over insulation and sleeve shall not be sealed for interior walls which are not designated as fire rated.

3.1.4.2 Flashing Requirements

Pipes passing through roof shall be installed through a 16 ounce copper flashing, each within an integral skirt or flange. Flashing shall be suitably formed, and the skirt or flange shall extend not less than 8 inches from the pipe and shall be set over the roof or floor membrane in a solid coating of bituminous cement. The flashing shall extend up the pipe a minimum of 10 inches. For cleanouts, the flashing shall be turned down into the hub and caulked after placing the ferrule. Pipes passing through

pitched roofs shall be flashed, using lead or copper flashing, with an adjustable integral flange of adequate size to extend not less than 8 inches from the pipe in all directions and lapped into the roofing to provide a watertight seal. The annular space between the flashing and the bare pipe or between the flashing and the metal-jacket-covered insulation shall be sealed as indicated. Flashing for dry vents shall be turned down into the pipe to form a waterproof joint. Pipes, up to and including 10 inches in diameter, passing through roof or floor waterproofing membrane may be installed through a cast-iron sleeve with caulking recess, anchor lugs, flashing-clamp device, and pressure ring with brass bolts. Flashing shield shall be fitted into the sleeve clamping device. Pipes passing through wall waterproofing membrane shall be sleeved as described above. A waterproofing clamping flange shall be installed.

3.1.4.3 Waterproofing

Waterproofing at floor-mounted water closets shall be accomplished by forming a flashing guard from soft-tempered sheet copper. The center of the sheet shall be perforated and turned down approximately 1-1/2 inches to fit between the outside diameter of the drainpipe and the inside diameter of the cast-iron or steel pipe sleeve. The turned-down portion of the flashing guard shall be embedded in sealant to a depth of approximately 1-1/2 inches; then the sealant shall be finished off flush to floor level between the flashing guard and drainpipe. The flashing guard of sheet copper shall extend not less than 8 inches from the drainpipe and shall be lapped between the floor membrane in a solid coating of bituminous cement. If cast-iron water closet floor flanges are used, the space between the pipe sleeve and drainpipe shall be sealed with sealant and the flashing guard shall be upturned approximately 1-1/2 inches to fit the outside diameter of the drainpipe and the inside diameter of the water closet floor flange. The upturned portion of the sheet fitted into the floor flange shall be sealed.

3.1.4.4 Optional Counterflashing

Instead of turning the flashing down into a dry vent pipe, or caulking and sealing the annular space between the pipe and flashing or metal-jacket-covered insulation and flashing, counterflashing may be accomplished by utilizing the following:

- a. A standard roof coupling for threaded pipe up to 6 inches in diameter.
- b. A tack-welded or banded-metal rain shield around the pipe.

3.1.4.5 Pipe Penetrations of Slab on Grade Floors

Where pipes, fixture drains, floor drains, cleanouts or similar items penetrate slab on grade floors, except at penetrations of floors with waterproofing membrane as specified in paragraphs FLASHING REQUIREMENTS and WATERPROOFING, a groove 1/4 to 1/2 inch wide by 1/4 to 3/8 inch deep shall be formed around the pipe, fitting or drain. The groove shall be filled with a sealant as specified in Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.

3.1.4.6 Pipe Penetrations

Provide sealants for all pipe penetrations. All pipe penetrations shall be sealed to prevent infiltration of air, insects, and vermin.

3.1.5 Fire Seal

Where pipes pass through fire walls, fire-partitions, fire-rated pipe chase walls or floors above grade, a fire seal shall be provided as specified in Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

3.1.6 Supports

3.1.6.1 General

Hangers used to support piping 2 inches and larger shall be fabricated to permit adequate adjustment after erection while still supporting the load. Pipe guides and anchors shall be installed to keep pipes in accurate alignment, to direct the expansion movement, and to prevent buckling, swaying, and undue strain. In the support of multiple pipe runs on a common base member, a clip or clamp shall be used where each pipe crosses the base support member. Spacing of the base support members shall not exceed the hanger and support spacing required for an individual pipe in the multiple pipe run. Threaded sections of rods shall not be formed or bent.

3.1.6.2 Pipe Hangers, Inserts, and Supports

Installation of pipe hangers, inserts and supports shall conform to MSS SP-58 except as modified herein.

- a. Types 5, 12, and 26 shall not be used.
- b. Type 3 shall not be used on insulated pipe.
- c. Type 18 inserts shall be secured to concrete forms before concrete is placed. Continuous inserts which allow more adjustment may be used if they otherwise meet the requirements for type 18 inserts.
- d. Type 19 and 23 C-clamps shall be torqued per MSS SP-58 and shall have both locknuts and retaining devices furnished by the manufacturer. Field-fabricated C-clamp bodies or retaining devices are not acceptable.
- e. Type 20 attachments used on angles and channels shall be furnished with an added malleable-iron heel plate or adapter.
- f. Type 24 may be used only on trapeze hanger systems or on fabricated frames.
- g. Type 39 saddles shall be used on insulated pipe 4 inches and larger when the temperature of the medium is 60 degrees F or higher. Type 39 saddles shall be welded to the pipe.
- h. Type 40 shields shall:
 - (1) Be used on insulated pipe less than 4 inches.
 - (2) Be used on insulated pipe 4 inches and larger when the temperature of the medium is 60 degrees F or less.
 - (3) Have a high density insert for all pipe sizes. High density inserts shall have a density of 8 pcf or greater.
- i. Horizontal pipe supports shall be spaced as specified in MSS SP-58 and

a support shall be installed not over 1 foot from the pipe fitting joint at each change in direction of the piping. Pipe supports shall be spaced not over 5 feet apart at valves. Operating temperatures in determining hanger spacing for PVC pipe shall be 120 degrees F for PVC. Horizontal pipe runs shall include allowances for expansion and contraction.

- k. Type 35 guides using steel, reinforced polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) or graphite slides shall be provided to allow longitudinal pipe movement. Slide materials shall be suitable for the system operating temperatures, atmospheric conditions, and bearing loads encountered. Lateral restraints shall be provided as needed. Where steel slides do not require provisions for lateral restraint the following may be used:
 - (1) On pipe 4 inches and larger when the temperature of the medium is 60 degrees F or higher, a Type 39 saddle, welded to the pipe, may freely rest on a steel plate.
 - (2) On pipe less than 4 inches a Type 40 shield, attached to the pipe or insulation, may freely rest on a steel plate.
 - (3) On pipe 4 inches and larger carrying medium less than 60 degrees F a Type 40 shield, attached to the pipe or insulation, may freely rest on a steel plate.
- l. Pipe hangers on horizontal insulated pipe shall be the size of the outside diameter of the insulation. The insulation shall be continuous through the hanger on all pipe sizes and applications.
- m. Where there are high system temperatures and welding to piping is not desirable, the type 35 guide shall include a pipe cradle, welded to the guide structure and strapped securely to the pipe. The pipe shall be separated from the slide material by at least 4 inches or by an amount adequate for the insulation, whichever is greater.
- n. Hangers and supports for plastic pipe shall not compress, distort, cut or abrade the piping, and shall allow free movement of pipe except where otherwise required in the control of expansion/contraction.

3.1.6.3 Structural Attachments

Attachment to building structure concrete and masonry shall be by cast-in concrete inserts, built-in anchors, or masonry anchor devices. Inserts and anchors shall be applied with a safety factor not less than 5. Supports shall not be attached to metal decking. Supports shall not be attached to the underside of concrete filled floor or concrete roof decks unless approved by the Contracting Officer. Masonry anchors for overhead applications shall be constructed of ferrous materials only.

3.1.7 Welded Installation

Plumbing pipe weldments shall be as indicated. Changes in direction of piping shall be made with welding fittings only; mitering or notching pipe to form elbows and tees or other similar type construction will not be permitted. Branch connection may be made with either welding tees or forged branch outlet fittings. Branch outlet fittings shall be forged, flared for improvement of flow where attached to the run, and reinforced against external strains. Beveling, alignment, heat treatment, and inspection of weld shall conform to ASME B31.1. Weld defects shall be

removed and repairs made to the weld, or the weld joints shall be entirely removed and rewelded. After filler metal has been removed from its original package, it shall be protected or stored so that its characteristics or welding properties are not affected. Electrodes that have been wetted or that have lost any of their coating shall not be used.

3.1.8 Pipe Cleanouts

Pipe cleanouts shall be the same size as the pipe except that cleanout plugs larger than 4 inches will not be required. A cleanout installed in connection with cast-iron soil pipe shall consist of a long-sweep 1/4 bend or one or two 1/8 bends extended to the place shown. An extra-heavy cast-brass or cast-iron ferrule with countersunk cast-brass head screw plug shall be caulked into the hub of the fitting and shall be flush with the floor. Cleanouts in connection with other pipe, where indicated, shall be T-pattern, 90-degree branch drainage fittings with cast-brass screw plugs, except plastic plugs shall be installed in plastic pipe. Plugs shall be the same size as the pipe up to and including 4 inches. Cleanout tee branches with screw plug shall be installed at the foot of soil and waste stacks, at the foot of interior downspouts, and on each building drain outside the building. Cleanout tee branches may be omitted on stacks in single story buildings with slab-on-grade construction or where less than 18 inches of crawl space is provided under the floor. Cleanouts on pipe concealed in partitions shall be provided with chromium plated bronze, nickel bronze, nickel brass or stainless steel flush type access cover plates. Round access covers shall be provided and secured to plugs with securing screw. Square access covers may be provided with matching frames, anchoring lugs and cover screws. Cleanouts in finished walls shall have access covers and frames installed flush with the finished wall. Cleanouts installed in finished floors subject to foot traffic shall be provided with a chrome-plated cast brass, nickel brass, or nickel bronze cover secured to the plug or cover frame and set flush with the finished floor. Heads of fastening screws shall not project above the cover surface. Where cleanouts are provided with adjustable heads, the heads shall be cast iron.

3.2 WATER HEATERS AND HOT WATER STORAGE TANKS

3.2.1 Relief Valves

No valves shall be installed between a relief valve and its water heater or storage tank. The P&T relief valve shall be installed where the valve actuator comes in contact with the hottest water in the heater. Whenever possible, the relief valve shall be installed directly in a tapping in the tank or heater; otherwise, the P&T valve shall be installed in the hot-water outlet piping. A vacuum relief valve shall be provided on the cold water supply line to the hot-water storage tank or water heater and mounted above and within 6 inches above the top of the tank or water heater.

3.2.2 Installation of Gas-Fired Water Heater

Installation shall conform to NFPA 54 for gas fired. Storage water heaters that are not equipped with integral heat traps and having vertical pipe risers shall be installed with heat traps directly on both the inlet and outlet. Circulating systems need not have heat traps installed. An acceptable heat trap may be a piping arrangement such as elbows connected so that the inlet and outlet piping make vertically upward runs of not less than 24 inches just before turning downward or directly horizontal into the water heater's inlet and outlet fittings. Commercially available heat traps, specifically designed by the manufacturer for the purpose of

effectively restricting the natural tendency of hot water to rise through vertical inlet and outlet piping during standby periods may also be approved.

3.2.3 Heat Traps

Piping to and from each water heater and hot water storage tank shall be routed horizontally and downward a minimum of 2 feet before turning in an upward direction.

3.2.4 Connections to Water Heaters

Connections of metallic pipe to water heaters shall be made with dielectric unions or flanges.

3.2.5 Expansion Tank

A pre-charged expansion tank shall be installed on the cold water supply between the water heater inlet and the cold water supply shut-off valve. The Contractor shall adjust the expansion tank air pressure, as recommended by the tank manufacturer, to match incoming water pressure.

3.2.6 Direct Fired and Domestic Water Heaters

Notify the Contracting Officer when any direct fired domestic water heater over 400,000 BTU/hour is operational and ready to be inspected and certified.

3.3 FIXTURES AND FIXTURE TRIMMINGS

Polished chromium-plated pipe, valves, and fittings shall be provided where exposed to view. Angle stops, straight stops, stops integral with the faucets, or concealed type of lock-shield, and loose-key pattern stops for supplies with threaded, sweat or solvent weld inlets shall be furnished and installed with fixtures. Where connections between copper tubing and faucets are made by rubber compression fittings, a beading tool shall be used to mechanically deform the tubing above the compression fitting. Exposed traps and supply pipes for fixtures and equipment shall be connected to the rough piping systems at the wall, unless otherwise specified under the item. Floor and wall escutcheons shall be as specified. Drain lines and hot water lines of fixtures for handicapped personnel shall be insulated and do not require polished chrome finish. Plumbing fixtures and accessories shall be installed within the space shown.

3.3.1 Fixture Connections

Where space limitations prohibit standard fittings in conjunction with the cast-iron floor flange, special short-radius fittings shall be provided. Connections between earthenware fixtures and flanges on soil pipe shall be made gastight and watertight with a closet-setting compound or neoprene gasket and seal. Use of natural rubber gaskets or putty will not be permitted. Fixtures with outlet flanges shall be set the proper distance from floor or wall to make a first-class joint with the closet-setting compound or gasket and fixture used.

3.3.2 Flushometer Valves

Flushometer valves shall be secured to prevent movement by anchoring the long finished top spud connecting tube to wall adjacent to valve with

approved metal bracket. Flushometer valves for water closets shall be installed 39 inches above the floor, except at water closets intended for use by the physically handicapped where flushometer valves shall be mounted at approximately 30 inches above the floor and arranged to avoid interference with grab bars. In addition, for water closets intended for handicap use, the flush valve handle shall be installed on the wide side of the enclosure.

3.3.3 Height of Fixture Rims Above Floor

Lavatories shall be mounted with rim 31 inches above finished floor. Installation of fixtures for use by the physically handicapped shall be in accordance with ICC A117.1 COMM.

3.3.4 Shower Bath Outfits

The area around the water supply piping to the mixing valves and behind the escutcheon plate shall be made watertight by caulking or gasketing.

3.3.5 Fixture Supports

Fixture supports for off-the-floor lavatories, urinals, water closets, and other fixtures of similar size, design, and use, shall be of the chair-carrier type. The carrier shall provide the necessary means of mounting the fixture, with a foot or feet to anchor the assembly to the floor slab. Adjustability shall be provided to locate the fixture at the desired height and in proper relation to the wall. Support plates, in lieu of chair carrier, shall be fastened to the wall structure only where it is not possible to anchor a floor-mounted chair carrier to the floor slab.

3.3.5.1 Support for Solid Masonry Construction

Chair carrier shall be anchored to the floor slab. Where a floor-anchored chair carrier cannot be used, a suitable wall plate shall be imbedded in the masonry wall.

3.3.5.2 Support for Concrete-Masonry Wall Construction

Chair carrier shall be anchored to floor slab. Where a floor-anchored chair carrier cannot be used, a suitable wall plate shall be fastened to the concrete wall using through bolts and a back-up plate.

3.3.5.3 Support for Steel Stud Frame Partitions

Chair carrier shall be used. The anchor feet and tubular uprights shall be of the heavy duty design; and feet (bases) shall be steel and welded to a square or rectangular steel tube upright. Wall plates, in lieu of floor-anchored chair carriers, shall be used only if adjoining steel partition studs are suitably reinforced to support a wall plate bolted to these studs.

3.3.5.4 Wall-Mounted Water Closet Gaskets

Where wall-mounted water closets are provided, reinforced wax, treated felt, or neoprene gaskets shall be provided. The type of gasket furnished shall be as recommended by the chair-carrier manufacturer.

3.3.6 Backflow Prevention Devices

Plumbing fixtures, equipment, and pipe connections shall not cross connect or interconnect between a potable water supply and any source of nonpotable water. Backflow preventers shall be installed where indicated and in accordance with ICC IPC at all other locations necessary to preclude a cross-connect or interconnect between a potable water supply and any nonpotable substance. In addition backflow preventers shall be installed at all locations where the potable water outlet is below the flood level of the equipment, or where the potable water outlet will be located below the level of the nonpotable substance. Backflow preventers shall be located so that no part of the device will be submerged. Backflow preventers shall be of sufficient size to allow unrestricted flow of water to the equipment, and preclude the backflow of any nonpotable substance into the potable water system. Bypass piping shall not be provided around backflow preventers. Access shall be provided for maintenance and testing. Each device shall be a standard commercial unit.

3.3.7 Access Panels

Access panels shall be provided for concealed valves and controls, or any item requiring inspection or maintenance. Access panels shall be of sufficient size and located so that the concealed items may be serviced, maintained, or replaced. Access panels shall be as specified in Section 05 50 13 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FABRICATIONS.

3.3.8 Traps

Each trap shall be placed as near the fixture as possible, and no fixture shall be double-trapped. Traps installed on cast-iron soil pipe shall be cast iron. Traps installed on steel pipe or copper tubing shall be recess-drainage pattern, or brass-tube type.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION SYSTEMS

3.4.1 Pipe Color Code Marking

Color code marking of piping shall be as specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

3.4.2 Color Coding Scheme for Locating Hidden Utility Components

Scheme shall be provided in buildings having suspended grid ceilings. The color coding scheme shall identify points of access for maintenance and operation of operable components which are not visible from the finished space and installed in the space directly above the suspended grid ceiling. The operable components shall include valves, dampers, switches, linkages and thermostats. The color coding scheme shall consist of a color code board and colored metal disks. Each colored metal disk shall be approximately 3/8 inch in diameter and secured to removable ceiling panels with fasteners. The fasteners shall be inserted into the ceiling panels so that the fasteners will be concealed from view. The fasteners shall be manually removable without tools and shall not separate from the ceiling panels when panels are dropped from ceiling height. Installation of colored metal disks shall follow completion of the finished surface on which the disks are to be fastened. The color code board shall have the approximate dimensions of 3 foot width, 30 inches height, and 1/2 inch thickness. The board shall be made of wood fiberboard and framed under glass or 1/16 inch transparent plastic cover. Unless otherwise directed,

the color code symbols shall be approximately 3/4 inch in diameter and the related lettering in 1/2 inch high capital letters. The color code board shall be mounted and located in the mechanical or equipment room. The color code system shall be in accordance with ASME A13.1.

3.5 ESCUTCHEONS

Escutcheons shall be provided at finished surfaces where bare or insulated piping, exposed to view, passes through floors, walls, or ceilings, except in boiler, utility, or equipment rooms. Escutcheons shall be fastened securely to pipe or pipe covering and shall be satin-finish, corrosion-resisting steel, polished chromium-plated zinc alloy, or polished chromium-plated copper alloy. Escutcheons shall be either one-piece or split-pattern, held in place by internal spring tension or setscrew.

3.6 PAINTING

Painting of pipes, hangers, supports, and other iron work, either in concealed spaces or exposed spaces, is specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

3.6.1 Painting of New Equipment

New equipment painting shall be factory applied or shop applied, and shall be as specified herein, and provided under each individual section.

3.6.1.1 Factory Painting Systems

Manufacturer's standard factory painting systems may be provided subject to certification that the factory painting system applied will withstand 125 hours in a salt-spray fog test, except that equipment located outdoors shall withstand 500 hours in a salt-spray fog test. Salt-spray fog test shall be in accordance with ASTM B117, and for that test the acceptance criteria shall be as follows: immediately after completion of the test, the paint shall show no signs of blistering, wrinkling, or cracking, and no loss of adhesion; and the specimen shall show no signs of rust creepage beyond 0.125 inch on either side of the scratch mark.

The film thickness of the factory painting system applied on the equipment shall not be less than the film thickness used on the test specimen. If manufacturer's standard factory painting system is being proposed for use on surfaces subject to temperatures above 120 degrees F, the factory painting system shall be designed for the temperature service.

3.6.1.2 Shop Painting Systems for Metal Surfaces

Clean, pretreat, prime and paint metal surfaces; except aluminum surfaces need not be painted. Apply coatings to clean dry surfaces. Clean the surfaces to remove dust, dirt, rust, oil and grease by wire brushing and solvent degreasing prior to application of paint, except metal surfaces subject to temperatures in excess of 120 degrees F shall be cleaned to bare metal.

Where more than one coat of paint is specified, apply the second coat after the preceding coat is thoroughly dry. Lightly sand damaged painting and retouch before applying the succeeding coat. Color of finish coat shall be aluminum or light gray.

- a. Temperatures Less Than 120 Degrees F: Immediately after cleaning, the

metal surfaces subject to temperatures less than 120 degrees F shall receive one coat of pretreatment primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 0.3 mil, one coat of primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of one mil; and two coats of enamel applied to a minimum dry film thickness of one mil per coat.

- b. Temperatures Between 120 and 400 Degrees F: Metal surfaces subject to temperatures between 120 and 400 degrees F shall receive two coats of 400 degrees F heat-resisting enamel applied to a total minimum thickness of 2 mils.
- c. Temperatures Greater Than 400 Degrees F: Metal surfaces subject to temperatures greater than 400 degrees F shall receive two coats of 600 degrees F heat-resisting paint applied to a total minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils.

3.7 TESTS, FLUSHING AND DISINFECTION

3.7.1 Plumbing System

The following tests shall be performed on the plumbing system in accordance with ICC IPC, except that the drainage and vent system final test shall include the smoke test. The Contractor has the option to perform a peppermint test in lieu of the smoke test. If a peppermint test is chosen, the Contractor must submit a testing procedure and reasons for choosing this option in lieu of the smoke test to the Contracting Officer for approval.

- a. Drainage and Vent Systems Test. The final test shall include a smoke test.
- b. Building Sewers Tests.
- c. Water Supply Systems Tests.

3.7.1.1 Test of Backflow Prevention Assemblies

Backflow prevention assembly shall be tested using gauges specifically designed for the testing of backflow prevention assemblies.

Backflow prevention assembly test gauges shall be tested annually for accuracy in accordance with the requirements of State or local regulatory agencies. If there is no State or local regulatory agency requirements, gauges shall be tested annually for accuracy in accordance with the requirements of University of Southern California's Foundation of Cross Connection Control and Hydraulic Research or the American Water Works Association Manual of Cross Connection (Manual M-14), or any other approved testing laboratory having equivalent capabilities for both laboratory and field evaluation of backflow prevention assembly test gauges. Report form for each assembly shall include, as a minimum, the following:

Data on Device	Data on Testing Firm
Type of Assembly	Name
Manufacturer	Address

Model Number	Certified Tester
Serial Number	Certified Tester No.
Size	Date of Test
Location	
Test Pressure Readings	Serial Number and Test Data of Gauges

If the unit fails to meet specified requirements, the unit shall be repaired and retested.

3.7.1.2 Shower Pans

After installation of the pan and finished floor, the drain shall be temporarily plugged below the weep holes. The floor area shall be flooded with water to a minimum depth of 1 inch for a period of 24 hours. Any drop in the water level during test, except for evaporation, will be reason for rejection, repair, and retest.

3.7.2 Defective Work

If inspection or test shows defects, such defective work or material shall be replaced or repaired as necessary and inspection and tests shall be repeated. Repairs to piping shall be made with new materials. Caulking of screwed joints or holes will not be acceptable.

3.7.3 System Flushing

3.7.3.1 During Flushing

Before operational tests or disinfection, potable water piping system shall be flushed with hot potable water. Sufficient water shall be used to produce a water velocity that is capable of entraining and removing debris in all portions of the piping system. This requires simultaneous operation of all fixtures on a common branch or main in order to produce a flushing velocity of approximately 4 fps through all portions of the piping system. In the event that this is impossible due to size of system, the Contracting Officer (or the designated representative) shall specify the number of fixtures to be operated during flushing. Contractor shall provide adequate personnel to monitor the flushing operation and to ensure that drain lines are unobstructed in order to prevent flooding of the facility. Contractor shall be responsible for any flood damage resulting from flushing of the system. Flushing shall be continued until entrained dirt and other foreign materials have been removed and until discharge water shows no discoloration. All faucets and drinking water fountains, to include any device considered as an end point device by NSF/ANSI 61, Section 9, shall be flushed a minimum of 0.25 gallons per 24 hour period, ten times over a 14 day period.

3.7.3.2 After Flushing

System shall be drained at low points. Strainer screens shall be removed, cleaned, and replaced. After flushing and cleaning, systems shall be prepared for testing by immediately filling water piping with clean, fresh potable water. Any stoppage, discoloration, or other damage to the finish, furnishings, or parts of the building due to the Contractor's failure to

properly clean the piping system shall be repaired by the Contractor. When the system flushing is complete, the hot-water system shall be adjusted for uniform circulation. Flushing devices shall be adjusted for proper operation according to manufacturer's instructions. Flow rates on fixtures must not exceed those stated in PART 2 of this Section. Unless more stringent local requirements exist, lead levels shall not exceed limits established by 40 CFR 141.80 (c)(1). The water supply to the building shall be tested separately to ensure that any lead contamination found during potable water system testing is due to work being performed inside the building.

3.7.4 Operational Test

Upon completion of flushing and prior to disinfection procedures, the Contractor shall subject the plumbing system to operating tests to demonstrate satisfactory installation, connections, adjustments, and functional and operational efficiency. Such operating tests shall cover a period of not less than 8 hours for each system and shall include the following information in a report with conclusion as to the adequacy of the system:

- a. Time, date, and duration of test.
- b. Water pressures at the most remote and the highest fixtures.
- c. Operation of each fixture and fixture trim.
- d. Operation of each valve, hydrant, and faucet.
- e. Temperature of each domestic hot-water supply.
- f. Operation of each floor drain by flooding with water.
- g. Operation of each vacuum breaker and backflow preventer.

3.7.5 Disinfection

After all system components are provided and operational tests are complete, the entire domestic hot- and cold-water distribution system shall be disinfected. Before introducing disinfecting chlorination material, entire system shall be flushed with potable water until any entrained dirt and other foreign materials have been removed.

Water chlorination procedure shall be in accordance with AWWA C651 and AWWA C652 as modified and supplemented by this specification. The chlorinating material shall be hypochlorites or liquid chlorine. The chlorinating material shall be fed into the water piping system at a constant rate at a concentration of at least 50 parts per million (ppm). Feed a properly adjusted hypochlorite solution injected into the system with a hypochlorinator, or inject liquid chlorine into the system through a solution-feed chlorinator and booster pump until the entire system is completely filled.

Test the chlorine residual level in the water at 6 hour intervals for a continuous period of 24 hours. If at the end of a 6 hour interval, the chlorine residual has dropped to less than 25 ppm, flush the piping including tanks with potable water, and repeat the above chlorination procedures. During the chlorination period, each valve and faucet shall be opened and closed several times.

After the second 24 hour period, verify that no less than 25 ppm chlorine residual remains in the treated system. The 24 hour chlorination procedure must be repeated until no less than 25 ppm chlorine residual remains in the treated system.

Upon the specified verification, the system including tanks shall then be flushed with potable water until the residual chlorine level is reduced to less than one part per million. During the flushing period, each valve and faucet shall be opened and closed several times.

Take additional samples of water in disinfected containers, for bacterial examination, at locations specified by the Contracting Officer. Test these samples for total coliform organisms (coliform bacteria, fecal coliform, streptococcal, and other bacteria) in accordance with [AWWA 10084](#). The testing method used shall be EPA approved for drinking water systems and shall comply with applicable local and state requirements.

Disinfection shall be repeated until bacterial tests indicate the absence of coliform organisms (zero mean coliform density per 100 milliliters) in the samples for at least 2 full days. The system will not be accepted until satisfactory bacteriological results have been obtained.

3.8 POSTED INSTRUCTIONS

Framed instructions under glass or in laminated plastic, including wiring and control diagrams showing the complete layout of the entire system, shall be posted where directed. Condensed operating instructions explaining preventive maintenance procedures, methods of checking the system for normal safe operation, and procedures for safely starting and stopping the system shall be prepared in typed form, framed as specified above for the wiring and control diagrams and posted beside the diagrams. The framed instructions shall be posted before acceptance testing of the systems.

3.9 PERFORMANCE OF WATER HEATING EQUIPMENT

Standard rating condition terms are as follows:

EF = Energy factor, minimum overall efficiency.

ET = Minimum thermal efficiency with 70 degrees F delta T.

SL = Standby loss is maximum (Btu/h) based on a 70 degrees F temperature difference between stored water and ambient requirements.

V = Rated volume in gallons

Q = Nameplate input rate in kW (Btu/h)

3.9.1 Storage Water Heaters

3.9.1.1 Gas

- a. Shall have a minimum energy factor (EF) of 0.95 or higher per FEMP requirements.

- b. Maximum SL shall be $(Q/800+110x(V^{1/2}))$, per ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3

3.10 TABLES

TABLE I					
PIPE AND FITTING MATERIALS FOR DRAINAGE, WASTE, VENT AND CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING SYSTEMS					
Item #	Pipe and Fitting Materials	SERVICE A	SERVICE B	SERVICE D	SERVICE G
1	Cast iron soil pipe and fittings, hub and spigot, ASTM A74 with compression gaskets. Pipe and fittings shall be marked with the CISPI trademark.		X	X	
2	Cast iron soil pipe and fittings hubless, CISPI 301 and ASTM A888. Pipe and fittings shall be marked with the CISPI trademark.		X	X	
3	Cast iron drainage fittings, threaded, ASME B16.12 for use with Item 10			X	
4	Cast iron screwed fittings (threaded) ASME B16.4 for use with Item 10			X	
5	Not Used				
6	Not Used				

TABLE I					
PIPE AND FITTING MATERIALS FOR DRAINAGE, WASTE, VENT AND CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING SYSTEMS					
Item #	Pipe and Fitting Materials	SERVICE A	SERVICE B	SERVICE D	SERVICE G
7	Not Used				
8	Not Used				
9	Malleable-iron threaded fittings, galvanized ASME B16.3 for use with Item 10			X	
10	Steel pipe, seamless galvanized, ASTM A53/A53M, Type S, Grade B			X	
11	Seamless red brass pipe, ASTM B43			X	X
12	Bronzed flanged fittings, ASME B16.24 for use with Items 11 and 14			X	X
13	Cast copper alloy solder joint pressure fittings, ASME B16.18 for use with Item 14			X	X
14	Seamless copper pipe, ASTM B42				X

TABLE I					
PIPE AND FITTING MATERIALS FOR DRAINAGE, WASTE, VENT AND CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING SYSTEMS					
Item #	Pipe and Fitting Materials	SERVICE A	SERVICE B	SERVICE D	SERVICE G
15	Cast bronze threaded fittings, ASME B16.15			X	
16	Copper drainage tube, (DWV), ASTM B306		X	X	X
17	Wrought copper and wrought alloy solder-joint drainage fittings. ASME B16.29		X	X	X
18	Cast copper alloy solder joint drainage fittings, DWV, ASME B16.23		X	X	X
19	Not Used				
20	Polyvinyl Chloride plastic drain, waste and vent pipe and fittings, ASTM D2665, ASTM F891, (Sch 40) ASTM F1760	X			
21	Not Used				
22	Not Used				
23	Not Used				

TABLE I					
PIPE AND FITTING MATERIALS FOR DRAINAGE, WASTE, VENT AND CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING SYSTEMS					
Item #	Pipe and Fitting Materials	SERVICE A	SERVICE B	SERVICE D	SERVICE G
24	Not Used				
SERVICE: A - Underground Building Soil, Waste and Storm Drain B - Aboveground Soil, Waste, Drain In Buildings C - Not Used D - Aboveground Vent E - Not Used F - Not Used G - Condensate Drain Aboveground * - Hard Temper					

TABLE II				
PIPE AND FITTING MATERIALS FOR PRESSURE PIPING SYSTEMS				
Item #	Pipe and Fitting Materials	SERVICE A	SERVICE B	SERVICE D
1	Not Used			
2	Not Used			
3	Not Used		X	
4	Not Used			

TABLE II				
PIPE AND FITTING MATERIALS FOR PRESSURE PIPING SYSTEMS				
Item #	Pipe and Fitting Materials	SERVICE A	SERVICE B	SERVICE D
5	Seamless red brass pipe, ASTM B43	X	X	
6	Bronze flanged fittings, ASME B16.24 for use with Items 5 and 7	X	X	
7	Seamless copper pipe, ASTM B42	X	X	
8	Seamless copper water tube, ASTM B88, ASTM B88M	X**	X**	
9	Cast bronze threaded fittings, ASME B16.15 for use with Items 5 and 7	X	X	
10	Wrought copper and bronze solder-joint pressure fittings, ASME B16.22 for use with Items 5, 7 and 8	X	X	
11	Cast copper alloy solder-joint pressure fittings, ASME B16.18 for use with Item 8	X	X	
12	Not Used			
13	Not Used			
14	Not Used			

TABLE II				
PIPE AND FITTING MATERIALS FOR PRESSURE PIPING SYSTEMS				
Item #	Pipe and Fitting Materials	SERVICE A	SERVICE B	SERVICE D
15	Not Used			
16	Not Used			
17	Not Used			
18	Not Used			
19	Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic hot and cold water distribution system, ASTM D2846/D2846M			X
20	Not Used			
21	Not Used			
22	Not Used			
23	Not Used			

TABLE II				
PIPE AND FITTING MATERIALS FOR PRESSURE PIPING SYSTEMS				
Item #	Pipe and Fitting Materials	SERVICE A	SERVICE B	SERVICE D
24	Not Used			
25	Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe, Schedules 40, 80, and 120, ASTM D1785			X
26	Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) pressure-rated pipe (SDR Series), ASTM D2241			X
27	Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe fittings, Schedule 40, ASTM D2466			X
28	Socket-type polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe fittings, schedule 80, ASTM D2467 for use with Items 26 and 27			X
29	Threaded polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe fittings, schedule 80, ASTM D2464			X
30	Joints for IPS PVC pipe using solvent cement, ASTM D2672			X
31	Not Used			
32	Not Used			
33	Fittings: brass or bronze; ASME B16.15, and ASME B16.18 ASTM B828	X	X	
34	Not Used			

TABLE II				
PIPE AND FITTING MATERIALS FOR PRESSURE PIPING SYSTEMS				
Item #	Pipe and Fitting Materials	SERVICE A	SERVICE B	SERVICE D
35	Not Used			
36	Not Used			
37	Not Used			
38	Not Used			
	SERVICE: A - Cold Water Service Aboveground B - Hot and Cold Water Distribution 180 degrees F Maximum Aboveground C - Not Used D - Cold Water Service Belowground Indicated types are minimum wall thicknesses. ** - Type L - Hard *** - Type K - Hard temper with brazed joints only or type K-soft temper without joints in or under floors **** - In or under slab floors only brazed joints			

TABLE III				
STANDARD RATING CONDITIONS AND MINIMUM PERFORMANCE RATINGS FOR WATER HEATING EQUIPMENT				
<u>FUEL</u>	<u>STORAGE CAPACITY GALLONS</u>	<u>INPUT RATING</u>	<u>TEST PROCEDURE</u>	<u>REQUIRED PERFORMANCE</u>
A. STORAGE WATER HEATERS				
Gas	100 min.	As indicated	ANSI Z21.10.3/	ET = 96 percent min. SL per ASHRAE 90.1 - IP
TERMS: EF = Energy factor, minimum overall efficiency. ET = Minimum thermal efficiency with 70 degrees F delta T. SL = Standby loss is maximum Btu/h based on a 70 degree F temperature difference between stored water and ambient requirements. V = Rated storage volume in gallons Q = Nameplate input rate in Btu/h				

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 23 00 00

AIR SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION, AND EXHAUST SYSTEMS
08/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR MOVEMENT AND CONTROL ASSOCIATION INTERNATIONAL, INC. (AMCA)

AMCA 201	(2002; R 2011) Fans and Systems
AMCA 210	(2016) Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating
AMCA 300	(2014) Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans
AMCA 301	(2014) Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data

AIR-CONDITIONING, HEATING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE (AHRI)

AHRI 260 I-P	(2012) Sound Rating of Ducted Air Moving and Conditioning Equipment
AHRI 350	(2015) Sound Rating of Non-Ducted Indoor Air-Conditioning Equipment
AHRI 410	(2001; Addendum 1 2002; Addendum 2 2005; Addendum 3 2011) Forced-Circulation Air-Cooling and Air-Heating Coils
AHRI 430	(2009) Central-Station Air-Handling Units
AHRI 440	(2008) Performance Rating of Room Fan-Coils
AHRI 880 I-P	(2011) Performance Rating of Air Terminals
AHRI 885	(2008; Addendum 2011) Procedure for Estimating Occupied Space Sound Levels in the Application of Air Terminals and Air Outlets
AHRI Guideline D	(1996) Application and Installation of Central Station Air-Handling Units

AMERICAN BEARING MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (ABMA)

ABMA 11	(2014) Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Roller Bearings

ABMA 9	(2015) Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Ball Bearings
AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)	
ASHRAE 52.2	(2012) Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size
ASHRAE 62.1	(2010) Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality
ASHRAE 68	(1997) Laboratory Method of Testing to Determine the Sound Power In a Duct
ASHRAE 70	(2006; R 2011) Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets
ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)	
ASME A13.1	(2015) Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems
ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)	
ASTM A123/A123M	(2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A167	(2011) Standard Specification for Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip
ASTM A53/A53M	(2018) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
ASTM A924/A924M	(2018) Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM B117	(2016) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus
ASTM B766	(1986; R 2015) Standard Specification for Electrodeposited Coatings of Cadmium
ASTM C553	(2013) Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Commercial and Industrial Applications
ASTM D1654	(2008; R 2016; E 2017) Standard Test Method for Evaluation of Painted or Coated Specimens Subjected to Corrosive Environments

ASTM D3359 (2017) Standard Test Methods for Rating Adhesion by Tape Test

ASTM D520 (2000; R 2011) Zinc Dust Pigment

ASTM E2016 (2015) Standard Specification for Industrial Woven Wire Cloth

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350 (2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources using Environmental Chambers

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA MG 1 (2016; SUPP 2016) Motors and Generators

NEMA MG 10 (2017) Energy Management Guide for Selection and Use of Fixed Frequency Medium AC Squirrel-Cage Polyphase Induction Motors

NEMA MG 11 (1977; R 2012) Energy Management Guide for Selection and Use of Single Phase Motors

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 701 (2019) Standard Methods of Fire Tests for Flame Propagation of Textiles and Films

NFPA 90A (2018) Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION (SMACNA)

SMACNA 1966 (2005) HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible, 3rd Edition

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168 (2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

40 CFR 82 Protection of Stratospheric Ozone

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 181 (2013; Reprint Apr 2017) UL Standard for Safety Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors

UL 1995 (2015) UL Standard for Safety Heating and Cooling Equipment

UL 586 (2009; Reprint Dec 2017) UL Standard for

Safety High-Efficiency Particulate, Air
Filter Units

UL 6	(2007; Reprint Nov 2014) Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit-Steel
UL 705	(2017; Reprint Oct 2018) UL Standard for Safety Power Ventilators
UL 900	(2015) Standard for Air Filter Units
UL Bld Mat Dir	(updated continuously online) Building Materials Directory

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Furnish ductwork, piping offsets, fittings, and accessories as required to provide a complete installation. Coordinate the work of the different trades to avoid interference between piping, equipment, structural, and electrical work. Provide complete, in place, all necessary offsets in piping and ductwork, and all fittings, and other components, required to install the work as indicated and specified.

1.2.1 Mechanical Equipment Identification

The number of charts and diagrams must be equal to or greater than the number of mechanical equipment rooms. Where more than one chart or diagram per space is required, mount these in edge pivoted, swinging leaf, extruded aluminum frame holders which open to 170 degrees.

1.2.1.1 Charts

Provide chart listing of equipment by designation numbers and capacities such as flow rates, pressure and temperature differences, heating and cooling capacities, horsepower, pipe sizes, and voltage and current characteristics.

1.2.2 Service Labeling

Label equipment, including fans, air handlers, terminal units, etc. with labels made of self-sticking, plastic film designed for permanent installation. Provide labels in accordance with the typical examples below:

SERVICE	LABEL AND TAG DESIGNATION
Energy Recovery Unit	ERU-1
Control and instrument air	CONTROL AND INSTR.
Air Cooled Chiller	ACU-1
VAV Box Number	VAV - 01
Fan Coil Unit Number	FCU - 01
Heating Water Pump	HWP-1

SERVICE	LABEL AND TAG DESIGNATION
Unit Heater	UH-1

Identify similar services with different temperatures or pressures. Where pressures could exceed 125 pounds per square inch, gage, include the maximum system pressure in the label. Label and arrow piping in accordance with the following:

- Each point of entry and exit of pipe passing through walls.
- Each change in direction, i.e., elbows, tees.
- In congested or hidden areas and at all access panels at each point required to clarify service or indicated hazard.
- In long straight runs, locate labels at distances within eyesight of each other not to exceed 75 feet. All labels must be visible and legible from the primary service and operating area.

For Bare or Insulated Pipes	
for Outside Diameters of	Lettering
1/2 thru 1-3/8 inch	1/2 inch
1-1/2 thru 2-3/8 inch	3/4 inch
2-1/2 inch and larger	1-1/4 inch

1.2.3 Color Coding

Color coding of all piping systems must be in accordance with ASME A13.1.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Detail Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Insulated Nonmetallic Flexible Duct Runouts

Duct Connectors

Duct Access Doors; G

Manual Balancing Dampers; G

Diffusers

Grilles

Louvers

Air Vents, Penthouses, and Goosenecks

In-Line Centrifugal Fans

Air Handling Units; G

Room Fan-Coil Units; G

Variable Volume and Constant Volume, Single Duct Terminal Units; G

Energy Recovery Devices; G

Indoor Air Quality for Duct Sealants; S

SD-06 Test Reports

Performance Tests; G

Damper Acceptance Test; G

SD-07 Certificates

Ozone Depleting Substances Technician Certification

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Manufacturer's Installation Instructions

Operation and Maintenance Training

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance Manuals; G

Manual Balancing Dampers; G

In-Line Centrifugal Fans; G

Air Handling Units; G

Room Fan-Coil Units; G

Variable Volume and Constant Volume, Single Duct Terminal Units; G

Energy Recovery Devices; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Indoor Air Quality During Construction; S

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Except as otherwise specified, approval of materials and equipment is based on manufacturer's published data.

- a. Where materials and equipment are specified to conform to the standards of the Underwriters Laboratories, the label of or listing with reexamination in [UL Bld Mat Dir](#), and [UL 6](#) is acceptable as sufficient evidence that the items conform to Underwriters Laboratories requirements. In lieu of such label or listing, submit a written certificate from any nationally recognized testing agency, adequately equipped and competent to perform such services, stating that the items have been tested and that the units conform to the specified requirements. Outline methods of testing used by the specified agencies.
- b. Where materials or equipment are specified to be constructed or tested, or both, in accordance with the standards of the ASTM International (ASTM), the ASME International (ASME), or other standards, a manufacturer's certificate of compliance of each item is acceptable as proof of compliance.
- c. Conformance to such agency requirements does not relieve the item from compliance with other requirements of these specifications.

1.4.1 Prevention of Corrosion

Protect metallic materials against corrosion. Provide rust-inhibiting treatment and standard finish for the equipment enclosures. Do not use aluminum in contact with earth, and where connected to dissimilar metal. Protect aluminum by approved fittings, barrier material, or treatment. Provide hot-dip galvanized ferrous parts such as anchors, bolts, braces, boxes, bodies, clamps, fittings, guards, nuts, pins, rods, shims, thimbles, washers, and miscellaneous parts not of corrosion-resistant steel or nonferrous materials in accordance with [ASTM A123/A123M](#) for exterior locations and cadmium-plated in conformance with [ASTM B766](#) for interior locations.

1.4.2 Asbestos Prohibition

Do not use asbestos and asbestos-containing products.

1.4.3 [Ozone Depleting Substances Technician Certification](#)

All technicians working on equipment that contain ozone depleting refrigerants must be certified as a Section 608 Technician to meet requirements in [40 CFR 82](#), Subpart F. Provide copies of technician certifications to the Contracting Officer at least 14 calendar days prior to work on any equipment containing these refrigerants.

1.4.4 [Detail Drawings](#)

Submit detail drawings showing equipment layout, including assembly and installation details and electrical connection diagrams; ductwork layout showing the location of all supports and hangers, typical hanger details, gauge reinforcement, reinforcement spacing rigidity classification, and static pressure and seal classifications. Include any information required to demonstrate that the system has been coordinated and functions properly as a unit on the drawings and show equipment relationship to other parts of

the work, including clearances required for operation and maintenance. Submit drawings showing bolt-setting information, and foundation bolts prior to concrete foundation construction for all equipment indicated or required to have concrete foundations. Submit function designation of the equipment and any other requirements specified throughout this Section with the shop drawings.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Protect stored equipment at the jobsite from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, or other contaminants. Additionally, cap or plug all pipes until installed.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STANDARD PRODUCTS

Except for the fabricated duct, plenums and casings specified in paragraphs "Metal Ductwork" and "Plenums and Casings for Field-Fabricated Units", provide components and equipment that are standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacturing of products that are of a similar material, design and workmanship. This requirement applies to all equipment, including diffusers, registers, fire dampers, and balancing dampers.

- a. Standard products are defined as components and equipment that have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use in similar applications of similar size for at least two years before bid opening.
- b. Prior to this two year period, these standard products must have been sold on the commercial market using advertisements in manufacturers' catalogs or brochures. These manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures must have been copyrighted documents or have been identified with a manufacturer's document number.
- c. Provide equipment items that are supported by a service organization.

2.2 IDENTIFICATION PLATES

In addition to standard manufacturer's identification plates, provide engraved laminated phenolic identification plates for each piece of mechanical equipment. Identification plates are to designate the function of the equipment. Submit designation with the shop drawings. Provide identification plates that are layers, black-white-black, engraved to show white letters on black background. Letters must be upper case. Identification plates that are 1-1/2-inches high and smaller must be 1/16-inch thick, with engraved lettering 1/8-inch high; identification plates larger than 1-1/2-inches high must be 1/8-inch thick, with engraved lettering of suitable height. Identification plates 1-1/2-inches high and larger must have beveled edges. Install identification plates using a compatible adhesive.

2.3 EQUIPMENT GUARDS AND ACCESS

Fully enclose or guard belts, pulleys, chains, gears, couplings, projecting setscrews, keys, and other rotating parts exposed to personnel contact according to OSHA requirements. Properly guard or cover with insulation of a type specified, high temperature equipment and piping exposed to contact by personnel or where it creates a potential fire hazard.

2.4 ELECTRICAL WORK

- a. Provide motors, controllers, integral disconnects, contactors, and controls with their respective pieces of equipment, except controllers indicated as part of motor control centers. Provide electrical equipment, including motors and wiring, as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Provide manual or automatic control and protective or signal devices required for the operation specified and control wiring required for controls and devices specified, but not shown. For packaged equipment, include manufacturer provided controllers with the required monitors and timed restart.
- b. For single-phase motors, provide high-efficiency type, fractional-horsepower alternating-current motors, including motors that are part of a system, in accordance with NEMA MG 11. Provide premium efficiency type integral size motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1.
- c. For polyphase motors, provide squirrel-cage medium induction motors, including motors that are part of a system, and that meet the efficiency ratings for premium efficiency motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1. Select premium efficiency polyphase motors in accordance with NEMA MG 10.
- d. Provide motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1 and of sufficient size to drive the load at the specified capacity without exceeding the nameplate rating of the motor. Provide motors rated for continuous duty with the enclosure specified. Provide motor duty that allows for maximum frequency start-stop operation and minimum encountered interval between start and stop. Provide motor torque capable of accelerating the connected load within 20 seconds with 80 percent of the rated voltage maintained at motor terminals during one starting period. Provide motor starters complete with thermal overload protection and other necessary appurtenances. Fit motor bearings with grease supply fittings and grease relief to outside of the enclosure.
- e. Provide variable frequency drives for motors as specified in Section 26 29 23 VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVE SYSTEMS UNDER 600 VOLTS.

2.5 ANCHOR BOLTS

Provide anchor bolts for equipment placed on concrete equipment pads or on concrete slabs. Bolts to be of the size and number recommended by the equipment manufacturer and located by means of suitable templates. Installation of anchor bolts must not degrade the surrounding concrete.

2.6 PAINTING

Paint equipment units in accordance with approved equipment manufacturer's standards unless specified otherwise. Field retouch only if approved. Otherwise, return equipment to the factory for refinishing.

2.7 INDOOR AIR QUALITY

Provide equipment and components that comply with the requirements of ASHRAE 62.1 unless more stringent requirements are specified herein.

2.8 DUCT SYSTEMS

2.8.1 Metal Ductwork

Provide **galvanized** metal ductwork construction, including all fittings and components, that complies with **SMACNA 1966**, as supplemented and modified by this specification.

- a. Construct ductwork meeting the requirements for the duct system static pressure specified in APPENDIX D of Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING FOR HVAC.
- b. Provide radius type elbows with a centerline radius of 1.5 times the width or diameter of the duct where space permits. Otherwise, elbows having a minimum radius equal to the width or diameter of the duct or square elbows with factory fabricated turning vanes are allowed.
- c. Provide ductwork that meets the requirements of Seal Class A. Provide ductwork in VAV systems upstream of the VAV boxes that meets the requirements of Seal Class A.
- d. Provide sealants that conform to fire hazard classification specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS and are suitable for the range of air distribution and ambient temperatures to which it is exposed. Do not use pressure sensitive tape as a sealant. Provide duct sealant products that meet either emissions requirements of **CDPH SECTION 01350** (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of **SCAQMD Rule 1168** (HVAC duct sealants are classified as "Other" within the **SCAQMD Rule 1168** sealants table). Provide validation of indoor air quality for duct sealants.
- e. Make spiral lock seam duct, and flat oval with duct sealant and lock with not less than 3 equally spaced drive screws or other approved methods indicated in **SMACNA 1966**. Apply the sealant to the exposed male part of the fitting collar so that the sealer is on the inside of the joint and fully protected by the metal of the duct fitting. Apply one brush coat of the sealant over the outside of the joint to at least **2 inch** band width covering all screw heads and joint gap. Dents in the male portion of the slip fitting collar are not acceptable. Fabricate outdoor air intake ducts and plenums with watertight soldered or brazed joints and seams.

2.8.1.1 Insulated Nonmetallic Flexible Duct Runouts

Use flexible duct runouts only where indicated. Runout length is indicated on the drawings, and is not to exceed **5 feet**. Provide runouts that are preinsulated, factory fabricated, and that comply with **NFPA 90A** and **UL 181**. Provide factory applied vapor barrier. Provide not less than **20 ounce** glass fabric **duct connectors** coated on both sides with neoprene. Insulated flexible connectors are allowed as runouts. Provide insulated material and vapor barrier that conform to the requirements of Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS. Do not expose the insulation material surface to the air stream.

2.8.1.2 General Service Duct Connectors

Provide a flexible duct connector approximately **6 inches** in width where sheet metal connections are made to fans or where ducts of dissimilar

metals are connected. For round/oval ducts, secure the flexible material by stainless steel or zinc-coated, iron clinch-type draw bands. For rectangular ducts, install the flexible material locked to metal collars using normal duct construction methods. Provide a composite connector system that complies with NFPA 701 and is classified as "flame-retardent fabrics" in UL Bld Mat Dir.

2.8.1.3 Galvanized Ducts

ASTM A 653/A 653M for galvanized sheet.

2.8.1.4 Corrosion Resisting (Stainless) Steel Sheets

ASTM A167

2.8.2 Duct Access Doors

Provide hinged access doors conforming to SMACNA 1966 in ductwork and plenums where indicated and at all air flow measuring primaries, automatic dampers, and other apparatus requiring service and inspection in the duct system. Provide access doors upstream and downstream of air flow measuring primaries and heating and cooling coils. Provide doors that are a minimum 15 by 18 inches, unless otherwise shown. Where duct size does not accommodate this size door, make the doors as large as practicable. Equip doors 24 by 24 inches or larger with fasteners operable from inside and outside the duct. Use insulated type doors in insulated ducts.

2.8.3 Manual Balancing Dampers

- a. Furnish manual balancing dampers with accessible operating mechanisms. Use chromium plated operators (with all exposed edges rounded) in finished portions of the building. Provide manual volume control dampers that are operated by locking-type quadrant operators.
- b. Unless otherwise indicated, provide opposed blade type multileaf dampers with maximum blade width of 12 inches. Provide access doors or panels for all concealed damper operators and locking setscrews. Provide access doors or panels in hard ceilings, partitions and walls for access to all concealed damper operators and damper locking setscrews. Coordinate location of doors or panels with other affected contractors.
- c. Provide stand-off mounting brackets, bases, or adapters not less than the thickness of the insulation when the locking-type quadrant operators for dampers are installed on ducts to be thermally insulated, to provide clearance between the duct surface and the operator. Provide stand-off mounting items that are integral with the operator or standard accessory of the damper manufacturer.

2.8.3.1 Square or Rectangular Dampers

2.8.3.1.1 Duct Height 12 inches and Less

2.8.3.1.1.1 Frames

Width	Height	Galvanized Steel Thickness	Length
Maximum 19 inches	Maximum 12 inches	Minimum 20 gauge	Minimum 3 inches
More than 19 inches	Maximum 12 inches	Minimum 16 gauge	Minimum 3 inches

2.8.3.1.1.2 Single Leaf Blades

Width	Height	Galvanized Steel Thickness	Length
Maximum 19 inches	Maximum 12 inches	Minimum 20 gauge	Minimum 3 inches
More than 19 inches	Maximum 12 inches	Minimum 16 gauge	Minimum 3 inches

2.8.3.1.1.3 Blade Axles

To support the blades of round dampers, provide galvanized steel shafts supporting the blade the entire duct diameter frame-to-frame. Provide axle shafts that extend through standoff bracket and hand quadrant.

Width	Height	Material	Square Shaft
Maximum 19 inches	Maximum 12 inches	Galvanized Steel	Minimum 3/8 inch
More than 19 inches	Maximum 12 inches	Galvanized Steel	Minimum 1/2 inch

2.8.3.1.1.4 Axle Bearings

Support the shaft on each end at the frames with shaft bearings. Press fit shaft bearings configuration to provide a tight joint between blade shaft and damper frame.

Width	Height	Material
Maximum 19 inches	Maximum 12 inches	solid nylon, or equivalent solid plastic, or oil-impregnated bronze
More than 19 inches	Maximum 12 inches	oil-impregnated bronze

2.8.3.1.1.5 Control Shaft/Hand Quadrant

Provide dampers with accessible locking-type control shaft/hand quadrant operators.

Provide stand-off mounting brackets, bases, or adapters for the locking-type quadrant operators on dampers installed on ducts to be thermally insulated. Provide a minimum stand-off distance of 2 inches off the metal duct surface. Provide stand-off mounting items that are integral with the operator or standard accessory of the damper manufacturer.

2.8.3.1.1.6 Finish

Mill Galvanized

2.8.3.1.2 Duct Height Greater than 12 inches

2.8.3.1.2.1 Dampers

Provide dampers with multi-leaf opposed-type blades.

2.8.3.1.2.2 Frames

Maximum 48 inches in height; maximum 48 inches in width; minimum of 16 gauge galvanized steel, minimum of 5 inches long.

2.8.3.1.2.3 Blades

Minimum of 16 gauge galvanized steel; 6 inch nominal width.

2.8.3.1.2.4 Blade Axles

To support the blades of round dampers, provide galvanized square steel shafts supporting the blade the entire duct diameter frame-to-frame. Provide axle shafts that extend through standoff bracket and hand quadrant.

2.8.3.1.2.5 Axle Bearings

Support the shaft on each end at the frames with shaft bearings constructed of oil-impregnated bronze, or solid nylon, or a solid plastic equivalent to nylon. Press fit shaft bearings configuration to provide a tight joint between blade shaft and damper frame.

2.8.3.1.2.6 Blade Actuator

Minimum 1/2 inch diameter galvanized steel.

2.8.3.1.2.7 Blade Actuator Linkage

Mill Galvanized steel bar and crank plate with stainless steel pivots.

2.8.3.1.2.8 Control Shaft/Hand Quadrant

Provide dampers with accessible locking-type control shaft/hand quadrant operators.

Provide stand-off mounting brackets, bases, or adapters for the

locking-type quadrant operators on dampers installed on ducts to be thermally insulated. Provide a minimum stand-off distance of 2 inches off the metal duct surface. Provide stand-off mounting items that are integral with the operator or standard accessory of the damper manufacturer.

2.8.3.1.2.9 Finish

Mill Galvanized

2.8.3.2 Round Dampers

2.8.3.2.1 Frames

Size	Galvanized Steel Thickness	Length
4 to 20 inches	Minimum 20 gauge	Minimum 6 inches
22 to 30 inches	Minimum 20 gauge	Minimum 10 inches
32 to 40 inches	Minimum 16 gauge	Minimum 10 inches

2.8.3.2.2 Blades

Size	Galvanized Steel Thickness
4 to 20 inches	Minimum 20 gauge
22 to 30 inches	Minimum 16 gauge
32 to 40 inches	Minimum 10 gauge

2.8.3.2.3 Blade Axles

To support the blades of round dampers, provide galvanized steel shafts supporting the blade the entire duct diameter frame-to-frame. Provide axle shafts that extend through standoff bracket and hand quadrant.

Size	Shaft Size and Shape
4 to 20 inches	Minimum 3/8 inch square
22 to 30 inches	Minimum 1/2 inch square
32 to 40 inches	Minimum 3/4 inch square

2.8.3.2.4 Axle Bearings

Support the shaft on each end at the frames with shaft bearings constructed

of oil-impregnated bronze, or solid nylon, or a solid plastic equivalent to nylon. Press fit shaft bearings configuration to provide a tight joint between blade shaft and damper frame.

Size	Material
4 to 20 inches	solid nylon, or equivalent solid plastic, or oil-impregnated bronze
22 to 30 inches	solid nylon, or equivalent solid plastic, or oil-impregnated bronze
32 to 40 inches	oil-impregnated bronze, or stainless steel sleeve bearing

2.8.3.2.5 Control Shaft/Hand Quadrant

Provide dampers with accessible locking-type control shaft/hand quadrant operators.

Provide stand-off mounting brackets, bases, or adapters for the locking-type quadrant operators on dampers installed on ducts to be thermally insulated. Provide a minimum stand-off distance of 2 inches off the metal duct surface. Provide stand-off mounting items that are integral with the operator or standard accessory of the damper manufacturer.

2.8.3.2.6 Finish

Mill Galvanized

2.8.4 Automatic Balancing Dampers

Provide dampers as specified in paragraph SUPPLEMENTAL COMPONENTS/SERVICES, subparagraph CONTROLS.

2.8.5 Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles

Provide factory-fabricated units of aluminum that distribute the specified quantity of air evenly over space intended without causing noticeable drafts, air movement faster than 50 fpm in occupied zone, or dead spots anywhere in the conditioned area. Provide outlets for diffusion, spread, throw, and noise level as required for specified performance. Certify performance according to ASHRAE 70. Provide sound rated and certified inlets and outlets according to ASHRAE 70. Provide sound power level or noise criteria levels as indicated. Provide diffusers and registers with volume damper with accessible operator only when branch duct is located above inaccessible. Provide opposed blade type volume dampers for all diffusers and registers, except linear slot diffusers. Provide linear slot diffusers with round or elliptical balancing dampers. Where the inlet and outlet openings are located less than 7 feet above the floor, protect them by a grille or screen according to NFPA 90A.

2.8.5.1 Diffusers

Provide diffuser types indicated. Furnish ceiling mounted units with anti-smudge devices, unless the diffuser unit minimizes ceiling smudging through design features. Provide diffusers with air deflectors of the type indicated. Install ceiling mounted units with rims tight against ceiling. Provide suitable trim for flush mounted diffusers. For connecting the duct

to diffuser, provide duct collar that is airtight and does not interfere with volume controller. Provide return or exhaust units that are similar to supply diffusers.

2.8.5.2 Perforated Plate Diffusers

Provide field adjustable four-way air pattern controls. Provide diffuser faceplates that do not sag or deflect when operating under design conditions.

2.8.5.3 Linear Diffusers

Make joints between diffuser sections that appear as hairline cracks. Provide alignment slots for insertion of key strips or other concealed means to align exposed butt edges of diffusers. Equip with plaster frames when mounted in plaster ceiling. Do not use screws and bolts in exposed face of frames or flanges. Metal-fill and ground smooth frames and flanges exposed below ceiling. Furnish separate pivoted or hinged adjustable air-volume-damper and separate air-deflection blades.

2.8.5.4 Grilles

Provide units that are double deflection with adjustable blades, except provide return and exhaust registers that are fixed single deflection horizontal or vertical louver type similar in appearance to the supply grille face. Achieve four-way directional control by a grille face which can be rotated in 4 positions or by adjustment double deflection blades.

2.8.6 Louvers

Provide louvers for installation in exterior walls that are associated with the air supply and distribution system as specified in Section 08 91 00 METAL WALL LOUVERS.

2.8.7 Air Vents, Penthouses, and Goosenecks

Fabricate air vents, penthouses, and goosenecks from aluminum sheets with aluminum structural shapes. Provide sheet metal thickness, reinforcement, and fabrication that conform to SMACNA 1966. Accurately fit and secure louver blades to frames. Fold or bead edges of louver blades for rigidity and baffle these edges to exclude driving rain. Provide air vents, penthouses, and goosenecks with bird screen.

2.8.8 Bird Screens and Frames

Provide bird screens that conform to ASTM E2016, No. 2 mesh, stainless steel. Provide "light" rated stainless steel screens. Provide removable type frames fabricated from either stainless steel or extruded aluminum.

2.9 AIR SYSTEMS EQUIPMENT

2.9.1 Fans

Test and rate fans according to AMCA 210. Calculate system effect on air moving devices in accordance with AMCA 201 where installed ductwork differs from that indicated on drawings. Install air moving devices to minimize fan system effect. Where system effect is unavoidable, determine the most effective way to accommodate the inefficiencies caused by system effect on the installed air moving device. The sound power level of the fans must

not exceed 85 dBA when tested according to [AMCA 300](#) and rated in accordance with [AMCA 301](#). Provide all fans with an AMCA seal. Connect fans to the motors either directly or indirectly with V-belt drive. Use V-belt drives designed for not less than 120 percent of the connected driving capacity. Provide variable pitch motor sheaves for [15 hp](#) and below, and fixed pitch as defined by [AHRI Guideline D](#) (A fixed-pitch sheave is provided on both the fan shaft and the motor shaft. This is a non-adjustable speed drive.). Select variable pitch sheaves to drive the fan at a speed which can produce the specified capacity when set at the approximate midpoint of the sheave adjustment. When fixed pitch sheaves are furnished, provide a replaceable sheave when needed to achieve system air balance. Provide motors for V-belt drives with adjustable rails or bases. Provide removable metal guards for all exposed V-belt drives, and provide speed-test openings at the center of all rotating shafts. Provide fans with personnel screens or guards on both suction and supply ends, except that the screens need not be provided, unless otherwise indicated, where ducts are connected to the fan. Provide fan and motor assemblies with vibration-isolation supports or mountings as indicated. Use vibration-isolation units that are standard products with published loading ratings. Select each fan to produce the capacity required at the fan static pressure indicated. Provide sound power level as indicated. Obtain the sound power level values according to [AMCA 300](#). Provide standard AMCA arrangement, rotation, and discharge as indicated. Provide power ventilators that conform to [UL 705](#) and have a UL label.

2.9.1.1 In-Line Centrifugal Fans

Provide in-line fans with centrifugal backward inclined blades. Mount fans in a [square fan housing constructed of heavy gauge aluminum](#). Provide a fan that axially flows the air in and out. Provide precision, self aligning ball or roller type fan bearings that are sealed against dust and dirt and are permanently lubricated. Provide L50 rated bearing life at not less than 200,000 hours as defined by [ABMA 9](#) and [ABMA 11](#). Provide [electronically commutated motor with motor mounted potentiometer dial for speed adjustment](#).

2.9.2 Coils

Provide fin-and-tube type coils constructed of seamless copper tubes and aluminum fins mechanically bonded or soldered to the tubes. Provide copper tube wall thickness that is a minimum of [0.020 inches](#). Provide aluminum fins that are [0.0075 inch](#) minimum thickness. Provide casing and tube support sheets that are not lighter than [16 gauge](#) galvanized steel, formed to provide structural strength. When required, provide multiple tube supports to prevent tube sag. Mount coils for counterflow service. Rate and certify coils to meet the requirements of [AHRI 410](#).

2.9.2.1 Water Coils

Install water coils with a pitch of not less than [1/8 inch/foot](#) of the tube length toward the drain end. Use headers constructed of cast iron, welded steel or copper. Furnish each coil with a plugged vent and drain connection extending through the unit casing. Provide removable water coils with drain pans. Pressure test coils in accordance with [UL 1995](#).

2.9.3 Air Filters

List air filters according to requirements of [UL 900](#), except list high efficiency particulate air filters of 99.97 percent efficiency by the DOP

Test method under the Label Service to meet the requirements of UL 586.

2.9.3.1 Extended Surface Pleated Panel Pre-Filters

Provide 2 inch depth, sectional, disposable type filters with a MERV of 8 when tested according to ASHRAE 52.2. Provide initial resistance at 500 fpm that does not exceed 0.24 inches water gauge. Provide UL Class 2 filters, and nonwoven cotton and synthetic fiber mat media. Attach a wire support grid bonded to the media to a moisture resistant fiberboard frame. Bond all four edges of the filter media to the inside of the frame to prevent air bypass and increase rigidity.

2.9.3.2 Extended Surface Pleated Panel Secondary Filters

Provide 4 inch depth, sectional, disposable type filters with a MERV of 13 when tested according to ASHRAE 52.2. Provide initial resistance at 500 fpm that does not exceed 0.24 inches water gauge. Provide UL Class 2 filters, and nonwoven cotton and synthetic fiber mat media. Attach a wire support grid bonded to the media to a moisture resistant fiberboard frame. Bond all four edges of the filter media to the inside of the frame to prevent air bypass and increase rigidity.

2.9.3.3 Holding Frames

Fabricate frames from not lighter than 16 gauge sheet steel with rust-inhibitor coating. Equip each holding frame with suitable filter holding devices. Provide gasketed holding frame seats. Make all joints airtight.

2.9.3.4 Filter Gauges

Provide dial type filter gauges, diaphragm actuated draft for all filter stations, including those filters which are furnished as integral parts of factory fabricated air handling units. Provide gauges that are at least 3-7/8 inches in diameter, with white dials with black figures, and graduated in 0.01 inch of water, with a minimum range of 1 inch of water beyond the specified final resistance for the filter bank on which each gauge is applied. Provide each gauge with a screw operated zero adjustment and two static pressure taps with integral compression fittings, two molded plastic vent valves, two 5 foot minimum lengths of 1/4 inch diameter aluminum or vinyl tubing, and all hardware and accessories for gauge mounting.

2.10 AIR HANDLING UNITS

2.10.1 Factory-Fabricated Energy Recovery

Provide single-zone draw-through type. Units must include fans, coils, airtight insulated casing, air intake prefilters, air intake secondary filter sections, exhaust/return air prefilters, adjustable V-belt drives, access sections where indicated, spring vibration-isolators, and appurtenances required for specified operation. Physical dimensions of energy recovery unit must be suitable to fit space allotted to the unit with the capacity indicated. Provide energy recovery unit that is rated in accordance with AHRI 430 and AHRI certified for cooling.

2.10.1.1 Casings

Provide the following:

- a. Casing sections 2 inch double wall type , constructed of a minimum 18 gauge galvanized steel, or 18 gauge corrosion-resisting sheet steel conforming to ASTM A167, Type 304. Design and construct casing with an integral insulated structural galvanized steel frame such that exterior panels are non-load bearing.
- b. Individually removable exterior panels with standard tools. Removal must not affect the structural integrity of the unit. Furnish casings with access sections, according to paragraph AIR HANDLING UNITS, inspection doors, and access doors, all capable of opening a minimum of 90 degrees, as indicated.
- c. Insulated, fully gasketed, double-wall type inspection and access doors, of a minimum 18 gauge outer and 20 gauge inner panels made of either galvanized steel or corrosion-resisting sheet steel conforming to ASTM A167, Type 304. Provide rigid doors with heavy duty hinges and latches. Inspection doors must be a minimum 12 inches wide by 12 inches high. Access doors must be a minimum 18 inches wide, the full height of the unit casing or a minimum of 6 foot, whichever is less.
- d. Double-wall insulated type drain pan (thickness equal to exterior casing) constructed of 16 gauge corrosion resisting sheet steel conforming to ASTM A167, Type 304, conforming to ASHRAE 62.1. Construct drain pans water tight, treated to prevent corrosion, and designed for positive condensate drainage. When 2 or more cooling coils are used, with one stacked above the other, condensate from the upper coils must not flow across the face of lower coils. Provide intermediate drain pans or condensate collection channels and downspouts, as required to carry condensate to the unit drain pan out of the air stream and without moisture carryover. Construct drain pan to allow for easy visual inspection, including underneath the coil without removal of the coil and to allow complete and easy physical cleaning of the pan underneath the coil without removal of the coil. Provide coils that are individually removable from the casing.
- e. Casing insulation that conforms to NFPA 90A. Insulate double-wall casing sections with not less than 2 inches of R-13 injected foam. Foil-faced insulation is not an acceptable substitute for use with double wall casing. Seal double wall insulation completely by inner and outer panels.
- f. Provide access doors and access sections at energy recover wheel, heating coil, cooling coil, supply fan, and exhaust fan.

2.10.1.2 Energy Recovery Devices

2.10.1.2.1 Energy Recovery Wheel

A desiccant-impregnated enthalpy wheel with variable speed rotary wheel must be used in the supply and exhaust systems. Wheels must contain media made of a lightweight polymer that is coated with a corrosion-resistant finish. Etched or oxidized surfaces are not acceptable. Heat transfer surfaces must be coated with a non-migrating (permanently bonded) absorbent. Wheel must allow laminar flow but not radial, and prevent leakage, bypassing, and cross contamination by cross flow within wheel. The wheel must have rotor seals specifically designed to limit cross-contamination, and a rotation detector. Should rotation stop, the rotation detector must alarm the HVAC control system. Wheel must not

condense water directly or require a condensate drain for summer or winter operation. Performance rating must be in accordance with AHRI 1060 I-P. The desiccant material shall be a molecular sieve of 4A or smaller molecular sieve to minimize cross contamination. The wheel frames shall consist of evenly spaced steel spokes, galvanized steel outer band and rigid center hub. The wheel construction should allow for post fabrication wheel alignment. Wheel seals shall be full contact nylon brush seals or equivalent. Seals should be easily adjustable. Wheel shall adjustable purge section minimizing cross contamination of supply air.

2.10.1.3 Heating and Cooling Coils

Provide coils as specified in paragraph AIR SYSTEMS EQUIPMENT.

2.10.1.4 Air Filters

Provide air filters as specified in paragraph AIR SYSTEMS EQUIPMENT for types and thickness indicated.

2.10.1.5 Fans

Provide the following:

- a. Fans that are double-inlet, centrifugal type with each fan in a separate scroll. Dynamically balance fans and shafts prior to installation into air handling unit, then after it has been installed in the air handling unit, statically and dynamically balance the entire fan assembly. Mount fans on steel shafts, accurately ground and finished.
- b. Fan bearings that are sealed against dust and dirt and are precision self-aligning ball or roller type, with L50 rated bearing life at not less than 200,000 hours as defined by [ABMA 9](#) and [ABMA 11](#). Provide bearings that are permanently lubricated or lubricated type with lubrication fittings readily accessible at the drive side of the unit. Support bearings by structural shapes, or die formed sheet structural members, or support plates securely attached to the unit casing. Do not fasten bearings directly to the unit sheet metal casing. Furnish fans and scrolls with coating indicated.
- c. Fans that are driven by a unit-mounted, or a floor-mounted motor connected to fans by V-belt drive complete with belt guard for externally mounted motors. Furnish belt guards that are the three-sided enclosed type with solid or expanded metal face. Design belt drives for not less than a 1.3 service factor based on motor nameplate rating.
- d. Motor sheaves that are variable pitch for [25 hp](#) and below and fixed pitch above [25 hp](#) as defined by [AHRI Guideline D](#). Where fixed sheaves are required, the use of variable pitch sheaves is allowed during air balance, but replace them with an appropriate fixed sheave after air balance is completed. Select variable pitch sheaves to drive the fan at a speed that produces the specified capacity when set at the approximate midpoint of the sheave adjustment. Furnish motors for V-belt drives with adjustable bases, and with open [drip proof](#) enclosures.
- e. Motor starters of reduced-voltage-start type with general-purpose enclosure. Select unit fan or fans to produce the required capacity at

the fan static pressure with sound power level as indicated. Obtain the sound power level values according to [AMCA 300](#), [ASHRAE 68](#), or [AHRI 260 I-P](#).

2.10.1.6 Access Sections and Filter/Mixing Boxes

Provide access sections where indicated and furnish with access doors as shown. Construct access sections and filter/mixing boxes in a manner identical to the remainder of the unit casing and equip with access doors. Design mixing boxes to minimize air stratification and to promote thorough mixing of the air streams.

2.11 TERMINAL UNITS

2.11.1 Room Fan-Coil Units

Provide base units that include galvanized coil casing, coil assembly drain pan air filter, fans, motor, fan drive, motor switch, an enclosure for cabinet models and casing for concealed models, leveling devices integral with the unit for vertical type units, and sound power levels as indicated. Obtain sound power level data or values for these units according to test procedures based on [AHRI 350](#). Sound power values apply to units provided with factory fabricated cabinet enclosures and standard grilles. Values obtained for the standard cabinet models are acceptable for concealed models without separate test provided there is no variation between models as to the coil configuration, blowers, motor speeds, or relative arrangement of parts. Provide automatic valves and controls as specified in paragraph SUPPLEMENTAL COMPONENTS/SERVICES, subparagraph CONTROLS. Fasten each unit securely to the building structure. Provide units with capacity indicated. Provide room fan-coil units that are certified as complying with [AHRI 440](#), and meet the requirements of [UL 1995](#).

2.11.1.1 Enclosures

Fabricate enclosures from not lighter than [18 gauge](#) steel, reinforced and braced. Provide enclosures with [1/4 inch](#) closed cell insulation with [removable bottom panel](#). Provide a discharge grille that is adjustable and [bottom return grille that is fixed](#) and that is of such design as to properly distribute air throughout the conditioned space. Provide galvanized [finish for concealed models](#) and factory finished ferrous metal surfaces with corrosion resistant [powder coated finish for exposed cabinet models](#), and access doors or removable panels for control compartments, plus easy access for filter replacement. Provide duct discharge [and return collar](#) for concealed models.

2.11.1.2 Fans

Provide steel or aluminum, multiblade, centrifugal type fans. In lieu of metal, fans and scrolls could be of non-metallic materials of suitably reinforced compounds with smooth surfaces. Dynamically and statically balance the fans. Provide accessible assemblies for maintenance. Disassemble and re-assemble by means of mechanical fastening devices and not by epoxies or cements.

2.11.1.3 Coils

Fabricate coils from not less than [1/2 inch](#) outside diameter seamless copper tubing, with copper or aluminum fins mechanically bonded or soldered to the tubes. Provide coils with not less than [1/2 inch](#) outside diameter

flare or sweat connectors, accessory piping package with thermal connections suitable for connection to the type of control valve supplied, and manual air vent. Test coils hydrostatically at 300 psi or under water at 250 psi air pressure. Provide coils suitable for 200 psi working pressure. Make provisions for coil removal.

2.11.1.4 Drain Pans

Size and locate drain and drip pans to collect all water condensed on and dripping from any item within the unit enclosure or casing. Provide condensate drain pans designed for self-drainage to preclude the buildup of microbial slime and thermally insulated to prevent condensation and constructed of not lighter than 21 gauge type 304 stainless steel or noncorrosive ABS plastic. Provide insulation with a flame spread rating not over 25 without evidence of continued progressive combustion, a smoke developed rating no higher than 50, and of a waterproof type or coated with a waterproofing material. Design double sloped drain pans so as to allow no standing water and pitch to drain. Provide minimum 3/4 inch NPT or 5/8 inch OD drain connection in drain pan. Provide plastic or metal auxiliary drain pans to catch drips from control and piping packages, eliminating insulation of the packages; if metal, provide auxiliary pans that comply with the requirements specified above. Extend insulation at control and piping connections 1 inch minimum over the auxiliary drain pan.

2.11.1.5 Filters

Provide disposable type filter that complies with ASHRAE 52.2. Provide filters in each unit that are removable without the use of tools.

2.11.1.6 Motors

Provide motors of the electronically commutated type with built-in thermal overload protection, directly connected to unit fans. Provide unit mounted pulse width modulated control board with proportional speed adjustment from fan coil unit controller. Provide motors with permanently-lubricated ball-type bearings with vibration isolating mountings suitable for continuous duty. Provide a motor power consumption, shown in watts, at the fan operating speed selected to meet the specified capacity that does not exceed the following values:

Free Discharge Motors			
Unit Capacity (cfm)	Maximum Power Consumption (Watts)		
	115V	230V	277V
200	70	110	90
300	100	110	110
400	170	150	150
600	180	210	220
800	240	240	230
1000	310	250	270

Free Discharge Motors			
Unit Capacity (cfm)	Maximum Power Consumption (Watts)		
	115V	230V	277V
1200	440	400	440

High Static Motors	
Unit Capacity (cfm)	Maximum Power Consumption (Watts)
200	145
300	145
400	210
600	320
800	320
1000	530
1200	530

2.11.2 Variable Air Volume (VAV) and Constant Air Volume (CAV) Terminal Units

- a. Provide VAV and CAV terminal units that are the type, size, and capacity shown, mounted above the ceiling, suitable for single duct system applications. Provide actuators and controls as specified in paragraph SUPPLEMENTAL COMPONENTS/SERVICES, subparagraph CONTROLS.
- b. Provide unit enclosures that are constructed of galvanized steel not lighter than 22 gauge or aluminum sheet not lighter than 18 gauge. Provide single discharge outlets. Units with flow limiters are not acceptable. Provide unit air volume that is factory preset and readily field adjustable without special tools.
- c. Attach a flow chart to each unit. Base acoustic performance of the terminal units upon units tested according to AHRI 880 I-P with the calculations prepared in accordance with AHRI 885. Provide sound power level as indicated. Show discharge sound power for minimum and 1-1/2 inches water gauge inlet static pressure. Provide acoustical lining according to NFPA 90A.

2.11.2.1 Variable Volume and Constant Volume, Single Duct Terminal Units

Provide variable volume and constant volume, single duct, terminal units with a calibrated air volume sensing device, air valve or damper, actuator, and accessory relays. Provide units that control air volume to within plus

or minus 5 percent of each air set point volume with variations in inlet pressures from 1/2 to 6 inch water gauge. Air set point for variable volume terminal unit shall be as determined by the building controls and space carbon dioxide sensors. Provide units with an internal resistance as indicated.. Provide external differential pressure taps separate from the control pressure taps for air flow measurement with a 0 to 1 inch water gauge range.

2.12 FACTORY PAINTING

Factory paint new equipment, which are not of galvanized construction. Paint with a corrosion resisting paint finish according to ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A924/A924M. Clean, phosphatize and coat internal and external ferrous metal surfaces with a paint finish which has been tested according to ASTM B117, ASTM D1654, and ASTM D3359. Submit evidence of satisfactory paint performance for a minimum of 125 hours for units to be installed indoors and 500 hours for units to be installed outdoors. Provide rating of failure at the scribe mark that is not less than 6, average creepage not greater than 1/8 inch. Provide rating of the inscribed area that is not less than 10, no failure. On units constructed of galvanized steel that have been welded, provide a final shop docket of zinc-rich protective paint on exterior surfaces of welds or welds that have burned through from the interior according to ASTM D520 Type I.

Field paint factory painting that has been damaged prior to acceptance by the Contracting Officer in compliance with the requirements of paragraph FIELD PAINTING OF MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT.

2.13 SUPPLEMENTAL COMPONENTS/SERVICES

2.13.1 Chilled and Heating Water Piping

The requirements for chilled, condenser, or dual service water piping and accessories are specified in Section 23 64 26 CHILLED, CHILLED-HOT, AND CONDENSER WATER PIPING SYSTEMS

2.13.2 Refrigerant Piping

The requirements for refrigerant piping are specified in Section 23 23 00 REFRIGERANT PIPING.

2.13.3 Condensate Drain Lines

Provide and install condensate drainage for each item of equipment that generates condensate in accordance with Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE except as modified herein.

2.13.4 Backflow Preventers

The requirements for backflow preventers are specified in Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.

2.13.5 Insulation

The requirements for shop and field applied insulation are specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

2.13.6 Controls

The requirements for controls are specified in Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC SYSTEMS and Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC and Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing the work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- a. Install materials and equipment in accordance with the requirements of the contract drawings and approved manufacturer's installation instructions. Accomplish installation by workers skilled in this type of work. Perform installation so that there is no degradation of the designed fire ratings of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors.
- b. No installation is permitted to block or otherwise impede access to any existing machine or system. Install all hinged doors to swing open a minimum of 120 degrees. Provide an area in front of all access doors that clears a minimum of 3 feet. In front of all access doors to electrical circuits, clear the area the minimum distance to energized circuits as specified in OSHA Standards, part 1910.333 (Electrical-Safety Related work practices) and an additional 3 feet.
- c. Except as otherwise indicated, install emergency switches and alarms in conspicuous locations. Mount all indicators, to include gauges, meters, and alarms in order to be easily visible by people in the area.

3.2.1 Condensate Drain Lines

Provide water seals in the condensate drain from all units. Provide a depth of each seal of 2 inches plus the number of inches, measured in water gauge, of the total static pressure rating of the unit to which the drain is connected. Provide water seals that are constructed of 2 tees and an appropriate U-bend with the open end of each tee plugged. Provide pipe cap or plug cleanouts where indicated. Connect drains indicated to connect to the sanitary waste system using an indirect waste fitting. Insulate air conditioner drain lines as specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

3.2.2 Equipment and Installation

Provide frames and supports for tanks, compressors, pumps, valves, air handling units, fans, coils, dampers, and other similar items requiring supports. Floor mount or ceiling hang air handling units as indicated. Anchor and fasten as detailed. Set floor-mounted equipment on not less than 6 inch concrete pads or curbs doweled in place unless otherwise indicated. Make concrete foundations heavy enough to minimize the intensity of the vibrations transmitted to the piping, duct work and the surrounding structure, as recommended in writing by the equipment manufacturer. In lieu of a concrete pad foundation, build a concrete pedestal block with isolators placed between the pedestal block and the

floor. Make the concrete foundation or concrete pedestal block a mass not less than three times the weight of the components to be supported. Provide the lines connected to the pump mounted on pedestal blocks with flexible connectors. Submit foundation drawings as specified in paragraph DETAIL DRAWINGS. Provide concrete for foundations as specified in Section 03 30 00 CAST IN PLACE CONCRETE.

3.2.3 Access Panels

Install access panels for concealed valves, vents, controls, dampers, and items requiring inspection or maintenance of sufficient size, and locate them so that the concealed items are easily serviced and maintained or completely removed and replaced. Provide access panels as specified in Section 05 50 13 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FABRICATIONS.

3.2.4 Flexible Duct

Install pre-insulated flexible duct in accordance with the latest printed instructions of the manufacturer to ensure a vapor tight joint. Provide hangers, when required to suspend the duct, of the type recommended by the duct manufacturer and set at the intervals recommended.

3.2.5 Metal Ductwork

Install according to SMACNA 1966 unless otherwise indicated. Install duct supports for sheet metal ductwork according to SMACNA 1966, unless otherwise specified. Do not use friction beam clamps indicated in SMACNA 1966. Anchor risers on high velocity ducts in the center of the vertical run to allow ends of riser to move due to thermal expansion. Erect supports on the risers that allow free vertical movement of the duct. Attach supports only to structural framing members and concrete slabs. Do not anchor supports to metal decking unless a means is provided and approved for preventing the anchor from puncturing the metal decking. Where supports are required between structural framing members, provide suitable intermediate metal framing. Where C-clamps are used, provide retainer clips.

3.2.6 Dust Control

To prevent the accumulation of dust, debris and foreign material during construction, perform temporary dust control protection. Protect the distribution system (supply and return) with temporary seal-offs at all inlets and outlets at the end of each day's work. Keep temporary protection in place until system is ready for startup.

3.2.7 Insulation

Provide thickness and application of insulation materials for ductwork, piping, and equipment according to Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS. Externally insulate outdoor air intake ducts and plenums up to the point where the outdoor air reaches the conditioning unit.

3.2.8 Duct Test Holes

Provide holes with closures or threaded holes with plugs in ducts and plenums as indicated or where necessary for the use of pitot tube in balancing the air system. Plug insulated duct at the duct surface, patched over with insulation and then marked to indicate location of test hole if needed for future use.

3.2.9 Power Transmission Components Adjustment

Test V-belts and sheaves for proper alignment and tension prior to operation and after 72 hours of operation at final speed. Uniformly load belts on drive side to prevent bouncing. Make alignment of direct driven couplings to within 50 percent of manufacturer's maximum allowable range of misalignment.

3.3 EQUIPMENT PADS

Provide equipment pads to the dimensions shown or, if not shown, to conform to the shape of each piece of equipment served with a minimum 3-inch margin around the equipment and supports. Allow equipment bases and foundations, when constructed of concrete or grout, to cure a minimum of 14 calendar days before being loaded.

3.4 CUTTING AND PATCHING

Install work in such a manner and at such time that a minimum of cutting and patching of the building structure is required. Make holes in exposed locations, in or through existing floors, by drilling and smooth by sanding. Use of a jackhammer is permitted only where specifically approved. Make holes through masonry walls to accommodate sleeves with an iron pipe masonry core saw.

3.5 CLEANING

Thoroughly clean surfaces of piping and equipment that have become covered with dirt, plaster, or other material during handling and construction before such surfaces are prepared for final finish painting or are enclosed within the building structure. Before final acceptance, clean mechanical equipment, including piping, ducting, and fixtures, and free from dirt, grease, and finger marks. Protect all furniture and equipment from dirt and debris. Incorporate housekeeping for field construction work which leaves all furniture and equipment in the affected area free of construction generated dust and debris; and, all floor surfaces vacuum-swept clean.

3.6 PENETRATIONS

Provide sleeves and prepared openings for duct mains, branches, and other penetrating items, and install during the construction of the surface to be penetrated. Cut sleeves flush with each surface. Place sleeves for round duct 15 inches and smaller. Build framed, prepared openings for round duct larger than 15 inches and square, rectangular or oval ducts. Sleeves and framed openings are also required where grilles, registers, and diffusers are installed at the openings. Provide one inch clearance between penetrating and penetrated surfaces except at grilles, registers, and diffusers. Pack spaces between sleeve or opening and duct or duct insulation with mineral fiber conforming with ASTM C553, Type 1, Class B-2.

3.6.1 Sleeves

Fabricate sleeves, except as otherwise specified or indicated, from 20 gauge thick mill galvanized sheet metal. Where sleeves are installed in bearing walls or partitions, provide black steel pipe conforming with ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 20.

3.6.2 Framed Prepared Openings

Fabricate framed prepared openings from 20 gauge galvanized steel, unless otherwise indicated.

3.6.3 Insulation

Provide duct insulation in accordance with Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS continuous through sleeves and prepared openings except firewall penetrations. Terminate duct insulation at fire dampers and flexible connections. For duct handling air at or below 60 degrees F, provide insulation continuous over the damper collar and retaining angle of fire dampers, which are exposed to unconditioned air.

3.6.4 Closure Collars

Provide closure collars of a minimum 4 inches wide, unless otherwise indicated, for exposed ducts and items on each side of penetrated surface, except where equipment is installed. Install collar tight against the surface and fit snugly around the duct or insulation. Grind sharp edges smooth to prevent damage to penetrating surface. Fabricate collars for round ducts 15 inches in diameter or less from 20 gauge galvanized steel. Fabricate collars for square and rectangular ducts, or round ducts with minimum dimension over 15 inches from 18 gauge galvanized steel. Fabricate collars for square and rectangular ducts with a maximum side of 15 inches or less from 20 gauge galvanized steel. Install collars with fasteners a maximum of 6 inches on center. Attach to collars a minimum of 4 fasteners where the opening is 12 inches in diameter or less, and a minimum of 8 fasteners where the opening is 20 inches in diameter or less.

3.6.5 Firestopping

Where ducts pass through fire-rated walls, fire partitions, and fire rated chase walls, seal the penetration with fire stopping materials as specified in Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

3.7 FIELD PAINTING OF MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT

Clean, pretreat, prime and paint metal surfaces; except aluminum surfaces need not be painted. Apply coatings to clean dry surfaces. Clean the surfaces to remove dust, dirt, rust, oil and grease by wire brushing and solvent degreasing prior to application of paint, except clean to bare metal on metal surfaces subject to temperatures in excess of 120 degrees F. Where more than one coat of paint is specified, apply the second coat after the preceding coat is thoroughly dry. Lightly sand damaged painting and retouch before applying the succeeding coat. Provide aluminum or light gray finish coat.

3.7.1 Temperatures less than 120 degrees F

Immediately after cleaning, apply one coat of pretreatment primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 0.3 mil, one coat of primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of one mil; and two coats of enamel applied to a minimum dry film thickness of one mil per coat to metal surfaces subject to temperatures less than 120 degrees F.

3.7.2 Temperatures between 120 and 400 degrees F

Apply two coats of 400 degrees F heat-resisting enamel applied to a total

minimum thickness of two mils to metal surfaces subject to temperatures between 120 and 400 degrees F.

3.7.3 Temperatures greater than 400 degrees F

Apply two coats of 315 degrees C 600 degrees F heat-resisting paint applied to a total minimum dry film thickness of two mils to metal surfaces subject to temperatures greater than 400 degrees F.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION SYSTEMS

Provide identification tags made of brass, engraved laminated plastic, or engraved anodized aluminum, indicating service and item number on all valves and dampers. Provide tags that are 1-3/8 inch minimum diameter with stamped or engraved markings. Make indentations black for reading clarity. Attach tags to valves with No. 12 AWG 0.0808-inch diameter corrosion-resistant steel wire, copper wire, chrome-plated beaded chain or plastic straps designed for that purpose.

3.9 DUCTWORK LEAK TESTS

The requirements for ductwork leak tests are specified in Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING FOR HVAC.

3.10 DAMPER ACCEPTANCE TEST

Submit the proposed schedule, at least 2 weeks prior to the start of test. Operate all fire dampers and smoke dampers under normal operating conditions, prior to the occupancy of a building to determine that they function properly. Test each fire damper equipped with fusible link by having the fusible link cut in place. Test dynamic fire dampers with the air handling and distribution system running. Reset all fire dampers with the fusible links replaced after acceptance testing. To ensure optimum operation and performance, install the damper so it is square and free from racking.

3.11 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

The requirements for testing, adjusting, and balancing are specified in Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING FOR HVAC. Begin testing, adjusting, and balancing only when the air supply and distribution, including controls, has been completed, with the exception of performance tests.

3.12 PERFORMANCE TESTS

After testing, adjusting, and balancing is complete as specified, test each system as a whole to see that all items perform as integral parts of the system and temperatures and conditions are evenly controlled throughout the building. Record the testing during the applicable season. Make corrections and adjustments as necessary to produce the conditions indicated or specified. Conduct capacity tests and general operating tests by an experienced engineer. Provide tests that cover a period of not less than 7 days for each system and demonstrate that the entire system is functioning according to the specifications. Make coincidental chart recordings at points indicated on the drawings for the duration of the time period and record the temperature at space thermostats or space sensors, the humidity at space humidistats or space sensors and the ambient temperature and humidity in a shaded and weather protected area.

Submit test reports for the ductwork leak test, and performance tests in booklet form, upon completion of testing. Document phases of tests performed including initial test summary, repairs/adjustments made, and final test results in the reports.

3.13 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

Provide a temporary bypass for water coils to prevent flushing water from passing through coils. Inside of **energy recovery unit**, room fan-coil units, air terminal units, thoroughly clean ducts, plenums, and casing of debris and blow free of small particles of rubbish and dust and then vacuum clean before installing outlet faces. Wipe equipment clean, with no traces of oil, dust, dirt, or paint spots. Provide temporary filters prior to startup of all fans that are operated during construction, and provide new filters after all construction dirt has been removed from the building, and the ducts, plenums, casings, and other items specified have been vacuum cleaned. Perform and document that proper "**Indoor Air Quality During Construction**" procedures have been followed; provide documentation showing that after construction ends, and prior to occupancy, new filters were provided and installed. Maintain system in this clean condition until final acceptance. Properly lubricate bearings with oil or grease as recommended by the manufacturer. Tighten belts to proper tension. Adjust control valves and other miscellaneous equipment requiring adjustment to setting indicated or directed. Adjust fans to the speed indicated by the manufacturer to meet specified conditions. Maintain all equipment installed under the contract until close out documentation is received, the project is completed and the building has been documented as beneficially occupied.

3.14 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE

3.14.1 **Operation and Maintenance Manuals**

Submit six manuals at least 2 weeks prior to field training. Submit data complying with the requirements specified in Section **01 78 23** OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA. Submit Data Package 3 for the items/units listed under SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

3.14.2 **Operation And Maintenance Training**

Conduct a training course for the members of the operating staff as designated by the Contracting Officer. Make the training period consist of a total of 8 hours of normal working time and start it after all work specified herein is functionally completed and the Performance Tests have been approved. Conduct field instruction that covers all of the items contained in the Operation and Maintenance Manuals as well as demonstrations of routine maintenance operations. Submit the proposed On-site Training schedule concurrently with the Operation and Maintenance Manuals and at least 14 days prior to conducting the training course.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 03 00.00 20

BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS

08/10

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM B117 (2016) Standard Practice for Operating
Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

This section applies to all sections of Divisions: 21, FIRE SUPPRESSION; 22, PLUMBING; and 23, HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING of this project specification, unless specified otherwise in the individual section.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.3.1 Material and Equipment Qualifications

Provide materials and equipment that are standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products, which are of a similar material, design and workmanship. Standard products must have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening. The 2-year use must include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The product must have been for sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2 year period.

1.3.2 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a two-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturer's factory or laboratory tests, can be shown.

1.3.3 Service Support

The equipment items must be supported by service organizations. Submit a certified list of qualified permanent service organizations for support of the equipment which includes their addresses and qualifications. These service organizations must be reasonably convenient to the equipment installation and able to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

1.3.4 Manufacturer's Nameplate

For each item of equipment, provide a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent will not be

acceptable.

1.3.5 Modification of References

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "must" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction", or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer.

1.3.5.1 Definitions

For the International Code Council (ICC) Codes referenced in the contract documents, advisory provisions must be considered mandatory, the word "should" is interpreted as "must." Reference to the "code official" must be interpreted to mean the "Contracting Officer." For Navy owned property, references to the "owner" must be interpreted to mean the "Contracting Officer." For leased facilities, references to the "owner" must be interpreted to mean the "lessor." References to the "permit holder" must be interpreted to mean the "Contractor."

1.3.5.2 Administrative Interpretations

For ICC Codes referenced in the contract documents, the provisions of Chapter 1, "Administrator," do not apply. These administrative requirements are covered by the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulations (FAR) included in this contract and by the authority granted to the Officer in Charge of Construction to administer the construction of this project. References in the ICC Codes to sections of Chapter 1, must be applied appropriately by the Contracting Officer as authorized by his administrative cognizance and the FAR.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Handle, store, and protect equipment and materials to prevent damage before and during installation in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and as approved by the Contracting Officer. Replace damaged or defective items.

1.5 ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

Furnish motors, controllers, disconnects and contactors with their respective pieces of equipment. Motors, controllers, disconnects and contactors must conform to and have electrical connections provided under Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Furnish internal wiring for components of packaged equipment as an integral part of the equipment. Extended voltage range motors will not be permitted. Controllers and contactors shall have a maximum of 120 volt control circuits, and must have auxiliary contacts for use with the controls furnished. When motors and equipment furnished are larger than sizes indicated, the cost of additional electrical service and related work must be included under the section that specified that motor or equipment. Power wiring and conduit for field installed equipment must be provided under and conform to the requirements of Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

1.6 INSTRUCTION TO GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL

When specified in other sections, furnish the services of competent instructors to give full instruction to the designated Government personnel

in the adjustment, operation, and maintenance, including pertinent safety requirements, of the specified equipment or system. Instructors must be thoroughly familiar with all parts of the installation and must be trained in operating theory as well as practical operation and maintenance work.

Instruction must be given during the first regular work week after the equipment or system has been accepted and turned over to the Government for regular operation. The number of man-days (8 hours per day) of instruction furnished must be as specified in the individual section. When more than 4 man-days of instruction are specified, use approximately half of the time for classroom instruction. Use other time for instruction with the equipment or system.

When significant changes or modifications in the equipment or system are made under the terms of the contract, provide additional instruction to acquaint the operating personnel with the changes or modifications.

1.7 ACCESSIBILITY

Install all work so that parts requiring periodic inspection, operation, maintenance, and repair are readily accessible. Install concealed valves, expansion joints, controls, dampers, and equipment requiring access, in locations freely accessible through access doors.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PAINTING OF NEW EQUIPMENT

New equipment painting must be factory applied or shop applied, and must be as specified herein, and provided under each individual section.

3.1.1 Factory Painting Systems

Manufacturer's standard factory painting systems may be provided subject to certification that the factory painting system applied will withstand 125 hours in a salt-spray fog test, except that equipment located outdoors must withstand 3000 hours in a salt-spray fog test. Salt-spray fog test must be in accordance with ASTM B117, and for that test the acceptance criteria must be as follows: immediately after completion of the test, the paint must show no signs of blistering, wrinkling, or cracking, and no loss of adhesion; and the specimen must show no signs of rust creepage beyond 0.125 inch on either side of the scratch mark.

The film thickness of the factory painting system applied on the equipment must not be less than the film thickness used on the test specimen. If manufacturer's standard factory painting system is being proposed for use on surfaces subject to temperatures above 120 degrees F, the factory painting system must be designed for the temperature service.

3.1.2 Shop Painting Systems for Metal Surfaces

Clean, pretreat, prime and paint metal surfaces; except aluminum surfaces need not be painted. Apply coatings to clean dry surfaces. Clean the surfaces to remove dust, dirt, rust, oil and grease by wire brushing and solvent degreasing prior to application of paint, except metal surfaces

subject to temperatures in excess of 120 degrees F must be cleaned to bare metal.

Where more than one coat of paint is specified, apply the second coat after the preceding coat is thoroughly dry. Lightly sand damaged painting and retouch before applying the succeeding coat. Color of finish coat must be aluminum or light gray.

- a. Temperatures Less Than 120 Degrees F: Immediately after cleaning, the metal surfaces subject to temperatures less than 120 degrees F must receive one coat of pretreatment primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 0.3 mil, one coat of primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil; and two coats of enamel applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil per coat.
- b. Temperatures Between 120 and 400 Degrees F: Metal surfaces subject to temperatures between 120 and 400 degrees F must receive two coats of 400 degrees F heat-resisting enamel applied to a total minimum thickness of 2 mils.
- c. Temperatures Greater Than 400 Degrees F: Metal surfaces subject to temperatures greater than 400 degrees F must receive two coats of 600 degrees F heat-resisting paint applied to a total minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 05 15

COMMON PIPING FOR HVAC

02/14

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION (AISC)

AISC 325 (2017) Steel Construction Manual

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4 (2015) Relief Valves for Hot Water Supply Systems

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS WHB-2.9 (2004) Welding Handbook; Volume 2, Welding Processes, Part 1

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 (2018; ERTA 2018) Standard for Vitreous China Plumbing Fixtures and Hydraulic Requirements for Water Closets and Urinals

ASME B16.1 (2015) Gray Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings Classes 25, 125, and 250

ASME B16.22 (2013) Standard for Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings

ASME B16.3 (2016) Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings, Classes 150 and 300

ASME B16.39 (2014) Standard for Malleable Iron Threaded Pipe Unions; Classes 150, 250, and 300

ASME B16.5 (2017) Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings NPS 1/2 Through NPS 24 Metric/Inch Standard

ASME B16.9 (2018) Factory-Made Wrought Buttwelding Fittings

ASME B31.3 (2016) Process Piping

ASME B40.100 (2013) Pressure Gauges and Gauge Attachments

ASME BPVC SEC IX (2017; Errata 2018) BPVC Section

IX-Welding, Brazing and Fusing
Qualifications

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A126	(2004; R 2014) Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings for Valves, Flanges, and Pipe Fittings
ASTM A197/A197M	(2000; R 2015) Standard Specification for Cupola Malleable Iron
ASTM A234/A234M	(2018) Standard Specification for Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Moderate and High Temperature Service
ASTM A278/A278M	(2015) Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings for Pressure-Containing Parts for Temperatures Up to 650 degrees F (350 degrees C)
ASTM A307	(2014; E 2017) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength
ASTM A53/A53M	(2018) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
ASTM A563	(2015) Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts
ASTM A6/A6M	(2017a) Standard Specification for General Requirements for Rolled Structural Steel Bars, Plates, Shapes, and Sheet Piling
ASTM B117	(2016) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus
ASTM B32	(2008; R 2014) Standard Specification for Solder Metal
ASTM B370	(2012) Standard Specification for Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction
ASTM B749	(2014) Standard Specification for Lead and Lead Alloy Strip, Sheet and Plate Products
ASTM B88	(2016) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube
ASTM C109/C109M	(2016a) Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars (Using 2-in. or (50-mm) Cube Specimens)
ASTM C404	(2011; R 2017) Standard Specification for Aggregates for Masonry Grout

ASTM C476	(2018) Standard Specification for Grout for Masonry
ASTM C553	(2013) Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Commercial and Industrial Applications
ASTM C67/C67M	(2018) Standard Test Methods for Sampling and Testing Brick and Structural Clay Tile
ASTM C920	(2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
ASTM D2308	(2007; R 2013) Standard Specification for Thermoplastic Polyethylene Jacket for Electrical Wire and Cable
ASTM E814	(2013a; R 2017) Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Penetration Firestop Systems
ASTM F104	(2011) Standard Classification System for Nonmetallic Gasket Materials
ASTM F2389	(2017a) Standard Specification for Pressure-rated Polypropylene (PP) Piping Systems

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 515	(2017) Standard for the Testing, Design, Installation, and Maintenance of Electrical Resistance Heat Tracing for Industrial Applications

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-125	(2010) Gray Iron and Ductile Iron In-Line, Spring-Loaded, Center-Guided Check Valves
MSS SP-58	(2009) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design and Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation
MSS SP-67	(2017; Errata 1 2017) Butterfly Valves
MSS SP-70	(2011) Gray Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends
MSS SP-72	(2010a) Ball Valves with Flanged or Butt-Welding Ends for General Service
MSS SP-80	(2013) Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle and Check Valves

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

MIL-C-18480	(1982; Rev B; Notice 2 2009) Coating

Compound, Bituminous, Solvent, Coal-Tar
Base

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

CID A-A-1922	(Rev A; Notice 3) Shield, Expansion (Caulking Anchors, Single Lead)
CID A-A-1923	(Rev A; Notice 3) Shield, Expansion (Lag, Machine and Externally Threaded Wedge Bolt Anchors)
CID A-A-1924	(Rev A; Notice 3) Shield, Expansion (Self Drilling Tubular Expansion Shell Bolt Anchors)
CID A-A-1925	(Rev A; Notice 3) Shield Expansion (Nail Anchors)
CID A-A-55614	(Basic; Notice 2) Shield, Expansion (Non-Drilling Expansion Anchors)
CID A-A-55615	(Basic; Notice 3) Shield, Expansion (Wood Screw and Lag Bolt Self-Threading Anchors)

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 1479	(2015) Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Firestops

1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Section 23 00 00 AIR SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION, AND EXHAUST SYSTEMS applies to work specified in this section

Include with [Equipment Foundation Data](#) for piping systems all plan dimensions of foundations and relative elevations, equipment weight and operating loads, horizontal and vertical loads, horizontal and vertical clearances for installation, and size and location of anchor bolts.

Submit [Fabrication Drawings](#) for pipes, valves and specialties consisting of fabrication and assembly details to be performed in the factory.

Submit [Material, Equipment, and Fixture Lists](#) for pipes, valves and specialties including manufacturer's style or catalog numbers, specification and drawing reference numbers, warranty information, and fabrication site information. Provide a complete list of construction equipment to be used.

Submit [Manufacturer's Standard Color Charts](#) for pipes, valves and specialties showing the manufacturer's recommended color and finish selections.

Include with [Listing of Product Installations](#) for piping systems identification of at least 5 units, similar to those proposed for use, that have been in successful service for a minimum period of 5 years. Include in the list purchaser, address of installation, service organization, and date of installation.

Submit [Record Drawings](#) for pipes, valves and accessories providing current factual information including deviations and amendments to the drawings, and concealed and visible changes in the work.

Submit [Connection Diagrams](#) for pipes, valves and specialties indicating the relations and connections of devices and apparatus by showing the general physical layout of all controls, the interconnection of one system (or portion of system) with another, and internal tubing, wiring, and other devices.

Submit [Coordination Drawings](#) for pipes, valves and specialties showing coordination of work between different trades and with the structural and architectural elements of work. Detail all drawings sufficiently to show overall dimensions of related items, clearances, and relative locations of work in allotted spaces. Indicate on drawings where conflicts or clearance problems exist between various trades.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

[SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals](#)

[Material, Equipment, and Fixture Lists; G](#)

[SD-02 Shop Drawings](#)

[Record Drawings; G](#)

[Connection Diagrams; G](#)

[Coordination Drawings; G](#)

[Fabrication Drawings; G](#)

[Installation Drawings; G](#)

[SD-03 Product Data](#)

[Pipe and Fittings; G](#)

[Piping Specialties; G](#)

[Valves; G](#)

[Miscellaneous Materials; G](#)

[Supporting Elements; G](#)

[Equipment Foundation Data; G](#)

[SD-04 Samples](#)

[Manufacturer's Standard Color Charts; G](#)

SD-05 Design Data

Pipe and Fittings; G

Piping Specialties; G

Valves; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Hydrostatic Tests; G

Air Tests; G

Valve-Operating Tests; G

Drainage Tests; G

Pneumatic Tests; G

Non-Destructive Electric Tests; G

System Operation Tests; G

SD-07 Certificates

Record of Satisfactory Field Operation; G

List of Qualified Permanent Service Organizations; G

Listing of Product Installations; G

Surface Resistance; G

Shear and Tensile Strengths; G

Temperature Ratings; G

Bending Tests; G

Flattening Tests; G

Transverse Guided Weld Bend Tests; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance Manuals; G

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4.1 Material and Equipment Qualifications

Provide materials and equipment that are standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products, which are of a similar material, design and workmanship. Provide standard products in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening. The 2-year use includes applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. Ensure the product has

been for sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2 year period.

1.4.2 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a two-year field service record are acceptable if a certified [record of satisfactory field operation](#) for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturer's factory or laboratory tests, can be shown.

1.4.3 Service Support

Ensure the equipment items are supported by service organizations. Submit a certified [list of qualified permanent service organizations](#) for support of the equipment which includes their addresses and qualifications. Select service organizations that are reasonably convenient to the equipment installation and able to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

1.4.4 Manufacturer's Nameplate

Provide a nameplate on each item of equipment bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent is not acceptable.

1.4.5 Modification of References

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "shall" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction," or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer.

1.4.5.1 Definitions

For the International Code Council (ICC) Codes referenced in the contract documents, advisory provisions are considered mandatory, the word "should" is interpreted as "shall." Reference to the "code official" is interpreted to mean the "Contracting Officer." For Navy owned property, interpret references to the "owner" to mean the "Contracting Officer." For leased facilities, references to the "owner" is interpreted to mean the "lessor." References to the "permit holder" are interpreted to mean the "Contractor."

1.4.5.2 Administrative Interpretations

For ICC Codes referenced in the contract documents, the provisions of Chapter 1, "Administrator," do not apply. These administrative requirements are covered by the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulations (FAR) included in this contract and by the authority granted to the Officer in Charge of Construction to administer the construction of this project. References in the ICC Codes to sections of Chapter 1, are applied as appropriate by the Contracting Officer and as authorized by his administrative cognizance and the FAR.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Handle, store, and protect equipment and materials to prevent damage before and during installation in accordance with the manufacturer's

recommendations, and as approved by the Contracting Officer. Replace damaged or defective items.

1.6 ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

Furnish motors, controllers, disconnects and contactors with their respective pieces of equipment. Ensure motors, controllers, disconnects and contactors conform to and have electrical connections provided under Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Furnish internal wiring for components of packaged equipment as an integral part of the equipment. Extended voltage range motors is not permitted. Provide controllers and contactors with a maximum of 120 volt control circuits, and auxiliary contacts for use with the controls furnished. When motors and equipment furnished are larger than sizes indicated, include the cost of additional electrical service and related work under the section that specified that motor or equipment. Provide power wiring and conduit for field installed equipment under and conform to the requirements of Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

1.7 INSTRUCTION TO GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL

When specified in other sections, furnish the services of competent instructors to give full instruction to the designated Government personnel in the adjustment, operation, and maintenance, including pertinent safety requirements, of the specified equipment or system. Provide instructors thoroughly familiar with all parts of the installation and trained in operating theory as well as practical operation and maintenance work.

Give instruction during the first regular work week after the equipment or system has been accepted and turned over to the Government for regular operation. The number of man-days (8 hours per day) of instruction furnished is as specified in the individual section. When more than 4 man-days of instruction are specified, use approximately half of the time for classroom instruction. Use other time for instruction with the equipment or system.

When significant changes or modifications in the equipment or system are made under the terms of the contract, provide additional instruction to acquaint the operating personnel with the changes or modifications.

1.8 ACCESSIBILITY

Install all work so that parts requiring periodic inspection, operation, maintenance, and repair are readily accessible. Install concealed valves, expansion joints, controls, dampers, and equipment requiring access, in locations freely accessible through access doors.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 ELECTRICAL HEAT TRACING

Provide heat trace systems for pipes, valves, and fittings that are in accordance with IEEE 515 and be UL listed. System include all necessary components, including heaters and controls to prevent freezing.

Provide self-regulating heaters consisting of two 16 AWG tinned-copper bus wires embedded in parallel in a self-regulating polymer core that varies its power output to respond to temperature along its length. Ensure heater is able to be crossed over itself without overheating. Obtain approval

before used directly on plastic pipe. Cover heater with a radiation cross-linked modified polyolefin dielectric jacket in accordance with [ASTM D2308](#).

Provide heater with self-regulating factor of at least 90 percent, in order to provide energy conservation and to prevent overheating.

Operate heater on line voltages of 120 volts without the use of transformers.

Size Heater according to the following table:

Pipe Size

(Inch, Diameter)	Minus 10 degrees F	Minus 20 degrees F
3 inches or less	5 watts per foot (wpf)	5 wpf
4 inch	5 wpf	8 wpf
6 inch	8 wpf	8 wpf
8 inch	2 strips/5 wpf	2 strips/8 wpf
12 inch	2 strips/8 wpf	2 strips/8 wpf

Control systems by an ambient sensing thermostat set at 40 degrees F either directly or through an appropriate contactor.

2.2 PIPE AND FITTINGS

Submit equipment and performance data for [pipe and fittings](#) consisting of corrosion resistance, life expectancy, gage tolerances, and grade line analysis. Submit design analysis and calculations consisting of surface resistance, rates of flow, head losses, inlet and outlet design, required radius of bend, and pressure calculations. Also include in data pipe size, shape, and dimensions, as well as temperature ratings, vibration and thrust limitations minimum burst pressures, shut-off and non-shock pressures and weld characteristics.

2.2.1 Type BCS, Black Carbon Steel

Ensure pipe [1/8 through 10 inches](#) is Schedule 40 seamless or electric-resistance welded black carbon steel, conforming to [ASTM A53/A53M](#), Type E, Grade B (electric-resistance welded) [or](#) Type S (seamless). Grade A should be used for permissible field bending, in both cases.

Ensure fittings [2 inches and under](#) are [150-pounds per square inch, gage \(psig\)](#) working steam pressure (wsp) banded black malleable iron screwed, conforming to [ASTM A197/A197M](#) and [ASME B16.3](#).

Ensure unions [2 inches and under](#) are [250 pounds per square inch, wsp](#) female, screwed, black malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, and ground joint, conforming to [ASME B16.39](#).

Ensure fittings [2-1/2 inches and over](#) are Steel butt weld, conforming to [ASTM A234/A234M](#) and [ASME B16.9](#) to match pipe wall thickness.

Ensure flanges 2-1/2 inches and over are 150-pound forged-steel conforming to ASME B16.5, welding neck to match pipe wall thickness.

2.2.2 Type CPR, Copper

2.2.2.1 Type CPR-A, Copper Above Ground

Ensure tubing 2 inches and under is seamless copper tubing, conforming to ASTM B88, Type L (hard-drawn for all horizontal and all exposed vertical lines, annealed for concealed vertical lines).

Ensure fittings 2 inches and under are 150-psig wsp wrought-copper solder joint fittings conforming to ASME B16.22.

Ensure unions 2 inches and under are 150-psig wsp wrought-copper solder joint, conforming to ASME B16.22.

Use solder, alloy Sb-5, conforming to ASTM B32.

2.3 PIPING SPECIALTIES

Submit equipment and performance data for piping specialties consisting of corrosion resistance, life expectancy, gage tolerances, and grade line analysis. Submit design analysis and calculations consisting of surface resistance, rates of flow, head losses, inlet and outlet design, required radius of bend, and pressure calculations. Also include in data pipe size, shape, and dimensions, as well as temperature ratings, vibration and thrust limitations minimum burst pressures, shut-off and non-shock pressures and weld characteristics.

2.3.1 Dielectric Connections

Electrically insulate dissimilar pipe metals from each other by couplings, unions, or flanges commercially manufactured for that purpose and rated for the service pressure and temperature.

2.3.2 Pressure Gages

Ensure pressure gages conform to ASME B40.100 and to requirements specified herein. Pressure-gage size is 3-1/2 inches nominal diameter. Ensure case is corrosion-resistant steel, conforming to any of the AISI 300 series of ASTM A6/A6M, with an ASM No. 4 standard commercial polish or better. Equip gages with adjustable red marking pointer and damper-screw adjustment in inlet connection. Align service-pressure reading at midpoint of gage range. Ensure all gages are Grade B or better and be equipped with gage isolators.

2.3.3 Line Strainers, Water Service

Install Y-type strainers with removable basket. Ensure strainers in sizes 2-inch ips and smaller have screwed ends; in sizes 2-1/2-inch ips and larger, strainers have flanged ends. Ensure body working-pressure rating exceeds maximum service pressure of installed system by at least 50 percent. Ensure body has cast-in arrows to indicate direction of flow. Ensure all strainer bodies fitted with screwed screen retainers have straight threads and gasketed with nonferrous metal. For strainer bodies 2-1/2-inches and larger, fitted with bolted-on screen retainers, provide offset blowdown holes. Fit all strainers larger than 2-1/2-inches with manufacturer's standard ball-type blowdown valve. Ensure body material is

cast iron conforming to Class 30 [ASTM A278/A278M](#). Where system material is nonferrous, use nonferrous metal for the metal strainer body material.

Ensure minimum free-hole area of strainer element is equal to not less than 3.4 times the internal area of connecting piping. Strainer screens perforation size is not to exceed [0.045-inch](#). Ensure strainer screens have finished ends fitted to machined screen chamber surfaces to preclude bypass flow. Strainer element material is AISI Type 304 [or](#) 316 corrosion-resistant steel.

2.4 VALVES

Submit equipment and performance data for [valves](#) consisting of corrosion resistance and life expectancy. Submit design analysis and calculations consisting of rates of flow, head losses, inlet and outlet design, and pressure calculations. Also include in data, pipe dimensions, as well as temperature ratings, vibration and thrust limitations, minimum burst pressures, shut-off and non-shock pressures and weld characteristics.

Polypropylene valves will comply with the performance requirements of [ASTM F2389](#).

2.4.1 Ball and Butterfly Valves

Ensure ball valves conform to [MSS SP-72](#) for Figure 1B, [full port](#) vertically split body and are rated for service at not less than [175 psig at 200 degrees F](#). For valve bodies in sizes [2 inches](#) and smaller, use screwed-end connection-type constructed of Class A copper alloy. For valve bodies in sizes [2-1/2 inches](#) and larger, use flanged-end connection type, constructed of [carbon steel](#) material. Balls and stems of valves [2 inches](#) and smaller are manufacturer's standard with hard chrome plating finish. Balls and stems of valves [2-1/2 inches](#) and larger are manufacturer's standard Class C corrosion-resistant steel alloy with hard chrome plating. Ensure valves are suitable for flow from either direction and seal equally tight in either direction. Valves with ball seals held in place by spring washers are not acceptable. Ensure all valves have adjustable packing glands. Seats and seals are fabricated from tetrafluoroethylene. [Ball valves may be provided in lieu of gate valves.](#)

Ensure butterfly valves conform to [MSS SP-67](#) and are the wafer [or](#) [lug](#) type for mounting between specified flanges. Ensure valves are rated for [150-psig](#) shutoff and nonshock working pressure. Select bodies of cast ferrous metal conforming to [ASTM A126](#), Class B, and to [ASME B16.1](#) for body wall thickness. Seats and seals are fabricated from resilient elastomer designed for field removal and replacement. [Valves smaller than 8 inches shall have throttling handles with a minimum of seven locking positions.](#)

2.4.2 Gate Valves (GAV)

Ensure gate valves [2 inches](#) and smaller conform to [MSS SP-80](#). For valves located in equipment rooms, factory-assembled equipment, and where indicated use union-ring bonnet, screwed-end type. Make packing of non-asbestos type materials. Use rising stem type valves.

Ensure gate valves [2-1/2 inches](#) and larger, are Type I, (solid wedge disc, tapered seats, steam rated); Class 125 ([125-psig](#) steam-working pressure at [353 degrees F](#) saturation); and [200-psig](#), wog (nonshock), conforming to [MSS SP-70](#) and to requirements specified herein. Select flanged valves, with bronze trim and outside screw and yoke (OS&Y) construction. Make

packing of non-asbestos type materials.

2.4.3 Globe and Angle Valves (GLV-ANV)

Ensure globe and angle valves 2 inches and smaller, are 125-pound, 125-psi conforming to MSS SP-80 and to requirements specified herein. For valves located in equipment rooms, factory-assembled equipment, and where indicated, use union-ring bonnet, screwed-end type. Ensure disc is free to swivel on the stem in all valve sizes. Composition seating-surface disc construction may be substituted for all metal-disc construction. Make packing of non-asbestos type materials. Ensure disk and packing are suitable for pipe service installed.

Ensure globe and angle valves, 2-1/2 inches and larger, are cast iron with bronze trim. Ensure valve bodies are cast iron conforming to ASTM A126, Class A, as specified for Class 1 valves under MSS SP-80. Select flanged valves in conformance with ASME B16.1. Valve construction is outside screw and yoke (OS&Y) type. Make packing of non-asbestos type materials.

2.4.4 Standard Check Valves (SCV)

Ensure standard check valves in sizes 2 inches and smaller are 125-psi swing check valves except as otherwise specified. Provide lift checks where indicated. Ensure swing-check pins are nonferrous and suitably hard for the service. Select composition type discs. Ensure the swing-check angle of closure is manufacturer's standard unless a specific angle is needed.

Use cast iron, bronze trim, swing type check valves in sizes 2-1/2 inches and larger. Ensure valve bodies are cast iron, conforming to ASTM A126, Class A and valve ends are flanged in conformance with ASME B16.1. Swing-check pin is AISI Type or approved equal corrosion-resistant steel. Angle of closure is manufacturer's standard unless a specific angle is needed. Ensure valves have bolted and gasketed covers.

2.4.5 Nonslam Check Valves (NSV)

Provide check valves at pump discharges in sizes 2 inches and larger with nonslam or silent-check operation conforming to MSS SP-125. Select a valve disc or plate that closes before line flow can reverse to eliminate slam and water-hammer due to check-valve closure. Ensure valve is Class 125 rated for 200-psi maximum, nonshock pressure at 150 degrees F in sizes to 12 inches. Use valves that are fitted with flanges conforming to ASME B16.1. Valve body may be cast iron, or equivalent strength ductile iron. Select disks using manufacturer's standard bronze, aluminum bronze, or corrosion-resistant steel. Ensure pins, springs, and miscellaneous trim are manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant steel. Disk and shaft seals are Buna-N elastomer tetrafluoroethylene.

2.4.6 Calibrated Balancing Valves

Copper alloy or cast iron body, copper alloy or stainless internal working parts. Provide valve calibrated so that flow can be determined when the temperature and pressure differential across valve is known. Valve shall have an integral pointer which registers the degree of valve opening. Valve shall function as a service valve when in fully closed position. Valve shall be constructed with internal seals to prevent leakage and shall be supplied with preformed insulation.

Provide valve bodies with tapped openings and pipe extensions with positive shutoff valves outside of pipe insulation. The pipe extensions shall be provided with quick connecting hose fittings for a portable differential pressure meter connections to verify the pressure differential. Provide metal tag on each valve showing the gallons per minute flow for each differential pressure reading.

2.4.7 Pressure Relief Valve

Valve shall prevent excessive pressure in the piping system when the piping system reaches its maximum heat buildup. Valve, ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4 and shall have cast iron bodies with corrosion resistant internal working parts. The discharge pipe from the relief valve shall be the size of the valve outlet unless otherwise indicated.

2.4.8 Combination Pressure and Temperature Relief Valves

ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4, copper alloy body, automatic re-seating, test lever, and discharge capacity based on AGA temperature steam rating.

2.4.9 Air Venting Valves

Manually-operated general service type air venting valves, brass or bronze valves that are furnished with threaded plugs or caps. Automatic type air venting shall be the ball-float type with brass/bronze or brass bodies, 300 series corrosion-resistant steel float, linkage and removable seat. Air venting valves on water coils shall have not less than 1/8 inch threaded end connections. Air venting valves on water mains shall have not less than 3/4 inch threaded end connections. Air venting valves on all other applications shall have not less than 1/2 inch threaded end connections.

2.4.10 Drain Valves

Valves, MSS SP-80 gate valves. Valve shall be manually-operated, 3/4 inch pipe size and above with a threaded end connection. Provide valve with a water hose nipple adapter. Freeze-proof type valves shall be provided in installations exposed to freezing temperatures.

2.4.11 Vacuum Relief Valves

ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

Submit equipment and performance data for [miscellaneous materials](#) consisting of corrosion resistance, life expectancy, gage tolerances, and grade line analysis.

2.5.1 Bituminous Coating

Ensure the bituminous coating is a solvent cutback, heavy-bodied material to produce not less than a [12-mil](#) dry-film thickness in one coat, and is recommended by the manufacturer to be compatible with factory-applied coating and rubber joints.

For previously coal-tar coated and uncoated ferrous surfaces underground, use bituminous coating solvent cutback coal-tar type, conforming to [MIL-C-18480](#).

2.5.2 Bolting

Ensure flange and general purpose bolting is hex-head and conforms to [ASTM A307, Grade B](#) (bolts, for flanged joints in piping systems where one or both flanges are cast iron). Heavy hex-nuts conform to [ASTM A563](#). Square-head bolts and nuts are not acceptable. Ensure threads are coarse-thread series.

2.5.3 Elastomer Caulk

Use two-component polysulfide- or polyurethane-base elastomer caulking material, conforming to [ASTM C920](#).

2.5.4 Escutcheons

Manufacture escutcheons from nonferrous metals and chrome-plated except when AISI 300 series corrosion-resistant steel is provided. Ensure metals and finish conforms to [ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1](#).

Use one-piece escutcheons where mounted on chrome-plated pipe or tubing, and one-piece of split-pattern type elsewhere. Ensure all escutcheons have provisions consisting of internal spring-tension devices or setscrews for maintaining a fixed position against a surface.

2.5.5 Flashing

Ensure sheetlead conforms to [ASTM B749](#), UNS Alloy Number L50049 (intended for use in laboratories and shops in general application).

Ensure sheet copper conforms to [ASTM B370](#) and be not less than 16 ounces per square foot weight.

2.5.6 Flange Gaskets

Provide compressed non-asbestos sheets, conforming to [ASTM F104](#), coated on both sides with graphite or similar lubricant, with nitrile composition, binder rated to 750 degrees F.

2.5.7 Grout

Provide shrink-resistant grout as a premixed and packaged metallic-aggregate, mortar-grouting compound conforming to [ASTM C404](#) and [ASTM C476](#).

Ensure shrink-resistant grout is a combination of pre-measured and packaged epoxy polyamide or amine resins and selected aggregate mortar grouting compound conforming to the following requirements:

Tensile strength		1,900 psi, minimum
Compressive strength	ASTM C109/C109M	14,000 psi, minimum
Shrinkage, linear		0.00012 inch per inch, maximum
Water absorption	ASTM C67/C67M	0.1 percent, maximum
Bond strength to		1,000 psi, minimum steel in shear minimum

2.5.8 Pipe Thread Compounds

Use polytetrafluoroethylene tape not less than 2 to 3 mils thick in potable and process water and in chemical systems for pipe sizes to and including 1-inch ips. Use polytetrafluoroethylene dispersions and other suitable compounds for all other applications upon approval by the Contracting Officer; however, do not use lead-containing compounds in potable water systems.

2.6 SUPPORTING ELEMENTS

Submit equipment and performance data for the supporting elements consisting of corrosion resistance, life expectancy, gage tolerances, and grade line analysis.

Provide all necessary piping systems and equipment supporting elements, including but not limited to: building structure attachments; supplementary steel; hanger rods, stanchions, and fixtures; vertical pipe attachments; horizontal pipe attachments; anchors; guides; and spring-cushion, variable, or constant supports. Ensure supporting elements are suitable for stresses imposed by systems pressures and temperatures and natural and other external forces normal to this facility without damage to supporting element system or to work being supported.

Ensure supporting elements conform to requirements of ASME B31.3, and MSS SP-58, except as noted.

Ensure attachments welded to pipe are made of materials identical to that of pipe or materials accepted as permissible raw materials by referenced code or standard specification.

Ensure supporting elements exposed to weather are hot-dip galvanized or stainless steel. Select materials of such a nature that their apparent and latent-strength characteristics are not reduced due to galvanizing process. Electroplate supporting elements in contact with copper tubing with copper.

Type designations specified herein are based on MSS SP-58. Ensure masonry anchor group-, type-, and style-combination designations are in accordance with CID A-A-1922, CID A-A-1923, CID A-A-1924, CID A-A-1925, CID A-A-55614, and CID A-A-55615. Provide support elements, except for supplementary steel, that are cataloged, load rated, commercially manufactured products.

2.6.1 Building Structure Attachments

2.6.1.1 Anchor Devices, Concrete and Masonry

Ensure anchor devices conform to CID A-A-1922, CID A-A-1923, CID A-A-1924, CID A-A-1925, CID A-A-55614, and CID A-A-55615

For cast-in, floor mounted, equipment anchor devices, provide adjustable positions.

Do not use powder-actuated anchoring devices to support any mechanical systems components.

2.6.1.2 Beam Clamps

Ensure beam clamps are center-loading MSS SP-58 Type 21.

When it is not possible to use center-loading beam clamps, eccentric-loading beam clamps, MSS SP-58 Type 19 may be used for piping sizes 2 inches and less and for piping sizes 2 through 10 inches provided two counterbalancing clamps are used per point of pipe support. Where more than one rod is used per point of pipe support, determine rod diameter in accordance with referenced standards.

2.6.1.3 C-Clamps

Do not use C-clamps.

2.6.2 Horizontal Pipe Attachments

2.6.2.1 Single Pipes

Support piping in sizes to and including 2-inch ips by MSS SP-58 Type 6 solid malleable iron pipe rings, except that, use split-band-type rings in sizes up to 1-inch ips.

Support piping in sizes through 8-inch ips inclusive by MSS SP-58 Type 1 attachments.

Use MSS SP-58 Type 1 and Type 6 assemblies on vapor-sealed insulated piping and have an inside diameter larger than pipe being supported to provide adequate clearance during pipe movement.

Where thermal movement of a point in a piping system 4 inches and larger would cause a hanger rod to deflect more than 4 degrees from the vertical or where a horizontal point movement exceeds 1/2 inch, use MSS SP-58 Type 44 through 46 pipe rolls.

Use MSS SP-58 Type 40 shields on all insulated piping. Ensure area of the supporting surface is such that compression deformation of insulated surfaces does not occur. Roll away longitudinal and transverse shield edges from the insulation.

Provide insulated piping without vapor barrier on roll supports with MSS SP-58 Type 39 saddles.

Provide spring supports as indicated.

2.6.2.2 Parallel Pipes

Use trapeze hangers fabricated from structural steel shapes, with U-bolts, in congested areas and where multiple pipe runs occur. Ensure structural steel shapes conform to supplementary steel requirements or be of commercially available, proprietary design, rolled steel.

2.6.3 Vertical Pipe Attachments

Ensure vertical pipe attachments are MSS SP-58 Type 8.

Include complete fabrication and attachment details of any spring supports in shop drawings.

2.6.4 Hanger Rods and Fixtures

Use only circular cross section rod hangers to connect building structure

attachments to pipe support devices. Use pipe, straps, or bars of equivalent strength for hangers only where approved by the Contracting Officer.

Provide turnbuckles, swing eyes, and clevises as required by support system to accommodate temperature change, pipe accessibility, and adjustment for load and pitch. Rod couplings are not acceptable.

2.6.5 Supplementary Steel

Where it is necessary to frame structural members between existing members or where structural members are used in lieu of commercially rated supports, design and fabricate such supplementary steel in accordance with [AISC 325](#).

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PIPE INSTALLATION

Submit certificates for pipes, valves and specialties showing conformance with test requirements as contained in the reference standards contained in this section. Provide certificates verifying [Surface Resistance](#), [Shear and Tensile Strengths](#), [Temperature Ratings](#), [Bending Tests](#), [Flattening Tests](#) and [Transverse Guided Weld Bend Tests](#).

Provide test reports for [Hydrostatic Tests](#), [Air Tests](#), [Valve-Operating Tests](#), [Drainage Tests](#), [Pneumatic Tests](#), [Non-Destructive Electric Tests](#) and [System Operation Tests](#), in compliance with referenced standards contained within this section.

Fabricate and install piping systems in accordance with [ASME B31.3](#), [MSS SP-58](#), and [AWS WHB-2.9](#).

Submit [Installation Drawings](#) for pipes, valves and specialties. Drawings include the manufacturer's design and construction calculations, forces required to obtain rated axial, lateral, or angular movements, installation criteria, anchor and guide requirements for equipment, and equipment room layout and design. Ensure drawings specifically advise on procedures to be followed and provisions required to protect expansion joints during specified hydrostatic testing operations.

Ensure connections between steel piping and copper piping are electrically isolated from each other with dielectric couplings (or unions) [or](#) flanged with gaskets rated for the service.

Make final connections to equipment with unions [or](#) flanges provided every [100 feet](#) of straight run. Provide unions in the line downstream of screwed- and welded-end valves.

Ream all pipe ends before joint connections are made.

Make screwed joints with specified joint compound with not more than three threads showing after joint is made up.

Apply joint compounds to the male thread only and exercise care to prevent compound from reaching the unthreaded interior of the pipe.

Provide screwed unions, welded unions, or bolted flanges wherever required to permit convenient removal of equipment, valves, and piping accessories

from the piping system for maintenance.

Securely support piping systems with due allowance for thrust forces, thermal expansion and contraction. Do not subject the system to mechanical, chemical, vibrational or other damage as specified in [ASME B31.3](#).

Ensure field welded joints conform to the requirements of the [AWS WHB-2.9](#), [ASME B31.3](#), and [ASME BPVC SEC IX](#).

3.2 VALVES

Provide valves in piping mains and all branches and at equipment where indicated and as specified.

Provide valves to permit isolation of branch piping and each equipment item from the balance of the system.

Provide riser and downcomer drains above piping shutoff valves in piping [2-1/2 inches](#) and larger. Tap and fit shutoff valve body with a [1/2-inch](#) plugged globe valve.

Provide valves unavoidably located in furred or other normally inaccessible places with access panels adequately sized for the location and located so that concealed items may be serviced, maintained, or replaced.

3.3 SUPPORTING ELEMENTS INSTALLATION

Provide supporting elements in accordance with the referenced codes and standards.

Support piping from building structure. Do not support piping from roof deck or from other pipe.

Run piping parallel with the lines of the building. Space and install piping and components so that a threaded pipe fitting may be removed between adjacent pipes and so that there is no less than [1/2 inch](#) of clear space between the finished surface and other work and between the finished surface of parallel adjacent piping. Arrange hangars on different adjacent service lines running parallel with each other in line with each other and parallel to the lines of the building.

Install piping support elements at intervals specified hereinafter, at locations not more than [3 feet](#) from the ends of each runout, and not over [1 foot](#) from each change in direction of piping.

Base load rating for all pipe-hanger supports on insulated weight of lines filled with water and forces imposed. Deflection per span is not exceed slope gradient of pipe. Ensure supports are in accordance with the following minimum rod size and maximum allowable hanger spacing for specified pipe. For concentrated loads such as valves, reduce the allowable span proportionately:

<u>PIPE SIZE</u> <u>INCHES</u>	<u>ROD SIZE</u> <u>INCHES</u>	<u>STEEL PIPE</u> <u>FEET</u>	<u>COPPER PIPE</u> <u>FEET</u>
1 and smaller	3/8	8	6
1-1/4 to 1-1/2	3/8	10	8

PIPE SIZE <u>INCHES</u>	ROD SIZE <u>INCHES</u>	STEEL PIPE <u>FEET</u>	COPPER PIPE <u>FEET</u>
2	3/8	10	8
2-1/2 to 3-1/2	1/2	12	12
4 to 5	5/8	16	14
6	3/4	16	16
8 to 12	7/8	20	20
14 to 18	1	20	20
20 and over	1-1/4	20	20

Provide vibration isolation supports where needed.

Support vertical risers independently of connected horizontal piping, whenever practicable, with fixed or spring supports at the base and at intervals to accommodate system range of thermal conditions. Ensure risers have guides for lateral stability. For risers subject to expansion, provide only one rigid support at a point approximately one-third down from the top. Place clamps under fittings unless otherwise specified. Support carbon-steel pipe at each floor and at not more than 15-foot intervals for pipe 2 inches and smaller and at not more than 20-foot intervals for pipe 2-1/2 inches and larger.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

Provide effective sound stopping and adequate operating clearance to prevent structure contact where piping penetrates walls, floors, or ceilings into occupied spaces adjacent to equipment rooms; where similar penetrations occur between occupied spaces; and where penetrations occur from pipe chases into occupied spaces. Occupied spaces include space above ceilings where no special acoustic treatment of ceiling is provided. Finish penetrations to be compatible with surface being penetrated.

3.5 SLEEVES

Provide sleeves where piping passes through roofs, masonry, concrete walls and floors.

Continuously weld or braze sleeves passing through steel decks to the deck.

Ensure sleeves that extend through floors, roofs, load bearing walls, and fire barriers are continuous and fabricated from Schedule 40 steel pipe, with welded anchor lugs. Form all other sleeves by molded linear polyethylene liners or similar materials that are removable. Ensure diameter of sleeves is large enough to accommodate pipe, insulation, and jacketing without touching the sleeve and provides a minimum 3/8-inch clearance. Install a sleeve size to accommodate mechanical and thermal motion of pipe precluding transmission of vibration to walls and the generation of noise.

Pack the space between a pipe, bare or insulated, and the inside of a pipe sleeve or a construction surface penetration solid with a mineral fiber conforming to ASTM C553 Type V (flexible blanket), (to 1,000 degrees F).

Provide this packing wherever the piping passes through firewalls, equipment room walls, floors, and ceilings connected to occupied spaces, and other locations where sleeves or construction-surface penetrations occur between occupied spaces. Where sleeves or construction surface penetrations occur between conditioned and unconditioned spaces, fill the space between a pipe, bare or insulated, and the inside of a pipe sleeve or construction surface penetration with an elastomer caulk to a depth of 1/2 inch. Ensure all caulked surfaces are oil- and grease-free.

Ensure through-penetration fire stop materials and methods are in accordance with ASTM E814 and UL 1479.

Caulk exterior wall sleeves watertight with lead and oakum or mechanically expandable chloroprene inserts with mastic-sealed metal components.

3.6 ESCUTCHEONS

Provide escutcheons at all penetrations of piping into finished areas. Where finished areas are separated by partitions through which piping passes, provide escutcheons on both sides of the partition. Where suspended ceilings are installed, provide plates at the underside only of such ceilings. For insulated pipes, select plates large enough to fit around the insulation. Use chrome-plated escutcheons in all occupied spaces and of size sufficient to effectively conceal openings in building construction. Firmly attach escutcheons with setscrews.

3.7 FLASHINGS

Provide flashings at penetrations of building boundaries by mechanical systems and related work.

3.8 UNDERGROUND PIPING INSTALLATION

Prior to being lowered into a trench, clean all piping, visually inspected for apparent defects, and tapped with a hammer to audibly detect hidden defects.

Further inspect suspect cast-ferrous piping by painting with kerosene on external surfaces to reveal cracks.

Distinctly mark defective materials found using a road-traffic quality yellow paint; promptly remove defective material from the site.

After conduit has been inspected, and not less than 48 hours prior to being lowered into a trench, coat all external surfaces of cast ferrous conduit with a compatible bituminous coating for protection against brackish ground water. Apply a single coat, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, to result in a dry-film thickness of not less than 12 mils.

Ensure excavations are dry and clear of extraneous materials when pipe is being laid.

Use wheel cutters for cutting of piping or other machines designed specifically for that purpose. Electric-arc and oxyacetylene cutting is not permitted.

Begin laying of pipe at the low point of a system. When in final acceptance position, ensure it is true to the grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Blocking and wedging is not

permitted.

Make changes in direction with long sweep fittings.

Provide necessary socket clamping, piers, bases, anchors, and thrust blocking. Protect rods, clamps, and bolting with a coating of bitumen.

Support underground piping below supported or suspended slabs from the slab with a minimum of two supports per length of pipe. Protect supports with a coating of bitumen.

On excavations that occur near and below building footings, provide backfilling material consisting of 2,000-psi cured compressive-strength concrete poured or pressure-grouted up to the level of the footing.

Properly support vertical downspouts; soil, waste, and vent stacks; water risers; and similar work on approved piers at the base and provided with approved structural supports attached to building construction.

3.9 HEAT TRACE CABLE INSTALLATION

Field apply heater tape and cut to fit as necessary, linearly along the length of pipe after piping has been pressure tested and approved by the Contracting Officer. Secure the heater to piping with cable ties or fiberglass tape. Label thermal insulation on the outside, "Electrical Heat Trace."

Install power connection, end seals, splice kits and tee kit components in accordance with IEEE 515 to provide a complete workable system. Terminate connection to the thermostat and ends of the heat tape in a junction box. Ensure cable and conduit connections are raintight.

3.10 DISINFECTION

Flush piping with potable water until visible grease, dirt and other contaminants are removed (visual inspection).

3.11 HEAT TRACE CABLE TESTS

Test heat trace cable system in accordance with IEEE 515 after installation and before and after installation of the thermal insulation. Test heater cable using a 1000 vdc megger. Minimum insulation resistance is 20 to 1000 megohms regardless of cable length.

3.12 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE

Provide Operation and Maintenance Manuals consistent with manufacturer's standard brochures, schematics, printed instructions, general operating procedures and safety precautions. Submit test data that is clear and readily legible.

3.13 PAINTING OF NEW EQUIPMENT

Factory or shop apply new equipment painting, as specified herein, and provided under each individual section.

3.13.1 Factory Painting Systems

Manufacturer's standard factory painting systems may be provided subject to

certification that the factory painting system applied withstands 125 hours in a salt-spray fog test, except that equipment located outdoors withstand 500 hours in a salt-spray fog test. Conduct salt-spray fog test is in accordance with [ASTM B117](#), and for that test the acceptance criteria is as follows: immediately after completion of the test, the inspected paint shows no signs of blistering, wrinkling, or cracking, and no loss of adhesion; and the specimen shows no signs of rust creepage beyond [0.125 inch](#) on either side of the scratch mark.

Ensure the film thickness of the factory painting system applied on the equipment is not less than the film thickness used on the test specimen. If manufacturer's standard factory painting system is being proposed for use on surfaces subject to temperatures above [120 degrees F](#), design the factory painting system for the temperature service.

3.13.2 Shop Painting Systems for Metal Surfaces

Clean, pretreat, prime and paint metal surfaces; except aluminum surfaces need not be painted. Apply coatings to clean dry surfaces. Clean the surfaces to remove dust, dirt, rust, oil and grease by wire brushing and solvent degreasing prior to application of paint, except clean to bare metal, surfaces subject to temperatures in excess of [120 degrees F](#).

Where more than one coat of paint is specified, apply the second coat after the preceding coat is thoroughly dry. Lightly sand damaged painting and retouch before applying the succeeding coat. Selected color of finish coat is aluminum or light gray.

- a. Temperatures Less Than [120 Degrees F](#): Immediately after cleaning, the metal surfaces subject to temperatures less than [120 degrees F](#) receives one coat of pretreatment primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of [0.3 mil](#), one coat of primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of [one mil](#); and two coats of enamel applied to a minimum dry film thickness of [one mil](#) per coat.
- b. Temperatures Between [120 and 400 Degrees F](#): Metal surfaces subject to temperatures between [120 and 400 degrees F](#) Receives two coats of [400 degrees F](#) heat-resisting enamel applied to a total minimum thickness of [2 mils](#).
- c. Temperatures Greater Than [400 Degrees F](#): Metal surfaces subject to temperatures greater than [400 degrees F](#) receives two coats of [600 degrees F](#) heat-resisting paint applied to a total minimum dry film thickness of [2 mils](#).

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 05 93

TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

11/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 62.1 (2010) Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor
Air Quality

ASSOCIATED AIR BALANCE COUNCIL (AABC)

AABC MN-1 (2002; 6th ed) National Standards for
Total System Balance

AABC MN-4 (1996) Test and Balance Procedures

NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL BALANCING BUREAU (NEBB)

NEBB MASV (2006) Procedural Standards for
Measurements and Assessment of Sound and
Vibration

NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS (2015) Procedural Standards for TAB
(Testing, Adjusting and Balancing)
Environmental Systems

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION
(SMACNA)

SMACNA 1780 (2002) HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting
and Balancing, 3rd Edition

SMACNA 1858 (2004) HVAC Sound And Vibration Manual -
First Edition

SMACNA 1972 CD (2012) HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual -
2nd Edition

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- a. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council
- b. COTR: Contracting Officer's Technical Representative
- c. DALT: Duct air leakage test
- d. DALT'd: Duct air leakage tested

- e. HVAC: Heating, ventilating, and air conditioning; or heating, ventilating, and cooling
- f. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau
- g. Out-of-tolerance data: Pertains only to field acceptance testing of Final DALT or TAB report. When applied to DALT work, this phase means "a leakage rate measured during DALT field acceptance testing which exceeds the leakage rate allowed by Appendix D REQUIREMENTS FOR DUCT AIR LEAK TESTING." When applied to TAB work this phase means "a measurement taken during TAB field acceptance testing which does not fall within the range of plus 5 to minus 5 percent of the original measurement reported on the TAB Report for a specific parameter."
- h. Season of maximum heating load: The time of year when the outdoor temperature at the project site remains within plus or minus 30 degrees Fahrenheit of the project site's winter outdoor design temperature, throughout the period of TAB data recording.
- i. Season of maximum cooling load: The time of year when the outdoor temperature at the project site remains within plus or minus 5 degrees Fahrenheit of the project site's summer outdoor design temperature, throughout the period of TAB data recording.
- j. Season 1, Season 2: Depending upon when the project HVAC is completed and ready for TAB, Season 1 is defined, thereby defining Season 2. Season 1 could be the season of maximum heating load, or the season of maximum cooling load.
- k. Sound measurements terminology: Defined in AABC MN-1, NEBB MASV, or SMACNA 1858 (TABB).
- l. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing (of HVAC systems)
- m. TAB'd: HVAC Testing/Adjusting/Balancing procedures performed
- n. TAB Agency: TAB Firm
- o. TAB team field leader: TAB team field leader
- p. TAB team supervisor: TAB team engineer
- q. TAB team technicians: TAB team assistants
- r. TABB: Testing Adjusting and Balancing Bureau

1.2.1 Similar Terms

In some instances, terminology differs between the Contract and the TAB Standard primarily because the intent of this Section is to use the industry standards specified, along with additional requirements listed herein to produce optimal results.

The following table of similar terms is provided for clarification only. Contract requirements take precedent over the corresponding AABC, NEBB, or TABB requirements where differences exist.

SIMILAR TERMS			
Contract Term	AABC Term	NEBB Term	TABB Term
TAB Standard	National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems	Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting and Balancing of Environmental Systems	International Standards for Environmental Systems Balance
TAB Specialist	TAB Engineer	TAB Supervisor	TAB Supervisor
Systems Readiness Check	Construction Phase Inspection	Field Readiness Check & Preliminary Field Procedures	Field Readiness Check & Prelim. Field Procedures

1.3 WORK DESCRIPTION

The work includes duct air leakage testing (DALT) and testing, adjusting, and balancing (TAB) of new heating, ventilating, and cooling (HVAC) air and water distribution systems including [equipment and performance data](#), ducts, and piping which are located within, on, under, between, and adjacent to buildings.

Perform TAB in accordance with the requirements of the TAB procedural standard recommended by the TAB trade association that approved the TAB Firm's qualifications. Comply with requirements of [AABC MN-1](#), [NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS](#), or [SMACNA 1780](#) (TABB) as supplemented and modified by this specification section. All recommendations and suggested practices contained in the TAB procedural standards are considered mandatory.

1.3.1 Air Distribution Systems

Test, adjust, and balance systems (TAB) in compliance with this section. Obtain Contracting Officer's written approval before applying insulation to exterior of air distribution systems as specified under Section [23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS](#).

1.3.2 Water Distribution Systems

TAB systems in compliance with this section. Obtain Contracting Officer's written approval before applying insulation to water distribution systems as specified under Section [23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS](#). At Contractor's option and with Contracting Officer's written approval, the piping systems may be insulated before systems are TAB'd.

Terminate piping insulation immediately adjacent to each flow control valve, automatic control valve, or device. Seal the ends of pipe insulation and the space between ends of pipe insulation and piping, with waterproof vapor barrier coating.

After completion of work under this section, insulate the flow control valves and devices as specified under Section [23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION](#)

FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

1.3.3 TAB SCHEMATIC DRAWINGS

Show the following information on TAB Schematic Drawings:

- a. A unique number or mark for each piece of equipment or terminal.
- b. Air quantities at air terminals.
- c. Air quantities and temperatures in air handling unit schedules.
- d. Water quantities and temperatures in thermal energy transfer equipment schedules.
- e. Water quantities and heads in pump schedules.
- f. Water flow measurement fittings and balancing fittings.
- g. Ductwork Construction and Leakage Testing Table that defines the DALT test requirements, including each applicable HVAC duct system ID or mark, duct pressure class, duct seal class, and duct leakage test pressure. This table is included in the file for Graphics for Unified Facilities Guide Specifications:
<http://www.wbdg.org/FFC/NAVGRAPH/graphdoc.pdf>

The Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing (TAB) Specialist must review the Contract Plans and Specifications and advise the Contracting Officer of any deficiencies that would prevent the effective and accurate TAB of the system and systems readiness check. The TAB Specialist must provide a Design Review Report individually listing each deficiency and the corresponding proposed corrective action necessary for proper system operation.

Submit three copies of the [TAB Schematic Drawings and Report Forms](#) to the Contracting Officer, no later than 21 days prior to the start of TAB field measurements.

1.3.4 Related Requirements

Requirements for price breakdown of HVAC TAB work are specified in Section 01 20 00.00 20 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES.

Requirements for construction scheduling related to HVAC TAB work are specified in Section 01 32 17.00 20 COST LOADED NETWORK ANALYSIS SCHEDULES (NAS).

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval.

[SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals](#)

[Independent TAB Agency and Personnel Qualifications; G](#)

[TAB Design Review Report; G](#)

[SD-02 Shop Drawings](#)

TAB Schematic Drawings and Report Forms; G

SD-03 Product Data

Equipment and Performance Data; G

TAB Related HVAC Submittals; G

A list of the TAB Related HVAC Submittals, no later than 7 days after the approval of the TAB team engineer and assistant.

SD-06 Test Reports

Completed Pre-Final DALT Report; G

Certified Final DALT Report; G

Prerequisite HVAC Work Checkout List For Proportional Balancing; G

Certified Final TAB Report for Proportional Balancing; G

Prerequisite HVAC Work Checkout List For Season 1; G

Certified Final TAB Report for Season 1; G

Prerequisite HVAC Work Checkout List For Season 2; G

Certified Final TAB Report for Season 2; G

SD-07 Certificates

Independent TAB Agency and Personnel Qualifications; G

DALT and TAB Submittal and Work Schedule; G

TAB Pre-Field Engineering Report; G

Instrument Calibration Certificates; G

DALT and TAB Procedures Summary; G

Completed Pre-Final DALT Work Checklist; G

Advance Notice of Pre-Final DALT Field Work; G

Advance Notice of TAB Field Work for Proportional Balancing; G

Advance Notice of TAB Field Work for Season 1; G

Advance Notice of TAB Field Work for Season 2 G

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 Independent TAB Agency and Personnel Qualifications

To secure approval for the proposed agency, submit information certifying that the TAB agency is a first tier subcontractor who is not affiliated with any other company participating in work on this contract, including

design, furnishing equipment, or construction. Further, submit the following, for the agency, to Contracting Officer for approval:

a. Independent AABC or NEBB or TABB TAB agency:

TAB agency: AABC registration number and expiration date of current certification; or NEBB certification number and expiration date of current certification; or TABB certification number and expiration date of current certification.

TAB team supervisor: Name and copy of AABC or NEBB or TABB TAB supervisor certificate and expiration date of current certification.

TAB team field leader: Name and documented evidence that the team field leader has satisfactorily performed full-time supervision of TAB work in the field for not less than 3 years immediately preceding this contract's bid opening date.

TAB team field technicians: Names and documented evidence that each field technician has satisfactorily assisted a TAB team field leader in performance of TAB work in the field for not less than one year immediately preceding this contract's bid opening date.

Current certificates: Registrations and certifications are current, and valid for the duration of this contract. Renew Certifications which expire prior to completion of the TAB work, in a timely manner so that there is no lapse in registration or certification. TAB agency or TAB team personnel without a current registration or current certification are not to perform TAB work on this contract.

b. TAB Team Members: TAB team approved to accomplish work on this contract are full-time employees of the TAB agency. No other personnel is allowed to do TAB work on this contract.

c. Replacement of TAB team members: Replacement of members may occur if each new member complies with the applicable personnel qualifications and each is approved by the Contracting Officer.

1.5.1.1 TAB Standard

Perform TAB in accordance with the requirements of the standard under which the TAB Firm's qualifications are approved, i.e., AABC MN-1, NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS, or SMACNA 1780 unless otherwise specified herein. All recommendations and suggested practices contained in the TAB Standard are considered mandatory. Use the provisions of the TAB Standard, including checklists, report forms, etc., as nearly as practical, to satisfy the Contract requirements. Use the TAB Standard for all aspects of TAB, including qualifications for the TAB Firm and Specialist and calibration of TAB instruments. Where the instrument manufacturer calibration recommendations are more stringent than those listed in the TAB Standard, adhere to the manufacturer's recommendations.

All quality assurance provisions of the TAB Standard such as performance guarantees are part of this contract. For systems or system components not covered in the TAB Standard, TAB procedures must be developed by the TAB Specialist. Where new procedures, requirements, etc., applicable to the Contract requirements have been published or adopted by the body

responsible for the TAB Standard used (AABC, NEBB, or TABB), the requirements and recommendations contained in these procedures and requirements are considered mandatory, including the latest requirements of ASHRAE 62.1.

1.5.1.2 Qualifications

a. TAB Firm

The TAB Firm must be either a member of AABC or certified by the NEBB or the TABB and certified in all categories and functions where measurements or performance are specified on the plans and specifications.

Certification must be maintained for the entire duration of duties specified herein. If, for any reason, the firm loses subject certification during this period, the Contractor must immediately notify the Contracting Officer and submit another TAB Firm for approval. Any firm that has been the subject of disciplinary action by either the AABC, the NEBB, or the TABB within the five years preceding Contract Award is not eligible to perform any duties related to the HVAC systems, including TAB. All work specified in this Section and in other related Sections to be performed by the TAB Firm will be considered invalid if the TAB Firm loses its certification prior to Contract completion and must be performed by an approved successor.

These TAB services are to assist the prime Contractor in performing the quality oversight for which it is responsible. The TAB Firm must be a prime subcontractor of the Contractor and be financially and corporately independent of the mechanical subcontractor, reporting directly to and paid by the Contractor.

b. TAB Specialist

The TAB Specialist must be either a member of AABC, an experienced technician of the Firm certified by the NEBB, or a Supervisor certified by the TABB. The certification must be maintained for the entire duration of duties specified herein. If, for any reason, the Specialist loses subject certification during this period, immediately notify the Contracting Officer and submit another TAB Specialist for approval. Any individual that has been the subject of disciplinary action by either the AABC, the NEBB, or the TABB within the five years preceding Contract Award is not eligible to perform any duties related to the HVAC systems, including TAB. All work specified in this Section and in other related Sections performed by the TAB Specialist will be considered invalid if the TAB Specialist loses its certification prior to Contract completion and must be performed by the approved successor.

c. TAB Specialist Responsibilities

TAB Specialist responsibilities include all TAB work specified herein and in related sections under his direct guidance. The TAB specialist is required to be onsite on a daily basis to direct TAB efforts. The TAB Specialist must participate in the commissioning process.

1.5.1.3 TAB Related HVAC Submittals

The TAB Specialist must prepare a list of the submittals from the Contract Submittal Register that relate to the successful accomplishment of all HVAC

TAB. Accompany the submittals identified on this list with a letter of approval signed and dated by the TAB Specialist when submitted to the Government. Ensure that the location and details of ports, terminals, connections, etc., necessary to perform TAB are identified on the submittals.

1.5.2 Responsibilities

The Contractor is responsible for ensuring compliance with the requirements of this section. The following delineation of specific work responsibilities is specified to facilitate TAB execution of the various work efforts by personnel from separate organizations. This breakdown of specific duties is specified to facilitate adherence to the schedule listed in the paragraph TAB SUBMITTAL AND WORK SCHEDULE.

1.5.2.1 Contractor

- a. TAB personnel: Ensure that the DALT work and the TAB work is accomplished by a group meeting the requirements specified in the paragraph TAB PERSONNEL QUALIFICATION REQUIREMENTS.
- b. Pre-DALT/TAB meeting: Attend the meeting with the TAB Supervisor, and ensure that a representative is present for the sheetmetal contractor, mechanical contractor, electrical contractor, and automatic temperature controls contractor.
- c. HVAC documentation: Furnish one complete set of the following HVAC-related documentation to the TAB agency:
 - (1) Contract drawings and specifications
 - (2) Approved submittal data for equipment
 - (3) Construction work schedule
 - (4) Up-to-date revisions and change orders for the previously listed items
- d. Submittal and work schedules: Ensure that the schedule for submittals and work required by this section and specified in the paragraph TAB SUBMITTAL AND WORK SCHEDULE is met.
- e. Coordination of supporting personnel:

Provide the technical personnel, such as factory representatives or HVAC controls installer required by the TAB field team to support the DALT and the TAB field measurement work.

Provide equipment mechanics to operate HVAC equipment and ductwork mechanics to provide the field designated test ports to enable TAB field team to accomplish the DALT and the TAB field measurement work. Ensure these support personnel are present at the times required by the TAB team, and cause no delay in the DALT and the TAB field work.

Conversely, ensure that the HVAC controls installer has required support from the TAB team field leader to complete the controls check out.

- f. Deficiencies: Ensure that the TAB Agency supervisor submits all

Design/Construction deficiency notifications directly to the Contracting officer within 3 days after the deficiency is encountered. Further, ensure that all such notification submittals are complete with explanation, including documentation, detailing deficiencies.

- g. Prerequisite HVAC work: Complete check out and debugging of HVAC equipment, ducts, and controls prior to the TAB engineer arriving at the project site to begin the TAB work. Debugging includes searching for and eliminating malfunctioning elements in the HVAC system installations, and verifying all adjustable devices are functioning as designed. Include as prerequisite work items, the deficiencies pointed out by the TAB team supervisor in the design review report.
- h. Prior to the TAB field team's arrival, ensure completion of the applicable inspections and work items listed in the TAB team supervisor's pre-field engineering report. Do not allow the TAB team to commence TAB field work until all of the following are completed.
 - (1) HVAC system installations are fully complete.
 - (2) HVAC prerequisite checkout work lists specified in the paragraph PRE-FIELD TAB ENGINEERING REPORT are completed, submitted, and approved. Ensure that the TAB Agency gets a copy of the approved prerequisite HVAC work checklist.
 - (3) DALT field checks for all systems are completed.
 - (4) HVAC system filters are clean for both Season 1 and Season 2 TAB field work.
- i. Advance notice: Furnish to the Contracting Officer with advance written notice for the commencement of the DALT field work and for the commencement of the TAB field work.
- j. Insulation work: For required DALT work, ensure that insulation is not installed on ducts to be DALT'd until DALT work on the subject ducts is complete. Later, ensure that openings in duct and machinery insulation coverings for TAB test ports are marked, closed and sealed.

1.5.2.2 TAB Agency

Provide the services of a TAB team which complies with the requirements of the paragraph INDEPENDENT TAB AGENCY PERSONNEL QUALIFICATIONS. The work to be performed by the TAB agency is limited to testing, adjusting, and balancing of HVAC air and water systems to satisfy the requirements of this specification section.

1.5.2.3 TAB Team Supervisor

- a. Overall management: Supervise and manage the overall TAB team work effort, including preliminary and technical DALT and TAB procedures and TAB team field work.
- b. Pre-DALT/TAB meeting: Attend meeting with Contractor.
- c. Design review report: Review project specifications and accompanying drawings to verify that the air systems and water systems are designed in such a way that the TAB engineer can accomplish the work in compliance with the requirements of this section. Verify the presence

and location of permanently installed test ports and other devices needed, including gauge cocks, thermometer wells, flow control devices, circuit setters, balancing valves, and manual volume dampers.

- d. Support required: Specify the technical support personnel required from the Contractor other than the TAB agency; such as factory representatives for temperature controls or for complex equipment. Inform the Contractor in writing of the support personnel needed and when they are needed. Furnish the notice as soon as the need is anticipated, either with the design review report, or the pre-field engineering report, the during the DALT or TAB field work.
- e. Pre-field DALT preliminary notification: Monitor the completion of the duct installation of each system and provide the necessary written notification to the Contracting Officer.
- f. Pre-field engineering report: Utilizing the following HVAC-related documentation; contract drawings and specifications, approved submittal data for equipment, up-to-date revisions and change orders; prepare this report.
- g. Prerequisite HVAC work checklist: Ensure the Contractor gets a copy of this checklist at the same time as the pre-field engineering report is submitted.
- h. Technical assistance for DALT work.
 - (1) Technical assistance: Provide immediate technical assistance to TAB field team.
 - (2) DALT field visit: Near the end of the DALT field work effort, visit the contract site to inspect the HVAC installation and the progress of the DALT field work. Conduct a site visit to the extent necessary to verify correct procedures are being implemented and to confirm the accuracy of the Pre-final DALT Report data which has been reported. Also, perform sufficient evaluation to allow the TAB supervisor to issue certification of the final report. Conduct the site visit full-time for a minimum of two 8 hour workdays duration.
- i. Final DALT report: Certify the DALT report. This certification includes the following work:
 - (1) Review: Review the Pre-final DALT report data. From these field reports, prepare the Certified Final DALT report.
 - (2) TAB Verification: Verify adherence, by the TAB field team, to the procedures specified in this section.
- j. Technical Assistance for TAB Work: Provide immediate technical assistance to the TAB field team for the TAB work.
 - (1) TAB field visit: At the midpoint of the Season 1 and Season 2 TAB field work effort, visit the contract site to inspect the HVAC installation and the progress of the TAB field work. Conduct site visit full-time for a minimum of two 8 hour workdays duration.
 - (2) TAB field visit: Near the end of the TAB field work effort, visit the contract site to inspect the HVAC installation and the

progress of the TAB field work. Conduct site visit full-time for a minimum of two 8 hour workdays duration. Review the TAB final report data and certify the TAB final report.

- k. Certified TAB report: Certify the TAB report. This certification includes the following work:
 - (1) Review: Review the TAB field data report. From this field report, prepare the certified TAB report.
 - (2) Verification: Verify adherence, by the TAB field team, to the TAB plan prescribed by the pre-field engineering report and verify adherence to the procedures specified in this section.
- l. Design/Construction deficiencies: Within 3 working days after the TAB Agency has encountered any design or construction deficiencies, the TAB Supervisor must submit written notification directly to the Contracting Officer, with a separate copy to the Contractor, of all such deficiencies. Provide in this submittal a complete explanation, including supporting documentation, detailing deficiencies. Where deficiencies are encountered that are believed to adversely impact successful completion of TAB, the TAB Agency must issue notice and request direction in the notification submittal.
- m. TAB Field Check: The TAB team supervisor must attend and supervise Season 1 and Season 2 TAB field check.

1.5.2.4 TAB Team Field Leader

- a. Field manager: Manage, in the field, the accomplishment of the work specified in Part 3, EXECUTION.
- b. Full time: Be present at the contract site when DALT field work or TAB field work is being performed by the TAB team; ensure day-to-day TAB team work accomplishments are in compliance with this section.
- c. Prerequisite HVAC work: Do not bring the TAB team to the contract site until a copy of the prerequisite HVAC Checklist, with all work items certified by the Contractor to be working as designed, reaches the office of the TAB Agency.

1.5.3 Sequencing and Scheduling

1.5.3.1 DALT and TAB Submittal and Work Schedule

Comply with additional requirements specified in Appendix C: DALT AND TAB SUBMITTAL AND WORK SCHEDULE included at the end of this section.

Submit this schedule, and TAB Schematic Drawings, adapted for this particular contract, to the Contracting Officer (CO) for review and approval. Include with the submittal the planned calendar dates for each submittal or work item. Resubmit an updated version for CO approval every 90 calendar days. Compliance with the following schedule is the Contractor's responsibility.

Qualify TAB Personnel: Within 45 calendar days after date of contract award, submit TAB agency and personnel qualifications.

Pre-DALT/TAB Meeting: Within 30 calendar days after the date of

approval of the TAB agency and personnel, meet with the COTR.

Design Review Report: Within 60 calendar days after the date of the TAB agency personnel qualifications approval, submit design review report.

Pre-Field DALT Preliminary Notification: On completion of the duct installation for each system, notify the Contracting Officer in writing within 5 days after completion.

Ductwork Selected for DALT: Within 7 calendar days of Pre-Field DALT Preliminary Notification, the COTR will select which of the project ductwork must be DALT'd.

DALT Field Work: Within 48 hours of COTR's selection, complete DALT field work on selected.

Submit Pre-final DALT Report: Within one working day after completion of DALT field work, submit Pre-final DALT Report. Separate Pre-final DALT reports may be submitted to allow phased testing from system to system.

DALT Work Field Check: Upon approval of the Pre-final DALT Report, schedule the COTR's DALT field check work with the Contracting Officer.

Submit Final DALT Report: Within 15 calendar days after completion of successful DALT Work Field Check, submit Season 1 TAB report.

Pre-Field TAB Engineering Report: Within 30 calendar days after approval of the TAB agency Personnel Qualifications, submit the Pre-Field TAB Engineering Report.

Prerequisite HVAC Work Check Out List For Season 1 and Advanced Notice For Season 1 TAB Field Work: At a minimum of 115 calendar days prior to CCD, submit Season 1 prerequisite HVAC work check out list certified as complete, and submit advance notice of commencement of Season 1 TAB field work.

Season 1 TAB Field Work: At a minimum of 90 calendar days prior to CCD, and when the ambient temperature is within Season 1 limits, accomplish Season 1 TAB field work.

Submit Season 1 TAB Report: Within 15 calendar days after completion of Season 1 TAB field work, submit Season 1 TAB report.

Season 1 TAB Field Check: 30 calendar days after Season 1 TAB report is approved by the Contracting Officer, conduct Season 1 field check.

Complete Season 1 TAB Work: Prior to CCD, complete all TAB work except Season 2 TAB work.

Prerequisite HVAC Work Check Out List For Season 2 and Advanced Notice For Season 2 TAB Field Work: Within 150 calendar days after date of the commencement of the Season 1 TAB field work, submit the Season 2 prerequisite HVAC work check out list certified as complete and submit advance notice of commencement of Season 2 TAB field work.

Season 2 TAB Field Work: Within 180 calendar days after date of commencement of the Season 1 TAB field work and when the ambient

temperature is within Season 2 limits, accomplish Season 2 TAB field work.

Submit Season 2 TAB Report: Within 15 calendar days after completion of Season 2 TAB field work, submit Season 2 TAB report.

Season 2 TAB Field Check: 30 calendar days after the Season 2 TAB report is approved by the Contracting Officer, conduct Season 2 field check.

Complete Season 2 TAB Work: Within 15 calendar days after the completion of Season 2 TAB field data check, complete all TAB work.

a. TAB Design Review Report

Submit typed report describing omissions and deficiencies in the HVAC system's design that would preclude the TAB team from accomplishing the duct leakage testing work and the TAB work requirements of this section. Provide a complete explanation including supporting documentation detailing the design deficiency. State that no deficiencies are evident if that is the case.

b. Pre-Field DALT Preliminary Notification

Notification: On completion of the installation of each duct system indicated to be DALT'd, notify the Contracting Officer in writing within 7 calendar days after completion.

1.5.3.2 TAB Pre-Field Engineering Report

Submit report containing the following information:

a. Step-by-step TAB procedure:

- (1) Strategy: Describe the method of approach to the TAB field work from start to finish. Include in this description a complete methodology for accomplishing each seasonal TAB field work session.
- (2) Air System Diagrams: Use the contract drawings and duct fabrication drawings if available to provide air system diagrams in the report showing the location of all terminal outlet supply, return, exhaust and transfer registers, grilles and diffusers. Use a key numbering system on the diagrams which identifies each outlet contained in the outlet airflow report sheets. Show intended locations of all traverses and static pressure readings.
- (3) Procedural steps: Delineate fully the intended procedural steps to be taken by the TAB field team to accomplish the required TAB work of each air distribution system and each water distribution system. Include intended procedural steps for TAB work for subsystems and system components.

b. Pre-field data: Submit AABC or NEBB or **SMACNA 1780** data report forms with the following pre-field information filled in:

- (1) Design data obtained from system drawings, specifications, and approved submittals.
- (2) Notations detailing additional data to be obtained from the

contract site by the TAB field team.

(3) Designate the actual data to be measured in the TAB field work.

(4) Provide a list of the types of instruments, and the measuring range of each, which are anticipated to be used for measuring in the TAB field work. By means of a keying scheme, specify on each TAB data report form submitted, which instruments will be used for measuring each item of TAB data. If the selection of which instrument to use, is to be made in the field, specify from which instruments the choice will be made. Place the instrument key number in the blank space where the measured data would be entered.

- c. **Prerequisite HVAC work checkout list:** Provide a list of inspections and work items which are to be completed by the Contractor. This list must be acted upon and completed by the Contractor and then submitted and approved by the Contracting Officer prior to the TAB team coming to the contract site.

At a minimum, a list of the applicable inspections and work items listed in the **NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS**, Section III, "Preliminary TAB Procedures" under paragraphs titled, "Air Distribution System Inspection" and "Hydronic Distribution System Inspection" must be provided for each separate system to be TAB'd.

1.5.4 Subcontractor Special Requirements

Perform all work in this section in accordance with the paragraph SUBCONTRACTOR SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS in Section **01 30 00 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**, stating that all contract requirements of this section must be accomplished directly by a first tier subcontractor. No work may be performed by a second tier subcontractor.

1.5.5 Instrument Calibration Certificates

It is the responsibility of the TAB firm to provide instrumentation that meets the minimum requirements of the standard under which the TAB Firm's qualifications are approved for use on a project. Instrumentation must be in proper operating condition and must be applied in accordance with the instrumentation's manufacturer recommendations.

All instrumentation must bear a valid NIST traceable calibration certificate during field work and during government acceptance testing. All instrumentation must be calibrated within no later than one year of the date of TAB work or government acceptance testing field work.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 WORK DESCRIPTIONS OF PARTICIPANTS

Comply with requirements of this section as specified in Appendix A **WORK DESCRIPTIONS OF PARTICIPANTS**.

3.2 DALT PROCEDURES

3.2.1 Instruments, Consumables and Personnel

Provide instruments, consumables and personnel required to accomplish the DALT field work. Follow the same basic procedure specified below for TAB Field Work, including maintenance and calibration of instruments, accuracy of measurements, preliminary procedures, field work, workmanship and treatment of deficiencies. Calibrate and maintain instruments in accordance with manufacturer's written procedures.

3.2.2 Advance Notice of Pre-Final DALT Field Work

On completion of the installation of each duct system indicated to be DALT'd, notify the Contracting Officer in writing prior to the COTR's duct selection field visit.

3.2.3 Ductwork To Be DALT'd

From each duct system indicated as subject to DALT, the COTR will randomly select sections of each completed duct system for testing by the Contractor's TAB Firm. The sections selected will not exceed 20 percent of the total measured linear footage of duct systems indicated as subject to DALT. Sections of duct systems subject to DALT will include 20 percent of main ducts, branch main ducts, branch ducts and plenums for supply, return, exhaust, and plenum ductwork.

It is acceptable for an entire duct system to be DALT'd instead of disassembling that system in order to DALT only the 20 percent portion specified above.

3.2.4 DALT Testing

Perform DALT on the HVAC duct sections of each system as selected by the COTR. Use the duct class, seal class, leakage class and the leak test pressure data indicated on the drawings, to comply with the procedures specified in [SMACNA 1972 CD](#).

In spite of specifications of [SMACNA 1972 CD](#) to the contrary, DALT ductwork of construction class of 3-inch water gauge static pressure and below if indicated to be DALT'd. Complete DALT work on the COTR selected ductwork within 48 hours after the particular ductwork was selected for DALT. Separately conduct DALT work for large duct systems to enable the DALT work to be completed in 48 hours.

3.2.5 Completed Pre-Final DALT Report

After completion of the DALT work, prepare a Pre-final DALT Report meeting the additional requirements specified in Appendix B REPORTS - DALT and TAB. Data required by those data report forms shall be furnished by the TAB team. Prepare the report neatly and legibly; the Pre-final DALT report shall provide the basis for the Final DALT Report.

TAB supervisor shall review, approve and sign the Pre-Final DALT Report and submit this report within one day of completion of DALT field work. Verbally notify the COTR that the field check of the Pre-Final DALT Report data can commence.

3.2.6 Quality Assurance - COTR DALT Field Acceptance Testing

In the presence of the COTR and TAB team field leader, verify for accuracy Pre-final DALT Report data selected by the COTR. For each duct system, this acceptance testing shall be conducted on a maximum of 50 percent of the duct sections DALT'd.

Further, if any data on the Pre-final DALT report form for a given duct section is out-of-tolerance, then field acceptance testing shall be conducted on data for one additional duct section, preferably in the same duct system, in the presence of the COTR.

3.2.7 Additional COTR Field Acceptance Testing

If any of the duct sections checked for a given system are determined to have a leakage rate measured that exceeds the leakage rate allowed by SMACNA Leak Test Manual for an indicated duct construction class and sealant class, terminate data checking for that section. The associated Pre-final DALT Report data for the given duct system will be disapproved. Make the necessary corrections and prepare a revised Pre-final DALT Report. Reschedule a field check of the revised report data with the COTR.

3.2.8 Certified Final DALT Report

On successful completion of all field checks of the Pre-Final DALT Report data for all systems, the TAB Supervisor shall assemble, review, approve, sign and submit the Final DALT Report in compliance with Appendix B REPORTS - DALT and TAB to the Contracting Officer for approval.

3.2.9 Prerequisite for TAB Field Work

Do not commence TAB field work prior to the completion and approval, for all systems, of the Final DALT Report.

3.3 TAB PROCEDURES

3.3.1 TAB Field Work

Test, adjust, and balance the HVAC systems until measured flow rates (air and water flow) are within plus or minus 5 percent of the design flow rates as specified or indicated on the contract documents.

That is, comply with the requirements of AABC MN-1 or SMACNA 1780 (TABB) and SMACNA 1858 (TABB), except as supplemented and modified by this section.

Provide instruments and consumables required to accomplish the TAB work. Calibrate and maintain instruments in accordance with manufacturer's written procedures.

Test, adjust, and balance the HVAC systems until measured flow rates (air and water flow) are within plus or minus 5 percent of the design flow rates as specified or indicated on the contract documents. Conduct TAB work, including measurement accuracy, and sound measurement work in conformance with the AABC MN-1 and AABC MN-4, or NEBB TABS and NEBB MASV, or SMACNA 1780 (used by TABB) and SMACNA 1858 sound measurement procedures, except as supplemented and modified by this section. The only water flow and air flow reporting which can be deferred until the Season 2 is that data which would be affected in terms of accuracy due to outside ambient conditions.

3.3.2 Preliminary Procedures

Use the approved pre-field engineering report as instructions and procedures for accomplishing TAB field work. TAB engineer is to locate, in the field, test ports required for testing. It is the responsibility of the sheet metal contractor to provide and install test ports as required by the TAB engineer.

3.3.3 TAB Air Distribution Systems

3.3.3.1 Units With Coils

Report heating and cooling performance capacity tests for hot water, chilled water, and DX coils for the purpose of verifying that the coils meet the indicated design capacity. Submit the following data and calculations with the coil test reports:

- a. For air handlers , such as factory manufactured units, central built-up units and rooftop units, conduct capacity tests in accordance with AABC MN-4, procedure 3.5, "Coil Capacity Testing."

Do not determine entering and leaving wet and dry bulb temperatures by single point measurement, but by the average of multiple readings in compliance with paragraph 3.5-5, "Procedures", (in subparagraph d.) of AABC MN-4, Procedure 3.5, "Coil Capacity Testing."

Submit part-load coil performance data from the coil manufacturer converting test conditions to design conditions; use the data for the purpose of verifying that the coils meet the indicated design capacity in compliance with AABC MN-4, Procedure 3.5, "Coil Capacity Testing," paragraph 3.5.7, "Actual Capacity Vs. Design Capacity" (in subparagraph c.).

- b. For units with capacities of 7.5 tons (90,000 Btu) or less, such as fan coil units, duct mounted reheat coils associated with VAV terminal units, and ductless DX split systems:

Determine the apparent coil capacity by calculations using single point measurement of entering and leaving wet and dry bulb temperatures; submit the calculations with the coil reports.

3.3.3.2 Packaged Air Conditioner Units

Air handling unit systems including air handling unit supply fan, coils, ducts, and air distribution devices for supply air, return air, outside air.

For refrigeration compressors/condensers/condensing units/evaporators, report data as required by NEBB, AABC, and TABB standard procedures, including refrigeration operational data.

3.3.3.3 Packaged Dedicated Outdoor Air System

Makeup air unit systems including supply and exhaust fans, coils, ducts, coils, ducts, and air distribution devices for supply air, return air, outside air

For refrigeration compressors/condensers/condensing units/evaporators, report data as required by NEBB, AABC, and TABB standard procedures,

including refrigeration operational data.

3.3.4 TAB Water Distribution Systems

3.3.4.1 Chilled Water

Chilled water systems including air cooled chillers, pumps, coils, system balance valves and flow measuring devices.

For water chillers, report data as required by AABC, NEBB and TABB standard procedures, including refrigeration operational data.

3.3.4.2 Heating Hot Water

Heating hot water systems including boilers, pumps, coils, system balancing valves and flow measuring devices.

3.3.5 TAB Work on Performance Tests With Seasonal Limitations

3.3.5.1 Performance Tests

Accomplish proportional balancing TAB work on the air distribution systems and water distribution systems, in other words, accomplish adjusting and balancing of the air flows and water flows, any time during the duration of this contract, subject to the limitations specified elsewhere in this section. However, accomplish, within the following seasonal limitations, TAB work on HVAC systems which directly transfer thermal energy.

3.3.5.2 Season Of Maximum Load

Visit the contract site for at least two TAB work sessions for Season 1 and Season 2 field measures. Visit the contract site during the season of maximum heating load and visit the contract site during the season of maximum cooling load, the goal being to TAB the operational performance of the heating systems and cooling systems under their respective maximum outdoor environment-caused loading. During the seasonal limitations, TAB the operational performance of the heating systems and cooling systems.

3.3.5.3 Ambient Temperatures

On each tab report form used for recording data, record the outdoor and indoor ambient dry bulb temperature range and the outdoor and indoor ambient wet bulb temperature range within which the report form's data was recorded. Record these temperatures at beginning and at the end of data taking.

3.3.5.4 Sound Measurements

Comply with the paragraph SOUND MEASUREMENT WORK, specifically, the requirement that a room must be operating in its noisiest mode at the time of sound measurements in the room. The maximum noise level measurements could depend on seasonally related heat or cooling transfer equipment.

3.3.6 Workmanship

Conduct TAB work on the HVAC systems until measured flow rates are within plus or minus 5 percent of the design flow rates as specified or indicated on the contract documents. This TAB work includes adjustment of balancing valves, balancing dampers, and sheaves. Further, this TAB work includes

changing out fan sheaves and pump impellers if required to obtain air and water flow rates specified or indicated. If, with these adjustments and equipment changes, the specified or indicated design flow rates cannot be attained, contact the Contracting Officer for direction.

3.3.7 Deficiencies

Strive to meet the intent of this section to maximize the performance of the equipment as designed and installed. However, if deficiencies in equipment design or installation prevent TAB work from being accomplished within the range of design values specified in the paragraph WORKMANSHIP, provide written notice as soon as possible to the Contractor and the Contracting Officer describing the deficiency and recommended correction.

Responsibility for correction of installation deficiencies is the Contractor's. If a deficiency is in equipment design, call the TAB team supervisor for technical assistance. Responsibility for reporting design deficiencies to Contractor is the TAB team supervisor's.

3.3.8 TAB Reports

Additional requirements for TAB Reports are specified in Appendix B REPORTS - DALT and TAB

3.3.9 Quality Assurance - COTR TAB Field Acceptance Testing

3.3.9.1 TAB Field Acceptance Testing

During the field acceptance testing, verify, in the presence of the COTR, random selections of data (water air quantities) recorded in the TAB Report. Points and areas for field acceptance testing are to be selected by the COTR. Measurement and test procedures are the same as approved for TAB work for the TAB Report.

Field acceptance testing includes verification of TAB Report data recorded for the following equipment groups:

Group 1: All chillers, boilers, and air handling units (rooftop and central stations).

Group 2: 25 percent of the VAV terminal boxes and associated diffusers and registers.

Group 3: 25 percent of the supply diffusers, registers, grilles

Group 4: 25 percent of the return grilles, return registers, exhaust grilles and exhaust registers.

Group 5: 25 percent of the supply fans, exhaust fans, and pumps.

Further, if any data on the TAB Report for Groups 2 through 5 is found not to fall within the range of plus 5 to minus 5 percent of the TAB Report data, additional group data verification is required in the presence of the COTR. Verify TAB Report data for one additional piece of equipment in that group. Continue this additional group data verification until out-of-tolerance data ceases to be found.

3.3.9.2 Additional COTR TAB Field Acceptance Testing

If any of the acceptance testing measurements for a given equipment group is found not to fall within the range of plus 5 to minus 5 percent of the TAB Report data, terminate data verification for all affected data for that group. The affected data for the given group will be disapproved. Make the necessary corrections and prepare a revised TAB Report. Reschedule acceptance testing of the revised report data with the COTR.

3.3.9.3 Prerequisite for Approval

Compliance with the field acceptance testing requirements of this section is a prerequisite for the final Contracting Officer approval of the TAB Report submitted.

3.4 MARKING OF SETTINGS

Upon the final TAB work approval, permanently mark the settings of HVAC adjustment devices including valves, gauges, and dampers so that adjustment can be restored if disturbed at any time. Provide permanent markings clearly indicating the settings on the adjustment devices which result in the data reported on the submitted TAB report.

3.5 MARKING OF TEST PORTS

The TAB team is to permanently and legibly mark and identify the location points of the duct test ports. If the ducts have exterior insulation, make these markings on the exterior side of the duct insulation. Show the location of test ports on the as-built mechanical drawings with dimensions given where the test port is covered by exterior insulation.

3.6 APPENDICES

Appendix A WORK DESCRIPTIONS OF PARTICIPANTS
Appendix B REPORTS - DALT and TAB
Appendix C DALT AND TAB SUBMITTAL AND WORK SCHEDULE
Appendix D REQUIREMENTS FOR DUCT AIR LEAK TESTING

Appendix A

WORK DESCRIPTIONS OF PARTICIPANTS

The Contractor is responsible for ensuring compliance with all requirements of this specification section. However, the following delineation of specific work items is provided to facilitate and co-ordinate execution of the various work efforts by personnel from separate organizations.

1. Contractor

- a. HVAC documentation: Provide pertinent contract documentation to the TAB Firm, to include the following: the contract drawings and specifications; copies of the approved submittal data for all HVAC equipment, air distribution devices, and air/water measuring/balancing devices; the construction work schedule; and other applicable documents requested by the TAB Firm. Provide the TAB Firm copies of contract revisions and modifications as they occur.
- b. Schedules: Ensure the requirements specified under the paragraph "DALT and TAB Schedule" are met.
- c. Pre-DALT and TAB meeting: Arrange and conduct the Pre-DALT and TAB meeting. Ensure that a representative is present for the sheet metal contractor, the mechanical contractor, the electrical contractor, and the automatic temperature controls contractor.
- d. Coordinate Support: Provide and coordinate support personnel required by the TAB Firm in order to accomplish the DALT and TAB field work. Support personnel may include factory representatives, HVAC controls installers, HVAC equipment mechanics, sheet metal workers, pipe fitters, and insulators. Ensure support personnel are present at the work site at the times required.
- e. Correct Deficiencies: Ensure the notifications of Construction Deficiencies are provided as specified herein. Refer to the paragraph CONSTRUCTION DEFICIENCIES. Correct each deficiency as soon as practical with the Contracting Officer, and submit revised schedules and other required documentation.
- f. Pre-TAB Work Checklists: Complete check out and debugging of HVAC equipment, ducts, and controls prior to the TAB engineer arriving at the project site to begin the TAB work. Debugging includes searching for and eliminating malfunctioning elements in the HVAC system installations, and verifying all adjustable devices are functioning as designed. Include as pre-TAB work checklist items, the deficiencies pointed out by the TAB team supervisor in the design review report.

Prior to the TAB field team's arrival, ensure completion of the applicable inspections and work items listed in the TAB team supervisor's DALT and TAB Work Procedures Summary. Do not allow the TAB team to commence TAB field work until all of the following are completed.

- g. Give Notice of Testing: Submit advance notice of [proportional balancing](#), [Season 1](#), and [Season 2](#) TAB field work accompanied by completed prerequisite HVAC Work List

- h. Insulation work: Ensure that no insulation is shall not be installed on ducts to be DALT'd until DALT work on the subject ducts is complete.

Ensure the duct and piping systems are properly insulated and vapor sealed upon the successful completion and acceptance of the DALT and TAB work.

2. TAB Team Supervisor

- a. Overall management: Supervise and manage the overall TAB team work effort, including preliminary and technical DALT and TAB procedures and TAB team field work.
- b. Schedule: Ensure the requirements specified under the paragraph "DALT and TAB Schedule" are met.
- c. Submittals: Provide the submittals specified herein.
- d. Pre-DALT/TAB meeting: Attend meeting with Contractor. Ensure TAB personnel that will be involved in the TAB work under this contract attend the meeting.
- e. Design Review Report: Submit typed report describing omissions and deficiencies in the HVAC system's design that would preclude the TAB team from accomplishing the duct leakage testing work and the TAB work requirements of this section. Provide a complete explanation including supporting documentation detailing the design deficiency. State that no deficiencies are evident if that is the case.
- f. Support required: Specify the technical support personnel required from the Contractor other than the TAB agency; such as factory representatives for temperature controls or for complex equipment. Inform the Contractor in writing of the support personnel needed and when they are needed. Furnish the notice as soon as the need is anticipated, either with the design review report, or the DALT and TAB Procedures Summary, the during DALT or TAB field work.

Ensure the Contractor is properly notified and aware of all support personnel needed to perform the TAB work. Maintain communication with the Contractor regarding support personnel throughout the duration of the TAB field work, including the TAB field acceptance testing checking.

Ensure all inspections and verifications for the Pre-Final DALT and Pre-TAB Checklists are completely and successfully conducted before DALT and TAB field work is performed.

- g. Advance Notice: Monitor the completion of the duct system installations and provide the Advance Notice for Pre-Final DALT field work as specified herein.
- h. Technical Assistance: Provide technical assistance to the DALT and TAB field work.
- i. Deficiencies Notification: Ensure the notifications of Construction Deficiencies are provided as specified herein. Comply with requirements of the paragraph CONSTRUCTION DEFICIENCIES. Resolve each deficiency as soon as practical and submit revised schedules and other required documentation.

- j. Procedures: Develop the required TAB procedures for systems or system components not covered in the TAB Standard.

3. TAB Team Field Leader

- a. Field manager: Manage, in the field, the accomplishment of the work specified in Part 3, EXECUTION.
- b. Full time: Be present at the contract site when DALT field work or TAB field work is being performed by the TAB team; ensure day-to-day TAB team work accomplishments are in compliance with this section.
- c. Prerequisite HVAC work: Do not bring the TAB team to the contract site until a copy of the prerequisite HVAC work list, with all work items certified by the Contractor to be working as designed, reaches the office of the TAB Agency.

Appendix B

REPORTS - DALT and TAB

All submitted documentation must be typed, neat, and organized. All reports must have a waterproof front and back cover, a title page, a certification page, sequentially numbered pages throughout, and a table of contents. Tables, lists, and diagrams must be titled. Generate and submit for approval the following documentation:

1. DALT and TAB Work Execution Schedule

Submit a detailed schedule indicating the anticipated calendar date for each submittal and each portion of work required under this section. For each work entry, indicate the support personnel (such as controls provider, HVAC mechanic, etc.) that are needed to accomplish the work. Arrange schedule entries chronologically.

2. DALT and TAB Procedures Summary

Submit a detailed narrative describing all aspects of the DALT and TAB field work to be performed. Clearly distinguish between DALT information and TAB information. Include the following:

- a. A list of the intended procedural steps for the DALT and TAB field work from start to finish. Indicate how each type of data measurement will be obtained. Include what Contractor support personnel are required for each step, and the tasks they need to perform.
- b. A list of the project's submittals that are needed by the TAB Firm in order to meet this Contract's requirements.
- c. The schematic drawings to be used in the required reports, which may include building floor plans, mechanical room plans, duct system plans, and equipment elevations. Indicate intended TAB measurement locations, including where test ports need to be provided by the Contractor.
- d. The data presentation forms to be used in the report, with the preliminary information and initial design values filled in.
- e. A list of DALT and TAB instruments to be used, edited for this project, to include the instrument name and description, manufacturer, model number, scale range, published accuracy, most recent calibration date, and what the instrument will be used for on this project.
- f. A thorough checklist of the work items and inspections that need to be accomplished before DALT field work can be performed. The Contractor must complete, submit, and receive approval of the Completed Pre-Final DALT Work Checklist before DALT field work can be accomplished.
- g. A thorough checklist of the work items and inspections that need to be accomplished before the Season 1 TAB field work can be performed. The Contractor must complete, submit, and receive approval of the Completed Season 1 Pre-TAB Work Checklist before the Season 1 TAB field work can be accomplished.
- h. A thorough checklist of the work items and inspections that need to be accomplished before the Season 2 TAB field work can be performed. The

Contractor must complete, submit, and receive approval of the Completed Season 2 Pre-TAB Work Checklist before the Season 2 TAB field work can be accomplished.

- i. The checklists specified above shall be individually developed and tailored specifically for the work under this contract. Refer to **NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS**, Section III, "Preliminary TAB Procedures" under the paragraphs titled, "Air Distribution System Inspection" and "Hydronic Distribution System Inspection" for examples of items to include in the checklists.

3. Design Review Report

Submit report containing the following information:

- a. Review the contract specifications and drawings to verify that the TAB work can be successfully accomplished in compliance with the requirements of this section. Verify the presence and location of permanently installed test ports and other devices needed, including gauge cocks, thermometer wells, flow control devices, circuit setters, balancing valves, and manual volume dampers.
- b. Submit a typed report describing omissions and deficiencies in the HVAC system's design that would preclude the TAB team from accomplishing the DALT work and the TAB work requirements of this section. Provide a complete explanation including supporting documentation detailing the design deficiency. If no deficiencies are evident, state so in the report.

4. Completed Pre-Final DALT Work Checklist

Report the data for the Pre-Final DALT Report meeting the following requirements:

- a. Submit a copy of the approved DALT and TAB Procedures Summary: Provide notations describing how actual field procedures differed from the procedures listed.
- b. Report format: Submit a comprehensive report for the DALT field work data using data presentation forms equivalent to the "Air Duct Leakage Test Summary Report Forms" located in the **SMACNA 1972 CD**. In addition, submit in the report, a marked duct shop drawing which identifies each section of duct tested with assigned node numbers for each section. Node numbers shall be included in the completed report forms to identify each duct section.
- c. Calculations: Include a copy of all calculations prepared in determining the duct surface area of each duct test section. Include in the DALT reports copy(s) of the calibration curve for each of the DALT test orifices used for testing.
- d. Instruments: List the types of instruments actually used to measure the data. Include in the listing each instrument's unique identification number, calibration date, and calibration expiration date. Instruments are to be calibrated within one year of the date of use in the field; instrument calibration is to be traceable to the measuring standards of the National Institute of Standards and Technology.

- e. TAB Supervisor Approval: Include on the submitted report the typed name of the TAB supervisor and the dated signature of the TAB supervisor.

5. Final DALT Report

On successful completion of all COTR field checks of the Pre-final DALT Report data for all systems, the TABS Supervisor shall assemble, review, sign and submit the Final DALT Report to the Contracting Officer for approval.

- 6. TAB Reports: Submit TAB Report for Proportional Balancing, Season 1, and Season 2 in the following manner:

- a. Procedure Summary: Submit a copy of the approved DALT and TAB Procedures Summary. When applicable, provide notations describing how actual field procedures differed from the procedures listed.
- b. Report format: Submit the completed data forms approved in the pre-field TAB Engineering Report completed by TAB field team, reviewed, approved and signed by the TAB supervisor. Bind the report with a waterproof front and back cover. Include a table of contents identifying by page number the location of each report. Report forms and report data shall be typewritten. Handwritten report forms or report data are not acceptable.
- c. Temperatures: On each TAB report form reporting TAB work accomplished on HVAC thermal energy transfer equipment, include the indoor and outdoor dry bulb temperature range and indoor and outdoor wet bulb temperature range within which the TAB data was recorded. Include in the TAB report continuous time versus temperature recording data of wet and dry bulb temperatures for the rooms, or zones, as designated in the following list:

Two Conference Rooms

One OPS Area

Two Offices served by separate fan coil units

One Open Office Area

- (1) Data shall be measured and compiled on a continuous basis for the period in which TAB work affecting those rooms is being done.
 - (2) Data shall be measured/recorded only after the HVAC systems installations are complete, the systems fully balanced and the HVAC systems controls operating in fully automatic mode. Provide a detailed explanation wherever a final measurement did not achieve the required value.
 - (3) Data may be compiled using direct digital controls trend logging where available. Otherwise, the Contractor shall temporarily install calibrated time versus temperature/humidity recorders for this purpose. The HVAC systems and controls shall have been fully operational a minimum of 24 hours in advance of commencing data compilation. The specified data shall be included in the Season I and Season 2 TAB Report.
- d. Air System Diagrams: Provided updated diagrams with final installed locations of all terminals and devices, any numbering changes, and actual test locations.

- e. Air Static Pressure Profiles: Report static pressure profiles for air duct systems including: ACU-1 AND DOAS-1. Report static pressure data for all supply, return, relief, exhaust and outside air ducts for the systems listed. The static pressure report data shall include, in addition to AABC or NEBB or TABB required data, the following:

- (1) Report supply fan, return fan, relief fan, and exhaust fan inlet and discharge static pressures.
- (2) Report static pressure drop across DX coils, electric resistance heating coils and heat reclaim devices installed in unit cabinetry or the system ductwork.
- (3) Report static pressure drop across outside air, return air, and supply air automatic control dampers, both proportional and two-position, installed in unit cabinetry or the system ductwork.
- (4) Report static pressure drop across air filters, air flow measuring stations or other pressure drop producing specialty items installed in unit cabinetry, or in the system ductwork. Examples of these specialty items are smoke detectors.

Do not report static pressure drop across duct fittings provided for the sole purpose of conveying air, such as elbows, transitions, offsets, plenums, manual dampers, and branch takes-offs.

- (5) Report static pressure drop across outside air and relief/exhaust air louvers.
 - (6) Report static pressure readings of supply air, return air, exhaust/relief air, and outside air in duct at the point where these ducts connect to each air moving unit.
- f. Instruments: List the types of instruments actually used to measure the tab data. Include in the listing each instrument's unique identification number, calibration date, and calibration expiration date.

Instrumentation, used for taking wet bulb temperature readings shall provide accuracy of plus or minus 5 percent at the measured face velocities. Submit instrument manufacturer's literature to document instrument accuracy performance is in compliance with that specified.

- g. Performance Curves: The TAB Supervisor shall include, in the TAB Reports, factory fan curves for fans TAB'd on the job.
- h. Calibration Curves: The TAB Supervisor shall include, in the TAB Reports, a factory calibration curve for installed flow control balancing valves, flow venturis and flow orifices TAB'd on the job.
- i. Data From TAB Field Work: After completion of the TAB field work, prepare the TAB field data for TAB supervisor's review and approval signature, using the reporting forms approved in the pre-field engineering report. Data required by those approved data report forms shall be furnished by the TAB team. Except as approved otherwise in writing by the Contracting Officer, the TAB work and thereby the TAB report shall be considered incomplete until the TAB work is

accomplished to within the accuracy range specified in the paragraph
WORKMANSHIP.

Appendix C

DALT AND TAB SUBMITTAL AND WORK SCHEDULE

Perform the following items of work in the order listed adhering to the dates schedule specified below. Include the major items listed in this schedule in the project network analysis schedule required by Section 01 32 17.00 20 COST-LOADED NETWORK ANALYSIS SCHEDULES (NAS).

Submit TAB Agency and TAB Personnel Qualifications: Within 42 calendar days after date of contract award.

Submit the DALT and TAB Work Execution Schedule: within 14 days after receipt of the TAB agency and TAB personnel qualifications approval. Revise and re-submit this schedule 28 days prior to commencement of DALT work and 28 days prior to the commencement of TAB Season 1 work and TAB Season 2 work.

Submit the DALT and TAB Work Procedures Summary: within 14 days after receipt of the initial approved DALT and TAB Work Execution Schedule.

Meet with the COTR at the Pre-DALT/TAB Meeting: Within 28 calendar days after receipt of the approved initial DALT/TAB Execution Schedule.

Submit Design Review Report: Within 56 calendar days after the receipt of the approved initial DALT and TAB Work Execution Schedule.

Advance Notice of Pre-Final DALT Field Work: After the completed installation of the HVAC duct system to be DALT'd, submit to the Contracting Officer an Advance Notice of Pre-Final DALT Field Work accompanied by the completed Pre-Final DALT Work Checklist for the subject duct system.

Ductwork Selected for DALT: Within 14 calendar days after receiving an acceptable completed Pre-Final DALT Work Checklist, the Contracting Officer's technical representative (COTR) will select the project ductwork sections to be DALT'd.

DALT Field Work: Within 48 hours of COTR's selection, complete DALT field work on selected project ductwork.

Submit Pre-Final DALT Report: Within two working days after completion of DALT field work, submit Pre-final DALT Report. Separate Pre-final DALT reports may be submitted to allow phased testing from system to system.

Quality Assurance - COTR DALT Field Checks: Upon approval of the Pre-final DALT Report, the COTR's DALT field check work shall be scheduled with the Contracting Officer.

Submit Final DALT Report: Within 14 calendar days after completion of successful DALT Work Field Check, submit Season 1 TAB report.

Advance Notice of Season 1 TAB Field Work: At a minimum of 14 calendar days prior to Season 1 TAB Field Work, submit advance notice of TAB field work accompanied by completed Season 1 Pre-TAB Work Checklist.

Season 1 TAB Field Work: At a minimum of 84 calendar days prior to

CCD, and when the ambient temperature is within Season 1 limits, accomplish Season 1 TAB field work.

Submit Season 1 TAB Report: Within 14 calendar days after completion of Season 1 TAB field work, submit initial Season 1 TAB report.

Season 1 Quality Assurance - COTR TAB Field Check: 30 calendar days after initial Season 1 TAB report is approved by the Contracting Officer, conduct Season 1 field check.

Complete Season 1 TAB Work: Prior to CCD, complete all TAB work except Season 2 TAB work and submit final.

Receive the approved TAB report: Within 21 calendar days, receive the report from Contracting Officer approved TAB report.

Advance Notice of Season 2 TAB Field Work: At a minimum of 126 calendar days after CCD, submit advance notice of Season 2 TAB field work accompanied by completed Season 2 Pre-TAB Work Checklist.

Season 2 TAB Field Work: Within 14 calendar days after date of advance notice of Season 2 TAB field work and when the ambient temperature is within Season 2 limits, accomplish Season 2 TAB field work.

Submit Season 2 TAB Report: Within 14 calendar days after completion of Season 2 TAB field work, submit Season 2 TAB report.

Season 2 Quality Assurance - COTR TAB Field Checks: 28 calendar days after the Season 2 TAB report is approved by the Contracting Officer, conduct Season 2 field check.

Complete Season 2 TAB Work: Within 14 calendar days after the completion of Season 2 TAB field data check, complete all TAB work.

Receive the approved TAB report: Within calendar 21 days, receive the report from Contracting Officer.

Appendix D			
REQUIREMENTS FOR DUCT AIR LEAK TESTING			
		SYSTEMS	
		ENERGY RECOVERY UNIT ERU-1	FAN COIL UNITS FCU-#
Duct System Static Pressure, in inches W.C.	for Supply	2	1
	for Return	2	1
	for Exhaust	2	1
	for Outside Air	N/A	N/A
System Oval/Round Duct and Rectangular Duct SMACNA Seal Class	for Supply	A	A
	for Return	A	A
	for Exhaust	A	A
	for Outside Air	A	A
System Oval/Round Duct SMACNA Leak Class	for Supply	6	6
	for Return	12	12
	for Exhaust	12	12
	for Outside Air	N/A	N/A

Appendix D			
REQUIREMENTS FOR DUCT AIR LEAK TESTING			
		SYSTEMS	
		ENERGY RECOVERY UNIT ERU-1	FAN COIL UNITS FCU-#
System Rectangular Duct SMACNA Leak Class	for Supply	12	12
	for Return	24	24
	for Exhaust	24	24
	for Outside Air	N/A	N/A
Duct Test Pressure, in inches W.C.	for Supply	2	2
	for Return	2	2
	for Exhaust	2	2
	for Outside Air	N/A	N/A

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 07 00

THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS
02/13

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only. At the discretion of the Government, the manufacturer of any material supplied will be required to furnish test reports pertaining to any of the tests necessary to assure compliance with the standard or standards referenced in this specification.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 90.1 - IP (2016; ERTA 1-8 2017; INT 1-5 2017) Energy
Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise
Residential Buildings

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A167	(2011) Standard Specification for Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip
ASTM A240/A240M	(2018) Standard Specification for Chromium and Chromium-Nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip for Pressure Vessels and for General Applications
ASTM A580/A580M	(2018) Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Wire
ASTM B209	(2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate
ASTM C1126	(2018) Standard Specification for Faced or Unfaced Rigid Cellular Phenolic Thermal Insulation
ASTM C1136	(2017a) Standard Specification for Flexible, Low Permeance Vapor Retarders for Thermal Insulation
ASTM C1710	(2011) Standard Guide for Installation of Flexible Closed Cell Preformed Insulation in Tube and Sheet Form
ASTM C195	(2007; R 2013) Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Thermal Insulating Cement
ASTM C450	(2008) Standard Practice for Fabrication

	of Thermal Insulating Fitting Covers for NPS Piping, and Vessel Lagging
ASTM C533	(2017) Standard Specification for Calcium Silicate Block and Pipe Thermal Insulation
ASTM C534/C534M	(2016) Standard Specification for Preformed Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Thermal Insulation in Sheet and Tubular Form
ASTM C547	(2017) Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Pipe Insulation
ASTM C552	(2017; E 2018) Standard Specification for Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation
ASTM C591	(2017) Standard Specification for Unfaced Preformed Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation
ASTM C610	(2015) Standard Specification for Molded Expanded Perlite Block and Pipe Thermal Insulation
ASTM C647	(2008; R 2013) Properties and Tests of Mastics and Coating Finishes for Thermal Insulation
ASTM C795	(2008; R 2013) Standard Specification for Thermal Insulation for Use in Contact with Austenitic Stainless Steel
ASTM C920	(2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
ASTM C921	(2010) Standard Practice for Determining the Properties of Jacketing Materials for Thermal Insulation
ASTM D2863	(2017a) Standard Test Method for Measuring the Minimum Oxygen Concentration to Support Candle-Like Combustion of Plastics (Oxygen Index)
ASTM D5590	(2000; R 2010; E 2012) Standard Test Method for Determining the Resistance of Paint Films and Related Coatings to Fungal Defacement by Accelerated Four-Week Agar Plate Assay
ASTM D882	(2012) Tensile Properties of Thin Plastic Sheeting
ASTM E2231	(2018) Standard Practice for Specimen Preparation and Mounting of Pipe and Duct Insulation Materials to Assess Surface Burning Characteristics

ASTM E84 (2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

ASTM E96/E96M (2016) Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350 (2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources using Environmental Chambers

FM GLOBAL (FM)

FM APP GUIDE (updated on-line) Approval Guide
<http://www.approvalguide.com/>

GREEN SEAL (GS)

GS-36 (2013) Adhesives for Commercial Use

INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATION FOR STANDARDIZATION (ISO)

ISO 2758 (2014) Paper - Determination of Bursting Strength

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-58 (2009) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design and Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation

MIDWEST INSULATION CONTRACTORS ASSOCIATION (MICA)

MICA Insulation Stds (8th Ed) National Commercial & Industrial Insulation Standards

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 90A (2018) Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

NFPA 90B (2018) Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168 (2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications

TECHNICAL ASSOCIATION OF THE PULP AND PAPER INDUSTRY (TAPPI)

TAPPI T403 OM (2015) Bursting Strength of Paper

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

MIL-A-24179 (1969; Rev A; Am 2 1980; Notice 1 1987)
Adhesive, Flexible Unicellular-Plastic
Thermal Insulation

MIL-A-3316 (1987; Rev C; Am 2 1990) Adhesives,
Fire-Resistant, Thermal Insulation

MIL-PRF-19565 (1988; Rev C) Coating Compounds, Thermal
Insulation, Fire- and Water-Resistant,
Vapor-Barrier

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program
For Chemical Emissions For Building
Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

UL 723 (2018) UL Standard for Safety Test for
Surface Burning Characteristics of
Building Materials

UL 94 (2013; Reprint Sep 2017) UL Standard for
Safety Tests for Flammability of Plastic
Materials for Parts in Devices and
Appliances

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

1.2.1 General

Provide field-applied insulation and accessories on mechanical systems as specified herein; factory-applied insulation is specified under the piping, duct or equipment to be insulated. Insulation of heat distribution systems and chilled water systems outside of buildings shall be as specified in Section 33 61 13.13 PREFABRICATED UNDERGROUND HYDRONIC ENERGY DISTRIBUTION. Field applied insulation materials required for use on Government-furnished items as listed in the SPECIAL CONTRACT REQUIREMENTS shall be furnished and installed by the Contractor.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

Submit the three SD types, SD-02 Shop Drawings, SD-03 Product Data, and SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions at the same time for each system.

SD-02 Shop Drawings

MICA Plates; G

Pipe Insulation Systems and Associated Accessories

Duct Insulation Systems and Associated Accessories

Equipment Insulation Systems and Associated Accessories

Recycled content for insulation materials; S

SD-03 Product Data

Pipe Insulation Systems; G

Duct Insulation Systems; G

Equipment Insulation Systems; G

SD-04 Samples

Thermal Insulation; G

Display Samples; G

SD-07 Certificates

Indoor air quality for adhesives; S

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Pipe Insulation Systems; G

Duct Insulation Systems; G

Equipment Insulation Systems; G

1.4 CERTIFICATIONS

1.4.1 Adhesives and Sealants

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by [UL 2818](#) (Greenguard) Gold, [SCS](#) Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party programs that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited herein.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 Installer Qualification

Qualified installers shall have successfully completed three or more similar type jobs within the last 5 years.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Materials shall be delivered in the manufacturer's unopened containers. Materials delivered and placed in storage shall be provided with protection

from weather, humidity, dirt, dust and other contaminants. The Contracting Officer may reject insulation material and supplies that become dirty, dusty, wet, or contaminated by some other means. Packages or standard containers of insulation, jacket material, cements, adhesives, and coatings delivered for use, and samples required for approval shall have manufacturer's stamp or label attached giving the name of the manufacturer and brand, and a description of the material, date codes, and approximate shelf life (if applicable). Insulation packages and containers shall be asbestos free.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STANDARD PRODUCTS

Provide materials which are the standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products and that essentially duplicate items that have been in satisfactory use for at least 2 years prior to bid opening. Submit a complete list of materials, including manufacturer's descriptive technical literature, performance data, catalog cuts, and installation instructions. The product number, k-value, thickness and furnished accessories including adhesives, sealants and jackets for each mechanical system requiring insulation shall be included. The product data must be copyrighted, have an identifying or publication number, and shall have been published prior to the issuance date of this solicitation. Materials furnished under this section shall be submitted together in a booklet.

2.1.1 Insulation System

Provide insulation systems in accordance with the approved MICA National Insulation Standards plates as supplemented by this specification. Provide field-applied insulation for heating, ventilating, and cooling (HVAC) air distribution systems and piping systems that are located within, on, under, and adjacent to buildings; and for plumbing systems. Provide CFC and HCFC free insulation.

2.1.2 Surface Burning Characteristics

Unless otherwise specified, insulation must have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#). Flame spread, and smoke developed indexes, shall be determined by [ASTM E84](#) or [UL 723](#). Test insulation in the same density and installed thickness as the material to be used in the actual construction. Prepare and mount test specimens according to [ASTM E2231](#).

2.2 MATERIALS

Provide insulation that meets or exceeds the requirements of [ASHRAE 90.1 - IP](#). Insulation exterior shall be cleanable, grease resistant, non-flaking and non-peeling. Materials shall be compatible and shall not contribute to corrosion, soften, or otherwise attack surfaces to which applied in either wet or dry state. Materials to be used on stainless steel surfaces shall meet [ASTM C795](#) requirements. Calcium silicate shall not be used on chilled or cold water systems. Materials shall be asbestos free. Provide product recognized under [UL 94](#) (if containing plastic) and listed in [FM APP GUIDE](#).

2.2.1 Adhesives

Provide non-aerosol adhesive products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) that meet either emissions requirements of [CDPH SECTION 01350](#) (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of [SCAQMD Rule 1168](#) (HVAC duct sealants must meet limit requirements of "Other" category within [SCAQMD Rule 1168](#) sealants table). Provide aerosol adhesives used on the interior of the building that meet either emissions requirements of [CDPH SECTION 01350](#) (use the office or classroom requirements, regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of [GS-36](#). Provide certification or validation of [indoor air quality for adhesives](#).

2.2.1.1 Mineral Fiber Insulation Cement

Cement shall be in accordance with [ASTM C195](#).

2.2.1.2 Lagging Adhesive

Lagging is the material used for [thermal insulation](#), especially around a cylindrical object. This may include the insulation as well as the cloth/material covering the insulation. To resist mold/mildew, lagging adhesive shall meet [ASTM D5590](#) with 0 growth rating. Lagging adhesives shall be nonflammable and fire-resistant and shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#). Adhesive shall be [MIL-A-3316](#), Class 1, pigmented white and be suitable for bonding fibrous glass cloth to faced and unfaced fibrous glass insulation board; for bonding cotton brattice cloth to faced and unfaced fibrous glass insulation board; for sealing edges of and bonding glass tape to joints of fibrous glass board; for bonding lagging cloth to thermal insulation; or Class 2 for attaching fibrous glass insulation to metal surfaces. Lagging adhesives shall be applied in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for pipe and duct insulation.

2.2.1.3 Contact Adhesive

Adhesives may be any of, but not limited to, the neoprene based, rubber based, or elastomeric type that have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#). The adhesive shall not adversely affect, initially or in service, the insulation to which it is applied, nor shall it cause any corrosive effect on metal to which it is applied. Any solvent dispersing medium or volatile component of the adhesive shall have no objectionable odor and shall not contain any benzene or carbon tetrachloride. The dried adhesive shall not emit nauseous, irritating, or toxic volatile matters or aerosols when the adhesive is heated to any temperature up to [212 degrees F](#). The dried adhesive shall be nonflammable and fire resistant. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with [MIL-A-24179](#), Type II, Class I. Provide product listed in [FM APP GUIDE](#).

2.2.2 Caulking

[ASTM C920](#), Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use A.

2.2.3 Corner Angles

Nominal [0.016 inch](#) aluminum [1 by 1 inch](#) with factory applied kraft

backing. Aluminum shall be [ASTM B209](#), Alloy 3003, 3105, or 5005.

2.2.4 Fittings

Fabricated Fittings are the prefabricated fittings for flexible elastomeric pipe insulation systems in accordance with [ASTM C1710](#). Together with the flexible elastomeric tubes, they provide complete system integrity for retarding heat gain and controlling condensation drip from chilled-water and refrigeration systems. Flexible elastomeric, fabricated fittings provide thermal protection (0.25 k) and condensation resistance (0.05 Water Vapor Transmission factor). For satisfactory performance, properly installed protective vapor retarder/barriers and vapor stops shall be used on high relative humidity and below ambient temperature applications to reduce movement of moisture through or around the insulation to the colder interior surface.

2.2.5 Finishing Cement

[ASTM C450](#): Mineral fiber hydraulic-setting thermal insulating and finishing cement. All cements that may come in contact with Austenitic stainless steel must comply with [ASTM C795](#).

2.2.6 Fibrous Glass Cloth and Glass Tape

Fibrous glass cloth, with 20X20 maximum mesh size, and glass tape shall have maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#). Tape shall be 4 inch wide rolls. Class 3 tape shall be 4.5 ounces/square yard. Elastomeric Foam Tape: Black vapor-retarder foam tape with acrylic adhesive containing an anti-microbial additive.

2.2.7 Staples

Outward clinching type monel or [ASTM A167](#), Type 304 or 316 stainless steel.

2.2.8 Jackets

2.2.8.1 Aluminum Jackets

Aluminum jackets shall be corrugated, embossed or smooth sheet, 0.016 inch nominal thickness; [ASTM B209](#), Temper H14, Temper H16, Alloy 3003, 5005, or 3105. Corrugated aluminum jacket shall not be used outdoors. Aluminum jacket securing bands shall be Type 304 stainless steel, 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide for pipe under 12 inch diameter and 3/4 inch wide for pipe over 12 inch and larger diameter. Aluminum jacket circumferential seam bands shall be 2 by 0.016 inch aluminum matching jacket material. Bands for insulation below ground shall be 3/4 by 0.020 inch thick stainless steel, or fiberglass reinforced tape. The jacket may, at the option of the Contractor, be provided with a factory fabricated Pittsburgh or "Z" type longitudinal joint. When the "Z" joint is used, the bands at the circumferential joints shall be designed by the manufacturer to seal the joints and hold the jacket in place.

2.2.8.2 Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Jackets

Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) jacket and fitting covers shall have high impact strength, ultraviolet (UV) resistant rating or treatment and moderate chemical resistance with minimum thickness 0.030 inch.

2.2.8.3 Vapor Barrier/Vapor Retarder

Apply the following criteria to determine which system is required.

- a. On ducts, piping and equipment operating below 91 degrees F or located outside shall be equipped with a vapor barrier.
- b. Ducts, pipes and equipment that are located inside and that always operate above 91 degrees F shall be installed with a vapor retarder where required as stated in paragraph VAPOR RETARDER REQUIRED.

2.2.9 Vapor Retarder Required

ASTM C921, Type I, minimum puncture resistance 50 Beach units on all surfaces except concealed ductwork, where a minimum puncture resistance of 25 Beach units is acceptable. Minimum tensile strength, 35 pounds/inch width. ASTM C921, Type II, minimum puncture resistance 25 Beach units, tensile strength minimum 20 pounds/inch width. Jackets used on insulation exposed in finished areas shall have white finish suitable for painting without sizing. Based on the application, insulation materials that require manufacturer or fabricator applied pipe insulation jackets are cellular glass, when all joints are sealed with a vapor barrier mastic, and mineral fiber. All non-metallic jackets shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Flexible elastomerics require (in addition to vapor barrier skin) vapor retarder jacketing for high relative humidity and below ambient temperature applications.

2.2.9.1 White Vapor Retarder All Service Jacket (ASJ)

ASJ is for use on hot/cold pipes, ducts, or equipment indoors or outdoors if covered by a suitable protective jacket. The product shall meet all physical property and performance requirements of ASTM C1136, Type I, except the burst strength shall be a minimum of 85 psi. ASTM D2863 Limited Oxygen Index (LOI) shall be a minimum of 31.

In addition, neither the outer exposed surface nor the inner-most surface contacting the insulation shall be paper or other moisture-sensitive material. The outer exposed surface shall be white and have an emittance of not less than 0.80. The outer exposed surface shall be paintable.

2.2.9.2 Vapor Retarder/Vapor Barrier Mastic Coatings

2.2.9.2.1 Vapor Barrier

The vapor barrier shall be self adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) greater than 3 plies standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed white jacket for use on hot/cold pipes. Permeability shall be less than 0.02 when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M. Products shall meet UL 723 or ASTM E84 flame and smoke requirements and shall be UV resistant.

2.2.9.2.2 Vapor Retarder

The vapor retarder coating shall be fire and water resistant and appropriately selected for either outdoor or indoor service. Color shall be white. The water vapor permeance of the compound shall be 0.013 perms or less at 43 mils dry film thickness as determined according to procedure B of ASTM E96/E96M utilizing apparatus described in ASTM E96/E96M. The

coating shall be nonflammable, fire resistant type. To resist mold/mildew, coating shall meet [ASTM D5590](#) with 0 growth rating. Coating shall meet [MIL-PRF-19565](#) Type II (if selected for indoor service) and be Qualified Products Database listed. All other application and service properties shall be in accordance with [ASTM C647](#).

2.2.9.3 Laminated Film Vapor Retarder

[ASTM C1136](#), Type I, maximum moisture vapor transmission 0.02 perms, minimum puncture resistance 50 Beach units on all surfaces except concealed ductwork; where Type II, maximum moisture vapor transmission 0.02 perms, a minimum puncture resistance of 25 Beach units is acceptable. Vapor retarder shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#). Flexible Elastomeric exterior foam with factory applied UV Jacket. Construction of laminate designed to provide UV resistance, high puncture, tear resistance and an excellent WVT rate.

2.2.9.4 Polyvinylidene Chloride (PVDC) Film Vapor Retarder

The PVDC film vapor retarder shall have a maximum moisture vapor transmission of 0.02 perms, minimum puncture resistance of 150 Beach units, a minimum tensile strength in any direction of [30 lb/inch](#) when tested in accordance with [ASTM D882](#), and a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#).

2.2.9.5 Polyvinylidene Chloride Vapor Retarder Adhesive Tape

Requirements must meet the same as specified for Laminated Film Vapor Retarder above.

2.2.9.6 Vapor Barrier/Weather Barrier

The vapor barrier shall be greater than 3 ply self adhesive laminate -white vapor barrier jacket- superior performance (less than 0.0000 permeability when tested in accordance with [ASTM E96/E96M](#)). Vapor barrier shall meet [UL 723](#) or [ASTM E84](#) 25 flame and 50 smoke requirements; and UV resistant. Minimum burst strength [185 psi](#) in accordance with [TAPPI T403 OM](#) or [ISO 2758](#). Tensile strength [68 lb/inch](#) width (PSTC-1000). Tape shall be as specified for laminated film vapor barrier above.

2.2.10 Vapor Retarder Not Required

[ASTM C921](#), Type II, Class D, minimum puncture resistance 50 Beach units on all surfaces except ductwork, where Type IV, maximum moisture vapor transmission 0.10, a minimum puncture resistance of 25 Beach units is acceptable. Jacket shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#).

2.2.11 Wire

Soft annealed [ASTM A580/A580M](#) Type 302, 304 or 316 stainless steel, 16 or 18 gauge.

2.2.12 Insulation Bands

Insulation bands shall be [1/2 inch](#) wide; 26 gauge stainless steel.

2.2.13 Sealants

Sealants shall be chosen from the butyl polymer type, the styrene-butadiene rubber type, or the butyl type of sealants. Sealants shall have a maximum permeance of 0.02 perms based on Procedure B for [ASTM E96/E96M](#), and a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#).

2.3 PIPE INSULATION SYSTEMS

Conform insulation materials to Table 1 and minimum insulation thickness as listed in Table 2 and meet or exceed the requirements of [ASHRAE 90.1 - IP](#). Limit pipe insulation materials to those listed herein and meeting the following requirements:

2.3.1 Recycled Materials

Provide insulation materials containing the following minimum percentage of recycled material content by weight:

Rock Wool: 75 percent slag of weight
Fiberglass: 20 percent glass cullet
Rigid Foam: 9 percent recovered material
Phenolic Rigid Foam: 9 percent recovered material

Provide data identifying percentage of [recycled content for insulation materials](#).

2.3.2 Aboveground Cold Pipeline (-30 to 60 deg. F)

Insulation for outdoor, indoor, exposed or concealed applications, shall be as follows:

2.3.2.1 Cellular Glass

[ASTM C552](#), Type II, and Type III. Supply the insulation from the fabricator with (paragraph WHITE VAPOR RETARDER ALL SERVICE JACKET (ASJ)) ASJ vapor retarder and installed with all longitudinal overlaps sealed and all circumferential joints ASJ taped or supply the insulation unfaced from the fabricator and install with all longitudinal and circumferential joints sealed with vapor barrier mastic.

2.3.2.2 Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation

Closed-cell, foam- or expanded-rubber materials containing anti-microbial additive, complying with [ASTM C534/C534M](#), Grade 1, Type I or II. Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials. Type II, Grade 1, for sheet materials. Type I and II shall have vapor retarder/vapor barrier skin on one or both sides of the insulation, and require an additional exterior vapor retarder covering for high relative humidity and below ambient temperature applications.

2.3.2.3 Mineral Fiber Insulation with Integral Wicking Material (MFIWM)

[ASTM C547](#). Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Do not use in applications exposed to outdoor ambient conditions in climatic zones 1 through 4.

2.3.2.4 Polyisocyanurate Insulation

ASTM C591, Type I. Supply the insulation with a factory applied vapor retarder/barrier that complies with Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS. The insulation and all covering must pass the flame spread index of 25 and the smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

2.3.3 Aboveground Hot Pipeline (Above 60 deg. F)

Insulation for outdoor, indoor, exposed or concealed applications shall meet the following requirements. Supply the insulation with manufacturer's recommended factory-applied jacket/vapor barrier.

2.3.3.1 Mineral Fiber

ASTM C547, Types I, II or III, supply the insulation with manufacturer's recommended factory-applied jacket.

2.3.3.2 Calcium Silicate

ASTM C533, Type I indoor only, or outdoors above 250 degrees F pipe temperature. Supply insulation with the manufacturer's recommended factory-applied jacket/vapor barrier.

2.3.3.3 Cellular Glass

ASTM C552, Type II and Type III. Supply the insulation with manufacturer's recommended factory-applied jacket.

2.3.3.4 Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation

Closed-cell, foam- or expanded-rubber materials containing anti-microbial additive, complying with ASTM C534/C534M, Grade 1, Type I or II to 220 degrees F service. Type I for tubular materials. Type II for sheet materials.

2.3.3.5 Phenolic Insulation

ASTM C1126 Type III to 250 degrees F service shall comply with ASTM C795. Supply the insulation with manufacturer's recommended factory-applied jacket/vapor barrier.

2.3.3.6 Perlite Insulation

ASTM C610

2.3.3.7 Polyisocyanurate Insulation

ASTM C591, Type I. Supply the insulation with a factory applied vapor retarder/barrier that complies with Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS. The insulation and all covering must pass the flame spread index of 25 and the smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

2.3.4 Below-ground Pipeline Insulation

For below-ground pipeline insulation, use cellular glass, ASTM C552, type II.

2.4 DUCT INSULATION SYSTEMS

2.4.1 Factory Applied Insulation

Provide factory-applied **ASTM C552**, cellular glass thermal or **ASTM C534/C534M** Grade 1, Type II, flexible elastomeric closed cell insulation according to manufacturer's recommendations for insulation with insulation manufacturer's standard reinforced fire-retardant vapor barrier, with identification of installed thermal resistance (R) value and out-of-package R value.

2.4.1.1 Rigid Insulation

Calculate the minimum thickness in accordance with **ASHRAE 90.1 - IP**.

2.4.1.2 Blanket Insulation

Calculate minimum thickness in accordance with **ASHRAE 90.1 - IP**.

2.4.2 Duct Insulation Jackets

2.4.2.1 All-Purpose Jacket

Provide insulation with insulation manufacturer's standard reinforced fire-retardant jacket with or without integral vapor barrier as required by the service. In exposed locations, provide jacket with a white surface suitable for field painting.

2.4.2.2 Metal Jackets

2.4.2.2.1 Aluminum Jackets

ASTM B209, Temper H14, minimum thickness of 27 gauge (0.016 inch), with factory-applied polyethylene and kraft paper moisture barrier on inside surface. Provide smooth surface jackets for jacket outside dimension 8 inches and larger. Provide corrugated surface jackets for jacket outside dimension 8 inches and larger. Provide stainless steel bands, minimum width of 1/2 inch.

2.4.2.2.2 Stainless Steel Jackets

ASTM A167 or **ASTM A240/A240M**; Type 304, minimum thickness of 33 gauge (0.010 inch), smooth surface with factory-applied polyethylene and kraft paper moisture barrier on inside surface. Provide stainless steel bands, minimum width of 1/2 inch.

2.4.2.3 Vapor Barrier/Weatherproofing Jacket

Vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket shall be laminated self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) less than 0.0000 permeability, (greater than 3 ply, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed or greater than 8 ply (minimum 2.9 mils adhesive), heavy duty white or natural).

2.5 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SYSTEMS

Insulate equipment and accessories as specified in Tables 5 and 6. In outside locations, provide insulation 1/2 inch thicker than specified.

Increase the specified insulation thickness for equipment where necessary to equal the thickness of angles or other structural members to make a smooth, exterior surface. Submit a booklet containing manufacturer's published installation instructions for the insulation systems. The instructions must be copyrighted, have an identifying or publication number, and shall have been published prior to the issuance date of this solicitation. A booklet is also required by paragraphs titled: Pipe Insulation Systems and Duct Insulation Systems.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION - GENERAL

Insulation shall only be applied to unheated and uncooled piping and equipment. Flexible elastomeric cellular insulation shall not be compressed at joists, studs, columns, ducts, hangers, etc. The insulation shall not pull apart after a one hour period; any insulation found to pull apart after one hour, shall be replaced.

3.1.1 Display Samples

Submit and display, after approval of materials, actual sections of installed systems, properly insulated in accordance with the specification requirements. Such actual sections must remain accessible to inspection throughout the job and will be reviewed from time to time for controlling the quality of the work throughout the construction site. Each material used shall be identified, by indicating on an attached sheet the specification requirement for the material and the material by each manufacturer intended to meet the requirement. The Contracting Officer will inspect display sample sections at the jobsite. Approved display sample sections shall remain on display at the jobsite during the construction period. Upon completion of construction, the display sample sections will be closed and sealed.

3.1.1.1 Pipe Insulation Display Sections

Display sample sections shall include as a minimum an elbow or tee, a valve, dielectric waterways and flanges, a hanger with protection shield and insulation insert, or dowel as required, at support point, method of fastening and sealing insulation at longitudinal lap, circumferential lap, butt joints at fittings and on pipe runs, and terminating points for each type of pipe insulation used on the job, and for hot pipelines and cold pipelines, both interior and exterior, even when the same type of insulation is used for these services.

3.1.1.2 Duct Insulation Display Sections

Display sample sections for rigid and flexible duct insulation used on the job. Use a temporary covering to enclose and protect display sections for duct insulation exposed to weather

3.1.2 Installation

Except as otherwise specified, material shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions. Insulation materials shall not be applied until tests and heat tracing specified in other sections of this specification are completed. Material such as rust, scale, dirt and moisture shall be removed from surfaces to receive insulation. Insulation shall be kept clean and dry. Insulation shall not be removed from its

shipping containers until the day it is ready to use and shall be returned to like containers or equally protected from dirt and moisture at the end of each workday. Insulation that becomes dirty shall be thoroughly cleaned prior to use. If insulation becomes wet or if cleaning does not restore the surfaces to like new condition, the insulation will be rejected, and shall be immediately removed from the jobsite. Joints shall be staggered on multi layer insulation. Mineral fiber thermal insulating cement shall be mixed with demineralized water when used on stainless steel surfaces. Insulation, jacketing and accessories shall be installed in accordance with **MICA Insulation Stds** plates except where modified herein or on the drawings.

3.1.3 Firestopping

Where **pipes** and **ducts** pass through fire walls, fire partitions, above grade floors, and fire rated chase walls, the penetration shall be sealed with fire stopping materials as specified in Section **07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING**. The protection of ducts at point of passage through firewalls must be in accordance with **NFPA 90A** and/or **NFPA 90B**. All other penetrations, such as piping, conduit, and wiring, through firewalls must be protected with a material or system of the same hourly rating that is listed by UL, FM, or a NRTL.

3.1.4 Painting and Finishing

Painting shall be as specified in Section **09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS**.

3.1.5 Installation of Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation

Install flexible elastomeric cellular insulation with seams and joints sealed with rubberized contact adhesive. Flexible elastomeric cellular insulation shall not be used on surfaces greater than **220 degrees F**. Stagger seams when applying multiple layers of insulation. Protect insulation exposed to weather and not shown to have vapor barrier weatherproof jacketing with two coats of UV resistant finish or PVC or metal jacketing as recommended by the manufacturer after the adhesive is dry and cured.

3.1.5.1 Adhesive Application

Apply a brush coating of adhesive to both butt ends to be joined and to both slit surfaces to be sealed. Allow the adhesive to set until dry to touch but tacky under slight pressure before joining the surfaces. Insulation seals at seams and joints shall not be capable of being pulled apart one hour after application. Insulation that can be pulled apart one hour after installation shall be replaced.

3.1.5.2 Adhesive Safety Precautions

Use natural cross-ventilation, local (mechanical) pickup, and/or general area (mechanical) ventilation to prevent an accumulation of solvent vapors, keeping in mind the ventilation pattern must remove any heavier-than-air solvent vapors from lower levels of the workspaces. Gloves and spectacle-type safety glasses are recommended in accordance with safe installation practices.

3.1.6 Welding

No welding shall be done on **piping**, **duct** or **equipment** without written approval of the Contracting Officer. **The capacitor discharge welding**

process may be used for securing metal fasteners to duct.

3.1.7 Pipes/Ducts/Equipment That Require Insulation

Insulation is required on all pipes, ducts, or equipment, except for omitted items as specified.

3.2 PIPE INSULATION SYSTEMS INSTALLATION

3.2.1 Pipe Insulation

3.2.1.1 General

Pipe insulation shall be installed on aboveground hot and cold pipeline systems as specified below to form a continuous thermal retarder/barrier, including straight runs, fittings and appurtenances unless specified otherwise. Installation shall be with full length units of insulation and using a single cut piece to complete a run. Cut pieces or scraps abutting each other shall not be used. Pipe insulation shall be omitted on the following:

- a. Pipe used solely for fire protection.
- b. Chromium plated pipe to plumbing fixtures. However, fixtures for use by the physically handicapped shall have the hot water supply and drain, including the trap, insulated where exposed.
- c. Sanitary drain lines.
- d. ASME stamps.
- e. Access plates of fan housings.
- f. Cleanouts or handholes.

3.2.1.2 Pipes Passing Through Walls, Roofs, and Floors

Pipe insulation shall be continuous through the sleeve.

Provide an aluminum jacket or vapor barrier/weatherproofing self adhesive jacket (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) less than 0.0000 permeability, greater than 3 ply standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed with factory applied moisture retarder over the insulation wherever penetrations require sealing.

3.2.1.2.1 Penetrate Interior Walls

The aluminum jacket or vapor barrier/weatherproofing - self adhesive jacket (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) less than 0.0000 permeability, greater than 3 plies standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed shall extend 2 inches beyond either side of the wall and shall be secured on each end with a band.

3.2.1.2.2 Penetrating Floors

Extend the aluminum jacket from a point below the backup material to a point 10 inches above the floor with one band at the floor and one not more than 1 inch from the end of the aluminum jacket.

3.2.1.2.3 Penetrating Waterproofed Floors

Extend the aluminum jacket rom below the backup material to a point 2 inches above the flashing with a band 1 inch from the end of the aluminum jacket.

3.2.1.2.4 Penetrating Exterior Walls

Continue the aluminum jacket required for pipe exposed to weather through the sleeve to a point 2 inches beyond the interior surface of the wall.

3.2.1.2.5 Penetrating Roofs

Insulate pipe as required for interior service to a point flush with the top of the flashing and sealed with flashing sealant. Tightly butt the insulation for exterior application to the top of flashing and interior insulation. Extend the exterior aluminum jacket 2 inches down beyond the end of the insulation to form a counter flashing. Seal the flashing and counter flashing underneath with metal jacketing/flashing sealant.

3.2.1.2.6 Hot Water Pipes Supplying Lavatories or Other Similar Heated Service

Terminate the insulation on the backside of the finished wall. Protect the insulation termination with two coats of vapor barrier coating with a minimum total thickness of 1/16 inch applied with glass tape embedded between coats (if applicable). Extend the coating out onto the insulation 2 inches and seal the end of the insulation. Overlap glass tape seams 1 inch. Caulk the annular space between the pipe and wall penetration with approved fire stop material. Cover the pipe and wall penetration with a properly sized (well fitting) escutcheon plate. The escutcheon plate shall overlap the wall penetration at least 3/8 inches.

3.2.1.2.7 Domestic Cold Water Pipes Supplying Lavatories or Other Similar Cooling Service

Terminate the insulation on the finished side of the wall (i.e., insulation must cover the pipe throughout the wall penetration). Protect the insulation with two coats of weather barrier mastic (breather emulsion type weatherproof mastic impermeable to water and permeable to air) with a minimum total thickness of 1/16 inch. Extend the mastic out onto the insulation 2 inches and shall seal the end of the insulation. The annular space between the outer surface of the pipe insulation and caulk the wall penetration with an approved fire stop material having vapor retarder properties. Cover the pipe and wall penetration with a properly sized (well fitting) escutcheon plate. The escutcheon plate shall overlap the wall penetration by at least 3/8 inches.

3.2.1.3 Pipes Passing Through Hangers

Insulation, whether hot or cold application, shall be continuous through hangers. All horizontal pipes 2 inches and smaller shall be supported on hangers with the addition of a Type 40 protection shield to protect the insulation in accordance with MSS SP-58. Whenever insulation shows signs of being compressed, or when the insulation or jacket shows visible signs of distortion at or near the support shield, insulation inserts as specified below for piping larger than 2 inches shall be installed, or factory insulated hangers (designed with a load bearing core) can be used.

3.2.1.3.1 Horizontal Pipes Larger Than 2 Inches at 60 Degrees F and Above

Supported on hangers in accordance with MSS SP-58, and Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.

3.2.1.3.2 Horizontal Pipes Larger Than 2 Inches and Below 60 Degrees F

Supported on hangers with the addition of a Type 40 protection shield in accordance with MSS SP-58. An insulation insert of cellular glass, prefabricated insulation pipe hangers, or perlite above 80 degrees F shall be installed above each shield. The insert shall cover not less than the bottom 180-degree arc of the pipe. Inserts shall be the same thickness as the insulation, and shall extend 2 inches on each end beyond the protection shield. When insulation inserts are required in accordance with the above, and the insulation thickness is less than 1 inch, wooden or cork dowels or blocks may be installed between the pipe and the shield to prevent the weight of the pipe from crushing the insulation, as an option to installing insulation inserts. The insulation jacket shall be continuous over the wooden dowel, wooden block, or insulation insert.

3.2.1.3.3 Vertical Pipes

Supported with either Type 8 or Type 42 riser clamps with the addition of two Type 40 protection shields in accordance with MSS SP-58 covering the 360-degree arc of the insulation. An insulation insert of cellular glass or calcium silicate shall be installed between each shield and the pipe. The insert shall cover the 360-degree arc of the pipe. Inserts shall be the same thickness as the insulation, and shall extend 2 inches on each end beyond the protection shield. When insulation inserts are required in accordance with the above, and the insulation thickness is less than 1 inch, wooden or cork dowels or blocks may be installed between the pipe and the shield to prevent the hanger from crushing the insulation, as an option instead of installing insulation inserts. The insulation jacket shall be continuous over the wooden dowel, wooden block, or insulation insert. The vertical weight of the pipe shall be supported with hangers located in a horizontal section of the pipe. When the pipe riser is longer than 30 feet, the weight of the pipe shall be additionally supported with hangers in the vertical run of the pipe that are directly clamped to the pipe, penetrating the pipe insulation. These hangers shall be insulated and the insulation jacket sealed as indicated herein for anchors in a similar service.

3.2.1.3.4 Inserts

Covered with a jacket material of the same appearance and quality as the adjoining pipe insulation jacket, overlap the adjoining pipe jacket 1-1/2 inches, and seal as required for the pipe jacket. The jacket material used to cover inserts in flexible elastomeric cellular insulation shall conform to ASTM C1136, Type 1, and is allowed to be of a different material than the adjoining insulation material.

3.2.1.4 Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Pipe Insulation

Flexible elastomeric cellular pipe insulation shall be tubular form for pipe sizes 6 inches and less. Grade 1, Type II sheet insulation used on pipes larger than 6 inches shall not be stretched around the pipe. On pipes larger than 12 inches, the insulation shall be adhered directly to the pipe on the lower 1/3 of the pipe. Seams shall be staggered when applying multiple layers of insulation. Sweat fittings shall be insulated with miter-cut pieces the same size as on adjacent piping. Screwed

fittings shall be insulated with sleeved fitting covers fabricated from miter-cut pieces and shall be overlapped and sealed to the adjacent pipe insulation. Type II requires an additional exterior vapor retarder/barrier covering for high relative humidity and below ambient temperature applications.

3.2.1.5 Pipes in high abuse areas.

In high abuse areas such as janitor closets and mechanical rooms, welded PVC, aluminum or flexible laminate cladding (comprised of elastomeric, plastic or metal foil laminate) laminated self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket, - less than 0.0000 permeability; (greater than 3 ply, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed) jackets shall be utilized. Pipe insulation to the 6 foot level shall be protected.

3.2.1.6 Pipe Insulation Material and Thickness

Pipe insulation materials must be as listed in Table 1 and must meet or exceed the requirements of ASHRAE 90.1.

TABLE 1					
Insulation Material for Piping					
Service					
	Material	Specification	Type	Class	VR/VB Req'd
Chilled Water (Supply & Return 40 F nominal)					
	Cellular Glass	ASTM C552	II	2	Yes
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	ASTM C534/C534M	I		Yes
	Mineral Fiber with Wicking Material. Do not use in applications exposed to outdoor ambient conditions in climatic zones 1 through 4.	ASTM C547	I		Yes
Heating Hot Water Supply & Return(Max 250 F)					
	Mineral Fiber	ASTM C547	I	1	No
	Calcium Silicate	ASTM C533	I		No
	Cellular Glass	ASTM C552	II	2	No
	Faced Phenolic Foam	ASTM C1126	III		Yes
	Perlite	ASTM C610			No
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	ASTM C534/C534M	I	2	No
Cold Domestic Water Piping, Makeup Water & Drinking Fountain Drain Piping					
	Cellular Glass	ASTM C552	II	2	No
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	ASTM C534/C534M	I		No
Hot Domestic Water Supply & Recirculating Piping (Max 200 F)					

TABLE 1					
Insulation Material for Piping					
Service					
	Material	Specification	Type	Class	VR/VB Req'd
	Mineral Fiber	ASTM C547	I	1	No
	Cellular Glass	ASTM C552	II	2	No
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	ASTM C534/C534M	I		No
	Faced Phenolic Foam	ASTM C1126	III		Yes
Refrigerant Suction Piping (35 degrees F nominal)					
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	ASTM C534/C534M	I		No
	Cellular Glass	ASTM C552	II	1	Yes
Exposed Lavatory Drains, Exposed Domestic Water Piping & Drains to Areas for Handicapped Personnel					
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	ASTM C534/C534M	I		No
Condensate Drain Located Inside Building					
	Cellular Glass	ASTM C552	II	2	No
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	ASTM C534/C534M	I		No
Note: VR/VB = Vapor Retarder/Vapor Barrier					

TABLE 2					
Piping Insulation Thickness (inch)					
Do not use integral wicking material in Chilled water applications exposed to outdoor ambient conditions in climatic zones 1 through 4.					
Service					
	Material	Tube And Pipe Size (inch)			
		<1	1-<1.5	1.5-<4	4-<8 > or = >8
Chilled Water (Supply & Return, Dual Temperature Piping, 40-60 Degrees F nominal)					

TABLE 2						
Piping Insulation Thickness (inch) Do not use integral wicking material in Chilled water applications exposed to outdoor ambient conditions in climatic zones 1 through 4.						
Service						
	Material	Tube And Pipe Size (inch)				
		<1	1-<1.5	1.5-<4	4-<8	> or = >8
	Cellular Glass	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	2
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1	1	1	N/A	N/A
	Mineral Fiber with Wicking Material	1	1.5	1.5	2	2
Heating Hot Water Supply & Return(Max 250 F)						
	Mineral Fiber	1.5	1.5	2	2	2
	Calcium Silicate	2.5	2.5	3	3	3
	Cellular Glass	2	2.5	3	3	3
	Perlite	2.5	2.5	3	3	3
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1	1	1	N/A	N/A
Cold Domestic Water Piping, Makeup Water & Drinking Fountain Drain Piping						
	Cellular Glass	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1	1	1	N/A	N/A
Hot Domestic Water Supply & Recirculating Piping (Max 200 F)						
	Mineral Fiber	1	1	1	1.5	1.5
	Cellular Glass	1.5	1.5	1.5	2	2
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1	1	1	N/A	N/A
Refrigerant Suction Piping (35 degrees F nominal)						
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1	1	1	N/A	N/A
	Cellular Glass	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
Exposed Lavatory Drains, Exposed Domestic Water Piping & Drains to Areas for Handicapped Personnel						
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5
Condensate Drain Located Inside Building						

TABLE 2						
Piping Insulation Thickness (inch) Do not use integral wicking material in Chilled water applications exposed to outdoor ambient conditions in climatic zones 1 through 4.						
Service						
	Material	Tube And Pipe Size (inch)				
		<1	1-<1.5	1.5-<4	4-<8	> or = >8
	Cellular Glass	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1	1	1	N/A	N/A

3.2.2 Aboveground Cold Pipelines

The following cold pipelines for minus 30 to plus 60 degrees F, shall be insulated in accordance with Table 2 except those piping listed in subparagraph Pipe Insulation in PART 3 as to be omitted. This includes but is not limited to the following:

- Make-up water.
- Refrigerant suction lines.
- Chilled water.
- Air conditioner condensate drains.
- Exposed lavatory drains and domestic water lines serving plumbing fixtures for handicap persons.
- Domestic cold and chilled drinking water.

3.2.2.1 Insulation Material and Thickness

Insulation thickness for cold pipelines shall be determined using Table 2.

3.2.2.2 Factory or Field applied Jacket

Insulation shall be covered with a factory applied vapor retarder jacket/vapor barrier or field applied seal welded PVC jacket or greater than 3 ply laminated self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket - less than 0.0000

permeability, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed for use with Mineral Fiber, Cellular Glass, and Phenolic Foam Insulated Pipe. Insulation inside the building, to be protected with an aluminum jacket or greater than 3ply vapor barrier/weatherproofing self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) product, less than 0.0000 permeability, standard grade, Embossed Silver, White & Black, shall have the insulation and vapor retarder jacket installed as specified herein. The aluminum jacket or greater than 3ply vapor barrier/weatherproofing self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) product, less than 0.0000 permeability, standard grade, embossed silver, White & Black, shall be installed as specified for piping exposed to weather, except sealing of the laps of the aluminum jacket is not required. In high abuse areas such as janitor closets and traffic areas in equipment rooms, kitchens, and mechanical rooms, aluminum jackets or greater than 3ply vapor barrier/weatherproofing self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) product, less than 0.0000 permeability, standard grade, embossed silver, white & black, shall be provided for pipe insulation to the 6 ft level.

3.2.2.3 Installing Insulation for Straight Runs Hot and Cold Pipe

Apply insulation to the pipe with tight butt joints. Seal all butted joints and ends with joint sealant and seal with a vapor retarder coating, greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape or PVDC adhesive tape.

3.2.2.3.1 Longitudinal Laps of the Jacket Material

Overlap not less than 1-1/2 inches. Provide butt strips 3 inches wide for circumferential joints.

3.2.2.3.2 Laps and Butt Strips

Secure with adhesive and staple on 4 inch centers if not factory self-sealing. If staples are used, seal in accordance with paragraph STAPLES below. Note that staples are not required with cellular glass systems.

3.2.2.3.3 Factory Self-Sealing Lap Systems

May be used when the ambient temperature is between 40 and 120 degrees F during installation. Install the lap system in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Use a stapler only if specifically recommended by the manufacturer. Where gaps occur, replace the section or repair the gap by applying adhesive under the lap and then stapling.

3.2.2.3.4 Staples

Coat all staples, including those used to repair factory self-seal lap systems, with a vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape. Coat all seams, except those on factory self-seal systems, with vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.

3.2.2.3.5 Breaks and Punctures in the Jacket Material

Patch by wrapping a strip of jacket material around the pipe and secure it with adhesive, staple, and coat with vapor retarder coating or PVDC

adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape. Extend the patch not less than 1-1/2 inches past the break.

3.2.2.3.6 Penetrations Such as Thermometers

Fill the voids in the insulation and seal with vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.

3.2.2.3.7 Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Pipe Insulation

Install by slitting the tubular sections and applying them onto the piping or tubing. Alternately, whenever possible slide un-slit sections over the open ends of piping or tubing. Secure all seams and butt joints and seal with adhesive. When using self seal products only the butt joints shall be secured with adhesive. Push insulation on the pipe, never pulled. Stretching of insulation may result in open seams and joints. Clean cut all edges. Rough or jagged edges of the insulation are not be permitted. Use proper tools such as sharp knives. Do not stretch Grade 1, Type II sheet insulation around the pipe when used on pipe larger than 6 inches. On pipes larger than 12 inches, adhere sheet insulation directly to the pipe on the lower 1/3 of the pipe.

3.2.2.4 Insulation for Fittings and Accessories

- a. Pipe insulation shall be tightly butted to the insulation of the fittings and accessories. The butted joints and ends shall be sealed with joint sealant and sealed with a vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.
- b. Precut or preformed insulation shall be placed around all fittings and accessories and shall conform to MICA plates except as modified herein: 5 for anchors; 10, 11, and 13 for fittings; 14 for valves; and 17 for flanges and unions. Insulation shall be the same insulation as the pipe insulation, including same density, thickness, and thermal conductivity. Where precut/preformed is unavailable, rigid preformed pipe insulation sections may be segmented into the shape required. Insulation of the same thickness and conductivity as the adjoining pipe insulation shall be used. If nesting size insulation is used, the insulation shall be overlapped 2 inches or one pipe diameter. Elbows insulated using segments shall conform to MICA Tables 12.20 "Mitered Insulation Elbow". Submit a booklet containing completed MICA Insulation Stds plates detailing each insulating system for each pipe, duct, or equipment insulating system, after approval of materials and prior to applying insulation.
 - (1) The MICA plates shall detail the materials to be installed and the specific insulation application. Submit all MICA plates required showing the entire insulating system, including plates required to show insulation penetrations, vessel bottom and top heads, legs, and skirt insulation as applicable. The MICA plates shall present all variations of insulation systems including locations, materials, vaporproofing, jackets and insulation accessories.
 - (2) If the Contractor elects to submit detailed drawings instead of edited MICA Plates, the detail drawings shall be technically equivalent to the edited MICA Plate submittal.

- c. Upon completion of insulation installation on flanges, unions, valves, anchors, fittings and accessories, terminations, seams, joints and insulation not protected by factory vapor retarder jackets or PVC fitting covers shall be protected with PVDC or greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape or two coats of vapor retarder coating with a minimum total thickness of 1/16 inch, applied with glass tape embedded between coats. Tape seams shall overlap 1 inch. The coating shall extend out onto the adjoining pipe insulation 2 inches. Fabricated insulation with a factory vapor retarder jacket shall be protected with either greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed or PVDC adhesive tape or two coats of vapor retarder coating with a minimum thickness of 1/16 inch and with a 2 inch wide glass tape embedded between coats. Where fitting insulation butts to pipe insulation, the joints shall be sealed with a vapor retarder coating and a 4 inch wide ASJ tape which matches the jacket of the pipe insulation.
- d. Anchors attached directly to the pipe shall be insulated for a sufficient distance to prevent condensation but not less than 6 inches from the insulation surface.
- e. Insulation shall be marked showing the location of unions, strainers, and check valves.

3.2.2.5 Optional PVC Fitting Covers

At the option of the Contractor, premolded, one or two piece PVC fitting covers may be used in lieu of the vapor retarder and embedded glass tape. Factory precut or premolded insulation segments shall be used under the fitting covers for elbows. Insulation segments shall be the same insulation as the pipe insulation including same density, thickness, and thermal conductivity. The covers shall be secured by PVC vapor retarder tape, adhesive, seal welding or with tacks made for securing PVC covers. Seams in the cover, and tacks and laps to adjoining pipe insulation jacket, shall be sealed with vapor retarder tape to ensure that the assembly has a continuous vapor seal.

3.2.3 Aboveground Hot Pipelines

3.2.3.1 General Requirements

All hot pipe lines above 60 degrees F, except those piping listed in subparagraph Pipe Insulation in PART 3 as to be omitted, shall be insulated in accordance with Table 2. This includes but is not limited to the following:

- a. Domestic hot water supply & re-circulating system.
- b. Hot water heating.

Insulation shall be covered, in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations, with a factory applied Type I jacket or field applied aluminum where required or seal welded PVC.

3.2.3.2 Insulation for Fittings and Accessories

Pipe insulation shall be tightly butted to the insulation of the fittings and accessories. The butted joints and ends shall be sealed with joint

sealant. Insulation shall be marked showing the location of unions, strainers, check valves and other components that would otherwise be hidden from view by the insulation.

3.2.3.2.1 Precut or Preformed

Place precut or preformed insulation around all fittings and accessories. Insulation shall be the same insulation as the pipe insulation, including same density, thickness, and thermal conductivity.

3.2.3.2.2 Rigid Preformed

Where precut/preformed is unavailable, rigid preformed pipe insulation sections may be segmented into the shape required. Insulation of the same thickness and conductivity as the adjoining pipe insulation shall be used. If nesting size insulation is used, the insulation shall be overlapped **2 inches** or one pipe diameter. Elbows insulated using segments shall conform to MICA Tables 12.20 "Mitered Insulation Elbow".

3.2.4 Piping Exposed to Weather

Piping exposed to weather shall be insulated and jacketed as specified for the applicable service inside the building. After this procedure, a laminated self-adhesive (minimum **2 mils** adhesive, **3 mils** embossed) vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket - less than 0.0000 permeability (greater than 3 ply, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed aluminum jacket or PVC jacket shall be applied. PVC jacketing requires no factory-applied jacket beneath it, however an all service jacket shall be applied if factory applied jacketing is not furnished. Flexible elastomeric cellular insulation exposed to weather shall be treated in accordance with paragraph INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC CELLULAR INSULATION in PART 3.

3.2.4.1 Aluminum Jacket

The jacket for hot piping may be factory applied. The jacket shall overlap not less than **2 inches** at longitudinal and circumferential joints and shall be secured with bands at not more than **12 inch** centers. Longitudinal joints shall be overlapped down to shed water and located at 4 or 8 o'clock positions. Joints on piping **60 degrees F** and below shall be sealed with metal jacketing/flashing sealant while overlapping to prevent moisture penetration. Where jacketing on piping **60 degrees F** and below abuts an un-insulated surface, joints shall be caulked to prevent moisture penetration. Joints on piping above **60 degrees F** shall be sealed with a moisture retarder.

3.2.4.2 Insulation for Fittings

Flanges, unions, valves, fittings, and accessories shall be insulated and finished as specified for the applicable service. Two coats of breather emulsion type weatherproof mastic (impermeable to water, permeable to air) recommended by the insulation manufacturer shall be applied with glass tape embedded between coats. Tape overlaps shall be not less than **1 inch** and the adjoining aluminum jacket not less than **2 inches**. Factory preformed aluminum jackets may be used in lieu of the above. Molded PVC fitting covers shall be provided when PVC jackets are used for straight runs of pipe. PVC fitting covers shall have adhesive welded joints and shall be weatherproof laminated self-adhesive (minimum **2 mils** adhesive, **3 mils** embossed) vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket - less than 0.0000

permeability, (greater than 3 ply, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed, and UV resistant).

3.2.4.3 PVC Jacket

PVC jacket shall be ultraviolet resistant and adhesive welded weather tight with manufacturer's recommended adhesive. Installation shall include provision for thermal expansion.

3.3 DUCT INSULATION SYSTEMS INSTALLATION

Corner angles shall be installed on external corners of insulation on ductwork in exposed finished spaces before covering with jacket. Air conditioned spaces shall be defined as those spaces directly supplied with cooled conditioned air (or provided with a cooling device such as a fan-coil unit) and heated conditioned air (or provided with a heating device such as a unit heater, radiator or convector).

3.3.1 Duct Insulation Minimum Thickness

Duct insulation minimum thickness in accordance with Table 4.

Table 4 - Minimum Duct Insulation (inches)	
Cold Air Ducts	2.0
ERU Exhaust Duct in mechanical room	2.0
Fresh Air Intake Ducts	1.5
Warm Air Ducts	2.0
ERU Exhaust Duct in mechanical room	2.0
Fresh Air Intake Ducts	1.5

3.3.2 Insulation and Vapor Retarder/Vapor Barrier for Cold Air Duct

Insulation and vapor retarder/vapor barrier shall be provided for the following cold air ducts and associated equipment.

- a. Supply ducts.
- b. ERU exhaust ducts in mechanical rooms.
- c. Flexible run-outs (field-insulated).
- d. Plenums.
- e. Fresh air intake ducts.

Insulation for rectangular ducts shall be flexible type where concealed, minimum density 3/4 pcf, and rigid type where exposed, minimum density 3 pcf. Insulation for both concealed or exposed round/oval ducts shall be flexible type, minimum density 3/4 pcf or a semi rigid board, minimum density 3 pcf, formed or fabricated to a tight fit, edges beveled and joints tightly

butted and staggered. Insulation for all exposed ducts shall be provided with either a white, paint-able, factory-applied Type I jacket or a field applied vapor retarder/vapor barrier jacket coating finish as specified, the total field applied dry film thickness shall be approximately 1/16 inch. Insulation on all concealed duct shall be provided with a factory-applied Type I or II vapor retarder/vapor barrier jacket. Duct insulation shall be continuous through sleeves and prepared openings except firewall penetrations. Duct insulation terminating at fire dampers, shall be continuous over the damper collar and retaining angle of fire dampers, which are exposed to unconditioned air and which may be prone to condensate formation. Duct insulation and vapor retarder/vapor barrier shall cover the collar, neck, and any un-insulated surfaces of diffusers, registers and grills. Vapor retarder/vapor barrier materials shall be applied to form a complete unbroken vapor seal over the insulation. Sheet Metal Duct shall be sealed in accordance with Section 23 00 00 AIR SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION, AND EXHAUST SYSTEM.

3.3.2.1 Installation on Concealed Duct

- a. For rectangular, oval or round ducts, flexible insulation shall be attached by applying adhesive around the entire perimeter of the duct in 6 inch wide strips on 12 inch centers.
- b. For rectangular and oval ducts, 24 inches and larger insulation shall be additionally secured to bottom of ducts by the use of mechanical fasteners. Fasteners shall be spaced on 16 inch centers and not more than 16 inches from duct corners.
- c. For rectangular, oval and round ducts, mechanical fasteners shall be provided on sides of duct risers for all duct sizes. Fasteners shall be spaced on 16 inch centers and not more than 16 inches from duct corners.
- d. Insulation shall be impaled on the mechanical fasteners (self stick pins) where used and shall be pressed thoroughly into the adhesive. Care shall be taken to ensure vapor retarder/vapor barrier jacket joints overlap 2 inches. The insulation shall not be compressed to a thickness less than that specified. Insulation shall be carried over standing seams and trapeze-type duct hangers.
- e. Where mechanical fasteners are used, self-locking washers shall be installed and the pin trimmed and bent over.
- f. Jacket overlaps shall be secured with staples and tape as necessary to ensure a secure seal. Staples, tape and seams shall be coated with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.
- g. Breaks in the jacket material shall be covered with patches of the same material as the vapor retarder jacket. The patches shall extend not less than 2 inches beyond the break or penetration in all directions and shall be secured with tape and staples. Staples and tape joints shall be sealed with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.
- h. At jacket penetrations such as hangers, thermometers, and damper operating rods, voids in the insulation shall be filled and the

penetration sealed with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape greater than 3 ply laminate (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.

- i. Insulation terminations and pin punctures shall be sealed and flashed with a reinforced vapor retarder coating finish or tape with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating. The coating shall overlap the adjoining insulation and un-insulated surface 2 inches. Pin puncture coatings shall extend 2 inches from the puncture in all directions.
- j. Where insulation standoff brackets occur, insulation shall be extended under the bracket and the jacket terminated at the bracket.

3.3.2.2 Installation on Exposed Duct Work

- a. For rectangular ducts, rigid insulation shall be secured to the duct by mechanical fasteners on all four sides of the duct, spaced not more than 12 inches apart and not more than 3 inches from the edges of the insulation joints. A minimum of two rows of fasteners shall be provided for each side of duct 12 inches and larger. One row shall be provided for each side of duct less than 12 inches. Mechanical fasteners shall be as corrosion resistant as G60 coated galvanized steel, and shall indefinitely sustain a 50 lb tensile dead load test perpendicular to the duct wall.
- b. Form duct insulation with minimum jacket seams. Fasten each piece of rigid insulation to the duct using mechanical fasteners. When the height of projections is less than the insulation thickness, insulation shall be brought up to standing seams, reinforcing, and other vertical projections and shall not be carried over. Vapor retarder/barrier jacket shall be continuous across seams, reinforcing, and projections. When height of projections is greater than the insulation thickness, insulation and jacket shall be carried over. Apply insulation with joints tightly butted. Neatly bevel insulation around name plates and access plates and doors.
- c. Impale insulation on the fasteners; self-locking washers shall be installed and the pin trimmed and bent over.
- d. Seal joints in the insulation jacket with a 4 inch wide strip of tape. Seal taped seams with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating.
- e. Breaks and ribs or standing seam penetrations in the jacket material shall be covered with a patch of the same material as the jacket. Patches shall extend not less than 2 inches beyond the break or penetration and shall be secured with tape and stapled. Staples and joints shall be sealed with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating.
- f. At jacket penetrations such as hangers, thermometers, and damper operating rods, the voids in the insulation shall be filled and the penetrations sealed with a flashing sealant.
- g. Insulation terminations and pin punctures shall be sealed and flashed with a reinforced vapor retarder coating finish. The coating shall overlap the adjoining insulation and un-insulated surface 2 inches. Pin puncture coatings shall extend 2 inches from the puncture in all directions.
- h. Oval and round ducts, flexible type, shall be insulated with factory

Type I jacket insulation with minimum density of 3/4 pcf, attached as in accordance with MICA standards.

3.3.3 Insulation for Warm Air Duct

Insulation and vapor barrier shall be provided for the following warm air ducts and associated equipment:.

- a. Supply ducts.
- b. ERU exhaust ducts in mechanical room.
- c. Flexible run-outs (field insulated).
- d. Plenums.
- e. Fresh air intake ducts.

Insulation for rectangular ducts shall be flexible type where concealed, and rigid type where exposed. Insulation on exposed ducts shall be provided with a white, paint-able, factory-applied Type II jacket, or finished with adhesive finish. Flexible type insulation shall be used for round ducts, with a factory-applied Type II jacket. Insulation on concealed duct shall be provided with a factory-applied Type II jacket. Adhesive finish where indicated to be used shall be accomplished by applying two coats of adhesive with a layer of glass cloth embedded between the coats. The total dry film thickness shall be approximately 1/16 inch. Duct insulation shall be continuous through sleeves and prepared openings. Duct insulation shall terminate at fire dampers and flexible connections.

3.3.3.1 Installation on Concealed Duct

- a. For rectangular, oval and round ducts, insulation shall be attached by applying adhesive around the entire perimeter of the duct in 6 inch wide strips on 12 inch centers.
- b. For rectangular and oval ducts 24 inches and larger, insulation shall be secured to the bottom of ducts by the use of mechanical fasteners. Fasteners shall be spaced on 18 inch centers and not more than 18 inches from duct corner.
- c. For rectangular, oval and round ducts, mechanical fasteners shall be provided on sides of duct risers for all duct sizes. Fasteners shall be spaced on 18 inch centers and not more than 18 inches from duct corners.
- d. The insulation shall be impaled on the mechanical fasteners where used. The insulation shall not be compressed to a thickness less than that specified. Insulation shall be carried over standing seams and trapeze-type hangers.
- e. Self-locking washers shall be installed where mechanical fasteners are used and the pin trimmed and bent over.
- f. Insulation jacket shall overlap not less than 2 inches at joints and the lap shall be secured and stapled on 4 inch centers.

3.3.3.2 Installation on Exposed Duct

- a. For rectangular ducts, the rigid insulation shall be secured to the duct by the use of mechanical fasteners on all four sides of the duct, spaced not more than 16 inches apart and not more than 6 inches from the edges of the insulation joints. A minimum of two rows of fasteners shall be provided for each side of duct 12 inches and larger and a minimum of one row for each side of duct less than 12 inches.
- b. Duct insulation with factory-applied jacket shall be formed with minimum jacket seams, and each piece of rigid insulation shall be fastened to the duct using mechanical fasteners. When the height of projection is less than the insulation thickness, insulation shall be brought up to standing seams, reinforcing, and other vertical projections and shall not be carried over the projection. Jacket shall be continuous across seams, reinforcing, and projections. Where the height of projections is greater than the insulation thickness, insulation and jacket shall be carried over the projection.
- c. Insulation shall be impaled on the fasteners; self-locking washers shall be installed and pin trimmed and bent over.
- d. Joints on jacketed insulation shall be sealed with a 4 inch wide strip of tape and brushed with vapor retarder coating.
- e. Breaks and penetrations in the jacket material shall be covered with a patch of the same material as the jacket. Patches shall extend not less than 2 inches beyond the break or penetration and shall be secured with adhesive and stapled.
- f. Insulation terminations and pin punctures shall be sealed with tape and brushed with vapor retarder coating.
- g. Oval and round ducts, flexible type, shall be insulated with factory Type I jacket insulation, minimum density of 3/4 pcf attached by staples spaced not more than 16 inches and not more than 6 inches from the degrees of joints. Joints shall be sealed in accordance with item "d." above.

3.3.4 Ducts Handling Air for Dual Purpose

For air handling ducts for dual purpose below and above 60 degrees F, ducts shall be insulated as specified for cold air duct.

3.3.5 Duct Test Holes

After duct systems have been tested, adjusted, and balanced, breaks in the insulation and jacket shall be repaired in accordance with the applicable section of this specification for the type of duct insulation to be repaired.

3.4 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SYSTEMS INSTALLATION

3.4.1 General

Removable insulation sections shall be provided to cover parts of equipment that must be opened periodically for maintenance including vessel covers, fasteners, flanges and accessories. Equipment insulation shall be omitted on the following:

- a. Hand-holes.
- b. Cleanouts.
- c. ASME stamps.
- d. Manufacturer's nameplates.
- e. Duct Test/Balance Test Holes.

3.4.2 Insulation for Cold Equipment

Cold equipment below 60 degrees F: Insulation shall be furnished on equipment handling media below 60 degrees F including the following:

- a. Pumps.
- b. Drip pans under chilled equipment.
- c. Cold water storage tanks.
- d. Cold and chilled water pumps.
- e. Air handling equipment parts that are not factory insulated.

3.4.2.1 Insulation Type

Insulation shall be suitable for the temperature encountered. Material and thicknesses shall be as shown in Table 5:

TABLE 5		
Insulation Thickness for Cold Equipment (inches)		
Equipment handling media at indicated temperature		
	Material	Thickness (inches)
35 to 60 degrees F		
	Cellular Glass	1.5
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1

3.4.2.2 Pump Insulation

- a. Insulate pumps by forming a box around the pump housing. The box shall be constructed by forming the bottom and sides using joints that do not leave raw ends of insulation exposed. Joints between sides and between sides and bottom shall be joined by adhesive with lap strips for rigid mineral fiber and contact adhesive for flexible elastomeric cellular insulation. The box shall conform to the requirements of MICA Insulation Stds plate No. 49 when using flexible elastomeric cellular insulation. Joints between top cover and sides shall fit tightly forming a female shiplap joint on the side pieces and a male joint on the top cover, thus making the top cover removable.
- b. Exposed insulation corners shall be protected with corner angles.

- c. Upon completion of installation of the insulation, including removable sections, two coats of vapor retarder coating shall be applied with a layer of glass cloth embedded between the coats. The total dry thickness of the finish shall be 1/16 inch. A parting line shall be provided between the box and the removable sections allowing the removable sections to be removed without disturbing the insulation coating. Flashing sealant shall be applied to parting line, between equipment and removable section insulation, and at all penetrations.

3.4.2.3 Other Equipment

- a. Insulation shall be formed or fabricated to fit the equipment. To ensure a tight fit on round equipment, edges shall be beveled and joints shall be tightly butted and staggered.
- b. Insulation shall be secured in place with bands or wires at intervals as recommended by the manufacturer but not more than 12 inch centers except flexible elastomeric cellular which shall be adhered with contact adhesive. Insulation corners shall be protected under wires and bands with suitable corner angles.
- c. Cellular glass shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Joints and ends shall be sealed with joint sealant, and sealed with a vapor retarder coating.
- d. Insulation on heads of heat exchangers shall be removable. Removable section joints shall be fabricated using a male-female shiplap type joint. The entire surface of the removable section shall be finished by applying two coats of vapor retarder coating with a layer of glass cloth embedded between the coats. The total dry thickness of the finish shall be 1/16 inch.
- e. Exposed insulation corners shall be protected with corner angles.
- f. Insulation on equipment with ribs shall be applied over 6 by 6 inches by 12 gauge welded wire fabric which has been cinched in place, or if approved by the Contracting Officer, spot welded to the equipment over the ribs. Insulation shall be secured to the fabric with J-hooks and 2 by 2 inches washers or shall be securely banded or wired in place on 12 inch centers.

3.4.2.4 Vapor Retarder/Vapor Barrier

Upon completion of installation of insulation, penetrations shall be caulked. Two coats of vapor retarder coating or vapor barrier jacket shall be applied over insulation, including removable sections, with a layer of open mesh synthetic fabric embedded between the coats. The total dry thickness of the finish shall be 1/16 inch. Flashing sealant or vapor barrier tape shall be applied to parting line between equipment and removable section insulation.

3.4.3 Insulation for Hot Equipment

Insulation shall be furnished on equipment handling media above 60 degrees F including the following:

- a. Water heaters.

- b. Pumps handling media above 130 degrees F.
- c. Hot water storage tanks.
- d. Air separation tanks.

3.4.3.1 Insulation

Insulation shall be suitable for the temperature encountered.

Insulation thickness for hot equipment shall be determined using Table 6:

TABLE 6		
Insulation Thickness for Hot Equipment (inches)		
Equipment handling media at indicated temperature limit		
	Material	Thickness (inches)
250 degrees F		
	Rigid Mineral Fiber	2
	Flexible Mineral Fiber	2
	Calcium Silicate/Perlite	4
	Cellular Glass	3
	Faced Phenolic Foam	1.5
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular (<200 F)	1

3.4.3.2 Insulation of Pumps

Insulate pumps by forming a box around the pump housing. The box shall be constructed by forming the bottom and sides using joints that do not leave raw ends of insulation exposed. Bottom and sides shall be banded to form a rigid housing that does not rest on the pump. Joints between top cover and sides shall fit tightly. The top cover shall have a joint forming a female shiplap joint on the side pieces and a male joint on the top cover, making the top cover removable. Two coats of Class I adhesive shall be applied over insulation, including removable sections, with a layer of glass cloth embedded between the coats. A parting line shall be provided between the box and the removable sections allowing the removable sections to be removed without disturbing the insulation coating. The total dry thickness of the finish shall be 1/16 inch. Caulking shall be applied to parting line of the removable sections and penetrations.

3.4.3.3 Other Equipment

- a. Insulation shall be formed or fabricated to fit the equipment. To ensure a tight fit on round equipment, edges shall be beveled and joints shall be tightly butted and staggered.
- b. Insulation shall be secured in place with bands or wires at intervals

as recommended by the manufacturer but not greater than 12 inch centers except flexible elastomeric cellular which shall be adhered. Insulation corners shall be protected under wires and bands with suitable corner angles.

- c. On high vibration equipment, cellular glass insulation shall be set in a coating of bedding compound as recommended by the manufacturer, and joints shall be sealed with bedding compound. Mineral fiber joints shall be filled with finishing cement.
- d. Insulation on heads of heat exchangers shall be removable. The removable section joint shall be fabricated using a male-female shiplap type joint. Entire surface of the removable section shall be finished as specified.
- e. Exposed insulation corners shall be protected with corner angles.
- f. On equipment with ribs, such as boiler flue gas connection, draft fans, and fly ash or soot collectors, insulation shall be applied over 6 by 6 inch by 12 gauge welded wire fabric which has been cinched in place, or if approved by the Contracting Officer, spot welded to the equipment over the ribs. Insulation shall be secured to the fabric with J-hooks and 2 by 2 inch washers or shall be securely banded or wired in place on 12 inch (maximum) centers.
- g. On equipment handling media above 600 degrees F, insulation shall be applied in two or more layers with joints staggered.
- h. Upon completion of installation of insulation, penetrations shall be caulked. Two coats of adhesive shall be applied over insulation, including removable sections, with a layer of glass cloth embedded between the coats. The total dry thickness of the finish shall be 1/16 inch. Caulking shall be applied to parting line between equipment and removable section insulation.

3.4.4 Equipment Handling Dual Temperature Media

Below and above 60 degrees F: equipment handling dual temperature media shall be insulated as specified for cold equipment.

3.4.5 Equipment Exposed to Weather

3.4.5.1 Installation

Equipment exposed to weather shall be insulated and finished in accordance with the requirements for ducts exposed to weather in paragraph DUCT INSULATION INSTALLATION.

3.4.5.2 Optional Panels

At the option of the Contractor, prefabricated metal insulation panels may be used in lieu of the insulation and finish previously specified. Thermal performance shall be equal to or better than that specified for field applied insulation. Panels shall be the standard catalog product of a manufacturer of metal insulation panels. Fastenings, flashing, and support system shall conform to published recommendations of the manufacturer for weatherproof installation and shall prevent moisture from entering the insulation. Panels shall be designed to accommodate thermal expansion and to support a 250 pound walking load without permanent deformation or

permanent damage to the insulation. Exterior metal cover sheet shall be aluminum and exposed fastenings shall be stainless steel or aluminum.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 09 00

INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC

02/19

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

Provide a complete Direct Digital Control (DDC) system, except for the Front End which is **existing and new system integration being performed by the Government**; suitable for the control of the heating, ventilating and air conditioning (HVAC) and other building-level systems as indicated and shown and in accordance with Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC, Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS for BACnet or Niagara BACnet systems, and other referenced Sections.

1.1.1 System Requirements

Provide systems meeting the requirements this Section and other Sections referenced by this Section, and which have the following characteristics:

- a. The system implements the control sequences of operation shown in the Contract Drawings using DDC hardware to control mechanical and electrical equipment
- b. The system meet the requirements of this specification as a stand-alone system and does not require connection to any other system.
- c. Control sequences reside in DDC hardware in the building. The building control network is not dependent upon connection to **and Energy Management Control System (EMCS)** Front End or to any other system for performance of control sequences. To the greatest extent practical, the hardware performs control sequences without reliance on the building network.
- d. The hardware is installed such that individual control equipment can be replaced by similar control equipment from other equipment manufacturers with no loss of system functionality.
- e. All necessary documentation, configuration information, programming tools, programs, drivers, and other software are licensed to and otherwise remain with the Government such that the Government or their agents are able to perform repair, replacement, upgrades, and expansions of the system without subsequent or future dependence on the Contractor, Vendor or Manufacturer.
- f. Sufficient documentation and data, including rights to documentation and data, are provided such that the Government or their agents can execute work to perform repair, replacement, upgrades, and expansions of the system without subsequent or future dependence on the Contractor, Vendor or Manufacturer.
- g. Hardware is installed and configured such that the Government or their agents are able to perform repair, replacement, and upgrades of individual hardware without further interaction with the Contractor,

Vendor or Manufacturer.

- h. All Niagara Framework components have an unrestricted interoperability license with a Niagara Compatibility Statement (NiCS) following the Tridium Open NiCS Specification and have a value of "ALL" for "Station Compatibility In", "Station Compatibility Out", "Tool Compatibility In" and "Tool Compatibility Out". Note that this will result in the following entries in the license file:
accept.station.in="*"
accept.station.out="*"
accept.wb.in="*"
accept.wb.out=""

1.1.1.2 End to End Accuracy

Select products, install and configure the system such that the maximum error of a measured value as read from the DDC Hardware over the network is less than the maximum allowable error specified for the sensor or instrumentation.

1.1.1.3 Verification of Dimensions

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing any work.

1.1.1.4 Drawings

The Government will not indicate all offsets, fittings, and accessories that may be required on the drawings. Carefully investigate the mechanical, electrical, and finish conditions that could affect the work to be performed, arrange such work accordingly, and provide all work necessary to meet such conditions.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

Related work specified elsewhere:

- a. Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS for BACnet systems with or without Niagara Framework.
- b. Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC
- c. Section 25 05 11.00 CYBERSECURITY FOR FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS
- d. Section 01 91 00.15 TOTAL BUILDING COMMISSIONING

1.3 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 135

(2016) BACnet-A Data Communication Protocol for Building Automation and

Control Networks

ASHRAE FUN IP (2017) Fundamentals Handbook, I-P Edition

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE C62.41 (1991; R 1995) Recommended Practice on
Surge Voltages in Low-Voltage AC Power
Circuits

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA 250 (2018) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment
(1000 Volts Maximum)

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2;
TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6;
TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10;
TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA
17-14; TIA 17-15; TIA 17-16; TIA 17-17)
National Electrical Code

NFPA 90A (2018) Standard for the Installation of
Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

TRIDIUM, INC (TRIDIUM)

Niagara Framework (2012) NiagaraAX User's Guide

Tridium Open NiCS (2005) Understanding the NiagaraAX
Compatibility Statement (NiCS)

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 5085-3 (2006; Reprint Nov 20121) Low Voltage
Transformers - Part 3: Class 2 and Class 3
Transformers

1.4 DEFINITIONS

The following list of definitions includes terms used in Sections referenced by this Section and are included here for completeness. The definitions contained in this Section may disagree with how terms are defined or used in other documents, including documents referenced by this Section. The definitions included here are the authoritative definitions for this Section and all Sections referenced by this Section.

After each term the protocol related to that term is included in parenthesis.

1.4.1 Alarm Generation (All protocols)

Alarm Generation is the monitoring of a value, comparison of the value to alarm conditions and the creation of an alarm when the conditions set for the alarm are met. Note that this does NOT include delivery of the alarm to the final destination (such as a user interface).

1.4.2 Building Automation and Control Network (BACnet) (BACnet)

The term BACnet is used in two ways. First meaning the BACnet Protocol Standard - the communication requirements as defined by [ASHRAE 135](#) including all annexes and addenda. The second to refer to the overall technology related to the [ASHRAE 135](#) protocol.

1.4.3 BACnet Advanced Application Controller (B-AAC) (BACnet)

A hardware device BTL Listed as a B-AAC, which is required to support BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks (BIBBs) for scheduling and alarming, but is not required to support as many BIBBs as a B-BC.

1.4.4 BACnet Application Specific Controller (B-ASC) (BACnet)

A hardware device BTL Listed as a B-ASC, with fewer BIBB requirements than a B-AAC. It is intended for use in a specific application.

1.4.5 BACnet Building Controller (B-BC) (BACnet)

A hardware device BTL Listed as a B-BC. A general-purpose, field-programmable device capable of carrying out a variety of building automation and control tasks including control and monitoring via direct digital control (DDC) of specific systems and data storage for trend information, time schedules, and alarm data. Like the other BTL Listed controller types (B-AAC, B-ASC etc.) a B-BC device is required to support the server ("B") side of the ReadProperty and WriteProperty services, but unlike the other controller types it is also required to support the client ("A") side of these services. Communication between controllers requires that one of them support the client side and the other support the server side, so a B-BC is often used when communication between controllers is needed.

1.4.6 BACnet Broadcast Management Device (BBMD) (BACnet)

A communications device, typically combined with a BACnet router. A BBMD forwards BACnet broadcast messages to BACnet/IP devices and other BBMDs connected to the same BACnet/IP network. Each IP subnet that is part of a BACnet/IP network must have at least one BBMD. Note there are additional restrictions when multiple BBMDs share an IP subnet.

1.4.7 BACnet/IP (BACnet)

An extension of BACnet, Annex J, defines the use of a reserved UDP socket to transmit BACnet messages over IP networks. A BACnet/IP network is a collection of one or more IP subnets that share the same BACnet network number. See also paragraph BACNET BROADCAST MANAGEMENT DEVICE.

1.4.8 BACnet Internetwork (BACnet)

Two or more BACnet networks, connected with BACnet routers. In a BACnet Internetwork, there exists only one message path between devices.

1.4.9 BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks (BIBBs) (BACnet)

A BIBB is a collection of one or more [ASHRAE 135](#) Services intended to define a higher level of interoperability. BIBBs are combined to build the BACnet functional requirements for a device in a specification. Some BIBBs define additional requirements (beyond requiring support for specific

services) in order to achieve a level of interoperability. For example, the BIBB DS-V-A (Data Sharing-View-A), which would typically be used by a front-end, not only requires the client to support the ReadProperty Service, but also provides a list of data types (Object / Properties) which the client must be able to interpret and display for the user.

In the BIBB shorthand notation, -A is the client side and -B is the server side.

The following is a list of some BIBBs used by this or referenced Sections:	
DS-COV-A	Data Sharing-Change of Value (A side)
DS-COV-B	Data Sharing-Change of Value (B side)
NM-RC-B	Network Management-Router Configuration (B side)
DS-RP-A	Data Sharing-Read Property (A side)
DS-RP-B	Data Sharing-Read Property (B side)
DS-RPM-A	Data Sharing-Read Property Multiple (A Side)
DS-RPM-B	Data Sharing-Read Property Multiple (B Side)
DS-WP-A	Data Sharing-Write Property (A Side)
DM-TS-B	Device Management-Time Synchronization (B Side)
DM-UTC-B	Device Management-UTC Time Synchronization (B Side)
DS-WP-B	Data Sharing-Write Property (B side)
SCHED-E-B	Scheduling-External (B side)
DM-OCD-B	Device Management-Object Creation and Deletion (B side)
AE-N-I-B	Alarm and Event-Notification Internal (B Side)
AE-N-E-B	Alarm and Event-Notification External (B Side)
T-VMT-I-B	Trending-Viewing and Modifying Trends Internal (B Side)
T-VMT-E-B	Trending-Viewing and Modifying Trends External (B Side)

1.4.10 BACnet Network (BACnet)

In BACnet, a portion of the control Internetwork consisting of one or more segments connected by repeaters. Networks are separated by routers.

1.4.11 BACnet Operator Display (B-OD) (BACnet)

A basic operator interface with limited capabilities relative to a B-OWS. It is not intended to perform direct digital control. A B-OD profile could

be used for LCD devices, displays affixed to BACnet devices, handheld terminals or other very simple user interfaces.

1.4.12 BACnet Segment (BACnet)

One or more physical segments interconnected by repeaters (ASHRAE 135).

1.4.13 BACnet Smart Actuator (B-SA) (BACnet)

A simple actuator device with limited resources intended for specific applications.

1.4.14 BACnet Smart Sensor (B-SS) (BACnet)

A simple sensing device with limited resources.

1.4.15 BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL) (BACnet)

Established by BACnet International to support compliance testing and interoperability testing activities and consists of BTL Manager and the BTL Working Group (BTL-WG). BTL also publishes Implementation Guidelines.

1.4.16 BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL) Listed (BACnet)

A device that has been listed by BACnet Testing Laboratory. Devices may be certified to a specific device profile, in which case the listing indicates that the device supports the required capabilities for that profile, or may be listed as "other".

1.4.17 Binary (All protocols)

A two-state system where an "ON" condition is represented by a high signal level and an "OFF" condition is represented by a low signal level. 'Digital' is sometimes used interchangeably with 'binary'.

1.4.18 Broadcast (BACnet)

Unlike most messages, which are intended for a specific recipient device, a broadcast message is intended for all devices on the network.

1.4.19 Building Control Network (BCN) (All protocols)

The network connecting all DDC Hardware within a building (or specific group of buildings).

1.4.20 Building Point of Connection (BPOC) (All protocols)

A FPOC for a Building Control System. (This term is being phased out of use in preference for FPOC but is still used in some specifications and criteria. When it was used, it typically referred to a piece of control hardware. The current FPOC definition typically refers instead to IT hardware.)

1.4.21 Commandable (All protocols)

See Overridable.

1.4.22 Commandable Objects (BACnet)

Commandable Objects have a Commandable Property, Priority_Array, and Relinquish_Default Property as defined in ASHRAE 135, Clause 19.2, Command Prioritization.

1.4.23 Configurable (All protocols)

A property, setting, or value is configurable if it can be changed via hardware settings on the device, via the use of engineering software or over the control network from the front end, and is retained through (after) loss of power.

In a Niagara Framework BACnet system, a property, setting, or value is configurable if it can be changed via one or more of:

- 1) via BACnet services (including proprietary BACnet services)
- 2) via hardware settings on the device
- 3) via the Niagara Framework

Note this is more stringent than the ASHRAE 135 definition.

1.4.24 Control Logic Diagram (All protocols)

A graphical representation of control logic for multiple processes that make up a system.

1.4.25 Device (BACnet)

A Digital Controller that contains a BACnet Device Object and uses BACnet to communicate with other devices.

1.4.26 Device Object (BACnet)

Every BACnet device requires one Device Object, whose properties represent the network visible properties of that device. Every Device Object requires a unique Object Identifier number on the BACnet Internetwork. This number is often referred to as the device instance or device ID.

1.4.27 Device Profile (BACnet)

A collection of BIBBs determining minimum BACnet capabilities of a device, defined in ASHRAE 135. Standard device profiles include BACnet Advanced Workstations (B-AWS), BACnet Building Controllers (B-BC), BACnet Advanced Application Controllers (B-AAC), BACnet Application Specific Controllers (B-ASC), BACnet Smart Actuator (B-SA), and BACnet Smart Sensor (B-SS).

1.4.28 Digital Controller (All protocols)

An electronic controller, usually with internal programming logic and digital and analog input/output capability, which performs control functions.

1.4.28.1 Terminal Device Controllers

Terminal device controllers typically are controllers with less control features, may have integrated actuators, and may be mounted directly on equipment (with enclosures).

1.4.28.2 Field Controllers

Field controllers typically have a greater capability for input/output and customization, do not have integral actuators, are mounted in an enclosure not on the equipment and are used for equipment such as VAV air handlers.

1.4.28.3 Plant Controllers

Plant controllers are typically used to control various equipment in mechanical rooms such as pumps, heat exchangers, and chillers.

1.4.28.4 Supervisory Building Controller (SBC)

The Supervisory Building Controller is used to coordinate all equipment in a building, input scheduling, and is used as a connection point for transferring configuration files to the other controllers. The SBC shall communicate with other controllers and equipment through a BACnet MS/TP bus. Depending on approvals and capabilities, the SBC may be used as a point of connection between the Camp Lejeune EMCS network (IP) and the building level control network (BACnet MS/TP).

1.4.29 Direct Digital Control (DDC) (All protocols)

Digital controllers performing control logic. Usually the controller directly senses physical values, makes control decisions with internal programs, and outputs control signals to directly operate switches, valves, dampers, and motor controllers.

1.4.30 Energy Management & Control System (EMCS)

The EMCS at Camp Lejeune is an enterprise system that actively receives energy and building condition information from multiple sources and provides load shedding, electric metering, alarming, trending, scheduling, set point adjustment and device status of all supervisory building controllers for maintenance personnel. The EMCS receives real time electrical utility pricing data and automatically manages to Camp Lejeune's energy target. The existing EMCS consists of two servers, 1) Johnson Controls Incorporated (JCI) Metasys Extended Architecture (ADX server), and 2) Niagara AX supervisor (JCI FX web supervisor). Both of the systems communicate over the MRAN and either may be used to fulfill the requirements of this specification.

1.4.31 Field Point of Connection (FPOC) (All protocols)

The FPOC is the point of connection between the EMCS IP Network and the field control network (either an IP network, a non-IP network, or a combination of both). The hardware at this location which provides the connection is generally an IT device such as a switch, IP router, or firewall.

In general, the term "FPOC Location" means the place where this connection occurs, and "FPOC Hardware" means the device that provides the connection. Sometimes the term "FPOC" is used to mean either and its actual meaning (i.e. location or hardware) is determined by the context in which it is used.

1.4.32 Fox Protocol (Niagara Framework)

The protocol used for communication between components in the

Niagara Framework. By default, Fox uses TCP port 1911.

1.4.33 Gateway (All protocols)

A device that translates from one protocol application data format to another. Devices that change only the transport mechanism of the protocol - "translating" from TP/FT-10 to Ethernet/IP or from BACnet MS/TP to BACnet over IP for example - are not gateways as the underlying data format does not change. Gateways are also called Communications Bridges or Protocol Translators.

A Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway is one type of Gateway.

1.4.34 Global ID

An identification number assigned to each Supervisory Building Controller. The Global ID includes assigned MSTP Trunk Instance Numbers and a range of BACnet Instance Numbers to be used for the Field Controllers. The Global ID is assigned by Public Works.

1.4.35 IEEE 802.3 Ethernet (All protocols)

A family of local-area-network technologies providing high-speed networking features over various media, typically Cat 5, 5e or Cat 6 twisted pair copper or fiber optic cable.

1.4.36 Internet Protocol (IP, TCP/IP, UDP/IP) (All protocols)

A communication method, the most common use is the World Wide Web. At the lowest level, it is based on Internet Protocol (IP), a method for conveying and routing packets of information over various LAN media. Two common protocols using IP are User Datagram Protocol (UDP) and Transmission Control Protocol (TCP). UDP conveys information to well-known "sockets" without confirmation of receipt. TCP establishes connections, also known as "sessions", which have end-to-end confirmation and guaranteed sequence of delivery.

1.4.37 Input/Output (I/O) (All protocols)

Physical inputs and outputs to and from a device, although the term sometimes describes network or "virtual" inputs or outputs. See also "Points".

1.4.38 I/O Expansion Unit (All protocols)

An I/O expansion unit provides additional point capacity to a digital controller

1.4.39 IP subnet (All protocols)

A group of devices which share a defined range IP addresses. Devices on a common IP subnet can share data (including broadcasts) directly without the need for the traffic to traverse an IP router.

1.4.40 JACE (Niagara Framework)

Java Application Control Engine. See paragraph NIAGARA FRAMEWORK SUPERVISORY GATEWAY

1.4.41 Local-Area Network (LAN) (All protocols)

A communication network that spans a limited geographic area and uses the same basic communication technology throughout.

1.4.42 Local Display Panels (LDPs) (All protocols)

A DDC Hardware with a display and navigation buttons, and must provide display and adjustment of points as shown on the Points Schedule and as indicated.

1.4.43 MAC Address (All protocols)

Media Access Control address. The physical device address that identifies a device on a Local Area Network.

1.4.44 Master-Slave/Token-Passing (MS/TP) (BACnet)

Data link protocol as defined by the BACnet standard. Multiple speeds (data rates) are permitted by the BACnet MS/TP standard.

1.4.45 Monitoring and Control (M&C) Software (All protocols)

The **EMCS** 'front end' software which performs supervisory functions such as alarm handling, scheduling and data logging and provides a user interface for monitoring the system and configuring these functions.

1.4.46 Network Number (BACnet)

A site-specific number assigned to each network. This network number must be unique throughout the BACnet Internetwork.

1.4.47 Niagara Framework (Niagara Framework)

A set of hardware and software specifications for building and utility control owned by Tridium Inc. and licensed to multiple vendors. The Framework consists of front end (M&C) software, web based clients, field level control hardware, and engineering tools. While the Niagara Framework is not adopted by a recognized standards body and does not use an open licensing model, it is sufficiently well-supported by multiple HVAC vendors to be considered a de-facto Open Standard.

1.4.48 Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway (Niagara Framework)

DDC Hardware component of the Niagara Framework. A typical Niagara architecture has Niagara specific supervisory gateways at the IP level and other (non-Niagara specific) controllers on field networks (TP/FT-10, MS/TP, etc.) beneath the Niagara supervisory gateways. The Niagara specific controllers function as a gateway between the Niagara framework protocol (Fox) and the field network beneath. These supervisory gateways may also be used as general purpose controllers and also have the capability to provide a web-based user interface.

Note that different vendors refer to this component by different names. The most common name is "JACE"; other names include (but are not limited to) "EC-BOS", "FX-40", "TMN", "SLX" and "UNC".

1.4.49 Object (BACnet)

An **ASHRAE 135** Object. The concept of organizing BACnet information into standard components with various associated Properties. Examples include Analog Input objects and Binary Output objects.

1.4.50 Object Identifier (BACnet)

A grouping of two Object properties: Object Type (e.g. Analog Value, Schedule, etc.) and Object Instance (in this case, a number). Object Identifiers must be unique within a device.

1.4.51 Object Instance (BACnet)

See paragraph OBJECT IDENTIFIER

1.4.52 Object Properties (BACnet)

Attributes of an object. Examples include present value and high limit properties of an analog input object. Properties are defined in **ASHRAE 135**; some are optional and some are required. Objects are controlled by reading from and writing to object properties.

1.4.53 Operator Configurable (All protocols)

Operator configurable values are values that can be changed from a single common front end user interface across multiple vendor systems.

For Niagara Framework Systems, a property, setting, or value is Operator Configurable when it is configurable from a Niagara Framework Front End.

1.4.54 Override (All protocols)

Changing the value of a point outside of the normal sequence of operation where the change has priority over the sequence and where there is a mechanism for releasing the change such that the point returns to the normal value. Overrides persist until released or overridden at the same or higher priority but are not required to persist through a loss of power. Overrides are often used by operators to change values, and generally originate at a user interface (workstation or local display panel).

1.4.55 Packaged Equipment (All protocols)

Packaged equipment is a single piece of equipment provided by a manufacturer in a substantially complete and operable condition, where the controls (DDC Hardware) are factory installed, and the equipment is sold and shipped from the manufacturer as a single entity. Disassembly and reassembly of a large piece of equipment for shipping does not prevent it from being packaged equipment. Package units may require field installation of remote sensors. Packaged equipment is also called a "packaged unit".

Note industry may use the term "Packaged System" to mean a collection of equipment that is designed to work together where each piece of equipment is packaged equipment and there is a network that connects the equipment together. A "packaged system" of this type is NOT packaged equipment; it is a collection of packaged equipment, and each piece of equipment must individually meet specification requirements.

1.4.56 Packaged Unit (All protocols)

See packaged equipment.

1.4.57 Performance Verification Test (PVT) (All protocols)

The procedure for determining if the installed BAS meets design criteria prior to final acceptance. The PVT is performed after installation, testing, and balancing of mechanical systems. Typically the PVT is performed by the Contractor in the presence of the Government.

1.4.58 Physical Segment (BACnet)

A single contiguous medium to which BACnet devices are attached (ASHRAE 135).

1.4.59 Polling (All protocols)

A device periodically requesting data from another device.

1.4.60 Points (All protocols)

Physical and virtual inputs and outputs. See also paragraph INPUT/OUTPUT (I/O).

1.4.61 Proportional, Integral, and Derivative (PID) Control Loop (All protocols)

Three parameters used to control modulating equipment to maintain a setpoint. Derivative control is often not required for HVAC systems (leaving "PI" control).

1.4.62 Proprietary (BACnet)

Within the context of BACnet, any extension of or addition to object types, properties, PrivateTransfer services, or enumerations specified in ASHRAE 135. Objects with Object_Type values of 128 and above are Proprietary Objects. Properties with Property_Identifier of 512 and above are proprietary Properties.

1.4.63 Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) (BACnet)

A document, created by the manufacturer of a device, which describes which portions of the BACnet standard may be implemented by a given device. ASHRAE 135 requires that all ASHRAE 135 devices have a PICS, and also defines a minimum set of information that must be in it. A device as installed for a specific project may not implement everything in its PICS.

1.4.64 Repeater (All protocols)

A device that connects two control network segments and retransmits all information received on one side onto the other.

1.4.65 Router (All protocols)

A device that connects two ASHRAE 135 networks and controls traffic between the two by retransmitting signals received from one side onto the other based on the signal destination. Routers are used to subdivide a BACnet internetwork and to limit network traffic. Examples include joining a

BACnet Ethernet LAN to a BACnet MS/TP LAN. If a router is connected directly to the MRAN, it must be listed on the approved DIACAP equipment list and must be Marine Corps DADMS listed and approved.

1.4.66 Segment (All protocols)

A 'single' section of a control network that contains no repeaters or routers. There is generally a limit on the number of devices on a segment, and this limit is dependent on the topology/media and device type.

1.4.67 Standard BACnet Objects (BACnet)

Objects with Object_Type values below 128 and specifically enumerated in Clause 21 of ASHRAE 135. Objects which are not proprietary. See paragraph PROPRIETARY.

1.4.68 Standard BACnet Properties (BACnet)

Properties with Property_Identifier values below 512 and specifically enumerated in Clause 21 of ASHRAE 135. Properties which are not proprietary. See Proprietary.

1.4.69 Standard BACnet Services (BACnet)

ASHRAE 135 services other than ConfirmedPrivateTransfer or UnconfirmedPrivateTransfer. See paragraph PROPRIETARY.

1.4.70 Supervisory Building Controller

Supervisory Controller that is the main interface for the building control system.

1.4.71 EMCS (All protocols)

EMCS stands for Energy Management Control System. The term refers to all components by which a project site monitors, manages, and controls real-time operation of HVAC and other building systems. These components include the EMCS "front-end" and all field building control systems connected to the front-end. The front-end consists of Monitoring and Control Software (user interface software), browser-based user interfaces and network infrastructure.

The network infrastructure (the "EMCS Network"), is an IP network connecting multiple building or facility control networks to the Monitoring and Control Software.

1.4.72 EMCS Network (All protocols)

The EMCS Network connects multiple building or facility control networks to the Monitoring and Control Software.

1.4.73 Writable Property (BACnet)

A Property is Writable when it can be changed through the use of one or more of the WriteProperty services defined in ASHRAE 135, Clause 15 regardless of the value of any other Property. Note that in the ASHRAE 135 standard, some Properties may be writable when the Out of Service Property is TRUE; for purposes of this Section, Properties that are only writable when the Out of Service Property is TRUE are not considered to be Writable.

1.5 PROJECT SEQUENCING

TABLE I: PROJECT SEQUENCING lists the sequencing of submittals as specified in paragraph SUBMITTALS (denoted by an 'S' in the 'TYPE' column) and activities as specified in PART 3 EXECUTION (denoted by an 'E' in the 'TYPE' column). TABLE I does not specify overall project milestone and completion dates.

- a. Sequencing for Submittals: The sequencing specified for submittals is the deadline by which the submittal must be initially submitted to the Government. Following submission there will be a Government review period as specified in Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES. If the submittal is not accepted by the Government, revise the submittal and resubmit it to the Government within 14 days of notification that the submittal has been rejected. Upon resubmittal there will be an additional Government review period. If the submittal is not accepted the process repeats until the submittal is accepted by the Government.
- b. Sequencing for Activities: The sequencing specified for activities indicates the earliest the activity may begin.
- c. Abbreviations: In TABLE I the abbreviation AAO is used for 'after approval of' and 'ACO' is used for 'after completion of'.

TABLE I. PROJECT SEQUENCING			
ITEM #	TYPE	DESCRIPTION	SEQUENCING (START OF ACTIVITY OR DEADLINE)
1	S	Existing Conditions Report	
2	S	DDC Contractor Design Drawings	
3	S	Manufacturer's Product Data	
4	S	Pre-construction QC Checklist	
5	E	Install Building Control System	AAO #1 thru #4
6	E	Start-Up and Start-Up Testing	ACO #5
7	S	Post-Construction QC Checklist	ACO #6
8	S	Programming Software Configuration Software Niagara Framework Engineering Tool	ACO #6
9	S	Draft As-Built Drawings	ACO #6
10	S	Start-Up Testing Report	ACO #6

TABLE I. PROJECT SEQUENCING			
ITEM #	TYPE	DESCRIPTION	SEQUENCING (START OF ACTIVITY OR DEADLINE)
11	S	PVT Procedures	before schedule start of #12 and AAO #10
12	E	Execute PVT	AAO #9 and #11
13	S	PVT Report	ACO #12
14	S	Controller Application Programs Controller Configuration Settings Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway Backups	AAO #13
15	S	Final As-Built Drawings	AAO #13
16	S	O&M Instructions	AAO #15
17	S	Training Documentation	AAO #10 and before scheduled start of #18
18	E	Training	AAO #16 and #17
19	S	Closeout QC Checklist	ACO #18

TABLE I. PROJECT SEQUENCING (FOR NAVY PROJECTS WITH AN ACCEPTANCE ENGINEER)			
ITEM #	TYPE	DESCRIPTION	SEQUENCING (START OF ACTIVITY OR DEADLINE)
1	S	Existing Conditions Report	
2	S	DDC Contractor Design Drawings	
3	S	Manufacturer's Product Data	
4	S	Pre-construction QC Checklist	

TABLE I. PROJECT SEQUENCING (FOR NAVY PROJECTS WITH AN ACCEPTANCE ENGINEER)			
ITEM #	TYPE	DESCRIPTION	SEQUENCING (START OF ACTIVITY OR DEADLINE)
5	E	Install Building Control System	AAO #1 thru #4
6	E	Start-Up and Start-Up Testing	ACO #5
7	S	Post-Construction QC Checklist	ACO #6
8	S	Programming Software Configuration Software Niagara Framework Engineering Tool	ACO #6
9	S	Draft As-Built Drawings	ACO #6
10	S,E	PVT Testing Activities	As indicated in PART 3 of this Section.
11	S	PVT Report	As indicated in PART 3 of this Section.
12	S	Controller Application Programs Controller Configuration Settings Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway Backups	AAO #11
13	S	Final As-Built Drawings	AAO #11
14	S	O&M Instructions	AAO #13
15	S	Training Documentation	2 days before scheduled start of #16
16	E	Training	AAO #14 and #15
17	S	Closeout QC Checklist	ACO #16

1.6 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

DDC Contractor Design Drawings; G

Draft As-Built Drawings; G

Final As-Built Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Programming Software; G

Controller Application Programs; G

Configuration Software; G

Controller Configuration Settings; G

Manufacturer's Product Data; G

Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway Backups; G

Niagara Framework Engineering Tool; G

SD-05 Design Data

Boiler Or Chiller Plant Gateway Request

SD-06 Test Reports

Start-Up Testing Report; G

PVT Report; G

Pre-Construction Quality Control (QC) Checklist; G

Post-Construction Quality Control (QC) Checklist; G

Bus Waveform Report

Control Contractor's Performance Verification Testing Plan; G

Equipment Supplier's Performance Verification Testing Plan; G

Endurance Testing Results; G

Performance Verification Test Report; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Instructions; G

Training Documentation; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Enclosure Keys; G

Password Summary Report; G

Closeout Quality Control (QC) Checklist; G

1.7 DATA PACKAGE AND SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

Technical data packages consisting of technical data and computer software (meaning technical data which relates to computer software) which are specifically identified in this project and which may be defined/required in other specifications must be delivered strictly in accordance with the CONTRACT CLAUSES and in accordance with the Contract Data Requirements List, DD Form 1423. Data delivered must be identified by reference to the particular specification paragraph against which it is furnished. All submittals not specified as technical data packages are considered 'shop drawings' under the Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement (FARS) and must contain no proprietary information and be delivered with unrestricted rights.

1.8 SOFTWARE FOR DDC HARDWARE AND GATEWAYS

Provide all software related to the programming and configuration of DDC Hardware and Gateways as indicated. All software shall be licensed to Marine Corps Base, Camp Lejeune Complex for unrestricted use on Camp Lejeune Complex and reproduction for use on Camp Lejeune Complex. Software keys and "dongles" are not permitted. The term "controller" as used in these requirements means both DDC Hardware and Gateways.

1.8.1 Configuration Software

For type of controller, provide the configuration tool software in accordance with Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS. Submit hard copies of the software user manuals for each software with the software submittal.

Submit Configuration Software on CD-ROM as a Technical Data Package. Submit 2 hard copies of the software user manual for each piece of software.

1.8.2 Controller Configuration Settings

For each controller, provide copies of the installed configuration settings as source code compatible with the configuration tool software for that controller in accordance with Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS.

Submit Controller Configuration Settings on CD-ROM as a Technical Data Package. Include on the CD-ROM a list or table of contents clearly indicating which files are associated with each device. Submit 2 copies of the Controller Configuration Settings CD-ROM.

1.8.3 Programming Software

For each type of programmable controller, provide the programming software in accordance with Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS. Submit hard copies of software user manuals for each software with the software submittal.

Submit Programming Software on CD-ROM as a Technical Data Package. Submit 2 hard copies of the software user manual for each piece of software.

1.8.4 Controller Application Programs

For each programmable controller, provide copies of the application program as source code compatible with the programming software for that controller in accordance with Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS.

Submit Controller Application Programs on CD-ROM as a Technical Data Package. Include on the CD-ROM a list or table of contents clearly indicating which application program is associated with each device. Submit 2 copies of the Controller Application Programs CD-ROM.

1.8.5 Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway Backups

For each Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway, provide a backup of all software within the Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway, including configuration settings. This backup must be sufficient to allow the restoration of the Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway or the replacement of the Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway.

Submit backups for each Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway on CD-ROM as a Technical Data Package. Mark each backup indicating clearly the source Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway.

1.8.6 Niagara Framework Engineering Tool (for all Niagara Framework system)

Provide a Niagara Framework Engineering Tool in accordance with Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS. Submit software user manuals with the Niagara Framework Engineering Tool submittal.

Submit the Niagara Framework Engineering Tool on CD-ROM as a Technical Data Package. Submit two hard copies of the software user manual for the Niagara Framework Engineering Tool.

1.9 BOILER OR CHILLER PLANT GATEWAY REQUEST

If requesting the use of a gateway to a boiler or chiller plant as indicated in Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS, submit a Boiler or Chiller Plant Gateway Request describing the configuration of the boilers or chillers including model numbers for equipment and controllers, the sequence of operation for the units, and a justification for the need to operate the units on a shared non-BACnet network.

1.10 QUALITY CONTROL CHECKLISTS

The QC Checklist for Niagara Framework Based BACnet Systems in APPENDIX A of this Section must be completed by the Contractor's Chief Quality Control

(QC) Representative and submitted as indicated.

The QC Representative must verify each item indicated and initial in the space provided to indicate that the requirement has been met. The QC Representative must sign and date the Checklist prior to submission to the Government.

1.10.1 Pre-Construction Quality Control (QC) Checklist

Complete items indicated as Pre-Construction QC Checklist items in the QC Checklist. Submit four copies of the Pre-Construction QC Checklist.

1.10.2 Post-Construction Quality Control (QC) Checklist

Complete items indicated as Post-Construction QC Checklist items in the QC Checklist. Submit four copies of the Post-Construction QC Checklist.

1.10.3 Closeout Quality Control (QC) Checklist

Complete items indicated as Closeout QC Checklist items in the QC Checklist. Submit four copies of the Closeout QC Checklist.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Provide products meeting the requirements of Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC, Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS for BACnet or Niagara BACnet systems, other referenced Sections, and this Section.

2.1 GENERAL PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

Units of the same type of equipment must be products of a single manufacturer. Each major component of equipment must have the manufacturer's name and address, and the model and serial number in a conspicuous place. Materials and equipment must be standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacturing of these and similar products. The standard products must have been in a satisfactory commercial or industrial use for two years prior to use on this project. The two year use must include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. DDC Hardware not meeting the two-year field service requirement is acceptable provided it has been successfully used by the Contractor in a minimum of two previous projects. The equipment items must be supported by a service organization. Items of the same type and purpose must be identical, including equipment, assemblies, parts and components.

2.2 PRODUCT DATA

Provide manufacturer's product data sheets documenting compliance with product specifications for each product provided under Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC, Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS, or this Section. Provide product data for all products in a single indexed compendium, organized by product type.

For all BACnet hardware: for each manufacturer, model and version (revision) of DDC Hardware provide the Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) in accordance with Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT

DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS.

Submit Manufacturer's Product Data on CD-ROM.

2.3 OPERATION ENVIRONMENT

Unless otherwise specified, provide products rated for continuous operation under the following conditions:

- a. Pressure: Pressure conditions normally encountered in the installed location.
- b. Vibration: Vibration conditions normally encountered in the installed location.
- c. Temperature:
 - (1) Products installed indoors: Ambient temperatures in the range of 32 to 112 degrees F and temperature conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.
 - (2) Products installed outdoors or in unconditioned indoor spaces: Ambient temperatures in the range of -35 to +151 degrees F and temperature conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.
- d. Humidity: 10 to 95 percent relative humidity, noncondensing and humidity conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.

2.4 WIRELESS CAPABILITY

For products incorporating any wireless capability (including but not limited to radio frequency (RF), infrared and optical), provide products for which wireless capability can be permanently disabled at the device. Optical and infrared capabilities may be disabled via a permanently affixed opaque cover plate.

2.5 ENCLOSURES

Enclosures supplied as an integral (pre-packaged) part of another product are acceptable. Provide two Enclosure Keys for each lockable enclosure on a single ring per enclosure with a tag identifying the enclosure the keys operate. Provide enclosures meeting the following minimum requirements:

2.5.1 Outdoors

For enclosures located outdoors, provide enclosures meeting NEMA 250 Type 4 requirements.

2.5.2 Mechanical and Electrical Rooms

For enclosures located in mechanical or electrical rooms, provide enclosures meeting NEMA 250 Type 2 requirements.

2.5.3 Other Locations

For enclosures in other locations including but not limited to occupied spaces, above ceilings, and in plenum returns, provide enclosures meeting

NEMA 250 Type 1 requirements.

2.6 WIRE AND CABLE

Provide wire and cable meeting the requirements of NFPA 70 and NFPA 90A in addition to the requirements of this specification and referenced specifications.

2.6.1 Terminal Blocks

For terminal blocks which are not integral to other equipment, provide terminal blocks which are insulated, modular, feed-through, clamp style with recessed captive screw-type clamping mechanism, suitable for DIN rail mounting, and which have enclosed sides or end plates and partition plates for separation.

2.6.2 Control Wiring for Binary Signals

For Control Wiring for Binary Signals, provide 18 AWG copper or thicker wire rated for 300-volt service.

2.6.3 Control Wiring for Analog Signals

For Control Wiring for Analog Signals, provide in accordance with the control manufacturer's recommendations and the following: provide 18 AWG or thicker, copper, single- or multiple-twisted wire meeting the following requirements:

- a. minimum 2 inch lay of twist
- b. 100 percent shielded pairs
- c. at least 300-volt insulation
- d. each pair has a 20 AWG tinned-copper drain wire and individual overall pair insulation
- e. cables have an overall aluminum-polyester or tinned-copper cable-shield tape, overall 20 AWG tinned-copper cable drain wire, and overall cable insulation.

2.6.4 MS/TP Communication Bus

Provide system manufacturer's recommended or preferred cabling.

2.6.5 Conduit

Conduit for controls less than 100 volts shall be colored blue. Junction box cover plates for controls shall be blue. Fittings and boxes do not need to be blue.

2.6.6 Power Wiring for Control Devices

For 24-volt circuits, provide insulated copper 18 AWG or thicker wire rated for 300 VAC service. For 120-volt circuits, provide 14 AWG or thicker stranded copper wire rated for 600-volt service.

2.6.7 Transformers

Provide [UL 5085-3](#) approved transformers. Select transformers sized so that the connected load is no greater than 80 percent of the transformer rated capacity.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Fully install and test the control system in accordance Section [23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC](#), [Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS](#) for [BACnet or Niagara BACnet systems](#), and this Section.

3.1.1 Dielectric Isolation

Provide dielectric isolation where dissimilar metals are used for connection and support. Install control system in a manner that provides clearance for control system maintenance by maintaining access space required to calibrate, remove, repair, or replace control system devices. Install control system such that it does not interfere with the clearance requirements for mechanical and electrical system maintenance.

3.1.2 Penetrations in Building Exterior

Make all penetrations through and mounting holes in the building exterior watertight.

3.1.3 Device Mounting Criteria

Install devices in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and as indicated and shown. Provide a weathershield for all devices installed outdoors. Provide clearance for control system maintenance by maintaining access space required to calibrate, remove, repair, or replace control system devices. Provide clearance for mechanical and electrical system maintenance; do not not interfere with the clearance requirements for mechanical and electrical system maintenance.

3.1.4 Labels and Tags

Key all labels and tags to the unique identifiers shown on the As-Built drawings. For labels exterior to protective enclosures provide engraved plastic labels mechanically attached to the enclosure or DDC Hardware. Labels inside protective enclosures may be attached using adhesive, but must not be hand written. For tags, provide plastic or metal tags mechanically attached directly to each device or attached by a metal chain or wire.

- a. Label all Enclosures and DDC Hardware.
- b. Tag Airflow measurement arrays (AFMA) with flow rate range for signal output range, duct size, and pitot tube AFMA flow coefficient.
- c. Tag duct static pressure taps at the location of the pressure tap

3.1.5 Surge Protection

3.1.5.1 Power-Line Surge Protection

Protect equipment connected to AC circuits to withstand power-line surges in accordance with [IEEE C62.41](#). Do not use fuses for surge protection.

3.1.5.2 Surge Protection for Transmitter and Control Wiring

Protect DDC hardware against or provided DDC hardware capable of withstanding surges induced on control and transmitter wiring installed outdoors and as shown. Protect equipment against the following two waveforms:

- a. A waveform with a 10-microsecond rise time, a 1000-microsecond decay time and a peak current of 60 amps.
- b. A waveform with an 8-microsecond rise time, a 20-microsecond decay time and a peak current of 500 amperes.

3.1.6 Basic Cybersecurity Requirements

3.1.6.1 Passwords

For all devices with a password, change the password from the default password. Do not use the same password for more than one device. Coordinate selection of passwords with [Contracting Officer](#). Provide a [Password Summary Report](#) documenting the password for each device and describing the procedure to change the password for each device.

Provide two hardcopies of the Password Summary Report, each copy in its own sealed envelope.

3.1.6.2 Wireless Capability

Unless otherwise indicated, disable wireless capability (including but not limited to radio frequency (RF), infrared and optical) for all devices with wireless capability. Optical and infrared capabilities may be disabled via a permanently affixed opaque cover plate. Password protecting a wireless connections does not meet this requirement; the wireless capability must be disabled.

3.1.6.3 IP Network Physical Security

Install all IP Network media in conduit. Install all IP devices including but not limited to IP-enabled DDC hardware and IP Network Hardware in lockable enclosures.

3.2 DRAWINGS AND CALCULATIONS

Provide drawings in the form and arrangement indicated and shown. Use the same abbreviations, symbols, nomenclature and identifiers shown. Assign a unique identifier as shown to each control system element on a drawing. When packaging drawings, group schedules by system. When space allows, it is permissible to include multiple schedules for the same system on a single sheet. Except for drawings covering all systems, do not put information for different systems on the same sheet.

Submit hardcopy drawings on ISO A1 [34 by 22 inches](#) or A3 [17 by 11 inches](#)

sheets, and electronic drawings in PDF and in AutoCAD format. In addition, submit electronic drawings in editable Excel format for all drawings that are tabular, including but not limited to the Point Schedule and Equipment Schedule.

- a. Submit **DDC Contractor Design Drawings** consisting of each drawing indicated with pre-construction information depicting the intended control system design and plans. Submit DDC Contractor Design Drawings as a single complete package: 2 hard copies and 2 copies on CD-ROM.
- b. Submit **Draft As-Built Drawings** consisting of each drawing indicated updated with as-built data for the system prior to PVT. Submit Draft As-Built Drawings as a single complete package: 2 hard copies and 2 copies on CD-ROM.
- c. Submit **Final As-Built Drawings** consisting of each drawing indicated updated with all final as-built data. Final As-Built Drawings as a single complete package: 2 hard copies and 2 copies on CD-ROM.

3.2.1 Sample Drawings

Sample drawings in electronic format are available at the Whole Building Design Guide page for this section:

<http://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-23-09-00>

These drawings may prove useful in demonstrating expected drawing formatting and example content and are provided for illustrative purposes only. Note that these drawings do not meet the content requirements of this Section and must be completed to meet project requirements.

3.2.2 Drawing Index and Legend

Provide an HVAC Control System Drawing Index showing the name and number of the building, military site, State or other similar designation, and Country. In the Drawing Index, list all Contractor Design Drawings, including the drawing number, sheet number, drawing title, and computer filename when used. In the Design Drawing Legend, show and describe all symbols, abbreviations and acronyms used on the Design Drawings. Provide a single Index and Legend for the entire drawing package. **The Title Block of each drawing must include the Drawing revision, i.e. Submittal, Revision 1, Revision 2, As-Built, etc., including the date.**

3.2.3 Thermostat and Occupancy Sensor Schedule

Provide a thermostat and occupancy sensor schedule containing each thermostat's unique identifier, room identifier and control features and functions as shown. Provide a single thermostat and occupancy sensor schedule for the entire project.

3.2.4 Valve Schedule

Provide a valve schedule containing each valve's unique identifier, size, flow coefficient Kv (Cv), pressure drop at specified flow rate, spring range, positive positioner range, actuator size, close-off pressure to torque data, dimensions, and access and clearance requirements data. In the valve schedule include actuator selection data supported by calculations of the force required to move and seal the valve, access and clearance requirements. Provide a single valve schedule for the entire project.

3.2.5 Damper Schedule

Provide a damper schedule containing each damper's unique identifier, type (opposed or parallel blade), nominal and actual sizes, orientation of axis and frame, direction of blade rotation, actuator size and spring ranges, operation rate, positive positioner range, location of actuators and damper end switches, arrangement of sections in multi-section dampers, and methods of connecting dampers, actuators, and linkages. Include the AMCA 511 maximum leakage rate at the operating static-pressure differential for each damper in the Damper Schedule. Provide a single damper schedule for the entire project.

3.2.6 Project Summary Equipment Schedule

Provide a project summary equipment schedule containing the manufacturer, model number, part number and descriptive name for each control device, hardware and component provided under this specification. Provide a single project equipment schedule for the entire project.

3.2.7 Equipment Schedule

Provide system equipment schedules containing the unique identifier, manufacturer, model number, part number and descriptive name for each control device, hardware and component provided under this specification. Provide a separate equipment schedule for each HVAC system.

3.2.8 Occupancy Schedule

Provide an occupancy schedule drawing containing the same fields as the occupancy schedule Contract Drawing with Contractor updated information. Provide a single occupancy schedule for the entire project.

3.2.9 DDC Hardware Schedule

Provide a single DDC Hardware Schedule for the entire project and including following information for each device.

3.2.9.1 DDC Hardware Identifier

The Unique DDC Hardware Identifier for the device.

3.2.9.2 HVAC System

The system "name" used to identify a specific system (the name used on the system schematic drawing for that system).

3.2.9.3 BACnet Device Information

3.2.9.3.1 Device Object Identifier

The Device Object Identifier: The Object_Identifier of the Device Object. Instance numbers must be field assignable.

3.2.9.3.2 Device Object Name Property Text

Each object on the Camp Lejeune EMCS has a unique point name, which is made up of the object or short name stored in the controller and the equipment identifier, which is stored in the supervisory building controller (SBC). The long point name combines this object name with the

name stored in the SBC that describes the controller or location of the object. The device object name property field shall support 32 minimum printable characters. The point name follows the general convention:

Building.Location.Equipment.Object Name

Example: HP512.Second Floor.AHU-3.ASTATIC-SP. See Attachments one through four for equipment names, object names, object groupings, and area names.

3.2.9.3.3 Object Name Property Text (Other than Device Objects)

The object name identifies the specific point. Only object names on the approved Camp Lejeune list shall be used. From the example above, the point name is: "ASTATIC-SP". See Attachment for the approved Camp Lejeune list. The object name property field shall support 32 minimum printable characters.

3.2.9.3.4 Object Description

The controller shall also store an alpha numeric description of the object name. The controller shall support a minimum of 30 printable characters. From the example above the object description is: "Actual Static Pressure Setpoint".

3.2.9.3.5 List of attachments

Attachment 1 - Equipment Names
Attachment 2 - Object Names
Attachment 3 - Object Grouping

3.2.9.3.6 Setpoints

All setpoints must be BACnet exposed for auto discovery purposes if needed.

3.2.9.3.7 Plant Controllers

Equipment such as VFD's, chillers, and boilers shall have hardwired enable(start/stop), and status points from the plant controller, VFD's shall also have a hardwired speed command. Additionally, this equipment shall have a BACnet interface for monitoring.

3.2.9.3.8 Network Number

The Network Number for the device.

3.2.9.3.9 MAC Address

The MAC Address for the device. For MS/Tp networks, assign addresses from 0 to 127. Supervisory Controller Global ID and instance numbers are to be obtained from Camp Lejeune Public Works Operations to ensure duplicates do not occur. Point of Contact:

Public Works Division/EMCS
1005 Michael Road / Building 1005
MCB Camp Lejeune, NC 28547
(910) 450-7846

3.2.9.3.10 BTL Listing

The BTL Listing of the device. If the device is listed under multiple BTL Profiles, indicate the profile that matches the use and configuration of the device as installed.

3.2.9.3.11 Proprietary Services Information

If the device uses non-standard **ASHRAE 135** services as defined and permitted in Section **23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS**, indicate that the device uses non-standard services and include a description of all non-standard services used. Describe usage and content such that a device from another vendor can interoperate with the device using the non-standard service. Provide descriptions with sufficient detail to allow a device from a different manufacturer to be programmed to both read and write the non-standard service request:

- a. read: interpret the data contained in the non-standard service and;
- b. write: given similar data, generate the appropriate non-standard service request.

3.2.9.3.12 Alarming Information

Indicate whether the device is used for alarm generation, and which types of alarm generation the device implements: intrinsic, local algorithmic, remote algorithmic.

3.2.9.3.13 Scheduling Information

Indicate whether the device is used for scheduling.

3.2.9.3.14 Trending Information

Indicate whether the device is used for trending, and indicate if the device is used to trend local values, remote values, or both.

3.2.9.4 Niagara Station ID

The Niagara Station ID for each Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway

3.2.10 Points Schedule

Provide a Points Schedule in tabular form for each HVAC system, with the indicated columns and with each row representing a hardware point, network point or configuration point in the system.

- a. When a Points Schedule was included in the Contract Drawing package, use the same fields as the Contract Drawing with updated information in addition to the indicated fields.
- b. When Point Schedules are included in the contract package, items requiring contractor verification or input have been shown in angle brackets ("**<**" and "**>**"), such as **<__>** for a required entry or **<value>** for a value requiring confirmation. Complete all items in brackets as well as any blank cells. Do not modify values which are not in brackets without approval.

Points Schedule Columns must include:

3.2.10.1 Point Name

The abbreviated name for the point using the indicated naming convention.
All points shall adhere to the Camp Lejeune standard naming conventions.

3.2.10.2 Description

A brief functional description of the point such as "Supply Air Temperature".

3.2.10.3 DDC Hardware Identifier

The Unique DDC Hardware Identifier shown on the DDC Hardware Schedule and used across all drawings for the DDC Hardware containing the point.

3.2.10.4 Settings

The value and units of any setpoints, configured setpoints, configuration parameters, and settings related to each point.

3.2.10.5 Range

The range of values, including units, associated with the point, including but not limited to a zone temperature setpoint adjustment range, a sensor measurement range, occupancy values for an occupancy input, or the status of a safety.

3.2.10.6 Input or Output (I/O) Type

The type of input or output signal associated with the point. Use the following abbreviations for entries in this column:

- a. AI: The value comes from a hardware (physical) Analog Input
- b. AO: The value is output as a hardware (physical) Analog Output
- c. BI: The value comes from a hardware (physical) Binary Input
- d. BO: The value is output as a hardware (physical) Binary Output
- e. PULSE: The value comes from a hardware (physical) Pulse Accumulator Input
- f. NET-IN: The value is provided from the network (generally from another device). Use this entry only when the value is received from another device as part of scheduling or as part of a sequence of operation, not when the value is received on the network for supervisory functions such as trending, alarming, override or display at a user interface.
- g. NET-OUT: The value is provided to another controller over the network. Use this entry only when the value is transmitted to another device as part of scheduling or as part of a sequence of operation, not when the value is transmitted on the network for supervisory functions such as trending, alarming, override or display at a user interface.

3.2.10.7 Object and Property Information

The Object Type and Instance Number for the Object associated with the point. If the value of the point is not in the Present_Value Property, then also provide the Property ID for the Property containing the value of the point. Any point that is displayed at the front end or on an LDP, is trended, is used by another device on the network, or has an alarm condition must be documented here.

3.2.10.8 Niagara Station ID

The Niagara Station ID of the Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway the point is mapped into.

3.2.10.9 Network Data Exchange Information (Gets Data From, Sends Data To)

Provide the DDC Hardware Identifier of other DDC Hardware the point is shared with.

3.2.10.10 Override Information (Object Type and Instance Number)

For each point requiring an Override and not residing in a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway, indicate if the Object for the point is Commandable or, if the use of a separate Object was specifically approved by the Contracting Officer, provide the Object Type and Instance Number of the Object to be used in overriding the point.

3.2.10.11 Alarm Information

For Niagara BACnet systems: Indicate the Alarm Generation Type and Notification Class Object Instance Number for each point requiring an alarm. (Note that not all alarms will have a Notification Class Object.)

3.2.10.12 Configuration Information

Indicate the means of configuration associated with each point. For points in a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway, indicate the point within the Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway used to configure the value. For other points:

- a. For Operator Configurable Points indicate BACnet Object and Property information (Name, Type, Identifiers) containing the configurable value. Indicate whether the property is writable always, or only when Out_Of_Service is TRUE.
- b. For Configurable Points indicate the BACnet Object and Property information as for Operator Configurable points, or identification of the configurable settings from within the engineering software for the device or identification of the hardware settings on the device.

3.2.11 Riser Diagram

The Riser Diagram of the Building Control Network may be in tabular form, and must show all DDC Hardware and all Network Hardware, including network terminators. For each item, provide the unique identifier, common descriptive name, physical sequential order (previous and next device on the network), room identifier and location within room. A single riser diagram must be submitted for the entire system.

3.2.12 Control System Schematics

Provide control system schematics in the same form as the control system schematic Contract Drawing with Contractor updated information. Provide a control system schematic for each HVAC system.

3.2.13 Sequences of Operation

Provide HVAC control system sequence of operation and in the same format as the Contract Drawings. Within these drawings, refer to devices by their unique identifiers. Submit sequences of operation for each HVAC system

3.2.14 Controller, Motor Starter and Relay Wiring Diagram

Provide controller wiring diagrams as functional wiring diagrams which show the interconnection of conductors and cables to each controller and to the identified terminals of input and output devices, starters and package equipment. Show necessary jumpers and ground connections and the labels of all conductors. Identify sources of power required for control systems and for packaged equipment control systems back to the panel board circuit breaker number, controller enclosures, magnetic starter, or packaged equipment control circuit. Show each power supply and transformer not integral to a controller, starter, or packaged equipment. Show the connected volt-ampere load and the power supply volt-ampere rating. Provide wiring diagrams for each HVAC system.

3.3 CONTROLLER TUNING

Tune each controller in a manner consistent with that described in the **ASHRAE FUN IP** and in the manufacturer's instruction manual. Tuning must consist of adjustment of the proportional, integral, and where applicable, the derivative (PID) settings to provide stable closed-loop control. Each loop must be tuned while the system or plant is operating at a high gain (worst case) condition, where high gain can generally be defined as a low-flow or low-load condition. Upon final adjustment of the PID settings, in response to a change in controller setpoint, the controlled variable must settle out at the new setpoint with no more than two (2) oscillations above and below setpoint. Upon settling out at the new setpoint the controller output must be steady. With the exception of naturally slow processes such as zone temperature control, the controller must settle out at the new setpoint within five (5) minutes. Set the controller to its correct setpoint and record and submit the final PID configuration settings with the O&M Instructions and on the associated Points Schedule.

3.4 START-UP

3.4.1 Start-Up Test

Perform the following startup tests for each control system to ensure that the described control system components are installed and functioning per this specification.

Adjust, calibrate, measure, program, configure, set the time schedules, and otherwise perform all necessary actions to ensure that the systems function as indicated and shown in the sequence of operation and other contract documents.

3.4.1.1.1 Systems Check

An item-by-item check must be performed for each HVAC system

3.4.1.1.1.1 Step 1 - System Inspection

With the system in unoccupied mode and with fan hand-off-auto switches in the OFF position, verify that power and main air are available where required and that all output devices are in their failsafe and normal positions. Inspect each local display panel and each M&C Client to verify that all displays indicate shutdown conditions.

3.4.1.1.1.2 Step 2 - Calibration Accuracy Check

Perform a two-point accuracy check of the calibration of each HVAC control system sensing element and transmitter by comparing the value from the test instrument to the network value provided by the DDC Hardware. Use digital indicating test instruments, such as digital thermometers, motor-driven psychrometers, and tachometers. Use test instruments with accuracy at least twice as accurate as the specified sensor accuracy and with calibration traceable to National Institute of Standards and Technology standards. Check one the first check point in the bottom one-third of the sensor range, and the second in the top one-third of the sensor range. Verify that the sensing element-to-DDC readout accuracies at two points are within the specified product accuracy tolerances, and if not recalibrate or replace the device and repeat the calibration check.

3.4.1.1.1.3 Step 3 - Actuator Range Check

With the system running, apply a signal to each actuator through the DDC Hardware controller. Verify proper operation of the actuators and positioners for all actuated devices and record the signal levels for the extreme positions of each device. Vary the signal over its full range, and verify that the actuators travel from zero stroke to full stroke within the signal range. Where applicable, verify that all sequenced actuators move from zero stroke to full stroke in the proper direction, and move the connected device in the proper direction from one extreme position to the other. For valve actuators and damper actuators, perform the actuator range check under normal system pressures.

3.4.1.2 Weather Dependent Test

Perform weather dependent test procedures in the appropriate climatic season.

3.4.2 Start-Up Testing Report

Submit 4 copies of the Start-Up Testing Report. The report may be submitted as a Technical Data Package documenting the results of the tests performed and certifying that the system is installed and functioning per this specification, and is ready for the Performance Verification Test (PVT).

3.5 PERFORMANCE VERIFICATION TESTING

3.5.1 General

PVT testing must demonstrate compliance of controls work with contract document requirements and must be performed by the Controls Contractor and

Equipment Suppliers.

3.5.2 Performance Verification Testing and Commissioning

PVT testing is a Government quality assurance function that includes systems trending and field tests. Commissioning is a quality control function that is the Commissioning Team's responsibility to the extent required by this contract.

3.5.3 Performance Verification Testing of Equipment with Packaged Controls

Controls Contractor and Equipment Supplier(s) must share and coordinate PVT testing responsibilities for equipment provided with on-board factory packaged controls such as boiler controllers, dedicated outside air systems (DOAS's), and packaged pumping systems.

3.5.3.1 Controls Contractor Responsibilities

The Controls Contractor must provide a PVT Plan separate from [Equipment Supplier's performance verification testing plan](#), perform endurance testing, and perform PVT testing concurrent with Equipment Suppliers' testing for equipment provided with on-board factory packaged controls to demonstrate the following:

- a. Equipment enabling and disabling.
- b. Equipment standard and optional control points necessary to accomplish functionality regardless if specified in contract documents or not.
- c. Equipment standard and optional alarms critical to safe operation regardless if specified in contract documents or not.
- d. All control points added by Controls Contractor in addition to onboard factory packaged controls regardless if specified in contract documents or not.

Refer to paragraphs titled "Performance Verification Test Plan" and "Endurance Testing" for additional information.

3.5.3.2 Equipment Supplier Responsibilities

Each Equipment Supplier must provide PVT Plans separate from Controls Contractor's plans and perform PVT testing concurrent with Controls Contractor's testing for their equipment provided with on-board factory packaged controls to demonstrate the following:

- a. Equipment standard and optional control features necessary to accomplish functionality regardless if specified in contract documents or not.
- b. Equipment standard and optional operation modes necessary to accomplish functionality regardless if specified in contract documents or not.
- c. Equipment standard and optional alarm conditions for safe operation regardless if specified in contract documents or not.

Refer to all paragraphs under paragraph titled "Performance Verification Testing" except for section titled "Endurance Testing" for additional information.

3.5.4 Sequencing of Performance Verification Testing Activities

PVT activities must be sequenced with major activities listed below for Test and Balance (TAB) Contractor, Equipment Suppliers, Commissioning Specialists, and others to demonstrate fully functioning systems. Major activities as applicable to this contract must be sequenced as indicated in TABLE II: SEQUENCING OF PVT TESTING ACTIVITIES

TABLE II: SEQUENCING OF PVT TESTING ACTIVITIES	
SEQUENCE	ITEM
1	Submission, review, and approval of Control Contractors PVT Plans.
2	Submission, review, and approval of Equipment Suppliers PVT Plans.
3	Submission, review, and approval of certified final Test and Balance
4	Conduct endurance testing.
5	Submission, review, and approval of all of the Commissioning Specialists completed functional performance tests.
6	Submission, review, and approval of endurance testing.
7	Request Contracting Officer to allow beginning of Government-witnessed PVT testing.
8	Contracting Officers approval to begin PVT testing.
9	Conduct PVT field work.
10	Governments verbal approval of PVT field work for all systems.
11	Conduct Test and Balance verification field work.
12	Governments written approval of Test and Balance verification field
13	Governments written approval of PVT field work for all systems.
14	Facility acceptance recommendation.
15	Submission, review, and approval of Control Contractors PVT Report.
16	Submission, review, and approval of Equipment Suppliers PVT Report.
17	Conduct endurance testing within 10 months of beneficial occupancy.
18	Submission, review, and approval of endurance testing within 10 months of beneficial occupancy.
19	Conduct PVT field work within 10 months of beneficial occupancy.

3.5.4.1 PVT Testing for Multi-Phase Construction

For air moving systems except outside air systems serving multiple phases, all major activities listed in TABLE II through Government's verbal approval of Test and Balance verification field work can be completed by phase if all ductwork construction is completed for that phase.

For primary systems such as chilled water systems, HVAC heating hot water systems, and outside air systems serving multiple phases, all major activities listed in TABLE II through Government's verbal approval of Test and Balance verification field work for all air moving systems served by that primary system for that phase must be completed prior to conducting PVT field work for that primary system.

3.5.5 Control Contractor's Performance Verification Testing Plan

Submit a detailed PVT Plan of the proposed control systems testing in this contract for approval prior to its use. Develop and use a single PVT Plan for each system with a unique control sequence. Systems sharing an identical control sequence can be tested using copies of the PVT Plan intended for these systems.

PVT Plans must include system-based, step-by-step test methods demonstrating system performs in accordance with contract document requirements. The Government may provide sample PVT Plans upon request. PVT Plans must include the following:

- a. Control sequences from contract documents segmented such that each control algorithm, operation mode, and alarm condition is immediately followed by numbered test methods required to initiate a response, expected response, space for comments, and "pass" or "fail" indication for each expected response.
- b. PVT Plans with control sequences from contract documents that are not segmented into parts will not be accepted.
- c. Indication where assisting personnel are required such as Mechanical Contractor.
- d. Signature and date lines for the Contractor's PVT administrator, Contractor's quality assurance representative, and Contracting Officer's representative acknowledging completion of testing.

3.5.6 Performance Verification Testing Sample Size

PVT testing sample sizes will be as follows:

- a. 100-Percent of the following systems:
 - (1) primary systems including, but not limited to, chilled water and HVAC heating hot water systems
 - (2) air handling unit systems including all associated fans except for remote exhaust air fans
 - (3) DOAS's including all associated fans except for remote exhaust air fans
- b. 20-Percent of each set of systems with a shared identical control

sequence for systems such as:

- (1) air terminal units
- (2) exhaust air fans
- (3) terminal equipment such as fan coil units and unit heaters

3.5.6.1 Selection of Systems to Test

For sample sets less than 100-percent, the Government will choose which systems will be tested. The Government may require additional testing if previous testing results are inconsistent or demonstrate improper system control as follows:

- a. An additional 25-percent after five-percent failure rate of first sample set.
- b. 100-percent after any failures occurring in additional sample set.

3.5.7 Conducting Performance Verification Testing

At least 15 days prior to preferred test date, request the Contracting Officer to allow the beginning of Government-witnessed PVT testing. Provide an estimated time table required to perform testing of each system. Furnish personnel, equipment, instrumentation, and supplies necessary to perform all aspects of testing. Testing personnel must be regularly employed in the testing and calibration of control systems. After receipt of Contracting Officer's approval to begin testing, perform PVT testing using project's as-built (shop) control system drawings, project's design drawings, and approved PVT Plans.

During testing, identify deficiencies that do not meet contract document requirements. Deficiencies must be investigated, corrected with corrections documented, and re-tested at a later date following procedures for the initial PVT testing. The Government may require re-testing of any control system components affected by the original failed test.

3.5.8 Endurance Testing

3.5.8.1 General

Conduct endurance testing for each system subject to PVT testing beginning when indicated in "Sequencing of Performance Verification Testing Activities". Systems must be operating as normally anticipated during occupancy throughout endurance testing.

3.5.8.2 Hardware

Use hardware provided in this contract for testing.

If insufficient buffer capacity exists to trend the entire endurance test, upload trend data during the course of endurance testing to ensure all trend data is retained. Lost trend data will require retesting of all control points for affected system(s).

3.5.8.3 Endurance Testing Results Format

Submit **endurance testing results** for each tested system in a graphical

format complete with clear indication of value(s) for y-axis, value for x-axis, and legend identifying each trended control point. The number of control points contained on a single graph must be such that all control points can be clearly visible. Control points must be logically grouped such that related points appear on a single graph. In addition, submit a separate comma separated value (CSV) file of raw trend data for each trended system. Each trended control point in CSV file must be clearly identified.

For control points recorded based on change of value, change of value for recording data must be clearly identified for each control point.

3.5.8.4 Endurance Testing Start, Duration, and Frequency

Trending of all control points for a given system must start at an identical date and time regardless of the basis of data collection. Duration of all endurance tests must be at least one-week.

Unless specified otherwise for control points recorded based on time, frequency of data collection must be 15-minutes . Frequency of data collection for specific types of control points is as follows:

3.5.8.4.1 Points Trended at One Minute Intervals

- a. Temperature for supply air, return air, mixed air, supply water, and return water
- b. Temperature for outside air, supply air, return air and exhaust air entering and leaving energy recovery device
- c. Flow for supply air, return air, outside air, chilled water, and HVAC heating hot water
- d. Flow for exhaust air associated with energy recovery
- e. Relative humidity for outside air and return air
- f. Relative humidity for outside air, supply air, return air and exhaust air entering and leaving energy recovery device
- g. Command and status for control dampers and control valves
- h. Speed for fans and pumps
- i. Pressure for fans and pumps

3.5.8.4.2 Points Trended at 15 Minute Intervals

- a. Temperature and relative humidity for zones
- b. Temperature and relative humidity for outside air not associated with energy recovery
- c. Command and status for equipment
- d. Pressure relative to the outside for facility

3.5.8.5 Trended Control Points

Trended control points for each system must demonstrate each system performs in accordance with contract document requirements. Trended control points must include, but not be limited to, control points listed in contract document points list.

Minimum control points that are required to be trended for selected systems are listed below. These control points must be trended as applicable to this contract in addition to control points necessary to demonstrate systems perform in accordance with contract document requirements and those listed in contract document's points list.

3.5.8.5.1 Air-Cooled Chiller Chilled Water System.

- a. Chiller(s) command and status
- b. Chiller isolation valve(s) command and status
- c. Chilled water pump(s) actual speed
- d. Chilled water pump(s) setpoint and actual differential pressure
- e. Minimum flow bypass control valve command
- f. Minimum system flow setpoint and actual flow
- g. Chilled water supply setpoint and actual temperature
- h. Chilled water return actual temperature
- i. Chilled water actual flow
- j. Outside air actual dry-bulb temperature

3.5.8.5.2 HVAC Heating Hot Water System with Boiler.

- a. Boiler(s) command and status
- b. Boiler(s) isolation valve command and status
- c. HVAC heating hot water pump(s) actual speed
- d. HVAC heating hot water pump(s) setpoint and actual differential pressure
- e. Minimum flow bypass control valve command
- f. Minimum system setpoint and actual flow
- g. HVAC heating hot water supply setpoint and actual temperature
- h. HVAC heating hot water return actual temperature
- i. HVAC heating hot water actual flow
- j. Outside air actual dry-bulb temperature

3.5.8.5.3 Dedicated Outside Air Unit (DOAU)

- a. Outside air actual dry-bulb temperature
- b. Outside air actual relative humidity
- c. Outside air isolation damper command and status
- d. Outside air setpoint and actual airflow
- e. Energy recovery wheel command, status, and actual speed
- f. Energy recovery wheel's defrost cycle command and status
- g. Energy recovery wheel's OA discharge air actual dry-bulb temperature
- h. Energy recovery wheel's OA discharge air actual relative humidity
- i. Preheat coil leaving air setpoint and actual temperature
- j. Preheat coil control actuator command
- k. Cooling coil leaving air setpoint and actual temperature
- l. Cooling coil control valve command
- m. Supply air fan actual speed
- n. Reheat coil control valve command
- o. Discharge air setpoint and actual temperature
- p. Supply air fan setpoint and actual static pressure
- q. Facility setpoint and actual relative pressure
- r. Exhaust air actual dry-bulb temperature
- s. Exhaust air actual relative humidity
- t. Energy recovery wheel's EA discharge air actual dry-bulb temperature
- u. Energy recovery wheel's EA discharge air actual relative humidity
- v. Exhaust air fan actual speed
- w. Exhaust air isolation damper command and status

3.5.8.6 Endurance Testing Sample Size

Endurance Testing sample sizes were as follows:

- a. 100-Percent of the following systems:
 - (1) primary systems including, but not limited to, chilled water and HVAC heating hot water systems
 - (2) air handling unit systems including all associated fans except for remote exhaust air fans

- (3) DOAS's including all associated fans except for remote exhaust air fans

- b. 20-Percent of each set of systems with a shared identical control sequence for systems such as:

- (1) air terminal units
- (2) exhaust air fans
- (3) terminal equipment such as fan coil units and unit heaters

3.5.8.6.1 Selection of Systems to Test

For sample sets less than 100-percent, the Government will choose which systems will be tested. The Government may require additional testing if previous testing results are inconsistent or demonstrate improper system control as follows:

- a. An additional 25-percent after five-percent failure rate of first sample set.
- b. 100-percent after any failures occurring in additional sample set.

3.5.9 Performance Verification Test Report

Submit a PVT Report after receiving Government's written approval of PVT field work that is intended to document test results and final control system sequences and settings prior to turnover. The PVT Report must contain the following:

- a. Executive summary that briefly discusses results of each system's endurance testing and PVT testing and conclusions for each system.
- b. Endurance testing for each system.
- c. Completed PVT Plan for each system used during testing that includes hand written field notes and participant signatures.
- d. Blank PVT Plan for each system approved prior to testing that is edited to reflect changes occurring during testing. Edits must be typed and must reflect changes to control sequences from contract documents, must reflect changes to numbered test methods required to initiate a response, and must reflect changes to expected response. Only one blank PVT Plan is required for each set of systems sharing an identical control sequence, such as air terminal units, exhaust air fans, fan coil units and unit heaters.
- e. Written certification that the installation and testing of all systems are complete and meet all contract document requirements.

3.5.10 Bus Waveform Report

Provide printed wave form of the MS/TP bus(es). Use an oscilloscope to test and record the wave form of each bus. This wave form is useful in identifying and troubleshooting bus problems such as inappropriate taps, grounds, end of line terminations and poor connections. Identify each graphic with bus name, location, date and time, and instrument used.

Include the resistor sizes needed at each Bus End of Line (EOL). Include a list of the EOL devices.

3.5.11 Performance Verification Testing Acceptance Testing Season One

After acceptance of the PVT Report, demonstrate proper and stable operation of the DDC System. During the field acceptance testing, verify, in the presence of the COTR and BAS owner, random selections of sequences reported in the PVT Report. Equipment, controllers, devices, and sequences for field acceptance testing are to be selected by the COTR. As-built control drawings must be for use and verification at acceptance testing. Field acceptance testing includes verification of the PVT for the following equipment groups:

Group 1: All pumps, chillers, boilers, return fans, computer room units, and air handling units (rooftop and central stations).

Group 2: 25 percent of terminals such as VAV and fan coil units.

Group 3: 25 percent of supply fans, and exhaust fans.

If any of the acceptance testing is found to not operate correctly, terminate verification for the given group. Make the necessary corrections and prepare a revised PVT Report. Reschedule acceptance testing of the revised report with the COTR. After the PVT has been accepted, submit the revised controller files and BACnet Building Controller database.

3.5.12 Performance Verification Testing Acceptance Testing Season Two

A minimum of 3 months after initial acceptance of the DDC system and in the opposite season of heating and cooling, demonstrate proper and stable operation of the DDC system. During the field acceptance testing, verify, in the presence of the COTR and BAS owner, random selections of sequences reported in the PCT Report. Equipment, controllers, devices, and sequences for field acceptance testing are to be selected by the COTR. Field acceptance testing includes verification of the PVT for the following equipment groups:

Group 1: All pumps, chillers, boilers, return fans, computer room units, and air handling units (rooftop and central stations).

Group 2: 25 percent of terminals such as VAV and fan coil units.

Group 3: 25 percent of supply fans, and exhaust fans.

If any of the acceptance testing is found to not operate correctly, terminate verification for the given group. Make the necessary corrections and prepare a revised PVT Report. Reschedule acceptance testing of the revised report with the COTR. After the PVT has been accepted, submit the revised controller files and BACnet Building Controller database.

3.6 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE (O&M) INSTRUCTIONS

Provide HVAC control System Operation and Maintenance Instructions which include:

- a. "Data Package 3" as indicated in Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA for each piece of control equipment.

- b. "Data Package 4" as described in Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA for all air compressors.
- c. HVAC control system sequences of operation formatted as indicated.
- d. Procedures for the HVAC system start-up, operation and shut-down including the manufacturer's supplied procedures for each piece of equipment, and procedures for the overall HVAC system.
- e. As-built HVAC control system detail drawings formatted as indicated.
- f. Routine maintenance checklist. Provide the routine maintenance checklist arranged in a columnar format, where the first column lists all installed devices, the second column states the maintenance activity or that no maintenance required, the third column states the frequency of the maintenance activity, and the fourth column is used for additional comments or reference.
- g. Qualified service organization list, including at a minimum company name, contact name and phone number.
- h. Start-Up Testing Report.
- i. Performance Verification Test (PVT) Procedures and Report.

Submit 2 copies of the Operation and Maintenance Instructions, indexed and in booklet form. The Operation and Maintenance Instructions may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

3.7 MAINTENANCE AND SERVICE

Provide services, materials and equipment as necessary to maintain the entire system in an operational state as indicated for a period of one year after successful completion and acceptance of the Performance Verification Test. Minimize impacts on facility operations.

- a. The integration of the system specified in this section into an Energy Monitoring and Control System must not, of itself, void the warranty or otherwise alter the requirement for the one year maintenance and service period. Integration into a EMCS includes but is not limited to establishing communication between devices in the control system and the front end or devices in another system.
- b. The changing of configuration properties must not, of itself, void the warranty or otherwise alter the requirement for the one year maintenance and service period.

3.7.1 Description of Work

Provide adjustment and repair of the system including the manufacturer's required sensor and actuator (including transducer) calibration, span and range adjustment.

3.7.2 Personnel

Use only service personnel qualified to accomplish work promptly and satisfactorily. Advise the Government in writing of the name of the designated service representative, and of any changes in personnel.

3.7.3 Scheduled Inspections

Perform two inspections at six-month intervals and provide work required. Perform inspections in June and December. During each inspection perform the indicated tasks:

- a. Perform visual checks and operational tests of equipment.
- b. Clean control system equipment including interior and exterior surfaces.
- c. Check and calibrate each field device. Check and calibrate 50 percent of the total analog inputs and outputs during the first inspection. Check and calibrate the remaining 50 percent of the analog inputs and outputs during the second major inspection. Certify analog test instrumentation accuracy to be twice the specified accuracy of the device being calibrated. Randomly check at least 25 percent of all binary inputs and outputs for proper operation during the first inspection. Randomly check at least 25 percent of the remaining binary inputs and outputs during the second inspection. If more than 20 percent of checked inputs or outputs failed the calibration check during any inspection, check and recalibrate all inputs and outputs during that inspection.
- d. Run system software diagnostics and correct diagnosed problems.
- e. Resolve any previous outstanding problems.

3.7.4 Scheduled Work

This work must be performed during regular working hours, Monday through Friday, excluding Federal holidays.

3.7.5 Emergency Service

The Government will initiate service calls when the system is not functioning properly. Qualified personnel must be available to provide service to the system. A telephone number where the service supervisor can be reached at all times must be provided. Service personnel must be at the site within 24 hours after receiving a request for service. The control system must be restored to proper operating condition as required per Section 01 78 00 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS.

3.7.6 Operation

After performing scheduled adjustments and repairs, verify control system operation as demonstrated by the applicable tests of the performance verification test.

3.7.7 Records and Logs

Keep dated records and logs of each task, with cumulative records for each major component, and for the complete system chronologically. Maintain a continuous log for all devices, including initial analog span and zero calibration values and digital points. Keep complete logs and provide logs for inspection onsite, demonstrating that planned and systematic adjustments and repairs have been accomplished for the control system.

3.7.8 Work Requests

Record each service call request as received and include its location, date and time the call was received, nature of trouble, names of the service personnel assigned to the task, instructions describing what has to be done, the amount and nature of the materials to be used, the time and date work started, and the time and date of completion. Submit a record of the work performed within 5 days after work is accomplished.

3.7.9 System Modifications

Submit recommendations for system modification in writing. Do not make system modifications, including operating parameters and control settings, without prior approval of the Government.

3.8 TRAINING

Conduct a training course for 2 operating staff members designated by the Government in the maintenance and operation of the system, including specified hardware and software. Conduct 32 hours of training at the project site within 30 days after successful completion of the performance verification test. The Government reserves the right to make audio and visual recordings (using Government supplied equipment) of the training sessions for later use. Provide audiovisual equipment and other training materials and supplies required to conduct training. A training day is defined as 8 hours of classroom instruction, including two 15 minute breaks and excluding lunchtime, Monday through Friday, during the daytime shift in effect at the training facility. **As-built control drawings must be used for training.**

3.8.1 Training Documentation

Prepare training documentation consisting of:

- a. Course Attendee List: Develop the list of course attendees in coordination with and signed by the HVAC shop supervisor.
- b. Training Manuals: Provide training manuals which include an agenda, defined objectives for each lesson, and a detailed description of the subject matter for each lesson. When presenting portions of the course material by audiovisuals, deliver copies of those audiovisuals as a part of the printed training manuals.

3.8.2 Training Course Content

For guidance in planning the required instruction, assume that attendees will have a high school education, and are familiar with HVAC systems. During the training course, cover all of the material contained in the Operating and Maintenance Instructions, the layout and location of each controller enclosure, the layout of one of each type of equipment and the locations of each, the location of each control device external to the panels, the location of the compressed air station, preventive maintenance, troubleshooting, diagnostics, calibration, adjustment, commissioning, tuning, and repair procedures. Typical systems and similar systems may be treated as a group, with instruction on the physical layout of one such system. Present the results of the performance verification test and the Start-Up Testing Report as benchmarks of HVAC control system performance by which to measure operation and maintenance effectiveness.

3.8.3 Training Documentation Submittal Requirements

Submit hardcopy training manuals and all training materials on CD-ROM. Provide one hardcopy manual for each trainee on the Course Attendee List and 2 additional copies for archive at the project site. Provide 2 copies of the Course Attendee List with the archival copies. Training Documentation may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

APPENDIX A

<u>QC CHECKLIST FOR NIAGARA FRAMEWORK BASED BACNET SYSTEMS</u>		
This checklist is not all-inclusive of the requirements of this specification and should not be interpreted as such. Instructions: Initial each item in the space provided (____) verifying that the requirement has been met.		
This checklist is for (circle one:) Pre-Construction QC Checklist Submittal Post-Construction QC Checklist Submittal Close-out QC Checklist Submittal		
Items verified for Pre-Construction, Post-Construction and Closeout QC Checklist Submittals:		
1	All DDC Hardware is numbered on Control System Schematic Drawings.	____
2	Signal lines on Control System Schematic are labeled with the signal type.	____
3	Local Display Panel (LDP) Locations are shown on Control System Schematic drawings.	____
Items verified for Post-Construction and Closeout QC Checklist Submittals:		
4	All sequences are performed as specified using DDC Hardware.	____
5	Training schedule and course attendee list has been developed and coordinated with shops and submitted.	____
Items verified for Closeout QC Checklist Submittal:		
6	Final As-built Drawings, including all Points Schedule drawings, accurately represent the final installed system.	____
7	Programming software has been submitted for all programmable controllers.	____
8	All software has been licensed to the Government.	____
9	O&M Instructions have been completed and submitted.	____
10	Training course has been completed.	____

<u>QC CHECKLIST FOR NIAGARA FRAMEWORK BASED BACNET SYSTEMS</u>		
11	All DDC Hardware is installed on a BACnet ASHRAE 135 network using either MS/TP in accordance with Clause 9 or IP in accordance with Annex J.	____
12	All DDC Hardware is BTL listed.	____
13	Communication between DDC Hardware is only via BACnet using standard services, except as specifically permitted by the specification. Non-standard services have been fully documented in the DDC Hardware Schedule.	____
14	Scheduling, Alarming, and Trending have been implemented using Niagara Framework objects and services, and BACnet Intrinsic Alarming as indicated.	____
15	All Properties indicated as required to be Writable are Writable and Overrides have been provided as indicated	____
	(QC Representative Signature)	(Date)

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 23 09 13

INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC

11/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

This section provides for the instrumentation control system components excluding direct digital controllers, network controllers, gateways etc. that are necessary for a completely functional automatic control system. When combined with a Direct Digital Control (DDC) system, the Instrumentation and Control Devices covered under this section must be a complete system suitable for the control of the heating, ventilating and air conditioning (HVAC) and other building-level systems as specified and indicated.

- a. Install hardware to perform the control sequences as specified and indicated and to provide control of the equipment as specified and indicated.
- b. Install hardware such that individual control equipment can be replaced by similar control equipment from other equipment manufacturers with no loss of system functionality.
- c. Install and configure hardware such that the Government or their agents are able to perform repair, replacement, and upgrades of individual hardware without further interaction with the installing Contractor.

1.1.1 Verification of Dimensions

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing any work.

1.1.2 Drawings

The Government will not indicate all offsets, fittings, and accessories that may be required on the drawings. Carefully investigate the mechanical, electrical, and finish conditions that could affect the work to be performed, arrange such work accordingly, and provide all work necessary to meet such conditions.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

Related work specified elsewhere.

Section 01 30 00 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

Section 23 00 00 AIR SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION, AND EXHAUST SYSTEMS

Section 23 05 15 COMMON PIPING FOR HVAC

Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC

Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

1.3 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR MOVEMENT AND CONTROL ASSOCIATION INTERNATIONAL, INC. (AMCA)

AMCA 500-D (2018) Laboratory Methods of Testing
Dampers for Rating

AMCA 511 (2010) Certified Ratings Program for Air
Control Devices

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME B16.15 (2013) Cast Copper Alloy Threaded Fittings
Classes 125 and 250

ASME B16.34 (2017) Valves - Flanged, Threaded and
Welding End

ASME B40.100 (2013) Pressure Gauges and Gauge
Attachments

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A536 (1984; R 2014) Standard Specification for
Ductile Iron Castings

FLUID CONTROLS INSTITUTE (FCI)

FCI 70-2 (2013) Control Valve Seat Leakage

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 142 (2007; Errata 2014) Recommended Practice
for Grounding of Industrial and Commercial
Power Systems - IEEE Green Book

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2;
TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6;
TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10;
TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA
17-14; TIA 17-15; TIA 17-16; TIA 17-17)
National Electrical Code

NFPA 90A (2018) Standard for the Installation of
Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 5085-3 (2006; Reprint Nov 20121) Low Voltage
Transformers - Part 3: Class 2 and Class 3
Transformers

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Submittal requirements are specified in Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.

1.5 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Store and protect products from the weather, humidity, and temperature variations, dirt and dust, and other contaminants, within the storage condition limits published by the equipment manufacturer.

1.6 INPUT MEASUREMENT ACCURACY

Select, install and configure sensors, transmitters and DDC Hardware such that the maximum error of the measured value at the input of the DDC hardware is less than the maximum allowable error specified for the sensor or instrumentation.

1.7 SUBCONTRACTOR SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS

Perform all work in this section in accordance with the paragraph entitled CONTRACTOR SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS in Section 01 30 00 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT

2.1.1 General Requirements

All products used to meet this specification must meet the indicated requirements, but not all products specified here will be required by every project. All products must meet the requirements both Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC and this Section.

2.1.2 Operation Environment Requirements

Unless otherwise specified, provide products rated for continuous operation under the following conditions:

2.1.2.1 Pressure

Pressure conditions normally encountered in the installed location.

2.1.2.2 Vibration

Vibration conditions normally encountered in the installed location.

2.1.2.3 Temperature

- a. Products installed indoors: Ambient temperatures in the range of 32 to 112 degrees F and temperature conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.
- b. Products installed outdoors or in unconditioned indoor spaces: Ambient temperatures in the range of -35 to +151 degrees F and temperature conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.

2.1.2.4 Humidity

10 to 95 percent relative humidity, noncondensing and also humidity conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.

2.2 WEATHERSHIELDS

Provide weathershields constructed of galvanized steel painted white, unpainted aluminum, aluminum painted white, or white PVC.

2.3 WIRE AND CABLE

Provide wire and cable meeting the requirements of NFPA 70 and NFPA 90A in addition to the requirements of this specification and referenced specifications.

2.3.1 Terminal Blocks

For terminal blocks which are not integral to other equipment, provide terminal blocks which are insulated, modular, feed-through, clamp style with recessed captive screw-type clamping mechanism, suitable for DIN rail mounting, and which have enclosed sides or end plates and partition plates for separation.

2.3.2 Control Wiring for Binary Signals

For Control Wiring for Binary Signals, provide 18 AWG copper or thicker wire rated for 300-volt service.

2.3.3 Control Wiring for Analog Signals

For Control Wiring for Analog Signals, provide 18 AWG or thicker, copper, single- or multiple-twisted wire meeting the following requirements:

- a. minimum 2 inch lay of twist
- b. 100 percent shielded pairs
- c. at least 300-volt insulation
- d. each pair has a 20 AWG tinned-copper drain wire and individual overall pair insulation
- e. cables have an overall aluminum-polyester or tinned-copper cable-shield tape, overall 20 AWG tinned-copper cable drain wire, and overall cable insulation.

2.3.4 Power Wiring for Control Devices

For 24-volt circuits, provide insulated copper 18 AWG or thicker wire rated for 300 VAC service. For 120-volt circuits, provide 14 AWG or thicker stranded copper wire rated for 600-volt service.

2.3.5 Transformers

Provide UL 5085-3 approved transformers. Select transformers sized so that the connected load is no greater than 80 percent of the transformer rated

capacity.

2.4 AUTOMATIC CONTROL VALVES

Provide valves with stainless-steel stems and stuffing boxes with extended necks to clear the piping insulation. Provide valves with bodies meeting ASME B16.34 or ASME B16.15 pressure and temperature class ratings based on the design operating temperature and 150 percent of the system design operating pressure. Unless otherwise specified or indicated, provide valves meeting FCI 70-2 Class III leakage rating. Provide valves rated for modulating or two-position service as indicated, which close against a differential pressure indicated as the Close-Off pressure and which are Normally-Open, Normally-Closed, or Fail-In-Last-Position as indicated.

2.4.1 Valve Type

2.4.1.1 Liquid Service 150 Degrees F or Less

Use either globe valves or ball valves except that butterfly valves may be used for sizes 4 inch and larger.

2.4.1.2 Liquid Service Above 150 Degrees F

- a. Two-position valves: Use either globe valves or ball valves except that butterfly valves may be used for sizes 4 inch and larger.
- b. Modulating valves: Use globe valves except that butterfly valves may be used for sizes 4 inch and larger.

2.4.2 Valve Flow Coefficient and Flow Characteristic

2.4.2.1 Two-Way Modulating Valves

Provide the valve coefficient (Cv) indicated. Provide equal-percentage flow characteristic for liquid service except for butterfly valves. Provide linear flow characteristic for steam service except for butterfly valves.

2.4.2.2 Three-Way Modulating Valves

Provide the valve coefficient (Cv) indicated. Provide linear flow characteristic with constant total flow throughout full plug travel.

2.4.3 Two-Position Valves

Use full line size full port valves with maximum available (Cv).

2.4.4 Globe Valves

2.4.4.1 Liquid Service Not Exceeding 150 Degrees F

- a. Valve body and body connections:
 - (1) valves 1-1/2 inches and smaller: brass or bronze body, with threaded or union ends
 - (2) valves from 2 inches to 3 inches inclusive: brass, bronze, or iron bodies. 2 inch valves with threaded connections; 2-1/2 to 3

inches valves withh flanged connections

- b. Internal valve trim: Brass or bronze.
- c. Stems: Stainless steel.

2.4.4.2 Liquid Service Not Exceeding 250 Degrees F

- a. Valve body and body connections:

- (1) valves 1-1/2 inches and smaller: brass or bronze body, with threaded or union ends

- (2) valves from 2 inches to 3 inches inclusive: brass, bronze, or iron bodies. 2 inch valves with threaded connections; 2-1/2 to 3 inches valves withh flanged connections

- b. Internal trim: Type 316 stainless steel including seats, seat rings, modulation plugs, valve stems, and springs.
- c. Provide valves with non-metallic parts suitable for a minimum continuous operating temperature of 250 degrees F or 50 degrees F above the system design temperature, whichever is higher.

2.4.5 Ball Valves

2.4.5.1 Liquid Service Not Exceeding 150 Degrees F

- a. Valve body and connections:

- (1) valves 1-1/2 inches and smaller: bodies of brass or bronze, with threaded or union ends

- (2) valves from 2 inches to 3 inches inclusive: bodies of brass, bronze, or iron. 2 inch valves with threaded connections; valves from 2-1/2 to 3 inches with flanged connections.

- b. Ball: Stainless steel or nickel-plated brass or chrome-plated brass.
- c. Seals: Reinforced Teflon seals and EPDM O-rings.
- d. Stem: Stainless steel, blow-out proof.

2.4.6 Butterfly Valves

Provide butterfly valves which are threaded lug type suitable for dead-end service and modulation to the fully-closed position, with carbon-steel bodies or with ductile iron bodies in accordance with ASTM A536. Provide butterfly valves with non-corrosive discs, stainless steel shafts supported by bearings, and EPDM seats suitable for temperatures from -20 to +250 degrees F. Provide valves with rated Cv of the Cv at 70 percent (60 degrees) open position. Provide valves meeting FCI 70-2 Class VI leakage rating.

2.4.7 Pressure Independent Control Valves (PICV)

Provide pressure independent control valves which include a regulator valve which maintains the differential pressure across a flow control valve. Pressure independent control valves must accurately control the flow from

0-100 percent full rated flow regardless of changes in the piping pressure and not vary the flow more than plus or minus 5 percent at any given flow control valve position when the PICV differential pressure lies between the manufacturer's stated minimum and maximum. The rated minimum differential pressure for steady flow must not exceed 5 psid across the PICV. Provide either globe or ball type valves meeting the indicated requirements for globe and ball valves. Provide valves with a flow tag listing full rated flow and minimum required pressure drop. Provide valves with factory installed Pressure/Temperature ports ("Pete's Plugs") to measure the pressure drop to determine the valve flow rate.

2.4.8 Duct-Coil and Terminal-Unit-Coil Valves

For duct or terminal-unit coils provide control valves with either screw type or solder-type ends. Provide flare nuts for each flare-type end valve.

2.5 DAMPERS

2.5.1 Damper Assembly

Provide single damper sections with blades no longer than 48 inches and which are no higher than 72 inches and damper blade width of 8 inches or less. When larger sizes are required, combine damper sections. Provide dampers made of steel, or other materials where indicated and with assembly frames constructed of 0.08 inch minimum thickness aluminum channels with mitered and welded corners.

- a. Flat blades must be made rigid by folding the edges. Blade-operating linkages must be within the frame so that blade-connecting devices within the same damper section must not be located directly in the air stream.
- b. Damper axles must be 1/2 inch minimum, plated steel rods supported in the damper frame by stainless steel or bronze bearings. Blades mounted vertically must be supported by thrust bearings.
- c. Provide dampers which do not exceed a pressure drop through the damper of 0.04 inches water gauge at 1000 ft/min in the wide-open position. Provide dampers with frames not less than 2 inch in width. Provide dampers which have been tested in accordance with AMCA 500-D.

2.5.2 Operating Linkages

For operating links external to dampers, such as crank arms, connecting rods, and line shafting for transmitting motion from damper actuators to dampers, provide links able to withstand a load equal to at least 300 percent of the maximum required damper-operating force without deforming. Rod lengths must be adjustable. Links must be brass, bronze, zinc-coated steel, or stainless steel. Working parts of joints and clevises must be brass, bronze, or stainless steel. Adjustments of crank arms must control the open and closed positions of dampers.

2.5.3 Damper Types

2.5.3.1 Flow Control Dampers

Provide opposed blade type dampers for outside air, return air, and exhaust dampers. Blades must have interlocking edges. The channel frames of the dampers must be provided with jamb seals to minimize air leakage. Unless

otherwise indicated, dampers must meet **AMCA 511** Class 1A requirements. Outside air damper seals must be suitable for an operating temperature range of **-40 to +167 degrees F**. Dampers must be rated at not less than **2000 ft/min** air velocity.

2.6 SENSORS AND INSTRUMENTATION

Unless otherwise specified, provide sensors and instrumentation which incorporate an integral transmitter. Sensors and instrumentation, including their transmitters, must meet the specified accuracy and drift requirements at the input of the connected DDC Hardware's analog-to-digital conversion.

2.6.1 Analog and Binary Transmitters

Provide transmitters which match the characteristics of the sensor. Transmitters providing analog values must produce a linear 4-20 mAdc, 0-10 Vdc signal corresponding to the required operating range and must have zero and span adjustment. Transmitters providing binary values must have dry contacts rated at 1A at 24 Volts AC.

2.6.2 Network Transmitters

Sensors and Instrumentation incorporating an integral network connection are considered DDC Hardware and must meet the DDC Hardware requirements of **23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS**.

2.6.3 Temperature Sensors

Provide the same sensor type throughout the project. Temperature sensors may be provided without transmitters. Where transmitters are used, the range must be the smallest available from the manufacturer and suitable for the application such that the range encompasses the expected range of temperatures to be measured. The end to end accuracy includes the combined effect of sensitivity, hysteresis, linearity and repeatability between the measured variable and the end user interface (graphic presentation) including transmitters if used.

2.6.3.1 Sensor Accuracy and Stability of Control

2.6.3.1.1 Conditioned Space Temperature

Plus or minus **0.5 degree F** over the operating range.

2.6.3.1.2 Unconditioned Space Temperature

- a. Plus or minus **1 degree F** over the range of **30 to 131 degrees F** AND
- b. Plus or minus **4 degrees F** over the rest of the operating range.

2.6.3.1.3 Duct Temperature

Plus or minus **0.5 degree F**

2.6.3.1.4 Outside Air Temperature

- a. Plus or minus **2 degrees F** over the range of **-30 to +130 degrees F** AND

- b. Plus or minus 1 degree F over the range of 30 to 130 degrees F.

2.6.3.1.5 Chilled Water

Plus or minus 0.8 degrees F over the range of 35 to 65 degrees F.

2.6.3.1.6 Domestic and Heating Hot Water

Plus or minus 2 degrees F.

2.6.3.2 Transmitter Drift

The maximum allowable transmitter drift: 0.25 degrees F per year.

2.6.3.3 Point Temperature Sensors

Point Sensors must be encapsulated in epoxy, series 300 stainless steel, anodized aluminum, or copper.

2.6.3.4 Temperature Sensor Details

2.6.3.4.1 Room Type

Provide the sensing element components within a decorative protective cover suitable for surrounding decor.

2.6.3.4.2 Duct Probe Type

Ensure the probe is long enough to properly sense the air stream temperature.

2.6.3.4.3 Duct Averaging Type

Continuous averaging sensors must be one foot in length for each 1 square foot of duct cross-sectional area, and a minimum length of 5 feet.

2.6.3.4.4 Pipe Immersion Type

Provide minimum 3 inch immersion. Provide each sensor with a corresponding pipe-mounted sensor well, unless indicated otherwise. Sensor wells must be stainless steel when used in steel piping, and brass when used in copper piping.

2.6.3.4.5 Outside Air Type

Provide the sensing element rated for outdoor use

2.6.4 Relative Humidity Sensor

Relative humidity sensors must use bulk polymer resistive or thin film capacitive type non-saturating sensing elements capable of withstanding a saturated condition without permanently affecting calibration or sustaining damage. The sensors must include removable protective membrane filters. Where required for exterior installation, sensors must be capable of surviving below freezing temperatures and direct contact with moisture without affecting sensor calibration. When used indoors, the sensor must be capable of being exposed to a condensing air stream (100 percent relative humidity) with no adverse effect to the sensor's calibration or other harm to the instrument. The sensor must be of the wall-mounted or

duct-mounted type, as required by the application, and must be provided with any required accessories. Sensors used in duct high-limit applications must have a bulk polymer resistive sensing element. Duct-mounted sensors must be provided with a duct probe designed to protect the sensing element from dust accumulation and mechanical damage. Relative humidity (RH) sensors must measure relative humidity over a range of 0 percent to 100 percent with an accuracy of plus or minus 3 percent. RH sensors must function over a temperature range of 40 to 135 degrees F and must not drift more than 1 percent per year.

2.6.5 Carbon Dioxide (CO2) Sensors

Provide photometric type CO2 sensors with integral transducers and linear output. Carbon dioxide (CO2) sensors must measure CO2 concentrations between 0 to 2000 parts per million (ppm) using non-dispersive infrared (NDIR) technology with an accuracy of plus or minus 50 ppm and a maximum response time of 1 minute. The sensor must be rated for operation at ambient air temperatures within the range of 32 to 122 degrees F and relative humidity within the range of 20 to 95 percent (non-condensing). The sensor must have a maximum drift of 2 percent per year. The sensor chamber must be manufactured with a non-corrosive material that does not affect carbon dioxide sample concentration. Duct mounted sensors must be provided with a duct probe designed to protect the sensing element from dust accumulation and mechanical damage. The sensor must have a calibration interval no less than 5 years.

2.6.6 Differential Pressure Instrumentation

2.6.6.1 Differential Pressure Sensors

Provide Differential Pressure Sensors with ranges as indicated or as required for the application. Pressure sensor ranges must not exceed the high end range indicated on the Points Schedule by more than 50 percent. The over pressure rating must be a minimum of 150 percent of the highest design pressure of either input to the sensor. The accuracy must be plus or minus 1 percent of full scale. The sensor must have a maximum drift of 2 percent per year

2.6.6.2 Differential Pressure Switch

Provide differential pressure switches with a user-adjustable setpoint which are sized for the application such that the setpoint is between 25 percent and 75 percent of the full range. The over pressure rating must be a minimum of 150 percent of the highest design pressure of either input to the sensor. The switch must have two sets of contacts and each contact must have a rating greater than it's connected load. Contacts must open or close upon rise of pressure above the setpoint or drop of pressure below the setpoint as indicated.

2.6.7 Flow Sensors

2.6.7.1 Airflow Measurement Array (AFMA)

2.6.7.1.1 Airflow Straightener

Provide AFMAs which contain an airflow straightener if required by the AFMA manufacturer's published installation instructions. The straightener must be contained inside a flanged sheet metal casing, with the AFMA located as specified according to the published recommendation of the AFMA

manufacturer. In the absence of published documentation, provide airflow straighteners if there is any duct obstruction within 5 duct diameters upstream of the AFMA. Air-flow straighteners, where required, must be constructed of 0.125 inch aluminum honeycomb and the depth of the straightener must not be less than 1.5 inches.

2.6.7.1.2 Resistance to Airflow

The resistance to air flow through the AFMA, including the airflow straightener must not exceed 0.085 inch water gauge at an airflow of 2,000 fpm. AFMA construction must be suitable for operation at airflows of up to 5000 fpm over a temperature range of 40 to 120 degrees F.

2.6.7.1.3 Outside Air Temperature

In outside air measurement or in low-temperature air delivery applications, provide an AFMA certified by the manufacturer to be accurate as specified over a temperature range of -20 to +120 degrees F.

2.6.7.1.4 Electronic AFMA

Each electronic AFMA must consist of an array of velocity sensing elements of the resistance temperature detector (RTD) or thermistor type. The sensing elements must be distributed across the duct cross section in the quantity and pattern specified or recommended by the published application data of the AFMA manufacturer. Electronic AFMAs must have an accuracy of plus or minus 5 percent over a range of 125 to 5,000 fpm and the output must be temperature compensated over a range of 32 to 212 degrees F.

2.6.7.1.5 Fan Inlet Measurement Devices

Fan inlet measurement devices cannot be used unless indicated on the drawings or schedules.

2.6.7.2 Flow Switch

Flow switch must have a repetitive accuracy of plus or minus 10 percent of actual flow setting. Switch actuation must be adjustable over the operating flow range, and must be sized for the application such that the setpoint is between 25 percent and 75 percent of the full range.. The switch must have Form C snap-action contacts, rated for the application. The flow switch must have non flexible paddle with magnetically actuated contacts and be rated for service at a pressure greater than the installed conditions. Flow switch for use in sewage system must be rated for use in corrosive environments encountered.

2.6.8 Electrical Instruments

Provide Electrical Instruments with an input range as indicated or sized for the application. Unless otherwise specified, AC instrumentation must be suitable for 60 Hz operation.

2.6.8.1 Current Transducers

Current transducers must accept an AC current input and must have an accuracy of plus or minus 2 percent of full scale. The device must have a means for calibration. Current transducers for variable frequency applications must be rated for variable frequency operation.

2.6.8.2 Current Sensing Relays (CSRs)

Current sensing relays (CSRs) must provide a normally-open contact with a voltage and amperage rating greater than its connected load. Current sensing relays must be of split-core design. The CSR must be rated for operation at 200 percent of the connected load. Voltage isolation must be a minimum of 600 volts. The CSR must auto-calibrate to the connected load or be adjustable and field calibrated. Current sensors for variable frequency applications must be rated for variable frequency operation.

2.6.8.3 Voltage Transducers

Voltage transducers must accept an AC voltage input and have an accuracy of plus or minus 0.25 percent of full scale. The device must have a means for calibration. Line side fuses for transducer protection must be provided.

2.6.9 Temperature Switch

2.6.9.1 Pipe Mount Temperature Limit Switch (Aquastat)

Pipe mount temperature limit switches (aquastats) must have a field adjustable setpoint between 60 and 90 degrees F, an accuracy of plus or minus 3.6 degrees F and a 10 degrees F fixed deadband. The switch must have two sets of contacts, and each contact must have a rating greater than its connected load. Contacts must open or close upon change of temperature above or below setpoint as indicated.

2.6.10 Damper End Switches

Each end switch must be a hermetically sealed switch with a trip lever and over-travel mechanism. The switch enclosure must be suitable for mounting on the duct exterior and must permit setting the position of the trip lever that actuates the switch. The trip lever must be aligned with the damper blade.

End switches integral to an electric damper actuator are allowed as long as at least one is adjustable over the travel of the actuator.

2.7 INDICATING DEVICES

All indicating devices must display readings in English (inch-pound) units.

2.7.1 Thermometers

Provide bi-metal type thermometers at locations indicated. Thermometers must have either 9 inch long scales or 3.5 inch diameter dials, with insertion, immersion, or averaging elements. Provide matching thermowells for pipe-mounted installations. Select scale ranges suitable for the intended service, with the normal operating temperature near the scale's midpoint. The thermometer's accuracy must be plus or minus 2 percent of the scale range.

2.7.1.1 Piping System Thermometers

Piping system thermometers must have brass, malleable iron or aluminum alloy case and frame, clear protective face, permanently stabilized glass tube with indicating-fluid column, white face, black numbers, and a 9 inch scale. Piping system thermometers must have an accuracy of plus or minus 1 percent of scale range. Thermometers for piping systems must have rigid

stems with straight, angular, or inclined pattern. Thermometer stems must have expansion heads as required to prevent breakage at extreme temperatures. On rigid-stem thermometers, the space between bulb and stem must be filled with a heat-transfer medium.

2.7.2 Pressure Gauges

Provide pipe-mounted pressure gauges at the locations indicated. Gauges must conform to ASME B40.100 and have a 4 inch diameter dial and shutoff cock. Select scale ranges suitable for the intended service, with the normal operating pressure near the scale's midpoint. The gauge's accuracy must be plus or minus 2 percent of the scale range.

Gauges must be suitable for field or panel mounting as required, must have black legend on white background, and must have a pointer traveling through a 270-degree arc. Gauge range must be suitable for the application with an upper end of the range not to exceed 150 percent of the design upper limit. Accuracy must be plus or minus 3 percent of scale range. Gauges must meet requirements of ASME B40.100.

2.7.3 Low Differential Pressure Gauges

Gauges for low differential pressure measurements must be a minimum of 3.5 inch (nominal) size with two sets of pressure taps, and must have a diaphragm-actuated pointer, white dial with black figures, and pointer zero adjustment. Gauge range must be suitable for the application with an upper end of the range not to exceed 150 percent of the design upper limit. Accuracy must be plus or minus two percent of scale range.

2.8 OUTPUT DEVICES

2.8.1 Actuators

Actuators must be electric (electronic) . All actuators must be normally open (NO), normally closed (NC) or fail-in-last-position (FILP) as indicated. Normally open and normally closed actuators must be of mechanical spring return type. Electric actuators must have an electronic cut off or other means to provide burnout protection if stalled. Actuators must have a visible position indicator. Electric actuators must provide position feedback to the controller as indicated. Actuators must smoothly and fully open or close the devices to which they are applied. Electric actuators must have a full stroke response time in both directions of 90 seconds or less at rated load. Electric actuators must be of the foot-mounted type with an oil-immersed gear train or the direct-coupled type. Where multiple electric actuators operate from a common signal, the actuators must provide an output signal identical to its input signal to the additional devices. All actuators must be rated for their operating environment. Actuators used outdoors must be designed and rated for outdoor use. Actuators under continuous exposure to water, such as those used in sumps, must be submersible.

Actuators incorporating an integral network connection are considered DDC Hardware and must meet the DDC Hardware requirements of Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS.

2.8.1.1 Valve Actuators

Valve actuators must provide shutoff pressures that is 150 percent of the pump dead head pressure for 2-way valves and 200 percent of the valve

differential pressure for 3-way valves, or equivalent torque values.

2.8.1.2 Damper Actuators

Damper actuators must provide the torque necessary per damper manufacturer's instructions to modulate the dampers smoothly over its full range of operation and torque must be at least 6 inch-pounds/1 square foot of damper area for opposed blade dampers and 9 inch-pounds/1 square foot of damper area for parallel blade dampers.

2.8.1.3 Electric Actuators

Each actuator must have distinct markings indicating the full-open and full-closed position. Each actuator must deliver the torque required for continuous uniform motion and must have internal end switches to limit the travel, or be capable of withstanding continuous stalling without damage. Actuators must function properly within 85 to 110 percent of rated line voltage. Provide actuators with hardened steel running shafts and gears of steel or copper alloy. Fiber or reinforced nylon gears may be used for torques less than 16 inch-pounds.

- a. Two-position actuators must be single direction, spring return, or reversing type. Two position actuator signals may either be the control power voltage or line voltage as needed for torque or appropriate interlock circuits.
- b. Modulating actuators must be capable of stopping at any point in the cycle, and starting in either direction from any point. Actuators must be equipped with a switch for reversing direction, and a button to disengage the clutch to allow manual adjustments. Provide the actuator with a hand crank for manual adjustments, as applicable. Modulating actuator input signals can either be a 4 to 20 mA_{dc} or a 0-10 VDC signal.
- c. Floating or pulse width modulation actuators are acceptable for non-fail safe applications unless indicated otherwise provided that the floating point control (timed actuation) must have a scheduled re-calibration of span and position no more than once a day and no less than once a week. The schedule for the re-calibration should not affect occupied conditions and be staggered between equipment to prevent falsely loading or unloading central plant equipment.

2.8.2 Relays

Relays must have contacts rated for the intended application, indicator light, and dust proof enclosure. The indicator light must be lit when the coil is energized and off when coil is not energized.

Control relay contacts must have utilization category and ratings selected for the application. Each set of contacts must incorporate a normally open (NO), normally closed (NC) and common contact. Relays must be rated for a minimum life of one million operations.

2.9 USER INPUT DEVICES

User Input Devices, including potentiometers, switches and momentary contact push-buttons. Potentiometers must be of the thumb wheel or sliding bar type. Momentary Contact Push-Buttons may include an adjustable timer for their output. User input devices must be labeled for their function.

2.10 MULTIFUNCTION DEVICES

Multifunction devices are products which combine the functions of multiple sensor, user input or output devices into a single product. Unless otherwise specified, the multifunction device must meet all requirements of each component device. Where the requirements for the component devices conflict, the multifunction device must meet the most stringent of the requirements.

2.10.1 Current Sensing Relay Command Switch

The Current Sensing Relay portion must meet all requirements of the Current Sensing Relay input device. The Command Switch portion must meet all requirements of the Relay output device except that it must have at least one normally-open (NO) contact.

Current Sensing Relays used for Variable Frequency Drives must be rated for Variable Frequency applications unless installed on the source side of the drive. If used in this situation, the threshold for showing status must be set to allow for the VFD's control power when the drive is not enabled and provide indication of operation when the drive is enabled at minimum speed.

2.10.2 Space Sensor Module

Space Sensor Modules must be multifunction devices incorporating a temperature sensor and one or more of the following as specified and indicated on the Space Sensor Module Schedule:

- a. A temperature indicating device.
- b. A User Input Device which must adjust a temperature setpoint output.
- c. A User Input Momentary Contact Button and an output to the control system indicating zone occupancy.

Space Sensor Modules cannot contain mercury (Hg).

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

3.1.1 General Installation Requirements

Perform the installation under the supervision of competent technicians regularly employed in the installation of DDC systems. All material and equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for the intended purpose. Maintain a copy of the manufacture's recommendations on the Contruction Site. Use the more stringent methods when manufacturer's recommendations, and plans & specification requirements differ. Use the "Preferred" method when alternative methods are given. The word "should" will be considered to mean "shall". Bring any conflicts between manufacturer's recommendations and plans & specification requirements to the Government's attention. All equipment shall be installed level and plumb.

3.1.1.1 Device Mounting Criteria

All devices must be installed in accordance with manufacturer's

recommendations and as specified and indicated. Control devices to be installed in piping and ductwork must be provided with required gaskets, flanges, thermal compounds, insulation, piping, fittings, and manual valves for shutoff, equalization, purging, and calibration. Strap-on temperature sensing elements must not be used except as specified. Spare thermowells must be installed adjacent to each thermowell containing a sensor and as indicated. Devices located outdoors must have a weathershield.

3.1.1.2 Labels and Tags

Match labels and tags to the unique identifiers indicated on the As-Built drawings. Label all enclosures and instrumentation. Tag all sensors and actuators in mechanical rooms. Tag airflow measurement arrays to show flow rate range for signal output range, duct size, and pitot tube AFMA flow coefficient. Tag duct static pressure taps at the location of the pressure tap. Provide plastic or metal tags, mechanically attached directly to each device or attached by a metal chain or wire. Labels exterior to protective enclosures must be engraved plastic and mechanically attached to the enclosure or instrumentation. Labels inside protective enclosures may be attached using adhesive, but must not be hand written.

3.1.2 Pre-Installation Meeting

Prior to starting the installation, meet with the Contracting Officer's Technical Representative (COTR) and the BAS owner (Camp Lejeune Public Works) to develop a mutual understanding relative to the details of the DDC system requirements. Requirements to be discussed include required submittals, work schedule, and field quality control.

3.1.3 Demolition

Remove and/or demolish all existing controls, cabling, conductors, conduit, controllers, power circuits and cabinets that are no longer needed after new work is installed. Any existing systems to remain, must remain functional and operate properly after all demolition is complete.

3.1.4 Weathershield

Provide weathershields for sensors located outdoors. Install weathershields such that they prevent the sun from directly striking the sensor and prevent rain from directly striking or dripping onto the sensor. Install weather shields with adequate ventilation so that the sensing element responds to the ambient conditions of the surroundings. When installing weathershields near outside air intake ducts, install them such that normal outside air flow does not cause rainwater to strike the sensor.

3.1.5 Room Instrument Mounting

Mount room instruments, including but not limited to wall mounted non-adjustable space sensor modules and sensors located in occupied spaces, 48 inches above the floor unless otherwise indicated. Install adjustable devices to be ADA compliant unless otherwise indicated on the Room Sensor Schedule:

- a. Space Sensor Modules for Fan Coil Units may be either unit or wall mounted but not mounted on an exterior wall.
- b. Wall mount all other Space Sensor Modules.

3.1.6 Indication Devices Installed in Piping and Liquid Systems

Provide snubbers for gauges in piping systems subject to pulsation. Install thermometers and temperature sensing elements in liquid systems in thermowells. Provide spare Pressure/Temperature Ports (Pete's Plug) for all temperature and pressure sensing elements installed in liquid systems for calibration/testing.

3.1.7 Switches

3.1.7.1 Temperature Limit Switch

Provide a temperature limit switch (freezestat) to sense the temperature at the location indicated. Provide a sufficient number of temperature limit switches (freezestats) to provide complete coverage of the duct section but no less than 1 foot in length per square foot of cross sectional area. Install manual reset limit switches in approved, accessible locations where they can be reset easily. Install temperature limit switch (freezestat) sensing elements in a side-to-side (not top-to-bottom) serpentine pattern with the relay section at the highest point and in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

3.1.7.2 Hand-Off Auto Switches

Wire safety controls such as smoke detectors and freeze protection thermostats to protect the equipment during both hand and auto operation.

3.1.8 Temperature Sensors

Install temperature sensors in locations that are accessible and provide a good representation of sensed media. Installations in dead spaces are not acceptable. Calibrate and install sensors according to manufacturer's instructions. Select sensors only for intended application as designated or recommended by manufacturer.

3.1.8.1 Room Temperature Sensors

Mount the sensors on interior walls to sense the average room temperature at the locations indicated. Avoid locations near heat sources such as copy machines or locations by supply air outlet drafts. Mount the center of all user-adjustable sensors 54 inches above the floor to meet ADA requirements. Non user-adjustable sensors can be mounted as indicated in paragraph ROOM INSTRUMENT MOUNTING.

3.1.8.2 Duct Temperature Sensors

3.1.8.2.1 Probe Type

Place tip of the sensor in the middle of the airstream or in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations or instructions. Provide a gasket between the sensor housing and the duct wall. Seal the duct penetration air tight. When installed in insulated duct, provide enclosure or stand off fitting to accommodate the thickness of duct insulation to allow for maintenance or replacement of the sensor and wiring terminations. Seal the duct insulation penetration vapor tight.

3.1.8.2.2 Averaging Type

Weave the sensing element in a serpentine fashion from side to side perpendicular to the flow, across the duct or air handler cross-section, using durable non-metal supports in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions. Avoid tight radius bends or kinking of the sensing element. Prevent contact between the sensing element and the duct or air handler internals. Provide a duct access door at the sensor location. The access door must be hinged on the side, factory insulated, have cam type locks, and be as large as the duct will permit, maximum 18 by 18 inches. For sensors inside air handlers, the sensors must be fully accessible through the air handler's access doors without removing any of the air handler's internals.

3.1.8.3 Immersion Temperature Sensors

Provide thermowells for sensors measuring piping, tank, or pressure vessel temperatures. Locate wells to sense continuous flow conditions. Do not install wells using extension couplings. When installed on insulated piping, provide stand enclosure or stand off fitting to accommodate the thickness of the pipe insulation and allow for maintenance or replacement of the sensor or wiring terminations. Where piping diameters are smaller than the length of the wells, provide wells in piping at elbows to sense flow across entire area of well. Wells must not restrict flow area to less than 70 percent of pipe area. Increase piping size as required to avoid restriction. Provide the sensor well with a heat-sensitive transfer agent between the sensor and the well interior ensuring contact between the sensor and the well.

3.1.8.4 Outside Air Temperature Sensors

Provide outside air temperature sensors on the building's north side with a protective weather shade that does not inhibit free air flow across the sensing element, and protects the sensor from snow, ice, and rain. Location must not be near exhaust hoods and other areas such that it is not influenced by radiation or convection sources which may affect the reading. Provide a shield to shade the sensor from direct sunlight.

3.1.9 Air Flow Measurement Arrays (AFMA)

Locate Outside Air AFMAs downstream from the Outside Air filters.

Install AFMAs with the manufacturer's recommended minimum distances between upstream and downstream disturbances. Airflow straighteners may be used to reduce minimum distances as recommended by the AFMA manufacturer.

3.1.10 Duct Static Pressure Sensors

Locate the duct static pressure sensing tap at 75 percent of the distance between the first and last air terminal units. If the transmitter output is a 0-10Vdc signal, locate the transmitter in the same enclosure as the air handling unit (AHU) controller for the AHU serving the terminal units. If a remote duct static pressure sensor is to be used, run the signal wire back to the controller for the air handling unit.

3.1.11 Dampers

3.1.11.1 Damper Actuators

Provide spring return actuators which fail to a position that protects the served equipment and space on all control dampers related to freeze protection or force protection. For all outside, makeup and relief dampers provide dampers which fail closed. Terminal fan coil units, terminal VAV units, convectors, and unit heaters may be non-spring return unless indicated otherwise. Do not mount actuators in the air stream. Do not connect multiple actuators to a common drive shaft. Install actuators so that their action seal the damper to the extent required to maintain leakage at or below the specified rate and so that they move the blades smoothly throughout the full range of motion.

3.1.11.2 Damper Installation

Install dampers straight and true, level in all planes, and square in all dimensions. Dampers must move freely without undue stress due to twisting, racking (parallelogramming), bowing, or other installation error. External linkages must operate smoothly over the entire range of motion, without deformation or slipping of any connecting rods, joints or brackets that will prevent a return to it's normal position. Blades must close completely and leakage must not exceed that specified at the rated static pressure. Provide structural support for multi-section dampers. Acceptable methods of structural support include but are not limited to U-channel, angle iron, corner angles and bolts, bent galvanized steel stiffeners, sleeve attachments, braces, and building structure. Where multi-section dampers are installed in ducts or sleeves, they must not sag due to lack of support. Do not use jackshafts to link more than three damper sections. Do not use blade to blade linkages. Install outside and return air dampers such that their blades direct their respective air streams towards each other to provide for maximum mixing of air streams.

3.1.12 Valves

Install the valves in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

3.1.12.1 Valve Actuators

Provide spring return actuators on all control valves where freeze protection is required. Spring return actuators for terminal fan coil units, terminal VAV units, convectors, and unit heaters are not required unless indicated otherwise.

3.1.13 Thermometers and Gauges

3.1.13.1 Thermometers

Mount devices to allow reading while standing on the floor or ground, as applicable.

3.1.14 Wire and Cable

Provide complete electrical wiring for the Control System, including wiring to transformer primaries. Wire and Cable must be installed without splices between control devices and in accordance with [NFPA 70](#) and [NFPA 90A](#). Instrumentation grounding must be installed per the device manufacturer's instructions and as necessary to prevent ground loops, noise, and surges

from adversely affecting operation of the system. Test installed ground rods as specified in IEEE 142. Cables and conductor wires must be tagged at both ends, with the identifier indicated on the shop drawings. Electrical work must be as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM and as indicated. Run all control wiring in rigid or flexible conduit, metallic tubing, or covered metal raceways. Control wiring shall not run in the same conduit as power wiring over 100 volts. All control wiring located inside mechanical rooms shall be in conduit or metallic tubing.

Minimum conduit size is 3/4-inch, except 1/2-inch may be used from last junction box to the terminal device. Maximum conduit fill is 40% or the cable manufacturer's recommended amount whichever is less. Provide plastic end sleeves at all conduit terminations to protect wiring from burrs.

Input/output identification: Permanently label each field-installed wire, cable, and pneumatic tube at each end with descriptive text using a commercial wire marking system. Labels shall fully encircle the wire, cable, or tube. The single line text shall run parallel to the wire, cable, or tube and shall be repeated so as to be viewable without twirling or twisting the wire. Locate the markers within 2 inches of each termination. Label shall include type of network and destination of cable (ex. BACnet/AHU-1). Match the names and I/O number to the project's point list. Similarly label all power wiring serving control devices, including the word "power" and panel board and circuit number, or transformer location in the label. Number each pneumatic tube every six feet. Label all terminal blocks with alpha/numeric labels. All wiring and the methods shall be in accordance with UL 508A.h.

Permanently display controller wiring diagram for each controller on the inside of the control cabinet door. Diagram shall be neatly lettered and taped or adhered with sticky back label.

Conduit identification: All conduits shall be labeled at 36 inches from terminations, boxes, or bends. Labels shall be 3/8 inches black lettering on white background and indicate what system the conduit contains. Label shall be visible and legible from at least three sides with a minimum dimension of 1.9 inches x 4 inches. Conduit that includes power circuits shall be labeled with source panel and circuit, and destination cabinet or equipment.

Each terminal device shall have its own terminal conduit run. Device boxes or devices shall not be used as "pass thru" for wiring.

Conduit to equipment and devices shall be run tight to walls, and ceilings. Avoid conduit on the floor, i.e. conduit shall not block access to or past equipment. Flex conduit is to be used only when EMT or rigid conduit is not able to satisfy the application such as a transition to a sensor or equipment. Flex conduit shall be limited to a maximum length of 3 ft.

For controller power, provide new 120 VAC circuits, with ground if not defined on the electrical drawings. Provide each circuit with a dedicated breaker, and run wiring in its own conduit, separate from any control wiring. Connect the controller's ground wire to the electrical panel ground; conduit grounds are not acceptable.

Supervisory Building Controllers (SBC) shall be powered from a dedicated transformer for the SBC only. Each control cabinet shall have a dedicated

24 volt transformer. The 120 VAC power branch circuit shall be dedicated to the DDC control system. Factory provided transformers in equipment must be used as a source of power only for the control devices intended by the equipment manufacturer.

Surge Protection: Install surge protection according to manufacturer's instructions. Multiple controllers fed from a common power supply may be protected by a common surge protector, properly sized for the total connected devices. Install power surge protection such that it is replaceable without removing other components.

All terminations in panels shall be made at a terminal block. No wire nuts are allowed in panels. High and low voltage wires must not land on the same terminal block unless they are separated and of a different color and/or clearly identified.

Grounding: Ground controllers and cabinets to a good earth ground as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Conduit grounding is not acceptable; all grounding shall have a direct path to the building earth ground. Ground sensor drain wire shields at the controller end.

The Contractor shall be responsible for correcting all associated MS/TP and SA bus wiring, termination, end of line, and ground loop problems.

Run wiring in panel enclosures in covered wire track.

Control cabinets and wiring boxes must be clean of all debris.

Low voltage cable must not be supported directly from "all thread" rod. If cabling/wiring is permitted to be run without conduit/raceway it must be supported using a retaining device such as a bridle ring or J hook, and where appropriate connected to the all thread rod using a standoff device.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 23 09 23.02

BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS
02/19

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

Provide a complete Direct Digital Control (DDC) system except for the front end; which is **existing and new system integration is being performed by the Government**; suitable for the control of the heating, ventilating and air conditioning (HVAC) and other building-level systems as specified and shown and in accordance with Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.

1.1.1 System Requirements

Provide a system meeting the requirements of both Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC and this Section and with the following characteristics:

- a. Except for Gateways, the control system must be an open implementation of BACnet technology using **ASHRAE 135** and Fox as the communications protocols. The system must use standard **ASHRAE 135** Objects and Properties and the Niagara Framework. The system must use standard **ASHRAE 135** Services and the Niagara Framework exclusively for communication over the network. Gateways to packaged units must communicate with other DDC hardware using **ASHRAE 135** or the Fox protocol exclusively and may communicate with packaged equipment using other protocols. The control system must be installed such that any two **ASHRAE 135** devices on the Internetwork can communicate using standard **ASHRAE 135** Services.
- b. Install and configure control hardware to provide **ASHRAE 135** Objects and Properties or **Niagara Framework Objects** as indicated and as needed to meet the requirements of this specification.
- c. Use **Niagara Framework** hardware and software exclusively for scheduling, trending, and communication with a front end (EMCS). Use **Niagara Framework** or standard BACnet Objects and services for alarming. Use the Fox protocol for all communication between Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways; use the **ASHRAE 135** protocol for all other building communication. Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway must serve web pages as specified.
- d. Use **Niagara Framework AX supervisor (JCI FX web supervisor) or Johnson Controls Incorporated (JCI) Metasys Extended Architecture (ADX server)**.

1.1.2 Verification of Specification Requirements

Review all specifications related to the control system installation and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancies before performing any work. If Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC or any other Section referenced in this specification is not included in the project specifications advise the Contracting Officer and either obtain the missing Section or obtain Contracting Officer approval before performing any work.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 135 (2016) BACnet—A Data Communication
Protocol for Building Automation and
Control Networks

BACNET INTERNATIONAL (BTL)

BTL Guide (v.49; 2017) BACnet Testing Laboratory
Implementation Guidelines

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 802.3 (2018) Ethernet

TELECOMMUNICATIONS INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION (TIA)

TIA-485 (1998a; R 2012) Electrical Characteristics
of Generators and Receivers for Use in
Balanced Digital Multipoint Systems

TRIDIUM, INC (TRIDIUM)

Niagara Framework (2012) NiagaraAX User's Guide

Tridium Open NiCS (2005) Understanding the NiagaraAX
Compatibility Statement (NiCS)

U.S. FEDERAL COMMUNICATIONS COMMISSION (FCC)

FCC Part 15 Radio Frequency Devices (47 CFR 15)

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 916 (2007; Reprint Aug 2014) Standard for
Energy Management Equipment

1.3 DEFINITIONS

For definitions related to this section, see Section 23 09 00
INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Submittal requirements related to this Section are specified in Section
23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

All products used to meet this specification must meet the indicated
requirements, but not all products specified here will be required by every

project. All products must meet the requirements both Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC and this Section.

2.1 NETWORK HARDWARE

2.1.1 BACnet Router

All BACnet Routers must be BACnet/IP Routers and must perform layer 3 routing of ASHRAE 135 packets over an IP network in accordance with ASHRAE 135 Annex J and Clause 6. The router must provide the appropriate connection to the IP network and connections to one or more ASHRAE 135 MS/TP networks. Devices used as BACnet Routers must meet the requirements for DDC Hardware, and except for Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways, devices used as BACnet routers must support the NM-RC-B BIBB.

2.1.2 BACnet Gateways

In addition to the requirements for DDC Hardware, the BACnet Gateway must be a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway or must meet the following requirements:

- a. It must perform bi-directional protocol translation from one non-ASHRAE 135 protocol to ASHRAE 135. BACnet Gateways must incorporate a network connection to an ASHRAE 135 network (gateway shall be MS/TP, BACnet over IP is not permitted within the DDC system) and a separate connection appropriate for the non-ASHRAE 135 protocol and media.
- b. It must retain its configuration after a power loss of an indefinite time, and must automatically return to their pre-power loss state once power is restored.
- c. It must allow bi-directional mapping of data between the non-ASHRAE 135 protocol and Standard Objects as defined in ASHRAE 135. It must support the DS-RP-B BIBB for Objects requiring read access and the DS-WP-B BIBB for Objects requiring write access.
- d. It must support the DS-COV-B BIBB.

Although Gateways must meet DDC Hardware requirements , except for Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways, they are not DDC Hardware and must not be used when DDC Hardware is required. (Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways are both Gateways and DDC Hardware.)

2.1.3 Ethernet Switch

Ethernet Switches must autoconfigure between 10,100 and 1000 megabits per second (MBPS).

2.2 CONTROL NETWORK WIRING

- a. BACnet MS/TP communications wiring must be in accordance with ASHRAE 135. The wiring must use shielded, three wire (twisted-pair with reference) cable with characteristic impedance between 100 and 120 ohms. Distributed capacitance between conductors must be less than 30 pF per foot.
- b. Building Control Network Backbone IP Network must use Ethernet media. Ethernet cables must be CAT-5e at a minimum and meet all requirements of IEEE 802.3.

2.3 DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) HARDWARE

2.3.1 General Requirements

All DDC Hardware must meet the following requirements:

- a. It must be locally powered and must incorporate a light to indicate the device is receiving power.
- b. It must conform to the [BTL Guide](#)
- c. It must be BACnet Testing Laboratory (BTL) Listed.
- d. The Manufacturer's Product Data submittal for each piece of DDC Hardware must include the Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) for that hardware as specified in Section [23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC](#).
- e. It must communicate and be interoperable in accordance with [ASHRAE 135](#) and have connections for BACnet IP or MS/TP control network wiring.
- f. Other than devices controlling terminal units or functioning solely as a BACnet Router, it must support DS-COV-B, DS-RPM-A and DS-RPM-B BIBBs.
- g. Devices supporting the DS-RP-A BIBB must also support the DS-COV-A BIBB.
- h. Application programs, configuration settings and communication information must be stored in a manner such that they persist through loss of power:
 - (1) Application programs must persist regardless of the length of time power is lost.
 - (2) Configured settings must persist for any loss of power less than 2,500 hours.
 - (3) Communication information, including but not limited to COV subscriptions, event reporting destinations, Notification Class Object settings, and internal communication settings, must persist for any loss of power less than 2,500 hours.
- i. Internal Clocks:
 - (1) Clocks in DDC Hardware incorporating a Clock must continue to function for 120 hours upon loss of power to the DDC Hardware.
 - (2) DDC Hardware incorporating a Clock must support the DM-TS-B or DM-UTC-B BIBB.
- j. It must have all functionality indicated and required to support the application (Sequence of Operation or portion thereof) in which it is used, including but not limited to providing Objects [or Niagara Framework Points](#) as specified and as indicated on the Points Schedule.
- k. In addition to these general requirements and the DDC Hardware Input-Output (I/O) Function requirements, all DDC Hardware must also meet any additional requirements for the application in which it is used (e.g. scheduling, alarming, trending, etc.).

- l. It must meet **FCC Part 15** requirements and have **UL 916** or equivalent safety listing.
- m. **Except for Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways**, Device must support Commandable Objects to support Override requirements as detailed in PART 3 EXECUTION
- n. User interfaces which allow for modification of Properties or settings must be password-protected.
- o. Devices communicating BACnet MS/TP must meet the following requirements:
 - (1) Must have a configurable Max_Master Property.
 - (2) DDC Hardware other than hardware controlling a single terminal unit must have a configurable Max_Info_Frames Property.
 - (3) Must respond to any valid request within 50 msec with either the appropriate response or with a response of "Reply Postponed".
 - (4) Must use twisted pair with reference and shield (3-wire media) wiring, or twisted pair with shield (2-wire media) wiring and use half-wave rectification.
- p. Devices communicating BACnet/IP must use UDP Port 0xBAC0. Devices with configurable UDP Ports must default to 0xBAC0.
- q. All Device IDs, Network Numbers, and BACnet MAC addresses of devices must be fully configurable without limitation, except MS/TP MAC addresses may be limited by **ASHRAE 135** requirements.
- r. **Except for Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways**, DDC Hardware controlling a single terminal unit must have:
 - (1) Objects (including the Device Object) with an Object Name Property of at least 8 characters in length.
 - (2) A configurable Device Object Name.
 - (3) A configurable Device Object Description Property at least 16 characters in length.
- s. **Except for Objects in either Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways or DDC Hardware controlling a single terminal unit**, all Objects (including Device Objects) must:
 - (1) Have a configurable Object Name Property of at least 12 characters in length.
 - (2) Have a configurable Object Description Property of at least 24 characters in length.
- t. For programmable DDC Hardware, provide and license to the project site all programming software required to program the Hardware in accordance with Section **23 09 00** INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.
- u. For programmable DDC Hardware, provide copies of the installed application programs (all software that is not common to every

controller of the same manufacturer and model) as source code compatible with the supplied programming software in accordance with Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC. The submitted application program must be the complete application necessary for controller to function as installed and be sufficient to allow replacement of the installed controller with another controller of the same type.

2.3.2 Hardware Input-Output (I/O) Functions

DDC Hardware incorporating hardware input-output (I/O) functions must meet the following requirements:

2.3.2.1 Analog Inputs

DC Hardware analog inputs (AIs) must be implemented using ASHRAE 135 Analog Input Objects and perform analog to digital (A-to-D) conversion with a minimum resolution of 8 bits plus sign or better as needed to meet the accuracy requirements specified in Section 23 09 00. Signal conditioning including transient rejection must be provided for each analog input. Analog inputs must be capable of being individually calibrated for zero and span. Calibration via software scaling performed as part of point configuration is acceptable. The AI must incorporate common mode noise rejection of at least 50 dB from 0 to 100 Hz for differential inputs, and normal mode noise rejection of at least 20 dB at 60 Hz from a source impedance of 10,000 ohms.

2.3.2.2 Analog Outputs

DDC Hardware analog outputs (AOs) must be implemented using ASHRAE 135 Analog Output Objects and perform digital to analog (D-to-A) conversion with a minimum resolution of 8 bits plus sign, and output a signal with a range of 4-20 mAdc or 0-10 Vdc. Analog outputs must be capable of being individually calibrated for zero and span. Calibration via software scaling performed as part of point configuration is acceptable. DDC Hardware with Hand-Off-Auto (H-O-A) switches for analog outputs must provide for overriding the output to 0 percent and to 100 percent

2.3.2.3 Binary Inputs

DDC Hardware binary inputs (BIs) must be implemented using ASHRAE 135 Binary Input Objects and accept contact closures and must ignore transients of less than 5 milli-second duration. Protection against a transient 50VAC must be provided.

2.3.2.4 Binary Outputs

DDC Hardware binary outputs (BOs) must be implemented using ASHRAE 135 Binary Output Objects and provide relay contact closures or triac outputs for momentary and maintained operation of output devices. DDC Hardware with H-O-A switches for binary outputs must provide for overriding the output open or closed.

2.3.2.4.1 Relay Contact Closures

Closures must have a minimum duration of 0.1 second. Relays must provide at least 180V of isolation. Electromagnetic interference suppression must be provided on all output lines to limit transients to 50 Vac. Minimum contact rating must be 0.5 amperes at 24 Vac.

2.3.2.4.2 Triac Outputs

Triac outputs must provide at least 180 V of isolation. Minimum contact rating must be 0.5 amperes at 24 Vac.

2.3.2.5 Pulse Accumulator

DDC Hardware pulse accumulators must be implemented using either an [ASHRAE 135](#) Accumulator Object or an [ASHRAE 135](#) Analog Value Object where the Present_Value is the totalized pulse count. Pulse accumulators must accept contact closures, ignore transients less than 5 msec duration, protect against transients of 50 VAC, and accept rates of at least 20 pulses per second.

2.3.2.6 ASHRAE 135 Objects for Hardware Inputs and Outputs

The requirements for use of [ASHRAE 135](#) objects for hardware input and outputs includes devices where the hardware sensor or actuator is integral to the controller (e.g. a VAV box with integral damper actuator, a smart sensor, a VFD, etc.)

2.3.3 Local Display Panel (LDP)

The Local Display Panels (LDPs) must be DDC Hardware with a display and navigation buttons or a touch screen display, and must provide display and adjustment of [Niagara Framework points](#) or [ASHRAE 135](#) Properties as indicated on the Points Schedule and as specified. LDPs must be either BTL Listed as a B-OD, B-OWS, B-AWS, or be an integral part of another piece of DDC Hardware listed as a B-BC. For LDPs listed as B-OWS or B-AWS, the hardware must be BTL listed and the product must come factory installed with all applications necessary for the device to function as an LDP.

The adjustment of values using display and navigation buttons must be password protected.

2.3.4 Expansion Modules and Tethered Hardware

A single piece of DDC Hardware may consist of a base unit and also:

- a. An unlimited number of hardware expansion modules, where the individual hardware expansion modules are designed to directly connect, both mechanically and electrically, to the base unit hardware. The expansion modules must be commercially available as an optional add-on to the base unit.
- b. A single piece of hardware connected (tethered) to a base unit by a single cable where the cable carries a proprietary protocol between the base unit and tethered hardware. The tethered hardware must not contain control logic and be commercially available as an optional add-on to the base unit as a single package.

Note that this restriction on tethered hardware does not apply to sensors or actuators using standard binary or analog signals (not a communications protocol); sensors or actuators using standard binary or analog signals are not considered part of the DDC Hardware.

Hardware capable of being installed stand-alone, or without a separate base unit, is DDC Hardware and must not be used as expansion modules or tethered

hardware.

2.3.5 Supervisory Control Requirements

2.3.5.1 Alarm Generation Hardware

Non-Niagara Framework DDC Hardware used for alarm generation must meet the following requirements:

- a. Device must support the AE-N-I-B BIBB
- b. The Recipient_List Property must be Writable for all Notification Class Objects used for alarm generation.
- c. For all Objects implementing Intrinsic Alarming, the following Properties must be Writable:
 - (1) Time_Delay
 - (2) High_Limit
 - (3) Low_Limit
 - (4) Deadband
 - (5) Event_Enable
 - (6) Time_Delay_Normal.
- d. It is preferred, but not required, that devices support the DM-OCD-B BIBB on all Notification Class Objects. It is also preferred, but not required that devices supporting the DM-OCD-B BIBB accept any valid value as an initial value for properties of Notification Class Objects.

2.3.6 Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway

Any device implementing the Niagara Framework is a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway and must meet these requirements. In addition to the general requirements for all DDC Hardware, Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway Hardware must:

- a. Be direct digital control hardware.
- b. Have an unrestricted interoperability license and its Niagara Compatibility Statement (NiCS) must follow the Tridium Open NiCS Specification.
- c. Manage communications between a field control network and the Niagara Framework Monitoring and Control Software, and between itself and other Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways. Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway Hardware must use Fox protocol for communication with other Niagara Framework Components, regardless of the manufacturer of the other components.
- d. Be fully programmable using the Niagara Framework Engineering Tool and must support the following:
 - (1) Time synchronization, Calendar, and Scheduling using Niagara Scheduling Objects
 - (2) Alarm generation and routing using the Niagara Alarm Service
 - (3) Trending using the Niagara History Service and Niagara Trend Log Objects

- (4) Integration of field control networks using the Niagara Framework Engineering Tool
 - (5) Configuration of integrated field control system using the Niagara Framework Engineering Tool when supported by the field control system
- e. Meet the following minimum hardware requirements:
- (1) One 10/100/1000 Mbps Ethernet Port(s)
 - (2) One or more MS/TP ports.
- f. Provide access to field control network data and supervisory functions via web interface and support a minimum of 16 simultaneous users.
Note: implementation of this capability may not be required on all projects.
- g. Submit a backup of each Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway as specified in Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC. The backup must be sufficient to restore a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway to the final as-built condition such that a new Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway loaded with the backup is indistinguishable in functionality from the original.

2.4 Niagara Framework Engineering Tool

The Niagara Framework Engineering Tool must be Niagara Workbench or an equivalent Niagara Framework engineering tool software and must:

- a. Have an unrestricted interoperability license and its Niagara Compatibility Statement (NiCS) must follow the Tridium Open NiCS Specification.
- b. Be capable of performing network configuration for Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways and Niagara Framework Monitoring and Control Software.
- c. Be capable of programming and configuring of Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways and Niagara Framework Monitoring and Control Software.
- d. Be capable of discovery of Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways and all points mapped into each Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway and making these points accessible to Niagara Framework Monitoring and Control Software.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 CONTROL SYSTEM INSTALLATION

3.1.1 Niagara Framework Engineering Tool

Provide a Niagara Framework Engineering Tool that is current version at date of beneficial occupancy.

3.1.2 Building Control Network (BCN)

Install the Building Control Network (BCN) as a single BACnet Internetwork consisting of a single IP network as the BCN Backbone and zero or more BACnet MS/TP networks. Note that in some cases there may only be a single device on the BCN Backbone.

Except for the IP Network and as permitted for the non-BACnet side of Gateways, use exclusively ASHRAE 135 networks.

3.1.2.1 Building Control Network IP Backbone

Install IP Network Cabling in conduit. Install Ethernet Switches in lockable enclosures. Install the Building Control Network (BCN) IP Backbone such that it is available at the Facility Point of Connection (FPOC) location to be determined during construction. When the FPOC location is a room number, provide sufficient additional media to ensure that the Building Control Network (BCN) IP Backbone can be extended to any location in the room.

Use UDP port 0xBAC0 for all BACnet traffic on the IP network. (Note that in a Niagara Framework system there may not be BACnet traffic on the IP Network)

3.1.2.2 BACnet MS/TP Networks

When using MS/TP, provide MS/TP networks in accordance with ASHRAE 135 and in accordance with the ASHRAE 135 figure "Mixed Devices on 3-Conductor Cable with Shield" (Figure 9-1.4 in the 2012 version of ASHRAE 135). Ground the shield at the BACnet Router and at no other point. Ground the reference wire at the BACnet Router through a 100 ohm resistor and do not ground it at any other point. In addition:

- a. Provide each segment in a doubly terminated bus topology in accordance with TIA-485.
- b. Provide each segment with 2 sets of network bias resistors in accordance with ASHRAE 135, with one set of resistors at each end of the MS/TP network.
- c. Use 3 wire (twisted pair and reference) with shield media for all MS/TP media installed inside. Use fiber optic isolation in accordance with ASHRAE 135 for all MS/TP media installed outside buildings, or between multiple buildings.
- d. For 18 AWG cable, use segments with a maximum length of 4000 ft. When using greater distances or different wire gauges comply with the electrical specifications of TIA-485.
- e. For each controller that does not use the reference wire provide transient suppression at the network connection of the controller if the controller itself does not incorporate transient suppression.
- f. Install no more than 32 devices on each MS/TP segment. Do not use MS/TP to MS/TP routers.
- g. Connect each MS/TP network to the BCN backbone via a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway configured as a BACnet Router.

- h. For BACnet Routers, configure the MS/TP MAC address to 0. Assign MAC Addresses to other devices consecutively beginning at 1, with no gaps.
- i. Configure the Max_Master Property of all devices to be 31.

3.1.2.3 Building Control Network (BCN) Installation

Provide a building control network meeting the following requirements:

- a. Install all DDC Hardware connected to the Building Control Network.
- b. Where multiple pieces of DDC Hardware are used to execute one sequence, install all DDC Hardware executing that sequence on a single MS/TP network dedicated to that sequence.
- c. Traffic between BACnet networks must be exclusively via BACnet routers.
- d. Use the Fox protocol for all traffic both originating and terminating at Niagara Framework components. Use the Fox protocol for all traffic originating or terminating at a Niagara Framework EMCS (including traffic to or from a future EMCS). All other traffic, including traffic between ASHRAE 135 devices and traffic between Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways and ASHRAE 135 devices must be in accordance with ASHRAE 135.

3.1.3 DDC Hardware

Install all DDC Hardware that connects to an IP network in lockable enclosure. Install other DDC Hardware that is not in suspended ceilings in enclosures. For all DDC hardware with a user interface, coordinate with site to determine proper passwords and configure passwords into device.

- a. Except for zone sensors (thermostats), install all Tethered Hardware within 6 feet of its base unit.
- b. Install and configure all BTL-Listed devices in a manner consistent with their BTL Listing such that the device as provided still meets all requirements necessary for its BTL Listing.
- c. Install and configure all BTL-Listed devices in a manner consistent with the BTL Device Implementation Guidelines such that the device as provided meets all those Guidelines.

3.1.3.1 Device Identifiers, Network Addresses, and IP addresses

- a. Do not use any Device Identifier or Network Number already used by another BACnet system at the project site. Coordinate Device IDs and Network Numbers with the installation. The installation POC is Camp Lejeune Public Works.
- b. Coordinate device IP addresses with installation. The installation POC is Camp Lejeune Public Works.

3.1.3.2 ASHRAE 135 Object Name Property and Object Description Property

Configure the Object_Names and Object_Descriptions properties of all ASHRAE 135 Objects (including Device Objects) as indicated on the Points Schedule (Point Name and Point Description) and as specified. At a minimum:

- a. Except for DDC Hardware controlling a single terminal unit, configure the Object_Name and Object_Description properties of all Objects (including Device Objects) as indicated on the Points Schedule and as specified.
- b. In DDC Hardware controlling a single terminal unit, configure the Device Object_Name and Device Object_Description as indicated on the Points Schedule and as specified.

When Points Schedule entries exceed the length limitations in the device, notify the contracting officer and provide recommended alternatives for approval.

3.1.3.3 Niagara Framework Point Names and Descriptions

Configure the names and descriptions of all Points in Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways as indicated on the Points Schedule and as specified.

3.1.3.4 Niagara Station IDs

Ensure that Niagara Station IDs of new Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways are maintained as unique within EMCS front-end, including ensuring they do not conflict with any existing Niagara Station ID.

3.1.3.5 Hand-Off-Auto (H-O-A) Switches

Provide Hand-Off-Auto (H-O-A) switches for all DDC Hardware analog outputs and binary outputs used for control of systems other than terminal units, as specified and as indicated on the Points Schedule. Provide H-O-A switches that are integral to the controller hardware, an external device co-located with (in the same enclosure as) the controller, integral to the controlled equipment, or an external device co-located with (in the same enclosure as) the controlled equipment.

- a. For H-O-A switches integral to DDC Hardware, meet the requirements specified in paragraph DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) HARDWARE.
- b. For external H-O-A switches used for binary outputs, provide for overriding the output open or closed.
- c. For external H-O-A switches used for analog outputs, provide for overriding to 0 percent or 100 percent.

3.1.3.6 Local Display Panels

Provide LDPs to display and override values of points in a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway or ASHRAE 135 Object Properties as indicated on the Points Schedule. Install LDPs displaying points for anything other than a terminal unit in the same room as the equipment. Install LDPs displaying points for only terminal units in a mechanical room central to the group of terminal units it serves. For LDPs using WriteProperty to commandable objects to implement an override, write values with priority 9.

3.1.3.7 MS/TP Slave Devices

Configure all MS/TP devices as Master devices. Do not configure any devices to act as slave devices.

3.1.3.8 Change of Value (COV) and Read Property

- a. To the greatest extent possible, configure all devices to support the SubscribeCOV service (the DS-COV-B BIBB). At a minimum, all devices supporting the DS-RP-B BIBB, other than devices controlling only a single terminal unit, must be configured to support the DS-COV-B BIBB.
- b. Whenever supported by the server side, configure client devices to use the DS-COV-A BIBB.

3.1.3.9 Engineering Units

Configure devices to use English (Inch-Pound) engineering units as follows:

- a. Temperature in degrees F
- b. Air or natural gas flows in cubic feet per minute (CFM)
- c. Water in gallons per minute (GPM)
- d. Steam flow in pounds per hour (pph)
- e. Differential Air pressures in inches of water column (IWC)
- f. Water, steam, and natural gas pressures in PSI
- g. Enthalpy in BTU/lb
- h. Heating and cooling energy in MBTU (1MBTU = 1,000,000 BTU)
- i. Cooling load in tons (1 ton = 12,000 BTU/hour)
- j. Heating load in MBTU/hour (1MBTU = 1,000,000 BTU)
- k. Electrical Power: kilowatts (kW)
- l. Electrical Energy: kilowatt-hours (kWh)

3.1.3.10 Occupancy Modes

Use the following correspondence between value and occupancy mode whenever an occupancy state or value is required:

- a. OCCUPIED mode: a value of one
- b. UNOCCUPIED mode: a value of two
- c. WARM-UP/COOL-DOWN (PRE-OCCUPANCY) mode: a value of three

Note that elsewhere in this Section the Schedule Object is required to also support a value of four, which is reserved for future use. Also note that the behavior of a system in each of these occupancy modes is indicated in the sequence of operation for the system.

3.1.3.11 Use of BACnet Objects

Except as specifically indicated for Niagara Framework Objects, Use only standard non-proprietary ASHRAE 135 Objects and services to accomplish the project scope of work as follows:

- a. Use Analog Input or Analog Output Objects for all analog hardware I/O. Do not use Analog Value Object for analog hardware I/O).
- b. Use Binary Input or Binary Output Objects for all binary hardware I/O. Do not use Binary Value Objects for binary hardware I/O.
- c. Use Analog Value Objects for analog setpoints.
- d. Use Accumulator Objects or Analog Value Objects for pulse inputs.
- e. For occupancy modes, use Multistate Value Objects and the correspondence between value and occupancy mode specified in paragraph OCCUPANCY MODES.
- f. Use a combination of Niagara Framework Alarm Extensions and Alarm Services, Intrinsic Alarming, and Notification Class Objects for alarm generation.
- g. For all other points shown on the Points Schedule as requiring an ASHRAE 135 Object, use the Object type shown on the Points Schedule or, if no Object Type is shown, use a standard Object appropriate to the point.

3.1.3.11.1 Niagara Framework Objects

Points in the Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway, even if used in a sequence or are shown on the Points Schedule, are not required to be exposed as BACnet Objects unless they are required to be available on the network by another device or sequence of operation (i.e. there is some other reason they are needed).

Use a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway as specified for all scheduling and trending. Use a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway as specified for all alarming except for intrinsic alarming.

3.1.3.12 Use of Standard BACnet Services

Except as noted in this paragraph, for all DDC Hardware (including Niagara Frameworks Supervisory Gateways when communicating with non-Niagara Framework DDC Hardware) use Standard BACnet Services as defined in this specification (which excludes some ASHRAE 135 services) exclusively for application control functionality and communication.

DDC Hardware that cannot meet this requirement may use non-standard services provided they can provide identical functionality using Standard BACnet Services when communicating with BACnet devices from a different vendor. When implementing non-standard services, document all non-standard services in the DDC Hardware Schedule as specified and as specified in Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.

3.1.3.13 Device Application Configuration

- a. For every property, setting or value shown on the Points Schedule or otherwise indicated as Configurable, provide a value that is retained through loss of power and can be changed via one or more of:

(1) BACnet services (including proprietary services)

(2) Hardware settings on the device

(3) The Niagara Framework

b. For every property, setting or value in non-Niagara Framework Hardware shown on the Points Schedule or otherwise indicated as Operator Configurable, provide a value that is retained through loss of power and can be changed via one or more of:

(1) A Writable Property of a standard BACnet Object

(2) A Property of a standard BACnet Object that is Writable when Out_Of_Service is TRUE and Out_Of_Service is Writable.

(3) Using some other method supported by a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway

c. Configure Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways such that the property, setting or value is configurable from a Niagara Framework Front End.

d. For every property, setting or value in a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway which is shown on the Points Schedule or otherwise indicated as Operator Configurable, configure the value to be configurable from within the Niagara Framework such that it can be configured from a system graphic page at a Niagara Framework Front End.

3.1.3.14 Niagara Framework Engineering Tool

Use the Niagara Framework Engineering Tool to fully discover the field control system and make all field control system information available to the Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway. Ensure that all points on the points schedule are available to the front end via the Fox protocol.

3.1.3.15 Graphics and Web Pages

Configure Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways to use web pages to provide a graphical user interface including System Displays using the project site sample displays, including overrides, as indicated on the Points Schedule and as specified. Label all points on displays with the point description as indicated on the Points Schedule. Configure user permissions for access to and executions of action using graphic pages. Coordinate user permissions with contracting officer. Configure the web server to use HTTPS based on the Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocol in accordance with RFC 5246 using a Government furnished certificate.

3.1.4 Scheduling, Alarming, Trending, and Overrides

3.1.4.1 Scheduling

Configure schedules in Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway using Niagara Schedule Objects as indicated on the Points Schedule and as specified. When the schedule is controlling occupancy modes in DDC Hardware other than a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway use the indicated correspondence between value and occupancy mode.

Provide a separate schedule for each AHU including it's associated Terminal Units and for each stand-alone Terminal Unit (those not dependent upon AHU service) or group of stand-alone Terminal Units acting according to a

common schedule.

3.1.4.2 Alarm Configuration

Configure alarm generation and management as indicated on the Points Schedule and as specified. Configure alarm generation in Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways using Niagara Framework Alarm Extensions and Alarm Services or in other DDC Hardware (not Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways) using ASHRAE 135 Intrinsic Alarming. Configure alarm management and routing for all alarms, including those generated via intrinsic alarming in other devices, in the Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway such that the alarms are able to be accessed from the Niagara Framework Front End.

Where Intrinsic Alarming is used, configure intrinsic alarming as specified in paragraph "Configuration of ASHRAE 135 Intrinsic Alarm Generation". Configure a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway to provide a means to configure the intrinsic alarm parameters such that the Intrinsic Alarm is configurable from the front end via the Niagara Framework.

3.1.4.3 Configuration of ASHRAE 135 Intrinsic Alarm Generation

Intrinsic alarm generation must meet the following requirements:

Configure alarm generation as indicated on the Points Schedule and as specified using Intrinsic Alarming in accordance with ASHRAE 135 or Algorithmic Alarming in accordance with ASHRAE 135. Alarm generation must meet the following requirements:

- a. Send alarm events as Alarms (not Events).
- b. Use the Confirmed Notification Service for alarm events.
- c. For alarm generation, support two priority levels for alarms: critical and non-critical. Configure the Priority of Notification Class Objects to use Priority 112 for critical and 224 for non-critical alarms.
- d. Number of Notification Class Objects for Alarm Generation:
 - (1) If the device implements non-critical alarms, or if any Object in the device supports Intrinsic Alarms, then provide a single Notification Class Object specifically for (shared by) all non-critical alarms.
 - (2) If the device implements critical alarms, provide a single Notification Class Object specifically for (shared by) all critical alarms.
 - (3) If the device implements both critical and non-critical alarms, provide both Notification Class Objects (one for critical, one for non-critical).
 - (4) If the device controls equipment other than a single terminal unit, provide both Notification Class Objects (one for critical, one for non-critical) even if no alarm generation is required at time of installation.
- e. For all intrinsic alarms configure the Limit_Enable Property to set both HighLimitEnable and LowLimitEnable to TRUE. If the specified

alarm conditions are for a single-sided alarm (only High_Limit used or only Low_Limit used) assign a value to the unused limit such that the unused alarm condition will not occur.

- f. For all objects supporting intrinsic alarming, even if no alarm generation is required during installation, configure the following Properties as follows:
 - (1) Notification_Class to point to the non-Critical Notification Class Object in that device.
 - (2) Limit_Enable to enable both the HighLimitEnable and LowLimitEnable
 - (3) Notify_Type to Alarm
- g. Configure the Recipient_List Property of the Notification Class Object to point to the Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway managing the alarm.

3.1.4.4 Trending

Perform all trending using a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway using Niagara Framework History Extensions and Niagara Framework History Service exclusively.

3.1.4.5 Overrides

Provide an override for each point shown on the Points Schedule as requiring an override. Use the Niagara Framework for all overrides to points in Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways. For overrides to other points, provide an override to a point in a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway via the Niagara Framework where the Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway overrides the other point as specified.

Unless otherwise approved, provide Commandable Objects to support all Overrides in non-Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway DDC Hardware. With specific approval from the contracting officer, Overrides for points which are not hardware outputs and which are in DDC hardware controlling a single terminal unit may support overrides via an additional Object provided for the override. No other means of implementing Overrides may be used.

- a. Where Commandable Objects are used, ensure that WriteProperty service requests with a Priority of 10 or less take precedence over the SEQUENCE VALUE and that WriteProperty service request with a priority of 11 or more have a lower precedence than the SEQUENCE VALUE.
- b. For devices implementing overrides via additional Objects, provide Objects which are NOT Written to as part of the normal Sequence of Operations and are Writable when Out_Of_Service is TRUE and Out_Of_Service is Writable. Use this point as an Override of the normal value when Out_Of_Service is TRUE and the normal value otherwise. Note these Objects may be modified as part of the sequence via local processes, but must not be modified by local processes when Out_Of_Service is TRUE.

3.1.5 BACnet Gateways

The requirements in this paragraph do not permit the installation of hardware not meeting the other requirements of this section. All control

hardware installed under this project must meet the requirements of this specification, including control hardware provided as part of a package unit or as part of HVAC equipment specified under another section. Except as indicated in paragraph Gateways for Boiler or Chiller Plants, all package units must be provided with a BACnet interface meeting the requirements of this Section. Only use gateways to connect to pre-existing control devices, and to boiler or chiller plants as indicated.

3.1.5.1 General Gateway Requirements

Provide BACnet Gateways to connect non-BACnet control hardware in accordance with the following:

- a. Configure gateways to map writable data points in the controlled equipment to Writable Properties of Standard Objects, or to Niagara Framework points, as indicated in the Points Schedule and as specified.
- b. Configure gateway to map readable data points in the controlled equipment to Readable Properties of Standard Objects, or to Niagara Framework points, as indicated in the Points Schedule and as specified.
- c. Configure gateway to support the DS-COV-B BIBB for all points mapped to BACnet Objects.
- d. Do not use non-BACnet control hardware for controlling built-up units or any other equipment that was not furnished with factory-installed controls. (Note: A Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway is BACnet control hardware.)
- e. Do not use non-BACnet control hardware for system scheduling functions.

3.1.5.2 Gateways for Boiler or Chiller Plants

A non-BACnet network of multiple boilers or multiple chillers with a single gateway is permitted only when all the following conditions are met:

- a. All units are from the same manufacturer.
- b. All units are co-located in the same room, and the network connecting them is fully contained in that room.
- c. Units are operating using a common "plant" sequence of operation which stages the units in a manner that requires operational parameters be shared between them and which cannot be accomplished with a single lead-lag command from a third-party controller.
- d. A request for use of a boiler or chiller plant gateway has been submitted and approved in accordance with Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.

Connect one network port on the gateway to the Building Control Backbone IP Network or to a BACnet MS/TP network and the other port to the boiler or chiller network.

3.1.5.3 Gateways for Application Other than Boiler and Chiller Plants

In addition to the General Gateway Requirements, provide BACnet Gateways to non-BACnet control hardware other than boiler and chiller plants in accordance with the following

- a. Each gateway must communicate with and perform protocol translation for non-BACnet control hardware controlling one and only one package unit.
- b. Connect one network port on the gateway to the Building Control Backbone IP Network or to a BACnet MS/TP network and the other port to the single piece of controlled equipment.
- c. Non-BACnet network wiring connecting the gateway to the package unit must not exceed 10 feet in length and must connect to exactly two devices: the controlled equipment (packaged unit) and the gateway.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

EQUIPMENT NAMES

DESCRIPTION	EQUIPMENT NAME
air handler 1, air handling unit 1	AH1
Building	BLDG
Boiler 1	BLR1
Chiller 1	CHR1
Condenser 1	COND1
Cooling tower 1	CT1
Cooling tower 1 fan	CT1F
Cooling tower 1 pump	CT1P
condenser water	CW
condenser water pump 1	CWP1
exhaust fan 1	EF1
Evaporator 1	EVAP1
heat exchanger 1	HEX1
high pressure steam	HPS
low pressure steam	LPS
make up air fan 1	MAF1
medium pressure steam	MPS
primary chilled water	PCHW
primary chilled water pump 1	PCHWP1
primary hot water	PHW
primary hot water pump 1	PHWP1
return fan 1	RF1
secondary chilled water	SCHW
secondary chilled water pump 1	SCHWP1
secondary hot water	SHW
secondary hot water pump 1	SHWP1
System	SYS
terminal air blender 1, fan powered	TAB1
tertiary chilled water	TCHW
tertiary chilled water pump 1	TCHWP1
tertiary hot water	THW
tertiary hot water pump 1	THWP1
variable air volume box 1	VAV1
occupied zone 1 thru 999	ZN1
Common zone	ZNT

This page intentionally left blank.

OBJECT NAMES

Point Name	Description	BACnet Command
ACHWS-SP	Actual CHW Temperature Setpoint	Read/Write
ACLG-SP	Actual Cooling Setpoint	Read/Write
ADA-SP	Actual Discharge Setpoint	Read/Write
AHTG-SP	Actual Heating Setpoint	Read/Write
AHWS-SP	Actual HW Supply Temperature Setpoint	Read/Write
ASA-SP	Actual Supply Air Setpoint	Read/Write
ASTATIC-SP	Actual Static Pressure Setpoint	Read/Write
AUTOCAL-C	Autocalibrate Command	Read/Write
AUTOCAL-STATE	Autocalibration Status	Read
AVEMA-T	Average Mixed Air Temperature	Read
AVEZN-T	Average Zone Temperature	Read
AZN-SP	Actual Zone Setpoint	Read/Write
BLDG-P	Building Static Pressure	Read
BLR1-A	Boiler 1 Alarm	Read
BLR1-EN	Boiler 1 Enable	Read/Write
BLR1EW-T	Boiler 1 Entering Water Temperature	Read
BLR1-FS	Boiler 1 Flow Switch	Read
BLR1LW-T	Boiler 1 Leaving Water Temperature	Read
BLR1-S	Boiler 1 Status	Read
BLR1SP-O	Boiler 1 Setpoint Output	Read/Write
BLR2-A	Boiler 2 Alarm	Read
BLR2EW-T	Boiler 2 Entering Water Temperature	Read
BLR2-FS	Boiler 2 Flow Switch	Read
BLR2LW-T	Boiler 2 Leaving Water Temperature	Read
BLR2-S	Boiler 2 Status	Read
BLR3-A	Boiler 3 Alarm	Read
BLR3EW-T	Boiler 3 Entering Water Temperature	Read
BLR3-FS	Boiler 3 Flow Switch	Read
BLR3LW-T	Boiler 3 Leaving Water Temperature	Read
BLR3-S	Boiler 3 Status	Read
BLR4-A	Boiler 4 Alarm	Read
BLR4EW-T	Boiler 4 Entering Water Temperature	Read
BLR4-FS	Boiler 4 Flow Switch	Read
BLR4LW-T	Boiler 4 Leaving Water Temperature	Read
BLR4-S	Boiler 4 Status	Read
BLR-SP	Boiler Setpoint	Read/Write
BLR-SP-O	Boiler Setpoint Output	Read/Write
BOX-LOAD	Box Terminal Load	Read
BOXMODE	Box Mode	Read
BP1-C	Boiler Pump 1 Command	Read/Write
BP1-S	Boiler Pump 1 Status	Read
BYPDMP-O	Bypass Damper Output	Read/Write
CC-T	Cooling Coil Temperature	Read
CD-P	Cold Deck Pressure	Read
CSD-A	Cold Deck Smoke Detector Alarm	Read
CD-T	Cold Deck Temperature	Read
CH1-A	Chiller 1 Alarm	Read
CH1-C	Chiller 1 Command	Read/Write
CH1CHWE-T	Chiller 1 CHW Entering Temperature	Read
CH1CHWL-T	Chiller 1 CHW Leaving Temperature	Read
CH1CL-O	Chiller 1 Current Limit Output	Read

OBJECT NAMES

CH1CWE-T	Chiller 1 CW Entering Temperature	Read
CH1CWL-T	Chiller 1 CW Leaving Temperature	Read
CH1-E	Chiller 1 Enable	Read/Write
CH1-S	Chiller 1 Status	Read
CH1SP-O	Chiller 1 Setpoint Output	Read/Write
CH1-UNL	Chiller 1 Unloader	Read
CH2-A	Chiller 2 Alarm	Read
CH2-C	Chiller 2 Command	Read
CH2-S	Chiller 2 Status	Read
CH2-UNL	Chiller 2 Unloader	Read
CH-C	Chiller Command	Read
CH-E	Chiller Enable	Read/Write
CHNGOVER-DIFF	Changeover Differential	Read
CHNGOVER-DLY	Changeover Delay	Read
CH-S	Chiller Status	Read
CH-SP	Chiller Setpoint	Read/Write
CHW-DP	Chilled Water Differential Pressure	Read
CHWDP-SP	Chilled Water Differential Pressure Setpoint	Read/Write
CHWDT-SP	CHW Differential Temperature Setpoint	Read
CHWGPM-F	Chilled Water GPM Flow	Read
CHWGPM-SP	Chilled Water GPM Setpoint	Read/Write
CHWP-C	Chilled Water Pump Command	Read/Write
CHWP-S	Chilled Water Pump Status	Read
CHWR-T	Chilled Water Return Temperature	Read
CHWS-SP	Chilled Water Supply Temperature Setpoint	Read/Write
CHWS-T	Chilled Water Supply Temperature	Read
CHWV-O	Chilled Water Valve Output	Read/Write
CLG1-C	Cooling Stage 1 Command	Read/Write
CLGDA-SP	Cooling Discharge Air Temperature Setpoint	Read
CLG-O	Cooling Valve Output	Read/Write
CLG-O	Cooling Output	Read/Write
CLGOCC-SP	Occupied Cooling Setpoint	Read/Write
CLGUNOCC-SP	Unoccupied Cooling Setpoint	Read/Write
CMP1-A	Compressor 1 Alarm	Read
CMP1-C	Compressor 1 Command	Read/Write
CMP1EVAP-P	Compressor 1 Evaporation Pressure	Read
CMP2-A	Compressor 2 Alarm	Read
CMP2-C	Compressor 2 Command	Read/Write
CMP2EVAP-P	Compressor 2 Evaporation Pressure	Read
COMMON-SP	Common Setpoint	Read/Write
COND-T	Condensate Temperature	Read
CT1-C	Cooling Tower 1 Command	Read/Write
CT1ISOV-C	Cooling Tower 1 Isolation Valve Command	Read/Write
CT1-S	Cooling Tower 1 Status	Read
CTV-O	Cooling Tower Valve Output	Read/Write
CWP1-C	Condenser Water Pump 1 Command	Read/Write
CWP1-S	Condenser Water Pump 1 Status	Read
CWR-T	Condenser Water Return Temperature	Read
CW-SP	Condenser Water Setpoint	Read/Write
CWS-T	Condenser Water Supply Temperature	Read
DA1-P	Discharge Air Static Pressure 1	Read
DADEHUM-SP	Discharge Air Dehumidification Setpoint	Read/Write

OBJECT NAMES

DA-F	Discharge Air Flow	Read
DA-H	Discharge Air Humidity	Read
DAMPER-O	Damper Output	Read/Write
DA-P	Discharge Air Static Pressure	Read
DAPHI-A	Discharge Air High Duct Pressure	Read
DAP-SP	Duct Static Pressure Setpoint	Read/Write
DA-SD	Discharge Air Smoke Detector	Read
DA-SP	Discharge Air Setpoint	Read/Write
DA-SP-HL	Discharge Air Setpoint High Limit	Read/Write
DA-SP-LL	Discharge Air Setpoint Low Limit	Read/Write
DA-STATIC-SP	Discharge Air Static Pressure Setpoint	Read/Write
DA-T	Discharge Air Temperature	Read
DATCLGUNOCC-SP	Unoccupied Cooling Setpoint	Read/Write
DATHTGUNOCC-SP	Unoccupied Heating Setpoint	Read/Write
DA-VP	Discharge Air Velocity Pressure	Read
DCPL-F	Decouple Loop Flow	Read
DCPL-S	Decouple Loop Direction	Read
DCPL-T	Decouple Loop Temperature	Read
DEHUM-SP	Dehumidification Setpoint	Read/Write
DPR-C	Damper Command	Read/Write
DPR-O	Damper Output	Read/Write
DTC-T	Dual Temp Coil Temperature	Read
DTP-C	Dual Temp Pump Command	Read/Write
DTP-S	Dual Temp Pump Status	Read
DTR-T	Dual Temp Return Temperature	Read
DTS-T	Dual Temp Supply Temperature	Read
DTV-O	Dual Temp Valve Output	Read/Write
EAFILTER_S	Exhaust Air Filter Status	Read
ECON-C	Economizer Command	Read/Write
ECON-S	Economizer Status	Read
EF1-C	Exhaust Fan 1 Command	Read/Write
EF1-S	Exhaust Fan 1 Status	Read
EF2-C	Exhaust Fan 2 Command	Read/Write
EF2-S	Exhaust Fan 2 Status	Read
EF3-C	Exhaust Fan 3 Command	Read/Write
EF3-S	Exhaust Fan 3 Status	Read
EF4-C	Exhaust Fan 4 Command	Read/Write
EF4-S	Exhaust Fan 4 Status	Read
EF-C	Exhaust Fan Command	Read/Write
EF-S	Exhaust Fan Status	Read
EFFCLG-SP	Effective Cooling Setpoint	Read/Write
EFFHTG-SP	Effective Heating Setpoint	Read/Write
EF-S	Exhaust Fan Status	Read
EMER-RST	Emergency Reset Switch	Read/Write
ERU-E	Energy Recovery Unit Enable	Read/Write
E-STOP	Emergency Stop Switch	Read/Write
FAN-C	Fan Command	Read/Write
FA-SD	Fire Alarm Shutdown	Read/Write
FFILTER-A	Final Filter Alarm	Read
FFILTER-DP	Final Filter Differential Pressure	Read
FILTER-S	Filter Status	Read
FLOERR	Average Flow Error	Read

OBJECT NAMES

FLOWPID-C	Flow PID Command	Read/Write
FLOW-S	Flow Switch Status	Read
FLOW-SP	Flow Setpoint	Read/Write
FSD1-S	Fire Smoke Damper 1 Status	Read
FSD2-S	Fire Smoke Damper 2 Status	Read
FSD3-S	Fire Smoke Damper 3 Status	Read
FSD-S	Fire Smoke Damper Status	Read
GAS-MTR	Gas Meter Accumulator	Read
HD-P	Hot Deck Pressure	Read
HDS-D-A	Hot Deck Smoke Detector Alarm	Read
HD-T	Hot Deck Temperature	Read
HIDAP-A	High Discharge Air pressure Alarm	Read
HRW-C	Heat Recovery Wheel Command	Read/Write
HRW-S	Heat Recovery Wheel Status	Read
HT-A	High Temperature Alarm	Read
HTG1-C	Heating Stage 1 Command	Read/Write
HTG2-C	Heating Stage 2 Command	Read/Write
HTGCLG-S	AHU Heating/Cooling Status	Read
HTGDA-SP	Heating Discharge Air Temperature Setpoint	Read/Write
HTG-O	Heating Output	Read/Write
HUMSEN-A	Humidity Sensor Failure	Read
HUM-SP	Humidifier Setpoint	Read/Write
HUMV-O	Humidifier Valve Output	Read/Write
HWB-T	Heating Water Bridge Temperature	Read
HW-DP	Hot Water Differential Pressure	Read
HW-DTS-HL	Hot Water Dual Temp Supply High Limit	Read/Write
HW-DTS-LL	Hot Water Dual Temp Supply Low Limit	Read/Write
HW-OA-HL	Hot Water Outdoor Air Reset High Limit	Read/Write
HW-OA-LL	Hot Water Outdoor Air Reset Low Limit	Read/Write
HWP-C	Hot Water Pump Command	Read/Write
HWP-O	Hot Water Valve Output	Read/Write
HWP-S	Hot Water Pump Status	Read
HWP-S	Hot Water Pump Status	Read
HWR-T	Hot Water Return Temperature	Read
HWS-BTU-h	Hot Water System BTU/h	Read
HWS-HI	Hot Water Supply High (Reset)	Read/Write
HWS-kW-h	Hot Water System kW/h	Read
HWS-LO	Hot Water Supply Low (Reset)	Read/Write
HW-SP-HL	Hot Water Setpoint High Limit	Read/Write
HW-SP-LL	Hot Water Setpoint Low Limit	Read/Write
HWS-SP	Hot Water Supply Setpoint	Read/Write
HWS-T	Hot Water Supply Temperature	Read
HWS-W-h	Hot Water System Watt per Hour	Read
HX-EN	Heat Exchanger Enable	Read/Write
HXMV-O	Heat Exchanger Mixing Valve Output	Read/Write
HXV-O	Heat Exchanger Valve Output	Read/Write
IV-O	Inlet Vane Output	Read/Write
LIFT-STA_AIR-A	Lift Station Air Pressure Alarm	Read
LIFT-STA_LEVEL-A	Lift Station Level Alarm	Read
LIFT-STA_P1-A	Lift Station Pump 1 Alarm	Read
LIFT-STA_P1-S	Lift Station Pump 1 Status	Read
LIFT-STA_POWER-A	Lift Station Power Alarm	Read

OBJECT NAMES

LOWVOLTA	Low Voltage Alarm	Read
LL-A	low Limit Alarm	Read
LT-A	Low Temperature Alarm	Read
MAD-O	Mixed Air Damper Output	Read
MANUALOVERRIDE	Manual Override	Read
MA-P	Mixed Air Static Pressure	Read
MA-STATIC-SP	Mixed Air Static Pressure Setpoint	Read/Write
MA-T	Mixed Air Temperature	Read
MINOAD-SP	Minimum Outdoor Air Damper Setpoint	Read/Write
MIX-O	Mixing Valve Output	Read/Write
MOAD-O	Minimum Outdoor Air Damper Output	Read/Write
MOTOROVRD	Motor Overload	Read
MR-T	Mechanical Room Temperature	Read
OA-CFM	Outdoor Air Cubic Feet per Minute	Read
OACFM-SP	Outdoor Air Cubic Feet per Minute Setpoint	Read/Write
OACHNGOVER-SP	Outdoor Air Changeover Setpoint	Read/Write
OACLG-LL	Outdoor Air Cooling Low Limit	Read
OAD-C	Outdoor Air Damper Command	Read/Write
OAD-O	Outdoor Air Damper Output	Read/Write
OAD-S	Outdoor Air Damper Status	Read
OA-F	Outdoor Air Flow	Read
OAFILTER-S	Outdoor Air Filter Status	Read
OAF-SP	Outdoor Air Flow Setpoint	Read/Write
OA-H	Outdoor Air Humidity	Read
OA-MIN	Outdoor Air Minimum Cubic Feet per Minute	Read/Write
OA-P	Outdoor Air Static Pressure	Read
OA-Q	Outdoor Air Quality	Read
OA-SP-HL	Outdoor Air Setpoint High Limit	Read/Write
OA-SP-LL	Outdoor Air Setpoint Low Limit	Read/Write
OA-T	Outdoor Air Temperature	Read
OAT-HI	Outdoor Air Temperature High (Reset)	Read/Write
OA-T-LL	Outdoor Air Temperature Low Limit	Read/Write
OA-T-LL-S	Outdoor Air Temperature Low Limit Status (Enabled)	Read/Write
OAT-LO	Outdoor Air Temperature Low (Reset)	Read/Write
OA-VP	Outdoor Air Velocity Pressure	Read
OCC-C	Occupied Command	Read/Write
OCCCLGBIAS	Occupied Cooling Bias	Read
OCCHTGBIAS	Occupied Heating Bias	Read
OCCHTG-SP	Occupied Heating Setpoint	Read/Write
OCC-OVERRIDE	Occupancy Override	Read/Write
OCC-S	Occupancy Status	Read
OCC-SCHEDULE	Occupancy Schedule	Read
OCLG-SP	Occupied Cooling Setpoint	Read/Write
OHTG-SP	Occupied Heating Setpoint	Read/Write
OVER-TMR	Override Timer	Read
PCHWP1-C	Primary Chilled Water Pump 1 Command	Read/Write
PFILTER-A	Pre-filter Alarm	Read
PFILTER-DP	Pre-filter Differential Pressure	Read
PH-O	Preheat Valve Output	Read/Write
PH-SP	Preheat Setpoint	Read/Write
PH-T	Preheat Temperature	Read
PHWP1-C	Primary Hot Water Pump 1 Command	Read/Write

OBJECT NAMES

PHWP1-S	Primary Hot Water Pump 1 Status	Read
PHWP2-S	Primary Hot Water Pump 2 Status	Read
PHWP3-S	Primary Hot Water Pump 3 Status	Read
PHWP4-S	Primary Hot Water Pump 4 Status	Read
PHWP-C	Primary Hot Water Pump Command	Read/Write
PHWP-S	Primary Hot Water Pump Status	Read
PHWR-T	Primary Hot Water Return Temperature	Read
PHWS-T	Primary Hot Water Supply Temperature	Read
Power Fail	Power Failure	Read
RAD-O	Return Air Damper Output	Read/Write
RA-F	Return Airflow Rate	Read
RA-H	Return Air Humidity	Read
RA-P	Return Air Static Pressure	Read
RAPHI-A	Relief Air High Duct Pressure	Read
RAPLO-A	Return Air Low Duct Pressure	Read
RASD-A	Return Air Smoke Detector Alarm	Read
RA-T	Return Air Temperature	Read
RAT-HI-A	High Temperature Alarm	Read
RAT-LO-A	Low Temperature Alarm	Read
RA-VP	Return Air Velocity Pressure	Read
RF-C	Return Fan Command	Read/Write
RF-O	Return Fan Output	Read/Write
RF-S	Return Fan Status	Read
RH-O	Reheat Output	Read/Write
RTU1-C	Rooftop Unit 1 Command	Read/Write
RTU1-S	Rooftop Unit 1 Status	Read
RTU2-C	Rooftop Unit 2 Command	Read/Write
RTU2-S	Rooftop Unit 2 Status	Read
RTU3-C	Rooftop Unit 3 Command	Read/Write
RTU3-S	Rooftop Unit 3 Status	Read
SA-F	Supply Airflow Rate	Read
SAFLOW-SP	Supply Flow Setpoint	Read/Write
SA-P	Supply Air Static Pressure	Read
SASD-A	Supply Air Smoke Detector	Read
SA-T	Supply Air Temperature	Read
SCHW-F	Secondary Chilled Water Flow	Read
SCHWP1-C	Secondary Chilled Water Pump 1 Command	Read/Write
SCHWP1-O	Secondary Chilled Water Pump 1 Output	Read/Write
SCHWP1-S	Secondary Chilled Water Pump 1 Status	Read
SCHWP1-S	Secondary Hot Water Pump 1 Status	Read
SCHWR-T	Secondary CHW Return Temperature	Read
SCHWS-T	Secondary CHW Supply Temperature	Read
SCLG-SP	Standby Cooling Setpoint	Read/Write
SDES-S	Supply Air Damper End Switch Status	Read
SDWN-C	Shutdown Command	Read/Write
SF-A	Supply Fan Alarm	Read
SF-C	Supply Fan Command	Read/Write
SF-FAULT	Supply Fan Fault Cycle	Read
SF-HZ	Supply Fan Output Frequency	Read
SF-KWH	Supply Fan Kilowatt Hours	Read
SF-O	Supply Fan Output	Read/Write
SF-RPM	Supply Fan Motor Speed	Read

OBJECT NAMES

SF-S	Supply Fan Status	Read
SHTG-SP	Standby Heating Setpoint	Read/Write
SHUTDOWN	Shutdown	Read/Write
SHUTDOWN-S	Shutdown Status	Read
SHW-F	Secondary Hot Water Flow	Read
SHWP1-C	Secondary Hot Water Pump 1 Command	Read/Write
SHWP1-O	Secondary Hot Water Pump 1 Output	Read/Write
SHWP1-S	Secondary Hot Water Pump 1 Status	Read
SHWP2-C	Secondary Hot Water Pump 2 Command	Read/Write
SHWP2-O	Secondary Hot Water Pump 2 Output	Read/Write
SHWP2-S	Secondary Hot Water Pump 2 Status	Read
SHWP-ROT	Secondary Hot Water Pump Rotate	Read/Write
SHWR-T	Secondary Hot Water Return Temperature	Read
SHWS-T	Secondary Hot Water Supply Temperature	Read
SMKNEG-A	Smoke Negative Alarm	Read
SMKPOS-A	Smoke Positive Alarm	Read

OBJECT GROUPING

AHU		
SYSTEM-E	System Enable	R/W
OCC-C	Occupied Command	R/W
DA-T	Discharge Air Temperature	R
ADA-SP	Actual Discharge Air Setpoint	R/W
RA-T	Return Air Temperature	R
SF-C	Supply Fan Command	R/W
SF-S	Supply Fan Status	R
SF-O	Supply Fan Output	R/W
SF-HZ	Supply Fan Output Frequency	R
SF-RPM	Supply Fan Motor Speed	R
SF-KWH	Supply Fan Kilowatt Hours	R
SF-FAULT	Supply Fan Fault Code	R
DA-P	Discharge Air Static Pressure	R
ASTATIC-SP	Actual Static Pressure Setpoint	R/W
DTV-O	Dual Temperature Valve Output	R/W
SUMDA-SP	Summer Discharge Air Setpoint	R/W
SUMRA-SP-HL	Summer Return Air Setpoint High Limit	
SUMSTATIC-SP-HL	Summer Static Setpoint High Limit	
SUMRA-SP-LL	Summer Return Air Setpoint Low Limit	
SUMSTATIC-SP-LL	Summer Static Setpoint Low Limit	
WINSTATIC-SP	Winter Static Pressure Setpoint	
WINRA-SP-HL	Winter Return Air Setpoint High Limit	
WINDA-SP-LL	Winter Discharge Air Setpoint Low Limit	
WINRA-SP-LL	Winter Return Air Setpoint Low Limit	
WINDA-SP-HL	Winter Discharge Air Setpoint High Limit	
LL-A	Low Limit Alarm	
HIDAP-A	High Discharge Air Pressure Alarm	
SUMWIN-C	Summer/Winter Command	
OA-T	Outdoor Air Temperature	

AHU-VAV	
SYSTEM-E	System Enable
SYSTEM-M	System Mode
OCC-C	Occupied Command
DPR-O	Damper Output
SA-F	Supply Air Flow
FLOW-SP	Flow Setpoint

OBJECT GROUPING

VAV

SYSTEM-E	System Enable
SYSTEM-M	System Mode
OCC-C	Occupied Command
ZN-T	Zone Temperature
WC-ADJ	Warm/Cool Adjust
SF-C	Supply Fan Command
ACLG-SP	Actual Cooling Setpoint
OCLG-SP	Occupied Cooling Setpoint
AHTG-SP	Actual Heating Setpoint
OHTG-SP	Occupied Heating Setpoint
SA-F	Supply Air Flow
FLOW-SP	Flow Setpoint
DPR-O	Supply Air Damper Output
SUMWIN-C	Summer/Winter Command
FLOWPID-C	Flow PID Command

ERU

SYSTEM-E	System Enable
OCC-C	Occupied Command
DA-T	Discharge Air Temperature
ADA-SP	Actual Discharge Air Setpoint
ERU-E	Energy Recovery Unit Enable
SF-S	Supply Fan Status
EF-S	Exhaust Fan Status
WHEEL-S	Wheel Status
DTV-O	Dual Temperature Valve Output
SUMDA-SP	Summer Discharge Air Setpoint
WINDA-SP	Winter Discharge Air Setpoint
OACLG-LL	Outdoor Air Cooling Low Limit
LL-A	Low Limit Alarm
OAFILTER-S	Outdoor Air Filter Status
EAFILTER-S	Exhaust Air Filter Status
SUMWIN-C	Summer/Winter Command
OA-T	Outdoor Air Temperature

OBJECT GROUPING

DTWS	
SYSTEM-E	System Enable
OA-T	Outdoor Air Temperature
SUM-SW	Summer Switch
WIN-SW	Winter Switch
SUMWIN-S	Summer/Winter Status
DTS-T	Dual Temp Supply Temperature
DTR-T	Dual Temp Return Temperature
DTP-C	Dual Temperature Pump Command
DTP-S	Dual Temperature Pump Status
CH-E	Chiller Enable
CHWP-C	Chiller Water Pump Command
CHWP-S	Chilled Water Pump Status
HWP-C	Hot Water Pump Command
HWP-S	Hot Water Pump Status
HWS-T	Hot Water Supply Temperature
STMVLV-O	Steam Valve Output
AHWS-SP	Actual HW Supply Temperature Setpoint
OA-SP-LL	Outdoor Air Setpoint Low Limit
HW-SP-HL	Hot Water Setpoint High Limit
OA-SP-HL	Outdoor Air Setpoint High Limit
HW-SP-LL	Hot Water Setpoint Low Limit
CHNGOVER-DLY	Change Over Delay

ENERGY MANAGEMENT POINTS	
EMTR	Electric Meter
GMTR	Gas Meter

SECTION 23 11 25

FACILITY GAS PIPING
11/08

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

This specification section applies to gas piping installed within buildings incidental underground piping under building, above ground steel piping and corrugated stainless steel tubing (CSST) both outside (up to 5 feet beyond exterior walls) and within buildings in compliance with "National Fuel Gas Code" NFPA 58 and "Fuel Gas Piping".

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN GAS ASSOCIATION (AGA)

AGA XR0603 (2006; 8th Ed) AGA Plastic Pipe Manual for Gas Service

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI Z21.15/CSA 9.1 (2009; Addenda A 2012, Addenda B 2013; R 2014) Manually Operated Gas Valves for Appliances, Appliance Connector Valves and Hose End Valves

ANSI Z21.18/CSA 6.3 (2007; Addenda A 2010; Addenda B 2012; R 2013) Gas Appliance Pressure Regulators

ANSI Z21.24/CSA 6.10 (2015; Errata 2017) Connectors for Gas Appliances

ANSI Z21.41/CSA 6.9 (2014) Quick-Disconnect Devices for Use with Gas Fuel Appliances

ANSI Z21.80/CSA 6.22 (2011; Addenda A 2012; R 2016) Line Pressure Regulators

AMERICAN PETROLEUM INSTITUTE (API)

API RP 1110 (2013; R 2018) Recommended Practice for the Pressure Testing of Steel Pipelines for the Transportation of Gas, Petroleum Gas, Hazardous Liquids, Highly Volatile Liquids, or Carbon Dioxide

API RP 2003 (2015; 8th Ed) Protection Against Ignitions Arising out of Static, Lightning, and Stray Currents

API RP 2009	(2002; R 2007; 7th Ed) Safe Welding, Cutting, and Hot Work Practices in Refineries, Gasoline Plants, and Petrochemical Plants
API Std 598	(2009) Valve Inspecting and Testing
API Std 607	(2016) Fire Test for Quarter-turn Valves and Valves Equipped with Non-metallic Seats

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME A13.1	(2015) Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems
ASME B1.1	(2003; R 2018) Unified Inch Screw Threads (UN and UNR Thread Form)
ASME B1.20.1	(2013) Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)
ASME B16.11	(2016) Forged Fittings, Socket-Welding and Threaded
ASME B16.3	(2016) Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings, Classes 150 and 300
ASME B16.33	(2012; R 2017) Manually Operated Metallic Gas Valves for Use in Gas Piping Systems Up to 125 psi, (Sizes NPS 1/2 - NPS 2)
ASME B16.39	(2014) Standard for Malleable Iron Threaded Pipe Unions; Classes 150, 250, and 300
ASME B16.5	(2017) Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings NPS 1/2 Through NPS 24 Metric/Inch Standard
ASME B16.9	(2018) Factory-Made Wrought Buttwelding Fittings
ASME B18.2.1	(2012; Errata 2013) Square and Hex Bolts and Screws (Inch Series)
ASME B18.2.2	(2015) Nuts for General Applications: Machine Screw Nuts, Hex, Square, Hex Flange, and Coupling Nuts (Inch Series)
ASME B31.8	(2018; Supplement 2018) Gas Transmission and Distribution Piping Systems
ASME B31.9	(2017) Building Services Piping
ASME BPVC SEC IX	(2017; Errata 2018) BPVC Section IX-Welding, Brazing and Fusing Qualifications
ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1	(2017) BPVC Section VIII-Rules for Construction of Pressure Vessels Division 1

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM 01.01	(2018) Steel - Piping, Tubing, Fittings
ASTM A193/A193M	(2017) Standard Specification for Alloy-Steel and Stainless Steel Bolting Materials for High-Temperature Service and Other Special Purpose Applications
ASTM A194/A194M	(2018) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel, Alloy Steel, and Stainless Steel Nuts for Bolts for High-Pressure or High-Temperature Service, or Both
ASTM A513/A513M	(2015) Standard Specification for Electric-Resistance-Welded Carbon and Alloy Steel Mechanical Tubing
ASTM A53/A53M	(2018) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless

CSA GROUP (CSA)

ANSI LC 1/CSA 6.26	(2018) Fuel Gas Piping Systems Using Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST)
CGA 3.11-M88	(2015) Lever Operated Pressure Lubricated Plug Type Gas Shut-Off Valves

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-25	(2013) Standard Marking System for Valves, Fittings, Flanges and Unions
MSS SP-58	(2009) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design and Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 54	(2018) National Fuel Gas Code
NFPA 58	(2017; ERTA 17-1) Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code
NFPA 70	(2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2; TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6; TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10; TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA 17-14) National Electrical Code

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

MIL-STD-101	(2014; Rev C) Color Code for Pipelines and for Compressed Gas Cylinders

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

49 CFR 192

Transportation of Natural and Other Gas by
Pipeline: Minimum Federal Safety Standards

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL FLAMMABLE & COMBUSTIBLE

(2012) Flammable and Combustible Liquids
and Gases Equipment Directory

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

The gas piping system includes liquid petroleum piping and appurtenances from point of connection with supply system, as indicated, to gas operated equipment within the facility. Submit operation and maintenance data in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA, in three separate packages. Section 23 03 00.00 20 BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS applies to this section, with additions and modifications specified herein. Provide cathodically protected insulating joints connecting aboveground piping from the meter to the building, with lightning arrestors or zinc grounding cells conforming to API RP 2003, installed where indicated.

1.3.1 Gas Facility System and Equipment Operation

Include shop drawings showing piping layout, locations of system valves, gas line markers and cathodic protection system; step-by-step procedures for system start up, operation and shutdown (index system components and equipment to the system drawings); isolation procedures including valve operation to shutdown or isolate each section of the system (index valves to the system maps and provide separate procedures for normal operation and emergency shutdown if required to be different). Submit Data package No. 4.

1.3.2 Gas Facility System Maintenance

Include maintenance procedures and frequency for system and equipment; identification of pipe materials and manufacturer by locations, pipe repair procedures, and jointing procedures at transitions to other piping material or material from a different manufacturer. Submit Data Package No.4.

1.3.3 Gas Facility Equipment Maintenance

Include identification of valves, shut-offs, disconnects, and other equipment by materials, manufacturer, vendor identification and location; maintenance procedures and recommended tool kits for valves and equipment; recommended repair methods (i.e., field repair, factory repair, or replacement) for each valve and piece of equipment; and preventive maintenance procedures, possible failure modes and troubleshooting guide. Submit Data Package No. 3.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Gas Piping System; G

SD-03 Product Data

Pipe and Fittings; G

Gas Equipment Connectors; G

Gas Piping System; G

Pipe Coating Materials; G

Pressure Regulators; G

Risers; G

Transition Fittings; G

Valves; G

Warning and Identification Tape; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Testing; G

Pressure Tests; G

Pressure Tests for Liquified Petroleum Gas; G

Test with Gas; G

SD-07 Certificates

Welders Procedures and Qualifications; G

Assigned Number, Letter, or Symbol; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

PE Pipe and Fittings; G

Pipe Coating Materials; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Gas Facility System and Equipment Operation; G

Gas Facility System Maintenance; G

Gas Facility Equipment Maintenance; G

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Submit manufacturer's descriptive data and installation instructions for approval for compression-type mechanical joints used in joining dissimilar materials and for insulating joints. Mark all valves, flanges and fittings

in accordance with [MSS SP-25](#).

1.5.1 Welding Qualifications

- a. Weld piping in accordance with qualified procedures using performance qualified welders and welding operators in accordance with [API RP 2009](#), [ASME BPVC SEC IX](#), and [ASME B31.9](#). Welding procedures qualified by others, and welders and welding operators qualified by another employer may be accepted as permitted by [ASME B31.9](#). Notify the Contracting Officer at least 24 hours in advance of tests, and perform at the work site if practicable.
- b. Submit a certified copy of [welders procedures and qualifications](#) metal and PE in conformance with [ASME B31.9](#) for each welder and welding operator. Submit the [assigned number, letter, or symbol](#) that will be used in identifying the work of each welder to the Contracting Officer.

1.5.2 Jointing Thermoplastic and Fiberglass Piping

Perform all jointing of piping using qualified joiners and qualified procedures in accordance with [AGA XR0603](#). Furnish the Contracting Officer with a copy of qualified procedures and list of and identification symbols of qualified joiners. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions and manufacturer's visual joint appearance chart, including all [PE pipe and fittings](#).

1.5.3 Shop Drawings

Submit drawings for complete [Gas Piping System](#), within 30 days of contract award, showing location, size and all branches of pipeline; location of all required shutoff valves; and instructions necessary for the installation of [gas equipment connectors](#) and supports.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.6.1 Plastic Pipe

Handle, transport, and store plastic pipe and fittings carefully. Plug or cap [pipe and fittings](#) ends during transportation or storage to minimize dirt and moisture entry. Do not subject piping to abrasion or concentrated external loads. Discard PE pipe sections and fittings that have been damaged.

1.6.2 CSST Tubing

Handle, transport and store CSST tubing on the wooden spool or shipping container provided by the manufacturer. Insure tubing ends are capped during transportation and storage to minimize dirt and moisture entry. Discard any tubing segment and fitting that has been damaged.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

Provide materials and equipment which are the standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of the products and that essentially duplicate items that have been in satisfactory use for at least 2 years prior to bid opening. Asbestos or products containing asbestos are not allowed. Submit catalog data and installation instructions for pipe,

valves, all related system components, pipe coating materials and application procedures. Conform to NFPA 58 and with requirements specified herein. Provide supply piping to appliances or equipment at least as large as the inlets thereof.

2.2 GAS PIPING SYSTEM AND FITTINGS

2.2.1 Steel Pipe, Joints, and Fittings

- a. Pipe: Black carbon steel in accordance with ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 40, threaded ends for sizes 2 inches and smaller; otherwise, plain end beveled for butt welding.
- b. Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, black malleable iron.
- c. Socket-Welding Fittings: ASME B16.11, forged steel.
- d. Butt-Welding Fittings: ASME B16.9, with backing rings of compatible material.
- e. Unions: ASME B16.39, black malleable iron.
- f. Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5 steel flanges or convoluted steel flanges conforming to ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1, with flange faces having integral grooves of rectangular cross sections which afford containment for self-energizing gasket material.

2.2.2 Steel Tubing, Joints and Fittings

Provide steel tubing conforming to ASTM 01.01, and ASTM A513/A513M, with tubing joints made up with gas tubing fittings recommended by the tubing manufacturer.

2.2.3 Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing, Fittings and Accessories

Provide corrugated stainless steel tubing conforming to ANSI LC 1/CSA 6.26 (austenitic stainless steel of series 300) with tubing joints made with special mechanical fittings as supplied by the tubing manufacturer.

2.2.3.1 Tubing

Austenitic stainless alloy of series 300 with polyethylene jacket/coating in accordance with ANSI LC 1/CSA 6.26 for sizes 3/8-inch through 2-inch

2.2.3.2 Mechanical Fittings

Copper alloy with one end matched to the corrugated tubing and one end with NPT threads in accordance with ASME B1.20.1

2.2.3.3 Striker Plates

Hardened steel designed to protect tubing from mechanical damage in accordance with ANSI LC 1/CSA 6.26

2.2.3.4 Manifolds

Malleable iron, steel or copper alloy with threaded connections/ports in accordance with ASME B1.20.1

2.2.4 Sealants for Steel Pipe Threaded Joints

Provide joint sealing compound as listed in [UL FLAMMABLE & COMBUSTIBLE](#), Class 20 or less. For taping, use tetrafluoroethylene tape conforming to [UL FLAMMABLE & COMBUSTIBLE](#).

2.2.5 Warning and Identification

Provide pipe flow markings, [warning and identification tape](#), and metal tags as required.

2.2.6 Pipe Threads

Provide pipe threads conforming to [ASME B1.20.1](#).

2.2.7 Escutcheons

Provide chromium-plated steel or chromium-plated brass escutcheons, either one piece or split pattern, held in place by internal spring tension or set screw.

2.2.8 Gas [Transition Fittings](#)

- a. Provide steel to plastic (PE) designed for steel-to-plastic with tapping tee or sleeve conforming to [AGA XR0603](#) requirements for transitions fittings. Coat or wrap exposed steel pipe with heavy plastic coating.
- b. Provide lever operated pressure lubricated plug type gas shut-off valve conforming to [CGA 3.11-M88](#).

2.2.9 Insulating Pipe Joints

2.2.9.1 Insulating Joint Material

Provide insulating joint material between flanged or threaded metallic pipe systems where shown to control galvanic or electrical action.

2.2.9.2 Threaded Pipe Joints

Provide threaded pipe joints of steel body nut type dielectric unions with insulating gaskets.

2.2.10 Flexible Connectors

- a. Provide flexible connectors for connecting gas utilization equipment to building gas piping conforming to [ANSI Z21.24/CSA 6.10](#) or [ANSI Z21.41/CSA 6.9](#) for quick disconnect devices
- b. Do not install the flexible connector through the appliance cabinet face. Provide rigid metallic pipe and fittings to extend the final connection beyond the cabinet, except when appliance is provided with an external connection point.

2.3 [VALVES](#)

Provide lockable shutoff or service isolation valves conforming to the following:

2.3.1 Valves 2 Inches and Smaller

Provide valves 2 inches and smaller conforming to ASME B16.33 of materials and manufacture compatible with system materials used.

2.4 RISERS

Provide manufacturer's standard riser, transition from plastic to steel pipe with 7 to 12 mil thick epoxy coating. Use swaged gas-tight construction with O-ring seals, metal insert, and protective sleeve. Provide remote bolt-on or bracket or wall-mounted riser supports.

2.5 PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

Provide pipe hangers and supports conforming to MSS SP-58.

2.6 LINE AND APPLIANCE REGULATORS AND SHUTOFF VALVES

Provide regulators conforming to ANSI Z21.18/CSA 6.3 for appliances and ANSI Z21.80/CSA 6.22 for line pressure regulators. Provide shutoff valves conforming to ANSI Z21.15/CSA 9.1 for manually controlled gas shutoff valves.

2.7 BOLTING (BOLTS AND NUTS)

Stainless steel bolting; ASTM A193/A193M, Grade B8M or B8MA, Type 316, for bolts; and ASTM A194/A194M, Grade 8M, Type 316, for nuts. Dimensions of bolts, studs, and nuts must conform with ASME B18.2.1 and ASME B18.2.2 with coarse threads conforming to ASME B1.1, with Class 2A fit for bolts and studs and Class 2B fit for nuts. Bolts or bolt-studs must extend through the nuts and may have reduced shanks of a diameter not less than the diameter at root of threads. Bolts must have American Standard regular square or heavy hexagon heads; nuts must be American Standard heavy semifinished hexagonal.

2.8 GASKETS

Fluorinated elastomer, compatible with flange faces.

2.9 IDENTIFICATION FOR ABOVEGROUND PIPING

MIL-STD-101 for legends and type and size of characters. For pipes 3/4 inch od and larger, provide printed legends to identify contents of pipes and arrows to show direction of flow. Color code label backgrounds to signify levels of hazard. Make labels of plastic sheet with pressure-sensitive adhesive suitable for the intended application. For pipes smaller than 3/4 inch od, provide brass identification tags 1 1/2 inches in diameter with legends in depressed black-filled characters.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy or areas of conflict before performing the work.

3.2 EXCAVATION AND BACKFILLING

Provide required excavation, backfilling, and compaction as specified in

Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL.

3.3 GAS PIPING SYSTEM

Provide a gas piping system from the point of delivery, defined as the outlet of the meter set assembly, to the connections to each gas utilization device that is in compliance with NFPA 54 and NFPA 58.

3.3.1 Protection and Cleaning of Materials and Components

Protect equipment, pipe, and tube openings by closing with caps or plugs during installation. At the completion of all work, thoroughly clean the entire system.

3.3.2 Workmanship and Defects

Piping, tubing and fittings must be clear and free of cutting burrs and defects in structure or threading and must be thoroughly brushed and chip-and scale-blown. Repair of defects in piping, tubing or fittings is not allowed; replace defective items when found.

3.4 PROTECTIVE COVERING

3.4.1 Underground Metallic Pipe

Protect buried metallic piping and tubing from corrosion by either: (1) applying protective coatings as specified in Section 33 51 15 NATURAL-GAS / LIQUID PETROLEUM GAS DISTRIBUTION; (2) encasement in a water tight plastic conduit; or (3) encasement in a protective system designed and listed by the manufacturer for this application. When dissimilar metals are joined underground, use gastight insulating fittings.

3.4.2 Aboveground Metallic Piping Systems

3.4.2.1 Ferrous Surfaces

Touch up shop primed surfaces with ferrous metal primer. Solvent clean surfaces that have not been shop primed. Mechanically clean surfaces that contain loose rust, loose mill scale and other foreign substances by power wire brushing and prime with ferrous metal primer or vinyl type wash coat. Finish primed surfaces with two coats of exterior oil paint or vinyl paint.

3.4.2.2 Nonferrous Surfaces

Except for aluminum alloy pipe, do not paint nonferrous surfaces. Paint surfaces of aluminum alloy pipe and fittings to protect against external corrosion where they contact masonry, plaster, insulation, or are subject to repeated wettings by such liquids as water, detergents or sewage. Solvent-clean the surfaces and treat with vinyl type wash coat. Apply a first coat of aluminum paint and a second coat of alkyd gloss enamel or silicone alkyd copolymer enamel.

3.5 INSTALLATION

Install the gas system in conformance with the manufacturer's recommendations and applicable provisions of NFPA 58 and AGA XR0603, and as indicated. Perform all pipe cutting without damage to the pipe, with an approved type of mechanical cutter, unless otherwise authorized. Use wheel cutters where practicable. On steel pipe 6 inches and larger, an approved

gas cutting and beveling machine may be used. Cut thermoplastic and fiberglass pipe in accordance with [AGA XR0603](#).

3.5.1 Metallic Piping Installation

Bury underground piping a minimum of [18 inches](#) below grade. Make changes in direction of piping with fittings only; mitering or notching pipe to form elbows and tees or other similar type construction is not permitted. Branch connection may be made with either tees or forged branch outlet fittings. Provide branch outlet fittings which are forged, flared for improvement of flow where attached to the run, and reinforced against external strains. Do not use aluminum alloy pipe in exterior locations or underground.

3.5.2 Metallic Tubing Installation

Install metallic tubing using gas tubing fittings approved by the tubing manufacturer. CSST gas piping systems must be installed by contractors who have completed the manufacturer's training program as indicated on a certification card. Make branch connections with tees. Prepare all tubing ends with tools designed for that purpose. Do not use aluminum alloy tubing in exterior locations or underground. Maintain electrical continuity of gas piping system in accordance with [NFPA 54](#) and [NFPA 58](#), paragraph entitled 'Electrical Bonding and Grounding'.

3.5.3 Connections Between Metallic and Plastic Piping

Connections between metallic and plastic piping are only allowed outside, underground, and with approved transition fittings.

3.5.4 Concealed Piping in Buildings

Do not use combinations of fittings (unions, tubing fittings, running threads, right- and left-hand couplings, bushings, and swing joints) to conceal piping within buildings.

3.5.4.1 Piping and Tubing in Partitions

Locate concealed piping and tubing in hollow, rather than solid, partitions. Protect tubing passing through walls or partitions against physical damage both during and after construction, and provide appropriate safety markings and labels. Provide protection of concealed pipe and tubing in accordance with [ANSI LC 1/CSA 6.26](#).

3.5.5 Aboveground Piping

Run aboveground piping as straight as practicable along the alignment and elevation indicated, with a minimum of joints, and separately supported from other piping system and equipment. Install exposed horizontal piping no farther than [6 inches](#) from nearest parallel wall and at an elevation which prevents standing, sitting, or placement of objects on the piping.

3.5.6 Final Gas Connections

Unless otherwise specified, make final connections with rigid metallic pipe and fittings. Make final connections to kitchen ranges using flexible connectors not less than [40 inch](#) long. Provide accessible gas shutoff valve and coupling for each gas equipment item.

3.6 PIPE JOINTS

Design and install pipe joints to effectively sustain the longitudinal pull-out forces caused by contraction of the piping or superimposed loads.

3.6.1 Threaded Metallic Joints

Provide threaded joints in metallic pipe with tapered threads evenly cut and made with UL approved graphite joint sealing compound for gas service or tetrafluoroethylene tape applied to the male threads only. Threaded joints up to 1-1/2 inches in diameter may be made with approved tetrafluoroethylene tape. Threaded joints up to 2 inches in diameter may be made with approved joint sealing compound. After cutting and before threading, ream pipe and remove all burrs. Caulking of threaded joints to stop or prevent leaks is not permitted.

3.6.2 Welded Metallic Joints

Conform beveling, alignment, heat treatment, and inspection of welds to NFPA 54. Remove weld defects and make repairs to the weld, or remove the weld joints entirely and reweld. After filler metal has been removed from its original package, protect and store so that its characteristics or welding properties are not affected adversely. Do not use electrodes that have been wetted or have lost any of their coating.

3.6.3 Flared Metallic Tubing Joints

Make flared joints in metallic tubing with special tools recommended by the tubing manufacturer. Use flared joints only in systems constructed from nonferrous pipe and tubing, when experience or tests have demonstrated that the joint is suitable for the conditions, and when adequate provisions are made in the design to prevent separation of the joints. Do not use metallic ball sleeve compression-type tubing fittings for tubing joints.

3.6.4 Solder or Brazed Joints

Make all joints in metallic tubing and fittings with materials and procedures recommended by the tubing supplier. Braze joints with material having a melting point above 1000 degrees F, containing no phosphorous.

3.6.5 Joining Thermoplastic or Fiberglass to Metallic Piping or Tubing

When compression type mechanical joints are used, provide gasket material in the fittings compatible with the plastic piping and with the gas in the system. Use an internal tubular rigid stiffener in conjunction with the fitting, flush with end of the pipe or tubing, extending at least to the outside end of the compression fitting when installed. Remove all rough or sharp edges from stiffener. Do not force fit stiffener in the plastic. Split tubular stiffeners are not allowed.

3.7 PIPE SLEEVES

Provide pipes passing through concrete or masonry walls or concrete floors or roofs with pipe sleeves fitted into place at the time of construction. Do not install sleeves in structural members except where indicated or approved. Make all rectangular and square openings as detailed. Extend each sleeve through its respective wall, floor or roof, and cut flush with each surface, except in mechanical room floors not located on grade where clamping flanges or riser pipe clamps are used. Extend sleeves in

mechanical room floors above grade at least 4 inches above finish floor. Unless otherwise indicated, use sleeves large enough to provide a minimum clearance of 1/4 inch all around the pipe. Provide steel pipe for sleeves in bearing walls, waterproofing membrane floors, and wet areas. Provide sleeves in nonbearing walls, floors, or ceilings of steel pipe, galvanized sheet metal with lock-type longitudinal seam, or moisture-resistant fiber or plastic. For penetrations of fire walls, fire partitions and floors which are not on grade, seal the annular space between the pipe and sleeve with fire-stopping material and sealant that meet the requirement of Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

3.8 PIPES PENETRATING WATERPROOFING MEMBRANES

Install pipes penetrating waterproofing membranes as specified in Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.

3.9 FIRE SEAL

Fire seal all penetrations of fire rated partitions, walls and floors in accordance with Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

3.10 ESCUTCHEONS

Provide escutcheons for all finished surfaces where gas piping passes through floors, walls, or ceilings except in boiler, utility, or equipment rooms.

3.11 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS

Provide drips, grading of the lines, freeze protection, and branch outlet locations as shown and conforming to the requirements of NFPA 58.

3.12 BUILDING STRUCTURE

Do not weaken any building structure by the installation of any gas piping. Do not cut or notch beams, joists or columns. Attach piping supports to metal decking. Do not attach supports to the underside of concrete filled floors or concrete roof decks unless approved by the Contracting Officer.

3.13 PIPING SYSTEM SUPPORTS

Support gas piping systems in buildings with pipe hooks, metal pipe straps, bands or hangers suitable for the size of piping or tubing. Do not support any gas piping system by other piping. Conform spacing of supports in gas piping and tubing installations to the requirements of NFPA 58. Conform the selection and application of supports in gas piping and tubing installations to the requirements of MSS SP-58. In the support of multiple pipe runs on a common base member, use a clip or clamp where each pipe crosses the base support member. Spacing of the base support members is not to exceed the hanger and support spacing required for any of the individual pipes in the multiple pipe run. Rigidly connect the clips or clamps to the common base member. Provide a clearance of 1/8 inch between the pipe and clip or clamp for all piping which may be subjected to thermal expansion.

3.14 ELECTRICAL BONDING AND GROUNDING

Provide a gas piping system within the building that is electrically

continuous and bonded to a grounding electrode as required by NFPA 54, NFPA 58, and NFPA 70.

3.15 SHUTOFF VALVE

Install the main gas shutoff valve controlling the gas piping system to be easily accessible for operation, as indicated, protected from physical damage, and marked with a metal tag to clearly identify the piping system controlled. Install valves approximately at locations indicated. Orient stems vertically, with operators on top, or horizontally. Provide stop valve on service branch at connection to main and shut-off valve on riser outside of building.

3.16 LINE AND APPLIANCE PRESSURE REGULATORS

Install line pressure regulators and appliance regulators in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements and in accordance with NFPA 54 and NFPA 58. Install each regulator in an accessible location and install shutoff valves ahead of each line and appliance regulator to allow for maintenance. Where vent limiting devices are not included in the regulators, install a vent pipe to the exterior of the building. Terminate all service regulator vents and relief vents in the outside air in rain and insect resistant fittings. Locate the open end of the vent where gas can escape freely into the atmosphere, away from any openings into the building and above areas subject to flooding.

3.17 GAS SERVICE INSTALLATION

Gas service line, service regulator and gas company meter must be installed in accordance with Section 33 51 15 NATURAL-GAS / LIQUID PETROLEUM GAS DISTRIBUTION. Installations must be in accordance with 49 CFR 192 and ASME B31.8. Contractor must submit and use only tested and approved work procedures. Contractor must use only welders and jointers who have been recently qualified by training and test for joining and installing the gas pipe material used on this job. The finished product must be inspected by a person qualified to inspect joints made by the particular procedures used to make joints.

3.18 TESTING

Submit test procedures and reports in booklet form tabulating test and measurements performed; dated after award of this contract, and stating the Contractor's name and address, the project name and location, and a list of the specific requirements which are being certified. Test entire gas piping system to ensure that it is gastight prior to putting into service. Prior to testing, purge the system, clean, and clear all foreign material. Test each joint with an approved gas detector, soap and water, or an equivalent nonflammable solution. Inspect and test each valve in conformance with API Std 598 and API Std 607. Complete testing before any work is covered, enclosed, or concealed, and perform with due regard for the safety of employees and the public during the test. Install bulkheads, anchorage and bracing suitably designed to resist test pressures if necessary, and as directed and or approved by the Contracting Officer. Do not use oxygen as a testing medium.

3.18.1 Pressure Tests

Submit test procedures and reports in booklet form tabulating test and measurements performed; dated after award of this contract, and stating the

Contractor's name and address, the project name and location, and a list of the specific requirements which are being certified. Before appliances are connected, test by filling the piping systems with air or an inert gas to withstand a minimum pressure as specified in NFPA 58 without showing any drop in pressure. Do not use Oxygen for test. Measure pressure with a mercury manometer, slope gauge, or an equivalent device calibrated to be read in increments of not greater than 0.1 pound. Isolate the source of pressure before the pressure tests are made.

3.18.2 Pressure Tests for Liquified Petroleum Gas

Pressure test system as described above. When appliances are connected to the piping system, use fuel gas for testing appliances to withstand a pressure of not less than 10.0 inches nor more than 14.0 inches water column (0.36 nor more than 0.51 pounds per square inch) for a period of not less than 10 minutes without showing any drop in pressure. Measure pressure with a water manometer or an equivalent device calibrated to be read in increments of not greater than 0.1 inch water column. Isolate the source of pressure before the pressure tests are made.

3.18.3 Test With Gas

Before turning on gas under pressure into any piping, close all openings from which gas can escape. Immediately after turning on the gas, check the piping system for leakage by using a laboratory-certified gas meter, an appliance orifice, a manometer, or equivalent device. Conform all testing to the requirements of NFPA 58. If leakage is recorded, shut off the gas supply, repair the leak, and repeat the tests until all leaks have been stopped.

3.18.4 Purging

After testing is completed, and before connecting any appliances, fully purge all gas piping. LPG piping tested using fuel gas with appliances connected does not require purging. Conform testing procedures to API RP 1110. Do not purge piping into the combustion chamber of an appliance. Do not purge the open end of piping systems into confined spaces or areas where there are ignition sources unless the safety precautions recommended in NFPA 58 are followed.

3.18.5 Labor, Materials and Equipment

Furnish all labor, materials and equipment necessary for conducting the testing and purging.

3.19 PIPE COLOR CODE MARKING

Provide color code marking of piping as specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS, conforming to ASME A13.1.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 23 21 13.00 20

LOW TEMPERATURE WATER (LTW) HEATING SYSTEM

04/06

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS Z49.1 (2012) Safety in Welding and Cutting and Allied Processes

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME B1.1 (2003; R 2018) Unified Inch Screw Threads (UN and UNR Thread Form)

ASME B1.20.1 (2013) Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)

ASME B16.1 (2015) Gray Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings Classes 25, 125, and 250

ASME B16.11 (2016) Forged Fittings, Socket-Welding and Threaded

ASME B16.18 (2018) Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings

ASME B16.21 (2016) Nonmetallic Flat Gaskets for Pipe Flanges

ASME B16.22 (2013) Standard for Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings

ASME B16.24 (2011) Cast Copper Alloy Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: Classes 150, 300, 600, 900, 1500, and 2500

ASME B16.3 (2016) Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings, Classes 150 and 300

ASME B16.34 (2017) Valves - Flanged, Threaded and Welding End

ASME B16.39 (2014) Standard for Malleable Iron Threaded Pipe Unions; Classes 150, 250, and 300

ASME B16.5 (2017) Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings NPS 1/2 Through NPS 24 Metric/Inch Standard

ASME B16.9 (2018) Factory-Made Wrought Buttwelding

Fittings

ASME B18.2.2	(2015) Nuts for General Applications: Machine Screw Nuts, Hex, Square, Hex Flange, and Coupling Nuts (Inch Series)
ASME B31.9	(2017) Building Services Piping
ASME B40.100	(2013) Pressure Gauges and Gauge Attachments
ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1	(2017) BPVC Section VIII-Rules for Construction of Pressure Vessels Division 1

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A123/A123M	(2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A194/A194M	(2018) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel, Alloy Steel, and Stainless Steel Nuts for Bolts for High-Pressure or High-Temperature Service, or Both
ASTM A307	(2014; E 2017) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength
ASTM A53/A53M	(2018) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
ASTM B32	(2008; R 2014) Standard Specification for Solder Metal
ASTM B88	(2016) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube

COPPER DEVELOPMENT ASSOCIATION (CDA)

CDA A4015	(2016; 14/17) Copper Tube Handbook

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS
INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-110	(2010) Ball Valves Threaded, Socket-Welding, Solder Joint, Grooved and Flared Ends
MSS SP-58	(2009) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design and Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation
MSS SP-67	(2017; Errata 1 2017) Butterfly Valves
MSS SP-69	(2003; Notice 2012) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Selection and Application (ANSI Approved American National Standard)

MSS SP-70	(2011) Gray Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends
MSS SP-72	(2010a) Ball Valves with Flanged or Butt-Welding Ends for General Service
MSS SP-80	(2013) Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle and Check Valves
MSS SP-85	(2011) Gray Iron Globe & Angle Valves Flanged and Threaded Ends

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

CID A-A-1689	(Rev B) Tape, Pressure-Sensitive Adhesive, (Plastic Film)
CID A-A-59617	(Basic, Notice 1) Unions, Brass or Bronze, Threaded Pipe Connections and Solder-Joint Tube Connections
FS WW-S-2739	(Basic; Notice 1; Notice 2) Strainers, Sediment: Pipeline, Water, Air, Gas, Oil, or Steam

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR 1910.144	Safety Color Code for Marking Physical Hazards
29 CFR 1910.219	Mechanical Power Transmission Apparatus

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 23 03 00.00 20 BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS applies to this section with additions and modifications specified herein.

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Except as specified otherwise, equipment and piping components shall be suitable for use in low temperature water heating system. Except as modified herein, the pressure temperature limitations shall be as specified in the referenced standards and specifications. Pressures in this specification are pressures in pounds per square inch above atmospheric pressure, and temperatures are in degrees Fahrenheit (F).

1.3.1 Hot Water Heating System

Submit plan, elevations, dimensions, capacities, and ratings. Include the following:

- a. Unit heaters
- b. Valves
- c. Expansion tanks
- d. Air separating tank

e. Boilers

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Hot water heating system

SD-03 Product Data

Expansion tanks

External air separation tanks

Hot water heating pipe

SD-06 Test Reports

Hydrostatic test of piping system

Auxiliary equipment and accessory tests

Submit test reports in accordance with the paragraph entitled "Field Quality Control."

SD-07 Certificates

Welding procedures

Welder's qualifications

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 Standard Commercial Product for Terminal Units

Terminal units provided shall comply with features called out in this specification and shall be the manufacturer's standard commercial product. Additional or better features which are not prohibited by this specification but which are a part of the manufacturer's standard commercial product, shall be included in the terminal units being furnished. A standard commercial product is a product which has been sold or is currently being offered for sale, on the commercial market through advertisements or manufacturer's catalogs, or brochures. Provide Institute of Boiler and Radiator Manufacturer (IBR) or Steel Boiler Institute (SBI) rating for required capacity.

1.5.2 Welding

1.5.2.1 Welding Procedures

Before performing welding, submit three copies of welding procedure

specification for all metals to be used in the work, together with proof of welder's qualification as outlines in [ASME B31.9](#).

1.5.2.2 Welder's Qualifications

Before welder or operator performs welding, submit three copies of Welder's Performance Qualification Record in conformance with [ASME B31.9](#) showing that the welder was tested under the approved procedure specification submitted by the Contractor. In addition, submit each welder's assigned number, letter, or symbol used to identify the work of the welder.

1.5.2.3 Identification of Welder's Work

Ensure that each welder's assigned number, letter or symbol is affixed immediately upon completion of the weld. To welders making defective welds after passing a qualification test, give a requalification test. Upon failing to pass the test, do not permit welder to work in this contract.

1.5.2.4 Previous Qualifications

Welding procedures, welders, and welding operators previously qualified by test may be accepted for this contract without requalification subject to the approval and provided that all the conditions specified in [ASME B31.9](#) are met before a procedure can be used.

1.5.3 Brazing and Soldering

1.5.3.1 Brazing Procedure

[ASME B31.9](#). Brazing procedure for joints shall be as outlined in [CDA A4015](#).

1.5.3.2 Soldering, Soldering Preparation, and Procedures for Joints

[ASME B31.9](#) and as outlined in [CDA A4015](#).

1.6 SAFETY STANDARDS

1.6.1 Welding

Safety in welding and cutting of pipe shall conform to [AWS Z49.1](#).

1.6.2 Guards

Couplings, motor shafts, gears and other moving parts shall be guarded, in accordance with OSHA [29 CFR 1910.219](#). Guards shall be cast iron or expanded metal. Guard parts shall be rigid and removable without disassembling the guarded unit.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPE AND FITTINGS

2.1.1 Hot Water Heating Pipe (Supply and Return)

[ASTM A53/A53M](#) electric resistance welded or seamless Schedule 40 steel pipe or [ASTM B88](#) Type L hard drawn Copper tubing.

2.1.2 Fittings

Provide fittings compatible with the pipe being provided and shall conform to the following requirements.

2.1.2.1 Steel or Malleable Iron Pipe

Sizes 1/8 to 2 inches. ASME B16.11 steel socket welding or screwed type or ASME B16.3 for screwed type malleable iron fittings.

2.1.2.2 Steel, Cast Iron, or Bronze

Sizes 2 1/2 inches and above. Steel fitting butt welding type ASME B16.9 or ASME B16.5 flanged type. Cast iron fittings flanged type ASME B16.1. Bronze fittings up to 8 inch size flanged type ASME B16.24.

2.1.2.3 Fittings for Copper Tubing

ASME B16.18 cast bronze solder joint type or ASME B16.22 wrought copper solder joint type. Fittings may be flared or compression joint type.

2.1.3 Unions

2.1.3.1 Steel Pipe

Provide ASME B16.39, malleable iron unions, threaded connections.

2.1.3.2 Copper Tubing

Provide CID A-A-59617, bronze unions, solder joint end.

2.1.3.3 Dielectric Union

Provide insulated union with galvanized steel female pipe-threaded end and a copper solder joint end conforming with ASME B16.39, Class 1, dimensional, strength and pressure requirements. Union shall have a water-impervious insulation barrier capable of limiting galvanic current to one percent of the short-circuit current in a corresponding bimetallic joint. When dry, insulation barrier shall be able to withstand a 600-volt breakdown test.

2.1.4 Flanges

Remove raised faces when used with flanges having a flat face.

2.1.4.1 Steel Flanges

ASME B16.5 forged steel, welding type.

2.1.4.2 Cast Iron Screwed Flanges

ASME B16.1.

2.1.4.3 Bronze Screwed Flanges

ASME B16.24.

2.1.5 Drains and Overflows

2.1.5.1 Steel Pipe

ASTM A53/A53M, Electric resistance welded or Seamless Schedule 40, Malleable iron or forged steel fittings, screwed or welded joints.

2.1.5.2 Copper Tubing

ASTM B88, Type L, hard drawn, cast brass or wrought copper fittings, Grade Sb5 solder joints.

2.1.6 Valves

Valves shall have rising stems and shall open when turned counterclockwise.

2.1.6.1 Gate Valves

- a. Bronze Gate Valves: MSS SP-80, 2 inches and smaller, wedge disc, inside screw type not less than Class 150. Use solder joint ends with copper tubing.
- b. Steel Gate Valves: ASME B16.34, provide with open stem and yoke type with solid wedge or flexible wedge disc and heat and corrosion-resistant steel trim.
- c. Cast Iron Gate Valves: MSS SP-70, 2 1/2 inches and larger, open stem and yoke type with bronze trim.

2.1.6.2 Globe and Angle Valves

- a. Bronze Globe and Angle Valves: MSS SP-80, 2 inches and smaller, Class 200, except use Class 150 with solder ends for copper tubing. Valves shall have renewable seat and discs except solder end valves which shall have integral seats.
- b. Steel Globe and Angle Valves: ASME B16.34, provide with heat and corrosion-resistant trim.
- c. Cast Iron Globe and Angle Valves: MSS SP-85, 2 1/2 inches and larger, with bronze trim, tapped drains and brass plug.

2.1.6.3 Check Valves

- a. Bronze Check Valves: MSS SP-80, 2 inches and smaller, regrinding swing check type, Class 200.
- b. Steel Swing Check Valves: ASME B16.34, regrinding swing check type, Class 200.
 - (1) Swing check valves shall have bolted caps.
 - (2) Steel Lift check valves 2 inches and smaller shall have bolted caps. Lift check valves 2 1/2 inches and larger shall have pressure seal caps.
- c. Cast Iron Check Valves: ASME B16.34, 2 1/2 inches and larger, bronze trim, non-slam, eccentric disc type for centrifugal pump discharge service.

2.1.6.4 Ball Valves

Flanged or butt-welding ends ball valve shall conform to **MSS SP-72**, bronze. Threaded, socket-welding, solder joint, grooved and flared ends shall conform to **MSS SP-110**.

2.1.6.5 Flow Control Balancing Valves

Copper alloy or cast iron body, copper alloy or stainless internal working parts, and integral pointer that indicates the degree of valve opening. Valves shall be suitable for **125 psig** at **190 degrees F** hot water. Valve shall function as a service valve when in fully closed position. Valve body shall have factory-installed tappings for differential pressure meter connections for verification of pressure differential across valve orifice. Meter connections shall have positive check valves or shutoff valves. Each valve shall have metal tag showing the **gallons per minute** flow for each differential pressure reading.

2.1.6.6 Butterfly Valves

Conform with **MSS SP-67**, Type I - Tight shut off valve, and flanged valve ends. Valve body material shall be cast iron and shall be bubble tight for shutoff at **150 psig**. Flanged and flangeless type valves shall have Type 300 series corrosion resistant steel stems and corrosion resistant or bronze discs with molded elastomer disc seals. Flow conditions shall be for the regulation from maximum flow to complete shutoff by way of throttling effect. Valves shall be provided in closed system. Valves smaller than **8 inches** shall have throttling handles. Valves **8 inches** and larger shall have totally enclosed manual gear operators with adjustable balance return stops and indicators. Valves shall have a minimum of 7 locking positions and shall be suitable for water temperatures up to **200 degrees F**.

2.1.6.7 Butterfly Valves 2 Inches and Smaller

Valves shall be one-piece and three-piece design with male or female threaded or soldered end connections and shall be bubble tight for shutoff at **150 psig**. Stem and disc assembly shall be of 300 series corrosion resistant steel. Disc seal assembly shall be of 300 series corrosion resistant steel. Disc seal shall be suitable for the liquid being used in the system in which the valve is to be installed. Valves shall be suitable for water temperature up to **200 degrees F** and shall be capable of operating at the rated pressure of **150 psig**. Valves shall be designed for throttling service use by valve lever and indicator adjustment.

2.1.6.8 Relief Valves

Bronze body, teflon seat, stainless steel stem and springs, automatic, direct pressure actuated, capacities ASME certified and labeled.

2.1.6.9 Valve Operating Mechanisms

Provide chainwheels **for valves located 96 inches above finished floor**.

- a. Chainwheel Operator: Shall be fabricated of cast iron or steel and shall include a wheel, endless chain and a guide to keep the chain on the wheel. Provide galvanized steel endless chain extending to within **3 feet** of the floor.

- b. Extension Stem: Corrosion resisting steel designed for rising and non-rising stems. Provide in length required to connect the valve stem and the handwheel or operating mechanism and of sufficient cross section to transfer the torque required to operate the valve.

2.1.1.7 End Connections

2.1.1.7.1 Flexible Connectors

Provide flexible pipe connectors on piping connected to equipment. Flexible section shall consist of rubber, tetrafluoroethylene resin, corrosion-resistant steel, bronze, monel, or galvanized steel. Material provided and configuration shall be suitable for pressure, temperature, and circulating medium. Flexible section shall have threaded, welding, soldering, flanged or socket-weld ends and shall be suitable for service intended. Flexible section may be reinforced with metal retaining rings, with built-in braided wire reinforcement and restriction bolts or with wire braid cover suitable for service intended.

2.1.1.7.2 Steel Piping

Screwed or socket welded for 2 inches and smaller and flanged or butt welded for 2 1/2 inches and larger.

- a. Screwed Joints With Taper Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
- b. Flanged Joints: Bolting and gaskets shall be as follows:
 - (1) Bolting: Bolt and stud material ASTM A307, Grade B, and nut material ASTM A194/A194M, Grade 2. Bolt, stud, and nut dimensions ASME B18.2.2 threads ASME B1.1 coarse type with Class 2A fit for bolts and studs, and Class 2B fit for nuts. Bolts or bolt studs shall extend completely through the nuts and may have reduced shanks of a diameter not less than the diameter at root of threads. Carbon steel bolts shall have American Standard regular square or heavy hexagon heads and shall have American Standard heavy semifinished hexagonal nuts conforming to ASME B18.2.2.
 - (2) Gaskets: ASME B16.21, Nonasbestos compressed material 1/16 inch thickness full face or self-centering flat ring type and suitable for pressure and temperature of the piping system.
- c. Butt Weld Joints: ASME B31.9. Backing rings shall conform to ASME B31.9. Ferrous rings shall not exceed 0.05 percent sulfur; for alloy pipe, backing rings shall be of material compatible with the chemical composition of the parts to be welded and preferably of the same composition. Provide continuous machined or split band backing rings.
- d. Socket Weld Joints: ASME B31.9.

2.1.1.7.3 Joints for Copper Tubing

- a. Solder conforming to ASTM B32 alloy grade Sb5 or Sn96. Solder and flux shall be lead free (less than 0.2 percent of lead).
- b. Copper Tube Extracted Joint: An extracted mechanical tee joint may be made in copper tube. Make joint with an appropriate tool by drilling a

pilot hole and drawing out the tube surface to form a collar having a minimum height of three times the thickness of the tube wall. To prevent the branch tube from being inserted beyond the depth of the extracted joint, provide dimpled depth stops. Notch the branch tube for proper penetration into fitting to assure a free flow joint. Braze extracted joints using a copper phosphorous classification brazing filler metal. Soldered joints shall not be permitted.

2.1.8 Instrumentation

2.1.8.1 Pressure and Vacuum Gauges

Provide ASME B40.100 with restrictor.

2.1.8.2 Indicating Thermometers

Thermometers shall be dial type with an adjustable angle suitable for the service. Provide thermowell sized for each thermometer in accordance with the thermowell specification. Fluid-filled thermometers (mercury is not acceptable) shall have a nominal scale diameter of 5 inches. Construction shall be stainless-steel case with molded glass cover, stainless-steel stem and bulb. Stem shall be straight, length as required to fit well. Bimetal thermometers shall have a scale diameter of 3 1/2 inches. Case shall be hermetic. Case and stem shall be constructed of stainless steel. Bimetal stem shall be straight and of a length as required to fit the well.

2.1.8.3 Pressure/Temperature Test Ports

Pressure/Temperature Test Ports shall have brass body and EPDM and/or Neoprene valve seals. Ports shall be rated for service between 35 and 275 degrees F and up to 500 psig. Ports shall be provided in lengths appropriate for the insulation thickness specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS and installed to allow a minimum of 12 inches of access for probe insertion. Provide with screw-on cap attached with a strap or chain to prevent loss when removed. Ports shall be 1/4 inch NPT and accept 1/8 inch diameter probes.

2.1.9 Miscellaneous Pipeline Components

2.1.9.1 Air Vent

Provide float type air vent in hydronic systems. Vent shall be constructed of brass or semi-steel body, copper float, and stainless steel valve and valve seat. Design air vent to suit system operating temperature and pressure. Provide isolating valve to permit service without draining the system. Pipe discharge of vent to a drain.

2.1.9.2 Strainers

Strainers for classes 125 and 250 piping in IPS 1/2 to 8 inches, inclusive, FS WW-S-2739 and locate as indicated.

2.1.9.3 Hangers and Supports

Design and fabrication of pipe hangers, supports, and welding attachments shall conform to MSS SP-58 and ASME B31.9. Hanger types and supports for bare and covered pipe shall conform to MSS SP-69 for the temperature range.

2.1.9.4 Pipe Sleeves

Sleeves in masonry and concrete walls, floors, and roof slabs shall be [ASTM A53/A53M](#), Schedule 40 or Standard Weight, hot-dip galvanized steel ductile-iron or cast-iron pipe. Sleeves in partitions shall be zinc-coated sheet steel having a nominal weight of not less than [0.906 pound per square foot](#).

2.1.9.5 Escutcheon Plates

Provide one piece or split hinge metal plates for piping passing through floors, walls, and ceilings in exposed spaces. Provide polished stainless steel plates or chromium-plated finish on copper alloy plates in finished spaces and paint finish on metal plates in unfinished spaces.

2.2 CENTRAL MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT

2.2.1 Boilers

Provide as specified in [section 23 52 00 HEATING BOILERS](#)

2.3 PIPING SYSTEM EQUIPMENT

2.3.1 Pumps

[Provide as specified in 23 21 23 HYDRONIC PUMPS](#)

2.3.2 Expansion Tanks

Provide welded steel, constructed and tested hydrostatically in accordance with [ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1](#). Tank shall be equipped with all necessary fittings. The tank and fittings shall be pressure rated at least equal to the test pressure of the total system. Zinc coat the tank inside and out after fabrication by the hot dip process [ASTM A123/A123M](#).

2.3.3 External Air Separation Tanks

Provide tank constructed of steel, designed for not less than [75 psig](#), and constructed and tested in accordance with the requirements of [ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1](#). Provide tangential inlet and outlet connections, flanged for sizes [2 1/2 inches](#) and larger. Each unit shall have an internal design suitable for creating the required vortex and subsequent air separation. Provide with automatic air release device and galvanized steel strainer. Provide a blow down connection with a gate valve and piped to nearest floor drain.

2.4 TERMINAL UNITS

2.4.1 Unit Heaters

Provide hot water unit heaters as specified in [Section 23 82 00.00 20](#) [TERMINAL HEATING UNITS](#).

2.4.2 Heating and Ventilating Units

Provide fan-coil units as specified in [Section 23 00 00 AIR SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION, AND EXHAUST SYSTEMS](#).

2.5 ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

Provide complete with motors, motor starters, thermal overload protection, and controls. Equipment and wiring shall be in accordance with Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

2.6 CONTROLS

Provide controls as specified in Section 23 09 23.02 BACnet DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS.

2.7 INSULATION

Provide shop and field applied insulation as specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

2.8 ASBESTOS PROHIBITION

Asbestos and asbestos containing products are prohibited.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

Provide storage for equipment and material at the project site. All parts shall be readily accessible for inspection, repair, and renewal. Protect material and equipment from the weather.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Piping fabrication, assembly, welding, soldering, and brazing shall conform to ASME B31.9. Piping shall follow the general arrangement shown. Route piping and equipment within buildings out of the way of lighting fixtures and doors, windows, and other openings. Run overhead piping in buildings in inconspicuous positions. Provide adequate clearances from walls, ceilings, and floors to permit welding of joints and application of insulation. Make provision for expansion and contraction of pipe lines. Make changes in size of water lines with reducing fittings. Do not bury, conceal, or insulate until piping has been inspected, tested, and approved. Do not run piping concealed in walls, partitions, underground, or under the floor except as otherwise indicated. Where pipe passes through building structure, locate pipe joints and expansion joints where they may be inspected. Provide flanged joints where necessary for normal maintenance and where required to match valves and equipment. Furnish gaskets, packing, and thread compounds suitable for the service. Provide long radius ells where possible to reduce pressure drops. Pipe bends in lieu of welding fittings may be used where space permits. Pipe bends shall have a uniform radius of at least five times the pipe diameter and shall be free from appreciable flattening, wrinkling, or thinning of the pipe. Do not use mitering of pipe to form elbows, notching straight runs to form full sized tees, or any similar construction. Make branch connections over 2 inches with welding tees except factory made forged welding branch outlets or nozzles having integral reinforcements conforming to ASME B31.9 may be used, provided the nominal diameter of the branch is at least one pipe size less than the nominal diameter of the run. Branch connections 2 inches and under can be threaded or welded. Run vertical piping plumb and straight and parallel to walls. Provide sleeves for lines passing through building structure. Provide a fire seal where pipes pass through fire wall, fire partitions, fire rated pipe chase walls, or floors above grade.

Install piping connected to equipment with flexibility for thermal stresses and for vibration, and support and anchor so that strain from weight and thermal movement of piping is not imposed on the equipment.

3.2.1 Hangers and Supports

Unless otherwise indicated, horizontal and vertical piping attachments shall conform to **MSS SP-58**. Band and secure insulation protection shields without damaging pipe insulation. Continuous inserts and expansion bolts may be used.

3.2.2 Grading of Pipe Lines

Unless otherwise indicated, install horizontal lines of hot water piping to grade down in the direction of flow with a pitch of not less than **one inch in 30 feet**, except in loop mains and main headers where the flow may be in either direction.

3.2.3 Pipe Sleeves

Provide sleeves where pipes and tubing pass through masonry or concrete walls, floors, roof, and partitions. Annular space between pipe, tubing, or insulation and the sleeve shall not be less than **1/4 inch**. Hold sleeves securely in proper position and location before and during construction. Sleeves shall be of sufficient length to pass through entire thickness of walls, partitions, or slabs. Sleeves in floor slabs shall extend **2 inches** above finished floor. Firmly pack space between pipe or tubing and sleeve with oakum and caulk on both ends of the sleeve with plastic waterproof cement which will dry to a firm but pliable mass, or provide a mechanically adjustable segmented elastomeric seal. Seal both ends of penetrations through fire walls and fire floors to maintain fire resistive integrity with UL listed fill, void, or cavity material.

3.2.4 Flashing for Buildings

Provide flashing where pipes pass through building roofs, and make outside walls tight and waterproof.

3.2.5 Unions and Flanges

Provide unions and flanges to permit easy disconnection of piping and apparatus. Each connection having a screwed-end valve shall have a union. Place unions and flanges no farther apart than **100 feet**. Install unions downstream of valves and at equipment or apparatus connections. Provide unions on piping under **2 inches** in diameter, and provide flanges on piping **2 inches** and over in diameter. Provide dielectric unions or flanges between ferrous and non-ferrous piping, equipment, and fittings; except that bronze valves and fittings may be used without dielectric couplings for ferrous-to-ferrous or non-ferrous-to-non-ferrous connections.

3.2.6 Connections for Future Equipment

Locate capped or plugged outlets for connections to future equipment as indicated.

3.2.7 Changes in Pipe Size

Provide reducing fittings for changes in pipe size; reducing bushings are not permitted. In horizontal lines, provide eccentric reducing fittings to

maintain the top of the lines in the same plane.

3.2.8 Cleaning of Pipe

Thoroughly clean each section of pipe, fittings, and valves free of foreign matter before erection. Prior to erection, hold each piece of pipe in an inclined position and tap along its full length to loosen sand, mill scale and other foreign matter. For pipe 2 inches and larger, draw wire brush, of a diameter larger than that of the inside of the pipe, several times through the entire length of pipe. Before making final connections to apparatus, wash out interior of piping thoroughly with water. Plug or cap open ends of mains during shutdown periods. Do not leave lines open where foreign matter might enter the pipe.

3.2.9 Valves

Install valves in conformance with ASME B31.9. Provide gate valves unless otherwise directed. Install valves with stems horizontal or above. Locate or equip stop valves to permit operation from floor level, or provide with safe access in the form of walkways or ladders. Install valves in positions accessible for operation and repair.

3.2.9.1 Globe Valves

Install globe valves so that the pressure is below the disk and the stem horizontal.

3.2.9.2 Radiators Valves

Provide radiator valves on water inlet and balancing valves on water outlet of terminal heating units such as radiation, unit heaters, and fan coil unit.

3.2.9.3 Relief Valves

Provide valves on pressure tanks, low pressure side of reducing valves, heat exchangers, and expansion tanks. Select system relief valve so that capacity is greater than make-up pressure reducing valve capacity. Select equipment relief valve capacity to exceed rating of connected equipment. Pipe relief valve outlet to the nearest floor drain.

3.2.10 Pressure Gage

Provide a shut-off valve or pet cock between pressure gages and the line.

3.2.11 Thermometers

Provide thermometers and thermal sensing elements of control valves with a separable socket. Install separable sockets in pipe lines in such a manner to sense the temperature of flowing the fluid and minimize obstruction to flow.

3.2.12 Strainers

Provide strainers, with meshes suitable for the services, where indicated, or where dirt might interfere with the proper operation of valve parts, orifices, or moving parts of equipment.

3.2.13 Pumps

Select pumps for specified fluid temperatures, are non-overloading in parallel or individual operation, and operate within 25 percent of midpoint of published maximum efficiency curve. Support piping adjacent to pump such that no weight is carried on pump casings. Install close coupled and base mounted pumps on concrete base, with anchor bolts, set and level, and grout in place and provide supports under elbows on pump suction and discharge line sizes 4 inches and over. Lubricate pump before start-up.

3.2.14 Equipment Foundations

Locate equipment foundations as shown on the drawings. Size, weight, and design shall preclude shifting of equipment under operating conditions. Foundations shall meet the requirements of the equipment manufacturer. Concrete shall conform to Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE, and grout shall be approved non-shrinking.

3.2.15 Equipment Installation

Install equipment in accordance with installation instructions of the manufacturers. Grout equipment mounted on concrete foundations before installing piping. Install piping in such a manner as not to place a strain on the equipment. Do not bolt flanged joints tight unless they match. Grade, anchor, guide, and support piping without low pockets.

3.2.16 Cleaning of Systems

As installation of the various system components is completed, fill, start, and vent prior to cleaning. Place terminal control valves in open position. Add cleaner to closed system at concentration as recommended by manufacturer. Apply heat while circulating, slowly raising temperature to 160 degrees F and maintain for 12 hours minimum. Remove heat and circulate to 100 degrees F or less; drain systems as quickly as possible and refill with clean water. Circulate for 6 hours at design temperatures, then drain. Refill with clean water and repeat until system cleaner is removed. Use neutralizer agents on recommendation of system cleaner supplier and approval of Contracting Officer. Remove, clean, and replace strainer screens. Inspect, remove sludge, and flush low points with clean water after cleaning process is completed. Include disassembly of components as required. Preliminary or final tests are not permitted until cleaning is approved.

3.2.17 Painting of Piping and Equipment

Provide in accordance with Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

3.2.18 Identification of Piping

Identify piping in accordance with OSHA 29 CFR 1910.144, except that labels or tapes may be used in lieu of painting or stenciling. Spacing of identification marking on runs shall not exceed 50 feet. Materials for labels and tapes shall conform to CID A-A-1689, and shall be general purpose type and color class. Painting and stenciling shall conform to Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Perform inspections and tests as specified herein to demonstrate that

pipng and equipment, as installed, is in compliance with contract requirements. Start up and operate the system. During this time, periodically clean the various strainers until no further accumulation of foreign material occurs. Exercise care so that minimum loss of water occurs when strainers are cleaned. Adjust safety and automatic control instruments to place them in proper operation and sequence.

3.3.1 Hydrostatic Test of Piping System

Test piping system hydrostatically using water not exceeding 100 degrees F. Conduct tests in accordance with the requirements of ASME B31.9 and as follows. Test piping system after all lines have been cleaned and before applying insulation covering. Remove or valve off from the system, gages, and other apparatus which may be damaged by the test before the tests are made. Install calibrated test pressure gage in the system to observe any loss in pressure. Maintain test pressure for a sufficient length of time to enable an inspection of each joint and connection. Perform tests after installation and prior to acceptance. Notify the Contracting Officer in writing 2 days prior to the time scheduled for the tests.

3.3.2 Auxiliary Equipment and Accessory Tests

Observe and check pumps, accessories, and equipment during operational and capacity tests for leakage, malfunctions, defects, noncompliance with referenced standards, or overloading.

3.4 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

Test, adjust, and balance the hydronic system in accordance with Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING FOR HVAC.

3.4.1 Markings of Settings

Following final acceptance of the balancing report, the settings of all valves, splitters, dampers, and other adjustment devices shall be permanently marked so that adjustment can be restored if disturbed at anytime.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 21 23

HYDRONIC PUMPS
08/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 189.1 (2014) Standard for the Design of
High-Performance Green Buildings Except
Low-Rise Residential Buildings

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME B1.1 (2003; R 2018) Unified Inch Screw Threads
(UN and UNR Thread Form)

ASME B16.1 (2015) Gray Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged
Fittings Classes 25, 125, and 250

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A123/A123M (2017) Standard Specification for Zinc
(Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and
Steel Products

ASTM A153/A153M (2016) Standard Specification for Zinc
Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel
Hardware

ASTM A307 (2014; E 2017) Standard Specification for
Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded
Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength

ASTM A48/A48M (2003; R 2012) Standard Specification for
Gray Iron Castings

HYDRAULIC INSTITUTE (HI)

HI 1.1-1.2 (2014) Rotodynamic (Centrifugal) Pump for
Nomenclature and Definitions

HI 1.3 (2013) Rotodynamic (Centrifugal) Pump
Applications

HI 9.6.4 (2009) Rotodynamic Pumps for Vibration
Analysis and Allowable Values

HI ANSI/HI 14.6 (2011) Rotodynamic Pumps for Hydraulic

Performance Acceptance Tests - A136

HI ANSI/HI 2.1-2.2

(2014) Rotodynamic Vertical Pumps of
Radial, Mixed, and Axial Flow Types for
Nomenclature and Definitions

HI ANSI/HI 9.6.3

(2017) Rotodynamic Pumps - Guideline for
Operating Regions - B120

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA MG 1

(2016; SUPP 2016) Motors and Generators

NEMA Z535.4

(2011; R 2017) Product Safety Signs and
Labels

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70

(2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2;
TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6;
TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10;
TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA
17-14) National Electrical Code

SOCIETY FOR PROTECTIVE COATINGS (SSPC)

SSPC Paint 21

(1982; E 2004) White or Colored Silicone
Alkyd Paint (Type I, High Gloss and Type
II, Medium Gloss)

SSPC Paint 25

(1997; E 2004) Zinc Oxide, Alkyd, Linseed
Oil Primer for Use Over Hand Cleaned
Steel, Type I and Type II

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR 1910.219

Mechanical Power Transmission Apparatus

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 778

(2016; Reprint Oct 2017) UL Standard for
Safety Motor-Operated Water Pumps

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

System Coordination; G

SD-03 Product Data

Instructions; G

Equipment Data; G

Training Period; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Field Quality Control

SD-07 Certificates

Manufacturer's Representative

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance Manuals; G

Training; G

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.3.1 Manufacturer Services

Provide the services of a [manufacturer's representative](#) experienced in the installation, adjustment, and operation of the equipment specified. The representative must supervise the installation, adjustment, testing of the equipment, and conduct training.

Submit the names and qualifications of the manufacturer's representative and training engineers and written certification from the manufacturer that the representative and trainers are technically qualified.

1.3.2 Standard Products

Provide material and equipment which are the standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products and that essentially duplicate equipment that has been in satisfactory HVAC operation at least 2 years prior to issuance of this solicitation. Support equipment with a service organization that is reasonably convenient to the jobsite. Pumps and motors of the same types must each be the product of one manufacturer.

1.3.3 Conformance with Agency Requirements

Where materials or equipment are specified to be an approved type, attach the seal or label of approval from a nationally recognized testing agency, adequately equipped and competent to perform such services. A written certificate from the testing agency must accompany the materials or equipment and be submitted stating that the items have been tested and that they conform to the applicable requirements of the specifications and to the standards listed herein. The certificate must indicate the methods of testing used by the testing agency. In lieu of a certificate from a testing agency, published catalog specification data, accompanied by the manufacturer's certified statement to the effect that the items are in accordance with the applicable requirements of the specifications and the referenced standards, will be considered and may be acceptable as evidence that the items conform with agency requirements.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Protect equipment, delivered and designated for storage, from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, or other contaminants.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Hydronic pumps used for heating and air conditioning applications are defined by the type of impeller, number of impellers, type of casing, method of connection to the driver, and mounting position. Provide centrifugal water pumps of the types indicated and specified. Use an electric motor driving unit for each pump as indicated and specified.

2.1.1 Selection Criteria

Select pumps at a point within the maximum efficiency for a given impeller casing combination. Deviations within 3 percent of maximum efficiency are permissible, provided the lesser efficiency is not less than the scheduled efficiency in the construction design documents. Pumps having impeller diameters larger or smaller than manufacturer's published maximum and minimum impeller diameters for a given impeller casing combination will be rejected. Pump performance data, as shown in performance curves, must be based on factory tests using precision instrumentation and exacting procedures as detailed in [HI ANSI/HI 14.6](#).

2.1.2 System Coordination

Submit drawings containing complete wiring and piping schematic diagrams and any other details required to demonstrate that the system has been coordinated and will properly function as a unit. Show the proposed layout and anchorage of equipment and appurtenances, and equipment relationship to other parts of the work including clearances for maintenance and operation. Provide a complete listing of equipment, materials and miscellaneous components including mechanical seals, bearings, and couplings.

2.1.3 Safety Requirements

Fully enclose or guard couplings, projecting set-screws, keys, and other rotating parts, that pose an entangling hazards.

2.2 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

2.2.1 Nameplates

Securely affix a standard nameplate to pumps and motors in a conspicuous place showing the manufacturer's name, address, type or style, model, serial number, and catalog number. In addition, for each pump show the capacity in [gpm](#) at rated speed in rpm and total head in [feet](#) of water. For each electric motor show at least the minimum information required by [NEMA MG 1](#). Show such other information as the manufacturer may consider necessary to complete identification on the nameplate. Pumps must be listed and labeled by UL, and comply with [UL 778](#) for pumps not using universal motors rated more than 250 volts such as circulating pumps.

2.2.2 Framed Instructions

Submit proposed diagrams, instructions, and other sheets, prior to posting. Post approved wiring and control diagrams showing the complete layout of the entire system, including equipment, piping valves, and control sequence, framed under glass or in approved laminated plastic, where directed. Provide condensed operating instructions explaining preventive maintenance procedures, methods of checking the system for normal safe operation, and procedures for safely starting and stopping the system, framed as specified above for the wiring and control diagrams, and posted beside the diagrams. Post the framed instructions before acceptance testing of the systems.

2.2.3 Pump Characteristic

Construct hydronic water pumps in accordance with HI 1.1-1.2 and HI ANSI/HI 2.1-2.2. The pumps must be capable of discharging quantities at total discharge heads measured at the discharge flange, between the following limits:

Operate pumps at optimum efficiencies to produce the most economical pumping system under the conditions encountered. Pumps must furnish not less than 150 percent of rated capacity at a total discharge head of not less than 65 percent of total rated head. Operate pumps at specified system fluid temperatures without vapor binding and cavitation. Operate pumps to HI ANSI/HI 9.6.3 standard for Preferred Operating Region (POR).

2.2.4 Pump Drivers

Provide electric motors as indicated for each pump and in compliance with Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

2.2.5 Equipment Data

Submit manufacturer's descriptive data and technical literature, performance charts and curves for all impeller sizes for a given casing, catalog cuts, and installation instructions. Provide spare parts data for each different item of material and equipment specified, after approval of the detail drawings and not later than two months prior to the date of beneficial occupancy. Include a complete list of parts and supplies, with current unit prices and local source of supply with contact information.

Submit catalog information, certified pumps curves, rated capacities, final impeller dimensions, and accessories provided for the product indicated. Indicate operating point of each pump on curves. Furnish pump curves for each pump and combination of pumps designed to operate in parallel. The pump curve must show as a minimum; bhp, flow, total dynamic head, efficiency, NPSH, impeller diameter and system curve (individually and in combination for each pump operating in a parallel application). Select pumps operating in parallel operation to cross the system curve when operating individually.

2.3 HYDRONIC PUMPS

Provide centrifugal, single-stage type, designed for HVAC service in the following configurations:

Configuration	Pump No.
Small In-Line	HWP-1 HWP-2
Base-Mounted, Flexible Coupled, End Suction	HWP-3 HWP-4 CWP-1 CWP-2

2.3.1 Small In-Line

Provide pumps with capacities as indicated, suitable for 225 degrees F operation at 175 psig working pressure. The pump must be single stage, in-line design, in cast iron bronze fitted construction. The pump internals must be capable of being serviced without disturbing piping connections.

2.3.1.1 Pump Shaft

The pump must have a solid steel shaft with a coupler between the pump and motor shafts. For non-stainless steel shafts, employ a non-ferrous shaft sleeve to completely cover the wetted area under the seal.

2.3.1.2 Bearing

The bearing assembly must house maintenance-free permanently lubricated bearings.

2.3.1.3 Seal Assembly

Equip the pump with an internal self-flushing mechanical seal assembly. Seal assembly must have Buna bellows and seat gasket, stainless steel spring, and be of a carbon ceramic design with the carbon face rotating against a stationary ceramic face.

2.3.1.4 Impeller

Provide impeller of cast bronze or brass material. Impeller must be hydraulically and dynamically balanced to HI 9.6.4 balance grade G6.3, keyed to the shaft and secured by a locking capscrew or nut.

2.3.1.5 Volute

Pump volute must be of cast iron. The connection style on cast iron pumps must be flanged.

2.3.1.6 Motor Mount

To ensure alignment, mount the motor to the bearing assembly via a bolted motor bracket assembly. Use a replaceable resilient rubber motor mount to assist in aligning the motor shaft with the pump shaft.

2.3.1.7 Motors

NEMA MG 1; premium efficiency; non-overloading at any point on the pump curve; maintenance free with permanently lubricated bearings; and resilient mounted for smaller sizes, rigid mounted otherwise.

2.3.2 Base-Mounted, Flexible Coupled, End suction

Provide pumps with capacities as indicated; base mounted, separately-coupled, end suction designed with volute housing mounted to the frame to allow for pump service without relocating the motor or disturbing piping connections. Bearings and seals must be serviceable without disturbing piping. Pump must be factory hydrostatically tested in accordance with Hydraulic Institute standards and thoroughly cleaned.

2.3.2.1 Casing

Provide radially split pump casing [ASTM A48/A48M](#) Class 30 cast iron suitable for 175 psig working pressure with integral cast iron flanges drilled for [ASME B16.1](#) ANSI Class 125 flanges, with an integrally-cast pedestal support foot. The pump volute must include gauge tapings at suction and discharge nozzles along with vent and drain tapings at top and bottom.

2.3.2.2 Pump Shaft

Carbon steel pump shaft with a replaceable carbon steel or stainless steel shaft sleeve completely covering the wetted area of the shaft under the seal.

2.3.2.3 Bearing

Incorporate maintenance free, permanently lubricated and sealed bearings in the pump bearing frame.

2.3.2.4 Seal Assembly

Equip with an integrally flushed mechanical seal assembly. Provide a mechanical seal with ceramic seal seat and carbon seal ring. Seal assembly must be rated up to 225 degrees F.

2.3.2.5 Baseplate

Baseplate must be of steel construction fully enclosed at sides and ends with welded cross members and fully open grouting area for field grouting. Minimum base plate stiffness must conform to [HI 1.3](#) for horizontal baseplate design standards.

2.3.2.6 Coupler

Provide a flexible-type coupler between the pump and motor, capable of absorbing torsional vibration and variable speed operation between the pump and motor. The coupler must allow replacement with no need to move the hubs. Coupler must have natural rubber or neoprene type element materials with a maximum misalignment capability of 4 degrees angular and 0.125 inches parallel. Provide donut shaped elastomer element with preassembled flanges mechanically clamped to reinforced element and preassembled spacer center assembly. Secure flexible donut shaped element of coupler in place with radial clamp ring screws. Couplers must be rated for required maximum rpm, horsepower and torque. The coupler must be shielded by a coupler guard securely fastened to the base. Provide coupler guard in compliance with current national safety standards including [29 CFR 1910.219](#) and [NEMA Z535.4](#). Guards cannot have gaps greater than 0.250 inches, must be safety orange in color, and have an [NEMA Z535.4](#) compliant warning label.

2.3.2.7 Impeller

Hydraulically and dynamically balance to HI 9.6.4 balance grade G6.3, closed, overhung, single suction, fabricate from cast stainless steel or cast bronze, key to shaft and secured by a locking capscrew.

2.3.2.8 Motor

Electric Motors must meet NEMA MG 1 and be the horsepower, speed, and voltage indicated. Motor enclosure must be open drip proof or totally enclosed fan cooled. Motor must have heavy duty grease lubricated ball bearings completely adequate for the maximum load for which the motor is designed. Motor must be non-overloading at any point on the pump curve and premium efficiency. Open drip proof motor efficiencies must comply with ASHRAE 189.1. Totally enclosed fan cooled motor efficiencies must comply with NEMA MG 1.

2.4 ELECTRICAL WORK

Provide electrical motor driven equipment specified herein complete with motors, motor starters, and controls. Provide electric equipment and wiring in accordance with Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Electrical characteristics must be as indicated. Provide motor starters complete with properly sized thermal overload protection in each phase and other appurtenances necessary for the motor control specified. Each motor must be of sufficient capacity to drive the equipment at the specified capacity without exceeding the nameplate rating of the motor when operating at proper electrical system voltage and frequency. Manual or automatic control and protective or signal devices required for the operation herein specified and any control wiring required for controls and devices but not indicated must be provided under this section of the specifications.

2.5 ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

Provide electrical equipment in conformance with Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Provide electrical motor driven equipment herein specified complete with motors, motor starters, and controls. Motor controls, equipment, and wiring must be in accordance with NFPA 70.

2.5.1 Electric Motors

Drive each electric motor-driven pump by a continuous-duty electric motor with enclosure type for specific service as defined in paragraph HYDRONIC PUMPS. Motor must have a 1.5 service factor. Provide squirrel-cage induction or synchronous motors having normal-starting-torque and low-starting-current characteristics, and of sufficient size so that the nameplate horsepower rating will not be exceeded throughout the entire published pump characteristic curve. Integral size motors must be the premium efficiency type in accordance with NEMA MG 1. Pump electric motor efficiencies must meet or exceed the requirements of ASHRAE 189.1, Table C-13. Motor bearings must provide smooth operations under the conditions encountered for the life of the motor. Provide adequate thrust bearing in the motor to carry the weight of all rotating parts plus the hydraulic thrust and be capable of withstanding upthrust imposed during pump starting. Motors must be rated as indicated and volts, phase, and hz rating must be stamped on the nameplate. Provide motors in conformance with NEMA MG 1.

2.5.2 Control Equipment

Automatically controlled pumps must have three-position "MANUAL-OFF-AUTOMATIC" selector switch in cover. Provide additional controls or protective devices as indicated.

2.5.3 Variable Speed Control

The variable speed motor controllers must meet the requirements of UFGS 26 29 23 VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVE SYSTEMS UNDER 600 VOLTS.

2.6 EQUIPMENT APPURTENANCES

2.6.1 Attachments

Furnish all necessary bolts, nuts, washers, bolt sleeves, and other types of attachments with the equipment for the installation of the equipment. Bolts conform to the requirements of ASTM A307 and hexagonal nuts of the same quality as the bolts used. Threads must be clean-cut and conform to ASME B1.1. Bolts, nuts, and washers specified to be galvanized or not otherwise indicated or specified, must be zinc coated after being threaded, by the hot-dip process conforming to ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A153/A153M as appropriate. Bolts, nuts, and washers specified or indicated to be stainless steel must be Type 316.

2.6.2 Equipment Guards

Provide equipment driven by open shafts, belts, chains, or gears with all-metal guards enclosing the drive mechanism. Secure guards in position with steel braces or straps that permit easy removal for servicing the equipment. Coupler guards must comply with current national safety standards including 29 CFR 1910.219 and NEMA Z535.4. Provide guards with gaps no greater than 0.250 inches, safety orange in color, and have an NEMA Z535.4 compliant warning label.

2.6.3 Tools

Furnish a complete set of all special tools which may be necessary for the adjustment, operation, maintenance, and disassembly of all equipment. Special tools are considered to be those tools which because of their limited use are not normally available, but which are necessary for the particular equipment. Special tools must be high-grade, smooth, forged, alloy, tool steel. Furnish one pressure grease gun for each type of grease required. Deliver all tools at the same time as the equipment to which they pertain. Properly store and safeguard such tools until completion of the work, at which time deliver them to the Contracting Officer.

2.7 FINISHES

All motors, pump casings, and similar parts of equipment must be thoroughly cleaned, primed, and given two finish coats of paint at the factory in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer. Give ferrous surfaces not to be painted a shop coat of grease or other suitable rust-resistant coating.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing the work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Install each pump and motor in accordance with the written instructions of the manufacturer. Provide access space around the device for servicing no less than the minimum recommended by the manufacturer.

3.2.1 Base Mounted, Long-Coupled Pumps

Set the pump baseplate as follows.

- a. Place two sets of shims or wedges for each foundation bolt. Lower baseplate onto foundation bolts and level baseplate both lengthwise and across by adding or removing shims or mount wedges. A maximum difference of 0.125 inches lengthwise and 0.059 inches across is allowable.
- b. Mount pump and driver on baseplate if not already mounted at factory. Pump and driver shafts must have initial cold (pump and driver at ambient temperature) alignment check and final hot (pump and driver at operating temperature) alignment check. Perform cold alignment check before baseplate is grouted, after baseplate is grouted, and after piping is connected. Perform final alignment check when pump and driver are at operating temperature. Move or shim only the driver to make adjustments to prevent strain on the piping installations. Initial alignment may be performed with scales, straight edges and calipers. Final alignment must be done with dial gauges or laser alignment devices. Final alignment misalignment may not exceed coupling manufacturer's maximum parallel and angular misalignment values. When using variable frequency drives, reduce the manufacturer's misalignment values by 50 percent. Remove flexible coupling when performing alignment.
- c. Support the connecting piping to ensure that there are no piping loads at the pump flange connections and connecting piping is not forced into position. Use concrete for equipment foundations as specified in Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE. Provide concrete foundations that are integral with and of the same class as that of the building floor unless otherwise indicated. Use concrete having a compressive strength of at least 2,500 psi in foundations that are entirely separated from the surrounding floor. Install a premolded filler strip between the foundation and floor slab as shown. Furnish foundation bolts, as required, for proper positioning during the placement of the concrete.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

After installation of the pumping units and appurtenances, including coupling guard, is complete, carry out operating tests to assure that the pumping installation operates properly. Give each pumping unit a running field test in the presence of the Contracting Officer for a minimum of 2 hours. Operate each pumping unit at its rated capacity or such other point

on its head-capacity curve selected by the Contracting Officer. Provide an accurate and acceptable method of measuring the discharge flow. Tests must assure that the units and appurtenances have been installed correctly, that there is no objectionable heating, vibration, or noise from any parts, and that all manual and automatic controls function properly. If any deficiencies are revealed during any tests, correct such deficiencies and reconduct the tests.

Submit test reports in booklet form showing all field tests performed to adjust each component and all field tests performed to prove compliance with the specified performance criteria, upon completion and testing of the installed system. Each test report must indicate the final position of controls.

3.4 FIELD PAINTING

Do not paint stainless steel, galvanized steel, and nonferrous surfaces.

3.4.1 Touch-up painting

Factory painted items requiring touching up in the field must be thoroughly cleaned of all foreign material, and primed and topcoated with the manufacturer's standard factory finish.

3.4.2 Exposed Ferrous Surfaces

Paint exposed ferrous surfaces with two coats of enamel paint conforming to [SSPC Paint 21](#). Solvent clean factory primed surfaces before painting. Surfaces that have not been factory primed must be prepared and primed with one coat of [SSPC Paint 25](#) or in accordance with the enamel paint manufacturer's recommendations.

3.5 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

3.5.1 [Operation and Maintenance Manuals](#)

Submit one complete set at the time the tests procedure is submitted; remaining sets before the contract is completed. Permanently bind each in a hard cover. Inscribe the following identification on the covers: the words "OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS," name and location of the building, name of the Contractor, and contract number. Place flysheets before instructions covering each subject. Use [8-1/2 by 11 inches](#) paper for instruction sheets, with large sheets of drawings folded in.

Include, but do not limit to, the following in the Instructions:

- a. System layout showing piping, valves, and controls.
- b. Approved wiring and control diagrams including variable frequency drives.
- c. A control sequence describing startup, operation, and shutdown.
- d. Operating and maintenance instructions for each piece of equipment, including task list for routine maintenance, routine inspections, intermediate inspections, and annual inspections; lubrication instructions; and troubleshooting guide.
- e. Manufacturer's bulletins, cuts, and descriptive data; and parts list and recommended spare parts.

3.5.2 Training

Upon completion of the work, and at a time designated by the Contracting Officer, provide the services of one or more competent engineers for a training period of not less than 4 hours to instruct a representative of the Government in the contents of the operation and maintenance manuals for the equipment furnished under these specifications. These field instructions must cover all the items contained in the bound instructions. Submit the training course curriculum and training instructions 14 days prior to the start of training.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 23 00

REFRIGERANT PIPING
10/07

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR-CONDITIONING, HEATING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE (AHRI)

AHRI 710 I-P	(2009) Performance Rating of Liquid-Line Driers
AHRI 720	(2002) Refrigerant Access Valves and Hose Connectors
AHRI 750 I-P	(2016) Performance Rating of Thermostatic Refrigerant Expansion Valves
ANSI/AHRI 760	(2007) Performance Rating of Solenoid Valves for Use With Volatile Refrigerants

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 15 & 34	(2013) ASHRAE Standard 34-2016 Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems/ASHRAE Standard 34-2016 Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants-ASHRAE Standard 34-2016
ASHRAE 17	(2015) Method of Testing Capacity of Thermostatic Refrigerant Expansion Valves

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS A5.8/A5.8M	(2011; Amendment 2012) Specification for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding
AWS BRH	(2007; 5th Ed) Brazing Handbook
AWS Z49.1	(2012) Safety in Welding and Cutting and Allied Processes

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME B16.22	(2013) Standard for Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B16.26	(2013) Standard for Cast Copper Alloy Fittings for Flared Copper Tubes

ASME B31.1	(2016; Errata 2016) Power Piping
ASME B31.5	(2016) Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components
ASME B40.100	(2013) Pressure Gauges and Gauge Attachments

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A334/A334M	(2004a; R 2016) Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Carbon and Alloy-Steel Tubes for Low-Temperature Service
ASTM A53/A53M	(2018) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
ASTM A653/A653M	(2017) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM B117	(2016) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus
ASTM B280	(2018) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service
ASTM B32	(2008; R 2014) Standard Specification for Solder Metal
ASTM B62	(2017) Standard Specification for Composition Bronze or Ounce Metal Castings
ASTM B75/B75M	(2011) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube
ASTM B813	(2016) Standard Specification for Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube
ASTM D3308	(2012; R 2017) Standard Specification for TFE Resin Skived Tape
ASTM D520	(2000; R 2011) Zinc Dust Pigment
ASTM E84	(2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS
INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-58	(2009) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design and Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Refrigerant Piping System; G

SD-03 Product Data

Refrigerant Piping System

Spare Parts

Refrigerant Piping Tests

SD-06 Test Reports

Refrigerant Piping Tests

SD-07 Certificates

Service Organization

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Maintenance; G

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.3.1 Contract Drawings

Because of the small scale of the drawings, it is not possible to indicate all offsets, fittings, and accessories that may be required. Carefully investigate the plumbing, fire protection, electrical, structural and finish conditions that would affect the work to be performed and arrange such work accordingly, furnishing required offsets, fittings, and accessories to meet such conditions.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Protect stored items from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, or other contaminants. Proper protection and care of all material both before and during installation is the Contractor's responsibility. Replace any materials found to be damaged at the Contractor's expense. During installation, cap piping and similar openings to keep out dirt and other foreign matter.

1.5 MAINTENANCE

1.5.1 General

Submit Data Package 2 plus operation and maintenance data complying with the requirements of Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA and as

specified herein.

1.5.2 Extra Materials

Submit **spare parts** data for each different item of equipment specified, after approval of detail drawings and not later than **two** months prior to the date of beneficial occupancy. The data shall include a complete list of parts and supplies, with current unit prices and source of supply, a recommended spare parts list for 1 year of operation, and a list of the parts recommended by the manufacturer to be replaced on a routine basis.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STANDARD COMMERCIAL PRODUCTS

- a. Provide materials and equipment which are standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacturing of such products, that are of a similar material, design and workmanship and that have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening.
- b. The 2 year use shall include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The 2 years experience shall be satisfactorily completed by a product which has been sold or is offered for sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturer's catalogs, or brochures. Products having less than a 2 year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation, for not less than 6000 hours exclusive of the manufacturer's factory tests, can be shown.
- c. Products shall be supported by a **service organization**. System components shall be environmentally suitable for the indicated locations. Submit a certified list of qualified permanent service organizations for support of the equipment which includes their addresses and qualifications. The service organizations shall be reasonably convenient to the equipment installation and be able to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.
- d. Exposed equipment moving parts, parts that produce high operating temperature, parts which may be electrically energized, and parts that may be a hazard to operating personnel shall be insulated, fully enclosed, guarded, or fitted with other types of safety devices. Install safety devices so that proper operation of equipment is not impaired. Welding and cutting safety requirements shall be in accordance with **AWS Z49.1**.
- e. Manufacturer's standard catalog data, at least 5 weeks prior to the purchase or installation of a particular component, highlighted to show material, size, options, performance charts and curves, etc. in adequate detail to demonstrate compliance with contract requirements. Include in the data manufacturer's recommended installation instructions and procedures. Provide data for the following components as a minimum:
 - (1) Piping and Fittings
 - (2) Valves
 - (3) Piping Accessories
 - (4) Pipe Hangers, Inserts, and Supports

2.2 ELECTRICAL WORK

Manual or automatic control and protective or signal devices required for the operation specified and any control wiring required for controls and devices specified, but not shown, shall be provided.

2.3 REFRIGERANT PIPING SYSTEM

Refrigerant piping, valves, fittings, and accessories shall be in accordance with [ASHRAE 15 & 34](#) and [ASME B31.5](#), except as specified herein. Refrigerant piping, valves, fittings, and accessories shall be compatible with the fluids used and capable of withstanding the pressures and temperatures of the service. Refrigerant piping, valves, and accessories used for refrigerant service shall be cleaned, dehydrated, and sealed (capped or plugged) prior to shipment from the manufacturer's plant. Submit drawings, at least 5 weeks prior to beginning construction, provided in adequate detail to demonstrate compliance with contract requirements. Drawings shall consist of:

- a. Piping layouts which identify all valves and fittings.
- b. Plans and elevations which identify clearances required for maintenance and operation.

2.4 PIPE, FITTINGS AND END CONNECTIONS (JOINTS)

2.4.1 Steel Tubing

Tubing shall be cold-rolled, electric-forged, welded-steel in accordance with [ASTM A334/A334M](#), Grade 1. Joints and fittings shall be socket type provided by the steel tubing manufacturer.

2.4.2 Copper Tubing

Copper tubing shall conform to [ASTM B280](#) annealed or hard drawn as required. Copper tubing shall be soft annealed where bending is required and hard drawn where no bending is required. Soft annealed copper tubing shall not be used in sizes larger than [1-3/8 inches](#). Joints shall be brazed except that joints on lines [7/8 inch](#) and smaller may be flared. Cast copper alloy fittings for flared copper tube shall conform to [ASME B16.26](#) and [ASTM B62](#). Wrought copper and bronze solder-joint pressure fittings shall conform to [ASME B16.22](#) and [ASTM B75/B75M](#). Joints and fittings for brazed joint shall be wrought-copper or forged-brass sweat fittings. Cast sweat-type joints and fittings shall not be allowed for brazed joints. Brass or bronze adapters for brazed tubing may be used for connecting tubing to flanges and to threaded ends of valves and equipment.

2.4.3 Solder

Solder shall conform to [ASTM B32](#), grade Sb5, tin-antimony alloy for service pressures up to [150 psig](#). Solder flux shall be liquid or paste form, non-corrosive and conform to [ASTM B813](#).

2.4.4 Brazing Filler Metal

Filler metal shall conform to [AWS A5.8/A5.8M](#), Type BAg-5 with AWS Type 3 flux, except Type BCuP-5 or BCuP-6 may be used for brazing copper-to-copper joints.

2.5 VALVES

Valves shall be designed, manufactured, and tested specifically for refrigerant service. Valve bodies shall be of brass, bronze, steel, or ductile iron construction. Valves 1 inch and smaller shall have brazed or socket welded connections. Valves larger than 1 inch shall have butt welded end connections. Threaded end connections shall not be used, except in pilot pressure or gauge lines where maintenance disassembly is required and welded flanges cannot be used. Internal parts shall be removable for inspection or replacement without applying heat or breaking pipe connections. Valve stems exposed to the atmosphere shall be stainless steel or corrosion resistant metal plated carbon steel. Direction of flow shall be legibly and permanently indicated on the valve body. Control valve inlets shall be fitted with integral or adapted strainer or filter where recommended or required by the manufacturer. Purge, charge and receiver valves shall be of manufacturer's standard configuration.

2.5.1 Refrigerant Stop Valves

Valve shall be the globe or full-port ball type with a back-seating stem especially packed for refrigerant service. Valve packing shall be replaceable under line pressure. Valve shall be provided with a handwheel or wrench operator and a seal cap. Valve shall be the straight or angle pattern design as indicated.

2.5.2 Check Valves

Valve shall be the swing or lift type as required to provide positive shutoff at the differential pressure indicated. Valve shall be provided with resilient seat.

2.5.3 Liquid Solenoid Valves

Valves shall comply with ANSI/AHRI 760 and be suitable for continuous duty with applied voltages 15 percent under and 5 percent over nominal rated voltage at maximum and minimum encountered pressure and temperature service conditions. Valves shall be direct-acting or pilot-operating type, packless, except that packed stem, seal capped, manual lifting provisions shall be furnished. Solenoid coils shall be moisture-proof, UL approved, totally encapsulated or encapsulated and metal jacketed as required. Valves shall have safe working pressure of 400 psi and a maximum operating pressure differential of at least 200 psi at 85 percent rated voltage. Valves shall have an operating pressure differential suitable for the refrigerant used.

2.5.4 Expansion Valves

Valve shall conform to AHRI 750 I-P and ASHRAE 17. Valve shall be the diaphragm and spring-loaded type with internal or external equalizers, and bulb and capillary tubing. Valve shall be provided with an external superheat adjustment along with a seal cap. Internal equalizers may be utilized where flowing refrigerant pressure drop between outlet of the valve and inlet to the evaporator coil is negligible and pressure drop across the evaporator is less than the pressure difference corresponding to 2 degrees F of saturated suction temperature at evaporator conditions. Bulb charge shall be determined by the manufacturer for the application and such that liquid will remain in the bulb at all operating conditions. Gas limited liquid charged valves and other valve devices for limiting

evaporator pressure shall not be used without a distributor or discharge tube or effective means to prevent loss of control when bulb becomes warmer than valve body. Pilot-operated valves shall have a characterized plug to provide required modulating control. A de-energized solenoid valve may be used in the pilot line to close the main valve in lieu of a solenoid valve in the main liquid line. An isolatable pressure gauge shall be provided in the pilot line, at the main valve. Automatic pressure reducing or constant pressure regulating expansion valves may be used only where indicated or for constant evaporator loads.

2.5.5 Safety Relief Valves

Valve shall be the two-way type, unless indicated otherwise. Valve shall bear the ASME code symbol. Valve capacity shall be certified by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors. Valve shall be of an automatically reseating design after activation.

2.5.6 Evaporator Pressure Regulators, Direct-Acting

Valve shall include a diaphragm/spring assembly, external pressure adjustment with seal cap, and pressure gauge port. Valve shall maintain a constant inlet pressure by balancing inlet pressure on diaphragm against an adjustable spring load. Pressure drop at system design load shall not exceed the pressure difference corresponding to a 2 degrees F change in saturated refrigerant temperature at evaporator operating suction temperature. Spring shall be selected for indicated maximum allowable suction pressure range.

2.5.7 Refrigerant Access Valves

Refrigerant access valves and hose connections shall be in accordance with AHRI 720.

2.6 PIPING ACCESSORIES

2.6.1 Filter Driers

Driers shall conform to AHRI 710 I-P. Sizes 5/8 inch and larger shall be the full flow, replaceable core type. Sizes 1/2 inch and smaller shall be the sealed type. Cores shall be of suitable desiccant that will not plug, cake, dust, channel, or break down, and shall remove water, acid, and foreign material from the refrigerant. Filter driers shall be constructed so that none of the desiccant will pass into the refrigerant lines. Minimum bursting pressure shall be 1,500 psi.

2.6.2 Sight Glass and Liquid Level Indicator

2.6.2.1 Assembly and Components

Assembly shall be pressure- and temperature-rated and constructed of materials suitable for the service. Glass shall be borosilicate type. Ferrous components subject to condensation shall be electro-galvanized.

2.6.2.2 Gauge Glass

Gauge glass shall include top and bottom isolation valves fitted with automatic checks, and packing followers; red-line or green-line gauge glass; elastomer or polymer packing to suit the service; and gauge glass guard.

2.6.2.3 Bull's-Eye and Inline Sight Glass Reflex Lens

Bull's-eye and inline sight glass reflex lens shall be provided for dead-end liquid service. For pipe line mounting, two plain lenses in one body suitable for backlighting viewing shall be provided.

2.6.2.4 Moisture Indicator

Indicator shall be a self-reversible action, moisture reactive, color changing media. Indicator shall be furnished with full-color-printing tag containing color, moisture and temperature criteria. Unless otherwise indicated, the moisture indicator shall be an integral part of each corresponding sight glass.

2.6.3 Vibration Dampeners

Dampeners shall be of the all-metallic bellows and woven-wire type.

2.6.4 Flexible Pipe Connectors

Connector shall be a composite of interior corrugated phosphor bronze or Type 300 Series stainless steel, as required for fluid service, with exterior reinforcement of bronze, stainless steel or monel wire braid. Assembly shall be constructed with a safety factor of not less than 4 at 300 degrees F. Unless otherwise indicated, the length of a flexible connector shall be as recommended by the manufacturer for the service intended.

2.6.5 Strainers

Strainers used in refrigerant service shall have brass or cast iron body, Y-or angle-pattern, cleanable, not less than 60-mesh noncorroding screen of an area to provide net free area not less than ten times the pipe diameter with pressure rating compatible with the refrigerant service. Screens shall be stainless steel or monel and reinforced spring-loaded where necessary for bypass-proof construction.

2.6.6 Pressure and Vacuum Gauges

Gauges shall conform to ASME B40.100 and shall be provided with throttling type needle valve or a pulsation dampener and shut-off valve. Gauge shall be a minimum of 3-1/2 inches in diameter with a range from 0 psig to approximately 1.5 times the maximum system working pressure. Each gauge range shall be selected so that at normal operating pressure, the needle is within the middle-third of the range.

2.6.7 Temperature Gauges

Temperature gauges shall be the industrial duty type and be provided for the required temperature range. Gauges shall have Fahrenheit scale in 2 degrees graduations scale (black numbers) on a white face. The pointer shall be adjustable. Rigid stem type temperature gauges shall be provided in thermal wells located within 5 feet of the finished floor. Universal adjustable angle type or remote element type temperature gauges shall be provided in thermal wells located 5 to 7 feet above the finished floor. Remote element type temperature gauges shall be provided in thermal wells located 7 feet above the finished floor.

2.6.7.1 Stem Cased-Glass

Stem cased-glass case shall be polished stainless steel or cast aluminum, 9 inches long, with clear acrylic lens, and non-mercury filled glass tube with indicating-fluid column.

2.6.7.2 Bimetallic Dial

Bimetallic dial type case shall be not less than 3-1/2 inches, stainless steel, and shall be hermetically sealed with clear acrylic lens. Bimetallic element shall be silicone dampened and unit fitted with external calibrator adjustment. Accuracy shall be one percent of dial range.

2.6.7.3 Liquid-, Solid-, and Vapor-Filled Dial

Liquid-, solid-, and vapor-filled dial type cases shall be not less than 3-1/2 inches, stainless steel or cast aluminum with clear acrylic lens. Fill shall be nonmercury, suitable for encountered cross-ambients, and connecting capillary tubing shall be double-braided bronze.

2.6.7.4 Thermal Well

Thermal well shall be identical size, 1/2 or 3/4 inch NPT connection, brass or stainless steel. Where test wells are indicated, provide captive plug-fitted type 1/2 inch NPT connection suitable for use with either engraved stem or standard separable socket thermometer or thermostat. Mercury shall not be used in thermometers. Extended neck thermal wells shall be of sufficient length to clear insulation thickness by 1 inch.

2.6.8 Pipe Hangers, Inserts, and Supports

Pipe hangers, inserts, guides, and supports shall conform to MSS SP-58.

2.6.9 Escutcheons

Escutcheons shall be chromium-plated iron or chromium-plated brass, either one piece or split pattern, held in place by internal spring tension or set screws.

2.7 FABRICATION

2.7.1 Factory Coating

Unless otherwise specified, equipment and component items, when fabricated from ferrous metal, shall be factory finished with the manufacturer's standard finish, except that items located outside of buildings shall have weather resistant finishes that will withstand 500 hours exposure to the salt spray test specified in ASTM B117 using a 5 percent sodium chloride solution. Immediately after completion of the test, the specimen shall show no signs of blistering, wrinkling, cracking, or loss of adhesion and no sign of rust creepage beyond 1/8 inch on either side of the scratch mark. Cut edges of galvanized surfaces where hot-dip galvanized sheet steel is used shall be coated with a zinc-rich coating conforming to ASTM D520, Type I.

2.7.2 Factory Applied Insulation

Refrigerant suction lines between the cooler and each compressor shall be insulated with not less than 3/4 inch thick unicellular plastic foam.

Factory insulated items installed outdoors are not required to be fire-rated. As a minimum, factory insulated items installed indoors shall have a flame spread index no higher than 75 and a smoke developed index no higher than 150. Factory insulated items (no jacket) installed indoors and which are located in air plenums, in ceiling spaces, and in attic spaces shall have a flame spread index no higher than 25 and a smoke developed index no higher than 50. Flame spread and smoke developed indexes shall be determined by [ASTM E84](#). Insulation shall be tested in the same density and installed thickness as the material to be used in the actual construction. Material supplied by a manufacturer with a jacket shall be tested as a composite material. Jackets, facings, and adhesives shall have a flame spread index no higher than 25 and a smoke developed index no higher than 50 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#).

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Pipe and fitting installation shall conform to the requirements of [ASME B31.1](#). Cut pipe accurately to measurements established at the jobsite, and work into place without springing or forcing, completely clearing all windows, doors, and other openings. Cutting or other weakening of the building structure to facilitate piping installation are not permitted without written approval. Cut pipe or tubing square, remove by reaming, and permit free expansion and contraction without causing damage to the building structure, pipe, joints, or hangers.

3.1.1 Directional Changes

Make changes in direction with fittings, except that bending of pipe [4 inches](#) and smaller is permitted, provided a pipe bender is used and wide weep bends are formed. Mitering or notching pipe or other similar construction to form elbows or tees is not permitted. The centerline radius of bends shall not be less than 6 diameters of the pipe. Bent pipe showing kinks, wrinkles, flattening, or other malformations will not be accepted.

3.1.2 Functional Requirements

Piping shall be installed [1/2 inch/10 feet](#) of pipe in the direction of flow to ensure adequate oil drainage. Open ends of refrigerant lines or equipment shall be properly capped or plugged during installation to keep moisture, dirt, or other foreign material out of the system. Piping shall remain capped until installation. Equipment piping shall be in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's recommendations and the contract drawings. Equipment and piping arrangements shall fit into space allotted and allow adequate acceptable clearances for installation, replacement, entry, servicing, and maintenance.

3.1.3 Fittings and End Connections

3.1.3.1 Threaded Connections

Make threaded connections with tapered threads and make tight with PTFE tape complying with [ASTM D3308](#) or equivalent thread-joint compound applied to the male threads only. Show not more than three threads after the joint is made.

3.1.3.2 Brazed Connections

Perform brazing in accordance with AWS BRH, except as modified herein. During brazing, fill the pipe and fittings with a pressure regulated inert gas, such as nitrogen, to prevent the formation of scale. Before brazing copper joints, clean both the outside of the tube and the inside of the fitting with a wire fitting brush until the entire joint surface is bright and clean. Do not use brazing flux. Remove surplus brazing material at all joints. Make steel tubing joints in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Paint joints in steel tubing with the same material as the baked-on coating within 8 hours after joints are made. Protect tubing against oxidation during brazing by continuous purging of the inside of the piping using nitrogen. Support piping prior to brazing and do not spring or force.

3.1.3.3 Flared Connections

When flared connections are used, a suitable lubricant shall be used between the back of the flare and the nut in order to avoid tearing the flare while tightening the nut.

3.1.3.4 Flanged Connections

When steel refrigerant piping is used, union or flange joints shall be provided in each line immediately preceding the connection to each piece of equipment requiring maintenance, such as compressors, coils, chillers, control valves, and other similar items. Flanged joints shall be assembled square end tight with matched flanges, gaskets, and bolts. Gaskets shall be suitable for use with the refrigerants to be handled.

3.1.4 Valves

3.1.4.1 General

Refrigerant stop valves shall be installed on each side of each piece of equipment such as compressors condensers, evaporators, receivers, and other similar items in multiple-unit installation, to provide partial system isolation as required for maintenance or repair. Stop valves shall be installed with stems horizontal unless otherwise indicated. Ball valves shall be installed with stems positioned to facilitate operation and maintenance. Isolating valves for pressure gauges and switches shall be external to thermal insulation. Safety switches shall not be fitted with isolation valves. Filter dryers having access ports may be considered a point of isolation. Purge valves shall be provided at all points of systems where accumulated noncondensable gases would prevent proper system operation. Valves shall be furnished to match line size, unless otherwise indicated or approved.

3.1.4.2 Expansion Valves

Expansion valves shall be installed with the thermostatic expansion valve bulb located on top of the suction line when the suction line is less than 2-1/8 inches in diameter and at the 4 o'clock or 8 o'clock position on lines larger than 2-1/8 inches. The bulb shall be securely fastened with two clamps. The bulb shall be insulated. The bulb shall be installed in a horizontal portion of the suction line, if possible, with the pigtail on the bottom. If the bulb must be installed in a vertical line, the bulb tubing shall be facing up.

3.1.5 Vibration Dampers

Vibration damper shall be provided in the suction and discharge lines on spring mounted compressors. Vibration dampers shall be installed parallel with the shaft of the compressor and shall be anchored firmly at the upstream end on the suction line and the downstream end in the discharge line.

3.1.6 Strainers

Strainers shall be provided immediately ahead of solenoid valves and expansion devices. Strainers may be an integral part of an expansion valve.

3.1.7 Filter Dryer

A liquid line filter dryer shall be provided on each refrigerant circuit located such that all liquid refrigerant passes through a filter dryer. Dryers shall be sized in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for the system in which it is installed. Dryers shall be installed such that it can be isolated from the system, the isolated portion of the system evacuated, and the filter dryer replaced. Dryers shall be installed in the horizontal position except replaceable core filter dryers may be installed in the vertical position with the access flange on the bottom.

3.1.8 Sight Glass

A moisture indicating sight glass shall be installed in all refrigerant circuits down stream of all filter dryers and where indicated. Site glasses shall be full line size.

3.1.9 Discharge Line Oil Separator

Discharge line oil separator shall be provided in the discharge line from each compressor. Oil return line shall be connected to the compressor as recommended by the compressor manufacturer.

3.1.10 Accumulator

Accumulators shall be provided in the suction line to each compressor **as required by the equipment manufacturer.**

3.1.11 Flexible Pipe Connectors

Connectors shall be installed perpendicular to line of motion being isolated. Piping for equipment with bidirectional motion shall be fitted with two flexible connectors, in perpendicular planes. Reinforced elastomer flexible connectors shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Piping guides and restraints related to flexible connectors shall be provided as required.

3.1.12 Pipe Hangers, Inserts, and Supports

Pipe hangers, inserts, and supports shall conform to **MSS SP-58**, except as modified herein. Pipe hanger types 5, 12, and 26 shall not be used. Hangers used to support piping **2 inches** and larger shall be fabricated to permit adequate adjustment after erection while still supporting the load. Piping subjected to vertical movement, when operating temperatures exceed ambient temperatures, shall be supported by variable spring hangers and supports or by constant support hangers.

3.1.12.1 Hangers

Do not use Type 3 on insulated piping. Type 24 may be used only on trapeze hanger systems or on fabricated frames.

3.1.12.2 Inserts

Secure Type 18 inserts to concrete forms before concrete is placed. Continuous inserts which allow more adjustments may be used if they otherwise meet the requirements for Type 18 inserts.

3.1.12.3 C-Clamps

Torque Type 19 and 23 C-clamps in accordance with MSS SP-58 and have both locknuts and retaining devices, furnished by the manufacturer. Field-fabricated C-clamp bodies or retaining devices are not acceptable.

3.1.12.4 Angle Attachments

Type 20 attachments used on angles and channels shall be furnished with an added malleable-iron heel plate or adapter.

3.1.12.5 Saddles and Shields

Where Type 39 saddle or Type 40 shield are permitted for a particular pipe attachment application, the Type 39 saddle, connected to the pipe, shall be used on all pipe 4 inches and larger when the temperature of the medium is 60 degrees F or higher. Type 40 shields shall be used on all piping less than 4 inches and all piping 4 inches and larger carrying medium less than 60 degrees F. A high density insulation insert of cellular glass shall be used under the Type 40 shield for piping 2 inches and larger.

3.1.12.6 Horizontal Pipe Supports

Horizontal pipe supports shall be spaced as specified in MSS SP-58 and a support shall be installed not over 1 foot from the pipe fitting joint at each change in direction of the piping. Pipe supports shall be spaced not over 5 feet apart at valves.

3.1.12.7 Multiple Pipe Runs

In the support of multiple pipe runs on a common base member, a clip or clamp shall be used where each pipe crosses the base support member. Spacing of the base support members shall not exceed the hanger and support spacing required for an individual pipe in the multiple pipe run.

3.1.12.8 Structural Attachments

Supports shall not be attached to metal decking. Structural steel brackets required to support piping, headers, and equipment, but not shown, shall be provided under this section. Material used for support shall be as specified under Section 05 50 13 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FABRICATIONS.

3.1.13 Building Surface Penetrations

Sleeves shall not be installed in structural members except where indicated or approved. Sleeves in nonload bearing surfaces shall be galvanized sheet metal, conforming to ASTM A653/A653M, Coating Class G-90, 20 gauge.

Sleeves in load bearing surfaces shall be uncoated carbon steel pipe, conforming to **ASTM A53/A53M**, Standard weight. Sealants shall be applied to moisture and oil-free surfaces and elastomers to not less than **1/2 inch** depth. Sleeves shall not be installed in structural members.

3.1.13.1 General Service Areas

Each sleeve shall extend through its respective wall, floor, or roof, and shall be cut flush with each surface. Pipes passing through concrete or masonry wall or concrete floors or roofs shall be provided with pipe sleeves fitted into place at the time of construction. Sleeves shall be of such size as to provide a minimum of **1/4 inch** all-around clearance between bare pipe and sleeves or between jacketed-insulation and sleeves. Except in pipe chases or interior walls, the annular space between pipe and sleeve or between jacket over-insulation and sleeve shall be sealed in accordance with Section **07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS**.

3.1.13.2 Waterproof Penetrations

Pipes passing through roof or floor waterproofing membrane shall be installed through a **17 ounce** copper sleeve, or a **0.032 inch** thick aluminum sleeve, each within an integral skirt or flange. Flashing sleeve shall be suitably formed, and skirt or flange shall extend not less than **8 inches** from the pipe and be set over the roof or floor membrane in a troweled coating of bituminous cement. The flashing sleeve shall extend up the pipe a minimum of **2 inches** above the roof or floor penetration. The annular space between the flashing sleeve and the bare pipe or between the flashing sleeve and the metal-jacket-covered insulation shall be sealed as indicated. Penetrations shall be sealed by either one of the following methods.

3.1.13.2.1 Waterproofing Clamping Flange

Pipes up to and including **10 inches** in diameter passing through roof or floor waterproofing membrane may be installed through a cast iron sleeve with caulking recess, anchor lugs, flashing clamp device, and pressure ring with brass bolts. Waterproofing membrane shall be clamped into place and sealant shall be placed in the caulking recess.

3.1.13.2.2 Modular Mechanical Type Sealing Assembly

In lieu of a waterproofing clamping flange and caulking and sealing of annular space between pipe and sleeve or conduit and sleeve, a modular mechanical type sealing assembly may be installed. Seals shall consist of interlocking synthetic rubber links shaped to continuously fill the annular space between the pipe/conduit and sleeve with corrosion protected carbon steel bolts, nuts, and pressure plates. Links shall be loosely assembled with bolts to form a continuous rubber belt around the pipe with a pressure plate under each bolt head and each nut. After the seal assembly is properly positioned in the sleeve, tightening of the bolt shall cause the rubber sealing elements to expand and provide a watertight seal. Rubber sealing elements to expand and provide a watertight seal between the pipe/conduit seal between the pipe/conduit and the sleeve. Each seal assembly shall be sized as recommended by the manufacturer to fit the pipe/conduit and sleeve involved. The Contractor electing to use the modular mechanical type seals shall provide sleeves of the proper diameters.

3.1.13.3 Fire-Rated Penetrations

Penetration of fire-rated walls, partitions, and floors shall be sealed as specified in Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

3.1.13.4 Escutcheons

Finished surfaces where exposed piping, bare or insulated, pass through floors, walls, or ceilings, except in boiler, utility, or equipment rooms, shall be provided with escutcheons. Where sleeves project slightly from floors, special deep-type escutcheons shall be used. Escutcheon shall be secured to pipe or pipe covering.

3.1.14 Access Panels

Access panels shall be provided for all concealed valves, vents, controls, and items requiring inspection or maintenance. Access panels shall be of sufficient size and located so that the concealed items may be serviced and maintained or completely removed and replaced. Access panels shall be as specified in Section 05 50 13 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FABRICATIONS.

3.1.15 Field Applied Insulation

Field installed insulation shall be as specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS, except as defined differently herein.

3.1.16 Field Painting

Painting required for surfaces not otherwise specified, and finish painting of items only primed at the factory are specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

3.1.16.1 Color Coding

Color coding for piping identification is specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

3.2 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

Clean uncontaminated system(s) by evacuation and purging procedures currently recommended by refrigerant and refrigerant equipment manufacturers, and as specified herein, to remove small amounts of air and moisture. Systems containing moderate amounts of air, moisture, contaminated refrigerant, or any foreign matter shall be considered contaminated systems. Restoring contaminated systems to clean condition including disassembly, component replacement, evacuation, flushing, purging, and re-charging, shall be performed using currently approved refrigerant and refrigeration manufacturer's procedures. Restoring contaminated systems shall be at no additional cost to the Government as determined by the Contracting Officer. Water shall not be used in any procedure or test.

3.3 REFRIGERANT PIPING TESTS

After all components of the refrigerant system have been installed and connected, subject the entire refrigeration system to pneumatic, evacuation, and startup tests as described herein. Submit a schedule, at least 2 weeks prior to the start of related testing, for each test.

Identify the proposed date, time, and location for each test. Conduct tests in the presence of the Contracting Officer. Water and electricity required for the tests will be furnished by the Government. Provide all material, equipment, instruments, and personnel required for the test. Provide the services of a qualified technician, as required, to perform all tests and procedures indicated herein. Field tests shall be coordinated with Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC SYSTEMS. Submit 6 copies of the tests report in bound 8 1/2 by 11 inch booklets documenting all phases of the tests performed. The report shall include initial test summaries, all repairs/adjustments made, and the final test results.

3.3.1 Preliminary Procedures

Prior to pneumatic testing, equipment which has been factory tested and refrigerant charged as well as equipment which could be damaged or cause personnel injury by imposed test pressure, positive or negative, shall be isolated from the test pressure or removed from the system. Safety relief valves and rupture discs, where not part of factory sealed systems, shall be removed and openings capped or plugged.

3.3.2 Pneumatic Test

Pressure control and excess pressure protection shall be provided at the source of test pressure. Valves shall be wide open, except those leading to the atmosphere. Test gas shall be dry nitrogen, with minus 70 degree F dewpoint and less than 5 ppm oil. Test pressure shall be applied in two stages before any refrigerant pipe is insulated or covered. First stage test shall be at 10 psi with every joint being tested with a thick soap or color indicating solution. Second stage tests shall raise the system to the minimum refrigerant leakage test pressure specified in ASHRAE 15 & 34 with a maximum test pressure 25 percent greater. Pressure above 100 psig shall be raised in 10 percent increments with a pressure acclimatizing period between increments. The initial test pressure shall be recorded along with the ambient temperature to which the system is exposed. Final test pressures of the second stage shall be maintained on the system for a minimum of 24 hours. At the end of the 24 hour period, the system pressure will be recorded along with the ambient temperature to which the system is exposed. A correction factor of 0.3 psi will be allowed for each degree F change between test space initial and final ambient temperature, plus for increase and minus for a decrease. If the corrected system pressure is not exactly equal to the initial system test pressure, then the system shall be investigated for leaking joints. To repair leaks, the joint shall be taken apart, thoroughly cleaned, and reconstructed as a new joint. Joints repaired by caulking, remelting, or back-welding/brazing shall not be acceptable. Following repair, the entire system shall be retested using the pneumatic tests described above. The entire system shall be reassembled once the pneumatic tests are satisfactorily completed.

3.3.3 Evacuation Test

Following satisfactory completion of the pneumatic tests, the pressure shall be relieved and the entire system shall be evacuated to an absolute pressure of 300 micrometers. During evacuation of the system, the ambient temperature shall be higher than 35 degrees F. No more than one system shall be evacuated at one time by one vacuum pump. Once the desired vacuum has been reached, the vacuum line shall be closed and the system shall stand for 1 hour. If the pressure rises over 500 micrometers after the 1 hour period, then the system shall be evacuated again down to 300

micrometers and let set for another 1 hour period. The system shall not be charged until a vacuum of at least 500 micrometers is maintained for a period of 1 hour without the assistance of a vacuum line. If during the testing the pressure continues to rise, check the system for leaks, repair as required, and repeat the evacuation procedure. During evacuation, pressures shall be recorded by a thermocouple-type, electronic-type, or a calibrated-micrometer type gauge.

3.3.4 System Charging and Startup Test

Following satisfactory completion of the evacuation tests, the system shall be charged with the required amount of refrigerant by raising pressure to normal operating pressure and in accordance with manufacturer's procedures. Following charging, the system shall operate with high-side and low-side pressures and corresponding refrigerant temperatures, at design or improved values. The entire system shall be tested for leaks. Fluorocarbon systems shall be tested with halide torch or electronic leak detectors.

3.3.5 Refrigerant Leakage

If a refrigerant leak is discovered after the system has been charged, the leaking portion of the system shall immediately be isolated from the remainder of the system and the refrigerant pumped into the system receiver or other suitable container. Under no circumstances shall the refrigerant be discharged into the atmosphere.

3.3.6 Contractor's Responsibility

At all times during the installation and testing of the refrigeration system, take steps to prevent the release of refrigerants into the atmosphere. The steps shall include, but not be limited to, procedures which will minimize the release of refrigerants to the atmosphere and the use of refrigerant recovery devices to remove refrigerant from the system and store the refrigerant for reuse or reclaim. At no time shall more than 3 ounces of refrigerant be released to the atmosphere in any one occurrence. Any system leaks within the first year shall be repaired in accordance with the requirements herein at no cost to the Government including material, labor, and refrigerant if the leak is the result of defective equipment, material, or installation.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 23 52 00

HEATING BOILERS
04/08

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

- ASME B31.1 (2016; Errata 2016) Power Piping
- ASME BPVC SEC IV (2017) BPVC Section IV-Rules for Construction of Heating Boilers
- ASME BPVC SEC IX (2017; Errata 2018) BPVC Section IX-Welding, Brazing and Fusing Qualifications

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

- ASTM D1784 (2011) Standard Specification for Rigid Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Compounds and Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Compounds
- ASTM D596 (2001; R 2011) Reporting Results of Analysis of Water

HYDRONICS INSTITUTE DIVISION OF AHRI (HYI)

- HYI-005 (2008) I=B=R Ratings for Boilers, Baseboard Radiation and Finned Tube (Commercial)

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

- NEMA MG 1 (2016; SUPP 2016) Motors and Generators

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

- NFPA 54 (2018) National Fuel Gas Code

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY (DOE)

- Energy Star (1992; R 2006) Energy Star Energy Efficiency Labeling System (FEMP)

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

- UL 1738 (2010; Reprint Nov 2014) Venting Systems for Gas-Burning Appliances, Categories II,

III and IV

UL 795

(2016) UL Standard for Safety
Commercial-Industrial Gas Heating Equipment

UL FLAMMABLE & COMBUSTIBLE

(2012) Flammable and Combustible Liquids
and Gases Equipment Directory

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Detail Drawings

SD-03 Product Data

Materials and Equipment
Spare Parts
Water Treatment Systems
Fuel System Tests
Welding
Field Instructions
Tests

SD-06 Test Reports

Fuel System Tests

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance Instructions; G

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Submit a copy of qualified welding procedures and a list of names and identification symbols of qualified welders and welding operators, at least 2 weeks prior to the start of welding operations. Boilers and piping shall be welded and brazed in accordance with qualified procedures using performance-qualified welders and welding operators. Procedures and welders shall be qualified in accordance with ASME BPVC SEC IX. Welding procedures qualified by others, and welders and welding operators qualified by another employer may be accepted as permitted by ASME B31.1. Notify the Contracting Officer 24 hours in advance of tests, and the tests shall be performed at the work site if practical. The welder or welding operator shall apply the personally assigned symbol near each weld made as a permanent record. Structural members shall be welded in accordance with Section 05 50 13 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FABRICATION.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Protect equipment delivered and placed in storage from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, and other contaminants.

1.5 EXTRA MATERIALS

Submit [spare parts](#) data for each different item of material and equipment specified, after approval of the [detail drawings](#) and no later than 2 months prior to the date of beneficial occupancy. Submit Detail Drawings consisting of equipment layout including installation details and electrical connection diagrams; combustion and safety control diagrams; ductwork layout showing the location of supports and hangers, typical hanger details, gauge reinforcement, reinforcement spacing rigidity classification, and static pressure and seal classifications; and piping layout showing the location of guides and anchors, the load imposed on each support or anchor (not required for radiant floor tubing), and typical support details. Include on the drawings any information required to demonstrate that the system has been coordinated and will properly function as a unit and to show equipment relationship to other parts of the work, including clearances required for operation and maintenance. Include in the data a complete list of parts and supplies, with current unit prices and source of supply, and a list of the parts recommended by the manufacturer to be replaced after 1 and 3 years of service.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

2.1.1 Standard Products

Provide [materials and equipment](#) which are the standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of the products and that essentially duplicate items that have been in satisfactory use for at least 2 years prior to bid opening. Equipment shall be supported by a service organization that is, in the opinion of the Contracting Officer, reasonably convenient to the site. Submit manufacturer's catalog data included with the detail drawings for the following:

- a. Radiant floor heating system including tubing, joints, and manifold for radiant floor heating systems.
- b. Data showing model, size, options, etc., that are intended for consideration. Data submitted shall be adequate to demonstrate compliance with contract requirements. Data shall include manufacturer's written installation instructions and manufacturer's recommendations for operation and maintenance clearances for the following:
 - (1) Boilers
 - (2) Fuel Burning Equipment
 - (3) Combustion Control Equipment
 - (4) Pumps
 - (5) Fittings and Accessories
 - (6) Water Treatment System

2.1.2 Asbestos Prohibition

Asbestos and asbestos-containing products will not be allowed.

2.1.3 Nameplates

Secure a plate to each major component of equipment containing the

manufacturer's name, address, type or style, model or serial number, and catalog number. Also, display an **Energy Star** label as applicable. Each pressure vessel shall have an approved ASME stamp.

2.1.4 Equipment Guards

Belts, pulleys, chains, gears, couplings, projecting setscrews, keys, and other rotating parts exposed to personnel contact shall be fully enclosed or guarded in accordance with OSHA requirements. High temperature equipment and piping exposed to contact by personnel or where it creates a potential fire hazard shall be properly guarded or covered with insulation of a type specified.

2.2 BOILERS

Each boiler shall have the output capacity in **British thermal units per hour (Btuh)** as indicated when fired with the specified fuels. The boiler shall be furnished complete with the **propane** gas burning equipment, boiler fittings and trim, automatic controls, **direct vent** electrical wiring, insulation, piping connections, and protective jacket. The boiler shall be completely assembled and tested at the manufacturer's plant. Boiler auxiliaries including fans, motors, drives, and similar equipment shall be provided with at least 10 percent excess capacity to allow for field variations in settings and to compensate for any unforeseen increases in pressure losses in appurtenant piping and ductwork. However, the boiler safety devices shall not be sized for a 10 percent excess capacity. The boiler and its accessories shall be designed and installed to permit ready accessibility for operation, maintenance, and service. Boilers shall be designed, constructed, and equipped in accordance with **ASME BPVC SEC IV**. Each boiler shall be of the condensing type and designed for water service as specified herein. The boiler capacity shall be based on the ratings shown in **HYI-005** or as certified by the American Boiler Manufacturers Association, or American Gas Association.

2.2.1 Condensing Boiler

Each boiler shall be a self-contained packaged type, complete with accessories, mounted on a structural steel base or a steel base which is integral to the boiler shell. Each boiler shall conform to the commercial design used by the manufacturer and shall permit free thermal expansion without placing undue stress on any part of the boiler. Each boiler which experiences the formation of condensate within the flue gas shall be specifically designed for condensing application. Each boiler shall withstand the corrosive effects of condensate for each part which may be in contact with the condensate at all possible operating conditions. Each boiler shall be provided with a separate air intake, exhaust, and condensate drain. Each boiler shall be designed to withstand the water temperature differentials anticipated at the required operating conditions without experiencing any damage due to thermal shock.

2.3 FUEL BURNING EQUIPMENT

Boiler shall be designed to burn **propane** gas. Each boiler shall comply with Federal, state, and local emission regulations. As a minimum, the following emission requirements shall be met:

NOx - **20** parts per million (ppm) corrected to 3 percent O₂.

2.3.1 Burners

2.3.1.1 Gas Burners and Controls

Burners shall be UL approved mechanical draft burners with all air necessary for combustion supplied by a blower where the operation is coordinated with the burner. Burner shall be provided complete with fuel supply system in conformance with the following safety codes or standards:

- a. Gas-fired units with inputs greater than 400,000 Btuh per combustion chamber shall conform to UL 795.

2.4 PUMPS

2.4.1 Hot Water and Boiler Circulating Pumps

Circulating pumps for hot water shall be electrically driven single-stage centrifugal type and have a capacity not less than indicated. Boiler circulating pumps shall be supported by the piping on which installed and shall be closed-coupled shaft or flexible-coupled shaft. The boiler circulating pumps shall be vertical split case type. Hot water circulating pumps shall be supported on a concrete foundation with a cast iron or structural steel base and shall have a flexible-coupled shaft. The hot water circulating pumps shall be vertical split case type. The pump shaft shall be constructed of corrosion-resistant alloy steel, sleeve bearings and glands of bronze designed to accommodate a mechanical seal, and the housing of close-grained cast iron. Pump seals shall be capable of withstanding 240 degrees F temperature without external cooling. The motor shall have sufficient power for the service required, shall be of a type approved by the manufacturer of the pump, shall be suitable for the available electric service, and shall conform to the requirements of paragraph ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT. Each pump suction and discharge connection shall be provided with a pressure gauge as specified.

2.5 COLD WATER CONNECTIONS

Connections shall be provided which includes consecutively in line a strainer, reduced pressure principle backflow preventers, and water pressure regulator in that order in the direction of the flow. The reduced pressure principle backflow preventers shall be provided as indicated and in compliance with Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE. Cold water fill connections shall be made to the water supply system as indicated. Necessary pipe, fittings, and valves required for water connections between the boiler and cold water main shall be provided as shown. The pressure regulating valve shall be of a type that will not stick or allow pressure to build up on the low side. The valve shall be set to maintain a terminal pressure of approximately 5 psi in excess of the static head on the system and shall operate within a 2 psi tolerance regardless of cold water supply piping pressure and without objectionable noise under any condition of operation.

2.6 FITTINGS AND ACCESSORIES

Boiler fittings and accessories shall be installed with each boiler in accordance with ASME BPVC SEC IV, unless otherwise specified.

2.6.1 Direct Vents

Direct venting shall be used for condensing type boilers. Both the air

intake and exhaust vents shall be sized and located as indicated on the drawings and as recommended by the boiler manufacturer. A separate combustion air intake vent and exhaust vent shall be provided for each boiler.

2.6.1.1 Combustion Air Intake Vent

The combustion air intake piping shall be constructed of Schedule 40 PVC in accordance with [ASTM D1784](#). The vent shall be suitable for the temperature at the boiler combustion air intake connection point. Each intake shall be provided complete with bird screen.

2.6.1.2 Exhaust Vent

The exhaust vent piping shall be constructed of Schedule 40 CPVC or stainless steel conforming to [UL 1738](#) and the boiler manufacturer's recommendations. Plastic materials polyetherimide (PEI) and polyethersulfone (PES) are forbidden to be used for vent piping of combustion gases. The exhaust vent shall be suitable for the maximum anticipated boiler exhaust temperature and shall withstand the corrosive effects of the condensate. A [0.3125 inch](#) diameter hole shall be provided in the stack not greater than [6 inches](#) from the boiler flue outlet for sampling of the exit gases. A method shall be provided to seal the hole to prevent exhaust gases from entering the boiler room when samples are not being taken. Each exhaust stack shall be provided complete with bird screen.

2.6.2 Foundation (Setting) Materials

2.7 ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

Electric motor-driven equipment shall be provided complete with motors, motor starters, and necessary control devices. Electrical equipment, motor control devices, motor efficiencies and wiring shall be as specified in Section [26 20 00](#) INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Motors which are not an integral part of a packaged boiler and which are integral in size shall be the premium efficiency type in accordance with [NEMA MG 1](#). Motors which are an integral part of the packaged boiler shall be the highest efficiency available by the manufacturer of the packaged boiler. Motor starters shall be provided complete with properly sized thermal overload protections and other appurtenances necessary for the motor control specified. Starters shall be furnished in general purpose enclosures. Manual or automatic control and protective or signal devices required for the operation specified and any control wiring required for controls and devices but not shown shall be provided.

2.7.1 Motor Ratings

Motors shall be suitable for the voltage and frequency provided. Motors [1/2 hp](#) and larger shall be three-phase, unless otherwise indicated. Motors shall be of sufficient capacity to drive the equipment at the specified capacity without exceeding the nameplate rating on the motor.

2.7.2 Motor Controls

Motor controllers shall be provided complete with properly sized thermal overload protection. Manual or automatic control and protective or signal devices required for the operation specified and any wiring required to such devices shall be provided. Where two-speed or variable-speed motors

are indicated, solid-state variable-speed controllers may be provided to accomplish the same function. Solid state variable speed controllers shall be utilized for fractional through 10 hp ratings. Adjustable frequency drives shall be used for larger motors.

2.8 INSULATION

Shop and field-applied insulation shall be as specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

2.9 WATER TREATMENT SYSTEMS

When water treatment is specified, the use of chemical-treatment products containing equivalent chromium (CPR) is prohibited.

2.9.1 Water Analysis

Conditions of make-up water to be supplied to the heating water systems were reported in accordance with ASTM D596 and are as follows:

Date of Sample	04/11/2019
Temperature	65.84 degrees F
Silica (Sino 2)	39 pp (mg/l)
Insoluble	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Iron and Aluminum Oxides	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Calcium (Ca)	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Magnesium (Mg)	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Sodium and Potassium (Nan and AK)	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Carbonate (HO 3)	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Sulfate (SO 4)	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Chloride (JCL)	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Nitrate (NO 3)	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Turbidity	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
pH	7.38
Residual Chlorine	1.99 pp (mg/l)
Total Alkalinity	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Non-Carbonate Hardness	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Total Hardness	64 PM (me/l)

Dissolved Solids	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Fluorine	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Conductivity	Not Checked - Contractor to verify

2.9.2 Boiler Water Limits

The boiler manufacturer shall be consulted for the determination of the boiler water chemical composition limits. The boiler water limits shall be as follows unless dictated differently by the boiler manufacturer's recommendations:

Sodium Sulfite	20-40 ppm
Hardness	Less than 2 ppm
pH	9.3 - 9.9

2.9.3 Heating Water

Water to be used in the heating water systems shall be treated to maintain the conditions recommended by this specification as well as the recommendations from the boiler manufacturers. Chemicals shall meet all required federal, state, and local environmental regulations for the treatment of evaporator coils and direct discharge to the sanitary sewer.

2.9.4 Water Treatment Services

The services of a company regularly engaged in the treatment of heating water systems shall be used to determine the correct chemicals required, the concentrations required, and the water treatment equipment sizes and flow rates required. The company shall maintain the chemical treatment and provide all chemicals required for the heating water systems for a period of 1 year from the date of occupancy. The chemical treatment and services provided over the 1 year period shall meet the requirements of this specification as well as the recommendations from the boiler manufacturer. Acid treatment and proprietary chemicals shall not be used.

2.9.5 Chemical Shot Feeder

A shot feeder shall be provided on the heating water piping system. Size and capacity of feeder shall be based on local requirements and water analysis. The feeder shall be furnished with an air vent, gauge glass, funnel, valves, fittings, and piping.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

After becoming familiar with details of the work, verify dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing any work or ordering any materials.

3.2 GAS FUEL SYSTEM

Gas piping, fittings, valves, regulators, tests, cleaning, and adjustments shall be in accordance with the Section 23 11 25 FACILITY GAS PIPING. Submit proposed test schedules for the heating system and fuel system tests, at least 2 weeks prior to the start of related testing. NFPA 54 shall be complied with unless otherwise specified. Burners, pilots, and all accessories shall be listed in UL FLAMMABLE & COMBUSTIBLE. The fuel system shall be provided with a gas tight, manually operated, UL listed stop valve at the gas-supply connections, a gas strainer, a pressure regulator, pressure gauges, a burner-control valve, a safety shutoff valve suitable for size of burner and sequence of operation, and other components required for safe, efficient, and reliable operation as specified. Approved permanent and ready facilities to permit periodic valve leakage tests on the safety shutoff valve or valves shall be provided.

3.3 COLOR CODE MARKING AND FIELD PAINTING

Color code marking of piping shall be as specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS. Ferrous metal not specified to be coated at the factory shall be cleaned, prepared, and painted as specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS. Exposed pipe covering shall be painted as specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS. Aluminum sheath over insulation shall not be painted.

3.4 TEST OF BACKFLOW PREVENTION ASSEMBLIES

Backflow prevention assemblies shall be tested in accordance with Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.

3.5 FIELD TRAINING

Conduct a training course for the operating staff as designated by the Contracting Officer. The training period shall consist of a total of 4 hours of normal working time and shall start after the system is functionally completed but prior to final acceptance tests.

- a. The field instructions shall cover all of the items contained in the approved operation and maintenance manuals, as well as demonstrations of routine maintenance operations and boiler safety devices.
- b. Submit system layout diagrams that show the layout of equipment, piping, and ductwork and typed condensed operation manuals explaining preventative maintenance procedures, methods of checking the system for normal, safe operation, and procedures for safely starting and stopping the system, framed under glass or laminated plastic, at least 2 weeks prior to the start of related testing. After approval, these items shall be posted where directed.
- c. Submit six complete operation and maintenance instructions listing step-by-step procedures required for system startup, operation, shutdown, and routine maintenance, at least 2 weeks prior to field training. The manuals shall include the manufacturer's name, model number, parts list, simplified wiring and control diagrams, troubleshooting guide, and recommended service organization (including address and telephone number) for each item of equipment. Each service organization shall be capable of providing 4 hour onsite response to a service call on an emergency basis.

- d. Notify the Contracting Officer at least 14 days prior to date of proposed conduction of the training course.

3.6 FUEL SYSTEM TESTS

Submit test reports for the fuel system tests, upon completion of testing complete with results.

3.6.1 Gas System Test

The gas fuel system shall be tested in accordance with the test procedures outlined in NFPA 54.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 64 10

WATER CHILLERS, VAPOR COMPRESSION TYPE
11/16

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED SECTIONS

Related work specified in Section 25 05 11.00 CYBERSECURITY FOR FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR-CONDITIONING, HEATING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE (AHRI)

AHRI 550/590 I-P (2015; ERTA 2016) Performance Rating Of Water-Chilling and Heat Pump Water-Heating Packages Using the Vapor Compression Cycle

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ANSI/ASHRAE 15 & 34 (2016) ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 15-Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems and ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 34-Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS Z49.1 (2012) Safety in Welding and Cutting and Allied Processes

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1 (2017) BPVC Section VIII-Rules for Construction of Pressure Vessels Division 1

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A307 (2014; E 2017) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength

ASTM B117 (2016) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus

ASTM D520 (2000; R 2011) Zinc Dust Pigment

ASTM F104 (2011) Standard Classification System for Nonmetallic Gasket Materials

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA MG 1 (2016; SUPP 2016) Motors and Generators

NEMA MG 11 (1977; R 2012) Energy Management Guide for
Selection and Use of Single Phase Motors

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Water Chiller; G

System Performance Tests

Demonstrations

Refrigerant

Water Chiller - Field Acceptance Test Plan

SD-06 Test Reports

Field Acceptance Testing

Water Chiller - Field Acceptance Test Report

System Performance Tests

SD-07 Certificates

Refrigeration System; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Water Chiller - Installation Instructions; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance Manuals; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Indoor Air Quality During Construction; S

1.4 CERTIFICATIONS

1.5 SAFETY REQUIREMENTS

Exposed moving parts, parts that produce high operating temperature, parts which may be electrically energized, and parts that may be a hazard to operating personnel must be insulated, fully enclosed, guarded, or fitted

with other types of safety devices. Safety devices must be installed so that proper operation of equipment is not impaired. Welding and cutting safety requirements must be in accordance with AWS Z49.1.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Stored items must be protected from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, or other contaminants. Proper protection and care of all material both before and during installation will be the Contractor's responsibility. Any materials found to be damaged must be replaced at the Contractor's expense. During installation, piping and similar openings must be capped to keep out dirt and other foreign matter.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STANDARD COMMERCIAL PRODUCTS

Materials and equipment will be standard Commercial cataloged products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacturing of such products, which are of a similar material, design and workmanship. These products must have a two year record of satisfactory field service prior to bid opening. The two year record of service must include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. Products having less than a two year record of satisfactory field service will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field service for not less than 6000 hours can be shown. The 6000 hour service record must not include any manufacturer's prototype or factory testing. Satisfactory field service must have been completed by a product that has been, and presently is being sold or offered for sale on the commercial market through the following copyrighted means: advertisements, manufacturer's catalogs, or brochures.

2.2 MANUFACTURER'S STANDARD NAMEPLATES

Major equipment including chillers, compressors, compressor drivers, condensers, water coolers, receivers, refrigerant leak detectors, heat exchanges, fans, and motors must have the manufacturer's name, address, type or style, model or serial number, and catalog number on a plate secured to the item of equipment. Plates must be durable and legible throughout equipment life. Plates must be fixed in prominent locations with nonferrous screws or bolts.

2.3 ELECTRICAL WORK

- a. Provide motors, controllers, integral disconnects, contactors, and controls with their respective pieces of equipment, except controllers indicated as part of motor control centers. Provide electrical equipment, including motors and wiring, as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Manual or automatic control and protective or signal devices required for the operation specified and control wiring required for controls and devices specified, but not shown, must be provided. For packaged equipment, the manufacturer must provide controllers including the required monitors and timed restart.
- b. For single-phase motors, provide high-efficiency type, fractional-horsepower alternating-current motors, including motors that are part of a system, in accordance with NEMA MG 11.
- c. For polyphase motors, provide squirrel-cage medium induction motors,

including motors that are part of a system, and that meet the efficiency ratings for premium efficiency motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1.

- d. Provide motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1 and of sufficient size to drive the load at the specified capacity without exceeding the nameplate rating of the motor. Motors must be rated for continuous duty with the enclosure specified. Motor duty requirements must allow for maximum frequency start-stop operation and minimum encountered interval between start and stop. Motor torque must be capable of accelerating the connected load within 20 seconds with 80 percent of the rated voltage maintained at motor terminals during one starting period. Provide motor starters complete with thermal overload protection and other necessary appurtenances. Motor enclosure type may be either TEAO or TEFC.
- e. Use adjustable frequency drives for all variable-speed motor applications. Provide variable frequency drives for motors as specified in Section 26 29 23 VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVE SYSTEMS UNDER 600 VOLTS.
- f. Provide inverter duty premium efficiency motors for use with variable frequency drives.

2.4 SELF-CONTAINED WATER CHILLER, VAPOR COMPRESSION TYPE

Unless necessary for delivery purposes, units must be assembled, leak-tested, charged (refrigerant and oil), and adjusted at the factory. In lieu of delivery constraints, a chiller may be assembled, leak-tested, charged (refrigerant and oil), and adjusted at the job site by a factory representative. Unit components delivered separately must be sealed and charged with a nitrogen holding charge. Parts weighing 50 pounds or more which must be removed for inspection, cleaning, or repair, such as motors, gear boxes, cylinder heads, casing tops, condenser, and cooler heads, must have lifting eyes or lugs. Chiller must be provided with a single point wiring connection for incoming power supply. Chiller's condenser and water cooler must be provided with standard water boxes with flanged connections.

2.4.1 Scroll Type

Chiller must be certified for performance per AHRI 550/590 I-P. If specified performance is outside of the Application Rating Conditions of AHRI 550/590 I-P, Table 2 then the chiller's performance must be rated in accordance with AHRI 550/590 I-P. Chiller must conform to ANSI/ASHRAE 15 & 34. As a minimum, chiller must include the following components as defined in paragraph CHILLER COMPONENTS.

- a. Refrigerant and oil
- b. Structural base
- c. Chiller refrigerant circuit
- d. Controls package
- e. Scroll compressor
- f. Compressor driver, electric motor

- g. Compressor driver connection
- h. Water cooler (evaporator)
- i. Air-cooled condenser coil

2.5 CHILLER COMPONENTS

2.5.1 Refrigerant and Oil

Refrigerants must be one of the fluorocarbon gases. Refrigerants must have number designations and safety classifications in accordance with [ANSI/ASHRAE 15 & 34](#). CFC-based refrigerants are prohibited. Refrigerants must have an Ozone Depletion Potential (ODP) no greater than 0.0, with the exception of R-123. Provide SDS sheets for all refrigerants.

2.5.2 Structural Base

Chiller and individual chiller components must be provided with a factory-mounted structural steel base (welded or bolted) or support legs. Chiller and individual chiller components must be isolated by means of molded neoprene isolation pads.

2.5.3 Chiller Refrigerant Circuit

Chiller refrigerant circuit must be completely piped and factory leak tested in accordance with [ANSI/ASHRAE 15 & 34](#). For multicompressor units, not less than 2 independent refrigerant circuits must be provided. Circuit must include as a minimum a combination filter and drier, combination sight glass and moisture indicator, an electronic or thermostatic expansion valve with external equalizer or float valve, charging ports, compressor service valves for field-serviceable compressors, and superheat adjustment.

2.5.4 Controls Package

Provide chillers with a complete factory-mounted , microprocessor based operating and safety control system. Controls package must contain as a minimum a digital display, an on-auto-off switch, motor starters, variable frequency motor controller, disconnect switches, power wiring, and control wiring. Controls package must provide operating controls, monitoring capabilities, programmable setpoints, safety controls, and [BAS](#) interfaces as defined below.

2.5.4.1 Operating Controls

Chiller must be provided with the following adjustable operating controls as a minimum.

- a. Leaving chilled water temperature control
- b. Adjustable timer or automated controls to prevent a compressor from short cycling
- c. Automatic lead/lag controls (adjustable) for multi-compressor units
- d. Load limiting
- e. System capacity control to adjust the unit capacity in accordance with the system load and the programmable setpoints. Controls must

automatically re-cycle the chiller on power interruption.

- f. Startup and head pressure controls to allow system operation at all ambient temperatures down to -10 degrees F.

2.5.4.2 Monitoring Capabilities

During normal operations, the control system must be capable of monitoring and displaying the following operating parameters. Access and operation of display must not require opening or removing any panels or doors.

- a. Entering and leaving chilled water temperatures
- b. Self diagnostic
- c. Operation status
- d. Operating hours
- e. Number of starts
- f. Compressor status (on or off)
- g. Compressor load (percent)
- h. Refrigerant discharge and suction pressures
- i. Oil pressure

2.5.4.3 Configurable Setpoints

The control system must be capable of being configured directly at the unit's interface panel. The programmable setpoints must include the following as a minimum:

- a. Leaving Chilled Water Temperature
- b. Time Clock/Calendar Date

2.5.4.4 Safety Controls with Manual Reset

Chiller must be provided with the following safety controls which automatically shutdown the chiller and which require manual reset.

- a. Low chilled water temperature protection
- b. High condenser refrigerant discharge pressure protection
- c. Low evaporator pressure protection
- d. Chilled water flow detection
- e. High motor winding temperature protection
- f. Low oil flow protection if applicable
- g. Motor current overload and phase loss protection

2.5.4.5 Safety Controls with Automatic Reset

Chiller must be provided with the following safety controls which automatically shutdown the chiller and which provide automatic reset.

- a. Over/under voltage protection
- b. Chilled water flow interlock
- c. Phase reversal protection

2.5.4.6 Remote Alarm

During the initiation of a safety shutdown, a chiller's control system must be capable of activating a remote alarm bell. In coordination with the chiller, the Contractor must provide an alarm circuit (including transformer if applicable) and a minimum 4 inch diameter alarm bell. Alarm circuit must activate bell in the event of machine shutdown due to the chiller's monitoring of safety controls. The alarm bell must not sound for a chiller that uses low-pressure cutout as an operating control.

2.5.4.7 Energy Monitoring and Control System Interface

Provide a Energy Monitoring and Control System (EMCS) interface meeting the requirements of Section 23 09 23.02 BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS. The interface must provide all system operating conditions, capacity controls, and safety shutdown conditions as network points. In addition, the following points must be overridable via the network interface:

- a. Unit Start/Stop
- b. Leaving Chilled Water Temperature Setpoint

2.5.5 Compressor(s)

2.5.5.1 Scroll Compressor(s)

Compressors must be of the hermetically sealed design. Compressors must be mounted on vibration isolators to minimize vibration and noise. Rotating parts must be statically and dynamically balanced at the factory to minimize vibration. Lubrication system must be centrifugal pump type equipped with a means for determining oil level and an oil charging valve. Crankcase oil heater must be provided.

2.5.6 Compressor Driver, Electric Motor

Components such as motors, starters, variable speed drives and wiring must be in accordance with paragraph ELECTRICAL WORK. Motor starterVariable frequency drive must be unit mounted with compressor starter and variable frequency drive for condenser fans, wiring, and accessories coordinated with the chiller manufacturer.

2.5.7 Water Cooler (Evaporator)

Cooler must be of the shell-and-tube type design. Cooler shell must be constructed of seamless or welded steel. Tubes must be seamless copper, plain, integrally finned with smooth bore or integrally finned with enhanced bore. Each tube must be individually replaceable. Tubes must be

installed into carbon mild steel tube sheets by rolling. Tube baffles must be properly spaced to provide adequate tube support and cross flow. Performance must be based on a water velocity not less than 3 fps nor more than 12 fps and a fouling factor per AHRI 550/590 I-P.

Brazed plate heat exchanger must be constructed of 304 or 316 stainless steel, designed to a refrigerant-side working pressure of 430 psig and a waterside working pressure of 150 psig. Evaporator must be factory tested at 1.1 times maximum allowable refrigerant side working pressure and 1.5 times maximum allowable water side working pressure. Provide cooler heaters to protect the evaporator to an ambient of minus 20 degrees F. Provide cooler with factory-installed flow switches. All water connections must use either flanged connections. Factory insulate all cold surfaces.

2.5.8 Air-Cooled Condenser Coil

The condenser coil must be of the microchannel heat exchanger technology (MCHX) type consisting of a series of flat tubes containing a series of multiple, parallel flow microchannels layered between the refrigerant manifolds in a two-pass arrangement. Provide coils constructed of aluminum alloys for fins, tubes, and manifolds. Coil must be factory leak and pressure tested after assembly in accordance with ANSI/ASHRAE 15 & 34.

Coil must be entirely coated in accordance with the requirements of paragraph COIL CORROSION PROTECTION.

2.5.9 Tools

One complete set of special tools, as recommended by the manufacturer for field maintenance of the system, must be provided. Tools must be mounted on a tool board in the equipment room or contained in a toolbox as directed by the Contracting Officer.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

2.6.1 Refrigerant Relief Valve/Rupture Disc Assembly

The assembly must be a pressure relief valve designed for refrigerant usage. The assembly must be in accordance with ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1 and ANSI/ASHRAE 15 & 34.

2.6.2 Refrigerant Signs

Refrigerant signs must be a medium-weight aluminum type with a baked enamel finish. Signs must be suitable for indoor or outdoor service. Signs must have a white background with red letters not less than 0.5 inches in height.

2.6.2.1 Installation Identification

Each new refrigerating system must be provided with a refrigerant sign which indicates the following as a minimum:

- a. Contractor's name.
- b. Refrigerant number and amount of refrigerant.
- c. The lubricant identity and amount.
- d. Field test pressure applied.

2.6.2.2 Controls and Piping Identification

Refrigerant systems containing more than 110 lb of refrigerant must be provided with refrigerant signs which designate the following as a minimum:

- a. Valves or switches for controlling the refrigerant flow and the refrigerant compressor(s).
- b. Pressure limiting device(s).

2.6.3 Gaskets

Gaskets must conform to ASTM F104 - classification for compressed sheet with nitrile binder and acrylic fibers for maximum 700 degrees F service.

2.6.4 Bolts and Nuts

Bolts and nuts, except as required for piping applications, must be in accordance with ASTM A307. The bolt head must be marked to identify the manufacturer and the standard with which the bolt complies in accordance with ASTM A307.

2.7 FABRICATION

2.7.1 Factory Coating

Unless otherwise specified, equipment and component items, when fabricated from ferrous metal, must be factory finished with the manufacturer's standard finish, except that items located outside of buildings must have weather resistant finishes that will withstand 500 hours exposure to the salt spray test specified in ASTM B117 using a 5 percent sodium chloride solution. Immediately after completion of the test, the specimen must show no signs of blistering, wrinkling, cracking, or loss of adhesion and no sign of rust creepage beyond 1/8 inch on either side of the scratch mark. Cut edges of galvanized surfaces where hot-dip galvanized sheet steel is used must be coated with a zinc-rich coating conforming to ASTM D520, Type I.

2.7.2 Factory Applied Insulation

Chiller must be provided with factory installed insulation on surfaces subject to sweating including the water cooler, suction line piping, economizer, and cooling lines. Insulation on heads of coolers may be field applied, however it must be installed to provide easy removal and replacement of heads without damage to the insulation. Where motors are the gas-cooled type, factory installed insulation must be provided on the cold-gas inlet connection to the motor per manufacturer's standard practice. Factory insulated items installed outdoors are not required to be fire-rated.

2.7.3 Coil Corrosion Protection

Provide coil with a uniformly applied epoxy polymer coating with UV-resistant urethane top-coat type coating to all coil surface areas without material bridging between fins. Submit product data on the type coating selected, the coating thickness, the application process used, the estimated heat transfer loss of the coil, and verification of conformance with the salt spray test requirement. Coating must be applied at either

the coil or coating manufacturer's factory. Coating process must ensure complete coil encapsulation. Coating must be capable of withstanding a minimum 6,000 hours exposure to the salt spray test specified in ASTM B117 using a 5 percent sodium chloride solution.

2.8 SUPPLEMENTAL COMPONENTS/SERVICES

2.8.1 Chilled and Condenser Water Piping and Accessories

Chilled water piping and accessories must be provided and installed in accordance with Section 23 64 26 CHILLED, CHILLED-HOT, AND CONDENSER WATER PIPING SYSTEMS.

2.8.2 Refrigerant Piping

Refrigerant piping for split-system water chillers must be provided and installed in accordance with Section 23 23 00 REFRIGERANT PIPING.

2.8.3 Temperature Controls

Chiller control packages must be fully coordinated with and integrated into the temperature control system indicated in Section 23 00 00 AIR SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION, AND EXHAUST SYSTEM and Section 23 09 23.02 BACnet DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Installation of water chiller systems including materials, installation, workmanship, fabrication, assembly, erection, examination, inspection, and testing must be in accordance with the manufacturer's written installation instructions, including the following:

(1) Water chiller - installation instructions

3.1.1 Installation Instructions

Provide manufacturer's standard catalog data, at least 5 weeks prior to the purchase or installation of a particular component, highlighted to show features such as materials, dimensions, options, performance and efficiency. Data must include manufacturer's recommended installation instructions and procedures. Data must be adequate to demonstrate compliance with contract requirements.

3.1.2 Vibration Isolation

If vibration isolation is specified for a unit, vibration isolator literature must be included containing catalog cuts and certification that the isolation characteristics of the isolators provided meet the manufacturer's recommendations.

3.1.3 System Performance Test Schedules

Provide a schedule, at least 2 weeks prior to the start of related testing, for the system performance tests. The schedules must identify the proposed date, time, and location for each test.

3.1.4 Certificates

Where the system, components, or equipment are specified to comply with requirements of AGA, NFPA, ARI, ASHRAE, ASME, or UL, proof of such compliance must be provided. The label or listing of the specified agency must be acceptable evidence. In lieu of the label or listing, a written certificate from an approved, nationally recognized testing organization equipped to perform such services, stating that the items have been tested and conform to the requirements and testing methods of the specified agency may be submitted. When performance requirements of this project's drawings and specifications vary from standard ARI rating conditions, computer printouts, catalog, or other application data certified by ARI or a nationally recognized laboratory as described above must be included. If ARI does not have a current certification program that encompasses such application data, the manufacturer may self certify that his application data complies with project performance requirements in accordance with the specified test standards.

3.1.5 Operation and Maintenance Manuals

Provide Six complete copies of an operation manual in bound 8 1/2 by 11 inch booklets listing step-by-step procedures required for system startup, operation, abnormal shutdown, emergency shutdown, and normal shutdown at least 4 weeks prior to the first training course. The booklets must include the manufacturer's name, model number, and parts list. The manuals must include the manufacturer's name, model number, service manual, and a brief description of all equipment and their basic operating features. Six complete copies of maintenance manual in bound 8 1/2 by 11 inch booklets listing routine maintenance procedures, possible breakdowns and repairs, and a trouble shooting guide. The manuals must include piping and equipment layouts and simplified wiring and control diagrams of the system as installed.

3.1.6 Refrigeration System

3.1.6.1 Equipment

Refrigeration equipment and the installation thereof must conform to ANSI/ASHRAE 15 & 34. Necessary supports must be provided for all equipment, appurtenances, and pipe as required, including frames or supports for compressors, pumps, and similar items. Compressors shall be mounted on rubber in shear vibration isolator or equivalent. Concrete for foundations must be as specified in Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE. Equipment must be properly leveled, aligned, and secured in place in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.1.6.2 Field Refrigerant Charging

- a. Initial Charge: Upon completion of all the refrigerant pipe tests, the vacuum on the system must be broken by adding the required charge of dry refrigerant for which the system is designed, in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Contractor must provide the complete charge of refrigerant in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Upon satisfactory completion of the system performance tests, any refrigerant that has been lost from the system must be replaced. After the system is fully operational, service valve seal caps and blanks over gauge points must be installed and tightened.
- b. Refrigerant Leakage: If a refrigerant leak is discovered after the

system has been charged, the leaking portion of the system must immediately be isolated from the remainder of the system and the refrigerant must be pumped into the system receiver or other suitable container. The refrigerant must not be discharged into the atmosphere.

- c. Contractor's Responsibility: The Contractor must, at all times during the installation and testing of the refrigeration system, take steps to prevent the release of refrigerants into the atmosphere. The steps must include, but not be limited to, procedures which will minimize the release of refrigerants to the atmosphere and the use of refrigerant recovery devices to remove refrigerant from the system and store the refrigerant for reuse or reclaim. At no time must more than 3 ounces of refrigerant be released to the atmosphere in any one occurrence. Any system leaks within the first year must be repaired in accordance with the specified requirements including material, labor, and refrigerant if the leak is the result of defective equipment, material, or installation.

3.1.6.3 Oil Charging

Except for factory sealed units, two complete charges of lubricating oil for each compressor crankcase must be furnished. One charge must be used during the performance testing period, and upon the satisfactory completion of the tests, the oil must be drained and replaced with the second charge.

3.1.7 Field Applied Insulation

Field installed insulation must be as specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS, except as defined differently herein.

3.1.8 Field Painting

Painting required for surfaces not otherwise specified, and finish painting of items only primed at the factory are specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

3.2 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICE

The services of a factory-trained representative must be provided for 2 days. The representative shall advise on the following:

a. Hermetic machines:

- (1) Testing hermetic water-chilling unit under pressure for refrigerant leaks; evacuation and dehydration of machine to an absolute pressure of not over 300 micrometers.
- (2) Charging the machine with refrigerant.
- (3) Starting the machine.

b. Open Machines:

- (1) Erection, alignment, testing, and dehydrating.
- (2) Charging the machine with refrigerant.
- (3) Starting the machine.

3.3 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

Equipment must be wiped clean, with all traces of oil, dust, dirt, or paint spots removed. Provide temporary filters for all fans that are operated during construction. Perform and document that proper [Indoor Air Quality During Construction](#) procedures have been followed; this includes providing documentation showing that after construction ends, and prior to occupancy, new filters were provided and installed. System must be maintained in this clean condition until final acceptance. Bearings must be properly lubricated with oil or grease as recommended by the manufacturer. Belts must be tightened to proper tension. Control valves and other miscellaneous equipment requiring adjustment must be adjusted to setting indicated or directed. Fans must be adjusted to the speed indicated by the manufacturer to meet specified conditions. At least one week before the official equipment warranty start date, all condenser coils on air-cooled water chillers and split-system water chillers must be cleaned in accordance with the chiller manufacturer's instructions. This work covers two coil cleanings. The condenser coils must be cleaned with an approved coil cleaner by a service technician, factory trained by the chiller manufacturer. The condenser coil cleaner must not have any detrimental affect on the materials or protective coatings on the condenser coils. Testing, adjusting, and balancing must be as specified in Section [23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC](#).

3.4 [FIELD ACCEPTANCE TESTING](#)

3.4.1 Test Plans

- a. Manufacturer's Test Plans: Within 120 calendar days after contract award, submit the following plans:

- (1) [Water chiller - Field Acceptance Test Plan](#)

Field acceptance test plans must be developed by the chiller manufacturer detailing recommended field test procedures for that particular type and size of equipment. Field acceptance test plans developed by the installing Contractor, or the equipment sales agency furnishing the equipment, will not be acceptable.

The Contracting Officer will review and approve the field acceptance test plan for each of the listed equipment prior to commencement of field testing of the equipment. The approved field acceptance tests of the chiller and subsequent test reporting.

- b. Coordinated testing: Indicate in each field acceptance test plan when work required by this section requires coordination with test work required by other specification sections. Furnish test procedures for the simultaneous or integrated testing of controls which interlock and interface with controls for the equipment provided under Section [23 09 23.02 BACnet DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS](#).
 - c. Prerequisite testing: Chillers for which performance testing is dependent upon the completion of the work covered by Section [23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC](#) must have that work completed as a prerequisite to testing work under this section. Indicate in each field acceptance test plan when such prerequisite work is required.

- d. Test procedure: Indicate in each field acceptance test plan each equipment manufacturers published installation, start-up, and field acceptance test procedures. Include in each test plan a detailed step-by-step procedure for testing automatic controls provided by the manufacturer.

Each test plan must include the required test reporting forms to be completed by the Contractor's testing representatives. Procedures must be structured to test the controls through all modes of control to confirm that the controls are performing with the intended sequence of control.

Controller must be verified to be properly calibrated and have the proper set point to provide stable control of their respective equipment.

- e. Performance variables: Each test plan must list performance variables that are required to be measured or tested as part of the field test.

Include in the listed variables performance requirements indicated on the equipment schedules on the design drawings. Chiller manufacturer must furnish with each test procedure a description of acceptable results that have been verified.

Chiller manufacturer must identify the acceptable limits or tolerance within which each tested performance variable must acceptably operate.

- f. Job specific: Each test plan must be job specific and must address the particular conditions which exist in this contract. Generic or general preprinted test procedures are not acceptable.
- g. Specialized components: Each test plan must include procedures for field testing and field adjusting specialized components, such as hot gas bypass control valves, or pressure valves.

3.4.2 Testing

- a. Each water chiller system must be field acceptance tested in compliance with its approved field acceptance test plan and the resulting following field acceptance test report submitted for approval:

- (1) Water chiller - Field Acceptance Test Report

- b. Manufacturer's recommended testing: Conduct the manufacturer's recommended field testing in compliance with the approved test plan. Furnish a factory trained field representative authorized by and to represent the equipment manufacturer at the complete execution of the field acceptance testing.
- c. Operational test: Conduct a continuous 24 hour operational test for each item of equipment. Equipment shutdown before the test period is completed shall result in the test period being started again and run for the required duration. For the duration of the test period, compile an operational log of each item of equipment. Log required entries every two hours. Use the test report forms for logging the operational variables.

- d. Notice of tests: Conduct the manufacturer's recommended tests and the operational tests; record the required data using the approved reporting forms. Notify the Contracting Officer in writing at least 15 calendar days prior to the testing. Within 30 calendar days after acceptable completion of testing, submit each test report for review and approval.
- e. Report forms: Type data entries and writing on the test report forms. Completed test report forms for each item of equipment must be reviewed, approved, and signed by the Contractor's test director. The manufacturer's field test representative must review, approve, and sign the report of the manufacturer's recommended test. Signatures must be accompanied by the person's name typed.
- f. Deficiency resolution: The test requirements acceptably met; deficiencies identified during the tests must be corrected in compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations and corrections retested in order to verify compliance.

3.5 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE TESTS

Six copies of the report must be provided in bound 8 1/2 by 11 inch booklets.

3.5.1 General Requirements

Before each refrigeration system is accepted, tests to demonstrate the general operating characteristics of all equipment must be conducted by the manufacturer's approved start-up representative experienced in system start-up and testing, at such times as directed. Tests must cover a period of not less than 48 hours for each system and must demonstrate that the entire system is functioning in accordance with the drawings and specifications. Corrections and adjustments must be made as necessary and tests must be re-conducted to demonstrate that the entire system is functioning as specified. Prior to acceptance, service valve seal caps and blanks over gauge points must be installed and tightened. Any refrigerant lost during the system startup must be replaced. If tests do not demonstrate satisfactory system performance, deficiencies must be corrected and the system must be retested. Tests must be conducted in the presence of the Contracting Officer. Water and electricity required for the tests will be furnished by the Government. Any material, equipment, instruments, and personnel required for the test must be provided by the Contractor. Field tests must be coordinated with Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC.

3.5.2 Test Report

The report must document compliance with the specified performance criteria upon completion and testing of the system. The report must indicate the number of days covered by the tests and any conclusions as to the adequacy of the system. The report must also include the following information and must be taken at least three different times at outside dry-bulb temperatures that are at least 5 degrees F apart:

- a. Date and outside weather conditions.
- b. The load on the system based on the following:
 - (1) The refrigerant used in the system.

- (2) Condensing temperature and pressure.
- (3) Suction temperature and pressure.
- (4) Running current, voltage and proper phase sequence for each phase of all motors.
- (5) The actual on-site setting of all operating and safety controls.
- (6) Chilled water pressure, flow and temperature in and out of the chiller.

3.6 DEMONSTRATIONS

Contractor must conduct a training course for the operating staff as designated by the Contracting Officer. The training period must consist of a total 4 hours of normal working time and start after the system is functionally completed but prior to final acceptance tests. The training course must cover all of the items contained in the approved [operation and maintenance manuals](#) as well as demonstrations of routine maintenance operations.

Provide a schedule, at least 2 weeks prior to the date of the proposed training course, which identifies the date, time, and location for the training.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 64 26

CHILLED, CHILLED-HOT, AND CONDENSER WATER PIPING SYSTEMS

08/09

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS A5.8/A5.8M	(2011; Amendment 2012) Specification for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding
AWS BRH	(2007; 5th Ed) Brazing Handbook
AWS D1.1/D1.1M	(2015; Errata 1 2015; Errata 2 2016) Structural Welding Code - Steel
AWS Z49.1	(2012) Safety in Welding and Cutting and Allied Processes

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME B1.20.1	(2013) Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)
ASME B16.1	(2015) Gray Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings Classes 25, 125, and 250
ASME B16.11	(2016) Forged Fittings, Socket-Welding and Threaded
ASME B16.18	(2018) Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B16.21	(2016) Nonmetallic Flat Gaskets for Pipe Flanges
ASME B16.22	(2013) Standard for Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B16.26	(2013) Standard for Cast Copper Alloy Fittings for Flared Copper Tubes
ASME B16.3	(2016) Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings, Classes 150 and 300
ASME B16.39	(2014) Standard for Malleable Iron Threaded Pipe Unions; Classes 150, 250, and 300
ASME B16.9	(2018) Factory-Made Wrought Buttwelding Fittings

ASME B31.9	(2017) Building Services Piping
ASME B40.100	(2013) Pressure Gauges and Gauge Attachments
ASME BPVC SEC IX	(2017; Errata 2018) BPVC Section IX-Welding, Brazing and Fusing Qualifications

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A53/A53M	(2018) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
ASTM A653/A653M	(2017) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM A733	(2016) Standard Specification for Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel and Austenitic Stainless Steel Pipe Nipples
ASTM B117	(2016) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus
ASTM B32	(2008; R 2014) Standard Specification for Solder Metal
ASTM B42	(2015a) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes
ASTM B62	(2017) Standard Specification for Composition Bronze or Ounce Metal Castings
ASTM B75/B75M	(2011) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube
ASTM B813	(2016) Standard Specification for Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube
ASTM B88	(2016) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube
ASTM D3308	(2012; R 2017) PStandard Specification for TFE Resin Skived Tape
ASTM D520	(2000; R 2011) Zinc Dust Pigment
ASTM D596	(2001; R 2011) Reporting Results of Analysis of Water
ASTM E84	(2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
ASTM F1199	(1988; R 2015) Cast (All Temperatures and

Pressures) and Welded Pipe Line Strainers
(150 psig and 150 degrees F Maximum)

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS
INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-25 (2013) Standard Marking System for Valves,
Fittings, Flanges and Unions

MSS SP-58 (2009) Pipe Hangers and Supports -
Materials, Design and Manufacture,
Selection, Application, and Installation

MSS SP-69 (2003; Notice 2012) Pipe Hangers and
Supports - Selection and Application (ANSI
Approved American National Standard)

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA MG 1 (2016; SUPP 2016) Motors and Generators

NEMA MG 11 (1977; R 2012) Energy Management Guide for
Selection and Use of Single Phase Motors

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 90A (2018) Standard for the Installation of
Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Provide the water systems having the minimum service (design) temperature-pressure rating indicated. Provision of the piping systems, including materials, installation, workmanship, fabrication, assembly, erection, examination, inspection, and testing shall be in accordance with the required and advisory provisions of ASME B31.9 except as modified or supplemented by this specification section or design drawings. This specification section covers the water systems piping which is located within, on, and adjacent to building(s) within the building(s) 5 foot line.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Automatic Flow Control Valves; G

Pressure Relief Valve

Combination Pressure and Temperature Relief Valves

Combination Strainer and Pump Suction Diffuser

Expansion Tanks

Air Separator Tanks

Water Treatment Systems; G

Proposed water treatment plan including a layout, control scheme, a list of existing make-up water conditions including the items listed in paragraph "WATER ANALYSIS", a list of chemicals, the proportion of chemicals to be added, the final treated water conditions, and a description of environmental concerns for handling the chemicals.

SD-06 Test Reports

Piping Welds NDE Report

Pressure Tests Reports; G

Report shall be provided in bound 8-1/2 by 11 inch booklets. In the reports, document all phases of the tests performed. Include initial test summaries, all repairs/adjustments made, and the final test results.

One-Year Inspection Report For Cooling Water; G

At the completion of one year of service, in bound 8-1/2 by 11 inch booklets. In the report, identify the condition of each water cooled condenser. Include a comparison of the condition of the cooling tower and condenser with the manufacturer's recommended operating conditions. Identify all actions taken by the Contractor and manufacturer to correct deficiencies during the first year of service.

SD-07 Certificates

Employer's Record Documents (For Welding)

Welding Procedures and Qualifications

Certificates shall be submitted showing conformance with the referenced standards contained in this section.

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Lesson plan for the Instruction Course; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Requirements for data packages are specified Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA, except as supplemented and modified by this specification section.

Submit spare parts data for each different item of equipment specified, with operation and maintenance data packages. Include a complete list of parts and supplies, with current unit prices and source of supply, a recommended spare parts list for 1 year of operation, and a list of the parts recommended by the manufacturer to be replaced on a routine basis.

Submit a list of qualified permanent service organizations with operation and maintenance data packages. Include service organization addresses and service area or expertise. The service organizations shall be reasonably convenient to the equipment installation and be able to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

Water Treatment Systems; G

An operation manual in bound 8-1/2 by 11 inch booklets listing step-by-step procedures required for system startup, operation, abnormal shutdown, emergency shutdown, and normal shutdown. Include testing procedures used in determining water quality.

A maintenance manual in bound 8-1/2 by 11 inch booklets listing routine maintenance procedures, possible breakdowns and repairs, and a trouble shooting guide.

Automatic Flow Control Valves, Data Package 3; G

Pressure Relief Valve, Data Package 2; G

Combination Pressure and Temperature Relief Valves, Data Package 2; G

Combination Strainer and Pump Suction Diffuser, Data Package 2; G

Expansion Tanks, Data Package 2; G

Air Separator Tanks, Data Package 2; G

1.4 MODIFICATIONS TO REFERENCES

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "shall" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction", or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer.

1.4.1 Definitions

For the International Code Council (ICC) Codes referenced in the contract documents, advisory provisions shall be considered mandatory, the word "should" shall be interpreted as "shall." Reference to the "code official" shall be interpreted to mean the "Contracting Officer." For Navy owned property, references to the "owner" shall be interpreted to mean the "Contracting Officer." For leased facilities, references to the "owner" shall be interpreted to mean the "lessor." References to the "permit holder" shall be interpreted to mean the "Contractor."

1.4.2 Administrative Interpretations

For ICC Codes referenced in the contract documents, the provisions of Chapter 1, "Administrator," do not apply. These administrative requirements are covered by the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulations (FAR) included in this contract and by the authority granted to the Officer in Charge of Construction to administer the construction of this project.

References in the ICC Codes to sections of Chapter 1, shall be applied appropriately by the Contracting Officer as authorized by his administrative cognizance and the FAR.

1.5 SAFETY REQUIREMENTS

Exposed moving parts, parts that produce high operating temperature, parts which may be electrically energized, and parts that may be a hazard to operating personnel shall be insulated, fully enclosed, guarded, or fitted with other types of safety devices. Safety devices shall be installed so that proper operation of equipment is not impaired.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Protect stored items from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, or other contaminants. Proper protection and care of all material both before and during installation shall be the Contractor's responsibility. Any materials found to be damaged shall be replaced at the Contractor's expense. During installation, cap piping and similar openings to keep out dirt and other foreign matter. Any porous materials found to be contaminated with mold or mildew will be replaced at the Contractor's expense. Non-porous materials found to be contaminated with mold or mildew will be disinfected and cleaned prior to installation.

1.7 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

1.7.1 Verification of Dimensions

The Contractor shall become familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing any work.

1.7.2 Drawings

Because of the small scale of the drawings, it is not possible to indicate all offsets, fittings, and accessories that may be required. The Contractor shall carefully investigate the plumbing, fire protection, electrical, structural and finish conditions that would affect the work to be performed and shall arrange such work accordingly, furnishing required offsets, fittings, and accessories to meet such conditions.

1.7.3 Accessibility

Install all work so that parts requiring periodic inspection, operation, maintenance, and repair are readily accessible. Install concealed valves, expansion joints, controls, dampers, and equipment requiring access, in locations freely accessible through access doors.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STANDARD COMMERCIAL PRODUCTS

Materials and equipment shall be standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacturing of such products, which are of a similar material, design and workmanship. The standard products shall have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening.

The two year use shall include applications of equipment and materials

under similar circumstances and of similar size. The 2 years experience shall be satisfactorily completed by a product which has been sold or is offered for sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturer's catalogs, or brochures.

Products having less than a 2 year field service record shall be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation, for not less than 6000 hours exclusive of the manufacturer's factory tests, can be shown. System components shall be environmentally suitable for the indicated locations.

The equipment items shall be supported by service organizations. These service organizations shall be reasonably convenient to the equipment installation and able to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

2.2 STEEL PIPING

Water piping shall be steel pipe or copper tubing. Provide steel piping with a ANSI/ASME Class 125 service rating, which for 150 degrees F, the pressure rating is 175 psig.

2.2.1 Pipe

Steel pipe, conform to ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grades A or B. Do not use Type F pipe.

2.2.2 Fittings and End Connections (Joints)

Piping and fittings 1 inch and smaller shall have threaded connections. Piping and fittings larger than 1 inch and smaller than 3 inches shall have either threaded or welded connections. Piping and fittings 3 inches and larger shall have welded, or flanged connections. The manufacturer of each fitting shall be permanently identified on the body of the fitting in accordance with MSS SP-25.

2.2.2.1 Threaded Connections

Use threaded valves and pipe connections conforming to ASME B1.20.1. Used threaded fitting conforming to ASME B16.3. Use threaded unions conforming to ASME B16.39. Use threaded pipe nipples conforming to ASTM A733.

2.2.2.2 Flanged Connections

Flanges shall conform to ASME B16.1, Class 125. Gaskets shall be nonasbestos compressed material in accordance with ASME B16.21, 1/16 inch thickness, full face or self-centering flat ring type. These gaskets shall contain aramid fibers bonded with styrene butadiene rubber (SBR) or nitrile butadiene rubber (NBR). Bolts, nuts, and bolt patterns shall conform to ASME B16.1.

2.2.2.3 Welded Connections

Welded valves and pipe connections (both butt-welds and socket-welds types) shall conform to ASME B31.9. Butt-welded fittings shall conform to ASME B16.9. Socket-welded fittings shall conform to ASME B16.11. Welded fittings shall be identified with the appropriate grade and marking symbol.

2.2.2.4 Dielectric Waterways and Flanges

Provide dielectric waterways with a water impervious insulation barrier capable of limiting galvanic current to 1 percent of short circuit current in a corresponding bimetallic joint. When dry, insulation barrier shall be able to withstand a 600-volt breakdown test. Provide dielectric waterways constructed of galvanized steel and have threaded end connections to match connecting piping. Dielectric waterways shall be suitable for the required operating pressures and temperatures. Provide dielectric flanges with the same pressure ratings as standard flanges and provide complete electrical isolation between connecting pipe and/or equipment as described herein for dielectric waterways.

2.3 COPPER TUBING

Provide copper tubing and fittings with a ANSI/ASME Class 125 service rating, which for 150 degrees F, the pressure rating is 175 psig.

2.3.1 Tube

Use copper tube conforming to ASTM B88, Type L or M for aboveground tubing, and Type K for buried tubing.

2.3.2 Fittings and End Connections (Solder and Flared Joints)

Wrought copper and bronze solder joint pressure fittings, including unions and flanges, shall conform to ASME B16.22 and ASTM B75/B75M. Provide adapters as required. Cast copper alloy solder-joint pressure fittings, including unions and flanges, shall conform to ASME B16.18. Cast copper alloy fittings for flared copper tube shall conform to ASME B16.26 and ASTM B62. ASTM B42 copper pipe nipples with threaded end connections shall conform to ASTM B42.

Copper tubing of sizes larger than 4 inches shall have brazed joints. Brass or bronze adapters for brazed tubing may be used for connecting tubing to flanges and to threaded ends of valves and equipment.

Extracted brazed tee joints may be used if produced with an acceptable tool and installed in accordance with tool manufacturer's written procedures.

2.3.3 Solder

Provide solder in conformance with ASTM B32, grade Sb5, tin-antimony alloy. Solder flux shall be liquid or paste form, non-corrosive and conform to ASTM B813.

2.3.4 Brazing Filler Metal

Filler metal shall conform to AWS A5.8/A5.8M, Type BAg-5 with AWS Type 3 flux, except Type BCuP-5 or BCuP-6 may be used for brazing copper-to-copper joints.

2.4 PIPING ACCESSORIES

2.4.1 Strainer

Strainer, ASTM F1199, except as modified and supplemented in this specification. Strainer shall be the cleanable, basket or "Y" type, the same size as the pipeline. Strainer bodies shall be fabricated of cast

iron with bottoms drilled, and tapped. Provide blowoff outlet with pipe nipple, gate valve, and discharge pipe nipple. The bodies shall have arrows clearly cast on the sides indicating the direction of flow.

Provide strainer with removable cover and sediment screen. The screen shall be made of minimum 22 gauge corrosion-resistant steel, with small perforations numbering not less than 400 per square inch to provide a net free area through the basket of at least 3.30 times that of the entering pipe. The flow shall be into the screen and out through the perforations.

2.4.2 Cyclonic Separator

Metal- bodied, with removal capability of removing solids 45 microns/325 mesh in size and heavier than 1.20 specific gravity, maximum pressure drop of 5 psid, with cleanout connection.

2.4.3 Combination Strainer and Pump Suction Diffuser

Angle type body with removable strainer basket and internal straightening vanes, a suction pipe support, and a blowdown outlet and plug. Strainer shall be in accordance with ASTM F1199, except as modified and supplemented by this specification. Unit body shall have arrows clearly cast on the sides indicating the direction of flow.

Strainer screen shall be made of minimum 22 gauge corrosion-resistant steel, with small perforations numbering not less than 400 per square inch to provide a net free area through the basket of at least 3.30 times that of the entering pipe. Flow shall be into the screen and out through the perforations. Provide an auxiliary disposable fine mesh strainer which shall be removed 30 days after start-up. Provide warning tag for operator indicating scheduled date for removal.

Casing shall have connection sizes to match pump suction and pipe sizes, and be provided with adjustable support foot or support foot boss to relieve piping strains at pump suction. Provide unit casing with blowdown port and plug. Provide a magnetic insert to remove debris from system.

2.4.4 Flexible Pipe Connectors

Provide flexible bronze or stainless steel piping connectors with single braid. Equip flanged assemblies with limit bolts to restrict maximum travel to the manufacturer's standard limits. Unless otherwise indicated, the length of the flexible connectors shall be as recommended by the manufacturer for the service intended. Internal sleeves or liners, compatible with circulating medium, shall be provided when recommended by the manufacturer. Provide covers to protect the bellows where indicated.

2.4.5 Pressure and Vacuum Gauges

Gauges, ASME B40.100 with throttling type needle valve or a pulsation dampener and shut-off valve. Provide gauges with 4.5 inch dial, brass or aluminum case, bronze tube, and siphon. Gauge shall have a range from 0 psig to approximately 1.5 times the maximum system working pressure. Each gauge range shall be selected so that at normal operating pressure, the needle is within the middle-third of the range.

2.4.6 Temperature Gauges

Temperature gauges, shall be the industrial duty type and be provided for

the required temperature range. Provide gauges with fixed thread connection, dial face gasketed within the case; and an accuracy within 2 percent of scale range. Gauges shall have **Fahrenheit scale in 2 degree** graduations scale (black numbers) on a white face. The pointer shall be adjustable. Rigid stem type temperature gauges shall be provided in thermal wells located within **5 feet** of the finished floor. Universal adjustable angle type or remote element type temperature gauges shall be provided in thermal wells located **5 to 7 feet** above the finished floor or in locations indicated. Remote element type temperature gauges shall be provided in thermal wells located **7 feet** above the finished floor or in locations indicated.

2.4.6.1 Stem Cased-Glass

Stem cased-glass case shall be polished stainless steel or cast aluminum, **9 inches** long, with clear acrylic lens, and non-mercury filled glass tube with indicating-fluid column.

2.4.6.2 Bimetallic Dial

Bimetallic dial type case shall be not less than **3-1/2 inches**, stainless steel, and shall be hermetically sealed with clear acrylic lens. Bimetallic element shall be silicone dampened and unit fitted with external calibrator adjustment.

2.4.6.3 Liquid-, Solid-, and Vapor-Filled Dial

Liquid-, solid-, and vapor-filled dial type cases shall be not less than **3-1/2 inches**, stainless steel or cast aluminum with clear acrylic lens. Fill shall be nonmercury, suitable for encountered cross-ambients, and connecting capillary tubing shall be double-braided bronze.

2.4.6.4 Thermal Well

Thermal well shall be identical size, **1/2 or 3/4 inch** NPT connection, brass or stainless steel. Where test wells are indicated, provide captive plug-fitted type **1/2 inch** NPT connection suitable for use with either engraved stem or standard separable socket thermometer or thermostat. Mercury shall not be used in thermometers. Extended neck thermal wells shall be of sufficient length to clear insulation thickness by **1 inch**.

2.4.7 Pipe Hangers, Inserts, and Supports

Pipe hangers, inserts, guides, and supports: to **MSS SP-58** and **MSS SP-69**.

2.4.8 Escutcheons

Provide one piece or split hinge metal plates for piping entering floors, walls, and ceilings in exposed spaces. Secure plates in place by internal spring tension or set screws. Provide polished stainless steel plates or chromium-plated finish on copper alloy plates in finished spaces. Provide paint finish on metal plates in unfinished spaces.

2.5 PUMPS

Provide as specified in 23 21 23 HYDRONIC PUMPS.

2.6 EXPANSION TANKS

Tank shall be welded steel, constructed for, and tested to pressure-temperature rating of 125 psi at 150 degrees F. Provide tanks precharged to the minimum operating pressure. Tank shall have a replaceable polypropylene or butyl lined diaphragm which keeps the air charge separated from the water; shall be the captive air type.

Tanks shall accommodate expanded water of the system generated within the normal operating temperature range, limiting this pressure increase at all components in the system to the maximum allowable pressure at those components. Each tank air chamber shall be fitted with a drain, fill, an air charging valve, and system connections. Tank shall be supported by steel legs or bases for vertical installation or steel saddles for horizontal installations. The only air in the system shall be the permanent sealed-in air cushion contained within the expansion tank.

2.7 AIR SEPARATOR TANKS

External air separation tank shall have an internal design constructed of stainless steel and suitable for creating the required vortex and subsequent air separation. Tank shall be steel, constructed for, and tested to pressure-temperature rating of 125 psi at 150 degrees F. Tank shall have tangential inlets and outlets connections, threaded for 2 inches and smaller and flanged for sizes 2-1/2 inches and larger. Air released from a tank shall be vented and piped to floor drain. Tank shall be provided with a blow-down connection.

2.8 WATER TREATMENT SYSTEMS

When water treatment is specified, the use of chemical-treatment products containing equivalent chromium (CPR) is prohibited.

2.8.1 Water Analysis

Conditions of make-up water to be supplied to the chilled water systems were reported in accordance with ASTM D596 and are as follows:

Date of Sample	04/11/2019
Temperature	65.84 degrees F
Silica (Sino 2)	39 pp (mg/l)
Insoluble	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Iron and Aluminum Oxides	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Calcium (Ca)	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Magnesium (Mg)	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Sodium and Potassium (Nan and AK)	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Carbonate (HO 3)	Not Checked - Contractor to verify

Sulfate (SO 4)	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Chloride (JCL)	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Nitrate (NO 3	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Turbidity	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
pH	7.38
Residual Chlorine	1.99 pp (mg/1)
Total Alkalinity	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Non-Carbonate Hardness	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Total Hardness	64.0 PM (me/1)
Dissolved Solids	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Fluorine	Not Checked - Contractor to verify
Conductivity	Not Checked - Contractor to verify

2.8.2 Chilled Water

Water to be used in the chilled water systems shall be treated to maintain the conditions recommended by this specification as well as the recommendations from the manufacturers of the condenser and evaporator coils. Chemicals shall meet all required federal, state, and local environmental regulations for the treatment of evaporator coils and direct discharge to the sanitary sewer.

2.8.3 Water Treatment Services

The services of a company regularly engaged in the treatment of **chilled** water systems shall be used to determine the correct chemicals required, the concentrations required, and the water treatment equipment sizes and flow rates required. The company shall maintain the chemical treatment and provide all chemicals required for the **chilled** water systems for a period of 1 year from the date of occupancy. The chemical treatment and services provided over the 1 year period shall meet the requirements of this specification as well as the recommendations from the manufacturers of the condenser and evaporator coils. Acid treatment and proprietary chemicals shall not be used.

2.8.4 Chilled Water System

A shot feeder shall be provided on the chilled water piping as indicated. Size and capacity of feeder shall be based on local requirements and water analysis. The feeder shall be furnished with an air vent, gauge glass, funnel, valves, fittings, and piping.

2.9 ELECTRICAL WORK

Provide motors, controllers, integral disconnects, contactors, and controls with their respective pieces of equipment, except controllers indicated as

part of motor control centers. Provide electrical equipment, including motors and wiring, as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Manual or automatic control and protective or signal devices required for the operation specified and control wiring required for controls and devices specified, but not shown, shall be provided. For packaged equipment, the manufacturer shall provide controllers including the required monitors and timed restart.

Provide high efficiency type, single-phase, fractional-horsepower alternating-current motors, including motors that are part of a system, in accordance with NEMA MG 11.

Provide polyphase, squirrel-cage medium induction motors, including motors that are part of a system, that meet the efficiency ratings for premium efficiency motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1. Provide motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1 and of sufficient size to drive the load at the specified capacity without exceeding the nameplate rating of the motor.

Motors shall be rated for continuous duty with the enclosure specified. Motor duty requirements shall allow for maximum frequency start-stop operation and minimum encountered interval between start and stop. Motor torque shall be capable of accelerating the connected load within 20 seconds with 80 percent of the rated voltage maintained at motor terminals during one starting period. Provide motor starters complete with thermal overload protection and other necessary appurtenances. Motor bearings shall be fitted with grease supply fittings and grease relief to outside of the enclosure.

Provide variable frequency drives for motors as specified in Section 26 29 23 VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVE SYSTEMS UNDER 600 VOLTS.

2.10 PAINTING OF NEW EQUIPMENT

New equipment painting shall be factory applied or shop applied, and shall be as specified herein, and provided under each individual section.

2.10.1 Factory Painting Systems

Manufacturer's standard factory painting systems may be provided. The factory painting system applied will withstand 125 hours in a salt-spray fog test, except that equipment located outdoors shall withstand 500 hours in a salt-spray fog test.

Salt-spray fog test shall be in accordance with ASTM B117, and for that test, the acceptance criteria shall be as follows: immediately after completion of the test, the paint shall show no signs of blistering, wrinkling, or cracking, and no loss of 0.125 inch on either side of the scratch mark. The film thickness of the factory painting system applied on the equipment shall not be less than the film thickness used on the test specimen.

If manufacturer's standard factory painting system is being proposed for use on surfaces subject to temperatures above 120 degrees F, the factory painting system shall be designed for the temperature service.

2.10.2 Shop Painting Systems for Metal Surfaces

Clean, retreat, prime and paint metal surfaces; except aluminum surfaces need not be painted. Apply coatings to clean dry surfaces. Clean the

surfaces to remove dust, dirt, rust, oil and grease by wire brushing and solvent degreasing prior to application of paint, except metal surfaces subject to temperatures in excess of 120 degrees F shall be cleaned to bare metal.

Where hot-dip galvanized steel has been cut, resulting surfaces with no galvanizing shall be coated with a zinc-rich coating conforming to ASTM D520, Type I.

Where more than one coat of paint is specified, apply the second coat after the preceding coat is thoroughly dry. Lightly sand damaged painting and retouch before applying the succeeding coat. Color of finish coat shall be aluminum or light gray.

- a. Temperatures Less Than 120 Degrees F: Immediately after cleaning, the metal surfaces subject to temperatures less than 120 degrees F shall receive one coat of pretreatment primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 0.3 mil, one coat of primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of one mil; and two coats of enamel applied to a minimum dry film thickness of one mil per coat.
- b. Temperatures Between 120 and 400 degrees F: Metal surfaces subject to temperatures between 120 and 400 degrees F shall receive two coats of 400 degrees F heat-resisting enamel applied to a total minimum thickness of 2 mils.
- c. Temperatures Greater Than 400 degrees F: Metal surfaces subject to temperatures greater than 400 degrees F shall receive two coats of 600 degrees F heat-resisting paint applied to a total minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils.

2.11 FACTORY APPLIED INSULATION

Factory insulated items installed outdoors are not required to be fire-rated. As a minimum, factory insulated items installed indoors shall have a flame spread index no higher than 25 and a smoke developed index no higher than 150. Factory insulated items (no jacket) installed indoors and which are located in air plenums, in ceiling spaces, and in attic spaces shall have a flame spread index no higher than 25 and a smoke developed index no higher than 50. Flame spread and smoke developed indexes shall be determined by ASTM E84.

Insulation shall be tested in the same density and installed thickness as the material to be used in the actual construction. Material supplied by a manufacturer with a jacket shall be tested as a composite material. Jackets, facings, and adhesives shall have a flame spread index no higher than 25 and a smoke developed index no higher than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

2.12 NAMEPLATES

Major equipment including pumps, pump motors, expansion tanks, and air separator tanks shall have the manufacturer's name, type or style, model or serial number on a plate secured to the item of equipment. The nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable. Plates shall be durable and legible throughout equipment life and made of anodized aluminum or stainless steel. Plates shall be fixed in prominent locations with nonferrous screws or bolts.

2.13 RELATED COMPONENTS/SERVICES

2.13.1 Drain and Make-Up Water Piping

Requirements for drain and make-up water piping and backflow preventer is specified in Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.

2.13.2 Field Applied Insulation

Requirements for field applied insulation is specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

2.13.3 Field Applied Insulation

Requirements for field installed insulation is specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS, except as supplemented and modified by this specification section.

2.13.4 Field Painting

Requirements for painting of surfaces not otherwise specified, and finish painting of items only primed at the factory, are specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

2.13.4.1 Color Coding

Requirements for color coding for piping identification are specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Cut pipe accurately to measurements established at the jobsite, and work into place without springing or forcing, completely clearing all windows, doors, and other openings. Cutting or other weakening of the building structure to facilitate piping installation is not permitted without written approval. Cut pipe or tubing square, remove burrs by reaming, and fashion to permit free expansion and contraction without causing damage to the building structure, pipe, joints, or hangers.

Notify the Contracting Officer in writing at least 15 calendar days prior to the date the connections are required. Obtain approval before interrupting service. Furnish materials required to make connections into existing systems and perform excavating, backfilling, compacting, and other incidental labor as required. Furnish labor and tools for making actual connections to existing systems.

3.1.1 Welding

Provide welding work specified this section for piping systems in conformance with ASME B31.9, as modified and supplemented by this specification section and the accompanying drawings. The welding work includes: qualification of welding procedures, welders, welding operators, brazers, brazing operators, and nondestructive examination personnel; maintenance of welding records, and examination methods for welds.

3.1.1.1 Employer's Record Documents (For Welding)

Submit for review and approval the following documentation. This documentation and the subject qualifications shall be in compliance with [ASME B31.9](#).

- a. List of qualified welding procedures that is proposed to be used to provide the work specified in this specification section.
- b. List of qualified welders, brazers, welding operators, and brazing operators that are proposed to be used to provide the work specified in this specification section.
- c. List of qualified weld examination personnel that are proposed to be used to provide the work specified in this specification section.

3.1.1.2 Welding Procedures and Qualifications

- a. Specifications and Test Results: Submit copies of the welding procedures specifications and procedure qualification test results for each type of welding required. Approval of any procedure does not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for producing acceptable welds. Submit this information on the forms printed in [ASME BPVC SEC IX](#) or their equivalent.
- b. Certification: Before assigning welders or welding operators to the work, submit a list of qualified welders, together with data and certification that each individual is performance qualified as specified. Do not start welding work prior to submitting welder, and welding operator qualifications. The certification shall state the type of welding and positions for which each is qualified, the code and procedure under which each is qualified, date qualified, and the firm and individual certifying the qualification tests.

3.1.1.3 Examination of Piping Welds

Conduct non-destructive examinations (NDE) on piping welds and brazing and verify the work meets the acceptance criteria specified in [ASME B31.9](#). NDE on piping welds covered by [ASME B31.9](#) is visual inspection only. Submit a [piping welds NDE report](#) meeting the requirements specified in [ASME B31.9](#).

3.1.1.4 Welding Safety

Welding and cutting safety requirements shall be in accordance with [AWS Z49.1](#).

3.1.2 Directional Changes

Make changes in direction with fittings, except that bending of pipe [4 inches](#) and smaller is permitted, provided a pipe bender is used and wide weep bends are formed. Mitering or notching pipe or other similar construction to form elbows or tees is not permitted. The centerline radius of bends shall not be less than 6 diameters of the pipe. Bent pipe showing kinks, wrinkles, flattening, or other malformations is not acceptable.

3.1.3 Functional Requirements

Pitch horizontal supply mains down in the direction of flow as indicated.

The grade shall not be less than 1 inch in 40 feet. Reducing fittings shall be used for changes in pipe sizes. Cap or plug open ends of pipelines and equipment during installation to keep dirt or other foreign materials out of the system.

Pipe not otherwise specified shall be uncoated. Connections to appliances shall be made with malleable iron unions for steel pipe 2-1/2 inches or less in diameter, and with flanges for pipe 3 inches and above in diameter. Connections between ferrous and copper piping shall be electrically isolated from each other with dielectric waterways or flanges.

Piping located in air plenums shall conform to NFPA 90A requirements. Pipe and fittings installed in inaccessible conduits or trenches under concrete floor slabs shall be welded. Equipment and piping arrangements shall fit into space allotted and allow adequate acceptable clearances for installation, replacement, entry, servicing, and maintenance. Electric isolation fittings shall be provided between dissimilar metals.

3.1.4 Fittings and End Connections

3.1.4.1 Threaded Connections

Threaded connections shall be made with tapered threads and made tight with PTFE tape complying with ASTM D3308 or equivalent thread-joint compound applied to the male threads only. Not more than three threads shall show after the joint is made.

3.1.4.2 Brazed Connections

Brazing, AWS BRH, except as modified herein. During brazing, the pipe and fittings shall be filled with a pressure regulated inert gas, such as nitrogen, to prevent the formation of scale. Before brazing copper joints, both the outside of the tube and the inside of the fitting shall be cleaned with a wire fitting brush until the entire joint surface is bright and clean. Do not use brazing flux. Surplus brazing material shall be removed at all joints. Steel tubing joints shall be made in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Piping shall be supported prior to brazing and not be sprung or forced.

3.1.4.3 Welded Connections

Branch connections shall be made with welding tees or forged welding branch outlets. Pipe shall be thoroughly cleaned of all scale and foreign matter before the piping is assembled. During welding, the pipe and fittings shall be filled with an inert gas, such as nitrogen, to prevent the formation of scale. Beveling, alignment, heat treatment, and inspection of weld shall conform to ASME B31.9. Weld defects shall be removed and rewelded at no additional cost to the Government. Electrodes shall be stored and dried in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M or as recommended by the manufacturer. Electrodes that have been wetted or that have lost any of their coating shall not be used.

3.1.4.4 Flared Connections

When flared connections are used, a suitable lubricant shall be used between the back of the flare and the nut in order to avoid tearing the flare while tightening the nut.

3.1.4.5 Flanges and Unions

Except where copper tubing is used, union or flanged joints shall be provided in each line immediately preceding the connection to each piece of equipment or material requiring maintenance such as coils, pumps, control valves, and other similar items. Flanged joints shall be assembled square end tight with matched flanges, gaskets, and bolts. Gaskets shall be suitable for the intended application.

3.1.5 Valves

Isolation gate or ball valves shall be installed on each side of each piece of equipment, at the midpoint of all looped mains, and at any other points indicated or required for draining, isolating, or sectionalizing purpose. Isolation valves may be omitted where balancing cocks are installed to provide both balancing and isolation functions. Each valve except check valves shall be identified. Valves in horizontal lines shall be installed with stems horizontal or above.

3.1.6 Air Vents

Air vents shall be provided at all high points, on all water coils, and where indicated to ensure adequate venting of the piping system.

3.1.7 Drains

Drains shall be provided at all low points and where indicated to ensure complete drainage of the piping. Drains shall be accessible, and shall consist of nipples and caps or plugged tees unless otherwise indicated.

3.1.8 Flexible Pipe Connectors

Connectors shall be attached to components in strict accordance with the latest printed instructions of the manufacturer to ensure a vapor tight joint. Hangers, when required to suspend the connectors, shall be of the type recommended by the flexible pipe connector manufacturer and shall be provided at the intervals recommended.

3.1.9 Temperature Gauges

Temperature gauges shall be located on coolant supply and return piping at each heat exchanger, on condenser water piping entering and leaving a condenser, at each automatic temperature control device without an integral thermometer, and where indicated or required for proper operation of equipment. Thermal wells for insertion thermometers and thermostats shall extend beyond thermal insulation surface not less than 1 inch.

3.1.10 Pipe Hangers, Inserts, and Supports

Pipe hangers, inserts, and supports shall conform to MSS SP-58 and MSS SP-69, except as supplemented and modified in this specification section. Pipe hanger types 5, 12, and 26 shall not be used. Hangers used to support piping 2 inches and larger shall be fabricated to permit adequate adjustment after erection while still supporting the load. Piping subjected to vertical movement, when operating temperatures exceed ambient temperatures, shall be supported by variable spring hangers and supports or by constant support hangers.

3.1.10.1 Hangers

Type 3 shall not be used on insulated piping. Type 24 may be used only on trapeze hanger systems or on fabricated frames.

3.1.10.2 Inserts

Type 18 inserts shall be secured to concrete forms before concrete is placed. Continuous inserts which allow more adjustments may be used if they otherwise meet the requirements for Type 18 inserts.

3.1.10.3 C-Clamps

Type 19 and 23 C-clamps shall be torqued per [MSS SP-69](#) and have both locknuts and retaining devices, furnished by the manufacturer. Field-fabricated C-clamp bodies or retaining devices are not acceptable.

3.1.10.4 Angle Attachments

Type 20 attachments used on angles and channels shall be furnished with an added malleable-iron heel plate or adapter.

3.1.10.5 Saddles and Shields

Where Type 39 saddle or Type 40 shield are permitted for a particular pipe attachment application, the Type 39 saddle, connected to the pipe, shall be used on all pipe [4 inches](#) and larger when the temperature of the medium is [60 degrees F](#) or higher. Type 40 shields shall be used on all piping less than [4 inches](#) and all piping [4 inches](#) and larger carrying medium less than [60 degrees F](#). A high density insulation insert of cellular glass shall be used under the Type 40 shield for piping [2 inches](#) and larger.

3.1.10.6 Horizontal Pipe Supports

Horizontal pipe supports shall be spaced as specified in [MSS SP-69](#) and a support shall be installed not over [1 foot](#) from the pipe fitting joint at each change in direction of the piping. Pipe supports shall be spaced not over [5 feet](#) apart at valves. Pipe hanger loads suspended from steel joist with hanger loads between panel points in excess of [50 pounds](#) shall have the excess hanger loads suspended from panel points.

3.1.10.7 Vertical Pipe Supports

Vertical pipe shall be supported at each floor, except at slab-on-grade, and at intervals of not more than [15 feet](#), not more than [8 feet](#) from end of risers, and at vent terminations.

3.1.10.8 Pipe Guides

Type 35 guides using, steel, reinforced polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) or graphite slides shall be provided where required to allow longitudinal pipe movement. Lateral restraints shall be provided as required. Slide materials shall be suitable for the system operating temperatures, atmospheric conditions, and bearing loads encountered.

3.1.10.9 Steel Slides

Where steel slides do not require provisions for restraint of lateral movement, an alternate guide method may be used. On piping [4 inches](#) and

larger, a Type 39 saddle shall be used. On piping under 4 inches, a Type 40 protection shield may be attached to the pipe or insulation and freely rest on a steel slide plate.

3.1.10.10 Multiple Pipe Runs

In the support of multiple pipe runs on a common base member, a clip or clamp shall be used where each pipe crosses the base support member. Spacing of the base support members shall not exceed the hanger and support spacing required for an individual pipe in the multiple pipe run.

3.1.10.11 Structural Attachments

Attachment to building structure concrete and masonry shall be by cast-in concrete inserts, built-in anchors, or masonry anchor devices. Inserts and anchors shall be applied with a safety factor not less than 5. Supports shall not be attached to metal decking. Supports shall not be attached to the underside of concrete filled floors or concrete roof decks unless approved by the Contracting Officer. Masonry anchors for overhead applications shall be constructed of ferrous materials only. Structural steel brackets required to support piping, headers, and equipment, but not shown, shall be provided under this section. Material used for support shall be as specified under Section 05 50 13 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FABRICATION.

3.1.11 Building Surface Penetrations

Sleeves shall not be installed in structural members except where indicated or approved. Except as indicated otherwise piping sleeves shall comply with requirements specified. Sleeves in nonload bearing surfaces shall be galvanized sheet metal, conforming to ASTM A653/A653M, Coating Class G-90, 20 gauge. Sleeves in load bearing surfaces shall be uncoated carbon steel pipe, conforming to ASTM A53/A53M, Standard weight. Sealants shall be applied to moisture and oil-free surfaces and elastomers to not less than 1/2 inch depth. Sleeves shall not be installed in structural members.

3.1.11.1 General Service Areas

Each sleeve shall extend through its respective wall, floor, or roof, and shall be cut flush with each surface. Pipes passing through concrete or masonry wall or concrete floors or roofs shall be provided with pipe sleeves fitted into place at the time of construction. Sleeves shall be of such size as to provide a minimum of 1/4 inch all-around clearance between bare pipe and sleeves or between jacketed-insulation and sleeves. Except in pipe chases or interior walls, the annular space between pipe and sleeve or between jacket over-insulation and sleeve shall be sealed in accordance with Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.

3.1.11.2 Waterproof Penetrations

Pipes passing through roof or floor waterproofing membrane shall be installed through a .17 ounce copper sleeve, or a 0.032 inch thick aluminum sleeve, each within an integral skirt or flange.

Flashing sleeve shall be suitably formed, and skirt or flange shall extend not less than 8 inches from the pipe and be set over the roof or floor membrane in a troweled coating of bituminous cement. The flashing sleeve shall extend up the pipe a minimum of 2 inches above the roof or floor penetration. The annular space between the flashing sleeve and the bare

pipe or between the flashing sleeve and the metal-jacket-covered insulation shall be sealed as indicated. Penetrations shall be sealed by either one of the following methods.

- a. Waterproofing Clamping Flange: Pipes up to and including 10 inches in diameter passing through roof or floor waterproofing membrane may be installed through a cast iron sleeve with caulking recess, anchor lugs, flashing clamp device, and pressure ring with brass bolts. Waterproofing membrane shall be clamped into place and sealant shall be placed in the caulking recess.
- b. Modular Mechanical Type Sealing Assembly: In lieu of a waterproofing clamping flange, a modular mechanical type sealing assembly may be installed. Seals shall consist of interlocking synthetic rubber links shaped to continuously fill the annular space between the pipe/conduit and sleeve with corrosion protected carbon steel bolts, nuts, and pressure plates. Links shall be loosely assembled with bolts to form a continuous rubber belt around the pipe with a pressure plate under each bolt head and each nut.

After the seal assembly is properly positioned in the sleeve, tightening of the bolt shall cause the rubber sealing elements to expand and provide a watertight seal between the pipe/conduit and the sleeve. Each seal assembly shall be sized as recommended by the manufacturer to fit the pipe/conduit and sleeve involved. The Contractor electing to use the modular mechanical type seals shall provide sleeves of the proper diameters.

3.1.11.3 Fire-Rated Penetrations

Penetration of fire-rated walls, partitions, and floors shall be sealed as specified in Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

3.1.11.4 Escutcheons

Finished surfaces where exposed piping, bare or insulated, pass through floors, walls, or ceilings, except in boiler, utility, or equipment rooms, shall be provided with escutcheons. Where sleeves project slightly from floors, special deep-type escutcheons shall be used. Escutcheon shall be secured to pipe or pipe covering.

3.1.12 Access Panels

Access panels shall be provided where indicated for all concealed valves, vents, controls, and additionally for items requiring inspection or maintenance. Access panels shall be of sufficient size and located so that the concealed items may be serviced and maintained or completely removed and replaced. Access panels shall be as specified in Section 05 50 13 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FABRICATIONS.

3.2 ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

Install electrical equipment in accordance with NFPA 70 and manufacturers instructions.

3.3 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

Pipes shall be cleaned free of scale and thoroughly flushed of all foreign

matter. A temporary bypass shall be provided for all water coils to prevent flushing water from passing through coils. Strainers and valves shall be thoroughly cleaned. Prior to testing and balancing, air shall be removed from all water systems by operating the air vents. Temporary measures, such as piping the overflow from vents to a collecting vessel shall be taken to avoid water damage during the venting process. Air vents shall be plugged or capped after the system has been vented. Control valves and other miscellaneous equipment requiring adjustment shall be adjusted to setting indicated or directed.

3.4 FIELD TESTS

Field tests shall be conducted in the presence of the QC Manager or his designated representative to verify systems compliance with specifications. Any material, equipment, instruments, and personnel required for the test shall be provided by the Contractor.

3.4.1 Equipment and Component Isolation

Prior to testing, equipment and components that cannot withstand the tests shall be properly isolated.

3.4.2 Pressure Tests

Each piping system, except for polypropylene piping, shall be hydrostatically tested at a pressure not less than 188 psig for period of time sufficient to inspect every joint in the system and in no case less than 2 hours. Test pressure shall be monitored by a currently calibrated test pressure gauge. Leaks shall be repaired and piping retested until test requirements are met. No leakage or reduction in gage pressure shall be allowed.

Leaks shall be repaired by rewelding or replacing pipe or fittings. Caulking of joints will not be permitted. Concealed and insulated piping shall be tested in place before concealing.

Submit for approval [pressure tests reports](#) covering the above specified piping pressure tests; describe the systems tested, test results, defects found and repaired, and signature of the pressure tests' director. Obtain approval from the QC Manager before concealing piping or applying insulation to tested and accepted piping.

3.4.3 Related Field Inspections and Testing

3.4.3.1 Piping Welds

Examination of Piping Welds is specified in the paragraph EXAMINATION OF PIPING WELDS (above).

3.4.3.2 HVAC TAB

Requirements for testing, adjusting, and balancing (TAB) of HVAC water piping, and associated equipment is specified in Section [23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC](#). Coordinate with the TAB team, and provide support personnel and equipment as specified in Section [23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING FOR HVAC](#) to assist TAB team to meet the TAB work requirements.

3.5 INSTRUCTION TO GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL

Furnish the services of competent instructors to give full instruction to the designated Government personnel in the adjustment, operation, and maintenance, including pertinent safety requirements, of the chilled water. Instructors shall be thoroughly familiar with all parts of the installation and shall be instructed in operating theory as well as practical operation and maintenance work. Submit a [lesson plan for the instruction course](#) for approval. The lesson plan and instruction course shall be based on the approved operation and maintenance data and maintenance manuals.

Conduct a training course for the operating staff and maintenance staff selected by the Contracting Officer. Give the instruction during the first regular work week after the equipment or system has been accepted and turned over to the Government for regular operation. The number of man-days (8 hours per day) of instruction furnished shall be one man-day. Use approximately half of the time for classroom instruction and the other time for instruction at the location of equipment or system.

When significant changes or modifications in the equipment or system are made under the terms of the contract, provide additional instruction to acquaint the operating personnel with the changes or modifications.

3.6 [ONE-YEAR INSPECTION REPORT FOR COOLING WATER](#)

At the conclusion of the one year period, each connecting liquid chiller condenser inspect for problems due to corrosion, scale, and biological growth. If the equipment is found not to conform to the manufacturers recommended conditions, and the water treatment company recommendations have been followed; the water treatment company shall provide all chemicals and labor for cleaning or repairing the equipment as required by the manufacturer's recommendations.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 23 81 00.00 20

UNITARY AIR CONDITIONING EQUIPMENT

11/09

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR-CONDITIONING, HEATING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE (AHRI)

AHRI DCUP	(Online) Directory of Certified Unitary Products
ANSI/AHRI 210/240	(2008; Add 1 2011; Add 2 2012) Performance Rating of Unitary Air-Conditioning & Air-Source Heat Pump Equipment
ANSI/AHRI 340/360	(2007; Addendum 1 2010; Addendum 2 2011) Performance Rating of Commercial and Industrial Unitary Air-Conditioning and Heat Pump Equipment

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ANSI/ASHRAE 15 & 34	(2016) ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 15-Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems and ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 34-Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants
ASHRAE 52.2	(2012) Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size
ASHRAE 55	(2010) Thermal Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy
ASHRAE 62.1	(2010) Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A123/A123M	(2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A653/A653M	(2017) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM B117	(2016) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus

ASTM D1654 (2008; R 2016; E 2017) Standard Test Method for Evaluation of Painted or Coated Specimens Subjected to Corrosive Environments

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA ICS 1 (2000; R 2015) Standard for Industrial Control and Systems: General Requirements

NEMA ICS 2 (2000; R 2005; Errata 2008) Industrial Control and Systems Controllers, Contactors, and Overload Relays Rated 600 V

NEMA ICS 6 (1993; R 2016) Industrial Control and Systems: Enclosures

NEMA MG 1 (2016; SUPP 2016) Motors and Generators

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

MIL-DTL-5541 (2006; Rev F) Chemical Conversion Coatings on Aluminum and Aluminum Alloys

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY (DOE)

Energy Star (1992; R 2006) Energy Star Energy Efficiency Labeling System (FEMP)

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

CID A-A-50502 (Basic) Air Conditioners, (Unitary Heat Pump), Air to Air (3,000 to 300,000 BTU)

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

40 CFR 82 Protection of Stratospheric Ozone

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 900 (2015) Standard for Air Filter Units

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 23 03 00.00 20 BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS, applies to this section with the additions and modifications specified herein.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Control System Wiring Diagrams

SD-03 Product Data

Heat Pumps, Air to Air

Energy Star Label for Heat Pump Product; S

Air Conditioners

Energy Star Label for Split-System Type Air Conditioners; S

Refrigerant

Coatings for Finned Tube Coils

For packaged terminal units, include indoor noise rating.

SD-06 Test Reports

Salt-Spray Tests

Start-Up and Initial Operational Tests

SD-07 Certificates

Ozone Depleting Substances Technician Certification

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Heat Pumps, Air to Air

Air Conditioners

Filters

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Heat Pumps, Air to Air, Data Package 3

Air Conditioners, Data Package 3

Filters, Data Package 2

Submit in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND
MAINTENANCE DATA.

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Posted Operating Instructions

Indoor Air Quality During Construction; S

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4.1 Modification of References

Accomplish work in accordance with the referenced publications, except as modified by this section. Consider the advisory or recommended provisions

to be mandatory, as though the word "shall" had been substituted for the words "should" or "could" or "may," wherever they appear. Interpret reference to "the Authority having jurisdiction," "the Administrative Authority," "the Owner," or "the Design Engineer" to mean the Contracting Officer.

1.4.2 Detail Drawing

For refrigerant piping, submit piping, including pipe sizes. Submit [control system wiring diagrams](#).

1.4.3 Safety

Design, manufacture, and installation of unitary air conditioning equipment shall conform to [ANSI/ASHRAE 15 & 34](#).

1.4.4 Posted Operating Instructions

Submit posted operating instructions for each packaged air conditioning unit.

1.4.5 Sizing

Size equipment based on Design Manual CS from the Air Conditioning Contractors of America; do not oversize.

1.4.6 Ozone Depleting Substances Technician Certification

All technicians working on equipment that contain ozone depleting refrigerants must be certified as a Section 608 Technician to meet requirements in [40 CFR 82](#), Subpart F. Provide copies of technician certifications to the Contracting Officer at least 14 calendar days prior to work on any equipment containing these refrigerants.

1.5 REFRIGERANTS

Refrigerants must have an Ozone Depletion Potential (ODP) no greater than 0.0, with the exception of R-123. CFC-based refrigerants are prohibited. HCFCs and Halons shall not be permitted. Provide SDS sheets for all refrigerants.

1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

For proper Indoor Environmental Quality, maintain positive pressure within the building. Ventilation shall meet or exceed [ASHRAE 62.1](#) and all published addenda. Meet or exceed filter media efficiency as tested in accordance with [ASHRAE 52.2](#). Thermal comfort shall meet or exceed [ASHRAE 55](#).

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 HEAT PUMPS, AIR TO AIR

List units with capacities smaller than [135,000 Btu/hr](#) in the [AHRI DCUP](#); in lieu of listing in the AHRI Directory, a letter of certification from AHRI that the units have been certified and will be listed in the next Directory will be acceptable. Provide factory assembled units complete with accessories, wiring, piping, and controls.

2.1.1 Energy Performance

Heat pumps shall have a minimum seasonal energy efficiency ratio (SEER) **as indicated** a minimum COP **as indicated**. Provide heat pumps that are **Energy Star** labeled. Provide proof of **Energy Star label for heat pump product**.

2.1.2 Air Coils

Extended-surface fin and tube type with seamless copper or aluminum tubes with copper or aluminum fins securely bonded to the tubes. On coils with all-aluminum construction, provide tubes of aluminum alloy 1100, 1200, or 3102; provide fins of aluminum alloy 7072; and provide tube sheets of aluminum alloy 7072 or 5052. Provide a coating on outdoor air coils as specified in the paragraph COATINGS FOR FINNED TUBE COILS. Coils to be coated shall be part of manufacturer's standard product for capacities and ratings indicated and specified. Provide plate type fins.

2.1.3 Compressors

For compressors above **20 tons**, compressor speed shall not exceed 3450 rpm. For equipment over **10 tons**, provide automatic capacity reduction of at least 50 percent of rated capacity. Capacity reduction may be accomplished by cylinder unloading, use of multiple, but not more than four compressors, or a combination of the two methods. Units with cylinder unloading shall start with capacity reduction devices in the unloaded position. Units with multiple compressors shall have a means to sequence starting of compressors. Provide compressors with devices to prevent short cycling when shutdown by safety controls. Provide reciprocating compressors with crankcase heaters, and vibration isolators.

2.1.4 Mounting Provisions

Provide units that permit mounting as indicated.

2.1.5 Accessories

In addition to accessories specified in **CID A-A-50502**, provide the following accessories for heat pump units.

- a. Protective grille around outside unit coils

2.2 AIR CONDITIONERS

2.2.1 Split-System Type

Provide separate assemblies designed to be used together. Base ratings on the use of matched assemblies. Provide performance diagrams for units with capacities not certified by AHRI to verify that components of the air conditioning system furnished will satisfy the capacity requirement specified or indicated. Units shall have a minimum SEER **as indicated** when tested in accordance with **ANSI/AHRI 210/240** or **ANSI/AHRI 340/360** as applicable. List units with capacities smaller than 135,000 Btu/hr in the **AHRI DCUP**; in lieu of listing in the AHRI Directory, a letter of certification from AHRI that units have been certified and will be listed in the next Directory will be acceptable. Provide capacity, electrical characteristics and operating conditions as indicated. Provide air conditioners that are **Energy Star** labeled. Provide proof of **Energy Star label for split-system type air conditioners**.

2.2.2 Single Zone Units

Provide single zone type units arranged to draw through coil sections.

2.2.3 Compressors

For compressors over 20 tons, compressor speed shall not exceed 3450 rpm. For systems over 10 tons provide automatic capacity reduction of at least 50 percent of rated capacity. Capacity reduction may be accomplished by cylinder unloading, use of multi- or variable speed compressors, use of multiple, but not more than four compressors, or a combination of the two methods. Units with cylinder unloading shall start with capacity reduction devices in the unloaded position. Units with multiple compressors shall have means to sequence starting of compressors. Provide compressors with devices to prevent short cycling when shut down by safety controls. Device shall delay operation of compressor motor for at least 3 minutes but not more than 6 minutes. Provide a pumpdown cycle for units 20 tons and over. Provide reciprocating compressors with crankcase heaters in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. If compressors are paralleled, provide not less than two independent circuits.

2.2.4 Coils

On coils with all-aluminum construction, provide tubes of aluminum alloy 1100, 1200, or 3102; provide fins of aluminum alloy 7072; and provide tube sheets of aluminum alloy 7072 or 5052. Provide a separate air cooled condenser circuit for each compressor or parallel compressor installation. Provide a coating on condenser coils and fins as specified in the paragraph COATINGS FOR FINNED TUBE COILS. Coils to be coated shall be part of manufacturer's standard product for capacities and ratings indicated and specified. Provide plate type fins.

2.2.5 Condenser Controls

Provide start-up and head pressure controls to allow for system operation at ambient temperatures down to 5 degrees F.

2.2.6 Fans

Provide belt-driven evaporator fans with adjustable pitch pulleys; except for units less than 5 ton capacity, direct drive with at least two speed taps may be used. Select pulleys at approximately midpoint of the adjustable range.

2.2.7 Filters

Provide filters of the type specified in this section.

2.3 FILTERS

Provide filters to filter outside air and return air and locate inside air conditioners. Provide cleanable (reusable) type. Filters shall conform to UL 900, Class 1 or Class 2. Polyurethane filters shall not be used on units with multiframe filters.

2.4 COATINGS FOR FINNED TUBE COILS

Where stipulated in equipment specifications of this section, coat finned

tube coils of the affected equipment as specified below. Apply coating at the premises of a company specializing in such work. Degrease and prepare for coating in accordance with the coating applicator's procedures for the type of metals involved. Completed coating shall show no evidence of softening, blistering, cracking, crazing, flaking, loss of adhesion, or "bridging" between the fins.

2.4.1 Phenolic Coating

Provide a resin base thermosetting phenolic coating. Apply coating by immersion dipping of the entire coil. Provide a minimum of two coats. Bake or heat dry coils following immersions. After final immersion and prior to final baking, spray entire coil with particular emphasis given to building up coating on sheared edges. Total dry film thickness shall be 2.5 to 3.0 mils.

2.4.2 Chemical Conversion Coating with Polyelastomer Finish Coat

Dip coils in a chemical conversion solution to molecularly deposit a corrosion resistant coating by electrolysis action. Chemical conversion coatings shall conform to MIL-DTL-5541, Class 1A. Cure conversion coating at a temperature of 110 to 140 degrees F for a minimum of 3 hours. Coat coil surfaces with a complex polymer primer with a dry film thickness of 1 mil. Cure primer coat for a minimum of 1 hour. Using dip tank method, provide three coats of a complex polyelastomer finish coat. After each of the first two finish coats, cure the coils for 1 hour. Following the third coat, spray a fog coat of an inert sealer on the coil surfaces. Total dry film thickness shall be 2.5 to 3.0 mils. Cure finish coat for a minimum of 3 hours. Coating materials shall have 300 percent flexibility, operate in temperatures of minus 50 to plus 220 degrees F, and protect against atmospheres of a pH range of 1 to 14.

2.4.3 Vinyl Coating

Apply coating using an airless fog nozzle. For each coat, make at least two passes with the nozzle. Materials to be applied are as follows:

Total dry film thickness, 6.5 mils maximum.

Vinyl Primer, 24 percent solids by volume: One coat 2 mils thick

Vinyl Copolymer, 30 percent solids by volume: One coat 4.5 mils thick.

2.5 MOTORS AND STARTERS

NEMA MG 1, NEMA ICS 1, and NEMA ICS 2. Variable speed. Motors less than 1 hp shall meet NEMA High Efficiency requirements. Motors 1 hp and larger shall meet NEMA Premium Efficiency requirements. Determine specific motor characteristics to ensure provision of correctly sized starters and overload heaters. Provide motors to operate at full capacity with a voltage variation of plus or minus 10 percent of the motor voltage rating. Motor size shall be sufficient for the duty to be performed and shall not exceed its full load nameplate current rating when driven equipment is operated at specified capacity under the most severe conditions likely to be encountered. When motor size provided differs from size indicated or specified, the Contractor shall make the necessary adjustments to the wiring, disconnect devices, and branch circuit protection to accommodate equipment actually provided. Provide general-purpose type starter enclosures in accordance with NEMA ICS 6.

2.6 FINISHES

Provide steel surfaces of equipment including packaged terminal units, heat pumps, and air conditioners, that do not have a zinc coating conforming to [ASTM A123/A123M](#) or [ASTM A653/A653M](#), or a duplex coating of zinc and paint, with a factory applied coating or paint system. Provide a coating or paint system on actual equipment identical to that on salt-spray test specimens with respect to materials, conditions of application, and dry-film thickness.

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

2.7.1 Salt-Spray Tests

Salt-spray test the factory-applied coating or paint system of equipment including packaged terminal units, heat pumps, and air conditioners in accordance with [ASTM B117](#). Conduct test for 500 hours for equipment installed outdoors, or 125 hours for equipment installed indoors. Test specimens shall have a standard scribe mark as defined in [ASTM D1654](#). Upon completion of exposure, evaluate and rate the coating or paint system in accordance with procedures A and B of [ASTM D1654](#). Rating of failure at the scribe mark shall not be less than six, average creepage not greater than [1/8 inch](#). Rating of the unscribed area shall not be less than 10, no failure.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

Install equipment and components in a manner to ensure proper and sequential operation of equipment and equipment controls. Install equipment not covered in this section, or in manufacturer's instructions, as recommended by manufacturer's representative. Provide proper foundations for mounting of equipment, accessories, appurtenances, piping and controls including, but not limited to, supports, vibration isolators, stands, guides, anchors, clamps and brackets. Foundations for equipment shall conform to equipment manufacturer's recommendation, unless otherwise indicated. Set anchor bolts and sleeves using templates. Provide anchor bolts of adequate length, and provide with welded-on plates on the head end embedded in the concrete. Level equipment bases, using jacks or steel wedges, and neatly grout-in with a nonshrinking type of grouting mortar. Locate equipment to allow working space for servicing including shaft removal, disassembling compressor cylinders and pistons, replacing or adjusting drives, motors, or shaft seals, access to water heads and valves of shell and tube equipment, tube cleaning or replacement, access to automatic controls, refrigerant charging, lubrication, oil draining and working clearance under overhead lines. Provide electric isolation between dissimilar metals for the purpose of minimizing galvanic corrosion.

3.1.1 Unitary Air Conditioning System

Install as indicated, in accordance with requirements of [ANSI/ASHRAE 15 & 34](#), and the manufacturer's installation and operational instructions.

3.2 ACCESS PANELS

Provide access panels for concealed valves, controls, dampers, and other fittings requiring inspection and maintenance.

3.3 AIR FILTERS

Allow access space for servicing filters. Install filters with suitable sealing to prevent bypassing of air. Perform and document that proper [Indoor Air Quality During Construction](#) procedures have been followed; this includes providing documentation showing that after construction ends, and prior to occupancy, new filters were provided and installed.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION TAGS AND PLATES

Provide equipment, gages, thermometers, valves, and controllers with tags numbered and stamped for their use. Provide plates and tags of brass or suitable nonferrous material, securely mounted or attached. Provide minimum letter and numeral size of [1/8 inch](#) high.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.5.1 Leak Testing

Upon completion of installation of air conditioning equipment, test factory- and field-installed refrigerant piping with an electronic-type leak detector. Use same type of refrigerant to be provided in the system for leak testing. When nitrogen is used to boost system pressure for testing, ensure that it is eliminated from the system before charging. Minimum refrigerant leak field test pressure shall be as specified in [ANSI/ASHRAE 15 & 34](#), except that test pressure shall not exceed [150 psig](#) on hermetic compressors unless otherwise specified as a low side test pressure on the equipment nameplate. If leaks are detected at time of installation or during warranty period, remove the entire refrigerant charge from the system, correct leaks, and retest system.

3.5.2 Evacuation, Dehydration, and Charging

After field charged refrigerant system is found to be without leaks or after leaks have been repaired on field-charged and factory-charged systems, evacuate the system using a reliable gage and a vacuum pump capable of pulling a vacuum of at least [one mm Hg](#) absolute. Evacuate system in accordance with the triple-evacuation and blotter method or in accordance with equipment manufacturer's printed instructions and recharge system.

3.5.3 [Start-Up and Initial Operational Tests](#)

Test the air conditioning systems and systems components for proper operation. Adjust safety and automatic control instruments as necessary to ensure proper operation and sequence. Conduct operational tests for not less than 8 hours.

3.5.4 Performance Tests

Upon completion of evacuation, charging, startup, final leak testing, and proper adjustment of controls, test the systems to demonstrate compliance with performance and capacity requirements. Test systems for not less than 8 hours, record readings hourly. At the end of the test period, average the readings, and the average shall be considered to be the system performance.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 23 82 00.00 20

TERMINAL HEATING UNITS

02/16

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 33 (2016) Method of Testing Forced
Circulation Air Cooling and Air Heating
Coils

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A123/A123M (2017) Standard Specification for Zinc
(Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and
Steel Products

ASTM A653/A653M (2017) Standard Specification for Steel
Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or
Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by
the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM B117 (2016) Standard Practice for Operating
Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus

ASTM D1654 (2008; R 2016; E 2017) Standard Test
Method for Evaluation of Painted or Coated
Specimens Subjected to Corrosive
Environments

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA ICS 2 (2000; R 2005; Errata 2008) Industrial
Control and Systems Controllers,
Contactors, and Overload Relays Rated 600 V

NEMA ICS 6 (1993; R 2016) Industrial Control and
Systems: Enclosures

NEMA MG 1 (2016; SUPP 2016) Motors and Generators

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2;
TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6;
TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10;
TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA
17-14) National Electrical Code

NFPA 90A	(2018) Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems
NFPA 90B	(2018) Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 23 03 00.00 20 BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS, applies to this section with additions and modifications specified herein.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Unit Heaters

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Unit Heaters, Data Package 2

Submit in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 UNIT HEATERS

Self-contained and factory assembled, propeller fan with capacities expressed as Btu per hour output and cubic foot-per-minute air delivery, operating conditions, and mounting arrangements as indicated. Average fan bearing life must be minimum 200,000 hours at operating conditions. Provide fan motor with direct or belt drive. Construct fan-guard motor mount of steel wire. Equip each heater with individually adjustable package discharge louver. Louvers may be substituted by discharge cones or diffusers. Provide thermostats as indicated. Furnish circuit breaker disconnect switch.

2.1.1 Hot-Water Unit Heater

ASHRAE 33 tested for heating coils; UL listed for motor and controls.

2.1.1.1 Casing

Minimum 20 gage steel or aluminum with removable access panels or means to remove, service, and maintain major components.

2.1.1.2 Coil

Fin-and-tube coil constructed of copper, red brass, 90-10 copper nickel, or steel tubes and copper or aluminum fins. Use maximum design pressure of

hot water at 225 psig and 325 degrees F.

2.1.1.3 Controls

Automatic controls of on-off-auto system. Provide a three-position selector switch.

2.2 FAN

Provide steel or aluminum fans with ball or roller bearings for motors over 1/8 horsepower (hp) and sleeve bearings for motors 1/8 hp and under. Provide sleeve bearings with oil reservoir, if not permanently lubricated.

2.3 MOTOR AND STARTER

NEMA MG 1, and NEMA ICS 2, and NEMA ICS 6, respectively. Provide continuous-duty motor with built-in automatic reset thermal overload protection. For motor 1/2 hp and larger, use three-phase. Provide single-phase motor of permanent split capacitor or capacitor start. Limit motor speed at 1800 r/min. Wire motor to heater power supply source.

2.4 HOT WATER PIPING SYSTEM

Section 23 21 13.00 20 LOW TEMPERATURE WATER HEATING SYSTEMS.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

Special protection is not required for equipment that has a zinc coating conforming to ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A653/A653M. Otherwise, protect affected equipment items by manufacturers' corrosion-inhibiting coating or paint system that has proved capable of withstanding salt-spray test in accordance with ASTM B117. Test indoor and outdoor equipment for 125 hours; test outdoor equipment used in a marine atmosphere for 500 hours. For each specimen, perform a scratch test as defined in ASTM D1654.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Install equipment where indicated and as recommended by manufacturer's recommendations, NFPA 90A, NFPA 90B.

3.1.1 Suspensions of Equipment

Provide equipment supports including beam clamps, turnbuckles and twist links or weld-wire chains, wire ropes with rope clips and rope thimbles, threaded-eye rod hangers with lock nuts and heat-duct hangers, threaded-eye bolts with expansion screws, brackets, platform and mounting frame, and vibration isolators. Locate equipment in such a manner that working space is available for servicing, such as vacuum pump and burner removal, access to automatic controls, and lubrication. Provide electrical isolation of dissimilar metals. Clean interior of casings or cabinets before and after completion of installation.

3.1.2 Electrical Work

NFPA 70 and Division 26, "ELECTRICAL." When replacing original control wires, provide No. 16 AWG with minimum 105 degrees C insulation.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Administer, schedule, and conduct specified tests. Furnish personnel, instruments and equipment for such tests. Correct defects and repeat the respective inspections and tests. Conduct inspections and testing in the presence of the Contracting Officer.

3.2.1 Test Instruments and Apparatus

Provide instruments and apparatus currently certified as being accurate to within one percent of their full scale. Use gages with a maximum scale between 1 1/2 and 2 times test pressure.

3.2.2 Field Inspection

Prior to initial operation, inspect equipment installation to ensure that indicated and specified requirements have been met.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 25 05 11.00

CYBERSECURITY FOR FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS

11/17

PART 1 GENERAL

Many subparts in this Section contain text in curly braces ("{" and "}") indicating which cybersecurity control and control correlation identifier (CCI) the requirements of the subpart relate to. The text inside these curly braces is for Government reference only, and enables coordination of the requirements of this Section with the RMF process throughout the design and construction process. Text in curly braces are not contractor requirements.

This Section refers to Security Requirements Guide (SRGs) and Security Technical Implementation Guide (STIGs). STIGs and SRGs are available online at the Information Assurance Support Environment (IASE) website at <http://iase.disa.mil/stigs/Pages/index.aspx>. Not all control system components have applicable STIGs or SRGs.

1.1 CONTROL SYSTEM APPLICABILITY

There are multiple versions of this Section associated with this project. Different versions have requirements applicable to different control systems. This specific Section applies only to the following control systems: UTILITY MONITORING & CONTROL SYSTEM (UMCS) including HVAC and Electrical Distribution Monitoring.

Front-end integration will be performed by the Government.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

All Sections containing facility-related control systems or control system components are related to the requirements of this Section. Review all specification sections to determine related requirements.

1.3 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 135

(2016) BACnet—A Data Communication
Protocol for Building Automation and
Control Networks

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 802.1x

(2010) Local and Metropolitan Area
Networks - Port Based Network Access
Control

NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF STANDARDS AND TECHNOLOGY (NIST)

NIST FIPS 201-2 (2013) Personal Identity Verification
(PIV) of Federal Employees and Contractors

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

DODI 8551.01 (2014) Ports, Protocols, and Services
Management (PPSM)

DTM 08-060 (2008) Policy on Use of Department of
Defense (DoD) Information Systems -
Standard Consent Banner and User Agreement

1.4 DEFINITIONS

1.4.1 Computer

As used in this Section, a computer is one of the following:

- a. a device running a non-embedded desktop or server version of Microsoft Windows
- b. a device running a non-embedded version of MacOS
- c. a device running a non-embedded version of Linux
- d. a device running a version or derivative of the Android OS, where Android is considered separate from Linux
- e. a device running a version of Apple iOS

1.4.2 Network Connected

A component is network connected (or "connected to a network") only when the device has a network transceiver which is directly connected to the network and implements the network protocol. A device lacking a network transceiver (and accompanying protocol implementation) can never be considered network connected. Note that a device connected to a non-IP network is still considered network connected (an IP connection or IP address is not required for a device to be network connected).

Any device that supports wireless communication is network connected, regardless of whether the device is communicating using wireless.

1.4.3 User Account Support Levels

The support for user accounts is categorized in this Section as one of three levels:

1.4.3.1 FULLY Supported

Device supports configurable individual accounts. Accounts can be created, deleted, modified, etc. Privileges can be assigned to accounts.

1.4.3.2 MINIMALLY Supported

Device supports a small, fixed number of accounts (perhaps only one). Accounts cannot be modified. A device with only a "User" and an

"Administrator" account would fit this category. Similarly, a device with two PINs for logon - one for restricted and one for unrestricted rights would fit here (in other words, the accounts do not have to be the traditional "user name and password" structure).

1.4.3.3 NOT Supported

Device does not support any Access Enforcement therefore the whole concept of "account" is meaningless.

1.4.4 User Interface

Generally, a user interface is hardware on a device allowing user interaction with that device via input (buttons, switches, sliders, keyboard, touch screen, etc.) and a screen. There are three types of user interfaces defined in this Section: Limited Local User Interface, Full Local User Interface and Remote User Interface. In this Section, when the term "User Interface" is used without specifying which type, it refers only to Full Local User Interface and Remote User Interface (NOT to Limited Local User Interface).

1.4.4.1 Limited Local User Interface

A Limited Local User Interface is a user interface where the interaction is limited, fixed at the factory, and cannot be modified in the field. The user must be physically at the device to interact with it.

Examples of Limited Local User Interface include thermostats ([Space Sensor Modules as defined in Section 23 09 23.02 BACnet DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS](#)).

1.4.4.2 Full Local User Interface

A Full Local User Interface is a user interface where the interaction and displays are field-configurable.

Examples of a Full Local User Interface include local applications on a computer [and user interfaces to Variable Speed Drives](#).

1.4.4.3 Remote User Interface

A Remote User Interface is a user interface on a Client device allowing user interaction with a different Server device. The user need not be physically at the Server device to interact with it.

Examples of Remote User Interfaces include web browsers [and Local Display Panels as defined in Section 23 09 23.02 BACnet DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS](#).

1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

1.5.1 Coordination

Coordinate the execution of this Section with the execution of all other Sections related to control systems as indicated in the paragraph RELATED REQUIREMENTS. Items that must be considered when coordinating project efforts include but are not limited to:

- a. If requesting permission for wireless communication, the Wireless

Communication Request submittal must be approved prior to control system device selection and integration.

- b. If requesting permission for alternate account lock permissions, the Device Account Lock Exception Request must be approved prior to control system device selection and integration.
- c. If requesting permission for the use of a device with multiple IP connections, the Multiple IP Connection Device Request must be approved prior to control system device selection and integration.
- d. Wireless testing may be required as part of the control system testing. See requirements for the Wireless Communication Test Report submittal.
- e. If the Device Audit Record Upload Software is to be installed on a computer not being provided as part of the control system, coordination is required to identify the computer on which to install the software.
- f. Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule must be coordinated with other work that will be interconnected to, and interconnections must be approved by the Government before relying on them for system functionality.
- g. Cybersecurity testing support must be coordinated across control systems and with the Government cybersecurity testing schedule.
- h. Passwords must be coordinated with the indicated contact for the project site.
- i. If applicable, HTTP web server certificates must be obtained from the indicated contact for the project site.
- j. Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements for each contractor using contractor owned computers.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Wireless Communication Request; G

Device Account Lock Exception Request; G

Multiple IP Connection Device Request; G

Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements; G

Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements; G

SD-02 Shop Drawings

User Interface Banner Schedule; G

Network Communication Report; G

Cybersecurity Riser Diagram; G

Control System Inventory Report; G

SD-03 Product Data

Control System Cybersecurity Documentation; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Wireless Communication Test Report; G

SD-07 Certificates

Software Licenses; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Password Summary Report; G

Software Recovery And Reconstitution Images; G

Device Audit Record Upload Software; G

1.7 CYBERSECURITY DOCUMENTATION

1.7.1 Network Communication Report

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CA-9; CCI-002102, CCI-002103, CCI-002104, CCI-002105 and also the submittal requirements associated with CM-6, CM-7 and SC-41}

Provide a network communication report. For each networked controller, document the communication characteristics of the controller including communication protocols, services used, and a general description of what information is communicated over the network. For each controller using IP, document all TCP and UDP ports used. If other control system Sections used on this project include submittals documenting this information, provide copies of those submittals to meet this requirement.

In addition to the requirements of Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, provide the Network Communication Report as an editable Microsoft Excel file.

1.7.2 Control System Inventory Report

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CM-8(a), CP-12, SI-17, IA-3; CCI-000389, CCI-000392, CCI-000398, CCI-002855, CCI-002856, CCI-002857, CCI-002773, CCI-002774, CCI-002775, CCI-000777, CCI-000778, CCI-001958}

Provide a Control System Inventory report using the Inventory Spreadsheet listed under this Section at <http://www.wbdg.org/FFC/NAVGRAPH/graphdoc.pdf> documenting all devices, including networked devices, network

infrastructure devices, non-networked devices, input devices (e.g. sensors) and output devices (e.g. actuators). For each device provide all applicable information for which there is a field on the spreadsheet in accordance with the instructions on the spreadsheet.

In addition to the requirements of Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, provide the Control System Inventory Report as an editable Microsoft Excel file.

1.7.3 Software Recovery and Reconstitution Images

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CP-10; CCI-000550, CCI-000551, CCI-000552}

For each computer on which software is installed under this project, provide a recovery image of the final as-built computer. This image must allow for bare-metal restore such that restoration of the image is sufficient to restore system operation to the imaged state without the need for re-installation of software.

1.7.4 Cybersecurity Riser Diagram

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to PL-2(a); CCI-003051, CCI-003053}

Provide a cybersecurity riser diagram of the complete control system including all network and controller hardware. If the control system specifications require a riser diagram submittal, provide a copy of that submittal as the cybersecurity riser diagram. Otherwise, provide a riser diagram in one-line format overlaid on a facility schematic.

1.7.5 Control System Cybersecurity Documentation

This subpart (and its subparts) relates to SA-5 (a), (b), (c); CCIs: CCI-003124, CCI-003125, CCI-003126, CCI-003127, CCI-003128, CCI-003129, CCI-003130, CCI-003131}

Provide a Control System Cybersecurity Documentation submittal containing the indicated information for each device and software application.

1.7.5.1 Software Applications

For all software applications running on computers provide:

- a. administrator documentation that describes secure configuration of the software {relates to CCI-003124}
- b. administrator documentation that describes secure installation of the software {relates to CCI-003125}
- c. administrator documentation that describes secure operation of the software {relates to CCI-003124}
- d. administrator documentation that describes effective use and maintenance of security functions or mechanisms for the software {relates to CCI-003127}
- e. administrator documentation that describes known vulnerabilities regarding configuration and use of administrative (i.e. privileged)

functions for the software {relates to CCI-003128}

- f. user documentation that describes user-accessible security functions or mechanisms in the software and how to effectively use those security functions or mechanisms {relates to CCI-003129}
- g. user documentation that describes methods for user interaction which enables individuals to use the software in a more secure manner {relates to CCI-003130}
- h. user documentation that describes user responsibilities in maintaining the security of the software {relates to CCI-003131}

1.7.5.2 For HVAC Control System Devices

1.7.5.2.1 HVAC Control System Devices FULLY Supporting User Accounts

For all HVAC Control System Devices which FULLY support user accounts, provide:

- a. Documentation that describes secure configuration of the device {for reference only: relates to CCI-003124}
- b. Documentation that describes secure operation of the device {for reference only: relates to CCI-003124}
- c. Documentation that describes effective use and maintenance of security functions or mechanisms for the device {for reference only: relates to CCI-003127}
- d. Documentation that describes known vulnerabilities regarding configuration and use of administrative (i.e. privileged) functions for the device {for reference only: relates to CCI-003128}
- e. Documentation that describes user-accessible security functions or mechanisms in the device and how to effectively use those security functions or mechanisms; or a specific indication that there are no user-accessible security functions or mechanisms in the device {for reference only: relates to CCI-003129}
- f. Documentation that describes methods for user interaction which enables individuals to use the device in a more secure manner {for reference only: relates to CCI-003130}

1.7.5.2.2 All Other HVAC Control System Devices

For all HVAC Control System Devices which do not FULLY support user accounts, provide:

- a. Documentation that describes secure configuration of the device; or a specific indication that there are no secure configuration steps that apply {for reference only: relates to CCI-003124}
- b. Documentation that describes effective use and maintenance of security functions or mechanisms for the device; or a specific indication that there are no security functions or mechanisms in the device {for reference only: relates to CCI-003127}
- c. For devices which include a user interface, documentation that

describes methods for user interaction which enables individuals to use the device in a more secure manner {for reference only: relates to CCI-003130}

1.7.5.3 Default Requirements for Control System Devices

For control system devices where Control System Cybersecurity Documentation requirements are not otherwise indicated in this Section, provide:

- a. Documentation that describes secure configuration of the device {for reference only: relates to CCI-003124}
- b. Documentation that describes secure installation of the device {for reference only: relates to CCI-003125}
- c. Documentation that describes secure operation of the device {for reference only: relates to CCI-003124}
- d. Documentation that describes effective use and maintenance of security functions or mechanisms for the device {for reference only: relates to CCI-003127}
- e. Documentation that describes known vulnerabilities regarding configuration and use of administrative (i.e. privileged) functions for the device {for reference only: relates to CCI-003128}
- f. Documentation that describes user-accessible security functions or mechanisms in the device and how to effectively use those security functions or mechanisms {for reference only: relates to CCI-003129}
- g. Documentation that describes methods for user interaction which enables individuals to use the device in a more secure manner {for reference only: relates to CCI-003130}
- h. Documentation that describes user responsibilities in maintaining the security of the device {for reference only: relates to CCI-003131}

1.8 SOFTWARE UPDATE LICENSING

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to SI-2 (a), (c); CCI-001227, CCI-002605}

In addition to all other licensing requirements, all software licensing must include licensing of the following software updates for a period of no less than 5 years:

- a. Security and bug-fix patches issued by the software manufacturer.
- b. Security patches to address any vulnerability identified in the National Vulnerability Database at <http://nvd.nist.gov> with a Common Vulnerability Scoring System (CVSS) severity rating of MEDIUM or higher.

Provide a single [Software Licenses](#) submittal with documentation of the software licenses for all software provided

1.9 CYBERSECURITY DURING CONSTRUCTION

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-18, SA-3, CCI-00258}

In addition to the control system cybersecurity requirements indicated in this section, meet following requirement throughout the construction process.

1.9.1 Contractor Computer Equipment

Contractor owned computers may be used for construction. When used, contractor computers must meet the following requirements:

1.9.1.1 Operating System

The operating system must be an operating system currently supported by the manufacturer of the operating system. The operating system must be current on security patches and operating system manufacturer required updates.

1.9.1.2 Anti-Malware Software

The computer must run anti-malware software from a reputable software manufacturer. Anti-malware software must be a version currently supported by the software manufacturer, must be current on all patches and updates, and must use the latest definitions file. All computers used on this project must be scanned using the installed software at least once per day.

1.9.1.3 Passwords and Passphrases

The passwords and passphrases for all computers must be changed from their default values. Passwords must be a minimum of eight characters with a minimum of one uppercase letter, one lowercase letter, one number and one special character.

1.9.1.4 Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements

Provide a single submittal containing completed Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements for each company using contractor owned computers. Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements must use the template published at <http://www.wbdg.org/FFC/NAVGRAPH/graphdoc.pdf>. Each Statement must be signed by a cybersecurity representative for the relevant company.

1.9.2 Temporary IP Networks

Temporary contractor-installed IP networks may be used during construction. When used, temporary contractor-installed IP networks must meet the following requirements:

1.9.2.1 Network Boundaries and Connections

The network must not extend outside the project site and must not connect to any IP network other than IP networks provided under this project or Government furnished IP networks provided for this purpose. Any and all network access from outside the project site is prohibited.

1.9.3 Government Access to Network

Government personnel must be allowed to have complete and immediate access to the network at any time in order to verify compliance with this specification

1.9.4 Temporary Wireless IP Networks

In addition to the other requirements on temporary IP networks, temporary wireless IP (WiFi) networks must not interfere with existing wireless network and must use WPA2 security. Network names (SSID) for wireless networks must be changed from their default values.

1.9.5 Passwords and Passphrases

The passwords and passphrases for all network devices and network access must be changed from their default values. Passwords must be a minimum 8 characters with a minimum of one uppercase letter, one lowercase letter, one number and one special character.

1.9.6 Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements

Provide a single submittal containing completed Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements for each company implementing a temporary IP network. Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements must use the template published at <http://www.wbdg.org/FFC/NAVGGRAPH/graphdoc.pdf>. Each Statement must be signed by a cybersecurity representative for the relevant company. If no temporary IP networks will be used, provide a single copy of the Statement indicating this.

1.10 CYBERSECURITY DURING WARRANTY PERIOD

All work performed on the control system after acceptance must be performed using Government Furnished Equipment or equipment specifically and individually approved by the Government.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

(NOT USED)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 ACCESS CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

3.1.1 User Accounts

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relate to AC-2(a) and AC-3; CCI-002110, CCI-000213.}

Any device supporting user accounts (either FULLY or MINIMALLY) must limit access to the device according to specified limitations for each account. Install and configure any device having a STIG or SRG in accordance with that STIG or SRG.

3.1.1.1 For HVAC Control System Devices

Devices with web interfaces must either FULLY support user accounts or have their web interface disabled. Field devices with full local user interfaces allowing modification of data must at least MINIMALLY support user accounts.

3.1.1.2 Default Requirements for Control System Devices

For control system devices where User Account requirements are not

otherwise indicated in this Section:

- a. Devices with web interfaces must either FULLY support user accounts or have their web interface disabled.
- b. Field devices with full local user interfaces allowing modification of data must at least MINIMALLY support user accounts.
- c. Field devices with read-only full local user interfaces must at least MINIMALLY support user accounts.
- d. All devices must at least MINIMALLY support user accounts.

3.1.2 Unsuccessful Logon Attempts

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relate AC-7 (a), AC-7 (b); CCI-000043, CCI-000044, CCI-001423, CCI-002236, CCI-002237, CCI-002238}

Except for high availability user interfaces indicated as exempt, devices must meet the indicated requirements for handling unsuccessful logon attempts.

3.1.2.1 Devices MINIMALLY Supporting Accounts

Devices which MINIMALLY support accounts are required to lock based on **three** unsuccessful logon attempts **within 60 minute interval unless a life safety issue will occur.**

3.1.2.2 Devices FULLY Supporting Accounts

Devices which FULLY support accounts must meet the following requirements. If a device cannot meet these requirements, document device capabilities to protect from subsequent unsuccessful logon attempts and propose alternate protections in a **Device Account Lock Exception Request** submittal. Do not implement alternate protection measures without explicit permission from the Government.

- a. It must lock the user account when three unsuccessful logon attempts occur within a 15 minute interval.
- b. Once an account is locked, the account must stay locked until unlocked by an administrator.
- c. Once the indicated number of unsuccessful logon attempts occurs, delay further logon prompts by 5 seconds.

3.1.2.3 High Availability Interfaces Exempt from Unsuccessful Logon Attempts Requirements

There are no high availability interfaces which are exempt from unsuccessful logon attempts requirements.

3.1.3 System Use Notification

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-8; CCI-000048, CCI-002247, CCI-002243, CCI-002244, CCI-002245, CCI-002246, CCI-000050, CCI-002248}

Web interfaces must display a warning banner meeting the requirements of DTM 08-060.

Devices which are connected to a network and have a user interface must display a warning banner meeting the requirements of DTM 08-060 if capable of doing so. Devices which are connected to a network and have a user interface but are not capable of displaying a banner must have a permanently affixed label displaying an approved banner from DTM 08-060. Labels must be machine printed or engraved, plastic or metal, designed for permanent installation, must use a font no smaller than 14 point, and must provide a high contrast between font and background colors.

3.1.3.1 User Interface Banner Schedule

Provide a User Interface Schedule using the format indicated showing each user interface provided and how the information banner requirement has been implemented for each user interface.

User Interface Schedule Format (with sample entries)			
User Interface Description	User Interface Location	Type of User Interface	Banner Implementation
Sample 1	Room 1	Remote	DTM 08-060 Banner "A" Displayed at Logon
Sample 2	Room 2	Limited Local	DTM 08-060 Banner "B" on Affixed Label
Sample 3	Room 3	Full Local	DTM 08-060 Banner "B" Displayed on Screen

3.1.4 Permitted Actions Without Identification or Authentication

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-14; CCI-000061, CCI-000232}

The control system must require identification and authentication before allowing any actions by a user acting from a user interface which MINIMALLY or FULLY supports accounts.

3.1.5 Wireless Access

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-18; CCI-001438, CCI-001439, CCI-002323, CCI-001441}

Unless explicitly authorized by the Government, do not use any wireless communication. Any device with wireless communication capability is considered to be using wireless communication, regardless of whether or not the device is actively communicating wirelessly, except when wireless communication has been physically permanently disabled (such as through the removal of the wireless transceiver).

3.1.5.1 Wireless IP Communications

Do not install wireless IP networks, including: do not install a wireless access point; do not install or configure an ad-hoc wireless network; do not install or configure a WiFi Direct communication.

When explicitly authorized by the Government, wireless IP communication may be used to communicate with an existing wireless network.

3.1.5.2 Non-IP Wireless Communication

When non-IP wireless communication is explicitly authorized by the Government, use the maximum level of encryption supported by the specific protocol employed and select signal strength and radiated power to the minimum necessary for reliable communication.

3.1.5.3 Wireless Communication Request

Provide a report documenting the proposed use of wireless communication prior to beginning construction using the Wireless Communication Request Schedule at <http://www.wbdg.org/FFC/NAVGRAPH/graphdoc.pdf>.

For each device proposed to use wireless communication show: the device identifier, a description of the device, the location of the device, the device identifiers of other devices communicating with the device, the protocol used for communication, encryption type and strength, RF Frequency, Radiated Power in dBm (decibel with a milliwatt reference), free-space range, and the expected as-installed range.

3.1.5.4 Wireless Communication Testing

As part of Performance Verification Testing (PVT), conduct testing of wireless communication for all devices indicated on the approved Wireless Communication Request as requiring testing.

To test wireless communication, test for wireless network reception at multiple points along the wireless test boundary in the vicinity of the wireless device, and record whether a network connection can be established at each point. The wireless test boundary is the facility fence line. If wireless testing is required, provide a [Wireless Communication Test Report](#) documenting the testing points and results at each point for each wireless device.

3.2 CYBERSECURITY AUDITING

3.2.1 Audit Events, Content of Audit Records, and Audit Generation

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-2(a), (c), (d), AU-3, AU-12; CCI-000123, CCI-001571, CCI-000125, CCI-001485, CCI-000130, CCI-000131, CCI-000132, CCI-00133, CCI-000134, CCI-001487, CCI-000169, CCI-001459, CCI-000171, CCI-000172, CCI-001910}

For devices that have STIG/SRGs related to audit events, content of audit records or audit generation, comply with the requirements of those STIG/SRGs.

3.2.1.1 Computers

For each computer, provide the capability to select audited events and the content of audit logs. Configure computers to audit the indicated events, and to record the indicated information for each auditable event

3.2.1.1.1 Audited Events

Configure each computer to audit the following events:

- a. Successful and unsuccessful attempts to access, modify, or delete

privileges, security objects, security levels, or categories of information (e.g. classification levels)

- b. Successful and unsuccessful logon attempts
- c. Privileged activities or other system level access
- d. Starting and ending time for user access to the system
- e. Concurrent logons from different workstations
- f. Successful and unsuccessful accesses to objects
- g. All program initiations
- h. All direct access to the information system
- i. All account creations, modifications, disabling, and terminations
- j. All kernel module load, unload, and restart

3.2.1.1.2 Audit Event Information To Record

Configure each computer to record, for each auditable event, the following information (where applicable to the event):

- a. What type of event occurred
- b. When the event occurred
- c. Where the event occurred
- d. The source of the event
- e. The outcome of the event
- f. The full text recording of privileged commands.
- g. The identity of any individuals or subjects associated with the event

3.2.1.2 For HVAC Control System Devices

3.2.1.2.1 HVAC Control System Devices FULLY Supporting User Accounts

For devices FULLY supporting accounts, provide the capability to select audited events, and the contents of audit logs. Configure devices to audit the following events:

- a. Successful and unsuccessful logon attempts to the device
- b. Starting and ending time for user access to the device
- c. All account creations, modifications, disabling, and terminations
- d. All device shutdown and startup

Configure each device to record for each event the following information (as applicable):

- e. What type of event occurred.
- f. When the event occurred.
- g. Where the event occurred.
- h. The source of the event.
- i. The identity of any individuals or subjects associated with the event.

3.2.1.2.2 Other HVAC Control System Devices

There are no requirements to perform auditing at HVAC field devices that do not FULLY support accounts.

3.2.1.3 Default Requirements for Control System Devices

For control system devices where Audit Events, Content of Audit Records, and Audit Generation are not otherwise indicated in this Section:

3.2.1.3.1 Devices Which FULLY Support Accounts

For each device which FULLY supports accounts, provide the capability to select audited events and the content of audit logs. Configure devices to audit the indicated events, and to record the indicated information for each auditable event

3.2.1.3.1.1 Audited Events

Configure each device to audit the following events:

- a. Successful and unsuccessful attempts to access, modify, or delete privileges, security objects, security levels, or categories of information (e.g. classification levels)
- b. Successful and unsuccessful logon attempts
- c. Privileged activities or other system level access
- d. Starting and ending time for user access to the system
- e. Concurrent logons from different workstations
- f. All account creations, modifications, disabling, and terminations
- g. All kernel module load, unload, and restart

3.2.1.3.1.2 Audit Event Information To Record

Configure each computer to record, for each auditable event, the following information (where applicable to the event):

- a. what type of event occurred
- b. when the event occurred
- c. where the event occurred
- d. the source of the event

- e. the outcome of the event
- f. the identity of any individuals or subjects associated with the event
- g. the full text recording of privileged commands

3.2.1.3.2 Devices Which Do Not FULLY Support Accounts

For each Device which does not FULLY support accounts configure the device to audit all device shutdown and startup events and to record for each event the type of event and when the event occurred.

3.2.2 Audit Storage Capacity and Audit Upload

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-4; CCI-001848, CCI-001849}

- a. For devices that have STIG/SRGs related to audit storage capacity (CCI-001848 or CCI-001849) comply with the requirements of those STIG/SRGs.
- b. For non-computer control system devices capable of generating audit records, provide 60 days worth of secure local storage, assuming 10 auditable events per day.

3.2.2.1 Device Audit Record Upload Software

For each non-computer device required to audit events, provide, and license to the Government, software implementing a secure mechanism of uploading audit records from the device to a computer and of exporting the uploaded audit records as a Microsoft Excel file or comma separated value text file. Where different devices use different software, provide software of each type required to upload audit logs from all devices.

If there are no non-computer devices requiring auditing, provide a document stating this in lieu of this submittal.

3.2.3 Time Stamps

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-8; CCI-000159, CCI-001889, CCI-001890}

3.2.3.1 For HVAC Control System Devices

Time stamp requirements for HVAC Control Systems are as indicated in the HVAC Control System specifications.

3.2.3.2 Default Requirements for Control System Devices

For control system devices where Time Stamps requirements are not otherwise indicated in this Section: Devices generating audit records must have internal clocks capable of providing time with a resolution of 1 second. Clocks must not drift more than 10 seconds per day. Configure the system so that each device generating audit records maintains accurate time to within 1 second.

3.3 REQUIREMENTS FOR LEAST FUNCTIONALITY

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts), along with the network communication report submittal specified elsewhere in this section, relates to CM-6 (a), (c), CM-7, CM-7 (1)(b), SC-41; CCI-000363, CCI-000364, CCI-000365, CCI-001588, CCI-001755, CCI-000381, CCI-000380, CCI-00382, CCI-001761, CCI-001762, CCI-002544, CCI-002545, CCI-002546.}

For devices that have a STIG or SRG related to Requirements for Least Functionality (such as configuration settings and port and device I/O access for least functionality), install and configure the device in accordance with that STIG or SRGs.

For HVAC Control Systems: Do not provide devices with user interfaces where one was not required. Do not use a networked sensor or actuator where a non-networked sensor or actuator would suffice.

For Other Control Systems: Do not provide devices with user interfaces where one was not required. Do not use a networked sensor or actuator where a non-networked sensor or actuator would suffice.

3.3.1 Non-IP Control Networks

When control system specifications require particular communication protocols, use only those communication protocols and only as specified. Do not implement any other communication protocol, or use any protocol on ports other than those specified.

When control system specifications do not indicate requirements for communication protocols, use only those protocols required for operation of the system as specified.

3.3.2 IP Control Networks

Do not use nonsecure functions, ports, protocols and services as defined in DODI 8551.01 unless those ports, protocols and services are specifically required by the control system specifications or otherwise specifically authorized by the Government. Do not use ports, protocols and services that are not specified in the control system specifications or required for operation of the control system.

3.4 SAFE MODE AND FAIL SAFE OPERATION

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CP-12, SI-17; CCI-002855, CCI-002856, CCI-002857, CCI-002773, CCI-002774, CCI-002775}

For all control system components with an applicable STIG or SRG, configure the component in accordance with all applicable STIGs and SRGs.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION AND AUTHENTICATION

3.5.1 User Identification and Authentication

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to IA-2, (1), (12); CCI-000764, CCI-000765, CCI-001953, CCI-001954}

- a. Devices that FULLY support accounts must uniquely identify and authenticate organizational users.

- b. Devices which allow network access to privileged accounts must implement multifactor authentication for network access to privileged accounts.

3.5.1.1 HVAC Control Systems Devices

Identification and Authentication for network access to privileged accounts must be implemented by either accepting and electronically verify Personal Identity Verification (PIV) credentials or inheriting identification and authentication from the operating system.

3.5.1.2 Default Requirements for Control System Devices

For control system devices where User Identification and Authentication requirements are not otherwise indicated in this Section, User Identification and Authentication for network access to privileged accounts must be implemented by accepting and electronically verify Personal Identity Verification (PIV) credentials or inheriting identification and authentication from the operating system.

3.5.2 Authenticator Management

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to IA-5 (b), (c), (e), (g), (1), (11); CCI-000176, CCI-001544, CCI-001989, CCI-000182, CCI-001610, CCI-000192, CCI-000193, CCI-000194, CCI-000205, CCI-001619, CCI-001611, CCI-001612, CCI-001613, CCI-001614, CCI-000195, CCI-001615, CCI-000196, CCI-000197, CCI-000199, CCI-000198, CCI-001616, CCI-001617, CCI-000200, CCI-001618, CCI-002041, CCI-002002, CCI-002003}

3.5.2.1 Authentication Type

3.5.2.1.1 For HVAC Control System Devices

Unless otherwise indicated:

- a. Software which FULLY supports accounts and which runs on a computer must use password-based authentication or hardware token-based authentication.
- b. Other devices which FULLY support accounts must use password-based authentication.
- c. Devices MINIMALLY supporting accounts must use password-based authentication.

3.5.2.1.2 Default Requirements for Control System Devices

For control system devices where Authentication Type requirements are not otherwise indicated in this Section:

- a. Software which FULLY supports accounts and which runs on a computer must use password-based authentication or hardware token-based authentication.
- b. Other devices which FULLY support accounts must use either password-based authentication or hardware token-based authentication.
- c. Devices MINIMALLY supporting accounts must use either password-based authentication or hardware token-based authentication.

3.5.2.2 Password-Based Authentication Requirements

3.5.2.2.1 Passwords for Computers

All computers supporting password-based authentication must enforce the following requirements:

- a. Minimum password length of fourteen (14) characters
- b. Password must contain at least one uppercase character.
- c. Password must contain at least one lowercase character.
- d. Password must contain at least one numeric character.
- e. Password must contain at least one special character.
- f. Password must have a minimum lifetime of 24 hours.
- g. Password must have a maximum lifetime of 60 days. When passwords expire, prompt users to change passwords. Do not lock accounts due to expired passwords.
- h. Password must differ from previous five passwords, where differ is defined as changing at least 50 percent of the characters.
- i. Passwords must be cryptographically protected during storage and transmission.

3.5.2.2.2 Passwords for Non-Computer Devices FULLY Supporting Accounts

All non-computer devices FULLY supporting accounts and supporting password-based authentication must enforce the following requirements:

- a. Minimum password length of fourteen (14) characters
- b. Password must contain at least one uppercase character.
- c. Password must contain at least one lowercase character.
- d. Password must contain at least one numeric character.
- e. Password must contain at least one special character.
- f. Password must have a maximum lifetime of sixty (60) days. When passwords expire, prompt users to change passwords. Do not lock accounts due to expired passwords.
- g. Password must differ from previous five (5) passwords, where differ is defined as changing at least fifty percent of the characters.
- h. Passwords must be cryptographically protected during storage and transmission.

3.5.2.2.3 Passwords for Web Interfaces

Passwords for connecting to a web interface supporting password-based authentication must enforce the following requirements:

- a. Minimum password length of **fourteen (14)** characters
- b. Password must contain at least one uppercase character.
- c. Password must contain at least one lowercase character.
- d. Password must contain at least one numeric character.
- e. Password must contain at least one special character.
- f. Password must have a maximum lifetime of 60 days. When passwords expire, prompt users to change passwords. Do not lock accounts due to expired passwords.
- g. Password must differ from previous five passwords, where differ is defined as changing at least 50 percent of the characters.
- h. Passwords must be cryptographically protected during storage and transmission.

3.5.2.2.4 Passwords for Devices Minimally Supporting Accounts

Devices minimally supporting accounts must support passwords with a minimum length of **eight** characters.

3.5.2.2.5 Password Configuration and Reporting

For all devices with a password, change the password from the default password. Coordinate selection of passwords with **DPW**. Do not use the same password for more than one device unless specifically instructed to do so. Provide a **Password Summary Report** documenting the password for each device and describing the procedure to change the password for each device.

Do not provide the Password Summary Report in electronic format. Provide two hardcopies of the Password Summary Report, each copy in its own sealed envelope.

3.5.2.3 Hardware Token-Based Authentication Requirements

Devices supporting hardware token-based authentication must use Personal Identity Verification (PIV) credentials for the hardware token.

3.5.3 Authenticator Feedback

{For Reference Only: This subpart relates to IA-6; CCI-000206}

Devices must never show authentication information, including passwords, on a display. Devices that momentarily display a character as it is entered, and then obscure the character, are acceptable. For devices that have STIGs or SRGs related to obscuring of authenticator feedback (CCI-000206), comply with the requirements of those STIGs/SRGs.

3.5.4 Device Identification and Authentication

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to IA-3; CCI-000777, CCI-000778, CCI-001958}

All computers must use **IEEE 802.1x** for authentication to the network. All web servers running on computers must use HTTPS.

3.5.4.1 For HVAC Control System Devices

Devices using BACnet must support Network Security as specified in Clause 24 of ASHRAE 135.

3.5.4.2 Default Requirements for Control System Devices

For control system devices where Device Identification and Authentication requirements are not otherwise indicated in this Section: Devices using Ethernet must support IEEE 802.1x.

3.5.5 Cryptographic Module Authentication

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to IA-7; CCI-000803}

For devices that have STIG/SGs related to cryptographic module authentication (CCI-000803), comply with the requirements of those STIG/SGs.

3.6 EMERGENCY POWER

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to PE-11, (1); CCI-02955, CCI-000961}

Emergency power is specified in the control system and equipment specifications.

3.7 DURABILITY TO VULNERABILITY SCANNING

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to RA-5 (a), (b), (c), (d); CCI-001054, CCI-001055, CCI-0010156, CCI-001641, CCI-001643, CCI-001057, CCI-001058, CCI-001059}

All IP devices must be scannable, such that the device can be scanned by industry standard IP network scanning utilities without harm to the device, application, or functionality.

For control system devices other than computers:

3.7.1 HVAC Control System Devices Other Than Computers

HVAC control system devices other than computers are not required to respond to scans.

3.7.2 Default Requirements for Control System Devices

Non-computer control system devices where Durability to Vulnerability Scanning requirements are not otherwise indicated in this Section are not required to respond to scans.

3.8 FIPS 201-2 REQUIREMENT

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to SA-4 (10); CCI-003116}

Devices in the following systems which implement PIV must be on the NIST FIPS 201-2 approved product list: NONE.

3.9 DEVICES WITH CONNECTION TO MULTIPLE IP NETWORKS

Except for Ethernet switches, do not use more than one physical connection to IP networks on the same device unless doing so is both required by the project specifications and the specific application is approved. If a device with multiple IP connections is required, provide a [Multiple IP Connection Device Request](#) using the Multiple IP Connection Device Request Schedule at <http://www.wbdg.org/FFC/NAVGRAPH/graphdoc.pdf> to request approval for each device.

3.10 SYSTEM AND COMMUNICATION PROTECTION

3.10.1 Denial of Service Protection, Process Isolation and Boundary Protection

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to SC-5, SC-39, SC-7(a); CCI-001093, CCI-002385, CCI-002386, CCI-002430, CCI-001097}

To the greatest extent practical, implement control logic in non-computer hardware and without reliance on the network.

3.11 SYSTEM AND INTEGRATION INTEGRITY

3.11.1 Malicious Code Protection

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to SI-3(c); CCI-001241, CCI-002623}

For all computers installed under this project, install and configure malware protection software in accordance with the relevant STIGs.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.12.1 Tests

In addition to testing and testing support required by other Sections, provide a minimum of 40 hours, as up to two separate trips, of technical support for cybersecurity testing of control systems.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 25 05 11.01

CYBERSECURITY FOR FIRE LIFE SAFETY (FLS) CONTROL SYSTEM
11/17

PART 1 GENERAL

Many subparts in this Section contain text in curly braces ("{" and "}") indicating which cybersecurity control and control correlation identifier (CCI) the requirements of the subpart relate to. The text inside these curly braces is for Government reference only, and enables coordination of the requirements of this Section with the RMF process throughout the design and construction process. Text in curly braces are not contractor requirements.

This Section refers to Security Requirements Guide (SRGs) and Security Technical Implementation Guide (STIGs). STIGs and SRGs are available online at the Information Assurance Support Environment (IASE) website at <http://iase.disa.mil/stigs/Pages/index.aspx>. Not all control system components have applicable STIGs or SRGs.

1.1 CONTROL SYSTEM APPLICABILITY

There are multiple versions of this Section associated with this project. Different versions have requirements applicable to different control systems. This specific Section applies only to the following control systems: FIRE LIFE SAFETY (FLS) including: FIRE ALARM REPORTING SYSTEM (FARS), FIRE LIFE SAFETY (FLS), MASS NOTIFICATION(MNS).

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Incorporate each of the requirements contained in this specification for systems specified in the following sections:

- a. Section 28 31 76 INTERIOR FIRE ALARM AND MASS NOTIFICATION SYSTEM.

1.3 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 802.1x (2010) Local and Metropolitan Area
Networks - Port Based Network Access
Control

NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF STANDARDS AND TECHNOLOGY (NIST)

NIST FIPS 201-2 (2013) Personal Identity Verification
(PIV) of Federal Employees and Contractors

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

DODI 8551.01

(2014) Ports, Protocols, and Services
Management (PPSM)

DTM 08-060

(2008) Policy on Use of Department of
Defense (DoD) Information Systems -
Standard Consent Banner and User Agreement

1.4 DEFINITIONS

1.4.1 Computer

As used in this Section, a computer is one of the following:

- a. a device running a non-embedded desktop or server version of Microsoft Windows
- b. a device running a non-embedded version of MacOS
- c. a device running a non-embedded version of Linux
- d. a device running a version or derivative of the Android OS, where Android is considered separate from Linux
- e. a device running a version of Apple iOS

1.4.2 Network Connected

A component is network connected (or "connected to a network") only when the device has a network transceiver which is directly connected to the network and implements the network protocol. A device lacking a network transceiver (and accompanying protocol implementation) can never be considered network connected. Note that a device connected to a non-IP network is still considered network connected (an IP connection or IP address is not required for a device to be network connected).

Any device that supports wireless communication is network connected, regardless of whether the device is communicating using wireless.

1.4.3 User Account Support Levels

The support for user accounts is categorized in this Section as one of three levels:

1.4.3.1 FULLY Supported

Device supports configurable individual accounts. Accounts can be created, deleted, modified, etc. Privileges can be assigned to accounts.

1.4.3.2 MINIMALLY Supported

Device supports a small, fixed number of accounts (perhaps only one). Accounts cannot be modified. A device with only a "User" and an "Administrator" account would fit this category. Similarly, a device with two PINs for logon - one for restricted and one for unrestricted rights would fit here (in other words, the accounts do not have to be the traditional "user name and password" structure).

1.4.3.3 NOT Supported

Device does not support any Access Enforcement therefore the whole concept of "account" is meaningless.

1.4.4 User Interface

Generally, a user interface is hardware on a device allowing user interaction with that device via input (buttons, switches, sliders, keyboard, touch screen, etc.) and a screen. There are three types of user interfaces defined in this Section: Limited Local User Interface, Full Local User Interface and Remote User Interface. In this Section, when the term "User Interface" is used without specifying which type, it refers only to Full Local User Interface and Remote User Interface (NOT to Limited Local User Interface).

1.4.4.1 Limited Local User Interface

A Limited Local User Interface is a user interface where the interaction is limited, fixed at the factory, and cannot be modified in the field. The user must be physically at the device to interact with it.

1.4.4.2 Full Local User Interface

A Full Local User Interface is a user interface where the interaction and displays are field-configurable.

Examples of a Full Local User Interface include local applications on a computer [and user interfaces to Variable Speed Drives](#).

1.4.4.3 Remote User Interface

A Remote User Interface is a user interface on a Client device allowing user interaction with a different Server device. The user need not be physically at the Server device to interact with it.

Examples of Remote User Interfaces include web browsers.

1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

1.5.1 Coordination

Coordinate the execution of this Section with the execution of all other Sections related to control systems as indicated in the paragraph RELATED REQUIREMENTS. Items that must be considered when coordinating project efforts include but are not limited to:

- a. If requesting permission for wireless communication, the Wireless Communication Request submittal must be approved prior to control system device selection and integration.
- b. If requesting permission for alternate account lock permissions, the Device Account Lock Exception Request must be approved prior to control system device selection and integration.
- c. If requesting permission for the use of a device with multiple IP connections, the Multiple IP Connection Device Request must be approved prior to control system device selection and integration.

- d. Wireless testing may be required as part of the control system testing. See requirements for the Wireless Communication Test Report submittal.
- e. If the Device Audit Record Upload Software is to be installed on a computer not being provided as part of the control system, coordination is required to identify the computer on which to install the software.
- f. Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule must be coordinated with other work that will be interconnected to, and interconnections must be approved by the Government before relying on them for system functionality.
- g. Cybersecurity testing support must be coordinated across control systems and with the Government cybersecurity testing schedule.
- h. Passwords must be coordinated with the indicated contact for the project site.
- i. If applicable, HTTP web server certificates must be obtained from the indicated contact for the project site.
- j. Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements for each contractor using contractor owned computers.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Device Account Lock Exception Request; G

Multiple IP Connection Device Request; G

Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements; G

Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements; G

SD-02 Shop Drawings

User Interface Banner Schedule; G

Network Communication Report; G

Cybersecurity Riser Diagram; G

Control System Inventory Report; G

SD-03 Product Data

Control System Cybersecurity Documentation; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Password Summary Report; G

Software Recovery And Reconstitution Images; G

Device Audit Record Upload Software; G

1.7 CYBERSECURITY DOCUMENTATION

1.7.1 Network Communication Report

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CA-9; CCI-002102, CCI-002103, CCI-002104, CCI-002105 and also the submittal requirements associated with CM-6, CM-7 and SC-41}

Provide a network communication report. For each networked controller, document the communication characteristics of the controller including communication protocols, services used, and a general description of what information is communicated over the network. For each controller using IP, document all TCP and UDP ports used. If other control system Sections used on this project include submittals documenting this information, provide copies of those submittals to meet this requirement.

In addition to the requirements of Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, provide the Network Communication Report as an editable Microsoft Excel file.

1.7.2 Control System Inventory Report

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CM-8(a), CP-12, SI-17, IA-3; CCI-000389, CCI-000392, CCI-000398, CCI-002855, CCI-002856, CCI-002857, CCI-002773, CCI-002774, CCI-002775, CCI-000777, CCI-000778, CCI-001958}

Provide a Control System Inventory report using the Inventory Spreadsheet listed under this Section at <http://www.wbdg.org/FFC/NAVGRAPH/graphdoc.pdf> documenting all devices, including networked devices, network infrastructure devices, non-networked devices, input devices (e.g. sensors) and output devices (e.g. actuators). For each device provide all applicable information for which there is a field on the spreadsheet in accordance with the instructions on the spreadsheet.

In addition to the requirements of Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, provide the Control System Inventory Report as an editable Microsoft Excel file.

1.7.3 Software Recovery and Reconstitution Images

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CP-10; CCI-000550, CCI-000551, CCI-000552}

For each computer on which software is installed under this project, provide a recovery image of the final as-built computer. This image must allow for bare-metal restore such that restoration of the image is sufficient to restore system operation to the imaged state without the need for re-installation of software.

If additional user permissions are required to meet this requirement, coordinate the creation of the image with **Government**.

1.7.4 Cybersecurity Riser Diagram

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to PL-2(a); CCI-003051, CCI-003053}

Provide a cybersecurity riser diagram of the complete control system including all network and controller hardware. If the control system specifications require a riser diagram submittal, provide a copy of that submittal as the cybersecurity riser diagram. Otherwise, provide a riser diagram in one-line format overlaid on a facility schematic.

1.7.5 Control System Cybersecurity Documentation

This subpart (and its subparts) relates to SA-5 (a), (b), (c); CCIs: CCI-003124, CCI-003125, CCI-003126, CCI-003127, CCI-003128, CCI-003129, CCI-003130, CCI-003131}

Provide a Control System Cybersecurity Documentation submittal containing the indicated information for each device and software application.

1.7.5.1 Software Applications

For all software applications running on computers provide:

- a. administrator documentation that describes secure configuration of the software {relates to CCI-003124}
- b. administrator documentation that describes secure installation of the software {relates to CCI-003125}
- c. administrator documentation that describes secure operation of the software {relates to CCI-003124}
- d. administrator documentation that describes effective use and maintenance of security functions or mechanisms for the software {relates to CCI-003127}
- e. administrator documentation that describes known vulnerabilities regarding configuration and use of administrative (i.e. privileged) functions for the software {relates to CCI-003128}
- f. user documentation that describes user-accessible security functions or mechanisms in the software and how to effectively use those security functions or mechanisms {relates to CCI-003129}
- g. user documentation that describes methods for user interaction which enables individuals to use the software in a more secure manner {relates to CCI-003130}
- h. user documentation that describes user responsibilities in maintaining the security of the software {relates to CCI-003131}

1.7.5.2 For HVAC Control System Devices

1.7.5.2.1 HVAC Control System Devices FULLY Supporting User Accounts

For all HVAC Control System Devices which FULLY support user accounts, provide:

- a. Documentation that describes secure configuration of the device {for reference only: relates to CCI-003124}
- b. Documentation that describes secure operation of the device {for reference only: relates to CCI-003124}
- c. Documentation that describes effective use and maintenance of security functions or mechanisms for the device {for reference only: relates to CCI-003127}
- d. Documentation that describes known vulnerabilities regarding configuration and use of administrative (i.e. privileged) functions for the device {for reference only: relates to CCI-003128}
- e. Documentation that describes user-accessible security functions or mechanisms in the device and how to effectively use those security functions or mechanisms; or a specific indication that there are no user-accessible security functions or mechanisms in the device {for reference only: relates to CCI-003129}
- f. Documentation that describes methods for user interaction which enables individuals to use the device in a more secure manner {for reference only: relates to CCI-003130}

1.7.5.2.2 All Other HVAC Control System Devices

For all HVAC Control System Devices which do not FULLY support user accounts, provide:

- a. Documentation that describes secure configuration of the device; or a specific indication that there are no secure configuration steps that apply {for reference only: relates to CCI-003124}
- b. Documentation that describes effective use and maintenance of security functions or mechanisms for the device; or a specific indication that there are no security functions or mechanisms in the device {for reference only: relates to CCI-003127}
- c. For devices which include a user interface, documentation that describes methods for user interaction which enables individuals to use the device in a more secure manner {for reference only: relates to CCI-003130}

1.7.5.3 Default Requirements for Control System Devices

For control system devices where Control System Cybersecurity Documentation requirements are not otherwise indicated in this Section, provide:

- a. Documentation that describes secure configuration of the device {for reference only: relates to CCI-003124}
- b. Documentation that describes secure installation of the device {for

reference only: relates to CCI-003125}

- c. Documentation that describes secure operation of the device {for reference only: relates to CCI-003124}
- d. Documentation that describes effective use and maintenance of security functions or mechanisms for the device {for reference only: relates to CCI-003127}
- e. Documentation that describes known vulnerabilities regarding configuration and use of administrative (i.e. privileged) functions for the device {for reference only: relates to CCI-003128}
- f. Documentation that describes user-accessible security functions or mechanisms in the device and how to effectively use those security functions or mechanisms {for reference only: relates to CCI-003129}
- g. Documentation that describes methods for user interaction which enables individuals to use the device in a more secure manner {for reference only: relates to CCI-003130}
- h. Documentation that describes user responsibilities in maintaining the security of the device {for reference only: relates to CCI-003131}

1.8 CYBERSECURITY DURING CONSTRUCTION

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-18, SA-3, CCI-00258}

In addition to the control system cybersecurity requirements indicated in this section, meet following requirement throughout the construction process.

1.8.1 Contractor Computer Equipment

Contractor owned computers may be used for construction. When used, contractor computers must meet the following requirements:

1.8.1.1 Operating System

The operating system must be an operating system currently supported by the manufacturer of the operating system. The operating system must be current on security patches and operating system manufacturer required updates.

1.8.1.2 Anti-Malware Software

The computer must run anti-malware software from a reputable software manufacturer. Anti-malware software must be a version currently supported by the software manufacturer, must be current on all patches and updates, and must use the latest definitions file. All computers used on this project must be scanned using the installed software at least once per day.

1.8.1.3 Passwords and Passphrases

The passwords and passphrases for all computers must be changed from their default values. Passwords must be a minimum of eight characters with a minimum of one uppercase letter, one lowercase letter, one number and one special character.

1.8.1.4 Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements

Provide a single submittal containing completed Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements for each company using contractor owned computers. Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements must use the template published at <http://www.wbdg.org/FFC/NAVGRAPH/graphtoc.pdf>. Each Statement must be signed by a cybersecurity representative for the relevant company.

1.8.2 Temporary IP Networks

Temporary contractor-installed IP networks may be used during construction. When used, temporary contractor-installed IP networks must meet the following requirements:

1.8.2.1 Network Boundaries and Connections

The network must not extend outside the project site and must not connect to any IP network other than IP networks provided under this project or Government furnished IP networks provided for this purpose. Any and all network access from outside the project site is prohibited.

1.8.3 Government Access to Network

Government personnel must be allowed to have complete and immediate access to the network at any time in order to verify compliance with this specification

1.8.4 Passwords and Passphrases

The passwords and passphrases for all network devices and network access must be changed from their default values. Passwords must be a minimum 8 characters with a minimum of one uppercase letter, one lowercase letter, one number and one special character.

1.8.5 Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements

Provide a single submittal containing completed Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements for each company implementing a temporary IP network. Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements must use the template published at <http://www.wbdg.org/FFC/NAVGRAPH/graphtoc.pdf>. Each Statement must be signed by a cybersecurity representative for the relevant company. If no temporary IP networks will be used, provide a single copy of the Statement indicating this.

1.9 CYBERSECURITY DURING WARRANTY PERIOD

All work performed on the control system after acceptance must be performed using Government Furnished Equipment or equipment specifically and individually approved by the Government.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

(NOT USED)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 ACCESS CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

3.1.1 User Accounts

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relate to AC-2(a) and AC-3; CCI-002110, CCI-000213.}

Any device supporting user accounts (either FULLY or MINIMALLY) must limit access to the device according to specified limitations for each account. Install and configure any device having a STIG or SRG in accordance with that STIG or SRG.

3.1.1.1 Computers

All computers must FULLY support user accounts.

3.1.1.2 Default Requirements for Control System Devices

For control system devices where User Account requirements are not otherwise indicated in this Section:

- a. Devices with web interfaces must either FULLY support user accounts or have their web interface disabled.
- b. Field devices with full local user interfaces allowing modification of data must at least MINIMALLY support user accounts.
- c. Field devices with read-only full local user interfaces must at least MINIMALLY support user accounts.
- d. All devices must at least MINIMALLY support user accounts.

3.1.2 Unsuccessful Logon Attempts

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relate AC-7 (a), AC-7 (b); CCI-000043, CCI-000044, CCI-001423, CCI-002236, CCI-002237, CCI-002238}

Except for high availability user interfaces indicated as exempt, devices must meet the indicated requirements for handling unsuccessful logon attempts.

3.1.2.1 Devices MINIMALLY Supporting Accounts

Devices which MINIMALLY support accounts are required to lock when three unsuccessful logon attempts occur within 60 minute interval unless a life safety issue will occur.

3.1.2.2 Devices FULLY Supporting Accounts

Devices which FULLY support accounts must meet the following requirements. If a device cannot meet these requirements, document device capabilities to protect from subsequent unsuccessful logon attempts and propose alternate protections in a [Device Account Lock Exception Request](#) submittal. Do not implement alternate protection measures without explicit permission from the Government.

- a. It must lock the user account when three unsuccessful logon attempts occur within a 60 interval.

- b. Once an account is locked, the account must stay locked until unlocked by an administrator.
- c. Once the indicated number of unsuccessful logon attempts occurs, delay further logon prompts by 5 seconds.

3.1.2.3 High Availability Interfaces Exempt from Unsuccessful Logon Attempts Requirements

The following high availability interfaces are exempt from unsuccessful logon attempts requirements:

High Availability Interfaces Exempt from Unsuccessful Logon Attempts Requirements		
User Interface	Location	Action to take in lieu of locking screen
FIRE PANEL	Local Building	NONE-Life Safety Issue
MASS NOTIFICATION PANEL	Local Building	NONE- Life Safety Issue

3.1.3 System Use Notification

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-8; CCI-000048, CCI-002247, CCI-002243, CCI-002244, CCI-002245, CCI-002246, CCI-000050, CCI-002248}

Web interfaces must display a warning banner meeting the requirements of DTM 08-060.

Devices which are connected to a network and have a user interface must display a warning banner meeting the requirements of DTM 08-060 if capable of doing so. Devices which are connected to a network and have a user interface but are not capable of displaying a banner must have a permanently affixed label displaying an approved banner from DTM 08-060. Labels must be machine printed or engraved, plastic or metal, designed for permanent installation, must use a font no smaller than 14 point, and must provide a high contrast between font and background colors.

3.1.3.1 User Interface Banner Schedule

Provide a User Interface Schedule using the format indicated showing each user interface provided and how the information banner requirement has been implemented for each user interface.

User Interface Schedule Format (with sample entries)			
User Interface Description	User Interface Location	Type of User Interface	Banner Implementation
Sample 1	Room 1	Remote	DTM 08-060 Banner "A" Displayed at Logon
Sample 2	Room 2	Limited Local	DTM 08-060 Banner "B" on Affixed Label

User Interface Schedule Format (with sample entries)			
User Interface Description	User Interface Location	Type of User Interface	Banner Implementation
Sample 3	Room 3	Full Local	DTM 08-060 Banner "B" Displayed on Screen

3.1.4 Permitted Actions Without Identification or Authentication

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-14; CCI-000061, CCI-000232}

The control system must require identification and authentication before allowing any actions by a user acting from a user interface which MINIMALLY or FULLY supports accounts.

3.1.5 Wireless Access

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-18; CCI-001438, CCI-001439, CCI-002323, CCI-001441}

Unless explicitly authorized by the Government, do not use any wireless communication. Any device with wireless communication capability is considered to be using wireless communication, regardless of whether or not the device is actively communicating wirelessly, except when wireless communication has been physically permanently disabled (such as through the removal of the wireless transceiver).

3.1.5.1 Wireless IP Communications

Do not install wireless IP networks, including: do not install a wireless access point; do not install or configure an ad-hoc wireless network; do not install or configure a WiFi Direct communication.

When explicitly authorized by the Government, wireless IP communication may be used to communicate with an existing wireless network.

3.1.5.2 Non-IP Wireless Communication

When non-IP wireless communication is explicitly authorized by the Government, use the maximum level of encryption supported by the specific protocol employed and select signal strength and radiated power to the minimum necessary for reliable communication.

3.2 CYBERSECURITY AUDITING

3.2.1 Audit Events, Content of Audit Records, and Audit Generation

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-2(a), (c), (d), AU-3, AU-12; CCI-000123, CCI-001571, CCI-000125, CCI-001485, CCI-000130, CCI-000131, CCI-000132, CCI-00133, CCI-000134, CCI-001487, CCI-000169, CCI-001459, CCI-000171, CCI-000172, CCI-001910}

For devices that have STIG/SRGs related to audit events, content of audit records or audit generation, comply with the requirements of those STIG/SRGs.

3.2.1.1 Default Requirements for Control System Devices

For control system devices where Audit Events, Content of Audit Records, and Audit Generation are not otherwise indicated in this Section:

3.2.1.1.1 Devices Which FULLY Support Accounts

For each device which FULLY supports accounts, provide the capability to select audited events and the content of audit logs. Configure devices to audit the indicated events, and to record the indicated information for each auditable event

3.2.1.1.1.1 Audited Events

Configure each device to audit the following events:

- a. Successful and unsuccessful attempts to access, modify, or delete privileges, security objects, security levels, or categories of information (e.g. classification levels)
- b. Successful and unsuccessful logon attempts
- c. Privileged activities or other system level access
- d. Starting and ending time for user access to the system
- e. Concurrent logons from different workstations
- f. All account creations, modifications, disabling, and terminations
- g. All kernel module load, unload, and restart

3.2.1.1.1.2 Audit Event Information To Record

Configure each computer to record, for each auditable event, the following information (where applicable to the event):

- a. what type of event occurred
- b. when the event occurred
- c. where the event occurred
- d. the source of the event
- e. the outcome of the event
- f. the identity of any individuals or subjects associated with the event

3.2.1.1.2 Devices Which Do Not FULLY Support Accounts

For each Device which does not FULLY support accounts configure the device to audit all device shutdown and startup events and to record for each event the type of event and when the event occurred.

3.2.2 Audit Storage Capacity and Audit Upload

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-4; CCI-001848, CCI-001849}

- a. For devices that have STIG/SRGs related to audit storage capacity (CCI-001848 or CCI-001849) comply with the requirements of those STIG/SRGs.
- b. For non-computer control system devices capable of generating audit records, provide 60 days worth of secure local storage, assuming 10 auditable events per day.

3.2.2.1 Device Audit Record Upload Software

For each non-computer device required to audit events, provide, and license to the Government, software implementing a secure mechanism of uploading audit records from the device to a computer and of exporting the uploaded audit records as a Microsoft Excel file. Where different devices use different software, provide software of each type required to upload audit logs from all devices.

Submit copies of device audit record upload software. If there are no non-computer devices requiring auditing, provide a document stating this in lieu of this submittal.

3.2.3 Response to Audit Processing Failures

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-5; CCI-000139, CCI-000140, CCI-001490}.

Front end computers associated with auditing must, in the case of a failure in the auditing system, notify via e-mail. In case of an audit failure, if possible, continue to collect audit records by overwriting existing audit records.

3.2.4 Time Stamps

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-8; CCI-000159, CCI-001889, CCI-001890}

3.2.4.1 Default Requirements for Control System Devices

For control system devices where Time Stamps requirements are not otherwise indicated in this Section: Devices generating audit records must have internal clocks capable of providing time with a resolution of 1 second. Clocks must not drift more than 10 seconds per day. Configure the system so that each device generating audit records maintains accurate time to within 1 second.

3.3 REQUIREMENTS FOR LEAST FUNCTIONALITY

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts), along with the network communication report submittal specified elsewhere in this section, relates to CM-6 (a), (c), CM-7, CM-7 (1)(b), SC-41; CCI-000363, CCI-000364, CCI-000365, CCI-001588, CCI-001755, CCI-000381, CCI-000380, CCI-00382, CCI-001761, CCI-001762, CCI-002544, CCI-002545, CCI-002546.}

For devices that have a STIG or SRG related to Requirements for Least Functionality (such as configuration settings and port and device I/O access for least functionality), install and configure the device in accordance with that STIG or SRGs.

For HVAC Control Systems: Do not provide devices with user interfaces where one was not required. Do not use a networked sensor or actuator where a non-networked sensor or actuator would suffice.

For Other Control Systems: Do not provide devices with user interfaces where one was not required. Do not use a networked sensor or actuator where a non-networked sensor or actuator would suffice.

3.3.1 Non-IP Control Networks

When control system specifications require particular communication protocols, use only those communication protocols and only as specified. Do not implement any other communication protocol, or use any protocol on ports other than those specified.

When control system specifications do not indicate requirements for communication protocols, use only those protocols required for operation of the system as specified.

3.3.2 IP Control Networks

Do not use nonsecure functions, ports, protocols and services as defined in **DODI 8551.01** unless those ports, protocols and services are specifically required by the control system specifications or otherwise specifically authorized by the Government. Do not use ports, protocols and services that are not specified in the control system specifications or required for operation of the control system.

3.4 SAFE MODE AND FAIL SAFE OPERATION

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CP-12, SI-17; CCI-002855, CCI-002856, CCI-002857, CCI-002773, CCI-002774, CCI-002775}

For all control system components with an applicable STIG or SRG, configure the component in accordance with all applicable STIGs and SRGs.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION AND AUTHENTICATION

3.5.1 User Identification and Authentication

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to IA-2, (1), (12); CCI-000764, CCI-000765, CCI-001953, CCI-001954}

- a. Devices that FULLY support accounts must uniquely identify and authenticate organizational users.
- b. Devices which allow network access to privileged accounts must implement multifactor authentication for network access to privileged accounts.

3.5.1.1 Default Requirements for Control System Devices

For control system devices where User Identification and Authentication requirements are not otherwise indicated in this Section, User Identification and Authentication for network access to privileged accounts must be implemented by accepting and electronically verify Personal Identity Verification (PIV) credentials or inheriting identification and authentication from the operating system.

3.5.2 Authenticator Management

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to IA-5 (b), (c), (e), (g), (1), (11); CCI-000176, CCI-001544, CCI-001989, CCI-000182, CCI-001610, CCI-000192, CCI-000193, CCI-000194, CCI-000205, CCI-001619, CCI-001611, CCI-001612, CCI-001613, CCI-001614, CCI-000195, CCI-001615, CCI-000196, CCI-000197, CCI-000199, CCI-000198, CCI-001616, CCI-001617, CCI-000200, CCI-001618, CCI-002041, CCI-002002, CCI-002003}

3.5.2.1 Authentication Type

3.5.2.1.1 Default Requirements for Control System Devices

For control system devices where Authentication Type requirements are not otherwise indicated in this Section:

- a. Software which FULLY supports accounts and which runs on a computer must use hardware token-based authentication.
- b. Other devices which FULLY support accounts must use either password-based authentication or hardware token-based authentication.
- c. Devices MINIMALLY supporting accounts must use either password-based authentication or hardware token-based authentication.

3.5.2.2 Password-Based Authentication Requirements

3.5.2.2.1 Passwords for Computers

All computers supporting password-based authentication must enforce the following requirements:

- a. Minimum password length of 14 characters
- b. Password must contain at least one uppercase character.
- c. Password must contain at least one lowercase character.
- d. Password must contain at least one numeric character.
- e. Password must contain at least one special character.
- f. Password must have a minimum lifetime of 24 hours.
- g. Password must have a maximum lifetime of 60 days. When passwords expire, prompt users to change passwords. Do not lock accounts due to expired passwords.
- h. Password must differ from previous five passwords, where differ is defined as changing at least 50 percent of the characters.
- i. Passwords must be cryptographically protected during storage and transmission.

3.5.2.2.2 Passwords for Non-Computer Devices FULLY Supporting Accounts

All non-computer devices FULLY supporting accounts and supporting password-based authentication must enforce the following requirements:

- a. Minimum password length of **fourteen (14)** characters
- b. Password must contain at least one uppercase character.
- c. Password must contain at least one lowercase character.
- d. Password must contain at least one numeric character.
- e. Password must contain at least one special character.
- f. Password must have a maximum lifetime of sixty (60) days. When passwords expire, prompt users to change passwords. Do not lock accounts due to expired passwords.
- g. Password must differ from previous five (5) passwords, where differ is defined as changing at least fifty percent of the characters.
- h. Passwords must be cryptographically protected during storage and transmission.

3.5.2.2.3 Passwords for Web Interfaces

Passwords for connecting to a web interface supporting password-based authentication must enforce the following requirements:

- a. Minimum password length of **14** characters
- b. Password must contain at least one uppercase character.
- c. Password must contain at least one lowercase character.
- d. Password must contain at least one numeric character.
- e. Password must contain at least one special character.
- f. Password must have a maximum lifetime of 60 days. When passwords expire, prompt users to change passwords. Do not lock accounts due to expired passwords.
- g. Password must differ from previous five passwords, where differ is defined as changing at least 50 percent of the characters.
- h. Passwords must be cryptographically protected during storage and transmission.

3.5.2.2.4 Passwords for Devices Minimally Supporting Accounts

Devices minimally supporting accounts must support passwords with a minimum length of **8** characters.

3.5.2.2.5 Password Configuration and Reporting

For all devices with a password, change the password from the default password. Coordinate selection of passwords with **Government**. Do not use the same password for more than one device unless specifically instructed to do so. Provide a **Password Summary Report** documenting the password for each device and describing the procedure to change the password for each device.

Do not provide the Password Summary Report in electronic format. Provide two hardcopies of the Password Summary Report, each copy in its own sealed envelope.

3.5.2.3 Hardware Token-Based Authentication Requirements

Devices supporting hardware token-based authentication must use Personal Identity Verification (PIV) credentials for the hardware token.

3.5.3 Authenticator Feedback

{For Reference Only: This subpart relates to IA-6; CCI-000206}

Devices must never show authentication information, including passwords, on a display. Devices that momentarily display a character as it is entered, and then obscure the character, are acceptable. For devices that have STIGs or SRGs related to obscuring of authenticator feedback (CCI-000206), comply with the requirements of those STIGs/SRGs.

3.5.4 Device Identification and Authentication

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to IA-3; CCI-000777, CCI-000778, CCI-001958}

All computers must use IEEE 802.1x for authentication to the network. All web servers running on computers must use HTTPS and must implement HTTPS using web server certificates obtained from Government Trusted Agent.

3.5.4.1 Default Requirements for Control System Devices

For control system devices where Device Identification and Authentication requirements are not otherwise indicated in this Section: Devices using Ethernet must support IEEE 802.1x. Devices using HTTP as a control protocol must use HTTPS using a web server certificate obtained from Government Trusted Agent instead.

3.5.5 Cryptographic Module Authentication

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to IA-7; CCI-000803}

For devices that have STIG/SRGs related to cryptographic module authentication (CCI-000803), comply with the requirements of those STIG/SRGs.

3.6 EMERGENCY POWER

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to PE-11,(1); CCI-02955, CCI-000961}

Emergency power is specified in the control system and equipment specifications.

3.7 DURABILITY TO VULNERABILITY SCANNING

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to RA-5 (a), (b), (c), (d); CCI-001054, CCI-001055, CCI-0010156, CCI-001641, CCI-001643, CCI-001057, CCI-001058, CCI-001059}

All IP devices must be scannable, such that the device can be scanned by industry standard IP network scanning utilities without harm to the device, application, or functionality.

3.7.1 Default Requirements for Control System Devices

Non-computer control system devices where Durability to Vulnerability Scanning requirements are not otherwise indicated in this Section are not required to respond to scans.

3.8 FIPS 201-2 REQUIREMENT

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to SA-4 (10); CCI-003116}

Devices in the following systems which implement PIV must be on the [NIST FIPS 201-2](#) approved product list: NONE.

3.9 DEVICES WITH CONNECTION TO MULTIPLE IP NETWORKS

Except for Ethernet switches, do not use more than one physical connection to IP networks on the same device unless doing so is both required by the project specifications and the specific application is approved. If a device with multiple IP connections is required, provide a [Multiple IP Connection Device Request](#) using the Multiple IP Connection Device Request Schedule at <http://www.wbdg.org/FFC/NAVGRAPH/graphdoc.pdf> to request approval for each device.

3.10 SYSTEM AND COMMUNICATION PROTECTION

3.11 SYSTEM AND INTEGRATION INTEGRITY

3.11.1 Malicious Code Protection

{For Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to SI-3(c); CCI-001241, CCI-002623}

For all computers installed under this project, install and configure malware protection software in accordance with the relevant STIGs.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.12.1 Tests

In addition to testing and testing support required by other Sections, provide a minimum of 40 hours of technical support for cybersecurity testing of control systems.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 26 00 00.00 20

BASIC ELECTRICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS

07/06

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D709 (2017) Standard Specification for
Laminated Thermosetting Materials

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 100 (2000; Archived) The Authoritative
Dictionary of IEEE Standards Terms

IEEE C2 (2017; Errata 1-2 2017; INT 1 2017)
National Electrical Safety Code

IEEE C57.12.28 (2014) Standard for Pad-Mounted Equipment
- Enclosure Integrity

IEEE C57.12.29 (2014) Standard for Pad-Mounted Equipment
- Enclosure Integrity for Coastal
Environments

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA 250 (2014) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment
(1000 Volts Maximum)

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2;
TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6;
TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10;
TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA
17-14; TIA 17-15; TIA 17-16; TIA 17-17)
National Electrical Code

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

This section applies to certain sections of Division 11, EQUIPMENT, Division 13, SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION, Divisions 22 and 23, PLUMBING and HEATING VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING. This section applies to all sections of Division 26 and 33, ELECTRICAL and UTILITIES, of this project specification unless specified otherwise in the individual sections. This section has been incorporated into, and thus, does not apply to, and is not referenced in the following sections.

Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

Section 26 24 13 SWITCHBOARDS
Section 26 51 00 INTERIOR LIGHTING
Section 26 56 00 EXTERIOR LIGHTING
Section 27 10 00 BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEM
Section 33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION
Section 33 82 00 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTSIDE PLANT (OSP)

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- a. Unless otherwise specified or indicated, electrical and electronics terms used in these specifications, and on the drawings, shall be as defined in IEEE 100.
- b. The technical sections referred to herein are those specification sections that describe products, installation procedures, and equipment operations and that refer to this section for detailed description of submittal types.
- c. The technical paragraphs referred to herein are those paragraphs in PART 2 - PRODUCTS and PART 3 - EXECUTION of the technical sections that describe products, systems, installation procedures, equipment, and test methods.

1.4 ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Electrical characteristics for this project shall be 12.47 kV primary, three phase, three four wire, 60 Hz, and 480/277 volts secondary, three phase, three four wire. Final connections to the power distribution system at the existing transformer shall be made by the Contractor as directed by the Contracting Officer.

1.5 ADDITIONAL SUBMITTALS INFORMATION

Submittals required in other sections that refer to this section must conform to the following additional requirements as applicable.

1.5.1 Shop Drawings (SD-02)

Include wiring diagrams and installation details of equipment indicating proposed location, layout and arrangement, control panels, accessories, piping, ductwork, and other items that must be shown to ensure a coordinated installation. Wiring diagrams shall identify circuit terminals and indicate the internal wiring for each item of equipment and the interconnection between each item of equipment. Drawings shall indicate adequate clearance for operation, maintenance, and replacement of operating equipment devices.

1.5.2 Product Data (SD-03)

Submittal shall include performance and characteristic curves.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6.1 Regulatory Requirements

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "shall" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction," or words of

similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer. Equipment, materials, installation, and workmanship shall be in accordance with the mandatory and advisory provisions of NFPA 70 unless more stringent requirements are specified or indicated.

1.6.2 Standard Products

Provide materials and equipment that are products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of such products which are of equal material, design and workmanship. Products shall have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening. The 2-year period shall include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The product shall have been on sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2-year period. Where two or more items of the same class of equipment are required, these items shall be products of a single manufacturer; however, the component parts of the item need not be the products of the same manufacturer unless stated in the technical section.

1.6.2.1 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a 2-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturers' factory or laboratory tests, is furnished.

1.6.2.2 Material and Equipment Manufacturing Date

Products manufactured more than 3 years prior to date of delivery to site shall not be used, unless specified otherwise.

1.7 WARRANTY

The equipment items shall be supported by service organizations which are reasonably convenient to the equipment installation in order to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

1.8 POSTED OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

Provide for each system and principal item of equipment as specified in the technical sections for use by operation and maintenance personnel. The operating instructions shall include the following:

- a. Wiring diagrams, control diagrams, and control sequence for each principal system and item of equipment.
- b. Start up, proper adjustment, operating, lubrication, and shutdown procedures.
- c. Safety precautions.
- d. The procedure in the event of equipment failure.
- e. Other items of instruction as recommended by the manufacturer of each system or item of equipment.

Print or engrave operating instructions and frame under glass or in approved laminated plastic. Post instructions where directed. For

operating instructions exposed to the weather, provide weather-resistant materials or weatherproof enclosures. Operating instructions shall not fade when exposed to sunlight and shall be secured to prevent easy removal or peeling.

1.9 MANUFACTURER'S NAMEPLATE

Each item of equipment shall have a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable.

1.10 FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATES

ASTM D709. Provide laminated plastic nameplates for each equipment enclosure, relay, switch, and device; as specified in the technical sections or as indicated on the drawings. Each nameplate inscription shall identify the function and, when applicable, the position. Nameplates shall be melamine plastic, 0.125 inch thick, white with black center core. Surface shall be matte finish. Corners shall be square. Accurately align lettering and engrave into the core. Minimum size of nameplates shall be one by 2.5 inches. Lettering shall be a minimum of 0.25 inch high normal block style.

1.11 WARNING SIGNS

Provide warning signs for the enclosures of electrical equipment including pad-mounted transformers having a nominal rating exceeding 600 volts.

- a. When the enclosure integrity of such equipment is specified to be in accordance with **IEEE C57.12.28** or **IEEE C57.12.29**, such as for pad-mounted transformers, provide self-adhesive warning signs on the outside of the high voltage compartment door(s). Sign shall be a decal and shall have nominal dimensions of 7 by 10 inches with the legend "DANGER HIGH VOLTAGE" printed in two lines of nominal 2 inch high letters. The word "DANGER" shall be in white letters on a red background and the words "HIGH VOLTAGE" shall be in black letters on a white background. Decal shall be Panduit No. PPS0710D72 or approved equal.

1.12 ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

Electrical installations shall conform to **IEEE C2**, **NFPA 70**, and requirements specified herein.

1.13 INSTRUCTION TO GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL

Where specified in the technical sections, furnish the services of competent instructors to give full instruction to designated Government personnel in the adjustment, operation, and maintenance of the specified systems and equipment, including pertinent safety requirements as required. Instructors shall be thoroughly familiar with all parts of the installation and shall be trained in operating theory as well as practical operation and maintenance work. Instruction shall be given during the first regular work week after the equipment or system has been accepted and turned over to the Government for regular operation. The number of man-days (8 hours per day) of instruction furnished shall be as specified in the individual section.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FACTORY APPLIED FINISH

Electrical equipment shall have factory-applied painting systems which shall, as a minimum, meet the requirements of NEMA 250 corrosion-resistance test.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 FIELD APPLIED PAINTING

Paint electrical equipment as required to match finish of adjacent surfaces or to meet the indicated or specified safety criteria. Painting shall be as specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS the section specifying the associated electrical equipment.

3.2 FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATE MOUNTING

Provide number, location, and letter designation of nameplates as indicated. Fasten nameplates to the device with a minimum of two sheet-metal screws or two rivets.

3.3 WARNING SIGN MOUNTING

Provide the number of signs required to be readable from each accessible side, but space the signs a maximum of 30 feet apart.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 26 08 00

APPARATUS INSPECTION AND TESTING

08/08

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

INTERNATIONAL ELECTRICAL TESTING ASSOCIATION (NETA)

NETA ATS

(2017; Errata 2017) Standard for
Acceptance Testing Specifications for
Electrical Power Equipment and Systems

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 26 00 00.00 20 BASIC ELECTRICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS applies to this section with additions and modifications specified herein.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-06 Test Reports

Acceptance tests and inspections; G

SD-07 Certificates

Qualifications of organization, and lead engineering technician; G

Acceptance test and inspections procedure; G

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4.1 Qualifications

Contractor shall engage the services of a qualified testing organization to provide inspection, testing, calibration, and adjustment of the electrical distribution system and generation equipment listed in paragraph entitled "Acceptance Tests and Inspections" herein. Organization shall be independent of the supplier, manufacturer, and installer of the equipment. The organization shall be a first tier subcontractor. No work required by this section of the specification shall be performed by a second tier subcontractor.

- a. Submit name and qualifications of organization. Organization shall have been regularly engaged in the testing of electrical materials,

devices, installations, and systems for a minimum of 5 years. The organization shall have a calibration program, and test instruments used shall be calibrated in accordance with **NETA ATS**.

- b. Submit name and qualifications of the lead engineering technician performing the required testing services. Include a list of three comparable jobs performed by the technician with specific names and telephone numbers for reference. Testing, inspection, calibration, and adjustments shall be performed by an engineering technician, certified by NETA or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET) with a minimum of 5 years' experience inspecting, testing, and calibrating electrical distribution and generation equipment, systems, and devices.

1.4.2 Acceptance Tests and Inspections Reports

Submit certified copies of inspection reports and test reports. Reports shall include certification of compliance with specified requirements, identify deficiencies, and recommend corrective action when appropriate. Type and neatly bind test reports to form a part of the final record. Submit test reports documenting the results of each test not more than 10 days after test is completed.

1.4.3 Acceptance Test and Inspections Procedure

Submit test procedure reports for each item of equipment to be field tested at least 45 days prior to planned testing date. Do not perform testing until after test procedure has been approved.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not used.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 ACCEPTANCE TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

Testing organization shall perform acceptance tests and inspections. Test methods, procedures, and test values shall be performed and evaluated in accordance with **NETA ATS**, the manufacturer's recommendations, and paragraph entitled "Field Quality Control" of each applicable specification section. Tests identified as optional in **NETA ATS** are not required unless otherwise specified. Equipment shall be placed in service only after completion of required tests and evaluation of the test results have been completed. Contractor shall supply to the testing organization complete sets of shop drawings, settings of adjustable devices, and other information necessary for an accurate test and inspection of the system prior to the performance of any final testing. Contracting Officer shall be notified at least 14 days in advance of when tests will be conducted by the testing organization. Perform acceptance tests and inspections on applicable equipment and systems specified in the following sections:

- a. Section **26 32 13.00 20** SINGLE OPERATION GENERATOR SETS. Functional engine shutdown tests, vibration base-line test, and load bank test shall not be performed by the testing organization. These tests shall be performed by the start-up engineer.
- b. Section **33 71 02** UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION. Medium voltage cables and grounding systems only.

c. Section 26 36 23.00 20 AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

d. Section 26 24 13 SWITCHBOARDS

3.2 SYSTEM ACCEPTANCE

Final acceptance of the system is contingent upon satisfactory completion of acceptance tests and inspections.

3.3 PLACING EQUIPMENT IN SERVICE

A representative of the approved testing organization shall be present when equipment tested by the organization is initially energized and placed in service.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 26 12 19.10

THREE-PHASE, LIQUID-FILLED PAD-MOUNTED TRANSFORMERS

05/19

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI C12.1 (2014; Errata 2016) Electric Meters -
Code for Electricity Metering

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A240/A240M (2018) Standard Specification for Chromium
and Chromium-Nickel Stainless Steel Plate,
Sheet, and Strip for Pressure Vessels and
for General Applications

ASTM D92 (2012a) Standard Test Method for Flash and
Fire Points by Cleveland Open Cup Tester

ASTM D97 (2017b) Standard Test Method for Pour
Point of Petroleum Products

ASTM D877/D877M (2013) Standard Test Method for Dielectric
Breakdown Voltage of Insulating Liquids
Using Disk Electrodes

ASTM D1535 (2014; R 2018) Standard Practice for
Specifying Color by the Munsell System

FM GLOBAL (FM)

FM APP GUIDE (updated on-line) Approval Guide
<http://www.approvalguide.com/>

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 386 (2016) Separable Insulated Connector
Systems for Power Distribution Systems
Rated 2.5 kV through 35 kV

IEEE C2 (2017; Errata 1-2 2017; INT 1 2017)
National Electrical Safety Code

IEEE C37.47 (2011) Standard for High Voltage
Distribution Class Current-Limiting Type
Fuses and Fuse Disconnecting Switches

IEEE C57.12.00 (2015) General Requirements for
Liquid-Immersed Distribution, Power, and

Regulating Transformers

IEEE C57.12.28	(2014) Standard for Pad-Mounted Equipment - Enclosure Integrity
IEEE C57.12.29	(2014) Standard for Pad-Mounted Equipment - Enclosure Integrity for Coastal Environments
IEEE C57.12.34	(2015) Standard Requirements for Pad-Mounted, Compartmental-Type, Self-Cooled, Three-Phase Distribution Transformers, 10 MVA and Smaller; High Voltage, 34.5 kV Nominal System Voltage and Below; Low Voltage, 15 kV Nominal System Voltage and Below
IEEE C57.12.80	(2010) Standard Terminology for Power and Distribution Transformers
IEEE C57.12.90	(2015; Corr 2017) Test Code for Liquid-Immersed Distribution, Power, and Regulating Transformers
IEEE C57.13	(2016) Requirements for Instrument Transformers
IEEE C57.98	(2011) Guide for Transformer Impulse Tests
IEEE C62.11	(2012) Standard for Metal-Oxide Surge Arresters for Alternating Current Power Circuits (>1kV)
IEEE Stds Dictionary	(2009) IEEE Standards Dictionary: Glossary of Terms & Definitions

INTERNATIONAL ELECTRICAL TESTING ASSOCIATION (NETA)

NETA ATS	(2017; Errata 2017) Standard for Acceptance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Equipment and Systems

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

ANSI C12.7	(2014) Requirements for Watthour Meter Sockets
NEMA 260	(1996; R 2004) Safety Labels for Pad-Mounted Switchgear and Transformers Sited in Public Areas
NEMA LI 1	(1998; R 2011) Industrial Laminating Thermosetting Products
NEMA Z535.4	(2011; R 2017) Product Safety Signs and Labels
NEMA/ANSI C12.10	(2011) Physical Aspects of Watthour Meters - Safety Standards

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2;
TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6;
TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10;
TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA
17-14; TIA 17-15; TIA 17-16; TIA 17-17)
National Electrical Code

ORGANISATION FOR ECONOMIC CO-OPERATION AND DEVELOPMENT (OECD)

OECD Test 203 (1992) Fish Acute Toxicity Test

U.S. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA)

EPA 712-C-98-075 (1998) Fate, Transport and Transformation
Test Guidelines - OPPTS 835.3100- "Aerobic
Aquatic Biodegradation"

EPA 821-R-02-012 (2002) Methods for Measuring the Acute
Toxicity of Effluents and Receiving Waters
to Freshwater and Marine Organisms

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

10 CFR 431 Energy Efficiency Program for Certain
Commercial and Industrial Equipment

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 467 (2013; Reprint Jun 2017) UL Standard for
Safety Grounding and Bonding Equipment

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 26 08 00 APPARATUS INSPECTION AND TESTING applies to this section,
with the additions and modifications specified herein.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

Unless otherwise specified or indicated, electrical and electronics terms
used in these specifications, and on the drawings, are as defined in
IEEE Stds Dictionary.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation;
submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control
approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability
eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING.
Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL
PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Pad-mounted Transformer Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Pad-mounted Transformers; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Acceptance Checks and Tests; G

SD-07 Certificates

Transformer Efficiencies; G

SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Reports

Transformer Test Schedule; G

Pad-mounted Transformer Design Tests; G

Pad-mounted Transformer Routine and Other Tests; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Transformer(s), Data Package 5; G

1.4.1 Reduced Submittal Requirements

Transformers designed and manufactured by ABB in Jefferson City, MO; by Eaton's Cooper Power Series Transformers in Waukesha, WI; by ERMCO in Dyersburg, TN; or by Howard Industries in Laurel, MS need not submit the entire submittal package requirements of this contract. Instead, submit the following items:

- a. A certification, signed by the manufacturer, stating that the manufacturer will meet the technical requirements of this specification.
- b. An outline drawing of the transformer with devices identified (paragraph PAD-MOUNTED TRANSFORMER DRAWINGS, item a).
- c. ANSI nameplate data of the transformer (paragraph PAD-MOUNTED TRANSFORMER DRAWINGS, item b).
- d. Manufacturer's published time-current curves in PDF format and in electronic format suitable for import or updating into the SKM PowerTools for Windows computer program of the transformer high side fuses (paragraph PAD-MOUNTED TRANSFORMER DRAWINGS, item e).
- e. Provide transformer test schedule and routine and other tests required by submittal item "SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Reports".
- f. Provide acceptance test reports required by submittal item "SD-06 Test Reports".
- g. Provide operation and maintenance manuals required by submittal item "SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data".

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 Pad-Mounted Transformer Drawings

Include the following as a minimum:

- a. An outline drawing, including front, top, and side views.
- b. IEEE nameplate data.
- c. Elementary diagrams and wiring diagrams with terminals identified of watt-hour meter and current transformers.
- d. One-line diagram, including switch(es), current transformers, meters, and fuses.
- e. Manufacturer's published time-current curves in PDF format and in electronic format suitable for import or updating into the SKM PowerTools for Windows computer program of the transformer high side fuses.

1.5.2 Regulatory Requirements

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, except of NFPA 70 when more stringent requirements are specified or indicated, as though the word "must" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction," or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer. Provide equipment, materials, installation, and workmanship in accordance with NFPA 70 unless more stringent requirements are specified or indicated.

1.5.3 Standard Products

Provide materials and equipment that are products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of such products which are of equal material, design and workmanship, and:

- a. Have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening including applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size.
- b. Have been on sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2-year period.
- c. Where two or more items of the same class of equipment are required, provide products of a single manufacturer; however, the component parts of the item need not be the products of the same manufacturer unless stated in this section.

1.5.3.1 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a 2-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturers' factory or laboratory tests, is furnished.

1.5.3.2 Material and Equipment Manufacturing Date

Products manufactured more than 3 years prior to date of delivery to site are not acceptable.

1.6 MAINTENANCE

1.6.1 Additions to Operation and Maintenance Data

Submit operation and maintenance data in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA and as specified herein. In addition to requirements of Data Package 5, include the following on the actual transformer(s) provided:

- a. An instruction manual with pertinent items and information highlighted
- b. An outline drawing, front, top, and side views
- c. Prices for spare parts and supply list
- d. Routine and field acceptance test reports
- e. Fuse curves for primary fuses
- f. Information on watthour demand meter, CT's, and fuse block
- g. Actual nameplate diagram
- h. Date of purchase

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT COORDINATION

Products and materials not considered to be pad-mounted transformers and related accessories are specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM, and Section 33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION.

2.2 THREE-PHASE PAD-MOUNTED TRANSFORMERS

IEEE C57.12.34, IEEE C57.12.28 and as specified herein. Submit manufacturer's information for each component, device, insulating fluid, and accessory provided with the transformer.

2.2.1 Compartments

Provide high- and low-voltage compartments separated by steel isolating barriers extending the full height and depth of the compartments. Compartment doors: hinged lift-off type with stop in open position and three-point latching.

2.2.1.1 High Voltage, Dead-Front

High-voltage compartment contains: the incoming line, insulated high-voltage load-break connectors, bushing well inserts, six high-voltage bushing wells configured for loop feed application, load-break switch handle(s), dead-front surge arresters, tap changer handle, connector parking stands and ground pad.

- a. Insulated high-voltage load-break connectors: IEEE 386, rated 15 kV, 95 kV BIL. Current rating: 200 amperes rms continuous. Short time rating: 10,000 amperes rms symmetrical for a time duration of 0.17 seconds. Connector must have a steel reinforced hook-stick eye, grounding eye, test point, and arc-quenching contact material.

- b. Bushing well inserts: **IEEE 386**, 200 amperes, 15 kV Class. Provide a bushing well insert for each bushing well unless indicated otherwise. Provide feed-thru inserts as indicated.
- c. One-piece bushings: **IEEE 386**, 200 amperes, 15 kV Class.
- d. Load-break switch

Loop feed sectionalizer switches: Provide three, two-position, oil-immersed type switches to permit closed transition loop feed and sectionalizing. Each switch must be rated at 15 kV, 95 kV BIL, with a continuous current rating and load-break rating of 200 amperes, and a make-and-latch rating of 12,000 rms amperes symmetrical. Locate the switch handles in the high-voltage compartment. Operation of switches must be as follows:

ARRANGEMENT NO.	DESCRIPTION OF SWITCH ARRANGEMENT	SWITCH POSITION					
		LINE A SW.		LINE B SW		XFMR. SW	
		OPEN	CLOSE	OPEN	CLOSE	OPEN	CLOSE
1	Line A connected to Line B and both lines connected to transformer		X		X		X
2	Transformer connected to Line A only		X	X			X
3	Transformer connected to Line B only	X			X		X
4	Transformer open and loop closed		X		X	X	
5	Transformer open and loop open	X		X		X	

- e. Provide bayonet oil-immersed, expulsion fuses in series with oil-immersed, partial-range, current-limiting fuses. The bayonet fuse links sense both high currents and high oil temperature in order to provide thermal protection to the transformer. Coordinate transformer protection with expulsion fuse clearing low-current faults and current-limiting fuse clearing high-current faults beyond the interrupting rating of the expulsion fuse. Include an oil retention valve inside the bayonet assembly housing, which closes when the fuse holder is removed, and an external drip shield to minimize oil spills. Display a warning label adjacent to the bayonet fuse(s) cautioning against removing or inserting fuses unless the transformer has been de-energized and the tank pressure has been released.

Bayonet fuse assembly: 150 kV BIL.

Oil-immersed current-limiting fuses: **IEEE C37.47**; 50,000 rms amperes

symmetrical interrupting rating at the system voltage specified.

- f. Surge arresters: **IEEE C62.11**, rated 15 kV, fully shielded, dead-front, metal-oxide-varistor, elbow type with resistance-graded gap. Provide six arresters for loop feed circuits.
- g. Parking stands: Provide a parking stand near each bushing.
- h. Protective caps: **IEEE 386**, 200 amperes, 15 kV Class. Provide insulated protective caps (not shipping caps) for insulating and sealing out moisture from unused bushings.

2.2.1.2 High Voltage, Live-Front

High-voltage compartment contains: the incoming line, transformer high-voltage bushings, load-break switch handle(s), access to oil-immersed bayonet fuses, surge arresters, tap changer handle, insulated phase barriers, and ground pad.

- a. Cable terminators: Provide as specified in Section **33 71 02** UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION.
- b. Load-break switch

Loop feed sectionalizer switches: Provide three, two-position, oil-immersed type switches to permit closed transition loop feed and sectionalizing. Each switch must be rated at 15 kV, 95 kV BIL, with a continuous current rating and load-break rating of 200 amperes, and a make-and-latch rating of 12,000 rms amperes symmetrical. Locate the switch handles in the high-voltage compartment. Operation of switches must be as follows:

ARRANGEMENT NO.	DESCRIPTION OF SWITCH ARRANGEMENT	SWITCH POSITION					
		LINE A SW.		LINE B SW		XFMR. SW	
		OPEN	CLOSE	OPEN	CLOSE	OPEN	CLOSE
1	Line A connected to Line B and both lines connected to transformer		X		X		X
2	Transformer connected to Line A only		X	X			X
3	Transformer connected to Line B only	X			X		X
4	Transformer open and loop closed		X		X	X	
5	Transformer open and loop open	X		X		X	

- c. Provide bayonet oil-immersed, expulsion fuses in series with

oil-immersed, partial-range, current-limiting fuses. The bayonet fuse links sense both high currents and high oil temperature in order to provide thermal protection to the transformer. Coordinate transformer protection with expulsion fuse clearing low-current faults and current-limiting fuse clearing high-current faults beyond the interrupting rating of the expulsion fuse. Include an oil retention valve inside the bayonet assembly housing, which closes when the fuse holder is removed, and an external drip shield to minimize oil spills. Display a warning label adjacent to the bayonet fuse(s) cautioning against removing or inserting fuses unless the transformer has been de-energized and the tank pressure has been released.

Bayonet fuse assembly: 150 kV BIL.

Oil-immersed current-limiting fuses: **IEEE C37.47**; 50,000 rms amperes symmetrical interrupting rating at the system voltage specified.

- d. Surge arresters: **IEEE C62.11**, rated 15 kV. Provide six arresters for loop feed circuits.
- e. Insulated phase barriers: **NEMA LI 1**, Type GPO-3, **0.25 inch** minimum thickness. Provide vertical barriers between the high-voltage bushings and a single horizontal barrier above the high-voltage bushings.

2.2.1.3 Low Voltage

Low-voltage compartment contains: low-voltage bushings with NEMA spade terminals, accessories, metering, stainless steel or laser-etched anodized aluminum diagrammatic transformer nameplate, and ground pad.

- a. Include the following accessories: drain valve with sampler device, fill plug, pressure relief device, liquid level gage, pressure-vacuum gage, and dial type thermometer with maximum temperature indicator.
- b. Metering: **NEMA/ANSI C12.10**. Provide a socket-mounted electronic programmable outdoor watthour meter, surface mounted flush against the side of the low-voltage compartment as indicated. Program the meter at the factory or in the field. When field programming is performed, turn field programming device over to the Contracting Officer at completion of project. Coordinate the meter to system requirements.
 - (1) Design: Provide meter designed for use on a 3-phase, 4-wire, 480Y/277 volt system with 3 current transformers. Include necessary KYZ pulse initiation hardware for Energy Monitoring and Control System (EMCS).
 - (2) Coordination: Provide meter coordinated with ratios of current transformers and transformer secondary voltage.
 - (3) Class: 20; Form: 9S; Accuracy: plus or minus 1.0 percent; Finish: Class II
 - (4) Cover: Polycarbonate and lockable to prevent tampering and unauthorized removal.
 - (5) Kilowatt-hour Register: five digit electronic programmable type
 - (6) Demand Register:

- (a) Provide solid state
- (b) Meter reading multiplier: Indicate multiplier on the meter face.
- (c) Demand interval length: programmed for 15 minutes with rolling demand up to six subintervals per interval.
- (7) Meter fusing: Provide a fuse block mounted in the secondary compartment containing one fuse per phase to protect the voltage input to the watthour meter. Size fuses as recommended by the meter manufacturer.
- (8) Socket: **ANSI C12.7**. Provide NEMA Type 3R, box-mounted socket having automatic circuit-closing bypass and having jaws compatible with requirements of the meter. Cover unused hub openings with blank hub plates. Paint box to match the pad-mounted transformer to which the box-mounted socket is attached.
- (9) Current transformers: **IEEE C57.13**. Provide butyl-molded window type current transformers with 600-volt insulation, 10 kV BIL and mount on the low-voltage bushings. Route current transformer leads in a location as remote as possible from the power transformer secondary cables to permit current measurements to be taken with hook-on-ammeters. Provide three current transformers per power transformer with characteristics listed in the following table.

	VOLTS					
	480			600		
500	600/5,	3.0	0.3 thru B-0.5	400/5	4.0	0.3 thru B-0.2

2.2.2 Transformer

- a. Less-flammable bio-based liquid-insulated, two winding, 60 hertz, 65 degrees C rise above a 30 degrees C average ambient, self-cooled type.
- b. Transformer rated 500 kVA.
- c. Transformer voltage ratings: **12.47K V Delta Primary - 480Y/277 V GrdY Secondary**.
- d. Tap changer: externally operated, manual type for changing tap setting when the transformer is de-energized. Provide four 2.5 percent full capacity taps, two above and two below rated primary voltage. Indicate which tap setting is in use, clearly visible when the compartment is opened.
- e. Minimum tested percent impedance at 85 degrees C:
4.03 for 500kVA rated units
- f. Comply with the following audible sound level limits:

<u>kVA</u>	<u>DECIBELS</u> (MAX)
500	56

g. Include:

- (1) Lifting lugs and provisions for jacking under base, with base construction suitable for using rollers or skidding in any direction.
- (3) Provide transformer top with an access handhole.
- (4) kVA rating conspicuously displayed using 3 inch high yellow letters on its enclosure.

2.2.2.1 Specified Transformer Efficiencies

Provide transformer efficiency calculations utilizing the actual no-load and load loss values obtained during the routine tests performed on the actual transformer(s) prepared for this project. Reference no-load losses (NLL) at 20 degrees C. Reference load losses (LL) at 55 degrees C and at 50 percent of the nameplate load. The transformer is not acceptable if the calculated transformer efficiency is less than the efficiency indicated in the "KVA / Efficiency" table below. The table is based on requirements contained within 10 CFR 431, Subpart K. Submit certification, including supporting calculations, from the manufacturer indicating conformance.

<u>kVA</u>	<u>EFFICIENCY</u> (percent)
500	99.35

2.2.3 Insulating Liquid

- a. Less-flammable transformer liquids: NFPA 70 and FM APP GUIDE for less-flammable liquids having a fire point not less than 300 degrees C tested per ASTM D92 and a dielectric strength not less than 33 kV tested per ASTM D877/D877M. Provide identification of transformer as "non-PCB" and "manufacturer's name and type of fluid" on the nameplate.

Provide a fluid that is a biodegradable, electrical insulating, and cooling liquid classified by UL and approved by FM as "less flammable" with the following properties:

- (1) Pour point: ASTM D97, less than -15 degree C
- (2) Aquatic biodegradation: EPA 712-C-98-075, ultimately biodegradable as designated by EPA.
- (3) Trout toxicity: OECD Test 203, zero mortality of EPA 821-R-02-012, pass

2.2.3.1 Liquid-Filled Transformer Nameplates

Provide nameplate information in accordance with IEEE C57.12.00 and as modified or supplemented by this section.

2.2.4 Corrosion Protection

Provide corrosion resistant bases and cabinets of transformers, fabricated of stainless steel conforming to ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304 or 304L. Base includes any part of pad-mounted transformer that is within 3 inches of concrete pad.

Paint entire transformer assembly Munsell 5BG7.0/0.4 sky gray (ANSI 70), with paint coating system complying with IEEE C57.12.28 and IEEE C57.12.29 regardless of base, cabinet, and tank material. The Munsell color notation is specified in ASTM D1535.

2.3 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

Provide warning signs for the enclosures of pad-mounted transformers having a nominal rating exceeding 600 volts in accordance with NEMA Z535.4 and NEMA 260.

- a. When the enclosure integrity of such equipment is specified to be in accordance with IEEE C57.12.28, such as for pad-mounted transformers, provide self-adhesive warning labels on the outside of the high voltage compartment door(s) with nominal dimensions of 7 by 10 inches with the legend "WARNING HIGH VOLTAGE" printed in two lines of nominal 2 inch high letters. Include the word "WARNING" in white letters on an orange background and the words "HIGH VOLTAGE" in black letters on a white background.

2.4 ARC FLASH WARNING LABEL

Provide arc flash warning label for the enclosure of pad-mounted transformers. Locate this self-adhesive warning label on the outside of the high voltage compartment door warning of potential electrical arc flash hazards and appropriate PPE required. Provide label format as indicated.

2.5 GROUNDING AND BONDING

UL 467. Provide grounding and bonding as specified in Section 33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION.

2.6 PADLOCKS

Provide padlocks for pad-mounted equipment, keyed as directed by the Contracting Officer. Comply with Section 08 71 00 DOOR HARDWARE.

2.7 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

Provide concrete associated with electrical work for other than encasement of underground ducts rated for 4000 psi minimum 28-day compressive strength unless specified otherwise. Conform to the requirements of Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

2.8.1 Transformer Test Schedule

The Government reserves the right to witness tests. Provide transformer test schedule for tests to be performed at the manufacturer's test facility. Submit required test schedule and location, and notify the Contracting Officer 30 calendar days before scheduled test date. Notify Contracting Officer 15 calendar days in advance of changes to scheduled date.

a. Test Instrument Calibration

- (1) Provide a calibration program which assures that all applicable test instruments are maintained within rated accuracy.
- (2) Accuracy: Traceable to the National Institute of Standards and Technology.
- (3) Instrument calibration frequency schedule: less than or equal to 12 months for both test floor instruments and leased specialty equipment.
- (4) Dated calibration labels: visible on all test equipment.
- (5) Calibrating standard: higher accuracy than that of the instrument tested.
- (6) Keep up-to-date records that indicate dates and test results of instruments calibrated or tested. For instruments calibrated by the manufacturer on a routine basis, in lieu of third party calibration, include the following:
 - (a) Maintain up-to-date instrument calibration instructions and procedures for each test instrument.
 - (b) Identify the third party/laboratory calibrated instrument to verify that calibrating standard is met.

2.8.2 Design Tests

IEEE C57.12.00, and IEEE C57.12.90. Section 5.1.2 in IEEE C57.12.80 states that "design tests are made only on representative apparatus of basically the same design." Submit design test reports (complete with test data, explanations, formulas, and results), in the same submittal package as the catalog data and drawings for the specified transformer(s), with design tests performed prior to the award of this contract.

- a. Tests: certified and signed by a registered professional engineer.
- b. Temperature rise: "Basically the same design" for the temperature rise test means a pad-mounted transformer with the same coil construction (such as wire wound primary and sheet wound secondary), the same kVA, the same cooling type (KNAN), the same temperature rise rating, and the same insulating liquid as the transformer specified.
- c. Lightning impulse: "Basically the same design" for the lightning impulse dielectric test means a pad-mounted transformer with the same BIL, the same coil construction (such as wire wound primary and sheet

wound secondary), and a tap changer, if specified. Design lightning impulse tests includes the primary windings only of that transformer.

- (1) IEEE C57.12.90, paragraph 10.3 entitled "Lightning Impulse Test Procedures," and IEEE C57.98.
 - (2) State test voltage levels.
 - (3) Provide photographs of oscilloscope display waveforms or plots of digitized waveforms with test report.
- d. Lifting and moving devices: "Basically the same design" requirement for the lifting and moving devices test means a test report confirming that the lifting device being used is capable of handling the weight of the specified transformer in accordance with IEEE C57.12.34.
 - e. Pressure: "Basically the same design" for the pressure test means a pad-mounted transformer with a tank volume within 30 percent of the tank volume of the transformer specified.
 - f. Short circuit: "Basically the same design" for the short circuit test means a pad-mounted transformer with the same kVA as the transformer specified.

2.8.3 Routine and Other Tests

IEEE C57.12.00. Routine and other tests: performed in accordance with IEEE C57.12.90 by the manufacturer on the actual transformer(s) prepared for this project to ensure that the design performance is maintained in production. Submit test reports, by serial number and receive approval before delivery of equipment to the project site. Required tests and testing sequence as follows:

- a. Phase relation
- b. Ratio
- c. No-load losses (NLL) and excitation current
- d. Load losses (LL) and impedance voltage
- e. Dielectric
 - (1) Impulse
 - (2) Applied voltage
 - (3) Induced voltage
- f. Leak

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Conform to IEEE C2, NFPA 70, and to the requirements specified herein. Provide new equipment and materials unless indicated or specified otherwise.

3.2 GROUNDING

NFPA 70 and IEEE C2, except provide grounding systems with a resistance to solid earth ground not exceeding 25 ohms.

3.2.1 Grounding Electrodes

Provide driven ground rods as specified in Section 33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION. Connect ground conductors to the upper end of ground rods by exothermic weld or compression connector. Provide compression connectors at equipment end of ground conductors.

3.2.2 Pad-Mounted Transformer Grounding

Provide a ground ring around the transformer with 4/0 AWG bare copper. Provide four ground rods in the ground ring, one per corner. Install the ground rods at least 10 feet apart from each other. Provide separate copper grounding conductors and connect them to the ground loop as indicated. When work in addition to that indicated or specified is required to obtain the specified ground resistance, the provision of the contract covering "Changes" applies.

3.2.3 Connections

Make joints in grounding conductors and loops by exothermic weld or compression connector. Install exothermic welds and compression connectors as specified in Section 33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION.

3.2.4 Grounding and Bonding Equipment

UL 467, except as indicated or specified otherwise.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT AND ASSEMBLIES

Install and connect pad-mounted transformers furnished under this section as indicated on project drawings, the approved shop drawings, and as specified herein.

3.3.1 Meters and Current Transformers

ANSI C12.1.

3.4 FIELD APPLIED PAINTING

Where field painting of enclosures is required to correct damage to the manufacturer's factory applied coatings, provide manufacturer's recommended coatings and apply in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.5 FOUNDATION FOR EQUIPMENT AND ASSEMBLIES

Mount transformer on concrete slab as follows:

- a. Unless otherwise indicated, provide the slab with dimensions at least 8 inches thick, reinforced with a 6 by 6 inches - W2.9 by W2.9 mesh placed uniformly 4 inches from the top of the slab.
- b. Place slab on a 6 inch thick, well-compacted gravel base.
- c. Install slab such that top of concrete slab is approximately 4 inches

above the finished grade with gradual slope for drainage.

- d. Provide edges above grade with 1/2 inch chamfer.
- e. Provide slab of adequate size to project at least 8 inches beyond the equipment.

Stub up conduits, with bushings, 2 inches into cable wells in the concrete pad. Coordinate dimensions of cable wells with transformer cable training areas.

3.5.1 Cast-In-Place Concrete

Provide cast-in-place concrete work in accordance with the requirements of Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.

3.5.2 Sealing

When the installation is complete, seal all entries into the equipment enclosure with an approved sealing method. Provide seals of sufficient strength and durability to protect all energized live parts of the equipment from rodents, insects, or other foreign matter.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.6.1 Performance of Acceptance Checks and Tests

Perform in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and include the following visual and mechanical inspections and electrical tests, performed in accordance with NETA ATS. Submit reports, including acceptance criteria and limits for each test in accordance with NETA ATS "Test Values".

3.6.1.1 Pad-Mounted Transformers

- a. Visual and mechanical inspection
 - (1) Compare equipment nameplate data with specifications and approved shop drawings.
 - (2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Check for damaged or cracked insulators and leaks.
 - (3) Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
 - (4) Verify the presence of PCB content labeling.
 - (5) Verify the bushings and transformer interiors are clean.
 - (6) Inspect all bolted electrical connections for high resistance using low-resistance ohmmeter, verifying tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method, or performing thermographic survey.
 - (7) Verify correct liquid level in tanks and bushings.
 - (8) Verify that positive pressure is maintained on gas-blanketed transformers.

- (9) Perform specific inspections and mechanical tests as recommended by manufacturer.
- (10) Verify de-energized tap changer position is left as specified.
- (11) Verify the presence of transformer surge arresters.

b. Electrical tests

- (1) Perform resistance measurements through all bolted connections with low-resistance ohmmeter.
- (2) Verify proper secondary voltage phase-to-phase and phase-to-neutral after energization and prior to loading.

3.6.1.2 Current Transformers

a. Visual and mechanical inspection

- (1) Compare equipment nameplate data with specifications and approved shop drawings.
- (2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
- (3) Verify correct connection.
- (4) Verify that adequate clearances exist between primary and secondary circuit wiring.
- (5) Verify the unit is clean.
- (6) Inspect all bolted electrical connections for high resistance using low-resistance ohmmeter, verifying tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method, or performing thermographic survey.
- (7) Verify that all required grounding and shorting connections provide good contact.
- (8) Verify correct operation of transformer withdrawal mechanism and grounding operation.
- (9) Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.

b. Electrical tests

- (1) Perform resistance measurements through all bolted connections with low-resistance ohmmeter, if applicable.
- (2) Perform insulation-resistance test.
- (3) Perform a polarity test.
- (4) Perform a ratio-verification test.

3.6.1.3 Watthour Meter

a. Visual and mechanical inspection

- (1) Compare equipment nameplate data with specifications and approved shop drawings.
- (2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
- (3) Verify tightness of electrical connections.

b. Electrical tests

- (1) Calibrate watt-hour meters according to manufacturer's published data.
- (2) Verify that correct multiplier has been placed on face of meter, where applicable.
- (3) Verify that current transformer secondary circuits are intact.

3.6.1.4 Grounding System

a. Visual and mechanical inspection

- (1) Inspect ground system for compliance with contract plans and specifications.

b. Electrical tests

- (1) Perform ground-impedance measurements utilizing the fall-of-potential method. On systems consisting of interconnected ground rods, perform tests after interconnections are complete. On systems consisting of a single ground rod perform tests before any wire is connected. Take measurements in normally dry weather, not less than 48 hours after rainfall. Use a portable ground resistance tester in accordance with manufacturer's instructions to test each ground or group of grounds. Use an instrument equipped with a meter reading directly in ohms or fractions thereof to indicate the ground value of the ground rod or grounding systems under test.
- (2) Submit the measured ground resistance of each ground rod and grounding system, indicating the location of the rod and grounding system. Include the test method and test setup (i.e., pin location) used to determine ground resistance and soil conditions at the time the measurements were made.

3.6.1.5 Surge Arresters, Medium- and High-Voltage

a. Visual and mechanical inspection

- (1) Compare equipment nameplate data with specifications and approved shop drawings.
- (2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
- (3) Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
- (4) Verify the arresters are clean.
- (5) Inspect all bolted electrical connections for high resistance

using low-resistance ohmmeter, verifying tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method, or performing thermographic survey.

- (6) Verify that the ground lead on each device is individually attached to a ground bus or ground electrode.

b. Electrical tests

- (1) Perform resistance measurements through all bolted connections with low-resistance ohmmeter, if applicable.
- (2) Perform an insulation-resistance test on each arrester, phase terminal-to-ground.
- (3) Test grounding connection.

3.6.2 Follow-Up Verification

Upon completion of acceptance checks and tests, show by demonstration in service that circuits and devices are in good operating condition and properly performing the intended function. As an exception to requirements stated elsewhere in the contract, notify the Contracting Officer 5 working days in advance of the dates and times of checking and testing.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 26 20 00

INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

02/14

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI C12.1 (2008) Electric Meters Code for
Electricity Metering

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM B1 (2013) Standard Specification for
Hard-Drawn Copper Wire

ASTM B8 (2011; R 2017) Standard Specification for
Concentric-Lay-Stranded Copper Conductors,
Hard, Medium-Hard, or Soft

ASTM D709 (2017) Standard Specification for
Laminated Thermosetting Materials

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 100 (2000; Archived) The Authoritative
Dictionary of IEEE Standards Terms

IEEE 81 (2012) Guide for Measuring Earth
Resistivity, Ground Impedance, and Earth
Surface Potentials of a Ground System

IEEE C2 (2017; Errata 1-2 2017; INT 1 2017)
National Electrical Safety Code

INTERNATIONAL ELECTRICAL TESTING ASSOCIATION (NETA)

NETA ATS (2017; Errata 2017) Standard for
Acceptance Testing Specifications for
Electrical Power Equipment and Systems

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

ANSI C80.3 (2015) American National Standard for
Electrical Metallic Tubing (EMT)

ANSI C80.5 (2015) American National Standard for
Electrical Rigid Aluminum Conduit

NEMA 250 (2014) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment
(1000 Volts Maximum)

NEMA ICS 1	(2000; R 2015) Standard for Industrial Control and Systems: General Requirements
NEMA ICS 2	(2000; R 2005; Errata 2008) Industrial Control and Systems Controllers, Contactors, and Overload Relays Rated 600 V
NEMA ICS 4	(2015) Application Guideline for Terminal Blocks
NEMA ICS 6	(1993; R 2016) Industrial Control and Systems: Enclosures
NEMA KS 1	(2013) Enclosed and Miscellaneous Distribution Equipment Switches (600 V Maximum)
NEMA MG 1	(2016; SUPP 2016) Motors and Generators
NEMA MG 10	(2017) Energy Management Guide for Selection and Use of Fixed Frequency Medium AC Squirrel-Cage Polyphase Induction Motors
NEMA MG 11	(1977; R 2012) Energy Management Guide for Selection and Use of Single Phase Motors
NEMA ST 20	(1992; R 1997) Standard for Dry-Type Transformers for General Applications
NEMA TC 2	(2013) Standard for Electrical Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Conduit
NEMA TC 3	(2016) Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Fittings for Use With Rigid PVC Conduit and Tubing
NEMA TP 1	(2002) Guide for Determining Energy Efficiency for Distribution Transformers
NEMA VE 1	(2017) Metal Cable Tray Systems
NEMA WD 1	(1999; R 2015) Standard for General Color Requirements for Wiring Devices
NEMA WD 6	(2016) Wiring Devices Dimensions Specifications
NEMA Z535.4	(2011; R 2017) Product Safety Signs and Labels

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70	(2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2; TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6; TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10; TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA 17-14; TIA 17-15; TIA 17-16; TIA 17-17) National Electrical Code

NFPA 70E (2018; TIA 18-1; TIA 81-2) Standard for
Electrical Safety in the Workplace

NFPA 780 (2017) Standard for the Installation of
Lightning Protection Systems

TELECOMMUNICATIONS INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION (TIA)

TIA-568-C.1 (2009; Add 2 2011; Add 1 2012) Commercial
Building Telecommunications Cabling
Standard

TIA-569 (2015d) Commercial Building Standard for
Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces

TIA-607 (2011b) Generic Telecommunications Bonding
and Grounding (Earthing) for Customer
Premises

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR 1910.147 The Control of Hazardous Energy (Lock
Out/Tag Out)

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 1 (2005; Reprint Aug 2017) UL Standard for
Safety Flexible Metal Conduit

UL 1063 (2017) UL Standard for Safety Machine-Tool
Wires and Cables

UL 1242 (2006; Reprint Mar 2014) Standard for
Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit --
Steel

UL 1449 (2014; Reprint Jul 2017) UL Standard for
Safety Surge Protective Devices

UL 1699 (2017) UL Standard for Safety Arc-Fault
Circuit-Interrupters

UL 20 (2010; Reprint Feb 2012) General-Use Snap
Switches

UL 360 (2013; Reprint May 2018) UL Standard for
Safety Liquid-Tight Flexible Metal Conduit

UL 44 (2018) UL Standard for Safety
Thermoset-Insulated Wires and Cables

UL 467 (2013; Reprint Jun 2017) UL Standard for
Safety Grounding and Bonding Equipment

UL 486A-486B (2018) UL Standard for Safety Wire
Connectors

UL 486C (2018) UL Standard for Safety Splicing

Wire Connectors

UL 489	(2016) UL Standard for Safety Molded-Case Circuit Breakers, Molded-Case Switches and Circuit-Breaker Enclosures
UL 498	(2017; Reprint Nov 2017) UL Standard for Safety Attachment Plugs and Receptacles
UL 50	(2015) UL Standard for Safety Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Non-Environmental Considerations
UL 506	(2017) UL Standard for Safety Specialty Transformers
UL 508	(2018) UL Standard for Safety Industrial Control Equipment
UL 510	(2017) UL Standard for Safety Polyvinyl Chloride, Polyethylene and Rubber Insulating Tape
UL 514A	(2013; Reprint Aug 2017) UL Standard for Safety Metallic Outlet Boxes
UL 514B	(2012; Reprint Nov 2014) Conduit, Tubing and Cable Fittings
UL 514C	(2014; Reprint Dec 2014) Nonmetallic Outlet Boxes, Flush-Device Boxes, and Covers
UL 651	(2011; Reprint Jun 2016) UL Standard for Safety Schedule 40 and 80 Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings
UL 67	(2018) UL Standard for Safety Panelboards
UL 6A	(2008; Reprint Nov 2014) Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit - Aluminum, Red Brass, and Stainless Steel
UL 797	(2007; Reprint Mar 2017) UL Standard for Safety Electrical Metallic Tubing -- Steel
UL 83	(2017) UL Standard for Safety Thermoplastic-Insulated Wires and Cables
UL 854	(2004; Reprint Nov 2014) Standard for Service-Entrance Cables
UL 869A	(2006) Reference Standard for Service Equipment
UL 870	(2016) UL Standard for Safety Wireways, Auxiliary Gutters, and Associated Fittings
UL 943	(2016; Reprint Feb 2018) UL Standard for

Safety Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupters

UL 984

(1996; Reprint Sep 2005) Hermetic
Refrigerant Motor-Compressors

1.2 DEFINITIONS

Unless otherwise specified or indicated, electrical and electronics terms used in these specifications, and on the drawings, are as defined in IEEE 100.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00.

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Panelboards; G

Transformers; G

Cable trays; G

Wireways; G

Marking strips drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Receptacles; G

Circuit breakers; G

Switches; G

Transformers; G

Enclosed circuit breakers; G

Motor controllers; G

Telecommunications Grounding Busbar; G

Surge protective devices; G

Include performance and characteristic curves.

SD-06 Test Reports

600-volt wiring test; G

Grounding system test; G

Transformer tests; G

Ground-fault receptacle test; G

SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Reports

Transformer factory tests

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Electrical Systems, Data Package 5; G

Submit operation and maintenance data in accordance with Section
01 78 23, OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA and as specified herein.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4.1 Regulatory Requirements

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "shall" or "must" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction," or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer. Provide equipment, materials, installation, and workmanship in accordance with the mandatory and advisory provisions of NFPA 70 unless more stringent requirements are specified or indicated.

1.4.2 Standard Products

Provide materials and equipment that are products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of such products which are of equal material, design and workmanship and:

- a. Have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening including applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size.
- b. Have been on sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2-year period.
- c. Where two or more items of the same class of equipment are required, provide products of a single manufacturer; however, the component parts of the item need not be the products of the same manufacturer unless stated in this section.

1.4.2.1 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a 2-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturers' factory or laboratory tests, is furnished.

1.4.2.2 Material and Equipment Manufacturing Date

Products manufactured more than 3 years prior to date of delivery to site are not acceptable.

1.5 MAINTENANCE

1.5.1 Electrical Systems

Submit operation and maintenance manuals for electrical systems that provide basic data relating to the design, operation, and maintenance of the electrical distribution system for the building. Include the following:

- a. Single line diagram of the "as-built" building electrical system.
- b. Schematic diagram of electrical control system (other than HVAC, covered elsewhere).
- c. Manufacturers' operating and maintenance manuals on active electrical equipment.

1.6 WARRANTY

Provide equipment items supported by service organizations that are reasonably convenient to the equipment installation in order to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

As a minimum, meet requirements of UL, where UL standards are established for those items, and requirements of NFPA 70 for all materials, equipment, and devices.

2.2 CONDUIT AND FITTINGS

Conform to the following:

2.2.1 Rigid Metallic Conduit

2.2.1.1 Rigid Aluminum Conduit

ANSI C80.5, UL 6A.

2.2.2 Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit

PVC Type EPC-40 in accordance with NEMA TC 2, UL 651.

2.2.3 Intermediate Metal Conduit (IMC)

UL 1242, zinc-coated steel only.

2.2.4 Electrical, Zinc-Coated Steel Metallic Tubing (EMT)

UL 797, ANSI C80.3.

2.2.5 Flexible Metal Conduit

UL 1.

2.2.5.1 Liquid-Tight Flexible Metal Conduit, Steel

UL 360.

2.2.6 Fittings for Metal Conduit, EMT, and Flexible Metal Conduit

UL 514B. Ferrous fittings: cadmium- or zinc-coated in accordance with
UL 514B.

2.2.6.1 Fittings for Rigid Metal Conduit and IMC

Threaded-type. Split couplings unacceptable.

2.2.6.2 Fittings for EMT

Steel.

2.2.7 Fittings for Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit

NEMA TC 3 for PVC, and UL 514B.

2.3 CABLE TRAYS

NEMA VE 1. Provide the following:

- a. Cable trays: form a wireway system, with a nominal depth as indicated.
- b. Cable trays: constructed of steel that has been zinc-coated after fabrication.
- c. Cable trays: include splice and end plates, dropouts, and miscellaneous hardware.
- d. Edges, fittings, and hardware: finished free from burrs and sharp edges.
- e. Fittings: ensure not less than load-carrying ability of straight tray sections and have manufacturer's minimum standard radius.

Radius of bends: as indicated.

2.3.1 Basket-Type Cable Trays

Provide size as indicated with maximum wire mesh spacing of 2 by 4 inch.

2.4 OUTLET BOXES AND COVERS

UL 514A, cadmium- or zinc-coated, if ferrous metal. UL 514C, if nonmetallic.

2.4.1 Floor Outlet Boxes

Provide the following:

- a. Boxes: nonadjustable and concrete tight.
- b. Each outlet: consisting of nonmetallic or cast-metal body with threaded openings, for conduits, brass flange ring, and cover plate.

- c. Telecommunications outlets: Refer to specification section 27 10 00 BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEM, Subpart 2.3.
- d. Receptacle outlets: consisting of flush aluminum or stainless steel housing with duplex-type receptacle as specified herein.
- e. Provide gaskets where necessary to ensure watertight installation.

2.4.2 Outlet Boxes for Telecommunications System

Provide the following:

- a. Standard type 5 inches square by 2-7/8 inches deep.
- b. Outlet boxes for wall-mounted telecommunications outlets: 5 inches square by 2-7/8 inches deep.
- c. Depth of boxes: large enough to allow manufacturers' recommended conductor bend radii.

2.4.3 Clock Outlet for Use in Other Than Wired Clock System

Provide the following:

- a. Outlet box with plastic cover, where required, and single receptacle with clock outlet plate.
- b. Receptacle: recessed sufficiently within box to allow complete insertion of standard cap, flush with plate.
- c. Suitable clip or support for hanging clock: secured to top plate.
- d. Material and finish of plate: as specified in paragraph DEVICE PLATES of this section.

2.5 CABINETS, JUNCTION BOXES, AND PULL BOXES

Volume greater than 100 cubic inches, UL 50, hot-dip, zinc-coated, if sheet steel.

2.6 WIRES AND CABLES

Provide wires and cables in accordance applicable requirements of NFPA 70 and UL for type of insulation, jacket, and conductor specified or indicated. Do not use wires and cables manufactured more than 12 months prior to date of delivery to site.

2.6.1 Conductors

Provide the following:

- a. Conductor sizes and capacities shown are based on copper.
- b. Conductors No. 8 AWG and larger diameter: stranded.
- c. Conductors No. 10 AWG and smaller diameter: solid.
- d. Conductors for remote control, alarm, and signal circuits, classes 1, 2, and 3: stranded unless specifically indicated otherwise.

2.6.1.1 Minimum Conductor Sizes

Provide minimum conductor size in accordance with the following:

- a. Branch circuits: No. 12 AWG.
- b. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits: No. 14 AWG.
- c. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control and signal circuits: No. 16 AWG.
- d. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm and signal circuits: No. 22 AWG.

2.6.2 Color Coding

Provide color coding for service, feeder, branch, control, and signaling circuit conductors.

2.6.2.1 Ground and Neutral Conductors

Provide color coding of ground and neutral conductors as follows:

- a. Grounding conductors: Green.
- b. Neutral conductors: White.
- c. Exception, where neutrals of more than one system are installed in same raceway or box, other neutrals color coding: white with a different colored (not green) stripe for each.

2.6.2.2 Ungrounded Conductors

Provide color coding of ungrounded conductors in different voltage systems as follows:

- a. 208/120 volt, three-phase
 - (1) Phase A - black
 - (2) Phase B - red
 - (3) Phase C - blue
- b. 480/277 volt, three-phase
 - (1) Phase A - brown
 - (2) Phase B - orange
 - (3) Phase C - yellow

2.6.3 Insulation

Unless specified or indicated otherwise or required by NFPA 70, provide power and lighting wires rated for 600-volts, Type THWN/THHN conforming to UL 83 or Type XHHW conforming to UL 44, except that grounding wire may be type TW conforming to UL 83; remote-control and signal circuits: Type TW or TF, conforming to UL 83. Where lighting fixtures require 90-degree

Centigrade (C) conductors, provide only conductors with 90-degree C insulation or better.

2.6.4 Bonding Conductors

ASTM B1, solid bare copper wire for sizes No. 8 AWG and smaller diameter; ASTM B8, Class B, stranded bare copper wire for sizes No. 6 AWG and larger diameter.

2.6.4.1 Telecommunications Bonding Backbone (TBB)

Provide a copper conductor TBB in accordance with TIA-607 with No. 6 AWG minimum size, and sized at 2 kcmil per linear foot of conductor length up to a maximum size of 3/0 AWG. Provide insulated TBB with insulation as specified in the paragraph INSULATION and meeting the fire ratings of its pathway.

2.6.4.2 Bonding Conductor for Telecommunications

Provide a copper conductor Bonding Conductor for Telecommunications between the telecommunications main grounding busbar (TMGB) and the electrical service ground in accordance with TIA-607. Size the bonding conductor for telecommunications the same as the TBB.

2.6.5 Service Entrance Cables

Service Entrance (SE) and Underground Service Entrance (USE) Cables, UL 854.

2.6.6 Cable Tray Cable or Power Limited Tray Cable

UL listed; type TC or PLTC.

2.7 SPLICES AND TERMINATION COMPONENTS

UL 486A-486B for wire connectors and UL 510 for insulating tapes. Connectors for No. 10 AWG and smaller diameter wires: insulated, pressure-type in accordance with UL 486A-486B or UL 486C (twist-on splicing connector). Provide solderless terminal lugs on stranded conductors.

2.8 DEVICE PLATES

Provide the following:

- a. UL listed, one-piece device plates for outlets to suit the devices installed.
- b. For metal outlet boxes, plates on unfinished walls: zinc-coated sheet steel or cast metal having round or beveled edges.
- c. For nonmetallic boxes and fittings, other suitable plates may be provided.
- d. Plates on finished walls: nylon or lexan, minimum 0.03 inch wall thickness and same color as receptacle or toggle switch with which they are mounted.
- e. Screws: machine-type with countersunk heads in color to match finish of plate.

- f. Sectional type device plates are not be permitted.
- g. Plates installed in wet locations: gasketed and UL listed for "wet locations."

2.9 SWITCHES

2.9.1 Toggle Switches

NEMA WD 1, UL 20, single pole, double pole, three-way, and four-way, totally enclosed with bodies of thermoplastic or thermoset plastic and mounting strap with grounding screw. Include the following:

- a. Handles: white thermoplastic.
- b. Wiring terminals: screw-type, side-wired.
- c. Contacts: silver-cadmium and contact arm - one-piece copper alloy.
- d. Switches: rated quiet-type ac only, 120/277 volts, with current rating and number of poles indicated.

2.9.2 Disconnect Switches

NEMA KS 1. Provide heavy duty-type switches where indicated, where switches are rated higher than 240 volts, and for double-throw switches. Utilize Class R fuseholders and fuses for fused switches, unless indicated otherwise. Provide horsepower rated for switches serving as the motor-disconnect means. Provide switches in NEMA 3R , enclosure as indicated per NEMA ICS 6.

2.10 RECEPTACLES

Provide the following:

- a. UL 498, hard use (also designated heavy-duty), grounding-type.
- b. Ratings and configurations: as indicated.
- c. Bodies: white as per NEMA WD 1.
- d. Face and body: thermoplastic supported on a metal mounting strap.
- e. Dimensional requirements: per NEMA WD 6.
- f. Screw-type, side-wired wiring terminals or of the solderless pressure type having suitable conductor-release arrangement.
- g. Grounding pole connected to mounting strap.
- h. The receptacle: containing triple-wipe power contacts and double or triple-wipe ground contacts.

2.10.1 Switched Duplex Receptacles

Provide separate terminals for each ungrounded pole. Top receptacle: switched when installed.

2.10.2 Weatherproof Receptacles

Provide receptacles, UL listed for use in "wet locations". Include cast metal box with gasketed, hinged, lockable and weatherproof while-in-use, polycarbonate, UV resistant/stabilized cover plate.

2.10.3 Ground-Fault Circuit Interrupter Receptacles

UL 943, duplex type for mounting in standard outlet box. Provide device capable of detecting current leak of 6 milliamperes or greater and tripping per requirements of UL 943 for Class A ground-fault circuit interrupter devices. Provide screw-type, side-wired wiring terminals or pre-wired (pigtail) leads.

2.10.4 Special Purpose Receptacles

Receptacles serving A/V racks are special purpose. Provide in ratings indicated. Furnish one matching plug with each receptacle.

2.10.5 Tamper-Resistant Receptacles

Provide duplex receptacle with mechanical sliding shutters that prevent the insertion of small objects into its contact slots.

2.11 PANELBOARDS

Provide panelboards in accordance with the following:

- a. UL 67 and UL 50 having a short-circuit current rating as indicated.
- b. Panelboards for use as service disconnecting means: additionally conform to UL 869A.
- c. Panelboards: circuit breaker-equipped.
- d. Designed such that individual breakers can be removed without disturbing adjacent units or without loosening or removing supplemental insulation supplied as means of obtaining clearances as required by UL.
- e. "Specific breaker placement" is required in panelboards to match the breaker placement indicated in the panelboard schedule on the drawings.
- f. Use of "Subfeed Breakers" is not acceptable unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- g. Main breaker: "separately" mounted "above" or "below" branch breakers.
- h. Where "space only" is indicated, make provisions for future installation of breakers.
- i. Directories: indicate load served by each circuit in panelboard.
- j. Directories: indicate source of service to panelboard (e.g., Panel PA served from Panel MDP).
- l. Type directories and mount in holder behind transparent protective covering.

- m. Panelboards: listed and labeled for their intended use.
- n. Panelboard nameplates: provided in accordance with paragraph FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATES.

2.11.1 Enclosure

Provide panelboard enclosure in accordance with the following:

- a. **UL 50**.
- b. Cabinets mounted outdoors or flush-mounted: hot-dipped galvanized after fabrication.
- c. Cabinets: painted in accordance with paragraph PAINTING.
- d. Outdoor cabinets: NEMA 3R raintight with conduit hubs welded to the cabinet.
- e. Front edges of cabinets: form-flanged or fitted with structural shapes welded or riveted to the sheet steel, for supporting the panelboard front.
- f. All cabinets: fabricated such that no part of any surface on the finished cabinet deviates from a true plane by more than $1/8$ inch.
- g. Holes: provided in the back of indoor surface-mounted cabinets, with outside spacers and inside stiffeners, for mounting the cabinets with a $1/2$ inch clear space between the back of the cabinet and the wall surface.
- h. Flush doors: mounted on hinges that expose only the hinge roll to view when the door is closed.
- i. Each door: fitted with a combined catch and lock, except that doors over 24 inches long provided with a three-point latch having a knob with a T-handle, and a cylinder lock.
- j. Keys: two provided with each lock, with all locks keyed alike.
- k. Finished-head cap screws: provided for mounting the panelboard fronts on the cabinets.

2.11.2 Panelboard Buses

Support bus bars on bases independent of circuit breakers. Design main buses and back pans so that breakers may be changed without machining, drilling, or tapping. Provide isolated neutral bus in each panel for connection of circuit neutral conductors. Provide separate ground bus identified as equipment grounding bus per **UL 67** for connecting grounding conductors; bond to steel cabinet.

2.11.3 Circuit Breakers

UL 489, thermal magnetic-type having a minimum short-circuit current rating equal to the short-circuit current rating of the panelboard in which the circuit breaker will be mounted. Breaker terminals: UL listed as suitable for type of conductor provided. Series rated circuit breakers and plug-in circuit breakers are unacceptable.

2.11.3.1 Multipole Breakers

Provide common trip-type with single operating handle. Design breaker such that overload in one pole automatically causes all poles to open. Maintain phase sequence throughout each panel so that any three adjacent breaker poles are connected to Phases A, B, and C, respectively.

2.11.3.2 Circuit Breaker With Ground-Fault Circuit Interrupter

UL 943 and NFPA 70. Provide with "push-to-test" button, visible indication of tripped condition, and ability to detect and trip on current imbalance of 6 milliamperes or greater per requirements of UL 943 for Class A ground-fault circuit interrupter.

2.11.3.3 Circuit Breakers for HVAC Equipment

Provide circuit breakers for HVAC equipment having motors (group or individual) marked for use with HACR type and UL listed as HACR type.

2.11.3.4 Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupters

UL 489, UL 1699 and NFPA 70. Molded case circuit breakers: rated as indicated. Provide with "push-to-test" button.

2.12 ENCLOSED CIRCUIT BREAKERS

UL 489. Individual molded case circuit breakers with voltage and continuous current ratings, number of poles, overload trip setting, and short circuit current interrupting rating as indicated. Enclosure type as indicated. Provide solid neutral.

2.13 MOTOR SHORT-CIRCUIT PROTECTOR (MSCP)

Motor short-circuit protectors, also called motor circuit protectors (MCPs): UL 508 and UL 489, and provided as shown. Provide MSCPs that consist of an adjustable instantaneous trip circuit breaker used only in conjunction with a combination motor controller which provides coordinated motor branch-circuit overload and short-circuit protection. Rate MSCPs in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 70.

2.14 TRANSFORMERS

Provide transformers in accordance with the following:

- a. NEMA ST 20, general purpose, dry-type, self-cooled, ventilated.
- b. Provide transformers in NEMA 1 enclosure.
- c. Transformer insulation system:
 - (1) 220 degrees C insulation system for transformers 15 kVA and greater, with temperature rise not exceeding 150 degrees C under full-rated load in maximum ambient of 40 degrees C.
- d. Transformer of 150 degrees C temperature rise: capable of carrying continuously 100 percent of nameplate kVA without exceeding insulation rating.

- e. Transformers: quiet type with maximum sound level at least 3 decibels less than NEMA standard level for transformer ratings indicated.

2.14.1 Specified Transformer Efficiency

Transformers, indicated and specified with: 480V primary, 80 degrees C or 115 degrees C temperature rise, kVA ratings of 37.5 to 100 for single phase or 30 to 500 for three phase, energy efficient type. Minimum efficiency, based on factory test results: not be less than NEMA Class 1 efficiency as defined by [NEMA TP 1](#).

2.15 MOTORS

Provide motors in accordance with the following:

- a. Hermetic-type sealed motor compressors: Also comply with [UL 984](#).
- b. Provide the size in terms of [HP](#), or kVA, or full-load current, or a combination of these characteristics, and other characteristics, of each motor as indicated or specified.
- c. Determine specific motor characteristics to ensure provision of correctly sized starters and overload heaters.
- d. Rate motors for operation on 208-volt, 3-phase circuits with a terminal voltage rating of 200 volts, and those for operation on 480-volt, 3-phase circuits with a terminal voltage rating of 460 volts.
- e. Use motors designed to operate at full capacity with voltage variation of plus or minus 10 percent of motor voltage rating.
- f. Unless otherwise indicated, use continuous duty type motors if rated [1 HP](#) and above.
- g. Where fuse protection is specifically recommended by the equipment manufacturer, provide fused switches in lieu of non-fused switches indicated.

2.15.1 High Efficiency Single-Phase Motors

Single-phase fractional-horsepower alternating-current motors: high efficiency types corresponding to the applications listed in [NEMA MG 11](#). In exception, for motor-driven equipment with a minimum seasonal or overall efficiency rating, such as a SEER rating, provide equipment with motor to meet the overall system rating indicated.

2.15.2 Premium Efficiency Polyphase Motors

Select polyphase motors based on high efficiency characteristics relative to typical characteristics and applications as listed in [NEMA MG 10](#). In addition, continuous rated, polyphase squirrel-cage medium induction motors must meet the requirements for premium efficiency electric motors in accordance with [NEMA MG 1](#), including the NEMA full load efficiency ratings. In exception, for motor-driven equipment with a minimum seasonal or overall efficiency rating, such as a SEER rating, provide equipment with motor to meet the overall system rating indicated.

2.15.3 Motor Sizes

Provide size for duty to be performed, not exceeding the full-load nameplate current rating when driven equipment is operated at specified capacity under most severe conditions likely to be encountered. When motor size provided differs from size indicated or specified, make adjustments to wiring, disconnect devices, and branch circuit protection to accommodate equipment actually provided. Provide controllers for motors rated 1-hp and above with electronic phase-voltage monitors designed to protect motors from phase-loss, undervoltage, and overvoltage. Provide protection for motors from immediate restart by a time adjustable restart relay.

2.15.4 Wiring and Conduit

Provide internal wiring for components of packaged equipment as an integral part of the equipment. Provide power wiring and conduit for field-installed equipment, and motor control equipment forming part of motor control centers or switchgear assemblies, the conduit and wiring connecting such centers, assemblies, or other power sources to equipment as specified herein. Power wiring and conduit: conform to the requirements specified herein. Control wiring: provided under, and conform to, the requirements of the section specifying the associated equipment.

2.16 MOTOR CONTROLLERS

Provide motor controllers in accordance with the following:

- a. **UL 508, NEMA ICS 1, and NEMA ICS 2.**
- b. Provide controllers with thermal overload protection in each phase, and one spare normally open auxiliary contact, and one spare normally closed auxiliary contact.
- c. Provide controllers for motors rated 1-hp and above with electronic phase-voltage monitors designed to protect motors from phase-loss, undervoltage, and overvoltage.
- d. Provide protection for motors from immediate restart by a time adjustable restart relay.
- e. When used with pressure, float, or similar automatic-type or maintained-contact switch, provide a hand/off/automatic selector switch with the controller.
- f. Connections to selector switch: wired such that only normal automatic regulatory control devices are bypassed when switch is in "hand" position.
- g. Safety control devices, such as low and high pressure cutouts, high temperature cutouts, and motor overload protective devices: connected in motor control circuit in "hand" and "automatic" positions.
- h. Control circuit connections to hand/off/automatic selector switch or to more than one automatic regulatory control device: made in accordance with indicated or manufacturer's approved wiring diagram.
- i. Provide a disconnecting means, capable of being locked in the open position, for the motor that is located in sight from the motor location and the driven machinery location. As an alternative, provide

a motor controller disconnect, capable of being locked in the open position, to serve as the disconnecting means for the motor if it is in sight from the motor location and the driven machinery location.

- j. Overload protective devices: provide adequate protection to motor windings; be thermal inverse-time-limit type; and include manual reset-type pushbutton on outside of motor controller case.
- k. Cover of combination motor controller and manual switch or circuit breaker: interlocked with operating handle of switch or circuit breaker so that cover cannot be opened unless handle of switch or circuit breaker is in "off" position.
- l. Minimum short circuit withstand rating of combination motor controller: 14kA rms symmetrical amperes.

2.16.1 Control Wiring

Provide control wiring in accordance with the following:

- a. All control wire: stranded tinned copper switchboard wire with 600-volt flame-retardant insulation Type SIS meeting UL 44, or Type MTW meeting UL 1063, and passing the VW-1 flame tests included in those standards.
- b. Hinge wire: Class K stranding.
- c. Current transformer secondary leads: not smaller than No. 10 AWG.
- d. Control wire minimum size: No. 14 AWG.
- e. Power wiring for 480-volt circuits and below: the same type as control wiring with No. 12 AWG minimum size.
- f. Provide wiring and terminal arrangement on the terminal blocks to permit the individual conductors of each external cable to be terminated on adjacent terminal points.

2.16.2 Control Circuit Terminal Blocks

Provide control circuit terminal blocks in accordance with the following:

- a. NEMA ICS 4.
- b. Control circuit terminal blocks for control wiring: molded or fabricated type with barriers, rated not less than 600 volts.
- c. Provide terminals with removable binding, fillister or washer head screw type, or of the stud type with contact and locking nuts.
- d. Terminals: not less than No. 10 in size with sufficient length and space for connecting at least two indented terminals for 10 AWG conductors to each terminal.
- e. Terminal arrangement: subject to the approval of the Contracting Officer with not less than four (4) spare terminals or 10 percent, whichever is greater, provided on each block or group of blocks.
- f. Modular, pull apart, terminal blocks are acceptable provided they are

of the channel or rail-mounted type.

- g. Submit data showing that any proposed alternate will accommodate the specified number of wires, are of adequate current-carrying capacity, and are constructed to assure positive contact between current-carrying parts.

2.16.2.1 Types of Terminal Blocks

- a. Short-Circuiting Type: Short-circuiting type terminal blocks: furnished for all current transformer secondary leads with provision for shorting together all leads from each current transformer without first opening any circuit. Terminal blocks: comply with the requirements of paragraph CONTROL CIRCUIT TERMINAL BLOCKS above.
- b. Load Type: Load terminal blocks rated not less than 600 volts and of adequate capacity: provided for the conductors for NEMA Size 3 and smaller motor controllers and for other power circuits, except those for feeder tap units. Provide terminals of either the stud type with contact nuts and locking nuts or of the removable screw type, having length and space for at least two indented terminals of the size required on the conductors to be terminated. For conductors rated more than 50 amperes, provide screws with hexagonal heads. Conducting parts between connected terminals must have adequate contact surface and cross-section to operate without overheating. Provide each connected terminal with the circuit designation or wire number placed on or near the terminal in permanent contrasting color.

2.16.3 Control Circuits

Control circuits: maximum voltage of 120 volts derived from control transformer in same enclosure. Transformers: conform to [UL 506](#), as applicable. Transformers, other than transformers in bridge circuits: provide primaries wound for voltage available and secondaries wound for correct control circuit voltage. Size transformers so that 80 percent of rated capacity equals connected load. Provide disconnect switch on primary side. Provide fuses in each ungrounded primary feeder. Provide one fused secondary lead with the other lead grounded.

2.16.4 Enclosures for Motor Controllers

[NEMA ICS 6](#).

2.16.5 Multiple-Speed Motor Controllers and Reversible Motor Controllers

Across-the-line-type, electrically and mechanically interlocked.
Multiple-speed controllers: include compelling relays and multiple-button, station-type with pilot lights for each speed.

2.16.6 Pushbutton Stations

Provide with "start/stop" momentary contacts having one normally open and one normally closed set of contacts, and red lights to indicate when motor is running. Stations: heavy duty, oil-tight design.

2.16.7 Pilot and Indicating Lights

Provide LED cluster lamps.

2.17 LOCKOUT REQUIREMENTS

Provide disconnecting means capable of being locked out for machines and other equipment to prevent unexpected startup or release of stored energy in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.147. Comply with requirements of Division 23, "Mechanical" for mechanical isolation of machines and other equipment.

2.18 TELECOMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM

Provide system of telecommunications wire-supporting structures (pathway), including: outlet boxes, conduits with pull wires cable trays, and other accessories for telecommunications outlets and pathway in accordance with TIA-569 and as specified herein. Additional telecommunications requirements are specified in Section 27 10 00, BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEM.

2.19 GROUNDING AND BONDING EQUIPMENT

2.19.1 Ground Rods

UL 467. Ground rods: solid copper, with minimum diameter of 3/4 inch and minimum length 10 feet. Sectional ground rods are permitted.

2.19.2 Ground Bus

Copper ground bus: provided in the electrical equipment rooms as indicated.

2.19.3 Telecommunications Grounding Busbar

Provide corrosion-resistant grounding busbar suitable for indoor installation in accordance with TIA-607. Busbars: plated for reduced contact resistance. If not plated, clean the busbar prior to fastening the conductors to the busbar and apply an anti-oxidant to the contact area to control corrosion and reduce contact resistance. Provide a telecommunications main grounding busbar (TMGB) in the telecommunications entrance facility. The telecommunications main grounding busbar (TMGB): sized in accordance with the immediate application requirements and with consideration of future growth. Provide telecommunications grounding busbars with the following:

- a. Predrilled copper busbar provided with holes for use with standard sized lugs,
- b. Minimum dimensions of 0.25 in thick by 4 in wide for the TMGB and 2 in wide for TGBs with length as indicated;
- c. Listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory.

2.20 MANUFACTURER'S NAMEPLATE

Provide on each item of equipment a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable.

2.21 FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATES

Provide field fabricated nameplates in accordance with the following:

- a. **ASTM D709.**
- b. Provide laminated plastic nameplates for each equipment enclosure, relay, switch, and device; as specified or as indicated on the drawings.
- c. Each nameplate inscription: identify the function and, when applicable, the position.
- d. Nameplates: melamine plastic, **0.125 inch** thick, white with black center core.
- e. Surface: matte finish. Corners: square. Accurately align lettering and engrave into the core.
- f. Minimum size of nameplates: **one by 2.5 inches.**
- g. Lettering size and style: a minimum of **0.25 inch** high normal block style.

2.22 WARNING SIGNS

Provide warning signs for flash protection in accordance with **NFPA 70E** and **NEMA Z535.4** for switchboards, panelboards, industrial control panels, and motor control centers that are in other than dwelling occupancies and are likely to require examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance while energized. Provide field installed signs to warn qualified persons of potential electric arc flash hazards when warning signs are not provided by the manufacturer. Provide marking that is clearly visible to qualified persons before examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance of the equipment.

2.23 FIRESTOPPING MATERIALS

Provide firestopping around electrical penetrations in accordance with Section **07 84 00**, FIRESTOPPING.

2.24 WIREWAYS

UL 870. Material: steel epoxy painted 16 gauge for heights and depths up to **6 by 6 inches**, and 14 gauge for heights and depths up to **12 by 12 inches**. Provide in length required for the application with hinged- cover NEMA 1 enclosure per **NEMA ICS 6**.

2.25 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES

Provide parallel type surge protective devices (SPD) which comply with **UL 1449** at the service entrance, panelboards. Provide surge protectors in a NEMA 1 enclosure per **NEMA ICS 6**. Use Type 1 or Type 2 SPD and connect on the load side of a dedicated circuit breaker.

Provide the following modes of protection:

FOR SINGLE PHASE AND THREE PHASE WYE CONNECTED SYSTEMS-

- Phase to phase (L-L)
- Each phase to neutral (L-N)
- Neutral to ground (N-G)
- Phase to ground (L-G)

SPDs at the service entrance: provide with a minimum surge current rating

of 80,000 amperes for L-L mode minimum and 40,000 amperes for other modes (L-N, L-G, and N-G) and downstream SPDs rated 40,000 amperes for L-L mode minimum and 20,000 amperes for other modes (L-N, L-G, and N-G).

The minimum MCOV (Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage) rating for L-N and L-G modes of operation: 120% of nominal voltage for 240 volts and below; 115% of nominal voltage above 240 volts to 480 volts.

2.26 FACTORY APPLIED FINISH

Provide factory-applied finish on electrical equipment in accordance with the following:

- a. **NEMA 250** corrosion-resistance test and the additional requirements as specified herein.
- b. Interior and exterior steel surfaces of equipment enclosures: thoroughly cleaned followed by a rust-inhibitive phosphatizing or equivalent treatment prior to painting.
- c. Exterior surfaces: free from holes, seams, dents, weld marks, loose scale or other imperfections.
- d. Interior surfaces: receive not less than one coat of corrosion-resisting paint in accordance with the manufacturer's standard practice.
- e. Exterior surfaces: primed, filled where necessary, and given not less than two coats baked enamel with semigloss finish.
- f. Equipment located indoors: ANSI Light Gray, and equipment located outdoors: ANSI Light Gray.
- g. Provide manufacturer's coatings for touch-up work and as specified in paragraph FIELD APPLIED PAINTING.

2.27 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

2.27.1 Transformer Factory Tests

Submittal: include routine **NEMA ST 20** transformer test results on each transformer and also provide the results of NEMA "design" and "prototype" tests that were made on transformers electrically and mechanically equal to those specified.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Electrical installations, including weatherproof and hazardous locations and ducts, plenums and other air-handling spaces: conform to requirements of **NFPA 70** and **IEEE C2** and to requirements specified herein.

3.1.1 Underground Service

Underground service conductors and associated conduit: continuous from service entrance equipment to outdoor power system connection.

3.1.2 Service Entrance Identification

Service entrance disconnect devices, switches, and enclosures: labeled and identified as such.

3.1.2.1 Labels

Wherever work results in service entrance disconnect devices in more than one enclosure, as permitted by NFPA 70, label each enclosure, new and existing, as one of several enclosures containing service entrance disconnect devices. Label, at minimum: indicate number of service disconnect devices housed by enclosure and indicate total number of enclosures that contain service disconnect devices. Provide laminated plastic labels conforming to paragraph FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATES. Use lettering of at least 0.25 inch in height, and engrave on black-on-white matte finish. Service entrance disconnect devices in more than one enclosure: provided only as permitted by NFPA 70.

3.1.3 Wiring Methods

Provide insulated conductors installed in rigid steel conduit, IMC, rigid nonmetallic conduit, or EMT, except where specifically indicated or specified otherwise or required by NFPA 70 to be installed otherwise. Grounding conductor: separate from electrical system neutral conductor. Provide insulated green equipment grounding conductor for circuit(s) installed in conduit and raceways. Minimum conduit size: 1/2 inch in diameter for low voltage lighting and power circuits. Firestop conduit which penetrates fire-rated walls, fire-rated partitions, or fire-rated floors in accordance with Section 07 84 00, FIRESTOPPING.

3.1.3.1 Pull Wire

Install pull wires in empty conduits. Pull wire: plastic having minimum 200-pound force tensile strength. Leave minimum 36 inches of slack at each end of pull wire.

3.1.4 Conduit Installation

Unless indicated otherwise, conceal conduit under floor slabs and within finished walls, ceilings, and floors. Keep conduit minimum 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot water pipes. Install conduit parallel with or at right angles to ceilings, walls, and structural members where located above accessible ceilings and where conduit will be visible after completion of project.

3.1.4.1 Restrictions Applicable to Aluminum Conduit

- a. Do not install underground or encase in concrete or masonry.
- b. Do not use brass or bronze fittings.
- c. Do not use when the enclosed conductors must be shielded from the effects of High-altitude Electromagnetic Pulse (HEMP).

3.1.4.2 Restrictions Applicable to EMT

- a. Do not install underground.
- b. Do not encase in concrete, mortar, grout, or other cementitious

materials.

- c. Do not use in areas subject to severe physical damage including but not limited to equipment rooms where moving or replacing equipment could physically damage the EMT.
- d. Do not use in hazardous areas.
- e. Do not use outdoors.
- f. Do not use in fire pump rooms.
- g. Do not use when the enclosed conductors must be shielded from the effects of High-altitude Electromagnetic Pulse (HEMP).

3.1.4.3 Restrictions Applicable to Nonmetallic Conduit

- a. PVC Schedule 40 and PVC Schedule 80
 - (1) Do not use in areas where subject to severe physical damage, including but not limited to, mechanical equipment rooms, electrical equipment rooms, hospitals, power plants, missile magazines, and other such areas.
 - (2) Do not use in hazardous (classified) areas.
 - (3) Do not use in penetrating fire-rated walls or partitions, or fire-rated floors.
 - (4) Do not use above grade, except where allowed in this section for rising through floor slab or indicated otherwise.
 - (5) Do not use when the enclosed conductors must be shielded from the effects of High-altitude Electromagnetic Pulse (HEMP).

3.1.4.4 Restrictions Applicable to Flexible Conduit

Use only as specified in paragraph FLEXIBLE CONNECTIONS. Do not use when the enclosed conductors must be shielded from the effects of High-altitude Electromagnetic Pulse (HEMP).

3.1.4.5 Underground Conduit

PVC, Type EPC-40. Convert nonmetallic conduit, other than PVC Schedule 40 or 80, to steel conduit before rising through floor slab. Plastic coating: extend minimum 6 inches above floor.

3.1.4.6 Conduit Installed Under Floor Slabs

Conduit run under floor slab: located a minimum of 12 inches below the vapor barrier. Seal around conduits at penetrations thru vapor barrier.

3.1.4.7 Conduit Through Floor Slabs

Where conduits rise through floor slabs, do not allow curved portion of bends to be visible above finished slab.

3.1.4.8 Stub-Ups

Provide conduits stubbed up through concrete floor for connection to free-standing equipment with adjustable top or coupling threaded inside for plugs, set flush with finished floor. Extend conductors to equipment in rigid steel conduit, except that flexible metal conduit may be used 6 inches above floor. Where no equipment connections are made, install screwdriver-operated threaded flush plugs in conduit end.

3.1.4.9 Conduit Support

Support conduit by pipe straps, wall brackets, threaded rod conduit hangers, or ceiling trapeze. Fasten by wood screws to wood; by toggle bolts on hollow masonry units; by concrete inserts or expansion bolts on concrete or brick; and by machine screws, welded threaded studs, or spring-tension clamps on steel work. Threaded C-clamps may be used on rigid steel conduit only. Do not weld conduits or pipe straps to steel structures. Do not exceed one-fourth proof test load for load applied to fasteners. Provide vibration resistant and shock-resistant fasteners attached to concrete ceiling. Do not cut main reinforcing bars for any holes cut to depth of more than 1 1/2 inches in reinforced concrete beams or to depth of more than 3/4 inch in concrete joints. Fill unused holes. In partitions of light steel construction, use sheet metal screws. In suspended-ceiling construction, run conduit above ceiling. Do not support conduit by ceiling support system. Conduit and box systems: supported independently of both (a) tie wires supporting ceiling grid system, and (b) ceiling grid system into which ceiling panels are placed. Do not share supporting means between electrical raceways and mechanical piping or ducts. Coordinate installation with above-ceiling mechanical systems to assure maximum accessibility to all systems. Spring-steel fasteners may be used for lighting branch circuit conduit supports in suspended ceilings in dry locations. Where conduit crosses building expansion joints, provide suitable expansion fitting that maintains conduit electrical continuity by bonding jumpers or other means. For conduits greater than 2 1/2 inches inside diameter, provide supports to resist forces of 0.5 times the equipment weight in any direction and 1.5 times the equipment weight in the downward direction.

3.1.4.10 Directional Changes in Conduit Runs

Make changes in direction of runs with symmetrical bends or cast-metal fittings. Make field-made bends and offsets with hickey or conduit-bending machine. Do not install crushed or deformed conduits. Avoid trapped conduits. Prevent plaster, dirt, or trash from lodging in conduits, boxes, fittings, and equipment during construction. Free clogged conduits of obstructions.

3.1.4.11 Locknuts and Bushings

Fasten conduits to sheet metal boxes and cabinets with two locknuts where required by NFPA 70, where insulated bushings are used, and where bushings cannot be brought into firm contact with the box; otherwise, use at least minimum single locknut and bushing. Provide locknuts with sharp edges for digging into wall of metal enclosures. Install bushings on ends of conduits, and provide insulating type where required by NFPA 70.

3.1.4.12 Flexible Connections

Provide flexible steel conduit between 3 and 6 feet in length for recessed

and semirecessed lighting fixtures; for equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for motors. Install flexible conduit to allow 20 percent slack. Minimum flexible steel conduit size: 1/2 inch diameter. Provide liquidtight flexible conduit in wet and damp locations for equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, movement or motors. Provide separate ground conductor across flexible connections.

3.1.4.13 Telecommunications and Signal System Pathway

Install telecommunications pathway in accordance with TIA-569.

- a. Horizontal Pathway: Telecommunications pathways from the work area to the telecommunications room: installed and cabling length requirements in accordance with TIA-568-C.1. Size conduits, wireways, and cable trays in accordance with TIA-569.
- b. Backbone Pathway: Telecommunication pathways from the telecommunications entrance facility to telecommunications rooms, and, telecommunications equipment rooms (backbone cabling): installed in accordance with TIA-569. Size conduits, wireways, and cable trays for telecommunications risers in accordance with TIA-569.

3.1.5 Cable Tray Installation

Install and ground in accordance with NFPA 70. In addition, install and ground telecommunications cable tray in accordance with TIA-569, and TIA-607. Install cable trays parallel with or at right angles to ceilings, walls, and structural members. Support in accordance with manufacturer recommendations but at not more than 6 foot intervals. Coat contact surfaces of aluminum connections with an antioxidant compound prior to assembly. Adjacent cable tray sections: bonded together by connector plates of an identical type as the cable tray sections. For grounding of cable tray system provide No. 2 AWG bare copper wire throughout cable tray system, and bond to each section, except use No. 1/0 aluminum wire if cable tray is aluminum. Terminate cable trays 10 inches from both sides of smoke and fire partitions. Install conductors run through smoke and fire partitions in 4 inch rigid steel conduits with grounding bushings, extending 12 inches beyond each side of partitions. Seal conduit on both ends to maintain smoke and fire ratings of partitions. Firestop penetrations in accordance with Section 07 84 00, FIRESTOPPING. Provide supports to resist forces of 0.5 times the equipment weight in any direction and 1.5 times the equipment weight in the downward direction.

3.1.6 Boxes, Outlets, and Supports

Provide boxes in wiring and raceway systems wherever required for pulling of wires, making connections, and mounting of devices or fixtures. Boxes for metallic raceways: cast-metal, hub-type when located in wet locations, when surface mounted on outside of exterior surfaces, when surface mounted on interior walls exposed up to 7 feet above floors and walkways, and when specifically indicated. Boxes in other locations: sheet steel, except that aluminum boxes may be used with aluminum conduit, and nonmetallic boxes may be used with nonmetallic conduit system. Provide each box with volume required by NFPA 70 for number of conductors enclosed in box. Boxes for mounting lighting fixtures: minimum 4 inches square, or octagonal, except that smaller boxes may be installed as required by fixture configurations, as approved. Boxes for use in masonry-block or tile walls: square-cornered, tile-type, or standard boxes having square-cornered, tile-type covers. Provide gaskets for cast-metal boxes

installed in wet locations and boxes installed flush with outside of exterior surfaces. Provide separate boxes for flush or recessed fixtures when required by fixture terminal operating temperature; provide readily removable fixtures for access to boxes unless ceiling access panels are provided. Support boxes and pendants for surface-mounted fixtures on suspended ceilings independently of ceiling supports. Fasten boxes and supports with wood screws on wood, with bolts and expansion shields on concrete or brick, with toggle bolts on hollow masonry units, and with machine screws or welded studs on steel. Threaded studs driven in by powder charge and provided with lockwashers and nuts or nail-type nylon anchors may be used in lieu of wood screws, expansion shields, or machine screws. In open overhead spaces, cast boxes threaded to raceways need not be separately supported except where used for fixture support; support sheet metal boxes directly from building structure or by bar hangers. Where bar hangers are used, attach bar to raceways on opposite sides of box, and support raceway with approved-type fastener maximum 24 inches from box. When penetrating reinforced concrete members, avoid cutting reinforcing steel.

3.1.6.1 Boxes

Boxes for use with raceway systems: minimum 1 1/2 inches deep, except where shallower boxes required by structural conditions are approved. Boxes for other than lighting fixture outlets: minimum 4 inches square, except that 4 by 2 inch boxes may be used where only one raceway enters outlet. Telecommunications outlets: a minimum of 4 11/16 inches square by 2 1/8 inches deep, except for wall mounted telephones. Mount outlet boxes flush in finished walls.

3.1.6.2 Pull Boxes

Construct of at least minimum size required by NFPA 70 of code-gauge aluminum or galvanized sheet steel, and compatible with nonmetallic raceway systems, except where cast-metal boxes are required in locations specified herein. Provide boxes with screw-fastened covers. Where several feeders pass through common pull box, tag feeders to indicate clearly electrical characteristics, circuit number, and panel designation.

3.1.6.3 Extension Rings

Extension rings are not permitted for new construction. Use only on existing boxes in concealed conduit systems where wall is furred out for new finish.

3.1.7 Mounting Heights

Mount panelboards, enclosed circuit breakers, motor controller and disconnecting switches so height of operating handle at its highest position is maximum 78 inches above floor. Mount lighting switches 48 inches above finished floor. Mount receptacles and telecommunications outlets 18 inches above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated. Mount other devices as indicated. Measure mounting heights of wiring devices and outlets to center of device or outlet.

3.1.8 Nonmetallic Sheathed Cable Installation

Where possible, install cables concealed behind ceiling or wall finish. Thread cables through holes bored on approximate centerline of wood members; notching of end surfaces is not permitted. Provide sleeves

through concrete or masonry for threading cables. Install exposed cables parallel to or at right angles to walls or structural members. Protect exposed nonmetallic sheathed cables less than 4 feet above floors from mechanical injury by installation in conduit or tubing. When cable is used in metal stud construction, insert plastic stud grommets in studs at each point through which cable passes, prior to installation of cable.

3.1.9 Conductor Identification

Provide conductor identification within each enclosure where tap, splice, or termination is made. For conductors No. 6 AWG and smaller diameter, provide color coding by factory-applied, color-impregnated insulation. For conductors No. 4 AWG and larger diameter, provide color coding by plastic-coated, self-sticking markers; colored nylon cable ties and plates; or heat shrink-type sleeves. Identify control circuit terminations in accordance with Section 23 09 23.02 BACnet DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS. Provide telecommunications system conductor identification as specified in Section 27 10 00 BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEMS.

3.1.9.1 Marking Strips

Provide marking strips in accordance with the following:

- a. Provide white or other light-colored plastic marking strips, fastened by screws to each terminal block, for wire designations.
- b. Use permanent ink for the wire numbers
- c. Provide reversible marking strips to permit marking both sides, or provide two marking strips with each block.
- d. Size marking strips to accommodate the two sets of wire numbers.
- e. Assign a device designation in accordance with NEMA ICS 1 to each device to which a connection is made. Mark each device terminal to which a connection is made with a distinct terminal marking corresponding to the wire designation used on the Contractor's schematic and connection diagrams.
- f. The wire (terminal point) designations used on the Contractor's wiring diagrams and printed on terminal block marking strips may be according to the Contractor's standard practice; however, provide additional wire and cable designations for identification of remote (external) circuits for the Government's wire designations.
- g. Prints of the marking strips drawings submitted for approval will be so marked and returned to the Contractor for addition of the designations to the terminal strips and tracings, along with any rearrangement of points required.

3.1.10 Splices

Make splices in accessible locations. Make splices in conductors No. 10 AWG and smaller diameter with insulated, pressure-type connector. Make splices in conductors No. 8 AWG and larger diameter with solderless connector, and cover with insulation material equivalent to conductor insulation.

3.1.11 Covers and Device Plates

Install with edges in continuous contact with finished wall surfaces without use of mats or similar devices. Plaster fillings are not permitted. Install plates with alignment tolerance of $1/16$ inch. Use of sectional-type device plates are not permitted. Provide gasket for plates installed in wet locations.

3.1.12 Electrical Penetrations

Seal openings around electrical penetrations through fire resistance-rated walls, partitions, floors, or ceilings in accordance with Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

3.1.13 Grounding and Bonding

Provide in accordance with NFPA 70 and NFPA 780. Ground exposed, non-current-carrying metallic parts of electrical equipment, access flooring support system, metallic raceway systems, grounding conductor in metallic and nonmetallic raceways, telecommunications system grounds, grounding conductor of nonmetallic sheathed cables, and neutral conductor of wiring systems. Make ground connection at main service equipment, and extend grounding conductor to point of entrance of metallic water service. Make connection to water pipe by suitable ground clamp or lug connection to plugged tee. If flanged pipes are encountered, make connection with lug bolted to street side of flanged connection. Supplement metallic water service grounding system with additional made electrode in compliance with NFPA 70. Make ground connection to driven ground rods on exterior of building. Interconnect all grounding media in or on the structure to provide a common ground potential. This includes lightning protection, electrical service, telecommunications system grounds, as well as underground metallic piping systems. Make interconnection to the gas line on the customer's side of the meter. Use main size lightning conductors for interconnecting these grounding systems to the lightning protection system. In addition to the requirements specified herein, provide telecommunications grounding in accordance with TIA-607. Where ground fault protection is employed, ensure that connection of ground and neutral does not interfere with correct operation of fault protection.

3.1.13.1 Ground Rods

Provide cone pointed ground rods. Measure the resistance to ground using the fall-of-potential method described in IEEE 81. Do not exceed 25 ohms under normally dry conditions for the maximum resistance of a driven ground. If this resistance cannot be obtained with a single rod, additional rods, spaced on center, not less than twice the distance of the length of the rod. If the resultant resistance exceeds 25 ohms measured not less than 48 hours after rainfall, notify the Contracting Officer who will decide on the number of ground rods to add.

3.1.13.2 Grounding Connections

Make grounding connections which are buried or otherwise normally inaccessible, by exothermic weld or compression connector.

- a. Make exothermic welds strictly in accordance with the weld manufacturer's written recommendations. Welds which are "puffed up" or which show convex surfaces indicating improper cleaning are not acceptable. Mechanical connectors are not required at exothermic welds.

- b. Make compression connections using a hydraulic compression tool to provide the correct circumferential pressure. Provide tools and dies as recommended by the manufacturer. Use an embossing die code or other standard method to provide visible indication that a connector has been adequately compressed on the ground wire.

3.1.13.3 Ground Bus

Provide a copper ground bus in the electrical equipment rooms as indicated. Noncurrent-carrying metal parts of electrical equipment: effectively grounded by bonding to the ground bus. Bond the ground bus to both the entrance ground, and to a ground rod or rods as specified above having the upper ends terminating approximately 4 inches above the floor. Make connections and splices of the brazed, welded, bolted, or pressure-connector type, except use pressure connectors or bolted connections for connections to removable equipment. For raised floor, provide a minimum of 4, one at each corner, ground buses connected to the building grounding system. Use bolted connections in lieu of thermoweld, so they can be changed as required by additions and/or alterations.

3.1.13.4 Resistance

Maximum resistance-to-ground of grounding system: do not exceed 5 ohms under dry conditions. Where resistance obtained exceeds 5 ohms, contact Contracting Officer for further instructions.

3.1.13.5 Telecommunications System

Provide telecommunications grounding in accordance with the following:

- a. Telecommunications Grounding Busbars: Provide a telecommunications main grounding busbar (TMGB) in the telecommunications entrance facility. Install the TMGB as close to the electrical service entrance grounding connection as practicable. Install telecommunications grounding busbars to maintain clearances as required by NFPA 70 and insulated from its support. A minimum of 2 inches separation from the wall is recommended to allow access to the rear of the busbar and adjust the mounting height to accommodate overhead or underfloor cable routing.
- b. Telecommunications Bonding Conductors: Provide main telecommunications service equipment ground consisting of separate bonding conductor for telecommunications, between the TMGB and readily accessible grounding connection of the electrical service. Grounding and bonding conductors should not be placed in ferrous metallic conduit. If it is necessary to place grounding and bonding conductors in ferrous metallic conduit that exceeds 3 feet in length, bond the conductors to each end of the conduit using a grounding bushing or a No. 6 AWG conductor, minimum. Provide a telecommunications bonding backbone (TBB) that originates at the TMGB extends throughout the building using the telecommunications backbone pathways, and connects to the TGBs in all telecommunications rooms and equipment rooms. Install the TBB conductors such that they are protected from physical and mechanical damage. The TBB conductors should be installed without splices and routed in the shortest possible straight-line path. Make the bonding conductor between a TBB and a TGB continuous. Where splices are necessary, the number of splices should be a minimum. Make the splices accessible and located in telecommunications spaces. Connect joined segments of a TBB using

exothermic welding, irreversible compression-type connectors, or equivalent. Install all joints to be adequately supported and protected from damage. Whenever two or more TBBs are used within a multistory building, bond the TBBs together with a grounding equalizer (GE) at the top floor and at a minimum of every third floor in between. Do not connect the TBB and GE to the pathway ground, except at the TMGB.

- c. Telecommunications Grounding Connections: Telecommunications grounding connections to the TMGB: utilize listed compression two-hole lugs, exothermic welding, suitable and equivalent one hole non-twisting lugs, or other irreversible compression type connections. Bond all metallic pathways, cabinets, and racks for telecommunications cabling and interconnecting hardware located within the same room or space as the TMGB to the TMGB. In a metal frame (structural steel) building, where the steel framework is readily accessible within the room; bond each TMGB to the vertical steel metal frame using a minimum No. 6 AWG conductor. Where the metal frame is external to the room and readily accessible, bond the metal frame to the TGB or TMGB with a minimum No. 6 AWG conductor. When practicable because of shorter distances and, where horizontal steel members are permanently electrically bonded to vertical column members, the TGB may be bonded to these horizontal members in lieu of the vertical column members. All connectors used for bonding to the metal frame of a building must be listed for the intended purpose.

3.1.14 Equipment Connections

Provide power wiring for the connection of motors and control equipment under this section of the specification. Except as otherwise specifically noted or specified, automatic control wiring, control devices, and protective devices within the control circuitry are not included in this section of the specifications and are provided under the section specifying the associated equipment.

3.1.15 Elevator

Provide circuit to line terminals of elevator controller, and disconnect switch on line side of controller, outlet for control power, outlet receptacle and work light at midheight of elevator shaft, and work light and outlet receptacle in elevator pit.

3.1.16 Government-Furnished Equipment

Contractor make connections to Government-furnished equipment to make equipment operate as intended, including providing miscellaneous items such as plugs, receptacles, wire, cable, conduit, flexible conduit, and outlet boxes or fittings.

3.1.17 Watthour Meters

ANSI C12.1.

3.1.18 Surge Protective Devices

Connect the surge protective devices in parallel to the power source, keeping the conductors as short and straight as practically possible. Maximum allowed lead length is 3 feet.

3.2 FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATE MOUNTING

Provide number, location, and letter designation of nameplates as indicated. Fasten nameplates to the device with a minimum of two sheet-metal screws or two rivets.

3.3 WARNING SIGN MOUNTING

Provide the number of signs required to be readable from each accessible side. Space the signs in accordance with NFPA 70E.

3.4 FIELD APPLIED PAINTING

Paint electrical equipment as required to match finish of adjacent surfaces or to meet the indicated or specified safety criteria. Painting: as specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS. Where field painting of enclosures for panelboards, load centers or the like is specified to match adjacent surfaces, to correct damage to the manufacturer's factory applied coatings, or to meet the indicated or specified safety criteria, provide manufacturer's recommended coatings and apply in accordance to manufacturer's instructions.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Furnish test equipment and personnel and submit written copies of test results. Give Contracting Officer 5 working days notice prior to each test.

3.5.1 Devices Subject to Manual Operation

Operate each device subject to manual operation at least five times, demonstrating satisfactory operation each time.

3.5.2 600-Volt Wiring Test

Test wiring rated 600 volt and less to verify that no short circuits or accidental grounds exist. Perform insulation resistance tests on wiring No. 6 AWG and larger diameter using instrument which applies voltage of approximately 500 volts to provide direct reading of resistance. Minimum resistance: 250,000 ohms.

3.5.3 Transformer Tests

Perform the standard, not optional, tests in accordance with the Inspection and Test Procedures for transformers, dry type, air-cooled, 600 volt and below; as specified in NETA ATS. Measure primary and secondary voltages for proper tap settings. Tests need not be performed by a recognized independent testing firm or independent electrical consulting firm.

3.5.4 Ground-Fault Receptacle Test

Test ground-fault receptacles with a "load" (such as a plug in light) to verify that the "line" and "load" leads are not reversed.

3.5.5 Grounding System Test

Test grounding system to ensure continuity, and that resistance to ground is not excessive. Test each ground rod for resistance to ground before making connections to rod; tie grounding system together and test for resistance to ground. Make resistance measurements in dry weather, not

earlier than 48 hours after rainfall. Submit written results of each test to Contracting Officer, and indicate location of rods as well as resistance and soil conditions at time measurements were made.

3.5.6 Watthour Meter

a. Visual and mechanical inspection

- (1) Examine for broken parts, shipping damage, and tightness of connections.
- (2) Verify that meter type, scales, and connections are in accordance with approved shop drawings.

b. Electrical tests

- (1) Determine accuracy of meter.
- (2) Calibrate watthour meters to one-half percent.
- (3) Verify that correct multiplier has been placed on face of meter, where applicable.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 26 24 13

SWITCHBOARDS

05/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI C12.1 (2008) Electric Meters Code for
Electricity Metering

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A780/A780M (2009; R 2015) Standard Practice for
Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of
Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings

ASTM D1535 (2014; R 2018) Standard Practice for
Specifying Color by the Munsell System

ASTM D709 (2017) Standard Specification for
Laminated Thermosetting Materials

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 100 (2000; Archived) The Authoritative
Dictionary of IEEE Standards Terms

IEEE 81 (2012) Guide for Measuring Earth
Resistivity, Ground Impedance, and Earth
Surface Potentials of a Ground System

IEEE C2 (2017; Errata 1-2 2017; INT 1 2017)
National Electrical Safety Code

INTERNATIONAL ELECTRICAL TESTING ASSOCIATION (NETA)

NETA ATS (2017; Errata 2017) Standard for
Acceptance Testing Specifications for
Electrical Power Equipment and Systems

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

ANSI/NEMA PB 2.1 (2013) General Instructions for Proper
Handling, Installation, Operation and
Maintenance of Deadfront Distribution
Switchboards Rated 600 V or Less

NEMA ICS 6 (1993; R 2016) Industrial Control and
Systems: Enclosures

NEMA PB 2 (2011) Deadfront Distribution Switchboards

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2;
TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6;
TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10;
TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA
17-14; TIA 17-15; TIA 17-16; TIA 17-17)
National Electrical Code

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 467 (2013; Reprint Jun 2017) UL Standard for
Safety Grounding and Bonding Equipment

UL 489 (2016) UL Standard for Safety Molded-Case
Circuit Breakers, Molded-Case Switches and
Circuit-Breaker Enclosures

UL 891 (2005; Reprint Oct 2012) Switchboards

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 26 08 00 APPARATUS INSPECTION AND TESTING applies to this section,
with the additions and modifications specified herein.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

Unless otherwise specified or indicated, electrical and electronics terms
used in these specifications, and on the drawings, are as defined in
IEEE 100.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation;
submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor QC approval.
Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook,
in conformance to Section 01 33 29, SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the
following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Switchboard Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Switchboard; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Switchboard Design Tests; G

Switchboard Production Tests; G

Acceptance Checks and Tests; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Switchboard Operation and Maintenance, Data Package 5; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Assembled Operation and Maintenance Manuals; G

Equipment Test Schedule; G

Required Settings; G

Service Entrance Available Fault Current Label; G

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 Product Data

Include manufacturer's information on each submittal for each component, device and accessory provided with the switchboard including:

- a. Circuit breaker type, interrupting rating, and trip devices, including available settings.
- b. Manufacturer's instruction manuals and published time-current curves (in electronic format) of the main secondary breaker and largest secondary feeder device.

1.5.2 Switchboard Drawings

Include wiring diagrams and installation details of equipment indicating proposed location, layout and arrangement, control panels, accessories, piping, ductwork, and other items that must be shown to ensure a coordinated installation. Identify circuit terminals on wiring diagrams and indicate the internal wiring for each item of equipment and the interconnection between each item of equipment. Indicate on the drawings adequate clearance for operation, maintenance, and replacement of operating equipment devices. Include the nameplate data, size, and capacity on submittal. Also include applicable federal, military, industry, and technical society publication references on submittals. Include the following:

- a. One-line diagram including breakers.
- b. Outline drawings including front elevation, section views, footprint, and overall dimensions.
- c. Bus configuration including dimensions and ampere ratings of bus bars.
- d. Markings and NEMA nameplate data.
- e. Circuit breaker type, interrupting rating, and trip devices, including available settings.
- f. Wiring diagrams and elementary diagrams with terminals identified, and indicating prewired interconnections between items of equipment and the interconnection between the items.
- g. Manufacturer's instruction manuals and published time-current curves (in electronic format) of the main secondary breaker and largest secondary feeder device. Use this information (designer of record) to

provide breaker settings that ensures protection and coordination are achieved. For Navy installations, provide electronic format curves using SKM's Power Tools for Windows device library electronic format or EasyPower device library format depending on installation modeling software requirements.

- h. Provisions for future expansion by adding switchboard sections.

1.5.3 Regulatory Requirements

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "shall" or "must" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction," or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer. Provide equipment, materials, installation, and workmanship in accordance with the mandatory and advisory provisions of NFPA 70 unless more stringent requirements are specified or indicated.

1.5.4 Standard Products

Provide materials and equipment that are products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of such products which are of equal material, design and workmanship, and:

- a. Have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening including applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size.
- b. Have been on sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2-year period.
- c. Where two or more items of the same class of equipment are required, provide products of a single manufacturer; however, the component parts of the item need not be the products of the same manufacturer unless stated in this section.

1.5.4.1 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a 2-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturers' factory or laboratory tests, is furnished.

1.5.4.2 Material and Equipment Manufacturing Date

Products manufactured more than 1 year prior to date of delivery to site are not acceptable.

1.6 MAINTENANCE

1.6.1 Switchboard Operation and Maintenance Data

Submit Operation and Maintenance Manuals in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

1.6.2 Assembled Operation and Maintenance Manuals

Assemble and securely bind manuals in durable, hard covered, water

resistant binders. Assemble and index the manuals in the following order with a table of contents:

- a. Manufacturer's O&M information required by the paragraph SD-10, OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.
- b. Catalog data required by the paragraph SD-03, PRODUCT DATA.
- c. Drawings required by the paragraph SD-02, SHOP DRAWINGS.
- d. Prices for spare parts and supply list.
- e. Information on metering.
- f. Design test reports.
- g. Production test reports.

1.7 WARRANTY

Provide equipment items that are supported by service organizations reasonably convenient to the equipment installation in order to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT COORDINATION

Products and materials not considered to be switchboards and related accessories are specified in Section 33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION and Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

2.2 SWITCHBOARD

NEMA PB 2 and UL 891.

2.2.1 Ratings

Provide equipment with the following ratings:

- a. Voltage rating: as indicated.
- b. Continuous current rating of the main bus: as indicated.
- c. Short-circuit current rating: as indicated.
- d. UL listed and labeled as service entrance equipment.

2.2.2 Construction

Provide the following:

- a. Switchboard: consisting of one or more vertical sections bolted together to form a rigid assembly and rear aligned.
- b. All circuit breakers: front accessible.
- c. Rear aligned switchboards: front accessible load connections.

- d. Where indicated, "space for future" or "space" means to include a vertical bus provided behind a blank front cover. Where indicated, "provision for future" means full hardware provided to mount a breaker suitable for the location.
- e. Completely factory engineered and assembled, including protective devices and equipment indicated with necessary interconnections, instrumentation, and control wiring.

2.2.2.1 Enclosure

Provide the following:

- a. Enclosure: **NEMA ICS 6** Type 1.
- b. Enclosure: bolted together with removable bolt-on side and rear covers.
- c. Front doors: provided with padlockable vault handles with a three point catch.
- d. Base: includes any part of enclosure that is within **3 inches** of concrete pad.
- e. Paint color: **ASTM D1535** light gray No. 61 or No. 49 over rust inhibitor.

2.2.2.2 Bus Bars

Provide the following:

- a. Bus bars: copper with silver-plated contact surfaces.
 - (1) Phase bus bars: uninsulated.
 - (2) Neutral bus: rated 100 percent of the main bus continuous current rating.
- b. Make bus connections and joints with hardened steel bolts.
- c. Main-bus (through bus): rated at the full ampacity of the main throughout the switchboard.
- d. Minimum **one-quarter by 2 inch** copper ground bus secured to each vertical section along the entire length of the switchboard.

2.2.2.3 Main Section

Provide the main section consisting of a combination section with molded-case circuit breakers for the main and branch devices as indicated.

2.2.3 Protective Device

Provide branch protective devices as indicated.

2.2.3.1 Molded-Case Circuit Breaker

Provide the following:

- a. **UL 489**. UL listed and labeled, 100 percent rated main breaker, manually operated, low voltage molded-case circuit breaker, with a short-circuit current rating of as indicated.
- b. Breaker frame size: as indicated.
- c. Series rated circuit breakers are unacceptable.

2.2.4 Electronic Trip Units

Equip **main** breakers with a solid-state tripping system consisting of three current sensors and a microprocessor-based trip unit that provides true rms sensing adjustable time-current circuit protection. Include the following:

- a. Current sensors ampere rating: the same as the breaker frame rating.
- b. Trip unit ampere rating: as indicated.
- c. Ground fault protection: as indicated.
- d. Electronic trip units: provide additional features as indicated:
 - (1) Main breakers: include short delay pick-up and time settings and, instantaneous settings and ground fault settings.
 - (2) For electronic trip units that are rated for or can be adjusted to 1,200 amperes or higher, provide arc energy reduction capability with an energy-reducing maintenance switch with local status indicator.

2.2.5 Metering

2.2.5.1 Electronic Watthour Meter

Provide as specified in Section **26 27 14.00 20** ELECTRICITY METERING.

2.2.6 Terminal Boards

Provide with engraved plastic terminal strips and screw type terminals for external wiring between components and for internal wiring between removable assemblies. Provide short-circuiting type terminal boards associated with current transformer. Terminate conductors for current transformers with ring-tongue lugs. Provide terminal board identification that is identical in similar units. Provide color coded external wiring that is color coded consistently for similar terminal boards.

2.2.7 Wire Marking

Mark control and metering conductors at each end. Provide factory installed, white, plastic tubing, heat stamped with black block type letters on factory-installed wiring. On field-installed wiring, provide white, preprinted, polyvinyl chloride (PVC) sleeves, heat stamped with black block type letters. Provide a single letter or number on each sleeve, elliptically shaped to securely grip the wire, and keyed in such a manner to ensure alignment with adjacent sleeves. Provide specific wire markings using the appropriate combination of individual sleeves. Indicate on each wire marker the device or equipment, including specific terminal number to which the remote end of the wire is attached.

2.3 MANUFACTURER'S NAMEPLATE

Provide a nameplate on each item of equipment bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent is not acceptable. This nameplate and method of attachment may be the manufacturer's standard if it contains the required information.

2.4 FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATES

ASTM D709. Provide laminated plastic nameplates for each switchboard, equipment enclosure, relay, switch, and device; as specified in this section or as indicated on the drawings. Identify on each nameplate inscription the function and, when applicable, the position. Provide nameplates of melamine plastic, **0.125 inch** thick, white with black center core. Provide matte finish surface. Provide square corners. Accurately align lettering and engrave into the core. Provide nameplates with minimum size of **one by 2.5 inches**. Provide lettering that is a minimum of **0.25 inch** high normal block style.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

2.5.1 Equipment Test Schedule

The Government reserves the right to witness tests. Provide equipment test schedules for tests to be performed at the manufacturer's test facility. Submit required test schedule and location, and notify the Contracting Officer 30 calendar days before scheduled test date. Notify Contracting Officer 15 calendar days in advance of changes to scheduled date.

Provide the following as part of test equipment calibration:

- a. Provide a calibration program which assures that all applicable test instruments are maintained within rated accuracy.
- b. Accuracy: Traceable to the National Institute of Standards and Technology.
- c. Instrument calibration frequency schedule: less than or equal to 12 months for both test floor instruments and leased specialty equipment.
- d. Dated calibration labels: visible on all test equipment.
- e. Calibrating standard: higher accuracy than that of the instrument tested.
- f. Keep up-to-date records that indicate dates and test results of instruments calibrated or tested. For instruments calibrated by the manufacturer on a routine basis, in lieu of third party calibration, include the following:
 - (1) Maintain up-to-date instrument calibration instructions and procedures for each test instrument.
 - (2) Identify the third party/laboratory calibrated instrument to verify that calibrating standard is met.

2.5.2 Switchboard Design Tests

NEMA PB 2 and UL 891.

2.5.2.1 Design Tests

Furnish documentation showing the results of design tests on a product of the same series and rating as that provided by this specification.

- a. Short-circuit current test.
- b. Enclosure tests.
- c. Dielectric test.

2.5.3 Switchboard Production Tests

NEMA PB 2 and UL 891. Furnish reports which include results of production tests performed on the actual equipment for this project. These tests include:

- a. 60-hertz dielectric tests.
- b. Mechanical operation tests.
- c. Electrical operation and control wiring tests.
- d. Ground fault sensing equipment test.

2.6 ARC FLASH WARNING LABEL

Provide warning label for switchboards. Locate this self-adhesive warning label on the outside of the enclosure warning of potential electrical arc flash hazards and appropriate PPE required. Provide label format as indicated.

2.7 SERVICE ENTRANCE AVAILABLE FAULT CURRENT LABEL

Provide label on exterior of switchboards used as service equipment listing the maximum available fault current at that location. Include on the label the date that the fault calculation was performed and the contact information for the organization that completed the calculation. Locate this self-adhesive warning label on the outside of the switchboard. Provide label format as indicated.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Conform to IEEE C2, NFPA 70, and to the requirements specified herein. Provide new equipment and materials unless indicated or specified otherwise.

3.2 GROUNDING

NFPA 70 and IEEE C2, except that grounds and grounding systems with a resistance to solid earth ground not exceeding 25 ohms.

3.2.1 Grounding Electrodes

Provide driven ground rods as specified in Section 33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION. Connect ground conductors to the upper end of the ground rods by exothermic weld or compression connector. Provide compression connectors at equipment end of ground conductors.

3.2.2 Equipment Grounding

Provide bare copper cable not smaller than No. 4/0 AWG not less than 24 inches below grade connecting to the indicated ground rods. When work in addition to that indicated or specified is directed to obtain the specified ground resistance, the provision of the contract covering "Changes" applies.

3.2.3 Connections

Make joints in grounding conductors and loops by exothermic weld or compression connector. Install exothermic welds and compression connectors as specified in Section 33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION.

3.2.4 Grounding and Bonding Equipment

UL 467, except as indicated or specified otherwise.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT AND ASSEMBLIES

Install and connect equipment furnished under this section as indicated on project drawings, the approved shop drawings, and as specified herein.

3.3.1 Switchboard

ANSI/NEMA PB 2.1.

3.3.2 Meters and Instrument Transformers

ANSI C12.1.

3.3.3 Field Applied Painting

Where field painting of enclosures is required to correct damage to the manufacturer's factory applied coatings, provide manufacturer's recommended coatings and apply in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.3.4 Galvanizing Repair

Repair damage to galvanized coatings using ASTM A780/A780M, zinc rich paint, for galvanizing damaged by handling, transporting, cutting, welding, or bolting. Do not heat surfaces that repair paint has been applied to.

3.3.5 Field Fabricated Nameplate Mounting

Provide number, location, and letter designation of nameplates as indicated. Fasten nameplates to the device with a minimum of two sheet-metal screws or two rivets.

3.4 FOUNDATION FOR EQUIPMENT AND ASSEMBLIES

3.4.1 Exterior Location

Mount switchboard on concrete slab as follows:

- a. Unless otherwise indicated, provide the slab with dimensions at least 8 inches thick, reinforced with a 6 by 6 inch No. 6 mesh placed uniformly 4 inches from the top of the slab.
- b. Place slab on a 6 inch thick, well-compacted gravel base.
- c. Install slab such that the top of the concrete slab is approximately 4 inches above the finished grade.
- d. Provide edges above grade 1/2 inch chamfer.
- e. Provide slab of adequate size to project at least 8 inches beyond the equipment.
- f. Provide conduit turnups and cable entrance space required by the equipment to be mounted.
- g. Seal voids around conduit openings in slab with water- and oil-resistant caulking or sealant.
- h. Cut off and bush conduits 3 inches above slab surface.
- i. Provide concrete work as specified in Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.

3.4.2 Interior Location

Mount switchboard on concrete slab as follows:

- a. Unless otherwise indicated, provide the slab with dimensions at least 4 inches thick.
- b. Install slab such that the top of the concrete slab is approximately 4 inches above the finished grade.
- c. Provide edges above grade 1/2 inch chamfer.
- d. Provide slab of adequate size to project at least 8 inches beyond the equipment.
- e. Provide conduit turnups and cable entrance space required by the equipment to be mounted.
- f. Seal voids around conduit openings in slab with water- and oil-resistant caulking or sealant.
- g. Cut off and bush conduits 3 inches above slab surface.
- h. Provide concrete work as specified in Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Submit [Required Settings](#) of breakers to the Contracting Officer after approval of switchboard and at least 30 days in advance of their requirement.

3.5.1 Performance of [Acceptance Checks and Tests](#)

Perform in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and include the following visual and mechanical inspections and electrical tests, performed in accordance with [NETA ATS](#).

3.5.1.1 Switchboard Assemblies

a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection

- (1) Compare equipment nameplate data with specifications and approved shop drawings.
- (2) Inspect physical, electrical, and mechanical condition.
- (3) Verify appropriate anchorage, required area clearances, and correct alignment.
- (4) Clean switchboard and verify shipping bracing, loose parts, and documentation shipped inside cubicles have been removed.
- (5) Inspect all doors, panels, and sections for paint, dents, scratches, fit, and missing hardware.
- (6) Verify that circuit breaker sizes and types correspond to approved shop drawings as well as to the circuit breaker's address for microprocessor-communication packages.
- (7) Inspect all bolted electrical connections for high resistance using low-resistance ohmmeter, verifying tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method, or performing thermographic survey.
- (8) Confirm correct operation and sequencing of electrical and mechanical interlock systems.
- (9) Confirm correct application of manufacturer's recommended lubricants.
- (10) Inspect insulators for evidence of physical damage or contaminated surfaces.
- (11) Verify correct barrier installation and operation.
- (12) Exercise all active components.
- (13) Inspect all mechanical indicating devices for correct operation.
- (14) Verify that filters are in place and vents are clear.
- (15) Test operation, alignment, and penetration of instrument transformer withdrawal disconnects.

(16) Inspect control power transformers.

b. Electrical Tests

- (1) Perform insulation-resistance tests on each bus section.
- (2) Perform dielectric withstand voltage tests.
- (3) Perform insulation-resistance test on control wiring; Do not perform this test on wiring connected to solid-state components.
- (4) Perform control wiring performance test.
- (5) Perform primary current injection tests on the entire current circuit in each section of assembly.

3.5.1.2 Circuit Breakers

Low Voltage Molded Case with Solid State Trips

a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection

- (1) Compare nameplate data with specifications and approved shop drawings.
- (2) Inspect circuit breaker for correct mounting.
- (3) Operate circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
- (4) Inspect case for cracks or other defects.
- (5) Inspect all bolted electrical connections for high resistance using low resistance ohmmeter, verifying tightness of accessible bolted connections and/or cable connections by calibrated torque-wrench method, or performing thermographic survey.
- (6) Inspect mechanism contacts and arc chutes in unsealed units.

b. Electrical Tests

- (1) Perform contact-resistance tests.
- (2) Perform insulation-resistance tests.
- (3) Perform Breaker adjustments for final settings in accordance with Government provided settings.
- (4) Perform long-time delay time-current characteristic tests
- (5) Determine short-time pickup and delay by primary current injection.
- (6) Determine ground-fault pickup and time delay by primary current injection.
- (7) Determine instantaneous pickup current by primary injection.

3.5.1.3 Current Transformers

a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection

- (1) Compare equipment nameplate data with specifications and approved shop drawings.
- (2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
- (3) Verify correct connection.
- (4) Verify that adequate clearances exist between primary and secondary circuit.
- (5) Inspect all bolted electrical connections for high resistance using low-resistance ohmmeter, verifying tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method, or performing thermographic survey.
- (6) Verify that all required grounding and shorting connections provide good contact.

b. Electrical Tests

- (1) Perform resistance measurements through all bolted connections with low-resistance ohmmeter, if applicable.
- (2) Perform insulation-resistance tests.
- (3) Perform polarity tests.
- (4) Perform ratio-verification tests.

3.5.1.4 Metering and Instrumentation

a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection

- (1) Compare equipment nameplate data with specifications and approved shop drawings.
- (2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
- (3) Verify tightness of electrical connections.

b. Electrical Tests

- (1) Determine accuracy of meters at 25, 50, 75, and 100 percent of full scale.
- (2) Calibrate watthour meters according to manufacturer's published data.
- (3) Verify all instrument multipliers.
- (4) Electrically confirm that current transformer and voltage transformer secondary circuits are intact.

3.5.1.5 Grounding System

a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection

- (1) Inspect ground system for compliance with contract plans and

specifications.

b. Electrical Tests

- (1) **IEEE 81**. Perform ground-impedance measurements utilizing the fall-of-potential method. On systems consisting of interconnected ground rods, perform tests after interconnections are complete. On systems consisting of a single ground rod perform tests before any wire is connected. Take measurements in normally dry weather, not less than 48 hours after rainfall. Use a portable ground resistance tester in accordance with manufacturer's instructions to test each ground or group of grounds. Use an instrument equipped with a meter reading directly in ohms or fractions thereof to indicate the ground value of the ground rod or grounding systems under test.
- (2) Submit the measured ground resistance of each ground rod and grounding system, indicating the location of the rod and grounding system. Include the test method and test setup (i.e., pin location) used to determine ground resistance and soil conditions at the time the measurements were made.

3.5.2 Follow-Up Verification

Upon completion of acceptance checks, settings, and tests, show by demonstration in service that circuits and devices are in good operating condition and properly performing the intended function. Trip circuit breakers by operation of each protective device. Test each item to perform its function not less than three times. As an exception to requirements stated elsewhere in the contract, provide the Contracting Officer 5 working days advance notice of the dates and times for checks, settings, and tests.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 26 27 14.00 20

ELECTRICITY METERING

02/11

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI C12.1 (2008) Electric Meters Code for
Electricity Metering

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE C2 (2017; Errata 1-2 2017; INT 1 2017)
National Electrical Safety Code

IEEE C37.90.1 (2013) Standard for Surge Withstand
Capability (SWC) Tests for Relays and
Relay Systems Associated with Electric
Power Apparatus

IEEE C57.13 (2016) Requirements for Instrument
Transformers

IEEE Stds Dictionary (2009) IEEE Standards Dictionary: Glossary
of Terms & Definitions

INTERNATIONAL ELECTRICAL TESTING ASSOCIATION (NETA)

NETA ATS (2017; Errata 2017) Standard for
Acceptance Testing Specifications for
Electrical Power Equipment and Systems

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

ANSI C12.18 (2006; R 2016) Protocol Specification for
ANSI Type 2 Optical Port

ANSI C12.20 (2015; E 2018) Electricity Meters - 0.1,
0.2, and 0.5 Accuracy Classes

ANSI C12.7 (2014) Requirements for Watthour Meter
Sockets

NEMA C12.19 (2012) Utility Industry End Device Data
Tables

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2;
TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6;

TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10;
TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA
17-14; TIA 17-15; TIA 17-16; TIA 17-17)
National Electrical Code

1.2 DEFINITIONS

Unless otherwise specified or indicated, electrical and electronics terms used in these specifications, and on the drawings, shall be as defined in [IEEE Std Dictionary](#).

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval.

Technical data packages consisting of technical data and computer software (meaning technical data which relates to computer software) which are specifically identified in this project and which may be defined/required in other specifications shall be delivered strictly in accordance with the CONTRACT CLAUSES and in accordance with the Contract Data Requirements List, DD Form 1423. Data delivered shall be identified by reference to the particular specification paragraph against which it is furnished. All submittals not specified as technical data packages are considered 'shop drawings' under the Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement (FARS) and shall contain no proprietary information and be delivered with unrestricted rights.

Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section [01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING](#). Submit the following in accordance with Section [01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES](#), the CONTRACT CLAUSES and DD Form 1423:

[SD-02 Shop Drawings](#)

[Installation Drawings; G](#)

[SD-03 Product Data](#)

[Electricity meters; G](#)

The most recent meter product data shall be submitted as a Technical Data Package and shall be licensed to the project site. Any software shall be submitted on CD-ROM and [2](#) hard copies of the software user manual shall be submitted for each piece of software provided.

[Current transformer; G](#)

External [communications](#) devices; [G](#)

[Configuration Software; G](#)

The most recent version of the configuration software for each type (manufacturer and model) shall be submitted as a Technical Data Package and shall be licensed to the project site. Software shall be submitted on CD-ROM and [2](#) hard copies of the software user manual shall be submitted for each piece of software provided.

This page intentionally left blank.

SD-06 Test Reports

Acceptance checks and tests; G

System functional verification; G

Meter configuration template; G

Contractor shall fill in the meter configuration template and submit to the Activity for concurrence.

Meter configuration report; G

The meter configuration report shall be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Electricity Meters and Accessories, Data Package 5; G

Submit operation and maintenance data in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA and as specified herein.

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

System functional verification; G

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4.1 Installation Drawings

Drawings shall be provided in hard-copy and electronic format, and shall include but not be limited to the following:

- a. Wiring diagrams with terminals identified of advanced meter, current transformers, protocol modules, communications interfaces, and Ethernet connections.
- b. One-line diagram, including meters, switch(es), current transformers, protocol modules, communications interfaces, Ethernet connections, and fuses.

1.4.2 Standard Products

Provide materials and equipment that are products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of such products which are of equal material, design and workmanship. Products shall have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 1 year prior to bid opening. The 1-year period shall include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The product, or an earlier release of the product, shall have been on sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers catalogs, or brochures during the prior 1-year period. Where two or more items of the same class of equipment are required, these items shall be products of a single manufacturer; however, the component parts of the item need not be the products of the same manufacturer unless stated in this section.

1.4.3 Material and Equipment Manufacturing Data

Products manufactured more than 1 year prior to date of delivery to site shall not be used, unless specified otherwise.

1.5 MAINTENANCE

1.5.1 Additions to Operation and Maintenance Data

In addition to requirements of Data Package 5, include the following on the actual [electricity meters and accessories](#) provided:

- a. A condensed description of how the system operates
- b. Block diagram indicating major assemblies
- c. Troubleshooting information
- d. Preventive maintenance
- e. Prices for spare parts and supply list

1.6 WARRANTY

The equipment items and software shall be supported by service organizations which are reasonably convenient to the equipment installation in order to render satisfactory service to the equipment and software on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

1.7 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

1.7.1 System Requirements

Electricity metering, consisting of meters and associated equipment, will be used to record the electricity consumption and other values as described in the requirements that follow and as shown on the drawings. Communication system requirements are contained in a separate specification section as identified in paragraph entitled "Communications Interfaces".

1.7.2 Selection Criteria

Metering components and software are part of a system that includes the physical meter, data recorder function and communications method. Every building site identified shall include sufficient metering components to measure the electrical parameters identified and to store and communicate the values as required.

Contractor shall verify that the electricity meter installed on any building site is compatible with the base-wide metering system with respect to the types of meters selected and the method used to program the meters for initial use. Software and meter programming tools are necessary to set up the meters described by this specification. New software tools different from the meter programming methods currently used by base personnel will require separate approval for use.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 ELECTRICITY METERS AND ACCESSORIES

Provide meter(s) and connect the meter(s) to the existing AMI DAS. The contractor shall use the existing government laptop computers to configure the meter using existing software loaded on the computer. The contractor will not be allowed to modify any software or add any additional software to the computer. Alternatively, the government will configure the meter(s), which must be compatible with the existing system, using existing software. Contract shall insure that the meter(s) will transmit the specified data to the DAS. The current meters being used by MCB Camp Lejeune are: ION 8600A meters with X MB of memory.

2.1.1 Physical and Common Requirements

- a. Provide metering system components in accordance with the Metering System Schedule shown in this specification. Provide [Meter configuration template](#).
- b. Meter shall have NEMA 3R stainless steel enclosure for surface mounting with bottom or rear penetrations.
- c. Surge withstand capability shall conform to [IEEE C37.90.1](#).
- d. Use #12 SIS (XHHW, or equivalent) wiring with ring lugs for all meter connections. Color code and mark the conductors as follows:
 - (1) Red - Phase A CT - C1
 - (2) Orange - Phase B CT - C2
 - (3) Brown - Phase C CT - C3
 - (4) Gray with white stripe - neutral current return - C0
 - (5) Black - Phase A voltage - V1
 - (6) Yellow - Phase B voltage - V2
 - (7) Blue - Phase C voltage - V3
 - (8) White - Neutral voltage

2.1.2 [Current Transformer](#) Requirements

- a. Current transformer shall be installed with a rating as shown in the schedule.
- b. Current transformers shall have an Accuracy Class of 0.3 (with a maximum error of plus/minus 0.3 percent at 5.0 amperes) when operating within the specified rating factor.
- c. Current transformers shall be solid-core, bracket-mounted for new installations using ring-tongue lugs for electrical connections. Current transformers shall be accessible and the associated wiring shall be installed in an organized and neat workmanship arrangement. Current transformers that are retrofitted onto existing switchgear busbar can be a busbar split-core design.
- d. Current transformers shall have:
 - (1) Insulation Class: All 600 volt and below current transformers shall be rated 10 KV BIL.
 - (2) Frequency: Nominal 60 Hz.

- (3) Burden: Burden class shall be selected for the load.
- (4) Phase Angle Range: 0 to 60 degrees.
- e. Meter shall accept current input from standard instrument transformers (5A secondary current transformers).
- f. Current inputs shall have a continuous rating in accordance with [IEEE C57.13](#).
- g. Provide one single-ratio current transformer for each phase per power transformer with characteristics listed in the following table.

Single-Ratio Current Transformer Characteristics				
kVA	Sec. Volt	CT Ratio	RF	Meter Acc. Class
500	480Y/277	1200/5	1.33	0.3 thru B0.05

2.1.1.3 Meter Requirements

[Electricity meters](#) shall include the following features:

- a. Meter shall comply with [ANSI C12.1](#), [NEMA C12.19](#), and [ANSI C12.20](#).
- b. Meter sockets shall comply with [ANSI C12.7](#).
- c. Provide socket-mounted or panel mounted meters as indicated on the meter schedule.
- d. Meter shall be a Class 20, transformer rated design.
- e. Meter shall be rated for use at temperature from minus 40 degrees Centigrade to plus 70 degrees Centigrade.
- f. The meters shall have an electronic demand recording register and shall be secondary reading as indicated. The register shall be used to indicate maximum kilowatt demand as well as cumulative or continuously cumulative demand. Demand shall be measured on a block-interval basis and shall be capable of a 5 to 60 minute interval and initially set to a 15-minute interval. It shall have provisions to be programmed to calculate demand on a rolling interval basis. Meter readings shall be true RMS.
- g. The meter electronic register shall be of modular design with non-volatile data storage. Downloading meter stored data shall be capable via an optical port. Recording capability of data storage with a minimum capability of 89 days of 15 minute, 2 channel interval data. The meter shall be capable of providing at least 2 KYZ pulse outputs (dry contacts). Default initial configuration (unless identified otherwise by base personnel) shall be:
 - (1) First channel - kWh
 - (2) Second channel - kVARh
 - (3) KYZ output #1 - kWh
 - (4) KYZ output #2 - kVARh

- h. All meters shall have identical features available in accordance with this specification. The meter schedule identifies which features shall be activated at each meter location.
- i. Enable switches for Time of Use (TOU), pulse and load profile measurement module at the factory.
- j. Meter shall have an optical port on front of meter capable of speeds from 9600 to a minimum of 19.2k baud, and shall be initially set at 9600 baud. Optical device shall be compatible with ANSI C12.18.
- k. Meters shall be 120-480 volts auto ranging.
- l. Provide blank tag fixed to the meter faceplate for the addition of the meter multiplier, which will be the product of the current transformer and potential transformer ratio and will be filled in by base personnel on the job site. The meter's nameplate shall include:
 - (1) Meter ID number.
 - (2) Rated voltage.
 - (3) Current class.
 - (4) Metering form.
 - (5) Test amperes.
 - (6) Frequency.
 - (7) Catalog number.
 - (8) Manufacturing date.
- m. On switchboard style installations, provide switchboard case with disconnect means for meter removal incorporating short-circuiting of current transformer circuits.
- n. Meter covers shall be polycarbonate resins with an optical port and reset. Backup battery shall be easily accessible for change-out after removing the meter cover.
- o. The normal billing data scroll shall be fully programmable. Data scroll display shall include the following.
 - (1) Number of demand resets.
 - (2) End-of-interval indication.
 - (3) Maximum demand.
 - (4) New maximum demand indication.
 - (5) Cumulative or continuously cumulative.
 - (6) Time remaining in interval.
 - (7) Kilowatt hours.
- p. The register shall incorporate a built-in test mode that allows it to be tested without the loss of any data or parameters. The following quantities shall be available for display in the test mode:
 - (1) Present interval's accumulating demand.
 - (2) Maximum demand.
 - (3) Number of impulses being received by the register.
- q. Pulse module simple I/O board with programmable ratio selection.
- r. Meters shall be programmed after installation via an optical port. Optical display shall show TOU data, peak kWh, semi-peak kWh, off peak

kWh, and phase angles.

s. Self-monitoring to provide for:

- (1) Unprogrammed register.
- (2) RAM checksum error.
- (3) ROM checksum error.
- (4) Hardware failure.
- (5) Memory failure.
- (6) EPROM error.
- (7) Battery status (fault, condition, or time in service).

t. Liquid crystal alphanumeric displays, 9 digits, blinking squares confirm register operation. 6 Large digits for data and smaller digits for display identifier.

u. Display operations, programmable sequence with display identifiers. Display identifiers shall be selectable for each item. Continually sequence with time selectable for each item.

v. The meters shall support three modes of registers: Normal Mode, Alternate Mode, and Test Mode. The meter also shall support a "Toolbox" or "Service Information" (accessible in the field) through an optocom port to a separate computer using the supplied software to allow access to instantaneous service information such as voltage, current, power factor, load demand, and the phase angle for individual phases.

w. Meter shall have a standard 4 -year warranty.

2.1.4 Disconnect Method

- a. Provide a 10-pole safety disconnect complete with isolation devices for the voltage and current transformer inputs, including a shorting means for the current transformers.

2.1.5 Installation Methods

- a. Transformer Mounted ("XFMR" in Metering Systems Schedule). Meter base shall be located outside on the secondary side of the pad-mounted transformer.

2.2 COMMUNICATIONS INTERFACES

Meter shall have two-way communication with the existing data acquisition system (DAS). Provide a communications interface utilizing the existing MCB Camp Lejeune base-wide metering system or compatible with the existing system.

Provide interfacing software if a meter is used that is different than the existing meters at the Activity to ensure compatibility within the metering system.

Connect to the AMI network utilizing a fiber optic link to the closest connection point.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Electrical installations shall conform to [IEEE C2](#), [NFPA 70](#) (National Electrical Code), and to the requirements specified herein. Provide new equipment and materials unless indicated or specified otherwise.

3.1.1 Configuration Software

The standard meter shall include the latest available version of firmware and software. Meter shall either be programmed at the factory or shall be programmed in the field. Meters shall have a password that shall be provided to the contracting officer upon project completion. When field programming is performed, turn field programming device over to the Contracting Officer at completion of project. When interfacing software is used for a meter that is different than the existing meters in use at the Activity, turn the software over to the Contracting Officer at completion of the project.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Perform the following acceptance checks and tests on all installed meters.

3.2.1 Performance of [Acceptance Checks and Tests](#)

Perform in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and include the following visual and mechanical inspections and electrical tests, performed in accordance with [NETA ATS](#).

a. Meter Assembly

(1) Visual and mechanical inspection.

- (a) Compare equipment nameplate data with specifications and approved shop drawings.
- (b) Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Confirm the meter is firmly seated in the socket, the socket is not abnormally heated, the display is visible, and the ring and seal on the cover are intact.
- (c) Inspect all electrical connections to ensure they are tight. For Class 200 services, verify tightness of the service conductor terminations for high resistance using low-resistance ohmmeter, or by verifying tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method.
- (d) Record model number, serial number, firmware revision, software revision, and rated control voltage.
- (e) Verify operation of display and indicating devices.
- (f) Record password and user log-in for each meter.
- (g) Verify grounding of metering enclosure.
- (h) Set all required parameters including instrument transformer ratios, system type, frequency, power demand methods/intervals,

and communications requirements. Verify that the CT ratio and the PT ratio are properly included in the meter multiplier or the programming of the meter. Confirm that the multiplier is provided on the meter face or on the meter.

(i) Provide building meter installation sheet, per building for each facility. See example Graphic E-S1.

(j) Provide the completed meter installation schedule for the installation. See example Graphic E-S2

(k) Provide the completed meter data schedule for the installation. See example Graphic E-S3.

(2) Electrical tests.

(a) Apply voltage or current as appropriate to each analog input and verify correct measurement and indication.

(b) Confirm correct operation and setting of each auxiliary input/output feature including mechanical relay, digital, and analog.

(c) After initial system energization, confirm measurements and indications are consistent with loads present.

(d) Make note of, and report, any "Error-Code" or "Caution-Code" on the meter's display.

(3) Provide [meter configuration report](#).

b. Current Transformers

(1) Visual and mechanical inspection.

(a) Compare equipment nameplate data with specification and approved shop drawings.

(b) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.

(c) Verify correct connection, including polarity.

(d) Inspect all electrical connections to ensure they are tight.

(e) Verify that required grounding and shorting connections provide good contact.

(2) Electrical Tests.

Verify proper operation by reviewing the meter configuration report.

3.2.2 [System Functional Verification](#)

Verify that the installed meters are working correctly in accordance with the meter configuration report:

a. The correct meter form is installed.

- b. All voltage phases are present.
- c. Phase rotation is correct.
- d. Phase angles are correct.
- e. The new meter accurately measures power magnitude and direction, and can communicate as required by paragraph entitled "Communications Interfaces".

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 26 29 23

VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVE SYSTEMS UNDER 600 VOLTS

04/06

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

- IEEE 519 (2014) Recommended Practices and Requirements for Harmonic Control in Electrical Power Systems
- IEEE C62.41.1 (2002; R 2008) Guide on the Surges Environment in Low-Voltage (1000 V and Less) AC Power Circuits
- IEEE C62.41.2 (2002) Recommended Practice on Characterization of Surges in Low-Voltage (1000 V and Less) AC Power Circuits

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

- NEMA 250 (2018) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum)
- NEMA ICS 1 (2000; R 2015) Standard for Industrial Control and Systems: General Requirements
- NEMA ICS 3.1 (2009; R 2014) Guide for the Application, Handling, Storage, Installation and Maintenance of Medium-Voltage AC Contactors, Controllers and Control Centers
- NEMA ICS 6 (1993; R 2016) Industrial Control and Systems: Enclosures
- NEMA ICS 7 (2014) Adjustable-Speed Drives

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

- NFPA 70 (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2; TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6; TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10; TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA 17-14; TIA 17-15; TIA 17-16; TIA 17-17) National Electrical Code

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

- MIL-STD-461 (2015; Rev G) Requirements for the Control of Electromagnetic Interference

Characteristics of Subsystems and Equipment

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

47 CFR 15

Radio Frequency Devices

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 489

(2016) UL Standard for Safety Molded-Case
Circuit Breakers, Molded-Case Switches and
Circuit-Breaker Enclosures

UL 508C

(2002; Reprint Nov 2010) Power Conversion
Equipment

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 26 00 00.00 20 BASIC ELECTRICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS, and Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM apply to this section with additions and modifications specified herein.

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

1.3.1 Performance Requirements

1.3.1.1 Electromagnetic Interference Suppression

Computing devices, as defined by 47 CFR 15, MIL-STD-461 rules and regulations, shall be certified to comply with the requirements for class A computing devices and labeled as set forth in part 15.

1.3.1.2 Electromechanical and Electrical Components

Electrical and electromechanical components of the Variable Frequency Drive (VFD) shall not cause electromagnetic interference to adjacent electrical or electromechanical equipment while in operation.

1.3.2 Electrical Requirements

1.3.2.1 Power Line Surge Protection

IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2, IEEE 519 Control panel shall have surge protection, included within the panel to protect the unit from damaging transient voltage surges. Surge arrestor shall be mounted near the incoming power source and properly wired to all three phases and ground. Fuses shall not be used for surge protection.

1.3.2.2 Sensor and Control Wiring Surge Protection

I/O functions as specified shall be protected against surges induced on control and sensor wiring installed outdoors and as shown. The inputs and outputs shall be tested in both normal mode and common mode using the following two waveforms:

- a. A 10 microsecond by 1000 microsecond waveform with a peak voltage of 1500 volts and a peak current of 60 amperes.
- b. An 8 microsecond by 20 microsecond waveform with a peak voltage of 1000 volts and a peak current of 500 amperes.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Schematic Diagrams; G

Interconnecting Diagrams; G

Installation Drawings; G

Submit drawings for government approval prior to equipment construction or integration. Modifications to original drawings made during installation shall be immediately recorded for inclusion into the as-built drawings.

SD-03 Product Data

Variable Frequency Drives; G

Wires and Cables

Equipment Schedule

Include data indicating compatibility with motors being driven.

SD-06 Test Reports

VFD Test

Performance Verification Tests

Endurance Test

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Installation instructions

SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Reports

VFD Factory Test Plan; G

Factory test results

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Variable Frequency Drives, Data Package 4

Submit in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA. Provide service and maintenance information including preventive maintenance, assembly, and disassembly procedures. Include electrical drawings from electrical general

sections. Submit additional information necessary to provide complete operation, repair, and maintenance information, detailed to the smallest replaceable unit. Include copies of as-built submittals. Provide routine preventative maintenance instructions, and equipment required. Provide instructions on how to modify program settings, and modify the control program. Provide instructions on drive adjustment, trouble-shooting, and configuration. Provide instructions on process tuning and system calibration.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 Schematic Diagrams

Show circuits and device elements for each replaceable module. Schematic diagrams of printed circuit boards are permitted to group functional assemblies as devices, provided that sufficient information is provided for government maintenance personnel to verify proper operation of the functional assemblies.

1.5.2 Interconnecting Diagrams

Show interconnections between equipment assemblies, and external interfaces, including power and signal conductors. Include for enclosures and external devices.

1.5.3 Installation Drawings

Show floor plan of each site, with V.F.D.'s and motors indicated. Indicate ventilation requirements, adequate clearances, and cable routes.

1.5.4 Equipment Schedule

Provide schedule of equipment supplied. Schedule shall provide a cross reference between manufacturer data and identifiers indicated in shop drawings. Schedule shall include the total quantity of each item of equipment supplied. For complete assemblies, such as VFD's, provide the serial numbers of each assembly, and a sub-schedule of components within the assembly. Provide recommended spare parts listing for each assembly or component.

1.5.5 Installation instructions

Provide installation instructions issued by the manufacturer of the equipment, including notes and recommendations, prior to shipment to the site. Provide operation instructions prior to acceptance testing.

1.5.6 Factory Test Results

Document test results and submit to government within 7 working days after completion of test.

1.6 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Equipment delivered and placed in storage shall be stored with protection from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, or other contaminants.

1.7 WARRANTY

The complete system shall be warranted by the manufacturer for a period of one year, or the contracted period of any extended warrantee agreed upon by the contractor and the Government, after successful completion of the acceptance test. Any component failing to perform its function as specified and documented shall be repaired or replaced by the contractor at no additional cost to the Government. Items repaired or replaced shall be warranted for an additional period of at least one year from the date that it becomes functional again, as specified in FAR 52.246-21 Warranty of Construction.

1.8 MAINTENANCE

1.8.1 Spare Parts

Manufacturers provide spare parts in accordance with recommended spare parts list.

1.8.2 Maintenance Support

During the warranty period, the Contractor shall provide on-site, on-call maintenance services by Contractor's personnel on the following basis: The service shall be on a per-call basis with 36 hour response. Contractor shall support the maintenance of all hardware and software of the system. Various personnel of different expertise shall be sent on-site depending on the nature of the maintenance service required. Costs shall include travel, local transportation, living expenses, and labor rates of the service personnel while responding to the service request. The provisions of this Section are not in lieu of, nor relieve the Contractor of, warranty responsibilities covered in this specification. Should the result of the service request be the uncovering of a system defect covered under the warranty provisions, all costs for the call, including the labor necessary to identify the defect, shall be borne by the Contractor.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVES (VFD)

Provide frequency drive to control the speed of induction motor(s). The VFD shall include the following minimum functions, features and ratings.

- a. Input circuit breaker per **UL 489** with a minimum of 10,000 amps symmetrical interrupting capacity and door interlocked external operator.
- b. A converter stage per **UL 508C** shall change fixed voltage, fixed frequency, ac line power to a fixed dc voltage. The converter shall utilize a full wave bridge design incorporating diode rectifiers. Silicon Controlled Rectifiers (SCR) are not acceptable. The converter shall be insensitive to three phase rotation of the ac line and shall not cause displacement power factor of less than .95 lagging under any speed and load condition.
- c. An inverter stage shall change fixed dc voltage to variable frequency, variable voltage, ac for application to a standard NEMA design B squirrel cage motor. The inverter shall be switched in a manner to produce a sine coded pulse width modulated (PWM) output waveform.

- d. The VFD shall be capable of supplying 120 percent of rated full load current for one minute at maximum ambient temperature.
- e. The VFD shall be designed to operate from a 460 volt, plus or minus 10 percent, three phase, 60 Hz supply, and control motors with a corresponding voltage rating.
- f. Acceleration and deceleration time shall be independently adjustable from one second to 60 seconds.
- g. Adjustable full-time current limiting shall limit the current to a preset value which shall not exceed 120 percent of the controller rated current. The current limiting action shall maintain the V/Hz ratio constant so that variable torque can be maintained. Short time starting override shall allow starting current to reach 175 percent of controller rated current to maximum starting torque.
- h. The controllers shall be capable of producing an output frequency over the range of 3 Hz to 60 Hz (20 to one speed range), without low speed cogging. Over frequency protection shall be included such that a failure in the controller electronic circuitry shall not cause frequency to exceed 110 percent of the maximum controller output frequency selected.
- i. Minimum and maximum output frequency shall be adjustable over the following ranges: 1) Minimum frequency 3 Hz to 50 percent of maximum selected frequency; 2) Maximum frequency 40 Hz to 60 Hz.
- j. The controller efficiency at any speed shall not be less than 96 percent.
- k. The controllers shall be capable of being restarted into a motor coasting in the forward direction without tripping.
- l. Protection of power semiconductor components shall be accomplished without the use of fast acting semiconductor output fuses. Subjecting the controllers to any of the following conditions shall not result in component failure or the need for fuse replacement:
 - (1) Short circuit at controller output
 - (2) Ground fault at controller output
 - (3) Open circuit at controller output
 - (4) Input undervoltage
 - (5) Input overvoltage
 - (6) Loss of input phase
 - (7) AC line switching transients
 - (8) Instantaneous overload
 - (9) Sustained overload exceeding 115 percent of controller rated current
 - (10) Over temperature

(11) Phase reversal

- m. Solid state motor overload protection shall be included such that current exceeding an adjustable threshold shall activate a 60 second timing circuit. Should current remain above the threshold continuously for the timing period, the controller will automatically shut down.
- n. A slip compensation circuit shall be included which will sense changing motor load conditions and adjust output frequency to provide speed regulation of NEMA B motors to within plus or minus 0.5 percent of maximum speed without the necessity of a tachometer generator.
- o. The VFD shall be factory set for manual restart after the first protective circuit trip for malfunction (overcurrent, undervoltage, overvoltage or overtemperature) or an interruption of power. The VFD shall be capable of being set for automatic restart after a selected time delay. If the drive faults again within a specified time period (adjustable 0-60 seconds), a manual restart will be required.
- p. The VFD shall include external fault reset capability. All the necessary logic to accept an external fault reset contact shall be included.
- q. Provide critical speed lockout circuitry to prevent operating at frequencies with critical harmonics that cause resonant vibrations. The VFD shall have a minimum of three user selectable bandwidths.
- r. Provide the following operator control and monitoring devices mounted on the front panel of the VFD:
 - (1) Manual speed potentiometer.
 - (2) Hand-Off-Auto (HOA) switch.
 - (3) Power on light.
 - (4) Drive run power light.
 - (5) Local display.
- s. Provide properly sized NEMA rated by-pass and isolation contactors to enable operation of motor in the event of VFD failure. Mechanical and electrical interlocks shall be installed between the by-pass and isolation contactors. Provide a selector switch and transfer delay timer.

2.2 ENCLOSURES

Provide equipment enclosures conforming to NEMA 250, NEMA ICS 7, NEMA ICS 6.

2.3 WIRES AND CABLES

All wires and cables shall conform to NEMA 250, NEMA ICS 7, NFPA 70.

2.4 NAMEPLATES

Nameplates external to NEMA enclosures shall conform with the requirements of Section 26 00 00.00 20 BASIC ELECTRICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS.

Nameplates internal to enclosures shall be manufacturer's standard, with the exception that they must be permanent.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

2.5.1 VFD Factory Test Plan

To ensure quality, each VFD shall be subject to a series of in-plant quality control inspections before approval for shipment from the manufacturer's facilities. Provide test plans and test reports.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Per **NEMA ICS 3.1**, install equipment in accordance with the approved manufacturer's printed installation drawings, instructions, wiring diagrams, and as indicated on project drawings and the approved shop drawings. A field representative of the drive manufacturer shall supervise the installation of all equipment, and wiring.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Specified products shall be tested as a system for conformance to specification requirements prior to scheduling the acceptance tests. Contractor shall conduct performance verification tests in the presence of Government representative, observing and documenting complete compliance of the system to the specifications. Contractor shall submit a signed copy of the test results, certifying proper system operation before scheduling tests.

3.2.1 VFD Test

A proposed test plan shall be submitted to the contracting officer at least 28 calendar days prior to proposed testing for approval. The tests shall conform to **NEMA ICS 1**, **NEMA ICS 7**, and all manufacturer's safety regulations. The Government reserves the right to witness all tests and review any documentation. The contractor shall inform the Government at least 14 working days prior to the dates of testing. Contractor shall provide video tapes, if available, of all training provided to the Government for subsequent use in training new personnel. All training aids, texts, and expendable support material for a self-sufficient presentation shall be provided, the amount of which to be determined by the contracting officer.

3.2.2 Performance Verification Tests

"Performance Verification Test" plan shall provide the step by step procedure required to establish formal verification of the performance of the VFD. Compliance with the specification requirements shall be verified by inspections, review of critical data, demonstrations, and tests. The Government reserves the right to witness all tests, review data, and request other such additional inspections and repeat tests as necessary to ensure that the system and provided services conform to the stated requirements. The contractor shall inform the Government 14 calendar days prior to the date the test is to be conducted.

3.2.3 Endurance Test

Immediately upon completion of the performance verification test, the endurance test shall commence. The system shall be operated at varying rates for not less than 192 consecutive hours, at an average effectiveness level of .9998, to demonstrate proper functioning of the complete PCS. Continue the test on a day-to-day basis until performance standard is met. During the endurance test, the contractor shall not be allowed in the building. The system shall respond as designed.

3.3 DEMONSTRATION

3.3.1 Training

Coordinate training requirements with the Contracting Officer.

3.3.1.1 Instructions to Government Personnel

Provide the services of competent instructors who will give full instruction to designated personnel in operation, maintenance, calibration, configuration, and programming of the complete control system. Orient the training specifically to the system installed. Instructors shall be thoroughly familiar with the subject matter they are to teach. The Government personnel designated to attend the training will have a high school education or equivalent. The number of training days of instruction furnished shall be as specified. A training day is defined as eight hours of instruction, including two 15-minute breaks and excluding lunch time; Monday through Friday. Provide a training manual for each student at each training phase which describes in detail the material included in each training program. Provide one additional copy for archiving. Provide equipment and materials required for classroom training. Provide a list of additional related courses, and offers, noting any courses recommended. List each training course individually by name, including duration, approximate cost per person, and location of course. Unused copies of training manuals shall be turned over to the Government at the end of last training session.

3.3.1.2 Operating Personnel Training Program

Provide one 2-hour training session at the site at a time and place mutually agreeable between the Contractor and the Government. Provide session to train 4 operation personnel in the functional operations of the system and the procedures that personnel will follow in system operation. This training shall include:

- a. System overview
- b. General theory of operation
- c. System operation
- d. Alarm formats
- e. Failure recovery procedures
- f. Troubleshooting

3.3.1.3 Engineering/Maintenance Personnel Training

Accomplish the training program as specified. Training shall be conducted on site at a location designated by the Government. Provide a one-day training session to train 4 engineering personnel in the functional operations of the system. This training shall include:

- a. System overview
- b. General theory of operation
- c. System operation
- d. System configuration
- e. Alarm formats
- f. Failure recovery procedures
- g. Troubleshooting and repair
- h. Maintenance and calibration
- i. System programming and configuration

-- End of Section --

SECTION 26 32 13.00 20

SINGLE OPERATION GENERATOR SETS

08/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D975 (2018a) Standard Specification for Diesel Fuel Oils

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 115 (2009) Guide for Test Procedures for Synchronous Machines: Part I Acceptance and Performance Testing; Part II Test Procedures and Parameter Determination for Dynamic Analysis

IEEE C2 (2017; Errata 1-2 2017; INT 1 2017) National Electrical Safety Code

IEEE C50.12 (2005; R 2010) Standard for Salient Pole 50 HZ and 60 Hz Synchronous Generators and Generation/Motors for Hydraulic Turbine Applications Rated 5 MVA and above

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC IBC (2018) International Building Code

INTERNATIONAL ELECTRICAL TESTING ASSOCIATION (NETA)

NETA ATS (2017; Errata 2017) Standard for Acceptance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Equipment and Systems

INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATION FOR STANDARDIZATION (ISO)

ISO 3046 (2002, 2006, 2009, 2001) Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines - Performance--Part 1, 3, 4, 5, 6

ISO 8528 (1993; R 2018) Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engine Driven Alternating Current Generator Sets--Part 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 12, 13

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA C50.10 (1990) Rotating Electrical Machinery -

Synchronous Machines

NEMA ICS 6 (1993; R 2016) Industrial Control and
Systems: Enclosures

NEMA MG 1 (2016; SUPP 2016) Motors and Generators

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 30 (2018) Flammable and Combustible Liquids
Code

NFPA 37 (2018) Standard for the Installation and
Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and
Gas Turbines

NFPA 70 (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2;
TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6;
TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10;
TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA
17-14; TIA 17-15; TIA 17-16; TIA 17-17)
National Electrical Code

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

MIL-DTL-16884 (2017; Rev P) Fuel, Naval Distillate

MIL-DTL-5624 (2016; Rev W) Turbine Fuel, Aviation,
Grades JP-4 and JP-5

MIL-STD-461 (2015; Rev G) Requirements for the Control
of Electromagnetic Interference
Characteristics of Subsystems and Equipment

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

CID A-A-52557 (2001; Rev A; Notice 1) Fuel Oil, Diesel;
for Posts, Camps and Stations

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

40 CFR 60 Standards of Performance for New
Stationary Sources

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 1236 (2015; Reprint Mar 2016) UL Standard for
Safety Battery Chargers for Charging
Engine-Starter Batteries

UL 142 (2006; Reprint Jul 2013) Steel Aboveground
Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids

UL 429 (2013) Electrically Operated Valves

UL 467 (2013; Reprint Jun 2017) UL Standard for
Safety Grounding and Bonding Equipment

UL 489 (2016) UL Standard for Safety Molded-Case

Circuit Breakers, Molded-Case Switches and
Circuit-Breaker Enclosures

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 26 00 00.00 20 BASIC ELECTRICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS, and Section 26 08 00 APPARATUS INSPECTION AND TESTING apply to this section except as modified herein.

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

1.3.1 Engine-Generator Set Data

Submit data pertaining to the diesel engine-generator set and to the auxiliary equipment including but not limited to the following:

- a. Make of engine.
- b. Type or model of engine.
- c. Gross bhp rating of engine must be the total rated power output before deducting power requirements of electric motor-driven equipment or engine driven radiator fan.
- d. Net brake power rating of engine must include deductions for the total power requirements of electric motor-driven or engine-driven accessories as defined in ISO 3046. Net ratings must include a deduction in power output for cooling media system power requirements including radiator fans and any other power consuming devices required to provide cooling as specified.
- e. Strokes per cycle.
- f. Number of cylinders.
- g. Bore and stroke, inches.
- h. Engine speed, rpm.
- i. Piston speed, fpm.
- j. kW power rating of engine-generator set as defined in the paragraph ENGINE-GENERATOR SET RATINGS AND PERFORMANCE.
- k. Induction method (naturally aspirated, turbocharged).
- l. Intercooler type (air-to-air or jacket water).
- m. Governor type, make, and model.
- n. Make and model of turbochargers.

1.3.2 Engine-Generator Set Efficiencies

Submit data pertaining to the diesel engine-generator set including but not limited to the following: Loads must be calculated on basis of rated engine-generator set power.

- a. Fuel consumption at 0.80 power factor, gallons per hr.

- (1) 1/2 load
- (2) 3/4 load
- (3) Full load

b. Generator efficiency at 0.80 power factor (percent).

- (1) 1/2 load
- (2) 3/4 load
- (3) Full load

c. Radiator capacity at design conditions.

- (1) Coolant must be antifreeze mixture as specified under paragraph COOLING SYSTEM.
- (2) *gpm* of coolant
- (3) *cfm* of air through radiator
- (4) *Btu per hr* of heat exchange based on optimum coolant temperature to and from engine.

1.3.3 *Diesel Engine Data*

Submit data certified by the engine manufacturer including but not limited to the following: Loads must be calculated on basis of rated engine-generator set power.

- a. Approximate exhaust temperature degrees *F* at full load
- b. Weight of exhaust gas at full load *lb per hr*
- c. Weight of intake air at full load *lb per hr*
- d. Total heat rejected at full load *Btu per hr*
 - (1) To jacket coolant system
 - (2) To fuel oil cooling system
- e. Emissions *lb per hr* at full load
 - (1) Total Suspended Particulate
 - (2) Particulate matter with an average aerodynamic diameter of 10 microns (PM-10)
 - (3) Sulfur dioxides
 - (4) Nitrogen Oxides (as N02)
 - (5) Carbon Monoxide
 - (6) Volatile Organic Compounds

f. Visible Emissions (percent opacity) at full load

1.3.4 Generator and Exciter Data

Submit data certified by the generator manufacturer including but not limited to the following:

- a. Make and model number of generator
- b. kW rating of generator
- c. Generator reactances
 - (1) Synchronous reactance, X_d
 - (2) Transient reactance, X'_d
 - (3) Subtransient reactance, X''_d
 - (4) Negative sequence reactance, X_2
 - (5) Zero sequence reactance, X_0

1.3.5 Capacity Calculations for Engine-Generator Set

Calculations must verify that the engine-generator set power rating is adequate for the load described in the paragraph LOAD PROFILE.

1.3.6 Torsional Vibration Stress Analysis Computations

Torsional vibrational stresses in the crankshaft and generator shaft of assembled diesel engine and driven generator must not exceed 5000 psi when engine is driving generator at rated speed while assembled unit is loaded to rated engine-generator set power. Computations must be based on a mathematical model of the assembled generator set provided or based on calculations using measured values from tests on a unit identical to the one provided. Calculations based on models of, or measured data from, the unassembled engine and generator will not be acceptable. Calculations must include:

- a. A description of the system relating information pertinent to analysis such as operating speedrange and identification plate data.
- b. A mass elastic assembly drawing, showing the arrangement of the units in the generator set and dimensions of shafting, including minimum diameters (or section moduli) of shafting in the system.
- c. A labeled line diagram of the mass elastic system indicating values of masses, stiffness, equivalent lengths, and equivalent diameters including basic assumptions and definition of terms.
- d. Sample computations showing procedures used to obtain resulting stress values.
- e. Computations indicating assembled engine-generator speed of 1800 rpm with assembly loaded to rated generator power and the resulting computed critical torsional stress values in the assembled engine crankshaft and generator shaft.

1.3.7 Capacity Calculations for Batteries

Calculation must verify that the engine starting battery capacity exceeds dc power requirements.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Engine-Generator Set and Auxiliary Equipment; G

SD-03 Product Data

Engine-Generator Set Data; G

Engine-Generator Set Efficiencies; G

Diesel Engine Data; G

Generator and Exciter Data; G

Diesel Engine-Generator Set; G

Auxiliary Systems and Equipment; G

Remote Alarm Annunciator; G

SD-05 Design Data

Capacity Calculations for Engine-Generator Set; G

Torsional Vibration Stress Analysis Computations; G

Capacity Calculations For Batteries; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Acceptance Checks and Tests; G

Functional Acceptance Tests; G

Functional Acceptance Test Procedure; G

SD-07 Certificates

Vibration Isolation System Certification; G

Fuel System Certification; G

Start-Up Engineer Qualification Resume; G

Instructor's Qualification Resume; G

SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Reports

Engine Tests; G

Generator Tests; G

Assembled Engine-Generator Set Tests; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Diesel Engine-Generator Set, Data Package 4; G

Auxiliary Systems and Equipment, Data Package 4; G

Preliminary Assembled Operation and Maintenance Manuals; G

Submit in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA and the paragraph ASSEMBLED OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS.

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Posted Operating Instructions; G

Training Plan; G

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 Drawing Requirements

1.5.1.1 Engine-Generator Set and Auxiliary Equipment

Submit drawings pertaining to the engine-generator set and auxiliary equipment, including but not limited to the following:

- a. Certified outline, general arrangement (setting plan), and anchor bolt details. Show total weight and center of gravity of assembled equipment on the steel subbase.
- b. Detailed elementary, schematic wiring, and interconnection diagrams of the engine starting system, jacket coolant heating system, engine protective devices, engine alarm devices, engine speed governor system, generator and excitation system, and other integral devices.
- c. Detailed elementary, schematic wiring; and interconnection diagrams of the diesel fuel system, starting battery system, engine-generator control panel, generator circuit breaker, and remote alarm annunciator.
- d. Dimensional drawings or catalog cuts of exhaust silencers, radiator, diesel fuel day tanks, fuel oil cooler, valves and pumps, intake filters, vibration isolators, and other auxiliary equipment not integral with the engine-generator set.

1.5.2 Vibration Isolation System Certification

Submit certification from the manufacturer that the vibration isolation system will reduce the vibration to the limits specified in the paragraph

VIBRATION ISOLATION SYSTEM.

1.5.3 Fuel System Certification

When the diesel fuel system requires a fuel oil cooler as described in the paragraph FUEL OIL COOLER, submit certification from the engine manufacturer that the fuel system design is satisfactory.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver equipment on pallets or blocking wrapped in heavy-duty plastic, sealed to protect parts and assemblies from moisture and dirt. Plug piping, conduit, exhaust, and air intake openings. Protect and prepare batteries for shipment as recommended by the battery manufacturer. Store auxiliary equipment at the site in covered enclosures, protected from atmospheric moisture, dirt, and ground water.

1.7 SITE CONDITIONS

Protect the components of the engine-generator set, including cooling system components, pumps, fans, and similar auxiliaries when not operating and provide components capable of the specified outputs in the following environment:

- a. Site Location: Jacksonville, NC
- b. Site Elevation: 23 feet above mean sea level
- c. Ambient Temperatures:
 - (1) Maximum 97 degrees F.
 - (2) Minimum 20 degrees F.
- d. Design Wind Velocity: 35 mph.
- e. Seismic Zone: As defined by ICC IBC.

1.8 MAINTENANCE

1.8.1 Extra Materials

1.8.1.1 Paint

Furnish one gallon of identical paint used on engine-generator set in manufacturer's sealed container with each engine-generator set.

1.8.1.2 Filters

Furnish four spare replacement elements in their original containers for each filter with each unit.

1.8.2 Posted Operating Instructions

Provide proposed operating instructions for the engine-generator set and auxiliary equipment laminated between matte-surface thermoplastic sheets and suitable for placement adjacent to corresponding equipment. After approval, install operating instructions where directed.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 DIESEL ENGINE-GENERATOR SET

Provide diesel engine-generator sets consisting of a water cooled diesel engine direct connected to an ac generator with a brushless excitation system and accessories. Equipment and materials must be the manufacturer's standard products offered in catalogs for commercial or industrial use.

2.1.1 Engine-Generator Set Ratings and Performance

ISO 8528. Each engine-generator set must have a power rating of not less than 75 kW at 0.8 power factor and supply 208Y/120 -volt, three-phase, 60 -Hz ac output. Coordinate the engine-generator set to ensure an installed rating in the environment described in paragraph SITE CONDITIONS. The power of the engine-generator set is defined as the power output available at the generator terminals excluding the electrical power absorbed by the essential independent auxiliaries. Essential independent auxiliaries are items of equipment which are essential for the continued or repeated operation of the engine which uses power supplied from a source other than the engine.

2.1.1.1 Diesel Engine Capacity

The engine capacity must be based on the following:

- a. Engine burning diesel fuel conforming to CID A-A-52557, Grade DF-2, MIL-DTL-16884, ASTM D975, Grade 2-D, or MIL-DTL-5624, Grade JP-5 at an ambient temperature of 85 degrees F. For stationary engines operated in the United States, diesel fuel requirements are found in 40 CFR 60 Subpart IIII.
- b. Engine cooled by a radiator fan mechanically driven by the diesel engine or remote with a motor driven fan.
- c. Engine cooled by coolant mixture of water and ethylene glycol, 50 percent by volume of each.

2.1.1.2 Diesel Engine Emission Limits

Engine must be certified by the manufacturer to meet applicable EPA emission standards found in 40 CFR 60 Subpart IIII. In addition, engine must meet any applicable state or local emission requirements (ex: California SCAQMD).

2.1.1.3 Performance Class

The voltage and frequency behavior of the generator set must be in accordance with ISO 8528 operating limit values for performance Class G3.

2.1.1.4 Load Profile

The diesel engine-generator set must be of adequate capacity necessary for the following load profile:

- a. Uninterruptible power supplies (UPS) 45 kVA

2.1.2 Diesel Engines and Accessories

ISO 3046. Diesel engines must be four-cycle naturally aspirated, or turbocharged, or turbocharged and intercooled; vertical in-line or vertical Vee type; designed for stationary service. Engines must be capable of immediate acceleration from rest to normal speed without intermediate idle/warm up period or prelubrication to provide essential electrical power. Two-cycle engines are not acceptable.

2.1.2.1 Subbase Mounting

Mount each engine-generator set on a structural steel subbase sized to support the engine, generator, and necessary accessories, auxiliaries and control equipment to produce a complete self-contained unit as standard with the manufacturer. Design the structural subbase to properly support the equipment and maintain proper alignment of the engine-generator set in the specified seismic zone. In addition, provide subbase with both lifting rings and jacking pads properly located to facilitate shipping and installation of the unit. Factory align engine and generator on the subbase and securely bolt into place in accordance with the manufacturer's standard practice. Crankshaft must have rigid coupling for connection to the generator.

2.1.2.2 Assembly

Completely shop assemble each engine-generator set on its structural steel subbase. Paint entire unit with manufacturer's standard paints and colors. After factory tests and before shipping, thoroughly clean and retouch painting as necessary to provide complete protection.

2.1.2.3 Turbocharger

If required by the manufacturer to meet the engine-generator set rating, provide turbine type driven by exhaust gas from engine cylinders, and direct connected to the blower supplying air to the engine intake manifold.

2.1.2.4 Intercooler

Provide manufacturer's standard intercooler for engine size specified.

2.1.2.5 Crankcase Protection

Provide manufacturer's standard method of preventing crankcase explosions and standard method of crankcase ventilation.

2.1.2.6 Engine Lubricating Oil System

Provide each engine with the manufacturer's standard full pressure lubricating oil system arranged to cool the pistons and to distribute oil to moving parts of the engine. Provide oil type and oil filters as recommended by the engine manufacturer.

2.1.2.7 Engine Cooling System

Provide each engine with the manufacturer's standard jacket water pump. Provide a thermostatic control valve in the jacket coolant system for each engine-generator set to maintain a constant jacket coolant temperature to the engine.

2.1.2.8 Engine Fuel System

Provide each engine with the manufacturer's standard fuel system integral with the engine, complete with necessary piping, fittings, and valves for connecting items of equipment which are a part of the system. Provide engine manufacturer's standard hand priming pump. Provide manufacturer's standard filter for each engine, of the throwaway filter element type, consisting of shell filter elements, drains, and necessary connections and fittings.

2.1.2.9 Engine Intake Filter

Provide intake filter assemblies for each engine of the oil bath or dry type, as standard with the manufacturer. Filters must be capable of removing a minimum of 92 percent of dirt and abrasive 3 microns and larger from intake air. Size filters to suit engine requirements at 100 percent of rated full load. Design unit for field access for maintenance purposes.

2.1.2.10 Engine Starting System

Starting must be accomplished using an adequately sized dc starter system with a positive shift solenoid to engage the starter motor and to crank the engine continuously for 60 seconds without overheating.

2.1.2.11 Jacket Coolant Heating System

Provide a factory-installed, 120 volts ac, jacket coolant heating system to ensure rapid starting. Thermostatically control heater at the temperature recommended by engine manufacturer. Include necessary equipment, piping, controls, wiring, and accessories.

2.1.2.12 Engine Protective (Shutdown) Devices

Equip each engine with devices to shut down the engine by shutting off the fuel supply to the engine via a fuel shutoff solenoid. Auxiliary contacts must be suitable for activating a remote alarm system. Shutdown must open the associated generator circuit breaker. Provide the following shutdown devices:

- a. Overspeed device which operates when engine speed exceeds normal synchronous speed by 18 percent or as recommended by manufacturer. Device must require manual reset.
- b. Pressure switch which operates when lubricating oil pressure to engine drops below a preset value.
- c. Temperature switch which operates when jacket coolant temperature exceeds a preset value.
- d. Device which operates when the coolant level in the radiator drops below a preset level.
- e. Other shutdown devices as recommended by the engine manufacturer.

2.1.2.13 Engine Alarm Devices

Equip each engine with alarm devices. Auxiliary contacts must be suitable for activating a remote alarm system. Alarm devices must have factory-fixed set points. Provide the following alarm contact devices:

- a. Pressure switch which operates when lubricating oil pressure drops below a preset value.
- b. Temperature switch which operates when jacket coolant temperature exceeds a preset value.
- c. Temperature switch which operates when jacket coolant temperature is too low.
- d. Other alarm devices as recommended by the engine manufacturer.

2.1.2.14 Miscellaneous Engine Accessories

Provide the following engine accessories where the manufacturer's standard design permits:

- a. Piping on engine to inlet and outlet connections, including nonstandard companion flanges.
- b. Structural steel subbase and vibration isolators, foundation bolts, nuts, and pipe sleeves.
- c. Level jack screws or shims, as required.
- d. Rails, chocks, and shims for installation of subbase on the foundation.
- e. Removable guard, around fan. Support guard, on engine subbase, to suit manufacturer's standard.

2.1.2.15 Engine Speed Governor System

Provide a forward acting type engine speed governor system. Steady-state frequency band and frequency regulation (droop) must be in accordance with the operating limit values of the performance class specified in the paragraph PERFORMANCE CLASS.

2.1.3 Generator and Excitation System

2.1.3.1 Generator

Provide salient-pole type, ac, brushless-excited, revolving field, air-cooled, self-ventilated, dripproof guarded, coupled type, synchronous generator conforming to NEMA MG 1, Part 22, NEMA C50.10, and IEEE C50.12. Generator must be rated for standby duty at 100 percent of the power rating of the engine-generator set as specified in paragraph ENGINE-GENERATOR SET RATINGS AND PERFORMANCE. Temperature rise of each of the various parts of the generator must not exceed 130 degrees C as measured by resistance, based on a maximum ambient temperature of 40 degrees C. Winding insulation must be Class H.

- a. Stator: Stator windings must be 2/3 pitch design, 10-12 lead reconnectable with VPI insulated coils.
- b. Rotor: The rotor must have connected amortiser windings.
- c. Generator Space Heater: Provide 120 volt ac heaters. Heater capacity must be as recommended by the generator manufacturer to aid in keeping the generator insulation dry.

- d. Grounding: Provide non-corrosive steel grounding pads located at two opposite mounting legs.
- e. Filters: Provide manufacturer's standard generator cooling air filter assembly.

2.1.3.2 Excitation System

Provide a brushless excitation system consisting of an exciter and rotating rectifier assembly integral with the generator and a voltage regulator. Insulation class for parts integral with the generator must be as specified in paragraph GENERATOR. System must provide a minimum short circuit of 300 percent rated engine-generator set current for at least 10 seconds. Steady state voltage regulation must be in accordance with the operating limit values of the performance class specified in the paragraph PERFORMANCE CLASS.

- a. Exciter and Rotating Rectifier Assembly: Rectifiers must be provided with surge voltage protection.
- c. Voltage Regulator: Voltage regulator must be solid state or digital, automatic, three-phase sensing, volts per hertz type regulator. Voltage variation for any 40 degree C change over the operating temperature range must be less than plus or minus 1.0 percent. Operating temperature must be minus 40 degree C to plus 70 degree C. Voltage adjust range must be plus to minus 5.0 percent of nominal. Inherent regulator features must include overexcitation shutdown.

2.1.3.3 Electromagnetic Interference (EMI) Suppression

Provide as an integral part of the generator and excitation system, EMI suppression complying with MIL-STD-461.

2.2 ENGINE-GENERATOR SET AUXILIARY SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

Provide auxiliary systems and equipment designed for continuous duty at 100 percent of the power rating of the engine-generator set as specified in the paragraph ENGINE-GENERATOR SET RATINGS AND PERFORMANCE.

2.2.1 Vibration Isolation System

Install the subbase on vibration isolators that are secured to a suitable concrete foundation. Provide isolators as recommended by the engine-generator set and isolator manufacturers and provide integral or external lateral support to limit lateral movement and overturning moments. The isolation system must reduce the vibration transmitted to the adjacent floor slab to a maximum of 0.0015 inch total amplitude throughout the frequency range down to 65 Hz.

2.2.2 Exhaust System

Provide exhaust systems for each engine.

2.2.2.1 Exhaust Silencers

A residential class silencer must be provided for each engine which will reduce the exhaust sound spectrum by the following listed values at a 75 foot radius from the outlet, with generator set loaded to rated capacity

and clear weather. Inlet and outlet connections must be flanged.

Octave Band Center Frequency (Hertz)								
Minimum Silencer Attenuation Decibels	63	125	250	500	1000	2000	4000	8000
Residential Class	10	25	32	30	25	25	24	23

2.2.3 Cooling System

Provide the specified cooling water system. Properly size equipment to handle the flow rate and pressure losses of the coolant mixture specified in the paragraph DIESEL ENGINE CAPACITY, and at the site elevation specified in the paragraph SITE CONDITIONS.

2.2.3.1 Radiators

Provide for each engine-generator set, as standard with the manufacturer.

- a. Design Conditions: Each radiator unit must have ample capacity to remove not less than the total **Btu per hour** of heat rejected by its respective engine at 100 percent full-rated load to the jacket water, fuel oil, and lubricating oil system, and intercooler. Radiator capacity must be rated at optimum temperature of coolant leaving the engine and intercooler as recommended by the engine manufacturer with an ambient dry bulb air temperature outside the enclosure of **91.0 degrees F** maximum, and **26.8 degrees F** minimum at the site elevation specified in the paragraph SITE CONDITIONS, and with the coolant mixture specified in the paragraph DIESEL ENGINE CAPACITY. Pressure drop through the radiator must not exceed **6 psi** when circulating the maximum required coolant flow. Radiator air velocity must be a maximum of **1500 feet per minute**.
- b. Coolant solution must be a mixture of clean water and ethylene glycol, 50 percent by volume each. Provide an anti-freeze solution tester suitable for the mixture.

2.2.4 Diesel Fuel System

NFPA 30 and **NFPA 37** and the requirements herein.

2.2.4.1 Diesel Fuel Piping System

Factory installed piping must conform to the engine manufacturer's standard.

2.2.4.2 Diesel Fuel Supply System

Provide 120 volt ac diesel fuel supply system. Include necessary equipment, piping, controls, wiring, and accessories.

- a. All Tanks: **UL 142**. Provide integral in skid double wall (110 percent containment) diesel fuel tanks with a minimum capacity of **24** hours of engine-generator set operation at full-rated load. Epoxy coat day tanks inside and prime and paint outside. Construct tanks of not less than **3/16 inch** steel plate with welded joints and necessary stiffeners

on exterior of tank. Provide a braced structural steel framework support. Weld tank top tight. Provide 4 1/2 inch square inspection port with a 2 inch NPT fill connection and spill box. Provide proper normal and emergency venting for the primary tank and emergency venting only for the secondary tank / containment basin in accordance with UL 142 requirements.

- b. Float Switches for Day Tanks: Provide tank-top mounted or external float cage, single-pole, single-throw type designed for use on fuel oil tanks. Arrange high level float switches to close on rise of liquid level, and low level float switches to close on fall of liquid level. Mount float cage units with isolating and drain valves. Contacts must be suitable for the station battery voltage.
 - (1) Critical low level float switch which must activate at 5 percent of normal liquid level must shut engine off.
 - (2) Low-low level float switch which must activate alarm at 30 percent of normal liquid level.
 - (3) Low level float switch which must open the fuel oil solenoid valve and start the fuel transfer pump at 75 percent of normal liquid level.
 - (4) High level float switch which must close the fuel oil solenoid valve and stop the fuel transfer pump at 90 percent of normal liquid level.
 - (5) Critical high level float switch which must activate alarm at 95 percent of normal liquid level.
- c. Leak Detector Switch for all tanks: Actuates when fuel is detected in containment basin, stops fuel transfer pump, and closes the fuel oil solenoid valve.
- d. Control panel must include the following accessories.
 - (1) Power available LED (green).
 - (2) Critical low fuel alarm contacts for shut down of engine.
 - (3) Low-low level fuel alarm LED.
 - (4) Low-low level fuel alarm contacts for remote annunciator.
 - (5) Critical high level fuel alarm LED.
 - (6) Leak detecting alarm LED.
 - (7) Alarm horn.
- e. Tank Gages for all tanks: Provide buoyant force type gages for diesel fuel tanks with dial indicator not less than 4 inches in size and arranged for top mounting. Calibrate each reading dial or scale for its specific tank to read from empty to full, with intermediate points of 1/4, 1/2, and 3/4.
- f. Integral Base tanks used as Primary tank: Provide a 2 inch opening at the tank fillport, fitted an overfill prevention valve (OPV).

Additionally, the fill opening must be perpendicular to the tank in order to allow operation of the OPV. Integral base tank must be sized and configured such that the filling and venting nozzles are outside the generator cabinet for ease of accessibility, inspection, and maintenance. Level gage must be in the line of sight from the fill port.

2.2.4.3 Fuel Transfer Pumps

Fuel transfer pumps may be mounted on the day tank. Pumps must be horizontal, positive displacement. Direct-connect pump to motor through a flexible coupling. Equip each pump with a bypass relief valve, if not provided with an internal relief valve. Provide motor and controller in accordance with paragraph ELECTRICAL SUPPORT EQUIPMENT.

2.2.4.4 Fuel Oil Solenoid Valve

UL 429. Provide electric solenoid type control valve for each day tank. Solenoid must be rated for starting battery voltage. Valve body must have a minimum working pressure rating of 150 psig at 200 degrees F. Valve must be capable of passing 0 to 10 gpm of fuel oil. Valves must be two-way, direct acting, normally closed (open when energized, closed when de-energized), with brass stainless steel body and resilient seat material. Solenoid enclosures must be NEMA ICS 6, Type 1. Body connections must be same size as connecting piping. Valve must be in line before the fuel pump.

2.2.4.5 Fuel Oil Cooler

Provide an air cooled fuel oil cooler if the temperature of the fuel returned to the tank from the engine will cause overheating of the tank fuel above the maximum fuel temperature allowed by the engine manufacturer when operating at maximum rated generator power output and low fuel level in the tank. The fuel oil cooler must be furnished by the engine manufacturer for the application and the installation must be complete including piping and power requirements.

2.2.5 Starting Battery System

Provide a 24-volt dc starting battery installation for starting of each engine-generator set utilizing an electric cranking system.

2.2.5.1 Engine Starting Battery

Provide maintenance free, sealed, lead-acid, SAE Type D diesel engine starting batteries. Batteries must have sufficient capacity to provide 60 seconds of continuous cranking of the engine in an ambient temperature of 26.8 degrees F.

2.2.5.2 Starting Battery Charger

UL 1236. Provide 120 volt ac, enclosed, automatic equalizing, dual-rate, solid-state, constant voltage type battery charger with automatic ac line compensation. Dc output must be voltage regulated and current limited. Charger must have two ranges, float and equalize, and must provide continuous taper charging. The charger must have a continuous output rating of not less than 10 amperes and must be sized to recharge the engine starting batteries in a minimum of 8 hours while providing the control power needs of the engine-generator set. Enclosure must be NEMA ICS 6, Type

3R. The following accessories must be included:

- a. Dc ammeter
- b. Dc voltmeter
- c. Equalize light
- d. Ac on light
- e. Low voltage light
- f. High voltage light
- g. Equalize test button/switch
- h. Ac circuit breaker
- i. Low dc voltage alarm relay
- j. High dc voltage alarm relay
- k. Current failure relay
- l. Ac power failure relay

2.2.6 Engine-Generator Control Panel

Provide NEMA ICS 6, Type 3R, enclosed control panel mounted on the engine-generator set with vibration isolators. Provide the following control panel mounted devices and control features.

2.2.6.1 Control Panel Mounted Devices

- a. Engine Control Switch (ECS): Provide a three position control switch with "MANUAL START" - "OFF/RESET" - "AUTO START" positions.
- b. Emergency Stop Push Button (ESPB): Provide a red, mushroom head, twist-to-reset, maintained contact type push button.
- c. Generator Metering: Provide ac metering package that displays ac voltage, current, and frequency of one phase of the generator output simultaneously. Metering package must include a voltmeter/ammeter phase selector switch to allow viewing of each phase.
- d. Generator Voltage Adjust Potentiometer (VAP): Provide a potentiometer, locking screwdriver type, to adjust generator voltage.
- e. Engine Instrumentation: Provide instrumentation package that displays the following engine information:
 - (1) Engine oil pressure
 - (2) Engine coolant temperature
 - (3) Engine speed (rpm)
 - (4) Engine running hours. Engine hour meter must be non-resettable.

- f. Indicating Lamps: Provide LED type indicating lamps and a lamp test switch. Lamps must indicate the following alarm and shutdown conditions:

- (1) Low engine lubricating oil pressure alarm
- (2) Low engine lubricating oil pressure shutdown
- (3) High engine coolant temperature alarm
- (4) High engine coolant temperature shutdown
- (5) Engine overcrank shutdown
- (6) Engine overspeed shutdown
- (7) Emergency stop shutdown
- (8) Starting battery system trouble alarm
- (9) Day tank low fuel shutdown
- (10) Low engine coolant temperature alarm
- (11) Low coolant level shutdown
- (12) High fuel level
- (13) Leak detection basin

- g. Alarm Horn: Provide an alarm horn and a horn silence switch.

- h. Panel Lamp: Provide a panel lamp and lamp "ON-OFF" switch.

2.2.6.2 Crank Cycle/Terminate Relay

Provide crank cycle/terminate relay with adjustable crank/rest periods of 1 to 60 seconds (initially set for 15 seconds) and adjustable total crank time of 30 seconds to 10 minutes (initially set for 75 seconds).

2.2.6.3 Engine Cooldown Relay

Provide cooldown relay with adjustable cool down time of 0 to 30 minutes (initially set at engine manufacturer's recommended time).

2.2.7 Remote Alarm Annunciator

Provide NEMA ICS 6, Type 1, enclosed remote alarm annunciator. The annunciator must have a lamp test switch and LED type indicating lamps. The annunciator must give visual and audible warnings for the following operating and alarm conditions:

- a. Provide lamps for the following operating conditions:

- (1) Operating power source, normal or emergency
- (2) Starting battery system trouble

- b. Provide lamps and an audible signal for the following alarm conditions:

- (1) Low engine lubricating oil pressure
- (2) Low engine coolant temperature
- (3) High engine coolant temperature
- (4) Low fuel
- (5) Engine overcrank shutdown
- (6) Engine overspeed shutdown

2.2.7.1 Storage Battery

Provide storage batteries of suitable rating and capacity to supply and maintain power for the remote alarm annunciator for a period of 90 minutes minimum without the voltage applied falling below 87.5 percent of normal. Provide a 120 volt ac automatic battery charger.

2.2.8 Generator Circuit Breaker

UL 489, molded case, adjustable thermal magnetic trip type circuit breaker. The circuit breaker continuous current rating must be adequate for the power rating of the engine-generator set and the circuit breaker must be rated to withstand the short circuit current provided by the generator set. Provide circuit breaker in a NEMA ICS 6, Type 3R enclosure mounted on the engine-generator set.

2.2.9 Electrical Support Equipment

Furnish with respective pieces of equipment. Motors, controllers, contactors, and disconnects must conform to Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Provide electrical connections under Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Provide controllers and contactors with maximum of 120-volt control circuits, and auxiliary contacts for use with controls furnished. When motors and equipment furnished are larger than size indicated, the cost of providing additional electrical service and related work must be included under this section.

2.2.10 Weatherproof Enclosure

Provide for each engine-generator set and fabricate from zinc coated or phosphatized and shop primed 16 gage minimum sheet steel in accordance with the manufacturer's standard design. Provide a complete, weatherproof enclosure for the engine, generator, and auxiliary systems and equipment. Support exhaust piping and silencer so that the turbocharger is not subjected to exhaust system weight or lateral forces generated in connecting piping that exceed the engine manufacturer's maximum allowed forces and moments. The housing must have sufficient louvered openings to allow entrance of outside air for engine and generator cooling at full load. Design louvered openings to exclude driving rain and snow. Provide properly arranged and sized, hinged panels in the enclosure to allow convenient access to the engine, generator, and control equipment for maintenance and operational procedures. Provide hinged panels with spring type latches which must hold the panels closed securely and will not allow them to vibrate. Brace the housing internally to prevent excessive vibration when the set is in operation.

2.3 SPECIAL WRENCHES AND TOOLS

Wrenches and tools specifically designed and required to work on the new equipment, which are not commercially available as standard mechanic's tools, must be furnished to the Contracting Officer.

2.4 IDENTIFICATION OF EQUIPMENT

Provide plates and tags sized so that inscription is readily legible to operating or maintenance personnel and securely mounted to or attached in proximity of their identified controls or equipment. Lettering must be normal block lettering, a minimum of 0.25 inch high.

2.4.1 Materials

Construct ID plates and tags of 16 gage minimum thickness bronze or stainless steel sheet metal engraved or stamped with inscription. Construct plates and tags not exposed to the weather or high operational temperature of the diesel engine of laminated plastic, 0.125 inch thick, matte white finish with black center core, with lettering accurately aligned and engraved into the core.

2.4.2 Control Devices and Operation Indicators

Provide ID plates or tags for control devices and operation indicators, including valves, off-on switches, visual alarm annunciators, gages and thermometers, that are required for operation and maintenance of provided mechanical systems. Plates or tags must be minimum of 0.5 inch high and 2 inches long and must indicate component system and component function.

2.4.3 Equipment

Provide ID plates of a minimum size of 3 inches high and 5 inches long on provided equipment indicating the following information:

- a. Manufacturer's name, address, type and model number, serial number, and certificate of compliance with applicable EPA emission standards;
- b. Contract number and accepted date;
- c. Capacity or size;
- d. System in which installed; and
- e. System which it controls.

2.5 ASSEMBLED OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

The contents of the assembled operation and maintenance manuals must include the manufacturer's O&M information required by the paragraph SD-10, OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA and the manufacturer's O&M information specified in Section 26 36 23.00 20 AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES.

- a. Manuals must be in separate books or volumes, assembled and bound securely in durable, hard covered, water resistant binder, and indexed by major assembly and components in sequential order.
- b. A table of contents (index) must be made part of the assembled O&M. The manual must be assembled in the order noted in table of contents.

- c. The cover sheet or binder on each volume of the manuals must be identified and marked with the words, "Operation and Maintenance Manual."

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

Perform and report on factory tests and inspections prior to shipment. Provide certified copies of manufacturer's test data and results. Test procedures must conform to ASME, IEEE, and ANSI standards, and to ISO requirements on testing, as appropriate and applicable. The manufacturer performing the tests must provide equipment, labor, and consumables necessary for tests and measuring and indicating devices must be certified to be within calibration. Tests must indicate satisfactory operation and attainment of specified performance. If satisfactory, equipment tested will be given a tentative approval. Equipment must not be shipped before approval of the factory test reports for the following tests.

2.6.1 Engine Tests

Perform customary commercial factory tests in accordance with ISO 3046 on each engine and associated engine protective device, including, but not limited to the following:

- a. Perform dynamometer test at rated power. Record horsepower at rated speed and nominal characteristics such as lubricating oil pressure, jacket water temperature, and ambient temperature.
- b. Test and record the values that the low oil pressure alarm and protective shutdown devices actuate prior to assembly on the engine.
- c. Test and record values that the high jacket water temperature alarm and protective shutdown devices actuate prior to assembly on the engine.

2.6.2 Generator Tests

Tests must be performed on the complete factory assembled generator prior to shipment. Conduct tests in accordance with IEEE 115, NEMA C50.10, and NEMA MG 1.

2.6.2.1 Routine Tests

Perform the following routine tests on the generators and their exciters:

- a. Resistance of armature and field windings
- b. Mechanical balance
- c. Phases sequence
- d. Open circuit saturation curve and phase (voltage) balance test
- e. Insulation resistance of armature and field windings
- f. High potential test

2.6.2.2 Design Tests

Submit the following design tests made on prototype machines that are

physically and electrically identical to the generators specified.

- a. Temperature rise test
- b. Short circuit saturation curve and current balance test

2.6.3 Assembled Engine-Generator Set Tests

Perform the following tests on the assembled engine-generator set.

2.6.3.1 Initial Stabilization Readings

Operate the engine-generator set and allow the set to stabilize at rated kW at rated power factor, rated voltage, and rated frequency. During this period record instrument readings for output power (kW), terminal voltage, line current, power factor, frequency (rpm) generator (exciter) field voltage and current, lubricating oil pressure, jacket water temperature, and ambient temperature at minimum intervals of 15 minutes. Adjust the load, voltage, and frequency to maintain rated load at rated voltage and frequency. Adjustments to load, voltage, or frequency controls must be recorded on the data sheet at the time of adjustment. Stabilization must be considered to have occurred when four consecutive voltage and current recorded readings of the generator (or exciter) field either remain unchanged or have only minor variations about an equilibrium condition with no evident continued increase or decrease in value after the last adjustment to the load, voltage, or frequency has been made.

2.6.3.2 Regulator Range Test

Remove load and record instrument readings (after transients have subsided). Adjust voltage to the maximum attainable value or to a value just prior to actuation of the overvoltage protection device. Apply rated load and adjust voltage to the minimum attainable value or a value just prior to activation of the undervoltage protection device. The data sheets must indicate the voltage regulation as a percent of rated voltage and the maximum and minimum voltages attainable. Voltage regulation must be defined as follows:

$$\text{Percent Regulation} = \frac{((\text{No-Load Voltage}) - (\text{Rated-Load Voltage})) \times 100}{(\text{Rated-Load Voltage})}$$

2.6.3.3 Frequency Range Test

Adjust the engine-generator set frequency for the maximum attainable frequency at rated load. Record instrument readings. Adjust the engine-generator set frequency for the specified minimum attainable frequency at rated load. Record instrument readings. Reduce the load to zero and adjust the engine-generator set frequency for the maximum attainable frequency. Record instrument readings. Adjust the engine-generator set frequency for the minimum attainable frequency. Record instrument readings. The data sheet must show the maximum and minimum frequencies attained at rated load, and at no load.

2.6.3.4 Transient Response Test

Drop the load to no load and re-apply rated load three times to ensure that the no load and rated load voltage and frequency values are repeatable and that the frequency and voltage regulation is within the limits specified. Record generator terminal voltage and frequency using a high speed strip

chart recorder. The data sheet must show the following results:

a. Frequency

- (1) Stability bandwidth or deviation in percent of rated frequency.
- (2) Recovery time.
- (3) Overshoot and undershoot.

b. Voltage

- (1) Stability bandwidth or deviation in percent of rated voltage.
- (2) Recovery time.
- (3) Overshoot and undershoot.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Installation must conform to the applicable requirements of IEEE C2 NFPA 30, NFPA 37, and NFPA 70.

3.2 GROUNDING

NFPA 70 and IEEE C2, except that grounding systems must have a resistance to solid earth ground not exceeding 5 ohms.

3.2.1 Grounding Electrodes

Provide driven ground rods as specified in Section 33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION. Connect ground conductors to the upper end of ground rods by exothermic weld or compression connector. Provide compression connectors at equipment end of ground conductors.

3.2.2 Engine-Generator Set Grounding

Provide separate copper grounding conductors and connect them to the ground system as indicated. When work in addition to that indicated or specified is required to obtain the specified ground resistance, the provision of the contract covering "Changes" must apply.

3.2.3 Connections

Make joints in grounding conductors by exothermic weld or compression connector. Exothermic welds and compression connectors must be installed as specified in Section 33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION paragraph regarding GROUNDING.

3.2.4 Grounding and Bonding Equipment

UL 467, except as indicated or specified otherwise.

3.3 START-UP ENGINEER

Provide the services of a qualified factory trained start-up engineer, regularly employed by the engine-generator set manufacturer. The start-up

services must include conducting preliminary operations and functional acceptance tests. The start-up engineer must be present at the engine generator set installation site, full-time, while preliminary operations and functional acceptance tests are being conducted.

3.4 PREREQUISITES FOR FUNCTIONAL ACCEPTANCE TESTING

Completion of the following requirements is mandatory prior to scheduling functional acceptance tests for the engine-generator set and auxiliary equipment.

3.4.1 Piping Tests

Complete as specified in Division 33.

3.4.2 Performance of Acceptance Checks and Tests

The acceptance checks and tests must be accomplished by the testing organization as described in Section 26 08 00 APPARATUS INSPECTION AND TESTING.

3.4.2.1 Generator Sets

Complete as specified in the paragraph ACCEPTANCE CHECKS AND TESTS.

3.4.2.2 Automatic Transfer Switches

Complete acceptance checks and tests as specified in Section 26 36 23.00 20 AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES.

3.4.3 Preliminary Operations

The start-up engineer must conduct manufacturer recommended start-up procedures and tests to verify that the engine-generator set and auxiliary equipment are ready for functional acceptance tests. Give the Contracting Officer 15 days' advance notice that preliminary operations will be conducted. After preliminary operation has been successfully conducted, the start-up engineer will notify the Contracting Officer in writing stating the engine-generator set and auxiliary equipment are ready for functional acceptance tests.

3.4.4 Preliminary Assembled Operation and Maintenance Manuals

Preliminary assembled operation and maintenance manuals must have been submitted to and approved by the Contracting Officer. Manuals must be prepared as specified in the paragraph ASSEMBLED OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS.

3.4.5 Functional Acceptance Test Procedure

Test procedure must be prepared by the start-up engineer specifically for the engine-generator set and auxiliary equipment. The test agenda must cover the requirements specified in the paragraph FUNCTIONAL ACCEPTANCE TESTS. The test procedure must indicate in detail how tests are to be conducted. A statement of the tests that are to be performed without indicating how the tests are to be performed is not acceptable. Indicate what work is planned on each workday and identify the calendar dates of the planned workdays. Specify what additional technical support personnel is needed such as factory representatives for major equipment. Specify on

which testing workday each technical support personnel is needed. Data recording forms to be used to document test results are to be submitted with the proposed test procedure. A list of test equipment and instruments must also be included in the test procedure.

3.4.6 Test Equipment

Test equipment and instruments must be on hand prior to scheduling field tests or, subject to Contracting Officer approval, evidence must be provided to show that arrangements have been made to have the necessary equipment and instruments on site prior to field testing.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Give Contracting Officer 30 days notice of dates and times scheduled for tests which require the presence of the Contracting Officer. The Contracting Officer will coordinate with the using activity and schedule a time that will eliminate or minimize interruptions and interference with the activity operations. The Contractor must be responsible for costs associated with conducting tests outside of normal working hours and with incorporating special arrangements and procedures, including temporary power conditions. The Contractor must provide labor, equipment, diesel fuel, test load, and consumables required for the specified tests. The test load must be a cataloged product. Calibration of measuring devices and indicating devices must be certified. Refer to Section 26 00 00.00 20 BASIC ELECTRICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS, for requirements for a cataloged product. Perform the following field tests.

3.5.1 Acceptance Checks and Tests

Perform in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and include the following visual and mechanical inspections and electrical tests, performed in accordance with NETA ATS.

3.5.1.1 Circuit Breakers - Low Voltage Insulated Case/Molded Case

a. Visual and mechanical inspection

- (1) Compare nameplate data with specifications and approved shop drawings.
- (2) Inspect circuit breaker for correct mounting.
- (3) Operate circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
- (4) Inspect case for cracks or other defects.
- (5) Verify tightness of accessible bolted connections and cable connections by calibrated torque-wrench method. Thermographic survey is not required.
- (6) Inspect mechanism contacts and arc chutes in unsealed units.

b. Electrical Tests

- (1) Perform contact-resistance tests.
- (2) Perform insulation-resistance tests.

- (3) Adjust Breaker(s) for final settings in accordance with engine-generator set manufacturer's requirements.

3.5.1.2 Current Transformers

a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection

- (1) Compare equipment nameplate data with specifications and approved shop drawings.
- (2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
- (3) Verify correct connection.
- (4) Verify that adequate clearances exist between primary and secondary circuit.
- (5) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method. Thermographic survey is not required.
- (6) Verify that all required grounding and shorting connections provide good contact.

b. Electrical Tests

- (1) Perform insulation-resistance tests.
- (2) Perform polarity tests.
- (3) Perform ratio-verification tests.

3.5.1.3 Metering and Instrumentation

a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection

- (1) Compare equipment nameplate data with specifications and approved shop drawings.
- (2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
- (3) Verify tightness of electrical connections.

b. Electrical Tests

- (1) Determine accuracy of meters at 25, 50, 75, and 100 percent of full scale.
- (2) Calibrate watthour meters according to manufacturer's published data.
- (3) Verify all instrument multipliers.
- (4) Electrically confirm that current transformer secondary circuits are intact.

3.5.1.4 Battery Systems

a. Visual and mechanical inspection

- (1) Compare equipment nameplate data with specifications and approved shop drawings.
- (2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
- (3) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method. Thermographic survey is not required.
- (4) Measure electrolyte specific gravity and temperature and visually check fill level.
- (5) Verify adequacy of battery support racks, mounting, anchorage, and clearances.

b. Electrical tests

- (1) Set charger float and equalizing voltage levels.
- (2) Verify all charger functions and alarms.
- (3) Measure each cell voltage and total battery voltage with charger energized and in float mode of operation.
- (4) Perform a capacity load test.

3.5.1.5 Engine-Generator Set

a. Visual and mechanical inspection

- (1) Compare equipment nameplate data with specifications and approved shop drawings.
- (2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
- (3) Inspect for correct anchorage and grounding.

b. Electrical and mechanical tests

- (1) Perform an insulation-resistance test on generator winding with respect to ground. Calculate polarization index.
- (2) Perform phase rotation test to determine compatibility with load requirements.

3.5.1.6 Grounding System

a. Visual and mechanical inspection

- (1) Inspect ground system for compliance with contract plans and specifications.

b. Electrical tests

- (1) Perform ground-impedance measurements utilizing the fall-of-potential method. On systems consisting of interconnected ground rods, perform tests after interconnections are complete. On systems consisting of a single ground rod perform tests before

any wire is connected. Take measurements in normally dry weather, not less than 48 hours after rainfall. Use a portable ground testing megger in accordance with manufacturer's instructions to test each ground or group of grounds. The instrument must be equipped with a meter reading directly in ohms or fractions thereof to indicate the ground value of the ground rod or grounding systems under test.

3.5.2 Functional Acceptance Tests

The tests must be performed by the start-up engineer. Upon successful test completion, the start-up engineer must provide the Contracting Officer with a written test report within 15 calendar days showing the tests performed and the results of each test. The report must include the completed approved test data forms and certification from the start-up engineer that the test results fall within the manufacturer's recommended limits and meet the specified requirements performance. The report must be dated and signed by the start-up engineer, and submitted for approval by the Contracting Officer. The Contracting Officer will witness final acceptance tests. Testing must include but not be limited to:

- a. Verify proper functioning of each engine protective shutdown device and pre-shutdown alarm device. Testing of the devices must be accomplished by simulating device actuation and observing proper alarm and engine shutdown operation.
- b. Verify proper functioning of the engine overspeed trip device. Testing of the overspeed trip device must be accomplished by raising the speed of the engine-generator set until an overspeed trip is experienced.
- c. Verify proper functioning of the crank cycle/terminate relay. Testing of the relay must be accomplished by engaging the starter motor with the engine being prevented from running. Observe the complete crank/rest cycle as described in the paragraph CRANK CYCLE/TERMINATE RELAY.
- d. Verify proper functioning of the following automatic and manual operations. Testing must include but not be limited to:
 - (1) Loss of Utility: Initiate a normal power failure with connected test load of rated kW at 1.0 power factor. Record time delay on start, cranking time until engine starts and runs, time to come up to operating speed, voltage and frequency overshoot, and time to achieve steady state conditions with all switches transferred to emergency position.
 - (2) Return of Utility: Return normal power and record time delay on retransfer for each automatic transfer switch, and time delay on engine cooldown and shutdown.
 - (3) Manual starting
 - (4) Emergency stop
- e. Operate the engine-generator set at rated current (amperes) until the jacket water temperature stabilizes. Stabilization will be considered to have occurred when three consecutive temperature readings remain unchanged. Continue to operate the generator set for an additional 2

hours. Record instrument readings for terminal voltage, line current, frequency (Hz), engine speed rpm, lubricating oil pressure, jacket water temperature, and ambient temperature at 5 minute intervals for first 15 minutes and at 15 minute intervals thereafter.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

Upon completion of the work and at a time approved by the Contracting Officer, the Contractor must provide instructions by a qualified instructor to the Government personnel in the proper operation and maintenance of the equipment. Government personnel must receive training comparable to the equipment manufacturer's factory training. The duration of instruction must be for not less than one 8 hour working day for instruction of operating personnel and not less than one 8 hour working day for instruction of maintenance personnel.

3.6.1 [Instructor's](#) Qualification Resume

Instructors must be regular employees of the engine-generator set manufacturer. The instruction personnel provided to satisfy the requirements above must be factory certified by the related equipment manufacturer to provide instruction services. Submit the name and qualification resume of instructor to the Contracting Officer for approval.

3.6.2 [Training Plan](#)

Submit training plan 30 calendar days prior to training sessions. Training plan must include scheduling, content, outline, and training material (handouts). Content must include but not limited to the following:

3.6.2.1 Operating Personnel Training

This instruction includes operating the engine-generator set, auxiliary equipment including automatic transfer switches in all modes, and the use of all functions and features specified.

3.6.2.2 Maintenance Personnel Training

Training must include mechanical, hydraulic, electrical, and electronic instructions for the engine-generator set and auxiliary equipment including automatic transfer switches.

a. Mechanical Training: Must include at least the following:

- (1) A review of mechanical diagrams and drawings.
- (2) Component location and functions.
- (3) Troubleshooting procedures and techniques.
- (4) Repair procedures.
- (5) Assembly/disassembly procedures.
- (6) Adjustments (how, when, and where).
- (7) Preventive maintenance procedures.
- (8) Review of flow diagram.

- (9) Valve locations and function.
 - (10) Valve and hydraulic equipment adjustment and maintenance procedures.
 - (11) Hydraulic system maintenance and servicing.
 - (12) Lubrication points, type, and recommended procedures and frequency.
- b. Electrical and Electronic Maintenance Training: Must include at least the following:
- (1) A review of electrical and electronic systems including wiring diagrams and drawings.
 - (2) Troubleshooting procedures for the machine and control systems.
 - (3) Electrical and electronic equipment servicing and care.
 - (4) Use of diagnostics to locate the causes of malfunction.
 - (5) Procedures for adjustments (locating components, adjustments to be made, values to be measured, and equipment required for making adjustments).
 - (6) Maintenance and troubleshooting procedures for microprocessor or minicomputer where applicable.
 - (7) Circuit board repair procedures where applicable (with schematics provided).
 - (8) Use of diagnostic tapes.
 - (9) Recommended maintenance servicing and repair for motors, switches, relays, solenoids, and other auxiliary equipment and devices.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 26 33 53.00 20

UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY (UPS)

04/08

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ACOUSTICAL SOCIETY OF AMERICA (ASA)

ASA S1.4 (1983; Amendment 1985; R 2006)
Specification for Sound Level Meters (ASA 47)

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D709 (2017) Standard Specification for
Laminated Thermosetting Materials

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 100 (2000; Archived) The Authoritative
Dictionary of IEEE Standards Terms

IEEE 450 (2010) Recommended Practice for
Maintenance, Testing, and Replacement of
Vented Lead-Acid Batteries for Stationary
Applications

IEEE C2 (2017; Errata 1-2 2017; INT 1 2017)
National Electrical Safety Code

IEEE C62.41.1 (2002; R 2008) Guide on the Surges
Environment in Low-Voltage (1000 V and
Less) AC Power Circuits

IEEE C62.41.2 (2002) Recommended Practice on
Characterization of Surges in Low-Voltage
(1000 V and Less) AC Power Circuits

INTERNATIONAL ELECTRICAL TESTING ASSOCIATION (NETA)

NETA ATS (2017; Errata 2017) Standard for
Acceptance Testing Specifications for
Electrical Power Equipment and Systems

INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATION FOR STANDARDIZATION (ISO)

ISO 9001 (2008; Corr 1 2009) Quality Management
Systems- Requirements

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA 250 (2014) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment
(1000 Volts Maximum)

NEMA PE 1 (2012; R 2017) Uninterruptible Power
Systems (UPS) - Specification and
Performance Verification

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2;
TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6;
TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10;
TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA
17-14; TIA 17-15; TIA 17-16; TIA 17-17)
National Electrical Code

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY (DOE)

Energy Star (1992; R 2006) Energy Star Energy
Efficiency Labeling System (FEMP)

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 1449 (2014; Reprint Jul 2017) UL Standard for
Safety Surge Protective Devices

UL 1778 (2014; Reprint Sep 2017) UL Standard for
Safety Uninterruptible Power Systems

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 26 08 00 APPARATUS INSPECTION AND TESTING applies to this section,
with the additions and modifications specified herein.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

Unless otherwise specified or indicated, electrical and electronics terms
used in these specifications, and on the drawings, shall be as defined in
IEEE 100.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation;
submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control
approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability
eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING.
Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL
PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

UPS Drawings; G

UPS Installation; G

SD-03 Product Data

UPS Module; G

Submittal shall include manufacturer's information for each component, device, and accessory provided with the transformer.

Factory Testing

UPS System

Energy Star Label for Battery Charging Systems and AC-DC/AC-AC Power Supply Products; S

SD-06 Test Reports

Work Plan; G

Factory Test Plan; G

Performance Test Plan; G

Factory Tests; G

Performance Tests Report; G

Factory Tests Report; G

SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Reports

Initial Inspection and Tests; G

Performance Tests; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

UPS Operation and Maintenance, Data Package 5; G

Submit operation and maintenance data in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA and as specified herein.

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Installation

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

1.5.1 Normal Operation

The UPS module rectifier/charger shall convert the incoming ac input power to dc power for the inverter and for float charging the battery. The inverter shall supply ac power to the critical load continuously. Inverter output shall be synchronized with the bypass ac power source, provided that the bypass ac power source is within the specified voltage and frequency range.

1.5.2 Emergency Operation (Loss or deviation of AC Input Power)

Whenever the ac input power source deviates from the specified tolerances or fails completely, the inverter shall draw its power from the battery system and shall supply AC power to the critical load without any

interruption or switching. The battery shall continue to supply power to the inverter for the specified protection time or until return of ac input source. At the same time, an alarm shall sound to alert operating personnel and a trouble signal shall be sent over the communication network, allowing startup of a secondary power source or orderly shutdown of the critical load.

1.5.3 Return of AC Input Power Source

When stable ac input power source returns the rectifier/charger shall resume operation and shall simultaneously supply the inverter with dc power and recharge the battery. This shall be an automatic function and shall cause no disturbance to the critical load.

1.5.4 Failure of AC Input Power to Return

Should the ac input power fail to return before the battery voltage reaches the discharge limit, the UPS system shall disconnect from the critical load to safeguard the battery.

1.5.5 Transfer to Bypass AC Power Source

When the UPS controller senses an overload or degradation of the inverter output, the bypass switch shall automatically transfer the critical load from the inverter output to the bypass ac power source without an interruption of power. If the bypass ac power source is outside of specified tolerance limits, the UPS and the critical load shall shut down.

1.5.6 Retransfer to Inverter

The static bypass switch shall be capable of automatically retransferring the load back to the inverter output after the inverter output has returned to normal conditions. Retransfer shall only occur if the two sources are synchronized.

1.5.7 UPS Bypass Maintenance

Manual closure of the maintenance bypass switch shall transfer the critical load from the inverter output to the bypass ac power source without disturbing the critical load bus. UPS module shall be capable of manual return to normal operation after completion of maintenance.

1.5.8 Battery Maintenance

The battery protective device shall provide the means of disconnecting the battery from the rectifier/charger and inverter for maintenance. The UPS module shall continue to function and meet the performance criteria specified except for the battery back-up time function.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

The manufacturer shall have a documented quality assurance program including:

- a. Inspections of incoming parts, modular assemblies and final product.
- b. Final test procedure for the product including proof of performance specifications.

- c. On-site test procedure shall include an inspection of controls and indicators after installation of the equipment.
- d. ISO 9001 quality certification.

1.6.1 UPS Drawings

Detail drawings consisting of a complete list of equipment and materials, manufacturer's descriptive and technical literature, battery sizing calculations per IEEE 485, installation instructions, single-line diagrams, ladder-type schematic diagrams, elevations, layout drawings, and details required to demonstrate that the system has been coordinated and will function properly as a unit.

1.6.2 UPS Installation

Include wiring diagrams and installation details of equipment indicating proposed location, layout and arrangement, control panels, accessories, piping, ductwork, and other items that must be shown to ensure a coordinated installation. Wiring diagrams shall identify circuit terminals and indicate the internal wiring for each item of equipment and the interconnection between each item of equipment. Drawings shall indicate adequate clearance for operation, maintenance, and replacement of operating equipment devices. Submittals shall include the nameplate data, size, and capacity. Submittals shall also include applicable federal, military, industry, and technical society publication references.

1.6.3 Work Plan

Submit 6 copies of schedules of dates for factory tests, installation, field tests, and operator training for the UPS system. Furnish a list of instrumentation equipment for factory and field test reports.

1.6.4 Factory Test Plan

Submit 6 copies of factory test plans and procedures at least 30 calendar days prior to the tests being conducted. Provide detailed description of test procedures, including test equipment and setups, to be used to ensure the UPS meets the performance specification and explain the test methods to be used. As a minimum, the test procedures shall include the test required under the paragraph entitled "Factory Testing."

1.6.5 Performance Test Plan

Submit 6 copies of test plans and procedures at least 15 calendar days prior to the start of field tests. Provide detailed description and dates and times scheduled for performance of tests, and detailed description of test procedures, including test equipment (list make and model and provide functional description of the test instruments and accessories) and setups of the tests to be conducted to ensure the UPS meets the performance specification. Explain the test methods to be used. As a minimum, the test procedures shall include the tests required under the paragraph entitled "Performance Tests."

1.6.6 Factory Tests Report

Submit 6 copies of factory test report within 45 calendar days after completion of tests. Receive approval of test prior to shipping unit. Factory test reports shall be signed by an official authorized to certify

on behalf of the UPS manufacturer of that the system meets specified requirements in accordance with the requirements set forth in paragraph entitled "Factory Testing". Test reports in shall be in booklet form tabulating factory tests and measurements performed, upon completion and testing of the installed system. Reports shall state the Contractor's name and address, the name of the project and location, and list the specific requirements which are being certified.

1.6.7 Performance Tests Report

Submit report of test results as specified by paragraph entitled "Performance Tests" within 15 calendar days after completion of tests. Field test reports shall be signed by an official authorized to certify on behalf of the UPS manufacturer that the system meets specified requirements in accordance with the requirements set forth in paragraph entitled "Performance Tests". Test reports in shall be in booklet form tabulating factory tests and measurements performed, upon completion and testing of the installed system. Reports shall state the Contractor's name and address, the name of the project and location, and list the specific requirements which are being certified.

1.6.8 Regulatory Requirements

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "shall" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction," or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer. Equipment, materials, installation, and workmanship shall be in accordance with the mandatory and advisory provisions of NFPA 70 unless more stringent requirements are specified or indicated.

1.6.8.1 Reference Standard Compliance

Where equipment or materials are specified to conform to industry and technical society reference standards of the organizations such as American National Standards Institute (ANSI), American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM), National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA), Underwriters Laboratories (UL), and Association of Edison Illuminating Companies (AEIC), submit proof of such compliance. The label or listing by the specified organization will be acceptable evidence of compliance.

1.6.8.2 Independent Testing Organization Certificate

In lieu of the label or listing, submit a certificate from an independent testing organization, competent to perform testing, and approved by the Contracting Officer. The certificate shall state that the item has been tested in accordance with the specified organization's test methods and that the item complies with the specified organization's reference standard.

1.6.9 Standard Products

Provide materials and equipment that are products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of such products which are of equal material, design and workmanship. Products shall have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening. The 2-year period shall include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The product shall have been on sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or

brochures during the 2-year period. Where two or more items of the same class of equipment are required, these items shall be products of a single manufacturer; however, the component parts of the item need not be the products of the same manufacturer unless stated in this section. Equipment shall be supported by a service organization that is, in the opinion of the Contracting Officer, reasonably convenient to the site.

1.6.9.1 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a 2-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturers' factory or laboratory tests, is furnished.

1.6.9.2 Material and Equipment Manufacturing Date

Products manufactured more than 2 years prior to date of delivery to site shall not be used, unless specified otherwise.

1.7 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Equipment placed in storage shall be protected from humidity and temperature variations, moisture, water intrusion, dirt, dust, or other contaminants. In harsh environments where temperatures exceed non-operational parameters established within this specification, the equipment storage facility shall be environmentally controlled to ensure temperature parameters are within equipment specification. Documentation of same shall be provided to the Government when storage is implemented.

1.8 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

1.8.1 Environmental Conditions

The UPS and battery system shall be capable of withstanding any combination of the following external environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating characteristics.

- a. Operating altitude: Sea level to 3,300 ft. (Systems applied at higher altitudes shall be derated in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions).
- b. Non-operating altitude: Sea level to 36,000 ft.
- c. Operating ambient temperature range: 32 to 104 degrees F. Range for batteries is 50 to 86 degrees F.
- d. Non-operating and storage ambient temperature range: Minus 4 to plus 122 degrees F.
- e. Operating relative humidity: 0 to 95 percent, without condensation.

1.8.2 Sound Pressure Levels

Sound pressure levels produced by the UPS, when operating under full rated load, at a distance of 5 feet in any direction from the perimeter of the unit, shall not exceed 65 dB as measured on the A scale of a Type 1 sound level meter at slow response conforming to ASA S1.4.

1.8.3 Verification of Dimensions

The Contractor shall become familiar with details of the work, verify dimensions in the field, and shall advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing the work.

1.9 SPECIAL TOOLS

Provide one set of special tools, calibration devices, and instruments required for operation, calibration, and maintenance of the equipment.

1.10 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

1.10.1 Additions to [UPS Operation and Maintenance](#) Manuals

In addition to requirements of Data Package 5, include the followings on the actual UPS system provided:

- a. An outline drawing, front, top, and side views.
- b. Prices for spare parts and supply list.
- c. Routine and field acceptance test reports.
- d. Date of Purchase.
- e. Corrective maintenance procedures.
- f. Test measurement levels with specific test points.

1.11 WARRANTY

The equipment items shall be supported by service organizations which are reasonably convenient to the equipment installation in order to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 UPS SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

The UPS system shall conform to [UL 1778](#) and shall consist of UPS module, battery system, battery protective device, static bypass transfer switch, controls and monitoring. Input ac power shall be connected to the normal source ac input of the UPS module. Alternate power source shall be connected to bypass/maintenance bypass. The battery shall be connected to the dc input of the UPS module through the battery protective device. The ac output of the UPS system shall be connected to the critical loads.

Provide [Energy Star](#) labeled battery charging systems and AC-DC/AC-AC power supplies. Provide proof of [Energy Star label for battery charging systems and AC-DC/AC-AC power supply products](#).

2.1.1 Semiconductor Fusing

Power semiconductors shall be fused with fast-acting fuses to prevent cascaded or sequential semiconductor failures. Indicator lamp or display panel denoting blown fuse conditions shall be readily observable by the operator without removing panels or opening cabinet doors.

2.1.1.2 Control Power

Provide dual control power supplies. The control power circuit shall have suitable protection, appropriately marked and located in the immediate vicinity of the input protective device.

2.1.1.3 EMI/RFI Protection

The components and the system shall be designed to minimize the emission of electromagnetic waves that may cause interference with other equipment.

2.1.1.4 Internal Wiring

Wiring practices, materials, and coding shall be in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 70, OSHA, and other applicable standards. Wire runs shall be protected in a manner which separates power and control wiring. Control wiring shall be minimum No. 16 AWG extra-flexible stranded copper. Logic-circuit wiring may be smaller. Ribbon cables shall be minimum No. 22 AWG. Control wiring shall have permanently attached wire numbers.

2.1.1.5 Internal Assembly

The printed circuit board (PCB) subassemblies shall be mounted in pull-out and/or swing-out trays where feasible. Cable connections to the trays shall be sufficiently long to allow easy access to all components. Where not feasible to mount PCB subassemblies in pull-out or swing-out trays, they shall be firmly mounted inside the enclosure. Every PCB subassembly shall be monitored. Self-test and diagnostic circuitry shall be included in the logic circuits such that a fault can be isolated down to the PCB subassembly level.

2.1.1.6 Cabinets

UPS system shall be installed in cabinets of heavy-duty structure meeting the NEMA PE 1 standards for floor mounting. UPS module cabinet shall be structurally adequate for forklift handling or lifting. Removable lifting eyes shall be provided on top of each cabinet. UPS module cabinet shall have hinged and lockable doors on the front only, with assemblies and components accessible from the front. Doors shall be key lockable. Operating controls shall be located outside the locked doors. Input, output, and battery cables shall be installed through the top or bottom of the cabinet.

2.1.6.1 Cabinet Finish

Equipment cabinet shall be cleaned, primed and painted in the manufacturer's standard colors, in accordance with accepted industry standards. Cabinets shall be labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 for arc flash hazard with warning sign reading: "Warning-Potential Arc Flash Hazard. Appropriate PPE and Tools Required when working on this equipment" or similar wording.

2.1.6.2 Live Parts (300 Volts and Above)

Live parts (300 volts and above) that are exposed when front access doors are open shall be adequately protected or covered to minimize the chance of accidental contact.

2.1.7 Safety

UPS shall be equipped with instruction plates including warnings and cautions, suitably located, and describing any special or important procedures to be followed in operating and servicing the equipment. The control panel display shall also provide warning messages prior to performing a critical function.

2.1.8 UPS System Load Profile

The UPS system shall be compatible with the load characteristics defined in the LOAD PROFILE below and load configuration. Compensation for UPS/load interaction problems resulting from nonlinear loads or transformer and motor inrush shall be provided.

LOAD PROFILE

Type of load: data processing equipment main frame.

Size of load: 45 kVA, 120/208 voltage, 115 amperage.

Transient characteristics: range of power factor variation of 1.0 to 0.8 lagging; voltage dip of 1 percent.

Steady-state characteristics: 0.8 lagging power factor.

Special factors: harmonic characteristics - Total Harmonic Distortion less than 3 percent.

2.2 UPS SYSTEM RATINGS

Unless stated otherwise, the parameters listed are under full output load at 0.8 power factor, with batteries fully charged and floating on the dc bus and with nominal input voltage.

2.2.1 System Capacity

45 kVA.

2.2.2 Battery Capacity

Discharge time to end voltage: 15 minutes, at 77 degrees F. End voltage at full discharge shall be 1.67 volts per cell. Battery shall be capable of delivering 150 percent of full rated UPS load at initial start-up.

2.2.3 Static Switch

35,000 amperes symmetrical interrupting capacity.

2.2.4 Module Bus Bracing

Braced for 35,000 amperes symmetrical interrupting capacity.

2.2.5 AC Input

a. Voltage 208 volts line-to-line.

b. Number of phases: 3-phase, 4-wire, plus ground.

- c. Voltage Range: Plus 10 percent, minus 20 percent, without affecting battery float voltage or output voltage.
- d. Frequency: 60 Hz, plus or minus 5 percent.
- e. Power walk-in: 20 percent to 100 percent over 10 to 20 seconds.
- f. Total harmonic current distortion (THD) reflected into the primary line: 10 percent maximum.
- g. Input surge protection: per IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2.
- h. Input power factor: Lagging from 1-100 percent load.

2.2.6 AC Output

- a. Voltage 208 volts line-to-line, 120 volts line-to-neutral.
- b. Number of phases: 3-phase, 4-wire, plus ground.
- c. Voltage regulation:
 - (1) Balanced load: Plus or minus 1.0 percent.
 - (2) 50 percent load imbalance, phase-to-phase: Plus or minus 2 percent.
 - (3) No-load voltage modulation: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - (4) Voltage drift: Plus or minus 1 percent over any 30 day interval (or length of test) at stated ambient conditions.
- d. Voltage adjustment: Plus or minus 5 percent manually.
- e. Frequency: 60 Hz.
- f. Frequency regulation: Plus or minus 0.1 percent.
- g. Frequency drift: Plus or minus 0.1 percent over any 24 hour interval (or length of test) at stated ambient conditions when on internal oscillator.
- h. Harmonic content (RMS voltage): Voltage THD shall be a maximum of 2 percent with 100 percent linear load and 5 percent with 100 percent nonlinear load and a crest factor of less than 3 to 1.
- i. Load power factor operating range: 1.0 to 0.8 lagging.
- j. Phase displacement:
 - (1) Balanced load: Plus or minus 1 degree of bypass input.
 - (2) 50 percent load imbalance phase-to-phase: Plus or minus 3 degrees of bypass input.
- k. Wave-form deviation factor: 5 percent at no load.
- l. Overload capability (at full voltage) (excluding battery):
 - (1) 125 percent load for 10 minutes.

(2) 150 percent load for 60 seconds.

(3) 300 percent load for one cycle after which it shall be current limited to 150 percent until fault is cleared or UPS goes to bypass.

2.2.7 Transient Response

2.2.7.1 Voltage Transients

- a. 100 percent load step: Plus or minus 5 percent.
- b. Loss or return of ac input: Plus or minus 1 percent.
- c. Automatic transfer of load from UPS to bypass: Plus or minus 4 percent.
- d. Manual retransfer of load from bypass to UPS: Plus or minus 4 percent.
- e. Response time: Recovery to 99 percent steady-state condition within 20 milliseconds after any of the above transients.

2.2.7.2 Frequency

- a. Transients: Plus or minus 0.6 Hz maximum.
- b. Slew Rate: 1.0 Hz maximum per second.

2.2.8 Efficiency

Minimum Efficiency: 88 percent at full load kW and 88 percent at 50 percent load.

2.3 UPS MODULE

2.3.1 General Description

UPS module shall consist of a rectifier/charger unit and a 3-phase inverter unit with their associated transformers, synchronizing equipment, protective devices, surge suppression, and accessories as required for operation.

2.3.1.1 Interchangeability

The subassemblies in one UPS module shall be interchangeable with the corresponding modules within the same UPS, and from one UPS system to another of identical systems.

2.3.2 Rectifier/Charger Unit

Rectifier/charger unit shall be solid state and shall provide regulated direct current to the dc bus, supplying power to the inverter and charging the battery plant.

2.3.2.1 Input Protective Device

Rectifier/charger unit shall be provided with an input protective device. The protective device shall be sized to accept simultaneously the full-rated load and the battery recharge current. The protective device

shall be capable of shunt tripping and shall have 35 amperes symmetrical interrupting rating. The protective device shall have provision for locking in the "off" position.

2.3.2.2 Surge Protection

A surge suppression device shall be installed at the UPS input to protect against lightning and switching surges. Internal components shall be protected from surges that enter at each ac input connection including main input, static bypass transfer switch, and maintenance bypass/isolation switch. Surge suppressors shall protect internal components according to IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2, Category B. Surge suppressors shall be UL 1449 approved to fail in "safe" mode.

2.3.2.3 Power Walk-In

Rectifier/charger unit shall be protected by a power walk-in feature such that when ac power is returned to the ac input bus, the total initial power requirement will not exceed 20 percent of the rated full load current. This demand shall increase gradually to 100 percent of the rated full load current plus the battery charging current over the specified time interval.

2.3.2.4 Sizing

Rectifier/charger unit shall be sized for the following two simultaneous operating conditions:

- a. Supplying the full rated load current to the inverter.
- b. Recharging a fully-discharged battery to 95 percent of rated ampere-hour capacity within ten times the discharge time after normal ac power is restored.

2.3.2.5 Battery Charging Current

- a. Primary current limiting: Battery-charging current shall be voltage regulated and current limited. The battery-charging current limit shall be separately adjustable from 2 percent to 25 percent of the maximum discharge current. After the battery is recharged, the rectifier/charger unit shall maintain the battery at full float charge until the next operation under input power failure. Battery charger shall be capable of providing equalizing charge to the battery.
- b. Second step current limiting: The rectifier/charger unit shall also have a second-step battery current limit. This second-step current limit shall sense actual battery current and reduce the input power demand for battery recharging to 50 percent (adjustable from 30 percent to 70 percent) of the normal rate without affecting the system's ability to supply full-rated power to the connected load. The second-step current-limit circuit shall be activated by a dry contact signal from the generator set controls and shall prevent normal rate battery recharging until utility power is restored.

2.3.2.6 DC Ripple

Rectifier/charger unit shall minimize ripple current and voltage supplied to the battery; the ripple current into the battery shall not exceed 3 percent RMS of the inverter input rated current; the ripple voltage into the battery shall not exceed 2 percent RMS of the float voltage.

2.3.2.7 DC Voltage Adjustment

Rectifier/charger unit shall have manual means for adjusting dc voltage for battery equalization, to provide voltage within plus 10 percent of nominal float voltage.

2.3.2.8 Battery Isolation Protective Device

Module shall have a dc protective device to isolate the module from the battery system. The protective device size and interrupting rating shall be as required by system capacity and shall incorporate a shunt trip as required by circuit design. The protective device shall have provision for locking in the "off" position.

2.3.3 Inverter Unit

Inverter unit shall be a solid-state device deriving its power from the dc bus (rectifier or battery source) and providing ac power within specified limits to the critical load. Inverter shall utilize microprocessor controlled solid state Pulse Width Modulation (PWM) controlled IGBT power transistor technology to shape the ac output.

2.3.3.1 Output Overload

The inverter shall be able to sustain an overload as specified across its output terminals. The inverter shall not shut off, but shall continue to operate within rated parameters, with inverse-time overload shutdown protection. If the overload condition persists beyond the rated parameters of the inverter, the inverter shall current limit, load shall be transferred to the bypass source, and the inverter shall disconnect automatically from the critical load bus.

If the bypass source is not available and the overload/fault condition continues, the inverter shall current limit for a limited time as determined by the manufacturer and shall shut down to protect the internal components.

2.3.3.2 Output Frequency Control

The inverter shall normally operate in phase-lock and synchronism with the bypass source. When the bypass source frequency deviates by more than plus or minus 0.5 Hz, the internal frequency oscillator shall automatically take control and become the new frequency reference. Upon restoration of the bypass source within the required tolerance, the inverter shall synchronize back with that source at a slew rate not exceeding the specified rate. The oscillator shall be temperature compensated and shall be manually adjustable.

2.3.3.3 Output Protective Device

The output protective device shall be capable of shunt tripping or opening on an applied control signal and shall have the proper frame size and trip rating to supply overload current as specified. External output protective device shall have provision for locking in the "off" position. The inverter output protective device shall work in conjunction with the bypass protective device for both manual and automatic load transfers to and from bypass power.

2.3.4 External Protection

UPS module shall have built-in self-protection against undervoltage, overvoltage, overcurrent and surges introduced on the ac input source and/or the bypass source. The UPS shall also have built-in self-protection against overvoltage and voltage surges introduced at the output terminals by paralleled sources, load switching, or circuit breaker operation in the critical load distribution system.

2.3.5 Internal Protection

UPS module shall be self-protected against overcurrent, sudden changes in output load and short circuits at the output terminals. UPS module shall be provided with output reverse power detection which shall cause the module to be disconnected from the critical load bus when output reverse power is present. UPS module shall have built-in protection against permanent damage to itself and the connected load for predictable types of failure within itself and the connected load. At the end of battery discharge limit, the module shall shut down without damage to internal components.

2.4 STATIC BYPASS TRANSFER CIRCUIT

A static bypass transfer circuit shall be provided as an integral part of the UPS and shall consist of a static switch, made up of two reverse-paralleled SCRs (silicon-controlled rectifiers) per phase conductor, and a bypass protective device or bypass switch, made up of a contactor or motor operated circuit breaker. The bypass protective device shall be in parallel with the static switch. The inverter output protective device shall disconnect and isolate the inverter from the bypass transfer circuit.

The control logic shall contain an automatic transfer circuit that senses the status of the inverter logic signals and alarm conditions and provides an uninterrupted transfer of the load to the bypass ac power source, without exceeding the transient limits specified herein, when a malfunction occurs in the UPS or when an external overload condition occurs. The power section of the static bypass transfer circuit shall be provided as a plug-in type assembly to facilitate maintenance. The static bypass transfer circuit shall be used to connect the input bypass ac power source to the critical load when required, and shall have the following features:

2.4.1 Uninterrupted Transfer

The static bypass transfer switch shall automatically cause the bypass ac power source to assume the critical load without interruption when the bypass control logic senses one of the following conditions and the UPS inverter output is synchronized to the bypass ac power source:

- a. Inverter overload exceeds unit's rating.
- b. Battery protection period is expired and bypass is available.
- c. System failure.
- d. Inverter output undervoltage or overvoltage.

2.4.2 Interrupted Transfer

If an overload occurs and the UPS inverter output is not synchronized to

the bypass ac power source, the UPS inverter output shall current-limit for 200 milliseconds minimum. The inverter shall then turn off and an interrupted transfer to the bypass ac power source shall be made.

If the bypass ac power source is beyond the conditions stated below, an interrupted transfer shall be made upon detection of a fault condition:

- a. Bypass voltage greater than plus or minus 10 percent from the UPS rated output voltage.
- b. Bypass frequency greater than plus or minus 0.5 Hz from the UPS rated output frequency.
- c. Phase differential of ac bypass voltage to UPS output voltage greater than plus or minus 3 degrees.

2.4.3 Manual Transfer

It shall be possible to make a manually-initiated static transfer from the system status and control panel. The transfer shall be make-before-break utilizing the bypass switch.

2.4.4 Automatic Uninterrupted Forward Transfer

The static bypass transfer switch shall automatically forward transfer, without interruption after the UPS inverter is turned "on", or after an instantaneous overload-induced reverse transfer has occurred and the load current has returned to less than the unit's 100 percent rating.

2.4.5 Forced Transfer

The control logic circuitry shall provide the means of making a forced or reverse transfer of the static bypass transfer circuit on an interrupted basis. Minimum interruption shall be 200 milliseconds when the UPS inverter is not synchronized to the bypass ac power source.

2.4.6 Overload Ratings

The static bypass transfer switch shall withstand the following overload conditions:

- a. 1000 percent of UPS output rating for one cycle.
- b. 150 percent of UPS output rating for 30 seconds.
- c. 125 percent of UPS output rating for 10 minutes.

2.4.7 Static Switch Disconnect

A static switch disconnect shall be incorporated to isolate the static bypass transfer switch assembly so it can be removed for servicing. The switch shall be equipped with auxiliary contacts.

2.5 MAINTENANCE BYPASS SWITCH

2.5.1 General

A maintenance bypass switch shall be provided as an integral part of the UPS and located within the UPS module or in a matching cabinet adjacent to

the UPS cabinet. The maintenance bypass switch shall provide the capability to continuously support the critical load from the bypass AC power source while the UPS is isolated for maintenance. The maintenance bypass switch shall be housed in an isolated compartment inside the UPS cabinet in such a way that service personnel will not be exposed to electrically live parts while maintaining the equipment. Switch shall contain a maintenance bypass protective device and a module isolation protective device.

2.5.2 Load Transfer

The maintenance bypass switch shall provide the capability of transferring the critical load from the UPS static bypass transfer switch to maintenance bypass and then back to the UPS static bypass transfer switch with no interruption to the critical load.

2.6 MODULE CONTROL PANEL

The UPS module shall be provided with a control/indicator display panel. The display panel shall be on the front of the UPS module. Controls, meters, alarms and indicators for operation of the UPS module shall be on this panel. The display panel shall be menu driven for browsing all the screens.

2.6.1 Module Meters

2.6.1.1 Monitored Functions

The following functions shall be monitored and displayed:

- a. Input voltage, phase-to-phase (all three phases).
- b. Input current, all three phases.
- c. Input frequency.
- d. Battery voltage.
- e. Battery current (charge/discharge).
- f. Output voltage, phase-to-phase and phase-to-neutral (all three phases).
- g. Output current, all three phases.
- h. Output frequency.
- i. Output kilowatts.
- j. Elapsed time meter to indicate hours of operation, 6 digits.
- k. Bypass voltage, phase-to-phase and phase-to-neutral (all three phases).
- l. Output kilovars.
- m. Output kilowatt hours, with 15-minute demand attachment.
- n. Battery temperature.
- o. Output Percentage load.

- p. Remaining battery time.

2.6.1.2 Meter Construction

The display panel shall display alphanumeric parameters based on true RMS metering with 1 percent accuracy (minimum 4 significant digits).

2.6.2 Module Controls

Module shall have the following controls:

- a. Lamp test/reset pushbutton.
- b. Alarm test/reset pushbutton.
- c. Module input protective device trip pushbutton, with guard.
- d. Module output protective device trip pushbutton, with guard.
- e. Battery protective device trip pushbutton, with guard.
- f. Emergency off pushbutton, with guard.
- g. DC voltage adjustment potentiometer, with locking guard.
- h. Control power off switch.
- i. UPS/bypass transfer selector switch.
- j. Static bypass transfer switch enable/disable selector switch.

2.6.3 Module Alarm Indicators

Module shall have indicators for the following alarm items. Any one of these conditions shall turn on an audible alarm and the appropriate summary indicator. Each new alarm shall register without affecting any previous alarm.

- a. Input ac power source failure.
- b. Input protective device open.
- c. Input power out of tolerance.
- d. Overload.
- e. Overload shutdown.
- f. DC overvoltage/shutdown.
- g. DC ground fault.
- h. Low battery.
- i. Battery discharged.
- j. Battery protective device open.
- k. Blower fan failure.

- m. Low battery shutdown.
- n. UPS on battery.
- o. Equipment overtemperature.
- p. Fuse blown (with indication where).
- q. Control power failure.
- r. Charger off/problem.
- s. Inverter fault/off.
- t. Emergency power off.
- u. External shutdown (remote EPO activated).
- v. Critical load on static bypass.
- w. Static bypass transfer switch disabled/failure.
- x. Inverter output overvoltage.
- y. Inverter output undervoltage.
- z. Inverter output overfrequency.
- aa. Inverter output underfrequency.
- bb. Bypass source voltage outside limits.
- cc. Bypass frequency out of range.
- dd. Bypass source to inverter out of synchronization.
- ee. Overtemperature shutdown.
- ff. Hardware shutdown.

2.6.4 Module Emergency OFF Button

Pressing the emergency off button shall cause the module to be disconnected from the system, via its input protective device, output protective device, and battery protective device. The button shall include a protective cover to prevent unintentional activation.

2.7 SELF-DIAGNOSTIC CIRCUITS

The control logic shall include status indicators for trouble-shooting the control circuits. These indicators shall be mounted on the circuit card edge or face such that they will be visible without repositioning the card, and shall be labeled with the function name.

2.8 REMOTE MONITORING PANEL

A remote monitoring panel shall be provided to monitor system status. The panel shall be designed for wall mounting near the critical load.

2.8.1 Indicators

Minimum display shall include the following indicators:

- a. Load on UPS.
- b. Load on battery.
- c. Load on bypass.
- d. Low battery.
- e. Summary alarm.
- f. New alarm (to alert the operator that a second summary alarm condition has occurred).

2.8.2 Audible Alarm

Any single indicator shall also turn on the audible alarm. An audible alarm test/reset button and lamp test/reset button shall be included. This reset button shall not affect nor reset the alarm on the module.

2.9 COMMUNICATIONS AND DATA ACQUISITION

An RS 232 communications and data acquisition port shall be provided. This port shall allow the system parameters, status, alarm indication and control panel functions specified to be remotely monitored and controlled.

Additionally, a second communication port shall be provided for use with the following:

- a. A set of six Form C remote alarm contacts rated at 120V, 0.5A, shall be provided for remote alarm monitoring.
- b. Auto-dial modem communication shall be provided to communicate with a remote modem in case an alarm function is active.
- c. A SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) adapter shall be provided to communicate UPS monitoring via a network or direct connection to a PC.
- d. A standard Web Browser adapter shall be provided to remotely view and monitor UPS functions over the Internet.

All the communication ports and contacts shall be capable of simultaneous communication.

2.9.1 Emergency Control Contacts

Provide normally open contacts to signal when power is supplied to the UPS from emergency engine generators or alternate source.

2.10 TEMPERATURE CONTROL

2.10.1 General

Cabinet and enclosure ventilation shall be adequate to ensure that

components are operated within their ratings. Forced-air cooled rectifier, inverter, and control unit will be acceptable. The cooling fans shall continue operation if UPS input power is lost. Redundancy shall be provided so that failure of one fan or associated circuit breaker will not cause an overheat condition. Cooling air shall enter the lower front of the cabinets and exhaust at the top. Blower power failure shall be indicated as a visual and audible alarm on the control panel. Air inlets shall have replaceable filters that may be located on the inside of the cabinet doors and shall be easily accessible for replacement.

2.10.2 Blower Power Source

Blower power source shall be internally derived from the output side of UPS module, with automatic transfer arrangement.

2.10.3 Temperature Sensors

Temperature sensors shall be provided to monitor the air temperature. Separate sensors shall monitor the temperature of rectifier and inverter heat sinks. Separate sensors shall also monitor the transformer temperature. Critical equipment over-temperature indication shall start a timer that shall shut down the UPS system if the temperature does not return below the setpoint level recommended by the UPS manufacturer.

2.11 BATTERY SYSTEM

2.11.1 General

Battery system shall contain the battery cells, racks, battery disconnect, battery monitor and cabinet, if required. A storage battery with sufficient ampere-hour rating to maintain UPS output at full capacity for the specified duration shall be provided for each UPS module. The battery shall be of heavy-duty, industrial design suitable for UPS service. The cells shall be provided with flame arrestor vents, intercell connectors and cables, cell-lifting straps, cell-numbering sets, and terminal grease. Intercell connectors shall be sized to maintain terminal voltage within voltage window limits when supplying full load under power failure conditions. Cell and connector hardware shall be stainless steel of a type capable of resisting corrosion from the electrolyte used.

2.11.2 Battery Ratings

- a. Type: lead calcium.
- b. Specific gravity when fully charged: 1.215.
- c. End voltage 1.67 volts per cell.
- d. Float voltage: 2.17 to 2.26 volts per cell.
- e. Equalizing voltage: 2.33 to 2.38 volts per cell.

2.11.3 Battery Construction

The battery shall be of the valve-regulated, sealed, non-gassing, recombinant type.

2.11.4 Battery Cabinet

The battery pack assembly shall be furnished in a battery cabinet matching the UPS cabinet. The battery cabinet shall be designed to allow for checking the torque on the connections in the battery system and to provide adequate access for annual housekeeping chores. External wiring interface shall be through the bottom or top of the assembly. A smoke and high temperature alarm shall annunciate detection of either smoke or high temperature within the battery cabinet.

2.11.5 Cell-Terminal Covers

Acid-resistant transparent cell-terminal covers not exceeding 6 feet in length and with vent holes drilled on top where needed shall be provided.

2.11.6 Battery Disconnect

Each battery pack assembly shall have a fused disconnect switch provided in a NEMA 1 enclosure, finished with acid-resistant paint and located in line with the assembly. Switch shall be complete with line side and load side bus bars for connection to battery cells. Switch shall be rated 3-pole with interrupting rating as required by system capacity, and shall have an external operator that is lockable in the "off" position.

2.11.7 Battery Monitor

A battery monitor shall be provided for each battery pack assembly. At a minimum, this device shall monitor the following parameters:

- a. Total system voltage.
- b. Ambient room temperature.
- c. Total battery discharge cycles with a duration of greater than 30 seconds but less than 5 minutes.

The monitor shall also record the total accumulated discharge minutes and accumulated battery system discharge kW hours.

2.12 FACTORY TESTING

The UPS system shall be factory tested to meet the requirements specified using a test battery (not the battery to be supplied with the system). UPS module shall be factory load tested as an independent assembly with 3-phase ac input power and with battery power for a minimum of 8 hours, with meter readings taken every 30 minutes. Load shall be balanced at rated kVA and rated power factor. Factory tests for the UPS module shall be run under full load, and will be witnessed by the Government. Should a malfunction occur, the problem shall be corrected and the test shall be repeated. As a minimum, the factory tests shall include the parameters described in paragraphs ac Input, ac Output, Transient Response and Efficiency. The tests shall encompass all aspects of operation, such as module failure, static bypass operation, battery failure, input power failure and overload ratings. The Contracting Officer shall be notified in writing at least 2 weeks before testing. Factory-test time shall not be used for system debugging and/or checkout. Such work shall be done prior to notifying the Government that the system is ready for testing. Factory tests shall be performed during normal business hours. The system shall be interconnected and tested for an additional 8 hours to ensure proper wiring and

performance.

2.12.1 Transient Tests

Transient tests shall be conducted using high-speed oscillograph type recorders to demonstrate the operation of the components to the satisfaction of the Government. These tests shall include 50 percent to 100 percent load changes, manual transfer, manual retransfer, low dc bus initiated transfer and low ac output bus transfer. A recording instrument equipped with an event marker shall be used.

2.12.2 Efficiency Tests

Testing for efficiency shall be performed at zero output up to 100 percent of stated kVA output in 25 percent steps, 0.8 power factor, with battery fully charged and floating on the dc bus, with nominal input voltage, and with module connected to represent actual operating conditions.

2.13 CABLE LUGS AND TERMINATIONS

2.13.1 Cable Lugs

Provide appropriate compression type lugs on all ac and dc power connections to the UPS system and battery as required. Aluminum or bare copper cable lugs are not suitable.

2.13.2 Terminations

Terminals shall be supplied for making power and control connections. Terminal blocks shall be provided for field wiring terminals. Terminal blocks shall be heavy-duty, strap-screw type. Terminal blocks for field wiring shall be located in one place in each module. Control wiring shall be extended to the terminal block location. No more than two wires shall land on any terminal point. Where control wiring is attached to the same point as power wiring, a separate terminal shall be provided. If bus duct is used, bus stubs shall be provided where bus duct enters cabinets.

2.14 INSPECTION

Inspection before shipment is required. The manufacturer shall notify the Government at least 2 weeks before shipping date so that an inspection can be made.

2.15 FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATES

ASTM D709. Provide laminated plastic nameplates for each equipment enclosure, relay, switch, and device; as specified or as indicated on the drawings. Each nameplate inscription shall identify the function and, when applicable, the position. Nameplates shall be melamine plastic, 0.125 inch thick, white with red center core. Surface shall be matte finish. Corners shall be square. Accurately align lettering and engrave into the core. Minimum size of nameplates shall be 1.0 by 2.5 inches. Lettering shall be a minimum of 0.25 inch high normal block style.

2.16 MANUFACTURER'S NAMEPLATES

Each item of equipment shall have a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent will not be

acceptable.

2.17 FACTORY APPLIED FINISH

Electrical equipment shall have factory-applied painting systems which shall, as a minimum, meet the requirements of NEMA 250 corrosion-resistance test.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Electrical installations shall conform to IEEE C2, NFPA 70, and to requirements specified herein. Provide new equipment and materials unless indicated or specified otherwise.

3.1.1 Control Cable

UPS control wiring shall be installed in individual separate rigid steel conduits, unless connections are made between side by side matching cabinets of UPS. Tag control wires with numeric identification tags corresponding to the terminal strip location to where the wires are connected. In addition to manufacturer's requirements, provide four additional spare conductors between UPS module and remote alarm panel in same conduit. When routing control cables inside UPS module, maintain a minimum 6 inches separation from power cables.

3.1.2 Grounding Conductor

Provide an insulated equipment grounding conductor in feeder and branch circuits. Conductor shall be separate from the electrical system neutral conductor. Ground battery racks and battery breaker cabinets with a separate equipment grounding conductor to the UPS cabinet.

3.1.3 UPS Output Conductors

Isolate the UPS output conductors from the UPS cabinet to the critical load panels and from other conductors by installing in separate conduit. Isolation shall prevent inductive coupling from other conductors.

3.1.4 DC Power Conductors

When installed in conduits, place dc power conductors from the UPS cabinet to the battery circuit breaker such that each conduit contains an equal number of positive and negative conductors, for example, two positive and two negative conductors in each conduit.

3.1.5 Conduit Entries

Conduit entries shall use the available conduit areas shown on manufacturer's installation drawings. Conduit entries shall not be made through the front, side or rear panels of the UPS.

3.1.6 Battery Cabinet Assembly

Battery cabinets are typically factory assembled for up to 100 KVA UPS systems. Battery cabinets for larger units typically require assembly at the site. Installation of battery cabinets shall conform to the manufacturer's instructions.

3.1.7 Battery Installation

Installation of batteries shall conform to the manufacturer's instructions.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Contractor shall notify Contracting Officer in writing at least 45 calendar days prior to completion of the UPS system installation. At this time the Contractor, will schedule the UPS manufacturer's technical representative to inspect the completed installation. The UPS technical representative shall provide instruction for activity personnel as specified in paragraph DEMONSTRATION.

3.2.1 Installation Preparation

The following items shall be completely installed by the Contractor and be operational prior to the arrival of the UPS representative for inspection, unit start-up and testing:

- a. Ventilation equipment in the UPS and battery rooms.
- b. Battery cabinets and cells. This is not applicable for maintenance-free battery.
- c. Battery connections including cell-to-cell, tier-to-tier, and rack-to-rack connections, with correct polarity;
- d. DC power and control connections between UPS and battery circuit breaker, with correct polarity;
- e. DC power connection between battery circuit breaker and battery, with correct polarity;
- f. Clockwise phase rotation of ac power connections;
- g. AC power to rectifier input bus;
- h. AC power to UPS bypass input bus;
- i. AC power to UPS maintenance bypass circuit breaker;
- j. AC power from UPS output to UPS maintenance bypass output circuit breaker;
- k. Remote monitors and control wiring;
- l. UPS system and battery system properly grounded;
- m. Emergency shower and eye wash;
- n. Control connections between UPS and emergency engine generator signal contacts;
- o. Control connections between UPS module;
- p. Clean and vacuum UPS and battery room floors, battery cells, and UPS equipment, both inside and outside.

- q. Ensure that shipping members have been removed.
- r. Provide IEEE 450 battery installation certification.

3.2.2 Initial Inspection and Tests

The UPS technical representative and the Contracting Officer, in the presence of the Contractor, will inspect the completed installation. The Contractor shall correct construction or installation deficiencies as directed. Perform acceptance checks in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and include the following visual and mechanical inspections, performed in accordance with NETA ATS.

a. Visual and mechanical inspection

- (1) Compare equipment nameplate data with drawings, specifications and approved shop drawings.
- (2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Inspect doors, panels, and sections for paint, dents, scratches, fit, and missing hardware. Inspect the displays for scratches, dark pixels or uneven brightness.
- (3) Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and required clearances.
- (4) Verify that fuse sizes and types correspond to drawings.
- (5) Verify the unit is clean inside and out.
- (6) Test all electrical and mechanical interlock systems for correct operation and sequencing.
- (7) Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the following methods:
 - (a) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - (b) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method.
 - (c) Perform thermographic survey.
- (8) Verify operation of forced ventilation.
- (9) Verify that vents are clear and new clean filters are installed.

3.2.3 Performance Tests

Provide equipment, test instruments, power, load bank, materials and labor required for tests. Contracting Officer will witness all tests and the tests shall be subject to his approval. Perform tests in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and include the following electrical tests.

3.2.3.1 UPS Unit Performance Tests

Upon completion of battery activation procedures, Contractor shall connect load bank to UPS output. Load bank required shall be determined by the following:

UPS KVA RATING X 0.8 = KW of LOAD BANK

Performance test is to be run under the supervision of the UPS technical representative. UPS unit shall be operated under full load for a minimum of one hour. Contractor shall be required to operate feeder and bypass power feeder breakers during testing of the UPS.

a. Electrical Tests

- (1) Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter.
- (2) Test static transfer from inverter to bypass and back. Use normal load, if possible.
- (3) Set free running frequency of oscillator.
- (4) Test dc undervoltage trip level on inverter input breaker. Set according to manufacturer's published data.
- (5) Test alarm circuits.
- (6) Verify synchronizing indicators for static switch and bypass switches.
- (7) Perform electrical tests for UPS system breakers.
- (8) Perform electrical tests for UPS system batteries.

b. Test Values

- (1) Compare bolted connection resistances to values of similar connections.
- (2) Verify bolt-torque levels.
- (3) Micro-ohm or millivolt drop values shall not exceed the high levels of the normal range as indicated in the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's data is not available, investigate any values which deviate from similar connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.

c. Full Load Burn In Test

The installed system shall undergo an additional full load burn-in period of 24 continuous hours. If a failure occurs during the burn-in period, the tests shall be repeated. Instrument readings shall be recorded every half hour as above. During the burn-in period, the following tests shall be performed:

- (1) With the UPS carrying maximum continuous design load and supplied from the normal source, switch 50 percent load on and off a minimum of five times within the burn-in period .
- (2) With the UPS carrying maximum continuous design load and supplied from the emergency source, repeat the switching operations described in step a. Also, verify that the UPS module rectifier charger unit(s) go into the second-step current limit mode.

- (3) With the UPS carrying maximum continuous design load and operating on battery power, repeat the switching operations described in step a above.
- (4) Continue operation on battery power for 1 minute, then restore normal power.

The Contractor shall furnish a high-speed dual trace oscillograph to monitor ten or more cycles of the above tests at the ON and OFF transitions and two typical steady-state periods, one shortly after the load is energized (at 30 to 60 seconds) and one after operation has stabilized (at 8 to 10 minutes). Four copies of the traces shall be delivered to the Contracting Officer.

d. Battery Discharge Test

With the battery fully charged, the system shall undergo a complete battery discharge test to full depletion and a recharge to nominal conditions. Instrument readings shall be recorded every minute during discharge for the following:

- (1) Battery voltage.
- (2) Battery current.
- (3) Output voltage (all three phases).
- (4) Output current (all three phases).
- (5) Output kilowatts.
- (6) Output frequency.

3.2.3.2 Emergency Generator Operation

Test UPS to observe operation with emergency generator service. UPS technical representative shall verify UPS battery current limiting feature functions properly.

3.3 DEMONSTRATION

3.3.1 Instructing Government Personnel

Furnish the services of competent instructors to give full instruction to designated Government personnel in the adjustment, operation, and maintenance of the specified systems and equipment, including pertinent safety requirements as required. Instructors shall be thoroughly familiar with all parts of the installation and shall be trained in operating theory as well as practical operation and maintenance work. Instruction shall be given during the first regular work week after the equipment or system has been accepted and turned over to the Government for regular operation. Provide 8 hours of instruction for 4 personnel. When more than 4 man-days of instruction are specified, use approximately half of the time for classroom instruction. Use other time for instruction with equipment or system. When significant changes or modifications in the equipment or system are made under the terms of the contract, provide additional instructions to acquaint the operating personnel with the changes or modifications.

3.4 FINAL ADJUSTMENTS

- a. Equalize battery at 424 volts for a period of 72 hours.
- b. Resume charging battery at normal float voltage of 411 volts dc.
- c. Check battery connections are properly torqued to manufacturer's specifications. Take and record, for cell-to-cell and terminal connections, detailed micro-ohm resistance readings. Remake connections having a resistance of more than 10 percent above the average.
- d. All manufacturer's data and operation manuals, which are an integral part of, and shipped with UPS, shall be delivered to Contracting Officer.

3.5 NAMEPLATE MOUNTING

Provide number, location, and letter designation of nameplates as indicated. Fasten nameplates to the device with a minimum of two sheet-metal screws or two rivets.

3.6 FIELD APPLIED PAINTING

Paint electrical equipment as required to match finish of adjacent surfaces or to meet the indicated or specified safety criteria. Painting shall be as specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

3.7 DISPOSAL

Upon completion of UPS installation and testing, Contractor shall remove and dispose of empty, partially full and excess acid drums, including shipping containers, obsolete batteries, and obsolete UPS modules. Removal shall be accomplished off-base and in conformance with local laws and regulations regarding disposal of hazardous material.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 26 36 23.00 20

AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

04/06

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

INTERNATIONAL ELECTRICAL TESTING ASSOCIATION (NETA)

NETA ATS (2017; Errata 2017) Standard for
Acceptance Testing Specifications for
Electrical Power Equipment and Systems

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2;
TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6;
TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10;
TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA
17-14; TIA 17-15; TIA 17-16; TIA 17-17)
National Electrical Code

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 1008 (2014) Transfer Switch Equipment

UL 508 (2018) UL Standard for Safety Industrial
Control Equipment

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 26 00 00.00 20 BASIC ELECTRICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS, and Section 26 08 00 APPARATUS INSPECTION AND TESTING, apply to this section, with the additions and modifications specified herein.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Automatic Transfer Switch Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Automatic Transfer Switches; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Acceptance Checks and Tests; G

Functional Acceptance Tests; G

SD-07 Certificates

Proof of Listing; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Automatic Transfer Switches, Data Package 5; G

Submit in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND
MAINTENANCE DATA.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4.1 Proof of Listing

Submit proof of listing by UL 1008.

1.4.2 Automatic Transfer Switch Drawings

Drawings shall include outline, arrangement, and detail drawings. Detail drawings shall include manufacturer's name and catalog number, electrical ratings, total system transfer statement, reduced normal supply voltage at which transfer to the alternate supply is initiated, transfer delay times, short-circuit current rating, wiring diagram, description of interconnections, testing instructions, acceptable conductor type for terminals, tightening torque for each wire connector, and other required UL 1008 markings.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

Provide four-pole, automatic transfer switches for use in emergency systems in accordance with UL 1008. Each automatic transfer switch shall be rated for total system transfer and have the current and voltage ratings as indicated. The rating of the switch shall be adequate for withstanding the effects of the indicated RMS symmetrical fault current when protected by the indicated overcurrent device without contact welding. The switch operating mechanism shall be electrically operated from the source to which it is transferring, shall have quick-make, quick-break, load break contacts, and shall be mechanically held in both positions. Switches utilizing circuit breakers are not acceptable. Non-fire pump service transfer switches shall have manual operating means provided for maintenance and servicing accessible only by opening the enclosure. The manual operating means shall affect the opening and closing of the switch contacts at the same rate of speed as that caused by the automatic operation of the switch. Automatic transfer switches provided with by-pass/isolation switches shall be mounted on a drawout mechanism so that the automatic transfer switch can be removed from the enclosure. The switch enclosure shall comply with UL 508, NEMA Type 1 and shall be equipped with an equipment ground lug.

2.1.1.1 By-Pass/Isolation Switches

Include by-pass/isolation switches for the indicated automatic transfer switches. Provide by-pass/isolation switches in accordance with [UL 1008](#) that can be used to manually select an available power source to feed load circuits and to permit total isolation of the automatic transfer switch. The by-pass/isolation switch shall be rated for total system transfer and have the same current rating, voltage rating, number of poles, and withstand and closing rating as the associated automatic transfer switch.

2.1.1.2 Automatic Transfer Switch Controls

2.1.1.2.1 Controls for Utility-Generator Automatic Transfer Switch

Provide all necessary controls to start the generator set upon loss of the normal (utility) source, transfer the load to the generator set upon reaching rated voltage and frequency, re-transfer the load when the normal (utility) source returns, and stop the generator set.

The switch shall include the following control features.

- a. Three-phase normal source voltage sensing circuit with adjustable dropout, 75-93 percent of nominal, and pickup, 85-100 percent of nominal.
- b. Engine starting control contacts with adjustable commit-to-start delay circuit, 0.5-6.0 seconds.
- c. Voltage/frequency sensing circuit, set for 80 percent of nominal, for enabling load transfer to emergency source.
- d. Re-transfer to normal source time delay, adjustable 1-30 minutes.
- e. Programmable exerciser to allow automatic starting of the generator set and subsequent load transfer. Exercise periods shall be selectable for 1 to 24 hours per day for 0 to 7 days a week.

2.1.1.3 Front Panel Devices

Provide devices mounted on cabinet front consisting of:

- a. Mode selector switch with the following positions and associated functions;
 1. TEST - Simulates loss of normal/preferred source system operation.
 2. NORMAL - Transfers system to normal/preferred source bypassing re-transfer time delay.
- b. Lamps for indicating connected source and normal/preferred source is available.
- c. Auxiliary contacts for indicating connected source and normal/preferred source available.
- d. Lamps for indicating that the by-pass/isolation switch is in the "normal by-pass", "alternate by-pass", or "isolated" position.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Installation shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 70 and manufacturer's recommendation.

3.2 PREREQUISITES FOR FUNCTIONAL ACCEPTANCE TESTING

Completion of the following requirements is mandatory prior to scheduling functional acceptance tests for the automatic transfer switch.

3.2.1 Performance of Acceptance Checks and tests

Complete as specified in paragraph entitled "Acceptance Checks and Tests". The Acceptance Checks and Tests shall be accomplished by the Testing organization as described in Section 26 08 00 APPARATUS INSPECTION AND TESTING.

3.2.2 Manufacturers O&M Information

The manufacturers O&M information required by the paragraph entitled "SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data", shall have been submitted to and approved by the Contracting Officer.

3.2.3 Test Equipment

All test equipment and instruments shall be on hand prior to scheduling field tests, or subject to Contracting Officer's approval, evidence shall be provided to show that arrangements have been made to have the necessary equipment and instruments on site prior to field testing.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Give Contracting Officer 15 days notice of dates and times scheduled for tests which require the presence of the Contracting Officer. The Contracting Officer will coordinate with the using activity and schedule a time that will eliminate or minimize interruptions and interference with the activity operations. The contractor shall be responsible for costs associated with conducting tests outside of normal working hours and with incorporating special arrangements and procedures, including temporary power conditions. The contractor shall provide labor, equipment, apparatus, including test load, and consumables required for the specified tests. Calibration of all measuring devices and indicating devices shall be certified. The test load shall be a cataloged product in accordance with Section 26 00 00.00 20 BASIC ELECTRICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS. Perform the following field tests in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and include the following visual and mechanical inspections and electrical tests, performed in accordance with NETA ATS.

3.3.1 Automatic Transfer Switch Acceptance Checks and Tests

a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection

1. Compare equipment nameplate data with specifications and approved shop drawings.
2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.

3. Confirm correct application of manufacturer's recommended lubricants.
4. Verify that manual transfer warnings are attached and visible.
5. Verify tightness of all control connections.
6. Verify tightness of accessible bolted connections by calibrated torque-wrench method. Thermographic survey is not required.
7. Perform manual transfer operation.
8. Verify positive mechanical interlocking between normal and alternate sources.

b. Electrical Tests

1. Measure contact-resistance.
2. Perform insulation-resistance on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole for one minute. Perform tests in both source positions.
3. Verify settings and operations of control devices.
4. Calibrate and set all relays and timers.

3.3.2 Functional Acceptance Tests

Functional Acceptance Tests shall be coordinated with Section 26 32 13.00 20 SINGLE OPERATION GENERATOR SETS and shall include simulating power failure and demonstrating the following operations for each automatic transfer switch. Contractor shall show by demonstration in service that the automatic transfer switches are in good operating condition, and function not less than five times.

- a. Perform automatic transfer tests:
 1. Simulate loss of normal/preferred power.
 2. Return to normal/preferred power.
 3. Simulate loss of emergency power.
 4. Simulate all forms of single-phase conditions.
- b. Verify correct operation and timing of the following functions:
 1. Normal source voltage-sensing relays.
 2. Engine start sequence.
 3. Time delay upon transfer.

4. Alternate source voltage-sensing relays.
 5. Automatic transfer operation.
 6. Interlocks and limit switch function.
 7. Time delay and retransfer upon normal power restoration.
- End of Section --

SECTION 26 41 00

LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEM

11/13

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 81 (2012) Guide for Measuring Earth Resistivity, Ground Impedance, and Earth Surface Potentials of a Ground System

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2; TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6; TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10; TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA 17-14; TIA 17-15; TIA 17-16; TIA 17-17) National Electrical Code

NFPA 780 (2017) Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 467 (2013; Reprint Jun 2017) UL Standard for Safety Grounding and Bonding Equipment

UL 96 (2016a) UL Standard for Safety Lightning Protection Components

UL Electrical Constructn (2012) Electrical Construction Equipment Directory

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

1.2.1 Verification of Dimensions

Confirm all details of work, verify all dimensions in field, and advise Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing work. Obtain prior approval of Contracting Officer before making any departures from the design.

1.2.2 System Requirements

Provide a system furnished under this specification consisting of the latest UL Listed products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in production of lightning protection system components. Comply with NFPA 70, NFPA 780, and UL 96.

1.2.3 Lightning Protection System Installers Documentation

Provide documentation showing that the installer is certified with a commercial third-party inspection company whose sole work is lightning protection, or is a UL Listed Lightning Protection Installer. In either case, the documentation must show that they have completed and passed the requirements for certification or listing, and have a minimum of 2 years documented experience installing lightning protection systems for DoD projects of similar scope and complexity.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Overall lightning protection system; G

Each major component; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Lightning Protection and Grounding System Test Plan; G

Lightning Protection and Grounding System Test; G

SD-07 Certificates

Lightning Protection System Installers Documentation; G

Component UL Listed and Labeled; G

Lightning protection system inspection certificate; G

Roof manufacturer's warranty; G

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

In each standard referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word "shall" or "must" has been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these standards to "authority having jurisdiction," or words of similar meaning, to mean Contracting Officer.

1.4.1 Installation Drawings

1.4.1.1 Overall System Drawing

Submit installation shop drawing for the overall lightning protection system. Include on the drawings the physical layout of the equipment (plan view and elevations), mounting details, relationship to other parts of the work, and wiring diagrams.

1.4.1.2 Major Components

Submit detail drawings for [each major component](#) including manufacturer's descriptive and technical literature, catalog cuts, and installation instructions.

1.4.2 Component UL Listed and Labeled

Submit proof of compliance that components are UL Listed and Labeled. Listing alone in [UL Electrical Constructn](#), which is the UL Electrical Construction Directory, is not acceptable evidence. In lieu of Listed and Labeled, submit written certificate from an approved, nationally recognized testing organization equipped to perform such services, stating that items have been tested and conform to requirements and testing methods of Underwriters Laboratories.

1.4.3 Lightning Protection and Grounding System Test Plan

Provide a lightning protection and grounding system test plan. Detail both the visual inspection and electrical testing of the system and components in the test plan. Identify (number) the system test points/locations along with a listing or description of the item to be tested and the type of test to be conducted. As a minimum, include a sketch of the facility and surrounding lightning protection system as part of the specific test plan for each structure. Include the requirements specified in paragraph, "Testing of Integral Lightning Protection System" in the test plan.

1.4.4 Lightning Protection System Inspection Certificate

Provide certification from a commercial third-party inspection company whose sole work is lightning protection, stating that the lightning protection system complies with [NFPA 780](#). Third party inspection company cannot be the system installer or the system designer. Alternatively, provide a UL Lightning Protection Inspection Master Label Certificate for each facility indicating compliance to [NFPA 780](#).

Inspection must cover every connection, air terminal, conductor, fastener, accessible grounding point and other components of the lightning protection system to ensure 100% system compliance. This includes witnessing the tests for the resistance measurements for ground rods with test wells, and for continuity measurements for bonds. It also includes verification of proper surge protective devices for power, data and telecommunication systems. Random sampling or partial inspection of a facility is not acceptable.

1.5 SITE CONDITIONS

Confirm all details of work, verify all dimensions in field, and advise Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing work. Obtain prior approval of Contracting Officer before changing the design.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

Do not use a combination of materials that forms an electrolytic couple of such nature that corrosion is accelerated in the presence of moisture unless moisture is permanently excluded from the junction of such metals. Where unusual conditions exist which would cause corrosion of conductors,

provide conductors with protective coatings, such as tin or lead, or oversize conductors. Where a mechanical hazard is involved, increase conductor size to compensate for the hazard or protect conductors. When metallic conduit or tubing is provided, electrically bond conductor to conduit or tubing at the upper and lower ends by clamp type connectors or welds (including exothermic). All lightning protection components, such as bonding plates, air terminals, air terminal supports and braces, chimney bands, clips, connector fittings, and fasteners are to comply with the requirements of [UL 96](#) classes as applicable.

2.1.1 Main and Bonding Conductors

[NFPA 780](#) and [UL 96](#) Class I materials as applicable.

2.2 COMPONENTS

2.2.1 Air Terminals

Provide solid air terminals with a blunt tip. Tubular air terminals are not permitted. Support air terminals more than [24 inches](#) in length by suitable brace, supported at not less than one-half the height of the terminal.

2.2.2 Ground Rods

Provide ground rods made of solid copper conforming to conform to [UL 467](#). Provide ground rods that are not less than [3/4 inch](#) in diameter and [10 feet](#) in length. Do not mix ground rods of copper-clad steel or solid copper on the job.

2.2.3 Connections and Terminations

Provide connectors for splicing conductors that conform to [UL 96](#), class as applicable. Conductor connections can be made by clamps or welds (including exothermic). Provide style and size connectors required for the installation.

2.2.4 Connector Fittings

Provide connector fittings for "end-to-end", "Tee", or "Y" splices that conform to [NFPA 780](#) and [UL 96](#).

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INTEGRAL SYSTEM

Provide a lightning protection system that meets the requirements of [NFPA 780](#). Lightning protection system consists of air terminals, roof conductors, down conductors, ground connections, grounding electrodes and ground ring electrode conductor. Expose conductors on the structures except where conductors are required to be in protective sleeves. Bond secondary conductors with grounded metallic parts within the building. Make interconnections within side-flash distances at or below the level of the grounded metallic parts.

3.1.1 Roof-Mounted Components

Coordinate with the roofing manufacturer and provide certification that the [roof manufacturer's warranty](#) is not violated by the installation methods for air terminals and roof conductors.

3.1.1.1 Air Terminals

Use adhesive shoes with adhesive approved by the roof manufacturer when installing air terminals on "rubber" (EPDM) type roofs. In areas of snow or constant wind, ensure that a section of roofing material (minimum dimensional area of 1 square foot) is first glued to the roof and then the air terminal is glued to it unless the roof manufacturer recommends another solution. Use a standing seam base for installation of air terminals on a standing seam metal roof that does not produce any roof penetrations.

3.1.1.2 Roof Conductors

Use adhesive shoes with adhesive approved by the roof manufacturer when installing roof conductors on "rubber" (EPDM) type roofs. Use a standing seam base for installation of roof conductors on a standing seam metal roof that does not produce any roof penetrations. Roof conductors are to be concealed within the ceiling cavities as much as practicable.

3.1.2 Down Conductors

Protect exposed down conductors from physical damage as required by NFPA 780. Use Schedule 80 PVC to protect down conductors. Paint the Schedule 80 PVC to match the surrounding surface with paint that is approved for use on PVC. Down conductors are to be concealed within the wall cavities.

3.1.3 Ground Connections

Attach each down conductor and ground ring electrode to ground rods by welding (including exothermic), brazing, or compression. All connections to ground rods below ground level must be by exothermic weld connection or with a high compression connection using a hydraulic or electric compression tool to provide the correct circumferential pressure. Accessible connections above ground level and in test wells can be accomplished by mechanical clamping.

3.1.4 Grounding Electrodes

Extend driven ground rods vertically into the existing undisturbed earth for a distance of not less 10 feet. Set ground rods not less than 3 feet nor more than 8 feet, from the structure foundation, and at least beyond the drip line for the facility. After the completed installation, measure the total resistance to ground using the fall-of-potential method described in IEEE 81. Maximum allowed resistance 25 ohms, under normally dry conditions. Contact the Contracting Officer for direction on how to proceed when two of any three ground rods, driven not less than 10 feet into the ground, a minimum of 10 feet apart, and equally spaced around the perimeter, give a combined value exceeding 50 ohms immediately after having driven. For ground ring electrode, provide continuous No. 4/0 bare stranded copper cable. Lay ground ring electrode around the perimeter of the structure in a trench not less than 3 feet nor more than 8 feet from the nearest point of the structure foundation, and at least beyond the drip line for the facility. Install ground ring electrode to a minimum depth of 30 inches. Install a ground ring electrode in earth undisturbed by excavation, not earth fill, and do not locate beneath roof overhang, or wholly under paved areas or roadways where rainfall cannot penetrate to keep soil moist in the vicinity of the cable.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

3.2.1 Nonmetallic Exterior Walls with Metallic Roof

Bond metal roof sections together which are insulated from each other so that they are electrically continuous, having a surface contact of at least 3 square inches.

3.3 INTERFACE WITH OTHER STRUCTURES

3.3.1 Fences

Bond metal fence and gate systems to the lightning protection system whenever the fence or gate is within 6 feet of any part of the lightning protection system in accordance with ANSI C2.

3.4 RESTORATION

Where sod has been removed, place sod as soon as possible after completing the backfilling. Restore, to original condition, the areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Overfill to accommodate for settling. Include necessary topsoil, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging or mulching in any restoration. Maintain disturbed surfaces and replacements until final acceptance.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.5.1 Lightning Protection and Grounding System Test

Test the lightning protection and grounding system to ensure continuity is not in excess of 1 ohm and that resistance to ground is not in excess of 25 ohms. Provide documentation for the measured values at each test point. Test the ground rod for resistance to ground before making connections to the rod. Tie the grounding system together and test for resistance to ground. Make resistance measurements in dry weather, not earlier than 48 hours after rainfall. Include in the written report: locations of test points, measured values for continuity and ground resistances, and soil conditions at the time that measurements were made. Submit results of each test to the Contracting Officer.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 26 51 00

INTERIOR LIGHTING

05/16

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 189.1 (2014) Standard for the Design of
High-Performance Green Buildings Except
Low-Rise Residential Buildings

ASHRAE 90.1 - IP (2013) Energy Standard for Buildings
Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A1008/A1008M (2016) Standard Specification for Steel,
Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural,
High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength
Low-Alloy with Improved Formability,
Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable

ASTM A580/A580M (2018) Standard Specification for
Stainless Steel Wire

ASTM A641/A641M (2009a; R 2014) Standard Specification for
Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire

ASTM A653/A653M (2017) Standard Specification for Steel
Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or
Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by
the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM B164 (2003; R 2014) Standard Specification for
Nickel-Copper Alloy Rod, Bar, and Wire

ASTM B633 (2015) Standard Specification for
Electrodeposited Coatings of Zinc on Iron
and Steel

ASTM D4674 REV A (2002; R 2010) Standard Practice for
Accelerated Testing for Color Stability of
Plastics Exposed to Indoor Office
Environments

CALIFORNIA ENERGY COMMISSION (CEC)

CEC Title 24 (2016) Building Energy Efficiency

Standards For Residential and
Nonresidential Buildings

ILLUMINATING ENGINEERING SOCIETY (IES)

IES HB-10	(2011; Errata 2015) IES Lighting Handbook
IES LM-79	(2008) Electrical and Photometric Measurements of Solid-State Lighting Products
IES LM-80	(2015) Measuring Lumen Maintenance of LED Light Sources
IES RP-16	(2010; Addendum A 2008; Addenda B 2009; Addendum C 2016) Nomenclature and Definitions for Illuminating Engineering
IES TM-21	(2011; Addendum B 2015) Projecting Long Term Lumen Maintenance of LED Light Sources

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 100	(2000; Archived) The Authoritative Dictionary of IEEE Standards Terms
IEEE C2	(2017; Errata 1-2 2017; INT 1 2017) National Electrical Safety Code
IEEE C62.41	(1991; R 1995) Recommended Practice on Surge Voltages in Low-Voltage AC Power Circuits

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA 250	(2014) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum)
NEMA ANSLG C78.377	(2017) Electric Lamps- Specifications for the Chromaticity of Solid State Lighting Products
NEMA C82.77	(2002) Harmonic Emission Limits - Related Power Quality Requirements for Lighting Equipment
NEMA SSL 1	(2010) Electronic Drivers for Led Devices, Arrays, or Systems
NEMA SSL 3	(2011) High-Power White LED Binning for General Illumination
NEMA SSL 7A	(2015) Phase-Cut Dimming for Solid State Lighting: Basic Compatibility
NEMA WD 1	(1999; R 2015) Standard for General Color Requirements for Wiring Devices

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 101 (2018; TIA 18-1; TIA 18-2; TIA 18-3) Life Safety Code

NFPA 70 (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2; TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6; TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10; TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA 17-14; TIA 17-15; TIA 17-16; TIA 17-17) National Electrical Code

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

DOD 8500.01 (2014) Cybersecurity

DOD 8510.01 (2014; Change 1-2016; Change 2-2017) Risk Management Framework (RMF) for DoD Information Technology (IT)

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 1472 (2015) UL Standard for Safety Solid-State Dimming Controls

UL 1598 (2008; Reprint Oct 2012) Luminaires

UL 20 (2010; Reprint Feb 2012) General-Use Snap Switches

UL 2043 (2013) Fire Test for Heat and Visible Smoke Release for Discrete Products and Their Accessories Installed in Air-Handling Spaces

UL 508 (2018) UL Standard for Safety Industrial Control Equipment

UL 8750 (2015; Reprint Aug 2018) UL Standard for Safety Light Emitting Diode (LED) Equipment for Use in Lighting Products

UL 916 (2007; Reprint Aug 2014) Standard for Energy Management Equipment

UL 924 (2016; Reprint May 2018) UL Standard for Safety Emergency Lighting and Power Equipment

UL 94 (2013; Reprint Sep 2017) UL Standard for Safety Tests for Flammability of Plastic Materials for Parts in Devices and Appliances

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Materials not considered to be luminaires or luminaire accessories are specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Luminaires and accessories mounted on exterior surfaces of buildings are specified in

Section 26 56 00 EXTERIOR LIGHTING.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- a. Unless otherwise specified or indicated, electrical and electronics terms used in these specifications, and on the drawings, must be as defined in IEEE 100 and IES RP-16.
- b. For LED luminaire light sources, "Useful Life" is the operating hours before reaching 70 percent of the initial rated lumen output (L70) with no catastrophic failures under normal operating conditions. This is also know as 70 percent "Rated Lumen Maintenance Life" as defined in IES LM-80.
- c. For LED luminaires, "Luminaire Efficacy" (LE) is the appropriate measure of energy efficiency, measured in lumens/watt. This is gathered from LM-79 data for the luminaire, in which absolute photometry is used to measure the lumen output of the luminaire as one entity, not the source separately and then the source and housing together.
- d. Total harmonic distortion (THD) is the root mean square (RMS) of all the harmonic components divided by the total fundamental current.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Data, drawings, and reports must employ the terminology, classifications and methods prescribed by the IES HB-10 as applicable, for the lighting system specified. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Luminaire Drawings; G

Occupancy/Vacancy Sensor Coverage Layout; G

SD-03 Product Data

Luminaires; G

Light Sources; G

Drivers; G

LED Luminaire Warranty; G

Luminaire Design Data; G

Vacancy Sensors; G

Dimming Controllers (Dimmers); G

Exit Signs; G

Emergency Lighting Unit (EBU); G

LED Emergency Drivers; G

Occupancy Sensors; G

Lighting Control Panel; G

SD-06 Test Reports

LED Luminaire - IES LM-79 Test Report; G

LED Light Source - IES LM-80 Test Report; G

LED Light Source - IES TM-21 Test Report; G

Occupancy/Vacancy Sensor Verification Tests; G

Energy Efficiency; G

SD-07 Certificates

Luminaire Useful Life Certificate; G

LED Driver and Dimming Switch Compatibility Certificate; G

1.5 QUALITY CONTROL

1.5.1 Luminaire Drawings

Include dimensions, accessories, and installation and construction details. Photometric data, including zonal lumen data, average and minimum ratio, aiming diagram, and computerized candlepower distribution data must accompany shop drawings.

1.5.2 Occupancy/Vacancy Sensor Coverage Layout

Provide floor plans showing coverage layouts of all devices using manufacturer's product information.

1.5.3 LED Driver and Dimming Switch Compatibility Certificate

Submit certification from the luminaire, driver, or dimmer switch manufacturer that ensures compatibility and operability between devices.

1.5.4 Luminaire Design Data

- a. Provide safety certification and file number for the luminaire family that must be listed, labeled, or identified per the NFPA 70 (NEC). Applicable testing bodies are determined by the US Occupational Safety Health Administration (OSHA) as Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratories (NRTL) and include: CSA (Canadian Standards Association), ETL (Edison Testing Laboratory), and UL (Underwriters Laboratories).
- b. Provide long term lumen maintenance projections for each LED luminaire in accordance with IES TM-21. Data used for projections must be obtained from testing in accordance with IES LM-80.

1.5.5 LED Luminaire - IES LM-79 Test Report

Submit test report on manufacturer's standard production model luminaire. Include all applicable and required data as outlined under "14.0 Test Report" in IES LM-79.

1.5.6 LED Light Source - IES LM-80 Test Report

Submit report on manufacturer's standard production LED light source (package, array, or module). Include all applicable and required data as outlined under "8.0 Test Report" in IES LM-80.

1.5.7 LED Light Source - IES TM-21 Test Report

Submit test report on manufacturer's standard production LED light source (package, array or module). Include all applicable and required data, as well as required interpolation information as outlined under "7.0 Report" in IES TM-21.

1.5.8 Occupancy/Vacancy Sensor Verification Tests

Submit test report outlining post-installation coverage and operation of sensors.

1.5.9 Test Laboratories

Test laboratories for the IES LM-79 and IES LM-80 test reports must be one of the following:

- a. National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) accredited for solid-state lighting testing as part of the Energy-Efficient Lighting Products laboratory accreditation program for both LM-79 and LM-80 testing.
- b. One of the qualified labs listed on the Department of Energy - LED Lighting Facts Approved Testing Laboratories List at for LM-79 testing.
- c. One of the EPA-Recognized Laboratories listed at for LM-80 testing.

1.5.10 Regulatory Requirements

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word "must" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction," or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer. Equipment, materials, installation, and workmanship must be in accordance with the mandatory and advisory provisions of NFPA 70, unless more stringent requirements are specified or indicated.

1.5.11 Standard Products

Provide materials and equipment that are products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of such products which are of equal material, design and workmanship. Products must have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for two years prior to bid opening. The two-year period must include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The product must have been on sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers'

catalogs, or brochures during the two-year period. Where two or more items of the same class of equipment are required, these items must be products of a single manufacturer; however, the component parts of the item need not be the products of the same manufacturer unless stated in this section.

1.5.11.1 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a 2-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturers' factory or laboratory tests, is furnished.

1.5.11.2 Material and Equipment Manufacturing Date

Products manufactured more than six months prior to date of delivery to site must not be used, unless specified otherwise.

1.5.11.3 Energy Efficiency

Submit data indicating lumens per watt efficacy and color rendering index of light source.

1.6 WARRANTY

Support all equipment items by service organizations which are reasonably convenient to the equipment installation in order to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

1.6.1 LED Luminaire Warranty

- a. Provide a written 5 year on-site replacement warranty for material, fixture finish, and workmanship. On-site replacement includes transportation, removal, and installation of new products.
 - (1) Include finish warranty to include failure and substantial deterioration such as blistering, cracking, peeling, chalking, or fading.
 - (2) Material warranty must include:
 - (a) All drivers.
 - (b) Replacement when more than 10 percent of LED sources in any lightbar or subassembly(s) are defective or non-starting.
- b. Warranty period must begin on date of beneficial occupancy. Provide the Contracting Officer with signed warranty certificates prior to final payment.

1.6.1.1 Provide Luminaire Useful Life Certificate

Submit certification from the manufacturer indicating the expected useful life of the luminaires provided. The useful life must be directly correlated from the IES LM-80 test data using procedures outlined in IES TM-21. Thermal properties of the specific luminaire and local ambient operating temperature and conditions must be taken into consideration.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT COORDINATION

Products and materials not considered to be luminaires, luminaire controls, or associated equipment are specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Luminaires, luminaire controls, and associated equipment for exterior applications are specified in Section 26 56 00 EXTERIOR LIGHTING.

2.2 LUMINAIRES

UL 1598, NEMA C82.77, and UL 8750. Provide luminaires as indicated in luminaire schedule and NL plates or details on project plans. Provide luminaires complete with light sources of quantity, type, and wattage indicated. Provide all luminaires of the same type by the same manufacturer. Luminaires must be specifically designed for use with the driver, ballast or generator and light source provided.

2.2.1 LED Luminaires

Provide luminaires complete with power supplies (drivers) and light sources. Provide design information including lumen output and design life in luminaire schedule on project plans for LED luminaires. LED luminaires must meet the minimum requirements in the following table:

<u>LUMINAIRE TYPE</u>	<u>MINIMUM LUMINAIRE</u>	<u>MINIMUM COLOR RENDERING</u>
LED TROFFER - 1 x 4 2 x 2 2 x 4	90 LPW	80
LED Downlight	50 LPW	90
LED Track or Accent	40 LPW	80
LED Linear Ambient	80 LPW	80

LED luminaires must also meet the following minimum requirements:

- Luminaires must have a minimum 5 year manufacturer's warranty.
- Luminaires must have a minimum L70 lumen maintenance value of 50,000 hours as calculated by IES TM-21, with data obtained per IES LM-80 requirements.
- Luminaire drive current value must be identical to that provided by test data for luminaire in question.
- Luminaires must be tested to IES LM-79 and IES LM-80 standards, with the results provided as required in the Submittals paragraph of this specification.
- Luminaires must be listed with the DesignLights Consortium 'Qualified Products List' when falling into category of "General Application" luminaires, i.e. Interior Directional, Display Case, Troffer, Linear Ambient, or Low/High Bay. Requirements are shown in the Designlights Consortium "Technical Requirements Table" at <https://data.energystar.gov/dataset/EPA-Recognized-Laboratories-For->

Lighting-Products/jgwf-7qrr.

- f. Provide Department of Energy 'Lighting Facts' label for each luminaire.

2.3 DRIVERS

2.3.1 LED Drivers

NEMA SSL 1, UL 8750. LED drivers must be electronic, UL Class 1, constant-current type and comply with the following requirements:

- a. Output power (watts) and luminous flux (lumens) as shown in luminaire schedule for each luminaire type to meet minimum luminaire efficacy (LE) value provided.
- b. Power Factor (PF) greater than or equal to 0.9 over the full dimming range when provided.
- c. Current draw Total Harmonic Distortion (THD) of less than 20 percent.
- d. Class A sound rating.
- e. Operable at input voltage of 120-277 volts at 60 hertz.
- f. Minimum 5 year manufacturer's warranty.
- g. RoHS compliant.
- h. Integral thermal protection that reduces or eliminates the output power if case temperature exceeds a value detrimental to the driver.
- i. UL listed for dry or damp locations typical of interior installations.
- j. Non-dimmable, step-dimmable to 50 percent output, or fully-dimmable using 0-10V control as indicated in luminaire schedule.

2.4 LIGHT SOURCES

NEMA ANSLG C78.377, NEMA SSL 3. Provide type and wattage as indicated in luminaire schedule on project plans.

2.4.1 LED Light Sources

- a. Correlated Color Temperature (CCT) of 4000 degrees K.
- b. Minimum Color Rendering Index (CRI) R9 value of 80.
- c. High power, white light output utilizing phosphor conversion (PC) process or mixed system of colored LEDs, typically red, green and blue (RGB).
- d. RoHS compliant.
- e. Provide light source color consistency by utilizing a binning tolerance within a 4 step McAdam ellipse.

2.5 LIGHTING CONTROLS

ASHRAE 90.1 - IP. Provide network certification for all networked lighting

control systems and devices per requirements of DOD 8500.01 and DOD 8510.01.

2.5.1 Toggle Switches

Provide line-voltage toggle switches as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

2.5.2 Dimming Controllers (Dimmers)

UL 1472, UL 20, IEEE C62.41, NEMA SSL 7A. 0-10 V dimmers must provide flicker-free, continuously variable light output throughout the dimming range. Provide radio frequency interference suppression integral to device. Provide dimmers utilizing pulse width modulation (PWM). Provide device with a vertical slider, paddle, rotary button, or toggle (with adjacent vertical slider) type control, with finish to match switches and outlets in same area. Provide back box in wall with sufficient depth to accommodate body of switch and wiring. Devices must be capable of operating at their full rated capacity regardless of being single or ganged-mounted, and be compatible with three-way and four-way switching scenarios. Dimmers must be capable of controlling 0-10 volt LED drivers. Ensure compatibility of dimmer with separate power packs when utilized for lighting control. Dimmers and the ballasts or drivers they control, must be provided from the same manufacturer, or tested and certified as compatible for use together. Provide NEMA SSL 7A-compliant devices.

2.5.3 Sensors for Lighting Control

IEEE C62.41, NEMA WD 1, UL 94, UL 916, UL 508, ASTM D4674 REV A.

2.5.3.1 Occupancy Sensors

Provide occupancy sensors with coverage patterns as indicated on project plans. Provide no less quantity of sensors as shown on plans, but add additional sensors when required to fulfill coverage requirement for the specific model sensor provided. Sensor must be provided with an adaptive learning function that automatically sets sensor in optimum calibration in a set period of time after installation and a non-volatile memory that saves settings after a power outage. Provide sensors designed for ceiling, wall or wall-box installation as indicated. Operating voltage must be 24V in conjunction with a control system or separate power pack which interacts with luminaire being controlled. Provide housing of high-impact, injection-molded thermoplastic with a multi-segmented lens for PIR and dual technology sensors. Sensor operation requires movement to activate luminaires controlled, and turns luminaires off after a set time of inactivity. Provide integral photocell mounted in occupancy sensor housing when indicated.

2.5.3.1.1 Passive Infrared (PIR) Sensors

Provide ceiling or wall-mounted PIR sensors meeting the following requirements:

- a. Temperature compensated, dual element sensor and a multi-element fresnel lens (Poly IR4 material).
- b. Technology to optimize automatic time delay to fit occupant usage patterns.
- c. No minimum load requirement for line voltage sensors and be capable of

switching from zero to 800 W at 120 VAC, 50/60 Hz and from zero to 1200 W at 277 VAC, 50/60 Hz. Control voltage sensors must not exceed a maximum load requirement of 20 mA at 24VDC.

- d. Time delay of five to 30 minutes in increments of five minutes with a walk through and test mode set by DIP switch.
- e. LED indicator that remains active during occupancy.
- f. Built-in light level sensor that is operational from 8 to 180 foot-candles.
- g. Coverage pattern tested to NEMA WD 7 standards.
- h. Standard five year warranty and be UL listed
- i. No leakage current to load when in the off mode.

2.5.3.1.2 Ultrasonic Sensors

Provide ceiling-mounted ultrasonic sensors meeting the following requirements:

- a. Operate at an ultrasonic frequency of 25 kHz to 40 kHz.
- b. LED on exterior of device to indicate occupant detection.
- c. Adjustable time delay period of 15 seconds to 15 minutes.
- d. UL listed with minimum five year warranty.
- e. Provide with isolated relay for integrating control of HVAC or other automated systems.

2.5.3.1.3 Dual Technology Sensors

Provide dual technology sensors that meet the requirements for PIR sensors and ultrasonic sensors indicated above. If either the passive infrared or ultrasonic sensing registers occupancy, the luminaires must remain on.

2.5.3.1.4 Power Packs for Sensors

UL 2043, CEC Title 24, ASHRAE 90.1 - IP. Power packs used to provide power to one or more lighting control sensors must meet the following requirements:

- a. Input voltage - 120-277 VAC; output voltage - 24 VDC at 225 mA.
- b. Plenum-rated, high-impact thermoplastic enclosure.
- c. Utilizes zero-crossing circuitry to prevent damage from inrush current.
- d. Maximum load rating of 16 amps for electronic lighting loads.
- e. RoHS compliant.

2.5.3.2 Vacancy Sensors

Provide vacancy sensors as indicated above under paragraph OCCUPANCY

SENSORS, but with requirement of a manual operation to activate luminaires controlled. Provide automatic operation to turn luminaires off after a set period of inactivity.

2.5.4 Lighting Control Panel

Provide an electronic, programmable lighting control panel, capable of providing lighting control with input from internal programming, digital switches, time clocks, and other low-voltage control devices.

Enclose panel hardware in a surface-mounted, NEMA 1, painted, steel enclosure, with hinged, lockable access door and ventilation openings. Internal low-voltage compartment must be separated from line-voltage compartment of enclosure with only low-voltage compartment accessible upon opening of door.

Input voltage - 120/277 V, 60 Hz, with internal 24 VDC power supply.

2.6 EXIT AND EMERGENCY LIGHTING EQUIPMENT

UL 924, NFPA 101, and NFPA 70 compliant.

2.6.1 Exit Signs

Provide exit signs consuming a maximum of five watts total.

2.6.1.1 LED Self-Powered Exit Signs

Provide in UV-stable, thermo-plastic housing configured for ceiling or wall mounting. Provide 6 inch high, 3/4 inch stroke red lettering on face of sign. Provide chevrons on either side of lettering to indicate direction. Provide single or double face where shown. Equip with automatic power failure device, test switch, and pilot light, and fully automatic high/low trickle charger in a self-contained power pack. Battery must be sealed, maintenance free nickel-cadmium type, and must operate unattended for a period of not less than five years. Emergency run time must be a minimum of 1 1/2 hours. LEDs must have a minimum rated life of 10 years. Provide self-diagnostic circuitry integral to emergency LED driver.

2.6.2 Emergency Lighting Unit (EBU)

Provide in painted, die-cast aluminum housing as indicated. Emergency lighting units must be rated for 12 volts, except units having no remote-mounted lamps and having no more than two unit-mounted light sources may be rated six volts. Equip units with brown-out sensitive circuit to activate battery when input voltage falls to 75 percent of normal. Equip with two LED, MR-16 type light sources, automatic power failure device, test switch, and pilot light, and fully automatic high/low trickle charger in a self-contained power pack. Battery must be sealed, maintenance free nickel-cadmium type, and must operate unattended for a period of not less than five years. Emergency run time must be a minimum of 1 1/2 hours. LEDs must have a minimum rated life of 10 years. Provide self-diagnostic circuitry integral to emergency LED driver.

2.6.3 LED Emergency Drivers

Provide LED emergency driver with automatic power failure detection, test switch and LED indicator (or combination switch/indicator) located on luminaire exterior, and fully-automatic solid-state charger, battery and

inverter integral to a self-contained housing. Provide self-diagnostic function integral to emergency driver. Integral nickel-cadmium battery is required to supply a minimum of 90 minutes of emergency power at constant output. Driver must be RoHS compliant, rated for installation in plenum-rated spaces and damp locations, and be warranted for a minimum of five years.

2.7 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT HARDWARE

2.7.1 Wire

ASTM A641/A641M; Galvanized, soft tempered steel, minimum 0.11 inches in diameter, or galvanized, braided steel, minimum 0.08 inches in diameter.

2.7.2 Wire for Humid Spaces

ASTM A580/A580M; Composition 302 or 304, annealed stainless steel, minimum 0.11 inches in diameter.

ASTM B164; UNS NO4400, annealed nickel-copper alloy, minimum 0.11 inches in diameter.

2.7.3 Threaded Rods

Threaded steel rods, 3/16 inch diameter, zinc or cadmium coated.

2.7.4 Straps

Galvanized steel, one by 3/16 inch, conforming to **ASTM A653/A653M**, with a light commercial zinc coating or **ASTM A1008/A1008M** with an electrodeposited zinc coating conforming to **ASTM B633**, Type RS.

2.8 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION

2.8.1 Manufacturer's Nameplate

Each item of equipment must have a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable.

2.8.2 Labels

Provide labeled luminaires in accordance with **UL 1598** requirements. All luminaires must be clearly marked for operation of specific light sources and ballasts, generators or drivers. Note the following light source characteristics in the format "Use Only ____":

- a. Correlated color temperature (CCT) and color rendering index (CRI) for all luminaires.

All markings related to light source type must be clear and located to be readily visible to service personnel, but unseen from normal viewing angles when light sources are in place. Ballasts, generators or drivers must have clear markings indicating multi-level outputs and indicate proper terminals for the various outputs.

2.9 FACTORY APPLIED FINISH

Provide all luminaires and lighting equipment with factory-applied painting system that as a minimum, meets requirements of **NEMA 250** corrosion-resistance test.

2.10 RECESS- AND FLUSH-MOUNTED LUMINAIRES

Provide access to lamp and ballast from bottom of luminaire. Provide trim and lenses for the exposed surface of flush-mounted luminaires as indicated on project drawings and specifications.

2.11 SUSPENDED LUMINAIRES

Provide hangers capable of supporting twice the combined weight of luminaires supported by hangers. Provide with swivel hangers to ensure a plumb installation. Provide cadmium-plated steel with a swivel-ball tapped for the conduit size indicated. Hangers must allow fixtures to swing within an angle of **45 degrees**. Brace pendants **4 feet** or longer to limit swinging. Single-unit suspended luminaires must have twin-stem hangers. Multiple-unit or continuous row luminaires must have a tubing or stem for wiring at one point and a tubing or rod suspension provided for each unit length of chassis, including one at each end. Provide rods in minimum **0.18 inch** diameter.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Electrical installations must conform to **IEEE C2**, **NFPA 70**, and to the requirements specified herein. Install luminaires and lighting controls to meet the requirements of **ASHRAE 90.1 - IP** and **ASHRAE 189.1**. To encourage consistency and uniformity, install luminaires of the same manufacture and model number when residing in the same facility or building.

3.1.1 Light Sources

When light sources are not provided as an integral part of the luminaire, deliver light sources of the type, wattage, lumen output, color temperature, color rendering index, and voltage rating indicated to the project site and install just prior to project completion, if not already installed in the luminaires from the factory.

3.1.2 Luminaires

Set luminaires plumb, square, and level with ceiling and walls, in alignment with adjacent luminaires and secure in accordance with manufacturers' directions and approved drawings. Installation must meet requirements of **NFPA 70**. Mounting heights specified or indicated must be to the bottom of the luminaire for ceiling-mounted luminaires and to center of luminaire for wall-mounted luminaires. Obtain approval of the exact mounting height on the job before commencing installation and, where applicable, after coordinating with the type, style, and pattern of the ceiling being installed. Recessed and semi-recessed luminaires must be independently supported from the building structure by a minimum of four wires, straps or rods per luminaire and located near each corner of the luminaire. Ceiling grid clips are not allowed as an alternative to independently supported luminaires. Round luminaires or luminaires smaller in size than the ceiling grid must be independently supported from the

building structure by a minimum of four wires, straps or rods per luminaire, spaced approximately equidistant around. Do not support luminaires by acoustical tile ceiling panels. Where luminaires of sizes less than the ceiling grid are indicated to be centered in the acoustical panel, support each independently and provide at least two 3/4 inch metal channels spanning, and secured to, the ceiling tees for centering and aligning the luminaire. Provide wires, straps, or rods for luminaire support in this section. Luminaires installed in suspended ceilings must also comply with the requirements of Section 09 51 00 ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS.

3.1.3 Suspended Luminaires

Provide suspended luminaires with 45 degree swivel hangers so that they hang plumb and level. Locate so that there are no obstructions within the 45 degree range in all directions. The stem, canopy and luminaire must be capable of 45 degree swing. Pendants, rods, or chains 4 feet or longer excluding luminaire must be braced to prevent swaying using three cables at 120 degree separation. Suspended luminaires in continuous rows must have internal wireway systems for end to end wiring and must be properly aligned to provide a straight and continuous row without bends, gaps, light leaks or filler pieces. Utilize aligning splines on extruded aluminum luminaires to assure minimal hairline joints. Support steel luminaires to prevent "oil-canning" effects. Luminaire finishes must be free of scratches, nicks, dents, and warps, and must match the color and gloss specified. Match supporting pendants with supported luminaire. Aircraft cable must be stainless steel. Canopies must be finished to match the ceiling and must be low profile unless otherwise shown. Maximum distance between suspension points must be 10 feet or as recommended by the manufacturer, whichever is less.

3.1.4 Power Supplies

Typically, provide power supplies (drivers) integral to luminaire as constructed by the manufacturer.

3.1.5 Exit Signs and Emergency Lighting Units

Wire exit signs and emergency lighting units ahead of the local switch, to the normal lighting circuit located in the same room or area.

3.1.6 Occupancy/Vacancy Sensors

Provide testing of sensor coverage in all spaces where sensors are placed. This should be done only after all furnishings (carpet, furniture, workstations, etc.) have been installed. Provide quantity of sensor units indicated as a minimum. Provide additional units to give full coverage over controlled area. Full coverage must provide hand and arm motion detection for office and administration type areas and walking motion for industrial areas, warehouses, storage rooms and hallways. Locate the sensor(s) as indicated and in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations to maximize energy savings and to avoid nuisance activation and deactivation due to sudden temperature or airflow changes and usage.

3.2 FIELD APPLIED PAINTING

Paint lighting equipment as required to match finish of adjacent surfaces or to meet the indicated or specified safety criteria. Provide painting as specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 26 56 00

EXTERIOR LIGHTING

05/13

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS
(AASHTO)

AASHTO LTS (2013; Errata 2013) Standard
Specifications for Structural Supports for
Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic
Signals

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 90.1 - IP (2013) Energy Standard for Buildings
Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A153/A153M (2016) Standard Specification for Zinc
Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel
Hardware

ASTM B117 (2016) Standard Practice for Operating
Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus

ASTM C1089 (2013) Standard Specification for Spun
Cast Prestressed Concrete Poles

ILLUMINATING ENGINEERING SOCIETY (IES)

IES HB-10 (2011; Errata 2015) IES Lighting Handbook

IES LM-79 (2008) Electrical and Photometric
Measurements of Solid-State Lighting
Products

IES LM-80 (2015) Measuring Lumen Maintenance of LED
Light Sources

IES RP-16 (2010; Addendum A 2008; Addenda B 2009;
Addendum C 2016) Nomenclature and
Definitions for Illuminating Engineering

IES RP-8 (2014) Roadway Lighting

IES TM-15 (2011) Luminaire Classification System for
Outdoor Luminaires

IES TM-21 (2011; Addendum B 2015) Projecting Long
Term Lumen Maintenance of LED Light Sources

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 100 (2000; Archived) The Authoritative
Dictionary of IEEE Standards Terms

IEEE C2 (2017; Errata 1-2 2017; INT 1 2017)
National Electrical Safety Code

IEEE C62.41.2 (2002) Recommended Practice on
Characterization of Surges in Low-Voltage
(1000 V and Less) AC Power Circuits

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

ANSI C136.13 (2004; R 2009) American National Standard
for Roadway Lighting Equipment, Metal
Brackets for Wood Poles

ANSI C136.21 (2014) American National Standard for
Roadway and Area Lighting Equipment -
Vertical Tenons Used with Post-Top-Mounted
Luminaires

ANSI C136.3 (2014) American National Standard for
Roadway and Area Lighting Equipment
Luminaire Attachments

NEMA 250 (2014) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment
(1000 Volts Maximum)

NEMA ANSLG C78.377 (2017) Electric Lamps- Specifications for
the Chromaticity of Solid State Lighting
Products

NEMA C136.31 (2010) American National for Roadway and
Area Lighting Equipment - Luminaire
Vibration

NEMA C82.77 (2002) Harmonic Emission Limits - Related
Power Quality Requirements for Lighting
Equipment

NEMA IEC 60529 (2004) Degrees of Protection Provided by
Enclosures (IP Code)

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2;
TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6;
TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10;
TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA
17-14; TIA 17-15; TIA 17-16; TIA 17-17)
National Electrical Code

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

47 CFR 15

Radio Frequency Devices

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 1310

(2018) UL Standard for Safety Class 2
Power Units

UL 1598

(2008; Reprint Oct 2012) Luminaires

UL 773

(2016; Reprint Nov 2017) UL Standard for
Safety Plug-In, Locking Type Photocontrols
for Use with Area Lighting

UL 773A

(2016; Reprint May 2018) UL Standard for
Safety Nonindustrial Photoelectric
Switches for Lighting Control

UL 8750

(2015; Reprint Aug 2018) UL Standard for
Safety Light Emitting Diode (LED)
Equipment for Use in Lighting Products

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Materials not considered to be luminaires or lighting equipment are specified in Section(s) 33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION. Luminaires and accessories installed in interior of buildings are specified in Section 26 51 00 INTERIOR LIGHTING.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- a. Unless otherwise specified or indicated, electrical and electronics terms used in these specifications, and on the drawings shall be as defined in IEEE 100 and IES RP-16.
- b. For LED luminaire light sources, "Useful Life" is the operating hours before reaching 70 percent of the initial rated lumen output (L70) with no catastrophic failures under normal operating conditions. This is also known as 70 percent "Rated Lumen Maintenance Life" as defined in IES LM-80.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Photometric Plan; G

LED Luminaire Warranty; G

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Luminaire Drawings; G

Poles; G

SD-03 Product Data

LED, Luminaires; G

Luminaire Light Sources; G

Luminaire Power Supply Units (Drivers); G

Photocell; G

Concrete Poles; G

Brackets

SD-05 Design Data

Design Data for Luminaires; G

SD-06 Test Reports

LED Luminaire - IES LM-79 Test Report; G

LED Light Source - IES LM-80 Test Report; G

Operating Test

Submit operating test results as stated in paragraph entitled "Field Quality Control."

SD-07 Certificates

Luminaire Useful Life Certificate; G

Submit certification from the manufacturer indicating the expected useful life of the luminaires provided. The useful life shall be directly correlated from the IES LM-80 test data using procedures outlined in IES TM-21. Thermal properties of the specific luminaire and local ambient operating temperature and conditions shall be taken into consideration.

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Concrete Poles

Submit instructions prior to installation.

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operational Service

Submit documentation that includes contact information, summary of procedures, and the limitations and conditions applicable to the project. Indicate manufacturer's commitment to reclaim materials for recycling and/or reuse.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 Drawing Requirements

1.5.1.1 Luminaire Drawings

Include dimensions, effective projected area (EPA), accessories, and installation and construction details. Photometric data, including zonal lumen data, average and minimum ratio, aiming diagram, and candlepower distribution data shall accompany shop drawings.

1.5.1.2 Poles

Include dimensions, wind load determined in accordance with [AASHTO LTS](#), pole deflection, pole class, and other applicable information. For concrete poles, include: section and details to indicate quantities and position of prestressing steel, spiral steel, inserts, and through holes; initial prestressing steel tension; and concrete strengths at release and at 28 days.

1.5.2 Photometric Plan

For LED luminaires, include computer-generated photometric analysis of the "designed to" values for the "end of useful life" of the luminaire installation using a light loss factor of 0.7. For LED and all other types of luminaires, the submittal shall include the following:

Horizontal illuminance measurements at finished grade, taken at a maximum of every [10 feet](#).

Vertical illuminance measurements at [5 feet](#) above finished grade.

Minimum and maximum [footcandle](#) levels.

Average maintained [footcandle](#) level.

Maximum to minimum ratio for horizontal illuminance only.

1.5.3 Design Data for Luminaires

- a. Provide distribution data according to IES classification type as defined in [IES HB-10](#).
- b. Shielding as defined by [IES RP-8](#) or B.U.G. rating for the installed position as defined by [IES TM-15](#).
- c. Provide safety certification and file number for the luminaire family. Include listing, labeling and identification per [NFPA 70](#) (NEC). Applicable testing bodies are determined by the US Occupational Safety Health Administration (OSHA) as Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratories (NRTL) and include: CSA (Canadian Standards Association), ETL (Edison Testing Laboratory), and UL (Underwriters Laboratories).
- d. Provide long term lumen maintenance projections for each LED luminaire in accordance with [IES TM-21](#). Data used for projections shall be obtained from testing in accordance with [IES LM-80](#).
- e. Provide wind loading calculations for luminaires mounted on poles. Weight and effective projected area (EPA) of luminaires and mounting

brackets shall not exceed maximum rating of pole as installed in particular wind zone area.

1.5.4 LED Luminaire - IES LM-79 Test Report

Submit test report on manufacturer's standard production model luminaire. Submittal shall include all photometric and electrical measurements, as well as all other pertinent data outlined under "14.0 Test Report" in IES LM-79.

1.5.5 LED Light Source - IES LM-80 Test Report

Submit report on manufacturer's standard production LED package, array, or module. Submittal shall include:

- a. Testing agency, report number, date, type of equipment, and LED light source being tested.
- b. All data required by IES LM-80.

1.5.5.1 Test Laboratories

Test laboratories for the IES LM-79 and IES LM-80 test reports shall be one of the following:

- a. National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) accredited for solid-state lighting testing as part of the Energy-Efficient Lighting Products laboratory accreditation program.
- b. One of the qualified labs listed on the Department of Energy - Energy Efficiency & Renewable Energy, Solid-State Lighting web site.
- c. A manufacturer's in-house lab that meets the following criteria:
 1. Manufacturer has been regularly engaged in the design and production of high intensity discharge roadway and area luminaires and the manufacturer's lab has been successfully certifying these fixtures for a minimum of 15 years.
 2. Annual equipment calibration including photometer calibration in accordance with National Institute of Standards and Technology.

1.5.6 Regulatory Requirements

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "shall" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction," or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer. Equipment, materials, installation, and workmanship shall be in accordance with the mandatory and advisory provisions of NFPA 70 unless more stringent requirements are specified or indicated.

1.5.7 Standard Products

Provide materials and equipment that are products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of such products which are of equal material, design and workmanship. Products shall have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening. The 2-year

period shall include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The product shall have been on sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2-year period. Where two or more items of the same class of equipment are required, these items shall be products of a single manufacturer; however, the component parts of the item need not be the products of the same manufacturer unless stated in this section.

1.5.7.1 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a 2-year field service record will be acceptable if the manufacturer has been regularly engaged in the design and production of high intensity discharge roadway and area luminaires for a minimum of 15 years. Products shall have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 15 years prior to bid opening. The product shall have been on sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 15-year period.

1.5.7.2 Material and Equipment Manufacturing Date

Products manufactured more than 1 year prior to date of delivery to site shall not be used, unless specified otherwise.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING OF POLES

1.6.1 Concrete Poles

Do not store poles on ground. Support poles so they are at least **one foot** above ground level and growing vegetation.

1.7 WARRANTY

The equipment items shall be supported by service organizations which are reasonably convenient to the equipment installation in order to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

1.7.1 LED Luminaire Warranty

Provide **Luminaire Useful Life Certificate**.

The equipment items shall be supported by service organizations which are reasonably convenient to the equipment installation in order to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

- a. Provide a written five year on-site replacement warranty for material, fixture finish, and workmanship. On-site replacement includes transportation, removal, and installation of new products.
 1. Finish warranty shall include warranty against failure and against substantial deterioration such as blistering, cracking, peeling, chalking, or fading.
 2. Material warranty shall include:
 - (a) All power supply units (drivers).
 - (b) Replacement when more than 10 percent of LED sources in any

lightbar or subassembly(s) are defective or non-starting.

- b. Warranty period must begin on date of beneficial occupancy. Contractor shall provide the Contracting Officer signed warranty certificates prior to final payment.

1.8 OPERATIONAL SERVICE

Coordinate with manufacturer for maintenance agreement and take-back program. Collect information from the manufacturer about maintenance agreement and green lease options, and submit to Contracting Officer. Services shall reclaim materials for recycling and/or reuse. Services shall not deposit materials in landfills or burn reclaimed materials. Indicate procedures for compliance with regulations governing disposal of mercury. When such a service is not available, local recyclers shall be sought after to reclaim the materials.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT COORDINATION

Products and materials not considered to be luminaires, equipment or accessories are specified in Section 33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION, Luminaires and associated equipment and accessories for interior applications are specified in Section 26 51 00 INTERIOR LIGHTING.

2.2 LED, LUMINAIRES

UL 1598, NEMA C82.77 and UL 8750. Provide luminaires as indicated in luminaire schedule and XL plates or details on project plans. Provide luminaires complete with light sources of quantity, type, and wattage indicated. All luminaires of the same type shall be provided by the same manufacturer.

2.2.1 General Requirements

- a. LED luminaire housings shall be die cast or extruded aluminum.
- b. LED luminaires shall be rated for operation within an ambient temperature range of minus 22 degrees F to 104 degrees F.
- c. Luminaires shall be UL listed for wet locations per UL 1598. Optical compartment for LED luminaires shall be sealed and rated a minimum of IP65 per NEMA IEC 60529.
- d. LED luminaires shall produce a minimum efficacy as shown in the following table, tested per IES LM-79. Theoretical models of initial raw LED lumens per watt are not acceptable.

Application	Luminaire Efficacy in Lumens per Watt
Exterior Pole/Arm-Mounted Area and Roadway Luminaires	65
Exterior Wall-Mounted Area Luminaires	60

- e. Luminaires shall have IES distribution and NEMA field angle

classifications as indicated in luminaire schedule on project plans per IES HB-10.

- f. Housing finish shall be baked-on enamel, anodized, or baked-on powder coat paint. Finish shall be capable of surviving ASTM B117 salt fog environment testing for 2500 hours minimum without blistering or peeling.
- g. Luminaires shall not exceed the following IES TM-15 Backlight, Uplight and Glare (B.U.G.) ratings:
 - 1. Maximum Backlight (B) rating shall be determined by lighting zone in which luminaire is placed.
 - 2. Maximum Uplight (U) rating shall be U0.
 - 3. Maximum Glare (G) rating shall be determined by lighting zone in which luminaire is placed.
- h. Luminaires shall be fully assembled and electrically tested prior to shipment from factory.
- i. The finish color shall be as indicated in the luminaire schedule or detail on the project plans.
- j. Luminaire arm bolts shall be 304 stainless steel or zinc-plated steel.
- k. Luminaire lenses shall be constructed of clear tempered glass or UV-resistant acrylic.
- l. The wiring compartment on pole-mounted, street and area luminaires must be accessible without the use of hand tools to manipulate small screws, bolts, or hardware.
- m. Incorporate modular electrical connections, and construct luminaires to allow replacement of all or any part of the optics, heat sinks, power supply units, ballasts, surge suppressors and other electrical components using only a simple tool, such as a manual or cordless electric screwdriver.
- n. Luminaires shall have a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, date of manufacture, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place. The nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable.
- o. Area luminaires shall have an integral tilt adjustment of plus or minus 5 degrees to allow the unit to be leveled in accordance with ANSI C136.3.
- p. Luminaire must pass 3G vibration testing in accordance with NEMA C136.31.
- q. All factory electrical connections shall be made using crimp, locking, or latching style connectors. Twist-style wire nuts are not acceptable.

2.2.2 Luminaire Light Sources

2.2.2.1 LED Light Sources

- a. Correlated Color Temperature (CCT) shall be in accordance with NEMA ANSLG C78.377:

Nominal CCT: 4000 degrees K: 3985 plus or minus 275 degrees K

b. Color Rendering Index (CRI) shall be:

Greater than or equal to 70 for 4000 degrees K light sources.

c. Color Consistency:

Manufacturer shall utilize a maximum 4-step MacAdam ellipse binning tolerance for color consistency of LEDs used in luminaires.

2.2.3 Luminaire Power Supply Units (Drivers)

2.2.3.1 LED Power Supply Units (Drivers)

UL 1310. LED Power Supply Units (Drivers) shall meet the following requirements:

- a. Minimum efficiency shall be 85 percent.
- b. Drive current to each individual LED shall not exceed 600 mA, plus or minus 10 percent.
- c. Shall be rated to operate between ambient temperatures of **minus 22 degrees F** and **104 degrees F**.
- d. Shall be designed to operate on the voltage system to which they are connected, typically ranging from 120 V to 480 V nominal.
- e. Operating frequency shall be: 60 Hz.
- f. Power Factor (PF) shall be greater than or equal to 0.90.
- g. Total Harmonic Distortion (THD) current shall be less than or equal to 20 percent.
- h. Shall meet requirements of **47 CFR 15**, Class B.
- i. Shall be RoHS-compliant.
- j. Shall be mounted integral to luminaire. Remote mounting of power supply is not allowed.
- k. Power supplies in luminaires mounted under a covered structure, such as a canopy, or where otherwise appropriate shall be UL listed with a sound rating of A.
- m. Shall be equipped with over-temperature protection circuit that turns light source off until normal operating temperature is achieved.

2.2.4 LED Luminaire Surge Protection

Provide surge protection integral to luminaire to meet C Low waveforms as defined by **IEEE C62.41.2**, Scenario 1, Location Category C.

2.3 EXTERIOR LUMINAIRE CONTROLS

Controls shall comply with Section 9 of **ASHRAE 90.1 - IP**.

2.3.1 Photocell

UL 773 or UL 773A. Photocells shall be hermetically sealed, silicon diode light sensor type, rated at 277 volts, 50/60 Hz with single-pole, single-throw contacts. Photocell shall be designed to fail to the ON position. Housing shall be constructed of polycarbonate, rated to operate within a temperature range of minus 40 to 158 degrees F. Photocell shall turn on at 1-3 footcandles and turn off at 3 to 15 footcandles. A time delay shall prevent accidental switching from transient light sources. Photocell to be designed for 20-year service to match life expectancy of long-life LED fixtures and exceeds 15,000 operations at full load. Provide photocell with zero-cross technology to withstand severe in-rush current and extend relay life.

2.4 POLES

Provide poles designed for wind loading of 140 miles per hour determined in accordance with AASHTO LTS while supporting luminaires and all other appurtenances indicated. The effective projected areas of luminaires and appurtenances used in calculations shall be specific for the actual products provided on each pole. Poles shall be embedded-base type designed for use with underground supply conductors. Poles shall have oval-shaped handhole having a minimum clear opening of 2.5 by 5 inches. Handhole cover shall be secured by stainless steel captive screws. Scratched, stained, chipped, or dented poles shall not be installed.

2.4.1 Concrete Poles

Provide concrete poles conforming to ASTM C1089. Cross-sectional shape shall be round or multi-sided.

2.4.1.1 Steel Reinforcing

Prestressed concrete pole shafts shall be reinforced with steel prestressing members. Design shall provide internal longitudinal loading by either pretensioning or post tensioning of longitudinal reinforcing members.

2.4.1.2 Tensioned Reinforcing

Primary reinforcement steel used for a prestressed concrete pole shaft shall be tensioned between 60 to 70 percent of its ultimate strength. The amount of reinforcement shall be such that when reinforcement is tensioned to 70 percent of its ultimate strength, the total resultant tensile force does not exceed the minimum section compressive strength of the concrete.

2.4.1.3 Coating and Sleeves for Reinforcing Members

Where minimum internal coverage cannot be maintained next to required core openings, such as handhole and wiring inlet, reinforcing shall be protected with a vaporproof noncorrosive sleeve over the length without the 1/2 inch concrete coverage. Each steel reinforcing member which is to be post-tensioned shall have a nonmigrating slipper coating applied prior to the addition of concrete to ensure uniformity of stress throughout the length of such member.

2.4.1.4 Strength Requirement

As an exception to the requirements of [ASTM C1089](#), poles shall be naturally cured to achieve a 28-day compressive strength of [7000 psi](#). Poles shall not be subjected to severe temperature changes during the curing period.

2.4.1.5 Shaft Preparation

Completed prestressed concrete pole shaft shall have a hard, smooth, nonporous surface that is resistant to soil acids, road salts, and attacks of water and frost, and shall be clean, smooth, and free of surface voids and internal honeycombing. Poles shall not be installed for at least 15 days after manufacture.

2.5 BRACKETS AND SUPPORTS

[ANSI C136.3](#), [ANSI C136.13](#), and [ANSI C136.21](#), as applicable. Pole brackets shall be not less than [1 1/4 inch](#) aluminum secured to pole. Slip-fitter or pipe-threaded brackets may be used, but brackets shall be coordinated to luminaires provided, and brackets for use with one type of luminaire shall be identical. Brackets for pole-mounted street lights shall correctly position luminaire no lower than mounting height indicated. Mount brackets not less than [24 feet](#) above street. Special mountings or brackets shall be as indicated and shall be of metal which will not promote galvanic reaction with luminaire head.

2.6 POLE FOUNDATIONS

Anchor bolts shall be steel rod having a minimum yield strength of [50,000 psi](#); the top [12 inches](#) of the rod shall be galvanized in accordance with [ASTM A153/A153M](#). Concrete shall be as specified in Section [03 30 00](#) CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.

2.7 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION

2.7.1 Manufacturer's Nameplate

Each item of equipment shall have a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable.

2.7.2 Labels

Provide labeled luminaires in accordance with [UL 1598](#) requirements. Luminaires shall be clearly marked for operation of specific light sources and ballasts according to proper light source type. The following light source characteristics shall be noted in the format "Use Only _____":

- a. Correlated color temperature (CCT) and color rendering index (CRI) for all luminaires.

Markings related to lamp type shall be clear and located to be readily visible to service personnel, but unseen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.

2.8 FACTORY APPLIED FINISH

Electrical equipment shall have factory-applied painting systems which

shall, as a minimum, meet the requirements of NEMA 250 corrosion-resistance test.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Electrical installations shall conform to IEEE C2, NFPA 70, and to the requirements specified herein.

3.1.1 Concrete Poles

Install according to pole manufacturer's instructions.

3.1.2 Pole Setting

Depth shall be as indicated. Poles in straight runs shall be in a straight line. Dig holes large enough to permit the proper use of tampers to the full depth of the hole. Place backfill in the hole in 6 inch maximum layers and thoroughly tamp. Place surplus earth around the pole in a conical shape and pack tightly to drain water away.

3.1.3 Photocell Switch Aiming

Aim switch according to manufacturer's recommendations.

3.1.4 GROUNDING

Ground noncurrent-carrying parts of equipment including luminaires, mounting arms, brackets, and metallic enclosures as specified in Section 33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION. Where copper grounding conductor is connected to a metal other than copper, provide specially treated or lined connectors suitable for this purpose.

3.1.5 FIELD APPLIED PAINTING

Paint electrical equipment as required to match finish of adjacent surfaces or to meet the indicated or specified safety criteria. Painting shall be as specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Upon completion of installation, verify that equipment is properly installed, connected, and adjusted. Conduct an operating test after 100 hours of burn-in time to show that the equipment operates in accordance with the requirements of this section.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 27 10 00

BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEM

****Updated 01/2019****

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D709 (2016) Standard Specification for
Laminated Thermosetting Materials

ELECTRONIC COMPONENTS INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION (ECIA)

ECIA EIA/ECA 310-E (2005) Cabinets, Racks, Panels, and
Associated Equipment

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 100 (2000; Archived) The Authoritative
Dictionary of IEEE Standards Terms

INSULATED CABLE ENGINEERS ASSOCIATION (ICEA)

ICEA S-83-596 (2016) Indoor Optical Fiber Cables

ICEA S-90-661 (2012) Category 3, 5, & 5e Individually
Unshielded Twisted Pair Indoor Cables for
Use in General Purpose and LAN
Communications Wiring Systems Technical
Requirements

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL CONTRACTORS ASSOCIATION (NECA)

NECA/BICSI 568 (2006) Standard for Installing Building
Telecommunications Cabling

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

ANSI/NEMA WC 66 (2013) Performance Standard for Category 6
and Category 7 100 Ohm Shielded and
Unshielded Twisted Pairs

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2017) National Electrical Code

TELECOMMUNICATIONS INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION (TIA)

TIA-1152 (2009) Requirements for Field Test
Instruments and Measurements for Balanced
Twisted-Pair Cabling

TIA-455-21	(1988a; R 2012) FOTP-21 - Mating Durability of Fiber Optic Interconnecting Devices
TIA-526-7	(2015a) OFSTP-7 Measurement of Optical Power Loss of Installed Single-Mode Fiber Cable Plant
TIA-568-C.0	(2009; Add 1 2010; Add 2 2012) Generic Telecommunications Cabling for Customer Premises
TIA-568-C.1	(2009; Add 2 2011; Add 1 2012) Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard
TIA-568-C.2	(2009; Errata 2010; Add 2 2014; Add 1 2016) Balanced Twisted-Pair Telecommunications Cabling and Components Standards
TIA-568-C.3	(2008; Add 1 2011) Optical Fiber Cabling Components Standard
TIA-569	(2015d) Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces
TIA-606	(2012b; Add 1 2015) Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure
TIA-607	(2011b) Generic Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding (Earthing) for Customer Premises
TIA/EIA-598	(2014d) Optical Fiber Cable Color Coding
TIA/EIA-604-3	(2004b; R 2014) Fiber Optic Connector Intermateability Standard (FOCIS), Type SC and SC-APC, FOCIS-3

U.S. FEDERAL COMMUNICATIONS COMMISSION (FCC)

FCC Part 68	Connection of Terminal Equipment to the Telephone Network (47 CFR 68)

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 1286	(2008; Reprint Feb 2015) Office Furnishings
UL 1666	(2007; Reprint Jun 2012) Test for Flame Propagation Height of Electrical and Optical-Fiber Cables Installed Vertically in Shafts
UL 2043	(2013) Fire Test for Heat and Visible Smoke Release for Discrete Products and Their Accessories Installed in

Air-Handling Spaces

UL 444	(2008; Reprint Apr 2015) Communications Cables
UL 467	(2013) Grounding and Bonding Equipment
UL 50	(2015) UL Standard for Safety Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Non-Environmental Considerations
UL 514C	(2014; Reprint Dec 2014) Nonmetallic Outlet Boxes, Flush-Device Boxes, and Covers
UL 969	(1995; Reprint Sep 2014) Standard for Marking and Labeling Systems

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM and Section 33 82 00 TELECOMMUNICATIONS, OUTSIDE PLANT (OSP) apply to this section with additions and modifications specified herein.

Contact Camp Lejeune Base Telephone (aka Telecommunications Support Division or TSD) for special requirements on classified service cabling and color, unofficial service, under slab cabling, using water block, and any item not covered in this document.

Buildings with Special Network Requirements such as Classified networks, other government agencies (Navy NMCfI, Navy Medical, DLA, VA. Etc.), Marine Corps Community Services, Commercial ISP's, and CATV may require additional guidance outside this specification. Controlled or Restricted Access Areas may contain Classified networks may require Protected Distribution System which shall be installed in accordance with the current CNSSI No. 7003 and other restricted release publications. Classified networks may require shielded twisted pair, specific separation, distinct colored components, and shall be in accordance with current CNSSAM TEMPEST 1-13, RED/BLACK Separation documentation. In these cases contact Telecommunications Support Division G-6 MCIEAST-MCB CAMLEJ for additional guidance at (910) 451-9439 or (910) 451-3100.

Contact AHJ for special requirements on classified service, unofficial service, under slab cabling, using water block, and any item not covered in this document.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

Unless otherwise specified or indicated, electrical and electronics terms used in this specification shall be as defined in TIA-568-C.1, TIA-568-C.2, TIA-568-C.3, TIA-569, TIA-606 and IEEE 100 and herein.

1.3.1 Main Distribution Frame (MDF)

A physical structure at a central location for terminating permanent backbone cables to interconnect with service provider (SP) equipment at the activity minimum point of presence. The MDF generally includes vendor specific components to support voice and data circuits, building surge

protector assemblies, main cross connect blocks, equipment support frames, and fire rated plywood backboard. Depending upon local site conditions, the MDF, BDF and EF may be the same space.

1.3.2 Building Distribution Frame (BDF)

A structure with terminations for connecting backbone, campus, and horizontal cabling. The BDF generally includes a cross connect, equipment support frame or lockable terminal cabinet, cable supports, and fire rated plywood backboard. The BDF shall include building protector assemblies when used for campus backbone or SP cabling. Also known as a (BD).

1.3.3 Intermediate Distribution Frame (IDF)

An intermediate termination point for horizontal wiring and cross connections within telecommunications rooms. Shall be connected to MDF with both fiber and copper. Secure Internet Protocol (SIPR) vault or cabinet is considered an IDF. Also known as a (FD).

1.3.4 Communications Room (CR)

An enclosed space for telecommunications equipment, terminations, and cross connect wiring for horizontal cabling. Also known as (TR), (CR), and IT Room. Terms are used interchangeably in this section and are considered to have the same meaning.

1.3.5 Campus Distributor (CD)

A distributor from which the campus backbone cabling emanates. (International expression for main cross-connect (MC). Also known as Central Office (CO) or Area Distribution Node (ADN)).

1.3.6 Building Distributor (BD)

A distributor in which the building backbone (customer owned outside plant) cables terminate and at which connections to the campus backbone cables may be made. (International expression for intermediate cross-connect (IC).)

1.3.7 Floor Distributor (FD)

A distributor used to connect horizontal cable and cabling subsystems or equipment. (International expression for horizontal cross-connect (HC)).

1.3.8 Telecommunications Room (TR)

An enclosed space for housing telecommunications equipment, cable, terminations, and cross-connects. The room is the recognized cross-connect between the backbone cable and the horizontal cabling. Also known as a (CR), and IT Room.

1.3.9 Entrance Facility (EF) (Telecommunications) (can be same as the MDF)

An entrance to the building for both private and public network service cables (including wireless) including the entrance point at the building wall and continuing to the equipment room.

1.3.10 Equipment Room (ER) (Telecommunications) (can be same as communications room)

An environmentally controlled centralized space for telecommunications equipment that serves the occupants of a building. Equipment housed therein is considered distinct from a telecommunications room because of the nature of its complexity.

1.3.11 Open Cable

Cabling that is not run enclosed in a raceway as defined by NFPA 70. This refers to cabling that is "open" to the space in which the cable has been installed and is therefore exposed to the environmental conditions associated with that space, such as wire basket tray, cable tray, J-hooks, D-rings, or bridal rings. D rings should only be used in the communications room for cable management and J-hooks/bridal rings shall not be used.

1.3.12 Open Office

A floor space division provided by furniture, moveable partitions, or other means instead of by building walls, normally over 100 square feet.

1.3.13 Pathway

A physical infrastructure utilized for the placement and routing of telecommunications cable. Also known as raceway.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

The building telecommunications cabling and pathway system shall include permanently installed backbone and horizontal cabling, horizontal and backbone pathways, service entrance facilities, work area pathways, telecommunications outlet assemblies, conduit, raceway, and hardware for splicing, terminating, and interconnecting cabling necessary to transport telephone data, and other communications systems (including LAN A/V, intercom, PA, CATV, CCTV, and WiFi) between equipment items in a building. The horizontal system shall be wired in a star topology from the telecommunications work area to the floor distributor/IDF or building distributor/MDF or campus distributor or communications room at the center or hub of the star. The backbone cabling and pathway system includes intrabuilding and interbuilding interconnecting cabling, pathway, and terminal hardware. The intrabuilding backbone provides connectivity from the floor distributors to the building distributors or to the campus distributor and from the building distributors to the campus distributor as required. The backbone system shall be wired in a star topology with the campus distributor (Area Distribution Node) at the center or hub of the star. The interbuilding backbone system provides connectivity between the campus distributors and is specified in Section 33 82 00 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTSIDE PLANT (OSP). Provide telecommunications pathway systems referenced herein as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. The telecommunications contractor must coordinate with MCB CL Base Telephone (TSD) concerning access to and configuration of telecommunications spaces. The telecommunications contractor may be required to coordinate work effort within the telecommunications spaces with the electrical sub and general contractor, ROICC and MCI East G-6 Telecommunications Support Division (TSD).

1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Telecommunications drawings; G

Telecommunications Space Drawings; G

In addition to Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, provide shop drawings in accordance with paragraph SHOP DRAWINGS.

SD-03 Product Data

Telecommunications cabling (backbone and horizontal); G

Patch panels; G

Telecommunications outlet/connector assemblies; G

Equipment support frame; G

Connector blocks; G

Submittals shall include the manufacturer's name, trade name, place of manufacture, and catalog model or number. Include performance and characteristic curves. Submittals shall also include applicable federal, military, industry, and technical society publication references. Should manufacturer's data require supplemental information for clarification, the supplemental information shall be submitted as specified in paragraph REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS and as required in Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.

SD-06 Test Reports

Telecommunications cabling testing; G

SD-07 Certificates

Telecommunications Contractor Qualifications; G

Key Personnel Qualifications; G

Manufacturer Qualifications; G

Test plan; G

SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Reports

Factory reel tests; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Telecommunications cabling and pathway system Data Package 5; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Record Documentation; G

1.5.1 Additional Submittal Requirements

All submittals of material, equipment and design must be approved by the Telecommunications Support Division (TSD) prior to installing any telecommunications wiring, equipment, or power to support communications.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6.1 Shop Drawings

In exception to Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, submitted plan drawings shall be a minimum of 11 by 17 inches in size using a minimum scale of 1/8 inch per foot. Include wiring diagrams and installation details of equipment indicating proposed location, layout and arrangement, control panels, accessories, piping, ductwork, and other items that must be shown to ensure a coordinated installation. Wiring diagrams shall identify circuit terminals and indicate the internal wiring for each item of equipment and the interconnection between each item of equipment. Drawings shall indicate adequate clearance for operation, maintenance, and replacement of operating equipment devices. Submittals shall include the nameplate data, size, and capacity. Submittals shall also include applicable federal, military, industry, and technical society publication references.

1.6.1.1 Telecommunications Drawings

Provide Registered Communications Distribution Designer (RCDD) approved, drawings in accordance with TIA-606. The identifier for each termination and cable shall appear on the drawings. Drawings shall depict final telecommunications installed wiring system infrastructure in accordance with TIA-606. The drawings should provide details required to prove that the distribution system shall properly support connectivity from the EF telecommunications and ER telecommunications, CD's, BD's, and FD's to the telecommunications work area outlets. Provide a plastic laminated schematic of the as-installed telecommunications cable system showing cabling, CD's, BD's, FD's, and the EF and ER for telecommunications keyed to floor plans by room number. Mount the laminated schematic in the EF telecommunications space as directed by the Contracting Officer. The following drawings shall be provided as a minimum:

- a. T1 - Layout of complete building per floor - Building Area/Serving Zone Boundaries, Backbone Systems, and Horizontal Pathways. Layout of complete building per floor. The drawing indicates location of building areas, serving zones, vertical backbone diagrams, telecommunications rooms, access points, pathways, grounding system, and other systems that need to be viewed from the complete building perspective.
- b. T2 - Serving Zones/Building Area Drawings - Drop Locations and Cable Identification (ID'S). Shows a building area or serving zone. These drawings show drop locations, telecommunications rooms, dedicated electrical, access points and detail call outs for common equipment rooms and other congested areas.

- c. T4 - Typical Detail Drawings - Faceplate Labeling, Firestopping, Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), Safety, Department of Transportation (DOT). Detailed drawings of symbols and typicals such as faceplate labeling, faceplate types, faceplate population installation procedures, detail racking, and raceways.

1.6.1.2 Telecommunications Space Drawings

Provide T3 drawings in accordance with TIA-606 that include telecommunications rooms plan views, pathway layout (cable tray, racks, ladder-racks, etc.), mechanical/electrical layout, and cabinet, rack, backboard and wall elevations. Drawings shall show layout of applicable equipment including incoming cable stub or connector blocks, building protector assembly, outgoing cable connector blocks, mechanical/electrical, patch panels and equipment spaces and cabinet/racks. Drawings shall include a complete list of equipment and material, equipment rack details, proposed layout and anchorage of equipment and appurtenances, and equipment relationship to other parts of the work including clearance for maintenance and operation. Drawings may also be an enlargement of a congested area of T1 or T2 drawings.

1.6.2 Telecommunications Contractor Qualifications

Work under this section shall be performed by and the equipment shall be provided by the approved telecommunications contractor and key personnel. Qualifications shall be provided for: the telecommunications system contractor, the telecommunications system installer, and the supervisor (if different from the installer). A minimum of 30 days prior to installation, submit documentation of the experience of the telecommunications contractor and of the key personnel.

1.6.2.1 Telecommunications Contractor

The telecommunications contractor shall be a firm which is regularly and professionally engaged in the business of the applications, installation, and testing of the specified telecommunications systems and equipment. The telecommunications contractor shall demonstrate experience in providing successful telecommunications systems within the past 3 years of similar scope and size. Submit documentation for a minimum of three and a maximum of five successful telecommunication system installations for the telecommunications contractor. Also IAW Section on QC Specialists; a Telecommunications Systems QC Specialist may be required on site, full time with 10 years minimum experience in telecom installation and experience. Specialist shall be very familiar with UFGS Divisions 27, 28, 33 concerning communications systems work and installation.

1.6.2.2 Key Personnel

Provide key personnel who are regularly and professionally engaged in the business of the application, installation and testing of the specified telecommunications systems and equipment. There may be one key person or more key persons proposed for this solicitation depending upon how many of the key roles each has successfully provided. Each of the key personnel shall demonstrate experience in providing successful telecommunications systems within the past 3 years.

Supervisors and installers assigned to the installation of this system or any of its components shall be Building Industry Consulting Services International (BICSI) Registered Cabling Installers, Technician Level.

Submit documentation of current BICSI certification for each of the key personnel.

In lieu of BICSI certification, supervisors and installers assigned to the installation of this system or any of its components shall have a minimum of 3 years experience in the installation of the specified copper and fiber optic cable and components. They shall have factory or factory approved certification from each equipment manufacturer indicating that they are qualified to install and test the provided products. Submit documentation for a minimum of three and a maximum of five successful telecommunication system installations for each of the key personnel. Documentation for each key person shall include at least two successful system installations provided that are equivalent in system size and in construction complexity to the telecommunications system proposed for this solicitation. Include specific experience in installing and testing telecommunications systems and provide the names and locations of at least two project installations successfully completed using optical fiber and copper telecommunications cabling systems. All of the existing telecommunications system installations offered by the key persons as successful experience shall have been in successful full-time service for at least 18 months prior to the issuance date for this solicitation. Provide the name and role of the key person, the title, location, and completed installation date of the referenced project, the referenced project owner point of contact information including name, organization, title, and telephone number, and generally, the referenced project description including system size and construction complexity.

Indicate that all key persons are currently employed by the telecommunications contractor, or have a commitment to the telecommunications contractor to work on this project. All key persons shall be employed by the telecommunications contractor at the date of issuance of this solicitation, or if not, have a commitment to the telecommunications contractor to work on this project by the date that the bid was due to the Contracting Officer.

Note that only the key personnel approved by the Contracting Officer in the successful proposal shall do work on this solicitation's telecommunications system. Key personnel shall function in the same roles in this contract, as they functioned in the offered successful experience. Any substitutions for the telecommunications contractor's key personnel requires approval from The Contracting Officer.

1.6.2.3 Minimum [Manufacturer Qualifications](#)

Cabling, equipment and hardware manufacturers shall have a minimum of 3 years experience in the manufacturing, assembly, and factory testing of components which comply with [TIA-568-C.1](#), [TIA-568-C.2](#) and [TIA-568-C.3](#).

1.6.3 [Test Plan](#)

Provide a complete and detailed test plan for the telecommunications cabling system including a complete list of test equipment for the components and accessories for each cable type specified, 60 days prior to the proposed test date. Include procedures for certification, validation, [sample report](#), and testing.

1.6.4 Regulatory Requirements

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory

provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "shall" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction," or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer. Equipment, materials, installation, and workmanship shall be in accordance with the mandatory and advisory provisions of NFPA 70, manufacturer recommendations/installation manual, best known industry practices, and industry standards, unless more stringent requirements are specified or indicated.

1.6.5 Standard Products

Provide materials and equipment that are products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of such products which are of equal material, design and workmanship. Products shall have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening. The 2-year period shall include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The product shall have been on sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2-year period. Where two or more items of the same class of equipment are required, these items shall be products of a single manufacturer; however, the component parts of the item need not be the products of the same manufacturer unless stated in this section. Modification of manufacturer's standard products such as painting faceplates is not authorized.

1.6.5.1 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a 2-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturers' factory or laboratory tests, is furnished.

1.6.5.2 Material and Equipment Manufacturing Date

Products manufactured more than 1 year prior to date of delivery to site shall not be used, unless specified otherwise.

1.7 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Provide protection from weather, moisture, extreme heat and cold, dirt, dust, and other contaminants for telecommunications cabling and equipment placed in storage.

1.8 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Connecting hardware shall be rated for operation under ambient conditions of 0 to 60 degrees C 32 to 140 degrees F and in the range of 0 to 95 percent relative humidity, noncondensing. All telecommunications spaces shall follow TIA-569 design.

1.9 WARRANTY

The equipment items shall be supported by service organizations which are reasonably convenient to the equipment installation in order to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

1.10 MAINTENANCE

1.10.1 Operation and Maintenance Manuals

Commercial off the shelf manuals shall be furnished for operation, installation, configuration, and maintenance of products provided as a part of the telecommunications cabling and pathway system, Data Package 5. Submit operations and maintenance data in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA and as specified herein not later than 2 months prior to the date of beneficial occupancy. In addition to requirements of Data Package 5, include the requirements of paragraphs TELECOMMUNICATIONS DRAWINGS, TELECOMMUNICATIONS SPACE DRAWINGS, and RECORD DOCUMENTATION. Ensure that these drawings and documents depict the as-built configuration. Also provide copies of all telecommunications manuals to TSD.

1.10.2 Record Documentation

Provide T5 drawings including documentation on cables and termination hardware in accordance with TIA-606. T5 drawings shall include schedules to show information for cut-overs and cable plant management, patch panel layouts and cover plate assignments, cross-connect information and connecting terminal layout as a minimum. T5 drawings shall be provided in hard copy format and on electronic media (PDF and AutoCAD 2016 format). Provide the following T5 drawing documentation as a minimum:

- a. Cables - A record of installed cable shall be provided in accordance with TIA-606. The cable records shall include only the required data fields in accordance with TIA-606. Include manufacture date of cable with submittal.
- b. Termination Hardware - A record of installed patch panels, cross-connect points, distribution frames, terminating block arrangements and type, and outlets shall be provided in accordance with TIA-606. Documentation shall include the required data fields as a minimum in accordance with TIA-606.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPONENTS

Components shall be UL or third party certified. Where equipment or materials are specified to conform to industry and technical society reference standards of the organizations, submit proof of such compliance. The label or listing by the specified organization will be acceptable evidence of compliance. In lieu of the label or listing, submit a certificate from an independent testing organization, competent to perform testing, and approved by the Contracting Officer. The certificate shall state that the item has been tested in accordance with the specified organization's test methods and that the item complies with the specified organization's reference standard. Provide a complete system of telecommunications cabling and pathway components using star topology. Provide support structures and pathways, complete with outlets, cables, connecting hardware and telecommunications cabinets/racks. Cabling and interconnecting hardware and components for telecommunications systems shall be UL listed or third party independent testing laboratory certified, and shall comply with NFPA 70 and conform to the requirements specified herein.

2.2 TELECOMMUNICATIONS PATHWAY

Provide telecommunications pathways in accordance with TIA-569 and as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Provide system furniture pathways in accordance with UL 1286.

2.2.1 Pathways Aboard Camp Lejeune Greater Area, Including MCAS New River

Pathway shall be conduit, cable tray, or modular access flooring that provides protection for cabling. Under floor duct, free laying and wireway shall not be used. Cantilever-type center hung tray or Poke-Thru devices shall not be used. J-hooks/D-rings/bridal rings and other open face type cable pathways are not authorized except in minor renovations or to continue like existing system. Provide grounding and bonding as required by TIA-607. Cable tray wiring shall comply with NFPA 70. All conduits entering the communications room shall be grouped and consolidated. Conduits can be "Home Run" or stubbed to cable tray using approved pull boxes after every 180 degrees of bends or every 100 feet. All homerun conduits shall have insulated bonding bushings in the TR, and shall extend down from the ceiling to within 3 to 4 inches of the ladder rack, or 3 to 6 inches onto the backboard, and shall be bonded to the TMGB or TGB by a minimum 6 AWG green sheathed, copper stranded bonding conductor. All penetrations will be sealed in accordance with code (fire-stopping). A minimum of two 3 inch conduits overhead will be installed between the main communications room and other communication rooms (IDFs); if installed below slab they are considered OSP and will have a minimum of three 4-inch pathways; refer to Section 33 82 00 TELECOMMUNICATIONS, OUTSIDE PLANT (OSP). Distribution Enclosures shall not be used as a pull box and will only be approved for their intended use.

2.2.2 Work area Pathways

Comply with TIA-569, except minimum 1 1/4 inch diameter conduit shall be used. System furniture pathways shall comply with UL 1286. In system furniture that blocks access to or is distant from the communications wall outlets, each system furniture desk/cubical shall be equipped with listed manufacturer telecommunication raceway and outlets. All system furniture outlets shall be extended from a consolidation point (CP) to the system furniture outlet locations, and shall comply with TIA-568-C.1 through TIA-568-C.3. When office reconfiguration will be frequent, a multi-user terminal outlet assembly (MUTOA) may be used in lieu of a CP.

2.2.3 Pull Boxes

Pull boxes shall be constructed of galvanized sheet steel with screw-fastened covers. Size pull boxes per TIA-569, except a 5 inches wide by 5 inches in length by 2 7/8 inches deep telecommunications box may be used for individual 1 1/4 inch diameter conduit runs. Provide pull boxes where length of conduit exceeds 100 feet or where more than 180 degree of cumulative bends occur. Align conduit ends on opposite sides of pull boxes as a straight pull through. Provide pull boxes in straight lengths of conduit only; direction changes in pull boxes are authorized. Electrical pull points, LC, LB, condulets, distribution enclosures, and splice boxes, are not pull boxes and are not authorized.

2.2.4 Consolidation Points

Consolidation Points (CP) shall be used when system furniture will be installed. CP's shall not support more than 12 work areas. CP's shall be

centrally located permanent area, near the work area served, fully accessible, and should be located at least 50 feet from the FD when used for balanced twisted pair cabling. CP's shall be installed per TIA-569, except a S210 interface is required.

2.3 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTLET BOXES

Communications outlet boxes shall be placed in all work areas and any areas that can be converted to work areas. Work areas shall have an outlet connection within 6 feet'. Recommended practice is 6" to the left or right of (the outside edge of) each electrical outlet box in workable office areas or any area that could be converted into workable office area such as a large storage closet. Conference rooms should have one floor box and one box just above the ceiling. All administrative areas shall have a minimum of one ceiling mounted outlet box every 5,000 square feet of open administrative space for wireless LAN deployment. Additional boxes may be required where building composition prohibits wireless LAN coverage. Boxes shall be standard type 5 inches square by 2-7/8 inches deep with 1-1/4 inch diameter knock-outs, with a double gang to single gang reducer ring. Mount flush on finished walls/ceilings or just above ceiling tile for grid ceilings, height indicated by drawings. Outlet boxes for wall-mounted telephones shall be mounted at ADA required height. Outlet boxes for work counter area shall be mounted at a height 48 inches above finished floor, or other appropriate height as required. Install outlet boxes for security cameras, televisions, wall monitors, etc. at height indicated in drawings. Outlet boxes installed in floor shall be communications floor boxes large enough to support a surge of users with proper cable protection and ports that are in multiples of 4 and not parallel to the floor. For raised access flooring, boxes shall be below the floor with an access cover flush with the floor. Tombstones or boxes below floor that require removal of the floor panels to access are not allowed. Floor boxes and under slab cabling should not be used on the first floor or in wet areas; tele electric poles or furniture managed pathways fed from above the wet area should be used. Multi-user Telecommunications Outlet Assembly i.e. Multi-User Terminal Outlet Assemblies (MUTOA) should be placed where best suited for open office spaces may be frequently reconfigured.

2.4 TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING

Cabling shall be UL listed for the application and shall comply with TIA-568-C.0, TIA-568-C.1, TIA-568-C.2, TIA-568-C.3 and NFPA 70. Provide a labeling system in accordance with the manufacturer and local AHJ guidance for cabling as required by TIA-606 and UL 969. Confirm labeling is compatible with Camp Lejeune requirements. Ship cable on reels or in boxes bearing manufacture date for unshielded/shielded twisted pair (UTP/STP) in accordance with ICEA S-90-661 and optical fiber cables in accordance with ICEA S-83-596 for all cable used on this project. Cabling manufactured more than 12 months prior to date of installation shall not be used.

2.4.1 Backbone Cabling

2.4.1.1 Backbone Copper

Copper backbone and riser cable shall be solid conductor, 24 AWG, 100 ohm, 25 to 100 -pair, Category 3, UTP, in accordance with ICEA S-90-661, TIA-568-C.1, TIA-568-C.2 and UL 444, formed into 25 pair binder groups covered with a gray thermoplastic jacket and overall metallic shield if required for additional protection. Cable shall be imprinted with manufacturers name or identifier, flammability rating, gauge of conductor,

transmission performance rating (category designation) at regular length marking intervals in accordance with ICEA S-90-661. Sufficient pair count of CAT 3 or 5, as required shall be installed between the MDF and each of the IDF's. Provide plenum (CMP), riser (CMR), or non-jell filled indoor/outdoor communications rated cabling in accordance with NFPA 70. Substitution of a higher rated cable shall be permitted in accordance with NFPA 70. If under slab it is considered Outside Plant shall be installed per Section 33 82 00 TELECOMMUNICATIONS, OUTSIDE PLANT (OSP) with proper surge protection at both ends.

2.4.1.2 Backbone Optical Fiber

Provide in accordance with ICEA S-83-596, TIA-568-C.3, UL 1666 and NFPA 70. Cable shall be imprinted with fiber count, fiber type and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches.

Provide the number of strands indicated, (but not less than 12 strands between the main telecommunication room and each of the other telecommunication rooms or secure racks), of single-mode(OS1), tight buffered fiber optic cable.

Provide plenum (OFNP), riser (OFNR), or general purpose (OFN or OFNG) rated non-conductive, fiber optic cable in accordance with NFPA 70. Substitution of a higher rated cable shall be permitted in accordance with NFPA 70. The cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be in accordance with TIA/EIA-598.

Provide plenum (OFNP), riser (OFNR), or general purpose (OFN or OFNG) rated non-conductive, fiber optic cable in accordance with NFPA 70. Substitution of a higher rated cable shall be permitted in accordance with NFPA 70. The cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be in accordance with TIA/EIA-598.

2.4.2 Horizontal Cabling

Provide horizontal cable in compliance with NFPA 70 and performance characteristics in accordance with TIA-568-C.1.

2.4.2.1 Horizontal Copper

Provide a minimum of four horizontal copper cables to each work area outlet (faceplate), minimum size 24 AWG conductors, 100 ohm, Category 6 or 6A, with green thermoplastic jacket for all unclassified outlets (color and cable type for classified services shall be in accordance with current CNSSAM TEMPEST RED/BLACK Installation documentation including Table 1 below) in accordance with TIA-568-C.2, UL 444, ANSI/NEMA WC 66, ICEA S-90-661. Cable shall be imprinted with manufacturers name or identifier, flammability rating, gauge of conductor, transmission performance rating (category designation) and length marking at regular intervals in accordance with ICEA S-90-661. Provide plenum (CMP), riser (CMR), or general purpose (CM or CMG) communications rated cabling in accordance with NFPA 70. Substitution of a higher rated cable shall be permitted in accordance with NFPA 70. Cables installed in conduit within and under slabs are not recommended but can be used if approved by local AHJ and shall be UL listed and labeled for wet locations in accordance with NFPA 70. Contact AHJ for special requirements on classified service, unofficial service, under slab cabling, using water block, and any item not covered in this document.

Communications CAT 6 twisted pair shall have a minimum of 12 inches of available slack at the communications outlet boxes. Minimum manufacturer's bend radius for each type of cable shall be maintained. All communications work area outlet boxes should have 4 cables to a double gang box (no rough in or empty conduit for future use allowed).

Table 1 - (U/FOUO) Cable Color Scheme

<u>Classification Level</u>	<u>Cable Color</u>
Unclassified	Green
Collateral Confidential	Blue
Collateral Secret	Red
Collateral Top Secret	Orange
Special Category	Yellow

2.4.2.2 Horizontal Optical Fiber

Provide optical fiber horizontal cable in accordance with ICEA S-83-596 and TIA-568-C.3. Cable shall be tight buffered, single-mode, 8/125-um diameter, OS1. Cable shall be imprinted with manufacturer, flammability rating and fiber count at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches.

Provide plenum (OFNP), riser (OFNR), or general purpose (OFN or OFNG) rated non-conductive, fiber optic cable in accordance with NFPA 70. Substitution of a higher rated cable shall be permitted in accordance with NFPA 70. Cables installed in conduit within and under slabs shall be UL listed and labeled for wet locations in accordance with NFPA 70. The cable jacket shall be of single jacket construction with color coding of cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group in accordance with TIA/EIA-598.

2.4.3 Work Area Cabling (Equipment Cables)

2.4.3.1 Work Area Copper

Provide work area copper cable in accordance with TIA-568-C.2, with a green thermoplastic jacket for unclassified services (classified color code shall be in accordance with current CNSSAM TEMPEST RED/BLACK Installation documentation and subpart 2.4.2.1 of this specification).

2.4.3.2 Work Area Optical Fiber

Provide optical work area cable in accordance with TIA-568-C.3.

2.5 TELECOMMUNICATIONS SPACES

Provide connecting hardware and termination equipment in the telecommunication equipment rooms to facilitate installation as shown on design drawings for terminating and cross-connecting permanent cabling. Provide telecommunications interconnecting hardware color coding in accordance with TIA-606.

Space shall be a minimum 8' x 10' unless a local waiver is provided by the AHJ (authority having jurisdiction) which is the Telecommunications Support Division (TSD) aboard Camp Lejeune. Communications room could be much larger depending on building size, usable square footage served, and customer requirements. Communications rooms shall be centrally located unless there are multiple Communication rooms, and then each room should be centrally located within the area served. Communications Rooms shall not share or be on a wet wall. Generally, the space should be sized to approximately 1.1 percent of the area it serves. For example, a 10,000 sq feet (929 sq m) area should be served by a minimum of one 10 ft x 11 feet (3 m x 3.4 m) Communications room. Access to Rooms shall be from a common area such as a hallway and door shall swing out. Additional/Multiple communications rooms are required if the usable floor space to be served exceeds 10,000 square feet, or the cable length between the horizontal cross-connect and the communications outlet, including slack and vertical distance, exceeds 295 feet. Multiple communications rooms and IDFs shall be stacked and connected by a minimum of two **way** 3-inch conduits overhead. If under slab it is considered Outside Plant and 3 way 4" shall be used per Section 33 82 00 TELECOMMUNICATIONS, OUTSIDE PLANT (OSP) with proper surge protection at both ends. The minimum clear height in the room shall be 2.4 m (8 ft) without obstructions. The height between the finished floor and the lowest point of the ceiling should be a minimum of 3 m (10 ft) to accommodate overhead pathways. The flooring shall be sealed concrete to reduce dust and static electricity; no carpet or VCT tile. Two separate dedicated 20 amp electrical outlet will be installed above or behind but not attached to each communications equipment rack. Dedicated outlets and conduits shall be installed on the longest farthest wall from the door, same wall as the communications backboard. OSP conduits shall be to the far left of the communications backboard while facing it. There should not be an electrical panel within the communications room unless it serves only the room, and it should be located as close to the door as possible. The room requires a lockable door keyed or key padded to restrict access to MCIEAST-MCB G-6 personnel only. Room shall not have any windows or skylights. At least one wall, where the point of presence is located, and two adjacent walls should be covered with fire rated plywood backboard for mounting equipment; additional boards may be needed for mounting additional equipment. Light, as measured within the communications room, should be a minimum of 500 lx (50 foot-candles). Lighting design should seek to minimize shadows within the telecommunications room (minimum two light fixtures). Equipment not related to the support of the communications room (e.g., piping, ductwork, pneumatic tubing) shall not be installed in, pass through, or enter the telecommunications room. Equipment related to the support of the communications room (e.g., piping, ductwork, HVAC drains, dedicated power) shall be installed in support of the communications equipment and not pose a drip/moisture/trip hazard and be usable as intended.

2.5.1 Backboards

Provide void-free, interior grade A-C plywood **3/4 inch** thick **4 by 8 feet** as indicated. Backboards shall be fire rated by manufacturing process. Fire stamp shall be clearly visible. Backboards shall be provided on a minimum of one telecom wall, two adjacent walls, and anywhere mounting is needed in the telecommunication spaces.

2.5.2 Equipment Support Frame

Provide in accordance with **ECIA EIA/ECA 310-E** and **UL 50**. Steel construction shall be treated to resist corrosion.

- a. Racks, wall or floor mounted modular type, 16 gauge steel construction minimum, treated to resist corrosion. Provide rack with vertical and horizontal cable management channels, top and bottom cable troughs, grounding lug and a surge protected power strip with 6 duplex 20 amp receptacles. Racks shall be large enough to support all telephone/data equipment required plus 25 percent spare and shall have a maximum of 7' height. Rack shall be compatible with 19 inches panel mounting and must be in a secured communications room.

2.5.3 Connector Blocks

Voice riser shall be terminated on angled insulation displacement connector (IDC), Type 110, 50 pair, 89D style mounted blocks, compatible with industry standard 110 blade punch down tool, designed for Category 3 and higher systems. Provide 50 pair blocks for the number of riser and backbone cables terminated plus 25 percent spare. Also provide sufficient blocks for cross connects for all IDFs. Blocks shall be mounted on an 89D style bracket on a frame, in rack or in cabinet.

2.5.4 Building Protector Assemblies

Building protector assembly is required on all OSP cables and shall have 710 type connector blocks for connection to the exterior cable at full capacity. M150-66 type IDC for connection to the voice cross connect blocks. 110 type IDC is not approved on building protector assembly. For Central office Area Distribution Nodes a R399 type central office protector shall be used.

2.5.5 Cable Guides

Provide cable guides specifically manufactured for the purpose of routing cables, wires and patch cords horizontally and vertically on 19 inches equipment racks, cabinets, and telecommunications backboards. Cable guides of ring or bracket type devices mounted on rack, cabinet, panels, and backboard for horizontal cable management and individually mounted for vertical cable management. Mount cable guides with screws, or nuts and lockwashers. Cable guides are not to be used outside of the communications room.

2.5.6 Patch Panels

Provide capacity for the number of horizontal and backbone cables terminated on the panel plus 25 percent spare. Provide factory terminated SC type SM optical fiber patch cables and factory terminated CAT 6 stranded copper patch cables for patch panels. Provide patch cords as complete assemblies of various appropriate lengths and with matching connectors and sheath color matched to network in Section 2.4.2.1. Provide fiber optic patch cables with crossover orientation in accordance with TIA-568-C.3. Patch cords shall meet minimum performance requirements specified in TIA-568-C.1, TIA-568-C.2 and TIA-568-C.3 for cables, cable length and hardware specified. Classified service may require shielded jack sets and panels as approved by AHJ.

2.5.6.1 Modular to 110 Block Patch Panel

Provide in accordance with TIA-568-C.1 and TIA-568-C.2. Panels shall be third party verified and shall comply with ANSI/TIA Category 6/6A requirements. Panel shall be constructed of 0.09 inches minimum aluminum

and shall be cabinet/rack mounted and compatible with an ECIA EIA/ECA 310-E 19 inches equipment rack. Panel shall support connectors that comply with ANSI/TIA-568-C.2, Category 6 UTP requirements. Connectors/Outlets shall be UL2043 listed, non-keyed, compatible with RJ-45 and RJ-11 plugs, glass-reinforced nylon housing, pass through mounting from the front or rear of the patch panel, with enclosed IDC termination and color-coded for both T568A and T568B wiring. Connectors shall be color matched to network type in Section 2.4.2.1 unless specified otherwise and approved by AHJ. Each outlet/connector shall be terminated T568A. The rear of each panel shall have incoming cable strain-relief and routing guides. DO NOT USE ZIP TIES ON STRAIN-RELIEF GUIDES. Panels shall have each port factory numbered and be equipped with laminated plastic nameplates above each port. Labeling shall comply with Section 3.2 of this specification.

2.5.6.2 Fiber Optic Patch Panel

Provide panel for maintenance and cross-connecting of optical fiber cables. Panel shall be constructed of 16 or 18 gauge steel or 11 gauge aluminum minimum and shall be cabinet/rack mounted and compatible with a ECIA EIA/ECA 310-E 19 inches equipment rack. Each panel shall provide multimode/single-mode adapters as required in duplex SC in accordance with TIA/EIA-604-3 with zirconia ceramic alignment sleeves. Provide dust cover for unused adapters. The rear of each panel shall have a cable management tray a minimum of 8 inches deep with removable cover, incoming cable strain-relief and routing guides. Panels shall have each adapter factory numbered and be equipped with laminated plastic nameplates above each adapter. When populating the panel working left to right start with OSP feed, SM ISO to IDF, MM ISO to IDF, lastly row to row within same comm room.

2.5.7 Optical Fiber Distribution Panel

Cabinet/rack mounted optical fiber distribution panel (OFDP) shall be constructed in accordance with ECIA EIA/ECA 310-E utilizing 16 or 18 gauge steel or 11 gauge aluminum minimum. Panel shall be divided into two sections, distribution and user. Distribution section shall have strain relief, routing guides, splice tray and shall be lockable. User section shall have a cover for patch cord protection. Each panel shall provide single-mode pigtails and adapters as required. Provide adapters as duplex SC with zirconia ceramic alignment sleeves. Provide dust covers for adapters. Provide patch cords as specified in the paragraph PATCH PANELS. When populating the panel working left to right start with OSP feed, SM ISO to IDF, MM ISO to IDF, lastly row to row within same communications room.

2.6 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTLET/CONNECTOR ASSEMBLIES

2.6.1 Outlet/Connector Copper

Outlet/connectors shall comply with FCC Part 68, TIA-568-C.1, and ANSI/TIA-568-C.2, Category 6 UTP requirements. Outlet/connectors shall be UL 2043 listed, non-keyed, compatible with RJ-45 and RJ-11 plugs, rated for 2500 plug mating cycles, glass-reinforced nylon housing, pass through mounting from the front or rear of the faceplate, with enclosed IDC termination and color-coded for both T568A and T568B wiring. Connectors shall be color matched to network type in Section 2.4.2.1 unless specified otherwise and approved by AHJ. Each outlet/connector shall be terminated 568A. UTP outlet/connectors installed in outdoor or marine environments shall be rated for the environmental conditions.

2.6.2 Optical Fiber Adapters(Couplers)

Provide optical fiber adapters suitable for duplex SC in Accordance with TIA/EIA-604-3 with zirconia ceramic alignment sleeves, as indicated. Provide dust cover for adapters. Optical fiber adapters shall comply with TIA-455-21 for 500 mating cycles.

2.6.3 Optical Fiber Connectors

Provide in accordance with TIA-455-21. Optical fiber connectors shall be duplex SC in accordance with TIA/EIA-604-3 with zirconia ceramic ferrule, epoxyless crimp style compatible with 62.5/125 multimode and 8/125 single-mode fiber. The connectors shall provide a maximum attenuation of 0.3 dB at 850/1300 and 1310/1550 nm with less than a 0.2 dB change after 500 mating cycles.

2.6.4 Cover Plates

Telecommunications cover plates shall comply with UL 514C, and TIA-568-C.1, TIA-568-C.2, ; flush or oversized design constructed of high impact thermoplastic material, color to match the network color designation in Section 2.4.2.1, or as otherwise specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM and authorized by the AHJ. Provide labeling in accordance with the paragraph LABELING in this section. Additionally, outlet cover plate coloring shall be specified in design, and may be required to match the network color designation in Section 2.4.2.1 of this specification.

2.7 GROUNDING AND BONDING PRODUCTS

Provide in accordance with UL 467, TIA-607, and NFPA 70. Components shall be identified as required by TIA-606. Provide ground rods, bonding conductors, and grounding busbars as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. The preferred ground for the Telephone Main Grounding Bus (TMGB) bar will be to the Main electrical Distribution Panel (MDP) bus bar and building steel. In most cases, but not all; a #6 AWG bonding conductor is recommended for telecommunications. All grounding and bonding conductors within the Telecommunications room will be green sheathed copper conductor, stranded, and labeled as suitable for use as such and tagged "DO NOT REMOVE". All grounding and bonding conductors running out of the Telecommunications room should be protected in conduit or attached to the outside of the cable tray and sized according to references. The minimum size of the TMGB shall be no smaller than 4" by 10" by 1/4 inch thick; bus bar should be factory made and factory drilled, not fabricated or drilled onsite. All bonding and grounding terminations shall be irreversible and secured with a double hole crimp termination. Do not exceed minimum bend radius on bonding and grounding conductors. Mount Bus Bar to far left of telecomm backboard at approximately 70" AFF.

2.8 FIRESTOPPING MATERIAL

Provide as specified in Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

2.9 MANUFACTURER'S NAMEPLATE

Each item of equipment shall have a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable.

2.10 FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATES

ASTM D709. Provide laminated plastic nameplates for each equipment enclosure, relay, switch, and device; as specified or as indicated on the drawings. Each nameplate inscription shall identify the function and, when applicable, the position. Nameplates shall be melamine plastic, 0.125 inches thick, white with black center core. Surface shall be matte finish. Corners shall be square. Accurately align lettering and engrave into the core. Minimum size of nameplates shall be one by 2.5 inches. Lettering shall be a minimum of 0.25 inches high normal block style.

2.11 TESTS, INSPECTIONS, AND VERIFICATIONS

2.11.1 Factory Reel Tests

Provide documentation of the testing and verification actions taken by manufacturer to confirm compliance with TIA-568-C.1, TIA-568-C.2, TIA-568-C.3, TIA-526-7 for single mode optical fiber.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Install telecommunications cabling and pathway systems, including the horizontal and backbone cable, pathway systems, telecommunications outlet/connector assemblies, and associated hardware in accordance with NECA/BICSI 568, TIA-568-C.1, TIA-568-C.2, TIA-568-C.3, TIA-569, NFPA 70, manufacturer instructions, current industry best practices, and UL standards as applicable. Provide cabling in a star topology network. Pathways and outlet boxes shall be installed as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Standard type 5" x 5" x 2 7/8" square boxes with a single gang plaster ring shall be used except in concrete or concrete masonry units where a standard 4 11/16" square or a floor box will be used. Mount flush in finished walls at height indicated by drawings and with proper clearances from other networks and power systems. Depth of boxes shall be large enough to allow manufacturer's recommended conductor bend radii, normally 2 7/8" depth. Install telecommunications cabling with copper media in accordance with the following criteria to avoid potential electromagnetic interference between power and telecommunications equipment. The interference ceiling shall not exceed 3.0 volts per meter measured over the usable bandwidth of the telecommunications cabling (normal minimum clearance distances of 4 feet from motors, generators, frequency converters, transformers, x-ray equipment or uninterrupted power system, 300 mm (12 in) from power conduits and cable systems, 125 mm (5 inches) from fluorescent or high frequency lighting system fixtures). Cabling shall be run with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.

3.1.1 Cabling

Install UTP/STP, and optical fiber telecommunications cabling system as detailed in TIA-568-C.1, TIA-568-C.2, and TIA-568-C.3. Screw terminals shall not be used except where specifically indicated on plans. Use an approved insulation displacement connection (IDC) tool kit for copper cable terminations. Do not untwist Category 6 UTP cables more than ½" (12 mm) from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry. Provide service loop on each end of the cable, minimum 10' (3 meters) in the

telecommunications room, 6" (150mm) in or close to the work area outlet for UTP. Do not exceed manufacturers' cable pull tensions for copper and optical fiber cables. Provide a device to monitor cable pull tensions. Do not exceed 25 pounds pull tension for four pair copper cables. Do not chafe or damage outer jacket materials. Use only lubricants approved by cable manufacturer. Do not over cinch cables, or crush cables with staples. Only hook and loop fasteners are allowed on Category 6/6A cable and optical fiber cable. DO NOT USE ZIP TIES. For UTP cable, bend radii shall not be less than four times the cable diameter. Cables shall be terminated; no cable shall contain unterminated elements (See NFPA 70 abandoned cabling). Cables shall not be spliced. Label cabling in accordance with paragraph LABELING in this section.

3.1.1.1 Open Cable

Use only where specifically indicated on plans or use in cable trays, or below raised floors in approved pathway (cable free laid on floor is not authorized). Install in accordance with TIA-568-C.1, TIA-568-C.2 and TIA-568-C.3. Do not exceed cable pull tensions recommended by the manufacturer. Copper cable not in a wireway or pathway shall be suspended a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports no greater than 60 inches apart. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items. Placement of cable parallel to power conductors shall be avoided, if possible; a minimum separation of 12 inches shall be maintained when such placement cannot be avoided.

Plenum cable shall be used where open cables are routed through plenum areas. Cable routed exposed under raised floors shall be plenum rated. Plenum cables shall comply with flammability plenum requirements of NFPA 70. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas. Cable 6 feet long shall be neatly coiled not less than 12 inches in diameter below each feed point in raised floor areas.

3.1.1.2 Backbone Cable

- a. Copper Backbone Cable. Install intrabuilding backbone copper cable, in minimum 2-way 3 inch overhead conduit or larger in indicated pathways, between the campus distributor, located in the telecommunications entrance facility or room, the building distributors and the floor distributors located in telecommunications rooms and telecommunications equipment rooms as indicated on drawings.
- b. Optical fiber Backbone Cable. Install intrabuilding backbone optical fiber in indicated pathways (normally in one of multiple inner ducts installed in conduit so as to maximize pathways). Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended bending radii and pull tension. Prepare cable for pulling by cutting outer jacket 10 inches leaving strength members exposed for approximately 10 inches. Twist strength members together and attach to pulling eye. Vertical cable support intervals shall be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

3.1.1.3 Horizontal Cabling

Install horizontal cabling as indicated in the specification and on drawings.

Do not untwist Category 6 UTP cables more than one half inch from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry. Provide slack cable in the form of a figure eight or large service loop on each end of the cable (prevent inductance caused by small coils), 10 feet in the

telecommunications room, and 12 inches in the work area outlet.

3.1.2 Pathway Installations

Provide in accordance with TIA-569 and NFPA 70, except that 1 1/4 inch diameter conduit from cable tray or telecommunication room backboard to each work area outlet is required. Provide building pathway as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

Conceal conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors (not in wet areas). Keep conduit minimum 12 inches away from parallel runs of electrical power equipment, flues, steam, light ballast, and hot water pipes. Install conduit parallel with or at right angles to ceilings, walls, and structural members where located above accessible ceilings and where conduit is visible after completion of project. Run conduits in crawl spaces as if exposed. Install no more than two 90 degree bends for a single horizontal cable run. All bends/turns in conduits will be in straight runs of conduit; a pull box shall be installed after every 180 degrees of bends or 100'; in no case will a turn be made within a pull box. The minimum size for a pull box for a single 1 1/4" conduit will be 5" long by 5" wide by 2 7/8" deep, and for a 3" conduit 30"W x 54"L x 9"D. All conduits shall contain an insulated bushing at each end to protect the cable from damage and required bonding. Pull points, LC, LB, and condulets are not authorized.

Under floor cabling, under floor duct, and conduit under floor slabs should be avoided in the Camp Lejeune Greater area due to wet area close to coastal waters.

3.1.3 Service Entrance Conduit, Underground

Provide service entrance underground as specified in this section and Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

Underground portion shall be encased in minimum of 3 inches of concrete extending from the building entrance to OSP demarcation point and shall be a minimum of 18 inches below slab or grade. Location of entrance conduit in communications room shall be to the left of the longest furthest wall from the door.

3.1.4 Cable Tray Installation

Install cable tray as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Only CMP and OFNP type cable shall be installed in a plenum.

A continuous stranded bonding conductor shall be run on the outside along the tray tapped to each section of tray with a listed connector to ensure bonding. Remove all sharps from cable tray and pathways. Ensure bonding is on the pathway so as not to obstruct horizontal cabling. Maintain proper clearance and work space per TIA-569 and TEMPEST.

3.1.5 Work Area Outlets

3.1.5.1 Terminations

Terminate UTP cable in accordance with TIA-568-C.1, TIA-568-C.2 and wiring configuration as specified. Terminate fiber optic cables in accordance with TIA-568-C.3.

All work areas will contain a minimum of two work area outlets . Any work area larger than 80 sq feet will require additional work area outlets to service any work location in the room within 6 feet of an electrical outlet. This also applies to any area that could be converted to work space in the future. Recommend one work area outlet box be placed 6" to the left or right of every electrical outlet in a usable space. All work area face plates shall contain four category 6 jacks as specified herein, terminated T568A configuration unless otherwise approved by AHJ. All other outlets shall contain a minimum of 2 Category six jacks, with the exception of single jack wall phone studded faceplates.

3.1.5.2 Cover Plates

As a minimum, each outlet/connector shall be labeled as to its function and a unique number to identify cable link in accordance with the paragraph LABELING in this section. (For secured networks contact AHJ as shielded twisted pair and color coded face plates may be necessary.)

3.1.5.3 Cables

Unshielded/shielded twisted pair and fiber optic cables shall have a minimum of 12 inches of available service slack loosely coiled into the telecommunications outlet boxes or in cable tray as close as possible to outlet box. Minimum manufacturer's bend radius for each type of cable shall not be exceeded.

3.1.5.4 Pull Cords

Pull cords shall be installed in conduit serving telecommunications outlets that do not have cable installed (this is not normal as all outlets should be cabled).

3.1.6 Telecommunications Space Termination

Install termination hardware required for Category 6 and optical fiber system. A single punch manufacture approved insulation displacement tool shall be used for terminating copper cable to insulation displacement connectors.

3.1.6.1 Connector Blocks

Connector blocks shall be cabinet/rack mounted, as approved by the AHJ, in orderly rows and columns. Adequate vertical and horizontal wire routing areas shall be provided between groups of blocks. Install in accordance with industry standard wire routing guides in accordance with TIA-569.

3.1.6.2 Patch Panels

Patch panels shall be mounted in equipment cabinets/racks with sufficient ports to accommodate the installed cable plant plus 25 percent spares.

- a. Copper Patch Panel. Copper cable entering a patch panel shall be secured to a rear cable manager with hook and loop ties as recommended by the manufacturer to prevent movement of the cable.
- b. Fiber Optic Patch Panel. Fiber optic cable loop shall be 3 feet in length provided as recommended by the manufacturer. The outer jacket of each cable entering a patch panel shall be secured to the panel to prevent movement of the fibers within the panel, using clamps or

brackets specifically manufactured for that purpose.

3.1.6.3 Equipment Support Frames

Install in accordance with TIA-569:

- a. Bracket, wall mounted. Mount bracket to right on plywood backboard in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Mount rack so height of highest panel does not exceed 78 inches above floor. Mount so there is sufficient space remaining on backboard to mount lightning protection, bonding, and cable managers or install additional backboards.
- b. Racks, floor mounted modular type. Permanently anchor rack to the floor in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Install sections of ladder rack anchored to telephone rack/cabinet and at least two walls.
- c. Cabinets, freestanding modular type. Permanently anchor to the floor in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. When cabinets are connected together, remove adjoining side panels for cable routing between cabinets. Mount rack mounted fan and 19" power/surge strip in cabinet. Install sections of ladder rack anchored to telephone rack/cabinet and at least two walls.
- d. Cabinets, wall-mounted modular type. Mount cabinet to right on plywood backboard in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Mount cabinet so height of highest panel does not exceed 78 inches above floor. Mount so there is sufficient space remaining on backboard to mount lightning protection, bonding, and cable managers or install additional backboards.

3.1.7 Electrical Penetrations

Seal openings around electrical penetrations through fire resistance-rated wall, partitions, floors, or ceilings as specified in Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

3.1.8 Grounding and Bonding

Provide in accordance with TIA-607, NFPA 70 and as specified in this section and Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM except only two hole irreversible compression lugs will be accepted.

3.2 LABELING

3.2.1 Labels

Provide labeling in accordance with TIA-606 except jacks will be numbered in a logical, sequential, clockwise numbering system from 1 to X with a closet designator. Example would be 145 C 146, would be the 145th & 146th jacks from the C telecom room. All labels shall be numbered with manufacturer's labeling system (not fabricated) and be equipped with laminated plastic cover. All terminations that are not to work area outlets should be in the last patch panel locations and labeled accordingly i.e. DDC, FACP, Elevator, Wall phones, or Wireless access points.

3.2.2 Cable

Cables shall be labeled using color labels on both ends with identifiers in accordance with TIA-606.

3.2.3 Termination Hardware

Workstation outlets and patch panel connections shall be labeled using manufacturing labeling system, color coded labels with identifiers in accordance with this section and TIA-606. Coordinate with Base Telephone.

3.3 FIELD APPLIED PAINTING

Paint electrical equipment as required to match finish of adjacent surfaces or to meet the indicated or specified safety criteria. Painting shall be as specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

3.3.1 Painting Backboards

Camp Lejeune no longer paints backboards as fire rated plywood is available. Manufactured fire retardant backboard shall be used, so as not to increase flame spread and smoke density and must be appropriately labeled.

3.4 FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATE MOUNTING

Provide number, location, and letter designation of nameplates as indicated. Fasten nameplates to the device with a minimum of two sheet-metal screws or two rivets.

3.5 TESTING

3.5.1 Telecommunications Cabling Testing

Perform telecommunications cabling inspection, verification, and performance tests on both Backbone and Horizontal cabling in accordance with TIA-568-C.1, TIA-568-C.2, TIA-568-C.3 and AHJ local guidance. Test equipment shall conform to TIA-1152. Perform optical fiber field inspection tests via attenuation measurements on factory reels and provide results along with manufacturer certification for factory reel tests. Remove failed cable reels from project site upon attenuation test failure.

3.5.1.1 Inspection

Visually inspect all telecommunications cabling jacket materials for UL or third party certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in telecommunications rooms and at workstations to confirm color code for T568A pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with TIA-568-C.1, TIA-568-C.2, and TIA-568-C.3. Visually confirm Category 6 marking of outlets, cover plates, outlet/connectors, cable physical damage, and patch panels.

3.5.1.2 Verification Tests

Backbone copper cabling shall be tested for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors, and between conductors and shield, if cable has overall shield. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after all terminations are complete but prior to being cross-connected.

For single-mode optical fiber of sufficient distance (normally OSP), perform optical fiber end-to-end attenuation tests in accordance with TIA-568-C.3 and TIA-526-7 using Tier 2 Option, OTDR for single-mode optical fiber. Perform verification acceptance tests.

3.5.1.3 Performance Tests

Provide summary in .pdf (hard and soft copy) detailed tester results in test format .flw (soft copy only), and fiber power meter/OTDR reports (summary hard copy and detailed soft copy). All Test reports should have a building or project number on it. The final QC and certification of installation will be performed by TSD after the contractor has provided passing and acceptable test results matching work area outlet labels, as-built drawings showing all telecommunications outlets and their labeled designator to include any empty conduit or ports coiled in overhead for future use and all building automated system ports such as DDC, Elevator, FACP, or WAPs. Test results that are marginal may not be accepted. Also fiber tests that pass the link budget but exceed tolerance on any connector or splice are considered a failure. All discrepancies must be repaired and retested.

Perform testing for each outlet as follows:

- a. Perform Category 6 link tests in accordance with TIA-568-C.1 and TIA-568-C.2. Tests shall include wire map, length, insertion loss, NEXT, PSNEXT, ELFEXT, PSELFEXT, return loss, propagation delay, and delay skew.
- b. Optical fiber Links. Perform optical fiber end-to-end link tests in accordance with TIA-568-C.3.

3.5.1.4 Final Verification Tests

Perform verification tests for all copper and optical fiber systems after the complete telecommunications cabling and workstation outlet/connectors are installed.

- a. Voice Tests. These tests assume that dial tone service has been installed (normally only done for FACP, Elevator, or emergency phones). Connect to the network interface device at the demarcation point. Go off-hook and listen and receive a dial tone. If a test number is available, make and receive a local, long distance, and DSN telephone call.
- b. Data Tests. These tests assume the Information Technology Staff has a network installed and are available to assist with testing (normally this is only done for VTC, CCTV). Connect to the network interface device at the demarcation point. Log onto the network to ensure proper connection to the network.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 28 31 76.22

INTERIOR COMBINATION EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS
08/14

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED SECTIONS

Section 26 00 00.00 20 BASIC ELECTRICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS, applies to this section, with the additions and modifications specified herein. In addition, refer to the following sections for related work and coordination:

Section 21 13 13.00 20 WET PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEM, FIRE PROTECTION

Section 23 00 00 AIR SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION, AND EXHAUST SYSTEMS

Section 08 71 00 DOOR HARDWARE

Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING for additional work related to firestopping.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ACOUSTICAL SOCIETY OF AMERICA (ASA)

ASA S3.2 (2009) Method for Measuring the
Intelligibility of Speech Over
Communication Systems (ASA 85)

FM GLOBAL (FM)

FM APP GUIDE (updated on-line) Approval Guide
http://www.approvalguide.com/CC_host/pages/public/custom/FM/login.cfm

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE C62.41.1 (2002; R 2008) Guide on the Surges
Environment in Low-Voltage (1000 V and
Less) AC Power Circuits

IEEE C62.41.2 (2002) Recommended Practice on
Characterization of Surges in Low-Voltage
(1000 V and Less) AC Power Circuits

INTERNATIONAL ELECTROTECHNICAL COMMISSION (IEC)

IEC 60268-16 (2003) Sound System Equipment - Part 16:
Objective Rating Of Speech Intelligibility

By Speech Transmission Index; Ed 3.0

INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATION FOR STANDARDIZATION (ISO)

ISO 7240-16 (2007) Fire Detection And Alarm Systems –
Part 16: Sound System Control And
Indicating Equipment

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 170 (2012) Standard for Fire Safety and
Emergency Symbols

NFPA 241 (2013) Standard for Safeguarding
Construction, Alteration, and Demolition
Operations

NFPA 70 (2014) National Electrical Code

NFPA 72 (2016) National Fire Alarm and Signaling
Code

NFPA 90A (2015) Standard for the Installation of
Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

NFPA 720 (2015) Standard for the Installation of
Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detection and Warning
Equipment

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 1480 (2003; Reprint Jun 2010) Standard for
Speakers for Fire Alarm, Emergency, and
Commercial and Professional Use

UL 1971 (2002; Reprint Oct 2008) Signaling Devices
for the Hearing Impaired

UL 2017 (2008; Reprint Oct 2009) General-Purpose
Signaling Devices and Systems

UL 268 (2009) Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm
Systems

UL 464 (2009) Standard for Audible Signal
Appliances

UL 864 (2003; Reprint Feb 2010) Standard for
Control Units and Accessories for Fire
Alarm Systems

UL Electrical Constructn (2015) Electrical Construction Equipment
Directory

UL Fire Prot Dir (2015) Fire Protection Equipment Directory

1.3 DEFINITIONS

Wherever indicated in this specification or on the contract drawings, the

equipment, devices, and functions shall be defined as follows:

- a. COMBINATION EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM: NFPA 72 terminology describing a combination fire alarm and mass notification system where the building mass notification system is integrated with the building fire alarm control unit to form one combined system that performs both functions.
- b. COMBINATION EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM PANELS (CECP): Combination Emergency Communications System Panel may consist of separate autonomous control unit and fire alarm control unit supplied from the same or different manufacturers, or a single panel supplied by one manufacturer. Where the term "COMBINATION EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM PANEL" or "CECP" is utilized the intent is NOT to limit the designer to one manufacturer or a single enclosure. HOWEVER; whether installed as combined or separate panels or provided by one or separate manufacturers, the panels shall be integrated in their controls and performance to meet the requirements of this section and NFPA 72.
- c. AUTONOMOUS CONTROL UNIT (ACU): The primary control unit for the building mass notification system portion of the CECP. ACU may be physically separate from, or a integral part, of the FACU
- d. FIRE ALARM CONTROL UNIT (FACU): Fire alarm system component portion of the CECP, provided with primary and secondary power sources, which receives signals from initiating devices or other fire alarm control units, and processes these signals to determine part or all of the required fire alarm system output function(s). FACU may be separate from or a portion of the ACU. Where more than one fire alarm control unit is installed in the building, one panel shall be designated as the Master Fire Alarm Control Unit.
- e. SUPPLEMENTARY FIRE ALARM CONTROL PANELS: When necessary multiple interconnected fire alarm control units may be utilized to create a networked system consisting of a master fire alarm control unit and one or more supplementary fire alarm control panels capable of peer to peer communications. Networked panels shall be UL Listed as compatible. Interconnecting separate manufacturers' fire alarm panels or fire alarms panels not capable of peer-to-peer communications is prohibited. The term "supplementary fire alarm control panel" does not refer to releasing service fire alarm panels.
- f. LOCAL OPERATING CONSOLE (LOC): Equipment used by authorized personnel and emergency responders to make live voice building-wide mass notification system messages
- g. SUPPLEMENTARY NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE CIRCUIT(SNAC) and AUXILIARY POWER SUPPLY PANELS: A panel separate from the "combination emergency communications system panel"(s), usually located remote from the main panel(s). SNAC's are utilized to power visual notification appliance circuits and auxiliary power supplies provide supplementary power to devices or functions requiring power in addition to that available from the SLC.
- h. MONITOR MODULE: Term utilized to describe a Signaling Line Circuit Interface as defined by NFPA 72.
- i. CONTROL MODULE AND RELAY MODULE: Terms utilized to describe an "Emergency Control Function Interface" as defined in NFPA 72.

- j. TERMINAL CABINET: A steel cabinet with locking, hinge-mounted door that terminal strips are securely mounted inside. Utilizing tape or glue is not an acceptable means of mounting terminal strips.
- k. TEXTUAL AUDIBLE APPLIANCES: Term utilized by NFPA 72 to describe speaker appliances. The term "textual audible appliance" is utilized because the term "speaker" might also refer to a person who is speaking.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

1.4.1 Scope

This work includes completion of design and providing a new, complete, combination emergency communications system as described herein and on the contract drawings for P-1395.

Fire Alarm Control Unit portion shall be an analog/addressable system. Include in the system all necessary wiring, raceways, pull boxes, terminal cabinets, outlet and mounting boxes, control equipment, alarm, and supervisory signal initiating devices, alarm notification appliances, supervising station fire alarm system transmitter, and other accessories and miscellaneous items required for a complete operating system even though each item is not specifically indicated or described. Provide system s complete and ready for operation.

1.4.2 Technical Data and Computer Software

Computer software and technical data relating to computer software that are specifically identified in this project, and may be defined/required in other specifications, shall be delivered in accordance with the CONTRACT CLAUSES. Data to be submitted shall include complete system, equipment, and software descriptions. Descriptions shall show how the equipment will operate as a system to meet the performance requirements of the contract. The data package shall also include the following listed. Failure to fully comply with the following stipulations shall result in the removal and replacement of the combination emergency communications system at no cost to the Government. Requests for extension of time for any delay to the completion of the project due to the removal, redesign, resubmittal process, and replacement of the original system will not be considered. Liquidated damages shall apply and will be accessed in accordance with the contract clauses.

- a. Identification of programmable portions of system equipment and capabilities.
- b. Description of system revision and expansion capabilities and methods of implementation detailing both equipment and software requirements.
- c. Provision of operational software data on all modes of programmable portions of the combination emergency communications system.
- d. Description of Fire Alarm Control Unit equipment operation.
- e. Description of auxiliary and remote equipment operations.
- f. Library of application software.
- g. Operation and maintenance manuals.

1.4.3 Keys

Keys and locks for equipment, panels and devices shall be identical. Provide the Contracting Officer with no less than six (6) keys of each type required. Direct requests for keys from all Government personnel to the Contracting Officer. Under no circumstances shall the contractor provide any keys to the building occupants. If any portion of building is occupied during construction or occupants begin moving into the building prior to project completion, the fire alarm contractor shall remove and secure all keys to the combination emergency communications system. All keys and locks shall be mastered to a single key as required by the AHJ.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for the Prime Contractor Quality Control approval. The NAVFAC MIDLANT Fire Protection Engineer shall review and approve all submittals requiring Government approval.

If permitted by the Contracting Officer, provide electronic submittals. File format of electronic submittal materials shall be portable document format. No other electronic formats shall be accepted. Catalog data shall be first generation scans or manufacturer's originals. Shop drawings shall be plotted to scale. Scale all line weights. Submittals consisting of illegible pdf's shall be returned disapproved without review. One hard copy review set of the entire package, including full scale shop drawings, shall accompany each submittal for use by the NAVFAC MIDLANT Fire Protection Engineer. The single hard copy review set shall be retained by the Government reviewer. The Government reviewer shall digitally stamp, sign and lock the electronic submittal package prior to returning the electronic copy to the Contracting Officer.

Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Within 36 days of contract award but no less than 14 days prior to commencing any work on site, the Prime Contractor shall submit the following for review and approval:

Qualifications for Fire Alarm System Subcontractor; G

On Staff Fire Alarm System Designer(s); G

Supervising Fire Alarm Technician; G

Installing Technicians; G

Testing Personnel; G

Contractor SD-02, SD-03 & SD-05 submittals received prior to the review and approval of the Qualifications of the Fire Alarm Subcontractor shall be returned Disapproved Without Review. All resultant delays shall be the sole responsibility of the Prime Contractor.

Contract requirements for the Fire Alarm Contractor to have NICET

Certified Fire Alarm Technicians on staff are NOT negotiable. The Prime Contractor's Quality Control Manager shall not endorse nor submit the qualifications for the fire alarm system subcontractor if fire alarm contractor does not have the required NICET Technicians on staff. All resultant delays shall be the sole responsibility of the Prime Contractor.

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Include Annotated catalog data, in table format on the drawings, showing manufacturer's name, model, voltage, and catalog numbers for equipment and components. Submitted shop drawings shall not be smaller than ANSI D (22 in x 34 in).

Wiring Diagrams; G

Provide point-to-point wiring diagrams showing the points of connection and terminals used for electrical field connections in the system, including interconnections between the equipment or systems that are supervised or controlled by the system. Diagrams shall show connections from field devices to the CECP and remote fire alarm control units, initiating circuits, switches, relays and terminals. Point-to-point wiring diagrams shall be job specific. Point-to-point wiring diagrams shall not indicate connections or circuits not being utilized.

Provide complete riser diagrams indicating the wiring sequence of devices and their connections to the control equipment. Include a color-code schedule for the wiring. Include floor plans showing the locations of devices, appliances, and equipment.

System Layout; G

Plan view drawing showing device locations, terminal cabinet locations, junction boxes, other related equipment, conduit routing, conduit sizes, wire counts, wire color-coding, circuit identification in each conduit, and circuit layouts for all floors. Drawings shall comply with the requirements of NFPA 170, and NFPA 72. Indicate candela rating of each visual notification appliance. Indicate the wattage of each speaker. Clearly identify the locations of isolation modules. Indicate the addresses of all devices, modules, relays, etc.

System Operation; G

A complete list of device addresses, and corresponding messages.

Provide a complete description of the system operation in matrix format.

Notification Appliances; G

Provide data on each circuit to indicate that there is at least 25 percent spare capacity on each notification appliance circuit, a 25 percent spare capacity for each supplementary notification appliance circuit panel and auxiliary power supply panel, and 25 percent spare capacity for each signaling line circuit. Annotate data for each circuit on the drawings.

Amplifiers; G

Provide data to indicate the amplifiers have sufficient capacity to simultaneously drive all notification speakers at the wattage setting required to meet intelligibility requirements while maintaining a minimum 25 percent spare capacity. Annotate data for each circuit on the drawings. Contractor shall be responsible for additional and/or larger amplifiers if adjustments during testing to meet intelligibility requirements reduces the spare capacities to less than 25 percent.

As-Built Drawings

Provide four sets of detailed as-built drawings. Furnish four sets of CD or DVD discs containing software backup with CAD-based drawings in latest version of AutoCAD *.dwg format of as-built drawings and schematics. Discs shall also include as-built drawings plotted to scale in *.pdf format along with *.pdf copies of the manufacturer's data, and calculations. The drawings shall include complete wiring diagrams showing point-to-point connections between devices and equipment, both factory and field wired. Include a riser diagram and drawings showing the as-built location of devices and equipment. The drawings shall show the system as installed, including deviations from both the contract drawings and the approved shop drawings. These drawings shall be submitted within 14 days after the final acceptance test of the system. At least one copy of the as-built (red-lined) drawings shall be provided at the time of, or prior to, the final acceptance test.

SD-03 Product Data

Provide UL or FM listing cards for equipment provided. Include annotated catalog data, in table format, showing manufacturer's name, model, voltage and catalog numbers for all equipment and components.

Technical Data And Computer Software; G

Fire alarm control unit (FACU); G

Autonomous control unit (ACU); G

Combination emergency communications system panel (CECP); G

Local operating consoles (LOC); G

Amplifiers; G

Digitalized voice generators; G

Remote annunciator; G

Installation-wide mass notification system transceiver; G

Digital alarm communicator transmitter (DACT); G

Batteries; G

Battery chargers; G

Wiring and cable; G

Surge protection; G

Ceiling bridges for ceiling mounted appliances; G

Back boxes and conduit; G

Terminal cabinets/assemblies; G

Notification appliances; G

LED Text Displays; G

LED text display control panels; G

Addressable monitor module; G

Addressable control/relay module; G

Isolation module; G
Manual stations; G
Smoke detectors; G
Carbon monoxide detector; G
Tamper switches; G
Manufacturer's installation and maintenance manuals; G

Provide one copy of the most recent Manufacturer's installation and maintenance manuals for each piece of equipment being installed. This data is necessary for use by NAVFAC MIDLANT Fire Protection Engineering when reviewing the contractor's submittal. Manual may be submitted in *.pdf format and submitted directly to NAVFAC MIDLANT Fire Protection Engineering.

SD-05 Design Data

System Operation; G

Provide a complete description of the system operation, in matrix format, on the shop drawings.

Battery power; G

- a. Verify battery capacity exceeds supervisory and alarm power requirements.
 - 1) Substantiate the battery calculations for alarm, alert, and supervisory power requirements. Ampere-hour requirements for each system component and each panel component, and the battery-recharging period, shall be included.
 - 2) Provide complete battery calculations for both the alarm, alert, and supervisory power requirements. Ampere-hour requirements for each system component shall be submitted with the calculations.
- b. For battery calculations, use the following assumptions: Assume a starting voltage of 24 VDC for starting the calculations to size the batteries. Calculate the required Ampere-hour for the specified standby time, and then calculate the required Ampere-hour for the specified alarm time. Calculate the nominal battery voltage after operation on batteries for the specified time period.

Voltage Drop Calculations; G

Provide voltage drop calculations to indicate sufficient voltage is available for proper operation of the system and all components, at the minimum rated voltage of the system operating on batteries.

Utilize the lump sum method for voltage drop calculations. Assume the entire appliance load is at the end of the circuit (lump sum). Utilize 16 VDC as the operating voltage of the appliances and 21.6 VDC as the voltage at the circuit terminals.

Spare Capacity Calculations; G

Provide calculations verifying the contract stipulated 25 spare capacity is provided for each notification appliance circuit,

FACU/ACU, SNAC panel, and auxiliary power supply panel. Also provide a calculation indicating a 25 percent spare capacity is maintained for each SLC.

SD-06 Test Reports

Field Quality Control
Testing Procedures; G
Smoke detector testing procedures; G
Carbon monoxide detector testing procedures; G

SD-07 Certificates

Installer

SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Reports

Combination emergency communications system panel (CECP)

Provide reports on preliminary tests, include printer information. Include the NFPA 72 Record of Completion and NFPA 72 Inspection and Testing Form, with the appropriate test reports. printer generated data shall consist of a unique identifier for each device, combination emergency communications system panel, initiating device and notification appliance, with an indication of test results, and signature of the factory-trained technician of the control panel manufacturer and equipment installer.

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Instructions; G

Provide four copies of the Operation and Maintenance Instructions, indexed and in booklet form. The Operation and Maintenance Instructions shall be a single volume or in separate volumes, and may be submitted as a Technical Data Package. Manuals shall be approved prior to training.

Original and backup copies of all software delivered for this contract on each type of CD/DVD media utilized.

If permitted by the Contracting Officer, provide Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Instructions in electronic format. File format of electronic submittal materials shall be portable document format. No other electronic formats shall be accepted.

Instruction of Government Employees

The installers training history for the employees involved with this contract.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Equipment and devices shall be compatible and operable with existing installation-wide fire alarm reporting and mass notification systems and shall not impair reliability or operational functions of existing system. The installation-wide fire reporting system utilizes DACT. The installation-wide mass notification system utilizes WAVES (TRX-401) tranceivers.

- a. In NFPA publications referred to herein, consider advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word "shall" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears; interpret reference to "authority having jurisdiction" and/or AHJ to mean the Naval Facilities Engineering Command, MIDLANT, Fire Protection Engineer.
- b. The recommended practices stated in the manufacturer's literature or documentation shall be considered as mandatory requirements.
- c. Devices and equipment for fire alarm service shall be listed by **UL Fire Prot Dir** or approved by **FM APP GUIDE**.

1.6.1 Qualifications

1.6.1.1 Qualifications for Fire Alarm System Subcontractor

The Prime Contractor shall be responsible for obtaining the services of a qualified fire alarm system subcontractor for the design and installation of the combination emergency communications system. The firm designated by the Prime Contractor as their qualified fire alarm system subcontractor:

- a. Shall have been in existence a minimum of four years prior to contract award.
- b. Shall provide proof of previous experience installing a system of equal or greater complexity, utilizing the same equipment to be provided under this contract.
- c. Shall provide proof of adequate qualified staffing to meet all of the following requirements:

1.6.1.1.1 On-Staff Fire Alarm System Designer(s)

A qualified fire alarm contractor shall have at least one on staff NICET Level IV SET, (Senior Engineering Technician) fire alarm technician. This technician shall also have proof of factory certified training for the design of the systems utilizing the equipment being installed. The NICET Level IV technician(s) shall be the lead technician responsible for the contractor's design of the combination emergency communications system, including, but not limited to, the selection and design of necessary equipment, battery, power and circuit calculations, provision of the required manufacturers data and the creation and completion of the shop drawings. The submittal materials (drawings, calculations & manufacturer's data) shall bear the stamp and signature of the NICET Level IV technician. RFI's pertaining to the combination emergency communications system shall be reviewed and signed by the NICET Level IV technician prior to submission to the Contracting Officer.

A NICET Level III, ET (Engineering Technician) fire alarm technician may be utilized to create the shop drawings, calculations and submittal material provided the Level III technician is directly supervised by the NICET Level IV technician. The NICET Level IV technician remains responsible for the system design and submittal materials. Both technicians' signatures and stamps shall be included on the submittal material.

1.6.1.1.2 Supervising Fire Alarm Technician

A NICET Level II, AET (Associate Engineering Technician) fire alarm

technician with a minimum of 8 years experience shall supervise the installation of the combination emergency communications system. The fire alarm technicians supervising the installation of equipment shall also be factory trained in the installation, adjustment, testing, and operation of the equipment specified herein and on the approved shop drawings. Supervising technician shall be a direct employee of the firm designated by the Prime Contractor as their qualified fire alarm system subcontractor.

1.6.1.1.3 Installing Technicians

The installing Contractor shall provide fire alarm technicians with a minimum of four years of experience utilized to assist in the installation and termination devices, appliances, cabinets and panels. The fire alarm technicians installing the equipment shall be factory trained in the installation, adjustment, testing, and operation of the equipment specified herein and on the approved shop drawings. Technicians with minimum NICET Level I or II Certification are preferred. Installing technicians shall be direct employees of the firm designated by the Prime Contractor as their qualified fire alarm system subcontractor.

1.6.1.1.4 Testing Personnel

The installing Contractor shall provide Fire Alarm Technicians with a minimum of eight years of experience utilized to test and certify the installation of the combination emergency communications system devices, appliances, cabinets and panels. The fire alarm technicians testing the equipment shall be factory trained in the installation, adjustment, testing, and operation of the equipment specified herein and on the approved shop drawings. Testing personnel shall be direct employees of the firm designated by the Prime Contractor as their qualified fire alarm system subcontractor.

1.6.2 Regulatory Requirements

1.6.2.1 Requirements for Fire Protection Service

Equipment and material shall be Listed by UL and listed in [UL Fire Prot Dir](#), [UL Electrical Constructn](#) or Approved by FM and listed in [FM APP GUIDE](#). Where the terms "listed" or "approved" appear in this specification, they shall mean listed in [UL Fire Prot Dir](#) or [FM APP GUIDE](#). The omission of these terms under the description of any item of equipment described shall not be interpreted as waiving this requirement. All listings or approval by testing laboratories shall be from an existing ANSI or UL published standard.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Protect equipment delivered and placed in storage from the weather, humidity, and temperature variation, dirt and dust, and other contaminants.

1.8 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE (O&M) INSTRUCTIONS

The combination emergency communications system Operation and Maintenance Instructions shall include:

- a. "Manufacturer Data Package 5" as specified in Section [01 78 23](#) OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA. Provide an electronic copy of the OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE (O&M) INSTRUCTIONS

- b. [Manufacturer's installation and maintenance manuals](#) outlining step-by-step procedures required for system startup, operation, and shutdown. The manual shall include the manufacturer's name, model number, service manual, parts list, and complete description of equipment and their basic operating features.
- c. Maintenance manual listing routine maintenance procedures, possible breakdowns and repairs, and troubleshooting guide. The manuals shall include conduit layout, equipment layout and simplified wiring, and control diagrams of the system as installed.
- d. The manuals shall include complete procedures for system revision and expansion, detailing both equipment and software requirements.
- e. Software delivered for this project shall be provided, on CD or DVD discs.
- f. Printouts of configuration settings for all devices.
- g. Routine maintenance checklist. The routine maintenance checklist shall be arranged in columnar format. The first column shall list all installed devices, the second column shall state the maintenance activity or state no maintenance required, the third column shall state the frequency of the maintenance activity, and the fourth column for additional comments or reference.

1.9 WARRANTY PERIOD REPAIR SERVICE, MAINTENANCE AND ADJUSTMENTS

During guarantee period, the service technician shall be on-site within 24 hours after notification. All repairs shall be completed within 24 hours of arrival on-site. During the guarantee period, the installing fire alarm contractor is responsible for conducting all required testing and maintenance in accordance with the requirements and recommended practices of [NFPA 72](#) and the system manufacturer. Installing fire alarm contractor is NOT responsible for any damage resulting from abuse, misuse or neglect of equipment by the end user

1.10 EXTRA MATERIALS

1.10.1 Repair Service/Replacement Parts

Repair services and replacement parts for the system shall be available for a period of ten years after the date of final acceptance of this work by the Contracting Officer.

1.10.2 Interchangeable Parts

Spare parts furnished shall be directly interchangeable with the corresponding components of the installed system. Spare parts shall be suitably packaged and identified by nameplate, tagging, or stamping. Spare parts shall be delivered to the Contracting Officer at the time of the final acceptance testing.

1.10.3 Spare Parts

Furnish the following spare parts and accessories:

- a. Four fuses for each fused circuit

- b. Two smoke detectors
- c. Two addressable control modules
- d. Two addressable interface modules

1.10.4 Special Tools

Software, connecting cables and proprietary equipment, necessary for the maintenance, testing, and reprogramming of the equipment shall be furnished to the Contracting Officer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

2.1.1 Manufacturer

Components shall be of current design and shall be in regular and recurrent production at the time of installation. Provide design, materials, and devices for a combination emergency communications system, complete, conforming to NFPA 72, except as otherwise or additionally specified herein.

2.1.2 Standard Products

Provide materials, equipment, and devices that are UL Listed or FM Approved for fire protection service when so required by NFPA 72 or this specification. Select material from one manufacturer, where possible, and not a combination of manufacturers, for any particular classification of materials. Material and equipment shall be the standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of the products for at least two years prior to bid opening.

2.1.3 Nameplates

Major components of equipment shall have the manufacturer's name, address, type or style, model or serial number, catalog number, date of installation, installing Contractor's name and address, and the contract number provided on a new plate permanently affixed to the item or equipment. Major components include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. CECP (includes component panels)
- b. Automatic transmitters (for both the installation-wide fire alarm reporting system and installation-wide mass notification systems)

Furnish nameplates to obtain approval by the Contracting Officer before installation. Obtain approval by the Contracting Officer for installation locations. Nameplates shall be etched metal or plastic, permanently attached by screws to panels or adjacent walls.

2.2 GENERAL PRODUCT REQUIREMENT

All combination emergency communications system equipment shall be listed for use under the applicable reference standards.

2.3 FIRE ALARM CONTROL UNIT (FACU) AND AUTONOMOUS CONTROL UNIT (ACU)

Provide a complete control panel fully enclosed in a lockable steel

enclosure as specified herein. At the designer's discretion, the FACU and ACU may be housed in separate panels that contain independent power supplies and batteries or the ACU may be housed in the same panel with the FACU as a [combination emergency communications system panel](#) (CECP). Operations required for testing or for normal care and maintenance of the systems shall be performed from the front of the FACU enclosure. If more than a single unit is required at a location to form a complete control panel, the unit enclosures shall match exactly.

- a. Each control unit shall provide power, supervision, control, and logic for the entire system, utilizing solid state, modular components, internally mounted and arranged for easy access. Each control unit shall be suitable for operation on a 120 Volt, 60 Hertz, normal building power supply. Provide each panel with supervisory functions for power failure, internal component placement, and operation.
- b. Visual indication of alarm, supervisory, or trouble initiation on the fire alarm control unit shall be by liquid crystal display or similar means with a minimum of 80 characters, that at least 32 are field changeable. The ACU shall have the capability of temporarily deactivating the fire alarm messages while delivering voice messages. Provide conductor integrity monitoring for strobe, display, temporary deactivation of fire alarm audible notification appliances and speaker wiring.
- c. Provide secure operator console with a microphone for delivering live voice messages. Provide adequate discrete outputs to temporarily deactivate fire alarm audible notification, and initiate/synchronize strobes. Provide a complete set of self-diagnostics for controller and appliance network. Provide local diagnostic information display and local diagnostic information and system event log file.

2.3.1 Cabinet

Install control panel components in cabinets large enough to accommodate all components and also to allow ample gutter space for interconnection of panels as well as field wiring. The enclosure shall be identified by an engraved laminated phenolic resin nameplate. Lettering on the nameplate shall say "Fire Alarm and Mass Notification Control Panel" and shall not be less than [one inch](#) high. Provide prominent rigid plastic or metal identification plates for lamps, circuits, meters, fuses, and switches. The cabinet shall be provided in a sturdy steel housing, complete with back box, hinged steel door with cylinder lock, and surface mounting provisions.

2.3.2 Control Modules

Provide power and control modules to perform all functions of the FACU. Provide audible signals to indicate any alarm, supervisory, or trouble condition. The alarm signals shall be different from the trouble signal. Connect circuit conductors entering or leaving the panel to screw-type terminals with each terminal marked for identification. Locate diodes and relays, if any, on screw terminals in the FACU. Circuits operating at 24 VDC shall not operate at less than 21.6 Volts. Circuits operating at any other voltage shall not have a voltage drop exceeding 10 percent of nominal voltage.

2.3.3 Silencing Switches

- a. Alarm Silencing Switch: Provide an alarm silencing switch at the FACU

that shall silence the audible signal but not affect the visual alarm indicator. This switch shall be overridden upon activation of a subsequent alarm.

- b. Supervisory/Trouble Silencing Switch: Provide supervisory and trouble silencing switch that shall silence the audible trouble and supervisory signal, but not affect the visual indicator. This switch shall be overridden upon activation of a subsequent alarm, supervision, or trouble condition. Audible trouble indication must resound automatically every 24 hours after the silencing feature has been operated.

2.3.4 Non-Interfering

Power and supervise each circuit such that a signal from one device does not prevent the receipt of signals from any other device. Circuits shall be manually reset by switch from the FACU after the initiating device or devices have been restored to normal.

2.3.5 Voice Notification System

The Voice Notification System shall comply with the requirements of NFPA 72 for Emergency Voice/Alarm Communications System requirements ISO 7240-16, IEC 60268-16, except as specified herein.

Tones and voice messages shall repeat until the control panel is reset or silenced. A live voice message shall override the automatic audible output through use of a microphone input at the control panel.

- a. The system shall be a single channel voice notification system incorporating user selectability of a minimum 8 distinct sounds for tone signaling, and the incorporation of a voice module for delivery of prerecorded messages.
- b. The digitalized voice message shall consist of a non-volatile (EPROM) microprocessor based input to the amplifiers. The microprocessor shall actively interrogate circuitry, field wiring, and digital coding necessary for the immediate and accurate rebroadcasting of the stored voice data into the appropriate amplifier input. Loss of operating power, supervisory power, or any other malfunction that could render the digitalized voice module inoperative shall automatically cause the three tone temporal signal to take over all functions assigned to the failed unit.
- c. When using the microphone, live messages shall be broadcast through all speakers. The system shall be capable of operating all speakers at the same time. The Voice Notification System shall support Public Address (PA) paging for the facility.
- d. The Mass Notification functions shall override the manual or automatic fire alarm notification or Public Address (PA) functions. The system shall have the capability of utilizing a remote microphone station with redundant controls of the notification system control panel. A hand held microphone shall be provided and, upon activation, shall take priority over any tone signal, recorded message or PA microphone operation in progress, while maintaining the strobe Notification Appliance Circuits activation.

Where the Combined Emergency Communications System consists of separate

autonomous control and fire alarm control units, a Class X pathway shall be provided as the means for activating the strobe appliances.

The activation of the strobe circuits shall follow the operation of the speaker notification appliance circuits.

Audio output shall be selectable for line level (600 ohms), 25 or 70.7 volt output.

The audio amplifier outputs shall be not greater than 100 watts RMS output.

The strobe notification appliance circuits shall provide at least 2 amps of 24 VDC power to operate strobes and have the ability to synchronize all strobes.

All outputs and operational modules shall be fully supervised with on-board diagnostics and trouble reporting circuits.

Form "C" contacts shall be provided for system alarm and trouble conditions.

Circuits shall be provided for operation of auxiliary appliances during trouble conditions.

During a Mass Notification event the panel shall not generate nor cause any trouble alarms to be generated with the fire alarm portion of the combination emergency communications system.

Mass Notification functions shall take precedence over all other function performed by the Voice Notification System.

Messages shall be recorded professionally utilizing standard industry methods and be recorded utilizing a professional female voice. Message and tone volumes shall both be at the same decibel level. Messages recorded from the system microphone shall not be accepted. Messages shall be the following:

1) FIRE ALARM MESSAGE: Three Tone Temporal Pattern (0.5 sec on, 0.5 second off, 0.5 second on, 0.5 second off, 0.5 second on, 1.5 second off.) The alarm signal shall be a square wave. The wave shall have a fundamental frequency of 520 Hz $\pm$ 10 percent followed by:

"May I have your attention, please. May I have your attention, please. A fire has been reported in the building. Please leave the building by the nearest exit. Provide a 2 second pause. Repeat the tones and message.

2) CARBON MONOXIDE ALARM MESSAGE: Four Tone Temporal (0.5 sec on, 0.5 second off, 0.5 second on, 0.5 second off, 0.5 second on, 0.5 second off, 0.5 second on,, 1.5 second off.) The alarm signal shall be a square wave. The wave shall have a fundamental frequency of 520 Hz $\pm$ 10 percent followed by:

"May I have your attention please. May I have your attention please. High levels of carbon monoxide have been detected in the building. Please leave the building by the nearest exit." Provide 2 second pause. Repeat the tones and message.

a. Auxiliary Input Module shall be designed to be an outboard

expansion module to either expand the number of optional remote microphone stations, or allow a telephone interface.

b. Remote Microphone station (PA) shall incorporate a Push-To-Talk (PTT) microphone, and controls to allow Public Address paging in the facility. The Public Address paging function shall not override any alarm or notification functions. The microphone shall be handheld style.

2.3.6 Memory

Provide each control unit with non-volatile memory and logic for all functions. The use of long-life batteries, capacitors, or other age-dependent devices shall not be considered as equal to non-volatile processors, PROMS, or EPROMS.

2.3.7 Field Programmability

Provide control units and control panels that are fully field-programmable for control, initiation, notification, supervisory, and trouble functions of both input and output. The system program configuration shall be menu driven. System changes shall be password protected and shall be accomplished using personal computer-based equipment. Any proprietary equipment and proprietary software needed by qualified technicians to implement future changes to the combination emergency communications system shall be provided as part of this contract. Passwords for all levels of access shall be the manufacturer's default password and be provided to the Contracting Officer.

2.3.8 Input/Output Modifications

The FACU shall contain features allowing the bypass of input devices from the system or the modification of system outputs. These control features shall consist of a panel mounted keypad and a keyboard. Any bypass or modification to the system shall indicate a trouble condition on the FACU .

2.3.9 Resetting

Provide the necessary controls to prevent the resetting of any alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal while the alarm, supervisory or trouble condition exists on the system.

2.3.10 Instructions

Provide a typeset printed or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a Lexan plastic cover in a stainless steel or aluminum frame. Install the instructions on the interior of the FACU. The card shall show those steps to be taken by an operator when a signal is received, as well as the functional operation of the system under all conditions; normal, alarm, supervisory, and trouble. The instructions shall be approved by the Contracting Officer before being posted.

2.3.11 Walk Test

The FACU shall have a walk test feature. When using this feature, operation of initiating devices shall result in limited system outputs, so that the notification appliances operate for only a few seconds and the event is indicated on the system printer, but no other outputs occur.

2.3.12 History Logging

In addition to the required printer output, the control panel shall have the ability to store a minimum of 400 events in a log. These events shall be stored in a battery-protected memory and shall remain in the memory until the memory is downloaded or cleared manually. Resetting of the control panel shall not clear the memory.

2.3.13 RS-232-C Output

Each local control panel shall be capable of operating remote service type printers, and/or modems. The output shall be paralleled ASCII from an EIA RS-232-C connection with a baud rate of 1200 or 2400 to allow use of any commonly available CRT, printer, or modem.

2.4 LOCAL OPERATING CONSOLES (LOC)

Provide a LOC at the location indicated on the contract drawings. The LOC shall consist of a Remote Microphone station incorporating a Push-To-Talk (PTT) hand held microphone and system status indicators of/for the system. Using the console, personnel in the building can, provide live voice messages and instructions. The LOC shall NOT have the capability of being utilized to activate any pre-recorded messages. The unit shall incorporate microphone override of any tone generation or prerecorded messages. The unit shall be fully supervised from the FACU. The housing for the LOC shall not be lockable.

2.5 SUPPLEMENTARY FIRE ALARM CONTROL UNITS

When necessary multiple, interconnected fire alarm control units may be utilized to create a networked system consisting of a master fire alarm control unit and one or more supplementary fire alarm control units capable of peer to peer communications. Networked panels shall be UL Listed as compatible. Interconnecting separate manufacturers' fire alarm units or fire alarms units not capable of peer to peer communications is prohibited. The term supplementary fire alarm control unit does not refer to releasing service fire alarm panels.

2.6 AMPLIFIERS PREAMPLIFIERS, DIGITALIZED VOICE GENERATORS

Any amplifiers, preamplifiers, digitalized voice generators, and other hardware necessary for a complete, operational, textual audible circuit conforming to NFPA 72 shall be housed within panels. The system shall automatically operate and control all building fire alarm speakers. Each amplifier shall be single output channel. The provision of backup amplifiers is not a contract requirement.

2.6.1 Construction

Amplifiers shall utilize computer-grade, solid-state components and shall be provided with output protection devices sufficient to protect the amplifier against any transient voltage up to ten times the highest rated voltage in the system.

2.6.2 Inputs

Each system shall be equipped with separate inputs from the tone generator, digitalized voice driver and panel mounted microphone. Microphone inputs shall be of the low impedance, balanced line type. Both microphone and

tone generator input shall be operational on any amplifier.

2.6.3 Message Tones

Message tones shall be stored digitally. Tones shall be either attached to the recorded message or be able to be programmed via the system software or by selector programming switches within the main control unit.

2.6.4 Protection Circuits

Each amplifier shall be constantly supervised for any condition that could render the amplifier inoperable at its maximum output. Failure of any component shall cause, illumination of a visual "amplifier trouble" indicator on the CECF,

2.7 SUPPLEMENTARY NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE CIRCUIT PANEL (SNAC)

Provide SNAC panels as necessary to power and control visual notification appliance circuits in addition to those connected to the main FACU. Trouble contacts of SNAC panel shall be individually monitored for trouble conditions on the panel.

2.8 AUXILIARY POWER SUPPLY PANEL

Provide auxiliary power supply panels as necessary to power combination emergency communications system devices, relays and control modules where power requirements exceed the capacity of the FACU. Trouble contacts of auxiliary power supply panels shall be individually monitored for trouble conditions.

2.9 Remote Annunciator

Provide a semi-recessed mounted remote annunciator as indicated on the contract drawings. The remote annunciator shall duplicate functions of the FACU for message display, fire alarm, supervisory alarm and trouble condition visual and audible notification and system reset functions. Remote annunciator shall require the use of a key for accessing the reset, control and other functions.

2.10 GRAPHIC ANNUNCIATOR

2.10.1 Indicating Lights

Provide the graphic annunciator with individual light emitting diode (LED) indicating lights for each type of alarm and supervisory device. Provide an amber LED for indicating a system trouble condition and a separate amber LED for indicating a supervisory condition. Provide a green LED to indicate presence of power and a red LED to indicate an alarm condition. The actuation of any alarm signal shall cause the illumination of a boundary LED, a floor LED, and a device LED. System supervisory or trouble shall cause the illumination of a trouble LED. In addition to all of these LED indicators, provide normal power and emergency power indicating LEDs. Provide a push button LED test switch. The test switch shall not require key operation. Annunciator LEDs shall only be canceled by operation of the system reset switch on the FACU.

2.10.2 Material

Construct the graphic annunciator face plate of smoked Plexiglas. The face

plate shall be backlit with LEDs. Control equipment and wiring shall be housed in a recessed back box. The exposed portions of the back box shall be chrome plated with knockouts.

2.10.3 Programming

Where programming for the operation of the proper LEDs is accomplished by a separate software program other than the software for the FACU, the software program shall not require reprogramming after loss of power. The software shall be reprogrammable in the field.

2.11 Installation-Wide Control

If an installation-wide control system for mass notification exists, the autonomous control unit shall communicate with the central control unit of the installation-wide system. The autonomous control unit shall receive commands/messages from the central control unit and provide status information.

2.12 INTERFACE TO THE INSTALLATION-WIDE MASS NOTIFICATION NETWORK

2.12.1 Wide Area Mass Notification Network/Local-Area Network (WAN/LAN)

The Wide Area Network/Local Area Network (WAN/LAN) Interface shall be a 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX Category 6. The ANSI/TIA/EIA 568 wiring method of the RJ-45 outlet shall be as specified in Section 27 10 00 BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEM. The WAN/LAN Interface shall support sensitive data at rated data transmission speeds with DES/3DES encryption, MD5 and SHA-1 hashing, RFC 2402 authentication and meet security features of FIPS 140-2 criteria. The WAN/LAN Interface shall have the following characteristics:

- a. 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX, autonegotiation
- b. WAN/LAN Connection: RJ-45
- c. Cabling: as specified in Section 27 10 00 BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEM
- d. Security Protocols: 168-bit 3DES, 56-bit DES, SHA-1, MD5, RFC 2402; up to 75 security associations
- e. Network protocols: TCP/IP, ISO 8802-3
- f. Standards compliance: PC 99, WfM 1.1a/2.0, ACPI 1.0, DMI, PXE 2.0, RIS, IEEE 802.3, PCI 2.2, FIPS 140-2 (pending)

2.12.2 Installation-wide mass notification system transceiver

The radio transceiver shall be bi-direction and meet all the requirements of paragraph, RADIO TRANSMITTER AND INTERFACE PANELS as specified in this Specification Section. The transceiver utilized in the Mass Notification System shall be capable of the following:

- a. Communication with the Central Control/Monitoring System to provide supervision of communication link and status changes are reported by automatic and manual poll/reply/acknowledge routines.
- b. All monitored points/status changes are transmitted immediately and at

programmed intervals until acknowledged by the Central Control/Monitoring System.

- c. Each transceiver shall transmits a unique identity code as part of all messages; the code is set by the user at the transceiver.

2.12.2.1 Radio Frequency Communications for Installation-Wide Mass Notification System

Use of radio frequency-type communications systems shall comply with National Telecommunications and Information Administration (NTIA) requirements.

2.12.2.2 Licensed Radio Frequency Systems for Installation-Wide Mass Notification System

An approved DD Form 1494 for the system is required prior to operation.

2.12.3 Telephone Connections to Installation-Wide Mass Notification System

A modem shall be provide for communication with the Central Control/Monitoring System. The modem shall be 56k, compatible with data mode V.90, utilizing Hayes compatible command codes. The modem shall be capable of Auto dialing a preset number based on preprogrammed events. The modem shall auto answer and provide a secure password protection system. Cabling: as specified in Section 27 10 00 BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEM.

2.12.4 RS-232/RS-485

The panel shall support a direct connect via RS-232 or RS-485 connections.

2.13 AUTOMATIC FIRE TRANSMITTERS

2.13.1 Digital Alarm Communicator Transmitter (DACT)

Provide DACT that is compatible with the existing supervising station fire alarm system. Transmitter shall have a means to transmit alarm, supervisory, and trouble conditions via a single transmitter. Transmitter shall have a source of power for operation that conforms to NFPA 72. Transmitter shall be capable of initiating a test signal daily at any selected time. Transmitter shall be arranged to seize telephone circuits in accordance with NFPA 72.

2.13.2 Signals to Be Transmitted to the Installation Receiving Station

The following signals shall be sent to the installation's receiving station:

- a. Fire alarm
- b. Supervisory
- c. Trouble
- d. Carbon Monoxide detector
- e. Sleeping room smoke detector

2.14 EMERGENCY POWER SUPPLY

Provide emergency power for system operation in the event of primary power source failure. Transfer from normal to auxiliary (secondary) power or restoration from auxiliary to normal power shall be automatic and shall not cause transmission of a false alarm.

2.14.1 Batteries

Provide sealed, maintenance-free, sealed lead acid batteries as the source for emergency power to the CECs. Batteries shall contain suspended electrolyte. The battery system shall be maintained in a fully charged condition by means of a solid-state battery charger. Provide an automatic transfer switch to transfer the load to the batteries in the event of the failure of primary power.

2.14.1.1 Capacity

Provide the batteries with sufficient capacity to operate the system under the most demanding of the following conditions. Conditions are considered individually. Do not combine the two conditions.

- a. Under supervisory and trouble conditions, including audible trouble signal devices for 48 hours and audible and visual signal appliances under alarm conditions for an additional 15 minutes.
- b. Under alarm conditions with audible and visual notification appliances operating for 60 minutes.

2.14.2 Battery Chargers

Provide a solid-state, fully automatic, variable charging rate battery charger. The charger shall be capable of providing 150 percent of the connected system load and shall maintain the batteries at full charge. In the event the batteries are fully discharged (18 Volts DC), the charger shall recharge the batteries back to 95 percent of full charge within 48 hours. Provide pilot light to indicate when batteries are manually placed on a high rate of charge as part of the unit assembly if a high rate switch is provided.

2.14.3 Battery Cabinets

Locate battery cabinets below the FACU. Battery cabinets shall be installed at an accessible location when standing at floor level. Battery cabinets shall not be installed lower than 12 inches above finished floor. Installing batteries above drop ceilings or in inaccessible locations is prohibited. Battery cabinets shall be large enough to accommodate batteries and also to allow ample gutter space for interconnection of panels as well as field wiring. The enclosure shall be identified by an engraved laminated phenolic resin nameplate. Lettering on the nameplate shall indicate the panel(s) the batteries power and shall not be less than one inch high. The cabinet shall be provided in a sturdy steel housing, complete with back box, hinged steel door with cylinder lock, and surface mounting provisions.

2.15 WIRING

Provide wiring materials under this section as specified in Section 26 20 00

INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM with the additions and modifications specified herein.

2.15.1 Alarm Wiring

The SLC wiring shall be solid copper cable in accordance with the manufacturers requirements. Copper signaling line circuits and initiating device circuit field wiring shall be No. 14 AWG size conductors at a minimum. Notification appliance circuit conductors, other than speakers, shall be solid copper No. 14 AWG size conductors at a minimum. Speaker circuits shall be copper No. 16 AWG size conductors at a minimum. Firefighter telephone circuits shall be No. 16 AWG size conductors as a minimum. Wire size shall be sufficient to prevent excessive voltage drop. Circuits operating at 24 VDC shall not operate at less than 21.6 volts. Circuits operating at any other voltage shall not have a voltage drop exceeding 10 percent of nominal voltage. Power wiring, operating at 120 VAC minimum, shall be a minimum No. 12 AWG solid copper having similar insulation.

2.15.2 Wiring to Station Telegraphic Fire Alarm Circuit

Wiring from the master fire alarm box to the station telegraphic fire alarm circuit shall be a two-conductor No. 12 AWG type UF cable in conduit.

2.16 OVERVOLTAGE AND SURGE PROTECTION

2.16.1 Signaling Line Circuit Surge Protection

For systems having circuits located outdoors, communications equipment shall be protected against surges induced on any signaling line circuit and shall comply with the applicable requirements of IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2. Cables and conductors, that serve as communications links, shall have surge protection circuits installed at each end that meet the following waveform(s):

- a. A 10 microsecond by 1000 microsecond waveform with a peak voltage of 1500 volts and a peak current of 60 amperes.
- b. An 8 microsecond by 20 microsecond waveform with a peak voltage of 1000 volts and a peak current of 500 amperes. Protection shall be provided at the equipment. Additional triple electrode gas surge protectors, rated for the application, shall be installed on each wireline circuit within 3 feet of the building cable entrance. Fuses shall not be used for surge protection.

2.16.2 Wiring Surge Protection

Digital and analog inputs and outputs shall be protected against surges induced by sensor wiring installed outdoors and as shown. The inputs and outputs shall be tested with the following waveforms:

- a. A 10 by 1000 microsecond waveform with a peak voltage of 1500 volts and a peak current of 60 amperes.
- b. An 8 by 20 microsecond waveform with a peak voltage of 1000 volts and a peak current of 500 amperes. Fuses shall not be used for surge protection.

2.17 CEILING BRIDGES

Provide ceiling bridges for ceiling-mounted appliances. Ceiling bridges shall be as recommended/required by the manufacturer of the ceiling-mounted notification appliance.

2.18 BACK BOXES AND CONDUIT

In addition to the requirements of SPECIFICATION SECTION 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM; provide all wiring in rigid metal conduit or intermediate metal conduit unless specifically indicated otherwise. Minimum conduit size shall be 3/4 inch in diameter except for 1/2 inch drops to individual devices. Do not use electrical non-metallic tubing (ENT) or flexible non-metallic tubing and associated fittings.

Provide rigid metal back boxes of adequate size and depth as recommended by the manufacturer of the appliance or device installed.

2.19 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

2.19.1 Audio Notification Appliance Network

The notification appliance network consists of textual audible appliances (speakers) located to provide intelligible instructions at all locations in the building.

2.19.2 Fire Alarm/Mass Notification Speakers

Audible appliances shall conform to the applicable requirements of UL 464. Appliances shall be connected into notification appliance circuits. Surface mounted audible appliances shall be painted white. Recessed audible appliances shall be installed with a grill that is painted white.

- a. Textual audible appliances (speakers) shall conform to the applicable requirements of UL 1480. Speakers shall have six different sound output levels and operate with audio line input levels of 70 Volts AC, and 25 Volts AC, by means of selectable tap settings.

Speaker tap settings shall include taps of 1/4, 1/2, 1, and 2. Speakers shall incorporate a high efficiency speaker for maximum output at minimum power across a frequency range of 400Hz to 4000Hz. Speakers shall have a sealed back construction.

Where speakers and strobes are provided in the same location, they may be combined into a single unit. All inputs shall be polarized for compatibility with standard reverse polarity supervision of circuit wiring via the Fire Alarm Control Unit .

- b. Provide speaker mounting plates constructed of cold rolled steel having a minimum thickness of 16 gauge and equipped with mounting holes and other openings as needed for a complete installation. Fabrication marks and holes shall be ground and finished to provide a smooth and neat appearance for each plate. Each plate shall be primed and painted.

Speakers mounted on the exterior of the building, within unconditioned spaces or in the vicinity of showers shall be Listed weather-proof appliances.

2.19.3 Visual Notification Appliances

Visual notification appliances shall conform to the applicable requirements of [UL 1971](#) and conform to the Americans With Disabilities Act (ADA). Fire Alarm/Mass Notification Appliances shall have clear high intensity optic lens, xenon flash tubes, and output white light and be marked "ALERT" in red letters. Appliances with decals or adhesive labels, whether factory or field applied, are prohibited. The light pattern shall be disbursed so that it is visible above and below the strobe and from a 90 degree angle on both sides of the strobe. Strobe flash rate shall be one flash per second and a minimum of 15 candela based on the [UL 1971](#) test. Strobes shall be surface mounted. Provide synchronized operation.

2.19.4 Fire Alarm Horns

Provide semi-flush mounted electronic multi-tone horns that produce a minimum of four distinct sounds, suitable for use in an electrically supervised circuit. Horns shall have a rating of 90 dBA at [10 feet](#) when tested in accordance with [UL 464](#) while emitting a slow whoop tone. Output from the horn shall be three tone temporal pattern. Where horns and strobes are provided in the same location, they may be combined into a single unit. Horns used in exterior locations shall be specifically listed or approved for outdoor use and be provided with metal housing and protective grilles.

2.19.5 Connections

Provide screw terminals for each notification appliance. Terminals shall be designed to accept the size conductors used in this project without modification.

2.19.6 [LED Text Displays](#)

An LED text display shall be provided at locations as shown on the contract drawings. The LED text display shall have minimum character size of [4-inches](#) high and shall spell out the words "EVACUATE" and "ANNOUNCEMENT". The design of LED text display shall be such that it cannot be read when not illuminated. The LED text display shall be capable of being wall or ceiling mounted. LED Text signs shall be reverse polarity sensitive and powered via notification appliance circuits.

2.19.6.1 [LED text display control panels](#)

Where LED text display control/interface panel is necessary, the panel shall be located adjacent to the FACU or ACU. Lock on panel shall be keyed as required by the paragraph titled "Keys."

2.20 [ADDRESSABLE MONITOR MODULE](#)

The initiating device being monitored shall be configured as a Style D initiating device circuits. The system shall be capable of defining any module as an alarm module and report alarm, trouble, loss of polling, or as a supervisory module, and reporting supervisory short, supervisory open or loss of polling such as waterflow switches, valve supervisory switches, fire pump monitoring, independent smoke detection systems, relays for output function actuation, and other similar functions. The module shall be UL or FM listed as compatible with the control panel. The monitor module shall provide address setting means compatible with the control panel's SLC supervision and store an internal identifying code. Monitor

module shall contain an integral LED that flashes each time the monitor module is polled. Pull stations with a monitor module in a common backbox are not required to have an LED. Existing fire alarm system initiating device circuits shall be connected to a single module to power and supervise the circuit. LED shall be visible without needing to remove the backbox cover plate.

2.21 ADDRESSABLE CONTROL/RELAY MODULE

The control module shall be capable of operating as a relay (form C contacts) for interfacing the control panel with other systems, and to control door holders or initiate elevator fire service. The module shall be UL or FM listed as compatible with the control panel. The indicating device or the external load being controlled shall be configured as a Class B Pathway. The system shall be capable of supervising, audible, visual and dry contact circuits. The control module shall have both an input and output address. The supervision shall detect a short on the supervised circuit and shall prevent power from being applied to the circuit. Circuit between the module and the equipment/feature controls is permitted be configured as Class D pathways. The pathway is unsupervised but has a fail-safe operation that performs the intended function when the connection is lost. The control module shall provide address setting means compatible with the control panel's SLC supervision and store an internal identifying code. The control module shall contain an integral LED that flashes each time the control module is polled. Control Modules shall be located in environmental areas that reflect the conditions to which they were listed. LED shall be visible without needing to remove the backbox cover plate.

2.22 ISOLATION MODULE

Provide isolation modules to subdivide each Class A signaling line circuit pathway into groups of a maximum of 20 devices but no more than recommended by the equipment manufacturer between adjacent isolation modules. Isolation modules may be modules or combination detector base/isolation module. LED shall be visible without needing to remove the backbox cover plate.

2.23 MANUAL STATIONS

Provide addressable manual pull stations. Manual pull stations shall be metal or plastic, semi-flush mounted, single action, addressable manual stations, that are not subject to operation by jarring or vibration. Stations shall be equipped with screw terminals for each conductor. Stations that require the replacement of any portion of the device after activation are not permitted. Stations shall be finished in fire-engine red with molded raised lettering operating instructions of contrasting color. The use of a key or wrench shall be required to reset the station. Manual stations shall be mounted at 48 inches. Stations shall have a separate screw terminal for each conductor.

2.24 SMOKE DETECTORS

2.24.1 Photoelectric Smoke Detectors

Provide addressable photoelectric smoke detectors as follows:

- a. Provide analog/addressable photoelectric smoke detectors utilizing the photoelectric light scattering principle for operation in accordance with UL 268. Smoke detectors shall be listed for use with the fire

alarm control unit.

- b. Provide self-restoring type detectors that do not require any readjustment after actuation at the FACU to restore them to normal operation. detectors shall be UL Listed or FM Approved as smoke-automatic fire detectors.
- c. Components shall be rust and corrosion resistant. Vibration shall have no effect on the detector's operation. Protect the detection chamber with a fine mesh metallic screen that prevents the entrance of insects or airborne materials. The screen shall not inhibit the movement of smoke particles into the chamber.
- d. Provide twist lock bases with sounder that produces a minimum of 90 dBA at 10 feet for the detectors. The detectors shall maintain contact with their bases without the use of springs. Provide companion mounting base with screw terminals for each conductor. Terminate field wiring on the screw terminals. The detector shall have a visual indicator to show actuation.
- e. The detector address shall identify the particular unit, its location within the system, and its sensitivity setting. detectors shall be of the low voltage type rated for use on a 24 VDC system.
- f. An operator at the control panel, having a proper access level, shall have the capability to manually access the following information for each initiating device.
 - (1) Primary status
 - (2) Device type
 - (3) Present average value
 - (4) Present sensitivity selected
 - (5) detector range (normal, dirty, etc.)

2.24.2 Smoke Detector Testing

Smoke detectors shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 72 and the manufacturer's recommended calibrated test method.

2.25 Carbon monoxide detector

Provide carbon monoxide (CO) detection where required by NFPA 720 and NFPA 72. Carbon monoxide detectors shall be listed to Underwriters Laboratories UL 2075 for Gas and Vapor Detectors and Sensors. Carbon monoxide detectors shall be listed for use with fire alarm control units. Do not provide CO detectors with local alarms. Detector shall be provided with an LED indicator, LED shall blink green to indicate normal standby, LED shall blink red or turn solid red upon alarm.

Provide analog/addressable carbon monoxide (CO) detectors listed for use with the FACU. For FACU's with no listed compatible addressable CO detectors, provide listed 4-wire carbon monoxide detectors.

Where 4-wire CO detectors are necessary, each 4-wire CO detector shall be individually monitored via addressable interface modules for alarm

and off normal/trouble conditions (including loss of power to the individual detector).

Wiring connections shall be made by means of screw terminals and detectors shall be equipped with trouble relays. Detectors shall be able to mount to a single-gang electrical boxes.

A trouble condition at an individual CO detector shall not affect any other CO detectors. CO detectors shall be powered by the FACU. Battery powered and 120 VAC powered detectors are prohibited. Power circuits for 4-wire CO detectors shall be dedicated to powering the CO detectors only.

Detectors shall be provided with a means to test CO gas entry into the CO sensing cell.

2.25.1 Carbon Monoxide Detector Testing

Carbon monoxide detectors shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 720 and the manufacturer's recommended calibrated test method.

2.26 WATERFLOW SWITCHES

- a. Provide vane-type waterflow switches for wet pipe sprinkler systems. The device shall contain double pole, double throw contacts. Equip the detector with a pneumatic time delay, field adjustable from 0 to 90 seconds. The time delay shall be set initially to 30seconds. Waterflow switches shall be a UL Listed extinguishing system attachments rated for the particular pressure and location that it is installed. Flow switches shall be equipped with screw terminals for each conductor.

The Prime Contractor is responsible for coordination between their sub-tier contractors. Flow switches are provided by the sprinkler contractor but shall be included in the submittal package required by this section.

2.27 VALVE MONITOR SWITCHES (TAMPER SWITCHES)

Provide a tamper switch for each fire protection system control valve. Tamper switches shall be a UL Listed extinguishing system attachments for the location and type of valve supervised. The device shall contain double pole, double throw contacts. Operation of the switch shall cause a supervisory signal to be transmitted to the FACU upon not more than two complete turns of the valve wheel or a closure of 10 percent, whichever is less. Tamper switches shall be equipped with screw terminals for each conductor.

The Prime Contractor is responsible for coordination between their sub-tier contractors. Tamper switches are provided by the sprinkler contractor but shall be included in the submittal package required by this section.

2.28 ENVIRONMENTAL ENCLOSURES OR GUARDS

Environmental enclosures shall be provided to permit Fire Alarm or Mass Notification components to be used in areas that exceed the environmental limits of the listing. The enclosure shall be listed for the device or appliance as either a manufactured part number or as a listed compatible accessory for the UL category the component is currently listed. Guards required to deter mechanical damage shall be either a listed manufactured

part or a listed accessory for the category of the initiating device or notification appliance.

2.29 SYSTEM OPERATION

The combination emergency communications system shall be a complete, supervised, noncoded, analog/addressable fire alarm and mass notification system conforming to NFPA 72, UL 864, and UL 2017. The system shall be activated into the alarm mode by actuation of any fire alarm initiating device. The system shall remain in the alarm mode until the initiating device is reset and the fire alarm control panel is reset and restored to normal. The system may be placed in the alert mode by local microphones or remotely from authorized locations/users.

2.29.1 Fire Alarm and Supervisory Initiating Devices

Connect alarm initiating devices to Class A or Class B signal line circuit (SLC) pathways, and install in accordance with NFPA 72.

The contract required 25 percent spare capacity per SLC limits the design to 38 addresses per Class B SLC.

In accordance with NFPA 72 the number of addresses between isolation modules on a Class A SLC pathway is limited to 50 addresses OR the maximum number of addresses per the manufacturer (most manufacturers limit the number of addresses between isolation modules to 20 addresses.)

- a. Given the limitations above, utilizing Class A or Class B signal line circuit pathways is at the discretion of the Fire Alarm Contractor.
- b. The system shall operate in the alarm mode upon activation of any fire alarm initiating device. The system shall remain in alarm mode until initiating device(s) are reset and the fire alarm control panel is manually reset and restored to normal. Audible and visual appliances and systems shall comply with NFPA 72. Fire alarm system/mass notification system components requiring power, except for the control panel power supply, shall operate on 24 VDC.

2.29.2 Functions and Operating Features

The system shall provide the following functions and operating features:

- a. The Combination Emergency Communications System Panels (CECP) whether separate or combined Fire Alarm Control Units (FACU) and Autonomous Control Units (ACU), shall provide power, annunciation, supervision, and control for the system. Systems shall be microcomputer (microprocessor or microcontroller) based addressable systems with a minimum word size of eight bits with sufficient memory to perform as specified.
- b. Provide Class B initiating device circuit pathways for conductor lengths of 10 feet or less.
- c. Provide Class A signaling line circuit pathways
- d. Provide Class B control circuits. Class D control circuits are permissible when the the intended operation has fail-safe operation. Fail-safe operation is when the intended operation is performed in the event of a pathway failure.

- e. Provide Class A notification appliance circuit pathways. Visual alarm notification appliances shall have the flash rates synchronized.
- f. Provide alarm verification capability for smoke detectors. Alarm verification shall initially be set for 20 seconds.
- g. Provide program capability via switches in a locked portion of the FACU to bypass the automatic notification appliance circuits, **fire reporting system, and air handler shutdown** features. Operation of this programming shall indicate this action on the FACU display and system printer output.
- h. Alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals shall be automatically transmitted to the a UL Listed central station.
- i. Alarm functions shall override trouble or supervisory functions. Supervisory functions shall override trouble functions.
- j. Programmed information shall be stored in non-volatile memory.
- k. The system shall be capable of operating, supervising, and/or monitoring both addressable and non-addressable alarm and supervisory devices.
- l. There shall be no limit, other than maximum system capacity, as to the number of addressable devices, that may be in alarm simultaneously.
- m. Where the fire alarm system is responsible for initiating an action in another emergency control device or system, such as an HVAC system, the addressable fire alarm relay shall be within **3 feet** of the emergency control device.
- o. An alarm signal shall automatically initiate the following functions:
 - (1) Transmission of an alarm signal to a UL Listed central station.
 - (2) Visual indication of the device operated on the FACU, and on the remote annunciator. Indication on the annunciator shall be by floor & room number, device address, and device type.
 - (3) Continuous actuation of all alarm notification appliances.
 - (4) Recording of the event electronically in the history log of the FACU.
- p. A supervisory signal shall automatically initiate the following functions:
 - (1) Visual indication of the device operated on the FACU, and on the remote annunciator. Indication on the annunciator shall be by floor & room number, device address, and device type.
 - (2) Sound the audible alarm at the respective panels.
 - (3) Transmission of a supervisory signal to a UL Listed central station.
 - (4) Recording of the event electronically in the history log of the FACU.

- (5) Supervisory signals shall be non-latching.
- (4) Operation of a duct smoke detectors shall shut down the appropriate air handler in accordance with NFPA 90A in addition to other requirements of this paragraph.
- q. A trouble condition shall automatically initiate the following functions:
 - (1) Visual indication of the system trouble on the FACU, and on the remote annunciator and sound the audible alarm at the respective panels.
 - (2) Transmission of a trouble signal to a UL Listed central station.
 - (3) Recording of the event electronically in the history log of the fire control system unit.
 - (4) Trouble conditions shall be non-latching.
- r. Activation of a carbon monoxide detector shall automatically initiate the following functions:
 - (1) Transmission of a carbon monoxide alarm signal to a UL Listed central station.
 - (2) Visual indication of the device operated on the FACU, and on the remote annunciator. Indication on the annunciator shall be by floor & room number, device address, and device type.
 - (3) Continuous actuation of all strobes and the audible CO message throughout the building.
 - (4) Recording of the event electronically in the history log of the FACU.

2.30 SYSTEM MONITORING

2.30.1 Valves

Each valve affecting the proper operation of a fire protection system, including automatic sprinkler control valves, standpipe control valves, sprinkler service entrance valve, valves at fire pumps, isolating valves for pressure type waterflow or supervision switches, and valves at backflow preventers, whether supplied under this contract or existing, shall be electrically monitored to ensure its proper position. Each tamper switch shall be provided with a separate address.

2.30.2 Independent Fire Detection System

Each existing independent smoke detection subsystem, and kitchen fire extinguishing system shall be monitored both for the presence of an alarm condition and for a trouble condition. Each monitored condition shall be provided with a separate address.

2.31 ELECTRIC POWER

Primary power to combination emergency communications system panels and

equipment

Primary power shall be 120 VAC service for the CECPs and equipment. Primary power shall be supplied from the AC service to the building. Provide dedicated branch circuit(s) supplying all CECPs & equipment including but not limited to FACU's, ACU's, supplementary power supplies, SNAC panels, LED message control/interface panels, LED Text signs, etc. Branch circuits shall supply no loads other than those associated with the combination emergency communications system. The circuit disconnecting means and all branch-circuit overcurrent protective devices shall be located within a single panel located in the building's main electrical room. The location of the branch-circuit overcurrent protective device shall be permanently identified at the combination emergency communications system panels/enclosures. The circuit disconnecting means shall have red identification, shall be accessible only to qualified personnel, and shall be identified as "FIRE ALARM CIRCUIT." The red identification shall not damage the overcurrent protective devices or obscure the manufacturer's markings. This branch circuit shall not be supplied through ground-fault circuit interrupters or arc-fault circuit-interrupters.

Combination emergency communications system panels and equipment(s) includes, but is not limited to; fire alarm control units (FACU), autonomous control units (ACU), local operating consoles (LOC), supplementary fire alarm control units, supplementary notification appliance circuit panels, auxiliary power supply panels, fire alarm system printers, mass notification system transceivers, fire alarm reporting system transmitters, LED text displays, LED text display control panels, circuits powering the elevator power shunt trip feature, circuits powering computer room power shunt trip feature and circuits powering 120VAC door holders.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF COMBINATION EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM EQUIPMENT DEVICES AND APPLIANCES

- a. Locate the panels associated with the COMBINATION EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM (FACU, ACU, LOC, Amplifiers, SNAC & Auxiliary power supply panels, MNS transmitter and Fire alarm transmitter) where indicated on the contract drawings. Recessed panels with the top of the cabinet 6 feet above the finished floor or center the panels at 5 feet, whichever is lower. Conductor terminations shall be labeled and a drawing containing conductors, their labels, their circuits, and their interconnection shall be permanently mounted inside the panels.
- b. Manual Stations: Locate manual stations where shown on the contract drawings. Mount stations so the operating handles are 4 feet above the finished floor. Mount stations so they are located no more than 5 feet from the exit door they serve, measured horizontally.
- c. Notification Appliances: Locate notification appliances as required by NFPA 72. Mount assemblies on walls 90 inches above the finished floor or 6 inches below the ceiling whichever is lower. Ceiling mounted speakers shall conform to NFPA 72. Provide additional speakers as necessary to meet the intelligibility requirements indicated on the contract drawings.
- d. Smoke and Heat detectors: Locate detectors as required by NFPA 72 and their listings on a 4 inch mounting box. Detectors located on the

ceiling shall be installed not less than 4 inches from a side wall to the near edge. Those located on the wall shall have the top of the detector at least 4 inches below the ceiling, but not more than 12 inches below the ceiling. In raised floor spaces, the smoke detectors shall be installed to protect 225 square feet per detector. Install smoke detectors no closer than 5 feet from air handling supply outlets.

- e. Remote Annunciator: Locate the remote annunciator as shown on the contract drawings. Surface mount the panel, with the top of the panel 6 feet above the finished floor or center the panel at 5 feet, whichever is lower.
- f. Waterflow Switches and Tamper Switches: Locate waterflow switches and tamper switches at each supervised sprinkler control valve.
- g. Where any emergency generator provides a standby power supply for life safety system circuits, the generator shall be monitored for the following: Generator running, Generator fault and Generator switch in non-automatic position.
- h. The modification of any fire alarm system and the procedures shall comply with the requirements of NFPA 241.

3.2 Generator Monitoring

Where any emergency generator provides a standby power supply for life safety system circuits, provide a connection from one of the circuits for the fire alarm system. When a generator buss circuit is available for the fire alarm, mass notification, and life safety equipment, then the fire alarm control unit shall monitor the generator with the following supervisory signals:

- (a) Generator Selector Switch in a position other than automatic start
- (b) Generator Running
- (c) Low Fuel
- (d) Failure to Start
- (e) Abnormal conditions such as low oil, high temperature, and low coolant.
- (f) Low Battery
- (g) Emergency transfer in proper mode while generator running

3.3 SYSTEM FIELD WIRING

3.3.1 Wiring within Cabinets, Enclosures, and Boxes

Provide wiring installed in a neat and workmanlike manner and installed parallel with or at right angles to the sides and back of any box, enclosure, or cabinet. Conductors that are terminated, spliced, or otherwise interrupted in any enclosure, cabinet, mounting, or junction box shall be connected to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal in accordance with the wiring diagrams of the system. Make connections with approved pressure type terminal blocks, that are securely mounted. The use of wire nuts or similar devices shall be prohibited. Wiring shall conform to NFPA 70.

3.3.2 Terminal Cabinets

Provide a terminal cabinet at the base of any circuit riser, on each floor at each riser, and where indicated on the drawings. Terminal size shall be appropriate for the size of the wiring to be connected. Conductor

terminations shall be labeled and a drawing containing conductors, their labels, their circuits, and their interconnection shall be permanently mounted in the terminal cabinet. Minimum size is 8 inches by 8 inches. Terminal strips shall be securely mounted inside. Utilizing tape or glue is not an acceptable means of mounting terminal strips.

3.3.3 Conduit

Minimum conduit size shall be 3/4 inch in diameter except for 1/2 inch drops to individual devices. Conceal conduit in finished areas of new construction and wherever practicable in existing construction. Run conduit or tubing concealed unless specifically shown otherwise on the drawings. Provide an insulated green grounding conductor for all circuit(s) installed in conduit.

- a. Galvanized rigid steel (GRS) conduit shall be utilized where exposed to weather, where subject to physical damage, and where exposed on exterior of buildings. Intermediate Metal Conduit (IMC). IMC may be used in lieu of GRS as allowed by NFPA 70.
- b. Electrical Metallic Tubing (EMT) is permitted above suspended ceilings or exposed where not subject to physical damage. EMT shall have a factory applied red exterior coating. Do not use EMT underground, encased in concrete, mortar or grout, in hazardous locations, where exposed to physical damage, outdoors or in fire pump rooms. Use die-cast compression connectors.
- c. Flexible metal conduit is permitted for initiating device circuits 6 ft length in length or less. Flexible metal conduit is prohibited for notification appliance circuits and signaling line circuits. Use liquidtight flexible metal conduit in damp and wet locations.
- d. Schedule 40 (minimum) Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) is permitted where conduit is routed underground below floor slabs. Convert nonmetallic conduit, other than PVC Schedule 40 or 80, to plastic-coated rigid, or IMC, steel conduit before turning up through floor slab.

3.3.4 Wire

Voltages shall not be mixed in any junction box, housing, or device, except those containing power supplies and control relays. Shielded wiring shall be utilized where recommended by the manufacturer. For shielded wiring, the shield shall be grounded at only one point, that shall be in or adjacent to the FACU. Pigtail or T-tap connections to signal line circuits, initiating device circuits, supervisory alarm circuits, and notification appliance circuits are prohibited. Pull all conductors splice free. Color coding is required for circuits and shall be maintained throughout the circuit. Conductors used for the same functions shall be similarly color coded. Wiring shall conform to NFPA 70.

3.3.5 Conductor Terminations

Label all conductor terminations in panels and equipment associated with the combination emergency communications system (FACU, ACU, LOC, Amplifiers, SNAC & Auxiliary power supply panels, MNS transmitter and Fire alarm transmitter). Each conductor or cable shall have a shrink-wrap label to provide a unique and specific designation. Each combination emergency communications system cabinet and panel shall contain a laminated drawing that indicates each conductor, its label, circuit, and terminal. The

laminated drawing shall be neat, using 12 point lettering minimum size, and mounted within each cabinet, panel, or unit so that it does not interfere with the wiring or terminals. Maintain existing color code scheme where connecting to existing equipment.

3.4 CONNECTION OF NEW SYSTEM

The following new system connections shall be made during the last phase of construction, at the beginning of the preliminary tests. New system connections shall include:

- a. Connection of new control modules to existing magnetically held door (hold-open) devices.
- b. Connection of new elevator recall control modules to existing elevator controllers.
- c. Connection of new system transmitter to existing installation-wide fire reporting system.

Once these connections are made, system shall be left energized and new audio/visual appliances deactivated. Report immediately to the Contracting Officer any coordination and field problems resulting from the connection of the above components.

3.5 FIRESTOPPING

Provide firestopping for conduit penetrations through fire rated floor slabs, walls, partitions, and shaft enclosures in accordance with Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

3.6 PAINTING

Paint exposed electrical, fire alarm conduit, and surface metal raceway to match adjacent finishes in exposed areas. In lieu of painting conduit, the contractor may utilize red conduit with a factory applied finish. Paint junction boxes conduit and surface metal raceways red in unfinished areas. Painting shall comply with Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

In unfinished areas, paint all fire alarm conduit, junction boxes and covers red. In lieu of painting conduit, the contractor may utilize red conduit with a factory applied finish.

In finished areas, paint exposed fire alarm conduit, surface metal raceways, junction boxes, and electrical boxes to match adjacent finishes. The inside cover of the junction box must be identified as "Fire Alarm" and the conduit must have painted red bands 3/4 inch wide at 10 foot centers and at each side of a floor, wall, or ceiling penetration.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.7.1 Testing Procedures

Submit detailed test procedures prepared and signed by a registered professional engineer (P.E.) who has passed the fire protection engineering written examination administered by the National Council of Examiners for Engineering and Surveys (NCEES). Registered Professional Engineer or a NICET Level 4 Fire Alarm Technician, and signed by representative of the installing company, for the fire detection and alarm system 60 days prior

to performing system tests. Detailed test procedures shall list all components of the installed system such as initiating devices and circuits, notification appliances and circuits, signaling line devices and circuits, control devices/equipment, batteries, transmitting and receiving equipment, power sources/supply, annunciators, special hazard equipment, emergency communication equipment, interface equipment, and transient (surge) suppressors. Test procedures shall include sequence of testing, time estimate for each test, and sample test data forms. The test data forms shall be in a check-off format (pass/fail with space to add applicable test data) and shall be used for the preliminary testing and the acceptance testing. The test data forms shall record the test results and shall:

- a. Identify the NFPA Class of pathways for all Initiating Device Circuits (IDC), Notification Appliance Circuits (NAC), Voice Notification System, and Signaling Line Circuits (SLC).
- b. Identify each test required by **NFPA 72** Test Methods and required test herein to be performed on each component, and describe how this test shall be performed.
- c. Identify each component and circuit as to type, location within the facility, and unique identity within the installed system. Provide necessary floor plan sheets showing each component location, test location, and alphanumeric identity.
- d. Identify all test equipment and personnel required to perform each test (including equipment necessary for testing smoke detectors using real smoke).
- e. Provide space to identify the date and time of each test.
- f. Provide space to identify the names and signatures of the individuals conducting and witnessing each test.

3.7.2 Tests Stages

- a. Preliminary Testing: Conduct preliminary tests to ensure devices and circuits are functioning properly. Tests shall meet the requirements of paragraph entitled "Minimum System Tests." After preliminary testing is complete, provide a letter certifying the installation is complete and fully operable. The letter shall state each initiating and indicating device was tested in place and functioned properly. The letter shall also state that panel functions were tested and operated properly. The letter shall include the names and titles of the witnesses to the preliminary tests. The Contractor and an authorized representative from each supplier of equipment shall be in attendance at the preliminary testing to make necessary adjustments.
- b. Request for Formal Inspection and Tests: Requests for Formal Inspection and Tests shall not be submitted until after the connections to the installation-wide fire reporting system and the installation-wide mass notification system have been completed and fully functional. When preliminary tests have been completed and corrections made, submit a signed, dated certificate with a request for formal inspection and tests to the Naval Facilities Engineering Command and Fire Protection Engineer.
- c. Final Testing: Notify the Contracting Officer in writing when the system is ready for final acceptance testing. Submit request for test

at least 15 calendar days prior to the test date. The tests shall be performed in accordance with the approved test procedures in the presence of the Contracting Officer. Furnish instruments and personnel required for the tests. A final acceptance test will not be scheduled until the operation and maintenance (O&M) manuals are furnished to the Contracting Officer and the following are provided at the project site:

- (1) The systems manufacturer's technical representative
- (2) As-built (red-lined) drawings of the system as actually installed
- (3) Megger test results
- (4) Loop resistance test results
- (5) Complete program printout including input/output addresses

The final tests shall be witnessed by the NAVFAC MIDLANT Fire Protection Engineer. At this time, any and all required tests shall be repeated at their discretion. Following acceptance of the system, [as-built drawings](#) and O&M manuals shall be delivered to the Contracting Officer for review and acceptance.

3.7.3 Minimum System Tests

Test the system in accordance with the procedures outlined in [NFPA 72](#), [ISO 7240-16](#), [IEC 60268-16](#). The required tests are as follows:

Demonstrate communications with the supervising station as specified by the Contracting Officer. As a minimum, verify all points are correctly received at the supervising station receiver and automated software system.

Demonstrate communications with the installation-wide mass notification system as specified by the Contracting Officer.

a. Megger Tests: After wiring has been installed, and prior to making any connections to panels or devices, wiring shall be megger tested for insulation resistance, grounds, and/or shorts. Conductors with 300 volt rated insulation shall be tested at a minimum of 250 VDC. Conductors with 600 volt rated insulation shall be tested at a minimum of 500 VDC. The tests shall be witnessed by the Contracting Officer and test results recorded for use at the final acceptance test.

b. Loop Resistance Tests: Measure and record the resistance of each circuit with each pair of conductors in the circuit short-circuited at the farthest point from the circuit origin. The tests shall be witnessed by the Contracting Officer and test results recorded for use at the final acceptance test.

c. Verify the absence of unwanted voltages between circuit conductors and ground. The tests shall be accomplished at the preliminary test with results available at the final system test.

d. Verify that the control unit is in the normal condition as detailed in the manufacturer's O&M manual.

e. Test each initiating and indicating device and circuit for proper operation and response at the control unit. Smoke detectors shall be

tested in accordance with manufacturer's recommended calibrated test method. Use of magnets is prohibited. Testing of duct smoke detectors shall comply with the requirements of NFPA 72.

f. Test the system for specified functions in accordance with the contract drawings and specifications and the manufacturer's O&M manual.

g. Test both primary power and secondary power. Verify, by test, the secondary power system is capable of operating the system for the time period and in the manner specified.

h. Determine that the system is operable under trouble conditions as specified.

i. Visually inspect wiring.

j. Test the battery charger and batteries.

k. Verify that software control and data files have been entered or programmed into the FACU. Hard copy records of the software shall be provided to the Contracting Officer.

l. Verify that red-line drawings are accurate.

m. Measure the current in circuits to ensure there is the calculated spare capacity for the circuits.

n. Measure voltage readings for circuits to ensure that voltage drop is not excessive.

o. Disconnect the verification feature for smoke detectors during tests to minimize the amount of smoke needed to activate the detector. Testing of smoke detectors shall be conducted using real smoke. The use of canned smoke is prohibited.

p. Measure the voltage drop at the most remote appliance (based on wire length) on each notification appliance circuit.

q. Audibility Intelligibility testing of the Voice Evacuation Notification System shall be accomplished in accordance with NFPA 72 for Voice Evacuation Systems, IEC 60268-16, and ASA S3.2.

r. Opening the circuit at not less than 25% of alarm initiating devices and notification appliances to test the wiring supervisory feature.

s. Demonstrate modem communications with remote sites as specified by the Contracting Officer. Dial in capability shall also, be demonstrated, using specified security.

t. Demonstrate fiber optic communications with remote sites as specified by the Contracting Officer. Dial in capability shall also, be demonstrated, using specified security.

3.8 INSTRUCTION OF GOVERNMENT EMPLOYEES

Provide 2 days (16 hours) of onsite instruction after final acceptance of the system. The instruction shall be given during regular working hours on such dates and times as are selected by the Contracting Officer. The

instruction may be divided into two or more periods at the discretion of the Contracting Officer. The training shall allow for rescheduling for unforeseen maintenance and/or fire department responses.

3.8.1 Instructor

Include in the project the services of an instructor, who has received specific training from the manufacturer for the training of other persons regarding the inspection, testing, and maintenance of the system provided. The instructor shall train the Government employees designated by the Contracting Officer, in the care, adjustment, maintenance, and operation of the fire alarm and fire detection system. Each instructor shall be thoroughly familiar with all parts of this installation. The instructor shall be trained in operating theory as well as in practical O&M work.

3.8.2 Required Instruction Time

Provide 2 days (16 hours) of onsite instruction after final acceptance of the system. The instruction shall be given during regular working hours on such dates and times as are selected by the Contracting Officer. The instruction may be divided into two or more periods at the discretion of the Contracting Officer. The training shall allow for rescheduling for unforeseen maintenance and/or fire department responses.

Provide 5 days of technical training for three Government employees at the manufacturing facility. Training shall allow for classroom instruction as well as individual hands on programming, troubleshooting and diagnostics exercises. Room and board costs shall be included for three Government personnel. Factory training shall occur within 6 months of system acceptance.

3.8.3 Technical Data and Computer Software

Provide, in manual format, lesson plans, operating instructions, maintenance procedures, and training data for the training courses. The operations training shall familiarize designated government personnel with proper operation of the installed system. The maintenance training course shall provide the designated government personnel adequate knowledge required to diagnose, repair, maintain, and expand functions inherent to the system.

Any proprietary equipment and proprietary software needed by qualified technicians to implement future changes to the fire alarm system shall be provided as part of this contract. Maintenance software required and provided as part of this contract shall not require any type of annual license agreement or annual cost to continue use of the software. The software that is provided will continue to operate during the entire lifetime of the installed equipment without any additional cost to the Government.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 31 05 19

GEOTEXTILE
08/08

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D4354	(2012) Sampling of Geosynthetics for Testing
ASTM D4355/D4355M	(2014) Deterioration of Geotextiles from Exposure to Light, Moisture and Heat in a Xenon-Arc Type Apparatus
ASTM D4491/D4491M	(2017) Standard Test Methods for Water Permeability of Geotextiles by Permittivity
ASTM D4533/D4533M	(2015) Standard Test Method for Trapezoid Tearing Strength of Geotextiles
ASTM D4595	(2017) Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Geotextiles by the Wide-Width Strip Method
ASTM D4632/D4632M	(2015a) Grab Breaking Load and Elongation of Geotextiles
ASTM D4751	(2016) Standard Test Method for Determining Apparent Opening Size of a Geotextile
ASTM D4759	(2011; R 2018) Standard Practice for Determining the Specification Conformance of Geosynthetics
ASTM D4873/D4873M	(2017) Standard Guide for Identification, Storage, and Handling of Geosynthetic Rolls and Samples
ASTM D6241	(2014) Standard Test Method for the Static Puncture Strength of Geotextiles and Geotextile-Related Products Using a 50-mm Probe

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability

eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING.
Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL
PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Thread

Manufacturing Quality Control Sampling and Testing

SD-07 Certificates

Geotextile

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver, store, and handle geotextile in accordance with ASTM D4873/D4873M.

1.3.1 Delivery

Notify the Contracting Officer a minimum of 24 hours prior to delivery and unloading of geotextile rolls packaged in an opaque, waterproof, protective plastic wrapping. The plastic wrapping shall not be removed until deployment. If quality assurance samples are collected, immediately rewrap rolls with the plastic wrapping. Geotextile or plastic wrapping damaged during storage or handling shall be repaired or replaced, as directed. Label each roll with the manufacturer's name, geotextile type, roll number, roll dimensions (length, width, gross weight), and date manufactured.

1.3.2 Storage

Protect rolls of geotextile from construction equipment, chemicals, sparks and flames, temperatures in excess of 160 degrees F, or any other environmental condition that may damage the physical properties of the geotextile. To protect geotextile from becoming saturated, either elevate rolls off the ground or place them on a sacrificial sheet of plastic in an area where water will not accumulate.

1.3.3 Handling

Handle and unload geotextile rolls with load carrying straps, a fork lift with a stinger bar, or an axial bar assembly. Rolls shall not be dragged along the ground, lifted by one end, or dropped to the ground.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 RAW MATERIALS

A minimum of 7 days prior to scheduled use, submit manufacturer's certificate of compliance stating that the geotextile meets the requirements of this section. For needle punched geotextiles, the manufacturer shall also certify that the geotextile has been continuously inspected using permanent on-line full-width metal detectors and does not contain any needles which could damage other geosynthetic layers. The certificate of compliance shall be attested to by a person having legal authority to bind the geotextile manufacturer.

2.1.1.1 Geotextile

Provide geotextile that is a woven pervious sheet of polymeric material consisting of long-chain synthetic polymers composed of at least 95 percent by weight polyolefins, polyesters, or polyamides. The use of woven slit film geotextiles (i.e. geotextiles made from yarns of a flat, tape-like character) will not be allowed. Add stabilizers and/or inhibitors to the base polymer, as needed, to make the filaments resistant to deterioration by ultraviolet light, oxidation, and heat exposure. Regrind material, which consists of edge trimmings and other scraps that have never reached the consumer, may be used to produce the geotextile. Post-consumer recycled material may also be used. Geotextile shall be formed into a network such that the filaments or yarns retain dimensional stability relative to each other, including the edges. Geotextiles shall meet the requirements specified in Table 1. Where applicable, Table 1 property values represent minimum average roll values (MARV) in the weakest principal direction. Values for AOS represent maximum average roll values.

TABLE 1 MINIMUM PHYSICAL REQUIREMENTS FOR SUBGRADE STABILIZATION GEOTEXTILE			
PROPERTY	UNITS	ACCEPTABLE VALUES	TEST METHOD
WIDE-WIDTH TENSILE STRENGTH,	lbs/ft	2,500	ASTM D4595
WIDE-WIDTH TENSILE STRENGTH, 5	lbs/ft	1,250	ASTM D4595
GRAB STRENGTH	lbs	260	ASTM D4632/D4632M
SEAM STRENGTH	lbs	1,250	ASTM D4632/D4632M
PUNCTURE	lbs	1,000	ASTM D6241
TRAPAZIODAL TEAR	lbs	110	ASTM D4533/D4533M
FLOW RATE	gal/min/ft ²	40	ASTM D4491/D4491M
PERMITTIVITY	sec ⁻¹	0.05	ASTM D4491/D4491M
APPARENT OPENING SIZE	US Sieve	40	ASTM D4751
ULTRAVIOLET DEGRADATION	Percent	50 at 500 hours	ASTM D4355/D4355M

2.1.2 Thread

A minimum of 7 days prior to scheduled use, submit proposed thread type for sewn seams along with data sheets showing the physical properties of the thread. Construct sewn seams with high-strength polyester, nylon, or other approved thread type. Thread shall have ultraviolet light stability equivalent to the geotextile and the color shall contrast with the geotextile.

2.2 MANUFACTURING QUALITY CONTROL SAMPLING AND TESTING

The Manufacturer is responsible for establishing and maintaining a quality control program to assure compliance with the requirements of the specification. A minimum of 7 days prior to scheduled use, submit manufacturer's quality control manual. Documentation describing the quality control program shall be made available upon request. Perform manufacturing quality control sampling and testing in accordance with the manufacturer's approved quality control manual. As a minimum, geotextiles shall be randomly sampled for testing in accordance with [ASTM D4354](#), Procedure A. Acceptance of geotextile shall be in accordance with [ASTM D4759](#). Tests not meeting the specified requirements will result in the rejection of applicable rolls.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 QUALITY ASSURANCE SAMPLES AND TESTS

3.1.1 Quality Assurance Samples

Provide assistance to the Contracting Officer in the collection of quality assurance samples for quality assurance testing; assign 7 days in the schedule to allow for testing. Collect samples upon delivery to the site at the request of the Contracting Officer. Identify samples with a waterproof marker by manufacturer's name, product identification, lot number, roll number, and machine direction. The date and a unique sample number shall also be noted on the sample. Discard the outer layer of the geotextile roll prior to sampling a roll. Samples shall then be collected by cutting the full-width of the geotextile sheet a minimum of 3 feet long in the machine direction. Rolls which are sampled shall be immediately resealed in their protective covering.

3.1.2 Quality Assurance Tests

Provide quality assurance samples to an Independent Laboratory. Samples will be tested to verify that geotextile meets the requirements specified in Table 1. Test method [ASTM D4355/D4355M](#) shall not be performed on the collected samples. Geotextile product acceptance shall be based on [ASTM D4759](#). Tests not meeting the specified requirements will result in the rejection of applicable rolls.

3.2 INSTALLATION

3.2.1 Subgrade Preparation

The surface underlying the geotextile shall be smooth and free of ruts or protrusions which could damage the geotextile. Subgrade materials and compaction requirements shall be in accordance with Section [31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL](#).

3.2.2 Placement

Notify the Contracting Officer a minimum of 24 hours prior to installation of geotextile. Geotextile rolls which are damaged or contain imperfections shall be repaired or replaced as directed. The geotextile shall be laid flat and smooth so that it is in direct contact with the subgrade. The geotextile shall also be free of tensile stresses, folds, and wrinkles. On slopes steeper than 10 horizontal on 1 vertical, lay the geotextile with the machine direction of the fabric parallel to the slope direction.

3.3 SEAMS

3.3.1 Overlap Seams

Continuously overlap geotextile panels a minimum of 12 inches at all longitudinal and transverse joints. Where seams must be oriented across the slope, lap the upper panel over the lower panel. If approved, sewn seams may be used instead of overlapped seams.

3.3.2 Sewn Seams

Factory and field seams shall be continuously sewn on all slopes steeper than 1 vertical on 3 horizontal and at the locations shown on the drawings.

The stitch type used shall be a 401 locking chain stitch or as recommended by the manufacturer. For field and factory seams which are sewn, provide at least a 2-meter sample of sewn seam before the geotextile is installed. For seams that are field sewn, the seams shall be sewn using the same equipment and procedures as will be used for the production seams. If seams are sewn in both the machine and cross machine direction, provide samples of seams from both directions. Provide Quality Assurance seam samples to the Government at the request of the Contracting Officer. Seam strength shall meet the minimum requirements specified in Table 1. The thread at the end of each seam run shall be tied off to prevent unraveling. Skipped stitches or discontinuities shall be sewn with an extra line of stitching with a minimum of 18 inches of overlap.

3.4 PROTECTION

Protect the geotextile during installation from clogging, tears, and other damage. Damaged geotextile shall be repaired or replaced as directed. Use adequate ballast (e.g. sand bags) to prevent uplift by wind. The geotextile shall not be left uncovered for more than 7 days after installation.

3.5 REPAIRS

Repair torn or damaged geotextile. Clogged areas of geotextile shall be removed. Perform repairs by placing a patch of the same type of geotextile over the damaged area. The patch shall extend a minimum of 12 inches beyond the edge of the damaged area. Patches shall be continuously fastened using approved methods. The machine direction of the patch shall be aligned with the machine direction of the geotextile being repaired. Remove and replace geotextile rolls which cannot be repaired. Repairs shall be performed at no additional cost to the Government.

3.6 PENETRATIONS

Construct engineered penetrations of the geotextile by methods recommended by the geotextile manufacturer.

3.7 COVERING

Do not cover geotextile prior to inspection and approval by the Contracting Officer. Place cover soil in a manner that prevents soil from entering the geotextile overlap zone, prevents tensile stress from being mobilized in the geotextile, and prevents wrinkles from folding over onto themselves. On side slopes, soil backfill shall be placed from the bottom of the slope upward. Cover soil shall not be dropped onto the geotextile from a height greater than 3 feet. No equipment shall be operated directly on top of the geotextile without approval of the Contracting Officer. Use equipment with ground pressures less than 7 psi to place the first lift over the geotextile. A minimum of 12 inches of soil shall be maintained between full-scale construction equipment and the geotextile. Cover soil material type, compaction, and testing requirements are described in Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL. Equipment placing cover soil shall not stop abruptly, make sharp turns, spin their wheels, or travel at speeds exceeding 5 mph.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 31 11 00

CLEARING AND GRUBBING
11/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver materials to the site, and handle in a manner which will maintain the materials in their original manufactured or fabricated condition until ready for use.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

2.1.1 Tree Wound Paint

Use bituminous based paint from standard manufacture specially formulated for tree wounds.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

3.1.1 Protection

3.1.1.1 Roads and Walks

Keep roads and walks free of dirt and debris at all times.

3.1.1.2 Trees, Shrubs, and Existing Facilities

Protect trees and vegetation to be left standing from damage incident to clearing, grubbing, and construction operations by the erection of barriers or by such other means as the circumstances require.

3.1.1.3 Utility Lines

Protect existing utility lines that are indicated to remain from damage. Notify the Contracting Officer immediately of damage to or an encounter with an unknown existing utility line. The Contractor is responsible for the repair of damage to existing utility lines that are indicated or made known to the Contractor prior to start of clearing and grubbing operations. When utility lines which are to be removed are encountered within the area of operations, notify the Contracting Officer in ample time to minimize interruption of the service. Refer to Section 01 30 00 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS and Section 01 57 19 TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS for additional utility protection.

3.2 CLEARING

Clearing consists of the felling, trimming, and cutting of trees into sections and the satisfactory disposal of the trees and other vegetation designated for removal, including downed timber, snags, brush, and rubbish occurring within the areas to be cleared. Cut off flush with or below the

original ground surface trees, stumps, roots, brush, and other vegetation in areas to be cleared, except such trees and vegetation as may be indicated or directed to be left standing. Trim dead branches 1-1/2 inches or more in diameter on trees designated to be left standing within the cleared areas and trim all branches to the heights indicated or directed. Neatly cut close to the bole of the tree or main branches, limbs and branches to be trimmed. Paint, with an approved tree-wound paint, cuts more than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

3.2.1 Tree Removal

Where indicated or directed, trees and stumps that are designated as trees shall be removed from areas outside those areas designated for clearing and grubbing. This work includes the felling of such trees and the removal of their stumps and roots as specified in paragraph GRUBBING. Dispose of trees as specified in paragraph DISPOSAL OF MATERIALS.

3.2.2 Grubbing

Grubbing consists of the removal and disposal of stumps, roots larger than 3 inches in diameter, and matted roots from the designated grubbing areas. Remove material to be grubbed, together with logs and other organic or metallic debris not suitable for foundation purposes, to a depth of not less than 18 inches below the original surface level of the ground in areas indicated to be grubbed and in areas indicated as construction areas under this contract, such as areas for buildings, and areas to be paved. Fill depressions made by grubbing with suitable material and compact to make the surface conform with the original adjacent surface of the ground.

3.3 DISPOSAL OF MATERIALS

Dispose of excess materials in accordance with the approved solid waste management permit and include those materials in the solid waste management report.

All wood or wood like materials, except for salable timber, remaining from clearing, pruning or grubbing such as limbs, tree tops, roots, stumps, logs, rotten wood, and other similar materials shall become the property of the Contractor and disposed of as specified. All non-saleable timber and wood or wood like materials remaining from timber harvesting such as limbs, tree tops, roots, stumps, logs, rotten wood, and other similar materials shall become the property of the Contractor and disposed as specified.

3.3.1 Saleable Timber

All timber on the project site noted for clearing and grubbing shall become the property of the Contractor, and shall be removed from the project site.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 31 23 00.00 20

EXCAVATION AND FILL

02/11

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN WATER WORKS ASSOCIATION (AWWA)

AWWA C600 (2017) Installation of Ductile-Iron Mains and Their Appurtenances

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C136/C136M (2014) Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates

ASTM C33/C33M (2018) Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates

ASTM D1140 (2017) Standard Test Methods for Determining the Amount of Material Finer than 75-µm (No. 200) Sieve in Soils by Washing

ASTM D1556/D1556M (2015; E 2016) Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by Sand-Cone Method

ASTM D1883 (2016) Standard Test Method for California Bearing Ratio (CBR) of Laboratory-Compacted Soils

ASTM D2216 (2010) Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil and Rock by Mass

ASTM D2321 (2018) Standard Practice for Underground Installation of Thermoplastic Pipe for Sewers and Other Gravity-Flow Applications

ASTM D2487 (2017) Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System)

ASTM D4318 (2017; E 2018) Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils

ASTM D6938 (2017a) Standard Test Method for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow

Depth)

ASTM D698

(2012; E 2014; E 2015) Laboratory
Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using
Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/cu. ft.
(600 kN-m/cu. m.))

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1

(2014) Safety and Health Requirements
Manual

U.S. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA)

EPA SW-846.3-3

(1999, Third Edition, Update III-A) Test
Methods for Evaluating Solid Waste:
Physical/Chemical Methods

NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION (NCDOT)

NCDOT SSRS

(2018) Standard Specifications for Roads
and Structures

1.2 DEFINITIONS

1.2.1 Capillary Water Barrier

A layer of clean, poorly graded crushed rock, stone, or natural sand or gravel having a high porosity which is placed beneath a building slab with or without a vapor barrier to cut off the capillary flow of pore water to the area immediately below a slab.

1.2.2 Degree of Compaction

Degree of compaction is expressed as a percentage of the maximum density obtained by the test procedure presented in ASTM D698, for general soil types, abbreviated as percent laboratory maximum density.

1.2.3 Hard Materials

Weathered rock, dense consolidated deposits, or conglomerate materials which are not included in the definition of "rock" but which usually require the use of heavy excavation equipment, ripper teeth, or jack hammers for removal.

1.2.4 Geotechnically Unsuitable Subgrade

Existing subgrade material that exhibits insufficient strength or excessive movement after proper execution of work specified in Paragraphs PROTECTION, SURFACE PREPARATION, EXCAVATION and SUBGRADE PREPARATION. Unsuitable subgrade also contains soil mixed with degradable matter such as organic material, wood, trash and non-inert debris which may affect the performance or life expectancy of the supported facility. Unsuitable subgrade will be determined by the Government Geotechnical Engineer and confirmed by the Contracting Officer. Existing subgrade soil materials which do not comply with the requirements for satisfactory materials do not necessarily classify as Geotechnically Unsuitable Subgrade.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING.

Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL

PROCEDURES:

Submit 15 days prior to starting work.

SD-06 Test Reports

Borrow Site Testing; G

Settlement Plate Readings; G

Fill and backfill test

Select material test

Porous fill test for capillary water barrier

Density tests

Moisture Content Tests

Copies of all laboratory and field test reports within 24 hours of the completion of the test.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Perform in a manner to prevent contamination or segregation of materials.

1.5 CRITERIA FOR BIDDING

Base bids on the following criteria:

- a. Surface elevations are as indicated.
- b. Pipes or other artificial obstructions, except those indicated, will not be encountered.
- c. Ground water elevations indicated by the boring log were those existing at the time subsurface investigations were made and do not necessarily represent ground water elevation at the time of construction.
- d. Seasonal high ground water will be encountered between a depth of 2 to 6 feet below existing surface elevation.
- e. Material character is indicated by the boring logs.
- f. Hard materials and rock will not be encountered.
- g. Borrow material, suitable backfill, and bedding material is not available at the project site. All fill material, backfill, and bedding material shall be imported from local approved sources.
- h. Blasting will not be permitted. Remove material in an approved manner.

- i. Pavement sections shown on the drawings are not designed to support construction equipment. Provide and maintain structural matting and geosynthetic reinforced aggregate surfaces for haul roads, staging areas and working platforms over the course of construction.

1.6 REQUIREMENTS FOR OFF SITE SOIL

Soils brought in from off site for use as backfill shall be tested for petroleum hydrocarbons, BTEX, PCBs and HW characteristics (including toxicity, ignitability, corrosivity, and reactivity). Backfill shall not contain concentrations of these analytes above the appropriate State and/or EPA criteria, and shall pass the tests for HW characteristics. Determine petroleum hydrocarbon concentrations by using appropriate State protocols. Determine BTEX concentrations by using EPA SW-846.3-3 Method 5035/8260B. Perform complete TCLP in accordance with EPA SW-846.3-3 Method 1311. Perform HW characteristic tests for ignitability, corrosivity, and reactivity in accordance with accepted standard methods. Perform PCB testing in accordance with accepted standard methods for sampling and analysis of bulk solid samples. Provide borrow site testing for petroleum hydrocarbons and BTEX from a grab sample of material from the area most likely to be contaminated at the borrow site (as indicated by visual or olfactory evidence), with at least one test from each borrow site. For each borrow site, provide borrow site testing for HW characteristics from a composite sample of material, collected in accordance with standard soil sampling techniques. Do not bring material onsite until tests results have been received and approved by the Contracting Officer.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.7.1 Dewatering Work Plan

Seasonal perched water table conditions may result and could be encountered near (within 3 feet) the existing ground surface elevation at the locations of the planned improvements. Estimated SHWT within the building is between EL. 18 and 28, with an average of approximately EL. 23. Within the SWM Pond area, estimated SHWT is interpreted between EL. 13 and 18, with an average of approximately EL. 16. Perched conditions are expected and may be encountered as shallow as 3' below existing ground surface. Subsurface water levels may fluctuate due to precipitation, season, temperature, site grading, and other factors that may be different than the prevailing conditions at the time HDR completed its subsurface investigation.

Relatively shallow subsurface water inflow may be controlled by a system of collection ditches and sump pumps. In the event significant subsurface water is encountered, the contractor shall retain the services of a NC licensed professional engineer to design an appropriate dewatering system and confirm its appropriate installation.

1.7.2 Utilities

Movement of construction machinery and equipment over pipes and utilities during construction shall be at the Contractor's risk. Excavation made with power-driven equipment is not permitted within two feet of known Government-owned utility or subsurface construction. For work immediately adjacent to or for excavations exposing a utility or other buried obstruction, excavate by hand. Start hand excavation on each side of the indicated obstruction and continue until the obstruction is uncovered or until clearance for the new grade is assured. Support uncovered lines or other existing work affected by the contract excavation until approval for

backfill is granted by the Contracting Officer. Report damage to utility lines or subsurface construction immediately to the Contracting Officer.

1.7.3 Preconstruction Meeting

A preconstruction meeting shall be held at the job site at least 5 business days prior to the start of earthwork operations on the project. The preconstruction meeting shall be arranged by the Contractor. The purpose of this meeting is to review the requirements of this specification as they relate to the project design and construction. The following individuals will be in attendance at this meeting: Contractor's Project or QC Manager and Project Superintendent, earthwork subcontractor's Project Manager and Site Foreman, Contractor's Geotechnical Engineer or Testing Agency, Government's Geotechnical Engineer, Government's Civil Engineer, and NAVFAC Construction Manager and Engineering Technician. The minutes of this meeting shall be recorded by the Contractor and published via e-mail within 48 hours to all attendees. The minutes shall be re-published within 48 hours via e-mail pending any subsequent comments from the attendees.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

2.1.1 Satisfactory Materials

Any materials classified by [ASTM D2487](#) as GW, GP, GM, GP-GM, GW-GM, GC, GP-GC, GM-GC, SW, SP, SM, SW-SM, SC, SW-SC, SP-SM, SP-SC, free of debris, roots, wood, scrap material, vegetation, refuse, soft unsound particles, and frozen, deleterious, or objectionable materials. Unless specified, the maximum particle diameter shall be one-half the lift thickness at the intended location.

2.1.2 Unsatisfactory Materials

[Fill materials](#) which do not comply with the requirements for satisfactory materials. Unsatisfactory materials also include man-made fills, trash, refuse, or backfills from previous construction. Unsatisfactory material also includes material classified as satisfactory which contains root and other organic matter, frozen material, and stones larger than [3 inches](#). The Contracting Officer shall be notified of any contaminated materials.

2.1.3 Cohesionless and Cohesive Materials

Cohesionless materials include materials classified in [ASTM D2487](#) as GW, GP, SW, and SP. Cohesive materials include materials classified as GC, SC, ML, CL, MH, and CH. Materials classified as GM, GP-GM, GW-GM, SW-SM, SP-SM, and SM shall be identified as cohesionless only when the fines are nonplastic (plasticity index equals zero). Materials classified as GM and SM will be identified as cohesive only when the fines have a plasticity index greater than zero.

2.1.4 Common Fill

Approved, unclassified soil material with the characteristics required to compact to the soil density specified for the intended location.

2.1.5 Backfill and Fill Material

[ASTM D2487](#), classification GW, GP, GM, GC, SW, SP, SM, and [SC](#) with a

maximum **ASTM D4318** liquid limit of 30, maximum **ASTM D4318** plasticity index of 6, and a maximum of 25 percent by weight passing **ASTM D1140**, No. 200 sieve.

2.1.6 Select Material

Provide materials classified as GW, GP, SW, SP, or by **ASTM D2487** where indicated. The liquid limit of such material shall not exceed 30 percent when tested in accordance with **ASTM D4318**. The plasticity index shall not be greater than zero percent when tested in accordance with **ASTM D4318**, and not more than 10 percent by weight shall be finer than No. 200 sieve when tested in accordance with **ASTM D1140**. Select Materials shall comply with Section 1016 of the 2018 NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures for Class II, Type 1.

Bearing Ratio: At 0.1 inch penetration, the bearing ratio shall be 10 percent at 95 percent **ASTM D698** maximum density as determined in accordance with **ASTM D1883** for a laboratory soaking period of not less than 4 days. Maximum expansion shall be 1 percent.

2.1.7 Topsoil

Provide as specified in Section 32 92 23 SODDING.

2.2 POROUS FILL FOR CAPILLARY WATER BARRIER

ASTM C33/C33M coarse aggregate Size 57 and conforming to the general soil material requirements specified in paragraph entitled "Satisfactory Materials."

2.3 UTILITY BEDDING MATERIAL

Except as specified otherwise in the individual piping section, provide bedding for buried piping in accordance with **AWWA C600**, Type 4, except as specified herein. Backfill to top of pipe shall be compacted to 95 percent of **ASTM D698** maximum density. Plastic piping shall have bedding to spring line of pipe. Provide **ASTM D2321** materials as follows:

- a. Class I: **NCDOT SSRS Coarse Aggregate Size #57, 67, or ABC as indicated in the plans.**

2.4 BORROW

Obtain borrow materials required in excess of those furnished from excavations from sources outside of Government property.

2.5 BACKFILL FOR UNDERDRAINAGE SYSTEMS

Clean sand, crushed rock, or gravel meeting the following requirements:

- a. Any Type Drain Used With Filter Fabric: Clean gravel or crushed stone or gravel conforming to **ASTM C33/C33M** coarse aggregate grading size 57, 67, or 7.

2.6 FILTER FABRIC

Provide a pervious sheet of polyester, nylon, glass or polypropylene, ultraviolet resistant filaments woven, spun bonded, fused, or otherwise manufactured into a nonraveling fabric with uniform thickness and strength.

Fabric shall have the following manufacturer certified minimum average roll properties that conform with NCDOT SSRS Section 1056 For Geotextile Fabric, Type 2.

2.7 MATERIAL FOR RIP-RAP

Bedding material and rock conforming to NCDOT SSRS Section 1042, Class A for construction indicated.

2.8 BURIED WARNING AND IDENTIFICATION TAPE

Polyethylene plastic warning tape manufactured specifically for warning and identification of buried utility lines. Provide tape on rolls, 3 inch minimum width, color coded as specified below for the intended utility with warning and identification imprinted in bold black letters continuously over the entire tape length. Warning and identification to read, "CAUTION, BURIED (intended service) LINE BELOW" or similar wording. Color and printing shall be permanent, unaffected by moisture or soil.

Warning Tape Color Codes	
Red:	Electric
Yellow:	Gas, Oil; Dangerous Materials
Orange:	Telephone and Other Communications
Blue:	Potable Water Systems
Green:	Sewer Systems

2.8.1 Warning Tape for Metallic Piping

Acid and alkali-resistant polyethylene plastic tape conforming to the width, color, and printing requirements specified above. Minimum thickness of tape shall be 0.003 inch. Tape shall have a minimum strength of 1500 psi lengthwise, and 1250 psi crosswise, with a maximum 350 percent elongation.

2.8.2 Detectable Warning Tape for Non-Metallic Piping

Polyethylene plastic tape conforming to the width, color, and printing requirements specified above. Minimum thickness of the tape shall be 0.004 inch. Tape shall have a minimum strength of 1500 psi lengthwise and 1250 psi crosswise. Tape shall be manufactured with integral wires, foil backing, or other means of enabling detection by a metal detector when tape is buried up to 3 feet deep. Encase metallic element of the tape in a protective jacket or provide with other means of corrosion protection.

2.9 DETECTION WIRE FOR NON-METALLIC PIPING

Detection wire shall be insulated single strand, solid copper with a minimum of 12 AWG.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION

3.1.1 Shoring and Sheet piling

Provide shoring bracing and sheet piling where indicated. In addition to Section 25 A and B of EM 385-1-1 and other requirements set forth in this contract, include provisions in the shoring and sheet piling plan that will accomplish the following:

- a. Prevent undermining of pavements, foundations and slabs.
- b. Prevent slippage or movement in banks or slopes adjacent to the excavation.

3.1.2 Drainage and Dewatering

Provide for the collection and disposal of surface and subsurface water encountered during construction.

3.1.2.1 Drainage

So that construction operations progress successfully, completely drain construction site during periods of construction to keep soil materials sufficiently dry. The Contractor shall establish/construct storm drainage features (ponds/basins) at the earliest stages of site development, and throughout construction grade the construction area to provide positive surface water runoff away from the construction activity and/or provide temporary ditches, dikes, swales, and other drainage features and equipment as required to maintain dry soils, prevent erosion and undermining of foundations. When unsuitable working platforms for equipment operation and unsuitable soil support for subsequent construction features develop, remove unsuitable material and provide new soil material as specified herein. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to assess the soil and ground water conditions presented by the plans and specifications and to employ necessary measures to permit construction to proceed. Excavated slopes and backfill surfaces shall be protected to prevent erosion and sloughing. Excavation shall be performed so that the site, the area immediately surrounding the site, and the area affecting operations at the site shall be continually and effectively drained.

3.1.2.2 Dewatering

Groundwater flowing toward or into excavations shall be controlled to prevent sloughing of excavation slopes and walls, boils, uplift and heave in the excavation and to eliminate interference with orderly progress of construction. French drains, sumps, ditches or trenches will not be permitted within 3 feet of the foundation of any structure, except with specific written approval, and after specific contractual provisions for restoration of the foundation area have been made. Control measures shall be taken by the time the excavation reaches the water level in order to maintain the integrity of the in situ material. While the excavation is open, the water level shall be maintained continuously, at least 2 feet below the working level.

Operate dewatering system continuously until construction work below existing water levels is complete.

3.1.3 Underground Utilities

Location of the existing utilities indicated is approximate. The Contractor shall physically verify the location and elevation of the existing utilities indicated prior to starting construction. The Contractor shall contact the Public Works Department for assistance in locating existing utilities.

3.1.4 Machinery and Equipment

Movement of construction machinery and equipment over pipes during construction shall be at the Contractor's risk. Repair, or remove and provide new pipe for existing or newly installed pipe that has been displaced or damaged.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

3.2.1 Clearing and Grubbing

Unless indicated otherwise, remove trees, stumps, logs, shrubs, brush and vegetation and other items that would interfere with construction operations within the **limits of disturbance**. Remove stumps entirely. Grub out matted roots and roots over **2 inches** in diameter to at least **18 inches** below existing surface.

3.2.2 Stripping

Strip suitable soil from the site where excavation or grading is indicated and stockpile separately from other excavated material. Material unsuitable for use as topsoil shall be wasted. Locate topsoil so that the material can be used readily for the finished grading. Where sufficient existing topsoil conforming to the material requirements is not available on site, provide borrow materials suitable for use as topsoil. Protect topsoil and keep in segregated piles until needed.

3.2.3 Unsuitable Material

Remove vegetation, debris, decayed vegetable matter, sod, mulch, and rubbish underneath paved areas or concrete slabs.

3.3 EXCAVATION

Excavate to contours, elevation, and dimensions indicated. Reuse excavated materials that meet the specified requirements for the material type required at the intended location **outside of structure, pavement and utility limits**. Keep excavations free from water. Excavate soil disturbed or weakened by Contractor's operations, soils softened or made unsuitable for subsequent construction due to exposure to weather. Excavations below indicated depths will not be permitted except to remove **geotechnically unsuitable** material. **Geotechnically unsuitable** material encountered below the grades shown shall be **removed as directed by the Contracting Officer**. Refill with **backfill and fill material or select material where indicated** and compact to 95 percent of **ASTM D698** maximum density. Unless specified otherwise, refill excavations cut below indicated depth with **backfill and fill material or select material where indicated** and compact to 95 percent of **ASTM D698** maximum density. Satisfactory material removed below the depths indicated, without specific direction of the Contracting Officer, shall be replaced with satisfactory materials to the indicated excavation grade; except as specified for spread footings. Determination of

elevations and measurements of approved overdepth excavation of **geotechnically unsuitable** material below grades indicated shall be done under the direction of the Contracting Officer.

3.3.1 Structures With Spread Footings

Ensure that footing subgrades have been inspected and approved by the Contracting Officer prior to concrete placement. Fill over excavations with concrete during foundation placement.

3.3.2 Pile Cap Excavation and Backfilling

Excavate to bottom of pile cap prior to placing or driving piles, unless authorized otherwise by the Contracting Officer. Backfill and compact overexcavations and changes in grade due to pile driving operations to 95 percent of **ASTM D698** maximum density.

3.3.3 Pipe Trenches

Excavate to the dimension indicated. Grade bottom of trenches to provide uniform support for each section of pipe after pipe bedding placement. Tamp if necessary to provide a firm pipe bed. Recesses shall be excavated to accommodate bells and joints so that pipe will be uniformly supported for the entire length. Rock, where encountered, shall be excavated to a depth of at least **6 inches** below the bottom of the pipe.

3.3.4 Excavated Materials

Satisfactory excavated material **shall only be reused as fill or backfill outside of structure, pavement and utility limits** of the permanent work required or shall be separately stockpiled if it cannot be readily placed. Satisfactory material in excess of that required for the permanent work and all unsatisfactory material shall be disposed of as specified in Paragraph "DISPOSITION OF SURPLUS MATERIAL."

3.3.5 Final Grade of Surfaces to Support Concrete

Excavation to final grade shall not be made until just before concrete is to be placed. For pile foundations, the excavation shall be stopped at an elevation **6 to 12 inches** above the bottom of the footing before driving piles. After pile driving has been completed, the remainder of the excavation shall be completed to the elevations shown. Approximately level surfaces shall be roughened, and sloped surfaces shall be cut as indicated into rough steps or benches to provide a satisfactory bond. Shales shall be protected from slaking and all surfaces shall be protected from erosion resulting from ponding or flow of water.

3.4 SUBGRADE PREPARATION

Geotechnically unsuitable material in surfaces to receive fill or in excavated areas shall be removed and replaced with satisfactory materials as directed by the Contracting Officer. The surface shall be scarified to a depth of **6 inches** before the fill is started. Sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal shall be plowed, stepped, benched, or broken up so that the fill material will bond with the existing material. When subgrades are less than the specified density, the ground surface shall be broken up to a minimum depth of **6 inches**, pulverized, and compacted to the specified density. When the subgrade is part fill and part excavation or natural ground, the excavated or natural ground portion

shall be scarified to a depth of 12 inches and compacted as specified for the adjacent fill. Material shall not be placed on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost. Compaction shall be accomplished by sheepsfoot rollers, pneumatic-tired rollers, steel-wheeled rollers, or other approved equipment well suited to the soil being compacted. Material shall be moistened or aerated as necessary to plus or minus 3 percent of optimum moisture to provide the moisture content that will readily facilitate obtaining the specified compaction with the equipment used. Minimum subgrade density shall be as specified herein.

3.4.1 Proof Rolling

Proof rolling shall be done on an exposed subgrade free of surface water (wet conditions resulting from rainfall) which would promote degradation of an otherwise acceptable subgrade. After stripping, proof roll the existing subgrade of the building and pavement areas with six passes of a tandem axle dump truck loaded with 212 cubic feet of soil or a 15 ton, pneumatic-tired roller. Operate the roller or truck in a systematic manner to ensure the number of passes over all areas, and at speeds between 2 1/2 to 3 1/2 miles per hour. When proof rolling under buildings, the building subgrade shall be considered to extend 5 feet beyond the building lines, and one-half of the passes made with the roller shall be in a direction perpendicular to the other passes. Notify the Contracting Officer a minimum of 3 days prior to proof rolling. Proof rolling shall be performed in the presence of the Contracting Officer. Rutting or pumping of material shall be corrected as determined by the Government's Geotechnical Engineer and confirmed by the Contracting Officer.

3.5 SUBGRADE FILTER FABRIC

Place synthetic fiber filter fabric as indicated directly on prepared subgrade free of vegetation, stumps, rocks larger than 2 inches diameter and other debris which may puncture or otherwise damage the fabric. Repair damaged fabric by placing an additional layer of fabric to cover the damaged area a minimum of 3 feet overlap in all directions. Overlap fabric at joints a minimum of 3 feet. Obtain approval of filter fabric installation before placing fill or backfill. Place fill or backfill on fabric in the direction of overlaps and compact as specified herein. Follow manufacturer's recommended installation procedures.

3.6 FILLING AND BACKFILLING

Fill and backfill to contours, elevations, and dimensions indicated. Compact each lift before placing overlaying lift.

3.6.1 Common Fill Placement

Provide for general site. Use satisfactory materials. Place in 8 inch lifts. Compact areas not accessible to rollers or compactors with mechanical hand tampers. Aerate material excessively moistened by rain to a satisfactory moisture content. Finish to a smooth surface by blading, rolling with a smooth roller, or both.

3.6.2 Backfill and Fill Material Placement

Provide for paved areas within the 5 foot building line, except where select material is provided. Place in 8 inch lifts. Do not place over wet or frozen areas. Place backfill material adjacent to structures as the structural elements are completed and accepted. Backfill against concrete

only when approved. Place and compact material to avoid loading upon or against the structure.

3.6.3 Select Material Placement

Provide under pavements and as specified or indicated. Place in 8 inch lifts. Do not place over wet or frozen areas. Backfill adjacent to structures shall be placed as structural elements are completed and accepted. Backfill against concrete only when approved. Place and compact material to avoid loading upon or against structure.

3.6.4 Backfill and Fill Material Placement Over Pipes and at Walls

Backfilling shall not begin until construction below finish grade has been approved, underground utilities systems have been inspected, tested and approved, forms removed, and the excavation cleaned of trash and debris. Backfill shall be brought to indicated finish grade and shall include backfill for outside grease interceptors and underground fuel tanks. Where pipe is coated or wrapped for protection against corrosion, the backfill material up to an elevation 2 feet above sewer lines and 1 foot above other utility lines shall be free from stones larger than 1 inch in any dimension. Heavy equipment for spreading and compacting backfill shall not be operated closer to foundation or retaining walls than a distance equal to the height of backfill above the top of footing; the area remaining shall be compacted in layers not more than 4 inches in compacted thickness with power-driven hand tampers suitable for the material being compacted. Backfill shall be placed carefully around pipes or tanks to avoid damage to coatings, wrappings, or tanks. Backfill shall not be placed against foundation walls prior to 7 days after completion of the walls. As far as practicable, backfill shall be brought up evenly on each side of the wall and sloped to drain away from the wall.

3.6.5 Porous Fill Placement

Provide under floor and area-way slabs on a compacted subgrade. Place in 4 inch lifts with a minimum of two passes of a hand-operated plate-type vibratory compactor.

3.6.6 Trench Backfilling

Backfill as rapidly as construction, testing, and acceptance of work permits. Place and compact backfill under structures and paved areas in 6 inch lifts to top of trench and in 6 inch lifts to one foot over pipe outside structures and paved areas.

3.7 BORROW

Where satisfactory materials are not available in sufficient quantity from required excavations, approved borrow materials shall be obtained as specified herein.

3.8 BURIED WARNING AND IDENTIFICATION TAPE

Provide buried utility lines with utility identification tape. Bury tape 12 inches below finished grade; under pavements and slabs, bury tape 6 inches below top of subgrade.

3.9 BURIED DETECTION WIRE

Bury detection wire directly above non-metallic piping at a distance not to exceed 12 inches above the top of pipe. The wire shall extend continuously and unbroken, from manhole to manhole. The ends of the wire shall terminate inside the manholes at each end of the pipe, with a minimum of 3 feet of wire, coiled, remaining accessible in each manhole. The wire shall remain insulated over it's entire length. The wire shall enter manholes between the top of the corbel and the frame, and extend up through the chimney seal between the frame and the chimney seal. For force mains, the wire shall terminate in the valve pit at the pump station end of the pipe.

3.10 COMPACTION

Determine in-place density of existing subgrade; if required density exists, no compaction of existing subgrade will be required. Density requirements specified herein are for cohesionless materials. When cohesive materials are encountered or used, density requirements may be reduced by 5 percent.

3.10.1 General Site

Compact underneath areas designated for vegetation and areas outside the 5 foot line of the paved area or structure to 90 percent of ASTM D698.

3.10.2 Structures, Spread Footings, and Concrete Slabs

Compact top 12 inches of subgrades to 95 percent of ASTM D698. Compact fill and backfill material and select material to 95 percent of ASTM D698.

3.10.3 Adjacent Area

Compact areas within 5 feet of structures to 95 percent of ASTM D698.

3.10.4 Paved Areas

Compact top 12 inches of subgrades to 95 percent of ASTM D698. Compact fill and backfill materials to 95 percent of ASTM D698.

3.11 RIP-RAP CONSTRUCTION

Construct rip-rap on bedding material and filter fabric in accordance with NCDOT SSRS, Paragraph 876 in the areas indicated.

3.11.1 Preparation

Trim and dress indicated areas to conform to cross sections, lines and grades shown within a tolerance of 0.1 foot.

3.11.2 Bedding Placement

Spread filter fabric bedding material uniformly to a thickness of at least 3 inches on prepared subgrade as indicated. Compaction of bedding is not required. Finish bedding to present even surface free from mounds and windrows.

3.11.3 Stone Placement

Place rock for rip-rap on prepared bedding material to produce a well

graded mass with the minimum practicable percentage of voids in conformance with lines and grades indicated. Distribute larger rock fragments, with dimensions extending the full depth of the rip-rap throughout the entire mass and eliminate "pockets" of small rock fragments. Rearrange individual pieces by mechanical equipment or by hand as necessary to obtain the distribution of fragment sizes specified above.

3.12 FINISH OPERATIONS

3.12.1 Grading

Finish grades as indicated within [one-tenth of one foot](#). Grade areas to drain water away from structures. Maintain areas free of trash and debris. For existing grades that will remain but which were disturbed by Contractor's operations, grade as directed.

3.12.2 Protection of Surfaces

Protect newly backfilled, graded, and topsoiled areas from traffic, erosion, and settlements that may occur. Repair or reestablish damaged grades, elevations, or slopes.

3.13 DISPOSITION OF SURPLUS MATERIAL

Remove surplus or other soil material not required or suitable for filling or backfilling, and brush, refuse, stumps, roots, and timber. [Dispose of all material as specified in Section 01 57 19.01 20 SUPPLEMENTAL TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS.](#)

3.14 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.14.1 Sampling

Take the number and size of samples required to perform the following tests.

3.14.2 Testing

Perform one of each of the following tests for each material used. Provide additional tests for each source change.

3.14.2.1 [Fill and Backfill](#) Material Testing

Test fill and backfill material in accordance with [ASTM C136/C136M](#) for conformance to [ASTM D2487](#) gradation limits; [ASTM D1140](#) for material finer than the No. 200 sieve; [ASTM D4318](#) for liquid limit and for plastic limit; [ASTM D698](#) for moisture density relations, as applicable.

3.14.2.2 [Select Material](#) Testing

Test select material in accordance with [ASTM C136/C136M](#) for conformance to [ASTM D2487](#) gradation limits; [ASTM D1140](#) for material finer than the No. 200 sieve; [ASTM D698](#) for moisture density relations, as applicable.

3.14.2.3 [Porous Fill](#) Testing

Test porous fill in accordance with [ASTM C136/C136M](#) for conformance to gradation specified in [ASTM C33/C33M](#).

3.14.2.4 Density Tests

Test density in accordance with ASTM D1556/D1556M, or ASTM D6938. When ASTM D6938 density tests are used, verify density test results by performing an ASTM D1556/D1556M density test at a location already ASTM D6938 tested as specified herein. Perform an ASTM D1556/D1556M density test at the start of the job, and for every 10 ASTM D6938 density tests thereafter. Test each lift at randomly selected locations every 2500 square feet of existing grade in fills for structures and concrete slabs, and every 2500 square feet for other fill areas and every 2500 square feet of subgrade in cut. Include density test results in daily report.

Bedding and backfill in trenches: One test per 100 linear feet in each lift.

3.14.2.5 Moisture Content Tests

In the stockpile, excavation or borrow areas, a minimum of two tests per day per type of material or source of materials being placed is required during stable weather conditions. During unstable weather, tests shall be made as dictated by local conditions and approved moisture content shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D2216. Include moisture content test results in daily report.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 32 05 33

LANDSCAPE ESTABLISHMENT

08/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D2103	(2015) Standard Specification for Polyethylene Film and Sheeting
ASTM D5851	(1995; R 2015) Planning and Implementing a Water Monitoring Program
ASTM D6155	(2015) Nontraditional Coarse Aggregate for Bituminous Paving Mixtures

TREE CARE INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION (TCIA)

TCIA Z133	(2017) American National Standard for Arboricultural Operations - Pruning, Repairing, Maintaining, and Removing Trees, and Cutting Brush - Safety Requirements

1.2 DEFINITIONS

1.2.1 Pesticide

Any substance or mixture of substances, including biological control agents, that may prevent, destroy, repel, or mitigate pests and are specifically labeled for use by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). Also, any substance used as a plant regulator, defoliant, disinfectant, or biocide. Examples of pesticides include fumigants, herbicides, insecticides, fungicides, nematocides, molluscicides and rodenticides.

1.2.2 Stand of Turf

100 percent ground cover of the established species.

1.2.3 Planter Beds

A planter bed is defined as an area containing one or a combination of the following plant types: shrubs, vines, wildflowers, annuals, perennials, ground cover, and a mulch topdressing excluding turf. Trees may also be found in planter beds.

1.3 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 32 92 23 SODDING applies to this section for installation of sod

requirements, with additions and modifications herein.

Section 32 93 00 EXTERIOR PLANTS applies to this section for installation of trees and ground cover, with additions and modifications herein.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Integrated Pest Management Plan; G

SD-03 Product Data

Fertilizer; G

Mulches Topdressing; G

Organic Mulch Materials; G

Inorganic Mulch Materials; G

Irrigation Bags; G

SD-07 Certificates

Maintenance Inspection Report; G

Plant Quantities; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Maintenance; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Tree Staking and Guying Removal; G

Irrigation Bag Removal; G

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

1.5.1 Delivery

Deliver fertilizer and other required nutrients, to the site in original containers bearing manufacturer's chemical analysis, name, trade name, or trademark, and indication of conformance to state and federal laws. Instead of containers, fertilizer, lime, and/or gypsum may be furnished in bulk with a certificate indicating the above information.

1.5.2 Storage

1.5.2.1 Fertilizer, Lime, Iron, and Mulch Storage

Store material in designated areas. Store lime and fertilizer in cool, dry locations away from contaminants.

1.5.2.2 Antidesiccant's Storage

Do not store with fertilizers or other landscape maintenance materials.

1.5.3 Handling

Do not drop or dump materials from vehicles.

1.6 MAINTENANCE

Submit Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Manuals for planting materials. Include instructions indicating procedures during one typical year including variations of maintenance for climatic conditions throughout the year. Provide instructions and procedures for watering; promotion of growth, including fertilizing, pruning, and mowing; and integrated pest management. O&M Manuals must include pictures of planting materials cross referenced to botanical and common names, with a description of the normal appearance in each season.

Develop a water monitoring program for surface and ground water on the project site in accordance with ASTM D5851 and consistent with the water management program utilized during construction operations.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 POST-PLANT FERTILIZER

Fertilizer for groundcover is not permitted. Provide fertilizer for trees and turfgrass as recommended by plant supplier, except synthetic chemical fertilizers are not permitted. Fertilizers containing petrochemical additives or that have been treated with pesticides or herbicides are not permitted.

2.1.1 Granular Fertilizer

Organic, granular controlled release fertilizer containing the minimum percentages, by weight, of plant food nutrients per soil testing recommendations:

- Per soil testing recommendations - percent available nitrogen
- Per soil testing recommendations - percent available phosphorus
- Per soil testing recommendations - percent available potassium
- Per soil testing recommendations - percent sulfur
- Per soil testing recommendations - percent iron

2.2 WATER

Source of water for irrigation must be approved by the Contracting Officer, and be of suitable quality for irrigation. Use collected storm water or graywater when available.

2.3 MULCHES TOPDRESSING

Free from noxious weeds, mold, pesticides, or other deleterious materials.

2.3.1 Inert Mulch Materials

Provide rounded river stone (sample approved), complying with ASTM D6155, ranging in size from 3 to 5 inches.

2.3.2 Organic Mulch Materials

Provide pine straw mulch.

2.4 PESTICIDES

Pesticides and herbicides are not permitted. Use black sheet polyethylene conforming to ASTM D2103, minimum thickness 5/32 inch. Submit an Integrated Pest Management Plan, including weed and pest management strategies and include proposed alternatives to herbicides and pesticides. Use biological pest controls as approved in the Plan.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXTENT OF WORK

Provide landscape construction maintenance to include mowing, edging, fertilizing, watering, weeding, pruning, stake and guy adjusting, for all newly installed landscape areas and at all areas inside or outside the limits of the construction that are disturbed by the Contractor's operations.

3.1.1 Policing

Police all landscaped areas. Policing includes removal of leaves, branches and limbs regardless of length or diameter, dead vegetation, paper, trash, cigarette butts, garbage, rocks or other debris. Policing must extend to both sides of fencing. Collected debris must be promptly removed and disposed of at an approved disposal site.

3.1.2 Drainage System Maintenance

Remove all obstructions from surface and subsurface drain lines to allow water to flow unrestricted in swales, gutters, catch basins, storm drain curb inlets, and yard drains. Remove grates and clear debris in catch basins. Open drainage channels are to be maintained free of all debris and vegetation at all times. Edges of these channels must be clear of any encroachment by vegetation.

3.2 WATERING

3.2.1 Water Restrictions

Abide by state, local or other water conservation regulations in force during the establishment period.

3.2.2 Fire Hydrants

To use a fire hydrant for irrigation, obtain prior clearance from the Contracting Officer and provide the tools and connections approved for use

on fire hydrants. If a fire hydrant is used, Provide a reduced pressure backflow preventer for each connection between hose and fire hydrant. Backflow preventer used must be tested once per month by a certified backflow preventer tester.

3.2.3 Final Acceptance

Upon completion of the watering and plant establishment period and final acceptance of groundcover and exterior plants, non-permanent watering equipment must be removed.

3.3 SODDED TURFGRASS ESTABLISHMENT PERIOD

Sodded turfgrass establishment period will commence on the date that inspection by the Contracting Officer shows that the new turf furnished under this contract has been satisfactorily installed to a 100 percent stand of coverage. The establishment period must continue for a period of 365 days.

3.3.1 Frequency of Maintenance

Begin maintenance immediately after turf has been installed. Inspect areas once a week during the installation and establishment period and perform needed maintenance promptly.

3.3.2 Promotion of Growth

Maintain sodded turfgrass in a manner that promotes proper health, growth, natural color. Turf must have a neat uniform manicured appearance, free of bare areas, ruts, holes, weeds, pests, dead vegetation, debris, and unwanted vegetation that present an unsightly appearance. Mow, remove excess clippings, eradicate weeds, water, fertilize, aerate, topdress and perform other operations necessary to promote growth, as approved by Contracting Officer and consistent with approved Integrated Pest Management Plan. Remove noxious weeds common to the area from planting areas by mechanical means.

3.3.3 Mowing

3.3.3.1 Turf

Mow centipede turf at a uniform finished height. Mow turfed areas to a minimum average height of 1-1/2 inches when average height of grass becomes 2 inches for spring/summer maintenance. The height of turf is measured from the soil. Perform mowing of turf in a manner that prevents scalping, rutting, bruising, uneven and rough cutting. Prior to mowing, all rubbish, debris, trash, leaves, rocks, paper, and limbs or branches on a turf area must be picked up and disposed. Adjacent paved areas must be swept/vacuumed clean. Do not remove more than 1/3 turf height with any mowing.

3.3.4 Turf Edging and Trimming

Perimeter of planter bed edges, sidewalks, driveways, curbs, and other paved surfaces must be edged. Uniformly edge these areas to prevent encroachment of vegetation onto paved surfaces and to provide a clear cut division line between planter beds, turf, and ground cover. Edging is to be accomplished in a manner that prevents scalping, rutting, bruising, uneven and rough cutting. Perform edging on the same day that turf is

mowed. Use of string line trimmers is permitted in "soft" areas such as an edge between turfgrass and a planter bed. Exercise care to avoid damage to any plant materials, structures, and other landscape features.

Trimming around trees, fences, poles, and other similar objects is to be accomplished to match the height and appearance of surrounding mowed turf growth. Trimming must be performed on the same day the turf's mowed. Care must be exercised to avoid "Girdling" trees located in turf areas. The use of protective tree collars on trees in turf areas may be utilized as a temporary means to avoid injury to tree trunks. At the end of the plant establishment period Contractor will be responsible for removing all protective tree collars.

3.3.5 Post-Fertilizer Application

Apply turf fertilizer in a manner that promotes health, growth, vigor, color and appearance of cultivated turf areas. The method of application, fertilizer type and frequencies must be determined by the laboratory soil analysis results the requirements of the particular turf species. Organic fertilizer must be used. In the event that organic fertilizer is not producing the desired effect, the Contractor must contract the Contracting Officer for approval prior to the use of a synthetic type of fertilizer. Apply fertilizer by approved methods in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

3.3.6 Turf Watering

Perform watering in a manner that promotes the health, growth, color and appearance of cultivated vegetation and that complies with all Federal, State, and local water agencies and authorities directives. The Contractor must be responsible to prevent over watering, water run-off, erosion, and ponding due to excessive quantities or rate of application. Abide by state, local or other water conservation regulations or restrictions in force during the establishment period. Comply with the water conservation regulations schedule.

3.3.7 Turf Clearance Area

Trees located in turf areas must be maintained with a growth free clearance of 18 inches from the tree trunk base. The use of mechanical weed whips to accomplish the turf growth free bed area is prohibited.

3.3.8 Replanting

Replant in accordance with Section 32 92 23 SODDING and within specified planting dates areas which do not have a satisfactory stand of turf. Replant areas which do not have a satisfactory stand of other groundcover.

3.3.9 Final Inspection and Acceptance

Final inspection will be made upon written request from the Contractor at least 10 days prior to the last day of the turf establishment period. Final turf acceptance will be based upon a satisfactory stand of turf.

3.3.10 Unsatisfactory Work

When work is found to not meet design intent and specifications, maintenance period will be extended at no additional cost to the Government until work has been completed, inspected and accepted by Contracting

Officer.

3.4 EXTERIOR PLANT ESTABLISHMENT PERIOD

The exterior plant establishment period will commence on the date that inspection by the Contracting Officer shows that the new plants furnished under this contract have been satisfactorily installed and must continue for a period of 365 days.

3.4.1 Frequency of Maintenance

Begin maintenance immediately after plants have been installed. Inspect exterior plants at least once a week during the installation and establishment period and perform needed maintenance promptly.

3.4.2 Promotion of Plant Growth and Vigor

Water, prune, fertilize, mulch, adjust stakes and guys, eradicate weeds, and perform other operations necessary to promote plant growth and vigor.

3.4.3 Planter Bed Maintenance

Planter beds must be weeded, fertilized, watered, kept pest free, turf free, pruned, and mulch levels maintained. Planter beds will not be allowed to encroach into turf areas. A definite break must be maintained between turf areas and planter beds. Fertilize exterior planting materials to promote healthy plant growth without encouraging excessive top foliar growth. Remove noxious weeds common to the area from planting areas by mechanical means.

3.4.3.1 Tree Maintenance

Tree maintenance must include adjustment of stakes, ties, guy supports, watering, fertilizing, pest control, mulching, pruning for health and safety and fall leaf cleanup. Fertilize exterior trees to promote healthy plant growth without encouraging excessive top foliar growth. Inspect and adjust stakes, ties, and guy supports to avoid girdling and promote natural development. All trees within the project boundaries, regardless of caliper, must be selectively pruned for safety and health reasons. These include but are not limited to removal of dead and broken branches and correction of structural defects. Prune trees according to their natural growth characteristics leaving trees well shaped and balanced. Pruning of all trees must be accomplished by or in the presence of a certified member of the International Society of Arboriculture and in accordance with TCIA Z133. All pruning debris generated must be disposed of in a proper manner.

3.4.4 Slope Erosion Control Maintenance

Provide slope erosion control maintenance to prevent undermining of all slopes in newly landscaped and natural growth areas. Maintenance tasks include immediate repairs to weak spots in sloped areas, and maintaining clean, clear culverts, and graded berms, and terraces to intercept and direct water flow to prevent development of large gullies and slope erosion. Eroded areas must be filled with amended topsoil and replanted with the same plant species. Erosion control damaged due to slope erosion must be reinstalled.

3.4.5 Removal of Dying or Dead Plants

Remove dead and dying plants and provide new plants immediately upon commencement of the specified planting season, and replace stakes, guys, mulch and eroded earth mound water basins. Provide an additional 90 day establishment period for replacement plants beyond the original warranty period. A tree must be considered dying or dead when the main leader has died back, or a minimum of 20 percent of the crown has died. A shrub or ground cover must be considered dying or dead when a minimum of 20 percent of the plant has died. This condition must be determined by scraping on a branch an area 1/16 inch square, maximum, to determine the cause for dying plant material and must provide recommendations for replacement. The Contractor must determine the cause for dying plant material and provide recommendations for replacement.

3.4.6 Tracking of Unhealthy Plants

Note plants not in healthy growing condition, as determined by the Contracting Officer, and as soon as seasonal conditions permit, remove and replace with plants of the same species and sizes as originally specified. Install replacement plantings in accordance with Section 32 93 00 EXTERIOR PLANTS.

3.4.7 Final Inspection

Final inspection will be made upon written request from the Contractor at least 10 days prior to the last day of the establishment period. Final inspection will be based upon satisfactory health and growth of plants and on the following:

3.4.7.1 Total Plants on Site

Plants have been accepted and required number of replacements have been installed.

3.4.7.2 Mulching and Weeding

Planter beds and earth mound water basins are properly mulched and free of weeds.

3.4.7.3 Tree Supports

Stakes and guys are in good condition.

3.4.7.4 Remedial Work

Remedial measures directed by the Contracting Officer to ensure plant material survival and promote healthy growth have been completed.

3.4.8 Unsatisfactory Work

When work is found to not meet design intent and specifications, maintenance period will be extended at no additional cost to the Government until work has been completed, inspected and accepted by Contracting Officer.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.5.1 Maintenance Inspection Report

Provide maintenance inspection report to assure that landscape maintenance is being performed in accordance with the specifications and in the best interest of plant growth and survivability. Site observations must be documented at the start of the establishment period, then quarterly following the start, and at the end of establishment period. Submit results of site observation visits to the Contracting Officer within 7 calendar days of each site observation visit.

3.5.2 Plant Quantities

Provide Contracting Officer with the number of plant quantities. In addition, provide total exterior area of hardscape and landscaping such as turf and total number of plants.

3.5.3 Tree Staking and Guying Removal

Provide a certified letter that all stakes, guys, and watering bags are removed from all project trees at the end of the establishment period.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 32 11 23

AGGREGATE BASE COURSES
08/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS
(AASHTO)

AASHTO T 224	(2010) Standard Method of Test for Correction for Coarse Particles in the Soil Compaction Test
AASHTO T 88	(2019) Standard Method of Test for Particle Size Analysis of Soils
AASHTO T 99	(2019) Standard Method of Test for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils Using a 2.5-kg (5.5-lb) Rammer and a 305-mm (12-in.) Drop

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C117	(2017) Standard Test Method for Materials Finer than 75-um (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates by Washing
ASTM C131/C131M	(2014) Standard Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine
ASTM C136/C136M	(2014) Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM C29/C29M	(2017a) Standard Test Method for Bulk Density ("Unit Weight") and Voids in Aggregate
ASTM C88	(2018) Standard Test Method for Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
ASTM D1556/D1556M	(2015; E 2016) Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by Sand-Cone Method
ASTM D2167	(2015) Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Rubber Balloon Method

ASTM D4318	(2017; E 2018) Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils
ASTM D6938	(2017a) Standard Test Method for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth)
ASTM D698	(2012; E 2014; E 2015) Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/cu. ft. (600 kN-m/cu. m.))
ASTM D75/D75M	(2014) Standard Practice for Sampling Aggregates
ASTM E11	(2016) Standard Specification for Woven Wire Test Sieve Cloth and Test Sieves

NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION (NCDOT)

NCDOT SSRS	(2018) Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures

1.2 DEFINITIONS

For the purposes of this specification, the following definitions apply.

1.2.1 Aggregate Base Course

Aggregate base course (ABC) is well graded, durable aggregate uniformly moistened and mechanically stabilized by compaction.

1.2.2 Degree of Compaction

Degree of compaction required, except as noted in the second sentence, is expressed as a percentage of the maximum laboratory dry density obtained by the test procedure presented in ASTM D698 abbreviated as a percent of laboratory maximum dry density. Since ASTM D698 applies only to soils that have 30 percent or less by weight of their particles retained on the 3/4 inch sieve, the degree of compaction for material having more than 30 percent by weight of their particles retained on the 3/4 inch sieve will be expressed as a percentage of the laboratory maximum dry density in accordance with AASHTO T 99 Method D and corrected with AASHTO T 224.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Plant, Equipment, and Tools; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Initial Tests; G

In-Place Tests; G

1.4 EQUIPMENT, TOOLS, AND MACHINES

All plant, equipment, and tools used in the performance of the work will be subject to approval by the Contracting Officer before the work is started. Maintain all plant, equipment, and tools in satisfactory working condition at all times. Submit a list of proposed equipment, including descriptive data. Use equipment capable of minimizing segregation, producing the required compaction, meeting grade controls, thickness control, and smoothness requirements as set forth herein.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Sampling and testing are the responsibility of the Contractor. Perform sampling and testing using a laboratory approved in accordance with Section 01 45 00.00 20 QUALITY CONTROL. Work requiring testing will not be permitted until the testing laboratory has been inspected and approved. Test the materials to establish compliance with the specified requirements and perform testing at the specified frequency. The Contracting Officer may specify the time and location of the tests. Furnish copies of test results to the Contracting Officer within 24 hours of completion of the tests.

1.5.1 Sampling

Take samples for laboratory testing in conformance with ASTM D75/D75M. When deemed necessary, the sampling will be observed by the Contracting Officer.

1.5.2 Tests

1.5.2.1 Sieve Analysis

Perform sieve analysis in conformance with ASTM C117 and ASTM C136/C136M using sieves conforming to ASTM E11. Perform particle-size analysis of the soils in conformance with AASHTO T 88.

1.5.2.2 Liquid Limit and Plasticity Index

Determine liquid limit and plasticity index in accordance with ASTM D4318.

1.5.2.3 Moisture-Density Determinations

Determine the laboratory maximum dry density and optimum moisture content in accordance with paragraph DEGREE OF COMPACTION.

1.5.2.4 Field Density Tests

Measure field density in accordance with ASTM D1556/D1556M, ASTM D2167 or ASTM D6938. For the method presented in ASTM D1556/D1556M use the base plate as shown in the drawing. For the method presented in ASTM D6938 check the calibration curves and adjust them, if necessary, using only the sand cone method as described in paragraph Calibration, of the ASTM publication. Tests performed in accordance with ASTM D6938 result in a wet

unit weight of soil and **ASTM D6938** will be used to determine the moisture content of the soil. Also check the calibration curves furnished with the moisture gauges along with density calibration checks as described in **ASTM D6938**. Make the calibration checks of both the density and moisture gauges using the prepared containers of material method, as described in paragraph Calibration of **ASTM D6938**, on each different type of material being tested at the beginning of a job and at intervals as directed. Submit calibration curves and related test results prior to using the device or equipment being calibrated.

1.5.2.5 Wear Test

Perform wear tests on ABC **coarse** material in conformance with **ASTM C131/C131M**.

1.5.2.6 Soundness

Perform soundness tests on ABC **coarse** material in accordance with **ASTM C88**.

1.5.2.7 Weight of Slag

Determine weight per cubic foot of slag in accordance with **ASTM C29/C29M** on the ABC **coarse** material.

1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Perform construction when the atmospheric temperature is above **35 degrees F**. When the temperature falls below **35 degrees F**, protect all completed areas by approved methods against detrimental effects of freezing. Correct completed areas damaged by freezing, rainfall, or other weather conditions to meet specified requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 AGGREGATES

Provide ABC in accordance with NCDOT SSRS, Section 1010, Aggregate for Non-Asphalt Type Bases.

2.2 LIQUID LIMIT AND PLASTICITY INDEX

Apply liquid limit and plasticity index requirements to the completed course and to any component that is blended to meet the required gradation. The portion of any component or of the completed course passing the **No. 40** sieve must be either nonplastic or have a liquid limit not greater than **30** and a plasticity index not greater than **4**.

2.3 TESTS, INSPECTIONS, AND VERIFICATIONS

2.3.1 Initial Tests

Perform one of each of the following tests, on the proposed material prior to commencing construction, to demonstrate that the proposed material meets all specified requirements when furnished. Complete this testing for each source if materials from more than one source are proposed.

- a. Sieve Analysis.
- b. Liquid limit and plasticity index.

- c. Moisture-density relationship.
- d. Wear.
- e. Soundness.

Submit certified copies of test results for approval not less than 30 days before material is required for the work.

2.3.2 Approval of Material

Tentative approval of material will be based on initial test results.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

When the ABC is constructed in more than one layer, clean the previously constructed layer of loose and foreign matter by sweeping with power sweepers or power brooms, except that hand brooms may be used in areas where power cleaning is not practicable. Provide adequate drainage during the entire period of construction to prevent water from collecting or standing on the working area.

3.2 OPERATION OF AGGREGATE SOURCES

Condition aggregate sources on private lands in accordance with local laws or authorities.

3.3 STOCKPILING MATERIAL

Clear and level storage sites prior to stockpiling of material. Stockpile all materials, including approved material available from excavation and grading, in the manner and at the locations designated. Stockpile aggregates on the cleared and leveled areas designated by the Contracting Officer to prevent segregation. Stockpile materials obtained from different sources separately.

3.4 PREPARATION OF UNDERLYING COURSE OR SUBGRADE

Preparation of subgrade shall be in accordance with Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL.

3.5 GRADE CONTROL

Provide a finished and completed base course conforming to the lines, grades, and cross sections shown. Place line and grade stakes as necessary for control.

3.6 MIXING AND PLACING MATERIALS

Mix the coarse and fine aggregates in a stationary plant. Make adjustments in mixing procedures or in equipment, as directed, to obtain true grades, to minimize segregation or degradation, to obtain the required water content, and to insure a satisfactory base course meeting all requirements of this specification. Place the mixed material on the prepared subgrade or subbase in layers of uniform thickness with an approved spreader. Place the layers so that when compacted they will be true to the grades or levels

required with the least possible surface disturbance. Where the base course is placed in more than one layer, clean the previously constructed layers of loose and foreign matter by sweeping with power sweepers, power brooms, or hand brooms, as directed. Make adjustments in placing procedures or equipment as may be directed by the Contracting Officer to obtain true grades, to minimize segregation and degradation, to adjust the water content, and to insure an acceptable base course.

3.7 LAYER THICKNESS

Compact the completed base course to the thickness indicated. No individual layer may be thicker than 6 inches nor be thinner than 3 inches in compacted thickness. Compact the base course(s) to a total thickness that is within 1/2 inch of the thickness indicated. Where the measured thickness is more than 1/2 inch deficient, correct such areas by scarifying, adding new material of proper gradation, reblading, and recompacting as directed. Where the measured thickness is more than 1/2 inch thicker than indicated, the course will be considered as conforming to the specified thickness requirements. The average job thickness will be the average of all thickness measurements taken for the job and must be within 1/4 inch of the thickness indicated. Measure the total thickness of the base course at intervals of one measurement for each 500 square yards of base course. Measure total thickness using 3 inch diameter test holes penetrating the base course.

3.8 COMPACTION

Compact each layer of the base course, as specified, with approved compaction equipment. Maintain water content during the compaction procedure to within plus or minus 2 percent of the optimum water content determined from laboratory tests as specified in this Section. Begin rolling at the outside edge of the surface and proceed to the center, overlapping on successive trips at least one-half the width of the roller. Slightly vary the length of alternate trips of the roller. Adjust speed of the roller as needed so that displacement of the aggregate does not occur. Compact mixture with hand-operated power tampers in all places not accessible to the rollers. Continue compaction until each layer is compacted through the full depth to at least 100 percent of laboratory maximum density. Make such adjustments in compacting or finishing procedures as may be directed by the Contracting Officer to obtain true grades, to minimize segregation and degradation, to reduce or increase water content, and to ensure a satisfactory base course. Remove any materials found to be unsatisfactory and replace with satisfactory material or rework, as directed, to meet the requirements of this specification.

3.9 EDGES OF BASE COURSE

Place the base course(s) so that the completed section will be a minimum of 2 feet wider, on all sides, than the next layer that will be placed above it. Place approved material along the outer edges of the base course in sufficient quantity to compact to the thickness of the course being constructed. When the course is being constructed in two or more layers, simultaneously roll and compact at least a 2 foot width of this shoulder material with the rolling and compacting of each layer of the base course, as directed.

3.10 FINISHING

Finish the surface of the top layer of base course after final compaction

by cutting any overbuild to grade and rolling with a steel-wheeled roller. Do not add thin layers of material to the top layer of base course to meet grade. If the elevation of the top layer of base course is $1/2$ inch or more below grade, scarify the top layer to a depth of at least 3 inches and blend new material in and compact to bring to grade. Make adjustments to rolling and finishing procedures as directed by the Contracting Officer to minimize segregation and degradation, obtain grades, maintain moisture content, and insure an acceptable base course. Should the surface become rough, corrugated, uneven in texture, or traffic marked prior to completion, scarify the unsatisfactory portion and rework and recompact it or replace as directed.

3.11 SMOOTHNESS TEST

Construct the top layer so that the surface shows no deviations in excess of $3/8$ inch when tested with a 12 foot straightedge. Take measurements in successive positions parallel to the centerline of the area to be paved. Also take measurements perpendicular to the centerline at 50 foot intervals. Correct deviations exceeding this amount by removing material and replacing with new material, or by reworking existing material and compacting it to meet these specifications.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.12.1 In-Place Tests

Perform each of the following tests on samples taken from the placed and compacted ABC. Take samples and test at the rates indicated.

- a. Perform density tests on every lift of material placed and at a frequency of one set of tests for every 250 square yards, or portion thereof, of completed area.
- b. Perform sieve analysis, including 0.02 mm size material, on every lift of material placed and at a frequency of one sieve analysis for every 500 square yards, or portion thereof, of material placed.
- c. Perform liquid limit and plasticity index tests at the same frequency as the sieve analysis.
- d. Measure the thickness of the base course at intervals providing at least one measurement for each 500 square yards of base course or part thereof. Measure the thickness using test holes, at least 3 inch in diameter through the base course.

3.12.2 Approval of Material

Final approval of the materials will be based on tests for gradation, liquid limit, and plasticity index performed on samples taken from the completed and fully compacted course(s).

3.13 TRAFFIC

Completed portions of the base course may be opened to limited traffic, provided there is no marring or distorting of the surface by the traffic. Do not allow heavy equipment on the completed base course except when necessary for construction. When it is necessary for heavy equipment to travel on the completed base course, protect the area against marring or damage to the completed work.

3.14 MAINTENANCE

Maintain the base course in a satisfactory condition until the full pavement section is completed and accepted. Immediately repair any defects and repeat repairs as often as necessary to keep the area intact. Retest any base course that was not paved over prior to the onset of winter to verify that it still complies with the requirements of this specification. Rework or replace any area of base course that is damaged as necessary to comply with this specification.

3.15 DISPOSAL OF UNSATISFACTORY MATERIALS

Dispose of any unsuitable materials that have been removed in waste disposal areas indicated. No additional payments will be made for materials that have to be replaced.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 32 12 13

BITUMINOUS TACK AND PRIME COATS
05/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS
(AASHTO)

AASHTO T 102 (2009; R 2013) Standard Method of Test for
Spot Test of Asphaltic Materials

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D140/D140M (2016) Standard Practice for Sampling
Asphalt Materials

ASTM D2026/D2026M (2015) Cutback Asphalt (Slow-Curing Type)

ASTM D2028/D2028M (2015) Cutback Asphalt (Rapid-Curing Type)

ASTM D2995 (1999; R 2009) Determining Application
Rate of Bituminous Distributors

ASTM D946/D946M (2015) Penetration-Graded Asphalt Cement
for Use in Pavement Construction

ASTM D977 (2017) Standard Specification for
Emulsified Asphalt

U.S. GREEN BUILDING COUNCIL (USGBC)

LEED BD+C (2009; R 2010) Leadership in Energy and
Environmental Design(tm) Building Design
and Construction (LEED-NC)

NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION (NCDOT)

NCDOT SSRS (2018) Standard Specifications for Roads
and Structures

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Local/Regional Materials

SD-06 Test Reports

Sampling and Testing

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Certificates of compliance for asphalt materials delivered will be obtained and checked to ensure that specification requirements are met. Quantities of applied material will be determined. Payment will be for amount of residual asphalt applied. Tack coat materials will not be diluted. Prime coat materials when emulsions are used can be diluted on site with potable water up to 1 part emulsion to 1 part water.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Inspect the materials delivered to the site for contamination and damage. Unload and store the materials with a minimum of handling.

1.5 EQUIPMENT, TOOLS AND MACHINES

1.5.1 General Requirements

Equipment, tools and machines used in the work are subject to approval. Maintain in a satisfactory working condition at all times. Calibrate equipment such as asphalt distributors, scales, batching equipment, spreaders and similar equipment within 12 months of their use. If the calibration expires during project, recalibrate the equipment before work can continue.

1.5.2 Bituminous Distributor

Provide a self propelled distributor with pneumatic tires of such size and number to prevent rutting, shoving or otherwise damaging the surface being sprayed. Calibrate the distributor in accordance with [ASTM D2995](#). Design and equip the distributor to spray the bituminous material in a uniform coverage at the specified temperature, at readily determined and controlled total liquid rates from 0.03 to 1.0 gallons per square yard, with a pressure range of 25 to 75 psi and with an allowable variation from the specified rate of not more than plus or minus 5 percent, and at variable widths. Include with the distributor equipment a separate power unit for the bitumen pump, full-circulation spray bars, tachometer, pressure gauges, volume-measuring devices, adequate heaters for heating of materials to the proper application temperature, a thermometer for reading the temperature of tank contents, and a hand hose attachment suitable for applying bituminous material manually to areas inaccessible to the distributor. The distributor will be capable of circulating and agitating the bituminous material during the heating process.

1.5.3 Heating Equipment for Storage Tanks

Use steam, electric, or hot oil heaters for heating the bituminous material. Provide steam heaters consisting of steam coils and equipment for producing steam, so designed that the steam cannot come in contact with the bituminous material. Fix an armored thermometer to the tank with a temperature range from 40 to 400 degrees F so that the temperature of the

bituminous material may be determined at all times.

1.5.4 Power Brooms and Power Blowers

Use power brooms and power blowers suitable for cleaning the surfaces to which the bituminous coat is to be applied.

1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Apply bituminous coat only when the surface to receive the bituminous coat is dry. A limited amount of moisture (approximately 0.03 gallon/square yard) can be sprayed on the surface of unbound material when prime coat is used to improve coverage and penetration of asphalt material. Apply bituminous coat only when the atmospheric temperature in the shade is 50 degrees F or above and when the temperature has not been below 35 degrees F for the 12 hours prior to application, unless otherwise directed.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PRIME COAT

Provide asphalt conforming to one of the following grades:

2.1.1 Cutback Asphalt

Provide cutback asphalt conforming to ASTM D2026/D2026M, Grade SC-70.

2.1.2 Emulsified Asphalt

Provide emulsified asphalt conforming to ASTM D977, Type SS-1. Asphalt emulsion can be diluted up to 1 part water to 1 part emulsion for prime coat use. Do not dilute asphalt emulsion for tack coat use.

2.2 TACK COAT

2.2.1 Asphalt Cement

Provide asphalt cement conforming to ASTM D946/D946M.

2.2.2 Cutback Asphalt

Provide cutback asphalt conforming to ASTM D2028/D2028M.

2.2.3 Emulsified Asphalt

Provide emulsified asphalt conforming to ASTM D977. For prime coats the emulsified asphalt can be diluted with up to 1 part emulsion to 1 part water. No dilution is allowed for tack coat applications. The base asphalt used to manufacture the emulsion is required to show a negative spot when tested in accordance with AASHTO T 102 using standard naphtha.

2.2.4 Local/Regional Materials

Use Local/Regional Materials or products extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within a 500 mile radius from the project site, if available from a minimum of three sources. See Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING for cumulative total local material requirements. Tack and prime coat materials may be locally available. Submit documentation indicating distance between manufacturing facility and

the project site. Indicate distance of raw material origin from the project site. Indicate relative dollar value of local/regional materials to total dollar value of products included in project in accordance with LEED BD+C.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION OF SURFACE

Immediately before applying the bituminous coat, remove all loose material, dirt, clay, or other objectionable material from the surface to be treated by means of a power broom or blower supplemented with hand brooms. Apply treatment only when the surface is dry and clean.

3.2 APPLICATION RATE

The exact quantities within the range specified, which may be varied to suit field conditions, will be determined by the Contracting Officer.

3.2.1 Tack Coat

Apply bituminous material for the tack coat in accordance with NCDOT SSRS, Section 605, Asphalt Tack Coat.

3.2.2 Prime Coat

Apply bituminous material for the prime coat in accordance with NCDOT SSRS, Section 600, Prime Coat.

3.3 APPLICATION

3.3.1 General

Following preparation and subsequent inspection of the surface, apply the bituminous prime or tack coat with the bituminous distributor at the specified rate with uniform distribution over the surface to be treated. Properly treat all areas and spots, not capable of being sprayed with the distributor, with the hand spray. Until the succeeding layer of pavement is placed, maintain the surface by protecting the surface against damage and by repairing deficient areas at no additional cost to the Government. If required, spread clean dry sand to effectively blot up any excess bituminous material. No smoking, fires, or flames other than those from the heaters that are a part of the equipment are permitted within 25 feet of heating, distributing, and transferring operations of cutback materials. Prevent all traffic, except for paving equipment used in constructing the surfacing, from using the underlying material, whether primed or not, until the surfacing is completed. The bituminous coat requirements are described herein.

3.3.2 Prime Coat

The prime coat is required if it will be at least 7 days before the asphalt mixture is constructed on the underlying (base course, etc.) compacted material. The type of liquid asphalt and application rate will be as specified herein. Protect the underlying layer from any damage (water, traffic, etc.) until the surfacing is placed. If the Contractor places the surfacing within seven days, the choice of protection measures or actions to be taken is at the Contractor's option. Repair (recompact or replace) damage to the underlying material caused by lack of, or

inadequate, protection by approved methods at no additional cost to the Government. If the Contractor opts to use the prime coat, apply as soon as possible after consolidation of the underlying material. Apply the bituminous material uniformly over the surface to be treated at a pressure range of 25 to 75 psi; the rate will be as specified above in paragraph APPLICATION RATE. To obtain uniform application of the prime coat on the surface treated at the junction of previous and subsequent applications, spread building paper on the surface for a sufficient distance back from the ends of each application to start and stop the prime coat on the paper and to ensure that all sprayers will operate at full force on the surface to be treated. Immediately after application remove and destroy the building paper.

3.3.3 Tack Coat

Apply tack coat at the locations shown on the drawings. A tack coat should be applied to every bound surface (asphalt or concrete pavement) that is being overlaid with asphalt mixture and at transverse and longitudinal joints. Apply the tack coat when the surface to be treated is clean and dry. Immediately following the preparation of the surface for treatment, apply the bituminous material by means of the bituminous distributor, within the limits of temperature specified herein and at a rate as specified above in paragraph APPLICATION RATE. Apply the bituminous material so that uniform distribution is obtained over the entire surface to be treated. Treat lightly coated areas and spots missed by the distributor by spraying with a hand wand or using other approved method. Following the application of bituminous material, allow the surface to cure without being disturbed for period of time necessary to permit setting of the tack coat. Apply the bituminous tack coat only as far in advance of the placing of the overlying layer as required for that day's operation. Maintain and protect the treated surface from damage until the succeeding course of pavement is placed.

3.4 CURING PERIOD

Following application of the bituminous material and prior to application of the succeeding layer of asphalt mixture allow the bituminous coat to cure and water or volatiles to evaporate prior to overlaying. Maintain the tacked surface in good condition until the succeeding layer of pavement is placed, by protecting the surface against damage and by repairing and recoating deficient areas. Allow the prime coat to cure without being disturbed for a period of at least 48 hours or longer, as may be necessary to attain penetration into the treated course. Furnish and spread enough sand to effectively blot up excess bituminous material.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Obtain certificates of compliance for all asphalt material delivered to the project. Obtain samples of the bituminous material under the supervision of the Contracting Officer. The sample may be retained and tested by the Government at no cost to the Contractor.

3.6 SAMPLING AND TESTING

Furnish certified copies of the manufacturer's test reports indicating temperature viscosity relationship for cutback asphalt or asphalt cement, compliance with applicable specified requirements, not less than 5 days before the material is required in the work.

3.6.1 Sampling

Unless otherwise specified, sample bituminous material in accordance with [ASTM D140/D140M](#).

3.6.2 Calibration Test

Furnish all equipment, materials, and labor necessary to calibrate the bituminous distributor. Calibrate using the approved job material and prior to applying the bituminous coat material to the prepared surface. Calibrate the bituminous distributor in accordance with [ASTM D2995](#).

3.6.3 Trial Applications

Before applying the spray application of tack or prime coat, apply three lengths of at least [100 feet](#) for the full width of the distributor bar to evaluate the amount of bituminous material that can be satisfactorily applied.

3.6.3.1 Tack Coat Trial Application Rate

Unless otherwise authorized, apply the trial application rate of bituminous tack coat materials in the amount of [0.05 gallons per square yard](#). Make other trial applications using various amounts of material as may be deemed necessary.

3.6.3.2 Prime Coat Trial Application Rate

Unless otherwise authorized, apply the trial application rate of bituminous materials in the amount of [0.15 gallon per square yard](#). Make other trial applications using various amounts of material as may be deemed necessary.

3.6.4 Sampling and Testing During Construction

Perform quality control sampling and testing as required in paragraph FIELD QUALITY CONTROL.

3.7 TRAFFIC CONTROLS

Keep traffic off surfaces freshly treated with bituminous material. Provide sufficient warning signs and barricades so that traffic will not travel over freshly treated surfaces.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 32 12 16

HOT-MIX ASPHALT (HMA) FOR ROADS
08/09

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS
(AASHTO)

AASHTO M 156 (2013; R 2017) Standard Specification for Requirements for Mixing Plants for Hot-Mixed, Hot-Laid Bituminous Paving Mixtures

ASPHALT INSTITUTE (AI)

AI MS-2 (2015) Asphalt Mix Design Methods

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C136/C136M (2014) Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates

ASTM C566 (2013) Standard Test Method for Total Evaporable Moisture Content of Aggregate by Drying

ASTM D1461 (2017) Standard Test Method for Moisture or Volatile Distillates in Asphalt Mixtures

ASTM D2172/D2172M (2017; E 2018) Standard Test Methods for Quantitative Extraction of Asphalt Binder from Asphalt Mixtures

ASTM D2950/D2950M (2014) Density of Bituminous Concrete in Place by Nuclear Methods

ASTM D3665 (2012; R 2017) Standard Practice for Random Sampling of Construction Materials

ASTM D3666 (2016) Standard Specification for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Testing and Inspecting Road and Paving Materials

ASTM D4125/D4125M (2010) Asphalt Content of Bituminous Mixtures by the Nuclear Method

ASTM D5444 (2015) Mechanical Size Analysis of Extracted Aggregate

ASTM D6307	(2016) Standard Test Method for Asphalt Content of Hot Mix Asphalt by Ignition Method
ASTM D6925	(2014) Standard Test Method for Preparation and Determination of the Relative Density of Hot Mix Asphalt (HMA) Specimens by Means of the Superpave Gyratory Compactor
ASTM D6926	(2016) Standard Practice for Preparation of Asphalt Mixture Specimens Using Marshall Apparatus
ASTM D6927	(2015) Standard Test Method for Marshall Stability and Flow of Bituminous Mixtures

NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION (NCDOT)

NCDOT SSRS	(2018) Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures
NCDOT Asphalt QMS Manual	(2018) Asphalt Quality Management System (QMS) Manual

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Mix Design; G

Quality Control; G

Material Acceptance; G

SD-04 Samples

Asphalt Cement Binder

Aggregates

SD-06 Test Reports

Aggregates; G

QC Monitoring

SD-07 Certificates

Asphalt Cement Binder; G

Testing Laboratory

1.3 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Do not place the hot-mix asphalt upon a wet surface or when the surface temperature of the underlying course is less than specified in Table 1. The temperature requirements may be waived by the Contracting Officer, if requested; however, meet all other requirements, including compaction.

Table 1. Surface Temperature Limitations of Underlying Course	
Mat Thickness, inches	Degrees F
3 or greater	40
Less than 3	45

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Perform the work consisting of pavement courses composed of mineral aggregate and asphalt material heated and mixed in a central mixing plant and placed on a prepared course. HMA designed and constructed in accordance with this section shall conform to the lines, grades, thicknesses, and typical cross sections indicated. Construct each course to the depth, section, or elevation required by the drawings and roll, finish, and approve it before the placement of the next course.

2.1.1 Asphalt Mixing Plant

Plants used for the preparation of hot-mix asphalt shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO M 156 with the following changes:

2.1.1.1 Truck Scales

Weigh the asphalt mixture on approved, certified scales at the Contractor's expense. Inspect and seal scales at least annually by an approved calibration laboratory.

2.1.1.2 Testing Facilities

Provide laboratory facilities at the plant for the use of the Government's acceptance testing and the Contractor's quality control testing.

2.1.1.3 Inspection of Plant

Provide the Contracting Officer with access at all times, to all areas of the plant for checking adequacy of equipment; inspecting operation of the plant; verifying weights, proportions, and material properties; checking the temperatures maintained in the preparation of the mixtures and for taking samples. Provide assistance as requested, for the Government to procure any desired samples.

2.1.1.4 Storage bins

Use of storage bins for temporary storage of hot-mix asphalt will be permitted as follows:

- a. The asphalt mixture may be stored in non-insulated storage bins for a period of time not exceeding 3 hours.
- b. The asphalt mixture may be stored in insulated storage bins for a period of time not exceeding 8 hours. The mix drawn from bins shall meet the same requirements as mix loaded directly into trucks.

2.1.1.2 Hauling Equipment

Provide trucks for hauling hot-mix asphalt having tight, clean, and smooth metal beds. To prevent the mixture from adhering to them, the truck beds shall be lightly coated with a minimum amount of paraffin oil, lime solution, or other approved material. Petroleum based products shall not be used as a release agent. Each truck shall have a suitable cover to protect the mixture from adverse weather. When necessary to ensure that the mixture will be delivered to the site at the specified temperature, truck beds shall be insulated or heated and covers (tarps) shall be securely fastened.

2.1.1.3 Asphalt Pavers

Provide asphalt pavers which are self-propelled, with an activated screed, heated as necessary, and capable of spreading and finishing courses of hot-mix asphalt which will meet the specified thickness, smoothness, and grade. The paver shall have sufficient power to propel itself and the hauling equipment without adversely affecting the finished surface.

2.1.1.3.1 Receiving Hopper

Provide paver with a receiving hopper of sufficient capacity to permit a uniform spreading operation and equipped with a distribution system to place the mixture uniformly in front of the screed without segregation. The screed shall effectively produce a finished surface of the required evenness and texture without tearing, shoving, or gouging the mixture.

2.1.1.3.2 Automatic Grade Controls

Equip the paver with a control system capable of automatically maintaining the specified screed elevation. The control system shall be automatically actuated from either a reference line and/or through a system of mechanical sensors or sensor-directed mechanisms or devices which will maintain the paver screed at a predetermined transverse slope and at the proper elevation to obtain the required surface. The transverse slope controller shall be capable of maintaining the screed at the desired slope within plus or minus 0.1 percent. A transverse slope controller shall not be used to control grade. Provide controls capable of working in conjunction with any of the following attachments:

- a. Ski-type device of not less than 30 feet in length.
- b. Taut stringline set to grade.
- c. Short ski or shoe for joint matching.
- d. Laser control.

2.1.4 Rollers

Rollers shall be in good condition and shall be operated at slow speeds to avoid displacement of the asphalt mixture. The number, type, and weight of rollers shall be sufficient to compact the mixture to the required density while it is still in a workable condition. Do not use equipment which causes excessive crushing of the aggregate.

2.2 AGGREGATES

Provide aggregates consisting of crushed stone, crushed gravel, crushed slag, screenings, natural sand and mineral filler, as required. Submit sufficient materials to produce 200 lb of blended mixture for mix design verification. The portion of material retained on the No. 4 sieve is coarse aggregate. The portion of material passing the No. 4 sieve and retained on the No. 200 sieve is fine aggregate. The portion passing the No. 200 sieve is defined as mineral filler. Submit all aggregate test results and samples to the Contracting Officer at least 14 days prior to start of construction.

2.2.1 Coarse Aggregate

Provide coarse aggregate in accordance with NCDOT SSRS, Section 1012, Aggregate for Asphalt Pavements and Surface Treatments.

2.2.2 Fine Aggregate

Fine aggregate shall be in accordance with NCDOT SSRS, Section 1012, Aggregate for Asphalt Pavements and Surface Treatments.

2.2.3 Mineral Filler

Mineral filler shall be in accordance with NCDOT SSRS, Section 1012, Aggregate for Asphalt Pavements and Surface Treatments.

2.3 ASPHALT CEMENT BINDER

Provide asphalt binder in accordance with NCDOT SSRS, Section 1020, Asphalt Materials and Additives. Submit a 5 gallon sample for mix design verification.

2.4 MIX DESIGN

Mix design shall be in accordance with NCDOT SSRS, Section 610, Asphalt Concrete Plant Mix Pavements.

- a. Asphalt Concrete Surface Course, Type S9.5C
- b. Asphalt Concrete Intermediate Course, Type I19.0C.

2.4.1 JMF Requirements

Submit in writing the job mix formula for approval at least 14 days prior to the start of the test section including as a minimum:

- a. Percent passing each sieve size.
- b. Percent of asphalt cement.

- c. Percent of each aggregate and mineral filler to be used.
- d. Asphalt viscosity grade, penetration grade, or performance grade.
- e. Number of blows of hand-held hammer per side of molded specimen. (NA for Superpave)
- f. Number of gyrations of Superpave gyratory compactor, (NA for Marshall mix design)
- g. Laboratory mixing temperature.
- h. Lab compaction temperature.
- i. Temperature-viscosity relationship of the asphalt cement.
- j. Plot of the combined gradation on the 0.45 power gradation chart, stating the nominal maximum size.
- k. Graphical plots of stability (NA for Superpave), flow (NA for Superpave), air voids, voids in the mineral aggregate, and unit weight versus asphalt content as shown in **AI MS-2**.
- l. Specific gravity and absorption of each aggregate.
- m. Percent natural sand.
- n. Percent particles with 2 or more fractured faces (in coarse aggregate).
- o. Fine aggregate angularity.
- p. Percent flat or elongated particles (in coarse aggregate).
- q. Tensile Strength Ratio(TSR).
- r. Antistrip agent (if required) and amount.
- s. List of all modifiers and amount.
- t. Correlation of hand-held hammer with mechanical hammer (NA for Superpave).
- u. Percentage and properties (asphalt content, binder properties, and aggregate properties) of reclaimed asphalt pavement (RAP) in accordance with paragraph RECYCLED HOT-MIX ASPHALT, if RAP is used.

2.4.2 Adjustments to Field JMF

Keep the Laboratory JMF for each mixture in effect until a new formula is approved in writing by the Contracting Officer. Should a change in sources of any materials be made, perform a new laboratory JMF design and have the new JMF approved before the new material is used. The Contractor will be allowed to adjust the Laboratory JMF within the limits specified in NCDOT SSRS, Section 610, Asphalt Concrete Plant Mix Pavements and NCDOT Asphalt QMS Manual to optimize mix volumetric properties with the approval of the Contracting Officer. Adjustments to the Laboratory JMF shall be applied to the field (plant) established JMF and limited as specified. If adjustments are needed that exceed the limits of Section 610 or the Asphalt QMS Manual, develop a new mix design.

2.5 RECYCLED HOT MIX ASPHALT (HMA)

Recycled HMA shall consist of reclaimed asphalt pavement (RAP), coarse aggregate, fine aggregate, mineral filler, and asphalt cement to produce a consistent gradation and asphalt content and properties. The job mix shall meet the requirements of paragraph MIX DESIGN. The amount of RAP shall not exceed 30 percent.

2.5.1 RAP Aggregates and Asphalt Cement

The blend of aggregates used in the recycled mix shall meet the requirements of paragraph AGGREGATES. Establish the percentage of asphalt in the RAP for the mixture design according to ASTM D2172/D2172M or ASTM D6307 using the appropriate dust correction procedure.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION OF ASPHALT BINDER MATERIAL

Heat the asphalt cement material avoiding local overheating and providing a continuous supply of the asphalt material to the mixer at a uniform temperature. Mixing temperature shall conform to NCDOT SSRS, Section 610, Asphalt Concrete Plant Mix Pavements.

3.2 PREPARATION OF MINERAL AGGREGATE

Heat and dry the aggregate for the mixture prior to mixing. No damage shall occur to the aggregates due to the maximum temperature and rate of heating used. The temperature of the aggregate and mineral filler shall conform to NCDOT SSRS, Section 610, Asphalt Concrete Plant Mix Pavements when the asphalt cement is added. The temperature shall not be lower than is required to obtain complete coating and uniform distribution on the aggregate particles and to provide a mixture of satisfactory workability.

3.3 PREPARATION OF HOT-MIX ASPHALT MIXTURE

Preparation shall conform to NCDOT SSRS, Section 610, Asphalt Concrete Plant Mix Pavements and NCDOT Asphalt QMS Manual.

3.4 PREPARATION OF THE UNDERLYING SURFACE

Immediately before placing the hot mix asphalt, clean the underlying course of dust and debris. Apply a prime coat and/or tack coat in accordance with the contract specifications.

3.5 TEST SECTION

Prior to full production, place a test section for each JMF used. Construct a test section 250 - 500 feet long and two paver passes wide placed for two lanes, with a longitudinal cold joint. The test section shall be of the same thickness as the course which it represents. The underlying grade or pavement structure upon which the test section is to be constructed shall be the same as the remainder of the course represented by the test section. The equipment and personnel used in construction of the test section shall be the same equipment to be used on the remainder of the course represented by the test section. Place the test section as part of the project pavement, as approved by the Contracting Officer.

3.5.1 Sampling and Testing for Test Section

Take one random sample at the plant, triplicate specimens compacted, and tested in accordance with NCDOT ASPHALT QMS. The test results shall be within the tolerances for work to continue. If all test results meet the specified requirements, the test section shall remain as part of the project pavement. If test results exceed the tolerances shown, the test section shall be removed and replaced at no cost to the Government and another test section shall be constructed. The test section shall be paid for with the first lot of paving.

3.5.2 Additional Test Sections

If the initial test section should prove to be unacceptable, make the necessary adjustments to the JMF, plant operation, placing procedures, and/or rolling procedures and place a second test section. Additional test sections, as required, shall be constructed and evaluated for conformance to the specifications. Full production shall not begin until an acceptable section has been constructed and accepted.

3.6 TESTING LABORATORY

Submit certification of compliance and Plant Scale Calibration Certification. Use a laboratory to develop the JMF that meets the requirements of ASTM D3666. The Government will inspect the laboratory equipment and test procedures prior to the start of hot mix operations for conformance to ASTM D3666. The laboratory shall maintain the Corps certification for the duration of the project. A statement signed by the manager of the laboratory stating that it meets these requirements or clearly listing all deficiencies shall be submitted to the Contracting Officer prior to the start of construction. The statement shall contain as a minimum:

- a. Qualifications of personnel; laboratory manager, supervising technician, and testing technicians.
- b. A listing of equipment to be used in developing the job mix.
- c. A copy of the laboratory's quality control system.
- d. Evidence of participation in the AASHTO Materials Reference Laboratory (AMRL) program.

3.7 TRANSPORTING AND PLACING

3.7.1 Transporting

Transport the hot-mix asphalt from the mixing plant to the site in clean, tight vehicles. Schedule deliveries so that placing and compacting of mixture is uniform with minimum stopping and starting of the paver. Provide adequate artificial lighting for night placements. Hauling over freshly placed material will not be permitted until the material has been compacted as specified, and allowed to cool to 140 degrees F. To deliver mix to the paver, use a material transfer vehicle operated to produce continuous forward motion of the paver.

3.7.2 Placing

Place and compact the mix at a temperature suitable for obtaining density,

surface smoothness, and other specified requirements. Upon arrival, place the mixture to the full width by an asphalt paver; it shall be struck off in a uniform layer of such depth that, when the work is completed, it will have the required thickness and conform to the grade and contour indicated. Regulate the speed of the paver to eliminate pulling and tearing of the asphalt mat. Unless otherwise permitted, placement of the mixture shall begin along the centerline of a crowned section or on the high side of areas with a one-way slope. Place the mixture in consecutive adjacent strips having a minimum width of 10 feet. The longitudinal joint in one course shall offset the longitudinal joint in the course immediately below by at least 1 foot; however, the joint in the surface course shall be at the centerline of the pavement. Transverse joints in one course shall be offset by at least 10 feet from transverse joints in the previous course. Transverse joints in adjacent lanes shall be offset a minimum of 10 feet. On isolated areas where irregularities or unavoidable obstacles make the use of mechanical spreading and finishing equipment impractical, the mixture may be spread and luted by hand tools.

3.8 COMPACTION OF MIXTURE

After placing, the mixture shall be thoroughly and uniformly compacted by rolling. Compact the surface as soon as possible without causing displacement, cracking or shoving. The sequence of rolling operations and the type of rollers used shall be at the discretion of the Contractor. The speed of the roller shall, at all times, be sufficiently slow to avoid displacement of the hot mixture and be effective in compaction. Any displacement occurring as a result of reversing the direction of the roller, or from any other cause, shall be corrected at once. Furnish sufficient rollers to handle the output of the plant. Continue rolling until the surface is of uniform texture, true to grade and cross section, and the required field density is obtained. To prevent adhesion of the mixture to the roller, keep the wheels properly moistened but excessive water will not be permitted. In areas not accessible to the roller, the mixture shall be thoroughly compacted with hand tampers. Any mixture that becomes loose and broken, mixed with dirt, contains check-cracking, or is in any way defective shall be removed full depth, replaced with fresh hot mixture and immediately compacted to conform to the surrounding area. This work shall be done at the Contractor's expense. Skin patching will not be allowed.

3.9 JOINTS

The formation of joints shall be performed ensuring a continuous bond between the courses and to obtain the required density. All joints shall have the same texture as other sections of the course and meet the requirements for smoothness and grade.

3.9.1 Transverse Joints

Do not pass the roller over the unprotected end of the freshly laid mixture, except when necessary to form a transverse joint. When necessary to form a transverse joint, it shall be made by means of placing a bulkhead or by tapering the course. The tapered edge shall be cut back to its full depth and width on a straight line to expose a vertical face prior to placing material at the joint. Remove the cutback material from the project. In both methods, all contact surfaces shall be given a light tack coat of asphalt material before placing any fresh mixture against the joint.

3.9.2 Longitudinal Joints

Longitudinal joints which are irregular, damaged, uncompacted, cold (less than 175 degrees F at the time of placing adjacent lanes), or otherwise defective, shall be cut back a maximum of 3 inches from the top of the course with a cutting wheel to expose a clean, sound vertical surface for the full depth of the course. All cutback material shall be removed from the project. All contact surfaces shall be given a light tack coat of asphalt material prior to placing any fresh mixture against the joint. The Contractor will be allowed to use an alternate method if it can be demonstrated that density, smoothness, and texture can be met.

3.10 QUALITY CONTROL

3.10.1 General Quality Control Requirements

Develop and submit an approved Quality Control Plan. Submit aggregate and QC test results. Do not produce hot-mix asphalt for payment until the quality control plan has been approved addressing all elements which affect the quality of the pavement including, but not limited to:

- a. Mix Design
- b. Aggregate Grading
- c. Quality of Materials
- d. Stockpile Management
- e. Proportioning
- f. Mixing and Transportation
- g. Mixture Volumetrics
- h. Moisture Content of Mixtures
- i. Placing and Finishing
- j. Joints
- k. Compaction
- l. Surface Smoothness

3.10.2 Testing Laboratory

Provide a fully equipped asphalt laboratory located at the plant or job site and meeting the pertinent requirements in ASTM D3666. Laboratory facilities shall be kept clean and all equipment maintained in proper working condition. The Contracting Officer shall be permitted unrestricted access to inspect the Contractor's laboratory facility, to witness quality control activities, and to perform any check testing desired. The Contracting Officer will advise the Contractor in writing of any noted deficiencies concerning the laboratory facility, equipment, supplies, or testing personnel and procedures. When the deficiencies are serious enough to adversely affect test results, the incorporation of the materials into the work shall be suspended immediately and will not be permitted to resume until the deficiencies are corrected.

3.10.3 Quality Control Testing

Perform all quality control tests applicable to these specifications and as set forth in the Quality Control Program. The testing program shall include, but shall not be limited to, tests for the control of asphalt content, aggregate gradation, temperatures, aggregate moisture, moisture in the asphalt mixture, laboratory air voids, stability (NA for Superpave), flow (NA for Superpave), in-place density, grade and smoothness. Develop a Quality Control Testing Plan as part of the Quality Control Program.

3.10.3.1 Asphalt Content

A minimum of two tests to determine asphalt content will be performed per lot (a lot is defined in paragraph MATERIAL ACCEPTANCE and PERCENT PAYMENT) by one of the following methods: the extraction method in accordance with [ASTM D2172/D2172M](#), Method A or B, the ignition method in accordance with [ASTM D6307](#), or the nuclear method in accordance with [ASTM D4125/D4125M](#). Calibrate the ignition oven or the nuclear gauge for the specific mix being used. For the extraction method, determine the weight of ash, as described in [ASTM D2172/D2172M](#), as part of the first extraction test performed at the beginning of plant production; and as part of every tenth extraction test performed thereafter, for the duration of plant production. The last weight of ash value obtained shall be used in the calculation of the asphalt content for the mixture.

3.10.3.2 Gradation

Determine aggregate gradations a minimum of twice per lot from mechanical analysis of recovered aggregate in accordance with [ASTM D5444](#). When asphalt content is determined by the ignition oven or nuclear method, aggregate gradation shall be determined from hot bin samples on batch plants, or from the cold feed on drum mix plants. For batch plants, test aggregates in accordance with [ASTM C136/C136M](#) using actual batch weights to determine the combined aggregate gradation of the mixture.

3.10.3.3 Temperatures

Check temperatures at least four times per lot, at necessary locations, to determine the temperature at the dryer, the asphalt cement in the storage tank, the asphalt mixture at the plant, and the asphalt mixture at the job site.

3.10.3.4 Aggregate Moisture

Determine the moisture content of aggregate used for production a minimum of once per lot in accordance with [ASTM C566](#).

3.10.3.5 Moisture Content of Mixture

Determine the moisture content of the mixture at least once per lot in accordance with [ASTM D1461](#) or an approved alternate procedure.

3.10.3.6 Laboratory Air Voids, Marshall Stability and Flow

Take mixture samples at least four times per lot compacted into specimens, using 50 blows per side with the hand-held Marshall hammer as described in [ASTM D6926](#). When the Superpave gyratory compactor is used, mixes will be compacted to 50 gyrations in accordance with [ASTM D6925](#). Hot-mix provided

under the DOT Superpave option shall be compacted in accordance with the DOT requirements. After compaction, determine the laboratory air voids of each specimen. Stability and flow shall be determined for the Marshall-compact specimens, in accordance with [ASTM D6927](#).

3.10.3.7 In-Place Density

Conduct any necessary testing to ensure the specified density is achieved. A nuclear gauge may be used to monitor pavement density in accordance with [ASTM D2950/D2950M](#).

3.10.3.8 Grade and Smoothness

Conduct the necessary checks to ensure the grade and smoothness requirements are met in accordance with paragraphs MATERIAL ACCEPTANCE and PERCENT PAYMENT.

3.10.3.9 Additional Testing

Any additional testing, which the Contractor deems necessary to control the process, may be performed at the Contractor's option.

3.10.3.10 QC Monitoring

Submit all QC test results to the Contracting Officer on a daily basis as the tests are performed. The Contracting Officer reserves the right to monitor any of the Contractor's quality control testing and to perform duplicate testing as a check to the Contractor's quality control testing.

3.10.4 Sampling

When directed by the Contracting Officer, sample and test any material which appears inconsistent with similar material being produced, unless such material is voluntarily removed and replaced or deficiencies corrected by the Contractor. All sampling shall be in accordance with standard procedures specified.

3.10.5 Control Charts

For process control, establish and maintain linear control charts on both individual samples and the running average of last four samples for the parameters listed in Table 2, as a minimum. These control charts shall be posted as directed by the Contracting Officer and kept current at all times. The control charts shall identify the project number, the test parameter being plotted, the individual sample numbers, the Action and Suspension Limits listed in Table 2 applicable to the test parameter being plotted, and the Contractor's test results. Target values from the JMF shall also be shown on the control charts as indicators of central tendency for the cumulative percent passing, asphalt content, and laboratory air voids parameters. When the test results exceed either applicable Action Limit, take immediate steps to bring the process back in control. When the test results exceed either applicable Suspension Limit, halt production until the problem is solved. Use the control charts as part of the process control system for identifying trends so that potential problems can be corrected before they occur. Make decisions concerning mix modifications based on analysis of the results provided in the control charts. The Quality Control Plan shall indicate the appropriate action to be taken to bring the process into control when certain parameters exceed their Action Limits.

Table 2. Action and Suspension Limits for the Parameters to be Plotted on Individual and Running Average Control Charts				
	Individual Samples		Running Average of Last Four Samples	
Parameter to be Plotted	Action Limit	Suspension Limit	Action Limit	Suspension Limit
No. 4 sieve, Cumulative percent passing, deviation for JMF target; plus or minus values	6	8	4	5
No. 30 sieve, Cumulative percent passing, deviation for JMF target; plus or minus values	4	6	3	4
No. 200 sieve, Cumulative percent passing, deviation for JMF target; plus or minus values	1.4	2.0	1.1	1.5
Stability, pounds (minimum) (NA for Superpave)				
50 Blow JMF	1000	900	1100	1000
75 Blow JMF	1800	1700	1900	1800
Flow, 0.01 inch (NA for Superpave)				
50 Blow JMF	8 min.	7 min.	9 min.	8 min.
	18 max.	19 max.	17 max.	18 max.
75 Blow JMF	8 min.	7 min.	9 min.	8 min.
	16 max.	17 max.	15 max.	16 max.
Asphalt content, percent deviation from JMF target; plus or minus value	0.4	0.5	0.2	0.3
Laboratory Air Voids, percent deviation from JMF target value	No specific action and suspension limits set since this parameter is used to determine percent payment			
In-place Mat Density, percent of TMD	No specific action and suspension limits set since this parameter is used to determine percent payment			
In-place Joint Density, percent of TMD	No specific action and suspension limits set since this parameter is used to determine percent payment			

3.11 MATERIAL ACCEPTANCE

Testing for acceptability of work will be performed by an independent laboratory hired by the Contractor. Forward test results and payment calculations daily to the Contracting Officer. Acceptance of the plant produced mix and in-place requirements will be on a lot to lot basis. A standard lot for all requirements will be equal to 8 hours of production. Where appropriate, adjustment in payment for individual lots of hot-mix asphalt will be made based on in-place density, laboratory air voids, grade

and smoothness in accordance with the following paragraphs. Grade and surface smoothness determinations will be made on the lot as a whole. Exceptions or adjustments to this will be made in situations where the mix within one lot is placed as part of both the intermediate and surface courses, thus grade and smoothness measurements for the entire lot cannot be made. In order to evaluate laboratory air voids and in-place (field) density, each lot will be divided into four equal sublots.

3.11.1 Sublot Sampling

One random mixture sample for determining laboratory air voids, theoretical maximum density, and for any additional testing the Contracting Officer desires, will be taken from a loaded truck delivering mixture to each sublot, or other appropriate location for each sublot. All samples will be selected randomly, using commonly recognized methods of assuring randomness conforming to [ASTM D3665](#) and employing tables of random numbers or computer programs. Laboratory air voids will be determined from three laboratory compacted specimens of each sublot sample in accordance with [ASTM D6926](#). The specimens will be compacted within 2 hours of the time the mixture was loaded into trucks at the asphalt plant. Samples will not be reheated prior to compaction and insulated containers will be used as necessary to maintain the temperature.

3.11.2 Additional Sampling and Testing

The Contracting Officer reserves the right to direct additional samples and tests for any area which appears to deviate from the specification requirements. The cost of any additional testing will be paid for by the Government. Testing in these areas will be in addition to the lot testing, and the requirements for these areas will be the same as those for a lot.

3.11.3 Grade

The final wearing surface of pavement shall conform to the elevations and cross sections shown and shall vary not more than [0.05 foot](#) from the plan grade established and approved at site of work. Finished surfaces at juncture with other pavements shall coincide with finished surfaces of abutting pavements. Deviation from the plan elevation will not be permitted in areas of pavements where closer conformance with planned elevation is required for the proper functioning of drainage and other appurtenant structures involved. The grade will be determined by running lines of levels at intervals of [25 feet](#), or less, longitudinally and transversely, to determine the elevation of the completed pavement surface. Within 5 working days, after the completion of a particular lot incorporating the final wearing surface, test the final wearing surface of the pavement for conformance with the specified plan grade. Diamond grinding may be used to remove high spots to meet grade requirements. Skin patching for correcting low areas or planing or milling for correcting high areas will not be permitted.

3.11.4 Surface Smoothness

Use one of the following methods to test and evaluate surface smoothness of the pavement. Perform all testing in the presence of the Contracting Officer. Keep detailed notes of the results of the testing and furnish a copy to the Government immediately after each day's testing. Where drawings show required deviations from a plane surface (crowns, drainage inlets, etc.), the surface shall be finished to meet the approval of the Contracting Officer.

3.11.4.1 Smoothness Requirements

3.11.4.1.1 Straightedge Testing

The finished surfaces of the pavements shall have no abrupt change of $\frac{1}{4}$ inch or more, and all pavements shall be within the tolerances of $\frac{1}{4}$ inch in both the longitudinal and transverse directions, when tested with an approved 12 feet straightedge.

3.11.4.2 Testing Method

After the final rolling, but not later than 24 hours after placement, test the surface of the pavement in each entire lot in such a manner as to reveal all surface irregularities exceeding the tolerances specified above. Separate testing of individual sublots is not required. If any pavement areas are ground, these areas shall be retested immediately after grinding. Test each lot of the pavement in both a longitudinal and a transverse direction on parallel lines. Set the transverse lines 15 feet or less apart, as directed. The longitudinal lines shall be at the centerline of each paving lane for lanes less than 20 feet wide and at the third points for lanes 20 feet or wider. Also test other areas having obvious deviations. Longitudinal testing lines shall be continuous across all joints.

3.11.4.2.1 Straightedge Testing

Hold the straightedge in contact with the surface and move it ahead one-half the length of the straightedge for each successive measurement. Determine the amount of surface irregularity by placing the freestanding (unleveled) straightedge on the pavement surface and allowing it to rest upon the two highest spots covered by its length, and measuring the maximum gap between the straightedge and the pavement surface in the area between these two high points.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 32 13 13.06

PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE PAVEMENT FOR ROADS AND SITE FACILITIES

11/11

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN CONCRETE INSTITUTE INTERNATIONAL (ACI)

ACI 301	(2016) Specifications for Structural Concrete
ACI 305.1	(2014) Specification for Hot Weather Concreting
ACI 306.1	(1990; R 2002) Standard Specification for Cold Weather Concreting
ACI 325.12R	(2002; R 2013) Guide for Design of Jointed Concrete Pavements for Streets and Local Roads
ACI 330R	(2008) Guide for the Design and Construction of Concrete Parking Lots

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C1077	(2017) Standard Practice for Agencies Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Testing Agency Evaluation
ASTM C143/C143M	(2015) Standard Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic-Cement Concrete
ASTM C1549	(2016) Standard Test Method for Determination of Solar Reflectance Near Ambient Temperature Using a Portable Solar Reflectometer
ASTM C172/C172M	(2017) Standard Practice for Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete
ASTM C231/C231M	(2017a) Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method
ASTM C31/C31M	(2018b) Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field
ASTM C494/C494M	(2017) Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete

ASTM C78/C78M (2018) Standard Test Method for Flexural Strength of Concrete (Using Simple Beam with Third-Point Loading)

ASTM C94/C94M (2017a) Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

UFC 3-250-01 (2016) Pavement Design for Roads and Parking Areas

NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION (NCDOT)

NCDOT SSRS (2018) Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures

1.2 DESIGN

This materials and construction specification is intended to be used on projects where the design was completed using UFC 3-250-01 Pavement Design for Roads, Streets, Walks, and Open Storage Areas, ACI 330R, Guide for the Design and Construction of Concrete Parking Lots or ACI 325.12R, Guide for Design of Jointed Concrete Pavements for Streets and Local Roads, or equivalent.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

Portland cement concrete pavement must use Section 32 11 23 AGGREGATE BASE COURSES, in addition to this section.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Curing Materials; G

Admixtures; G

Submit a complete list of materials including type, brand and applicable reference specifications.

Dowel; G

Reinforcement; G

Cementitious Materials; G

Aggregate; G

Albedo

Provide information identifying the reflectance of the pavement.

SD-05 Design Data

Concrete Mix Design; G

Thirty days minimum prior to concrete placement, submit a mix design, with applicable tests, for each strength and type of concrete for approval. Submit a complete list of materials including type; brand; source and amount of cement, fly ash, slag, and admixtures; and applicable reference specifications. Provide mix proportion data using at least three different water-cement ratios for each type of mixture, which will produce a range of strength encompassing those required for each class and type of concrete required. Submittal must clearly indicate where each mix design will be used when more than one mix design is submitted. Obtain acknowledgement of approvals prior to concrete placement. Submit a new mix design for each material source change.

SD-06 Test Reports

Aggregate Tests; G

Concrete Slump Tests; G

Air Content Tests; G

Flexural Strength Tests; G

Cementitious Materials; G

SD-07 Certificates

Ready-mixed Concrete Plant; G

Batch Tickets; G

Cementitious Materials; G

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

ASTM C94/C94M.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6.1 Ready-mixed Concrete Plant Certification

Unless otherwise approved by the Contracting Officer, ready mixed concrete must be produced and provided by a National Ready-Mix Concrete Association (NRMCA) certified plant. If a volumetric mobile mixer is used to produce the concrete, rather than ready-mixed concrete, the mixer(s) must conform to the standards of the Volumetric Mixer Manufacturers Bureau (VMMB). Verification must be made by a current VMMB conformance plate affixed to the volumetric mixer equipment.

1.6.2 Contractor Qualifications

Unless waived by the Contracting Officer, the Contractor must meet one of

the following criteria:

- a. Contractor must have at least one National Ready Mixed Concrete Association (NRMCA) certified concrete craftsman and at least one American Concrete Institute (ACI) Flatwork Finisher Certified craftsman on site, overseeing each placement crew during all concrete placement.
- b. Contractor must have no less than three NRMCA certified concrete installers and at least two American Concrete Institute (ACI) Flatwork Finisher Certified installers, who must be on site working as members of each placement crew during all concrete placement.

1.6.3 Required Information

Submit copies of laboratory test reports showing that the mix has been successfully tested to produce concrete with the properties specified and that mix will be suitable for the job conditions. The laboratory test reports must include mill test and all other test for cementitious materials, aggregates, and admixtures. Provide maximum nominal aggregate size, combined aggregate gradation analysis, percentage retained and passing sieve, and a graph of percentage retained versus sieve size. Submit test reports along with the concrete mix design. Sampling and testing of materials, concrete mix design, sampling and testing in the field must be performed by a commercial testing laboratory which conforms to [ASTM C1077](#). The laboratory must be approved in writing by the Contracting Officer.

1.6.4 Batch Tickets

[ASTM C94/C94M](#). Submit mandatory batch ticket information for each load of ready-mixed concrete.

1.6.5 Field-Constructed Mockup

Install a minimum [400 square feet](#) to demonstrate typical joints, surface finish, texture, color, thickness, and standard of workmanship. Test panels must be placed using the mixture proportions, materials, and equipment as proposed for the project. Test mock up panels in accordance with requirements in FIELD QUALITY CONTROL.

When a test panel does not meet one or more of the requirements, the test panel must be rejected, removed, and replaced at the Contractor's expense. If the test panels are acceptable, they may be incorporated into the project with the approval of the Contracting Officer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

2.1.1 Cementitious Materials

[Cementitious materials in concrete mix shall be in accordance with NCDOT SSRS, Section 1000-3, Portland Cement Concrete for Pavement and Section 1024-1, Portland Cement.](#)

2.1.2 Water

[Water must conform to NCDOT SSRS, Section 1024-4, Water.](#)

2.1.1.3 Aggregate

Aggregate must conform to NCDOT SSRS, Section 1014, Aggregate for Portland Cement Concrete.

2.1.1.4 Admixtures

Admixture shall conform to NCDOT SSRS, Section 1024-3, Admixtures.

2.1.1.5 Reinforcement

Reinforcement shall conform to NCDOT SSRS, Section 1070, Reinforcing Steel.

2.1.1.6 Curing Materials

Curing materials shall conform to NCDOT SSRS, Section 1026, Curing Agents for Concrete.

2.1.1.7 Joint Fillers and Sealants

Joint Fillers and Sealants shall conform to NCDOT SSRS, Section 1028, Joint Materials.

2.2 CONCRETE PAVEMENT

2.2.1 Joint Layout Drawings

If jointing requirements on the project drawings are not compatible with the proposed placement sequence, submit a joint layout plan shop drawing to the Contracting Officer for approval. No work must be allowed to start until the joint layout plan is approved. The joint layout plan must indicate and describe in the detail the proposed jointing plan for contraction joints, expansion joints, and construction joints, in accordance with the following:

- a. Indicate locations of contraction joints, construction joints, and expansion joints. Spacing between contraction joints must not exceed 15 feet unless noted otherwise or approved by the Contracting Officer.
- b. The larger dimension of a panel must not be greater than 125% of the smaller dimension.
- c. The minimum angle between two intersecting joints must be 80 degrees, unless noted otherwise or approved by the Contracting Officer.
- d. Joints must intersect pavement-free edges at a 90 degree angle the pavement edge and must extend straight for a minimum of 1.5 feet from the pavement edge, where possible.
- e. Align joints of adjacent panels.
- f. Align joints in attached curbs with joints in pavement when possible.
- g. Ensure joint depth, widths, and dimensions are specified.
- h. Minimum contraction joint depth must be 1/4 of the pavement thickness. The minimum joint width must be 1/8 inch.
- i. Use expansion joints only where pavement abuts buildings, foundations,

manholes, and other fixed objects.

2.2.2 Albedo

Provide a system with a minimum initial Solar Reflectance of at least 0.33 and a 3-year aged of 0.28 as tested in accordance with ASTM C1549.

2.3 CONTRACTOR-FURNISHED MIX DESIGN

Contractor-furnished concrete mix must be designed in accordance with NCDOT SSRS, Section 1000-3, Portland Cement for Concrete Pavement.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 FORMS

3.1.1 Construction

Construct forms to be removable without damaging the concrete.

3.1.2 Coating

Before placing the concrete, coat the contact surfaces of forms except existing pavement sections where bonding is required, with a non-staining mineral oil, non-staining form coating compound, biodegradable form release agent, or two coats of nitro-cellulose lacquer. When using existing pavement as a form, clean existing concrete and then coat with asphalt emulsion bondbreaker before concrete is placed.

3.1.3 Grade and Alignment

Check and correct grade elevations and alignment of the forms immediately before placing the concrete.

3.2 REINFORCEMENT

3.2.1 Dowel Bars

Install bars accurately aligned, vertically and horizontally, at indicated locations and to the dimensions and tolerances indicated. Before installation thoroughly grease the sliding portion of each dowel. Dowels must remain in position during concrete placement and curing.

3.2.2 Coated Dowel Bars

Install bars, accurately aligned vertically and horizontally, at indicated locations and to the dimensions and tolerances indicated. Reject coatings which are perforated, cracked or otherwise damaged. While handling avoid scuffing or gouging of the coatings.

3.2.3 Tie Bars

Install bars, accurately aligned horizontally and vertically, at indicated locations. For slipform construction, insert bent tie bars by hand or other approved means.

3.2.4 Setting Slab Reinforcement

Reinforcement must be positioned on suitable chairs prior to concrete

placement. At expansion, contraction and construction joints, place the reinforcement as indicated. Reinforcement, when placed in concrete, must be free of mud, oil, scale or other foreign materials. Place reinforcement accurately and wire securely. The laps at splices must be **12 inches** minimum and the distances from ends and sides of slabs and joints must be as indicated.

3.3 MEASURING, MIXING, CONVEYING, AND PLACING CONCRETE

3.3.1 Measuring

ASTM C94/C94M.

3.3.2 Mixing

ASTM C94/C94M, except as modified herein. Begin mixing within 30 minutes after cement has been added to aggregates. When the air temperature is greater than **85 degrees F**, place concrete within 60 minutes. With the approval of the Contracting Officer, a hydration stabilizer admixture meeting the requirements of **ASTM C494/C494M** Type D, may be used to extend the placement time to 90 minutes. Additional water may be added to bring slump within required limits as specified in Section 11.7 of **ASTM C94/C94M**, provided that the specified water-cement ratio is not exceeded.

3.3.3 Conveying

ASTM C94/C94M.

3.3.4 Placing

Follow guidance of **ACI 301**, except as modified herein. Do not exceed a free vertical drop of **5 feet** from the point of discharge. Deposit concrete either directly from the transporting equipment or by conveyor on to the pre-wetted subgrade or subbase, unless otherwise specified. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or subbase. Deposit the concrete between the forms to an approximately uniform height. Place concrete continuously at a uniform rate, with minimum amount of segregation, without damage to the grade and without unscheduled stops except for equipment failure or other emergencies. If this occurs within **10 feet** of a previously placed expansion joint, remove concrete back to joint, repair any damage to grade, install a construction joint and continue placing concrete only after cause of the stop has been corrected.

3.3.5 Vibration

Immediately after spreading concrete, consolidate concrete with internal type vibrating equipment along the boundaries of all slabs regardless of slab thickness, and interior of all concrete slabs **6 inches** or more in thickness. Limit duration of vibration to that necessary to produce consolidation of concrete. Excessive vibration will not be permitted. Vibrators must not be operated in concrete at one location for more than 15 seconds. Vibrating equipment of a type approved by the Contracting Officer may be used to consolidate concrete in unreinforced pavement slabs less than **6 inches** thick.

3.3.5.1 Vibrating Equipment

Operate equipment, except hand-manipulated equipment, ahead of the finishing machine. Select the number of vibrating units and power of each

unit to properly consolidate the concrete. Mount units on a frame that is capable of vertical movement and, when necessary, radial movement, so vibrators may be operated at any desired depth within the slab or be completely withdrawn from the concrete. Clear distance between frame-mounted vibrating units that have spuds that extend into the slab at intervals across the paving lane must not exceed 30 inches. Distance between end of vibrating tube and side form must not exceed 2 inches. For pavements less than 10 inches thick, operate vibrators at mid-depth parallel with or at a slight angle to the subbase. For thicker pavements, angle vibrators toward the vertical, with vibrator tip preferably about 2 inches from subbase, and top of vibrator a few inches below pavement surface. Vibrators may be pneumatic, gas driven, or electric, and must be operated at frequencies within the concrete of not less than 8,000 vibrations per minute. Amplitude of vibration must be such that noticeable vibrations occur at 1.5 foot radius when the vibrator is inserted in the concrete to the depth specified.

3.3.6 Cold Weather

Except with authorization, do not place concrete when ambient temperature is below 40 degrees F or when concrete is likely to be subjected to freezing temperatures within 24 hours. When authorized, when concrete is likely to be subjected to freezing within 24 hours after placing, heat concrete materials so that temperature of concrete when deposited is between 65 and 80 degrees F. Methods of heating materials are subject to approval of the Contracting Officer. Do not heat mixing water above 165 degrees F. Remove lumps of frozen material and ice from aggregates before placing aggregates in mixer. Follow practices found in ACI 306.1.

3.3.7 Hot Weather

Maintain required concrete temperature in accordance with Figure NRMCA NOMOGRAPH FOR ESTIMATING EVAPORATION RATE ON THE BASIS OF MENZEL FORMULA in ACI 305.1 to prevent evaporation rate from exceeding 0.2 pound of water per square foot of exposed concrete per hour. Cool ingredients before mixing or use other suitable means to control concrete temperature and prevent rapid drying of newly placed concrete. After placement, use fog spray, apply monomolecular film, or use other suitable means to reduce the evaporation rate. Start curing when surface of fresh concrete is sufficiently hard to permit curing without damage. Cool underlying material by sprinkling lightly with water before placing concrete. Follow practices found in ACI 305.1.

3.4 PAVING

Pavement must be constructed with paving and finishing equipment utilizing fixed forms.

3.4.1 Consolidation

The paver vibrators must be inserted into the concrete not closer to the underlying material than 2 inches. The vibrators or tamping units in front of the paver must be automatically controlled so that they stop immediately as forward motion ceases. Excessive vibration must not be permitted. Concrete in small, odd-shaped slabs or in locations inaccessible to the paver mounted vibration equipment must be vibrated with a hand-operated immersion vibrator. Vibrators must not be used to transport or spread the concrete.

3.4.2 Operation

When the paver is operated between or adjacent to previously constructed pavement (fill-in lanes), provisions must be made to prevent damage to the previously constructed pavement, including keeping the existing pavement surface free of debris, and placing rubber mats beneath the paver tracks. Transversely oscillating screeds and extrusion plates must overlap the existing pavement the minimum possible, but in no case more than 8 inches.

3.4.3 Required Results

The paver-finisher must be operated to produce a thoroughly consolidated slab throughout, true to line and grade within specified tolerances. The paver-finishing operation must produce a surface finish free of irregularities, tears, voids of any kind, and other discontinuities. It must produce only a minimum of paste at the surface. Multiple passes of the paver-finisher must not be permitted. The equipment and its operation must produce a finished surface requiring no hand finishing, other than the use of cutting straightedges, except in very infrequent instances. No water, other than true fog sprays (mist), must be applied to the concrete surface during paving and finishing.

3.4.4 Fixed Form Paving

Forms must be steel, except that wood forms may be used for curves having a radius of 150 feet or less, and for fillets. Forms may be built up with metal or wood, added only to the base, to provide an increase in depth of not more than 25 percent. The base width of the form must be not less than eight-tenths of the vertical height of the form, except that forms 8 inches or less in vertical height must have a base width not less than the vertical height of the form. Wood forms for curves and fillets must be adequate in strength and rigidly braced. Forms must be set on firm material cut true to grade so that each form section when placed will be firmly in contact with the underlying layer for its entire base. Forms must not be set on blocks or on built-up spots of underlying material. Forms must remain in place at least 12 hours after the concrete has been placed. Forms must be removed without injuring the concrete.

3.4.5 Placing Reinforcing Steel

Reinforcement must be positioned on suitable chairs securely fastened to the subgrade prior to concrete placement. If reinforcing for Continuously Reinforced Concrete Pavement (CRCP) is required, the entire operating procedure and equipment proposed must be submitted for approval at least 30 days prior to proposed start of paving.

3.4.6 Placing Dowels and Tie Bars

Dowels must be installed with alignment not greater than 1/8 inch per ft. Except as otherwise specified below, location of dowels must be within a horizontal tolerance of plus or minus 5/8 inch and a vertical tolerance of plus or minus 3/16 inch. The portion of each dowel intended to move within the concrete or expansion cap must be painted with one coat of rust inhibiting primer paint, and then oiled just prior to placement. Dowels and tie bars in joints must be omitted when the center of the dowel or tie bar is located within a horizontal distance from an intersecting joint equal to or less than one-fourth of the slab thickness.

3.4.6.1 Contraction Joints

Dowels and tie bars in longitudinal and transverse contraction joints within the paving lane must be held securely in place by means of rigid metal basket assemblies. The dowels and tie bars must be welded to the assembly or held firmly by mechanical locking arrangements that will prevent them from becoming distorted during paving operations. The basket assemblies must be held securely in the proper location by means of suitable anchors.

3.4.6.2 Construction Joints-Fixed Form Paving

Installation of dowels and tie bars must be by the bonded-in-place method, supported by means of devices fastened to the forms. Installation by removing and replacing in preformed holes will not be permitted.

3.4.6.3 Dowels Installed in Hardened Concrete

Installation must be by bonding the dowels into holes drilled into the hardened concrete. Holes approximately 1/8 inch greater in diameter than the dowels must be drilled into the hardened concrete. Dowels must be bonded in the drilled holes using epoxy resin injected at the back of the hole before installing the dowel and extruded to the collar during insertion of the dowel so as to completely fill the void around the dowel. Application by buttering the dowel is not permitted. The dowels must be held in alignment at the collar of the hole, after insertion and before the grout hardens, by means of a suitable metal or plastic collar fitted around the dowel. The vertical alignment of the dowels must be checked by placing the straightedge on the surface of the pavement over the top of the dowel and measuring the vertical distance between the straightedge and the beginning and ending point of the exposed part of the dowel.

3.4.6.4 Expansion Joints

Dowels in expansion joints must be installed by the bonded-in-place method or by bonding into holes drilled in hardened concrete, using procedures specified above.

3.5 FINISHING CONCRETE

Start finishing operations immediately after placement of concrete. Use finishing machine, except hand finishing may be used in emergencies and for concrete slabs in inaccessible locations or of such shapes or sizes that machine finishing is impracticable. Finish pavement surface on both sides of a joint to the same grade. Finish formed joints from a securely supported transverse bridge. Provide hand finishing equipment for use at all times. Transverse and longitudinal surface tolerances must not exceed 1/4 inch in 10 feet.

3.5.1 Side Form Finishing

Strike off and screed concrete to the required crown or slope as indicated, and cross-section by a power-driven transverse finishing machine. Transverse rotating tube or pipe is not permitted unless approved by the Contracting Officer. Elevation of concrete must be such that, when consolidated and finished, pavement surface will be adequately consolidated and at the required grade. Equip finishing machine with two screeds that are readily and accurately adjustable for changes in pavement indicated crown or slope and compensation for wear and other causes. Make as many

passes over each area of pavement and at such intervals as necessary to give proper compaction, retention of coarse aggregate near the finished surface, and a surface of uniform texture, true to grade and crown or slope. Do not permit excessive operation over an area, which will result in an excess of mortar and water being brought to the surface.

3.5.1.1 Equipment Operation

Maintain the travel of machine on the forms without lifting, wobbling, or other variation of the machine which tend to affect the precision of concrete finish. Keep the tops of the forms clean by a device attached to the machine. During the first pass of the finishing machine, maintain a uniform ridge of concrete ahead of the front screed for its entire length.

3.5.1.2 Joint Finish

Before concrete is hardened, correct edge slump of pavement, exclusive of edge rounding, in excess of 0.02 foot. Finish concrete surface on each side of construction joints to the same plane, and correct deviations before newly placed concrete has hardened.

3.5.1.3 Hand Finishing

Strike-off and screed surface of concrete to elevations slightly above finish grade so that when concrete is consolidated and finished pavement surface is at the indicated elevation. Vibrate entire surface until required compaction and reduction of surface voids is secured with a strike-off template.

3.5.1.4 Longitudinal Floating

After initial finishing, further smooth and consolidate concrete by means of hand-operated longitudinal floats. Use floats that are not less than 12 feet long and 6 inches wide and stiffened to prevent flexing and warping.

3.5.2 Texturing

Before the surface sheen has disappeared and before the concrete hardens, the surface of the pavement must be given a texture as described herein. Following initial texturing on the first day of placement, the Placing Foreman, Contracting Officer representative, and a representative of the Using Agency must inspect the texturing for compliance with design requirements. After curing is complete, all textured surfaces must be thoroughly power broomed to remove all debris. The concrete in areas of recesses for tie-down anchors, lighting fixtures, and other outlets in the pavement must be finished to provide a surface of the same texture as the surrounding area.

3.5.2.1 Burlap Drag Finish

Before concrete becomes non-plastic, finish the surface of the slab by dragging on the surface a strip of clean, wet burlap measuring from 3 to 10 feet long and 2 feet wider than the width of the pavement. Select dimension of burlap drag so that at least 3 feet of the material is in contact with the pavement. Drag the surface so as to produce a finished surface with a fine granular or sandy texture without leaving disfiguring marks.

3.5.3 Edging

At the time the concrete has attained a degree of hardness suitable for edging, carefully finish slab edges, including edges at formed joints, with an edge having a maximum radius of $1/8$ inch. Clean by removing loose fragments and soupy mortar from corners or edges of slabs which have crumbled and areas which lack sufficient mortar for proper finishing. Refill voids solidly with a mixture of suitable proportions and consistency and refinish. Remove unnecessary tool marks and edges. Remaining edges must be smooth and true to line.

3.5.4 Repair of Surface Defects

Follow guidance of ACI 301.

3.6 CURING AND PROTECTION

Protect concrete adequately from injurious action by sun, rain, flowing water, frost, mechanical injury, tire marks and oil stains, and do not allow it to dry out from the time it is placed until the expiration of the minimum curing periods specified herein. Use White-Burlap-Polyethylene Sheet or liquid membrane-forming compound, except as specified otherwise herein. Do not use membrane-forming compound on surfaces where its appearance would be objectionable, on surfaces to be painted, where coverings are to be bonded to concrete, or on concrete to which other concrete is to be bonded. Maintain temperature of air next to concrete above 40 degrees F for the full curing periods.

3.6.1 White-Burlap-Polyethylene Sheet

Wet entire exposed surface thoroughly with a fine spray of water, saturate burlap but do not have excessive water dripping off the burlap and then cover concrete with White-Burlap-Polyethylene Sheet, burlap side down. Lay sheets directly on concrete surface and overlap 12 inches. Make sheeting not less than 18 inches wider than concrete surface to be cured, and weight down on the edges and over the transverse laps to form closed joints. Repair or replace sheets when damaged during curing. Check daily to assure burlap has not lost all moisture. If moisture evaporates, resaturate burlap and re-place on pavement (re-saturation and re-placing must take no longer than 10 minutes per sheet). Leave sheeting on concrete surface to be cured for at least 7 days.

3.6.2 Liquid Membrane-Forming Compound Curing

Apply compound immediately after surface loses its water sheen and has a dull appearance and before joints are sawed. Agitate curing compound thoroughly by mechanical means during use and apply uniformly in a two-coat continuous operation by suitable power-spraying equipment. Total coverage for the two coats must be at least one gallon of undiluted compound per 200 square feet. Compound must form a uniform, continuous, coherent film that will not check, crack, or peel and must be free from pinholes or other imperfections. Apply an additional coat of compound immediately to areas where film is defective. Respray concrete surfaces that are subject to heavy rainfall within 3 hours after curing compound has been applied in the same manner.

3.6.2.1 Protection of Treated Surfaces

Keep concrete surfaces to which liquid membrane-forming compounds have been

applied free from vehicular traffic and other sources of abrasion for not less than 72 hours. Foot traffic is allowed after 24 hours for inspection purposes. Maintain continuity of coating for entire curing period and repair damage to coating immediately.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.7.1 Sampling

The Contractor's approved laboratory must collect samples of fresh concrete in accordance with [ASTM C172/C172M](#) during each working day as required to perform tests specified herein. Make test specimens in accordance with [ASTM C31/C31M](#).

3.7.2 Consistency Tests

The Contractor's approved laboratory must perform [concrete slump tests](#) in accordance with [ASTM C143/C143M](#). Take samples for slump determination from concrete during placement. Perform tests at the beginning of a concrete placement operation and for each batch (minimum) or every [20 cubic yards](#) (maximum) of concrete to ensure that specification requirements are met. In addition, perform tests each time test beams and cylinders are made.

3.7.3 [Flexural Strength Tests](#)

The Contractor's approved laboratory must test for flexural strength in accordance with [ASTM C78/C78M](#). Make four test specimens for each set of tests. Test two specimens at 7 days, and the other two at 28 days. Concrete strength will be considered satisfactory when the minimum of the 28-day test results equals or exceeds the specified 28-day flexural strength, and no individual strength test is less than [550 pounds per square inch](#). If the ratio of the 7-day strength test to the specified 28-day strength is less than 65 percent, make necessary adjustments for conformance. Frequency of flexural tests on concrete beams must be not less than four test beams for each [50 cubic yards](#) of concrete, or fraction thereof, placed. Concrete which is determined to be defective, based on the strength acceptance criteria therein, must be removed and replaced with acceptable concrete.

3.7.4 [Air Content Tests](#)

Test air-entrained concrete for air content at the same frequency as specified for slump tests. Determine percentage of air in accordance with [ASTM C231/C231M](#) on samples taken during placement of concrete in forms.

3.7.5 Surface Testing

Surface testing for surface smoothness, edge slump and plan grade must be performed as indicated below by the Testing Laboratory. The measurements must be properly referenced in accordance with paving lane identification and stationing, and a report given to the Contracting Officer within 24 hours after measurement is made. A final report of surface testing, signed by a Registered Engineer, containing all surface measurements and a description of all actions taken to correct deficiencies, must be provided to the Contracting Officer upon conclusion of surface testing.

3.7.5.1 Surface Smoothness Requirements

Surface smoothness must be measured every [5,000 square feet](#). The finished

surfaces of the pavements must have no abrupt change of $1/8$ inch or more, and all pavements must be within the tolerances specified when checked with a 12 foot straightedge: $1/5$ inch longitudinal and $1/4$ inch transverse directions for roads and streets and $1/4$ inch for both directions for other concrete surfaces, such as parking areas.

3.7.5.2 Surface Smoothness Testing Method

The surface of the pavement must be tested with the straightedge to identify all surface irregularities exceeding the tolerances specified above. The straightedge must be 12 feet and be constructed of aluminum or other lightweight metal and must have blades of box or box-girder cross section with flat bottom reinforced to ensure rigidity and accuracy. Straightedges must have handles to facilitate movement on pavement. The entire area of the pavement must be tested in both a longitudinal and a transverse direction on parallel lines approximately 15 feet apart. The straightedge must be held in contact with the surface and moved ahead one-half the length of the straightedge for each successive measurement. The amount of surface irregularity must be determined by placing the straightedge on the pavement surface and allowing it to rest upon the two highest spots covered by its length and measuring the maximum gap between the straightedge and the pavement surface, in the area between these two high points.

3.7.6 Plan Grade Testing and Conformance

The surfaces must vary not more than 0.06 foot above or below the plan grade line or elevation indicated. Each pavement category must be checked for conformance with plan grade requirements by running lines of levels at intervals to determine the elevation at each joint intersection.

3.7.7 Test for Pavement Thickness

Full depth cores of 4 inch diameter must be taken of concrete pavement every 5,000 square feet to measure thickness.

3.7.8 Reinforcement

Inspect reinforcement prior to installation to assure it is free of loose flaky rust, loose scale, oil, mud, or other objectionable material.

3.7.9 Dowels

Inspect dowel placement prior to placing concrete to assure that dowels are of the size indicated, and are spaced, aligned and painted and oiled as specified. Dowels must not deviate from vertical or horizontal alignment after concrete has been placed by more than $1/8$ inch per foot.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 32 13 73

COMPRESSION JOINT SEALS FOR CONCRETE PAVEMENTS
04/08

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D2628 (1991; R 2016) Standard Specification for
Preformed Polychloroprene Elastomeric
Joint Seals for Concrete Pavements

ASTM D2835 (1989; R 2017) Standard Specification for
Lubricant for Installation of Preformed
Compression Seals in Concrete Pavements

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Equipment

Manufacturer's Instructions

SD-04, Samples

Compression Seals; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Test Requirements

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.3.1 Safety

Do not place compression joint seals within 25 feet of liquid oxygen (LOX) equipment, LOX storage, or LOX piping.

1.3.2 Trial Joint Seal and Lubricant/Adhesive Installation

Prior to the cleaning and sealing of the joints for the entire project, prepare a test section at least 200 feet long at a designated location in

the project pavement, using the specified materials and the approved equipment to demonstrate the proposed joint preparation and sealing of all types of joints in the project. Following the completion of the trial length and before any other joint is sealed, the trial joints will be inspected by the Government to determine that the materials and installation meet the requirements specified. If materials or installation do not meet requirements, remove the materials, and the joints shall be recleaned and resealed at no cost to the Government. No other joints shall be sealed until the test installation has been approved. If the trial section is approved, it may be incorporated into the permanent work. Seal other joints in the manner approved for sealing the trial joint.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Materials delivered to the jobsite shall be inspected for defects, unloaded, and stored with a minimum of handling to avoid damage. Provide storage facilities that protect materials from weather and maintain materials at temperatures recommended by the manufacturer.

1.5 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

The ambient temperature and the pavement temperature within the joint wall shall be at least 35 degrees F and rising at the time of installation of the materials. Sealant installation will not be allowed if moisture or foreign material is observed in the joint.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM EQUIPMENT

Provide machines, tools, and equipment, used in the performance of the work required by this section, approved before the work is started and maintained in satisfactory condition at all times. Submit list of proposed equipment to be used in the performance of construction work, including descriptive data, 30 days prior to use on the project.

2.1.1 Joint Cleaning Equipment

2.1.1.1 Concrete Saw

Provide a self-propelled power saw with water-cooled diamond saw blades for cutting joints to the depths and widths specified and for removing filler, existing old joint seal, or other material embedded in the joints or adhered to the joint faces.

2.1.1.2 Sandblasting Equipment

Include with the sandblasting equipment an air compressor, hose, and a long-wearing venturi-type nozzle of proper size, shape, and opening. The maximum nozzle opening should not exceed 1/4 inch. Provide a portable air compressor capable of furnishing not less than 150 cubic feet per minute and maintaining a line pressure of not less than 90 psi at the nozzle while in use. The compressor shall be equipped with traps that will maintain the compressed air free of oil and water. The nozzle shall have an adjustable guide that will hold the nozzle aligned with the joint about 1 inch above the pavement surface and will direct the blast to clean the joint walls. Adjust the height, angle of inclination, and the size of the nozzle as necessary to ensure satisfactory results.

2.1.1.3 Waterblasting Equipment

Include with the waterblasting equipment a trailer-mounted water tank, pumps, high-pressure hose, a wand with safety release cutoff controls, nozzle, and auxiliary water resupply equipment. The water tank and auxiliary water resupply equipment shall be of sufficient capacity to permit continuous operations. The pumps, hoses, wand, and nozzle shall be of sufficient capacity to permit the cleaning of both walls of the joint and the pavement surface for a width of at least 1/2 inch on either side of the joint. A pressure gauge mounted at the pump shall show at all times the pressure in psi at which the equipment is operating.

2.1.2 Sealing Equipment

The hand operated joint seal application equipment shall be a two-axle, four-wheel machine that shall include means for compressing and inserting the compression seal into the joint and a reel capable of holding one full spool of compression seal. Provide auxiliary equipment to coat both sides of the joint or the seal with lubricant/ adhesive just prior to the installation of the compression seal.

Equipment used to install the compression seal shall place the compression seal to the prescribed depths within the specified tolerances without cutting, nicking, twisting, or otherwise damaging the seal. The equipment shall be capable of placing the seal with not more than two percent longitudinal stretch or compression of the seal during installation. The machine shall be an automatic self-propelled joint seal application equipment and engine powered. The machine shall include a reservoir for the lubricant/adhesive, a device for conveying the lubricant/adhesive in the proper quantities to the sides of the compression seal or the sidewalls of the joints, a reel capable of holding one full spool of compression seal, and a power-driven apparatus for feeding the joint seal through a compression device and inserting the seal into the joint. The equipment shall also include a guide to maintain the proper course along the joint being sealed. The machine shall at all times be operated by an experienced operator.

2.1.3 Test Requirements

Submit certified copies of test results, 30 days prior to use of material on the project. Each lot of compression joint seal and lubricant/adhesive shall be sampled, identified, and tested for conformance with the applicable material specification.

- a. A lot of compression seal shall consist of 1 day's production or 20,000 linear feet for each cross section, whichever is less. A lot of lubricant/adhesive shall consist of 1 day's production. Testing of the compression joint seal and lubricant/adhesive material is the responsibility of the Contractor and shall be performed in an approved independent laboratory, and certified copies of the test reports shall be submitted for approval 30 days prior to the use of the materials at the jobsite.
- c. Samples of each lot of material shall also be submitted and will be retained by the Government for possible future testing should the materials appear defective during or after application. Furnish additional samples of materials, in sufficient quantity to be tested, upon request. Final acceptance will be based on conformance to the specified test requirements and the performance of the in-place

materials.

2.2 COMPRESSION SEALS

Regardless of testing responsibility, submit 9 foot long samples of the materials, 60 days prior to use on the project. Printed directions from the manufacturer on recommended installation criteria shall be furnished with the samples plus the manufacturer's certification that the selected seal is recommended for the installation on this project. Compression joint seal materials shall be a vulcanized elastomeric compound using polychloroprene as the only base polymer. The material and manufactured seal shall conform to ASTM D2628. The joint seal shall be a labyrinth type seal. The uncompressed depth of the face of the compression seal (that is to be bonded to the joint wall) shall be greater than the uncompressed width of the seal, except that for seals 1 inch or greater in width, the depth need be only 1 inch or greater. The actual width of the uncompressed seal for construction and contraction joints shall be 1 inch and for expansion joints shall be 1.25 inches. The tolerance on the seal shall be plus 1/8 inch or minus 1/16 inch.

2.3 LUBRICANT/ADHESIVE

Lubricant/adhesive used for the compression elastomeric joint seal shall be a one-component compound conforming to ASTM D2835.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION OF JOINTS

Immediately before installation of the compression joint seal, thoroughly clean the joints to remove laitance, filler, existing sealer, foreign material and protrusions of hardened concrete from the sides and upper edges of the joint space to be sealed. Cleaning shall be by sandblasting or waterblasting and shall extend along pavement surfaces at least 1/2 inch on either side of the joint. After final cleaning and immediately prior to sealing, the joints shall be blown out with compressed air and left completely free of debris and water. Demonstrate that the selected cleaning operation meets the cleanliness requirements. Correct any irregularity in the joint face which would prevent uniform contact between the joint seal and the joint face prior to the installation of the joint seal.

3.1.1 Sawing

Clean and open joints to the specified width and depth by sawing. Immediately following the sawing operation, thoroughly clean the joint faces and opening using a water jet to remove saw cuttings or debris remaining on the faces or in the joint opening. Install compression seal within 3 calendar days of the time the joint cavity is sawed. Depth of the joint cavity shall be in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Where installation procedures are required in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, submit printed copies of manufacturers' instructions, 30 days prior to use on the project. The saw cut for the joint seal cavity shall be centered over the joint line. The nominal width of the sawed joint seal cavity shall be as follows; the actual width shall be within a tolerance of plus or minus 1/16 inch:

- a. If a nominal 13/16 inch wide compression seal is furnished, the nominal width of the saw cut shall be 8/16 inches when the pavement temperature

at the time of sawing is between 30 and 110 degrees F. If the pavement temperature at the time of sawing is above this range, the nominal width of the saw cut shall be decreased 1/16 inch. If the pavement temperature at the time of sawing is below this range, the nominal width of the saw cut shall be increased 1/16 inch.

- b. If a nominal 1 inch wide compression seal is furnished, the nominal width of the saw cut shall be 9/16 inches when the pavement temperature at the time of sawing is between 30 and 170 degrees F. If the pavement temperature at the time of sawing is above this range, the nominal width of the saw cut shall be decreased 1/16 inch. If the pavement temperature at the time of sawing is below this range, the nominal width of the saw cut shall be increased 1/16 inch.
- c. Measure the pavement temperature in the presence of the Contracting Officer. Make measurement each day before commencing sawing and at any other time during the day when the temperature appears to be varying from the allowable sawing range.

3.1.2 Sandblast Cleaning

Use a multiple pass sandblasting technique until the surfaces are free of dust, dirt, curing compound, or any residue that might prevent ready insertion or uniform contact of the seal and bonding of the lubricant/adhesive to the concrete.

3.1.3 Waterblast Cleaning

Use a multiple pass waterblast technique until the surfaces are free of dust, dirt, curing compound, or any residue that might prevent ready insertion or uniform contact of the seal and bonding of the lubricant/adhesive to the concrete.

3.1.4 Rate of Progress

Limit sandblasting or waterblasting of joint faces to the length of joint that can be sealed during the same workday.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF THE COMPRESSION SEAL

3.2.1 Time of Installation

Seal joints immediately within 3 calendar days of sawing the joint seal cavity and following concrete cure and the final cleaning of the joint walls. Provide open joints, ready for sealing that cannot be sealed under the specified conditions, with an approved temporary seal to prevent infiltration of foreign material. When rain interrupts the sealing operations, the joints shall be washed, air pressure cleaned, and allowed to dry prior to installing the lubricant/adhesive and compression seal.

3.2.2 Sequence of Installation

Seal first longitudinal joints, followed by transverse joints. Install seals in longitudinal joints so that all transverse joint seals will be intact from edge to edge of the pavement. Intersections shall be made monolithic by use of joint seal adhesive and care in fitting the intersection parts together. Extender pieces of seal shall not be used at intersections. Any seal falling short at the intersection shall be removed and replaced with new seal at no additional cost to the Government. Seals

that are required to change direction by more than 20 degrees, may require a poured sealant at the intersection. Poured sealant shall be in accordance with compression seal manufacturer's instructions.

3.3 SEALING OF JOINTS

The sides of the joint seal or the sides of the joint shall be covered with a coating of lubricant/adhesive and the seal installed as specified. Butt joints and seal intersections shall be coated with liberal applications of lubricant/adhesive. Lubricant/adhesive spilled on the pavement shall be removed immediately to prevent setting on the pavement. The in-place joint seal shall be in an upright position and free from twisting, distortion, and cuts. Adjustments shall be made to the installation equipment and procedure, if the stretch exceeds 1 percent. Any seal exceeding 2 percent stretch shall be removed and replaced. The joint seal shall be placed at a uniform depth within the tolerances specified. In-place joint seal which fails to meet the specified requirements shall be removed and replaced with new joint seal at no cost to the Government. The compression joint seal shall be placed to a depth of $\frac{1}{4}$ inch, plus or minus $\frac{1}{8}$ inch, below the pavement surface except when the joint is beveled or has a radius at the surface, or unless otherwise directed. For beveled joints or joints with a radius at the surface, the compression joint seal shall be installed at a depth of $\frac{1}{8}$ inch, plus or minus $\frac{1}{8}$ inch, below the bottom of the edge of the bevel or radius. No part of the seal shall be allowed to project above the surface of the pavement or above the edge of the bevel or radius. The seal shall be installed in the longest practicable lengths in longitudinal joints and shall be cut at the joint intersections to provide continuous installation of the seal in the transverse joints. The lubricant/adhesive in the longitudinal joints shall be allowed to set for 1 hour prior to cutting at the joint intersections to reduce the possibility of shrinkage. For all transverse joints, the minimum length of the compression joint seal shall be the pavement width from edge to edge.

3.4 CLEAN-UP

Upon completion of the project, remove all unused materials from the site, remove any lubricant/adhesive on the pavement surface, and leave the pavement in clean condition.

3.5 QUALITY CONTROL PROVISIONS

3.5.1 Application Equipment

Inspect the application equipment to assure uniform application of lubricant/adhesive to the sides of the compression joint seal or the walls of the joint. If any equipment causes cutting, twisting, nicking, excessive stretching or compressing of the seal, or improper application of the lubricant/adhesive, suspend the operation until causes of the deficiencies are determined and corrected.

3.5.2 Procedures

3.5.2.1 Quality Control Inspection

Provide quality control provisions during the joint cleaning process to prevent or correct improper equipment and cleaning techniques that damage the concrete in any manner. Cleaned joints shall be approved by the Government prior to installation of the lubricant/adhesive and compression joint seal.

3.5.2.2 Conformance to Stretching and Compression Limitations

Determine conformance to stretching and compression limitations. Mark the top surface of the compression seal at 1 foot intervals in a manner clear and durable to enable length determinations of the seal. After installation, measure the distance between the marks on the seal. If the stretching or compression exceeds 2 percent, remove the seal and replace it with new joint at no additional cost to the Government. The seal shall be removed up to the last correct measurement. The seal shall be inspected a minimum of once per 100 feet of seal for compliance to the shrinkage or compression requirements. Measurements shall also be made at the same interval to determine conformance with depth and width of installation requirements. Remove and replace compression seal that is not in conformance with specification requirements with new joint seal at no additional cost to the Government.

3.5.2.3 Pavement Temperature

Determine the pavement temperature by placing a thermometer in the initial saw cut for the joint and record the reading. The thermometer shall remain in the joint for an adequate time to provide a control reading.

3.5.3 Final Inspection

Inspect the joint sealing system (compression seal and lubricant/adhesive) for proper rate of cure and bonding to the concrete, cuts, twists, nicks and other deficiencies. Seals exhibiting any defects, at any time prior to final acceptance of the project, shall be removed from the joint, wasted, and replaced in a satisfactory manner.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 32 16 19

CONCRETE CURBS, GUTTERS AND SIDEWALKS
05/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS
(AASHTO)

AASHTO M 182 (2005; R 2017) Standard Specification for
Burlap Cloth Made from Jute or Kenaf and
Cotton Mats

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C143/C143M (2015) Standard Test Method for Slump of
Hydraulic-Cement Concrete

ASTM C171 (2016) Standard Specification for Sheet
Materials for Curing Concrete

ASTM C172/C172M (2017) Standard Practice for Sampling
Freshly Mixed Concrete

ASTM C173/C173M (2016) Standard Test Method for Air
Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the
Volumetric Method

ASTM C231/C231M (2017a) Standard Test Method for Air
Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the
Pressure Method

ASTM C309 (2011) Standard Specification for Liquid
Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing
Concrete

ASTM C31/C31M (2018b) Standard Practice for Making and
Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field

ASTM C920 (2018) Standard Specification for
Elastomeric Joint Sealants

ASTM D1751 (2004; E 2013; R 2013) Standard
Specification for Preformed Expansion
Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and
Structural Construction (Nonextruding and
Resilient Bituminous Types)

ASTM D1752 (2004a; R 2013) Standard Specification for
Preformed Sponge Rubber Cork and Recycled

PVC Expansion

ASTM D5893/D5893M

(2016) Standard Specification for Cold Applied, Single Component, Chemically Curing Silicone Joint Sealant for Portland Cement Concrete Pavements

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC A117.1 COMM

(2017) Standard And Commentary Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Concrete

SD-06 Test Reports

Field Quality Control

1.3 EQUIPMENT, TOOLS, AND MACHINES

1.3.1 General Requirements

Plant, equipment, machines, and tools used in the work will be subject to approval and must be maintained in a satisfactory working condition at all times. Use equipment capable of producing the required product, meeting grade controls, thickness control and smoothness requirements as specified. Discontinue using equipment that produces unsatisfactory results. Allow the Contracting Officer access at all times to the plant and equipment to ensure proper operation and compliance with specifications.

1.3.2 Slip Form Equipment

Slip form paver or curb forming machines, will be approved based on trial use on the job and must be self-propelled, automatically controlled, crawler mounted, and capable of spreading, consolidating, and shaping the plastic concrete to the desired cross section in one pass.

1.4 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

1.4.1 Placing During Cold Weather

Do not place concrete when the air temperature reaches 40 degrees F and is falling, or is already below that point. Placement may begin when the air temperature reaches 35 degrees F and is rising, or is already above 40 degrees F. Make provisions to protect the concrete from freezing during the specified curing period. If necessary to place concrete when the temperature of the air, aggregates, or water is below 35 degrees F, placement and protection must be approved in writing. Approval will be

contingent upon full conformance with the following provisions. Prepare and protect the underlying material so that it is entirely free of frost when the concrete is deposited. Heat mixing water and aggregates as necessary to result in the temperature of the in-place concrete being between 50 and 85 degrees F. Methods and equipment for heating must be approved. Use only aggregates that are free of ice, snow, and frozen lumps before entering the mixer. Provide covering or other means as needed to maintain the concrete at a temperature of at least 50 degrees F for not less than 72 hours after placing, and at a temperature above freezing for the remainder of the curing period.

1.4.2 Placing During Warm Weather

The temperature of the concrete as placed must not exceed 85 degrees F except where an approved retarder is used. Cool the mixing water and aggregates as necessary to maintain a satisfactory placing temperature. The placing temperature must not exceed 95 degrees F at any time.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE

Provide concrete conforming to the applicable requirements of Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE except as otherwise specified. Concrete must have a minimum compressive strength of 3500 psi at 28 days. Size of aggregate must not exceed 1-1/2 inches. Submit copies of certified delivery tickets for all concrete used in the construction.

2.1.1 Air Content

Use concrete mixtures that have an air content by volume of concrete of 5 to 7 percent, based on measurements made immediately after discharge from the mixer.

2.1.2 Slump

Use concrete with a slump of 3 inches plus or minus 1 inch for hand placed concrete or 1 inch plus or minus 1/2 inch for slipformed concrete as determined in accordance with ASTM C143/C143M.

2.2 CONCRETE CURING MATERIALS

2.2.1 Impervious Sheet Materials

Use impervious sheet materials conforming to ASTM C171, type optional, except that polyethylene film, if used, must be white opaque.

2.2.2 Burlap

Use burlap conforming to AASHTO M 182.

2.2.3 White Pigmented Membrane-Forming Curing Compound

Use white pigmented membrane-forming curing compound conforming to ASTM C309, Type 2.

2.3 CONCRETE PROTECTION MATERIALS

Use concrete protection materials consisting of a linseed oil mixture of

equal parts, by volume, of linseed oil and either mineral spirits, naphtha, or turpentine. At the option of the Contractor, commercially prepared linseed oil mixtures, formulated specifically for application to concrete to provide protection against the action of deicing chemicals may be used, except that emulsified mixtures are not acceptable.

2.4 JOINT FILLER STRIPS

2.4.1 Contraction Joint Filler for Curb and Gutter

Use hard-pressed fiberboard contraction joint filler for curb and gutter.

2.4.2 Expansion Joint Filler, Premolded

Unless otherwise indicated, use 1/2 inch thick premolded expansion joint filler conforming to ASTM D1751 or ASTM D1752.

2.5 JOINT SEALANTS

Use cold-applied joint sealant conforming to ASTM C920 or ASTM D5893/D5893M.

2.6 FORM WORK

Design and construct form work to ensure that the finished concrete will conform accurately to the indicated dimensions, lines, and elevations, and within the tolerances specified. Use wood or steel forms that are straight and of sufficient strength to resist springing during depositing and consolidating concrete.

2.6.1 Wood Forms

Use forms that are surfaced plank, 2 inches nominal thickness, straight and free from warp, twist, loose knots, splits or other defects. Use forms with a nominal length of 10 feet. Radius bends may be formed with 3/4 inch boards, laminated to the required thickness.

2.6.2 Steel Forms

Use channel-formed sections with a flat top surface and welded braces at each end and at not less than two intermediate points. Use forms with interlocking and self-aligning ends. Provide flexible forms for radius forming, corner forms, form spreaders, and fillers as needed. Use forms with a nominal length of 10 feet and that have a minimum of 3 welded stake pockets per form. Use stake pins consisting of solid steel rods with chamfered heads and pointed tips designed for use with steel forms.

2.6.3 Sidewalk Forms

Use sidewalk forms that are of a height equal to the full depth of the finished sidewalk.

2.6.4 Curb and Gutter Forms

Use curb and gutter outside forms that have a height equal to the full depth of the curb or gutter. Use rigid forms for curb returns, except that benders or thin plank forms may be used for curb or curb returns with a radius of 10 feet or more, where grade changes occur in the return, or where the central angle is such that a rigid form with a central angle of 90 degrees cannot be used. Back forms for curb returns may be made of

1-1/2 inch benders, for the full height of the curb, cleated together. In lieu of inside forms for curbs, a curb "mule" may be used for forming and finishing this surface, provided the results are approved.

2.7 Detectable Warning System

Detectable Warning Systems shown on the Contract plans are to meet requirements of ICC A117.1 COMM - Section 705.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 SUBGRADE PREPARATION

Construct subgrade to the specified grade and cross section prior to concrete placement.

3.1.1 Sidewalk Subgrade

Place and compact the subgrade in accordance with Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL. Test the subgrade for grade and cross section with a template extending the full width of the sidewalk and supported between side forms.

3.1.2 Curb and Gutter Subgrade

Place and compact the subgrade in accordance with Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL. Test the subgrade for grade and cross section by means of a template extending the full width of the curb and gutter. Use subgrade materials equal in bearing quality to the subgrade under the adjacent pavement.

3.1.3 Maintenance of Subgrade

Maintain subgrade in a smooth, compacted condition in conformity with the required section and established grade until the concrete is placed. The subgrade must be in a moist condition when concrete is placed. Prepare and protect subgrade so that it is free from frost when the concrete is deposited.

3.2 FORM SETTING

Set forms to the indicated alignment, grade and dimensions. Hold forms rigidly in place by a minimum of 3 stakes per form placed at intervals not to exceed 4 feet. Use additional stakes and braces at corners, deep sections, and radius bends, as required. Use clamps, spreaders, and braces where required to ensure rigidity in the forms. Remove forms in a manner that will not injure the concrete. Do not use bars or heavy tools against the concrete when removing the forms. Promptly and satisfactorily repair concrete found to be defective after form removal. Clean forms and coat with form oil or biodegradable form release agent each time before concrete is placed. Wood forms may, instead, be thoroughly wetted with water before concrete is placed, except that with probable freezing temperatures, oiling is mandatory.

3.2.1 Sidewalks

Set forms for sidewalks with the upper edge true to line and grade with an allowable tolerance of 1/8 inch in any 10 foot long section. After forms are set, grade and alignment must be checked with a 10 foot straightedge.

Sidewalks must have a transverse slope of $1/4$ inch per foot. Unless otherwise indicated, construct sidewalks that are located adjacent to curbs with the low side adjacent to the curb. Do not remove side forms less than 12 hours after finishing has been completed.

3.2.2 Curbs and Gutters

Remove forms used along the front of the curb not less than 2 hours nor more than 6 hours after the concrete has been placed. Do not remove forms used along the back of curb until the face and top of the curb have been finished, as specified for concrete finishing. Do not remove gutter forms while the concrete is sufficiently plastic to slump in any direction.

3.3 SIDEWALK CONCRETE PLACEMENT AND FINISHING

3.3.1 Formed Sidewalks

Place concrete in the forms in one layer. When consolidated and finished, the sidewalks must be of the thickness indicated. Use a strike-off guided by side forms after concrete has been placed in the forms to bring the surface to proper section to be compacted. Consolidate concrete by tamping and spading or with an approved vibrator. Finish the surface to grade with a strike off.

3.3.2 Concrete Finishing

After straightedging, when most of the water sheen has disappeared, and just before the concrete hardens, finish the surface with a wood or magnesium float or darby to a smooth and uniformly fine granular or sandy texture free of waves, irregularities, or tool marks. Produce a scored surface by brooming with a fiber-bristle brush in a direction transverse to that of the traffic, followed by edging.

3.3.3 Edge and Joint Finishing

Finish all slab edges, including those at formed joints, with an edger having a radius of $1/8$ inch. Edge transverse joints before brooming. Eliminate the flat surface left by the surface face of the edger with brooming. Clean and solidly fill corners and edges which have crumbled and areas which lack sufficient mortar for proper finishing with a properly proportioned mortar mixture and then finish.

3.3.4 Surface and Thickness Tolerances

Finished surfaces must not vary more than $5/16$ inch from the testing edge of a 10-foot straightedge. Permissible deficiency in section thickness will be up to $1/4$ inch.

3.4 CURB AND GUTTER CONCRETE PLACEMENT AND FINISHING

3.4.1 Formed Curb and Gutter

Place concrete to the required section in a single lift. Consolidate concrete using approved mechanical vibrators. Curve shaped gutters must be finished with a standard curb "mule".

3.4.2 Curb and Gutter Finishing

Approved slipformed curb and gutter machines may be used in lieu of hand

placement.

3.4.3 Concrete Finishing

Float and finish exposed surfaces with a smooth wood float until true to grade and section and uniform in texture. Brush floated surfaces with a fine-hair brush using longitudinal strokes. Round the edges of the gutter and top of the curb with an edging tool to a radius of $1/2$ inch. Immediately after removing the front curb form, rub the face of the curb with a wood or concrete rubbing block and water until blemishes, form marks, and tool marks have been removed. Brush the front curb surface, while still wet, in the same manner as the gutter and curb top. Finish the top surface of gutter to grade with a wood float.

3.4.4 Joint Finishing

Finish curb edges at formed joints as indicated.

3.4.5 Surface and Thickness Tolerances

Finished surfaces must not vary more than $1/4$ inch from the testing edge of a 10-foot straightedge. Permissible deficiency in section thickness will be up to $1/4$ inch.

3.5 SIDEWALK JOINTS

Construct sidewalk joints to divide the surface into rectangular areas. Space transverse contraction joints at a distance equal to the sidewalk width or 5 feet on centers, whichever is less, and continuous across the slab. Construct longitudinal contraction joints along the centerline of all sidewalks 10 feet or more in width. Construct transverse expansion joints at sidewalk returns and opposite expansion joints in adjoining curbs. Where the sidewalk is not in contact with the curb, install transverse expansion joints as indicated. Form expansion joints around structures and features which project through or into the sidewalk pavement, using joint filler of the type, thickness, and width indicated. Expansion joints are not required between sidewalks and curb that abut the sidewalk longitudinally.

3.5.1 Sidewalk Contraction Joints

Form contraction joints in the fresh concrete by cutting a groove in the top portion of the slab to a depth of at least one-fourth of the sidewalk slab thickness. Unless otherwise approved or indicated, either use a jointer to cut the groove or saw a groove in the hardened concrete with a power-driven saw. Construct sawed joints by sawing a groove in the concrete with a $1/8$ inch blade. Provide an ample supply of saw blades on the jobsite before concrete placement is started. Provide at least one standby sawing unit in good working order at the jobsite at all times during the sawing operations.

3.5.2 Sidewalk Expansion Joints

Form expansion joints using $1/2$ inch joint filler strips. Joint filler in expansion joints surrounding structures and features within the sidewalk may consist of preformed filler material conforming to ASTM D1752 or building paper. Hold joint filler in place with steel pins or other devices to prevent warping of the filler during floating and finishing. Immediately after finishing operations are completed, round joint edges

using an edging tool having a radius of $\frac{1}{8}$ inch. Remove any concrete over the joint filler. At the end of the curing period, clean the top of expansion joints and fill with cold-applied joint sealant. Use joint sealant that is gray or stone in color. Thoroughly clean the joint opening before the sealing material is placed. Do not spill sealing material on exposed surfaces of the concrete. Apply joint sealing material only when the concrete at the joint is surface dry and atmospheric and concrete temperatures are above 50 degrees F. Immediately remove any excess material on exposed surfaces of the concrete and clean the concrete surfaces.

3.6 CURB AND GUTTER JOINTS

Construct curb and gutter joints at right angles to the line of curb and gutter.

3.6.1 Contraction Joints

Construct contraction joints directly opposite contraction joints in abutting portland cement concrete pavements and spaced so that monolithic sections between curb returns will not be less than 5 feet nor greater than 15 feet in length.

- a. Construct contraction joints (except for slip forming) by means of $\frac{1}{8}$ inch thick separators and of a section conforming to the cross section of the curb and gutter. Remove separators as soon as practicable after concrete has set sufficiently to preserve the width and shape of the joint and prior to finishing.
- b. When slip forming is used, cut the contraction joints in the top portion of the gutter/curb hardened concrete in a continuous cut across the curb and gutter, using a power-driven saw. Cut the contraction joint to a depth of at least one-fourth of the gutter/curb depth using a $\frac{1}{8}$ inch saw blade.

3.6.2 Expansion Joints

Form expansion joints by means of preformed expansion joint filler material cut and shaped to the cross section of curb and gutter. Construct expansion joints in curb and gutter directly opposite expansion joints of abutting portland cement concrete pavement using the same type and thickness of joints as joints in the pavement. Where curb and gutter do not abut portland cement concrete pavement, provide expansion joints at least $\frac{1}{2}$ inch in width at intervals not less than 30 feet nor greater than 120 feet. Seal expansion joints immediately following curing of the concrete or as soon thereafter as weather conditions permit. Seal expansion joints and the top 1 inch depth of curb and gutter contraction-joints with joint sealant. Thoroughly clean the joint opening before the sealing material is placed. Do not spill sealing material on exposed surfaces of the concrete. Concrete at the joint must be surface dry and atmospheric and concrete temperatures must be above 50 degrees F at the time of application of joint sealing material. Immediately remove excess material on exposed surfaces of the concrete and clean concrete surfaces.

3.7 CURING AND PROTECTION

3.7.1 General Requirements

Protect concrete against loss of moisture and rapid temperature changes for at least 7 days from the beginning of the curing operation. Protect unhardened concrete from rain and flowing water. All equipment needed for adequate curing and protection of the concrete must be on hand and ready for use before actual concrete placement begins. Protect concrete as necessary to prevent cracking of the pavement due to temperature changes during the curing period.

3.7.1.1 Mat Method

Cover the entire exposed surface with two or more layers of burlap. Overlap mats at least 6 inches. Thoroughly wet the mat with water prior to placing on concrete surface and keep the mat continuously in a saturated condition and in intimate contact with concrete for not less than 7 days.

3.7.1.2 Impervious Sheeting Method

Wet the entire exposed surface with a fine spray of water and then cover with impervious sheeting material. Lay sheets directly on the concrete surface with the light-colored side up and overlapped 12 inches when a continuous sheet is not used. Use sheeting that is not less than 18-inches wider than the concrete surface to be cured. Secure sheeting using heavy wood planks or a bank of moist earth placed along edges and laps in the sheets. Satisfactorily repair or replace sheets that are torn or otherwise damaged during curing. Sheeting must remain on the concrete surface to be cured for not less than 7 days.

3.7.1.3 Membrane Curing Method

Apply a uniform coating of white-pigmented membrane-curing compound to the entire exposed surface of the concrete as soon after finishing as the free water has disappeared from the finished surface. Coat formed surfaces immediately after the forms are removed and in no case longer than 1 hour after the removal of forms. Do not allow concrete surface to dry before application of the membrane. If drying has occurred, moisten the surface of the concrete with a fine spray of water and apply the curing compound as soon as the free water disappears. Apply curing compound in two coats by hand-operated pressure sprayers at a coverage of approximately 200 square feet/gallon for the total of both coats. Apply the second coat in a direction approximately at right angles to the direction of application of the first coat. The compound must form a uniform, continuous, coherent film that will not check, crack, or peel and must be free from pinholes or other imperfections. If pinholes, abrasion, or other discontinuities exist, apply an additional coat to the affected areas within 30 minutes. Respray concrete surfaces that are subjected to heavy rainfall within 3 hours after the curing compound has been applied by the method and at the coverage specified above. Respray areas where the curing compound is damaged by subsequent construction operations within the curing period. Take precautions necessary to ensure that the concrete is properly cured at sawed joints, and that no curing compound enters the joints. Tightly seal the top of the joint opening and the joint groove at exposed edges before the concrete in the region of the joint is resprayed with curing compound. Use a method used for sealing the joint groove that prevents loss of moisture from the joint during the entire specified curing period. Provide approved standby facilities for curing concrete pavement at a location

accessible to the jobsite for use in the event of mechanical failure of the spraying equipment or other conditions that might prevent correct application of the membrane-curing compound at the proper time. Adequately protect concrete surfaces to which membrane-curing compounds have been applied during the entire curing period from pedestrian and vehicular traffic, except as required for joint-sawing operations and surface tests, and from other possible damage to the continuity of the membrane.

3.7.2 Backfilling

After curing, remove debris and backfill, grade, and compact the area adjoining the concrete to conform to the surrounding area in accordance with lines and grades indicated.

3.7.3 Protection

Protect completed concrete from damage until accepted. Repair damaged concrete and clean concrete discolored during construction. Remove and reconstruct concrete that is damaged for the entire length between regularly scheduled joints. Refinishing the damaged portion will not be acceptable. Dispose of removed material as directed.

3.7.4 Protective Coating

Apply a protective coating of linseed oil mixture to the exposed-to-view concrete surface after the curing period, if concrete will be exposed to de-icing chemicals within 6 weeks after placement. Moist cure concrete to receive a protective coating.

3.7.4.1 Application

Complete curing and backfilling operation prior to applying two coats of protective coating. Concrete must be surface dry and clean before each application. Spray apply at a rate of not more than 50 square yards/gallon for first application and not more than 70 square yards/gallon for second application, except that the number of applications and coverage for each application for commercially prepared mixture must be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Protect coated surfaces from vehicular and pedestrian traffic until dry.

3.7.4.2 Precautions

Do not heat protective coating by direct application of flame or electrical heaters and protect the coating from exposure to open flame, sparks, and fire adjacent to open containers or applicators. Do not apply material at ambient or material temperatures lower than 50 degrees F.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Submit copies of all test reports within 24 hours of completion of the test.

3.8.1 General Requirements

Perform the inspection and tests described and meet the specified requirements for inspection details and frequency of testing. Based upon the results of these inspections and tests, take the action and submit reports as required below, and additional tests to ensure that the requirements of these specifications are met.

3.8.2 Concrete Testing

3.8.2.1 Strength Testing

Take concrete samples in accordance with [ASTM C172/C172M](#) not less than once a day nor less than once for every [250 cubic yards](#) of concrete placed. Mold cylinders in accordance with [ASTM C31/C31M](#) for strength testing by an approved laboratory. Each strength test result must be the average of 2 test cylinders from the same concrete sample tested at 28 days, unless otherwise specified or approved. Concrete specified on the basis of compressive strength will be considered satisfactory if the averages of all sets of three consecutive strength test results equal or exceed the specified strength, and no individual strength test result falls below the specified strength by more than [500 psi](#).

3.8.2.2 Air Content

Determine air content in accordance with [ASTM C173/C173M](#) or [ASTM C231/C231M](#). Use [ASTM C231/C231M](#) with concretes and mortars made with relatively dense natural aggregates. Make two tests for air content on randomly selected batches of each class of concrete placed during each shift. Make additional tests when excessive variation in concrete workability is reported by the placing foreman or the Government inspector. Notify the placing foreman if results are out of tolerance. The placing foreman must take appropriate action to have the air content corrected at the plant. Additional tests for air content will be performed on each truckload of material until such time as the air content is within the tolerance specified.

3.8.2.3 Slump Test

Perform two slump tests on randomly selected batches of each class of concrete for every [250 cubic yards](#), or fraction thereof, of concrete placed during each shift. Perform additional tests when excessive variation in the workability of the concrete is noted or when excessive crumbling or slumping is noted along the edges of slip-formed concrete.

3.8.3 Thickness Evaluation

Determine the anticipated thickness of the concrete prior to placement by passing a template through the formed section or by measuring the depth of opening of the extrusion template of the curb forming machine. If a slip form paver is used for sidewalk placement, construct the subgrade true to grade prior to concrete placement. The thickness will be determined by measuring each edge of the completed slab.

3.8.4 Surface Evaluation

Provide finished surfaces for each category of the completed work that are uniform in color and free of blemishes and form or tool marks.

3.9 SURFACE DEFICIENCIES AND CORRECTIONS

3.9.1 Thickness Deficiency

When measurements indicate that the completed concrete section is deficient in thickness by more than [1/4 inch](#) the deficient section will be removed, between regularly scheduled joints, and replaced.

3.9.2 High Areas

In areas not meeting surface smoothness and plan grade requirements, reduce high areas either by rubbing the freshly finished concrete with carborundum brick and water when the concrete is less than 36 hours old or by grinding the hardened concrete with an approved surface grinding machine after the concrete is 36 hours old or more. The area corrected by grinding the surface of the hardened concrete must not exceed 5 percent of the area of any integral slab, and the depth of grinding must not exceed 1/4 inch. Remove and replace pavement areas requiring grade or surface smoothness corrections in excess of the limits specified.

3.9.3 Appearance

Exposed surfaces of the finished work will be inspected by the Contracting Officer and deficiencies in appearance will be identified. Remove and replace areas which exhibit excessive cracking, discoloration, form marks, or tool marks or which are otherwise inconsistent with the overall appearances of the work.

3.10 DETECTABLE WARNING SYSTEM

Install Detectable Warning Systems required by Contract plans in accordance with ICC A117.1 COMM, Section 705, and by manufacturers' installation instructions.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 32 17 23

PAVEMENT MARKINGS

08/16

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS
(AASHTO)

AASHTO M 247 (2013) Standard Specification for Glass
Beads Used in Pavement Markings

AASHTO M 249 (2012; R2016) Standard Specification for
White and Yellow Reflective Thermoplastic
Striping Material (Solid Form)

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D1652 (2011; E 2012) Standard Test Method for
Epoxy Content of Epoxy Resins

ASTM D2074 (2007; R2013) Standard Test Methods for
Total, Primary, Secondary, and Tertiary
Amine Values of Fatty Amines by
Alternative Indicator Method

ASTM D2240 (2015; E 2017) Standard Test Method for
Rubber Property - Durometer Hardness

ASTM D4060 (2014) Abrasion Resistance of Organic
Coatings by the Taber Abraser

ASTM D476 (2015) Dry Pigmentary Titanium Dioxide
Pigments

ASTM D638 (2014) Standard Test Method for Tensile
Properties of Plastics

ASTM D6628 (2003; R 2015) Standard Specification for
Color of Pavement Marking Materials

ASTM D695 (2010) Standard Test Method for
Compressive Properties of Rigid Plastics

ASTM D711 (2010; R 2015) No-Pick-Up Time of Traffic
Paint

ASTM D7234 (2012) Standard Test Method for Pull-Off
Adhesion Strength of Coatings on Concrete
Using Portable Pull-Off Adhesion Testers

ASTM E1347 (2006; R 2011) Color and Color Difference
Measurement by Tristimulus (Filter)
Colorimetry

INTERNATIONAL CONCRETE REPAIR INSTITUTE (ICRI)

ICRI 03732 (1997) Selecting and Specifying Concrete
Surface Preparation for Sealers, Coatings,
and Polymer Overlays

MASTER PAINTERS INSTITUTE (MPI)

MPI 32 (2012) Traffic Marking Paint, S.B.

MPI 97 (2012) Traffic Marking Paint, Latex

SOCIETY OF AUTOMOTIVE ENGINEERS INTERNATIONAL (SAE)

SAE AMS-STD-595A (2017) Colors used in Government
Procurement

U.S. FEDERAL HIGHWAY ADMINISTRATION (FHWA)

MUTCD (2015) Manual on Uniform Traffic Control
Devices

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

FS TT-B-1325 (Rev D; Notice 1; Notice 2 2017) Beads
(Glass Spheres) Retro-Reflective (Metric)

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only or as otherwise designated. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Surface Preparation Equipment List; G

Application Equipment List; GSafety Data Sheets; GReflective media
for roads; G

Waterborne Paint; G

Solventborne Paint; G

Thermoplastic compound; G

Waterborne Paint; G

Solventborne Paint; G

SD-07 Certificates

Qualifications; G

Reflective Media for Roads

Waterborne Paint

Solventborne Paint

Volatile Organic Compound, (VOC); G

Thermoplastic Compound

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Waterborne Paint; G

Solventborne Paint; G

Thermoplastic Compound; G

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.3.1 Regulatory Requirements

Submit certificate stating that the proposed pavement marking paint meets the [Volatile Organic Compound](#), (VOC) regulations of the local Air Pollution Control District having jurisdiction over the geographical area in which the project is located. Submit [Safety Data Sheets](#) for each product.

1.3.2 Qualifications

Submit documentation certifying that pertinent personnel are qualified for equipment operation and handling of applicable chemicals. The documentation should include experience on five projects of similar size and scope with references for all personnel.

1.4 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Deliver paint materials, thermoplastic compound materials, and reflective media in original sealed containers that plainly show the designated name, specification number, batch number, color, date of manufacture, manufacturer's directions, and name of manufacturer.

Provide storage facilities at the job site for maintaining materials at temperatures recommended by the manufacturer.

1.5 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

1.5.1 Environmental Requirements

1.5.1.1 Weather Limitations for Application

Apply pavement markings to clean, dry surfaces, and unless otherwise approved, only when the air and pavement surface temperature is at least [5 degrees F](#) above the dew point and the air and pavement temperatures are within the limits recommended by the pavement marking manufacturer. Allow pavement surfaces to dry after water has been used for cleaning or rainfall

has occurred prior to striping or marking. Test the pavement surface for moisture before beginning work each day and after cleaning. Do not commence marking until the pavement is sufficiently dry and the pavement condition has been approved by the Contracting Officer. Employ the "plastic wrap method" to test the pavement for moisture as specified in paragraph TESTING FOR MOISTURE.

1.5.1.2 Weather Limitations for Removal of Pavement Markings on Roads and Automotive Parking Areas

Pavement surface must be free of snow, ice, or slush; with a surface temperature of at least 40 degrees F and rising at the beginning of operations, except those involving shot or sand blasting or grinding. Cease operation during thunderstorms, or during rainfall, except for waterblasting and removal of previously applied chemicals. Cease waterblasting where surface water accumulation alters the effectiveness of material removal.

1.5.2 Traffic Controls

Place warning signs conforming to MUTCD near the beginning of the worksite and well ahead of the worksite for alerting approaching traffic from both directions. Place small markers along newly painted lines or freshly placed raised markers to control traffic and prevent damage to newly painted surfaces or displacement of raised pavement markers. Mark painting equipment with large warning signs indicating slow-moving painting equipment in operation.

When traffic must be rerouted or controlled to accomplish the work, provide necessary warning signs, flag persons, and related equipment for the safe passage of vehicles.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT

2.1.1 Surface Preparation and Paint Removal

2.1.1.1 Surface Preparation Equipment for Roads and Automotive Parking Areas

Submit a surface preparation equipment list by serial number, type, model, and manufacturer. Include descriptive data indicating area of coverage per pass, pressure adjustment range, tank and flow capacities, and safety precautions required for the equipment operation. Mobile equipment must allow for removal of markings without damaging the pavement surface or joint sealant. Maintain machines, tools, and equipment used in the performance of the work in satisfactory operating condition.

2.1.1.1.1 Waterblasting Equipment

Use mobile waterblasting equipment capable of producing a pressurized stream of water that effectively removes paint from the pavement surface without significantly damaging the pavement. Provide equipment, tools, and machinery which are safe and in good working order at all times.

2.1.1.1.2 Grinding or Scarifying Equipment

Use equipment capable of removing surface contaminants, paint build-up, or extraneous markings from the pavement surface without leaving any residue.

Clean the surface by hydro blast to remove surface contaminants and ash after a weed torch is used to remove paint.

2.1.1.1.3 Chemical Removal Equipment

Use chemical equipment capable of applying and removing chemicals and paint from the pavement surface, leaving only non-toxic biodegradable residue without scarring or other damage to the pavement or joints and joint seals.

2.1.2 Application Equipment

Submit [application equipment list](#) appropriate for the material(s) to be used. Include manufacturer's descriptive data and certification for the planned use that indicates area of coverage per pass, pressure adjustment range, tank and flow capacities, and all safety precautions required for operating and maintaining the equipment. Provide and maintain machines, tools, and equipment used in the performance of the work in satisfactory operating condition, or remove them from the work site. Provide mobile and maneuverable application equipment to the extent that straight lines can be followed and normal curves can be made in a true arc.

2.1.2.1 Paint Application Equipment

2.1.2.1.1 Hand-Operated, Push-Type Machines

Provide hand-operated push-type applicator machine of a type commonly used for application of water based paint or two-component, chemically curing paint, thermoplastic, or preformed tape, to pavement surfaces for small marking projects, such as legends and cross-walks, automotive parking areas, or surface painted signs. Provide applicator machine equipped with the necessary tanks and spraying nozzles capable of applying paint uniformly at coverage specified. Hand operated spray guns may be used in areas where push-type machines cannot be used.

2.1.2.1.2 Self-Propelled or Mobile-Drawn Spraying Machines

2.1.2.1.2.1 Road Marking

Provide equipment used for marking roads capable of placing the prescribed number of lines at a single pass as solid lines, intermittent lines, or a combination of solid and intermittent lines using a maximum of three different colors of paint as specified.

2.1.2.1.2.2 Hand Application

Provide spray guns for hand application of paint in areas where the mobile paint applicator cannot be used.

2.1.2.2 Thermoplastic Application Equipment

2.1.2.2.1 Thermoplastic Material

Apply thermoplastic material with equipment that is capable of providing continuous uniformity in the dimensions and reflectorization of the marking.

2.1.2.2.2 Application Equipment

- a. Provide application equipment capable of continuous mixing and agitation of the material, with conveying parts which prevent

accumulation and clogging between the main material reservoir and the extrusion shoe or spray gun. All parts of the equipment which come into contact with the material must be easily accessible and exposed for cleaning and maintenance. All mixing and conveying parts up to and including the extrusion shoes and spray guns must maintain the material at the required temperature with heat-transfer oil or electrical-element-controlled heat.

- b. Provide application equipment constructed to ensure continuous uniformity in the dimensions of the stripe. Provide an applicator with a means for cleanly cutting off stripe ends squarely and providing a method of applying "skiplines." Provide equipment capable of applying varying widths of traffic markings.
- c. Provide mobile and maneuverable application equipment allowing straight lines to be followed and normal curves to be made in a true arc. Provide equipment used for the placement of thermoplastic pavement markings of two general types: mobile applicator and portable applicator.
- d. Equip the applicator with a pressurized or drop-on type bead dispenser capable of uniformly dispensing reflective glass spheres at controlled rates of flow. The bead dispenser must operate automatically to begin flow prior to the flow of binder to assure that the strip is fully reflectorized.

2.1.2.2.3 Mobile Application Equipment

Provide a truck-mounted, self-contained pavement marking machine that is capable of hot applying thermoplastic by either the extrusion or spray method.

- a. Equip the unit to apply the thermoplastic marking material at temperatures according to the manufacturer's instructions, at widths varying from 3 to 12 inches, with an automatic pressurized or drop-on bead dispensing system, capable of operating continuously, and of installing a minimum of 20,000 lineal feet of longitudinal markings in an 8-hour day.
- b. Equip the mobile unit with a melting kettle which holds a minimum of 6000 pounds of molten thermoplastic material; capable of heating the thermoplastic composition to temperatures as recommended by the manufacturer. Use a thermostatically controlled heat transfer liquid. Heating of the composition by direct flame is not allowed. Oil and material temperature gauges must be visible at both ends of the kettle.
- c. Equip mobile units for application of extruded markings with a minimum of two extrusion shoes; located one on each side of the truck, capable of marking simultaneous edge line and centerline stripes; each being a closed, oil-jacketed unit; holding the molten thermoplastic at a temperature as recommended by the manufacturer; and capable of extruding a line of 3 to 8 inches in width; and at a thickness of not less than 0.120 inch nor more than 0.190 inch, of generally uniform cross section.
- d. Equip mobile units for application of spray markings with a spray gun system capable of marking simultaneous edgeline and centerline stripes. Surround (jacket) the spray system with heating oil to maintain the molten thermoplastic at a temperature of 375 to 425

degrees F, capable of spraying a stripe of 3 to 12 inches in width, and in thicknesses varying from 0.060 inch to 0.098 inch, of generally uniform cross section.

- e. Equip the mobile unit with an electronic programmable line pattern control system, capable of applying skip or solid lines in any sequence, through any and all of the extrusion shoes, or the spray guns, and in programmable cycle lengths. In addition, equip the mobile unit with an automatic counting mechanism capable of recording the number of lineal feet of thermoplastic markings applied to the pavement surface with an accuracy of 0.5 percent.

2.1.2.2.4 Portable Application Equipment

Provide portable hand-operated equipment, specifically designed for placing special markings such as crosswalks, stop bars, legends, arrows, and short lengths of lane, edge and centerlines; and capable of applying thermoplastic pavement markings by the extrusion method. Equip the portable applicator with all the necessary components, including a materials storage reservoir, bead dispenser, extrusion shoe, and heating accessories, capable of holding the molten thermoplastic at the temperature recommended by the manufacturer, and of extruding a line of 3 to 12 inches in width, and in thickness of not less than 0.120 inch nor more than 0.190 inch and of generally uniform cross section.

2.1.2.3 Reflective Media Dispenser

Attach the dispenser for applying the reflective media to the paint or thermoplastic dispenser and designed to operate automatically and simultaneously with the applicator through the same control mechanism. The bead applicator must be capable of adjustment and designed to provide uniform flow of reflective media over the full length and width of the stripe at the rate of coverage specified in paragraph APPLICATION.

2.1.2.4 Preformed Tape Application Equipment

Provide and use mechanical application equipment for the placement of preformed marking tape which is a mobile pavement marking machine specifically designed for use in applying pressure-sensitive pavement marking tape of varying widths. Equip the applicator with rollers, or other suitable compaction device to provide initial adhesion of the material with the pavement surface. Use additional tools and devices as needed to properly seat the applied material as recommended by the manufacturer.

2.2 MATERIALS

Use thermoplastic for roads. Use non-reflectorized waterborne or solventborne paint for automotive parking areas. The maximum allowable VOC content of pavement markings is 150 grams per liter. Color of markings are indicated on the drawings and must conform to ASTM D6628 for roads and automotive parking areas and SAE AMS-STD-595A for airfields. Provide materials conforming to the requirements specified herein.

2.2.1 Waterborne Paint

MPI 97.

2.2.2 Solventborne Paint

MPI 32.

2.2.3 Epoxy Paint

2.2.3.1 Formulation

Epoxy pavement marking material will be a two component, 100 percent solids, material formulated to provide simple volumetric mixing ratio of two volumes of component A and one volume of component B unless otherwise recommended by the manufacturer.

2.2.3.2 Composition

The component A of both white and yellow must be within the following limits:

TABLE I		
	White	Yellow
Pigments	Minimum 18 percent by weight Titanium Dioxide (ASTM D476, Type II)	21-27 percent by weight
Epoxy Resin	75-82 percent	73-79 percent

The epoxy resin must be free of lead, cadmium, mercury, hexavalent chromium and other toxic heavy metals as defined by the Environmental Protection Agency. Submit a manufacturer's certification of compliance with this requirement.

2.2.3.3 Epoxide Value

Determine epoxide epoxy number of the epoxy resin in accordance with ASTM D1652 for white and yellow component A on pigment free basis. The epoxide number must be within plus or minus 50 of the published manufacturer's standard.

2.2.3.4 Total Amine Value

Determine the amine number on the curing agent (component B) in accordance with ASTM D2074. The amine number must be within plus or minus 50 of the published manufacturer's standard.

2.2.3.5 Toxicity

Upon heating to application temperature, the material must not produce fumes which are toxic or injurious to persons or property.

2.2.3.6 Daylight Directional Reflectance

Directional reflectance of white and yellow paint (without glass beads) in accordance with ASTM E1347: White 84 percent Yellow 55 percent.

2.2.3.7 Laboratory Drying Time

The epoxy pavement marking material must have a maximum no-pick-up time of 30 minutes when tested in accordance with [ASTM D711](#).

2.2.3.8 Curing

The epoxy material must be capable of fully curing under a constant surface temperature of [45 Degrees F](#) or above.

2.2.3.9 Adhesion to Concrete

The catalyzed epoxy pavement marking material must have a high degree of adhesion to the specified concrete surface (100 percent concrete failure) when tested according to [ASTM D7234](#). The concrete substrate must have a minimum compressive strength of [4,000 psi](#). Condition prepared specimens at a temperature of [75 plus or minus 2 Degrees F](#) for a minimum of 24 hours and a maximum of 72 hours prior to performance of the test.

2.2.3.10 Hardness

Epoxy pavement marking materials must have a Shore D Hardness between 75 and 100 when tested in accordance with [ASTM D2240](#). Cure the samples at [75 plus or minus 2 Degrees F](#) for a minimum of 72 hours and a maximum of 96 hours prior to performing the tests.

2.2.3.11 Abrasion Resistance

The wear index for a catalyzed sample must not exceed 82 when tested in accordance with [ASTM D4060](#) using a 1000 gram load, CS-17 wheels and a test duration of 1000 cycles. Run the test on cured samples of material which have been applied at a film thickness of 15 plus or minus 0.5 mils to code S-16 stainless steel plates. Cure the samples at [75 plus or minus 2 Degrees F](#) for a minimum of 48 hours prior to performing the tests.

2.2.3.12 Tensile Strength

Epoxy pavement marking materials must have a tensile strength of at least [6,000 psi](#) when tested in accordance with [ASTM D638](#). Cast the Type IV specimens in a suitable mold and pull at the rate of [1/4 inch](#) per minute using a suitable dynamic testing machine. Cure the samples at [75 plus or minus 2 Degrees F](#) for a minimum of 12 hours and a maximum of 48 hours prior to performing the tests.

2.2.3.13 Compressive Strength

Catalyzed epoxy pavement marking materials must have a compressive strength of at least [12,000 psi](#) when tested in accordance with [ASTM D695](#). Condition the cast sample at [75 plus or minus 2 Degrees F](#) for a minimum of 12 hours and a maximum of 48 hours prior to performing the tests. The rate of compression of these samples must not exceed [1/4 inch](#) per minute.

2.2.4 Thermoplastic Compound

2.2.4.1 Composition Requirements

Thermoplastic compound must conform to [AASHTO M 249](#). Formulate the binder component as an alkyd resin.

2.2.4.2 Primer

- a. Asphalt concrete primer: Provide thermosetting adhesive primer with a solids content of pigment reinforced synthetic rubber and synthetic plastic resin dissolved or dispersed in a volatile organic solvent for asphaltic concrete pavements. The solids content must not be less than 10 percent by weight at 70 degrees F and 60 percent relative humidity. A wet film thickness of 0.005 inch, plus or minus 0.001 inch, must dry to a tack-free condition in less than 5 minutes.
- b. Portland cement concrete primer: Provide an epoxy resin primer for Portland cement concrete pavements, of the type recommended by the manufacturer of the thermoplastic composition.

2.2.5 Reflective Media

2.2.5.1 Reflective Media for Roads

AASHTO M 247, Type 1.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

3.1.1 Testing for Moisture

Test the pavement surface for moisture before beginning pavement marking after each period of rainfall, fog, high humidity, or cleaning, or when the ambient temperature has fallen below the dew point. Do not commence marking until the pavement is sufficiently dry and the pavement condition has been approved by the Contracting Officer or authorized representative.

Employ the "plastic wrap method" to test the pavement for moisture as follows: Cover the pavement with a 12 inch by 12 inch section of clear plastic wrap and seal the edges with tape. After 15 minutes, examine the plastic wrap for any visible moisture accumulation inside the plastic. Do not begin marking operations until the test can be performed with no visible moisture accumulation inside the plastic wrap. Re-test surfaces when work has been stopped due to rain.

3.1.2 Surface Preparation Demonstration

Prior to surface preparation, demonstrate the proposed procedures and equipment. Prepare areas large enough to determine, adhesion of remaining coating and rate of cleaning. Approved demonstration area establishes the standard for the remainder of the work.

3.1.3 Test Stripe Demonstration

Prior to paint application, demonstrate test stripe application within the work area using the proposed materials and equipment. Apply separate test stripes in each of the line widths and configurations required herein using the proposed equipment. Make the test stripes long enough to determine the proper speed and operating pressures for the vehicle(s) and machinery, but not less than 50 feet long.

3.1.4 Application Rate Demonstration

During the Test Stripe Demonstration, demonstrate compliance with the

application rates specified herein. Document the equipment speed and operating pressures required to meet the specified rates in each configuration of the equipment and provide a copy of the documentation to the Contracting Officer prior to proceeding with the work.

3.1.5 Level of Performance Demonstration

The Contracting Officer will be present at the application demonstrations to observe the results obtained and to validate the operating parameters of the vehicle(s) and equipment. If accepted by the Contracting Officer, the test stripe is the measure of performance required for this project. Do not proceed with the work until the demonstration results are satisfactory to the Contracting Officer.

3.2 EXTERIOR SURFACE PREPARATION

Allow new pavement surfaces to cure for a period of not less than 30 days before application of marking materials. Thoroughly clean surfaces to be marked before application of the paint. Remove dust, dirt, and other granular surface deposits by sweeping, blowing with compressed air, rinsing with water, or a combination of these methods as required. Remove rubber deposits, existing paint markings, residual curing compounds, and other coatings adhering to the pavement by water blasting.

- a. For Portland Cement Concrete pavement, grinding, light shot blasting, or light scarification, to a resulting profile equal to **ICRI 03732** CSP 2, CSP 3, and CSP 4, respectively, can be used in addition to water blasting on most pavements, to either remove existing coatings, or for surface preparation.
- b. Do not use shot blasting on airfield pavements due to the potential of Foreign Object Damage (FOD) to aircraft. Scrub affected areas, where oil or grease is present on old pavements to be marked, with several applications of trisodium phosphate solution or other approved detergent or degreaser and rinse thoroughly after each application. After cleaning oil-soaked areas, seal with shellac or primer recommended by the manufacturer to prevent bleeding through the new paint. Do not commence painting in any area until pavement surfaces are dry and clean.

3.2.1 Early Painting of Rigid Pavements

Pretreat rigid pavements that require early painting with an aqueous solution containing 3 percent phosphoric acid and 2 percent zinc chloride. Apply the solution to the areas to be marked.

3.2.2 Early Painting of Asphalt Pavements

For asphalt pavement systems requiring painting application at less than 30 days, apply the paint and beads at half the normal application rate, followed by a second application at the normal rate after 30 days.

3.3 APPLICATION

Apply pavement markings to dry pavements only.

3.3.1 Paint

Apply paint with approved equipment at rate of coverage specified herein.

Provide guidelines and templates as necessary to control paint application. Take special precautions in marking numbers, letters, and symbols. Manually paint numbers, letters, and symbols. Sharply outline all edges of markings. The maximum drying time requirements of the paint specifications will be strictly enforced, to prevent undue softening of bitumen, and pickup, displacement, or discoloration by tires of traffic. If there is a deficiency in drying of the markings, painting operations must cease until the cause of the slow drying is determined and corrected.

3.3.1.1 Waterborne Paint

3.3.1.1.1 Roads

Apply paint at a rate of 105 plus or minus 5 square feet per gallon. Apply AASHTO M 247 Type 1 beads at a rate of 7 plus or minus 0.5 pounds of glass spheres per gallon.

3.3.1.2 Solventborne Paint

Apply paint at a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils. Apply AASHTO M 247 Type 1 beads at a minimum rate of 6 pounds of glass spheres per gallon.

3.3.1.3 Methacrylate Paint

Apply paint evenly to the pavement surface at a maximum rate of 45 square feet per gallon. Apply glass spheres conforming to FS TT-B-1325 uniformly to the wet paint on airfield pavement. Use either Type I (Gradation A), Type III, or Type IV (Gradation A or B) beads. Apply Type I (Gradation A) beads at a minimum rate of 15 pounds of glass spheres per gallon. Apply Type III beads at a minimum rate of 20 pounds of glass spheres per gallon. Apply Type IV (Gradation A or B) beads at a minimum rate of 16 pounds of glass spheres per gallon.

3.3.1.4 Epoxy Paint

Apply paint evenly to the pavement surface at a wet film thickness of 20 mils plus or minus 1 mil to cover 80 plus or minus 4 square feet per gallon. Apply glass spheres uniformly to the wet paint on road and street pavement at a rate of 7 plus or minus 0.5 pounds of glass spheres per gallon.

3.3.2 Thermoplastic Compound

Place thermoplastic pavement markings, free from dirt or tint, upon dry pavement. The temperature must be a minimum of 40 degrees F and rising at the time of installation. Apply all centerline, skipline, edgeline, and other longitudinal type markings with a mobile applicator. Place all special markings, crosswalks, stop bars, legends, arrows, and similar patterns with a portable applicator, using the extrusion method.

3.3.2.1 Primer

After surface preparation has been completed, prime the asphalt or concrete pavement surface with spray equipment. Allow primer materials to "set-up" prior to applying the thermoplastic composition. Allow the asphalt concrete primer to dry to a tack-free condition, usually occurring in less than 10 minutes. Allow the Portland cement concrete primer to dry in accordance with the thermoplastic manufacturer recommendations. To shorten the curing time of the epoxy resins, an infrared heating device may be used

on the concrete primer. Apply asphalt concrete primer to all asphalt concrete pavements at a wet film thickness of 0.005 inch, plus or minus 0.001 inch (265 to 400 square feet per gallon). Apply Portland cement concrete primer to all concrete pavements (including concrete bridge decks) at a wet film thickness of between 0.04 to 0.05 inch 320 to 400 square feet per gallon.

After the primer has "set-up", apply the thermoplastic at temperatures no lower than 375 degrees F nor higher than 425 degrees F at the point of deposition. Apply all extruded thermoplastic markings at the specified width and at a thickness of not less than 0.125 inch nor more than 0.190 inch. Apply all sprayed thermoplastic markings at the specified width and the thickness designated in the contract plans. If the plans do not specify a thickness, apply centerline markings at a wet thickness of 0.090 inch, plus or minus 0.005 inch, and edgeline markings at a wet thickness of 0.060 inch, plus or minus 0.005 inch.

3.3.2.2 Reflective Media

Immediately after installation of the thermoplastic material, mechanically apply drop-on reflective glass spheres conforming to FS TT-B-1325 Type I (Gradation A) and AASHTO M 247 Type 1 at the rate of one pound per 20 square feet such that the spheres are held by and imbedded in the surface of the molten material. Accomplish drop-on application of the glass spheres to ensure even distribution at the specified rate of coverage. If there is a malfunction of either thermoplastic applicator or reflective media dispenser, discontinue operations until deficiency is corrected.

3.3.3 Preformed Tape

The pavement surface and ambient air temperature must be a minimum of 60 degrees F and rising. Place the preformed markings in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3.4 Cleanup and Waste Disposal

Keep the worksite clean and free of debris and waste from the removal and application operations. Dispose of debris at approved sites.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.4.1 Sampling and Testing

As soon as the paint and thermoplastic materials and reflective media are available for sampling, obtain by random selection from the sealed containers, two quart samples of each batch in the presence of the Contracting Officer. Accomplish adequate mixing prior to sampling to ensure a uniform, representative sample. A batch is defined as that quantity of material processed by the manufacturer at one time and identified by number on the label. Clearly identify samples by designated name, specification number, batch number, project contract number, intended use, and quantity involved.

At the discretion of the Contracting Officer, samples provided may be tested by the Government for verification.

3.4.2 Material Inspection

Examine material at the job site to determine that it is the material

referenced in the report of test results or certificate of compliance. Provide test results substantiating conformance to the specified requirements with each certificate of compliance.

3.4.3 Dimensional Tolerances

Apply all markings in the standard dimensions provide in the drawings. New markings may deviate a maximum of 10 percent larger than the standard dimension. The maximum deviation allowed when painting over an old marking is up to 20 percent larger than the standard dimensions.

3.4.4 Bond Failure Verification

Inspect newly applied markings for signs of bond failure based on visual inspection and comparison to results from Test Stripe Demonstration paragraph.

3.4.5 Reflective Media and Coating Application Verification

Use a wet film thickness gauge to measure the application of wet paint. Use a microscope or magnifying glass to evaluate the embedment of glass beads in the paint. Verify the glass bead embedment with approximately 50 percent of the individual bead spheres embedded and 50 percent of the individual bead spheres exposed.

3.4.6 Retroreflective Markings

Collect and record readings for white and yellow retroreflective markings at the rate of one reading per 1000 linear feet. The minimum acceptable average for white markings is 200 millicandelas per square meter per lux (mcd/m²/lx) (measured with Retroreflectometer). The minimum acceptable average for yellow markings is 175 millicandelas per square meter per lux (mcd/m²/lx). Compute readings by averaging a minimum of 10 readings taken within the area at random locations. Re-mark areas not meeting the retroreflective requirements stated above.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 32 31 13.53

HIGH-SECURITY CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES
04/08

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A116	(2011) Standard Specification for Metallic-Coated, Steel Woven Wire Fence Fabric
ASTM A121	(2013) Standard Specification for Metallic-Coated Carbon Steel Barbed Wire
ASTM A153/A153M	(2016) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
ASTM A240/A240M	(2017) Standard Specification for Chromium and Chromium-Nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip for Pressure Vessels and for General Applications
ASTM A392	(2011a; R 2017) Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric
ASTM A478	(1997; R 2013) Standard Specification for Chromium-Nickel Stainless Steel Weaving and Knitting Wire
ASTM A780/A780M	(2009; R 2015) Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings
ASTM A824	(2011; R 2017) Standard Specification for Metallic-Coated Steel Marcellled Tension Wire for Use With Chain Link Fence
ASTM C94/C94M	(2017a) Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete
ASTM F1043	(2018) Standard Specification for Strength and Protective Coatings on Steel Industrial Fence Framework
ASTM F1083	(2018) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Hot-Dipped Zinc Coated (Galvanized) Welded, for Fence Structures

ASTM F1184	(2016) Industrial and Commercial Horizontal Slide Gates
ASTM F567	(2014a) Standard Practice for Installation of Chain Link Fence
ASTM F626	(2014) Standard Specification for Fence Fittings
ASTM F900	(2011; R 2017) Standard Specification for Industrial and Commercial Swing Gates

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

FS RR-F-191	(Rev K) Fencing, Wire and Post Metal (and Gates, Chain-Link Fence Fabric, and Accessories)
FS RR-F-191/1	(Rev F) Fencing, Wire and Post, Metal (Chain-Link Fence Fabric)
FS RR-F-191/2	(Rev E) Fencing, Wire and Post, Metal (Chain-Link Fence Gates)
FS RR-F-191/3	(Rev E; Am 1) Fencing, Wire and Post, Metal (Chain-Link Fence Posts, Top Rails and Braces)
FS RR-F-191/4	(Rev F) Fencing, Wire and Post, Metal (Chain-Link Fence Accessories)

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Fence Installation
Installation Drawings
Location of gate, corner, end, and pull posts
Gate Assembly
Gate Hardware and Accessories

SD-03 Product Data

Fence Installation
Gate Assembly
Gate Hardware and Accessories

SD-04 Samples

Fabric
Posts
Post Caps

- Braces
- Top Rail
- Bottom Rail
- Tension Wire
- Barbed Wire
- Barbed Wire Supporting Arms
- Barbed Tape
- Stretcher Bars
- Gate Posts
- Gate Hardware and Accessories
- Wire Ties

SD-06 Test Reports

- zinc coating
- Aluminum Alloy Coating

SD-07 Certificates

- Chain Link Fence
- Reports
- Zinc Coating
- aluminum alloy coating
- Fabric
- Barbed Wire
- Stretcher Bars
- Gate Hardware and Accessories
- Concrete

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

- Fence Installation
- Gate Assembly
- Hardware Assembly
- Accessories

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

- operating and maintenance instructions

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.3.1 Required Report Data

Submit [reports](#), signed by an official authorized to certify on behalf of the manufacturer, of chain-link fencing listing and [accessories](#) regarding weight in ounces for [zinc coating](#), and chemical composition and thickness of [aluminum alloy coating](#). [Submit reports demonstrating full compliance with the following standards: FS RR-F-191, FS RR-F-191/1, FS RR-F-191/2, FS RR-F-191/3, and FS RR-F-191/4](#)

1.3.2 Assembly and Installation Drawings

Submit Manufacturer's instructions and complete Fence [Installation Drawings](#) for review and approval by the Contracting Officer prior to shipment. Drawing details shall include, but are not limited to: [Fence Installation, Location of gate, corner, end, and pull posts, Gate Assembly, and Gate Hardware and Accessories](#).

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver materials to site in an undamaged condition. Store materials off the ground to provide protection against oxidation caused by ground contact.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FENCE FABRIC

2.1.1 General

Provide **ASTM A392**, Class 2, zinc-coated steel wire with minimum coating weight of **2.0 ounces** of zinc per square **foot** of coated surface, Fabricate fence **fabric** of 9 gauge wire woven in **2 inch** mesh conforming to **ASTM A116**. Set fabric height at **7 feet** as shown. Fabric shall be twisted and barbed on the top selvage and knuckled on the bottom selvage. Secure fabric to posts using **stretcher bars** or ties spaced **15 inches** on center, or by integrally weaving to integral fastening loops of end, corner, pull, and **gate posts** for full length of each post. Install fabric on opposite side of posts from area being secured.

2.2 POSTS

2.2.1 Metal Posts for **Chain Link Fence**

FS RR-F-191/3 line posts; Class 2, aluminum pipe. End, corner, and pull posts; Class 2, aluminum pipe.

2.2.2 Accessories

- a. Provide accessories conforming to **ASTM F626**. Ferrous accessories shall be zinc or aluminum coated.
- b. Furnish truss rods for each terminal post. Provide truss rods with turnbuckles or other equivalent provisions for adjustment.
- c. Provide **Barbed wire supporting arms** of the 45 degree outward angle 3-strand arm type and of the design required for the post furnished. Secure arms by top rail.
- d. Furnish **post caps** in accordance with manufacturer's standard accessories.
- e. Provide 9 gauge steel tie wire for attaching fabric to rails, braces, and posts and match the coating of the fence fabric. Tie wires for attaching fabric to **tension wire** on high security fences shall be **16 gage** stainless steel. Provide double loop tie wires **6.5 inches** in length. Miscellaneous hardware coatings shall conform to **ASTM A153/A153M** unless modified.

2.3 BRACES AND RAILS

Braces, **top rail**, and **bottom rail**; Class 2, aluminum pipe, in minimum sizes listed in **FS RR-F-191/3** for each class and grade.

2.4 WIRE

2.4.1 Wire Ties

Submit samples as specified. [FS RR-F-191/4](#). Provide wire ties constructed of the same material as the fencing fabric.

2.4.2 Barbed Wire

Provide barbed wire conforming to [ASTM A121](#) zinc-coated, Type Z, Class 3, or aluminum-coated, Type A, with 12.5 gauge wire with 14 gauge, round, 4-point barbs spaced no more than [5 inches](#) apart.

2.4.3 Tension Wire

Provide Type I or Type II tension wire, Class 4 coating, in accordance with [ASTM A824](#). Provide 7 gauge coil spring wire for top wire.

2.5 BARBED TAPE

Provide reinforced barbed tape, single coil, for fence toppings fabricated from 430 series stainless steel with a hardness range of Rockwell (30N) 37-45 conforming to the requirements of [ASTM A240/A240M](#). Provide stainless steel strip [0.025 inch thick by 1 inch](#) wide before fabrication. Each barb shall be a minimum of [1.2 inch](#) in length, in groups of 4, spaced on [4 inch](#) centers. The stainless steel core wire shall have a [0.098 inch](#) diameter with a minimum tensile strength of [140 psi](#) and be in accordance with [ASTM A478](#). Reinforced barbed tape, single coil, for ground application shall meet the above requirements. Use sixteen gauge stainless steel twistable wire ties for attaching the barbed tape to the barbed wire and to the fence for ground application.

2.6 CONCRETE

[ASTM C94/C94M](#), using [3/4 inch](#) maximum size aggregate, and having minimum compressive strength of [3000 psi](#) at 28 days. Grout shall consist of one part portland cement to three parts clean, well-graded sand and the minimum amount of water to produce a workable mix.

2.7 GATES

2.7.1 Gate Assembly

Provide [gate assembly](#) conforming to [ASTM F900](#) and/or [ASTM F1184](#) of the type and swing shown. Provide gate frames conforming to strength and coating requirements of [ASTM F1083](#) for Group IA, steel pipe, with external coating Type A, nominal pipe size (NPS) 1-1/2. Provide gate frames conforming to strength and coating requirements of [ASTM F1043](#), for Group IC, steel pipe with external coating Type A or Type B, nominal pipe size (NPS) 1-1/2. Gate fabric shall be as specified for chain link fabric.

2.7.2 Gate Leaves

For gate leaves, more than [8 feet](#) wide, provide either intermediate members and diagonal truss rods or tubular members as necessary to provide rigid construction, free from sag or twist. Gate leaves less than [8 feet](#) wide shall have truss rods or intermediate braces. Provide intermediate braces on all gate frames with an electro-mechanical lock. Attach fabric to the gate frame by method standard with the manufacturer except that welding

will not be permitted.

2.7.3 Gate Hardware and Accessories

Submit manufacturer's catalog data. Furnish and install latches, hinges, stops, keepers, rollers, and other hardware items as required for the operation of the gate. Arrange latches for padlocking so that the padlock will be accessible from both sides of the gate. Provide stops for holding the gates in the open position. For high security applications, each end member of gate frames shall be extended sufficiently above the top member to carry three strands of barbed wire in horizontal alignment with barbed wire strands on the fence.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 FENCE INSTALLATION

Perform complete installation conforming to ASTM F567.

3.1.1 Line and Grade

Install fence to the lines and grades indicated. Clear the area on either side of the fence line to the extent indicated. Space line posts equidistant at intervals not exceeding 10 feet. Terminal (corner, gate, and pull) posts shall be set at abrupt changes in vertical and horizontal alignment. Provide fabric continuous between terminal posts; however, runs between terminal posts shall not exceed 500 feet. Repair any damage to galvanized surfaces, including welding, with paint containing zinc dust in accordance with ASTM A780/A780M.

3.1.2 Excavation

Clear all post holes of loose material. Spread waste material where directed. Eliminate ground surface irregularities along the fence line to the extent necessary to maintain a 2 inch clearance between the bottom of the fabric and finish grade.

3.2 POST INSTALLATION

3.2.1 Earth and Bedrock

- a. Set posts plumb and in alignment. Except where solid rock is encountered, set posts in concrete to the depth indicated on the drawings. Where solid rock is encountered with no overburden, set posts to a minimum depth of 18 inches in rock. Where solid rock is covered with an overburden of soil or loose rock, set posts to the minimum depth indicated on the drawing unless a penetration of 18 inches in solid rock is achieved before reaching the indicated depth, in which case terminate depth of penetration. Grout all portions of posts set in rock.
- b. Portions of posts not set in rock shall be set in concrete from the rock to ground level. Posts set in concrete shall be set in holes not less than the diameter shown on the drawings. Make diameters of holes in solid rock at least 1 inch greater than the largest cross section of the post. Thoroughly consolidate concrete and grout around each post, free of voids and finished to form a dome. Allow concrete and grout to cure for 72 hours prior to attachment of any item to the posts. Group II line posts may be mechanically driven, for temporary fence

construction only, if rock is not encountered. Set driven posts to a minimum depth of 3 feet and protect with drive caps when setting.

- c. Test fence post rigidity by applying a 50 pound force on the post, perpendicular to the fabric, at 5 feet above ground. Post movement measured at the point where the force is applied shall be less than or equal to 3/4 inch from the relaxed position. Test every tenth post for rigidity. When a post fails this test, make further tests on the next four posts on either side of the failed post. All failed posts shall be removed, replaced, and retested at the Contractor's expense.

3.3 RAILS

Bolt bottom rail to double rail ends and securely fasten double rail ends to the posts. Peen bolts to prevent easy removal. Install bottom rail before chain link fabric. Provide 3/8" diameter eye hook anchored into concrete footing at midpoint.

3.4 FABRIC INSTALLATION

- a. Install chain link fabric on the side of the post indicated. Attach fabric to terminal posts with stretcher bars and tension bands. Space bands at approximately 15 inch intervals. Install fabric and pull taut to provide a smooth and uniform appearance free from sag, without permanently distorting the fabric diamond or reducing the fabric height. Fasten fabric to line posts at approximately 15 inch intervals and fastened to all rails and tension wires at approximately 12 inch intervals.
- b. Cut fabric by untwisting and removing pickets. Accomplish splicing by weaving a single picket into the ends of the rolls to be joined. The bottom of the installed fabric shall be 2 plus or minus 1/2 inch above the ground.
- c. After the fabric installation is complete, exercise the fabric by applying a 50 pound push-pull force at the center of the fabric between posts; the use of a 30 pound pull at the center of the panel shall cause fabric deflection of not more than 2.5 inches when pulling fabric from the post side of the fence; every second fence panel shall meet this requirement; resecure and retest all failed panels at the Contractor's expense.

3.5 SUPPORTING ARMS

Install barbed wire supporting arms and barbed wire as indicated on the drawings and as recommended by the manufacturer. Anchor supporting arms to the posts in a manner to prevent easy removal with hand tools with 3/8 inch diameter plain pin rivets or, at the Contractor's option, with studs driven by low-velocity explosive-actuated tools for steel, wrought iron, ductile iron, or malleable iron. Studs driven by an explosive-actuated tool shall not be used with gray iron or other material that can be fractured. Use a minimum of two studs per support arm. Pull barbed wire taut and attach to the arms with clips or other means that will prevent easy removal.

3.6 BARBED TAPE INSTALLATION

Install stainless steel reinforced barbed tape as detailed on the drawings. Stretch out barbed tape to its manufacturer's recommended length, set on top of the barbed wire and "V" shaped support arms, then

secure it to the barbed wire. Secure the barbed tape to the barbed wire at the two points and at every spiral turn of both coils as shown on the drawings. Install stainless steel reinforced barbed tape for ground applications in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

3.7 GATE INSTALLATION

- a. Install gates at the locations shown. Mount gates to swing as indicated. Install latches, stops, and keepers as required. Install gates as recommended by the manufacturer.
- b. Attach padlocks to gates or gate posts with chains. Weld or otherwise secure hinge pins, and hardware assembly to prevent removal.
- c. Submit 6 copies of operating and maintenance instructions, a minimum of 2 weeks prior to field training. Operating instructions shall outline the step-by-step procedures required for system startup, operation, and shutdown. Include the manufacturer's name, model number, service manual, parts list, and brief description of all equipment and their basic operating features. Include in the maintenance instructions routine maintenance procedures, possible breakdowns and repairs, and troubleshooting guide. Also include the general gate layout, equipment layout and simplified wiring and control diagrams of the system as installed.

3.8 GROUNDING

- a. Ground fencing as indicated on drawings and specified.
- b. Ground fences crossed by overhead powerlines in excess of 600 volts. Electrical equipment attached to the fence shall be grounded.
- c. Ground fences on each side of all gates, at each corner, at the closest approach to each building located within 50 feet of the fence, and where the fence alignment changes more than 15 degrees. Grounding locations shall not exceed 650 feet. Bond each gate panel with a flexible bond strap to its gate post. Ground fences crossed by powerlines of 600 volts or more at or near the point of crossing and at distances not exceeding 150 feet on each side of crossing.
- d. Provide ground conductor consisting of No. 8 AWG solid copper wire. Grounding electrodes shall be 3/4 inch by 10 foot long copper-clad steel rod. Drive electrodes into the earth so that the top of the electrode is at least 6 inches below the grade. Where driving is impracticable, electrodes shall be buried a minimum of 12 inches deep and radially from the fence. The top of the electrode shall not be less than 2 feet or more than 8 feet from the fence. Clamp ground conductor to the fence and electrodes with bronze grounding clamps to create electrical continuity between fence posts, fence fabric, and ground rods. Total resistance of the fence to ground shall not be greater than 25 ohms.

3.9 SECURITY

Install new security fencing, remove existing security fencing, and perform related work to provide continuous security for facility. Schedule and fully coordinate work with Contracting Officer and cognizant Security Officer.

3.10 CLEANUP

Remove waste fencing materials and other debris from the work site each workday.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 32 92 23

SODDING

04/06

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C602	(2013a) Agricultural Liming Materials
ASTM D4427	(2018) Standard Classification of Peat Samples by Laboratory Testing
ASTM D4972	(2018) Standard Test Methods for pH of Soils

TURFGRASS PRODUCERS INTERNATIONAL (TPI)

TPI GSS	(1995) Guideline Specifications to Turfgrass Sodding

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE (USDA)

DOA SSIR 42	(1996) Soil Survey Investigation Report No. 42, Soil Survey Laboratory Methods Manual, Version 3.0

1.2 DEFINITIONS

1.2.1 Stand of Turf

100 percent ground cover of the established species.

1.3 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL, Section 32 93 00 EXTERIOR PLANTS, and Section 32 05 33 LANDSCAPE ESTABLISHMENT applies to this section for pesticide use and plant establishment requirements, with additions and modifications herein.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Fertilizer; G

Include physical characteristics, and recommendations.

SD-06 Test Reports

Topsoil composition tests (reports and recommendations); G

SD-07 Certificates

Sod farm certification for sods. Indicate type of sod in accordance with TPI GSS.; G

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.5.1 Delivery

1.5.1.1 Sod Protection

Protect from drying out and from contamination during delivery, on-site storage, and handling.

1.5.1.2 Fertilizer Delivery

Deliver to the site in original, unopened containers bearing manufacturer's chemical analysis, name, trade name, trademark, and indication of conformance to state and federal laws. Instead of containers, fertilizer may be furnished in bulk with certificate indicating the above information.

1.5.2 Storage

1.5.2.1 Sod Storage

Lightly sprinkle with water, cover with moist burlap, straw, or other approved covering; and protect from exposure to wind and direct sunlight until planted. Provide covering that will allow air to circulate so that internal heat will not develop. Do not store sod longer than 24 hours. Do not store directly on concrete or bituminous surfaces.

1.5.2.2 Topsoil

Prior to stockpiling topsoil, treat growing vegetation with application of appropriate specified non-selective herbicide. Clear and grub existing vegetation three to four weeks prior to stockpiling topsoil.

1.5.2.3 Handling

Do not drop or dump materials from vehicles.

1.6 TIME RESTRICTIONS AND PLANTING CONDITIONS

1.6.1 Restrictions

Do not plant when the ground is frozen, snow covered, muddy, or when air temperature exceeds 90 degrees Fahrenheit.

1.7 TIME LIMITATIONS

1.7.1 Sod

Place sod a maximum of thirty six hours after initial harvesting, in accordance with TPI GSS as modified herein.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SODS

2.1.1 Classification

Nursery grown, certified as classified in the TPI GSS. Machine cut sod at a uniform thickness of 3/4 inch within a tolerance of 1/4 inch, excluding top growth and thatch. Each individual sod piece shall be strong enough to support its own weight when lifted by the ends. Broken pads, irregularly shaped pieces, and torn or uneven ends will be rejected. Wood pegs and wire staples for anchorage shall be as recommended by sod supplier.

2.1.2 Purity

Sod species shall be genetically pure, free of weeds, pests, and disease.

2.1.3 Planting Dates

Lay sod from May to June for warm season spring planting and from October to November for cool season fall planting.

2.1.4 Composition

2.1.4.1 Proportion

Proportion grass species as follows.

Botanical Name	Common Name	Percent
Eremochloa Ophiuroides "TifBlair"	TifBlair Centipede Sod	100

2.1.4.2 Sod Farm Overseeding

At the sod farm provide sod with overseeding of type recommended by seed producer.

2.2 TOPSOIL

2.2.1 On-Site Topsoil

Surface soil stripped and stockpiled on site and modified as necessary to meet the requirements specified for topsoil in paragraph entitled "Composition." When available topsoil shall be existing surface soil stripped and stockpiled on-site in accordance with Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL.

2.2.2 Off-Site Topsoil

Conform to requirements specified in paragraph entitled "Composition."

Additional topsoil shall be furnished by the Contractor.

2.2.3 Composition

Containing from 5 to 10 percent organic matter as determined by the [topsoil composition tests](#) of the Organic Carbon, 6A, Chemical Analysis Method described in [DOA SSIR 42](#). Maximum particle size, [3/4 inch](#), with maximum 3 percent retained on [1/4 inch](#) screen. The pH shall be tested in accordance with [ASTM D4972](#). Topsoil shall be free of sticks, stones, roots, and other debris and objectionable materials. Other components shall conform to the following limits:

Silt	25-50 percent
Clay	10-30 percent
Sand	20-35 percent
pH	5.5 for turfgrass areas; 5.5 to 6.5 for remaining areas
Soluble Salts	600 ppm

2.3 SOIL CONDITIONERS

Add conditioners to topsoil as required to bring into compliance with "composition" standard for topsoil as specified herein.

2.3.1 Lime

Commercial grade [calcium carbonate CaCO₃](#) limestone containing a calcium carbonate equivalent (C.C.E.) as specified in [ASTM C602](#) of not less than [100](#) percent.

2.3.2 Aluminum Sulfate

Commercial grade.

2.3.3 Sulfur

100 percent elemental

2.3.4 Iron

100 percent elemental

2.3.5 Peat

Natural product of peat moss derived from a freshwater site and conforming to [ASTM D4427](#). Shred and granulate peat to pass a [1/2 inch](#) mesh screen and condition in storage pile for minimum 6 months after excavation.

2.3.6 Sand

Clean and free of materials harmful to plants.

2.3.7 Perlite

Horticultural grade.

2.3.8 Composted Derivatives

Ground bark, nitrolized sawdust, humus or other green wood waste material free of stones, sticks, and soil stabilized with nitrogen and having the following properties:

2.3.8.1 Particle Size

Minimum percent by weight passing:

No. 4 mesh screen	95
No. 8 mesh screen	80

2.3.8.2 Nitrogen Content

Minimum percent based on dry weight:

Fir Sawdust	0.7
Fir or Pine Bark	1.0

2.3.9 Gypsum

Coarsely ground gypsum comprised of calcium sulfate dihydrate 91 percent, calcium 22 percent, sulfur 17 percent; minimum 96 percent passing through 20 mesh screen, 100 percent passing thru 16 mesh screen.

2.3.10 Calcined Clay

Calcined clay shall be granular particles produced from montmorillonite clay calcined to a minimum temperature of 1200 degrees F. Gradation: A minimum 90 percent shall pass a No. 8 sieve; a minimum 99 percent shall be retained on a No. 60 sieve; and a maximum 2 percent shall pass a No. 100 sieve. Bulk density: A maximum 40 pounds per cubic foot.

2.4 FERTILIZER

2.4.1 Granular Fertilizer

Organic, granular controlled release fertilizer containing the following minimum percentages, by weight, of plant food nutrients.

Per soil test recommendations, percent available nitrogen
Per soil test recommendations, percent available phosphorus
Per soil test recommendations, percent available potassium
Per soil test recommendations, percent sulfur
Per soil test recommendations, percent iron

2.5 WATER

Source of water shall be approved by Contracting Officer and of suitable quality for irrigation containing no element toxic to plant life.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

3.1.1 Extent Of Work

Provide soil preparation (including soil conditioners), fertilizing, and sodding of all newly graded finished earth surfaces, unless indicated otherwise, and at all areas inside or outside the limits of construction that are disturbed by the Contractor's operations.

3.1.2 Soil Preparation

Provide 4 inches of on-site topsoil to meet indicated finish grade. After areas have been brought to indicated finish grade, incorporate fertilizer, pH adjusters, and soil conditioners into soil a minimum depth of 4 inches by disking, harrowing, tilling or other method approved by the Contracting Officer. Remove debris and stones larger than 3/4 inch in any dimension remaining on the surface after finish grading. Correct irregularities in finish surfaces to eliminate depressions. Protect finished topsoil areas from damage by vehicular or pedestrian traffic.

3.1.2.1 Soil Conditioner Application Rates

If need is determined via required soil testing, apply the following soil conditioners at rates as determined by laboratory soil analysis of the soils at the job site.

Lime

Sulfur

Iron

Aluminum Sulfate

Peat

Sand

Perlite

Compost Derivatives

Calcined Clay

Gypsum

3.1.2.2 Fertilizer Application Rates

Apply Organic Granular Fertilizer at rates as determined by laboratory soil analysis of the soils at the job site.

3.2 SODDING

3.2.1 Finished Grade and Topsoil

Prior to the commencement of the sodding operation, the Contractor shall verify that finished grades are as indicated on drawings; the placing of

topsoil, smooth grading, and compaction requirements have been completed in accordance with Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL.

The prepared surface shall be a maximum 1 inch below the adjoining grade of any surfaced area. New surfaces shall be blended to existing areas. The prepared surface shall be completed with a light raking to remove from the surface debris and stones over a minimum 5/8 inch in any dimension.

3.2.2 Placing

Place sod a maximum of 36 hours after initial harvesting, in accordance with TPI GSS as modified herein.

3.2.3 Sodding Slopes and Ditches

For slopes 2:1 and greater, lay sod with long edge perpendicular to the contour. For V-ditches and flat bottomed ditches, lay sod with long edge perpendicular to flow of water. Anchor each piece of sod with wood pegs or wire staples maximum 2 feet on center. On slope areas, start sodding at bottom of the slope.

3.2.4 Finishing

After completing sodding, blend edges of sodded area smoothly into surrounding area. Air pockets shall be eliminated and a true and even surface shall be provided. Frayed edges shall be trimmed and holes and missing corners shall be patched with sod.

3.2.5 Rolling

Immediately after sodding, firm entire area except for slopes in excess of 3 to 1 with a roller not exceeding 90 pounds for each foot of roller width.

3.2.6 Watering

Start watering areas sodded as required by daily temperature and wind conditions. Apply water at a rate sufficient to ensure thorough wetting of soil to minimum depth of 6 inches. Run-off, puddling, and wilting shall be prevented. Watering trucks shall not be driven over turf areas. Watering of other adjacent areas or plant material shall be prevented.

3.3 PROTECTION OF TURF AREAS

Immediately after turfing, protect area against traffic and other use.

3.4 RESTORATION

Restore to original condition existing turf areas which have been damaged during turf installation operations. Keep clean at all times at least one paved pedestrian access route and one paved vehicular access route to each building. Clean other paving when work in adjacent areas is complete.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 32 93 00

EXTERIOR PLANTS

08/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICANHORT (AH)

ANSI/ANLA Z60.1 (2004) American Standard for Nursery Stock

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A580/A580M (2018) Standard Specification for
Stainless Steel Wire

ASTM C602 (2013a) Agricultural Liming Materials

ASTM D4427 (2018) Standard Classification of Peat
Samples by Laboratory Testing

ASTM D4972 (2018) Standard Test Methods for pH of
Soils

ASTM D5268 (2013) Topsoil Used for Landscaping
Purposes

ASTM D5852 (2000; R 2007; E 2014) Standard Test
Method for Erodibility Determination of
Soil in the Field or in the Laboratory by
the Jet Index Method

ASTM D6155 (2015) Nontraditional Coarse Aggregate for
Bituminous Paving Mixtures

ASTM D6629 (2001; E 2012; R 2012) Selection of
Methods for Estimating Soil Loss by Erosion

L.H. BAILEY HORTORIUM (LHBH)

LHBH (1976) Hortus Third

TREE CARE INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION (TCIA)

TCIA A300P1 (2017) ANSI A300 Part1: Tree Care
Operations - Trees, Shrubs and Other Woody
Plant Maintenance Standard Practices -
Pruning

TCIA Z133 (2017) American National Standard for
Arboricultural Operations - Pruning,
Repairing, Maintaining, and Removing

Trees, and Cutting Brush - Safety
Requirements

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE (USDA)

DOA SSIR 42

(1996) Soil Survey Investigation Report
No. 42, Soil Survey Laboratory Methods
Manual, Version 3.0

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL, Section 32 92 23 SODDING, and Section 32 05 33 LANDSCAPE ESTABLISHMENT applies to this section for pesticide use and plant establishment requirements, with additions and modifications herein.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

State Landscape Contractor's License; G

Time Restrictions and Planting Conditions; G

Indicate anticipated dates and locations for each type of planting.

SD-03 Product Data

Peat; G

Composted Derivatives; G

Rotted Manure; G

Organic Mulch Materials; G

Gypsum; G

Inorganic Mulch; G

Ground Stakes; G

Fertilizer; G

Weed Control Fabric; G

Root Control Barrier; G

Staking Material; G

Metal Anchors; G

Antidesiccants; G

Erosion Control Materials; G

Photographs; G

SD-04 Samples

Mulch; G

Submit one pint of mulch.

SD-06 Test Reports

Topsoil Composition Tests; G

Soil Test of proposed area; Soil Test location map. (Map locations of soil samples; include nutrient recommendations, physical composition of soil, extraction method, etc. at a minimum)

Percolation Test; G

Percolation Test of proposed area

SD-07 Certificates

Nursery Certifications; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Plastic Identification; G

When not labeled, identify types in Operation and Maintenance Manual.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4.1 Topsoil Composition Tests

Commercial test from an independent testing laboratory including basic soil groups (moisture and saturation percentages, Nitrogen-Phosphorus-Potassium (N-P-K) ratio, pH (ASTM D4972), soil salinity), secondary nutrient groups (calcium, magnesium, sodium, Sodium Absorption Ratio (SAR)), micronutrients (zinc, manganese, iron, copper), toxic soil elements (boron, chloride, sulfate), cation exchange and base saturation percentages, and soil amendment and fertilizer recommendations with quantities for plant material being transplanted. Soil required for each test must include a maximum depth of 6 inches of approximately one quart volume for each test. Areas sampled should not be larger than one acre and should contain at least 6-8 cores for each sample area and be thoroughly mixed. Problem areas should be sampled separately and compared with samples taken from adjacent non-problem areas. The location of the sample areas should be noted and marked on a parcel or planting map for future reference.

1.4.2 Nursery Certifications

- a. Indicate on nursery letterhead the name of plants in accordance with the LHBH, including botanical common names, quality, and size.

- b. Inspection certificate.
- c. Mycorrhizal fungi inoculum for plant material treated

1.4.3 State Landscape Contractor's License

Construction company must hold a landscape contractors license in the state where the work is performed and have a minimum of five years landscape construction experience. Submit copy of license and three references for similar work completed in the last five years.

1.4.4 Plant Material Photographs

Contractor must submit nursery photographs, for government approval prior to ordering, for each tree.

1.4.5 Percolation Test

Immediately following rough grading operation, identify a typical location for one of the largest trees and excavate a pit per the project details. Fill the pit with water to a depth of 12 inches. The length of time required for the water to percolate into the soil, leaving the pit empty, must be measured by the project Landscape Architect and verified by the Contracting Officer. Within six hours of the time the water has drained from the pit, the Contractor, with the Contracting Officer and project Landscape Architect present, must again fill the pit with water to a depth of 12 inches. If the water does not completely percolate into the soil within 9 hours, a determination must be made whether a drainage system or a soil penetrant will be required for each tree being transplanted.

1.4.6 Erosion Assessment

Assess potential effects of soil management practices on soil loss in accordance with ASTM D6629. Assess erodibility of soil with dominant soil structure less than 2.8 to 3.1 inches in accordance with ASTM D5852.

1.4.7 Pre-Installation Meeting

Convene a pre-installation meeting a minimum of one week prior to commencing work of this section. Require attendance of parties directly affecting work of this section. Review conditions of operations, procedures and coordination with related work. Agenda must include the following:

- a. Tour, inspect, and discuss conditions of planting materials.
- b. Review planting schedule and maintenance.
- c. Review required inspections.
- d. Review environmental procedures.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.5.1 Delivery

1.5.1.1 Branched Plant Delivery

Deliver with branches tied and exposed branches covered with material which allows air circulation. Prevent damage to branches, trunks, root systems, and root balls and desiccation of leaves.

1.5.1.2 Soil Amendment Delivery

Deliver to the site in original, unopened containers bearing manufacturer's chemical analysis, name, trade name, or trademark, and indication of conformance to state and federal laws. Instead of containers, fertilizer, gypsum, and lime may be furnished in bulk with a certificate indicating the above information. Store in dry locations away from contaminants.

1.5.1.3 Plant Labels

Deliver plants with durable waterproof labels in weather-resistant ink. Provide labels stating the correct botanical and common plant name and variety as applicable and size as specified in the list of required plants. Attach to plants, bundles, and containers of plants. Groups of plants may be labeled by tagging one plant. Labels must be legible for a minimum of 60 days after delivery to the planting site.

1.5.2 Storage

1.5.2.1 Plant Storage and Protection

Store and protect plants not planted on the day of arrival at the site as follows:

- a. Shade and protect plants in outside storage areas from the wind and direct sunlight until planted.
- b. Heel-in bare root plants.
- c. Protect balled and burlapped plants from freezing or drying out by covering the balls or roots with moist burlap, sawdust, wood chips, shredded bark, peat moss, or other approved material. Provide covering which allows air circulation.
- d. Keep plants in a moist condition until planted by watering with a fine mist spray.
- e. Do not store plant material directly on concrete or bituminous surfaces.

1.5.2.2 Fertilizer, Gypsum, pH Adjusters and Mulch Storage

Store in dry locations away from contaminants.

1.5.2.3 Topsoil

Prior to stockpiling topsoil, eradicate on site undesirable growing vegetation. Clear and grub existing vegetation three to four weeks prior to stockpiling existing topsoil.

1.5.2.4 Root Control Barrier and Weed Control Fabric

Store materials on site in enclosures or under protective covering in dry location. Store under cover out of direct sunlight. Do not store materials directly on ground.

1.5.3 Handling

Do not drop or dump plants from vehicles. Avoid damaging plants being moved from nursery or storage area to planting site. Handle **balled and burlapped, bare root, and container** plants carefully to avoid damaging or breaking the earth ball or root structure. Do not handle plants by the trunk or stem. Puddle bare-root plants after removal from the heeling-in bed to protect roots from drying out. Remove damaged plants from the site.

1.5.4 TIME LIMITATION

Except for container-grown plant material, the time limitation from digging to installing plant material must be a maximum of 90 days. The time limitation between installing the plant material and placing the mulch must be a maximum of 24 hours.

1.6 TIME RESTRICTIONS AND PLANTING CONDITIONS

Coordinate installation of planting materials during optimal planting seasons for each type of plant material required.

1.6.1 Planting Dates

Plant all plants **according to type listed below. Refer to Section 32 92 23 SODDING** for optimal planting dates for centipede sod.

1.6.1.1 Deciduous Material

Deciduous material from **March 15** to **May 15** for spring /summer planting and from **October 1** to **December 15** for fall /winter planting.

1.6.1.2 Evergreen Material

Evergreen material from **March 15** to **May 15** for spring /summer planting and from **October 1** to **December 15** for fall /winter planting.

1.6.2 Restrictions

Do not plant when ground is frozen, snow covered, muddy, or when air temperature exceeds **90 degrees Fahrenheit**

1.7 GUARANTEE

All plants must be guaranteed for one year beginning on the date of inspection by the Contracting Officer to commence the plant establishment period, against defects including death and unsatisfactory growth, except for defects resulting from lack of adequate maintenance, neglect, or abuse by the Government or by weather conditions unusual for the warranty period.

1.8 PLASTIC IDENTIFICATION

Provide product data indicating polymeric information in Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Type 1: Polyethylene Terephthalate (PET, PETE).
Type 2: High Density Polyethylene (HDPE).
Type 3: Vinyl (Polyvinyl Chloride or PVC).
Type 4: Low Density Polyethylene (LDPE).
Type 5: Polypropylene (PP).
Type 6: Polystyrene (PS).
Type 7: Other. Use of this code indicates that the package in question is made with a resin other than the six listed above, or is made of more than one resin listed above, and used in a multi-layer combination.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PLANTS

2.1.1 Regulations and Varieties

Existing trees to remain must be protected and a planting plan be arranged around them. Furnish nursery stock in accordance with ANSI/ANLA Z60.1, except as otherwise specified or indicated. Each plant or group of planting must have a "key" number indicated on the nursery certifications of the plant schedule. Furnish plants, including turf grass, grown under climatic conditions similar to those in the locality of the project. Plants specified must be low maintenance varieties, tolerant of site's existing soils and climate without supplemental irrigation or fertilization once established. Spray plants budding into leaf or having soft growth with an antidesiccant before digging. Plants of the same specified size must be of uniform size and character of growth. Plants must be chosen with their mature size and growth habit in mind to avoid over-planting and conflict with other plants, structures or underground utility lines. All plants must comply with all Federal and State Laws requiring inspection for plant diseases and infestation.

2.1.2 Shape and Condition

Well-branched, well-formed, sound, vigorous, healthy planting stock free from disease, sunscald, windburn, abrasion, and harmful insects or insect eggs and having a healthy, normal, and undamaged root system.

2.1.2.1 Deciduous Trees

Symmetrically developed and of uniform habit of growth, with straight boles or stems, and free from objectionable disfigurements.

2.1.2.2 Evergreen Trees

Well developed symmetrical tops with typical spread of branches for each particular species or variety.

2.1.2.3 Ground Covers

Number and length of runners and clump sizes indicated, and of the proper age for the grade of plants indicated, furnished in removable containers, integral containers, or formed homogeneous soil section.

2.1.3 Plant Size

Minimum sizes measured after pruning and with branches in normal position, must conform to measurements indicated, based on the average width or

height of the plant for the species as specified in ANSI/ANLA Z60.1. Plants larger in size than specified may be provided with approval of the Contracting Officer. When larger plants are provided, increase the ball of earth or spread of roots in accordance with ANSI/ANLA Z60.1.

2.1.1.4 Root Ball Size

All box-grown, field potted, field boxed, collected, plantation grown, bare root, balled and burlapped, container grown, processed-balled, and in-ground fabric bag-grown root balls must conform to ANSI/ANLA Z60.1. All wrappings and ties must be biodegradable. Root growth in container grown plants must be sufficient to hold earth intact when removed from containers. Root bound plants will not be accepted.

2.1.1.4.1 Mycorrhizal fungi inoculum

Before shipment, root systems must contain mycorrhizal fungi inoculum.

2.1.1.5 Growth of Trunk and Crown

2.1.1.5.1 Deciduous and Semi-Evergreen Trees

A height to caliper relationship must be provided in accordance with ANSI/ANLA Z60.1. Height of branching must bear a relationship to the size and species of tree specified and with the crown in good balance with the trunk. The trees must not be "poled" or the leader removed.

- a. Single stem: The trunk must be reasonably straight and symmetrical with crown and have a persistent main leader.
- b. Multi-stem: All countable stems, in aggregate, must average the size specified. To be considered a stem, there must be no division of the trunk which branches more than 6 inches from ground level.

2.1.1.5.2 Ground Cover Plant Material

Ground cover plant material must have the minimum number of runners and length of runner recommended by ANSI/ANLA Z60.1. Plant material must have heavy, well developed and balanced crown with vigorous, well developed root system and must be furnished in containers.

2.2 TOPSOIL

2.2.1 Existing Soil

Modify to conform to requirements specified in paragraph COMPOSITION.

2.2.2 On-Site Topsoil

Surface soil stripped and stockpiled on site and modified as necessary to meet the requirements specified for topsoil in paragraph COMPOSITION. When available topsoil must be existing surface soil stripped and stockpiled on-site in accordance with Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL.

2.2.3 Off-Site Topsoil

Conform to requirements specified in paragraph COMPOSITION. Additional topsoil must be furnished by the Contractor.

2.2.4 Composition

Evaluate soil for use as topsoil in accordance with [ASTM D5268](#). From 5 to 10 percent organic matter as determined by the [topsoil composition tests](#) of the Organic Carbon, 6A, Chemical Analysis Method described in [DOA SSIR 42](#). Maximum particle size, [3/4 inch](#), with maximum 3 percent retained on [1/4 inch](#) screen. The pH must be tested in accordance with [ASTM D4972](#). Topsoil must be free of sticks, stones, roots, plants, and other debris and objectionable materials. Other components must conform to the following limits:

Silt	25-50 percent
Clay	10-30 percent
Sand	20-35 percent
pH	5.5 for turfgrass areas; 5.5 to 6.5 for remaining areas
Soluble Salts	600 ppm maximum

2.3 SOIL CONDITIONERS

Provide singly or in combination as required to meet specified requirements for topsoil. Soil conditioners must be nontoxic to plants.

2.3.1 Lime

Commercial grade [calcium carbonate](#) CaCO_3 limestone containing a calcium carbonate equivalent (C.C.E.) as specified in [ASTM C602](#) of not less than [100](#) percent.

2.3.2 Aluminum Sulfate

Commercial grade.

2.3.3 Sulfur

100 percent elemental

2.3.4 Iron

100 percent elemental

2.3.5 [Peat](#)

Natural product of peat moss derived from a freshwater site and conforming to [ASTM D4427](#) as modified herein. Shred and granulate peat to pass a [1/2 inch](#) mesh screen and condition in storage pile for minimum 6 months after excavation. Peat must not contain invasive species, including seeds.

2.3.6 Sand

Clean and free of materials harmful to plants.

2.3.7 Perlite

Horticultural grade.

2.3.8 Composted Derivatives

Ground bark, nitrolized sawdust, humus or other green wood waste material free of stones, sticks, invasive species, including seeds, and soil stabilized with nitrogen and having the following properties:

2.3.8.1 Particle Size

Minimum percent by weight passing:

No. 4 mesh screen	95
No. 8 mesh screen	80

2.3.8.2 Nitrogen Content

Minimum percent based on dry weight:

Fir Sawdust	0.7
Fir or Pine Bark	1.0

2.3.9 Gypsum

Coarsely ground gypsum comprised of calcium sulfate dihydrate 80 percent, calcium 18 percent, sulfur 14 percent; minimum 96 percent passing through 20 mesh screen, 100 percent passing thru 16 mesh screen.

2.3.10 Vermiculite

Horticultural grade for planters.

2.3.11 Rotted Manure

Well rotted horse or cattle manure containing maximum 25 percent by volume of straw, sawdust, or other bedding materials; free of seeds, stones, sticks, soil, and other invasive species.

2.4 PLANTING SOIL MIXTURES

100 percent on-site topsoil.

2.5 FERTILIZER

Fertilizer for trees must be as recommended by plant supplier, except synthetic chemical fertilizers are not permitted. Fertilizers containing petrochemical additives or that have been treated with pesticides or herbicides are not permitted.

2.5.1 Granular Fertilizer

Organic, granular controlled release fertilizer containing the minimum percentages, by weight, of plant food nutrients per soil test recommendations.

2.5.2 Fertilizer Tablets

Organic, plant tablets composed of tightly compressed fertilizer chips forming a tablet that is insoluble in water, is designed to provide a continuous release of nutrients for at least 24 months and contains the

following minimum percentages, by weight, of plant food nutrients:

Per soil test recommendations percent available nitrogen
Per soil test recommendations percent available phosphorus
Per soil test recommendations percent available potassium

2.6 WEED CONTROL FABRIC

2.6.1 Roll Type Polypropylene

Fabric must be woven, needle punched or non-woven and treated for protection against deterioration due to ultraviolet radiation. Fabric must be minimum 99 percent opaque to prevent photosynthesis and seed germination from occurring, yet allowing air, water and nutrients to pass thru to the roots. Minimum weight must be 5 ounces per square yard with a minimum thickness of 20 mils with a 20 year (minimum) guarantee.

2.7 MULCH

Free from noxious weeds, mold, pesticides, or other deleterious materials.

2.7.1 Inert Mulch Materials

Provide rounded river stone (sample approved) complying with ASTM D6155, ranging in size from 3 to 5 inches.

2.7.2 Organic Mulch Materials

Provide pine straw mulch.

2.8 STAKING AND GUYING MATERIAL

2.8.1 Staking Material

2.8.1.1 Tree Support Stakes

Metal T Stakes with Metal Cable Ties. Submit product sample for approval.

2.8.2 Guying Material

2.8.2.1 Guying Wire

12 gauge annealed galvanized steel, ASTM A580/A580M.

2.8.2.2 Guying Cable

Minimum five-strand, 3/16 inch diameter galvanized steel cable plastic coated.

2.8.3 Hose Chafing Guards

New 2 ply 3/4 inch diameter reinforced rubber or plastic hose, black or dark green, all of same color.

2.8.4 Flags

White surveyor's plastic tape, 12 inches long, fastened to guying wires or cables.

2.9 EDGING MATERIAL

2.9.1 Concrete Edging

Cast-in-place 6 inches wide by 12 inches deep concrete containment curb. Provide tooled contraction joints to a depth of 1 inch after the surface has been finished. Provide joints every 8 lineal feet to correspond with sidewalk joints. Provide 1/2 inch thick expansion joints at change of direction and where mowstrip abuts rigid pavement. Provide #4 reinforcement bar and other devices necessary to install and secure reinforcement. Provide a floated finish, then finish with a flexible bristle broom. 3000 psi compressive concrete strength at 28 days as specified under Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.

2.10 ANTIDESICCANTS

Sprayable, water insoluble vinyl-vinledine complex which produce a moisture retarding barrier not removable by rain or snow. Film must form at temperatures commonly encountered out of doors during planting season and have a moisture vapor transmission rate (MVT) of the resultant film of maximum 10 grams per 24 hours at 70 percent humidity.

2.11 ROOT CONTROL BARRIER

Pre-formed barrier with integral vertical root deflecting ribs constructed of ultraviolet resistant polypropylene material. Color to be black. See drawings for more detailed specification requirements.

2.12 WATER

Source of water to be approved by Contracting Officer and suitable quality for irrigation and must not contain elements toxic to plant life, including acids, alkalis, salts, chemical pollutants, and organic matter. Use collected storm water or graywater when available.

2.13 MYCORRHIZAL FUNGI INOCULUM

Mycorrhizal fungi inoculum must be composed of multiple-fungus inoculum as recommended by the manufacturer for the plant material specified.

2.14 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

The Contracting Officer and Landscape Architect will inspect plant materials at the project site and approve them. Tag plant materials for size and quality.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXTENT OF WORK

Provide soil preparation, including soil conditioners and soil amendments prior to planting. Provide tree, groundcover, and sod planting, post-planting fertilizer, edging, staking, guying, weed control fabric, erosion control material, root control barrier installation, and mulch topdressing of all newly graded finished earth surfaces, unless indicated otherwise, and at all areas inside or outside the limits of construction that are disturbed by the Contractor's operations.

3.2 ALTERNATIVE HERBICIDE TREATMENT (SOLARIZING SOIL)

Within 48 hours of subsoil preparation, saturate soil with water to a depth of 3 feet. Immediately stake polyethylene sheeting over area to be planted. Stake tightly to surface of soil. Maintain sheeting in place for a minimum of 6 weeks. Immediately after removing sheeting, cover area to be planted with topsoil. Do not till soil prior to applying topsoil.

3.3 PREPARATION

3.3.1 Protection

Protect existing and proposed landscape features, elements, and sites from damage or contamination. Protect trees, vegetation, and other designated features by erecting high-visibility, reusable construction fencing. Locate fence no closer to trees than the drip line. Plan equipment and vehicle access to minimize and confine soil disturbance and compaction to areas indicated on Drawings.

3.3.2 Layout

Stake out approved tree and plant material locations on the project site before digging plant pits or beds. The Contracting Officer reserves the right to adjust plant material locations to meet field conditions. Provide on-site locations for excavated rock, soil, and vegetation.

3.3.3 Erosion Control

Provide erosion control to protect slopes.

3.3.4 Soil Preparation

3.3.4.1 pH Adjuster Application Rates

Apply pH adjuster at rates as determined by laboratory soil analysis of the soils at the job site.

3.3.4.2 Soil Conditioner Application Rates

Apply soil conditioners at rates as determined by laboratory soil analysis of the soils at the job site.

3.3.4.3 Fertilizer Application Rates

Apply fertilizer at rates as determined by laboratory soil analysis of the soils at the job site.

3.3.5 Root Control Barrier

Install geotextile fabric in the soil in a horizontal application. Use appropriate holding device to assure fabric position. For vertical or horizontal application, a minimum soil cover is required over the top edge, per manufacturer's recommendation. For linear barrier application use appropriate device to connect two pieces.

3.3.6 Subsoil Drainage for Plant Pits and Beds

Provide as indicated. Lay perforated drain pipe with perforations down. Backfill trenches as specified in Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL.

3.4 PLANT BED PREPARATION

Verify location of underground utilities prior to excavation. Protect existing adjacent turf before excavations are made. Do not disturb topsoil and vegetation in areas outside those indicated on Drawings. Measure depth of plant pits from finished grade. Depth of plant pit excavation must be as indicated and provide proper relation between top of root ball and finished grade. Install plant material as specified in paragraph PLANT INSTALLATION. Do not install trees within 10 feet of any utility lines or building walls.

3.5 PLANT INSTALLATION

3.5.1 Individual Plant Pit Excavation

Excavate pits at least twice as large in diameter as the size of ball or container to depth shown. Three times root ball diameter for tree plantings with root barrier.

3.5.2 Plant Beds with Multiple Plants

Excavate plant beds continuously throughout entire bed as outlined to depth shown.

3.5.3 Handling and Setting

Move plant materials only by supporting the root ball or container. Set plants on hand compacted layer of prepared backfill soil mixture minimum 3 inches thick and hold plumb in the center of the pit until soil has been tamped firmly around root ball. Set plant materials, in relation to surrounding finish grade, at the same depth at which they were grown in the nursery, collecting field or container. Replace plant material whose root balls are cracked or damaged either before or during the planting process.

Plant material must be set in plant beds according to the drawings. Backfill soil mixture must be placed on previously scarified subsoil to completely surround the root balls, and must be brought to a smooth and even surface, blending to existing areas.

3.5.3.1 Balled and Burlapped Stock

Backfill with topsoil to approximately half the depth of ball and then tamp and water. Carefully remove or fold back excess burlap and tying materials from the top a minimum 1/3 depth from the top of the rootball. Tamp and complete backfill, place mulch topdressing, and water. Remove wires and non-biodegradable materials from plant pit prior to backfill operations.

3.5.3.2 Bare-Root Stock

Plant so roots are arranged in a natural position. Place roots in water a minimum of 30 minutes prior to planting. Carefully work prepared topsoil among roots. Tamp remainder of backfill, place mulch topdressing and water.

3.5.3.3 Container Grown Stock

Remove from container and prevent damage to plant or root system.

3.5.3.4 Ground Covers

Smooth planting areas before planting to provide even, smooth finish. Plant after placing weed control fabric. Do not remove plant material from flats or containers until immediately before planting. Space at the intervals indicated. Plant at a depth to sufficiently cover all roots. Start watering areas planted as required by temperature and wind conditions. Apply water at a rate sufficient to ensure thorough wetting of soil to a depth of 6 inches without run off or puddling. Add mulch topdressing.

3.5.4 Earth Mounded Watering Basin for Individual Plant Pits

Form with topsoil around each plant by placing a mound of topsoil around the edge of each plant pit. Watering basins must be 6 inches deep for trees. Construct watering basin in a 4-1/2 foot diameter circle around specimen (not planted in a close group) trees.

3.5.5 Weed Control Fabric Installation

Remove grass and weed vegetation, including roots, from within the area enclosed by edging. Completely cover areas enclosed by edging with specified weed control fabric prior to placing mulch layer. Overlap cut edges 12 inches.

3.5.6 Erosion Control Material

Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.5.7 Placement of Mulch Topdressing

Place specified mulch topdressing on top of weed control fabric covering total area enclosed by edging. Place mulch topdressing to a depth of 3 inches.

3.5.8 Mulch Topdressing

Provide mulch topdressing over entire planter bed surfaces and individual plant surfaces including earth mound watering basin around plants to a depth of 3 inches after completion of plant installation and before watering. Keep mulch out of the crowns of shrubs. Place mulch a minimum 2 to 3 inches away from trunk of shrub or tree. Place on top of any weed control fabric.

3.5.9 Installation of Edging

Uniformly edge beds of plants to provide a clear cut division line between planted area and adjacent lawn. Install concrete edging material as indicated.

3.5.10 Fertilization

3.5.10.1 Fertilizer Tablets

Place fertilizer planting tablets evenly spaced around the plant pits to the manufacturer's recommended depth.

3.5.10.2 Granular Fertilizer

Apply granular fertilizer as a top coat prior to placing mulch layer and water thoroughly.

3.5.11 Watering

Start watering areas planted as required by temperature and wind conditions. **Slow deep watering must be used.** Apply water at a rate sufficient to ensure thorough wetting of soil to a depth of **12 inches** without run off **or puddling.** **Watering of other plant material or adjacent areas must be prevented.**

3.5.12 Staking and Guying

3.5.12.1 Staking

Stake plants with the number of stakes indicated complete as detailed. Attach **horizontal cable straps** half the tree height but not more than **5 feet** high. Drive stakes to a depth of **2-1/2 to 3 feet** into the ground outside the plant pit. Do not injure the root ball. Use hose chaffer guards where guy wire comes in contact with tree trunk.

3.5.12.2 Guying

Guy plants as indicated. Attach guying cable around the tree trunk at an angle of **90 degrees with metal "T" stakes** at approximately 1/2 of the trunk height. Protect tree trunks with chafing guards where guying cable contacts the tree trunk. Anchor guys to **metal ground stakes.** Fasten flags to each guying cable approximately 2/3 of the distance up from ground level.

3.5.12.3 Chafing Guards

Use hose chafing guards, as specified where guy cable will contact the plant.

3.5.12.4 **Metal** Ground Stakes

Drive ground stakes into firm ground outside of plant pit **per manufacturer's recommendations.** Place equal distance from tree trunk and around the plant pit.

3.5.12.5 Flags

Securely fasten flags on each guy cable approximately two-thirds of the distance up from ground level.

3.5.13 Pruning

Prune in accordance with safety requirement of **TCIA Z133.**

3.5.13.1 Trees

Remove dead and broken branches. Prune to correct structural defects only. Retain typical growth shape of individual plants with as much height and spread as practical. Do not cut central leader on trees. Make cuts with sharp instruments. Do not flush cut with trunk or adjacent branches. Collars must remain in place. Pruning must be accomplished by trained and experienced personnel and must be accordance with **TCIA A300P1.**

3.5.13.2 Wound Dressing

Do not apply tree wound dressing to cuts.

3.6 RESTORATION AND CLEAN UP

3.6.1 Restoration

Turf areas, pavements and facilities that have been damaged from the planting operation must be restored to original condition at the Contractor's expense.

3.6.2 Clean Up

Excess and waste material must be removed from the installed area and must be disposed offsite at an approved landfill, recycling center, or composting center. Separate and recycle or reuse the following landscape waste materials: nylon straps, wire, ball wrap, burlap, wood stakes. Adjacent paved areas must be cleared.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 33 11 00

WATER UTILITY DISTRIBUTION PIPING

02/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS
(AASHTO)

AASHTO HB-17 (2002; Errata 2003; Errata 2005, 17th Edition) Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges

AMERICAN WATER WORKS ASSOCIATION (AWWA)

AWWA B300 (2010; Addenda 2011) Hypochlorites

AWWA B301 (2010) Liquid Chlorine

AWWA C104/A21.4 (2016) Cement-Mortar Lining for Ductile-Iron Pipe and Fittings for Water

AWWA C110/A21.10 (2012) Ductile-Iron and Gray-Iron Fittings for Water

AWWA C111/A21.11 (2017) Rubber-Gasket Joints for Ductile-Iron Pressure Pipe and Fittings

AWWA C153/A21.53 (2011) Ductile-Iron Compact Fittings for Water Service

AWWA C213 (2015) Fusion-Bonded Epoxy Coating for the Interior and Exterior of Steel Water Pipelines

AWWA C500 (2009) Metal-Seated Gate Valves for Water Supply Service

AWWA C502 (2014) Dry-Barrel Fire Hydrants

AWWA C503 (2014) Wet-Barrel Fire Hydrants

AWWA C508 (2017) Swing-Check Valves for Waterworks Service, 2 In. Through 48-In. (50-mm Through 1,200-mm) NPS

AWWA C509 (2015) Resilient-Seated Gate Valves for Water Supply Service

AWWA C511 (2017) Reduced-Pressure Principle Backflow Prevention Assembly

AWWA C515	(2015) Reduced-Wall, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves for Water Supply Service
AWWA C550	(2017) Protective Interior Coatings for Valves and Hydrants
AWWA C600	(2017) Installation of Ductile-Iron Mains and Their Appurtenances
AWWA C605	(2014) Underground Installation of Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) and Molecularly Oriented Polyvinyl Chloride (PVCO) Pressure Pipe and Fittings
AWWA C651	(2014) Standard for Disinfecting Water Mains
AWWA C655	(2009) Field Dechlorination
AWWA C701	(2015) Cold-Water Meters - Turbine Type for Customer Service
AWWA C706	(2010) Direct-Reading, Remote-Registration Systems for Cold-Water Meters
AWWA C800	(2014) Underground Service Line Valves and Fittings
AWWA C900	(2016) Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pressure Pipe, and Fabricated Fittings, 4 In. Through 60 In. (100 mm Through 1,500 mm)
AWWA M23	(2002; 2nd Ed) Manual: PVC Pipe - Design and Installation
AWWA M41	(2009; 3rd Ed) Ductile-Iron Pipe and Fittings
AWWA M55	(2006) PE Pipe - Design and Installation
AWWA M6	(2012) Water Meters - Selection, Installation, Testing, and Maintenance

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME B18.2.2	(2015) Nuts for General Applications: Machine Screw Nuts, Hex, Square, Hex Flange, and Coupling Nuts (Inch Series)
ASME B18.5.2.1M	(2006; R 2011) Metric Round Head Short Square Neck Bolts
ASME B18.5.2.2M	(1982; R 2010) Metric Round Head Square Neck Bolts

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A307	(2014; E 2017) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded

	Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength
ASTM A47/A47M	(1999; R 2014) Standard Specification for Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings
ASTM A48/A48M	(2003; R 2012) Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings
ASTM A536	(1984; R 2014) Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings
ASTM A563	(2015) Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts
ASTM C1433	(2016b) Standard Specification for Precast Reinforced Concrete Monolithic Box Sections for Culverts, Storm Drains, and Sewers
ASTM C94/C94M	(2017a) Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete
ASTM D1784	(2011) Standard Specification for Rigid Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Compounds and Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Compounds
ASTM D1785	(2015; E 2018) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC), Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80, and 120
ASTM D2241	(2015) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pressure-Rated Pipe (SDR Series)
ASTM D2466	(2017) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40
ASTM D2467	(2015) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
ASTM D2855	(2015) Standard Practice for Making Solvent-Cemented Joints with Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pipe and Fittings
ASTM D3139	(1998; R 2011) Joints for Plastic Pressure Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals
ASTM F1674	(2011) Standard Test Method for Joint Restraint Products for Use with PVC Pipe
ASTM F2164	(2013) Standard Practice for Field Leak Testing of Polyethylene (PE) and Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX) Pressure Piping Systems Using Hydrostatic Pressure
ASTM F477	(2014) Standard Specification for

Elastomeric Seals (Gaskets) for Joining
Plastic Pipe

FOUNDATION FOR CROSS-CONNECTION CONTROL AND HYDRAULIC RESEARCH
(FCCCHR)

FCCCHR List (continuously updated) List of Approved
Backflow Prevention Assemblies

FCCCHR Manual (10th Edition) Manual of Cross-Connection
Control

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS
INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-80 (2013) Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle and Check
Valves

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 24 (2016; ERTA 2016) Standard for the
Installation of Private Fire Service Mains
and Their Appurtenances

NSF INTERNATIONAL (NSF)

NSF 372 (2016) Drinking Water System Components -
Lead Content

NSF/ANSI 14 (2017b) Plastics Piping System Components
and Related Materials

NSF/ANSI 61 (2017) Drinking Water System Components -
Health Effects

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

UFC 3-600-01 (2016; with Change 1) Fire Protection
Engineering for Facilities

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 246 (2011; Reprint Feb 2013) Hydrants for
Fire-Protection Service

UL 262 (2004; Reprint Oct 2011) Gate Valves for
Fire-Protection Service

UL 312 (2010; Reprint Mar 2018) UL Standard for
Safety Check Valves for Fire-Protection
Service

UNI-BELL PVC PIPE ASSOCIATION (UBPPA)

UBPPA UNI-PUB-08 (2016) Tapping Guide for PVC Pressure Pipe

1.2 DEFINITIONS

1.2.1 Water Mains

Water mains include water piping having diameters 4 through 14 inch, specific materials, methods of joining and any appurtenances deemed necessary for a satisfactory system.

1.2.2 Water Service Lines

Water service lines include water piping from a water main to a building service at a point approximately 5 feet from building or the point indicated on the drawings, specific materials, methods of joining and any appurtenances deemed necessary for a satisfactory system.

1.2.3 Additional Definitions

For additional definitions refer to the definitions in the applicable referenced standard.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Connections; G

SD-03 Product Data

Pipe, Fittings, Joints and Couplings; G

Valves; G

Valve Boxes; G

Fire Hydrants; G

Pipe Restraint; G

Tapping Sleeves; G

Backflow Preventer; G

Disinfection Procedures; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Backflow Preventer Tests; G

Bacteriological Samples; G

Hydrostatic Sewer Test

Leakage Test

Hydrostatic Test

SD-07 Certificates

Pipe, Fittings, Joints and Couplings

Lining for Fittings

Valves

Fire Hydrants

Backflow Prevention Training Certificate

Backflow Tester Certification

Fusion Technician Qualifications; G

Backflow Certificate

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

PVC Piping

PVC Piping For Service Lines

1.4 QUALITY CONTROL

1.4.1 Regulatory Requirements

Comply with **NSF/ANSI 14** or **NSF/ANSI 61** and **NSF 372** for materials for potable water systems; comply with lead content requirements for "lead-free" plumbing as defined by the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act effective January 2014. Provide materials bearing the seal of the National Sanitation Foundation (NSF) for potable water service.

Comply with **NFPA 24** for materials, installation, and testing of fire main piping and components.

1.4.2 Qualifications

1.4.2.1 Backflow Preventers

1.4.2.1.1 Backflow Preventer Certificate

Certificate of Full Approval from **FCCCHR List**, University of Southern California, attesting that the design, size and make of each backflow preventer has satisfactorily passed the complete sequence of performance testing and evaluation for the respective level of approval. Certificate of Provisional Approval will not be acceptable.

1.4.2.1.1.1 Backflow Tester Certificate

Prior to testing, submit to the Contracting Officer certification issued by the State or local regulatory agency attesting that the **backflow tester** has successfully completed a certification course sponsored by the regulatory agency. Tester must not be affiliated with any company participating in

any other phase of this Contract.

1.4.2.1.1.2 Backflow Prevention Training Certificate

Submit a certificate recognized by the State or local authority that states the Contractor has completed at least 10 hours of training in backflow preventer installations. The certificate must be current.

1.4.2.2 Fusion Technician Qualifications

Submit a certificate from the manufacturer of the fusible pipe that shows the fusion technician is fully qualified to install fusible pipe of the types and sizes being used. Qualification must be current as of the actual date of fusion performance on the project.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.5.1 Delivery and Storage

Inspect materials delivered to site for damage. Unload and store with minimum handling and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Store materials on site in enclosures or under protective covering. Store plastic piping, jointing materials and rubber gaskets under cover out of direct sunlight. Do not store materials directly on the ground. Keep inside of pipes, fittings, valves, fire hydrants, and other accessories free of dirt and debris.

1.5.2 Handling

Handle pipe, fittings, valves, fire hydrants, and other accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and in a manner to ensure delivery to the trench in sound undamaged condition. Avoid injury to coatings and linings on pipe and fittings; make repairs if coatings or linings are damaged. Do not place other material, hooks, or pipe inside a pipe or fitting after the coating has been applied. Inspect the pipe for defects before installation. Carry, do not drag pipe to the trench. Use of pinch bars and tongs for aligning or turning pipe will be permitted only on the bare ends of the pipe. Clean the interior of pipe and accessories of foreign matter before being lowered into the trench and keep them clean during laying operations by plugging. Replace defective material without additional expense to the Government. Store rubber gaskets, not immediately installed, under cover or out of direct sunlight.

Handle ductile iron pipe, fittings, and accessories in accordance with AWWA C600 and AWWA M41. Handle PVC and PVC-O pipe, fittings, and accessories in accordance with AWWA C605. Handle PE pipe, fittings, and accessories in accordance with AWWA M55.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

Provide all materials in accordance with AWWA C800 and as indicated herein. Provide valves and fittings with pressure ratings equivalent to the pressure ratings of the pipe.

2.1.1 Pipe, Fittings, Joints And Couplings

Submit manufacturer's standard drawings or catalog cuts, except submit both

drawings and cuts for push-on and rubber-gasketed bell-and-spigot joints. Include information concerning gaskets with submittal for joints and couplings.

2.1.1.1.1 Plastic Piping

2.1.1.1.1.1 PVC Piping

2.1.1.1.1.1.1 PVC Piping

AWWA C900 plain end or gasket bell end pipe meeting or exceeding ASTM D1784 cell class 12454, with a minimum Pressure Class 150 (DR27.5) with ductile iron outside diameter (DIOD).

2.1.1.1.1.1.2 Fittings for PVC Pipe

Gray iron or ductile iron fittings, AWWA C110/A21.10 with special fittings in accordance with Appendix B or AWWA C153/A21.53, with cement-mortar lining for fittings, AWWA C104/A21.4, standard thickness. Fittings with push-on joint ends are to conform to the same requirements as fittings with mechanical-joint ends, except for the factory modified bell design compatible for use with PVC pipe as specified.

2.1.1.1.1.1.3 Joints and Jointing Material for PVC

- a. Push-on joints: Use jointing material in accordance with ASTM D3139 and AWWA C111/A21.11 between pipes, pipes and metal fittings, valves, and other accessories or compression-type joints/mechanical joints. Provide each joint connection with an elastomeric gasket compatible for the bell or coupling used. Gaskets for push-on joints for pipe, ASTM F477. Gaskets for push-on joints and compression-type joints/mechanical joints for joint connections between pipe and metal fittings, valves, and other accessories, AWWA C111/A21.11, respectively, for push-on joints and mechanical joints.
- b. Mechanical Joint: Use mechanically coupled joints having a sleeve-type mechanical coupling, as specified in the paragraph SLEEVE-TYPE MECHANICAL COUPLINGS, as an optional jointing method for plain-end PVC pipe, subject to the limitations specified for mechanically coupled joints using a sleeve-type mechanical coupling as specified for compression-type joints in ASTM D3139. Provide jointing material in accordance with AWWA C111/A21.11 between pipe and sleeve-type mechanical couplings.

2.1.1.1.1.2 PVC Piping for Service Lines

2.1.1.1.1.2.1 Pipe and Fittings

Provide ASTM D1784 cell class 12454 pipe and fittings of the same PVC material.

- a. ASTM D1785, Schedule 40 with ASTM D2466 Schedule 40 or ASTM D2467 Schedule 80 fittings.
- b. ASTM D2241 pipe and fittings with SDR as necessary to provide 150 psi minimum pressure rating with ASTM D2466 Schedule 40 or ASTM D2467 Schedule 80 fittings.

2.1.1.1.2.2 Joints and Connections

Fittings may be joined by the solvent-cement method or threading.

2.1.1.1.2.3 Solvent Joining

Provide solvent joints in accordance with ASTM D2855.

2.1.2 Valves

Provide a protective interior coating in accordance with AWWA C550.

2.1.2.1 Gate Valves 3 Inch Size and Larger on Buried Piping

AWWA C500, AWWA C509, AWWA C515, or UL 262 and:

- a. AWWA C500: nonrising stem type with double-disc gate and mechanical-joint ends or push-on joint ends compatible for the adjoining pipe
- b. AWWA C509 or AWWA C515: nonrising stem type with mechanical-joint ends or resilient-seated gate valves 3 to 12 inches in size
- c. UL 262: inside-screw type with operating nut, double-disc or split-wedge type gate, designed for a hydraulic working pressure of 175 psi, and have mechanical-joint ends or push-on joint ends as appropriate for the pipe to which it is joined.

Match materials for UL 262 gate valves to the reference standards specified in AWWA C500. Gate valves open by counterclockwise rotation of the valve stem. Stuffing boxes have O-ring stem seals, except for those valves for which gearing is specified, in which case use conventional packing in place of O-ring seal. Stuffing boxes are bolted and constructed so as to permit easy removal of parts for repair. Use gate valves with special ends for connection to sleeve-type mechanical coupling in lieu of mechanical-joint ends and push-on joint ends. Provide valve ends and gaskets for connection to sleeve-type mechanical couplings that conform to the requirements specified respectively for the joint or coupling. Gate valves on 8 inch service lines have ends compatible with joining to the pipe used; push-on joint ends or mechanical-joint ends for joining to PVC water main pipe; with AWWA C111/A21.11 gaskets and pipe ends. Provide all valves from one manufacturer.

2.1.2.2 Check Valves

Provide a protective interior coating in accordance with AWWA C550. Swing-check type, AWWA C508 or UL 312 and:

- a. AWWA C508: Iron or steel body and cover and flanged ends
- b. UL 312: Cast iron or steel body and cover, flanged ends, and designed for a minimum working pressure of 150 psi.

Materials for UL 312 check valves are to match the reference standards specified in AWWA C508. Provide check valves with a clear port opening. Provide weight-loaded check valves where indicated. Provide all check valves from one manufacturer.

2.1.2.3 Water Service Valves

2.1.2.3.1 Gate Valves Smaller than 3 Inch in Size on Buried Piping

Gate valves smaller than 3 inch size on Buried Piping MSS SP-80, Class 150, solid wedge, nonrising stem, with flanged or threaded end connections, a union on one side of the valve, and a handwheel operator.

2.1.2.3.2 Gate Valves Smaller Than 3 Inch Size in Valve Pits

MSS SP-80, Class 150, solid wedge, inside screw, rising stem. Provide valves with flanged or threaded end connections, a union on one side of the valve, and a handwheel operator.

2.1.2.3.3 Check Valves Smaller than 2 Inch in Size

Provide check valves with a minimum working pressure of 150 psi or as indicated with a clear waterway equal to the full nominal diameter of the valve. Valves open to permit flow when inlet pressure is greater than the discharge pressure, and close tightly to prevent return flow when discharge pressure exceeds inlet pressure. Cast the size of the valve, working pressure, manufacturer's name, initials, or trademark on the body of each valve.

Provide valves for screwed fittings, made of lead-free bronze and in conformance with MSS SP-80, Class 150, Types 3 and 4 compatible for the application.

2.1.2.4 Valve Boxes

Provide a valve box for each gate valve on buried piping. Construct adjustable valve boxes manufactured from cast iron or precast concrete of a size compatible for the valve on which it is used. Provide cast iron valve boxes with a minimum cover and wall thickness of 3/16 inch and conforming to ASTM A48/A48M, Class 35B. Coat the cast-iron box with a heavy coat of bituminous paint. Provide a round head. Cast the word "WATER" on the lid. The minimum diameter of the shaft of the box is 5 1/4 inches. Provide ASTM C1433 precast concrete valve box. Provide precast concrete boxes installed in locations subjected to vehicular traffic to withstand AASHTO load designation as outlined in AASHTO HB-17.

2.1.2.5 Valve Pits

Construct the valve pits at locations indicated or as required above and in accordance with the details shown.

2.1.3 Fire Hydrants And Hose Houses

2.1.3.1 Fire Hydrants

Provide fire hydrants where indicated. Paint fire hydrants with at least one coat of primer and two coats of enamel paint. Paint barrel and bonnet colors in accordance with UFC 3-600-01. Stencil fire hydrant number and main size on the fire hydrant barrel using black stencil paint.

2.1.3.1.1 Dry-Barrel Type Fire Hydrants

Provide Dry-barrel type fire hydrants, AWWA C502 or UL 246, "Base Valve"

with 6 inch inlet, 5 1/4 inch valve opening, one 4 1/2 inch pumper connection, and two 2 1/2 inch hose connections.

Provide mechanical-joint end only inlet ; with end matching requirements as specified in AWWA C502 or AWWA C503 or UL 246 for size and shape of operating nut, cap nuts, and threads on hose and pumper connections. Provide fire hydrants with breakable features as mentioned in AWWA C503. Provide fire hydrant with special couplings joining upper and lower sections of fire hydrant barrel and upper and lower sections of fire hydrant stem that break from a force imposed by a moving vehicle.

2.1.4 Meters

Submit certificates certifying all required and recommended tests set forth in the referenced standard and AWWA M6 have been performed and comply with all applicable requirements of the referenced standard and AWWA M6 within the past three years. Include certification that each meter has been tested for accuracy of registration and that each meter complies with the accuracy and capacity requirements of the referenced standard when tested in accordance with AWWA M6.

Include a register with all meters whether they are or are not connected to a remote reading system.

2.1.4.1 Turbine Type Meters

Provide AWWA C701 Class II Advanced Metering Infrastructure (AMI) and Direct Digital Communication (DDC) compatible meter with a strainer screen. Main casing constructed of copper alloy containing not less than 75 percent copper with protective coating in accordance with AWWA C213 or AWWA C550.

2.1.4.2 Register

Provide AWWA C701 sealed or permanently sealed straight-reading register for use in a submerged environment supplied by the meter manufacturer. Equip register with U.S. gallons readings. Use a direct reading remote register designed in accordance with AWWA C706.

2.1.4.3 Strainers

Provide AWWA C701 strainer recommended and supplied by the meter manufacturer. Provide strainer of the same material as the meter body (i.e., bronze).

2.1.4.4 Meter Connections

Provide connections compatible with the type of pipe and conditions encountered.

2.1.4.5 Advanced Metering Infrastructure

Water meters shall be appropriately sized for the building load. The water meter register shall read and display gallons and shall be clearly visible for inspection without the use of special equipment (i.e. ladder).

An Encoded Radio Transmitter (ERT) shall be attached to each water meter register. The meter/register/ERT combination shall be capable of reporting to the Camp Lejeune Advanced Meter Infrastructure (AMI), or the existing

mobile Advanced Meter Reading (AMR) equipment.

Prior to acceptance, the register must prove successful communication of meter consumption data (Gallons) to the AMI or AMR system.

Existing AMI: Itron Fixed Network (Choice Connect)

Existing AMR: Itron MCLite

Contractor shall supply all necessary mounting material, cabling, etc. The ERT shall be mounted on the outside wall of the room mechanical. The contractor shall submit the following information for each meter included in the project.

Meter: Make, Model, Serial Number, Size, Compound (Y/N)

Register (aka Encoder): Make, Model, Dials, Multiplier, Unit of Measure (i.e. gallons)

Encoded Radio Transmitter (ERT): Make, Model, ID

Meter GIS coordinates (Latitude, Longitude in decimal format with 5 places to right of decimal)

2.1.4.6 Direct Digital Control System Interface

Provide all meters with the capability of providing pulse output to the DDC system provided in Section 23 09 23.02 BACnet DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS.

2.1.5 Backflow Preventers

Provide a ductile iron AWWA C511 reduced pressure principle type backflow preventer meeting the following requirements:

- a. Size: 8 inch

The particular make, model, and size of backflow preventers to be installed must be included in the latest edition of the List of Approved Backflow Prevention Assemblies issued by the FCCCHR List and be accompanied by a backflow certificate of full approval from FCCCHR List. Select materials for piping, strainers, and valves used in assembly installation that are galvanically compatible. Materials joined, connected, or otherwise in contact are to have no greater than 0.25 V difference on the Anodic Index, unless separated by a dielectric type union or fitting.

2.1.5.1 Backflow Preventer Enclosure

Provide an insulated enclosure with heat.

2.1.6 Disinfection

Chlorinating materials are to conform to: Chlorine, Liquid: AWWA B301; Hypochlorite, Calcium and Sodium: AWWA B300.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

2.2.1 Pipe Restraint

2.2.1.1 Thrust Blocks

Use [ASTM C94/C94M](#) concrete having a minimum compressive strength of [2,500 psi](#) at 28 days or use concrete of a mix not leaner than one part cement, two and one half parts sand, and five parts gravel, having the same minimum compressive strength.

2.2.1.2 Joint Restraint

Provide restrained joints in accordance with [NFPA 24](#), Chapter 10 and in accordance with [ASTM F1674](#).

Provide mechanical joint restraint, restraint devices with gripper wedges incorporated into a follower gland and specifically designed for the pipe material and meeting the requirements of [AWWA C110/A21.10](#), or metal harness fabricated by the pipe manufacturer.

2.2.2 Protective Enclosures

Provide Freeze-Protection Enclosures that are insulated and designed to protect aboveground water piping, equipment, or specialties from freezing and damage, with heat source to maintain minimum internal temperature of [40 degrees F](#) when external temperatures reach as low as [-20 degree F](#).

2.2.2.1 Housing

Reinforced and insulated aluminum or fiberglass construction; with anchoring devices for attaching housing to concrete base, access doors with locking devices, sized to allow access and service of the protected unit, drain openings, and an electric heating cable or heater with self-limiting temperature control.

2.2.3 Tapping Sleeves

Provide cast gray, ductile, malleable iron or stainless steel, split-sleeve type tapping sleeves of the sizes indicated for connection to existing main with flanged or grooved outlet, and with bolts, follower rings and gaskets on each end of the sleeve. Utilize similar metals for bolts, nuts, and washers to minimize the possibility of galvanic corrosion. Provide dielectric gaskets where dissimilar metals adjoin. Provide a tapping sleeve assembly with a maximum working pressure of [150 psi](#). Provide bolts with square heads and hexagonal nuts. Longitudinal gaskets and mechanical joints with gaskets as recommended by the manufacturer of the sleeve. When using grooved mechanical tee, utilize an upper housing with full locating collar for rigid positioning which engages a machine-cut hole in pipe, encasing an elastomeric gasket which conforms to the pipe outside diameter around the hole and a lower housing with positioning lugs, secured together during assembly by nuts and bolts as specified, pre-torqued to [50 foot-pound](#).

2.2.4 Sleeve-Type Mechanical Couplings

Use couplings to join plain-end piping by compression of a ring gasket at each end of the adjoining pipe sections. The coupling consists of one middle ring flared or beveled at each end to provide a gasket seat; two follower rings; two resilient tapered rubber gaskets; and bolts and nuts to

draw the follower rings toward each other to compress the gaskets. Provide true circular middle ring and the follower rings sections free from irregularities, flat spots, and surface defects; provide for confinement and compression of the gaskets. For PVC pipe, the middle ring is cast-iron or steel; and the follower rings are malleable or ductile iron. Malleable and ductile iron are to meet the requirements of [ASTM A47/A47M](#) and [ASTM A536](#), respectively. Steel is to have a strength not less than that of the pipe. Use gaskets for resistance to set after installation and to meet the requirements specified for gaskets for mechanical joint in [AWWA C111/A21.11](#). Provide track-head type bolts [ASTM A307](#), Grade A, with nuts, [ASTM A563](#), Grade A; or round-head square-neck type bolts, [ASME B18.5.2.1M](#) and [ASME B18.5.2.2M](#) with hex nuts, [ASME B18.2.2](#). Provide [5/8 inch](#) diameter bolts; minimum number of bolts for each coupling is [6 for 8 inch pipe](#). Shape bolt holes in follower rings to hold fast to the necks of the bolts used. Do not use mechanically coupled joints using a sleeve-type mechanical coupling as an optional method of jointing except where pipeline is adequately anchored to resist tension pull across the joint. Provide a tight flexible joint with mechanical couplings under reasonable conditions, such as pipe movements caused by expansion, contraction, slight settling or shifting in the ground, minor variations in trench gradients, and traffic vibrations. Match coupling strength to that of the adjoining pipeline.

2.2.5 Insulating Joints

Provide a rubber-gasketed insulating joint or dielectric coupling between pipe of dissimilar metals which will effectively prevent metal-to-metal contact between adjacent sections of piping.

2.2.6 Tracer Wire for Nonmetallic Piping

Provide a continuous bare copper or aluminum wire not less than [0.10 inch](#) in diameter in sufficient length over each separate run of nonmetallic pipe.

2.2.7 Water Service Line Appurtenances

2.2.7.1 Goosenecks

Manufacture goosenecks from Type K copper tubing; provide joint ends for goosenecks compatible with connecting to corporation stop and service line.

2.2.7.2 Curb Boxes

Provide a curb box for each curb or service stop manufactured from cast iron, size capable of containing the stop where it is used. Provide a round head. Cast the word "WATER" on the lid. Factory coat the box with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

3.1.1 Connections to Existing System

Perform all [connections](#) to the existing water system in the presence of the Contracting Officer.

3.1.2 Operation of Existing Valves

Do not operate valves within or directly connected to the existing water system unless expressly directed to do so by the Contracting Officer.

3.1.3 Earthwork

Perform earthwork operations in accordance with Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Install all materials in accordance with the applicable reference standard, manufacturers instructions and as indicated herein.

3.2.1 Piping

3.2.1.1 General Requirements

Install pipe, fittings, joints and couplings in accordance with the applicable referenced standard, the manufacturer's instructions and as specified herein.

3.2.1.1.1 Termination of Water Lines

Terminate the work covered by this section at a point approximately 5 feet from the building, unless otherwise indicated.

Do not lay water lines in the same trench with gas lines, fuel lines, electric wiring, or any other utility. Do not install copper tubing in the same trench with ferrous piping materials. Where nonferrous metallic pipe (i.e., copper tubing) crosses any ferrous piping, provide a minimum vertical separation of 12 inches between pipes.

3.2.1.1.2 Pipe Laying and Jointing

Remove fins and burrs from pipe and fittings. Before placing in position, clean pipe, fittings, valves, and accessories, and maintain in a clean condition. Provide proper facilities for lowering sections of pipe into trenches. Under no circumstances is it permissible to drop or dump pipe, fittings, valves, or other water line material into trenches. Cut pipe cleanly, squarely, and accurately to the length established at the site and work into place without springing or forcing. Replace a pipe or fitting that does not allow sufficient space for installation of jointing material. Blocking or wedging between bells and spigots is not permitted. Lay bell-and-spigot pipe with the bell end pointing in the direction of laying. Grade the pipeline in straight lines; avoid the formation of dips and low points. Support pipe at the design elevation and grade. Secure firm, uniform support. Wood support blocking is not permitted. Lay pipe so that the full length of each section of pipe and each fitting rests solidly on the pipe bedding; excavate recesses to accommodate bells, joints, and couplings. Provide anchors and supports for fastening work into place. Make provision for expansion and contraction of pipelines. Keep trenches free of water until joints have been assembled. At the end of each work day, close open ends of pipe temporarily with wood blocks or bulkheads. Do not lay pipe when conditions of trench or weather prevent installation. Provide a minimum of 3 feet depth of cover over top of pipe.

3.2.1.1.3 Tracer Wire

Install a continuous length of tracer wire for the full length of each run of nonmetallic pipe. Attach wire to top of pipe in such manner that it will not be displaced during construction operations.

3.2.1.1.4 Connections to Existing Water Lines

Make connections to existing water lines after coordination with the facility and with a minimum interruption of service on the existing line. Make connections to existing lines under pressure in accordance with the recommended procedures of the manufacturer of the pipe being tapped and as indicated.

3.2.1.1.5 Sewer Manholes

No water piping is to pass through or come in contact with any part of a sewer manhole.

3.2.1.1.6 Water Piping Parallel With Sewer Piping

- a. Normal Conditions: Lay water piping at least 10 feet horizontally from sewer or sewer manhole whenever possible. Measure the distance from outside edge to outside edge of pipe or outside edge of manhole. When local conditions prevent horizontal separation install water piping in a separate trench with the bottom of the water piping at least 18 inches above the top of the sewer piping.
- b. Unusual Conditions: When local conditions prevent vertical separation, construct sewer piping of AWWA compliant ductile iron water piping and perform hydrostatic sewer test, without leakage, prior to backfilling. When local conditions prevent vertical separation, test the sewer manhole in place to ensure watertight construction.

3.2.1.1.7 Water Piping Crossing Sewer Piping

- a. Normal Conditions: Provide a separation of at least 18 inches between the bottom of the water piping and the top of the sewer piping in cases where water piping crosses above sewer piping.
- b. Unusual Conditions: When local conditions prevent a vertical separation described above, construct sewer piping passing over or under water piping of AWWA compliant ductile iron water piping and perform hydrostatic sewer test, without leakage, prior to backfilling. Construct sewer crossing with a minimum 20 feet length of the AWWA compliant ductile iron water piping, centered at the point of the crossing so that joints are equidistant and as far as possible from the water piping. Protect water piping passing under sewer piping by providing a vertical separation of at least 18 inches between the bottom of the sewer piping and the top of the water piping; adequate structural support for the sewer piping to prevent excessive deflection of the joints and the settling on or damage to the water piping.

3.2.1.1.8 Penetrations

Provide ductile-iron or Schedule 40 steel wall sleeves for pipe passing through walls of valve pits and structures. Fill annular space between walls and sleeves with rich cement mortar. Fill annular space between pipe and sleeves with mastic.

3.2.1.1.9 Flanged Pipe

Only install flanged pipe aboveground or with the flanges in valve pits.

3.2.1.1.2 PVC Water Main Pipe

Unless otherwise specified, install pipe and fittings in accordance with the paragraph GENERAL REQUIREMENTS and with the requirements of [AWWA C605](#) for laying of pipe, joining PVC pipe to fittings and accessories, setting of fire hydrants, valves, and fittings; and with the recommendations for pipe joint assembly and appurtenance installation in [AWWA M23](#), Chapter 7, "Installation."

- a. Jointing: Make push-on joints with the elastomeric gaskets specified for this type joint, using either elastomeric-gasket bell-end pipe or elastomeric-gasket couplings. For pipe-to-pipe push-on joint connections, use only pipe with push-on joint ends having factory-made bevel; for push-on joint connections to metal fittings, valves, and other accessories, cut spigot end of pipe off square and re-bevel pipe end to a bevel approximately the same as that on ductile-iron pipe used for the same type of joint. Use a lubricant recommended by the pipe manufacturer for push-on joints. Assemble push-on joints for pipe-to-pipe joint connections in accordance with the requirements of [AWWA C605](#) for laying the pipe and the recommendations in [AWWA M23](#), Chapter 7, "Installation," for pipe joint assembly. Assemble push-on joints for connection to fittings, valves, and other accessories in accordance with the requirements of [AWWA C605](#) for joining PVC pipe to fittings and accessories and with the requirements of [AWWA C600](#) for joint assembly. Make compression-type joints/mechanical joints with the gaskets, glands, bolts, nuts, and internal stiffeners previously specified for this type joint; assemble in accordance with the requirements of [AWWA C605](#) for joining PVC pipe to fittings and accessories, with the requirements of [AWWA C600](#) for joint assembly, and with the recommendations of Appendix A to [AWWA C111/A21.11](#). Cut off spigot end of pipe for compression-type joint/mechanical-joint connections and do not re-bevel. Assemble joints made with sleeve-type mechanical couplings in accordance with the recommendations of the coupling manufacturer using internal stiffeners as previously specified for compression-type joints.
- b. Joint Offset: Construct joint offset in accordance [AWWA C605](#). Do not exceed the minimum longitudinal bending as indicated by [AWWA C605](#).
- c. Fittings: Install in accordance with [AWWA C605](#).

3.2.1.1.3 Fire Protection Service Lines for Sprinkler Supplies

Connect water service lines used to supply building sprinkler systems for fire protection to the water main in accordance with [NFPA 24](#).

3.2.1.1.4 Water Service Piping

3.2.1.1.4.1 Location

Connect water service piping to the building service where the building service has been installed. Where building service has not been installed, terminate water service lines approximately 5 feet from the building line at the points indicated; close such water service lines with plugs or caps.

3.2.1.4.2 Water Service Line Connections to Water Mains

Connect water service lines to PVC water mains in accordance with [UBPPA UNI-PUB-08](#) and the recommendations of [AWWA M23](#), Chapter 9, "Service Connections."

3.2.2 Meters

Install meters and meter boxes, vaults at the locations shown on the drawings. Center meters in the boxes, vaults to allow for reading and ease of removal or maintenance. Set top of box or vault at finished grade.

3.2.3 Backflow Preventers

Install backflow preventers of type, size, and capacity indicated a minimum of [12 inch](#) and a maximum of [36 inch](#) above concrete base. Include valves and test cocks. Install according to the manufacturers requirements and the requirements of plumbing and health department and authorities having jurisdiction. Support NPS [2 1/2 inch](#) and larger backflow preventers, valves, and piping near floor with [12 inch](#) minimum air gap, and on concrete piers or steel pipe supports. Do not install backflow preventers that have a relief drain in vault or in other spaces subject to flooding. Do not install by-pass piping around backflow preventers.

3.2.3.1 Backflow Preventer Enclosure

Install a level concrete base with top of concrete surface approximately [2 inches](#) above grade. Install protective enclosure over valve and equipment. Anchor protective enclosure to concrete base.

3.2.4 Disinfection

Prior to disinfection, provide [disinfection procedures](#), proposed neutralization and disposal methods of waste water from disinfection as part of the disinfection submittal. Disinfect new water piping and existing water piping affected by Contractor's operations in accordance with [AWWA C651](#). Disinfect new water piping using the [AWWA C651](#) continuous-feed method of chlorination. Ensure a free chlorine residual of not less than [10 parts per million](#) after 24 hour holding period and prior to performing bacteriological tests.

3.2.5 Flushing

Perform bacteriological tests prior to flushing. Flush solution from the systems with domestic water until maximum residual chlorine content is within the range of [0.2 to 0.5 parts per million](#), the residual chlorine content of the distribution system, or acceptable for domestic use. Use [AWWA C655](#) neutralizing chemicals.

3.2.6 Pipe Restraint

3.2.6.1 Concrete Thrust Blocks

Install concrete thrust blocks where indicated.

3.2.6.2 Restrained Joints

Install restrained joints in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions

where indicated. For metal harness use tie rods and clamps as shown in [NFPA 24](#). Provide structural welded, skip welded, clamp type harness, bell bolt harness, snap ring harness for pipe anchorage. Provide metal harness fabricated by the pipe manufacturer and furnished with the pipe.

3.2.7 Valves

3.2.7.1 Gate Valves

Install gate valves, [AWWA C500](#) and [UL 262](#), in accordance with the requirements of [AWWA C600](#) for valve-and-fitting installation and with the recommendations of the Appendix ("Installation, Operation, and Maintenance of Gate Valves") to [AWWA C500](#). Install gate valves, [AWWA C509](#) or [AWWA C515](#), in accordance with the requirements of [AWWA C600](#) for valve-and-fitting installation and with the recommendations of the Appendix ("Installation, Operation, and Maintenance of Gate Valves") to [AWWA C509](#) or [AWWA C515](#). Install gate valves on PVC water mains in accordance with the recommendations for appurtenance installation in [AWWA M23](#), Chapter 7, "Installation." Make and assemble joints to gate valves as specified for making and assembling the same type joints between pipe and fittings.

3.2.7.2 Check Valves

Install check valves in accordance with the applicable requirements of [AWWA C600](#) for valve-and-fitting installation. Make and assemble joints to check valves as specified for making and assembling the same type joints between pipe and fittings.

3.2.7.3 Air Release, Air/Vacuum, and Combination Air Valves

Install pressure vacuum assemblies of type, size, and capacity indicated. Include valves and test cocks. Install according to the requirements of plumbing and health department and authorities having jurisdiction. Do not install pressure vacuum breaker assemblies in vault or other space subject to flooding.

3.2.8 Blowoff Valve Assemblies

Install blowoff valve assemblies as indicated on the drawings or in accordance with the manufactures recommendations. Install discharge fitting on the end of riser pipe to direct the flow of water so as to minimize damage to surrounding areas.

3.2.9 Fire Hydrants

Install fire hydrants in accordance with [AWWA C600](#) for fire hydrant installation and as indicated. Make and assemble joints as specified for making and assembling the same type joints between pipe and fittings. Provide metal harness as specified under pipe anchorage requirements for the respective pipeline material to which fire hydrant is attached. Install fire hydrants with the 4 1/2 inch connections facing the adjacent paved surface. If there are two paved adjacent surfaces, install fire hydrants with the 4 1/2 inch connection facing the paved surface where the connecting main is located.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.3.1 Tests

Notify the Contracting Officer a minimum of five days in advance of hydrostatic testing. Coordinate the proposed method for disposal of waste water from hydrostatic testing. Perform field tests, and provide labor, equipment, and incidentals required for testing. Provide documentation that all items of work have been constructed in accordance with the Contract documents.

3.3.1.1 Hydrostatic Test

Test the water system in accordance with the applicable AWWA standard specified below. Where water mains provide fire service, test in accordance with the special testing requirements given in the paragraph SPECIAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS FOR FIRE SERVICE. Test PVC plastic water systems made with PVC pipe in accordance with the requirements of AWWA C605 for pressure and leakage tests. The amount of leakage on pipelines made of PVC water main pipe is not to exceed the amounts given in AWWA C605, except that at joints made with sleeve-type mechanical couplings, no leakage will be allowed. Test water service lines in accordance with requirements of AWWA C600 for hydrostatic testing. No leakage will be allowed at copper pipe joints, copper tubing joints (soldered, compression type, brazed), plastic pipe joints, flanged joints. Do not backfill utility trench or begin testing on any section of a pipeline where concrete thrust blocks have been provided until at least 7 days after placing of the concrete.

3.3.1.2 Hydrostatic Sewer Test

The hydrostatic pressure sewer test will be performed in accordance with the applicable AWWA standard for the piping material or AWWA C600.

3.3.1.3 Leakage Test

For leakage test, use a hydrostatic pressure not less than the maximum working pressure of the system. Leakage test may be performed at the same time and at the same test pressure as the pressure test.

For PE perform leak testing in accordance with ASTM F2164.

3.3.1.4 Bacteriological Testing

Perform bacteriological tests in accordance with AWWA C651 Option A. For new water mains use Option A and obtain two sets of samples for coliform analysis, each sample being collected at least 16 hours apart. Take samples every 1,200 ft plus one set from the end of the line and at least one from each branch greater than one pipe length. Analyze samples by a certified laboratory, and submit the results of the bacteriological samples.

3.3.1.5 Backflow Preventer Tests

After installation conduct Backflow Preventer Tests and provide test reports verifying that the installation meets the FCCCHR Manual Standards.

3.3.1.6 Special Testing Requirements for Fire Service

Test water mains and water service lines providing fire service or water and fire service in accordance with NFPA 24. The additional water added to

the system must not exceed the limits given in NFPA 24

3.3.1.7 Tracer Wire Continuity Test

Test tracer wire for continuity after service connections have been completed and prior to final pavement or restoration. Verify that tracer wire is locatable with electronic utility locating equipment. Repair breaks or separations and re-test for continuity.

3.4 SYSTEM STARTUP

Water mains and appurtenances must be completely installed, disinfected, flushed, and satisfactory bacteriological sample results received prior to permanent connections being made to the active distribution system. Obtain approval by the Contracting Officer prior to the new water piping being placed into service.

3.5 CLEANUP

Upon completion of the installation of water lines and appurtenances, remove all debris and surplus materials resulting from the work.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 33 11 23

NATURAL GAS AND LIQUID PETROLEUM PIPING

11/09

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN GAS ASSOCIATION (AGA)

AGA ANSI B109.1 (2000) Diaphragm Type Gas Displacement Meters (Under 500 cubic ft./hour Capacity)

AGA XR0603 (2006; 8th Ed) AGA Plastic Pipe Manual for Gas Service

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI Z21.41/CSA 6.9 (2014) Quick-Disconnect Devices for Use with Gas Fuel Appliances

ANSI Z21.45 (1995) Flexible Connectors of Other Than All-Metal Construction for Gas Appliances

ANSI Z21.69/CSA 6.16 (2009; Addenda A 2012; R 2014) Connectors for Movable Gas Appliances

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME B1.1 (2003; R 2018) Unified Inch Screw Threads (UN and UNR Thread Form)

ASME B1.20.1 (2013) Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)

ASME B16.11 (2016) Forged Fittings, Socket-Welding and Threaded

ASME B16.3 (2016) Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings, Classes 150 and 300

ASME B16.39 (2014) Standard for Malleable Iron Threaded Pipe Unions; Classes 150, 250, and 300

ASME B16.5 (2017) Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings NPS 1/2 Through NPS 24 Metric/Inch Standard

ASME B16.9 (2012) Standard for Factory-Made Wrought Steel Buttwelding Fittings

ASME B18.2.1 (2012; Errata 2013) Square and Hex Bolts and Screws (Inch Series)

ASME B18.2.2	(2015) Nuts for General Applications: Machine Screw Nuts, Hex, Square, Hex Flange, and Coupling Nuts (Inch Series)
ASME B31.8	(2014; Supplement 2014) Gas Transmission and Distribution Piping Systems
ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1	(2017) BPVC Section VIII-Rules for Construction of Pressure Vessels Division 1

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A193/A193M	(2017) Standard Specification for Alloy-Steel and Stainless Steel Bolting Materials for High-Temperature Service and Other Special Purpose Applications
ASTM A194/A194M	(2018) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel, Alloy Steel, and Stainless Steel Nuts for Bolts for High-Pressure or High-Temperature Service, or Both
ASTM A53/A53M	(2018) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
ASTM D2513	(2014; E 2014) Thermoplastic Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings
ASTM D2683	(2014) Standard Specification for Socket-Type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter-Controlled Polyethylene Pipe and Tubing

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-58	(2009) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design and Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation
MSS SP-69	(2003; Notice 2012) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Selection and Application (ANSI Approved American National Standard)

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 54	(2018) National Fuel Gas Code
NFPA 58	(2017; ERTA 17-1) Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION (SMACNA)

SMACNA 1981	(2008) Seismic Restraint Manual Guidelines for Mechanical Systems, 3rd Edition

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

MIL-STD-101

(2014; Rev C) Color Code for Pipelines and
for Compressed Gas Cylinders

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

49 CFR 192

Transportation of Natural and Other Gas by
Pipeline: Minimum Federal Safety Standards

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 23 03 00.00 20 BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS applies to this section, with additions and modifications specified herein.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Valve Box

Gas Equipment Connectors

Valves

Warning and Identification Tape

Risers

Transition Fittings

Gas meter

LPG Containers and Accessories

SD-07 Certificates

Welder's Qualifications

PE Welder's Qualifications

Welder's Identification Symbols

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

PE Pipe and Fittings

Submit manufacturer's installation instructions and manufacturer's visual joint appearance chart.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4.1 Welder's Qualifications

Comply with [ASME B31.8](#). The steel welder shall have a copy of a certified [ASME B31.8](#) qualification test report. The PE welder shall have a certificate from a PE pipe manufacturer's sponsored training course. Contractor shall also conduct a qualification test. Submit each [welder's identification symbols](#), assigned number, or letter, used to identify work of the welder. Affix symbols immediately upon completion of welds. Welders making defective welds after passing a qualification test shall be given a requalification test and, upon failing to pass this test, shall not be permitted to work this contract.

1.4.2 PE Welder's Qualifications

Prior to installation, Contractor shall have supervising and installing personnel trained by a PE pipe manufacturer's sponsored course of not less than one week duration, or present proof satisfactory to the Contracting Officer that personnel are currently working in the installation of PE gas distribution lines.

1.4.3 Safety Standards

[49 CFR 192](#).

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Handle, transport, and store plastic pipe and fittings carefully. Plug or cap pipe ends during transportation or storage to minimize dirt and moisture entry. Do not subject to abrasion or concentrated external loads. Discard PE pipe sections and fittings that have been damaged.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

Conform to [NFPA 54](#) and with requirements specified herein. Supply piping to appliances or equipment shall be at least as large as the inlets thereof.

2.2 PIPE AND FITTINGS

2.2.1 Aboveground and Within Buildings and Vaults

- a. Pipe: Black steel in accordance with [ASTM A53/A53M](#), Schedule 40, threaded ends for sizes [2 inches](#) and smaller; otherwise, plain end beveled for butt welding.
- b. Threaded Fittings: [ASME B16.3](#), black malleable iron.
- c. Socket-Welding Fittings: [ASME B16.11](#), forged steel.
- d. Butt-Welding Fittings: [ASME B16.9](#), with backing rings of compatible material.
- e. Unions: [ASME B16.39](#), black malleable iron.
- f. Flanges and Flanged Fittings: [ASME B16.5](#) steel flanges or convoluted steel flanges conforming to [ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1](#). Flange faces shall

have integral grooves of rectangular cross sections which afford containment for self-energizing gasket material.

2.2.2 Underground Polyethylene (PE)

PE pipe and fittings are as follows:

- a. Pipe: ASTM D2513, 100 psig working pressure, Standard Dimension Ratio (SDR), the ratio of pipe diameter to wall thickness, 11.5 maximum.
- b. Socket Fittings: ASTM D2683.
- c. Butt-Fusion Fittings: ASTM D2513, molded.

2.2.3 Risers

Manufacturer's standard riser, transition from plastic to steel pipe with 7 to 12 mil thick epoxy coating. Use swaged gas-tight construction with O-ring seals, metal insert, and protective sleeve. Provide remote bolt-on or bracket or wall-mounted riser supports as indicated.

2.2.4 Transition Fittings

- a. Steel to Plastic (PE): As specified for "riser" except designed for steel-to-plastic with tapping tee or sleeve. Coat or wrap exposed steel pipe with heavy plastic coating.
- b. Plastic to Plastic: Manufacturer's standard slip-on PE mechanical coupling, molded, with stainless-steel ring support, O-ring seals, and rated for 150 psig gas service. Manufacturer's standard fused tapping (PE-to-PE) tee assembly with shut-off feature.

2.3 GAS METER

AGA ANSI B109.1 pipe mounted, diaphragm, cast-iron case. Provide combined odometer-type register totalizer index, UV-resistant index cover, water escape hole in housing, and means for sealing against tampering.

2.3.1 Utility Monitoring and Control System (UMCS) / Energy Monitoring and Control (EMCS) or Automatic Meter Reading Interfaces

Provide gas meters capable of interfacing the output signal, equivalent to volumetric flow rate, with the existing UMCS / EMCS for data gathering in units of cubic meters cubic feet. Provide meters that do not require power to function and deliver data. Output signal shall be either a voltage or amperage signal that can be converted to volumetric flow by using an appropriate scaling factor.

2.4 GAS EQUIPMENT CONNECTORS

- a. Flexible Connectors: ANSI Z21.45.
- b. Quick Disconnect Couplings: ANSI Z21.41/CSA 6.9.
- c. Semi-Rigid Tubing and Fittings: ANSI Z21.69/CSA 6.16.

2.5 VALVE BOX

Provide street valve box with cast-iron cover and two-piece 5 1/4 inch

shaft-slip valve box extension. Cast the word "Gas" into the box cover. Use valve box for areas as follows:

- a. Roads and Traffic Areas: Heavy duty, cast iron cover.
- b. Other Areas: Standard duty, concrete cover.

2.6 CASING

Where indicated at railroad or other crossing, provide [ASTM A53/A53M](#), galvanized pipe, Schedule 40.

2.7 BURIED UTILITY [WARNING AND IDENTIFICATION TAPE](#)

Provide detectable aluminum-foil plastic-backed tape or detectable magnetic plastic tape manufactured specifically for warning and identification of buried piping. Tape shall be detectable by an electronic detection instrument. Provide tape in rolls, [3 inch](#) minimum width, color-coded yellow for natural gas, with warning and identification imprinted in bold black letters continuously and repeatedly over entire tape length. Warning and identification shall be "CAUTION BURIED GAS PIPING BELOW" or similar wording. Use permanent code and letter coloring unaffected by moisture and other substances contained in trench backfill material.

2.8 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

[MSS SP-58](#), as required by [MSS SP-69](#).

2.9 WELDING FILLER METAL

[ASME B31.8](#).

2.10 PIPE-THREAD TAPE

Antiseize and sealant tape of polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE).

2.11 BOLTING (BOLTS AND NUTS)

Stainless steel bolting; [ASTM A193/A193M](#), Grade B8M or B8MA, Type 316, for bolts; and [ASTM A194/A194M](#), Grade 8M, Type 316, for nuts. Dimensions of bolts, studs, and nuts shall conform with [ASME B18.2.1](#) and [ASME B18.2.2](#) with coarse threads conforming to [ASME B1.1](#), with Class 2A fit for bolts and studs and Class 2B fit for nuts. Bolts or bolt-studs shall extend through the nuts and may have reduced shanks of a diameter not less than the diameter at root of threads. Bolts shall have American Standard regular square or heavy hexagon heads; nuts shall be American Standard heavy semifinished hexagonal.

2.12 GASKETS

Fluorinated elastomer, compatible with flange faces.

2.13 IDENTIFICATION FOR ABOVEGROUND PIPING

[MIL-STD-101](#) for legends and type and size of characters. For pipes [3/4 inch](#) and larger, provide printed legends to identify contents of pipes and arrows to show direction of flow. Color code label backgrounds to signify levels of hazard. Make labels of plastic sheet with pressure-sensitive adhesive suitable for the intended application. For pipes smaller than [3/4](#)

inch od, provide brass identification tags 1 1/2 inches in diameter with legends in depressed black-filled characters.

2.14 (LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS) LPG CONTAINERS AND ACCESSORIES

NFPA 58, DOT or ASME containers with appurtenances, system working pressure, minimum design pressure, that is LPG vapor pressure at 100 degrees F, and water capacity as indicated. Provide containers with piping and fittings, strainer, and marking conforming to NFPA 58.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Install gas piping, appliances, and equipment in accordance with NFPA 54.

3.1.1 Excavating and Backfilling

Perform excavating and backfilling of pipe trenches as specified in Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL. Place pipe directly in trench bottom and cover with minimum 3 inches of sand to top of pipe. If trench bottom is rocky, place pipe on a 3 inch bed of sand and cover as above. Provide remaining backfilling. Coordinate provision of utility warning and identification tape with backfill operation. Bury utility warning and identification tape with printed side up at a depth of 12 inches below the top surface of earth or the top surface of the subgrade under pavements.

3.1.2 Piping

Cut pipe to actual dimensions and assemble to prevent residual stress. Provide supply connections entering the buildings as indicated. Within buildings, run piping parallel to structure lines and conceal in finished spaces. Terminate each vertical supply pipe to burner or appliance with tee, nipple and cap to form a sediment trap. To supply multiple items of gas-burning equipment, provide manifold with inlet connections at both ends.

3.1.2.1 Cleanliness

Clean inside of pipe and fittings before installation. Blow lines clear using 80 to 100 psig clean dry compressed air. Rap steel lines sharply along entire pipe length before blowing clear. Cap or plug pipe ends to maintain cleanliness throughout installation.

3.1.2.2 Aboveground Steel Piping

Determine and establish measurements for piping at the job site and accurately cut pipe lengths accordingly. For 2 inch diameter and smaller, use threaded or socket-welded joints. For 2 1/2 inch diameter and larger, use flanged or butt-welded joints.

- a. Threaded Joints: Where possible use pipe with factory-cut threads, otherwise cut pipe ends square, remove fins and burrs, and cut taper pipe threads in accordance with ASME B1.20.1. Provide threads smooth, clean, and full-cut. Apply anti-seize paste or tape to male threads portion. Work piping into place without springing or forcing. Backing off to permit alignment of threaded joints will not be permitted. Engage threads so that not more than three threads remain exposed. Use unions for connections to valves and meters for which a means of disconnection is not otherwise provided.

- b. Welded Joints: Weld by the shielded metal-arc process, using covered electrodes and in accordance with procedures established and qualified in accordance with [ASME B31.8](#).
- c. Flanged Joints: Use flanged joints for connecting welded joint pipe and fittings to valves to provide for disconnection. Install joints so that flange faces bear uniformly on gaskets. Engage bolts so that there is complete threading through the nuts and tighten so that bolts are uniformly stressed and equally torqued.
- d. Pipe Size Changes: Use reducing fittings for changes in pipe size. Size changes made with bushings will not be accepted.
- e. Painting: Paint new ferrous metal piping, including supports, in accordance with Section [09 90 00](#) PAINTS AND COATINGS. Do not apply paint until piping tests have been completed.
- f. Identification of Piping: Identify piping aboveground in accordance with [MIL-STD-101](#), using adhesive-backed or snap-on plastic labels and arrows. In lieu of labels, identification tags may be used. Apply labels or tags to finished paint at intervals of not more than [50 feet](#). Provide two copies of the piping identification code framed under glass and install where directed.

3.1.2.3 Buried Plastic Lines

Provide totally PE piping. Prior to installation, obtain printed instructions and technical assistance in proper installation techniques from pipe manufacturer. When joining new PE pipe to existing pipe line, ascertain what procedural changes in the fusion process is necessary to attain optimum bonding.

- a. Jointing Procedures: Use jointing procedures conforming to [AGA XR0603](#) and [49 CFR 192](#) that have been qualified by test in accordance with 49 CFR 192.283 and proven to make satisfactory joints. Personnel make joints in plastic pipe shall be qualified in accordance with 49 CFR 192.285, under the submitted and approved procedure by making a satisfactory specimen joint that passes the required inspection and test. Joints in plastic pipe shall be inspected by a person qualified by 49 CFR 192.287 under the applicable procedure. Certificates that qualify the applicable procedures, joining personnel, and inspectors shall be submitted and approved and shall be on file with the Contracting Officer prior to making these joints.
- b. PE Piping: Prior to installation, Contractor shall have supervising and installing personnel, certified in accordance with paragraph WELDER'S QUALIFICATIONS. Provide fusion-welded joints except where transitions have been specified. Use electrically heated tools, thermostatically controlled and equipped with temperature indication. (Where connection must be made to existing plastic pipe, contractor shall be responsible for determination of compatibility of materials and procedural changes in fusion process necessary to attain maximum integrity of bond.)
- c. Laying PE Pipe: Bury pipe [24 inches](#) below finish grade or deeper when indicated. Lay in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.

3.1.2.4 Connections to Existing Pipeline

When making connections to live gas mains, use pressure tight installation equipment operated by workmen trained and experienced in making hot taps. For connections to existing underground pipeline or service branch, use transition fittings for dissimilar materials.

3.1.2.5 Wrapping

Where connection to existing steel line is made underground, tape wrap new steel transition fittings and exposed existing pipe having damaged coating. Clean pipe to bare metal. Initially stretch first layer of tape to conform to the surface while spirally half-lapping. Apply a second layer, half-lapped and spiraled as the first layer, but with spirals perpendicular to first wrapping. Use 10 mil minimum thick polyethylene tape. In lieu of tape wrap, heat shrinkable 10 mil minimum thick polyethylene sleeve may be used.

3.1.3 Valves

Install valves approximately at locations indicated. Orient stems vertically, with operators on top, or horizontally. Provide support for valves to resist operating torque applied to PE pipes.

3.1.3.1 Stop Valve and Shutoff Valve

Provide stop valve on service branch at connection to main and shut-off valve on riser outside of building.

3.1.4 Gas Service Installation

Installations shall be in accordance with 49 CFR 192 and ASME B31.8. Contractor shall submit and use only tested and approved work procedures. Contractor shall use only welders and jointers who have been recently qualified by training and test for joining and installing the gas pipe material used on this job. The finished product shall be inspected by a person qualified to inspect joints made by the particular procedures used to make joints.

3.1.4.1 Service Line

Install service line, branch connection to the main, and riser in accordance with 49 CFR 192 and ASME B31.8. Provide a minimum of 18 inches cover or encase the service line so that it is protected. Install service line so that no undue stress is applied to the pipe, connection, or riser. Install approved riser and terminate with an approved isolation valve, EFV and automatic shutoff device. After laying of pipe and testing, backfill the trench in accordance with Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL.

Where steel pipe is used as service line, install corrosion prevention coating and cathodic protect for the steel service line. Where connected to an existing cathodically protected steel pipe, ensure electrical continuity from the riser to the branch connection to the main. Install a dielectric fitting on the riser to prevent electrical continuity to the above ground piping.

Where plastic pipe is used as the service line, make joints in accordance with procedures qualified by test. Personnel joining plastic pipe shall be qualified by making a satisfactory specimen joint that passes the required

inspection and test listed in 49 CFR 192.285. Inspection shall be made by inspectors qualified in evaluating joints made under the specific joining procedure, as required by 49 CFR 192.287.

3.1.4.2 Service Regulator

Install service regulator in accordance with 49 CFR 192 and ASME B31.8 and this specification ensuring that the customer's piping is protected from over pressurization should the service regulator fail. A 3/8 inch tapped fitting equipped with a plug shall be provided on both sides of the service regulator for installation of pressure gauges for adjusting the regulator. For inside installations, route the regulator vent pipe through the exterior wall to the atmosphere, and seal building penetrations for service line and vent. Terminate the regulator vent so that it is protected from precipitation and insect intrusion, so that it is not submerged during floods, and so that gas escaping will not create a hazard or enter the building through openings.

3.1.4.3 Gas Meter

Install shutoff valve, meter set assembly, and service regulator on the service line outside the building, 18 inches above the ground on the riser. An insulating joint (dielectric connection) shall be installed on the inlet side of the meter set assembly and service regulator and shall be constructed to prevent flow of electrical current.

3.1.5 Pipe Sleeves

Where piping penetrates concrete or masonry wall, floor or firewall, provide pipe sleeve poured or grouted in place. Make sleeve of steel or cast-iron pipe of such size to provide 1/4 inch or more annular clearance around pipe. Extend sleeve through wall or slab and terminate flush with both surfaces. Pack annular space with oakum, and caulk at ends with silicone construction sealant.

3.1.6 Piping Hangers and Supports

Selection, fabrication, and installation of piping hangers and supports shall conform with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-58, unless otherwise indicated. Provide seismic restraints in accordance with SMACNA 1981.

3.1.7 Final Connections

Make final connections to equipment and appliances using rigid pipe and fittings, except for the following:

3.1.7.1 Domestic Water Heaters

Connect with AGA-Approved semi-rigid tubing and fittings.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.2.1 Metal Welding Inspection

Inspect for compliance with NFPA 54. Replace, repair, and then re-inspect defective welds.

3.2.2 PE Fusion Welding Inspection

Visually inspect butt joints by comparing with, manufacturer's visual joint appearance chart. Inspect fusion joints for proper fused connection. Replace defective joints by cutting out defective joints or replacing fittings. Inspect 100 percent of all joints and reinspect all corrections. Arrange with the pipe manufacturer's representative in the presence of the Contracting Officer to make first time inspection.

3.2.3 Pressure Tests

Use test pressure of 1 1/2 times maximum working pressure, but in no case less than 50 psig. Do not test until every joint has set and cooled at least 8 hours at temperatures above 50 degrees F. Conduct testing before backfilling; however, place sufficient backfill material between fittings to hold pipe in place during tests. Test system gas tight in accordance with NFPA 54 . Use clean dry air or inert gas, such as nitrogen or carbon dioxide, for testing. Systems which may be contaminated by gas shall first be purged as specified. Make tests on entire system or on sections that can be isolated by valves. After pressurization, isolate entire piping system from sources of air during test period. Maintain test pressure for at least 8 hours between times of first and last reading of pressure and temperature. Take first reading at least one hour after test pressure has been applied. Do not take test readings during rapid weather changes. Provide temperature same as actual trench conditions. There shall be no reduction in the applied test pressure other than that due to a change in ambient temperature. Allow for ambient temperature change in accordance with the relationship $PF + 14.7 = (P1 + 14.7) (T2 + 460) / (T1 + 460)$, in which "T" and "PF" represent Fahrenheit temperature and gage pressure, respectively, subscripts "1" and "2" denote initial and final readings, and "PF" is the calculated final pressure. If "PF" exceeds the measured final pressure (final gage reading) by 1/2 psi or more, isolate sections of the piping system, retest each section individually, and apply a solution of warm soapy water to joints of each section for which a reduction in pressure occurs after allowing for ambient temperature change. Repair leaking joints and repeat test until no reduction in pressure occurs. In performing tests, use a test gage calibrated in one psi increments and readable to 1/2 psi.

3.2.4 System Purging

After completing pressure tests, and before testing a gas contaminated line, purge line with nitrogen at junction with main line to remove all air and gas. Clear completed line by attaching a test pilot fixture at capped stub-in line at building location and let gas flow until test pilot ignites. Procedures shall conform to NFPA 54 and ASME B31.8.

-CAUTION-
Failure to purge may result in explosion within line when air-to-gas is at correct mixture.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 33 30 00

SANITARY SEWERAGE
05/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN RAILWAY ENGINEERING AND MAINTENANCE-OF-WAY ASSOCIATION
(AREMA)

AREMA Eng Man (2017) Manual for Railway Engineering

AMERICAN WATER WORKS ASSOCIATION (AWWA)

AWWA C104/A21.4 (2016) Cement-Mortar Lining for
Ductile-Iron Pipe and Fittings for Water

AWWA C105/A21.5 (2010) Polyethylene Encasement for
Ductile-Iron Pipe Systems

AWWA C111/A21.11 (2017) Rubber-Gasket Joints for
Ductile-Iron Pressure Pipe and Fittings

AWWA C600 (2017) Installation of Ductile-Iron Mains
and Their Appurtenances

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A123/A123M (2017) Standard Specification for Zinc
(Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and
Steel Products

ASTM A48/A48M (2003; R 2012) Standard Specification for
Gray Iron Castings

ASTM A536 (1984; R 2014) Standard Specification for
Ductile Iron Castings

ASTM A746 (2009; R 2014) Standard Specification for
Ductile Iron Gravity Sewer Pipe

ASTM C150/C150M (2018) Standard Specification for Portland
Cement

ASTM C1644 (2006; R 2017) Standard Specification for
Resilient Connectors Between Reinforced
Concrete On-Site Wastewater Tanks and Pipes

ASTM C270 (2014a) Standard Specification for Mortar
for Unit Masonry

ASTM C33/C33M	(2018) Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates
ASTM C443	(2012; R 2017) Standard Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe and Manholes, Using Rubber Gaskets
ASTM C478	(2018) Standard Specification for Circular Precast Reinforced Concrete Manhole Sections
ASTM C478M	(2018) Standard Specification for Precast Reinforced Concrete Manhole Sections (Metric)
ASTM C923	(2008; R 2013; E 2016) Standard Specification for Resilient Connectors Between Reinforced Concrete Manhole Structures, Pipes and Laterals
ASTM C94/C94M	(2017a) Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete
ASTM C972	(2000; R 2011) Compression-Recovery of Tape Sealant
ASTM C990	(2009; R 2014) Standard Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe, Manholes and Precast Box Sections Using Preformed Flexible Joint Sealants
ASTM D3034	(2016) Standard Specification for Type PSM Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings
ASTM D3212	(2007; R 2013) Standard Specification for Joints for Drain and Sewer Plastic Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals
ASTM D412	(2016) Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers - Tension
ASTM D624	(2000; R 2012) Tear Strength of Conventional Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers
ASTM F477	(2014) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Seals (Gaskets) for Joining Plastic Pipe
ASTM F794	(2003; R 2014) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Profile Gravity Sewer Pipe and Fittings Based on Controlled Inside Diameter
ASTM F949	(2015) Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Corrugated Sewer Pipe with a Smooth Interior and Fittings

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR 1910.27

(N0v 2016) Scaffolds and Roope Descent
Systems

UNI-BELL PVC PIPE ASSOCIATION (UBPPA)

UBPPA UNI-B-6

(1998) Recommended Practice for
Low-Pressure Air Testing of Installed
Sewer Pipe

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Contractor's License; G

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Installation Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Precast Concrete Manholes

Frames, Covers, and Gratings

Gravity Pipe

SD-06 Test Reports

Hydrostatic Sewer Test; G

Infiltration Tests And Exfiltration Tests; G

Low-Pressure Air Tests; G

SD-07 Certificates

Portland Cement

Pre-Installation Inspection Request; G

Post-Installation Inspection; G

1.3 QUALITY CONTROL

1.3.1 Installer Qualifications

Install specified materials by a licensed underground utility Contractor licensed for such work in the state where the work is to be performed.

Verify installing [Contractor's License](#) is current and state certified or state registered.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.4.1 Delivery and Storage

Check upon arrival; identify and segregate as to types, functions, and sizes. Store off the ground in a manner affording easy accessibility and not causing excessive rusting or coating with grease or other objectionable materials.

1.4.1.1 Piping

Inspect materials delivered to site for damage; store with minimum of handling. Store materials on site in enclosures or under protective coverings. Store plastic piping and jointing materials and rubber gaskets under cover out of direct sunlight. Do not store materials directly on the ground. Keep inside of pipes and fittings free of dirt and debris.

1.4.2 Handling

Handle pipe, fittings, and other accessories in such manner as to ensure delivery to the trench in sound undamaged condition. Take special care not to damage linings of pipe and fittings; if lining is damaged, make satisfactory repairs. Carry, do not drag, pipe to trench. Store solvents, solvent compounds, lubricants, elastomeric gaskets, and any similar materials required to install the plastic pipe in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation and discard those materials if the storage period exceeds the recommended shelf life. Discard solvents in use when the recommended pot life is exceeded.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

2.1.1 Sanitary Sewer Gravity Pipeline

Provide mains and laterals of polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe. Provide building connections of polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe. Provide new and modify existing exterior sanitary gravity sewer piping and appurtenances. Provide each system complete and ready for operation. The exterior sanitary gravity sewer system includes equipment, materials, installation, and workmanship as specified herein more than [5 feet](#) outside of building walls.

2.2 MATERIALS

Provide materials conforming to the respective specifications and other requirements specified below. Submit manufacturer's product specification, standard drawings or catalog cuts.

2.2.1 [Gravity Pipe](#)

2.2.1.1 Ductile Iron Gravity Sewer Pipe and Associated Fittings

2.2.1.1.1 Ductile Iron Gravity Pipe and Fittings

Provide ductile iron pipe conforming to [ASTM A746](#) with cement-mortar lining

in conforming to [AWWA C104/A21.4](#), Pressure Class [350](#). Provide push-on joints conforming to [AWWA C111/A21.11](#).

2.2.1.2 PVC Gravity Sewer Piping

2.2.1.2.1 PVC Gravity Pipe and Fittings

[ASTM D3034](#), SDR 35, or [ASTM F949](#) with ends suitable for elastomeric gasket joints. [ASTM F794](#), Series 46, for ribbed sewer pipe with smooth interior, size [8 inch](#) through [48 inch](#) diameters.

2.2.1.2.2 PVC Gravity Joints and Jointing Material

Provide joints conforming to [ASTM D3212](#). Gaskets are to conform to [ASTM F477](#).

2.2.2 Piping Beneath Railroad Right-of-Way

Where pipeline passes under the right-of-way of a commercial railroad, piping is to conform to the specifications for pipelines conveying nonflammable substances in [AREMA Eng Man](#), except as otherwise specified in this paragraph. For casing pipe provide ductile-iron pipe in lieu of cast-iron soil pipe. Ductile-iron pipe is to conform to and have strength computed in accordance with [ASTM A746](#).

2.2.3 Cement Mortar

Provide cement mortar conforming to [ASTM C270](#), Type M with Type II cement.

2.2.4 Portland Cement

Submit certificates of compliance stating the type of cement used in manufacture of concrete pipe, fittings, and precast manholes. Provide portland cement conforming to [ASTM C150/C150M](#), Type II for concrete used in manholes and type optional for cement used in concrete cradle, concrete encasement, and thrust blocking. Use a cement containing less than 0.60 percent alkalis where aggregates are alkali reactive, as determined by Appendix XI of [ASTM C33/C33M](#).

2.2.5 Portland Cement Concrete

Provide portland cement concrete conforming to [ASTM C94/C94M](#), compressive strength of [4000 psi](#) at 28 days, except for concrete cradle and encasement or concrete blocks for manholes. Concrete used for cradle and encasement is to have a compressive strength of [2500 psi](#) minimum at 28 days. Protect concrete in place from freezing and moisture loss for 7 days.

2.2.6 Precast Concrete Manholes

Provide [precast concrete manholes](#), risers, base sections, and tops conforming to [ASTM C478](#) and be manufactured in accordance with Section [03 42 13.00 10](#) PLANT-PRECAST CONCRETE PRODUCTS FOR BELOW GRADE CONSTRUCTION; base and first riser are to be monolithic.

2.2.7 Gaskets and Connectors

Provide gaskets for joints between manhole sections conforming to [ASTM C443](#). Resilient connectors for making joints between manhole and pipes entering manhole are to conform to [ASTM C1644](#) [ASTM C923](#) or [ASTM C990](#).

2.2.8 External Preformed Rubber Joint Seals

An external preformed rubber joint seal is an accepted method of sealing cast iron covers to precast concrete sections to prevent ground water infiltration into sewer systems. All finished and sealed manholes constructed in accordance with paragraph entitled "Manhole Construction" are to be tested for leakage in the same manner as pipelines as described in paragraph entitled "Leakage Tests." The seal is to be multi-section with a neoprene rubber top section and all lower sections made of Ethylene Propylene Diene Monomer (EPDM) rubber with a minimum thickness of 60 mils. Each unit is to consist of a top and bottom section and have mastic on the bottom of the bottom section and mastic on the top and bottom of the top section. The mastic is to be a non-hardening butyl rubber sealant and seal to the cone/top slab of the manhole/catch basin and over the lip of the casting. Extension sections are to cover up to two more adjusting rings. Properties and values are listed in the following table:

Properties, Test Methods and Minimum Values for Rubber used in Preformed Joint Seals				
Physical Properties	Test Methods	EPDM	Neoprene	Butyl Mastic
Tensile, psi	ASTM D412	1840	2195	--
Elongation, percent	ASTM D412	553	295	350
Tear Resistance, pli	ASTM D624 (Die B)	280	160	--
Rebound, percent, 5 minutes	ASTM C972 (mod.)	--	--	11
Rebound, percent, 2 hours	ASTM C972	--	--	12

2.2.9 Frames, Covers, and Gratings for Manholes

Frame and cover are to be cast gray iron, ASTM A48/A48M, Class 35B, cast ductile iron, ASTM A536, Grade 65-45-12, or reinforced concrete, ASTM C478 ASTM C478M. Frames and covers are to be circular with vent holes. Size are to be for 24 inch opening. Stamp or cast the words "Sanitary Sewer" into covers so that it is plainly visible.

2.2.10 Manhole Steps

Zinc-coated steel conforming to 29 CFR 1910.27. Aluminum steps or rungs will not be permitted. Steps are not required in manholes less than 4 feet deep.

2.2.11 Manhole Ladders

Provide a steel ladder where the depth of a manhole exceeds 12 feet. The ladder is not to be less than 16 inches in width, with 3/4 inch diameter rungs spaced 12 inches apart. The two stringers are to be a minimum 3/8 inch thick and 2 inches wide. Galvanize ladders and inserts after

fabrication in conformance with ASTM A123/A123M.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

3.1.1 Installation Drawings

Submit Installation Drawings showing complete detail, both plan and side view details with proper layout and elevations.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Backfill after inspection by the Contracting Officer. Before, during, and after installation, protect plastic pipe and fittings from any environment that would result in damage or deterioration to the material. Keep a copy of the manufacturer's instructions available at the construction site at all times and follow these instructions unless directed otherwise by the Contracting Officer.

3.2.1 Connections to Existing Lines

Obtain approval from the Contracting Officer before making connection to existing line. Conduct work so that there is minimum interruption of service on existing line.

3.2.2 General Requirements for Installation of Pipelines

These general requirements apply except where specific exception is made in the following paragraphs entitled "Special Requirements."

3.2.2.1 Location

Terminate the work covered by this section at a point approximately 5 feet from the building.

3.2.2.1.1 Sanitary Piping Installation Parallel with Water Line

3.2.2.1.1.1 Normal Conditions

Install sanitary piping or manholes at least 10 feet horizontally from a water line whenever possible. Measure the distance from edge-to-edge.

3.2.2.1.1.2 Unusual Conditions

When local conditions prevent a horizontal separation of 10 feet, the sanitary piping or manhole may be laid closer to a water line provided that:

- a. The top (crown) of the sanitary piping is to be at least 18 inches below the bottom (invert) of the water main.
- b. Where this vertical separation cannot be obtained, construct the sanitary piping with AWWA-approved ductile iron water pipe pressure and conduct a hydrostatic sewer test without leakage prior to backfilling.
- c. The sewer manhole is to be of watertight construction and tested in place.

3.2.2.1.2 Installation of Sanitary Piping Crossing a Water Line

3.2.2.1.2.1 Normal Conditions

Lay sanitary sewer piping by crossing under water lines to provide a separation of at least 18 inches between the top of the sanitary piping and the bottom of the water line whenever possible.

3.2.2.1.2.2 Unusual Conditions

When local conditions prevent a vertical separation described above, use the following construction:

- a. Construct sanitary piping passing over or under water lines with AWWA-approved ductile iron water pressure piping and conduct a hydrostatic sewer test without leakage prior to backfilling.
- b. Protect sanitary piping passing over water lines by providing:
 - (1) A vertical separation of at least 18 inches between the bottom of the sanitary piping and the top of the water line.
 - (2) Adequate structural support for the sanitary piping to prevent excessive deflection of the joints and the settling on and breaking of the water line.
 - (3) That the length, minimum 20 feet, of the sanitary piping be centered at the point of the crossing so that joints are equidistant and as far as possible from the water line.

3.2.2.1.3 Sanitary Sewer Manholes

No water piping shall pass through or come in contact with any part of a sanitary sewer manhole.

3.2.2.2 Earthwork

Perform earthwork operations in accordance with Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL.

3.2.2.3 Pipe Laying and Jointing

Inspect each pipe and fitting before and after installation; replace those found defective and remove from site. Provide proper facilities for lowering sections of pipe into trenches. Lay nonpressure pipe with the bell or groove ends in the upgrade direction. Adjust spigots in bells and tongues in grooves to give a uniform space all around. Blocking or wedging between bells and spigots or tongues and grooves will not be permitted. Replace by one of the proper dimensions, pipe or fittings that do not allow sufficient space for installation of joint material. At the end of each work day, close open ends of pipe temporarily with wood blocks or bulkheads. Provide batterboards not more than 25 feet apart in trenches for checking and ensuring that pipe invert elevations are as indicated. Laser beam method may be used in lieu of batterboards for the same purpose. Construct branch connections by use of regular fittings or solvent cemented saddles as approved. Provide saddles for PVC pipe conforming to Table 4 of ASTM D3034.

3.2.3 Special Requirements

3.2.3.1 Installation of Ductile Iron Gravity Sewer Pipe

Unless otherwise specified, install pipe and associated fittings in accordance with paragraph entitled "General Requirements for Installation of Pipelines" of this section and with the requirements of [AWWA C600](#) for pipe installation and joint assembly.

- a. Make mechanical-joints with the gaskets, glands, bolts, and nuts specified for this type joint and assemble in accordance with the applicable requirements of [AWWA C600](#) for joint assembly and the recommendations of Appendix A to [AWWA C111/A21.11](#).
- b. Exterior protection: Completely encase buried ductile iron pipelines with polyethylene tube or sheet in accordance with [AWWA C105/A21.5](#), using Class A polyethylene film.

3.2.4 Manhole Construction

Construct base slab of cast-in-place concrete or use precast concrete base sections. Make inverts in cast-in-place concrete and precast concrete bases with a smooth-surfaced semi-circular bottom conforming to the inside contour of the adjacent sewer sections. For changes in direction of the sewer and entering branches into the manhole, make a circular curve in the manhole invert of as large a radius as manhole size will permit. For cast-in-place concrete construction, either pour bottom slabs and walls integrally or key and bond walls to bottom slab. No parging will be permitted on interior manhole walls. For precast concrete construction, make joints between manhole sections with the gaskets specified for this purpose; install in the manner specified for installing joints in concrete piping. Parging will not be required for precast concrete manholes. Perform cast-in-place concrete work in accordance with the requirements specified under paragraph entitled "Concrete Work" of this section. Make joints between concrete manholes and pipes entering manholes with the resilient connectors specified for this purpose; install in accordance with the recommendations of the connector manufacturer. Where a new manhole is constructed on an existing line, remove existing pipe as necessary to construct the manhole. Cut existing pipe so that pipe ends are approximately flush with the interior face of manhole wall, but not protruding into the manhole. Use resilient connectors as previously specified for pipe connectors to concrete manholes.

3.2.5 Miscellaneous Construction and Installation

3.2.5.1 Connecting to Existing Manholes

Connect pipe to existing manholes such that finish work will conform as nearly as practicable to the applicable requirements specified for new manholes, including all necessary concrete work, cutting, and shaping. Center the connection on the manhole. Holes for the new pipe are to be of sufficient diameter to allow packing cement mortar around the entire periphery of the pipe but no larger than 1.5 times the diameter of the pipe. Cut the manhole in a manner that will cause the least damage to the walls.

3.2.5.2 Metal Work

3.2.5.2.1 Workmanship and Finish

Perform metal work so that workmanship and finish will be equal to the best practice in modern structural shops and foundries. Form iron to shape and size with sharp lines and angles. Do shearing and punching so that clean true lines and surfaces are produced. Make castings sound and free from warp, cold shuts, and blow holes that may impair their strength or appearance. Give exposed surfaces a smooth finish with sharp well-defined lines and arises. Provide necessary rabbets, lugs, and brackets wherever necessary for fitting and support.

3.2.5.2.2 Field Painting

After installation, clean cast-iron frames, covers, gratings, and steps not buried in concrete to bare metal, remove mortar, rust, grease, dirt, and other deleterious materials and apply a coat of bituminous paint. Do not paint surfaces subject to abrasion.

3.2.6 Installations of Wye Branches

Install wye branches in an existing sewer using a method which does not damage the integrity of the existing sewer. Do not cut into piping for connections except when approved by the Contracting Officer. When the connecting pipe cannot be adequately supported on undisturbed earth or tamped backfill, support on a concrete cradle as directed by the Contracting Officer. Provide and install concrete required because of conditions resulting from faulty construction methods or negligence without any additional cost to the Government. Do not damage the existing sewer when installing wye branches in an existing sewer.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

The Contracting Officer will conduct field inspections and witness field tests specified in this section. Be able to produce evidence, when required, that each item of work has been constructed in accordance with the drawings and specifications.

3.3.1 Tests

Perform field tests and provide labor, equipment, and incidentals required for testing.

3.3.1.1 Hydrostatic Sewer Test

When unusual conflicts are encountered between sanitary sewer and waterlines a hydrostatic pressure sewer test will be performed in accordance with the applicable AWWA standard for the piping material or AWWA C600.

3.3.1.2 Leakage Tests for Nonpressure Lines

Test lines for leakage by either infiltration tests and exfiltration tests, negative air pressure tests or by low-pressure air tests. When necessary to prevent pipeline movement during testing, place additional backfill around pipe sufficient to prevent movement, but leaving joints uncovered to permit inspection. When leakage or pressure drop exceeds the allowable amount specified, make satisfactory correction and retest pipeline section

in the same manner. Correct visible leaks regardless of leakage test results.

3.3.1.2.1 Infiltration Tests and Exfiltration Tests

3.3.1.2.2 Low-Pressure Air Tests

3.3.1.2.2.1 PVC Pipelines

Test PVC pipe in accordance with UBPPA UNI-B-6. The allowable pressure drop is located in UBPPA UNI-B-6. Make calculations in accordance with the Appendix to UBPPA UNI-B-6.

3.3.2 Inspection

Check each straight run of pipeline for gross deficiencies by holding a light in a manhole; the light must show a practically full circle of light through the pipeline when viewed from the adjoining end of line.

3.3.2.1 Pre-Installation Inspection

Prior to connecting the new service, perform pre-installation inspection after trenching and layout is complete. Submit pre-installation inspection request for field support at least 14 days in advance. The Installation's Utilities Field Support personnel will perform the pre-installation inspection.

3.3.2.2 Post-Installation Inspection

Perform a post-installation inspection after connection has been made and before the connection is buried. Submit post-installation inspection request for field support at least 14 days in advance. The Installation's Utilities Field Support personnel will perform the post-connection inspection.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 33 40 00

STORM DRAINAGE UTILITIES
02/10

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A48/A48M	(2003; R 2012) Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings
ASTM A536	(1984; R 2014) Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings
ASTM A929/A929M	(2018) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process for Corrugated Steel Pipe
ASTM B26/B26M	(2014; E 2015) Standard Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Sand Castings
ASTM C139	(2017) Standard Specification for Concrete Masonry Units for Construction of Catch Basins and Manholes
ASTM C1433	(2016b) Standard Specification for Precast Reinforced Concrete Monolithic Box Sections for Culverts, Storm Drains, and Sewers
ASTM C231/C231M	(2017a) Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method
ASTM C270	(2014a) Standard Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry
ASTM C32	(2013; R 2017) Standard Specification for Sewer and Manhole Brick (Made from Clay or Shale)
ASTM C425	(2004; R 2013) Standard Specification for Compression Joints for Vitrified Clay Pipe and Fittings
ASTM C443	(2012; R 2017) Standard Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe and Manholes, Using Rubber Gaskets
ASTM C478	(2018) Standard Specification for Circular

Precast Reinforced Concrete Manhole
Sections

ASTM C55	(2017) Standard Specification for Concrete Building Brick
ASTM C62	(2017) Standard Specification for Building Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale)
ASTM C76	(2018) Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, and Sewer Pipe
ASTM C877	(2008) External Sealing Bands for Concrete Pipe, Manholes, and Precast Box Sections
ASTM C923	(2008; R 2013; E 2016) Standard Specification for Resilient Connectors Between Reinforced Concrete Manhole Structures, Pipes and Laterals
ASTM C990	(2009; R 2014) Standard Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe, Manholes and Precast Box Sections Using Preformed Flexible Joint Sealants
ASTM D1751	(2004; E 2013; R 2013) Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types)
ASTM D1752	(2004a; R 2013) Standard Specification for Preformed Sponge Rubber Cork and Recycled PVC Expansion
ASTM D1784	(2011) Standard Specification for Rigid Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Compounds and Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Compounds
ASTM D2167	(2015) Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Rubber Balloon Method
ASTM D2321	(2018) Standard Practice for Underground Installation of Thermoplastic Pipe for Sewers and Other Gravity-Flow Applications
ASTM D2729	(2017) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings
ASTM D6938	(2017a) Standard Test Method for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth)
ASTM D698	(2012; E 2014; E 2015) Laboratory

Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using
Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/cu. ft.
(600 kN-m/cu. m.))

ASTM F679

(2016) Standard Specification for
Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Large-Diameter
Plastic Gravity Sewer Pipe and Fittings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-04 Samples

Pipe for Culverts and Storm Drains

SD-07 Certificates

Resin Certification

Determination of Density

Frame and Cover for Gratings

Post-Installation Inspection Report

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Placing Pipe

LID Verification Report; G

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.3.1 Delivery and Storage

Materials delivered to site shall be inspected for damage, unloaded, and stored with a minimum of handling. Materials shall not be stored directly on the ground. The inside of pipes and fittings shall be kept free of dirt and debris. Before, during, and after installation, plastic pipe and fittings shall be protected from any environment that would result in damage or deterioration to the material. Keep a copy of the manufacturer's instructions available at the construction site at all times and follow these instructions unless directed otherwise by the Contracting Officer. Solvents, solvent compounds, lubricants, elastomeric gaskets, and any similar materials required to install plastic pipe shall be stored in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and shall be discarded if the storage period exceeds the recommended shelf life. Solvents in use shall be discarded when the recommended pot life is exceeded.

1.3.2 Handling

Materials shall be handled in a manner that ensures delivery to the trench in sound, undamaged condition. Pipe shall be carried to the trench, not

dragged.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPE FOR CULVERTS AND STORM DRAINS

Pipe for culverts and storm drains shall be of the sizes indicated and shall conform to the requirements specified.

2.1.1 Concrete Pipe

Manufactured in accordance with and conforming to [ASTM C76](#), Class III.

2.1.2 Poly Vinyl Chloride (PVC) Pipe

Submit the pipe manufacturer's [resin certification](#), indicating the cell classification of PVC used to manufacture the pipe, prior to installation of the pipe.

2.1.2.1 Smooth Wall PVC Pipe

[ASTM F679](#) produced from PVC certified by the Manufacturer as meeting the requirements of [ASTM D1784](#), minimum cell class 12454-B.

2.2 PERFORATED PIPING

2.2.1 Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pipe

[ASTM D2729](#).

2.3 DRAINAGE STRUCTURES

2.3.1 Flared End Sections

Sections shall be of a standard design fabricated from zinc coated steel sheets meeting requirements of [ASTM A929/A929M](#).

2.3.2 Precast Reinforced Concrete Box

Manufactured in accordance with and conforming to [ASTM C1433](#).

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

2.4.1 Concrete

Unless otherwise specified, concrete and reinforced concrete shall conform to the requirements for [3500 psi](#) concrete under Section [03 30 00](#) MISCELLANEOUS CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE. The concrete mixture shall have air content by volume of concrete, based on measurements made immediately after discharge from the mixer, of 5 to 7 percent when maximum size of coarse aggregate exceeds [1-1/2 inches](#). Air content shall be determined in accordance with [ASTM C231/C231M](#). The concrete covering over steel reinforcing shall not be less than [1 inch](#) thick for covers and not less than [1-1/2 inches](#) thick for walls and flooring. Concrete covering deposited directly against the ground shall have a thickness of at least [3 inches](#) between steel and ground. Expansion-joint filler material shall conform to [ASTM D1751](#), or [ASTM D1752](#), or shall be resin-impregnated fiberboard conforming to the physical requirements of [ASTM D1752](#).

2.4.2 Mortar

Mortar for pipe joints, connections to other drainage structures, and brick or block construction shall conform to [ASTM C270](#), Type M, except that the maximum placement time shall be 1 hour. The quantity of water in the mixture shall be sufficient to produce a stiff workable mortar. Water shall be clean and free of harmful acids, alkalis, and organic impurities. The mortar shall be used within 30 minutes after the ingredients are mixed with water. The inside of the joint shall be wiped clean and finished smooth. The mortar head on the outside shall be protected from air and sun with a proper covering until satisfactorily cured.

2.4.3 Precast Concrete Segmental Blocks

Precast concrete segmental block shall conform to [ASTM C139](#), not more than [8 inches](#) thick, not less than [8 inches](#) long, and of such shape that joints can be sealed effectively and bonded with cement mortar.

2.4.4 Brick

Brick shall conform to [ASTM C62](#), Grade SW; [ASTM C55](#), Grade S-I or S-II; or [ASTM C32](#), Grade MS. Mortar for jointing and plastering shall consist of one part portland cement and two parts fine sand. Lime may be added to the mortar in a quantity not more than 25 percent of the volume of cement. The joints shall be filled completely and shall be smooth and free from surplus mortar on the inside of the structure. Brick structures shall be plastered with [1/2 inch](#) of mortar over the entire outside surface of the walls. For square or rectangular structures, brick shall be laid in stretcher courses with a header course every sixth course. For round structures, brick shall be laid radially with every sixth course a stretcher course.

2.4.5 Precast Reinforced Concrete Manholes

Conform to [ASTM C478](#). Joints between precast concrete risers and tops shall be full-bedded in cement mortar and shall be smoothed to a uniform surface on both interior and exterior of the structure.

2.4.6 Frame and Cover for Gratings

Submit certification on the ability of frame and cover or gratings to carry the imposed live load. Frame and cover for gratings shall be cast gray iron, [ASTM A48/A48M](#), Class 35B; cast ductile iron, [ASTM A536](#), Grade 65-45-12; or cast aluminum, [ASTM B26/B26M](#), Alloy 356.O-T6. Weight, shape, size, and waterway openings for grates and curb inlets shall be as indicated on the plans. The word "Storm Sewer" shall be stamped or cast into covers so that it is plainly visible.

2.4.7 Joints

2.4.7.1 Flexible Watertight Joints

- a. Flexible watertight joints shall be made with plastic or rubber-type gaskets for concrete pipe and with factory-fabricated resilient materials for clay pipe. The design of joints and the physical requirements for preformed flexible joint sealants shall conform to [ASTM C990](#), and rubber-type gaskets shall conform to [ASTM C443](#). Factory-fabricated resilient joint materials shall conform to [ASTM C425](#). Gaskets shall have not more than one factory-fabricated splice, except that two factory-fabricated splices of the rubber-type gasket are

permitted if the nominal diameter of the pipe being gasketed exceeds 54 inches.

- b. Rubber gaskets shall comply with the oil resistant gasket requirements of ASTM C443. Certified copies of test results shall be delivered to the Contracting Officer before gaskets or jointing materials are installed. Alternate types of watertight joint may be furnished, if specifically approved.

2.4.7.2 External Sealing Bands

Requirements for external sealing bands shall conform to ASTM C877.

2.4.7.3 PVC Plastic Pipes

Joints shall be solvent cement or elastomeric gasket type in accordance with the specification for the pipe and as recommended by the pipe manufacturer.

2.5 RESILIENT CONNECTORS

Flexible, watertight connectors used for connecting pipe to manholes and inlets shall conform to ASTM C923.

2.6 EROSION CONTROL RIP RAP

Provide non-erodible rock not exceeding 15 inches in its greatest dimension and choked with sufficient small rocks to provide a dense mass with a minimum thickness of 8 inches.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF PIPE CULVERTS, STORM DRAINS, AND DRAINAGE STRUCTURES

Excavation of trenches, and for appurtenances and backfilling for culverts and storm drains, shall be in accordance with the applicable portions of Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL and the requirements specified below.

3.1.1 Trenching

The width of trenches at any point below the top of the pipe shall be not greater than the outside diameter of the pipe plus 24 inches to permit satisfactory jointing and thorough tamping of the bedding material under and around the pipe. Sheet piling and bracing, where required, shall be placed within the trench width as specified, without any overexcavation. Where trench widths are exceeded, redesign with a resultant increase in cost of stronger pipe or special installation procedures will be necessary. Cost of this redesign and increased cost of pipe or installation shall be borne by the Contractor without additional cost to the Government.

3.1.2 Removal of Unstable Material

Where wet or otherwise unstable soil incapable of properly supporting the pipe, as determined by the Contracting Officer, is unexpectedly encountered in the bottom of a trench, such material shall be removed to the depth required and replaced to the proper grade with select granular material, compacted as provided in paragraph BACKFILLING. When removal of unstable material is due to the fault or neglect of the Contractor while performing

shoring and sheeting, water removal, or other specified requirements, such removal and replacement shall be performed at no additional cost to the Government.

3.2 BEDDING

The bedding surface for the pipe shall provide a firm foundation of uniform density throughout the entire length of the pipe.

3.2.1 Concrete Pipe Requirements

When no bedding class is specified or detailed on the drawings, concrete pipe shall be bedded in NCDOT #57 coarse aggregate minimum 6 inch in depth in trenches with soil foundation. Depth of #57 coarse aggregate bedding in trenches with rock foundation shall be 1/2 inch in depth per foot of depth of fill, minimum depth of bedding shall be 8 inch up to maximum depth of 24 inches. The middle third of the granular bedding shall be loosely placed. Bell holes and depressions for joints shall be removed and formed so entire barrel of pipe is uniformly supported. The bell hole and depressions for the joints shall be not more than the length, depth, and width required for properly making the particular type of joint.

3.2.2 Plastic Pipe

Bedding for PVC, PE, SRPE and PP pipe shall meet the requirements of ASTM D2321. Use Class IB or II material for bedding, haunching, and initial backfill.

3.3 PLACING PIPE

Each pipe shall be thoroughly examined before being laid; defective or damaged pipe shall not be used. Plastic pipe, excluding SRPE pipe shall be protected from exposure to direct sunlight prior to laying, if necessary to maintain adequate pipe stiffness and meet installation deflection requirements. Pipelines shall be laid to the grades and alignment indicated. Proper facilities shall be provided for lowering sections of pipe into trenches. Lifting lugs in vertically elongated pipe shall be placed in the same vertical plane as the major axis of the pipe. Pipe shall not be laid in water, and pipe shall not be laid when trench conditions or weather are unsuitable for such work. Diversion of drainage or dewatering of trenches during construction shall be provided as necessary. Deflection of installed flexible pipe shall not exceed the following limits:

TYPE OF PIPE	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE DEFLECTION (percent)
Plastic (PVC, PE, SRPE, and PP)	5

Note post installation requirements of paragraph DEFLECTION TESTING in PART 3 of this specification for all pipe products including deflection testing requirements for flexible pipe.

3.3.1 Concrete, Clay, PVC, Ribbed PVC, Ductile Iron and Cast-Iron Pipe

Laying shall proceed upgrade with spigot ends of bell-and-spigot pipe and tongue ends of tongue-and-groove pipe pointing in the direction of the flow.

3.4 JOINTING

3.4.1 Concrete and Clay Pipe

3.4.1.1 Cement-Mortar Bell-and-Spigot Joint

The first pipe shall be bedded to the established grade line, with the bell end placed upstream. The interior surface of the bell shall be thoroughly cleaned with a wet brush and the lower portion of the bell filled with mortar as required to bring inner surfaces of abutting pipes flush and even. The spigot end of each subsequent pipe shall be cleaned with a wet brush and uniformly matched into a bell so that sections are closely fitted. After each section is laid, the remainder of the joint shall be filled with mortar, and a bead shall be formed around the outside of the joint with sufficient additional mortar. If mortar is not sufficiently stiff to prevent appreciable slump before setting, the outside of the joint shall be wrapped or bandaged with cheesecloth to hold mortar in place.

3.4.1.2 Cement-Mortar Oakum Joint for Bell-and-Spigot Pipe

A closely twisted gasket shall be made of jute or oakum of the diameter required to support the spigot end of the pipe at the proper grade and to make the joint concentric. Joint packing shall be in one piece of sufficient length to pass around the pipe and lap at top. This gasket shall be thoroughly saturated with neat cement grout. The bell of the pipe shall be thoroughly cleaned with a wet brush, and the gasket shall be laid in the bell for the lower third of the circumference and covered with mortar. The spigot of the pipe shall be thoroughly cleaned with a wet brush, inserted in the bell, and carefully driven home. A small amount of mortar shall be inserted in the annular space for the upper two-thirds of the circumference. The gasket shall be lapped at the top of the pipe and driven home in the annular space with a caulking tool. The remainder of the annular space shall be filled completely with mortar and beveled at an angle of approximately 45 degrees with the outside of the bell. If mortar is not sufficiently stiff to prevent appreciable slump before setting, the outside of the joint thus made shall be wrapped with cheesecloth. Placing of this type of joint shall be kept at least five joints behind laying operations.

3.4.1.3 Cement-Mortar Diaper Joint for Bell-and-Spigot Pipe

The pipe shall be centered so that the annular space is uniform. The annular space shall be caulked with jute or oakum. Before caulking, the inside of the bell and the outside of the spigot shall be cleaned.

- a. Diaper Bands: Diaper bands shall consist of heavy cloth fabric to hold grout in place at joints and shall be cut in lengths that extend one-eighth of the circumference of pipe above the spring line on one side of the pipe and up to the spring line on the other side of the pipe. Longitudinal edges of fabric bands shall be rolled and stitched around two pieces of wire. Width of fabric bands shall be such that after fabric has been securely stitched around both edges on wires, the wires will be uniformly spaced not less than 8 inches apart. Wires shall be cut into lengths to pass around pipe with sufficient extra length for the ends to be twisted at top of pipe to hold the band securely in place; bands shall be accurately centered around lower portion of joint.
- b. Grout: Grout shall be poured between band and pipe from the high side

of band only, until grout rises to the top of band at the spring line of pipe, or as nearly so as possible, on the opposite side of pipe, to ensure a thorough sealing of joint around the portion of pipe covered by the band. Silt, slush, water, or polluted mortar grout forced up on the lower side shall be forced out by pouring, and removed.

- c. Remainder of Joint: The remaining unfilled upper portion of the joint shall be filled with mortar and a bead formed around the outside of this upper portion of the joint with a sufficient amount of additional mortar. The diaper shall be left in place. Placing of this type of joint shall be kept at least five joints behind actual laying of pipe. No backfilling around joints shall be done until joints have been fully inspected and approved.

3.4.1.4 Cement-Mortar Tongue-and-Groove Joint

The first pipe shall be bedded carefully to the established grade line with the groove upstream. A shallow excavation shall be made underneath the pipe at the joint and filled with mortar to provide a bed for the pipe. The grooved end of the first pipe shall be thoroughly cleaned with a wet brush, and a layer of soft mortar applied to the lower half of the groove. The tongue of the second pipe shall be cleaned with a wet brush; while in horizontal position, a layer of soft mortar shall be applied to the upper half of the tongue. The tongue end of the second pipe shall be inserted in the grooved end of the first pipe until mortar is squeezed out on interior and exterior surfaces. Sufficient mortar shall be used to fill the joint completely and to form a bead on the outside.

3.4.1.5 Cement-Mortar Diaper Joint for Tongue-and-Groove Pipe

The joint shall be of the type described for cement-mortar tongue-and-groove joint in this paragraph, except that the shallow excavation directly beneath the joint shall not be filled with mortar until after a gauze or cheesecloth band dipped in cement mortar has been wrapped around the outside of the joint. The cement-mortar bead at the joint shall be at least 1/2 inch, thick and the width of the diaper band shall be at least 8 inches. The diaper shall be left in place. Placing of this type of joint shall be kept at least five joints behind the actual laying of the pipe. Backfilling around the joints shall not be done until the joints have been fully inspected and approved.

3.4.1.6 Plastic Sealing Compound Joints for Tongue-and-Grooved Pipe

Sealing compounds shall follow the recommendation of the particular manufacturer in regard to special installation requirements. Surfaces to receive lubricants, primers, or adhesives shall be dry and clean. Sealing compounds shall be affixed to the pipe not more than 3 hours prior to installation of the pipe, and shall be protected from the sun, blowing dust, and other deleterious agents at all times. Sealing compounds shall be inspected before installation of the pipe, and any loose or improperly affixed sealing compound shall be removed and replaced. The pipe shall be aligned with the previously installed pipe, and the joint pulled together. If, while making the joint with mastic-type sealant, a slight protrusion of the material is not visible along the entire inner and outer circumference of the joint when the joint is pulled up, the pipe shall be removed and the joint remade. After the joint is made, all inner protrusions shall be cut off flush with the inner surface of the pipe. If non-mastic-type sealant material is used, the "Squeeze-Out" requirement above will be waived.

3.4.1.7 Flexible Watertight Joints

Gaskets and jointing materials shall be as recommended by the particular manufacturer in regard to use of lubricants, cements, adhesives, and other special installation requirements. Surfaces to receive lubricants, cements, or adhesives shall be clean and dry. Gaskets and jointing materials shall be affixed to the pipe not more than 24 hours prior to the installation of the pipe, and shall be protected from the sun, blowing dust, and other deleterious agents at all times. Gaskets and jointing materials shall be inspected before installing the pipe; any loose or improperly affixed gaskets and jointing materials shall be removed and replaced. The pipe shall be aligned with the previously installed pipe, and the joint pushed home. If, while the joint is being made the gasket becomes visibly dislocated the pipe shall be removed and the joint remade.

3.4.1.8 External Sealing Band Joint for Noncircular Pipe

Surfaces to receive sealing bands shall be dry and clean. Bands shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

3.5 DRAINAGE STRUCTURES

3.5.1 Manholes and Inlets

Construction shall be of reinforced concrete, plain concrete, brick, precast reinforced concrete, precast concrete segmental blocks, prefabricated corrugated metal, or bituminous coated corrugated metal; complete with frames and covers or gratings; and with fixed galvanized steel ladders where indicated. Pipe studs and junction chambers of prefabricated corrugated metal manholes shall be fully bituminous-coated and paved when the connecting branch lines are so treated. Pipe connections to concrete manholes and inlets shall be made with flexible, watertight connectors.

3.5.2 Walls and Headwalls

Construction shall be as indicated.

3.6 BACKFILLING

3.6.1 Backfilling Pipe in Trenches

After the pipe has been properly bedded, selected material from excavation or borrow, at a moisture content that will facilitate compaction, shall be placed along both sides of pipe in layers not exceeding 6 inches in compacted depth. The backfill shall be brought up evenly on both sides of pipe for the full length of pipe. The fill shall be thoroughly compacted under the haunches of the pipe. Each layer shall be thoroughly compacted with mechanical tampers or rammers. This method of filling and compacting shall continue until the fill has reached an elevation equal to the midpoint (spring line) of concrete pipe or has reached an elevation of at least 12 inches above the top of the pipe for flexible pipe. The remainder of the trench shall be backfilled and compacted by spreading and rolling or compacted by mechanical rammers or tampers in layers not exceeding 8 inches. Tests for density shall be made as necessary to ensure conformance to the compaction requirements specified below. Where it is necessary, in the opinion of the Contracting Officer, that sheeting or portions of bracing used be left in place, the contract will be adjusted accordingly. Untreated sheeting shall not be left in place beneath structures or

pavements.

3.6.2 Backfilling Pipe in Fill Sections

For pipe placed in fill sections, backfill material and the placement and compaction procedures shall be as specified below. The fill material shall be uniformly spread in layers longitudinally on both sides of the pipe, not exceeding 6 inches in compacted depth, and shall be compacted by rolling parallel with pipe or by mechanical tamping or ramming. Prior to commencing normal filling operations, the crown width of the fill at a height of 12 inches above the top of the pipe shall extend a distance of not less than twice the outside pipe diameter on each side of the pipe or 12 feet, whichever is less. After the backfill has reached at least 12 inches above the top of the pipe, the remainder of the fill shall be placed and thoroughly compacted in layers not exceeding 8 inches. Use select granular material for this entire region of backfill for flexible pipe installations.

3.6.3 Movement of Construction Machinery

When compacting by rolling or operating heavy equipment parallel with the pipe, displacement of or injury to the pipe shall be avoided. Movement of construction machinery over a culvert or storm drain at any stage of construction shall be at the Contractor's risk. Any damaged pipe shall be repaired or replaced.

3.6.4 Compaction

3.6.4.1 General Requirements

Cohesionless materials include gravels, gravel-sand mixtures, sands, and gravelly sands. Cohesive materials include clayey and silty gravels, gravel-silt mixtures, clayey and silty sands, sand-clay mixtures, clays, silts, and very fine sands. When results of compaction tests for moisture-density relations are recorded on graphs, cohesionless soils will show straight lines or reverse-shaped moisture-density curves, and cohesive soils will show normal moisture-density curves.

3.6.4.2 Minimum Density

Backfill over and around the pipe and backfill around and adjacent to drainage structures shall be compacted at the approved moisture content to the following applicable minimum density, which will be determined as specified below.

- a. Under airfield and heliport pavements, paved roads, streets, parking areas, and similar-use pavements including adjacent shoulder areas, the density shall be not less than 90 percent of maximum density for cohesive material and 95 percent of maximum density for cohesionless material, up to the elevation where requirements for pavement subgrade materials and compaction shall control.
- b. Under unpaved or turfed traffic areas, density shall not be less than 90 percent of maximum density for cohesive material and 95 percent of maximum density for cohesionless material.
- c. Under nontraffic areas, density shall be not less than that of the surrounding material.

3.7 FIELD PAINTING

3.7.1 Cast-Iron Covers, Frames, Gratings, And Steps

After installation, clean cast-iron, not buried in masonry or concrete, of mortar, rust, grease, dirt, and other deleterious materials to bare metal and apply a coat of bituminous paint.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.8.1 Tests

Testing is the responsibility of the Contractor. Perform all testing and retesting at no additional cost to the Government.

3.8.1.1 Determination of Density

Testing shall be performed by an approved commercial testing laboratory or by the Contractor subject to approval. Tests shall be performed in sufficient number to ensure that specified density is being obtained. Laboratory tests for moisture-density relations shall be made in accordance with [ASTM D698](#) except that mechanical tampers may be used provided the results are correlated with those obtained with the specified hand tamper. Field density tests shall be determined in accordance with [ASTM D2167](#) or [ASTM D6938](#). When [ASTM D6938](#) is used, the calibration curves shall be checked and adjusted, if necessary, using the sand cone method as described in paragraph Calibration of the referenced publications. [ASTM D6938](#) results in a wet unit weight of soil and [ASTM D6938](#) shall be used to determine the moisture content of the soil. The calibration curves furnished with the moisture gauges shall be checked along with density calibration checks as described in [ASTM D6938](#). Test results shall be furnished the Contracting Officer. The calibration checks of both the density and moisture gauges shall be made at the beginning of a job on each different type of material encountered and at intervals as directed.

3.8.2 Inspection

3.8.2.1 Post-Installation Inspection

Visually inspect each segment of concrete pipe for alignment, settlement, joint separations, soil migration through the joint, cracks, buckling, bulging and deflection. An engineer must evaluate all defects to determine if any remediation or repair is required.

3.8.2.1.1 Concrete

Cracks with a width greater than [0.01 inches](#). An engineer must evaluate all pipes with cracks with a width greater than [0.01 inches](#) but less than [0.10 inches](#) to determine if any remediation or repair is required.

3.8.2.1.2 Flexible Pipe

Check each flexible pipe (PE, PVC, PP, Corrugated Steel And Aluminum) for rips, tears, joint separations, soil migration through the joint, cracks, localized bucking, bulges, settlement and alignment.

3.8.2.1.3 Post-Installation Inspection Report

The deflection results and final post installation inspection report must

include: pipe location identification, equipment used for inspection, inspector name, deviation from design, grade, deviation from line, deflection and deformation of flexible pipe, inspector notes, condition of joints, condition of pipe wall (e.g. distress, cracking, wall damage dents, bulges, creases, tears, holes, etc.).

3.8.2.2 Low Impact Development Inspection

Inspect Low Impact Development (LID) features indicated on the design portion of the LID Verification Report. Certify LID features were constructed according to plans and specifications or by submitting as-built drawings in accordance with UFGS 01 78 00 Closeout Submittals. When as-built drawings show deviations to the LID features, document the deviations on the LID Verification Report.

3.8.3 Repair Of Defects

3.8.3.1 Leakage Test

When leakage exceeds the maximum amount specified, correct source of excess leakage by replacing damaged pipe and gaskets and retest.

3.8.3.2 Deflection Testing

When deflection readings are in excess of the allowable deflection of average inside diameter of pipe are obtained, remove pipe which has excessive deflection and replace with new pipe. Retest 30 days after completing backfill, leakage testing and compaction testing.

3.8.3.3 Inspection

Replace pipe or repair defects indicated in the Post-Installation Inspection Report.

3.8.3.3.1 Concrete

Replace pipes having cracks with a width greater than 0.1 inches.

3.8.3.3.2 Flexible Pipe

Replace pipes having cracks or splits.

3.9 PROTECTION

Protect storm drainage piping and adjacent areas from superimposed and external loads during construction.

3.10 WARRANTY PERIOD

Pipe segments found to have defects during the warranty period must be replaced with new pipe and retested.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

DESIGN

eProjects WON: _____

Designer of Record: Indicate the LID features listed below that require Contractor post construction analysis.

LID Features: select all that apply

Shown on Sheet:

☐ Bioretention	_____
☐ Cisterns	_____
☐ Dry Wells	_____
☒ Grass Buffers	CG103
☒ Grass Swales	CG101, CG102, CG103
☐ Tree Preservation	_____
☐ Infiltration Trenches	_____
☐ Permeable Pavers	_____
☐ Porous Concrete	_____
☐ Rain Barrels	_____
☐ Rain Gardens	_____
☐ Re-vegetation	_____
☒ Roof Leader Disconnection	CG102 and CG103
☐ Tree Box Filters	_____
☐ Tree Preservation	_____
☒ Other Sand Filter	CG103
☐ Other _____	_____
☐ Other _____	_____

CONSTRUCTION

☐ I certify that the LID features indicated above were constructed in accordance with the plans and specifications and that there have been no deviations.

☐ I certify that as-built drawings have been submitted in accordance with UFGS 01 78 00 Closeout Submittals for the following deviations.

(Explain deviations here):

Contractor (Print Name): _____

Contractor (Signature): _____

Date: _____

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 33 46 13

FOUNDATION DRAINAGE SYSTEM
04/08

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS
(AASHTO)

AASHTO M 252 (2009; R 2017) Standard Specification for
Corrugated Polyethylene Drainage Pipe

AASHTO M 294 (2017) Standard Specification for
Corrugated Polyethylene Pipe, 300- to
1500-mm (12- to 60-in.) Diameter

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C33/C33M (2018) Standard Specification for Concrete
Aggregates

ASTM D2751 (2005) Standard Specification for
Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS)
Sewer Pipe and Fittings

ASTM D3034 (2016) Standard Specification for Type PSM
Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and
Fittings

ASTM D3212 (2007; R 2013) Standard Specification for
Joints for Drain and Sewer Plastic Pipes
Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals

ASTM F667/F667M (2016) Standard Specification for 3
through 24 in. Corrugated Polyethylene
Pipe and Fittings

ASTM F758 (2014) Smooth-Wall Poly(Vinyl Chloride)
(PVC) Plastic Underdrain Systems for
Highway, Airport, and Similar Drainage

ASTM F949 (2015) Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC)
Corrugated Sewer Pipe with a Smooth
Interior and Fittings

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

1.2.1 Extent

Furnish and install foundation drainage as a complete system as shown.

1.2.2 Outlet Connections

Foundation pipe shall be connected to the storm drainage system as shown and specified in Section 33 40 00 STORM DRAINAGE.

1.2.3 Drainage Lines

Construct drainage lines of drain tile, perforated pipe, or porous pipe.

1.2.4 Outlet Lines

Construct outlet lines of closed-joint nonperforated, nonporous pipe.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-04 Samples

Materials

SD-07 Certificates

Materials

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Protect materials placed in storage from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, or other contaminants. Do not expose plastic pipe to direct sunlight for more than 6 months from time of manufacturer to installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

Pipe for foundation drainage system shall be of the type and size indicated. Use appropriate transitions, adapters, or joint details where pipes of different types or materials are connected. Submit two randomly selected samples of each type of pipe and fitting, prior to delivery of materials to the site, and certifications from the manufacturers attesting that materials meet specification requirements.

2.1.1 Plastic Pipe

Plastic pipe shall contain ultraviolet inhibitor to provide protection from exposure to direct sunlight.

2.1.1.1 Corrugated Polyethylene (PE) Drainage Pipe

Furnish ASTM F667/F667M heavy duty for pipe 3 to 6 inches in diameter inclusive, ASTM F667/F667M for pipe 8 to 24 inches in diameter; or AASHTO M 252 for pipe 3 to 10 inches in diameter or AASHTO M 294 for pipe

12 to 24 inches in diameter. Fittings shall be pipe manufacturer's standard type and shall conform to the indicated specification.

2.1.1.2 Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Pipe

ASTM D2751, with a maximum SDR of 35.

2.1.1.3 Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pipe

ASTM F758, Type PS 46, ASTM D3034, or ASTM F949 with a minimum pipe stiffness of 46 psi.

2.1.1.4 Slotted Perforations in Plastic Pipe

Circumferential slots shall be cleanly cut so as not to restrict the inflow of water and uniformly spaced along the length and circumference of the tubing. Width of slots shall not exceed 1/8 inch or be less than 1/32 inch. The length of individual slots shall not exceed 1-1/4 inches on 3 inch diameter tubing; 10 percent of the tubing inside nominal circumference on 4 to 8 inch diameter tubing; and 2-1/2 inches on 10 inch diameter tubing. Rows of slots shall be symmetrically spaced so that they are fully contained in quadrants of the pipe. Slots shall be centered in the valleys of the corrugations of profile wall pipe. The water inlet area shall be a minimum of 0.5 square inch/linear foot of tubing. Manufacturer's standard perforated pipe which essentially meets these requirements may be used with prior approval of the Contracting Officer.

2.1.2 Fittings

Fittings shall be of compatible materials for pipe, of corresponding weight and quality, and as specified herein.

2.1.3 Cleanouts and Piping Through Walls

Cleanout pipe and fittings and piping through walls and footings shall be cast-iron soil pipe. Each cleanout shall have a brass ferrule and a cast-brass screw-jointed plug with socket or raised head for wrench.

2.1.4 Cover and Wrapping Materials for Open Joints in Drain Tile

Cover material may be tar paper, roofing paper, reinforced building paper, glass fiber fabric, or other similar type material. Wrapping material shall be 18-14 mesh, 0.01 inch diameter nonferrous wire cloth.

2.1.5 Bedding and Pervious Backfill for Foundation Drains

Bedding and pervious backfill shall be coarse aggregate conforming to ASTM C33/C33M, size number 57.

2.1.6 Protective Covering for Pervious Backfill

Protective covering shall be filter fabric conforming to Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

3.1.1 Trenching and Excavation

Perform required trenching and excavation in accordance with Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL. Keep trenches dry during installation of drainage system. Changes in direction of drain lines shall be made with 1/8 bends. Use wye fittings at intersections.

3.1.2 Bedding

Place graded bedding, minimum 6 inches in depth, in the bottom of trench for its full width and length compacted as specified prior to laying of foundation drain pipe. Each section shall rest firmly upon the bedding, through the entire length, with recesses formed for bell joints. Except for recesses for bell joints, the bedding shall fully support the lower quadrant of the pipe.

3.1.3 Pipe Laying

Lay drain lines to true grades and alignment with a continuous fall in the direction of flow. Bells of pipe sections shall face upgrade. Clean interior of pipe thoroughly before being laid. When drain lines are left open for connection to discharge lines, the open ends shall be temporarily closed and the location marked with wooden stakes. Perforated pipe shall be laid with perforations facing down. Any length that has had its grade or joints disturbed shall be removed and relaid at no additional cost to the Government. Perforated corrugated polyethylene drainage tubing and plastic piping shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's specifications and as specified herein. Tubing and piping with physical imperfections shall not be installed.

3.1.4 Jointing

3.1.4.1 Perforated and Porous Pipes

Perforated and porous types of drain pipes shall be laid with closed joints.

3.1.4.2 ABS Pipe

ABS pipe shall be joined using solvent cement or elastomeric joints and shall be in accordance with ASTM D2751, with dimensions and tolerances in accordance with TABLE II therein.

3.1.4.3 PVC Pipe

PVC pipe joints shall be in accordance with ASTM D3034, ASTM D3212, or ASTM F949.

3.1.4.4 Corrugated Polyethylene

Corrugated polyethylene (PE) pipe joints shall be in accordance with ASTM F667/F667M or ASTM F667/F667M.

3.1.5 Outlet Lines

The outlet end of drain lines connecting with an open gutter or outfall

shall be covered with a removable wire basket of 16-mesh copper or bronze wire cloth fastened with brass or wire straps finished as shown.

3.1.6 Cleanouts

Provide cleanouts in locations indicated. Cleanouts in unpaved areas shall be set in 12 by 12 by 4 inch concrete blocks.

3.2 BACKFILLING

After joints and connections have been inspected and approved, place the specified pervious backfill material for the full width of the trench and full width between pipe and adjacent walls and as shown above the top of the pipe. Place the backfill preventing displacement of or injury to the pipe or tile. Place a protective covering, as specified, over the pervious backfill for the full width of the trench before regular backfill is placed. Compact backfill as specified in Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL.

-- End of Section --

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 33 51 15

NATURAL-GAS / LIQUID PETROLEUM GAS DISTRIBUTION
02/16

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

The gas distribution system includes natural gas piping and appurtenances from point of connection with existing system, to a point approximately 5 feet from the facility.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN GAS ASSOCIATION (AGA)

AGA XR0603 (2006; 8th Ed) AGA Plastic Pipe Manual for Gas Service

AMERICAN PETROLEUM INSTITUTE (API)

API Spec 6D (June 2018, 4th Ed; Errata 1 July 2018; Errata 2 August 2018) Specification for Pipeline and Piping Valves

API Std 1104 (2013; Errata 1-3 2014; Addendum 1 2014; Errata 4 2015; Addendum 2 2016) Welding of Pipeline and Related Facilities

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF CIVIL ENGINEERS (ASCE)

ASCE 25-16 (2016) Earthquake-Activated Automatic Gas Shutoff Devices

AMERICAN WATER WORKS ASSOCIATION (AWWA)

AWWA C203 (2008) Coal-Tar Protective Coatings and Linings for Steel Water Pipelines - Enamel and Tape - Hot-Applied

AWWA C213 (2015) Fusion-Bonded Epoxy Coating for the Interior and Exterior of Steel Water Pipelines

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME B16.34 (2017) Valves - Flanged, Threaded and Welding End

ASME B16.39 (2014) Standard for Malleable Iron Threaded Pipe Unions; Classes 150, 250, and 300

ASME B16.40 (2013) Manually Operated Thermoplastic Gas Shutoffs and Valves in Gas Distribution Systems

ASME B31.8 (2014; Supplement 2014) Gas Transmission and Distribution Piping Systems

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D2513 (2014; E 2014) Thermoplastic Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings

ASTM D2683 (2014) Standard Specification for Socket-Type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter-Controlled Polyethylene Pipe and Tubing

ASTM D2774 (2012) Underground Installation of Thermoplastic Pressure Piping

ASTM D3261 (2016) Standard Specification for Butt Heat Fusion Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Fittings for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe and Tubing

ASTM F1802 (2015) Standard Test Method for Performance Testing of Excess Flow Valves

ASTM F2138 (2012; R 2017) Standard Specification for Excess Flow Valves for Natural Gas Service

ASTM F2786 (2010) Standard Practice for Field Leak Testing of Polyethylene (PE) Pressure Piping Systems Using Gaseous Media Under Pressure (Pneumatic Leak Testing)

CSA GROUP (CSA)

CSA/AM ANSI Z21.93/CSA 6.30 (2013) Excess Flow Valves for Natural and LP Gas with Pressures up To 5 psig

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-110 (2010) Ball Valves Threaded, Socket-Welding, Solder Joint, Grooved and Flared Ends

MSS SP-25 (2013) Standard Marking System for Valves, Fittings, Flanges and Unions

MSS SP-78 (2011) Cast Iron Plug Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 54 (2018) National Fuel Gas Code

NFPA 58

(2017; ERTA 17-1) Liquefied Petroleum Gas
Code

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

49 CFR 192

Transportation of Natural and Other Gas by
Pipeline: Minimum Federal Safety Standards

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Pipe, Fittings, and Associated Materials

SD-03 Product Data

Materials and Equipment; G

Spare Parts; G

Pipe and Accessory Coatings; G

SD-05 Design Data

Connections to Existing Lines; G

Connection and Abandonment Plan; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Pressure and Leak Tests

SD-07 Certificates

Welder's training, qualifications and procedures

Jointing of Polyethylene Piping

Utility Work

EFV Design and Installation Guide

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Gas Distribution System and Equipment Operation; G

Gas Distribution System Maintenance; G

Gas Distribution Equipment Maintenance; G

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4.1 Qualifications

1.4.1.1 Welding General

- a. Submit a certificate of [Welder's training, qualifications and procedures](#), in conformance with [API Std 1104](#), for metal along with a list of names and identification symbols of performance qualified welders and welding operators.
- b. Weld structural members in accordance with Section [05 50 13 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FABRICATIONS](#).

1.4.1.2 Jointing of Polyethylene Piping

- a. Join piping by performance qualified PE joiners, qualified by a person who has been trained and certified by the manufacturer of the pipe, using manufacturer's pre-qualified joining procedures in accordance with [AGA XR0603](#). Inspect joints by an inspector qualified in the joining procedures being used and in accordance with [AGA XR0603](#). Welders training, qualifications and procedures, (metal and PE) includes use of equipment, explanation of the procedure, and successfully making joints which pass tests specified in [AGA XR0603](#).
- b. Submit a certificate of qualified jointing procedures, training procedures, qualifications of trainer, and training test results for joiners and inspectors. Notify the Contracting Officer at least 24 hours in advance of the date to qualify joiners and inspectors.

1.4.2 Pre-Installation Conference

1.4.2.1 Shop Drawings

Submit shop drawings, within 30 days of contract award, containing complete schematic and piping diagrams and any other details required to demonstrate that the system has been coordinated and functions properly as a unit. Show on the drawings proposed layout and anchorage of the system and appurtenances, and equipment relationship to other parts of the work including clearances for maintenance and operation.

1.4.2.2 Connecting and Abandonment Plan

Submit written notification of the method and schedule for making connections to existing gas lines, to the Contracting Officer at least 10 days in advance. Include gas line tie in, hot taps, abandonment/removal or demolition, purging, and plugging as applicable in conformance with [ASME B31.8](#) Include in submittal [connections to existing lines](#).

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.5.1 Delivery and Storage

Inspect materials delivered to the site for damage, and store with a minimum of handling. Store materials on site in enclosures or under protective coverings. Store plastic piping under cover out of direct sunlight. Do not store materials directly on the ground. Keep inside of pipes and fittings free of dirt and debris.

1.5.2 Handling

Handle pipe and components carefully to ensure a sound, undamaged condition. Take particular care not to damage pipe coating. Repair damaged coatings to original finish. Do not place pipe or material of any kind inside another pipe or fitting after the coating has been applied, except as specified in paragraph INSTALLATION. Handle steel piping with coal-tar enamel coating in accordance with [AWWA C203](#), and fusion-bonded epoxy coatings per [AWWA C213](#). Handle plastic pipe in conformance with [AGA XR0603](#).

1.5.3 Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST)

Handle, transport and store CSST tubing on the wooden spool or shipping container provided by the manufacturer. Ensure tubing ends are capped during transportation and storage to minimize dirt and moisture entry. Discard any tubing segment and fitting that has been damaged.

1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS

Submit [spare parts](#) data for each different item of equipment and material specified, after approval of the detail shop drawings and not later than [two](#) months prior to the date of beneficial occupancy. Include in the data a complete list of parts and supplies, with current unit prices and source of supply.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPE, FITTINGS, AND ASSOCIATED MATERIALS

Provide only materials that are allowed by [49 CFR 192](#) for the specified installation.

Provide [materials and equipment](#) which are the standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of the products and that essentially duplicate items that have been in satisfactory use for at least 2 years prior to bid opening. Asbestos or products containing asbestos are not allowed. Provide written verification and point of contact for a supporting service organization that is, in the opinion of the Contracting Officer, reasonably convenient to the site. Mark all valves, flanges, and fittings in accordance with [MSS SP-25](#). Submit a complete list of materials and equipment, including manufacturer's descriptive and technical literature, performance charts and curves, catalog cuts, and installation instructions, including, but not limited to the following:

- a. Dielectric Waterways and Flange Kits.
- b. Emergency Gas Supply Connection.
- c. Fittings
- d. Piping
- e. [Pipe and Accessory coatings](#)
- f. Pressure Reducing Valves.
- g. Meters
- h. Regulators.
- i. Shut-off Valves
- j. Earthquake Actuated Automatic Gas Shut-off System conforming to [ASCE 25-16](#).
- k. Excess flow valve

2.1.1 Polyethylene Pipe, Tubing, Fittings and Joints

Design Pressure at 73 degrees F		
SDR	S = 1,250 psi	S = 1,600 psi
11	80 psig	100 psig
13.5	60 psig	80 psig
17	50 psig	60 psig
21	40 psig	50 psig
26	30 psig	40 psig

Provide polyethylene pipe, tubing, fittings and joints conforming to [ASTM D2513](#), pipe designations PE 2406 and PE 3408 or less, as specified in [ASME B31.8](#). Mark pipe sections as required by [ASTM D2513](#). Provide butt fittings conforming to [ASTM D3261](#) and socket fittings conforming to [ASTM D2683](#). Match fittings to the service rating of the pipe. Use polyethylene pipe, tubing, and fittings as recommended by the manufacturer for use with LPG. Perform underground installations in conformance with [ASTM D2774](#).

2.1.2 Identification

Provide pipe flow markings and metal tags for each valve, meter, and regulator as required by the Contracting Officer.

2.1.3 Insulating Joint Materials

Provide insulating joint materials between flanged or threaded metallic pipe systems to isolate galvanic or electrolytic action. Use insulating fittings to connect dissimilar metals and to connect unprotected piping to a gas main or service line that is cathodically protected.

2.1.3.1 Threaded Joints

For threaded pipe joints, provide steel body nut type unions complying with [ASME B16.39](#). Provide dielectric waterways with insulating gaskets.

2.1.3.2 Flanged Joints

For flanged pipe joints, provide full face sandwich-type flange insulating gasket of the dielectric type, insulating sleeves for flange bolts and insulating washers for flange nuts.

2.1.3.3 Dielectric Waterways and Flanges

Provide dielectric waterways with temperature and pressure rating equal to or greater than that specified for the connecting piping, with metal connections on both ends suited to match connecting piping. Provide internally lined dielectric waterways, lined with an insulator specifically designed to prevent current flow between dissimilar metals, meeting the performance requirements described herein for dielectric waterways.

2.1.4 Gas Transition Fittings

Provide manufactured steel gas transition fittings approved for jointing steel and polyethylene pipe, conforming to [AGA XR0603](#) requirements for transition fittings.

2.2 VALVES

Provide valves suitable for shutoff or isolation service and conforming to [MSS SP-110](#), [MSS SP-78](#) and the following:

2.2.1 Steel Valves

Provide steel valves [1-1/2 inches](#) and smaller installed underground conforming to [ASME B16.34](#), carbon steel, socket weld ends, with square wrench operator adaptor. Provide steel valves [1-1/2 inches](#) and smaller installed aboveground conforming to [ASME B16.34](#), carbon steel, socket weld or threaded ends with handwheel or wrench operator. Provide steel valves [2 inches](#) and larger installed underground conforming to [API Spec 6D](#), carbon steel, butt weld ends, with square wrench operator adaptor. Provide steel valves [2 inches](#) and larger installed aboveground conforming to [API Spec 6D](#), carbon steel, butt weld or flanged ends, with handwheel or wrench operator.

2.2.2 Polyethylene Valves

Provide polyethylene valves conforming to [ASME B16.40](#). Polyethylene valves, in sizes [1/2 inch to 6 inches](#), may be used with polyethylene distribution and service lines, in lieu of steel valves, for underground installation only.

2.2.3 Excess Flow Valve (EFV)

Provide either a bypass (automatic reset) or a non-bypass (manual reset) type EFV that conforms to [ASTM F1802](#), [ASTM F2138](#), and [CSA/AM ANSI Z21.93/CSA 6.30](#). Provide EFV that is UL listed, CSA listed or International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials (IAPMO) listed. Submit an [EFV Design and Installation Guide](#) which includes the manufacturer's product design data and installation instructions.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing the work.

3.2 EXCAVATION AND BACKFILLING

Earthwork is as specified in Section [31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL](#).

3.3 GAS MAINS

Provide polyethylene pipe for gas mains. Do not install polyethylene mains aboveground.

3.4 WORKMANSHIP AND DEFECTS

Ensure pipe, tubing, and fittings are clear and free of cutting burrs and

defects in structure or threading, and thoroughly brushed and blown free of chips and scale. Do not repair, but replace defective pipe, tubing, or fittings.

3.5 INSTALLATION

Install gas distribution system and equipment in conformance with the manufacturer's recommendations and applicable sections of [ASME B31.8](#), [AGA XR0603](#) and [49 CFR 192](#). Perform abandonment of existing gas piping in accordance with [ASME B31.8](#). Cut the pipe without damaging the pipe; unless otherwise authorized, use an approved type of mechanical cutter. Use wheel cutters where practicable. On steel pipe 6 inches and larger, an approved gas-cutting-and-beveling machine may be used. Cut plastic pipe in accordance with [AGA XR0603](#). Design valve installation in plastic pipe to protect the plastic pipe against excessive torsional or shearing loads when the valve is operated and from other stresses which may be exerted through the valve or valve box. [Install polyethylene mains and service lines for LPG only below ground in accordance with NFPA 58](#). Install gas piping, appliances, and equipment in accordance with [NFPA 54](#).

3.5.1 Installing Pipe Underground

Grade gas mains and service lines as indicated. Weld joints in steel pipe except as otherwise permitted for installation of valves. Provide mains with 24 inch minimum cover; service lines with 18 inch minimum cover; and place both mains and service lines on firmly compacted select material for the full length. Where indicated, encase, bridge, or design the main to withstand any anticipated external loads as specified in [ASME B31.8](#). Provide standard weight black steel pipe encasement material with a protective coating as specified. Separate the pipe from the casing by insulating spacers and seal the ends with casing bushings. Excavate the trench below pipe grade, bed with bank sand, and compact to provide full-length bearing. Laying pipe on blocks to produce uniform grade is not permitted. Ensure that the pipe is clean inside before it is lowered into the trench and keep free of water, soil, and all other foreign matter that might damage or obstruct the operation of the valves, regulators, meters, or other equipment. When work is not in progress, securely close open ends of pipe or fittings with expandable plugs or other suitable means. Minor changes in line or gradient of pipe that can be accomplished through the natural flexibility of the pipe material without producing permanent deformation and without overstressing joints may be made when approved. Make changes in line or gradient that exceed the limitations specified with fittings. When cathodic protection is furnished, provide electrically insulated joints or flanges. When polyethylene piping is installed underground, place foil backed magnetic tape above the pipe in accordance with [NFPA 54](#) to permit locating with a magnetic detector. After laying of pipe and testing, backfill the trench in accordance with Section [31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL](#).

3.6 PIPE JOINTS

Design and install pipe joints to effectively sustain the longitudinal pullout forces caused by the contraction of piping or superimposed loads.

3.6.1 Polyethylene Pipe Jointing Procedures

Use jointing procedures conforming to [AGA XR0603](#) and [49 CFR 192](#) that have been qualified by test in accordance with 49 CFR 192.283 and proven to make satisfactory joints. Personnel make joints in plastic pipe must be

qualified in accordance with 49 CFR 192.285, under the submitted and approved procedure by making a satisfactory specimen joint that passes the required inspection and test. Joints in plastic pipe must be inspected by a person qualified by 49 CFR 192.287 under the applicable procedure. Certificates that qualify the applicable procedures, joining personnel, and inspectors must be submitted and approved and must be on file with the Contracting Officer prior to making these joints. Avoid making indiscriminate heat fusion joining of plastic pipe or fittings made from different polyethylene resins by classification or by manufacturer if other alternative joining procedures are available. If heat fusion joining of dissimilar polyethylene is required, special procedures are required. Test the method of heat fusion joining dissimilar polyethylene resins in accordance with paragraph TESTS, subparagraph Destructive Tests of Plastic Pipe Joints.

3.6.2 Connections Between Metallic and Plastic Piping

Only make metallic to plastic connections outside, underground, and with approved transition fittings.

3.7 VALVE BOXES

Provide valve boxes of cast iron not less than 3/16 inch thick at each underground valve except where concrete or other type of housing is indicated. Provide valve boxes with locking covers that require a special wrench for removal, and furnish the correctly marked wrench for each box. Cast the word "gas" in the box cover. When the valve is located in a roadway, protect the valve box by a suitable concrete slab at least 3 square feet. When in a sidewalk, provide the top of the box as a removable concrete slab 2 feet square and set flush with the sidewalk. Make the boxes adjustable extension type with screw or slide-type adjustments. Separately support valve boxes to not rest on the pipe, so that no traffic loads can be transmitted to the pipe. Only locate valves valve boxes or inside of buildings.

3.8 CONNECTIONS TO EXISTING LINES

Make connections between new work and existing gas lines, where required, in accordance with ASME B31.8, using proper fittings to suit the actual conditions. When connections are made by tapping into a gas main, provide the same size connecting fittings as the pipe being connected.

3.8.1 Connections to Publicly or Privately Operated Gas Utility Lines

Provide materials for the connections to the existing gas lines. The Utility is to make final connections and turn on the gas. The Utility is to also disconnect, purge and cap, plug or otherwise effectively seal existing lines that are to be abandoned or taken out of service. Notify the Contracting Officer, in writing, 10 days before final connections and turning on of gas lines. Make necessary arrangements with the Utility for tie in and activation of new gas lines. Only the Operating Agency/Utility Company may reactivate the system after tie in. Furnish a certification by the Operating Agency/Utility Company that all Utility work has been satisfactorily completed.

3.8.2 Connection to Government Owned/Operated Gas Lines

Provide connections to the existing gas lines in accordance with approved procedures. Only perform deactivation of any portion of the existing

system at the valve location indicated. Reactivation of any existing gas lines will only be done by the Operating Agency. Submit the approved [Connection and Abandonment Plan](#) prior to making any connections to existing gas lines, manure the Operating Agency's required procedures which may be obtained from [the Contracting Officer](#). Notify the Contracting Officer, in writing, 10 days before connections to existing lines are to be made.

- a. Physically disconnect from the pipeline system if facilities are abandoned in place. Purge, cap, plug or otherwise effectively seal the open ends of all abandoned facilities. Do not complete abandonment until it has been determined that the volume of gas or liquid hydrocarbons contained within the abandoned section poses no potential hazard. Use air or inert gas for purging, or fill the facility with water or other inert material. If air is used for purging, ensure that a combustible mixture is not present after purging.
- b. When a main is abandoned, together with the service lines connected to it, seal only the customer's end of such service lines as stipulated above.
- c. Disconnect abandoned service lines from the active mains as close to the main as practicable.
- d. Close all valves left in the abandoned segment.
- e. Remove all above grade valves, risers, and vault and valve box covers. Fill vault and valve box voids with suitable compacted backfill material.

3.9 TESTS

3.9.1 Destructive Tests of Plastic Pipe Joints

Prior to making polyethylene heat fusion joints, make a joint of each size and type to be installed that day by each person performing joining of plastic pipe that day and destructively test. Cut at least 3 longitudinal straps from each joint. Visually examine each strap for voids or discontinuities on the cut surfaces of the joint area, deformations by bending, torque, or impact. Failures are not permitted in the joint area. If a joint fails the visual or deformation test, the qualified joiner who made that joint is not allowed to make further field joints in plastic pipe on this job until that joiner has been retrained and re-qualified. Record the results of the destructive tests including the date and time of the tests, size and type of the joints, ambient conditions, fusion iron temperature and names of inspectors and joiners.

3.9.2 [Pressure and Leak Tests](#)

Test the system of gas mains and service lines after construction and before being placed in service, using air as the test medium. Follow all testing recommendations and safety precautions as recommended by the piping manufacturer's specifications, [NFPA 54](#), [NFPA 58](#) and [49 CFR 192](#). Submit data in booklet form from all pressure tests of the distribution system. Perform testing for polyethylene (PE) piping in accordance with [ASTM F2786](#).

- a. Prior to testing the system, blow-out, clean, and clear the interior of all foreign materials. Remove all meters, regulators, and controls before blowing out and cleaning, and reinstall after clearing of all foreign materials.

- b. Perform testing of gas mains and service lines with due regard for the safety of employees and the public during the test. Keep persons not working on the test operations out of the testing area while testing is proceeding. Perform the test on the system as a whole or on sections that can be isolated.
- c. Test joints in sections prior to backfilling when trenches are to be backfilled before the completion of other pipeline sections. Continue the test for at least 24 hours from the time of the initial readings to the final readings of pressure and temperature. Do not take the initial test readings of the instrument for at least 1 hour after the pipe has been subjected to the full test pressure. Do not take initial or final readings at times of rapid changes in atmospheric conditions, and temperatures are representative of the actual trench conditions. No indication of reduction of pressure is allowed during the test after corrections have been made for changes in atmospheric conditions in conformity with the relationship $T(1)P(2)=T(2)P(1)$, in which T and P denote absolute temperature and pressure, respectively, and the numbers denote initial and final readings.
- d. During the test, completely isolate the entire system from all compressors and other sources of air pressure. Test each joint by means of soap and water or an equivalent nonflammable solution prior to backfilling or concealing any work. Secure approval of testing instruments from the Contracting Officer. Furnish all labor, materials and equipment for conducting the tests subject to inspection at all times during the tests. Maintain safety precautions for air pressure testing at all times during the tests.

3.10 MAINTENANCE

Submit operation and maintenance data in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA, in three separate packages. Submit Data packages, as specified.

3.10.1 Gas Distribution System and Equipment Operation

Include maps showing piping layout, locations of system valves, gas line markers and cathodic protection system test stations; step-by-step procedures for system start up, operation and shutdown (index system components and equipment to the system maps); isolation procedures including valve operation to shutdown or isolate each section of the system (index valves to the system maps and provide separate procedures for normal operation and emergency shutdown if required to be different). Submit Data Package No. 4 per Section 01 78 23.

3.10.2 Gas Distribution System Maintenance

Include maintenance procedures and frequency for system and equipment; identification of pipe materials and manufacturer by locations, pipe repair procedures, and jointing procedures at transitions to other piping material or material from a different manufacturer. Submit Data Package No. 4 per Section 01 78 23.

3.10.3 Gas Distribution Equipment Maintenance

Include identification of valves and other equipment by materials, manufacturer, vendor identification and location; maintenance procedures

and recommended tool kits for valves and equipment; recommended repair methods (i.e., field repair, factory repair, or replacement) for each valve and piece of equipment; and preventive maintenance procedures, possible failure modes and troubleshooting guide. Submit Data Package No. 3 per Section 01 78 23.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 33 61 13.13

PREFABRICATED UNDERGROUND HYDRONIC ENERGY DISTRIBUTION
02/16

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

The system consists of a buried prefabricated chilled water distribution system including service connections to a point 6 inches inside of the building. The contract drawings show the specific arrangement of piping, sizes and grades of pipe, and other details. The system is designed for an operating pressure of 125 psig and an operating temperature of 42 degrees F for chilled water.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME B1.20.1	(2013) Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)
ASME B16.11	(2016) Forged Fittings, Socket-Welding and Threaded
ASME B16.9	(2018) Factory-Made Wrought Buttwelding Fittings
ASME B31.1	(2016; Errata 2016) Power Piping
ASME BPVC SEC IX	(2017; Errata 2018) BPVC Section IX-Welding, Brazing and Fusing Qualifications

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A105/A105M	(2014) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Forgings for Piping Applications
ASTM A106/A106M	(2018) Standard Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High-Temperature Service
ASTM A234/A234M	(2018) Standard Specification for Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Moderate and High Temperature Service
ASTM A53/A53M	(2018) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
ASTM C518	(2017) Standard Test Method for

Steady-State Thermal Transmission
Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter
Apparatus

ASTM C591 (2017) Standard Specification for Unfaced
Preformed Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate
Thermal Insulation

ASTM D1784 (2011) Standard Specification for Rigid
Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Compounds and
Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC)
Compounds

ASTM D3350 (2012) Polyethylene Plastics Pipe and
Fittings Materials

COPPER DEVELOPMENT ASSOCIATION (CDA)

CDA A4015 (2016; 14/17) Copper Tube Handbook

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Fabrication and Assembly Drawings

SD-03 Product Data

Support of the Equipment

SD-07 Certificates

Welding

Written Certification

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Maintenance; G

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Weld piping in accordance with qualified procedures using performance qualified welders and welding operators. Qualify procedures and welders in accordance with ASME BPVC SEC IX. Welding procedures qualified by others, and welders and welding operators qualified by another employer may be accepted as permitted by ASME B31.1. Prior to welding operations, submit a copy of qualified procedures and a list of names and identification symbols of qualified welders and welding operators. Notify the Contracting Officer 24 hours in advance of tests performed at the work site, if practicable. Apply welder's personal assigned symbol near each weld made as a permanent record. Weld structural members in accordance with Section 05 50 13

MISCELLANEOUS METAL FABRICATIONS.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

After delivery to the jobsite, protect all materials and equipment from anything which could cause damage to the material or equipment. Seal piping at each end to keep the interior clean and free of dirt and debris. Keep fittings together and keep their interior surfaces clean at all times. Keep insulation dry and clean.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STANDARD PRODUCTS

Provide system components which are standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of the product and that essentially duplicate items that have been in satisfactory use for at least 2 years prior to bid opening. Provide a service organization that is, in the opinion of the Contracting Officer, convenient to the site.

Equipment items must be supported by service organizations. Submit a certified list of qualified permanent service organizations for [support of the equipment](#) which includes their addresses and qualifications. These service organizations must be reasonably convenient to the equipment installation and able to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

- a. Submit detail drawings consisting of [fabrication and assembly drawings](#), for all parts of the work in sufficient detail to check conformity with the requirements of the contract documents, prior to installation. In the detail drawings show complete piping, wiring and schematic diagrams and any other details to demonstrate that the system has been coordinated and will properly function as a unit. Show on the drawings proposed layout, method of compensation for pipe expansion and contraction, anchorage of equipment and appurtenances, and equipment relationship to other parts of the work including clearances required for maintenance and operation.
- b. Submit the manufacturer's or system fabricator's [written certification](#) stating that the distribution system furnished meets all the requirements of this specification. Clearly identify on the drawings any proposed deviations from the requirements of the contract documents.

2.2 PIPING AND CASING MATERIALS

2.2.1 General

Provide metallic pressure pipe, fittings, and piping accessories that conform to the requirements of [ASME B31.1](#) and are types suitable for the temperature and pressure of the water.

2.2.2 Piping

2.2.2.1 Steel Pipe

Provide piping conforming to [ASTM A53/A53M](#), Grade B, standard weight, black or to [ASTM A106/A106M](#), Grade B, standard weight.

2.2.3 Casings

2.2.3.1 Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Casing

Provide PVC casings that conform to [ASTM D1784](#), Class 12454-B with a minimum thickness equal to the greater of 1/100 the diameter of the casing or [60 mils](#).

2.2.3.2 Polyethylene (PE) Casing

Provide polyethylene casings conforming to [ASTM D3350](#), Type III, Class C, Category 3 or 4, Grade P 34 with thickness as follows:

Casing Diameter (inches)	Minimum Thickness (mils)
10 and smaller	125
10 to 18	150
18 through 24	200
over 24	225

2.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

2.3.1 Steel Pipe

For pipe smaller than [0.75 inch](#), provide Schedule 80 steel pipe with threaded end connections conforming to [ASME B1.20.1](#). Weld all steel pipe [0.75 inch](#) and larger. Provide steel welding fittings conforming to the requirements of [ASTM A105/A105M](#) or [ASTM A234/A234M](#). Provide welding fittings conforming to [ASME B16.9](#) for butt-weld fittings and [ASME B16.11](#) for socket-weld fittings. Use long radius butt-welding elbows conforming to [ASME B16.9](#) whenever space permits.

2.4 END SEALS

Provide pre-insulated sections of pipe with complete sealing of the insulation to provide a permanent water and vapor seal at each end of the pre-insulated section of piping. Provide field modified pre-insulated sections of piping with an end seal which is equivalent to the end seals furnished with the pre-insulated section of piping. Test and certify end seals in accordance with paragraph Casing and End Seal Testing and Certification.

2.4.1 Types

Provide end seals of one of the following types:

- Carrying the outer casing over tapered pipe insulation ends and extending it to the carrier pipe. Provide sufficient surface bonding area between the casing and the carrier pipe.
- Using specially designed molded caps made of polyethylene or rubber of standard manufactured thickness. Provide a minimum of [1.5 inch](#) surface bonding area between the cap and both the casing and carrier pipe.

- c. Using elastomeric-ring end seals designed and dimensioned to fit in the annular space between the casing and the carrier pipe.
- d. Using a waterproof mastic seal vapor barrier over the exposed insulation ends.
- e. Shrink sleeves.

2.4.2 Casing and End Seal Testing and Certification

Demonstrate that testing and certification procedures by an independent testing laboratory, for casings and end seals, are capable of resisting penetration of water into the casing and insulation. Perform the test on each type of prefabricated system to be furnished. Provide hot and cold cycle testing followed by immersion in a water filled chamber with a head pressure, consisting of 14 days of temperature cycling. Circulate a fluid with a temperature of 40 degrees F through the carrier pipe alternating every 24-hours with a fluid with a temperature of 200 degrees F circulating through the carrier pipe for a low temperature hot water or dual temperature service or 75 degrees F for a chilled water service. While the hot and cold cycle test is being performed, the test sample is either buried or encased in dry bedding sand with a minimum of 12 inches of sand all around the test sample. Restrain the 3 inches diameter carrier pipe of the test sample during the test period. Provide an insulation thickness not to exceed the maximum thickness provided for the piping in the project. Do not exceed transition times for temperature cycle testing of 15 minutes in going from cold to hot and 30 minutes in going from hot to cold. The fluid in the carrier pipe may be water, oil or heat transfer fluid. Immerse the test sample in a water filled chamber following the hot and cold cycling test. Provide a pressure of not less than 20 feet of water head pressure at the highest point over the entire length of the 8 foot test sample for a minimum of the 48 hour test period. Provide water containing a dye penetrant to check for end seal leakage. Upon completion of the pressure test, cut the test sample open using a light that will readily show the presence of the dye that was in the water, inspect the test sample. Evidence of the dye inside the test sample indicates that the end seal is not acceptable and cannot be certified.

2.5 INSULATION

2.5.1 Factory Applied Insulation

Provide factory insulated pre-fabricated pipe and fittings with polyurethane (polyisocyanurate) foam meeting the requirements of ASTM C591 having a density not less than 2 pounds per cubic foot (pcf). Provide the polyurethane (polyisocyanurate) foam completely filling the annular space between the carrier pipe and the casing with an insulation thickness of a minimum of 0.9 inches. Provide an insulation thermal conductivity factor not exceeding the numerical value of 0.15 Btu-inch/square foot-degree F-hour at 75 degrees F, when tested in accordance with ASTM C518. Provide a manufacturer's certification that the insulated pipe is free of insulation voids.

2.5.2 Field Applied Insulation

Provide polyurethane (polyisocyanurate) field applied insulation for fittings, and field casing closures and other piping system accessories, as required, with thickness matching adjacent piping insulation thickness. For buried fittings and accessories, provide field applied polyurethane

(polyisocyanurate) insulation to match adjacent piping with a protective covering matching the pipe casing. Provide shrink sleeves with a minimum thickness of 50 mils over casing connection joints.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

After becoming familiar with all details of the project, verify all dimensions in the field and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing the project.

3.2 INSTALLATION

For all pre-insulated, prefabricated systems, obtain the services of a trained representative of the pipe system manufacturer to instruct the Contractor's work forces in the installation procedures to ensure that the system is installed in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions and the plans and specifications. Provide a manufacturer's representative who regularly performs such duties for the manufacturer. Furnish the Contracting Officer a list of names of personnel trained and certified by the pipe system manufacturer in the installation of this system. Only personnel whose names appear on a less than one year old list will be allowed to install the system.

3.3 PIPING SYSTEMS

3.3.1 Buried Insulated Systems

Provide carrier pipe, insulation, casing, end seals, fittings and accessories for buried insulated systems.

3.4 THRUST BLOCKS

Install thrust blocks at the locations recommended by the pipe system manufacturer. Provide thrust blocks in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. For systems requiring thrust blocks, at a minimum, provide thrust blocks at all changes in direction, changes in size, valves and terminal ends, such as plugs, caps and tees with concrete having a compressive strength of not less than 2000 psi after 28 days in accordance with Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE. Place thrust blocks between solid ground and the fitting to be anchored. Unless otherwise indicated or directed, pour the base and the thrust bearing sides of the thrust blocks directly against undisturbed earth. The sides of the thrust blocks not subject to thrust may be poured against forms. Locate thrust blocks so that the joints for all fittings will be accessible for repair wherever possible. Do not embed joints in concrete unless the assembly has previously been hydrostatically tested. Provide thrust blocks resisted by piles or tie rods to solid foundations in muck or peat, or replace peat or muck with ballast of sufficient stability to resist the thrust blocks.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF PIPING SYSTEMS

Prepare pipe ends to match factory coated ends and install the piping system in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions without springing or forcing other than what has been calculated for cold spring allowing free expansion and contraction without damage to joints or hangers. Do not install copper tubing in a trench with ferrous piping materials. Maintain a minimum vertical separation of 12 inches between pipes when nonferrous

metallic pipe (e.g., copper tubing) crosses any ferrous piping material. Provide transition fittings approved by the manufacturer of the piping system for connections between different types of pipe and system components.

3.5.1 Pitching of Horizontal Piping

Pitch horizontal pipe at a grade of not less than [1 inch in 20 feet](#) toward the drain points unless otherwise indicated.

3.5.2 Open Ends

Provide an approved cap or plug for open ends of pipelines and equipment during installation.

3.5.3 Cutting Prefabricated Piping Sections

Provide new end seals similar to factory applied end seal for field cut prefabricated pipe sections in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

3.5.4 Joints

3.5.4.1 Welded Joints

Provide welded joints between sections of pipe and between pipe and fittings where specified or indicated.

3.5.4.2 Threaded Joints

No threaded joints are allowed to be used belowground. Make joints tight with polytetrafluoroethylene tape applied to the male threads only with no more than 3 threads showing after the joint is made up.

3.5.4.3 Grooved Mechanical Joints

Provide grooved fittings, couplings, and grooving tools with products of the same manufacturer. Prepare grooves complying with the tolerances specified by the coupling manufacturer in accordance with the coupling manufacturer's instructions. Measure field made groove diameters using a "go/no-go" gauge, vernier or dial caliper, narrow-land micrometer, or other method specifically approved by the coupling manufacturer for the intended application. Measure and record each groove width and dimension from end of pipe for each change in grooving tool setup to verify compliance with coupling manufacturer's tolerances. Grooved joints are not allowed in concealed locations.

3.5.4.4 Brazed Joints

Brazed joints for copper pipe and fittings must conform to [CDA A4015](#). Utilize brazing alloys melting above [1100 degrees F](#).

3.5.4.5 Nonmetallic Pipe Joints

Install nonmetallic pipe joints in accordance with the written instructions of the manufacturer.

3.5.5 Expansion Loops

If expansion compensation is needed, provide expansion loops and expansion bends (Z- and L- type) factory fabricated of casing, insulation, and carrier piping identical to that furnished for straight runs. Properly design expansion loops and bends in accordance with the allowable stress limits indicated in ASME B31.1 for the type of pipe used, and size to accommodate pipe movement. Ship expansion loops and bends to the jobsite in the maximum size sections feasible to minimize the number of field joints. Make field joints in straight runs of the expansion loops and bends, keeping the number to a minimum. For steel pipe, cold springing is not allowed when sizing the expansion loops and bends. Cold spring piping one-half the calculated maximum operational expansion during field assembly is allowed. Pipe stress in expansion loops and bends must conform to ASME B31.1.

3.5.6 Anchors

Provide factory fabricated, by the prefabricated system manufacturer, anchor design in accordance with the published data of the manufacturer and for prefabricated systems. Prevent water penetration, condensation, or vapor transmission from wetting/contacting the insulation.

3.5.7 Field Casing Closures

Execution of field insulation and encasement of joints are to be accomplished after the visual and pressure tests specified are completed and in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions. Provide foamed in place polyurethane insulation with thickness dimensions and casing materials not less than those of the adjoining prefabricated section. Install a standard polyethylene heat shrink sleeve with a 6 inch minimum overlap at each end of the casing.

3.5.8 Underground Warning Tape

Provide underground 0.004 inch thick, 6 inches wide, printed with repetitive caution warnings along its length, polyethylene tape warning tape buried above the piping during the trench backfilling approximately 12 inches deep. Provide tapes, yellow in color with black letters; color and lettering must not be affected by moisture or other substances contained in the backfill material.

3.6 EARTHWORK

Perform earthwork in accordance with Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL.

3.7 TESTING

Conduct tests before, during, and after installation of the system. Provide all instruments, equipment, facilities, and labor required to properly conduct the tests. Provide test pressure gauges for a specific test with dials indicating not less than 1.5 times nor more than 2 times the test pressure.

3.7.1 Carrier Pipe Cleaning and Testing

Test distribution piping as required before backfilling, with all joints exposed. The area between joints may be backfilled as necessary to prevent

pipe movement.

3.7.1.1 Cleaning Carrier Pipe

Prior to testing, clean the interior of the carrier pipe of foreign materials by thorough flushing with clean water with a circulating water velocity between 7 and 10 feet per second for a minimum of 4 hours. Provide temporary and/or supplementary pumps if required to ensure that required velocity is achieved. Clean system strainers after the flushing operation is complete. Temporary strainers must be installed as required. Leave water in the system after flushing for testing of the system to ensure the pipe will maintain pressure and is not leaking.

3.7.1.2 Hydrostatic Pressure Cycling and Tests

Hydrostatic pressure tests consist of 4 cycles; each cycle consisting of a 10 minute period with the first cycle at 150 psig followed by a 5 minute period at a pressure less than 50 psig. Begin the next cycle immediately following the completion of the previous cycle with the pressure rise and drop no more than 100 psi per minute. Locate the pressure gauge and take the pressure measurement at the opposite end of the system from where the pressure is applied. After completion of the hydrostatic pressure cycling, perform the first hydrostatic pressure test proving the system tight at a pressure of 1.5 times the working pressure up to 150 psig and held for a minimum of 1 hour. Disconnect the pressurizing apparatus from the system before starting the 1 hour pressure holding period. Correct any test failures and repeat the hydrostatic pressure cycling and first hydrostatic pressure test until the system can hold the required pressure for at least 1 hour. After successful completion of the first hydrostatic pressure test, drain piping system and fill the piping system as defined in paragraph TREATED WATER for the remaining tests and for permanent operation of the system. Repeat the hydrostatic pressure cycling and tests for the system after the system has been filled with treated water, using the same test conditions and criteria.

3.7.1.3 Operational Test

Perform operational test on the complete system or testable portions thereof and conduct with full design flows and operating temperatures in all runs of piping as if in service, to demonstrate satisfactory function and operating effectiveness. The operational test will have two cycles. Each cycle must consist of a 6-hour period with treated water in the system at the maximum operating temperature of 60 degrees F and maximum flow rate, and a period of at least 6-hours with no flow. Supply temporary pumps, piping connections, boilers, chillers and the gauges required to circulate the water at the desired temperatures and flow rates. Re-circulate water through supply lines and return through the return piping to demonstrate that the pressure drop is compatible with the flow rate and size of pipe and to show that obstructions do not exist in the piping system. Any unusual indicated pressure drop will be investigated and any obstructions removed. Repair any leaks found. After any obstructions have been removed and any leaks repaired, repeat the operational test until successfully passed.

3.7.1.4 Final Hydrostatic Test

After successful completion of the operational test, pressurize system to 1.5 times the working pressure up to 150 psig and hold for a minimum of 4 hours. Disconnect pressurizing apparatus prior to the start of the 4-hour

pressure holding period. Upon test failure, determine the cause of the failure, correct and repeat all of the hydrostatic pressure cycling and pressure tests.

3.8 MAINTENANCE

Submit 6 hard or optic disk copies of operation and 6 copies of maintenance manuals for the equipment furnished, 1 complete set prior to performance testing and the remainder upon acceptance. Provide details in the operation manuals showing the step-by-step procedures required for equipment startup, operation, and shutdown. Include in the operation manuals the manufacturer's name, model number, parts list, and brief description of all equipment and their basic operating features. List in the maintenance manuals routine maintenance procedures, possible breakdowns and repairs, and troubleshooting guides. Include in the maintenance manuals piping and equipment layout and simplified wiring and control diagrams of the equipment system as installed. Provide approved manuals prior to the field performance testing.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 33 71 02

UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION

02/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS
(AASHTO)

AASHTO HB-17 (2002; Errata 2003; Errata 2005, 17th
Edition) Standard Specifications for
Highway Bridges

AMERICAN CONCRETE INSTITUTE INTERNATIONAL (ACI)

ACI 318M (2014; ERTA 2015) Building Code
Requirements for Structural Concrete &
Commentary

ACI SP-66 (2004) ACI Detailing Manual

ASSOCIATION OF EDISON ILLUMINATING COMPANIES (AEIC)

AEIC CS8 (2013) Specification for Extruded
Dielectric Shielded Power Cables Rated 5
Through 46 kV

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM B1 (2013) Standard Specification for
Hard-Drawn Copper Wire

ASTM B3 (2013) Standard Specification for Soft or
Annealed Copper Wire

ASTM B496 (2016) Standard Specification for Compact
Round Concentric-Lay-Stranded Copper
Conductors

ASTM B8 (2011; R 2017) Standard Specification for
Concentric-Lay-Stranded Copper Conductors,
Hard, Medium-Hard, or Soft

ASTM B800 (2005; R 2011) Standard Specification for
8000 Series Aluminum Alloy Wire for
Electrical Purposes-Annealed and
Intermediate Tempers

ASTM B801 (2018) Standard Specification for
Concentric-Lay-Stranded Conductors of 8000

Series Aluminum Alloy for Subsequent
Covering or Insulation

- ASTM C309 (2011) Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete
- ASTM C32 (2013; R 2017) Standard Specification for Sewer and Manhole Brick (Made from Clay or Shale)
- ASTM C478 (2018) Standard Specification for Circular Precast Reinforced Concrete Manhole Sections
- ASTM C857 (2016) Standard Practice for Minimum Structural Design Loading for Underground Precast Concrete Utility Structures
- ASTM C990 (2009; R 2014) Standard Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe, Manholes and Precast Box Sections Using Preformed Flexible Joint Sealants

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

- IEEE 386 (2016) Separable Insulated Connector Systems for Power Distribution Systems Rated 2.5 kV through 35 kV
- IEEE 400.2 (2013) Guide for Field Testing of Shielded Power Cable Systems Using Very Low Frequency (VLF)
- IEEE 404 (2012) Standard for Extruded and Laminated Dielectric Shielded Cable Joints Rated 2500 V to 500,000 V
- IEEE 48 (2009) Standard for Test Procedures and Requirements for Alternating-Current Cable Terminations Used on Shielded Cables Having Laminated Insulation Rated 2.5 kV through 765 kV or Extruded Insulation Rated 2.5 kV through 500 kV
- IEEE 81 (2012) Guide for Measuring Earth Resistivity, Ground Impedance, and Earth Surface Potentials of a Ground System
- IEEE C2 (2017; Errata 1-2 2017; INT 1 2017) National Electrical Safety Code
- IEEE C37.20.3 (2013) Standard for Metal-Enclosed Interrupter Switchgear
- IEEE Stds Dictionary (2009) IEEE Standards Dictionary: Glossary of Terms & Definitions

INSULATED CABLE ENGINEERS ASSOCIATION (ICEA)

ICEA S-94-649 (2013) Standard for Concentric Neutral
Cables Rated 5 Through 46 KV

INTERNATIONAL ELECTRICAL TESTING ASSOCIATION (NETA)

NETA ATS (2017; Errata 2017) Standard for
Acceptance Testing Specifications for
Electrical Power Equipment and Systems

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

ANSI C119.1 (2016) Electric Connectors - Sealed
Insulated Underground Connector Systems
Rated 600 Volts

ANSI/NEMA WC 71/ICEA S-96-659 (2014) Standard for Nonshielded Cables
Rated 2001-5000 Volts for use in the
Distribution of Electric Energy

NEMA RN 1 (2005; R 2013) Polyvinyl-Chloride (PVC)
Externally Coated Galvanized Rigid Steel
Conduit and Intermediate Metal Conduit

NEMA TC 2 (2013) Standard for Electrical Polyvinyl
Chloride (PVC) Conduit

NEMA TC 3 (2016) Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Fittings
for Use With Rigid PVC Conduit and Tubing

NEMA TC 9 (2004) Standard for Fittings for Polyvinyl
Chloride (PVC) Plastic Utilities Duct for
Underground Installation

NEMA WC 70 (2009) Power Cable Rated 2000 V or Less
for the Distribution of Electrical
Energy--S95-658

NEMA WC 74/ICEA S-93-639 (2012) 5-46 kV Shielded Power Cable for
Use in the Transmission and Distribution
of Electric Energy

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2017; ERTA 1-2 2017; TIA 17-1; TIA 17-2;
TIA 17-3; TIA 17-4; TIA 17-5; TIA 17-6;
TIA 17-7; TIA 17-8; TIA 17-9; TIA 17-10;
TIA 17-11; TIA 17-12; TIA 17-13; TIA
17-14; TIA 17-15; TIA 17-16; TIA 17-17)
National Electrical Code

SOCIETY OF CABLE TELECOMMUNICATIONS ENGINEERS (SCTE)

ANSI/SCTE 77 (2013) Specification for Underground
Enclosure Integrity

TELECOMMUNICATIONS INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION (TIA)

TIA-758 (2012b) Customer-Owned Outside Plant
Telecommunications Infrastructure Standard

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE (USDA)

RUS Bull 1751F-644 (2002) Underground Plant Construction

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

CID A-A-60005 (Basic; Notice 2) Frames, Covers,
Gratings, Steps, Sump And Catch Basin,
Manhole

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 1072 (2006; Reprint Jun 2013) Medium-Voltage
Power Cables

UL 1242 (2006; Reprint Mar 2014) Standard for
Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit --
Steel

UL 467 (2013; Reprint Jun 2017) UL Standard for
Safety Grounding and Bonding Equipment

UL 486A-486B (2018) UL Standard for Safety Wire
Connectors

UL 510 (2017) UL Standard for Safety Polyvinyl
Chloride, Polyethylene and Rubber
Insulating Tape

UL 514B (2012; Reprint Nov 2014) Conduit, Tubing
and Cable Fittings

UL 6 (2007; Reprint Nov 2014) Electrical Rigid
Metal Conduit-Steel

UL 651 (2011; Reprint Nov 2018) UL Standard for
Safety Schedule 40, 80, Type EB and A
Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings

UL 83 (2017) UL Standard for Safety
Thermoplastic-Insulated Wires and Cables

UL 854 (2004; Reprint Nov 2014) Standard for
Service-Entrance Cables

UL 94 (2013; Reprint Sep 2017) UL Standard for
Safety Tests for Flammability of Plastic
Materials for Parts in Devices and
Appliances

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 26 08 00 APPARATUS INSPECTION AND TESTING applies to this section,
with the additions and modifications specified herein.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- a. Unless otherwise specified or indicated, electrical and electronics terms used in these specifications, and on the drawings, are as defined in [IEEE Stds Dictionary](#).
- b. In the text of this section, the words conduit and duct are used interchangeably and have the same meaning.
- c. In the text of this section, "medium voltage cable splices," and "medium voltage cable joints" are used interchangeably and have the same meaning.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section [01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING](#). Submit the following in accordance with Section [01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES](#):

[SD-02 Shop Drawings](#)

[Precast underground structures; G](#)

[SD-03 Product Data](#)

[Medium voltage cable; G](#)

[Medium voltage cable joints; G](#)

[Medium voltage cable terminations; G](#)[Precast concrete structures; G](#)

[Sealing Material](#)

[Pulling-In Irons](#)

[Handhole frames and covers; G](#)

[Composite/fiberglass handholes; G](#)

[Cable supports \(racks, arms and insulators\); G](#)

[SD-06 Test Reports](#)

[Medium voltage cable qualification and production tests; G](#)

[Field Acceptance Checks and Tests; G](#)

[Arc-proofing test for cable fireproofing tape; G](#)

[SD-07 Certificates](#)

[Cable splicer/terminator; G](#)

[Cable Installer Qualifications; G](#)

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 Precast Underground Structures

Submittal required for each type used. Provide calculations and drawings for precast manholes and handholes bearing the seal of a registered professional engineer including:

- a. Material description (i.e., f'_c and F_y)
- b. Manufacturer's printed assembly and installation instructions
- c. Design calculations
- d. Reinforcing shop drawings in accordance with [ACI SP-66](#)
- e. Plans and elevations showing opening and pulling-in iron locations and details

1.5.2 Certificate of Competency for Cable Splicer/Terminator

The cable splicer/terminator must have a certification from the National Cable Splicing Certification Board (NCSCB) in the field of splicing and terminating shielded medium voltage (5 kV to 35 kV) power cable using pre-manufactured kits (pre-molded, heat-shrink, cold shrink). Submit "Proof of Certification" for approval, for the individuals that will be performing cable splicer and termination work, 30 days before splices or terminations are to be made.

1.5.3 Cable Installer Qualifications

Provide at least one onsite person in a supervisory position with a documentable level of competency and experience to supervise all cable pulling operations. Provide a resume showing the cable installers' experience in the last three years, including a list of references complete with points of contact, addresses and telephone numbers. Cable installer must demonstrate experience with a minimum of three medium voltage cable installations. The Contracting Officer reserves the right to require additional proof of competency or to reject the individual and call for an alternate qualified cable installer.

1.5.4 Regulatory Requirements

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "must" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction," or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer. Equipment, materials, installation, and workmanship must be in accordance with the mandatory and advisory provisions of [IEEE C2](#) and [NFPA 70](#) unless more stringent requirements are specified or indicated.

1.5.5 Standard Products

Provide materials and equipment that are products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of such products which are of equal material, design and workmanship. Products must have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening. The 2-year period must include applications of equipment and materials under similar

circumstances and of similar size. The product must have been for sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2-year period. Where two or more items of the same class of equipment are required, these items must be products of a single manufacturer; however, the component parts of the item need not be the products of the same manufacturer unless stated in this section.

1.5.5.1 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a 2-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturers' factory or laboratory tests, is furnished.

1.5.5.2 Material and Equipment Manufacturing Date

Products manufactured more than 3 years prior to date of delivery to site are not acceptable, unless specified otherwise.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUIT, DUCTS, AND FITTINGS

2.1.1 Rigid Metal Conduit

UL 6.

2.1.1.1 Rigid Metallic Conduit, PVC Coated

NEMA RN 1, Type A40, except that hardness must be nominal 85 Shore A durometer, dielectric strength must be minimum 400 volts per mil at 60 Hz, and tensile strength must be minimum 3500 psi.

2.1.2 Intermediate Metal Conduit

UL 1242.

2.1.2.1 Intermediate Metal Conduit, PVC Coated

NEMA RN 1, Type A40, except that hardness must be nominal 85 Shore A durometer, dielectric strength must be minimum 400 volts per mil at 60 Hz, and tensile strength must be minimum 3500 psi.

2.1.3 Plastic Conduit for Direct Burial and Riser Applications

UL 651 and NEMA TC 2, EPC-40.

2.1.4 Innerduct

Provide corrugated or solid wall polyethylene (PE) or PVC innerducts, or fabric-mesh innerducts, with pullwire. Size as indicated.

2.1.5 Duct Sealant

UL 94, Class HBF. Provide high-expansion urethane foam duct sealant that expands and hardens to form a closed, chemically and water resistant, rigid structure. Sealant must be compatible with common cable and wire jackets and capable of adhering to metals, plastics and concrete. Sealant must be capable of curing in temperature ranges of 35 degrees F to 95 degrees F.

Cured sealant must withstand temperature ranges of -20 degrees F to 200 degrees F without loss of function.

2.1.6 Fittings

2.1.6.1 Metal Fittings

UL 514B.

2.1.6.2 PVC Conduit Fittings

UL 514B, UL 651NEMA TC 3.

2.1.6.3 PVC Duct Fittings

NEMA TC 9.

2.2 LOW VOLTAGE INSULATED CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

Insulated conductors must be rated 600 volts and conform to the requirements of NFPA 70, including listing requirements, or in accordance with NEMA WC 70. Wires and cables manufactured more than 12 months prior to date of delivery to the site are not acceptable. Service entrance conductors must conform to UL 854, type USE.

2.2.1 Conductor Types

Cable and duct sizes indicated are for copper conductors and THHN/THWN unless otherwise noted. Conductors No. 10 AWG and smaller must be solid. Conductors No. 8 AWG and larger must be stranded. All conductors must be copper.

2.2.2 Conductor Material

Unless specified or indicated otherwise or required by NFPA 70, wires in conduit, other than service entrance, must be 600-volt, Type THWN/THHN conforming to UL 83 or Type XHHW. Copper conductors must be annealed copper complying with ASTM B3 and ASTM B8.

2.2.3 Jackets

Multiconductor cables must have an overall PVC outer jacket.

2.2.4 Cable Marking

Insulated conductors must have the date of manufacture and other identification imprinted on the outer surface of each cable at regular intervals throughout the cable length.

Identify each cable by means of a fiber, laminated plastic, or non-ferrous metal tags, or approved equal, in each manhole, handhole, junction box, and each terminal. Each tag must contain the following information; cable type, conductor size, circuit number, circuit voltage, cable destination and phase identification.

Conductors must be color coded. Provide conductor identification within each enclosure where a tap, splice, or termination is made. Conductor identification must be by color-coded insulated conductors, plastic-coated self-sticking printed markers, colored nylon cable ties and plates, heat

shrink type sleeves, or colored electrical tape. Control circuit terminations must be properly identified. Color must be green for grounding conductors and white for neutrals; except where neutrals of more than one system are installed in same raceway or box, other neutrals must be white with a different colored (not green) stripe for each. Color of ungrounded conductors in different voltage systems must be as follows:

- a. 208/120 volt, three-phase
 - (1) Phase A - black
 - (2) Phase B - red
 - (3) Phase C - blue
- b. 480/277 volt, three-phase
 - (1) Phase A - brown
 - (2) Phase B - orange
 - (3) Phase C - yellow
- c. 120/240 volt, single phase: Black and red

2.3 LOW VOLTAGE WIRE CONNECTORS AND TERMINALS

Must provide a uniform compression over the entire conductor contact surface. Use solderless terminal lugs on stranded conductors.

- a. For use with copper conductors: [UL 486A-486B](#).

2.4 LOW VOLTAGE SPLICES

Provide splices in conductors with a compression connector on the conductor and by insulating and waterproofing using one of the following methods which are suitable for continuous submersion in water and comply with [ANSI C119.1](#).

2.4.1 Heat Shrinkable Splice

Provide heat shrinkable splice insulation by means of a thermoplastic adhesive sealant material applied in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions.

2.4.2 Cold Shrink Rubber Splice

Provide a cold-shrink rubber splice which consists of EPDM rubber tube which has been factory stretched onto a spiraled core which is removed during splice installation. The installation must not require heat or flame, or any additional materials such as covering or adhesive. It must be designed for use with inline compression type connectors, or indoor, outdoor, direct-burial or submerged locations.

2.5 MEDIUM VOLTAGE CABLE

Cable (conductor) sizes are designated by American Wire Gauge (AWG) and Thousand Circular Mils (Kcmil). Conductor and conduit sizes indicated are for copper conductors unless otherwise noted. Insulated conductors must

have the date of manufacture and other identification imprinted on the outer surface of each cable at regular intervals throughout cable length. Wires and cables manufactured more than 24 months prior to date of delivery to the site are not acceptable. Provide single conductor type cables unless otherwise indicated.

2.5.1 Cable Configuration

Provide Type MV cable, conforming to NEMA WC 74/ICEA S-93-639 and UL 1072. Provide cables manufactured for use in duct applications as indicated. Cable must be rated 15 kV with 133 percent insulation level.

2.5.2 Conductor Material

Provide concentric-lay-stranded, Class B conductors. Provide aluminum alloy Type AA-8000 aluminum conductors complying with ASTM B800 and ASTM B801 soft drawn copper cables complying with ASTM B3 and ASTM B8 for regular concentric and compressed stranding or ASTM B496 for compact stranding.

2.5.3 Insulation

Provide ethylene-propylene-rubber (EPR) insulation conforming to the requirements of ANSI/NEMA WC 71/ICEA S-96-659, AEIC CS8, and ICEA S-94-649; and tree-retardant cross-linked thermosetting polyethylene (XLP) insulation conforming to the requirements of NEMA WC 74/ICEA S-93-639, AEIC CS8, and ICEA S-94-649.

2.5.4 Shielding

Cables rated for 2 kV and above must have a semiconducting conductor shield, a semiconducting insulation shield, and an overall copper wire shield for each phase.

2.5.5 Neutrals

Neutral conductors must be copper, employing the same insulation and jacket materials as phase conductors, except that a 600-volt insulation rating is acceptable. For high impedance grounded neutral systems, the neutral conductors from the neutral point of the transformer or generator to the connection point at the impedance must utilize copper conductors, employing the same insulation level and construction as the phase conductors.

2.5.6 Jackets

Provide cables with a PVC jacket. Provide PVC jackets with a separator that prevents contact with underlying semiconducting insulating shield.

2.6 MEDIUM VOLTAGE CABLE TERMINATIONS

IEEE 48 Class 1; of the molded elastomer, prestretched elastomer, or heat-shrinkable elastomer. Acceptable elastomers are track-resistant silicone rubber or track-resistant ethylene propylene compounds, such as ethylene propylene rubber or ethylene propylene diene monomer. Separable insulated connectors may be used for apparatus terminations, when such apparatus is provided with suitable bushings. Terminations, where required, must be provided with mounting brackets suitable for the intended installation and with grounding provisions for the cable shielding, metallic sheath, or armor. Terminations must be provided in a kit,

including: skirts, stress control terminator, ground clamp, connectors, lugs, and complete instructions for assembly and installation. Terminations must be the product of one manufacturer, suitable for the type, diameter, insulation class and level, and materials of the cable terminated. Do not use separate parts of copper or copper alloy in contact with aluminum alloy parts in the construction or installation of the terminator.

2.6.1 Cold-Shrink Type

Terminator must be a one-piece design, utilizing the manufacturer's latest technology, where high-dielectric constant (capacitive) stress control is integrated within a skirted insulator made of silicone rubber. Termination must not require heat or flame for installation. Termination kit must contain all necessary materials (except for the lugs). Termination must be designed for installation in low or highly contaminated indoor and outdoor locations and must resist ultraviolet rays and oxidative decomposition.

2.6.2 Heat Shrinkable Type

Terminator must consist of a uniform cross section heat shrinkable polymeric construction stress relief tubing and environmentally sealed outer covering that is nontracking, resists heavy atmospheric contaminants, ultra violet rays and oxidative decomposition. Provide heat shrinkable sheds or skirts of the same material. Termination must be designed for installation in low or highly contaminated indoor or outdoor locations.

2.6.3 Separable Insulated Connector Type

IEEE 386. Provide connector with steel reinforced hook-stick eye, grounding eye, test point, and arc-quenching contact material. Provide connectors of the loadbreak or deadbreak type as indicated, of suitable construction for the application and the type of cable connected, and that include cable shield adaptors. Provide external clamping points and test points. Separable connectors must not be used in manholes/handholes.

- a. 200 Ampere loadbreak connector ratings: Voltage: 15 kV, 95 kV BIL. Short time rating: 10,000 rms symmetrical amperes.
- b. 600 Ampere deadbreak connector ratings: Voltage: 15 kV, 95 kV BIL. Short time rating: 25,000 rms symmetrical amperes. Connectors must have 200 ampere bushing interface for surge arresters.

2.7 MEDIUM VOLTAGE CABLE JOINTS

Provide joints (splices) in accordance with **IEEE 404** suitable for the rated voltage, insulation level, insulation type, and construction of the cable. Joints must be certified by the manufacturer for waterproof, submersible applications. Upon request, supply manufacturer's design qualification test report in accordance with **IEEE 404**. Connectors for joint must be tin-plated electrolytic copper, having ends tapered and having center stops to equalize cable insertion.

2.7.1 Heat-Shrinkable Joint

Consists of a uniform cross-section heat-shrinkable polymeric construction with a linear stress relief system, a high dielectric strength insulating material, and an integrally bonded outer conductor layer for shielding. Replace original cable jacket with a heavy-wall heat-shrinkable sleeve with

hot-melt adhesive coating.

2.7.2 Cold-Shrink Rubber-Type Joint

Joint must be of a cold shrink design that does not require any heat source for its installation. Splice insulation and jacket must be of a one-piece factory formed cold shrink sleeve made of black EPDM rubber. Splice must be packaged three splices per kit, including complete installation instructions.

2.8 TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING

Provide telecommunications cabling in accordance with Section 33 82 00 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTSIDE PLANT (OSP).

2.9 TAPE

2.9.1 Insulating Tape

UL 510, plastic insulating tape, capable of performing in a continuous temperature environment of 80 degrees C.

2.9.2 Buried Warning and Identification Tape

Provide detectable tape in accordance with Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL.

2.9.3 Fireproofing Tape

Provide tape composed of a flexible, conformable, unsupported intumescent elastomer. Tape must be not less than .030 inch thick, noncorrosive to cable sheath, self-extinguishing, noncombustible, adhesive-free, and must not deteriorate when subjected to oil, water, gases, salt water, sewage, and fungus.

2.10 PULL ROPE

Plastic or flat pull line (bull line) having a minimum tensile strength of 200 pounds.

2.11 GROUNDING AND BONDING

2.11.1 Driven Ground Rods

Provide solid copper ground rods conforming to UL 467 not less than 3/4 inch in diameter by 10 feet in length. Sectional type rods may be used for rods 20 feet or longer.

2.11.2 Grounding Conductors

Stranded-bare copper conductors must conform to ASTM B8, Class B, soft-drawn unless otherwise indicated. Solid-bare copper conductors must conform to ASTM B1 for sizes No. 8 and smaller. Insulated conductors must be of the same material as phase conductors and green color-coded, except that conductors must be rated no more than 600 volts. Aluminum is not acceptable.

2.12 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

Provide concrete in accordance with Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE. In addition, provide concrete for encasement of underground ducts with 3000 psi minimum 28-day compressive strength. Concrete associated with electrical work for other than encasement of underground ducts must be 4000 psi minimum 28-day compressive strength unless specified otherwise.

2.13 UNDERGROUND STRUCTURES

Provide precast concrete underground structures as indicated, conforming to ASTM C857 and ASTM C478. Top, walls, and bottom must consist of reinforced concrete. Walls and bottom must be of monolithic concrete construction. Locate duct entrances and windows near the corners of structures to facilitate cable racking. Covers must fit the frames without undue play. Form steel and iron to shape and size with sharp lines and angles. Castings must be free from warp and blow holes that may impair strength or appearance. Exposed metal must have a smooth finish and sharp lines and arises. Provide necessary lugs, rabbets, and brackets. Set pulling-in irons and other built-in items in place before depositing concrete. Install a pulling-in iron in the wall opposite each duct line entrance. Cable racks, including rack arms and insulators, must be adequate to accommodate the cable.

2.13.1 Precast Concrete Structures, Risers and Tops

Precast units must be the product of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of precast concrete products, including precast manholes.

2.13.1.1 General

Precast concrete structures must have the same accessories and facilities as required for cast-in-place structures. Likewise, precast structures must have plan area and clear heights not less than those of cast-in-place structures. Concrete materials and methods of construction must be the same as for cast-in-place concrete construction, as modified herein. Slope in floor may be omitted provided precast sections are poured in reinforced steel forms. Concrete for precast work must have a 28-day compressive strength of not less than 4000 psi. Structures may be precast to the design and details indicated for cast-in-place construction, precast monolithically and placed as a unit, or structures may be assembled sections, designed and produced by the manufacturer in accordance with the requirements specified. Structures must be identified with the manufacturer's name embedded in or otherwise permanently attached to an interior wall face.

2.13.1.2 Design for Precast Structures

ACI 318M. In the absence of detailed on-site soil information, design for the following soil parameters/site conditions:

- a. Angle of Internal Friction (ϕ) = 30 degrees
- b. Unit Weight of Soil (Dry) = 110 pcf, (Saturated)
= 130 pcf
- c. Coefficient of Lateral Earth Pressure (K_a) = 0.33

- d. Ground Water Level = 3 feet below ground elevation
- e. Vertical design loads must include full dead, superimposed dead, and live loads including a 30 percent magnification factor for impact. Live loads must consider all types and magnitudes of vehicular (automotive, industrial, or aircraft) traffic to be encountered. The minimum design vertical load must be for H20 highway loading per AASHTO HB-17.
- f. Horizontal design loads must include full geostatic and hydrostatic pressures for the soil parameters, water table, and depth of installation to be encountered. Also, horizontal loads imposed by adjacent structure foundations, and horizontal load components of vertical design loads, including impact, must be considered, along with a pulling-in iron design load of 6000 pounds.
- g. Each structural component must be designed for the load combination and positioning resulting in the maximum shear and moment for that particular component.
- h. Design must also consider the live loads induced in the handling, installation, and backfilling of the manholes. Provide lifting devices to ensure structural integrity during handling and installation.

2.13.1.3 Construction

Structure top, bottom, and wall must be of a uniform thickness of not less than 6 inches. Thin-walled knock-out panels for designed or future duct bank entrances are not permitted. Provide quantity, size, and location of duct bank entrance windows as directed, and cast completely open by the precaster. Size of windows must exceed the nominal duct bank envelope dimensions by at least 12 inches vertically and horizontally to preclude in-field window modifications made necessary by duct bank misalignment. However, the sides of precast windows must be a minimum of 6 inches from the inside surface of adjacent walls, floors, or ceilings. Form the perimeter of precast window openings to have a keyed or inward flared surface to provide a positive interlock with the mating duct bank envelope. Provide welded wire fabric reinforcing through window openings for in-field cutting and flaring into duct bank envelopes. Provide additional reinforcing steel comprised of at least two No. 4 bars around window openings. Provide drain sumps a minimum of 12 inches in diameter and 4 inches deep for precast structures.

2.13.1.4 Joints

Provide tongue-and-groove joints on mating edges of precast components. Shiplap joints are not allowed. Design joints to firmly interlock adjoining components and to provide waterproof junctions and adequate shear transfer. Seal joints watertight using preformed plastic strip conforming to ASTM C990. Install sealing material in strict accordance with the sealant manufacturer's printed instructions. Provide waterproofing at conduit/duct entrances into structures, and where access frame meets the top slab, provide continuous grout seal.

2.13.2 Manhole Frames and Covers

Provide cast iron frames and covers for manholes conforming to CID A-A-60005. Cast the words "ELECTRIC" or "TELECOMMUNICATIONS" in the top face of power and telecommunications manhole covers, respectively.

2.13.3 Handhole Frames and Covers

Frames and covers of steel must be welded by qualified welders in accordance with standard commercial practice. Steel covers must be rolled-steel floor plate having an approved antislip surface. Hinges must be of stainless steel with bronze hinge pin , 5 by 5 inches by approximately 3/16 inch thick, without screw holes, and must be for full surface application by fillet welding. Hinges must have nonremovable pins and five knuckles. The surfaces of plates under hinges must be true after the removal of raised antislip surface, by grinding or other approved method.

2.13.4 Brick for Manhole Collar

Provide sewer and manhole brick conforming to ASTM C32, Grade MS.

2.13.5 Composite/Fiberglass Handholes and Covers

ANSI/SCTE 77. Provide handholes and covers of polymer concrete, reinforced with heavy weave fiberglass with a design load (Tier rating) appropriate for or greater than the intended use. All covers are required to have the Tier level rating embossed on the surface and this rating must not exceed the design load of the box.

2.14 CABLE SUPPORTS (RACKS, ARMS, AND INSULATORS)

The metal portion of racks and arms must be zinc-coated after fabrication.

2.14.1 Cable Rack Stanchions

The wall bracket or stanchion must be 4 inches by approximately 1-1/2 inch by 3/16 inch channel steel, or 4 inches by approximately 1 inch glass-reinforced nylon with recessed bolt mounting holes, 48 inches long (minimum) in manholes. Slots for mounting cable rack arms must be spaced at 8 inch intervals.

2.14.2 Rack Arms

Cable rack arms must be steel or malleable iron or glass reinforced nylon and must be of the removable type. Rack arm length must be a minimum of 8 inches and a maximum of 12 inches.

2.14.3 Insulators

Insulators for metal rack arms must be dry-process glazed porcelain. Insulators are not required for nylon arms.

2.15 CABLE TAGS IN MANHOLES

Provide tags for each power cable located in manholes. The tags must be polyethylene. Do not provide handwritten letters. The first position on the power cable tag must denote the voltage. The second through sixth positions on the tag must identify the circuit. The next to last position must denote the phase of the circuit and include the Greek "phi" symbol. The last position must denote the cable size. As an example, a tag could have the following designation: "11.5 NAS 1-8(Phase A)500," denoting that the tagged cable is on the 11.5kV system circuit number NAS 1-8, underground, Phase A, sized at 500 kcmil.

2.15.1 Polyethylene Cable Tags

Provide tags of polyethylene that have an average tensile strength of 3250 pounds per square inch; and that are 0.08 inch thick (minimum), non-corrosive non-conductive; resistive to acids, alkalis, organic solvents, and salt water; and distortion resistant to 170 degrees F. Provide 0.05 inch (minimum) thick black polyethylene tag holder. Provide a one-piece nylon, self-locking tie at each end of the cable tag. Ties must have a minimum loop tensile strength of 175 pounds. The cable tags must have black block letters, numbers, and symbols one inch high on a yellow background. Letters, numbers, and symbols must not fall off or change positions regardless of the cable tags' orientation.

2.16 MEDIUM VOLTAGE ABOVE GROUND CABLE TERMINATING CABINETS

Cable terminating cabinets must be hook-stick operable, deadfront construction conforming to the requirements of IEEE C37.20.3, Category A. Provide cabinets with 200 A. loadbreak junctions and elbow-type separable loadbreak connectors, cable parking stands, and grounding lugs. Provide cable terminating equipment in conformance with IEEE 386.

Ratings at 60 Hz must be:

Nominal voltage (kV)	12.47
Rated maximum voltage (kV)	15
Rated continuous current (A)	200
One-second short-time current-carrying capacity (kA)	10,000
BIL (kV)	95

2.17 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

2.17.1 Arc-Proofing Test for Cable Fireproofing Tape

Manufacturer must test one sample assembly consisting of a straight lead tube 12 inches long with a 2 1/2 inch outside diameter, and a 1/8 inch thick wall, and covered with one-half lap layer of arc and fireproofing tape per manufacturer's instructions. The arc and fireproofing tape must withstand extreme temperature of a high-current fault arc 13,000 degrees K for 70 cycles as determined by using an argon directed plasma jet capable of constantly producing and maintaining an arc temperature of 13,000 degrees K. Temperature (13,000 degrees K) of the ignited arc between the cathode and anode must be obtained from a dc power source of 305 (plus or minus 5) amperes and 20 (plus or minus 1) volts. The arc must be directed toward the sample assembly accurately positioned 5 (plus or minus 1) millimeters downstream in the plasma from the anode orifice by fixed flow rate of argon gas (0.18 g per second). Each sample assembly must be tested at three unrelated points. Start time for tests must be taken from recorded peak current when the specimen is exposed to the full test temperature. Surface heat on the specimen prior to that time must be minimal. The end point is established when the plasma or conductive arc penetrates the protective tape and strikes the lead tube. Submittals for arc-proofing tape must indicate that the test has been performed and passed by the manufacturer.

2.17.2 Medium Voltage Cable Qualification and Production Tests

Results of **AEIC CS8** qualification and production tests as applicable for each type of medium voltage cable.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Install equipment and devices in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions and with the requirements and recommendations of **NFPA 70** and **IEEE C2** as applicable. In addition to these requirements, install telecommunications in accordance with **TIA-758** and **RUS Bull 1751F-644**.

3.2 CABLE INSPECTION

Inspect each cable reel for correct storage positions, signs of physical damage, and broken end seals prior to installation. If end seal is broken, remove moisture from cable prior to installation in accordance with the cable manufacturer's recommendations.

3.3 UNDERGROUND FEEDERS SUPPLYING BUILDINGS

Terminate underground feeders supplying building at a point **5 feet** outside the building and projections thereof, except that conductors must be continuous to the terminating point indicated. Coordinate connections of the feeders to the service entrance equipment with Section **26 20 00** INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Provide PVC, Type EPC-40 conduit from the supply equipment to a point **5 feet** outside the building and projections thereof. Protect ends of underground conduit with plastic plugs until connections are made.

3.4 UNDERGROUND STRUCTURE CONSTRUCTION

Provide standard type cast-in-place construction as specified herein and as indicated, or precast construction as specified herein. Horizontal concrete surfaces of floors must have a smooth trowel finish. Cure concrete by applying two coats of white pigmented membrane forming-curing compound in strict accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions, except that precast concrete may be steam cured. Curing compound must conform to **ASTM C309**. Locate duct entrances and windows in the center of end walls (shorter) and near the corners of sidewalls (longer) to facilitate cable racking and splicing. Covers for underground structures must fit the frames without undue play. Steel and iron must be formed to shape and size with sharp lines and angles. Castings must be free from warp and blow holes that may impair strength or appearance. Exposed metal must have a smooth finish and sharp lines and arises. Provide necessary lugs, rabbets, and brackets. Set pulling-in irons and other built-in items in place before depositing concrete. Manhole locations, as indicated, are approximate. Coordinate exact manhole locations with other utilities and finished grading and paving.

3.4.1 Precast Concrete Construction

Set commercial precast structures on **6 inches** of level, 90 percent compacted granular fill, **3/4 inch to 1 inch** size, extending **12 inches** beyond the structure on each side. Compact granular fill by a minimum of four passes with a plate type vibrator. Installation must additionally

conform to the manufacturer's instructions.

3.4.2 Pulling-In Irons

Provide steel bars bent as indicated, and cast in the walls and floors. Alternatively, pipe sleeves may be precast into the walls and floors where required to accept U-bolts or other types of pulling-in devices possessing the strengths and clearances stated herein. The final installation of pulling-in devices must be made permanent. Cover and seal exterior projections of thru-wall type pulling-in devices with an appropriate protective coating. In the floor the irons must be a minimum of 6 inches from the edge of the sump, and in the walls the irons must be located within 6 inches of the projected center of the duct bank pattern or precast window in the opposite wall. However, the pulling-in iron must not be located within 6 inches of an adjacent interior surface, or duct or precast window located within the same wall as the iron. If a pulling-in iron cannot be located directly opposite the corresponding duct bank or precast window due to this clearance limitation, locate the iron directly above or below the projected center of the duct bank pattern or precast window the minimum distance required to preserve the 6 inch clearance previously stated. In the case of directly opposing precast windows, pulling-in irons consisting of a 3 foot length of No. 5 reinforcing bar, formed into a hairpin, may be cast-in-place within the precast windows simultaneously with the end of the corresponding duct bank envelope. Irons installed in this manner must be positioned directly in line with, or when not possible, directly above or below the projected center of the duct bank pattern entering the opposite wall, while maintaining a minimum clear distance of 3 inches from any edge of the cast-in-place duct bank envelope or any individual duct. Pulling-in irons must have a clear projection into the structure of approximately 4 inches and must be designed to withstand a minimum pulling-in load of 6000 pounds. Irons must be hot-dipped galvanized after fabrication.

3.4.3 Cable Racks, Arms and Insulators

Cable racks, arms and insulators must be sufficient to accommodate the cables. Space racks in power manholes not more than 3 feet apart, and provide each manhole wall with a minimum of two racks. Space racks in signal manholes not more than 16 1/2 inches apart with the end rack being no further than 12 inches from the adjacent wall. Methods of anchoring cable racks must be as follows:

- a. Provide a 5/8 inch diameter by 5 inch long anchor bolt with 3 inch foot cast in structure wall with 2 inch protrusion of threaded portion of bolt into structure. Provide 5/8 inch steel square head nut on each anchor bolt. Coat threads of anchor bolts with suitable coating immediately prior to installing nuts.
- b. Provide concrete channel insert with a minimum load rating of 800 pounds per foot. Insert channel must be steel of the same length as "vertical rack channel;" channel insert must be cast flush in structure wall. Provide 5/8 inch steel nuts in channel insert to receive 5/8 inch diameter by 3 inch long steel, square head anchor bolts.
- c. Provide concrete "spot insert" at each anchor bolt location, cast flush in structure wall. Each insert must have minimum 800 pound load rating. Provide 5/8 inch diameter by 3 inch long steel, square head anchor bolt at each anchor point. Coat threads of anchor bolts with suitable coating immediately prior to installing bolts.

3.4.4 Field Painting

Cast-iron frames and covers not buried in concrete or masonry must be cleaned of mortar, rust, grease, dirt and other deleterious materials, and given a coat of bituminous paint.

3.5 DIRECT BURIAL CABLE SYSTEM

3.5.1 Trenching

Excavate trenches for direct-burial cables to provide a minimum cable cover of 24 inches below finished grade for power conductors operated at 600 volts or less, and 30 inches below finished grade for over 600 volts in accordance with IEEE C2. When rock is encountered, remove to a depth of at least 3 inches below the cable and fill the space with sand or clean earth free from particles larger than 1/4 inch. Bottoms of trenches must be smooth and free of stones and sharp objects. Where materials in bottoms of trenches are other than sand, a 75 mm 3 inch layer of sand must be laid first and compacted to approximate densities of surrounding firm soil. Trenches must be not less than 8 inches wide, and must be in straight lines between cable markers. Cable plows must not be used. Bends in trenches must have a radius consistent with the cable manufacturer's published minimum cable bending radius for the cable installed.

3.5.2 Cable Installation

Unreel cables along the sides of or in trenches and carefully place on sand or earth bottoms. Pulling cables into direct-burial trenches from a fixed reel position is not permitted, except as required to pull cables through conduits under paving or railroad tracks.

Where two or more cables are laid parallel in the same trench, space cables laterally at not less than 3 inches apart, except that communication cable must be separated from power cable by a minimum distance of 12 inches.

Ducts must extend at least 5 feet beyond each edge of any paving and at least 5 feet beyond each side of any railroad tracks. Cables may be pulled into duct from a fixed reel where suitable rollers are provided in the trench. Where direct burial cable transitions to duct-enclosed cable, direct-burial cables must be centered in duct entrances, and a waterproof nonhardening mastic compound must be used to facilitate such centering. If paving or railroad tracks are in place where cables are to be installed, coated rigid steel conduits driven under the paving or railroad tracks may be used in lieu of concrete-encased ducts. Prevent damage to conduit coatings by providing ferrous pipe jackets or by predrilling. Where cuts are made in any paving, the paving and subbase must be restored to their original condition. Where cable is placed in duct (e.g. under paved areas, roads, or railroads), slope ducts to drain.

3.5.3 Splicing

Provide cables in one piece without splices between connections except where the distance exceeds the lengths in which cables are manufactured.

3.5.4 Bends

Bends in cables must have an inner radius not less than those specified in NFPA 70 for the type of cable, or manufacturer's recommendation.

3.5.5 Horizontal Slack

Leave approximately 3 feet of horizontal slack in the ground on each end of cable runs, on each side of connection boxes, and at points where connections are brought above ground. Where cable is brought above ground, leave additional slack to make necessary connections.

3.5.6 Identification Slabs or Markers

Provide a slab at each change of direction of cable, over the ends of ducts or conduits which are installed under paved areas and roadways, over the ends of ducts or conduits stubbed out for future use. Identification slabs must be of concrete, approximately 20 inches square by 6 inches thick and must be set flat in the ground so that top surface projects not less than 3/4 inch, nor more than 1 1/4 inches above ground. Concrete must have a compressive strength of not less than 3000 psi and have a smooth troweled finish on exposed surface. Inscribe an identifying legend such as "electric cable," "telephone cable," "splice," or other applicable designation on the top surface of the slab before concrete hardens. Inscribe circuit identification symbols on slabs as indicated. Letters or figures must be approximately 2 inches high and grooves must be approximately 1/4 inch in width and depth. Install slabs so that the side nearest the inscription on top must include an arrow indicating the side nearest the cable. Provide color, type and depth of warning tape as specified in Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL.

3.6 UNDERGROUND CONDUIT AND DUCT SYSTEMS

3.6.1 Requirements

Run conduit in straight lines except where a change of direction is necessary. Provide numbers and sizes of ducts as indicated. Ducts must have a continuous slope downward toward underground structures and away from buildings, laid with a minimum slope of 3 inches per 100 feet. Depending on the contour of the finished grade, the high-point may be at a terminal, a manhole, a handhole, or between manholes or handholes. Provide ducts with end bells whenever duct lines terminate in structures.

Perform changes in ductbank direction as follows:

- a. Short-radius manufactured 90-degree duct bends may be used only for pole or equipment risers, unless specifically indicated as acceptable.
- b. The minimum manufactured bend radius must be 18 inches for ducts of less than 3 inch diameter, and 36 inches for ducts 3 inches or greater in diameter.
- c. As an exception to the bend radius required above, provide field manufactured longsweep bends having a minimum radius of 25 feet for a change of direction of more than 5 degrees, either horizontally or vertically, using a combination of curved and straight sections. Maximum manufactured curved sections: 30 degrees.

3.6.2 Treatment

Ducts must be kept clean of concrete, dirt, or foreign substances during construction. Field cuts requiring tapers must be made with proper tools and match factory tapers. A coupling recommended by the duct manufacturer

must be used whenever an existing duct is connected to a duct of different material or shape. Ducts must be stored to avoid warping and deterioration with ends sufficiently plugged to prevent entry of any water or solid substances. Ducts must be thoroughly cleaned before being laid. Plastic ducts must be stored on a flat surface and protected from the direct rays of the sun.

3.6.3 Conduit Cleaning

As each conduit run is completed, for conduit sizes 3 inches and larger, draw a flexible testing mandrel approximately 12 inches long with a diameter less than the inside diameter of the conduit through the conduit. After which, draw a stiff bristle brush through until conduit is clear of particles of earth, sand and gravel; then immediately install conduit plugs. For conduit sizes less than 3 inches, draw a stiff bristle brush through until conduit is clear of particles of earth, sand and gravel; then immediately install conduit plugs.

3.6.4 Jacking and Drilling Under Roads and Structures

Conduits to be installed under existing paved areas which are not to be disturbed, and under roads and railroad tracks, must be zinc-coated, rigid steel, jacked into place. Where ducts are jacked under existing pavement, rigid steel conduit must be installed because of its strength. To protect the corrosion-resistant conduit coating, predrilling or installing conduit inside a larger iron pipe sleeve (jack-and-sleeve) is required. For crossings of existing railroads and airfield pavements greater than 50 feet in length, the predrilling method or the jack-and-sleeve method will be used. Separators or spacing blocks must be made of steel, concrete, plastic, or a combination of these materials placed not farther apart than 4 feet on centers. Hydraulic jet method must not be used.

3.6.5 Galvanized Conduit Concrete Penetrations

Galvanized conduits which penetrate concrete (slabs, pavement, and walls) in wet locations must be PVC coated and must extend from at least 2 inches within the concrete to the first coupling or fitting outside the concrete (minimum of 6 inches from penetration).

3.6.6 Multiple Conduits

Separate multiple conduits by a minimum distance of 3 inches, except that light and power conduits must be separated from control, signal, and telephone conduits by a minimum distance of 12 inches. Stagger the joints of the conduits by rows (horizontally) and layers (vertically) to strengthen the conduit assembly. Provide plastic duct spacers that interlock vertically and horizontally. Spacer assembly must consist of base spacers, intermediate spacers, ties, and locking device on top to provide a completely enclosed and locked-in conduit assembly. Install spacers per manufacturer's instructions, but provide a minimum of two spacer assemblies per 10 feet of conduit assembly.

3.6.7 Conduit Plugs and Pull Rope

New conduit indicated as being unused or empty must be provided with plugs on each end. Plugs must contain a weephole or screen to allow water drainage. Provide a plastic pull rope having 3 feet of slack at each end of unused or empty conduits.

3.6.8 Conduit and Duct Without Concrete Encasement

Depths to top of the conduit must be not less than 24 inches below finished grade. Provide not less than 3 inches clearance from the conduit to each side of the trench. Grade bottom of trench smooth; where rock, soft spots, or sharp-edged materials are encountered, excavate the bottom for an additional 3 inches, fill and tamp level with original bottom with sand or earth free from particles, that would be retained on a 1/4 inch sieve. The first 6 inch layer of backfill cover must be sand compacted as previously specified. The rest of the excavation must be backfilled and compacted in 3 to 6 inch layers. Provide color, type and depth of warning tape as specified in Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL.

3.6.8.1 Encasement Under Roads and Structures

Under roads, paved areas, and railroad tracks, install conduits in concrete encasement of rectangular cross-section providing a minimum of 3 inch concrete cover around ducts. Concrete encasement must extend at least 5 feet beyond the edges of paved areas and roads, and 12 feet beyond the rails on each side of railroad tracks. Depths to top of the concrete envelope must be not less than 24 inches below finished grade.

3.6.9 Duct Encased in Concrete

Construct underground duct lines of individual conduits encased in concrete. Depths to top of the concrete envelope must be not less than 18 inches below finished grade, except under roads and pavement, concrete envelope must be not less than 24 inches below finished grade. Do not mix different kinds of conduit in any one duct bank. Concrete encasement surrounding the bank must be rectangular in cross-section and must provide at least 3 inches of concrete cover for ducts. Separate conduits by a minimum concrete thickness of 3 inches. Before pouring concrete, anchor duct bank assemblies to prevent the assemblies from floating during concrete pouring. Anchoring must be done by driving reinforcing rods adjacent to duct spacer assemblies and attaching the rods to the spacer assembly. Provide steel reinforcing in the concrete envelope as indicated.

Provide color, type and depth of warning tape as specified in Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL.

3.6.9.1 Connections to Manholes

Duct bank envelopes connecting to underground structures must be flared to have enlarged cross-section at the manhole entrance to provide additional shear strength. Dimensions of the flared cross-section must be larger than the corresponding manhole opening dimensions by no less than 12 inches in each direction. Perimeter of the duct bank opening in the underground structure must be flared toward the inside or keyed to provide a positive interlock between the duct bank and the wall of the structure. Use vibrators when this portion of the encasement is poured to assure a seal between the envelope and the wall of the structure.

3.6.9.2 Partially Completed Duct Banks

During construction wherever a construction joint is necessary in a duct bank, prevent debris such as mud, and, and dirt from entering ducts by providing suitable conduit plugs. Fit concrete envelope of a partially completed duct bank with reinforcing steel extending a minimum of 2 feet back into the envelope and a minimum of 2 feet beyond the end of the envelope. Provide one No. 4 bar in each corner, 3 inches from the edge of

the envelope. Secure corner bars with two No. 3 ties, spaced approximately one foot apart. Restrain reinforcing assembly from moving during concrete pouring.

3.6.10 Duct Sealing

Seal all electrical penetrations for radon mitigation, maintaining integrity of the vapor barrier, and to prevent infiltration of air, insects, and vermin.

3.7 CABLE PULLING

Pull cables down grade with the feed-in point at the manhole or buildings of the highest elevation. Use flexible cable feeds to convey cables through manhole opening and into duct runs. Do not exceed the specified cable bending radii when installing cable under any conditions, including turnups into switches, transformers, switchgear, switchboards, and other enclosures. Cable with tape or wire shield must have a bending radius not less than 12 times the overall diameter of the completed cable. If basket-grip type cable-pulling devices are used to pull cable in place, cut off the section of cable under the grip before splicing and terminating.

3.7.1 Cable Lubricants

Use lubricants that are specifically recommended by the cable manufacturer for assisting in pulling jacketed cables.

3.8 CABLES IN UNDERGROUND STRUCTURES

Do not install cables utilizing the shortest path between penetrations, but route along those walls providing the longest route and the maximum spare cable lengths. Form cables to closely parallel walls, not to interfere with duct entrances, and support on brackets and cable insulators. Support cable splices in underground structures by racks on each side of the splice. Locate splices to prevent cyclic bending in the spliced sheath. Install cables at middle and bottom of cable racks, leaving top space open for future cables, except as otherwise indicated for existing installations. Provide one spare three-insulator rack arm for each cable rack in each underground structure.

3.8.1 Cable Tag Installation

Install cable tags in each manhole as specified, including each splice. Tag wire and cable provided by this contract. Install cable tags over the fireproofing, if any, and locate the tags so that they are clearly visible without disturbing any cabling or wiring in the manholes.

3.9 CONDUCTORS INSTALLED IN PARALLEL

Conductors must be grouped such that each conduit of a parallel run contains 1 Phase A conductor, 1 Phase B conductor, 1 Phase C conductor, and 1 neutral conductor.

3.10 LOW VOLTAGE CABLE SPLICING AND TERMINATING

Make terminations and splices with materials and methods as indicated or specified herein and as designated by the written instructions of the manufacturer. Do not allow the cables to be moved until after the splicing

material has completely set. 3.11 MEDIUM VOLTAGE CABLE TERMINATIONS

Make terminations in accordance with the written instruction of the termination kit manufacturer.

3.12 MEDIUM VOLTAGE CABLE JOINTS

Provide power cable joints (splices) suitable for continuous immersion in water. Make joints only in accessible locations in manholes or handholes by using materials and methods in accordance with the written instructions of the joint kit manufacturer.

3.12.1 Joints in Shielded Cables

Cover the joined area with metallic tape, or material like the original cable shield and connect it to the cable shield on each side of the splice. Provide a bare copper ground connection brought out in a watertight manner and grounded to the manhole grounding loop as part of the splice installation. Ground conductors, connections, and rods must be as specified elsewhere in this section. Wire must be trained to the sides of the enclosure to prevent interference with the working area.

3.13 CABLE END CAPS

Cable ends must be sealed at all times with coated heat shrinkable end caps. Cables ends must be sealed when the cable is delivered to the job site, while the cable is stored and during installation of the cable. The caps must remain in place until the cable is spliced or terminated. Sealing compounds and tape are not acceptable substitutes for heat shrinkable end caps. Cable which is not sealed in the specified manner at all times will be rejected.

3.14 FIREPROOFING OF CABLES IN UNDERGROUND STRUCTURES

Fireproof (arc proof) wire and cables which will carry current at 2200 volts or more in underground structures.

3.14.1 Fireproofing Tape

Tightly wrap strips of fireproofing tape around each cable spirally in half-lapped wrapping. Install tape in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.15 GROUNDING SYSTEMS

NFPA 70 and IEEE C2, except provide grounding systems with a resistance to solid earth ground not exceeding 25 ohms.

3.15.1 Grounding Electrodes

Provide cone pointed driven ground rods driven full depth plus 6 inches, installed to provide an earth ground of the appropriate value for the particular equipment being grounded. If the specified ground resistance is not met, an additional ground rod must be provided in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 70 (placed not less than 6 feet from the first rod). Should the resultant (combined) resistance exceed the specified resistance, measured not less than 48 hours after rainfall, notify the Contracting Officer immediately.

3.15.2 Grounding Connections

Make grounding connections which are buried or otherwise normally inaccessible, by exothermic weld or compression connector.

- a. Make exothermic welds strictly in accordance with the weld manufacturer's written recommendations. Welds which are "puffed up" or which show convex surfaces indicating improper cleaning are not acceptable. Mechanical connectors are not required at exothermic welds.
- b. Make compression connections using a hydraulic compression tool to provide the correct circumferential pressure. Tools and dies must be as recommended by the manufacturer. An embossing die code or other standard method must provide visible indication that a connector has been adequately compressed on the ground wire.

3.15.3 Grounding Conductors

Provide bare grounding conductors, except where installed in conduit with associated phase conductors. Ground cable sheaths, cable shields, conduit, and equipment with No. 6 AWG. Ground other noncurrent-carrying metal parts and equipment frames of metal-enclosed equipment. Ground metallic frames and covers of handholes and pull boxes with a braided, copper ground strap with equivalent ampacity of No. 6 AWG.

3.15.4 Ground Cable Crossing Expansion Joints

Protect ground cables crossing expansion joints or similar separations in structures and pavements by use of approved devices or methods of installation which provide the necessary slack in the cable across the joint to permit movement. Use stranded or other approved flexible copper cable across such separations.

3.15.5 Manhole Grounding

Loop a 4/0 AWG grounding conductor around the interior perimeter, approximately 12 inches above finished floor. Secure the conductor to the manhole walls at intervals not exceeding 36 inches. Connect the conductor to the manhole grounding electrode with 4/0 AWG conductor. Connect all incoming 4/0 grounding conductors to the ground loop adjacent to the point of entry into the manhole. Bond the ground loop to all cable shields, metal cable racks, and other metal equipment with a minimum 6 AWG conductor.

3.15.6 Fence Grounding

Provide grounding for fences with a ground rod at each fixed gate post and at each corner post. Drive ground rods until the top is 12 inches below grade. Attach a No. 4 AWG copper conductor, by exothermic weld to the ground rods and extend underground to the immediate vicinity of fence post. Lace the conductor vertically into 12 inches of fence mesh and fasten by two approved bronze compression fittings, one to bond wire to post and the other to bond wire to fence. Each gate section must be bonded to its gatepost by a 1/8 by one inch flexible braided copper strap and ground post clamps. Clamps must be of the anti-electrolysis type.

3.16 EXCAVATING, BACKFILLING, AND COMPACTING

Provide in accordance with NFPA 70 and Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL.

3.16.1 Reconditioning of Surfaces

3.16.1.1 Unpaved Surfaces

Restore to their original elevation and condition unpaved surfaces disturbed during installation of duct . Preserve sod and topsoil removed during excavation and reinstall after backfilling is completed. Replace sod that is damaged by sod of quality equal to that removed. When the surface is disturbed in a newly seeded area, re-seed the restored surface with the same quantity and formula of seed as that used in the original seeding, and provide topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, or mulching. Provide work in accordance with Section Section 32 93 00 EXTERIOR PLANTS.

3.17 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

3.17.1 Concrete Slabs (Pads) for Equipment

Unless otherwise indicated, the slab must be at least 8 inches thick, reinforced with a 6 by 6 - W2.9 by W2.9 mesh, placed uniformly 4 inches from the top of the slab. Slab must be placed on a 6 inch thick, well-compacted gravel base. Top of concrete slab must be approximately 4 inches above finished grade with gradual slope for drainage. Edges above grade must have 1/2 inch chamfer. Slab must be of adequate size to project at least 8 inches beyond the equipment.

Stub up conduits, with bushings, 2 inches into cable wells in the concrete pad. Coordinate dimensions of cable wells with transformer cable training areas.

3.17.2 Sealing

When the installation is complete, seal all conduit and other entries into the equipment enclosure with an approved sealing compound. Seals must be of sufficient strength and durability to protect all energized live parts of the equipment from rodents, insects, or other foreign matter.

3.18 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.18.1 Performance of Field Acceptance Checks and Tests

Perform in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and include the following visual and mechanical inspections and electrical tests, performed in accordance with NETA ATS.

3.18.1.1 Medium Voltage Cables

Perform tests after installation of cable, splices, and terminators and before terminating to equipment or splicing to existing circuits.

a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection

- (1) Inspect exposed cable sections for physical damage.
- (2) Verify that cable is supplied and connected in accordance with contract plans and specifications.
- (3) Inspect for proper shield grounding, cable support, and cable

termination.

- (4) Verify that cable bends are not less than ICEA or manufacturer's minimum allowable bending radius.
- (5) Inspect for proper fireproofing.
- (6) Visually inspect jacket and insulation condition.
- (7) Inspect for proper phase identification and arrangement.

b. Electrical Tests

- (1) Perform a shield continuity test on each power cable by ohmmeter method. Record ohmic value, resistance values in excess of 10 ohms per 1000 feet of cable must be investigated and justified.
- (2) Perform acceptance test on new cables before the new cables are connected to existing cables and placed into service, including terminations and joints. Perform maintenance test on complete cable system after the new cables are connected to existing cables and placed into service, including existing cable, terminations, and joints. Tests must be very low frequency (VLF) alternating voltage withstand tests in accordance with IEEE 400.2. VLF test frequency must be 0.05 Hz minimum for a duration of 60 minutes using a sinusoidal waveform. Test voltages must be as follows:

CABLE RATING AC TEST VOLTAGE for ACCEPTANCE TESTING	
15 kV	20kV rms (peak)

CABLE RATING AC TEST VOLTAGE for MAINTENANCE TESTING	
15 kV	16kV rms (peak)

3.18.1.2 Low Voltage Cables, 600-Volt

Perform tests after installation of cable, splices and terminations and before terminating to equipment or splicing to existing circuits.

a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection

- (1) Inspect exposed cable sections for physical damage.
- (2) Verify that cable is supplied and connected in accordance with contract plans and specifications.
- (3) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections.
- (4) Inspect compression-applied connectors for correct cable match and indentation.
- (5) Visually inspect jacket and insulation condition.
- (6) Inspect for proper phase identification and arrangement.

b. Electrical Tests

- (1) Perform insulation resistance tests on wiring No. 6 AWG and larger diameter using instrument which applies voltage of approximately 1000 volts dc for one minute.
- (2) Perform continuity tests to insure correct cable connection.

3.18.1.3 Grounding System

a. Visual and mechanical inspection

Inspect ground system for compliance with contract plans and specifications.

b. Electrical tests

Perform ground-impedance measurements utilizing the fall-of-potential method in accordance with IEEE 81. On systems consisting of interconnected ground rods, perform tests after interconnections are complete. On systems consisting of a single ground rod perform tests before any wire is connected. Take measurements in normally dry weather, not less than 48 hours after rainfall. Use a portable ground resistance tester in accordance with manufacturer's instructions to test each ground or group of grounds. The instrument must be equipped with a meter reading directly in ohms or fractions thereof to indicate the ground value of the ground rod or grounding systems under test. Provide site diagram indicating location of test probes with associated distances, and provide a plot of resistance vs. distance.

3.18.2 Follow-Up Verification

Upon completion of acceptance checks and tests, show by demonstration in service that circuits and devices are in good operating condition and properly performing the intended function. As an exception to requirements stated elsewhere in the contract, the Contracting Officer must be given 5 working days advance notice of the dates and times of checking and testing.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 33 82 00

TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTSIDE PLANT (OSP)

06/17

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM B1	(2013) Standard Specification for Hard-Drawn Copper Wire
ASTM B8	(2011) Standard Specification for Concentric-Lay-Stranded Copper Conductors, Hard, Medium-Hard, or Soft
ASTM D698	(2012; E 2014; E 2015) Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/cu. ft. (600 kN-m/cu. m.))
ASTM D709	(2016) Standard Specification for Laminated Thermosetting Materials

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 100	(2000; Archived) The Authoritative Dictionary of IEEE Standards Terms
IEEE C2	(2017) National Electrical Safety Code

INSULATED CABLE ENGINEERS ASSOCIATION (ICEA)

ICEA S-87-640	(2016) Optical Fiber Outside Plant Communications Cable; 4th Edition
ICEA S-98-688	(2012) Broadband Twisted Pair Telecommunication Cable, Aircore, Polyolefin Insulated, Copper Conductors Technical Requirements
ICEA S-99-689	(2012) Broadband Twisted Pair Telecommunication Cable Filled, Polyolefin Insulated, Copper Conductors Technical Requirements

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

ANSI C62.61	(1993) American National Standard for Gas Tube Surge Arresters on Wire Line Telephone Circuits

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2017) National Electrical Code

TELECOMMUNICATIONS INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION (TIA)

TIA-455-107 (1999a) FOTP-107 Determination of Component Reflectance or Link/System Return Loss using a Loss Test Set

TIA-455-78-B (2002) FOTP-78 Optical Fibres - Part 1-40: Measurement Methods and Test Procedures - Attenuation

TIA-472D000 (2007b) Fiber Optic Communications Cable for Outside Plant Use

TIA-492CAAA (1998; R 2002) Detail Specification for Class IVa Dispersion-Unshifted Single-Mode Optical Fibers

TIA-492E000 (1996; R 2002) Sectional Specification for Class IVd Nonzero-Dispersion Single-Mode Optical Fibers for the 1550 nm Window

TIA-526-14 (2015c) OFSTP-14A Optical Power Loss Measurements of Installed Multimode Fiber Cable Plant

TIA-526-7 (2015a) OFSTP-7 Measurement of Optical Power Loss of Installed Single-Mode Fiber Cable Plant

TIA-568-C.1 (2009; Add 2 2011; Add 1 2012) Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard

TIA-568-C.2 (2009; Errata 2010; Add 2 2014; Add 1 2016) Balanced Twisted-Pair Telecommunications Cabling and Components Standards

TIA-568-C.3 (2008; Add 1 2011) Optical Fiber Cabling Components Standard

TIA-569 (2015d) Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces

TIA-590 (1997a) Standard for Physical Location and Protection of Below Ground Fiber Optic Cable Plant

TIA-606 (2012b; Add 1 2015) Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure

TIA-607 (2011b) Generic Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding (Earthing) for Customer Premises

TIA-758	(2012b) Customer-Owned Outside Plant Telecommunications Infrastructure Standard
TIA/EIA-455	(1998b) Standard Test Procedure for Fiber Optic Fibers, Cables, Transducers, Sensors, Connecting and Terminating Devices, and Other Fiber Optic Components
TIA/EIA-455-204	(2000) Standard for Measurement of Bandwidth on Multimode Fiber
TIA/EIA-598	(2014d) Optical Fiber Cable Color Coding

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE (USDA)

RUS 1755	Telecommunications Standards and Specifications for Materials, Equipment and Construction
RUS Bull 1751F-643	(2002) Underground Plant Design
RUS Bull 1751F-815	(1979) Electrical Protection of Outside Plant
RUS Bull 1753F-201	(1997) Acceptance Tests of Telecommunications Plant (PC-4)
RUS Bull 1753F-401	(1995) Splicing Copper and Fiber Optic Cables (PC-2)
RUS Bull 345-65	(1985) Shield Bonding Connectors (PE-65)
RUS Bull 345-72	(1985) Filled Splice Closures (PE-74)
RUS Bull 345-83	(1979; Rev Oct 1982) Gas Tube Surge Arrestors (PE-80)

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 497	(2001; Reprint Jul 2013) Protectors for Paired Conductor Communication Circuits
UL 510	(2005; Reprint Jul 2013) Polyvinyl Chloride, Polyethylene and Rubber Insulating Tape
UL 83	(2014) Thermoplastic-Insulated Wires and Cables

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 27 10 00 BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEM and Section 33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION apply to this section with additions and modifications specified herein.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

Unless otherwise specified or indicated, electrical and electronics terms

used in this specification shall be as defined in TIA-568-C.1, TIA-568-C.2, TIA-568-C.3, TIA-569, TIA-606, and IEEE 100 and herein.

1.3.1 Campus Distributor (CD)

A distributor from which the campus backbone cabling emanates. (International expression for main cross-connect - (MC).) On Camp Lejeune the main cross-connect is established in Area Distribution Nodes (ADN), network operation centers (NOC), or telephone central office serving predesignated areas of the base. Designers should not design any new main cross-connects without approval from TSD (Telecommunications Support Division aka Base Telephone). The campus backbone is outside plant (OSP) back to TSD and a network operations center.

1.3.2 Entrance Facility (EF) (Telecommunications)

An entrance to the building for both private and public network service cables (including antennae, CATV, CCTV, IDS) including the entrance point at the building wall and continuing to the entrance room or space.

1.3.3 Entrance Room (ER) (Telecommunications)

A centralized space for telecommunications equipment that serves the occupants of a building. Equipment housed therein is considered distinct from a telecommunications room because of the nature of its complexity but could be combined within the communications room if additional space needed is allotted.

1.3.4 Building Distributor (BD)

A distributor in which the building backbone cables terminate and at which connections to the campus backbone cables may be made. (International expression for intermediate cross-connect - (IC).)

1.3.5 Pathway

A physical infrastructure utilized for the placement and routing of telecommunications cable.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

The telecommunications outside plant consists of cable, conduit, manholes, splices, protection, riser points, load coils, etc. required to provide signal paths from the closest point of presence (demarcation) to the new facility, including free standing frames or backboards, interconnecting hardware, terminating cables, lightning and surge protection modules at one or both ends of the cable, installed from the entrance facility in building to designated demarcation point. The work consists of providing, testing and making operational cabling, interconnecting hardware and lightning and surge protection necessary to form a complete outside plant telecommunications system for continuous use. The telecommunications contractor must coordinate with TSD concerning layout and configuration of the EF telecommunications and OSP. The telecommunications contractor may be required to coordinate work effort for access to the EF telecommunications and OSP with TSD.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation;

submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

- a. Submittals shall include the manufacturer's name, trade name, place of manufacture, and catalog model or number. Submittals shall also include applicable federal, military, industry, and technical society publication references. Should manufacturer's data require supplemental information for clarification, the supplemental information shall be submitted as specified in paragraph "Regulatory Requirements" and as required for certificates in Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.
- b. Commercial off-the-shelf manuals shall be provided for operation, installation, configuration, and maintenance of products provided as a part of the communications outside plant (OSP). Submit operations and maintenance data in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA and as specified herein not later than 2 months prior to the date of beneficial occupancy. In addition to requirements of Data package 5, include the requirements of paragraphs "Telecommunications Outside Plant Shop Drawings" and "Telecommunications Entrance Facility Drawings".

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Telecommunications Outside Plant; G

Telecommunications Entrance Facility Drawings; G

In addition to Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, provide shop drawings in accordance with paragraph SHOP DRAWINGS.

SD-03 Product Data

Wire and cable; G

Cable splices, and connectors; G

Closures; G

Building protector assemblies; G

Protector modules; G

Cross-connect terminal cabinets; G

Spare Parts; G

Submittals shall include the manufacturer's name, trade name, place of manufacture, and catalog model or number. Submittals shall also include applicable federal, military, industry, and technical society publication references. Should manufacturer's data require supplemental information for clarification, the supplemental information shall be submitted as specified in paragraph REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS and as required for certificates in Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.

SD-06 Test Reports

Pre-installation tests; G

Acceptance tests; G

Outside Plant Test Plan; G

SD-07 Certificates

Telecommunications Contractor Qualifications; G

Key Personnel Qualifications; G

Minimum Manufacturer's Qualifications; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Building protector assembly installation; G

Cable tensions; G

Fiber Optic Splices; G

Submit instructions prior to installation.

SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Reports

Factory Reel Test Data; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Telecommunications outside plant (OSP), Data Package 5; G

Commercial off-the-shelf manuals shall be provided for operation, installation, configuration, and maintenance of products provided as a part of the telecommunications outside plant (OSP). Submit operations and maintenance data in accordance with Section 01 78 23, OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA and as specified herein not later than 2 months prior to the date of beneficial occupancy. In addition to requirements of Data package 5, include the requirements of paragraphs TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTSIDE PLANT SHOP DRAWINGS and TELECOMMUNICATIONS ENTRANCE FACILITY DRAWINGS.

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Record Documentation; G

In addition to other requirements, provide in accordance with paragraph RECORD DOCUMENTATION.

1.5.1 ADDITIONAL SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

All submittals of material, equipment and design must be approved by the TSD Office prior to installing any telecommunications cabling and equipment.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Ensure compliance with Section 01 45 00.00 20 QUALITY CONTROL.

1.6.1 Shop Drawings

Include wiring diagrams and installation details of equipment indicating proposed location, layout and arrangement, control panels, accessories, piping, ductwork, and other items that must be shown to ensure a coordinated installation. Wiring diagrams shall identify circuit terminals and indicate the internal wiring for each item of equipment and the interconnection between each item of equipment. Drawings shall indicate adequate clearance for operation, maintenance, and replacement of operating equipment devices. Submittals shall include the nameplate data, size, and capacity. Submittals shall also include applicable federal, military, industry, and technical society publication references.

1.6.1.1 Telecommunications Outside Plant Shop Drawings

Provide Outside Plant Design in accordance with TIA-758 and RUS Bull 1751F-643 for underground duct system design and for direct buried system design. Provide T0 shop drawings that show the physical and logical connections from the perspective of an entire campus, such as actual building locations, exterior pathways and campus backbone cabling on plan view drawings, major system nodes, and related connections on the logical system drawings in accordance with TIA-606. Drawings shall include wiring and schematic diagrams for fiber optic and copper cabling and splices, copper conductor gauge and pair count, load coils, fiber pair count and type, pathway duct and innerduct arrangement, associated construction materials, and any details required to demonstrate that cable system has been coordinated and will properly support the switching and transmission system identified in specification and drawings. Provide Registered Communications Distribution Designer (RCDD) approved drawings of the telecommunications outside plant. Update existing telecommunication Outside Plant T0 drawings to include information modified, deleted or added as a result of this installation in accordance with TIA-606. The telecommunications outside plant (OSP) shop drawings shall be included in the operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6.1.2 Telecommunications Entrance Facility Drawings

Provide T3 drawings for EF Telecommunications in accordance with TIA-606 that include telecommunications entrance facility plan views, pathway layout (cable tray, racks, ladder-racks, etc.), mechanical/electrical layout, and cabinet, rack, backboard and wall elevations. Drawings shall show layout of applicable equipment including incoming cable connector blocks, building protector assembly, outgoing cable connector blocks, patch panels and equipment spaces and cabinet/racks. Drawings shall include a complete list of equipment and material, equipment rack details, proposed layout and anchorage of equipment and appurtenances, and equipment relationship to other parts of the work including clearance for maintenance and operation. Drawings may also be an enlargement of a congested area of T1 or T2 drawings. Provide T3 drawings for EF Telecommunications as specified in the paragraph TELECOMMUNICATIONS SPACE DRAWINGS of Section 27 10 00 BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEMS. The telecommunications entrance facility shop drawings shall be included in the operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6.2 Telecommunications Qualifications

Work under this section shall be performed by and the equipment shall be provided by the approved telecommunications contractor and key personnel.

Qualifications shall be provided for: the telecommunications system contractor, the telecommunications system installer, the supervisor (if different from the installer), and the cable splicing and terminating personnel. A minimum of 30 days prior to installation, submit documentation of the experience of the telecommunications contractor and of the key personnel.

1.6.2.1 Telecommunications Contractor Qualifications

The telecommunications contractor shall be a firm which is regularly and professionally engaged in the business of the applications, installation, and testing of the specified telecommunications systems and equipment. The telecommunications contractor shall demonstrate experience in providing successful telecommunications systems that include outside plant and broadband cabling within the past 3 years. Submit documentation for a minimum of three and a maximum of five successful telecommunication system installations for the telecommunications contractor. Each of the key personnel shall demonstrate experience in providing successful telecommunications systems in accordance with TIA-758 within the past 3 years.

1.6.2.2 Key Personnel Qualifications

Provide key personnel who are regularly and professionally engaged in the business of the application, installation and testing of the specified telecommunications systems and equipment. There may be one key person or more key persons proposed for this solicitation depending upon how many of the key roles each has successfully provided. Each of the key personnel shall demonstrate experience in providing successful telecommunications systems within the past 3 years.

Cable splicing and terminating personnel assigned to the installation of this system or any of its components shall have training in the proper techniques, shall be Building Industry Consulting Services International (BICSI) Certified Cabling Installation Technicians, Installer Level 2, or have a minimum of 3 years current consecutive experience in the installation of the specified copper and fiber optic cable and components for products used.

Supervisors and installers assigned to the installation of this system or any of its components shall have factory or factory approved certification from each equipment manufacturer indicating that they are qualified to install and test the provided products.

Submit documentation for a minimum of three and a maximum of five successful telecommunication system installations for each of the key personnel. Documentation for each key person shall include at least two successful system installations provided that are equivalent in system size and in construction complexity to the telecommunications system proposed for this solicitation. Include specific experience in installing and testing telecommunications outside plant systems, including broadband cabling, and provide the names and locations of at least two project installations successfully completed using optical fiber and copper telecommunications cabling systems. All of the existing telecommunications system installations offered by the key persons as successful experience shall have been in successful full-time service for at least 18 months prior to the issuance date for this solicitation. Provide the name and role of the key person, the title, location, and completed installation date of the referenced project, the referenced project owner point of

contact information including name, organization, title, and telephone number, and generally, the referenced project description including system size and construction complexity.

Indicate that all key persons are currently employed by the telecommunications contractor, or have a commitment to the telecommunications contractor to work on this project. All key persons shall be employed by the telecommunications contractor at the date of issuance of this solicitation, or if not, have a commitment to the telecommunications contractor to work on this project by the date that the bid was due to the Contracting Officer.

Note that only the key personnel approved by the Contracting Officer in the successful proposal shall do work on this solicitation's telecommunications system. Key personnel shall function in the same roles in this contract, as they functioned in the offered successful experience. Any substitutions for the telecommunications contractor's key personnel requires approval from the Contracting Officer.

1.6.2.3 Minimum Manufacturer's Qualifications

Cabling, equipment and hardware manufacturers shall have a minimum of 3 years experience in the manufacturing, assembly, and factory testing of components which comply with, TIA-568-C.1, TIA-568-C.2 and TIA-568-C.3. In addition, cabling manufacturers shall have a minimum of 3 years experience in the manufacturing and factory testing of cabling which comply with ICEA S-87-640, ICEA S-98-688, and ICEA S-99-689.

1.6.3 Outside Plant Test Plan

Prepare and provide a complete and detailed test plan for field tests of the outside plant including a complete list of test equipment for the copper conductor and optical fiber cables, components, and accessories for approval by Telecommunications Support Division (aka Base Telephone) via the Contracting Officer. Include a cut-over plan with procedures and schedules for relocation of facility station numbers without interrupting service to any active location. Submit the plan at least 30 days prior to tests for Contracting Officer approval. Provide outside plant testing and performance measurement criteria in accordance with TIA-568-C.1 and RUS Bull 1753F-201. Include procedures for certification, validation, and testing that includes fiber optic link performance criteria.

1.6.4 Standard Products

Provide materials and equipment that are standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of such products which are of equal material, design and workmanship and shall be the manufacturer's latest standard design that has been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for at least 2 years prior to bid opening. The 2-year period shall include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The product shall have been on sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2-year period. Products supplied shall be specifically designed and manufactured for use with outside plant telecommunications systems. Where two or more items of the same class of equipment are required, these items shall be products of a single manufacturer; however, the component parts of the item need not be the products of the same manufacturer unless stated in this section. Product submission must be approved for use by TSD via Contracting Officer prior to install.

1.6.4.1 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a 2-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturers' factory or laboratory tests, is provided.

1.6.4.2 Material and Equipment Manufacturing Date

Products manufactured more than 3 years prior to date of delivery to site shall not be used, unless specified otherwise.

1.6.5 Regulatory Requirements

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "shall" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction," or words of similar meaning, to mean the TSD via the Contracting Officer. Equipment, materials, installation, and workmanship shall be in accordance with the mandatory and advisory provisions of NFPA 70 unless more stringent requirements are specified or indicated by references or AHJ. Because references are living documents use of most current version shall be enforced.

1.6.5.1 Independent Testing Organization Certificate

In lieu of the label or listing, submit a certificate from an independent testing organization, competent to perform testing, and approved by the Contracting Officer. The certificate shall state that the item has been tested in accordance with the specified organization's test methods and that the item complies with the specified organization's reference standard.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Ship cable on reels in 5000 feet length with a minimum overage of 10 percent for 25, 50 or 100 pair configuration and 1250 feet length for larger cables. Radius of the reel drum shall not be smaller than the minimum bend radius of the cable. Wind cable on the reel so that unwinding can be done without kinking the cable. Two meters of cable at both ends of the cable shall be accessible for testing. Attach permanent label on each reel showing length, cable identification number, cable size, cable type, and date of manufacture. Provide water resistant label and the indelible writing on the labels. Apply end seals to each end of the cables to prevent moisture from entering the cable. Reels with cable shall be suitable for outside storage conditions when temperature ranges from minus 40 degrees C to plus 65 degrees C, with relative humidity from 0 to 100 percent. Equipment, other than cable, delivered and placed in storage shall be stored with protection from weather, humidity and temperature variation, dirt and dust, or other contaminants in accordance with manufacturer's requirements.

1.8 MAINTENANCE

1.8.1 Record Documentation

Provide the activity responsible for telecommunications system maintenance and administration (TSD via the Contracting Officer) a single complete and accurate set of record documentation for the entire telecommunications

system for each structure with respect to this project.

Provide record documentation as specified in Section 27 10 00 BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEM.

Provide T5 drawings including documentation on cables and termination hardware in accordance with TIA-606. T5 drawings shall include schedules to show information for cut-overs and cable plant management, patch panel layouts, cross-connect information and connecting terminal layout as a minimum. T5 drawings shall be provided in both hard copy format and on electronic media using Windows based computer cable management software. A licensed copy of the cable management software including documentation, shall be provided. Update existing record documentation to reflect campus distribution T0 drawings and T3 drawing schedule information modified, deleted or added as a result of this installation. Provide the following T5 drawing documentation as a minimum:

- a. Cables - A record of installed cable shall be provided in accordance with TIA-606. The cable records shall include the required data fields for each cable and complete end-to-end circuit report for each complete circuit from the assigned outlet to the entry facility for the soft copy in accordance with TIA-606. Include manufacture date of cable with submittal.
- b. Termination Hardware - Provide a record of installed patch panels, cross-connect points, campus distributor and terminating block arrangements and type in accordance with TIA-606. Documentation shall include the required data fields as a minimum in accordance with TIA-606.

Provide record documentation as specified in Section 27 10 00 BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEM.

1.8.2 Spare Parts

In addition to the requirements of Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA, provide a complete list of parts and supplies, with current unit prices and source of supply, and a list of spare parts recommended for stocking. Spare parts shall be provided no later than the start of field testing.

1.9 WARRANTY

The equipment items shall be supported by service organizations which are reasonably convenient to the equipment installation in order to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

Products supplied shall be specifically designed and manufactured for use with outside plant telecommunications systems. All product data must be supplied in the submittal process and no product can be used without approval from TSD via the Contracting Officer.

2.2 TELECOMMUNICATIONS ENTRANCE FACILITY

2.2.1 Building Protector Assemblies

Building protector assembly (BEP) shall be self-contained and have interconnecting hardware (710 input and 66 output) for connection to all Outside Plant rated cabling at full capacity. Provide and follow manufacturers instructions for building protector assembly installation. If Multiple BEPs are used, arrange and connect with lowest count high and to left and highest to bottom right. Provide copper cable interconnecting hardware as specified in Section 27 10 00 BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEM. There will be no service loops or splicing of copper cable outside of the building protector assembly within the telecommunications room (pigtail BEPs are not authorized).

2.2.2 Protector Modules

Provide in accordance with UL 497 three-electrode gas tube type, 5 pin, rated for the application. Provide gas tube protection modules in accordance with RUS Bull 345-83 and shall be heavy duty, A>10kA, B>400, C>65A where A is the maximum single impulse discharge current, B is the impulse life and C is the AC discharge current in accordance with ANSI C62.61. The gas modules shall shunt high voltage to ground, fail short, and be equipped with an external spark gap and heat coils in accordance with UL 497. Provide the number of surge protection modules equal to the number of pairs of exterior cable of the building protector assembly. Recommend 4B1E type.

2.2.3 Fiber Optic Terminations

Provide fiber optic cable terminations as specified in 27 10 00 BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEM. Ensure terminations within the Fiber Distribution Center (FDC) are logical left to right and top to bottom (OSP SM/Backbone SM then MM/Row to Row SM then MM).

2.2.4 Pathways

Underground applications for single buildings: provide a minimum of (3) four inch ducts (copper, fiber, maintenance duct... in that order), one of which (fiber) contains (2)- three cell fabric inner duct. The (3) four inch ducts shall enter the Main Communications Room (entrance facility) to the far left of the communications backboard (longest farthest wall from the door) and shall be 3-6 inches above floor and 3-6 inches away from wall, aligned parallel to the communications backboard wall. The underground ducts must have 3" concrete encasing, with 24 inches minimum backfill below grade from the Communications Entrance Facility to the maintenance hole that will be providing service to the building (Demarcation point).

For campus distribution between maintenance holes, ducts may need to be 5" to support larger cables, also there will be no less than 4, and up to xx ducts as needed for distribution to the area serviced. All new ducts will include bell ends and terminators flush with MH walls sealed water tight. Both ends of new duct shall be plugged with compression plugs or duct seal around cables (no expanding foam). All new pathway shall be visibly marked and provided on area map with GPS coordinates. All ducts shall be installed as straight through runs between holes and shall not cross each other allowing a straight pull through. All duct banks where fiber cables are installed shall include fabric innerduct to maximize the pathway.

For direct buried applications (only in remote areas where there is no manhole duct systems and none is in project contract), provide a minimum of three (3) four inch ducts from the Communications Entrance Facility to outside the bldg foot print past any obstructions, footers, or sidewalks by at least 5 feet into clear soil/entryway, 24 inches below grade. The ducts will be plugged at both ends and clearly marked on outside end. For distribution to demarcation, between handholes, and riser points cables need to be 36" below grade with metal locating tape at 24" below grade. Cables need to be in HDDPE direct bored, HDDPE direct buried, concrete encased in conduit, or concrete encased split duct under all roadways and pavement. All new cables need to be provided on area map with GPS coordinates for riser points or hand holes. Handholes and maintenance holes shall be traffic rated (MIN tier 22). Handhole size min 4'x4'x4'. Maintenance hole size 6'x7'x8' and all penetrations should be splayed.

If utility pathway conflicts necessitate placement of a manhole below the typical/normal depth (6-12 inches), the roof of the manhole shall be placed at normal depth and riser extensions shall be used to increase the depth of the manhole. If a deep collar is unavoidable and the depth of the collar will exceed 24 inches, the Designer shall obtain written permission from TSD (Base Telephone) and ensure that the collar is equipped with permanent galvanized steps (rungs). Also do not drill hole in bottom of maintenance/handhole for grounding rod, use grounding ribbon built into the concrete structure itself that is in full contact with the ground.

2.3 CLOSURES

2.3.1 Copper Conductor Closures

2.3.1.1 Underground Cable Closures

- a. Aboveground: Provide aboveground closures constructed of not less than 14 gauge steel and acceptable for pole or stake mounting in accordance with RUS 1755.910. Closures shall be sized and contain a marker as indicated. Covers shall be secured to prevent unauthorized entry. PVC type closures are to be used in beach areas. All pedestals shall contain a minimum 4 foot x 3/8 inch pigtailed ground rod.
- b. Direct burial: Provide buried closure suitable for enclosing a straight, butt, and branch splice in a container into which can be poured an encapsulating compound. Closure shall have adequate strength to protect the splice and maintain cable shield electrical continuity in the buried environment. Encapsulating compound shall be reenterable and shall not alter the chemical stability of the closure. Provide filled splice cases in accordance with RUS Bull 345-72.

NOTE: The installation of a direct buried closure aboard Marine Corps Base, Camp Lejeune and Marine Corps Air Station, New River is not authorized; all closures shall be in a riser point, handhole, or manhole.

- c. In vault or manhole: Provide underground closure suitable to house a straight, butt, and branch splice in a protective housing into which air can be pumped for flash testing. Closure shall be of suitable thermoplastic or stainless steel material supplying structural strength necessary to pass the mechanical and electrical requirements in a vault or manhole environment. Heat shrinkable type closures shall not be used. Provide filled splice cases in accordance with RUS Bull 345-72.

2.3.2 Fiber Optic Closures

2.3.2.1 Direct Burial

Provide buried closure suitable to house splice organizer in protective housing into which can be poured an encapsulating compound. Closure shall have adequate strength to protect the splice and maintain cable shield electrical continuity, when metallic, in buried environment. Encapsulating compound shall be reenterable and shall not alter chemical stability of the closure.

NOTE: The installation of a direct buried closure aboard Marine Corps Base, Camp Lejeune and Marine Corps Air Station, New River is not authorized; all closures shall be in a riser point, handhold, or manhole.

2.3.2.2 In Vault or Manhole

Provide underground closure suitable to house splice organizer in a protective housing into which **air can be pumped for flash testing**. Closure shall be of thermoplastic material supplying structural strength necessary to pass the mechanical and electrical requirements in a vault or manhole environment. **Provide 60' slack coils on fiber in every 3rd manhole/handhole or in any which a turn is made.**

2.4 PAD MOUNTED **CROSS-CONNECT TERMINAL CABINETS**

Provide in accordance with **RUS 1755.910** and the following:

- a. Constructed of 14 gauge steel.
- b. Equipped with a double set of hinged doors with closed-cell foam weatherstripping. Doors shall be locked and contain a marker as indicated.
- c. Equipped with spool spindle bracket, mounting frames, binding post log, jumpering instruction label, and load coil mounting provisions.
- d. Complete with cross connect modules to terminate number of pairs as indicated.
- e. Sized as indicated.

2.5 **CABLE SPLICES, AND CONNECTORS**

2.5.1 Copper Cable Splices

In vaults or manholes or entrance protectors provide multi-pair, in-line fold back to maximize length of accessible conductors for maintenance or single pair, in-line splices of a moisture resistant, three-wire insulation displacement connector held rigidly in place to assure maximum continuity in accordance with **RUS Bull 1753F-401. Cables greater than 25 pairs shall be spliced using multipair splicing connectors, which accommodate 25 pairs of conductors at a time (typical 710). Provide correct connector size to accommodate the cable gauge of the supplied cable. **Provide enough cable slack suitable for splicing operations to maximize length of accessible conductors for maintenance operations. In above ground splices use three wire insulation displacement single pair connectors no matter what size the cable. In longer runs of copper provide proper load coils to balance the load as needed to ensure line quality in accordance with **RUS Bull 1753F-201.******

2.5.2 Copper Cable Splice Connector

Provide splice connectors with a polycarbonate body and cap and a tin-plated brass contact element. Connector shall accommodate 19 to 26 AWG solid wire with a maximum insulation diameter of 0.065 inch and shall only be installed with manufacturer recommended crimp/cut tool. Fill connector with sealant grease to make a moisture resistant connection, in accordance with RUS Bull 1753F-401.

2.5.3 Fiber Optic Cable Splices

Provide fiber optic cable splices and splicing materials for fusion methods at locations shown on the construction drawings. The splice insertion loss shall be 0.3 dB maximum when measured in accordance with TIA-455-78-B using an Optical Time Domain Reflectometer (OTDR). Splices shall be designed for a return loss of 40.0 db max for single mode fiber when tested in accordance with TIA-455-107. Physically protect each fiber optic splice by a splice kit specially designed for the splice. Provide enough cable slack suitable for splicing operations, but in no case less than 30 feet at each end.

2.5.4 Fiber Optic Splice Organizer

Provide splice organizer suitable for housing fiber optic splices in a neat and orderly logical fashion. Splice organizer shall allow for a minimum of 3 feet of fiber for each fiber within the cable to be neatly stored without kinks or twists. Splice organizer shall accommodate individual strain relief for each splice and allow for future maintenance or modification, without damage to the cable or splices. Provide splice organizer hardware, such as splice trays, protective glass shelves, and shield bond connectors in a splice organizer kit.

2.5.5 Shield Connectors

Provide connectors with a stable, low-impedance electrical connection between the cable shield and the bonding conductor in accordance with RUS Bull 345-65.

2.6 CONDUIT

Provide conduit as specified in Section 33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION.

2.7 PLASTIC INSULATING TAPE

Tape shall be premium quality, heavy-duty, weather-resistant designed for use on electrical and telecommunications applications and UL 510 compliant.

2.8 WIRE AND CABLE

2.8.1 Copper Conductor Cable

Solid copper conductors, covered with an extruded solid insulating compound. Insulated conductors shall be twisted into pairs which are then stranded or oscillated to form a cylindrical core. For special high frequency applications, the cable core shall be separated into compartments. Cable shall be completed by the application of a suitable core wrapping material, a corrugated copper or plastic coated aluminum

shield, and an overall extruded jacket. Telecommunications contractor shall verify distances between splice points, slack required, and pair count required prior to ordering cable. Gauge of conductor shall be determined by the distance from the central office. In all cases the installed cable shall be of the same gauge as the cable it is being spliced into at the Demarcation point. The cable range available is; numbers of pairs specified; 19 gauge (6 to 400 pairs), 22 gauge (6 to 1200 pairs), 24 gauge (6 to 2100 pairs), and 26 gauge (6 to 3000 pairs). **26 AWG is not used on Camp Lejeune** Copper conductors shall conform to the following: All outside plant copper conductor cable available in PE-39 type shall be used; PE-89 is only approved for large pair counts when PE-39 is not manufactured due to large count.

2.8.1.1 Underground

Provide filled cable (type PE-39/89) meeting the requirements of ICEA S-99-689, RUS 1755.390, and RUS 1755.890. Provide enough cable slack suitable for splicing operations, but in no case less than 10 feet.

2.8.1.2 Screen

Provide screen-compartmental core cable filled cable meeting the requirements of ICEA S-99-689 and RUS 1755.390.

2.8.2 Fiber Optic Cable

Provide single-mode, 8/125-um, 0.10 aperture 1310 nm fiber optic cable in accordance with TIA-492CAAA, and single-mode, 8/125-um, 0.10 aperture 1550 nm fiber optic cable in accordance with TIA-492E000, TIA-472D000, and ICEA S-87-640 including any special requirements made necessary by a specialized design. Provide a minimum of 24 optical fibers or more as indicated by drawings but never less without a waiver from local authority having jurisdiction. Fiber optic cable shall be specifically designed for outside use with preferred double jacket (if buried), single armor, loose buffer construction, and must be shielded. Provide fiber optic color code in accordance with TIA/EIA-598. Provide minimum 60' slack coil in every 3rd MH or any one where a turn is made.

NOTE: The installation of Multi-mode OSP Fiber Optic cables aboard Marine Corps Base, Camp Lejeune and Marine Corps Air Station, New River is not authorized; except as Backbone Underground Cabling between Communications Rooms within the same building, which is allowed, but not recommended.

2.8.2.1 Strength Members

Provide central/non-central, non-metallic/metallic strength members with sufficient tensile strength for installation and residual rated loads to meet the applicable performance requirements in accordance with ICEA S-87-640. The strength member is included to serve as a cable core foundation to reduce strain on the fibers, and shall not serve as a pulling strength member.

2.8.2.2 Shielding or Other Metallic Covering

Provide continuous, conductive or locatable, single tape covering and shield in accordance with ICEA S-87-640 on all cables.

2.8.2.3 Performance Requirements

Provide fiber optic cable with optical and mechanical performance requirements in accordance with [ICEA S-87-640](#).

2.8.3 Grounding and Bonding Conductors

Provide grounding and bonding conductors in accordance with [RUS 1755.200](#), [TIA-607](#), [IEEE C2](#), and [NFPA 70](#). Solid bare copper wire meeting the requirements of [ASTM B1](#) for sizes No. 8 AWG and smaller and stranded bare copper wire meeting the requirements of [ASTM B8](#), for sizes No. 6 AWG and larger. Conductors should be installed so as not to exceed minimum bend radius and shall be attached to most suitable bond available at location. Do not install field modified ground rods in maintenance holes that already have factory grounding. Insulated conductors shall have 600-volt, Type TW insulation meeting the requirements of [UL 83](#).

2.9 CABLE TAGS IN MANHOLES, HANDHOLES, AND VAULTS

Provide tags for each telecommunications cable or wire located in manholes, handholes, and vaults. Cable tags shall be stainless steel or polyethylene and labeled in accordance with [TIA-606](#). Coordinate actual cable tag information with TSD. Handwritten labeling is unacceptable.

2.9.1 Stainless Steel

Provide stainless steel, cable tags [1 5/8 inches](#) in diameter [1/16 inch](#) thick minimum, and circular in shape. Tags shall be die stamped with numbers, letters, and symbols not less than [0.25 inch](#) high and approximately [0.015 inch](#) deep in normal block style.

2.9.2 Polyethylene Cable Tags

Provide tags of polyethylene that have an average tensile strength of [3250 pounds per square inch](#); and that are [0.08 inch](#) thick (minimum), non-corrosive non-conductive; resistive to acids, alkalis, organic solvents, and salt water; and distortion resistant to [170 degrees F](#). Provide [0.05 inch](#) (minimum) thick black polyethylene tag holder. Provide a one-piece nylon, self-locking tie at each end of the cable tag. Ties shall have a minimum loop tensile strength of [175 pounds](#). The cable tags shall have black block letters, numbers, and symbols [one inch](#) high on a yellow background. Letters, numbers, and symbols shall not fall off or change positions regardless of the cable tags orientation.

2.10 BURIED WARNING AND IDENTIFICATION TAPE

Provide fiber optic media marking and protection in accordance with [TIA-590](#). Provide color, type and depth of tape as specified in paragraph BURIED WARNING AND IDENTIFICATION TAPE in [Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL](#).

2.11 GROUNDING BRAID

Provide grounding braid that provides low electrical impedance connections for dependable shield bonding in accordance with [RUS 1755.200](#). Braid shall be made from flat tin-plated copper properly attached to factory ground in maintenance/handhole, TMGB, building steel, electrical bus, or approved grounding rods in riser points.

2.12 MANUFACTURER'S NAMEPLATE

Each item of equipment shall have a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable.

2.13 FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATES

Provide laminated plastic nameplates in accordance with [ASTM D709](#) for each patch panel, protector assembly, rack, cabinet and other equipment or as indicated on the drawings. Each nameplate inscription shall identify the function and, when applicable, the position. Nameplates shall be melamine plastic, [0.125 inch](#) thick, white with black center core. Surface shall be matte finish. Corners shall be square. Accurately align lettering and engrave into the core. Minimum size of nameplates shall be [one by 2.5 inches](#). Lettering shall be a minimum of [0.25 inch](#) high normal block style.

2.14 TESTS, INSPECTIONS, AND VERIFICATIONS

2.14.1 Factory Reel Test Data

Test 100 percent OTDR test of FO media at the factory in accordance with [TIA-568-C.1](#) and [TIA-568-C.3](#). Use [TIA-526-7](#) for single mode fiber and [TIA-526-14](#) Method B for multi mode fiber measurements. Calibrate OTDR to show anomalies of 0.2 dB minimum. Enhanced performance filled OSP copper cables, referred to as Broadband Outside Plant (BBOSP), shall meet the requirements of [ICEA S-99-689](#). Enhanced performance air core OSP copper cables shall meet the requirements of [ICEA S-98-688](#). Submit test reports, including manufacture date for each cable reel and receive approval before delivery of cable to the project site.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Install all system components and appurtenances in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, [IEEE C2](#), [NFPA 70](#), and as indicated. Provide all necessary interconnections, services, and adjustments required for a complete and operable telecommunications system [from designated demarcation point to building entrance facility, to include lightning protection terminations at one or both ends of the cable as required per paragraph: SYSTEM DESCRIPTION.](#)

3.1.1 Contractor Damage

Promptly repair indicated utility lines or systems damaged during site preparation and construction. Damages to lines or systems not indicated, which are caused by Contractor operations, shall be treated as "Changes" under the terms of the Contract Clauses. When Contractor is advised in writing of the location of a nonindicated line or system, such notice shall provide that portion of the line or system with "indicated" status in determining liability for damages. In every event, immediately notify [Base Telephone via](#) the Contracting Officer of damage.

3.1.2 Cable Inspection and Repair

Handle cable and wire provided in the construction of this project with care. Inspect cable reels for cuts, nicks or other damage. Damaged cable

shall be replaced or repaired to the satisfaction of the Contracting Officer. Reel wraps shall remain intact on the reel until the cable is ready for placement.

3.1.1.3 Underground Duct

Provide underground duct and connections (terminators and bell ends) to existing manholes or handholes, as specified in Section 33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION with any additional requirements as specified herein. Minimum size of ducts shall be 4 inch and minimum number will be three (3) into any building.

3.1.1.4 Reconditioning of Surfaces

Provide reconditioning of surfaces as specified in Section 33 71 02 UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION.

3.1.1.5 Penetrations

Caulk and seal cable access penetrations in walls, ceilings and other parts of the building. Seal openings around electrical penetrations through fire resistance-rated wall, partitions, floors, or ceilings in accordance with Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

3.1.1.6 Cable Pulling

Test duct lines with a mandrel (SHALL BE WITNESSED BY GOVERNMENT) and swab out to remove foreign material before the pulling of cables. Avoid damage to cables in setting up pulling apparatus or in placing tools or hardware. Do not step on cables when entering or leaving the manhole. Do not place cables in ducts other than those shown without prior written approval of Base Telephone via the Contracting Officer. Roll cable reels in the direction indicated by the arrows painted on the reel flanges. Set up cable reels on the same side of the manhole as the conduit section in which the cable is to be placed. Level the reel and bring into proper alignment with the conduit section so that the cable pays off from the top of the reel in a long smooth bend into the duct without twisting. Under no circumstances shall the cable be paid off from the bottom of a reel. Check the equipment set up prior to beginning the cable pulling to avoid an interruption once pulling has started. Use a cable feeder guide of suitable dimensions between cable reel and face of duct to protect cable and guide cable into the duct as it is paid off the reel. As cable is paid off the reel, lubricate and inspect cable for sheath defects. When defects are noticed, stop pulling operations and notify the Contracting Officer to determine required corrective action. Cable pulling shall also be stopped when reel binds or does not pay off freely. Rectify cause of binding before resuming pulling operations. Provide cable lubricants recommended by the cable manufacturer. Avoid bends in cables of small radii and twists that might cause damage. Do not bend cable and wire in a radius less than 10 times the outside diameter of the cable or wire.

3.1.1.6.1 Cable Tensions

Obtain from the cable manufacturer and provide to the Contracting Officer, the maximum allowable pulling tension. This tension shall not be exceeded.

3.1.1.6.2 Pulling Eyes

Equip cables 1.25 inches in diameter and larger with cable manufacturer's

factory installed pulling-in eyes. Provide cables with diameter smaller than 1.25 inches with heat shrinkable type end caps or seals on cable ends when using cable pulling grips. Rings to prevent grip from slipping shall not be beaten into the cable sheath. Use a swivel of 3/4 inch links between pulling-in eyes or grips and pulling strand.

3.1.6.3 Installation of Cables in Manholes, Handholes, and Vaults

Do not install cables utilizing the shortest route, but route along those walls providing the longest route and the maximum spare cable lengths. Do not install slack coils in copper unless approved or requested by AHJ. Fiber slack coils should be min 60' in every 3rd MH or any MH where a turn is made. Form cables to closely parallel walls, not to interfere with duct entrances, and support cables on brackets and cable insulators at a maximum of 4 feet. Install cable or cables in corresponding ducts entering and exiting the manholes in straight lines, do not cross ducts or manhole. In existing manholes, handholes, and vaults where new ducts are to be terminated, or where new cables are to be installed, modify the existing installation of cables, cable supports, and grounding as required with cables arranged and supported as specified for new cables. Identify each cable with corrosion-resistant embossed metal tags. All fiber optic cables will be installed in fabric innerduct measuring min 1 inch (or larger) with min of three cells (but should maximize pathways).

3.1.7 Cable Splicing

3.1.7.1 Copper Conductor Splices

Perform splicing in accordance with manufacturer, best known practices, and requirements of RUS Bull 1753F-401 except that direct buried splices and twisted and soldered splices are not allowed. Exception does not apply for pairs assigned for carrier application.

3.1.7.2 Fiber Optic Splices

Fiber optic splicing shall be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendation and shall exhibit an insertion loss not greater than 0.2 dB for fusion splices.

NOTE: The installation of Mechanical Fiber Optic Splices aboard Marine Corps Base, Camp Lejeune and Marine Corps Air Station, New River is not authorized.

3.1.8 Surge Protection

All cables and conductors, except fiber optic cable, which serve as communication lines through off-premise lines, shall have surge protection (710 input/66 output) installed at each end which meet the requirements of RUS Bull 1751F-815.

3.1.9 Grounding

Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with RUS 1755.200, TIA-607, IEEE C2, and NFPA 70. Ground exposed noncurrent carrying metallic parts of telephone equipment, cable sheaths, cable splices, and terminals.

3.1.9.1 Telecommunications Master Ground Bar (TMGB)

The TMGB is the hub of the basic telecommunications grounding system

providing a common point of connection for ground from outside cable, CD, and equipment. Establish a TMGB for connection point for cable stub shields to connector blocks and CD protector assemblies as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. The TMGB will at a minimum be 4 inches by 10 inches by 1/4 inch as shown in TIA-607.

3.1.9.2 Incoming Cable Shields

Shields shall not be bonded across the splice to the cable stubs at the main distribution frame. Ground shields of incoming cables in the EF Telecommunications to the TMGB.

3.1.9.3 Campus Distributor Grounding

- a. Protection assemblies: Mount CD protector assemblies directly on the telecommunications backboard. Connect assemblies mounted on each vertical frame with No. 6 AWG copper conductor to provide a low resistance path to TMGB.
- b. TMGB connection: Connect TMGB to TGB with copper conductor with a total resistance of less than 0.01 ohms.

3.1.10 Cut-Over

All necessary transfers and cut-overs, shall be accomplished by the telecommunications contractor except government owned cables with active service which must be done by TSD.

3.2 LABELING

3.2.1 Labels

Provide labeling for new cabling and termination hardware located within the facility in accordance with TIA-606. Handwritten labeling is unacceptable. Stenciled lettering for cable and termination hardware shall be provided using either thermal ink transfer process or laser printer. Actual information on labels shall be obtained from TSD via contracting office.

3.2.2 Cable Tag Installation

Install cable tags for each telecommunications cable or wire located in manholes, handholes, and vaults including each splice. Tag new wire and cable provided under this contract and existing wire and cable which are indicated to have splices and terminations provided by this contract. The labeling of telecommunications cable tag identifiers shall be in accordance with TIA-606. Tag legend shall be as indicated. Do not provide handwritten letters. Install cable tags so that they are clearly visible without disturbing any cabling or wiring in the manholes, handholes, and vaults.

3.2.3 Termination Hardware

Label patch panels, distribution panels, connector blocks and protection modules using color coded labels with identifiers in accordance with TIA-606.

3.3 FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATE MOUNTING

Provide number, location, and letter designation of nameplates as

indicated. Fasten nameplates to the device with a minimum of two sheet-metal screws or two rivets.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Provide the Contracting Officer 10 working days notice prior to each test. Provide labor, equipment, and incidentals required for testing. Correct defective material and workmanship disclosed as the results of the tests. Furnish a signed copy of the test results to the Contracting Officer within 3 working days after the tests for each segment of construction are completed. Perform testing as construction progresses and do not wait until all construction is complete before starting field tests.

3.4.1 Pre-Installation Tests

Perform the following tests on cable at the job site before it is removed from the cable reel. For cables with factory installed pulling eyes, these tests shall be performed at the factory and certified test results shall accompany the cable.

3.4.1.1 Cable Capacitance

Perform capacitance tests on **all** pairs within a cable to determine if cable capacitance is within the limits specified.

3.4.1.2 Loop Resistance

Perform DC-loop resistance on **all** of the pairs within a cable to determine if DC-loop resistance is within the manufacturer's calculated resistance.

3.4.1.3 Pre-Installation Test Results

Provide results of pre-installation tests to the Contracting Officer at least 5 working days before installation is to start. Results shall indicate reel number of the cable, manufacturer, size of cable, pairs tested, and recorded readings. When pre-installation tests indicate that cable does not meet specifications, remove cable from the job site.

3.4.2 Acceptance Tests

Perform acceptance testing in accordance with **RUS Bull 1753F-201** and as further specified in this section. Provide personnel, equipment, instrumentation, and supplies necessary to perform required testing. Notification of any planned testing shall be given to the Contracting Officer at least 14 days prior to any test unless specified otherwise. Testing shall not proceed until after the Contractor has received written Contracting Officer's approval of the test plans as specified. Test plans shall define the tests required to ensure that the system meets technical, operational, and performance specifications. The test plans shall define milestones for the tests, equipment, personnel, facilities, and supplies required. The test plans shall identify the capabilities and functions to be tested. Provide test reports **to TSD via Contracting officer in soft and hard copy in .pdf or .xls form showing all field tests performed, upon completion and testing of the installed system. Measurements shall be tabulated on a pair by pair or strand by strand basis. Blank forms can be provided from Base Telephone upon request.**

3.4.2.1 Copper Conductor Cable

Perform the following acceptance tests in accordance with TIA-758:

- a. Wire map (pin to pin continuity)
- b. Continuity to remote end
- c. Crossed pairs
- d. Reversed pairs
- e. Split pairs
- f. Shorts between two or more conductors
- g. Grounded pairs.

3.4.2.2 Fiber Optic Cable

Test fiber optic cable in accordance with TIA/EIA-455 and as further specified in this section. Two optical tests shall be performed on all optical fibers: Optical Time Domain Reflectometry (OTDR) Test, and Attenuation Test. These tests shall be performed on the completed end-to-end spans which include the near-end pre-connectorized single fiber cable assembly, outside plant as specified, outside plant field un-terminated at demarcation point, and the far-end pre-connectorized single fiber cable assembly.

- a. OTDR Test: The OTDR test shall be used to determine the adequacy of the cable installations by showing any irregularities, such as discontinuities, micro-bendings or improper splices for the cable span under test. Hard copy fiber signature records shall be obtained from the OTDR for each fiber in each span and shall be included in the test results. The OTDR test shall be measured in both directions. A reference length of fiber, 1000 feet minimum, used as the delay line shall be placed before the new end connector and after the far end patch panel connectors for inspection of connector signature. Conduct OTDR test and provide calculation or interpretation of results in accordance with TIA-526-7 for single-mode fiber and TIA-526-14 for multimode fiber. Splice losses shall not exceed 0.2 db.
- b. Attenuation Test: End-to-end attenuation measurements shall be made on all fibers, in both directions, using a 850 & 1300 for 62.5 multi-mode fiber and 1310 & 1550 for single mode nanometer light source at one end and the optical power meter on the other end to verify that the cable system attenuation requirements are met in accordance with TIA-526-7 for single-mode fiber optic cables. The measurement method shall be in accordance with TIA-455-78-B. Attenuation losses shall not exceed 0.5 db/km at 1310 nm and 1550 nm for single-mode fiber.
- c. Bandwidth Test: The end-to-end bandwidth of all multimode fiber span links shall be measured by the frequency domain method. The bandwidth shall be measured in both directions on all fibers. The bandwidth measurements shall be in accordance with TIA/EIA-455-204.

3.4.3 Soil Density Tests

- a. Determine soil-density relationships for compaction of backfill

material in accordance with ASTM D698, Method D.

- b. Determine soil-density relationships as specified for soil tests in
Section 31 23 00.00 20 EXCAVATION AND FILL.

-- End of Section --